



Jesus Christ, the Good Samaritan, came to bind up the sinners's wounds. (Luke 10:25-37). Jesus Christ tells believers to help new Christians grow. "Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee." (v.35). This book helps you do this.

THE WAY TO GOD and HEAVEN

1. We have sinned by breaking God's laws, the 10 commandments. We have been selfish, putting ourselves first, taking God's good gifts of creation without thanking Him as Provider. We have broken the chief commandment of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. We have not loved others as we love ourselves. This is sin. We are all big sinners compared to God.
2. God's Law demands that we receive penalty for our sin in hell forever. This is bad news. God loves us and is offering everybody the free gift of eternal life which we get through from Jesus Christ.
3. Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, came to earth, lived a sinless life, and at the age of 33 died on the cross to take the full punishment due for everybody's past, present and future sins. Having received the full penalty of our sins, He died, was buried and rose from the dead three days later.
4. If you believe the Jesus Christ is:
 - a) God the Son.
 - b) Died for your sins in your place; and
 - c) Rose again bodily from the dead, Then
Receive or ask Jesus Christ to be your Saviour from sin,
Then God will forgive all your sins and give you eternal life immediately.

Question: Will you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? If yes, then tell this to God right now:

"Almighty God, I know that I have sinned against you. I believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross to pay the penalty for my sins to be my Saviour. I now receive you, Lord Jesus Christ, as my Saviour and my God. I now call on you, Lord Jesus, to save me from my sins, take me to heaven when I die, and give me the gift of eternal life right now. I now open the door of my heart and life for You, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God forever. In Jesus Christ's name, I pray. Amen."

ANSWERS

by Keith Piper

**A Series of Follow Up Bible Studies
On Life's Key Questions**



Are you “ABLE TO TEACH OTHERS ALSO”?

“And the things that thou hast heard of me
among many witnesses,
the same commit thou to faithful men,
who shall be able to teach others also.” II Timothy 2:2.

Website: www.keithpiper.org

“**ANSWERS** - A Series of Follow Up Bible Studies On Life’s Key Questions”.

Copyright© 1995 by Keith Piper. 2nd Edition 1997. 3rd Edition 1999. 4th Edition 2003. 5th Edition 2007. 6th Edition 2009 (6). 7th Edition 2014 (4) 8th Edition 2016 (4). 9th Edition 2018 (5). ISBN: 0 949047 35 X

The artwork on the cover depicts Jesus Christ’s Parables of The Sower (Matthew 13:3-9,18-23) and of The Wheat and Tares (Matthew 13:24-30,36-43). These parables teach our need to sow more seed of the gospel and sound Bible doctrine (Titus 1:9; 2:1) throughout the world, so that all believers may become “established in the faith” (Acts 16:5) and become “able to teach others also” (2 Timothy 2:2). It teaches the need for more “good ground” type churches which help believers to bear more fruit. It teaches that the enemy is at work sowing false doctrines through his children and by catching away from people’s minds some of God’s Word which is not understood.

The purpose of this book is to help people better understand God’s Word, to identify and reject false doctrines, and to help Christians to multiply disciples by teaching others also.

The front and back cover illustrations are two of 258 Merian copper-plate engravings by Matthaus Merian, which were included in a 1630 edition of Martin Luther’s German Bible. In 1630, an unknown artist painted the engravings. The engraver Matthaus Merian, was born in Basle, Switzerland on September 22, 1593, as the son of an affluent town councillor, Walther Merian. Matthaus lived, married and worked in Frankfurt until his death on June 19, 1650 aged 57 years.

All Scripture quoted is from the King James Version unless otherwise noted.

Acknowledgements: To the Lord Jesus Christ, Who is the central theme of the Bible, History, the Universe, Eternity and our lives. This book aims to “preach among the gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ” (Ephesians 3:8), to glorify God and to win the world to Christ.

How to obtain copies of this book: Email: piperkeith@yahoo.com.au.

Write to Keith Piper at PO Box 188, Cherrybrook, NSW, Australia, 2126.

Phone: 61-2-98754321; 61-414-106-279 (International), 02-98754321 (in Australia).

Website: www.keithpiper.org Other books by K. Piper: “Established in the Faith” (96 pages).

“**Understanding**”, “**Questions**” (96 pages), “**Jesus Christ’s Life in Pictures**”

“**Bible College Assignment Questions**” (100 pages); “**Serious Omissions in the NIV Bible**” (137 p).



TABLE OF CONTENTS

Proofs of Christ, the Bible and God

1.	Proof of Christ and the Bible.....	1
2.	Fulfilled Prophecy as Proof of the Bible	2
3.	Science as Proof of the Bible	13
4.	Proofs of the Existence of God	18
5.	Reasons for the Bible, Heaven, Resurrection, Deity, Creation, Baptism.....	20

General Bible Studies

6.	Heaven	24
7.	Hell	27
8.	Rewards	32
9.	The Feasts of Jehovah	35
10.	Historical Background of the Old Testament	36
11.	Bible Maps.....	38
12.	Miscellaneous Charts and Tables.....	42
13.	Some Challenging Thoughts	49
14.	The Parables of Jesus	59
15.	Events in the Life of Christ and Harmony of the Gospels.....	66
16.	Angels	73

Soul Winning

17.	How to Lead a Person to Christ	93
18.	Soul Winning Test Questions.....	98
19.	Advantages of using the <i>Stop</i> Tract in Soul Winning.....	102
20.	Missionary Strategy and Duty Statement	103
21.	Why Christians should do Soul Winning	105
22.	<i>Stop</i> Tracts in English, Chinese, Tagalog, Kiswahili.....	110
23.	Correct Mental Attitudes in Soul Winning.....	123
24.	What God Gives us when we Receive Christ as our Saviour	124
25.	Does a Person have to Call on Christ to be Saved?.....	125
26.	A Christian Should.....	132
27.	Tests of a Person's Salvation	133
28.	Answers to Common Objections Met in Soul Winning	134
29.	Hindrances to Successful Soul Winning	136
30.	Door Knocking.....	137

Church Issues

31.	What an Independent Baptist Church Stands for.....	138
32.	Statement of Faith of Liberty Baptist Church (Independent)	141
33.	Reasons for Coming to Church	147
34.	Baptism	148
35.	Friendship	152
36.	How to Start an Independent Baptist Church	157
37.	The Lord's Supper	158
38.	Why the Church Exists	159
39.	Ushers' Duties.....	161
40.	Pastors' Ethics	162
41.	Things Dead or Lukewarm Churches Won't Teach You	163
42.	Valuable Things a Good Church Produces	164
43.	Things a Good Church is Compared to	164
44.	Don't Attend a Counterfeit Church.....	168
45.	How to Have Genuine Revival.....	169

Second Coming of Jesus Christ

46.	47 Signs of Christ's Return	171
47.	The Second Coming of Jesus Christ to Earth	184
48.	7 Dispensations	188
49.	The Rapture	190
50.	The Judgment Seat of Christ	192
51.	Judgments of the Tribulation.....	194
52.	The Russian and Muslim Invasion of Israel	195
53.	The Millennium or Rule of Christ on Earth – What will it be like?	208
54.	Christ will Personally Appear on Earth.....	212
55.	Daniel's 70 Week Prophecy.....	214
56.	9 Charts.....	226

Discipleship

57.	Discipleship by Multiplication	234
58.	How to Run a Discipleship Seminar	244
59.	Challenging Questions to Motivate Christians	245
60.	Qualities You Need to Make Disciples	246
61.	Bible College Curriculum	250
62.	What all Christians Must Know	251
63.	What it Means to Surrender 100% to Jesus Christ	284

Christian Living

64.	The Christian Life Portrayed in Israel's Journey.....	285
65.	Be Filled with the Spirit	286
66.	Prayer: Communicating with God.....	291
67.	Grow in Grace.....	299
68.	Tools to Conquer Worry, Fear, Depression.....	304
69.	ABCs of Life's Foundations	307
70.	Great Christians' Inspiring Lives. The Challenge of Missionaries.....	309
71.	What is Love?	321
72.	Guidance: How to Find the Will of God	324
73.	Twelve Tongue Tamers.....	326
74.	49 Character Qualities.....	327
75.	God's Faithfulness in Trials and Testings	331
76.	Eighteen Devices Satan Uses Against Us	334
77.	Nine Issues that Concern Young People	337
78.	Barriers to Obedience.....	344
79.	Stairway to Hell	345
80.	How to be Wise.....	350
81.	How to Have Joy.....	352
82.	How to Increase our Faith	355
83.	How to Understand Adversity.....	358
84.	Stable Homes Produce Happy Children	362
85.	Scripture Swords for Personal Battles	368
86.	Bible Keys for a Happy Marriage	369
87.	Reasons to Obey God.....	370
88.	Principles of Spiritual Growth.....	375
89.	Fourteen Mystery Doctrines of the New Testament.....	382
90.	Tithing.....	384

False Doctrines Refuted

91.	Good Works or Keeping the Law does not Save us.....	387
92.	Evolution: Evidence of Creation in 6 Days	391
93.	Loss of Salvation: Jesus Christ Keeps us Saved Forever	433
94.	A Closer Study of Passages Used to Teach Loss of Salvation	437
95.	Humanism: Wrong Values Taught in School, Media and Society	451
96.	Baptismal Regeneration	455
97.	Soul Sleep: Error of Soul Sleep	462
98.	‘Christian’ Rock Music: What’s Wrong with ‘Christian’ Rock Music?	467
99.	Charismatic Movement: Old Testament Background of Tongues	476
100.	Why Prophecy, Tongues and Knowledge Ceased in the First Century	482
101.	Errors of the Charismatic Movement	501
102.	I Corinthians 12.....	520
103.	27 Reasons Why Christians Should Not Seek Tongues	539
104.	Modern Bible Versions: Serious Omissions in the NIV Bible	544
105.	Questions to ask Modern Bible Version Users	568
106.	New Evangelical Errors: Separation from New Evangelical Errors	570
107.	Calvinism: Table of Contents. 38 Questions to Ask Calvinists	604, 607
	Refuting 5 Point Calvinism	609
108.	Summary and Review.....	679
109.	Replacement Theology: God has not Cast Away His People Israel	697

False Religions

110.	Roman Catholic Church	707
111.	Seventh Day Adventism: Errors of SDAs	735
112.	Why it is Right for Christians to Meet on Sunday, not Saturday.....	737
113.	Seventh Day Adventism Refuted	745
114.	Mormonism: Errors of Mormonism.....	793
115.	120 OT Passages Referring to Jehovah, Quoted and Applied to Christ in the NT	811
116.	What You Will Not Be Told At the Door by Jehovah’s Witnesses	821
117.	Jehovah’s Witnesses and the Watchtower.....	822
118.	Judaism: 10 Proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah	948
119.	Islam: Jesus Greater than Mohammed.....	951
120.	Main <u>Quotes</u> in the Koran	953
121.	Main <u>Topics</u> in the Koran	973
122.	Why Nobody should Become a Muslim	993
123.	Islam—A Case of Mistaken Identity	994

148 Important Sermons

124.	Principles of Bible Interpretation	1039
125.	How to Prepare Sermons and Messages.....	1052
126.	Earth, Heaven and Hell	1054
127.	Six Responses to the Spiritual War	1055
128.	T.R.A.S.H. – Errors of the Charismatic Movement	1056
129.	Four Calls for Personal Soul Winning.....	1057
130.	Things the Lord Knows About Us	1057
131.	Things to do in Your Youth	1058
132.	When to Keep Your Mouth Shut.....	1059
133.	Six Little Words.....	1061
134.	Stages in Physical Creation Illustrating Stages in Salvation	1062
135.	What is Your Life?.....	1064
136.	How Can we Glorify God?.....	1065
137.	Symbols of God’s Word.....	1066
138.	What Sort of Mind Have You?	1068

139.	What is Legalism?.....	1071
140.	The Remembrance of the Lord Jesus	1074
141.	I Stir up Your Pure Minds by Way of Remembrance	1076
142.	Love Not the World	1077
143.	Debtor to the Past, Present and Future	1079
144.	I Am Ready	1081
145.	The Way of the Soul Winner.....	1083
146.	Behold I Have Graven Thee Upon the Palms of My Hands.....	1084
147.	God Brings Prosperity out of Adversity	1085
148.	Joseph: a Type of Christ.....	1086
149.	Christ: a Prophet Like Unto Moses	1087
150.	How to Get a Concern for Winning Lost People to Christ	1088
151.	5 Questionable Issues.....	1089
152.	Things God Has Given Us	1091
153.	How a Person is Like a Mule/Ass	1092
154.	Things to Learn	1093
155.	The Ways of an Angry Man	1095
156.	Philip and the Ethiopian Eunuch.....	1096
157.	Fathers: Train up Your Children	1100
158.	Three Kinds of Christians: Gaius, Diotrefes, Demetrius	1103
159.	Good Things We Should Seek	1104
160.	Stephen.....	1105
161.	Priscilla and Aquilla – Model Christian Workers.....	1106
162.	Seven Bible Valleys	1107
163.	The Lord Is My Shepherd	1109
164.	What a Spiritual Man Does	1110
165.	Son, Go Work Today in My Vineyard	1111
166.	The Fear of God.....	1115
167.	We Ought to.....	1117
168.	Making Right Choices.....	1119
169.	The Two Resurrections	1121
170.	Three Trees Israel is Like.....	1122
171.	Purity.....	1123
172.	Take Heed or Ignore?.....	1124
173.	Take or Neglect?	1124
174.	The Ten Gates of Jerusalem	1125
175.	Ten Names and Their Meanings	1127
176.	The Nature of God: What is God Like?	1129
177.	The Lord’s Prayer	1131
178.	Daily Dozen	1134
179.	The Precious Blood of Christ.....	1135
180.	Temptation	1137
181.	What Sin Does to Us	1138
182.	Satan: The Accuser of the Brethren	1139
183.	What Pleases God	1140
184.	The Snare of the Fowler	1142
185.	Four Wise Little Preachers.....	1145
186.	Simple Things of the Christian Life	1145
187.	Are You a Comforter?	1146
188.	Behold My Hands	1147
189.	Ask Now the Beasts and They Shall Teach Thee.....	1148
190.	God is Able to	1149

191.	How Will God Summarize Your Life?	1150
192.	People Christ Commended.....	1150
193.	Things That Deceive People	1151
194.	Twelve Things a Pastor Must Do.....	1151
195.	How We Should Treat God’s Word.....	1152
196.	Reasons for Reading God’s Word.....	1152
197.	Satan’s Priority for the Christian is to Destroy Him.....	1153
198.	20 Objectives to Raise Godly Children	1153
199.	Four Things We Should Know About Hell	1154
200.	What Kinds of Hands do you Have?	1154
201.	‘Let Us’ in Hebrews	1154
202.	How to Become a Mature Person.....	1155
203.	Are You Increasing?	1156
204.	Four Great Mistakes in the Book of Job.....	1156
205.	Motives for Serving Christ.....	1157
206.	The Glory of the Christian Life.....	1157
207.	Things Jesus Christ will Give to Overcoming Believers	1157
208.	How to Encourage Yourself.....	1158
209.	Those Who Wrongly Separated Fellowship.....	1158
210.	Ten Visions of Christ	1158
211.	Where There is No Vision, the People Perish	1158
212.	Baptism	1159
213.	Who is Able to Stand Before Envy?	1159
214.	Invitations of Christ	1160
215.	Revival Formula Under King Hezekiah	1160
216.	How to Destroy Your Life	1160
217.	Andrew – the Introducer	1160
218.	What are the Marks of a Good Christian?	1161
219.	Bible Characters Who Did Not Appreciate Their Privileges.....	1161
220.	What are You Looking at?.....	1161
221.	What Shall Be the End of These Things?.....	1162
222.	What Profit is it that we have Kept His Ordinance?.....	1162
223.	Are You Warring a Good Warfare?	1162
224.	The True Prophet Micaiah	1163
225.	Seven Giants David Conquered	1163
226.	Great Things of the Christian Life	1163
227.	Finish Your Life’s Work.....	1163
228.	Things Jesus Taught in 40 Days from His Resurrection to His Ascension	1164
229.	False Things	1164
230.	Truths for Labourers in God’s Work.....	1164
231.	What Will Ye do in the Day of Visitation?	1165
232.	What do You Lack?	1165
233.	Responses of Believers towards Satan	1165
234.	How to Treat Yourself	1166
235.	Why Jesus Christ Came into the World	1166
236.	Profitable Things.....	1167
237.	Sound Things	1167
238.	What Treasures are You Seeking?	1167
239.	How Believers May Lose Their Sight.....	1167
240.	The Work of God is Great in a Local Church because.....	1168
241.	How Should We Live?	1168
242.	Fire in the Bible.....	1168

243.	Six Rich Men	1168
244.	What Do We Need to be Taught?	1169
245.	What are God’s Teachers?	1169
246.	Different People’s Responses to Christ’s First Coming	1169
247.	The Power of Example	1170
248.	How are We To Grow?	1170
249.	God of the Second Chance	1171
250.	Things We Must Prove.....	1171
251.	What Do We Rejoice in the Lord About?	1171
252.	How the Christian Race is Like the Olympic Games	1172
253.	Things to do First	1173
254.	Vain Things.....	1173
255.	How the Spiritual War is Like a Military War	1173
256.	Our Heavenly Father as the Ideal Father.....	1175
257.	What are You Full of?.....	1177
258.	The Greatest Statement Ever Made.....	1177
259.	Benefits of Homeschooling: Why Do State School Teens Rebel?	1178
260.	The Gospel in the Stars	1182
261.	Riches From The Rent	1194
262.	Jewish Marriage Customs Show The Events of Christ’s Return	1196
263.	Ecclesiastes: Solomon’s Search For Meaning in Life	1198
264.	Jesus Christ’s 7 Sayings on the Cross	1201
265.	Samson.....	1204
266.	Seven Names of God.....	1206
267.	Tempting God Ten Times	1216
268.	The Good Samaritan – What Sin Does To Us.....	1219
269.	The 12 Sons of Jacob	1223
270.	The Resurrection of Jesus Christ.....	1226
271.	The Secret to Real Happiness.....	1246
272.	Evidence of Jesus Christ’s Death, Resurrection and 3 Hours Darkness.....	1247
273.	First Century Writers Quote Every New Testament book (except 3 John)	1255
274.	The Trinity of the Godhead seen in Nature.....	1256
275.	11 Old Testament Prophets Teach that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God 16 times	1257

How To Use This Book. This book is written to help Christians better understand and teach God’s Word to a world that is ignorant of God’s ways. It may be used in the following situations:

1. As a source of Sermons and Mid-week Bible studies for preachers.
2. For Sunday School lessons and follow-up Bible studies with new Christians.
3. For Bible College curriculum. To encourage Pastors to start Bible Colleges in their Churches.
4. For people to read chapters of interest to them. To give to those enquiring about Christianity.
5. To explain difficult Bible passages. To refute false religions and false doctrines.
6. To give to new Christians so they can catch up on Bible truths that normally take years to learn.
7. To assist Pastors and workers to spread Bible Doctrines more widely and quickly.
8. To start more Churches and Bible Colleges in Africa, China, Europe, America, Australia and Asia.
9. To rapidly multiply disciples world-wide, by equipping Christians with a tool to “teach others also”.
10. To rescue Christians from errors such as Charismatics, Calvinism, New Evangelicalism, Evolution and Modern Versions. To prevent church splits over false doctrines.
11. To provide a “Pastor/Bible Teacher” in written form to Churches and Christians without a Pastor.

“Speak thou the things that become sound doctrine”. (Titus 2:1). “Set in order the things that are wanting”. Titus 1:5
“Continued steadfastly in the Apostles’ doctrine.” (Acts 2:42). “Preach the Word ... Reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine, for the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine”. (2 Timothy 4:2,3).
May all who read this book say with John, “I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth” (3 John 4) and to understand Jesus Christ’s words, “Ye shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.” (John 8:33).

How to obtain copies of this book: Email: piperkeith@yahoo.com.au. www.keithpiper.org
Write to Keith Piper at PO Box 188, Cherrybrook, NSW, Australia, 2126. Phone: 61-2-98754321 (Int)

1. PROOF OF CHRIST AND THE BIBLE

Every religion in the world says that they are right and other religions are wrong. How do we know which one is right? Most people have asked this question at some time. Just because you are born into a certain religion does not prove that religion to be the right one, even though you may want it to be. The rightness of any religion is determined by the **credentials of its founder** and by the **evidence of divine inspiration of its textbook**. Try to put aside any previously held ideas as we study the unique credentials of Jesus Christ and of the Bible. Ask yourself if any other religions match these claims.

Let us summarise the credentials of Christ and the Bible as follows:

1. Jesus Christ claimed to be God, the Truth and the only Way to eternal life because:

- i) Many details of His life were **predicted** in the Old Testament, many years before his birth.
- ii) He did many supernatural **miracles** during His three year ministry, showing his power to:
 - raise the dead
 - still storms
 - correctly predict the future
 - cast out demons from people
 - heal the sick
- iii) He **rose** from the dead after three days, never to die again. Nobody else has ever done this. This shows that those people who have Jesus Christ as their Saviour will rise from the dead also. He was seen by hundreds of people daily after His resurrection (I Corinthians 15:5-8).
- iv) He **solves the sin problem** by dying on the cross as our substitute to pay the penalty for our sins. Other religions say “be good, do your best, keep the rules, and you might make it, but you can never be sure, so keep trying hard”. Christ says, “Receive me as your Saviour, and I give to you eternal life, and you shall never perish” (John 10:28), because I have taken the punishment due for your sins. You may know that you have eternal life (1 John 5:13).
- v) Jesus Christ **claimed to be God** and had the credentials to prove it.
- vi) Jesus Christ's life when scrutinised shows Him to be **sinless** as He claimed. No other religious founder claimed to be God or to be sinless. Other religions just have nice teachings.

2. The Bible is the Word of God for these reasons:

- i) Its Unity.
- ii) Scientific accuracy.
- iii) Archaeology
- iv) Fulfilled prophecies.
- v) Jesus Christ called it the Word of God (John 10:35; Mark 7:13; Luke 8:11 “seed is the..”).
- vi) It has **infinitely superior teachings** over any other book.
 - The Bible has in it nothing but truth, while all other books have truth mixed with error, like jewels mixed with mud
 - The Bible contains all truth. Every proven moral truth is found in the Bible.
 - The Bible contains more truth than all other books put together.
- vii) Its victory over attack, and its **survival** for over 2000 years.
- viii) The **character** of those who accept and those who reject the Bible.
 - The people best acquainted with God, and who live the most unselfish, moral lives, say that the Bible is God's book.
 - The people least acquainted with God, and who live more for self, say that the Bible is not God's word. Who will you believe? The stronghold of the Bible is the pure, unselfish happy home. The stronghold of unbelief is the pub, brothel, and the casino.
- ix) The **influence** of the Bible to save, purify, gladden, beautify and lift men's lives up to God. The Bible has transformed millions of the worst sinners into humble, loving, unselfish, and caring saints.
- x) The **inexhaustible depth** of the Bible. Most man-written books can be thoroughly understood and mastered in one or two readings. You can read the Bible over 100 times and still discover new, fresh, exciting and amazing truths. It comes from the mind of God.

PROOF OF THE BIBLE TO BE THE WORD OF GOD.

Let us examine proof of the Bible from the viewpoints of unity, science, archaeology and prophecy. Our faith and understanding of God's Word can be greatly increased by studying Bible proofs available to us. This helps us to defend the faith and give good reasons to those who ask us why we believe in Christ and the Bible. (I Peter 3:15).

1. UNITY

The Bible was given by God to 40 writers, over a period of 1600 years, in 66 books. It contains history, prophecy, science, law, doctrine, morality, origins and human biographies, yet never do we see even the slightest disagreement between the writers on any subject. If you ask 40 of your friends to discuss their opinions on the past, the future, morality, origins, law, philosophy, etc. you will find a very great disagreement and difference of opinion. The Bible, however, agrees 100% on every subject it discusses, giving strong proof that it comes from the mind of God.

2. FULFILLED PROPHECY as proof of the Bible.

PROPHECY FULFILLED OF NATIONS, CITIES and INDIVIDUALS.

Aim: To study Bible prophecies as proof of God authoring the Bible.

Introduction: "Show the things that are to come hereafter that we may know that ye are gods..." Isaiah 41:23.

Here **God challenges all other religions** claiming to be the truth to prove that they are from God by predicting the future. Nobody can correctly predict the future on every guess. The Bible is the only book in the world that correctly predicts the future hundreds of times, without making any mistakes. No other book does this. The Buddhist, Hindu, Muslim writings contain no cases of clearly fulfilled prophecies. This proves that they are not from God. Any man can write a book with moral teachings. Only God can write a book that always correctly foretells the future, as the Bible does.

Four tests to prove that a prophecy is from God:

i) His message had to be **according to God and His Word.**

"If they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them." Isaiah 8:20.

ii) His prediction **must come true.** "If the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the Lord has not spoken .." Deuteronomy 18:22.

iii) Was the prophecy **far enough** before the predicted event to exclude chances of human guesswork?

iv) Is the prediction **ambiguous, vague** or capable of **several explanations**?

What is the significance of predictive prophecy?

i) It proves God's existence, as the mind behind the Bible.

ii) It proves that the Bible is God's inspired word, without error.

iii) It proves that Jesus Christ is God, whom the Old Testament predicts.

iv) It proves all other Bible doctrines to be true, giving us a strong foundation to base our life on.

The true prophet presents a message of conviction and **repentance**, calling the people to **obedience** and **righteousness**.

Consider the following examples of fulfilled Bible prophecies under the headings of Nations, Cities and Individuals.

I. NATIONS.

Consider the following 44 correct predictions concerning **Israel, Edom, Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome** and **Egypt** as proof of God authoring the Bible.

1. ISRAEL.

Date Prophecy Made	Date Prophecy Fulfilled	Prophecy
2000 BC	1948 AD	Israel would become a great nation . "I will make of thee a great nation." Genesis 12:1-3.
992 BC	975 BC	Israel would split into 10 tribes and 2 tribes . "I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give 10 tribes to thee (Jeroboam)". I Kings 11:31.
607 BC	536 BC	Israel would be captive in Babylon for 70 years . Jer. 25:11-14. "These nations shall serve the King of Babylon seventy years."
1451 BC	70 AD	Israel would be scattered among the nations of the world. "The Lord shall scatter thee from one end of the earth to the other." Deuteronomy 28:64. This was fulfilled in 70 AD when Titus the Roman General destroyed Jerusalem, killing one million Jews, and taking 100,000 Israelites as slaves.
1451 BC	100 AD	Israel would become a byword among all nations . "Thou shalt become an astonishment, a proverb, and a byword, among all nations where the Lord shall lead thee." Deuteronomy 28:37. People refer to someone who holds his money tightly as a Jew.
1451 BC	70 AD 1939 AD	Israel would be persecuted among the nations . Hitler killed six million Jews in World War II. "Thy life shall hang in doubt before thee, and thou shalt fear day and night, and shalt have none assurance of thy life." Deuteronomy 28:66.
1491 BC 607 BC	2004 AD	Israel would not be completely destroyed , but retain her identity. "I will not destroy them utterly...." Leviticus 26:44. "I will not make a full end of thee". Jeremiah 46:28.
712 BC	33 AD	Israel would reject her Messiah . "He was despised and rejected of men; we esteemed him not." Isaiah 53:3.
538 BC	33 AD	Israel would kill her Messiah . "...shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself." Daniel 9:26.
538 BC	70 AD	Israel's city of Jerusalem and the Temple will be destroyed just after Israel rejects her Messiah. "The people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary." Daniel 9:26.
587 BC	1948 AD	Israel would return to Palestine in the latter years just before Christ's Second Coming. Ezekiel 37:11-14; 38:1-39:29. "I will gather you out of all countries, and bring you into your own land. Then will I sprinkle clean water on you " Ezekiel 36:24,25.
714 BC	1967 AD	Israel will be militarily superior to Egypt . "The land of Judah shall be a terror to the land of Egypt." Isaiah 19:17.

2. EDOM and its capital city, Petra.

Esau, Jacob's brother founded Edom in 1800 BC (Genesis 36:8). 350 years later in 1450 BC Edom refused to help Israel pass through her land (Numbers 20). Edom delighted in persecuting Israel. Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Joel, Amos and Obadiah condemned Edom. Petra was Edom's strongly fortified capital built into a rock cliff, accessible only by a very narrow entrance. This made them feel invincible. Mohammed captured Petra in 636 AD. It then became desolate. These events are prophesied for Edom.

Date	Prophecy
------	----------

713 BC	Edom to become a desolation . "Thorns shall come up in her palaces" Isaiah 34:13
--------	---

713 BC	Wild animals will inhabit Edom. "It shall be a habitation of dragons" Is.34:13-15
--------	--

713 BC	Commerce will cease in Edom 'None shall pass through it for ever.' Isaiah 34:10
--------	--

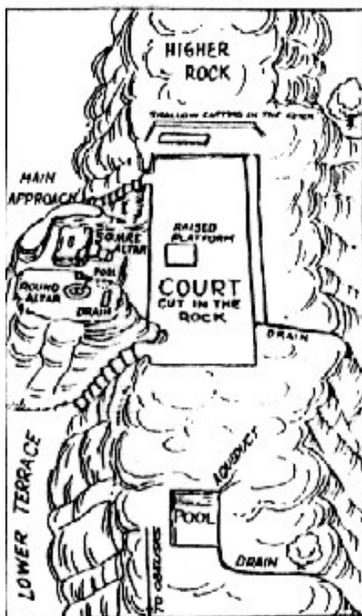
600 BC	Spectators will be astounded in Petra. "Edom shall be a desolation: every one that goes by it shall be astonished." Jeremiah 49:17.
--------	--

600 BC	Never to be populated again. "No man shall abide there." Jeremiah 49:18.
--------	---

590 BC	Israel would conquer Edom. "I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel." Ezekiel 25:14. This seemed a crazy prediction because Israel was then captive in Babylon, yet 400 years later Judas Maccabeus invaded and killed thousands of Edomites.
--------	--

587 BC	Edom to have a bloody history . "Blood shall pursue thee." Ezekiel 35:6.
--------	---

590 BC	Edom to become desolate as far as the city of Teman . "I will make it desolate from Teman." Ezekiel 25:13.
--------	--



The Great High Place at Petra

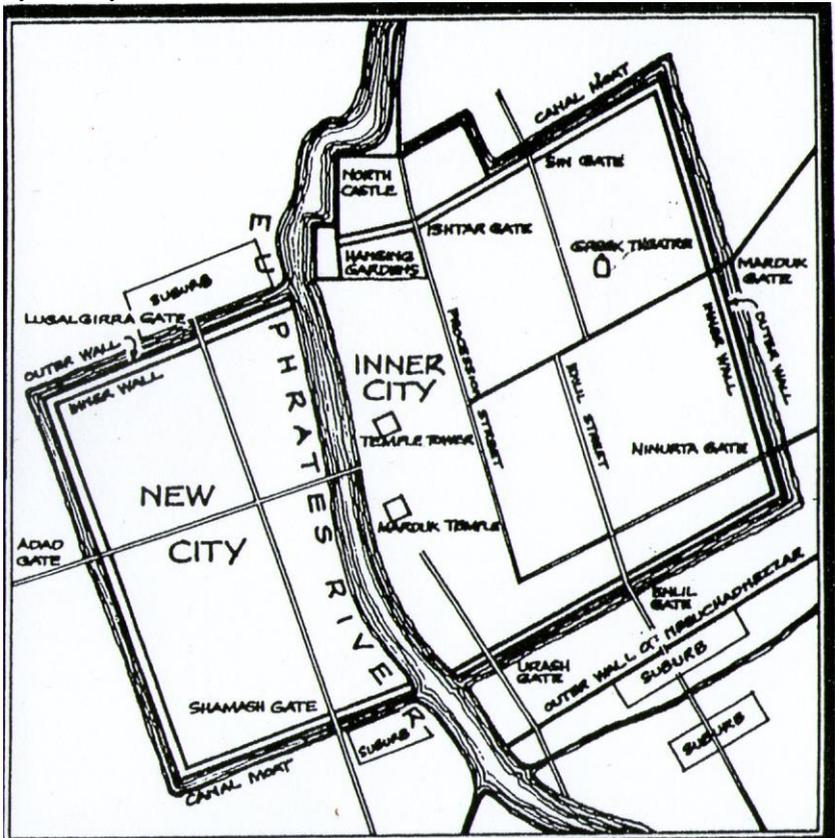
3. BABYLON

Babylon was the capital of the ancient world. It was a centre of trade, learning and culture. Babylon had four walls each 14 miles long, covering 196 square miles, surrounded by a 30 foot wide moat. The walls were 311 feet high, 87 feet wide, with 100 gates of solid brass. 250 watchtowers extended 100 feet higher than the walls. While the Babylonians were holding a drunken feast, Cyrus the Persian had diverted the Euphrates river away from its course underneath the walls of Babylon, and marched his troops along the dry riverbed. He then took the city in 536 BC.

Xerxes later plundered Babylon, as did Alexander the Great's troops. Trajan the Roman Emperor visited Babylon in 116 AD describing it as "mounds and legends of mounds." Layard writes of Babylon: "No Arab tents, no sheepfolds, and overrun by desert animals." Consider the following fulfilled prophecies concerning Babylon:

- i) These prophecies were given in 713 BC: Babylon will be **like Sodom and Gomorrah**. "Babylon shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah." Isaiah 13:19.
- ii) The **Medes and Persians** would conquer Babylon (536 BC). Isaiah 13:17; 45:1-4.
- iii) Babylon shall **never be inhabited**. Isaiah 13:20.
- iv) **Arab tents** will **not** be pitched there. Isaiah 13:20.
- v) **Sheepfolds** will **not** be there. Isaiah 13:20.
- vi) **Desert creatures** will infest the ruins. Isaiah 13:21.
- vii) Babylon will be covered with **swamps of water**. Isaiah 14:23.

Part of Babylon today lies under silt and under the water table.



4. **MEDO-PERSIA.** Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22. These prophecies were given in 553BC. God tells Daniel of a series of battles that would occur 220 years later between Medo-Persia and Greece. **Alexander the Great** of Greece, pictured by a **He-goat** with a great horn (Alexander himself) severely crushes **Darius III** army of Medo-Persia (pictured by a **ram** with two horns). This occurred in three battles: Granicus (334BC), Issus (333BC) and Guagamela (331BC) which took place beside a river.
- "**The ram** having two horns are the kings of **Media and Persia.**" Daniel 8:20.
- "**The rough goat** is the king of **Grecia**, and the great horn that is between his eyes is the **first king.**" (Alexander). Daniel 8:21.
- Notice the following aspects of this prophecy:
- The **Ram** (Medio-Persia) pushes west, north, south. Daniel 8:4.
This prediction defines the area of influence of Medo-Persia from 536-330BC.
 - One horn (**Persia**) was higher or stronger than the other (Medes). Daniel 8:3.
History proved Persia to be the stronger partner in the alliance.
 - The **He-goat** (Greece) came from the West. Daniel 8:5.
Greece is west of Medo-Persia.
 - The **He-goat** (Greece) crushed the Ram (Medo-Persia).
"He smote the ram, and brake his two horns." Daniel 8:6,7.
 - The battle took place at a river. "He came to the ram which had two horns, which I had seen standing before the river ..." Daniel 8:6.
5. **GREECE.** Daniel 8:8,21,22.
- These events were prophesied in 553BC and fulfilled in 331BC, 222 years later.
- Notice these further accurate predictions:
- Alexander, after conquering Medo-Persia, went on to conquer all the ancient world across to India.
"The he-goat waxed **very great.**" Daniel 8:8,22.
 - Alexander, at the age of 32 drank himself to **death** at the peak of his strength.
"When he was strong, the great horn was **broken.**" Daniel 8:22.
 - After Alexander's death, the Greek empire was divided into four smaller powers, each ruled by one of his Generals.
"Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, **four kingdoms** shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power." Daniel 8:8,22.
The four empires into which Alexander's empire was divided were Greece, Asia Minor, Syria and Egypt.
 - Alexander's kingdom was not given to his children but to his generals.
"A mighty king shall stand up.....his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided to the four winds of heaven, and not to his posterity..." Daniel 11:3,4.
6. **ROME .** Daniel 2:40,41.
- "The fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron it shall break in pieces and bruise the kingdom shall be divided." Daniel 2:40,41.
- Notice the following prophecies about Rome:
- Rome, the fourth kingdom was as strong as iron. Rome ruled from England to Babylon, bringing peace, roads and strong government like an iron rule.
 - Rome was the Empire ruling when Jesus Christ the **Messiah** first came,
"shall **Messiah** be cut off.....and the **people** (Romans)....." Daniel 9:26.
 - Rome destroyed Jerusalem and the Jewish Temple in 70AD.
".....shall Messiah be cut off..... and the **people** (Romans) of the **prince that shall come** (Antichrist) shall destroy the **city** (Jerusalem) and the **sanctuary** (Temple)." Daniel 9:26.
 - Rome was divided in **395AD** into the Western Empire ruled by Rome, and the Eastern Empire ruled by Byzantine (or Constantinople), pictured by the two legs of the image in Daniel 2. "The kingdom shall be divided." Daniel 2:41.

7. **EGYPT.** Ezekiel 29:1-15.

God promised that he would punish Pharaoh of Egypt because he claimed to be a god and to have created the Nile river. "Thus saith the Lord God: Behold I am against thee, Pharaoh king of Egypt which hath said: 'My river is mine own, and I have made it for myself.'" Ezekiel 29:2,9.

Notice these predictions that God made concerning Egypt

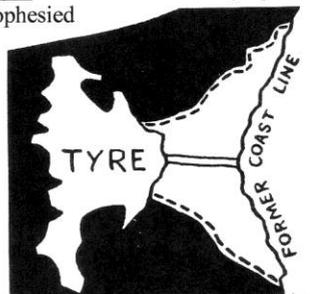
- i) Egypt would **not be inhabited for 40 years** but would be **desolate**.
"I will make Egypt utterly waste and desolate from the tower of Syene to the border of Ethiopia Neither shall it be inhabited **forty years**." Ezekiel 29:10-12. This prediction was made in 588 BC. In 579 BC, Nebuchadnezzar conquered Egypt then deported the Egyptians to other nations from 576 BC until they returned in 536 BC.
- ii) Egyptians would **return to Egypt after 40 years**. "Egypt...shall be desolate **forty years**." 12
"Neither shall it be inhabited **forty years**." v.11.
"At the end of **forty years** will I gather the Egyptians from the people where they were scattered & will cause them to return to the land of Pathros (South Egypt)" Ezekiel 29:13,14
- iii) Egypt will be a **base kingdom**: "they shall be there a base kingdom." (Ezekiel 29:14) Egypt has been a base kingdom ever since 536 BC.
- iv) Egypt will be **afraid of Israel**. This is true today ever since Israel defeated Egypt in the six-day war in 1967. "The land of Judah shall be a terror to Egypt." Isaiah 19:17.

II. **CITIES.** Four main cities have 30 detailed prophetic predictions given about them:

1. **TYRE.** Destruction of TYRE was foretold in Ezekiel 26:1-14 in 590 BC.

Ezekiel 26 contains six prophecies for Tyre that have been fulfilled. If Ezekiel had looked at Tyre in his day and made these predictions in human wisdom, there would have been only one chance in 75,000,000 of them all coming true.

- i) **Nebuchadnezzar will destroy the mainland city of Tyre.** 26:7-11. "I will bring upon Tyrus Nebuchadnezzar King of Babylon." (27:7). This was prophesied in 590 BC. Nebuchadnezzar laid siege to Tyre four years after the prophecy was made. After a 13 year siege (586-573 BC), Nebuchadnezzar broke the gates down. He found the city empty. The people had fled to a 140 acre island 800 metres off the coast & fortified a city there. The mainland city was destroyed in 573 BC as foretold, but the island city of Tyre still remained.



- ii) "I will cause **many nations to come against thee**.....as waves." Ezekiel 26:3. Invaders who attacked Tyre were Nebuchadnezzar, Alexander, Moslems and Crusaders.
- iii) "I will **scrape her dust from her** like the **top of a rock**." 26:4.
When island Tyre refused to submit to Alexander, he demolished the old city on the mainland. He scraped the debris of the old city off the ground, pushing it into the water. He thus built a causeway 60 metres wide by 800 metres long out to the island of Tyre, where he laid siege to it, conquered it, and destroyed the island city in 332 BC, fulfilling a 258 year old prophecy. The **causeway** still remains and old Tyre is as **flat as a rock**.
- iv) Fishermen today **spread their nets over the site**." Ezekiel 26:5,14.
Fishermen today dry their nets on the rocks of old mainland Tyre.
- v) "They shall **throw the city debris into the water**." When Alexander's engineers built the causeway, they laid the stone, timber and dust remains of old Tyre into the water. Ezek. 26:12.
- vi) The city will **never be rebuilt**. "Thou shalt be built no more." 26:14. Old Tyre has been bare for 2500 years, even though 10 million gallons of fresh water supply the site daily. It has not been rebuilt. Recently, the modern city up the coast began to spread threatening to build on top of old abandoned Tyre. So in 2006, UNESCO placed a "Heritage Alert" on old Tyre. No one lives there today, just as God said.

2. JERUSALEM

Jesus Christ made the following predictions about Jerusalem:

- i) **Not one stone of Herod's temple would be left standing on another.** "There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down." Matthew 24:1,2. The Roman army finally in September 70 AD stormed the walls of Jerusalem through the Antonia fortress. According to Josephus, they killed one million Jews and took 100,000 Jews captive as slaves. A soldier dropped a torch in the Temple setting it on fire. This melted the gold in the Temple, which flowed into the cracks in the Temple foundations. The Romans dug up the Temple's foundations thus destroying the Temple. The Roman soldiers fulfilled Christ's prophecy of not one stone of the Temple being left standing on another.
- ii) Jerusalem would be **surrounded by armies in a siege.** "When ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh." Luke 21:20.
- iii) The **only way of safety was to flee Jerusalem when you see the armies.**
"Then let them which are in Judea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out, and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto." Luke 21:21. The Roman army surrounded Jerusalem for five days and its troops battered at the walls. Had not Luke in 53AD recorded Jesus' warning to leave Jerusalem when armies surrounded it? How could they escape if armies were all around the walls? Josephus the historian writes that "The Roman army retired from the city, without any reason in the world." Josephus continues: "The Jews were greatly encouraged by this, but many of the most eminent Jews then left the city." Hegessippus, another historian tells us that those leaving were Christians who knew Christ's command to flee in Luke 21:20,21. This proves that Luke wrote well before 66AD when the Roman army first came.
- iv) Many Jews in Jerusalem would be **killed by the sword.** Luke 21:24. "And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations".
- v) Many Jews would be **led away captive into all nations.** Luke 21:24.
- vi) In the starvation of the siege **women ate their children.**
"He shall besiege thee thou shalt eat the fruit of thine own body, the flesh of thy sons and of thy daughters in the siege." Deuteronomy 28:52,57.
- vii) Jerusalem would be **under Gentile control until Christ returns.** "Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled." Luke 21:24. This occurred 40 years after it was predicted, when Titus the Roman General conquered Jerusalem in 70AD. Jerusalem has been under Gentile (non Jewish) control since 70AD as prophesied by Jesus Christ.
- viii) **Jerusalem shall be plowed as a field.** In 135AD the Jews rebelled against Rome again. Hadrian the Roman General, in a three-and-a-half year war killed 580,000 Jews and ran a plough over Jerusalem, thus fulfilling Micah's prophecy written in 730BC. "Therefore shall Zion for your sakes be plowed as a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps." Micah 3:12.
- ix) **Jews will return to Jerusalem in the end days.** We all know that the Jews occupy part of Jerusalem and Israel today since 1948. "I will gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land." (Ezekiel 36:24). God predicts that Jerusalem in the end days, being occupied by Jews, will be invaded by all nation's armies. Jesus Christ will then return to rescue the Jews, defeat the invading armies, and rule on earth in peace for 1000 years. "I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle" Zechariah 14:1-4.
- x) **Jerusalem's East Gate will be Shut.** Today if you visit Jerusalem's East Gate, you will notice that it is completely bricked up. Jesus Christ, Who is the God of Israel, entered it on a donkey on His way to be crucified. Ezekiel wrote: "Then he brought me back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looketh toward the east and it was shut. Then the LORD (*Jehovah the Father*) said unto me: 'this gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the LORD (*Jehovah the Son*), the God of Israel, hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." Ezekiel 44:1,2.

xi) Jerusalem will be a **burdensome stone for all people**.

"In that day I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people." (Zechariah 12:3).

This prophecy has been fulfilled today because the Palestinian Muslim Arab conflict with Israel over Jerusalem is a very difficult problem to solve.

3. **JERICHO.**

Predicted in Joshua 6:26 (1451BC), and fulfilled in I Kings 16:34 (925BC). After the destruction of Jericho in Joshua's time, 1451BC, Joshua makes an amazing threefold prophecy about Jericho: "Cursed be the man that builds this city Jericho: he shall lay the **foundation** thereof in his **firstborn**, and in his **youngest son** shall he set up the **gates** of it." Joshua 6:26.

i) Jericho would be **rebuilt** by a man with at least two sons.

ii) The builder's **oldest son** would **die** when the city **foundations** were laid.

iii) The builder's **youngest son** would **die** when the city and its **gates** were finished.

I Kings 16:34 records that this prophecy was fulfilled in Hiel the Bethelite. No one would intend to fulfil this prophecy.

"In his (Ahab's) days did **Hiel the Bethelite** build Jericho: he laid the foundation in **Abiram** his firstborn, and set up the gates in his youngest son **Segub** according to the Word of the Lord which he spake by Joshua."

Unger writes: "The rebuilding of Jericho is confirmed by archaeological diggings there are no occupational levels from Joshua's time to Ahab's era, when small ruins from the 10th century BC point to Hiel's rebuilding the site." [*Ungers Bible Handbook, p.220*]

4. **NINEVEH.**

Predicted in Nahum (713BC) and fulfilled in 614BC.

God spared wicked Nineveh in 862BC at Jonah's preaching. At this time, archaeology reveals a change occurred from worshipping many gods to worshipping one god, called Nebo, the son in the Babylonian trinity.

Nineveh's wall was 100 feet tall, 50 feet thick, with 15 gates and 1200 towers each 200 feet high. Nineveh was 60 miles in circumference, with a 150 foot wide moat around it. Nahum in 3:8 writes just after Thebes (No) in Egypt was destroyed by King Ashurbanipal of Assyria in 663BC. Nineveh was destroyed in 612BC with ease after a three month siege. It fell like "first ripe figs falling if shaken." (3:12). Three times Nahum predicts that Nineveh will be destroyed with a flood:

1:8 "overrunning flood"

2:6 "gates of rivers"

2:8 "like a pool of water".

In 613BC the Assyrian army was away fighting Babylon, when heavy rains swelled the Euphrates River, flooding part of Nineveh and casting down four kilometres of wall length.

The King, believing an ancient prophecy of the river becoming their enemy, panicked and ordered he and his palace to be burned down. Babylonians, Medes and Scythians attacked through this four kilometre gap, thus conquering Nineveh in 612BC. Twelve predictions about the destruction of Nineveh are given in Nahum 1-3.

Nahum's Prophecies

1. The Assyrian fortresses around Nineveh would be easily captured. 3:12.
2. The besieged Ninevites would prepare bricks and mortar for emergency defence walls. 3:14.
3. The city gates would be destroyed. 3:13

Historical Fulfilments

- Babylonian records state that the fortified towns around Nineveh began to fall in 614BC.
- To the south of the gate, the moat is still filled with stone and mud bricks from the walls, heaped up when they were breached.
- The main attack came on the north-west gate

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. In the final hours of the attack, the Ninevites would be drunk. 1:10; 3:11 | Siculus (20BC) wrote: "The Assyrian king gave much wine to his soldiers. Deserters told this to the enemy, who attacked that night." |
| 5. Ninevites would be destroyed by a flood . 1:8; 2:6,8. | Diodorus: "In the third year of the siege heavy rains caused the river to flood part of the city and break part of the walls." |
| 6. Nineveh would be destroyed by fire . 1:10; 2:13; 3:15,13 | The temple was burned as seen by a two inch layer of ash. |
| 7. Many Ninevites would be massacred. 3:3. | So many were killed that the flowing stream became blood red for miles. |
| 8. Plundering would follow the overthrow of Nineveh. 2:9-10. | They carried off much spoil, beyond counting. |
| 9. Its people would try to escape. 2:8. | King Sardanapalus sent away his three sons and two daughters. |
| 10. Ninevite officers would weaken and flee. 3:17. | The Assyrian army deserted the King (Babylonian Chronicle). |
| 11. Nineveh's idols would be destroyed. 1:14. | The Ishtar goddess lay headless in Nineveh's ruins. |
| 12. Nineveh would never be rebuilt . 1:9,14. | Many cities were rebuilt, eg. Jerusalem, but not Nineveh. |

III. INDIVIDUALS.

The Bible makes detailed predictions about five main individuals. Two are mentioned by name: Josiah was predicted 350 years before he lived, and Cyrus King of Persia was predicted 175 years before he lived. How can such detailed predictions be made? God wrote the Bible, is the only possible answer.

1. **JOSIAH**, King of Judah was prophesied by name in 975BC by an unnamed man of God in I Kings 13:1-3 that he would **burn idolatrous priests' bones** on the altar at Bethel. "Behold, a child shall be born unto the house of David, **Josiah** by name; and upon thee (*the altar*) shall he offer the priests of the high places that burn incense upon thee, and men's bones shall be burnt upon thee." Those idolatrous priests burned incense on the same altar under evil King Jeroboam I of Israel.

350 years later in 624BC **Josiah**, a King of Judah, while cleansing Israel of pagan practices, broke down the altar and high place of King Jeroboam at Bethel. "Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchres that were in the mount, and sent, and took the bones out of the sepulchres, and **burned them upon the altar** and polluted it, according to the Word of the Lord, which the man of God proclaimed." II Kings 23:15,16.

The two main predictions here are that:

- i) **Josiah's name** is given 350 years before the event. I Kings 13:2.
- ii) Josiah's **action** of **burning** the false prophets' bones is given.

Question: What is the probability of guessing these 2 prophecies? How did the Bible know them?

2. **CYRUS**, King of Persia, was predicted by **name** and **action** in Isaiah 44:28-45:4 in 712BC, that he would conquer Babylon. "That saith of **Cyrus**. He is my shepherd, and shall perform all my pleasure: even saying to Jerusalem, thou shalt be built, and to the Temple, thy foundation shall be laid." Isaiah 44:28. "Thus saith the Lord to his anointed, to **Cyrus**, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him to open before him the two-leaved gates: and the gates shall not be shut." Isaiah 45:1.

Notice the following prophecies that have been fulfilled about Cyrus:

- i) **Cyrus** of Persia is named as the man who would conquer Babylon. Isaiah 45:1. This prophecy was made 176 years before the event occurred.
- ii) The **two leaved gates** of Babylon shall not be shut. According to Heroditus (1:191), the double gates of Babylon were carelessly left open during the night of revelry when the city was taken.
- iii) Cyrus gave permission for Jerusalem to be rebuilt and for the **Temple foundation to be laid**. II Chronicles 36:22,23; Ezra 1:1-4.
- iv) "I will give thee the **treasures of darkness** and the hidden riches of secret places." 45:3. God gave Cyrus possession of the treasures of darkness, which was the wealth of conquered nations. Valuables taken from nations were hidden in dark, secretly concealed, subterranean vaults. These prophecies given in 712BC were fulfilled in 536BC, 176 years later.

Question: What is the probability of guessing the exact name "Cyrus" of the man who would conquer Babylon?

Answer: It could not be guessed. This proves that the Bible is the Word of the all-knowing, all-powerful Creator/God.

3. **ALEXANDER THE GREAT**. Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22 and 11:1-4.

Although Daniel does not mention Alexander by name, he is clearly referred to in Daniel 8:21 as "the **great horn** that is between the He-goat's eyes is the **first king**," (Alexander). Alexander crushed the Persians at the Battle of Issus in 333BC. Josephus the historian who lived from 37 to 100AD, states that when Alexander approached Jerusalem to conquer it, he was met at the gates by Jaddua the High Priest who showed him in Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22 that he as the first king of the Greek empire, would conquer the Persians. This was prophesied in 553BC, and was fulfilled in 333BC, 220 years later. Alexander was so impressed at this prophecy of a Greek conquering the Persians, that he worshipped the God of the Bible, offered sacrifices to God and spared Jerusalem.

Note: Unbelieving critics who won't accept the Bible predicting the future, say that Daniel was written around 200BC which would make it after the events, as history not prophecy. This is clearly disproven by Josephus quoting Jaddua who quotes Daniel 8:1-8,20-22 to Alexander in 340BC. This proves that Daniel was written well before 340BC and is truly predictive prophecy of the supernatural God. (Antiquities of the Jews, Josephus, Book XI, Chap.8, p.244).

4. **JOHN THE BAPTIST**.

"The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, prepare ye the way of Jehovah, make straight in the desert a highway for our God." Isaiah 40:3. John the Baptist is the one referred to here who prepared the way of Jesus Christ who is Jehovah God. This prophecy was made in 712BC and fulfilled around 30AD.

5. **JESUS CHRIST FORETOLD IN THE OLD TESTAMENT**.

So much is predicted about Jesus Christ in the Old Testament that we can only give here a brief summary. We know that the Bible is the Word of God because it predicts so many details of Jesus Christ's life. Consider the following prophecies on the next two pages:

Conclusion:

If we assign a probability of guessing each of these predictions correctly, we see that from a human viewpoint it is impossible to predict these events as the Bible has. Not one prediction failed. All are correctly fulfilled. This proves that the Bible is not humanly authored, but authored by God who ALONE knows the future.

PROPHECY	OT REFERENCE	NT REFERENCE
1. Born of a virgin	Isaiah 7:14	Matthew 1:18,24,25
2. Tribe of Judah	Genesis 49:10	Luke 3:23,33
3. House of David	Jeremiah 23:5	Luke 3:23
4. Born at Bethlehem	Micah 5:1,2	Matthew 2:1
5. Visited by wise men with gifts.	Isaiah 60:3,6,9	Matthew 2:1-12
6. Given Gold and Incense .	Isaiah 60:6	Matthew 2:11
7. Would be in Egypt for a time.	Hosea 11:1	Matthew 2:13-15
8. Infants killed at His birthplace.	Jeremiah 31:15	Matthew 2:16-18
9. Preceded by messenger (John the Baptist)	Isaiah 40:3	Matthew 3:1-3
10. Ministry to begin in Galilee	Isaiah 9:1	Matthew 4:12-18
11. Suddenly come to His Temple	Malachi 3:1;Psalm 69:9	John 2:13-21
12. Perform Miracles	Isaiah 35:5,6	Matthew 9:35
13. Teacher of Parables	Psalm 78:2	Matthew 13:34,35
14. Heal many.	Isaiah 42:7,16	Matthew 8:16,17;15:30
15. His miracles not believed .	Isaiah 53:1	John 12:37
16. Enter Jerusalem's East Gate . Later shut.	Ezekiel 44:1,2.	Mark 11:1-11.
17. Enter Jerusalem on a donkey	Zechariah 9:9	Matthew 21:6-11
18. Betrayed by a friend	Psalm 41:9	Matthew 10:4; 26:48
19. Sold for 30 pieces of silver	Zechariah 11:12	Matthew 26:15
20. Money to be thrown on the Temple Floor	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:5
21. Money used to buy a potter's field	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:7
22. Forsaken by His disciples	Zechariah 13:7	Matthew 26:56
23. False witnesses accuse Him	Psalm 35:11	Matthew 26:59,60
24. Silent before His accusers	Isaiah 53:7	Matthew 27:12
25. Beaten , scourged and spat on.	Isaiah 50:6	Matthew 26:67
26. Crucified with thieves	Isaiah 53:12	Matthew 27:38
27. Mocked by onlookers.	Psalm 22:7,8; 109:25	Matthew 27:39-43.
28. Hands and feet pierced	Psalm 22:16	Luke 23:33
29. His side pierced	Zechariah 12:10	John 19:34
30. Prayed for His enemies.	Isaiah 53:12.	Luke 23:34.
31. Gall and vinegar offered Him to drink	Psalm 69:21	Matthew 27:34,48
32. Garments parted and lots cast	Psalm 22:18	John 19:23,24
33. No bones broken	Psalm 34:20	John 19:33
34. His forsaken cry	Psalm 22:1	Matthew 27:46
35. Darkness over land from midday	Amos 8:9	Matthew 27:45
36. Buried in rich man's tomb	Isaiah 53:9	Matthew 27:57-60
37. In grave 3 days and 3 nights .	Jonah 1:17	Matthew 12:38-40
38. Rise from the dead	Psalm 16:10	Matt 28:6; Acts 2:31
39. Ascend to Heaven	Psalm 68:18	Acts 1:9
40. Rejected by His own nation, Israel.	Isaiah 53:3	Mark 8:31; Luke 17:25
41. Gentile Nations to believe on Him	Isaiah 60:3	Acts 13:47,48
42. Messiah offer Himself as Prince to Israel 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC	Daniel 9:25	Luke 19:37-44
43. Messiah comes and is cut off (dies).	Daniel 9:26	John 19:33-35
44. Jerusalem, Temple destroyed after J death	Daniel 9:26	by Titus in 70 AD
45. Jews to lose power to pass death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ.	Genesis 49:10	11 AD (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

1. Born of a virgin. Isaiah 7:14; Genesis 3:15. "A virgin shall conceive, and bear a son".
2. Tribe of Judah. Genesis 49:10. "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah..till Shiloh"
3. House of David. Jeremiah 23:5. "I will raise unto David a righteous Branch,and a King"
4. Born at Bethlehem. Micah 5:2. "Thou, Bethlehem..Judah, yet out of thee shall come.."
5. Visited by wise men with gifts. Isaiah 60:3,6,9. "Gentiles shall come...and kings".
6. Given Gold and Incense. Isaiah 60:6 "They shall bring gold and incense".
7. Would be in Egypt for a time. Hosea 11:1. "called my son out of Egypt".
8. Infants killed at His birthplace. Jeremiah 31:15. "Rachel weeping for her children".
9. Preceded by a messenger (John the Baptist). Isaiah 40:3. "Prepare ye the way of the Lord".
10. Ministry to begin in Galilee. Isaiah 9:1. "Zebulun, & Naphtali.. have seen a great light"
11. Suddenly come to His Temple. Malachi 3:1 "Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come"
12. Perform miracles. Isaiah 35:5,6. "blind,..deaf,..lame,..dumb sing".
13. Teach parables. Psalm 78:2. "I will open my mouth in a parable,.."
14. Heal many. Isaiah 42:7,16; Matthew 8:16,17. "To open the blind eyes.."
15. His miracles not believed. Isaiah 53:1. "Who hath believed our report?"
16. Enter Jerusalem's East Gate. Later shut. Ezekiel 44:2 "Lord, the God of Israel hath entered"
17. Enter Jerusalem on a donkey. Zechariah 9:9. "thy King cometh...riding upon an ass."
18. Betrayed by a friend. Psalm 69:9 "Mine own familiar friend,... hath lifted up his heel"
19. Sold for 30 pieces of silver. Zechariah 11:12. 'they weighed for my price 30 pieces of silver'
20. Money thrown on the Temple floor. Zechariah 11:13. "cast them...in the house of the Lord"
21. Money then used to buy a potter's field. Zechariah 11:13. "cast them to the potter.."
22. Forsaken by His disciples. Zechariah 13:7. "Smite the Shepherd, & sheep shall be scattered"
23. False witnesses accuse Him. Psalm 35:11. "False witnesses did rise up:"
24. Silent before His accusers. Isaiah 53:7. "He was oppressed,.., yet he opened not his mouth."
25. Be scourged and spat on. Isaiah 50:6. "I hid not my face from shame and spitting."
26. Crucified between two thieves. Isaiah 53:9. "He made his grave with the wicked.."
27. Mocked by onlookers. Psalm 22:7,8 "He trusted on the Lord that he would deliver him"
28. Hands and feet pierced. Psalm 22:16. "they pierced my hands and my feet".
29. His side pierced. Zechariah 12:10. "they shall look upon me whom they have pierced".
30. Prayed for His enemies. Isaiah 53:12 "He made intercession for the transgressors."
31. Given vinegar to drink. Psalm 69:21. "in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink."
32. Garments gambled for. Psalm 22:18. "They part my garments among them, cast lots on my.."
33. No bones broken. Psalm 34:20. "He keepeth all his bones: not one of them is broken."
34. His forsaken cry. Psalm 22:1. "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?"
35. Darkness over the land from noon. Amos 8:9. "I will darken the earth in the clear day."
36. Buried in a rich man's tomb. Isaiah 53:9. "His grave ... with the rich in his death."
37. In grave 3 days and 3 nights. Jonah 1:17 "Jonah was in the belly of the fish 3 days & 3 night"
38. Raised from the dead. Psalm 16:10. "thou wilt not..suffer thine Holy One to see corruption"
39. Ascend to heaven. Psalm 68:18. "Thou hast ascended on high.."
40. Rejected by His own nation, Israel. Isaiah 53:3 'He is..rejected of men.We esteemed him not'
41. Gentile Nations believe on him. Isaiah 60:3. "Gentiles shall come to thy light."
42. Messiah would offer Himself as Prince to Israel 173,880 days after 10pm 4 March, 444BC. Daniel 9:25; Luke 19:41-44. "From the going forth of the commandment to restore & build Jerusalem to Messiah the Prince shall be 69 weeks. 1 wk=7yr x 360days
43. Messiah comes and is killed. Daniel 9:26. "shall Messiah be cut off.."
44. Jerusalem and Temple are destroyed (fulfilled in 70AD). "people..destroy city & sanctuary".
45. Jews to lose power to pass the death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ. Genesis 49:10. "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come;" This was confirmed by Josephus describing the Romans taking this power away from the Jews in 11AD. (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

3. SCIENCE AS PROOF OF THE BIBLE

Whenever the Bible makes a scientific statement, it is always proven correct after man has discovered all the relevant facts. In the Library of the Louvre in Paris there are 3.5 miles of obsolete science books on the shelves. In 1861 the French Academy of Science published a list of 51 "scientific facts" which supposedly contradicted the Bible. Today all 51 of these "facts" are unacceptable to modern scientists. Do other religious books contain scientifically accurate information? Consider the Vedas, the Hindu Scriptures of India, in the following quote. This shows them to be very unscientific, hence disproving Eastern religions and modern New Age thinking which are based on the Vedas.

"The moon is 50,000 leagues higher than the sun (?), and shines by its own light (?); night is caused by the sun's setting behind a huge mountain (?) several thousand feet high, located in the centre of the earth (?), that this world, flat (?) and triangular (?) is composed of 7 states (?) - one of honey, another of sugar, a third of butter, and still another of wine, (?) and the whole mass is borne on the heads of countless elephants (?) which in shaking produce earthquakes."

As you can see, there are at least nine clear scientific errors in this short passage of the Vedas. The Bible on the other hand contains no scientific errors in its 66 books.

Key: The Bible contains scientific information that was not known by man at the time of writing. In many cases it was only discovered recently.

Question: How did the Bible possess knowledge not yet discovered by man?

Answer: God authored the Bible, and revealed information not yet known to man, so that the world would know that the Bible is God's Word, coming from a mind much greater than man's.

Question: Why did no other religious book reveal new scientific information?

Answer: Because other religious books are man made, are limited by man's then current state of knowledge, and have not come from the all-knowing Creator, but are counterfeits seeking to claim authority over us. Hence we reject them.

What examples of scientific facts revealed in the Bible, were unknown to man at the time of writing?

1. The Earth Hangs in Space.

"He hangs the earth upon nothing." Job 26:7 stated 1500BC.

Until modern times "experts" believed ideas such as the earth sat on four elephants, who stood on a giant turtle, who swam in the ocean. Man could not imagine how the earth could hang in space on nothing. Yet this is what happens due to gravitational attraction between the earth and the sun, giving the appearance that the earth hangs on nothing.

2. Earth at any time is part day-time and part night.

When the moment of Christ's second coming to earth is discussed in Luke 17:31-36, Christ's return interrupts people sleeping **at night** on one part of the earth, and interrupts others **in the daytime** grinding at the mill or working in the field. How did Jesus Christ know that the earth at any point of time is half dark and half light? Because He is the all-knowing God. "...in the day when the Son of Man is revealed. (v.30). **In that day** he that is in the field. (v.31). **In that night** there shall be two in one bed, one shall be taken, the other left. (v.34). Two women shall be grinding together; one shall be taken, and the other left (v.35). Two men shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left." (v.36).

3. Cloud Balancing. "Dost thou know the **balancing of the clouds**?" Job 37:16.

Clouds are floating in the air, balanced by two forces: gravity pulling them downwards, and warm air pushing them upwards. How did Job know about this in 1500 BC? God told him.

4. Telephone Communication.

"Canst thou send lightnings, that they may go, and say unto thee, **here we are**?" Job 38:35. When we dial a telephone number, an electric current (lightnings or electricity as we know it) moves through a wire to our friend's telephone, which rings a bell. He answers it and says "Hello, it's here." We then both have a conversation over long distance. The telephone works exactly as Job 38:35 says, yet man did not invent it until 1876. God revealed the telephone to Job in 1520BC, 3400 years before AG Bell invented it.

5. Very Great Number of Stars.

"As the host of heaven cannot be numbered." Jeremiah 33:22 in 590 BC.

"He (God) telleth the number of stars; he calleth them all by their names." Psalm 147:4.

Ptolemy in 150AD dogmatically said that 1056 stars existed.

Scientists now estimate that there are around $10^{11} \times 10^{11} = 10^{22}$ stars, and this is only a guess.

6. The Height of Stars.

"Behold the height of the stars, how high they are." Job 22:12.

Man did not realise how high and far the stars are until Bessel in 1838 measured the distances of stars using the parallax method. Alpha Centauri, earth's nearest star is 4×10^{13} kms (40,000 billion kms) away. It would take you 10 million years to get there if you could travel there in your motor car at 100 km per hour.

7. Pleiades Constellation is a Bound cluster, not breaking up.

"Canst thou **bind** the **sweet** influences (cluster) of Pleiades?" Job 38:31.

In 1520 BC, God said that the Pleiades star cluster is **bound** together in a highly stable group.

Today using high powered telescopes, this has been shown to be true. It is a bound cluster of about 500 stars, 50 light years across and 410 light years away from earth.

The individual stars cannot overcome the "chains" of gravity and allow them to break away from the cluster. The cluster is not expanding, nor breaking up, but is **bound** together. This situation is very uncommon as the reverse is usually true of all open or galactic clusters. Also, photographs reveal that some of it's stars are veiled in a faint transparent blue haze of gas and dust, which beautifully reflect the glory of the stars in the cluster with their various colours. The cluster is indeed "**sweet**" in colour as God said in Job 38:31.

Question: How did the Bible know these two details which are not observable to the naked eye?

Answer: The all-knowing God Who created the stars, authored the Bible.

8. Orion's Bands are loosed.

"Canst thou loose the bands of Orion?" Job 38:31

The constellation of Orion is a star system that is steadily **expanding outwards**. The gravitational "**bands**" holding the constellation together have indeed been loosed, just as God told Job. Orion is 350 light years across and 1600 light years from earth. This expansion is not observable to the naked eye.

Question: How could the Bible tell the difference between two star systems in 1600 BC, Pleiades being bound and Orion being loosed?

Answer: God authored the Bible. "Canst thou **bind** the sweet influences (cluster) of **Pleiades** or **loose** the bands of **Orion**?" Job 38:31. God can and has done it.

9. Spherical Earth.

"It is he that sitteth upon the **circle** of the **earth**." Isaiah 40:22.

"..when he set a **compass** upon the face of the **depth**." Proverbs 8:27.

Circle ²³²⁹ = Compass ²³²⁹ in Hebrew is "Khoog" = to describe a circle, or circuit, meaning the horizon which is circular.

In 712 BC, when Isaiah wrote this, people thought that the earth was flat, and that you could sail over the edge of it and fall off. Columbus and Magellan proved that the earth was circular by sailing around it in a circle from East to West and then returning to the point of departure.

Question: How did the Bible know that the earth was spherical?

Answer: God wrote it.

10. Treasures of the Snow.

"Hast thou entered into the treasures of the snow?" Job 38:22.

Snow crystals are invisible to the naked eye, but under a microscope every snow crystal is different. No two snow crystals are the same. They are all beautiful 6-sided patterns, just like exquisite treasures. How did the Bible know this 3300 years before the microscope was invented? God wrote it.

11. All Mankind came from One Woman.

"Adam called his wife's name Eve: because she was the mother of all living." Genesis 3:20. DNA is found in every cell, in both the nucleus and the mitochondrion (energy station). Mitochondrial DNA is **always** and **only** inherited from the mother. Analysis of this DNA in humans from all over the world shows unmistakably that all humans have inherited it from **one woman**. This research was done by Wilson, Cann, and Stoneking from the University of California, Berkeley. (Creation Ex Nihilo, Vol.12, No.2, March 1990).

12. The Bloodstream Carries Life.

"The life of the flesh is in the blood." Leviticus 17:11.

From 400 BC to 1900 AD, a procedure called "blood letting" was popular. Sick people had blood drained from their bloodstream as a supposed therapeutic measure. It was responsible for killing millions of people, such as George Washington. People thought that blood carried **disease** instead of **life**. By draining the blood, the patient died of blood loss. Now we give blood to some sick patients. The Bible was right again.

13. Diseases Caused by Pigs.

"And the swine...is unclean to you. Of **their flesh** shall ye **not eat** and their carcass shall ye **not touch**". Leviticus 11:7,8.

Forbidding to eat pigs was because of:

- lack of refrigeration, and
- roasting pork over an open flame does not destroy the parasites.

Parasites are obtained by handling fresh pork.

Some diseases are caused by eating pork that is not properly cooked. For example, **Trichinosis** larvae attach to the intestine when eaten. They then bore through the intestine into the blood stream, and the larvae are carried to all parts of the body. They develop and grow in a person's striated muscle.

Pork Tapeworm may feed off the intestine and grow to 12 foot long. It may be fatal in 10-20 years.

God, by forbidding people to eat or touch pork, shows His care for us.

Question: How did the Bible know about the dangers of pork in 1500 BC?

Answer: God wrote the Bible.

14. Leprosy to be Quarantined.

"he (the leper) shall **dwell alone**; outside the camp shall his habitation be. Thou shalt **burn** that wherein the plague is by fire." Leviticus 13:46,57. Moses laid down the rules to recognise and to quarantine the infected leper as contagious, lest other people catch leprosy.

15. Sanitation.

"Thou shalt have a place outside the camp when you will ease yourself, you shall dig (with a paddle) and shall turn back and cover that which cometh from thee." Deuteronomy 23:12,13.

Up until 1800 AD, human excrement was dumped onto the unpaved, filthy streets. Powerful stenches gripped villages and cities. Flies bred in the filth, spreading intestinal diseases that killed millions of people. Such deaths by diseases like typhoid, cholera and dysentery could have been avoided if they had obeyed the Bible.

Question: How did the Bible know this, when man couldn't understand it until 1800?

Answer: God wrote the Bible.

Moses never learned this information from Egypt, because Egypt's standard medical textbook was the "Papyrus Ebers." It contained quack cures like "lizards blood, pigs teeth, stinking fat and meat, pig's ear wax, excreta from humans, dogs, flies, cats, etc.!" Moses never referred to these false cures in his writings.

16. Hands and Clothes Washing.

Until 1900 AD, many hospital patients died due to infections caused by doctors not washing their hands or clothing after contact with infectious patients. The Bible required repeated washing in running water with time allowed for drying and exposure to the sun to kill the bacteria.

17. Fountains Under the Sea. "Hast thou entered into the springs of the sea?" Job 38:16.

"When he strengthened the fountains of the deep." Proverbs 8:28.

There are at least 10,000 known underwater volcanoes, adding 430 million tons of extra water to the oceans each year. **Question:** How did the Bible know what took place on the deep ocean floor? God wrote it.

18. The Water Cycle.

"All the rivers run into the sea; yet the sea is not full; unto the place from where the rivers come, there they return again." Ecclesiastes 1:7.

Rain falls on the coast, runs down the rivers into the oceans, evaporates into clouds, and is blown back to land. It then rains, thus repeating what is known as the water cycle.

19. The Sun is the Source of the Earth's Wind Systems.

"By what way is the **light** parted, which scatters the **east wind** upon the earth?" Job 38:24.

Wind is caused by the uneven heating of the **air** around the earth by the **sun**. The sun also heats the **surface of the earth** unevenly. Air above hot areas (such as land) expands and rises. Air from cooler areas then flows in to take the place of heated air. This is called circulation.

20. Light can be Parted or Dispersed into a Rainbow Spectrum.

"By what way is the **light** parted (Heb.2505)?" Job 38:24. "Parted" in Hebrew is "*chalaq*" which means "separated".

White light can be separated into 7 colours of the spectrum which are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo and violet. This was not understood until experiments with light were performed in the 1600's.

Note: Light is like Jesus Christ: "I am the light of the world." John 9:5. As light has seven colours, so Christ has the seven spirits of God. See Isaiah 11:1,2.

21. Winds blow in Circuits.

"The wind goes toward the south, and turns about unto the north, it **whirls about continually** and the **wind turns again** according to his **circuits**." Ecclesiastes 1:6.

At the equator, the sun heats the air causing it to rise. In the upper atmosphere this air flows away from the equator. When the air returns to the earth's surface, it flows across the surface. This moving surface air produces the six belts of prevailing winds around the earth.

22. Winds have Weight and hence Air Pressure.

"To make the **weight** for the **winds**." Job 28:25.

Galileo in 1600 AD noted that a suction pump would not raise water more than 34 feet. Torricelli suggested that if air could support a column of water 34 feet high, then air should support a column of mercury about 2.5 feet high, because mercury is 13 times as heavy as water. Torricelli made a mercury barometer and proved that air has **pressure** and hence **weight** as the Bible says. God revealed that air has weight 3200 years earlier.

23. Sea Paths or Ocean Currents.

"Whatsoever passes through the **paths of the sea**". Psalm 8:8. "Paths" in Hebrew means "customary roads." Matthew Maury is the father of Oceanography. A statue of him exists in Virginia with charts of the sea in one hand and a **Bible** in the other. Until Maury's work there were no charts of sailing lanes. One day during a temporary illness, his son read from Psalm 8:8. Maury stopped him, asking him to read it again. Maury then said: "It is enough. If the Word of God says that there are paths in the sea, they must be there, and I am going to find them." Within a few years he had charted the sea lanes and ocean currents. **Question:** How did the Bible know about sea paths or ocean currents? **Answer:** God wrote it.

24. Shadows are caused by the earth turning on its axis with respect to the sun.

"Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning." James 1:17. This shows knowledge of a spherical earth turning on its axis when written in 45AD. This was unknown until Copernicus in 1543 wrote that every planet, including earth, revolves around the sun, and that the earth spun upon its axis once a day.

25. **Laws of Physics** control matter, energy and motion.

God asked Job: "Knowest thou the ordinances (laws) of heaven?" Job 38:33. Ordinances are physical laws that govern the movement of heavenly bodies, stars, planets, comets, meteors etc. Examples include:

- i) Kepler's laws of equal areas of orbits
- ii) Solar Physics
- iii) Newton's law of universal gravitation
- iv) Quantum mechanics
- v) Newton's three laws of motion
- vi) Radioactive decay
- vii) The first and second laws of thermodynamics
- viii) Sub atomic particle laws
- ix) Laws governing blackholes, quasars, pulsars

The more that man learns about science, the more he realises that there is to learn.

Question: How did the Bible know that science operates on laws in 1500 BC? **Answer:** God wrote it

26. The First Law of Thermodynamics states that no new matter or energy is being created in the known universe; it is only being interconverted from one form to another.

"On the seventh day **God ended his work** which He had **made.**" Genesis 2:2.

27. The Second Law of Thermodynamics states that the disorder of the universe is increasing. Systems are running from a high to a low state of energy.

"They (the **earth** and **heavens**) all shall **wax old** as doth a garment. And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail." Hebrews 1:11,12. Scientists admit that with all the energy that the sun burns up, it must become cold one day in the distant future. The same must happen to all stars. This is called the "heat death of the universe." Without solar heat, life on earth could not exist. Jesus Christ will create a new, perfect universe after the millennium.

28. **Can a Whale swallow Jonah**

"Now the Lord had prepared a **great fish to swallow up Jonah**. And Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights." Jonah 1:17. Many people use this as their reason for doubting the Bible's truthfulness. How can a fish swallow a man?

Several cases in modern times have been reported of a whale swallowing a man who survived. One is reported by Francis Fox in "Sixty-three years of Engineering" p.298-300 and confirmed by two scientists, one being M. DeParville, the scientific editor of "Journal Des Debats" in Paris.

In February 1891, the whaling ship, "Star of the East" was near the Falkland Islands, where they sighted a large sperm whale. Two boats were sent out after the whale. One boat harpooned the whale, but the whale upset the other boat, drowning one man and the other sailor James Bartley, disappearing without a trace. After the whale was killed and cut open two days later, James Bartley was found unconscious and doubled up inside the whale. He had lost his senses through fright and not through lack of air. His skin was bleached white from stomach acid. He fully recovered. If a man can survive two days in a whale in 1891, surely Jonah could have survived three days in a great fish in 862 BC.

29. **The Universe consists of Space, Mass and Time as stated in Genesis 1:1**

"In the beginning (*time*) God created the heaven (*space*) and the earth (*mass*)."

Each has 3 components showing the Trinity as Creator of time (past, present, future), space (length, breadth, height), and mass (solid, liquid, gas). Only the Bible states God as creating time.

30. Space is stretched as seen by the movement of galaxies, and the **earth has foundations** of core, mantle and crust. "And forgettest the LORD thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth." (Isaiah 51:13).

CONCLUSION:

The Bible not only includes that which is scientifically correct, but also totally avoids that which is scientific nonsense as found in the books of many other religions. The ancient Egyptians believed that the world was hatched from a great cosmic egg which had wings.

Because the Bible avoids scientific nonsense, and because the Bible contains scientific information that was not known until recently, we conclude that the all-knowing Creator God authored the Bible. This is a strong argument for our complete confidence in the Bible's truth & reliability on every other issue of life.

4. PROOFS OF THE EXISTENCE OF GOD

The Bible never attempts to prove the existence of God, but simply declares His existence as a settled fact. The Bible commences: “In the beginning God.....” Genesis 1:1.

Belief in God’s existence is fundamental to life, otherwise man is not accountable to anybody.

Belief in God’s existence is a pre-requisite to being saved by faith in Christ.

“He that cometh to God must believe that he is, and that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.” Hebrews 11:6. “The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God”. Psalm 53:1.

Consider these proofs or arguments for God’s existence:

1. CAUSE AND EFFECT (Cosmological)

Every effect has a cause. The cause is greater than the effect.

“For every house is built by some man; but he that built all things is God”. Hebrews 3:4.

The world and the universe are here. This raises the question: “How did it all come into existence?”

We know of nothing in this world that has no cause. Thus we must recognise that there is a cause behind this world and the universe.

If the pieces of a watch were shaken up in a can forever, they would never produce a working watch by accident. The fact of a watch’s existence demands that there was a watchmaker who made the watch. Hence there must be an intelligent First Cause (God).

2. DESIGN PROVES THE EXISTENCE OF A DESIGNER (Teleological)

Not only does the world and universe exist (with a cause), but it also has a perfect design and purpose. Everything has a purpose. For example, every part of your body has a useful purpose.

Order and useful arrangement imply that the Cause has intelligence and purpose.

The intelligence, purpose and harmony in the universe prove the existence of a master architect.

“The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament showeth his handiwork”. Psalm 19:1.

God’s purpose, design, harmony and intelligence is seen in:

i) The earth is the right distance from the sun to provide a life sustaining climate on earth.

ii) The moon is the right distance from earth to provide tides at a proper level.

iii) Without a moon, we would have no light at night.

iv) Every plant, animal and bacteria has a useful purpose.

v) Every part of your body is in the right place (eg: eyes, nose, ears), is the right size and shape (eg: thumb, fingers), and works perfectly to achieve a useful purpose.

vi) **Flowers** are colourful. **Trees** provide oxygen, shade, and timber for building and heating, they prevent soil erosion, and they support many life forms.

How can these be explained? A benevolent Designer has given us all of these blessings because He loves and cares for us. Do you love and care for Him?

viii) The **human body** functions so perfectly in every way.

“I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made”. Psalm 139:14.

3. The UNIQUENESS and INTELLIGENCE OF MAN (Anthropological)

Man is vastly superior to animals, because of his intelligence, his engineering skill, his moral awareness and his awareness of God and eternity.

“So God created man in his own image”. Genesis 1:27.

4. MAN’S UNIVERSAL INTUITIVE BELIEF IN GOD (Ontological)

Man everywhere is born with an intuitive belief in God. This manifests itself in a desire to worship God. If man does not find the true God, he worships a God of his own making. Belief in God is intuitive. It is not the result of cultural conditioning.

5. THE MORAL ARGUMENT (Conscience)

Man everywhere has a moral awareness of right and wrong. He feels responsible to do what is right, and to avoid what is wrong.

Question: Where did this sense of moral justice come from?

If man is only a bunch of chemicals, why does he have a sense of moral obligation?

Do chemicals have morality?

Answer: The Bible states that moral awareness is God given. Such innate moral standards cannot be due to evolution from unintelligent matter. Romans 2:14,15 states that Gentiles who don't know the 10 Commandments have an inner, moral witness placed there by God. When a man violates his conscience he feels guilt and a fear of punishment. Man's moral awareness can be traced back to the moral values of his Creator. Man's conscience witnesses to the existence of a supreme Law-Giver and Judge who built this sense of right and wrong into man.

6. THE BIOLOGICAL ARGUMENT

Only life can produce life. The theory of spontaneous generation of life has been proven false by science. (Louis Pasteur 1870). Unintelligent matter cannot produce intelligent life. The eternal, intelligent life source is God. "For with thee is the fountain of life". Psalm 36:9.

7. THE HISTORICAL ARGUMENT

Human history points to the unseen Hand of God. God controls, guides and governs the affairs of nations. Examples of God intervening in history are:

- i) When Hitler and Napoleon invaded Russia, winter came early, and was so severe that it led to their defeat. Job 38:22,23.
- ii) When Hitler had crippled England's airforce, he could have easily invaded and conquered Britain. But he delayed and was distracted to bombing English cities. He lost his moment of opportunity due to the prayer answering God.
- iii) When the Spanish Armada set out to invade England in 1588 with 130 ships, God sent a devastating storm which was timed perfectly to destroy most of the ships. God spared England for Protestantism, publishing of the King James Bible in 1611, and sending gospel preaching missionaries all over the world.
- iv) The allies and the United States developed the atomic bomb before Hitler in World War II.
- v) Roman peace had removed pirates from the seas allowing Paul and early missionaries to plant churches all over the world.
- vi) In 1453 the Moslems captured Constantinople. Just before it fell, all the precious New Testament manuscripts had been taken to Europe where printing had just been invented in 1440 by Gutenberg. Hence God preserved the New Testament manuscripts from Islamic destruction, and to be printed 10 years after printing was invented.
- vii) La Perouse was a French explorer who sailed into Botany Bay only 6 days after Arthur Phillip arrived there with the First Fleet. God wanted England to colonise Australia rather than France.
- viii) Men blasphemed God in 1912 by saying that "Not even God could sink the Titanic ocean liner." God judged their sin by sinking the Titanic on its maiden voyage from England to New York on April 15, 1912 when it struck an iceberg.

8. THE CHRISTOLOGICAL ARGUMENT

We cannot explain the Christ of history without the existence of God. Christ's life is affirmed by the Bible and by secular literature. Christ's virgin birth, sinless life, miracles, teachings, prophecies fulfilled at His death, His bodily resurrection and ascension can only be explained by God's existence. "Never man spake like this man". John 7:46.

How Christ transforms lives for good, and continues to answer prayers is proof of God's existence. Millions of Christians world wide know Christ as God personally.

9. THE BIBLICAL ARGUMENT

Man could not have authored the Bible. We know that the Bible is authored by God because it foretells the future with 100% accuracy everytime. No other book in the world has 100% fulfilled prophecy. This shows that it comes from the mind of God. Man would not write a book about how his God whom he loves and worships gets crucified. Man would teach that we get to God by our good works. The Bible is accurate from Science, Archaeology, Prophecy, Unity and Morality.

10. MILLIONS OF PEOPLE KNOW GOD PERSONALLY THROUGH JESUS CHRIST

Jesus Christ has answered millions of people's prayers and transformed millions of lives from misery, sin and despair to love, joy, peace, hope and victory. Do not be like the fool who says that there is no God. Receive Jesus Christ as your God and Saviour from sin today. Then you too will know God personally.

5. REASONS FOR BIBLE, HEAVEN, RESURRECTION, DEITY, CREATION and BAPTISM.

What Key Questions Need We Be Able To Answer?

Question 1: How do we know the Bible is God's Word?

1. **Fulfilled prophecy** regarding nations, Christ, individuals and second coming.
2. **Archaeology** - No archaeology discoveries contradict the Bible.
3. **Science** - The Bible contains scientific facts that were not known when the Bible was written.
4. **Unity** of the Bible written by 40 men over 1600 years agree without any contradiction.
5. **It contains all truth** and no error.
6. Bible principles for living all work when applied.
7. The Bible when printed, **delivered** man from the dark ages and brought blessing to the world. It freed men from superstitions.

Question 2: Why Creation Is Right and Evolution Is Wrong.

1. God said "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. So **GOD CREATED MAN** in his own image..." Genesis 1:27.
2. **JESUS** said that God created man:
"From the beginning of creation God made them male and female." Mark 10:6.
"For in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, neither shall be." Mark 13:19.
3. **SUDDEN APPEARANCE** of complex life in early Cambrian fossil layers.
4. **MAN'S RECORDED HISTORY** only goes back to about 3,000 BC, the first dynasty of Egypt and China, agreeing with the Bible's flood date of 2418 BC.
5. **SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS** says that systems go from order to disorder, yet evolution contradicts this by claiming systems go from "disorder to order".
6. **DATING METHODS** are greatly in error, giving an apparent age greater than the true age. This is due to unproven assumptions in the dating methods.
7. **220 EVIDENCES** for a young earth of about 6,000 years old.
8. **ABSENCE OF TRANSITIONAL** fossil forms between species as predicted by evolution.
9. **Misplaced fossils.** For example:
 - i) Human shoe print on trilobite fossil.
 - ii) Cave painting of brontosaurus in Zimbabwe.
 - iii) Polystrate tree trunks over many strata layers.
 - iv) Human and Dinosaur footprints in Turkmenia.
10. **No beneficial mutations** have given a new species.
There is no way to change the number of chromosomes in all the cells of an organism to change it to another species. For example, man has 46 chromosomes in every cell.
11. **Complexity** of sexual reproduction and eyes, can't be explained by evolution's random processes.
12. **Bad social effects of evolution**
 - a) "Survival of the fittest" of evolution justifies cunning, deceit, cruelty, animal behaviour and massacres, instead of **God's law of love and service.**
 - b) **Militarism** of Germany starting World War I and World War II came from them applying evolution to encourage survival of the "fittest" nation Germany. This allowed the massacre of 6 million Jews and the destruction of other countries. This was just an evolutionary conflict.
 - c) Spread of **atheism.**
 - d) Spread of **Communism** and the arms race.
 - e) Spread of **immorality and divorce.** People acting like animals is just evolutionary behaviour.
 - f) **No idea of right or wrong** because there is no authority of God to be accountable to.
 - g) **Abortion.** Evolutionists say, "Don't worry, the fetus is only in the fish stage."

Question 3: How do we know that Jesus rose from the dead?

1. Jesus after He rose, said that he had **flesh and bones**. Luke 24:39.
2. The **empty tomb** & the **ordered grave clothes** when the disciples examined the tomb. Mark 16:6
3. Christ **ate food** with His disciples after He rose. Luke 24:41-45.
4. People **recognised Him** after His resurrection, even the nail prints. John 20:25.
5. Christ **predicted that He would rise** bodily. John 2:19,22.
6. The mass psychological **change** of the disciples from being cowards at Christ's death, to become bold preachers after the resurrection. How else can this mass psychological change be explained?
7. Over **500 people saw Christ** after He had risen from the dead over a 40 day period (I Cor 15:6). So convinced were they that they were willing to die as martyrs than to deny Christ's resurrection. Would you die for an event that you were not sure about? These witnesses have a high credibility having given the world it's highest moral code.
8. The **change from Saturday to Sunday** as the main day of worship (I Cor 16:1,2). The Sabbath being so important to the Jews would not have been dropped by the Jews except for an immensely important event, the resurrection of Jesus Christ.
9. The **church's** existence can only be explained by the miracle of Christ's resurrection.
10. **Angels** in the tomb declared that He had risen from the dead as He said. Luke 24:6-8.
11. Women who met Christ on this morning held Christ's feet. Matthew 28:9.

Question 4: Why do we believe that we are going to heaven?

1. Jesus told us of heaven and how to get there through Him (John 14:1-6).
2. The Old Testament tells us of heaven as the land that is very far off. (Isaiah 33:17).
3. We have the Holy Spirit indwelling us, telling us of heaven.
4. We have the promises of God's Word. 'absent from the body, be **present with the Lord**' 2Cor 5:8
5. Testimony of Godly people dying and going to heaven, such as Stephen (Acts 7:55,56).

Question 5: Why do we believe that Jesus is God?

1. **Jesus claimed to be God.** "if ye believe not that I am he, ye shall die in your sins." John 8:24.
"I AM" is a name for "God", because;
 - i) To God, no event is beyond Him in the future, and no event is out of His control in past.
 - ii) Only God is the eternal "I AM" in Exodus 3:14,15. "I AM" is **God's name forever**.
 - iii) The **Jews rightly concluded** that Jesus was claiming to be God in John 8:58,59.
 - iv) The Septuagint translates Exodus 3:14 as "I AM" not as in the **NWT (JW)** version.
2. The Old Testament says that **JESUS IS GOD**. "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given:...and his name shall be called...The mighty God, The everlasting Father." Isaiah 9:6.
3. Jesus Christ has the **CREDENTIALS OF GOD**.
 - i) He **ROSE** from the dead.
 - ii) He **DID MANY MIRACLES** showing His power over nature.
 - stilling storms, casting out demons, healing the blind, the lame and raising Lazarus.
 - iii) He **PROPHESIED THE FUTURE** correctly. Eg: Rome destroying Jerusalem (70 AD).
 - iv) He entered Jerusalem to proclaim himself King 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC. This was the exact day (Sunday 29 March 33AD) that Daniel prophesied in Daniel 9:24-26.
 - v) He **solves the sin problem** by dying as our substitute, thus satisfying the law's demands.
4. **The Bible Declares that Jesus Christ is God** in these places:
 - i) "The Word was God". John 1:1.
 - ii) Thomas called Him "My Lord and my God". John 20:28.
 - iii) "The glorious appearing of our Great God and Saviour Jesus Christ". Titus 2:13.
 - iv) "God was manifest in the flesh". 1 Timothy 3:16.
 - v) "In Him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily". Colossians 2:9.
 - vi) "But unto the Son, he saith, 'Thy Throne, O God, is forever and ever'." Hebrews 1:8.
 - vii) "There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one." 1 John 5:7.
5. The **Old Testament predicted 45 details of Jesus Christ's life**. 45 examples are on page 12-13:

Jesus Christ and the Bible make the following 8 prophecies about Jerusalem.

1. Not one stone in Herod's Temple would be left standing upon another. Matthew 24:1,2.
2. Jerusalem would be surrounded by armies in a siege. Luke 21:20.
3. The only way of safety was to flee Jerusalem when you see the armies. Luke 21:21.
4. Many Jews in Jerusalem would be killed by the sword. Luke 21:24.
5. Many Jews would be led away captive into all nations. Luke 21:24.
6. Women would eat their children because of starvation in the siege. Deuteronomy 28:52,57.
7. Jerusalem would be under Gentile control until Christ returns. Luke 21:24.
8. Jerusalem shall be plowed as a field. Micah 3:12. This was fulfilled by Hadrian in 135AD.

Conclusion: If we assign a probability of guessing each of these **53 prophecies** correctly, it is impossible to predict these events as the Bible has. No prophecy failed. All are correctly fulfilled. This proves that the Bible is not authored by man, but by God who ALONE knows the future.

6. Josephus the Jewish /Roman Historian who lived from 37 to 100 AD, wrote that people then regarded Jesus Christ as God ("if it be lawful to call him a man.").

"Now, there was about this time, Jesus, a wise man, if it be lawful to call him a man, for he was a doer of wonderful works, - a teacher of such men as receive the truth with pleasure. He drew over to him both many of the Jews, and many of the Gentiles. He was (the) Christ; and when Pilate, at the suggestion of the principal men amongst us, had condemned him to the cross, those that loved him at the first did not forsake him, for he appeared to them alive again the third day, as the divine prophets had foretold these and ten thousand other wonderful things concerning him; and the tribe of Christians, so named from him, are not extinct at this day." (Josephus' "Antiquities of the Jews", p.379).

This confirms the Bible's account of Jesus Christ's: **i)** Historical existence. **ii)** Deity. **iii)** Miracles. **iv)** Teacher. **v)** Pharisees suggesting that Pilate kill Jesus. **vi)** Resurrection after three days. **vii)** Fulfilled Old Testament prophecies. **viii)** Followers known as the Christian Church.

Question 6: Why we should believe in Baptism by immersion.

1. 'Baptizo' in Greek always means "immersion", never sprinkle. Sprinkle is "rantizo" in Greek.
2. **Everyone baptized** in the New Testament was a saved adult who could say "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God." Acts 8:37.
3. **Only immersion pictures** the death of Jesus Christ for our sins, burial of our old sinful ways, and us rising to a new life with Jesus Christ.
4. **Only baptism by immersion** is the answer of a **good conscience towards God**. 1 Peter 3:21.
5. **Jesus** was baptized by immersion, and so should we. Mark 1:9-11. The Catholic Church changed it.
6. Immersion was the **method of baptism up to 300 AD** as recorded by the Church Fathers.

WHY SHOULD WE GIVE A REASON? **1. Not to be ashamed** before men. (II Timothy 2:15).

2. To be **approved by God**.
3. To **deliver people for error**, sin and false doctrine.
4. To **teach** answers to Christians.
5. To **strengthen** our faith.

HOW SHOULD WE ANSWER? With meekness and fear, means with modesty and gentleness.

Questions may sometimes be asked in an insulting manner. Don't retort in anger or in a revengeful manner, but in a calm and gentle spirit, stating the reason for our hope. Let us give clear, intelligent and factual answers to establish the truth of God's Word satisfactorily in people's minds.

"But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear." 1 Peter 3:15.

CONCLUSION: The probability of only eight prophecies about Jesus Christ coming true by guesswork is 1 chance in 100,000,000,000,000,000. What about the rest? Since the Bible is right in predicting the future, we conclude that: **a)** Jesus Christ is the only way to God.

b) The Bible is 100% accurate on issues that we have no normal knowledge on (such as the future). It therefore qualifies for our trust in it as God's only Word to man.

c) It is therefore the right foundation for our thinking and our life. We conclude that,

THE BIBLE = TRUTH = REALITY = OUR LIFE'S FOUNDATION.

6. HEAVEN

In Colossians 3:2 we are told to: "Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth."

Too many people and Christians are so earthly-minded that they are of no heavenly good.

Jesus told us to "lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven." Matthew 6:20.

In view of the difficulties of this world and of the treasures of heaven, we do well to focus constantly on heaven.

- Aim:**
1. To show us what great things await us in heaven.
 2. To comfort us concerning those who have gone to heaven.
 3. To motivate us to tell people how they may get to heaven.

1. THE BIBLE TEACHES US THAT THERE ARE THREE HEAVENS

The first heaven is earth's atmosphere, "the heaven gave rain". James 5:18.

The second heaven is outer space, "the stars shall fall from heaven". Matthew 24:29.

The third heaven is the throne of God, "New Jerusalem which cometh down out of heaven from my God." Revelation 3:12.

Paul says in II Corinthians 12:2-4, "I knew a man in Christ...caught up to the third heaven."

2. NAMES OF HEAVEN

- i) "Thine eyes shall behold the king in his beauty: they shall behold the **land that is very far off**." Isaiah 33:17.
- ii) "Ye have in heaven a **better** and an **enduring substance**." Hebrews 10:34.
- iii) "The **city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem**." Hebrews 12:22.
- iv) "Receive the promise of **eternal inheritance**." Hebrews 9:15.
- v) "In my Father's house are **many mansions**:...I go to prepare a place for you." John 14:2.
- vi) "Far more exceeding and eternal weight of **glory**." II Corinthians 4:17.
- vii) "Lay up for yourselves treasures in **heaven**." Matthew 6:20.
- viii) "...a better...**heavenly country**...for he hath prepared for them a city." Hebrews 11:16
- ix) "He was caught up into **paradise**." II Corinthians 12:4.

3. WHEN WE DIE WHERE DO WE GO?

- i) At death, the **spirits and souls** of believers **go immediately to heaven**, and the body "sleeps" in the earth until Christ's second coming when we will be caught up to rejoin our spirits and souls.
"To be absent from the body, and to be **present with the Lord**." II Corinthians 5:8.
"Them also which sleep in Jesus will God **bring with him**." I Thessalonians 4:14.
"For the hope which is laid up for you **in heaven**." Colossians 1:5.
"But ye are come unto Mt Zion, the **heavenly Jerusalem**." Hebrews 12:22.
"But now they desire a better country, that is, an **heavenly**." Hebrews 11:16.
"Knowing in yourselves that ye have **in heaven** a better and an enduring substance" Heb. 10:34
"To an inheritance.....reserved **in heaven** for you." I Peter 1:4.
"I heard a great voice of much people **in heaven**." Revelation 19:1.
"Lay up for yourselves treasures **in heaven**." Matthew 6:20.
"**Where I am** (heaven), **there shall also my servant be**." John 12:26.
"I go and prepare a **place** for you.....that **where I am** (heaven), there **ye** may be also" John 14:3
"We know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved (physical death), we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the **heavens**." II Corinthians 5:1.
- ii) At Christ's return to earth in glory, believers will return to earth with Christ.
"The Lord my God shall come, and **all the saints with thee**." Zechariah 14:5.
- iii) After the 1000 years of Christ's rule on earth, God will destroy this first earth with fire. He will create a new heavens, new earth and a **new Jerusalem city** which will be 1500 miles wide, 1500 miles long and 1500 miles high.
This is where our home with God will be forever. Revelation 21:1-3.

4. DESCRIPTION OF HEAVEN

- i) Heaven is where **God's Throne is**. "Our Father which art in heaven." Matthew 6:9.
- ii) It is a sinless **Holy Place**.

"He will hear him from his holy heaven." Revelation 21:27; Psalm 20:6.

- iii) **Beautiful and clean.** "The street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass." Revelation 21:21.
- iv) **River of Life and tree of life.** Revelation 22:1,2.
- v) **Angels** reside there. "The voice of many angels about the throne in heaven." Revelation 5:11
- vi) **Father, Son and Holy Spirit** reside there. "They shall see his face." Revelation 22:4.
- vii) **Place of reward.** "Rejoice and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven." Matthew 5:12; Revelation 22:12.
- viii) **Place of separation** from the **wicked.** I Corinthians 6:9-11; Galatians 5:19-21; Rev.22:14,15
- ix) **Believers** reside there. "...an house not made with hands, **eternal in the heavens.**" 2 Cor. 5:1.
- x) **We return** to the **days of our youth**, in resurrected, youthful and immortal bodies. Job 33:25. "This mortal must put on immortality." I Corinthians 15:53.
- xi) **Place of joy and happiness.**
"Enter thou into the **joy** of thy Lord." Isaiah 35:10; Matthew 25:21.
- xii) All **good earthly gifts** come from **God in heaven.**
"A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven." John 3:27.
"Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights..." James 1:17.
Question: Do you acknowledge God as having given you everything good?
- xiii) God assigns **angels** in heaven to **each child** who is born in order to bring that person to hear the gospel, so that they will receive Christ as Saviour and have eternal life. Matthew 18:10.
- xiv) **God's Word** which we have in our hands is settled forever in heaven. It is heavenly and without error. We can confidently build our life on it.
"For ever, O Lord, thy word is settled in heaven." Psalm 119:89.
- xv) The **permanence of our heavenly possessions** comfort us when we lose our earthly possessions. Hebrews 10:34.
- xvi) An **inheritance** reserved in heaven for you, that fadeth not away. I Peter 1:4,5.
- xvii) **Saved people** from every kindred, tongue, people and nation will be there. Revelation 5:9.
We will be **reunited** with saved friends and relatives, children who have died, Jesus Christ and angels.
- xviii) We shall have a **glorified body like Christ.** "We shall be like him." I John 3:2. This is **Christ likeness.** Our new bodies will not be subject to the laws of gravity, time or ageing. John 20:19
- xix) Heaven is **eternal.** "an eternal inheritance." Hebrews 9:15.
- xx) A place of **memory.** **Question:** Will we know one another in heaven? Yes, David will meet his son. II Samuel 12:22,23. We shall sit down with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. Matthew 8:11.
- xxi) **Satisfaction** of all our needs. Revelation 7:16,17.
- xxii) **Sharing in Christ's glory.** "When Christ who is our life shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in **glory**". Colossians 3:4.

5. ACTIVITIES IN HEAVEN:

- i) Intimate **fellowship** with God for all eternity. "They shall see his face." Revelation 22:4. "That where I am there ye may be also." John 14:3.
- ii) **Rest** from hard labour.
"They may rest from their labours." Revelation 22:4.
One of the results of sin was the curse of toil and the sweat of hard work.
When we arrive in heaven, we will continue to work, but the agony of labour will be gone.
- iii) Exciting **service.** "His servants shall serve Him." Revelation 22:3.
"He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much." Luke 16:10.
- iv) **Ruling.** "We shall **reign** on the earth." Revelation 5:10.
"Because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou **authority** over ten cities." Luke 19:17. "If we suffer, we shall also **reign** with him. II Timothy 2:12.

- v) **Worship.** "The 24 elders.....worship him that lives forever and ever." Revelation 4:9-11.
"The Father seeketh such to worship him." John 4:23. We will be so amazed with the greatness of God, heaven and eternity that we will respond in worship.
- vi) **Singing.** "They sung a new song, saying, "Thou art worthy." Revelation 5:9.
"The ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy shall be upon their heads." Isaiah 35:10.
- vii) **Eating.** "To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna". Revelation 2:17.
- viii) **Marriage supper** of the lamb. "Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the lamb." Revelation 19:9.

6. THINGS ABSENT FROM HEAVEN. The "no-mores" in heaven are:

- i) "No more sea." Revelation 21:1.
- ii) "The first heaven and the first earth were passed away." Revelation 21:1.
- iii) No more tears. Revelation 21:4.
- iv) No more death.
- v) No more sorrow.
- vi) No more crying.
- vii) No more pain.
- viii) No more sun or moon. Revelation 21:23.
- ix) No temple for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it." Revelation 21:22
- x) No more insecurity. "The gates of it shall not be shut at all by day" Revelation 21:25.
- xi) "No night there." Revelation 21:25.
- xii) No sin will enter. "There shall in no wise enter into it anything that defiles, or works abomination, or makes a lie..." Revelation 21:27.
- xiii) No more sickness. "Leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations." Revelation 22:2
- xv) "No candle or light of the sun, for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign forever and ever." Revelation 7:16.
- xvi) No more thirst, hunger or heat. Revelation 7:16.
- xvii) No one who **adds** or **takes away** from the Bible. Revelation 22:18,19.
- xviii) Outside are dogs, sorcerers, whoremongers, murderers, idolaters, and liars. Revelation 22:15

7. WHAT WILL BE THERE?

- i) Behold I make **ALL THINGS NEW.** Revelation 21:5.
This means that everything will be new. It will be a new universe.
- ii) "He that overcometh shall **inherit ALL THINGS.**" Revelation 21:7.
- iii) "The **Kings of the earth** do bring their glory and honour into it." Revelation 21:24.
This means that there will be a new population on the new earth who will worship the Lord.
- iv) **Mansions.** "In my Father's house are many mansions." John 14:2.

Question: How may we enter heaven?

We must humble ourselves as little children, and **ask** Christ to be our Saviour. Matthew 18:1-6 "Thou would have **asked** of him, and he would have given thee living water". John 4:10.
Are you really sure of going to heaven?
Are you really living for Christ and for eternity?
Are you working to get lost people saved and into heaven?

7. HELL

In the New Testament, 162 passages speak about unrepentant people going to hell, and 70 of these were described by Jesus, as he warned people to avoid it.

When the unsaved die, they go immediately to hell. Later, at the end of Christ's 1,000 year reign on earth, the unsaved will leave hell, receive their resurrected bodies, go to the Great White Throne Judgment and will then be cast into the Lake of Fire, where they remain forever (Revelation 20:11-15).

I. FOUR BIBLE WORDS THAT DESCRIBE HELL:

1. **GEHENNA**¹⁰⁶⁷ referred to the continually burning rubbish dump on the south west side of Jerusalem, known as the valley of the sons of Hinnom (or Tophet). Jesus used the word "Gehenna" to describe the place of everlasting punishment because hell is a place of filth and stink, a place of smoke and pain, a place of everlasting fire and suffering. This garbage dump was likened to hell. It is used as a name for the place of everlasting punishment of the lost. It occurs twelve times in the New Testament. It is the ultimate hell of fire. It is the same as the lake of fire. (Revelation 20:14,15).

- Matthew 5:22 "whosoever shall say, "Thou fool", shall be in danger of hell fire" (gehenna of the fire).
Matthew 5:29 "And if thy right eye offend thee ... and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell" (gehenna).
Matthew 5:30 "And if thy right hand offend thee ... and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell" (gehenna).
Matthew 10:28 "...fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell" (gehenna).
Matthew 18:9 "And if thine eye offend thee, ... rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire" (gehenna).
Matthew 23:15 "Pharisees, ... ye make him twofold more the child of hell (gehenna) than yourselves."
Matthew 23:33 "Ye serpents,... how can ye escape the damnation of hell?" (gehenna).
Mark 9:43 "And if thy hand offend thee, ... two hands to go into hell (gehenna), into the fire that never shall be quenched."
Mark 9:45 "And if thy foot offend thee, ... two feet to be cast into hell (gehenna), into the fire that never shall be quenched."
Mark 9:47 "And if thine eye offend thee, ... two eyes to be cast into hell fire" (gehenna of fire).
Luke 12:5 "Fear him, which after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell" (gehenna).
James 3:6 "the tongue is ... set on fire of hell" (set on fire by gehenna).

2. **HADES**⁸⁶ is the intermediate state between death and the ultimate hell (gehenna), the Lake of Fire. It is where unsaved departed spirits reside. Luke 16:23. Hades never denotes the physical grave, nor is it the permanent region of the lost. Hades occurs 10 times in the New Testament, and Sheol, the Old Testament equivalent occurs 59 times. Hades is associated with privation, detention and just punishment of the unsaved dead.

- Matthew 11:23 "Thou, Capernaum...shalt be brought down to hell" (hades).
Luke 10:15 Hades here expresses Capernaum's absolute overthrow, from pride to humiliation.
Matthew 16:18 "The gates of hell (hades) shall not prevail against it" (the churches' attack).
Luke 16:19-31 "And in hell (hades) he lifted up his eyes, being in torments"⁹³¹ (punishment)" v.23.
Hades here has two compartments, close to each other, yet different.
Acts 2:27 "Thou wilt not leave my soul in hell (hades)."
Acts 2:31 "That his (Christ's) soul was not left in hell (hades)."
Christ here descended into the underworld of the departed (Ephesians 4:9,10), to take the believers in it (eg: thief on the cross) up to heaven. Believers now go to heaven at death, while unbelievers still go to hades at death, a place of punishment.
Revelation 1:18 "I (Christ) ... have the keys of hell (hades) and of death."

Revelation 6:8 "a pale horse: and his name that sat on him was Death, and hell (hades) followed with him." Hades here is personified as the temporary destiny of the unsaved.

Revelation 20:13 "death and hell (hades) delivered up the dead which were in them."

Revelation 20:14 "death and hell (hades) were cast into the lake of fire."

Note: Fire is used 27 times in the New Testament to describe the after-death punishment of unbelievers and of demons.

2 Thessalonians 1:8 "In flaming **fire** taking vengeance on them that know not God, and obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ."

Matthew 13:42, 50 "And shall cast them into a furnace of fire."

Matthew 5:22; 18:9; Mark 9:43,45,47 "cast into fire unquenchable, hell fire."

Isaiah 66:24 "... look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me, for their worm shall not die, neither shall their **fire** be quenched." Mark 9:44,46,48.

Isaiah 33:14 "Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire?
Who among us shall dwell with the everlasting burnings?"

Matthew 18:8 "Two hands or two feet be cast into everlasting fire."

Matthew 25:41 "Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels."

Jude 7 "Sodom and Gomorrha ... an example suffering the vengeance of eternal fire."
(Literally: of fire eternal, the penalty undergoing).

Revelation 19:20 "Beast, .. false prophet, ... and them that worshipped his image. These were cast alive into a lake of **fire** burning with brimstone."

Revelation 20:10 "the devil ... shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever" (for the ages of the ages).

Revelation 20:14,15 and Rev. 21:8 "death and hell were cast into the lake of fire."

Revelation 14:10,11 "tormented with **fire** and brimstone ... the **smoke** of their torment ascends up for ever and ever (for ages of ages), and they have no rest (respite) day nor night..."

3. SHEOL⁷⁵⁸⁵ is hades of the Old Testament. In Hebrew, it means the depth, abyss, pit, world of the dead, underworld. It occurs 66 times in the Old Testament (grave 31 times, hell 30 times, pit 3 times). As all Old Testament people went to the grave, the souls of some will receive punishment in sheol.

Numbers 16:30 "Korah, Dathan and Abiram went down into the pit."

Psalms 9:17 "The wicked shall be turned into hell (sheol)."

4. TARTARUS⁵⁰²⁰ is the deepest abyss of Hades; a place where evil angels are imprisoned in torment, awaiting judgment and everlasting punishment.

2 Peter 2:4 is its **only** reference in the Bible.

"If God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell (tartarus), and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment."

II. WHAT IS HELL (GEHENNA and HADES) LIKE?

1. UNQUENCHABLE FIRE: "He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire." Matthew 3:12.

Hell "fire" is real "fire" because the same Greek word (pur) for fire is used for both.

"It rained fire and brimstone..." Matthew 17:15 and Luke 17:29.

The rich man in hades said: "I am tormented in this flame." Luke 16:24.

2. MEMORY AND REGRET. Abraham said to the rich man in hades "remember" in Luke 16:25. Lost people will remember their sins and the times that they rejected the Holy Spirit convicting them of their sins and their need for Jesus Christ to be their Saviour. They will remember how Christians told them the plan of salvation.

3. THIRST. The rich man in hell begged Abraham to "send Lazarus that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue" (Luke 16:24), yet this was refused. Imagine going without water for one day, let alone for eternity without water.

Jesus Christ offers in John 7:37, "If any man thirst, let him come unto me and drink."

- 4. SEPARATION.** People in hell will experience a “great gulf” (Luke 16:26) between them and God. They took all the good things of life for granted when they were on earth. They will be forever separated from all the good gifts of God. Many unbelievers joke that “I won’t be lonely in hell, as all my friends will be there.” Friendship means nothing under everlasting torment.
- 5. INJUSTICE AND FILTHINESS OF SIN** are in hell. Revelation 22:11. “He that is unjust, let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy let him be filthy still.” No one likes people treating them unjustly, nor do people like being abused in a filthy manner. The unsaved will experience these conditions forever in hell.
- 6. HOPELESSNESS FOR ALL ETERNITY.** Hell is the everlasting dwelling place of the unsaved. Sooner or later they will realise that they are in hell to stay there forever, with no escape. In Luke 16:26, Abraham told the rich man in hell: “They which would pass from here to you cannot; neither can they pass to us.”
- 7. STINK OF SULPHUR.** “But the fearful, and unbelieving, and abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and **brimstone** (sulphur); which is the second death.” Revelation 21:8.
- 8. EYESIGHT, HEARING, TOUCH, TASTE AND SMELL** are senses that people possess in hell. The rich man in Luke 16:19-31 could “see” Abraham, “hear” his voice, “touch” the flames, desire to “taste” water, and “smell” the sulphur. Revelation 21:8.
- 9. THE DEVIL and DEMON ANGELS** will accompany the Christ rejecters forever.
- 10. UNSATISFIED DESIRES.** Both of the rich man’s requests were denied in Luke 16:19-31. He requested a drop of water to cool his tongue, and for Lazarus to return to tell his five unsaved brothers how to be saved and avoid hell. Both requests were denied. How many times a day do you want something and get it? In hell, no one ever gets what they want.
- 11. PLACE OF WORMS.** “Where their worm dieth not...” Mark 9:44,46,48.
Worm means maggot. If the maggots do not die, and the people own the maggots, then neither do the people die or get annihilated in hell.
- 12. TORMENT and PUNISHMENT.** “In hell, he lift up his eyes being in torments.” Luke 16:23.
- 13. SHAME and HATRED.** “Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.” Daniel 12:2. People suffering in hell will get a resurrection body. They will be judged, and sent to the lake of fire in shame at their sins. They will experience everlasting contempt, hating their situation forever.
- 14. DEGREES OF PUNISHMENT IN HELL.** “It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgement, than for that city.” Mark 6:11.
Those who reject Christ most often, will receive greater punishment. Matthew 10:15.
- 15. WEEPING, WAILING, GNASHING OF TEETH.** “So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth and sever the wicked from among the just, and shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.” Matthew 8:12 and 13:49,50. People who today are arrogant, proud Christ-rejecters will be wailing and gnashing their teeth in hell.
- 16. HADES IS IN THE EARTH.** Amos 9:2 “though they dig into hell ...”,
Isaiah 14:9 “hell from beneath”, Ephesians 4:9 “descended into lower parts of earth”,
Numbers 16:33 “they went down alive into the pit”,
Psalm 63:9 “those that seek my soul, to destroy it, shall go into the lower parts of the earth.”
- 17. HELL IS ORIGINALLY PREPARED FOR THE DEVIL AND HIS ANGELS**
“Depart from me, ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.” Matthew 25:41.
How does one get to hell? By neglecting to receive Christ as Saviour.
Hebrews 2:3 “How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation?”

How does one avoid hell? By receiving Christ as their Saviour. John 1:12.

Christians should work harder to rescue people from hell, and seek to build their church to better achieve this task, both at home and overseas.

Question 1: Does “hell” mean “grave” where good and bad must go?

Answer: No, because in Luke 16:19-31 both men went to the grave, but the soul of Lazarus was comforted, and the soul of the rich man was tormented.

Question 2: How can a loving God send people to hell?

Answer: People send themselves to hell by rejecting Christ. God is loving in sending Christ to die for our sins, but God is just in punishing sin.

III. JESUS' STORY OF THE RICH MAN AND LAZARUS in Luke 16:19-31.

An unbelieving rich man who had abundant material possessions and food in this life, died and went to hell. A believing poor man named Lazarus who had nothing in this life but sickness and poverty, died and was carried by the angels into the comfort of paradise. The suffering rich man in hell made two requests of Abraham in paradise:

i) To send Lazarus to put one drop of water on his tongue to relieve his suffering. The rich man, who refused to show mercy to Lazarus in need, now begged that Lazarus might show mercy to him in his need (v.24). The rich man declares the greatness of his torment saying: “I am in torment (agony) in this fire (or flame).” v.24.

Lesson: Material things have only temporary, not eternal value. Luke 16:25.

Abraham responded by calling him “son”. This means that he was a son of Abraham by flesh, not by faith. The rich man trusted his **wealth** and his **physical** descent from Abraham for his salvation. Christ showed that neither reason was sufficient for salvation. At death, one's eternal destiny is settled. “Between us and you there is a great gulf fixed” (v.26). The rich man could remember his false confidence in wealth, and his wrong devotion to it. This story refutes “**soul-sleep**”, because the rich man and Lazarus were conscious, one enjoying comfort, and the other suffering **torment**.

Note: Hades had two sections: paradise and hell punishment. Jesus emptied the paradise section when He rose from the dead and took the Old Testament believers’ souls to heaven. Eph. 4:8-10; John 20:17. “Torment” is used four times and means sorrow and grief.

Abraham gave two reasons why Lazarus could not comfort the rich man:

- a) The rich man had received his reward (Matthew 6:2,5,16), and he had left God out of his life.
- b) The great gulf separated them.

ii) To send Lazarus back to warn his five brothers. Luke 16:27-31.

The rich man did not say: “I'm glad my brothers will come here, we'll have a wonderful time together.” People sometimes say: “I want to go to hell. All my friends will be there.”

Answer: There is no friendship in hell. Hell is a place of torment and loneliness.

Lesson: People in hell have a concern for the lost, but they cannot do anything about it, **BUT WE CAN!** What are you doing?

v.29-31: Abraham said that the only thing that could prevent his five brothers from coming to hell was: **Hearing** the Word of God, and **responding** to it by faith in Christ as Saviour.

A man named Lazarus did come back from the dead, and some of the Pharisees wanted to kill him (John 11:43-57; 12:10).

God had spoken many times to the rich man while on earth:

1. God permitted him to have riches, but not attributing his riches to God's goodness, he did not repent. “The goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance.” Romans 2:4-5.
2. Lazarus would have witnessed to him, but his pride rejected Lazarus' message.
3. Old Testament scriptures spoke to him.
4. Lazarus dying first, should have reminded him how he would also die. In hell he was still self-centred, praying for his comfort and for the safety of his family. He was not concerned about other lost sinners. C.S. Lewis says: “The safest road to hell is the gradual one - the gentle slope, soft underfoot, without sudden turnings, without milestones, without signposts.”

Lessons from the rich man and Lazarus:

1. The souls of men **do not die** with their bodies.
2. The souls of men are **conscious** after death, not asleep until resurrected.
3. The righteous at death are taken immediately to a place of happiness and the wicked are sent to a place of misery and torment.
4. Wealth does not protect us from death.
5. We **should not envy the rich**, as riches can blind us to the reality of eternity.
6. We should seek a better inheritance than this life can give.
7. The sufferings of the wicked in hell will be indescribably great of torment, burning flame, and insatiable thirst, forever.
8. Hell is a place of suffering beyond the grave. If not, this story has no meaning.
9. There will never be any escape from hell. The gulf is fixed.
10. God warns us to prepare for death through:
 - His Word.
 - His Holy Spirit pleading with sinners.
 - His servants.
 - His goodness leading us to repentance.
 - Pleadings of friends.
 - Heaven.

If all that would not move sinners, then what would? He threatens hell.

11. God will give us nothing more to warn us. No dead man will return to tell us what he has seen. If he did, no one would believe him. If you will not hear Christ or the Bible, there is nothing you will hear. You will never be persuaded, and you will never escape the place of torment.
12. We see the amazing folly of those wanting to go to hell. They have been deceived.

IV. THE IMPLICATIONS OF HELL FOR US TODAY

1. **Soul winning** is important. When people get angry at a preacher preaching on soul winning, they are doing the devil's work.
2. We need to become **fishers of men**. Matthew 4:19.
3. If we are **busy** pulling souls out of the fire, we will **not waste our time** fighting other Christians. We will seek to maintain unity in our church.
4. We see **our Church** as of **great importance** in rescuing people from hell. Rescuing people from hell is a major purpose of churches.
5. Hell focuses our attention on **eternity**, taking our attention off petty present things like latest worldly fashions which pale into insignificance in the light of lost people going to an eternal hell.
6. Hell makes us **train workers** to be soul winners.
7. It gives us a **love for people** to win to Christ and to train in the Bible.
8. It makes us **use our time wisely** so that **all we do** helps in some way to rescue people from hell.
9. Hell makes us **mission minded** so that we try to win lost people to Christ overseas. For example, Roman Catholics in Africa grew from 52 million in 1980 to 92 million in 1993.
10. Hell and eternal judgment is the **sixth principle of the Doctrine of Christ**, so it must be emphasised in our doctrinal teaching. "the foundation ofeternal judgment." Hebrews 6:1,2.
11. Hell will give us a **better testimony** as Christians. If we sin, people will go to hell.
12. Hell will **stop us backsliding** because we will realise that our job is important to accomplish in rescuing people from hell. "For what shall it profit a man if he gains the whole world, and lose his own soul?" Mark 8:36. What is your answer to this question?

Conclusion

Are you really saved?

Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, trusting Him alone to save you, not your religion or your good works?

If you are saved, then what are you doing to tell people how Jesus Christ can save them from hell?

8. REWARDS

God's Word teaches us that salvation is a free gift given to us by God. We do not work for it (Ephesians 2:8,9,10), we just receive it, and it becomes ours. Once we have received it, we cannot lose it. (John 10:28).

Question: Does this mean that I can go out and sin, now that I'm saved, without any bad consequences?

Answer: No, because: a) God will discipline us now, and we will be sorry.
b) We will lose our rewards later on in heaven.

I. STATEMENTS OF REWARDS IN HEAVEN

- "And, behold, I come quickly; and **my reward** is with me, to **give** every man **according** as his work shall be". Revelation 22:12.
- "And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not to men; knowing that of the Lord **ye shall receive** the **reward** of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ. But he that doeth wrong shall **receive** for the **wrong** which he hath done". Colossians 3:23-25.
- "For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may **receive** the things done in his body, **according** to that he hath done, whether it be **good** or **bad**". II Corinthians 5:10.
- "Knowing that whatsoever **good thing** any man doeth, the same shall he **receive** of the Lord". Ephesians 6:8.
- "I press toward the mark for the **prize** of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus". Philippians 3:14.
- "Moses... had respect unto the recompense of the **reward**". Hebrews 11:26.
- "Lay up for yourselves **treasures in heaven**..". Matthew 6:19,20.
- "To have an **abundant entrance** into the everlasting kingdom". II Peter 1:11.
- "So then everyone of us shall **give account** of **himself** to God". Romans 14:12.

Christ will come to judge the works of believers and to distribute rewards. The believer will not be judged with regard to his sins (John 5:24). Christ received that judgment on our behalf on the cross (II Corinthians 5:21) and we will not again be called to account for them at Christ's return. During this life, however the believer is disciplined for the sins that he commits (Hebrews 12:7-11). But when Christ returns, believers will be judged as to how well we have used the **talents** (Matthew 25:14-30), the **pounds** (Luke 19:11-27), and the **opportunities** (Matthew 20:1-16) that God has entrusted to us. Salvation is a free gift of God (Romans 6:23) and comes from the grace of God (Ephesians 2:8). When James says that we are saved by works (James 2:24), he means by faith that produces works (2:22,26). Paul says that while we are saved by grace, we are saved to do good works (Ephesians 2:8-10). The Lord has given believers an opportunity to lay up treasures in heaven (Matthew 6.20), and so to have an abundant entrance into God's everlasting kingdom (II Peter 1:11).

II. FOR WHAT WILL WE BE REWARDED IN HEAVEN?

- (1) **Faithfulness to God** and to his **work** in using our talents, pounds and opportunities will be rewarded. If we sow sparingly, we reap sparingly. If we sow bountifully, we reap bountifully. "It is required in stewards that a man be found faithful." I Corinthians 4:2.
- (2) **Reaping the harvest of souls** for Jesus Christ. "He that reapeth receives wages". John 4:35-37.
- (3) **Patiently enduring suffering** and affliction brings heavenly rewards. "Our light affliction which is but for a moment, works for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory." II Corinthians 4:17.
- (4) They that **turn many to righteousness** will shine as the stars forever and ever. Daniel 12:3.
- (5) In **keeping of them** (God's commandments) there is a **great reward**. Psalm 19:11.
- (6) When we are **persecuted** for righteousness sake. Matthew 5.10.
When people revile you and **say all manner of evil against you falsely for Jesus Christ's** sake. Rejoice and be exceeding glad, for **great** is your **reward** in heaven. Matthew 5:10-12.
- (7) Giving **money** secretly. Matthew 6:4.

- (8) **Praying** secretly. Matthew 6:6.
- (9) **Fasting** secretly. Matthew 6:18.
- (10) **Hospitality**. Receiving, helping or welcoming a prophet or a righteous man. Matthew 10:41. If you receive or help a prophet or righteous man, you get a prophet or righteous man's reward.
- (11) If you give a **cup of cold water** to a disciple, you will not lose your reward. Matthew 10:42. God notices all the little acts of kindness that we do, and promises to reward us for each of them.
- (12) If people **hate** you, and **separate** you from their company, and shall **reproach** you, and shall **cast out** your name as evil for the Son of man's sake. Rejoice, and leap for joy, for your **reward is great in heaven**. Luke 6:22,23.
- (13) Your **reward** shall be **great** if you do as in: Luke 6:27-31,35.
- Love your enemies.
 - Do good to them that hate you.
 - Bless them that curse you.
 - Pray for them that spitefully use you.
 - To him that smites thee on the cheek, offer the other.
 - If he takes your cloak, offer your coat.
 - Give to every one that asks thee.
 - Of him that takes away thy goods, ask them not again.
 - Do to men as ye would have them do to you.
 - Lend, hoping for nothing again. As sufferers in an evil world, we will be rewarded for endurance. "If we suffer with him, we shall also **reign** with him". II Timothy 2:12.
- (14) If we **plant the gospel and water it** in people's lives. "He that plants (Paul) and he that waters (Apollos) are one: and every man shall **receive his own reward** according to his own **labour**". I Corinthians 3:8.
- (15) If we have **eternal values**. If we build on the foundation of Christ, by using gold, silver, precious stone type **works** of eternal value. I Corinthians 3:11-15. If our work abides, we will receive a **reward**. 3:14. If any man's life work shall be burned, he shall suffer **loss**, but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire. v.15. The quality of our life's work will be rewarded at the Judgment Seat of Christ.
- (16) If I **preach the gospel willingly**, I have a **reward**. I Corinthians 9:16,17.
- (17) **Meekness** in serving Christ. Blessed are the meek for they shall inherit the earth. (Matthew 5:5) The reward is real estate ownership in the Millennium.
- (18) Cast not away your **confidence** which hath great recompense of reward. Hebrews 10:35.
- (19) How we **treat other believers**. "God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have showed to His name in that ye have ministered to the saints and do minister". Hebrews 6:10.
- (20) How we exercise our **Pastoral ministry** to others. "Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that **must give account**, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you". Hebrews 13:17.
- (21) How we **use our God-given abilities**. "Thou hast been faithful over a very little, have thou authority over ten cities". Luke 19:17.
- (22) How we **use our money**. "Charge them that are rich in this world. that they be ready to distribute...." I Timothy 6:17-19. "**Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come**". 2 Cor 9:6,7
- (23) How much we **suffer** for Jesus Christ. "For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, works for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory". II Corinthian 4:17; Romans 8:18; I Peter 4:12,13; II Timothy 2:12.
- (24) How we **run the race** that God has **chosen** for us. "So run that ye may obtain". I Corinthian 9:24
- (25) How well we **control sin**. "Every man that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible crown." I Cor. 9:25-27.
- (26) How we react to **temptation**. "Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life". Revelation 2:10.

- (27) How much we **love the Lord's appearing**. "Henceforth there is laid up for me a **crown of righteousness**, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day; and not to me only, but unto all them also that **love His appearing**". II Timothy 4:8.
- (28) How **faithful** we are to the **Word of God**, and to **feed the flock** of God. "Feed the flock of God ... When the Chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a **crown of glory** that fades not away". I Peter 5:2-4.
- (29) **Doing everything heartily**, as unto the **Lord**. "Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ." Colossians 3:23,24.

III. WHAT WILL OUR REWARDS BE ?

The Christians' reward is sometimes mentioned as a "prize" (I Corinthians 9:24), and sometimes as a "crown" (I Corinthians 9:25). Five Crowns may be won:

- (1) **Incorruptible crown** - for those who discipline the body, as an athlete to achieve great things for God. I Corinthians 9:25-27.
- (2) **Rejoicing** - for those who win people to Christ. I Thessalonians 2:19,20.
- (3) **Life** - for those who love Christ enough to endure temptation. James 1:12; Revelation 2:10.
- (4) **Righteousness** - for those who love Christ's second coming. II Timothy 4:8.
- (5) **Glory** - for pastors and teachers who faithfully feed the flock of God. I Peter 5:2-4.

Other rewards available are :

- (1) Our Lord's **approval** - "Well done thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things." Matthew 25:21.
- (2) **Ruler over many things**. "If we suffer with him, we shall reign with him." II Timothy 2:12. "They shall reign for ever and ever." Revelation 22:5.
- (3) **Authority over 10 cities, 5 cities** etc. "Thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over 10 cities." Luke 19:17.
- (4) **Inherit all things**. "He that overcometh shall inherit all things". Revelation 21:7.
We may sit with Christ in His Throne. Revelation 3:21.
He has made us unto our God Kings and priests:and we shall reign on the earth. Revelation 5:10
- (5) His servants shall **Serve Him**. "They shall see his face". Revelation 22:3,4.

IV. HOW MAY WE LOSE OUR REWARDS ?

Is it possible for someone who has earned certain rewards to lose them through sinful living? These verses imply "yes":

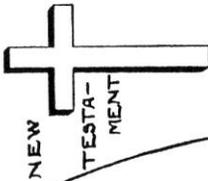
- (1) By **Backsliding**, not holding fast which thou hast. "Hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown". Revelation 3:11.
- (2) By **following Deceivers**. "For many deceivers are entered into the world". II John 7.
- (3) By **not looking to ourselves**, to check our behaviour. "Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but that we **receive a full reward**". II John 8.
- (4) By **Worshipping angels**. "Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, and not holding the Head...". Colossians 2:18.
- (5) By **not expecting Christ's return**. "Say in his heart: My lord delays his coming". Matt. 24:48.
- (6) By **doing wrong**. "He that doeth wrong **shall receive** for the wrong which he hath done" Col.3:25
- (7) By **not abiding in Christ**. Faithfulness in our service here to Christ will result in privileged service in eternity. Our works from salvation to the grave will be on display as a painting, so that all believers and angels can see the results of our life's work for Christ. "And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have **confidence**, and **not be ashamed** before Him at His coming". I John 2:28.

Question: Will you have confidence or be ashamed at Christ's coming?

9. — THE FEASTS OF JEHOVAH —

Leviticus 23

COMPLETED



NEW
TESTA-
MENT



The Lord's Death



The Lord's Resurrection

The Lord in Heaven, Seated at The Right Hand of GOD



TO COME
Christ
Coming
to His
Church



CHRIST THE
SUN OF
RIGHTNESS



HEAVENLY

ETERNITY

THE SABBATH

ETERNITY

THE EIGHTH DAY

EARTHLY

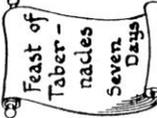
THE
MILLENNIUM



The Jews Repent



The Saints
Caught up
to Their
Land
Jews Return



← SEVENTH MONTH →



The Present Interval

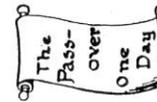
4th, 5th & 6th MONTH



3rd MONTH



← FIRST MONTH →



Eating the
Passover



The Sheaf
of Firstfruits



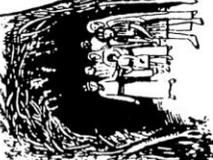
The Two
Israel
Scattered



Blowing the
Trumpets



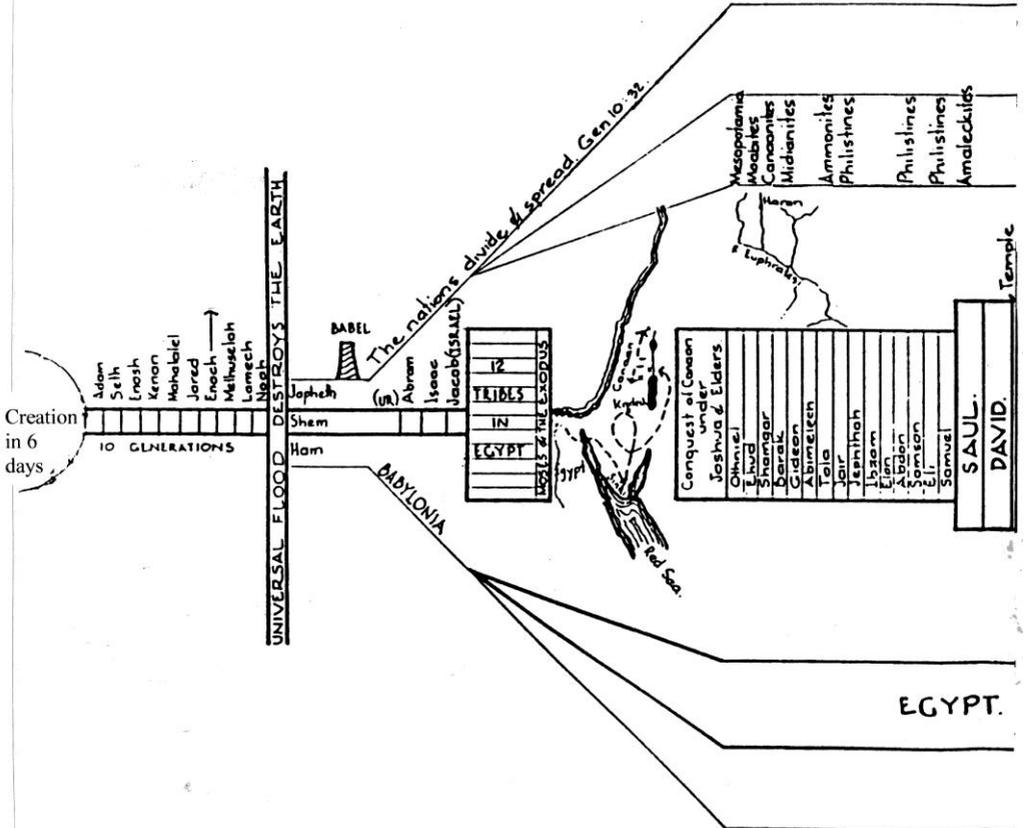
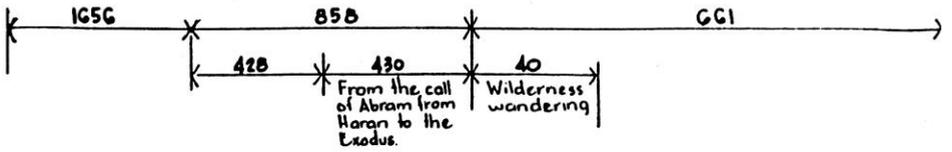
The Blood
of Atonement



Dwelling
in Booths

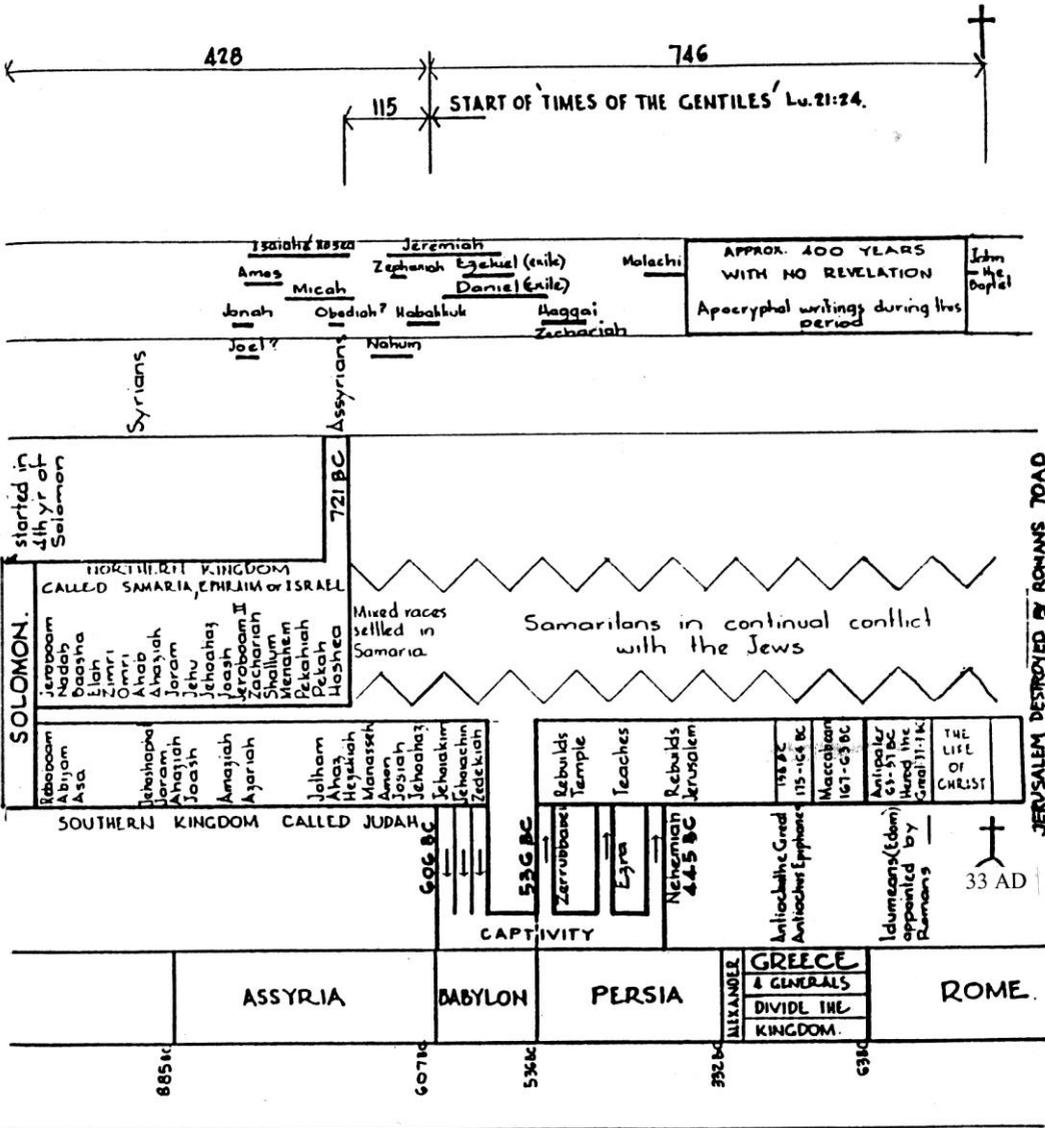
OLD
TESTA-
MENT

Used by permission 'Bible Light Publishers' Hong Kong.



HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

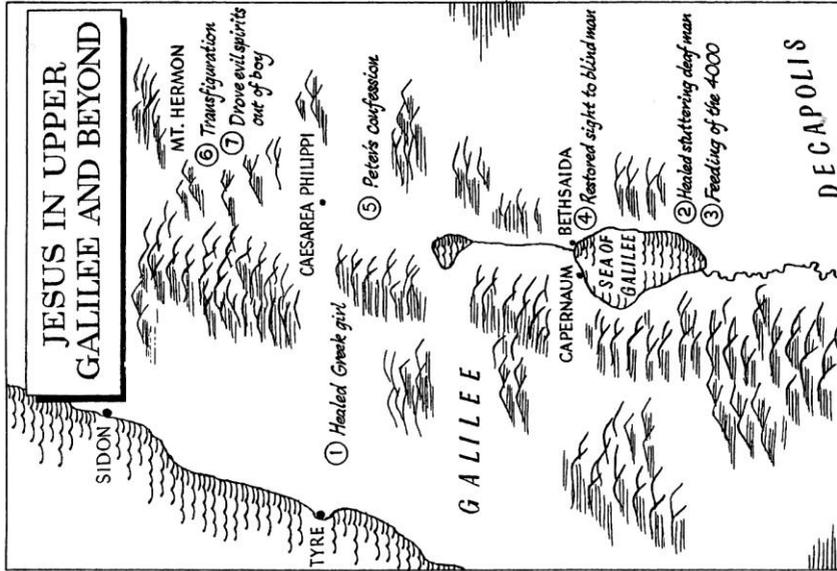
10. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND OF THE OLD TESTAMENT



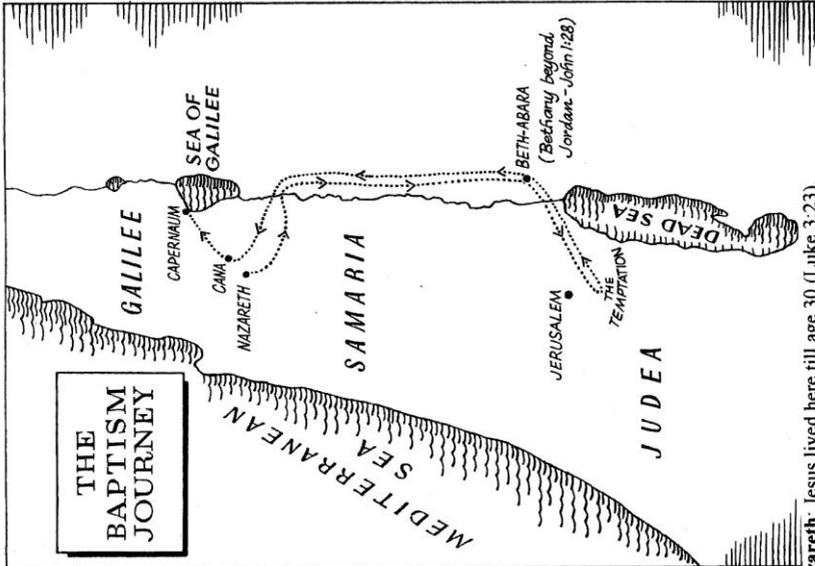
UND TO THE OLD TESTAMENT.

© 1983 J.ECOB

11. MAPS OF JESUS CHRIST and PAUL

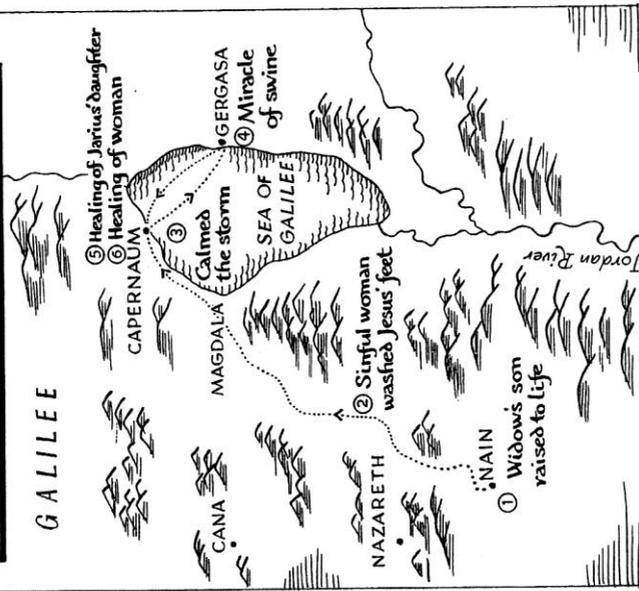


1. Tyre and Sidon: Jesus healed a Greek girl. (Mark 7:24-30).
2. Decapolis: Jesus healed a stammering deaf man. (Mark 7:31-37).
3. Jesus fed 4000 people. (Mark 8:1-10).
4. Bethsaida: Jesus healed a blind man. (Mark 8:22-26).
5. Caesarea Philippi Road: Peter confessed who Jesus was. (Mark 8:27-30).
6. Mt. Hermon: The Transfiguration. (Mark 9:2-8).
7. Foot of Mt. Hermon: Healed boy with dumb & deaf spirit. (Mark 9:14-29).



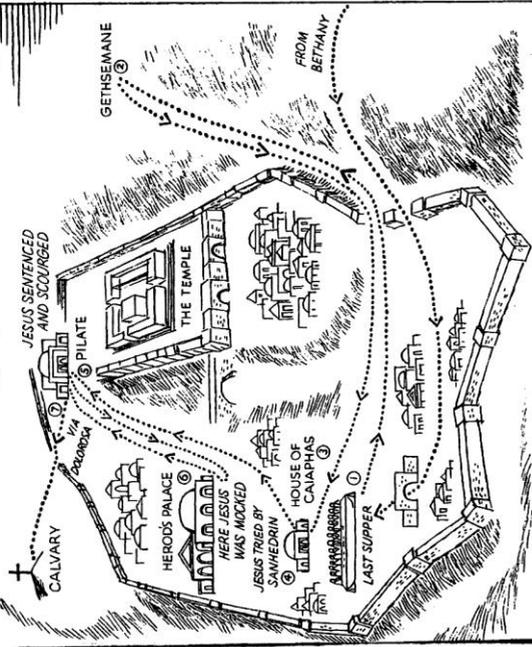
- Nazareth:** Jesus lived here till age 30 (Luke 3:23).
- Bethabara:** Jesus baptised (Matthew 3:13-17).
- Wilderness:** Jesus tempted for 40 days. (Matthew 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13).
- Galilee:** After the temptation, Jesus returned through Bethabara to Galilee.
- Capernaum:** Jesus chose 12 disciples (Matt. 4:18-22; John 1:43-51; Luke 6:12-16).
- Cana:** Jesus did his first miracle at a wedding, turning water to wine (John 2:1-11).
- Nazareth:** Jesus preached and rejected from synagogue (Luke 4:16-30). Jesus casts out demon (Mark 1:21-28), heals Peter's mother in law (Mark 1:29-31), and forgives and heals a paralyzed man let down through a roof (Mark 2:1-12).

JESUS' MINISTRY AROUND SEA OF GALILEE

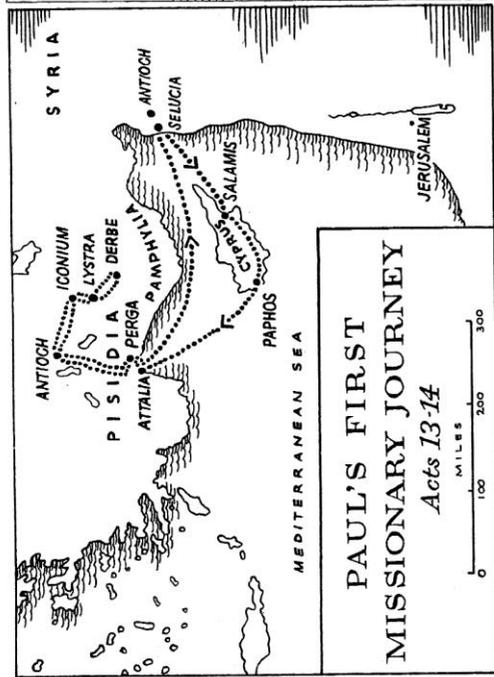


- 1. **Nain:** Jesus raised widow's son to life at funeral. (Luke 7:11-17)
- 2. **Nazareth:** Jesus raised Jairus' daughter. (Luke 8:26-33)
- 3. **Capernaum:** Jesus calms a storm. (Luke 8:22-25)
- 4. **Gadarenes:** Legion of demons cast out of man into pigs. (Luke 8:26-33)
- 5. **Capernaum:** Jesus raises Jairus' daughter. (Luke 8:40-56)
- 6. **Capernaum:** Jesus heals woman with issue of blood. (Luke 8:43-48)

Jesus Christ's Last Supper, Arrest, Trials, and Crucifixion.



- 1. **The Last Supper:** Jesus cleanses the temple of money changers & animal sellers. (v.45-48)
 - 2. **The Garden of Gethsemane:** Jesus prays, betrays and is arrested. (Luke 22:39-53)
 - 3. **Jesus before Caiaphas:** Jesus is mocked before Caiaphas the High Priest. (Matt 26:57-75)
 - 4. **Jesus before Pilate:** Jesus is mocked before Pilate. (Luke 22:66-71)
 - 5. **Jesus before Pilate:** Jesus is mocked before Herod and sent to Pilate. (Luke 23:7-12)
 - 6. **Jesus before Pilate:** Jesus is scourged & sentenced to die. (Luke 23:13-25; John 18:28-19:16)
 - 7. **Jesus before Pilate:** Jesus is crucified with two thieves. (Luke 23:26-56)
- Calvary:** Jesus crucified with the dead 3 days later. (Luke 24:1-12)
- Bethany:** Jesus appeared 40 days to over 500 believers. (Luke 24:13-50)
- Bethany:** Jesus ascended from Mt of Olives to heaven. (Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:1-12)

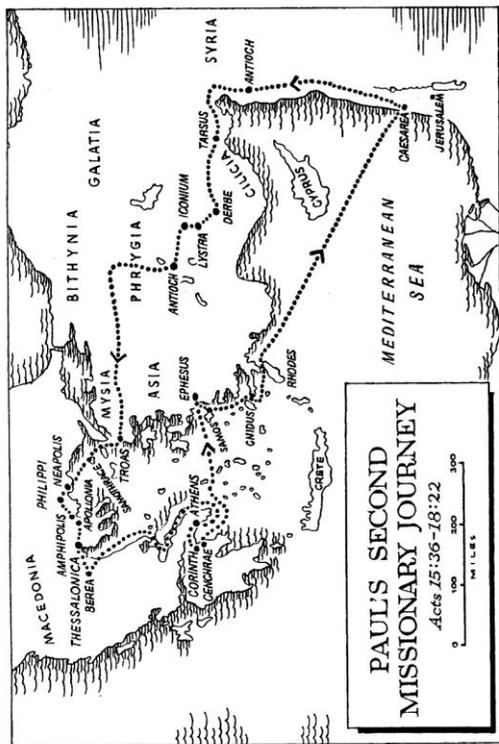


PAUL'S FIRST MISSIONARY JOURNEY

Acts 13:1-14:28

First Missionary Journey (Acts 13:1-14:28).

Antioch in Syria: Saul, Barnabas, Mark sent on a church planting journey (13:1-3).
Seleucia seaport 16 miles from Antioch. Sailed to Cyprus, Barnabas' home. (4:36).
Salamis on east coast of Cyprus. Preached in Jewish synagogues (13:5).
Paphos (100 miles SW). Elymas the sorcerer was blinded for trying to turn Sergius Paulus, the Roman Proconsul from Christ. Paul took the lead from here. (13:6-12).
Perga: John Mark left and returned to Jerusalem (13:3).
Antioch in Pisidia: Paul preached in their synagogue. Next Sabbath, envious Jews contradicted, blasphemed, persecuted & expelled them from the city. (13:14-50).
Icönium: Many Jews/Greeks believed. Paul & Barnabas expelled (13:51-14:5).
Lvstra: Paul healed a cripple. Jews from Antioch and Icönium stoned Paul (19).
Derbe: Paul and Barnabas preached the gospel and taught many (14:20,21).
Lvstra, Icönium, Antioch: Paul and Barnabas retraced their steps exhorting the disciples (21,22) and ordained elders in every church (14:23).
Perga: Paul preached there (25).
Attalia: Paul sailed to Antioch in Syria (26).
Antioch in Syria: Paul & Barnabas told sending church all God did. (14:26-28).

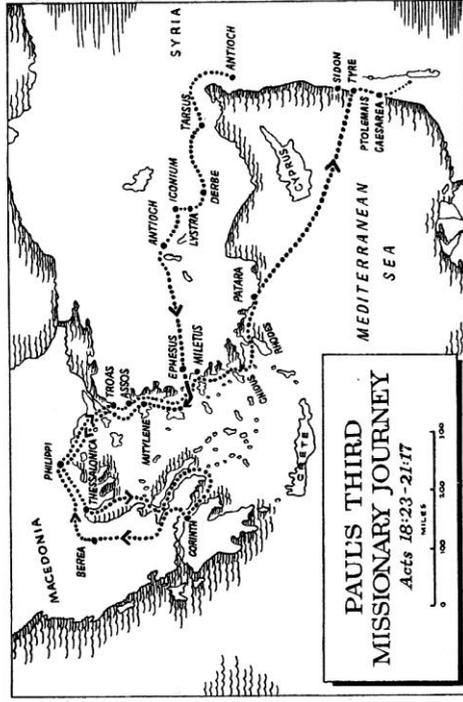


PAUL'S SECOND MISSIONARY JOURNEY

Acts 15:36-18:22

Second Missionary Journey (Acts 15:36-18:22).

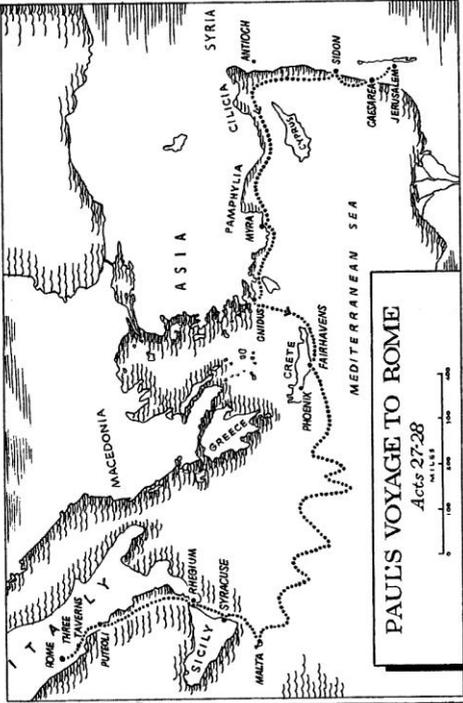
Antioch in Syria: Paul and Silas leave to visit the churches Paul started (15:36-41) strengthening churches in Syria and Cilicia.
Derbe, Lystra, Icönium, Antioch: Timothy, a young man, joined up. (16:1-5).
Phrygia, Galatia, Mysia: The Holy Spirit forbade them preaching in Asia. (16:6-8).
Troas: Paul's vision of a man of Macedonia praying. "Come over into Macedonia, and help us." (v.9). The "we" section commences with Luke joining the team.
Samothracia and Neapolis (v.11).
Philippi (16:12) chief city of Macedonia. Lydia saved and baptized (16:14,15). Paul and Silas beaten and imprisoned for casting demons out of a girl (16:16-24). Philippian jailer and household saved and baptized (16:25-40).
Amphipolis and Apollonia passed through (17:1).
Thessalonica: (17:1) Paul preached in synagogue for 3 sabbaths despite Jewish riots. **Berea:** (17:10) Paul preached in synagogue. Many believed. Thessalonian Jews opposed them. Paul left for Athens. Silas and Timothy remained there. (17:10-14).
Athens: (17:15) Paul disputed & preached on Mars Hill. Some believed (17:15-34).
Corinth: (18:1) Paul found Aquila, Priscilla. He persuaded Jews/Greeks in synagogue. Silas/Timothy rejoin Paul. Crispus believed. Paul taught here for 18 months. (18:1-17).
Ephesus: (18:19) Paul reasoned with Jews in synagogue. Set sail for Syria (18:19-21).
Caesarea: (18:22) Paul landed here, greeted the church. Travelled north to Antioch.



PAUL'S THIRD MISSIONARY JOURNEY
Acts 18:23-21:17

Third Missionary Journey (Acts 18:23-21:17).

Antioch in Syria: Paul departed from Antioch (18:23).
Derbe, Lystra, Iconium, Antioch: Paul revisited, strengthened these churches (18:23).
Ephesus: (18:24-) Apollos met and instructed (18:24-28). John's disciples believe on Christ (19:1-12). Paul preached in synagogue for 3 months. Vagabond Jews (19:11-20). Silversmith riot (19:23-41). I and II Corinthians written during 2-year stay.
Macedonia: (20:1) Paul sailed for Macedonia. Encouraged churches. (Romans written).
Greece: (20:2) Stayed 3 months, then headed home, passing through Macedonia.
Philippi: (20:6) Stayed here several days, then sailed for Troas.
Troas: (20:6-12) Before Paul left Troas, he preached in upper room. Eutyclus fell out. **Assos, Mitylene, Samos, Trogylium, Miletus:** (20:13-15).
Miletus: (20:15-38) Paul sent for the Ephesian elders and preached to them (20:17-38).
Coos, Rhodes, Patara, Cyprus: (21:1-3).
Tyre: (21:4-7) Stayed 7 days.
Ptolemais: (21:7) Greeted the believers and stayed one day.
Caesarea: (21:7-14) Stayed Philip. Agabus prophesied Paul's binding at Jerusalem.
Jerusalem: (21:15-40) Paul reported to the Jerusalem church elders. Paul arrested.



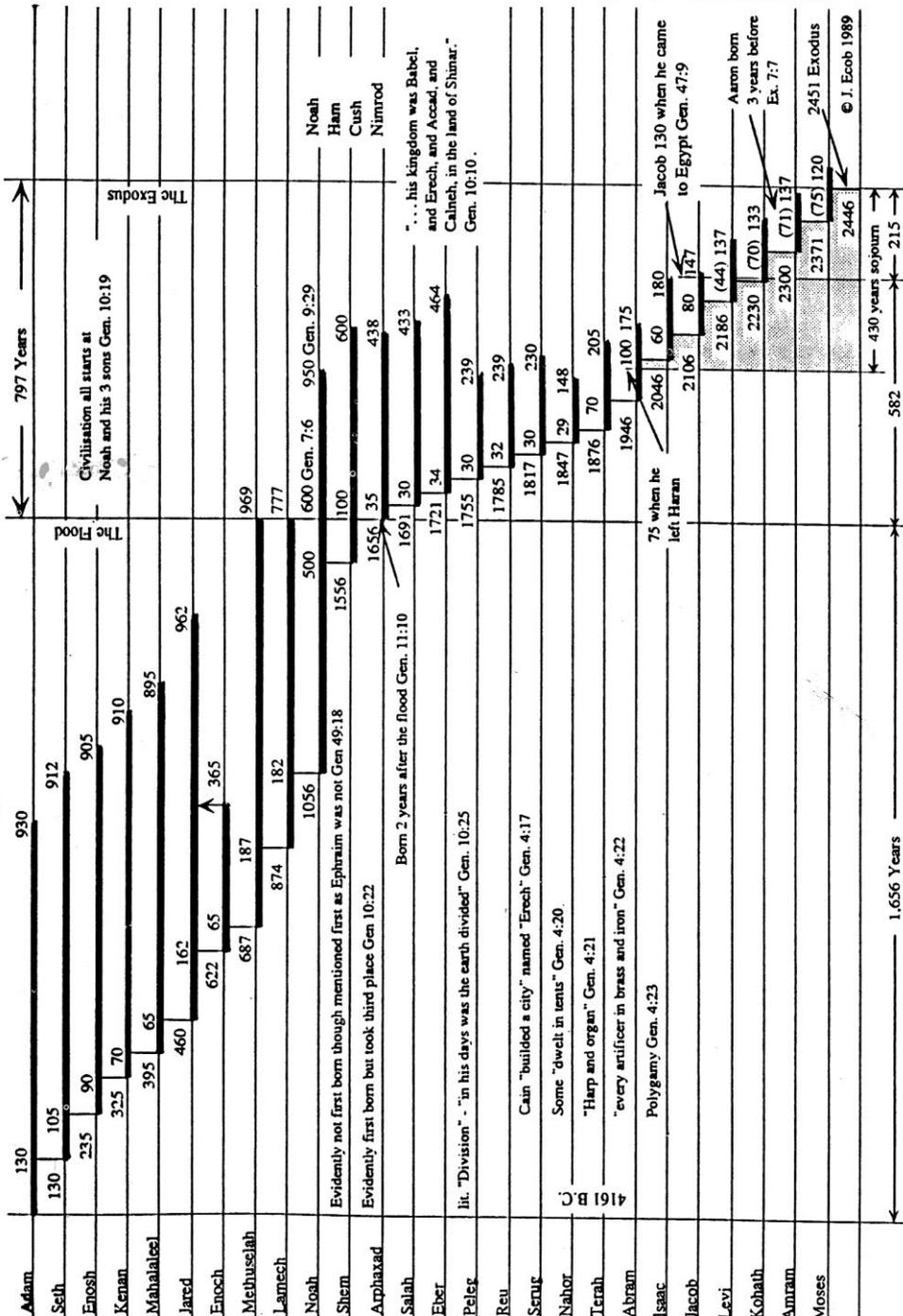
PAUL'S VOYAGE TO ROME
Acts 27-28

Paul's Voyage to Rome (Acts 27-28).

Caesarea: (23:23-35) Paul taken from Jerusalem to Caesarea by 470 soldiers.
Sidon: (27:1-3) Ship stopped here. Julius (centurion) allowed Paul to visit his friends Myra: (27:5-6) Ship terminated here. They boarded another ship sailing to Italy.
Fair Havens, Island of Crete: (27:8-44) Paul warned voyage would end in disaster. **Malta:** (28:1-) Shipwrecked on Malta. After 3 months, they left in another ship. **Syracuse:** on Sicily (28:12). They stayed for 3 days.
Rhegium was the first port on Italy's mainland. They stayed one day (28:13).
Putoli: (28:13,14). Paul was permitted to stay 7 days with some Christians.
Rome: (28:15-31) Paul stayed for 2 years, preached, sent letters. Executed by Nero.

12. MISCELLANEOUS CHARTS and TABLES

Genealogy From Adam to the Exodus



1,656 Years

582

430 years sojourn

215

2451 Exodus

© J. Ecob 1989

→ THE TABERNACLE

A FIGURE A SHADOW

HEB. 9:8,9 & 24

HEB. 10:1

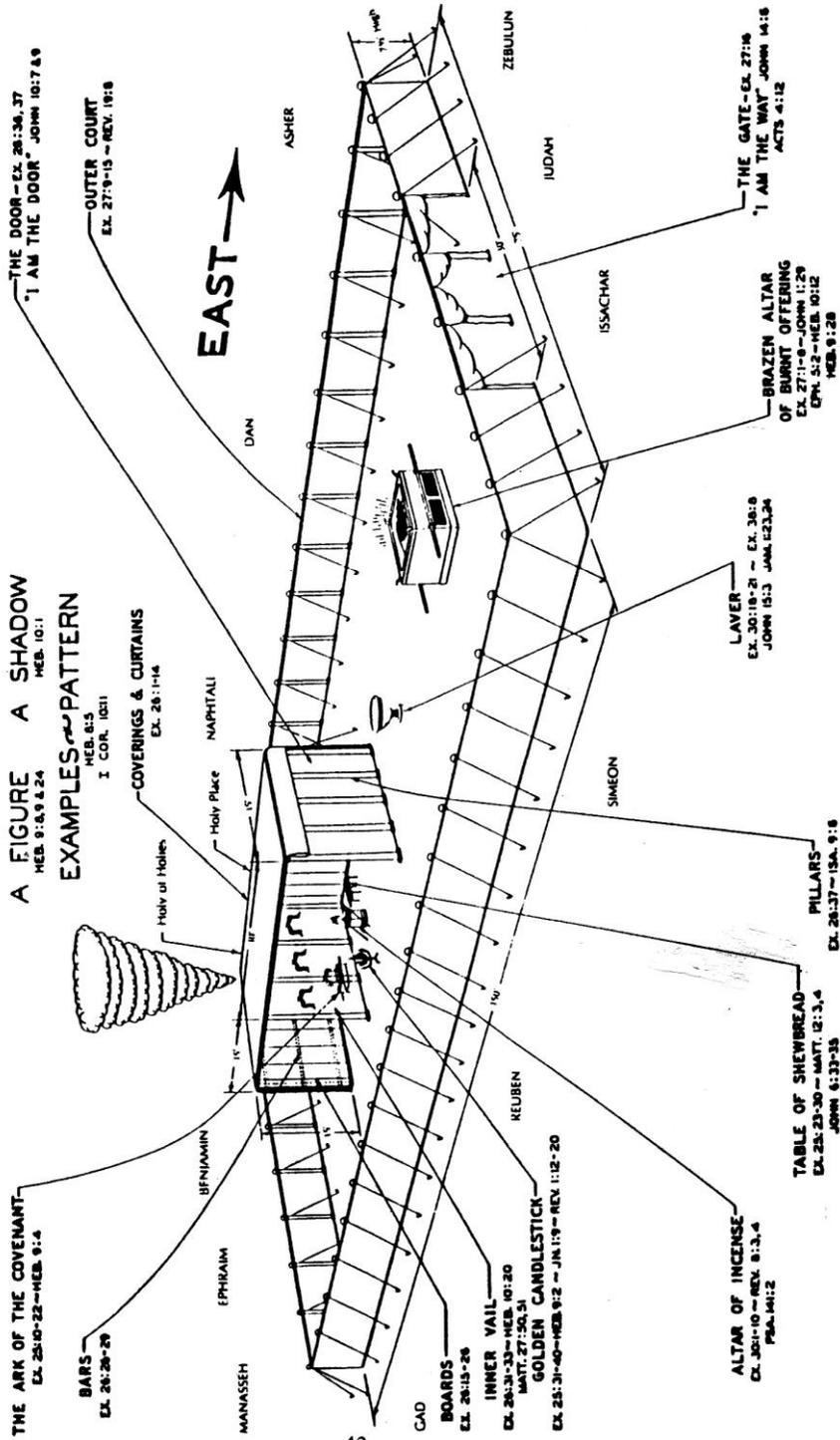
EXAMPLES OF PATTERN

HEB. 8:5

I COR. 10:1

COVERINGS & CURTAINS

EX. 28:1-14



These 200 Omissions are in the Greek Textus

Griesbach, Lachmann, Tischendorf, Tregelles, Alford, Wordsworth, Westcott and Hort; in foot-notes omissions in our modern Bibles. Words omitted, in brackets, parentheses, or italics are counted as not occur in your Bible and be surprised. *Interlinear Greek Textus Receptus*. . . . Postpaid \$11.95

MATTHEW

- 1:25 – (FIRSTBORN) is out. Speaking of the Lord Jesus.
- 5:44 – (BLESS THEM THAT CURSE YOU) is out.
- 6:13 – (KINGDOM, POWER, GLORY) is out.
- 6:27 – (STATURE) is changed to span of life.
- 6:33 – (OF GOD) is out. Referring to the kingdom—
- 8:29 – (JESUS) is out. As Son of God.
- 9:13 – (TO REPENTANCE) is out. Calling sinners—
- 12:35 – (OF THE HEART) is out. Good treasure—
- 12:47 – (VERSE IS OUT) About Christ's mother.
- 13:51 – (JESUS SAID UNTO THEM and LORD) is out.
- 15:8 – (DRAWETH UNTO ME WITH THEIR MOUTH) is out.
- 16:3 – (O YE HYPOCRITES) is out.
- 16:20 – (JESUS) is out.
- 17:21 – (VERSE IS OUT) About prayer and fasting.
- 18:11 – (VERSE IS OUT) Tells Jesus came to save.
- 19:9 – (LAST 11 WORDS ARE OUT) About adultery.
- 19:17 – (GOD) is out. None good but (God)
- 20:7 – (WHATSOEVER IS RIGHT RECEIVE) is out.
- 20:16 – (MANY BE CALLED BUT FEW CHOSEN) is out.
- 20:22 – (BAPTIZED WITH CHRIST'S BAPTISM) is out.
- 21:44 – (VERSE IS OUT) About Christ the stone.
- 23:14 – (VERSE IS OUT) Woe Scribes and hypocrites.
- 25:13 – (WHEREIN THE SON OF MAN COMETH) is out.
- 27:35 – (FULFILLED SPOKEN BY THE PROPHET) is out.
- 27:54 – (THE SON OF GOD) is a son of God.
- 28:2 – (FROM THE DOOR) is out.
- 28:9 – (THEY WENT TO TELL HIS DISCIPLES) is out.

MARK

- 1:1 – (SON OF GOD) is out in Williams, Goodspeed, Panin, Nestle, New World, Westcott & Hort.
- 1:14 – (OF THE KINGDOM) is out. Jesus gospel—
- 1:31 – (IMMEDIATELY) is out. The fever left—
- 2:17 – (TO REPENTANCE) is out. Call sinners—
- 6:11 – (MORE TOLERABLE FOR SODOM & GOMORRHA) is out.
- 6:16 – (FROM THE DEAD) is out. John is risen—
- 6:33 – (HIM) is changed to them.
- 7:8 – (WASHING OF POTS AND CUPS) is out.
- 7:16 – (VERSE IS OUT) About having an ear to hear.
- 9:24 – (LORD) is out. A believer called Him Lord.
- 9:42 – (N ME) is out. Little ones that believe—
- 9:44 – (VERSE IS OUT) About fire not quenched.
- 9:46 – (VERSE IS OUT) Where worn dieth not.
- 9:49 – (EVERY SACRIFICE SHALL BE SALTED) is out.
- 0:21 – (TAKE UP THE CROSS) is out. Jesus said—
- 0:24 – (FOR THEM THAT TRUST IN RICHES) is out.
- 11:10 – (IN THE NAME OF THE LORD) is out.
- 11:26 – (VERSE IS OUT) If ye do not forgive, etc.
- 13:14 – (SPOKEN BY DANIEL THE PROPHET) is out.
- 13:33 – (AND PRAY) is out, or in italics.
- 14:68 – (AND THE COCK CREW) is out.
- 15:28 – (VERSE IS OUT) Scripture was fulfilled, etc.
- 15:39 – (THE SON OF GOD) is a son of God.
- 16:9-20 (12 VERSES ARE OUT) in some Bibles.

LUKE

- 1:28 – (BLESSED ART THOU AMONG WOMEN) is out.
- 2:33 – (JOSEPH) is changed to father.
- 2:43 – (JOSEPH AND HIS MOTHER) is changed to parents.
- 4:4 – (BUT BY EVERY WORD OF GOD) is out.
- 4:8 – (GET THEE BEHIND ME SATAN) is out.
- 4:41 – (THE CHRIST) is out. The Son of God.
- 6:48 – (FOUNDED UPON A ROCK) is well built.
- 7:31 – (AND THE LORD SAID) is out.
- 9:54 – (EVEN AS ELLIAH DID) is out.

LUKE Continued

- 9:55 – (YE KNOW NOT WHAT MANNER OF SPIRIT) is out.
- 9:56 – (SON OF MAN IS COME TO SAVE LIVES) is out.
- 11:2-4 – (MUCH IS OMITTED FROM THE LORD'S PRAYER)
- 11:29 – (THE PROPHET) is out. About Jonah.
- 17:36 – (VERSE IS OUT) One taken, another left.
- 21:4 – (CAST IN UNTO THE OFFERINGS OF GOD) is out.
- 22:20 – (VERSE IS OUT) Out in NEB, and RSV.
- 22:31 – (AND THE LORD SAID) is out.
- 22:64 – (THEY STRUCK HIM ON THE FACE) is out.
- 23:17 – (WHOLE VERSE IS OUT) in many Bibles.
- 23:38 – (LETTERS OF GREEK, LATIN, HEBREW) is out.
- 23:42 – (LORD) is out. Remember me, etc.
- 23:45 – (SUN WAS ECLIPSED) in Moffatt and NEB.
- 24:3 – (OF THE LORD JESUS) is out.
- 24:6 – (HE IS NOT HERE, BUT IS RISEN) is out.
- 24:12 – (VERSE IS OUT) Peter's testimony.
- 24:40 – (VERSE IS OUT) Christ showed them hands, feet.
- 24:49 – (OF JERUSALEM) is out.
- 24:51 – (CARRIED UP INTO HEAVEN) is out.

JOHN

- 1:14 – (BEGOTTEN) is out in 1:18, 3:16, 3:18.
- 1:27 – (PREFERRED BEFORE ME) is out. Jesus is—
- 3:13 – (WHICH IS IN HEAVEN) is out.
- 3:15 – (SHOULD NOT PERISH) is out.
- 4:42 – (THE CHRIST) is out.
- 5:3 – (WAITING FOR MOVING OF THE WATER) is out.
- 5:4 – (VERSE IS OUT) Pool of Bethesda.
- 6:47 – (ON ME) is out. He that believes—
- 6:69 – (THAT CHRIST THE SON) is out.
- 7:53 – (TO 8:11) is out, in brackets or italics.
- 8:16 – (FATHER) is out. Changed to He.
- 9:35 – (SON OF GOD) is out. Is Son of Man.
- 11:41 – (WHERE THE DEAD WAS LAID) is out.
- 16:16 – (BECAUSE I GO TO THE FATHER) is out.
- 17:12 – (IN THE WORLD) is out.
- 20:29 – (THOMAS) is out.

ACTS

- 2:30 – (ACCORDING TO FLESH RAISE UP CHRIST) is out.
- 7:30 – (OF THE LORD) is out. An angel—
- 7:37 – (HIM SHALL YE HEAR) is out. Christ—
- 8:37 – (VERSE IS OUT) or in brackets, or italics.
- 9:5-6 – (MUCH IS OMITTED) Concerning God's will.
- 10:6 – (WHAT THOU OUGHTEST TO DO) More is out.
- 15:18 – (KNOWN UNTO GOD HIS WORKS) More is out.
- 16:31 – (CHRIST) is out.
- 17:26 – (BLOOD) is out.
- 20:25 – (OF GOD) is out. The kingdom—
- 20:32 – (BRETHREN) is out.
- 23:9 – (LET US NOT FIGHT AGAINST GOD) is out.
- 24:6-8 – (MUCH IS OMITTED) or in brackets or italics.
- 24:15 – (OF THE DEAD) is out. Resurrection—
- 28:16 – (HALF OF VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.
- 28:29 – (VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.

ROMANS

- 1:16 – (OF CHRIST) is out or in italics, brackets.
- 1:29 – (FORNICATION) is out.
- 5:2 – (BY FAITH) out in Moffatt, RSV, and NEB.
- 8:1 – (LAST 10 WORDS ARE OUT) or in italics.
- 9:28 – (IN RIGHTEOUSNESS) is out.
- 10:15 – (OF PEACE) is out. Gospel of—
- 10:17 – (OF GOD) is out. Christ is substituted.
- 11:6 – (LAST 18 WORDS ARE OMITTED)

Receptus from which the King James Bible Came

and translations, have changed the Greek Textus Receptus in about 6,000 places. This is why we have so many authentic according to BRAIN-WASHED modern scholarship. With a red pencil, mark all these omissions which

ROMANS Continued

- 13:9 - (SHALL NOT BEAR FALSE WITNESS) is out.
14:6 - (15 WORDS ARE OUT) Regarding the day.
14:21 - (OFFENDED, MADE WEAK) is out.
15:29 - (OF THE GOSPEL) is out.
16:24 - (WHOLE VERSE IS OUT) in italics or brackets.

1 CORINTHIANS

- 1:14 - (I THANK GOD) is out in many Bibles.
5:7 - (FOR US) is out. Christ sacrificed—
6:20 - (LAST 7 WORDS ARE OUT) Your spirit, etc.
7:5 - (FASTING) is out. Joined with prayer.
7:39 - (BY THE LAW) is out. The wife is bound—
10:28 - (THE EARTH IS THE LORD'S) is out, and more.
11:24 - (TAKE EAT) is out. This is my body—
11:29 - (LORD'S) is out, referring to the body.
15:47 - (THE LORD) is out. Lord from heaven.
16:22 - (JESUS CHRIST) is out.
16:23 - (CHRIST) is out.

2 CORINTHIANS

- 4:6 - (JESUS) is out.
4:10 - (THE LORD) is out.
5:18 - (JESUS) is out, or in italics.
11:31 - (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

GALATIANS

- 1:15 - (GOD) is out.
3:1 - (THAT YE SHOULD NOT OBEY TRUTH) is out.
3:17 - (IN CHRIST) is out.
4:7 - (THROUGH CHRIST) is out.
6:15 - (IN CHRIST JESUS) is out.
6:17 - (LORD) is out.

EPHESIANS

- 3:9 - (BY JESUS CHRIST) is out. God created—
3:14 - (OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST) is out.
5:30 - (OF HIS FLESH AND OF HIS BONES) is out.
6:1 - (IN THE LORD) is out. Obey parents—
6:10 - (MY BRETHREN) is out.

PHILIPPIANS

- 3:16 - (LET US MIND THE SAME THING) is out.

COLOSSIANS

- 1:2 - (THE LORD JESUS CHRIST) is out.
1:14 - (THROUGH HIS BLOOD) is out, or in italics.
1:28 - (JESUS) is out.
2:11 - (OF THE SINS OF) is out.
3:6 - (SONS OF DISOBEDIENCE) is out.

1 THESSALONIANS

- 1:1 - (FROM GOD OUR FATHER AND LORD JESUS) is out.
2:19 - (CHRIST) is out.
3:11 - (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.
3:13 - (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

2 THESSALONIANS

- 1:8 - (CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

1 TIMOTHY

- 1:17 - (WISE) is out. The only wise God.
2:7 - (IN CHRIST) is out, or in italics.
3:16 - (GOD) is out. Manifest in the flesh.
4:12 - (IN SPIRIT) is out.
6:5 - (FROM SUCH WITHDRAW THYSELF) is out.

2 TIMOTHY

- 1:11 - (OF THE GENTILES) is out.
4:1 - (LORD) is out.
4:22 - (JESUS CHRIST) is out, or in italics.

TITUS

- 1:4 - (THE LORD) is out, or in italics.

PHILEMON

- 1:6 - (JESUS) is out.
1:12 - (RECEIVE HIM) is out.

HEBREWS

- 1:3 - (BY HIMSELF) is out. Purged our sins—
2:7 - (SET HIM OVER THE WORKS OF THY HANDS) is out.
3:1 - (CHRIST) is out.
7:21 - (AFTER ORDER OF MELCHISEDEC) is out.
10:30 - (SAITH THE LORD) is out.
10:34 - (IN HEAVEN) is out.
11:11 - (WAS DELIVERED OF A CHILD) is out. Sarah—

JAMES

- 5:16 - (FAULTS) is changed to sins. (Wrong Greek text.)

1 PETER

- 1:22 - (THROUGH THE SPIRIT) is out.
4:1 - (FOR US) is out. Christ suffered—
4:14 - (LAST 15 WORDS ARE OUT) or in italics.
5:10 - (JESUS) is out, or in italics.
5:11 - (GLORY AND DOMINION) is out of some Bibles.

2 PETER

- 2:17 - (FOREVER) is out, or in italics.
3:9 - (US IS CHANGED TO YOU) Destroys meaning.

1 JOHN

- 1:7 - (CHRIST) is out.
2:7 - (FROM THE BEGINNING) is out.
4:3 - (CHRIST IS COME IN THE FLESH) is out.
4:9 - (BEGOTTEN) is out in some versions.
4:19 - (HIM) is out, or in italics. We love—
5:7-8 (MANY WORDS ARE OUT OR CHANGED)
5:13 - (LAST 13 WORDS ARE OUT)

JUDE

- 1:25 - (WISE) is out. Referring to God.

REVELATION

- 1:8 - (THE BEGINNING AND THE END) is out.
1:11 - (TEN WORDS ARE OUT) Alpha and Omega, etc.
2:13 - (THY WORKS) is out.
5:14 - (HIM THAT LIVETH FOREVER AND EVER) is out.
6:1 - (AND SEE) is out in 3, 5, 7 also.
8:13 - (ANGEL IS EAGLE) Greek text says "angel."
11:17 - (AND ART TO COME) is out.
12:12 - (INHABITERS OF) is out. The earth.
12:17 - (CHRIST) is out.
14:5 - (BEFORE THE THRONE OF GOD) is out.
16:17 - (OF HEAVEN) is out.
20:9 - (GOD OUT OF) is out. Fire came from—
20:12 - (GOD IS CHANGED TO THRONE)
21:24 - (OF THEM WHICH ARE SAVED) is out. Nations—

THE NEW INTERNATIONAL VERSION OMITS THE LORD JESUS CHRIST.

In the New International Version, references to "Lord" are omitted 39 times, "Jesus" 87 times and "Christ" 52 times.

These passages are shown below. The word's in bold are also omitted from the NIV.

Matthew	13:51	They say unto him, Yea, LORD
	28:6	Come, see the place where the LORD lay.
Mark	9:24	and said with tears, LORD I believe ;
	11:10	that cometh in the name of the LORD .
Luke	7:31	the LORD said, Whereunto then shall I liken the men of this generation ?
	9:57	a certain man said unto him, LORD I will follow thee. .
	17:6	the LORD said, If ye had faith as a grain of mustard seed. .
	22:31	the LORD said, Simon, Simon, behold.. .
	23:42	Jesus, LORD remember me
John	4:1	When therefore the LORD knew how the Pharisees
	6:34	LORD evermore give us this bread .
	8:11	She said, No man, LORD .
	9:36	Who is he, LORD that I might believe on him ?
Acts	7:30	an angel of the LORD in a flame of fire in a bush.
	7:37	A prophet shall the LORD your God raise up. .
	9:5	the LORD said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.
	9:6	and he trembling and astonished said, LORD what wilt thou have me to do? and the LORD said unto him...
	10:48	he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the LORD .
	22:16	calling on the name of the LORD
Romans	1:3	Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our LORD
	6:11	but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our LORD
	14:6	and he that regardeth not the day, to the LORD he doth not regard it .
	16:24	The grace of our LORD Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen
I Corinthians	10:28	for the earth is the LORD 's and the fullness thereof.
	15:47	the second man is the LORD from heaven.

II Corinthians	4 :10	in the body the dying of the LORD Jesus.
Galatians	6:17	I bear in my body the marks of the LORD Jesus.
Ephesians	3:14	I bow my knees unto the Father of our LORD Jesus Christ.
Colossians	1:2	from God our Father and the LORD Jesus Christ.
I Thessalonians	1:1	from God our Father, and the LORD Jesus Christ.
I Timothy	1:1	and LORD Jesus Christ .
	5:21	I charge thee before God, and the LORD Jesus Christ
II Timothy	4:1	I charge thee therefore before God, and the LORD Jesus Christ.
Titus	1:4	Grace, mercy and peace, from God the Father and the LORD Jesus Christ our Saviour .
Hebrews	10:30	I will recompense, saith the LORD .
II John	3	from God the Father, and from the LORD Jesus Christ.
Jude	4	denying the only Lord God, and our LORD Jesus Christ.
Revelations	16.5	Thou art righteous, O LORD
	19:1	power, unto the LORD our God.

In John 20:13, Mary was weeping and the angel said, "woman why weapest thou?" She replied, "because they have **TAKEN AWAY MY LORD.**" How much more would she weep today, if she was to look at the modern translations, which delete the LORD 39 times. We should weep also.

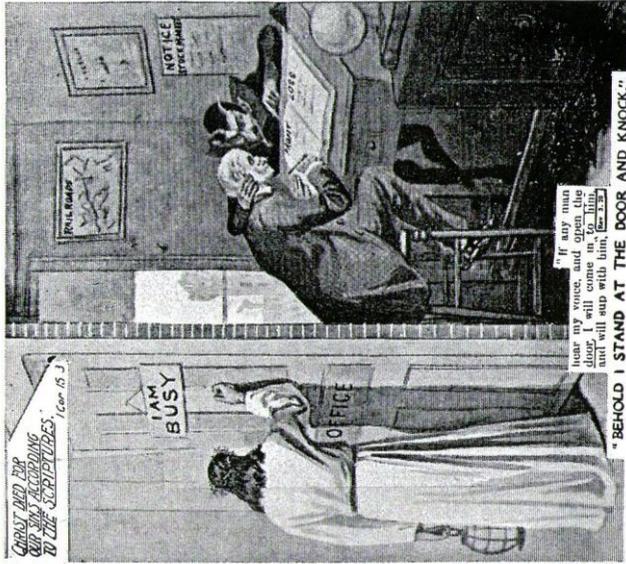
References to "**CHRIST**" are omitted 52 times, as in these examples:

Matthew	23:8	one is your Master, even CHRIST
Luke	4:41	devils came out....saying, thou are CHRIST the Son of God.
John	4:42	this is indeed the CHRIST the Saviour of the world.
	6:69	we believe and are sure that thou art that CHRIST , the Son of the living God.
Acts	2:30	he would raise up CHRIST to sit on his throne.
	4:26	against the Lord, and against his CHRIST
	8:37	I believe that Jesus CHRIST is the Son of God.
	9:20	he preached CHRIST in the synagogues.
	15:11	through the grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST we shall be saved..
	16:31	Believe on the Lord Jesus CHRIST and thou shalt be saved.
	19:4	that is, on CHRIST Jesus.
	20:21	faith toward our Lord Jesus CHRIST .
Romans	1:3	Concerning his Son Jesus CHRIST our Lord.
	1:16	I am not ashamed of the gospel of CHRIST
	14:10	We shall all stand before the judgment seat of CHRIST .
	16:20	The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you.
	16:24	The grace of our Lord Jesus CHRIST be with you all.

- I Corinthians 5:4 In the name of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
5:4 with the power of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
9:1 have I not seen Jesus **CHRIST** our Lord.
10:9 Neither let us tempt **CHRIST**
16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus **CHRIST** let him be Anathema.
16:23 The grace of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** be with you.
- II Corinthians 11:31 The God and Father of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
- Galatians 3:17 confirmed before of God in **CHRIST**
4:7 an heir of God through **CHRIST**
6:15 for in **CHRIST** Jesus neither circumcision.
- Ephesians 3:9 who created all things by Jesus **CHRIST**
3:14 Father of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
- Philippians 4:13 I can do all things through **CHRIST** which strengtheneth me.
- Colossians 1:2 from God our Father and the Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
3:13 even as **CHRIST** forgave you,
- I Thessalonians 1:1 from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
2:19 even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** at his coming?
3:11 and our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** direct our way unto you.
3:13 at the coming of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** with all his saints.
- II Thessalonians 1:8 that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST**
1:12 That the name of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** may be glorified in you,
2:2 That the day of **CHRIST** is at hand.
- I Timothy 2:7 I speak the truth in **CHRIST** and lie not;
- II Timothy 2:19 Let every one that nameth the name of **CHRIST** depart from iniquity.
4:22 The Lord Jesus **CHRIST** be with thy spirit.
- Hebrews 3:1 Consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, **CHRIST** Jesus.
- I John 1:7 the blood of Jesus **CHRIST** his son, cleanseth us from all sin.
4:3 every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus **CHRIST** is come in the flesh, is... .
- II John 9 He that abideth in the doctrine of **CHRIST** he hath...
- Revelations 1:9 patience of Jesus **CHRIST**...and for the testimony of Jesus **CHRIST**
12:17 have the testimony of Jesus **CHRIST**
22:21 The grace of our Lord Jesus **CHRIST** be with you all. Amen
- I Corinthians 15:23 they that are **CHRIST**'S at his coming.
- II Corinthians 10:7 as he is **CHRIST**'S, even so are we Christ's.

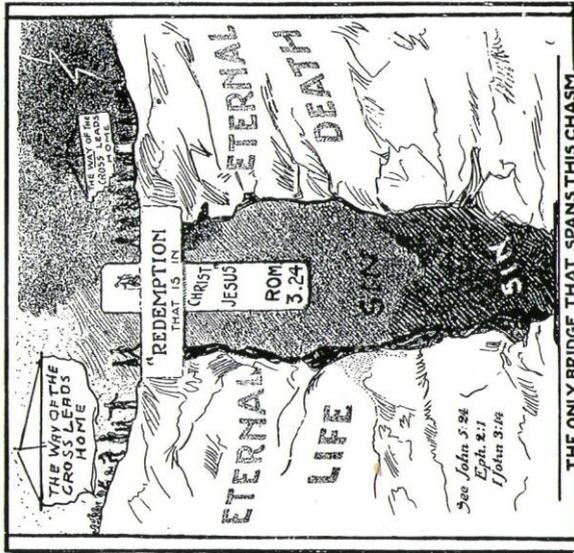
13. SOME CHALLENGING THOUGHTS

CHRIST OR SATAN?



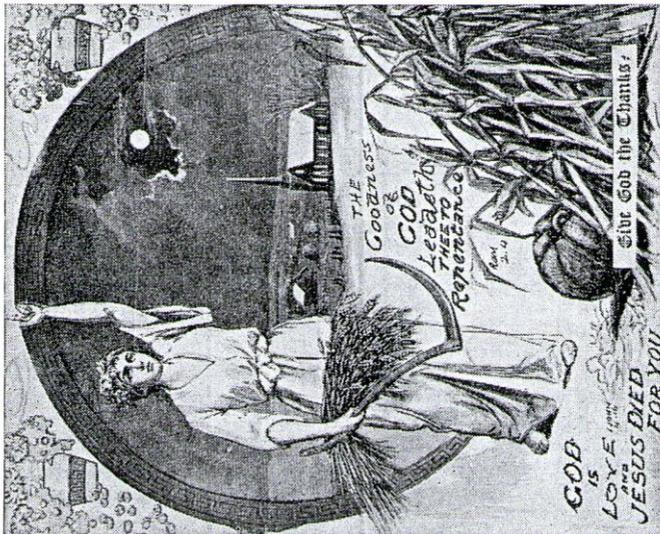
"BEHOLD I STAND AT THE DOOR AND KNOCK."

A WONDERFUL BRIDGE.



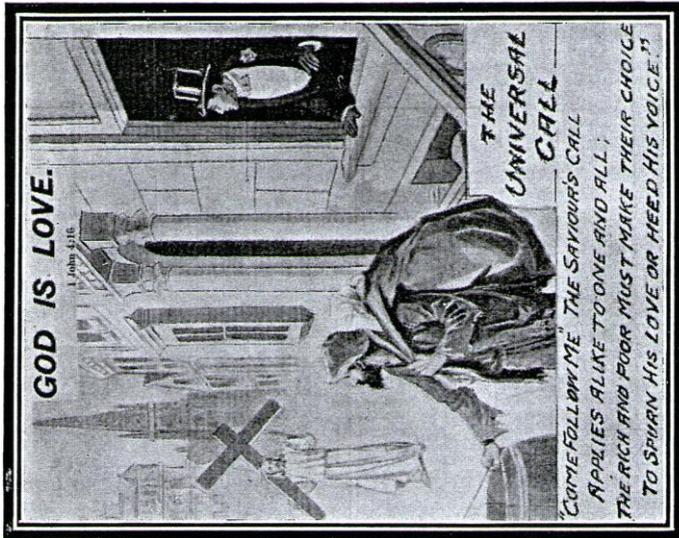
THE ONLY BRIDGE THAT SPANS THIS CHASM

RETROSPECT.



"Thou shalt remember all the way which the Lord thy God led thee."—Deuteronomy 8: 2.

REST FOR THE WEARY.

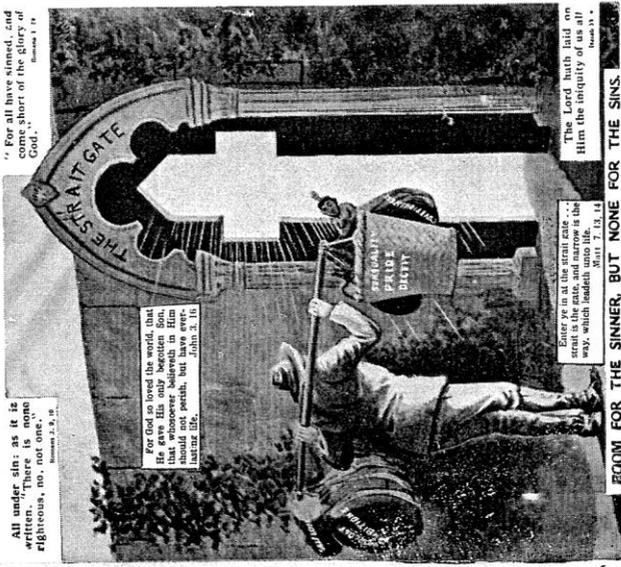


LIVING WATER.



The man in the picture represents a class of person who seem much concerned about what they do not believe. When spoken to about their soul's salvation they meet us with, "I do not believe the world was made in six days"; "I do not believe the story of Jonah and the whale"; "I do not believe in hell fire," etc. Such persons are burdened with the useless negatives of faith, and may well be asked to cast these away and have, instead, the positive belief in Jesus Christ, and "drink of the fountain of life."

HEAVEN OR HELL? AND THE WAY TO GET THERE.

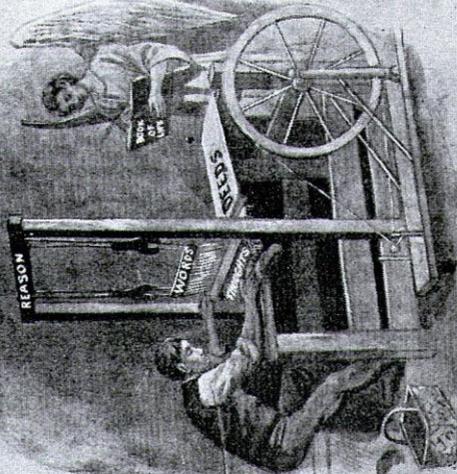


'Strive to enter in at the strait gate.'—Luke 13: 24.

THE LOOM OF LIFE.

Hardin is My Father glorified, that ye have shared much fruit.

God is not ungrateful to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have showed toward His Name. John 15: 16

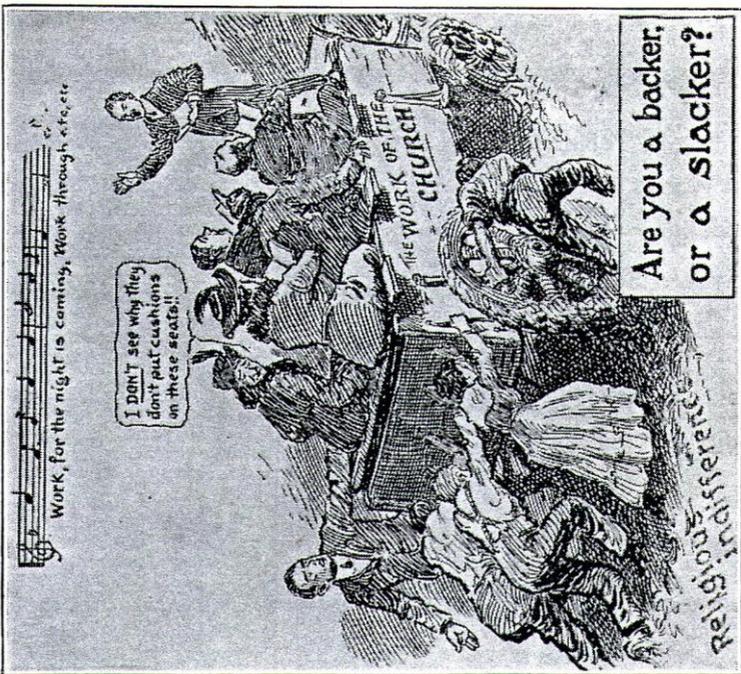


THE LOOM OF LIFE
 HE IS USING LABOR, REASON, THOUGHTS & WORDS TO WEAVE GOOD DEEDS, AND THE RECORDING ANGEL NOTES IN THE BOOK OF LIFE

"The years' of man are the looms of God
 (They are passing us one by one),
 And therein we are weaving always,
 Till the mystical work is done.
 And when the task is ended,
 And the web is turned and shown,
 Shall we hear the voice of the Master
 Saying to us, "Well done"?"

CURSE OF MEROZ.

Judges 5:23



Are you a backer,
 or a slacker?

PROSPECT.

A NEW YEAR'S ADDRESS.

The Two Plans—Which is Yours for the New Year?



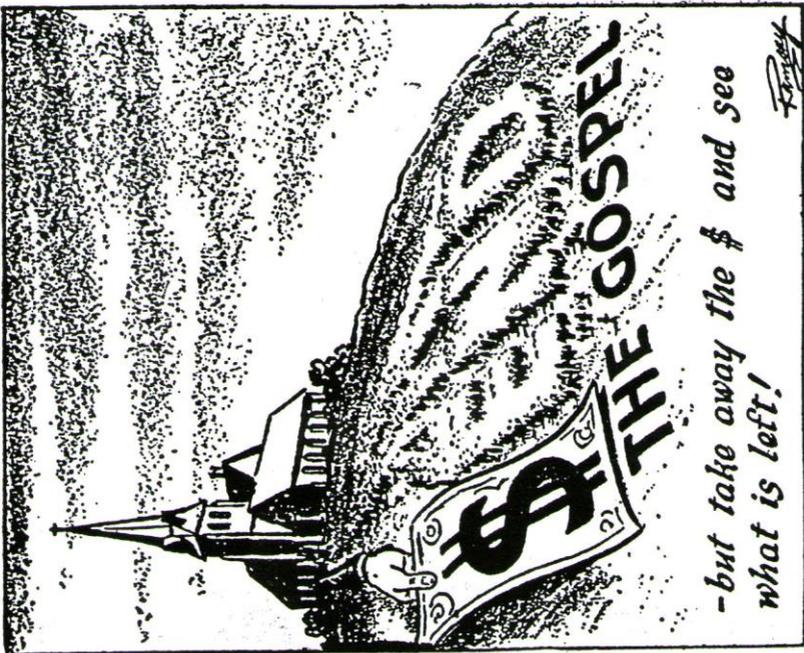
"Thy plans, O Lord, are better far
Than all our best contrivings are.
The future days we cannot see
Are all, we know, ordained by Thee;
And we have but to take Thy hand
And go the way that Thou hast planned."

IN HIS STEPS OR WHAT WOULD JESUS DO?



"Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example that we should follow His steps."—1 Pet. 2: 21.

THE MISSION OF THE CHURCH



1

THE SAVIOUR'S COMMAND
Matt. 28:19



2

THE SPIRIT'S CONDUCT



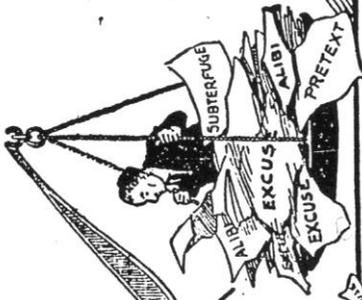
3

THE SINNER'S CRY
Acts 16:9

THE THREE ELEMENTS OF A MISSIONARY CALL

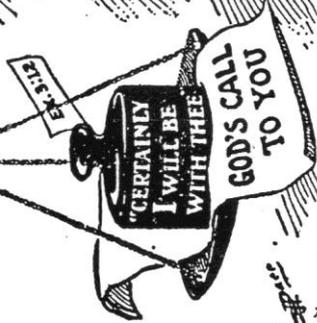
Used by Permission.

IT OUTWEIGHS EVERY OTHER CONSIDERATION



Have not I commanded thee? Be strong; and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be thou dismayed: for the Lord thy God is with thee whithersoever thou goest.

Joshua 1:9



14. THE PARABLES OF JESUS CHRIST

Bible Reading: Matthew 13:1-52.

Aim: To understand the background and meaning of Jesus' Parables, and apply them to serving Christ.

Introduction: The word "parable" comes from the Greek word "parabolè", made up from the verb "ballo" (to throw, lay or place) and the prefix "para" (meaning alongside of). A parable explains an unclear idea by **laying it alongside of** a clear idea to help interested listeners to better understand it. The known clarifies the unknown, making it more interesting, easier to remember, and easier to apply to life. The word parable occurs 48 times in the first three gospels, and twice in Hebrews 9:9 and 11:19. A parable is an earthly story with a heavenly meaning.

I. WHY DID JESUS TEACH IN PARABLES?

About one-third of Jesus' teachings as recorded in the Gospels was in Parables.

The disciples asked Jesus in Matthew 13:10 "Why speakest unto them in Parables?" Four reasons are:

1. To **reveal truth to genuine seekers**, but to **hide truth** from those with **hard hearts**, to minimise the severity of their judgment. Matthew 13:10-17. The same sun that melts the ice, hardens the clay. The same message that awakens some, will harden another. Jesus' reason for speaking in parables contained a prophecy from Isaiah 6:9-10. This important prophecy refers to the spiritual deterioration of Israel, and occurs 5 times in the New Testament (Matt. 13:14-15, Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10; John 12:39,40; Acts 28:26,27). The Jews would hear God's word but not understand it and see Jesus' powerful miracles but not understand them as proof of His Messiahship. Their dull hearts would make them spiritually blind and deaf, and the result would be judgment in 70 AD. The disciples saw and believed. The Jewish leaders saw and rejected, so God gave them no more light.
2. A second reason Jesus used parables is given in Matthew 13:34,35:
"That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, saying, I will open my mouth in parables; I will utter things which have been kept secret from the foundation of the world". This was to fulfill Asaph's prophecy in Psalm 78:2 "I will open my mouth in a parable: I will utter dark sayings of old".

Jesus' parables **opened secrets**, mysteries, or new truths hidden since the foundation of the world.

3. Many of the parables **explained the time period between Christ's rejection and His return**. Both the disciples and ourselves need to understand this period as we set out to evangelize the world.
4. Many parables were **answers to some problem or opposition**. For example:
 - a) The Pharisees criticised Jesus for eating with sinners, so He told them the parables of a lost sheep, a lost coin, and a lost son.
 - b) The disciples thought they were very successful because of the big crowds, so Jesus replied with the parable of a sower who saw 75% of his seed become fruitless.
 - c) The Pharisees claimed Jesus was in league with the devil, so He told the parable of a strong man guarding his goods being overcome by a stronger man.
 - d) The disciples asked "Lord, teach us to pray", so Jesus told the parable of the persistent friend .

The parables are mirrors and windows. As mirrors they help us see our faults.

As windows they help us understand life and God's plans for this world.

II. HOW SHOULD WE INTERPRET PARABLES?

1. **Christ's interpretation** of parables is the key to how we interpret other parables(Matt13:18-23;36-43)
2. Look for the **main truth** the parable teaches.
3. Not every detail of a parable means something unless the context demands it. Sometimes, symbols have different meanings in different parables. For example, in the parable of the sower, the seed represents the word of God, and the soil represents the human heart. But in the parable of the wheat and tares, the good seed represents the children of the kingdom, and the field represents the world.
4. Parables were given to **illustrate doctrine**, not to teach doctrine. Don't try to prove a doctrine only on the basis of a parable. Parables are windows of a house, not it's foundation. For example, to try

to teach salvation by good works from the parable of the sheep and goats (Matthew 25:31-46) ignores the prophetic context and would contradict clear doctrines taught elsewhere.

5. **Other passages** of scripture may define some detail of a parable. For example, in the parable of the treasure hid in a field, Exodus 19:5 and Psalm 135:4 define God's peculiar treasure to be Israel.
6. Jesus stated that the parables concern the **"kingdom of heaven"** (Matthew 13:11), of which we know the following:
 - i) It is **found** only in Matthew's gospel and is mentioned 32 times.
 - ii) Its **character** is described in the 12 kingdom of Heaven parables in Matthew 13:1-50; 18:23-25; 20:1-16; 22:1-14; 25:1-30.
 - iii) Its **time** is limited from the First to the Second Coming of Christ.
 - iv) Its **sphere** is limited to Christendom.
 - v) It **contains a mixture of good & evil**, Wheat & Tares, good & bad fish, wise & foolish virgins.

III. THE POSTPONEMENT of CHRIST'S EARTHLY 1000 YEAR KINGDOM OF ISRAEL

At the time of Jesus' birth, there was a widespread expectation that Messiah's coming was near, maybe because some understood the Daniel 9:24-27 "70 week" prophecy that Messiah would come 173,880 days after March 5, 444 BC. This made the due date for Messiah's coming to be March 30, 33 AD. Hence Simeon and Anna waited in the Temple for Christ as the "Consolation of Israel" (Luke 2:25-38). The Kingdom of Heaven is named since it was given from heaven by God the Father (Daniel 7:13,14). Jesus' message was the same as John the Baptist's: "Repent, for the Kingdom of heaven is **at hand**". Matthew 3:2; 4:17. They both called for Israel to nationally repent.

The Messianic kingdom cannot be set up until Israel as a nation repents. (Zechariah 12:10).

Jesus preached the "gospel of the kingdom" in Matthew 4:23 and the same "gospel of the kingdom" will be preached in the Tribulation that Christ's coming is near. (Matthew 24:14). When Jesus rode into Jerusalem on Palm Sunday to offer Himself as King to the Jews in fulfillment of Zechariah 9:9, He accepted the "Hosannahs" of the multitude, thus acknowledging His right to Kingship over an earthly kingdom. Sadly, the Pharisees in the crowd that day said to Jesus, "Master, rebuke thy disciples" (Matthew 19:39), thus rejecting Christ's offer as King over the Messianic Kingdom. Christ's Kingdom was thus postponed and the church, which is the mystery form of the Kingdom of heaven was introduced at the day of Pentecost. It is the subject of Christendom being a mixture of saved and imitators that is discussed in some parables.

Question 1: What would have happened if the Jews as a nation had repented and accepted Jesus Christ as their King and Messiah? Would Christ's earthly Kingdom have been set up?

Answer: Certainly, but not necessarily straight away because Jesus had to die for the sins of the world as Saviour before He could assume His rule as King. This would have been achieved by the Roman government crucifying Jesus as a usurper. With Jesus' resurrection and ascension, Daniel's 69th week would have ended and the 70th week begun **without a break**. At the close of the 70th week, Jesus would have returned to set up His 1000 year earthly Kingdom.

Question 2: What about the church? How could it be formed if there was no break between the 69th and 70th week? Doesn't Ephesians 1:4 state that it was God's eternal purpose to form the church?

Answer: Yes. God foreknew that Israel would reject Christ's offer of the kingdom, yet His offer was still genuine. After Christ's resurrection, the disciples asked Him:

"Lord wilt thou **at this time** restore again the Kingdom to Israel?"

Jesus replied: "It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in His own power". (Acts 1:6). Jesus' answer is that He was not going to tell them if the Messiah's earthly 1000 year kingdom was to come then or later. Why? Because it depended on Israel's response to Christ's offer as proclaimed by the Apostles. Peter's second sermon states that if the nation repented, then Jesus Christ would return and establish His earthly kingdom:

"Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the **times of refreshing** shall come from the presence of the Lord; and **he shall send Jesus Christ.**" (Acts 3:19:20). This offer of the Kingdom is in a transition period within the church age. Acts is a transition book where God gives the Jewish nation a chance to repent, they fail, and so God temporarily sets Israel

aside and instead works through the church. Hence, the King having been rejected, it was impossible to set up the Kingdom at that time, so the Kingdom took on another form known as the “Mystery Form” as described in the Matthew 13 “Kingdom of Heaven Parables”, which describe the character of the period from Christ’s Ascension to the Rapture of the Church.

IV. DOCTRINE of the KINGDOM OF HEAVEN BASED ON CHRIST’S PARABLES.

1. Christ’s Offer of the Kingdom.

- a) Because of Old Testament promises, Israel expected a literal kingdom ruled by the Messiah. Christ spoke the parable of not putting a **new patch on an old garment**, and of not putting **new wine in old wineskins** (Luke 5:36-39) to show that He did not intend to build on Pharisaism, but came to set up a new and different Kingdom.
- b) The **Good Shepherd and His sheep** parable (John 10:1-18) was spoken because of the Pharisees who rejected Jesus Christ as Messiah, to show that His own would recognize Him, leave Pharisaism’s bondage and enter the freedom of Christ’s Kingdom.
- c) The **lost sheep, lost coin and lost son** parable (Luke 15:1-32) was spoken to correct the Pharisees wrong view that God hated sinners and rejoiced in a sinners’ death because the sinner was then removed from God’s presence forever. They reasoned that one’s goal in life should be to produce enough good works to enter heaven. These 3 parables show the great search by the owners and joy when found. These show God’s great love for sinners to return to God.
- d) The **blind leading the blind** (Luke 6:39) warns against following the Pharisees described as spiritually blind shepherds trying to lead spiritually blind followers.
- e) The King preparing a **wedding banquet** for his son (Matthew 22:1-14) taught that Christ was inviting that generation to the Kingdom. Since the wedding banquet pictured Christ’s millennial kingdom, this parable teaches Christ’s offer of the Kingdom to the Jews.
- f) The **narrow way to life** that **few** find, and the **broad way to destruction** that **many** travel (Matthew 7:13,14) warned against the danger of rejecting Christ’s invitation just given.
- g) The **wise** man building his **house** on the **rock** and surviving the storm, pictured those hearing and doing Christ’s teachings who enter the Kingdom by trusting Christ. The **foolish** man building his house on the **sand** that collapsed in the storm pictured those rejecting Christ’s words, accepting the Pharisees doctrine, and being excluded from the Kingdom (Matt 7:24-27).

2. Israel’s Rejection of Christ’s offers is seen in these parables:

- a) The **Physician** who was called on to **heal himself** (Luke 4:23) pictured Israel rejecting Christ, calling Him a sinner needing to deal with his own sins before He could offer salvation to others.
- b) The **Wedding banquet** (Matth 22:1-14) showed the offer and rejection of the Kingdom by the guests (Israel) who were busy with their personal pursuits. The **Great Banquet** (Luke 14:16-24) showed the invited guests (Israel) ignoring the banquet by making excuses not to come.
- c) The **landowner who planted a vineyard** (Matthew 21:33-44) taught that the servants (Old Testament prophets) were beaten, stoned and killed by Israel when they were sent to collect the harvest (spiritual fruit). The landowner then sent his son (Christ) to collect the harvest, but the tenants (Israel) killed him. This pictured Israel rejecting the Kingdom and crucifying Christ.

3. Christ Postpones the Kingdom.

The unconditional **Abrahamic** covenant (Genesis 12:1-3; 13:14:17; 15:18-20; 17:4-8) promised that Abraham’s physical descendants would dwell in the land forever. The unconditional **Davidic** covenant (II Samuel 7:16) promised that one of David’s descendants would rule on David’s Throne forever. Because Israel rejected Christ’s offer, David’s Kingdom was not cancelled but postponed.

- a) Christ spoke the parable of **10 pounds** (Luke 19:11-27) to teach that His Kingdom offer was being withdrawn and postponed. Christ was the nobleman who went into a far country to receive a Kingdom and to return to rule (v.12). Hence, Israel’s rejection of Christ did not stop His right to rule.
- b) The **watching porter** (Mark 13:34-37) spoke of Christ’s postponement of and absence from the Kingdom for a long time period, and our watchfulness in His absence.

c) The **householder who planted a vineyard** parable (Matt. 21:33-46) taught that the Kingdom would be taken from first century Israel and given to the nation Israel at Christ's return. (v.43).

4. **First Century Israel Judged.**

In the **cleansed house** parable (Matthew 12:43-45), Christ pictured Israel as having experienced a cleansing ministry by John the Baptist. That cleansing was not permanent, because the unclean spirit that left the house of Israel returned with 7 other more wicked spirits, so that the final state of that house of Israel was worse because of their rejection of Christ than before John the Baptist's ministry. "Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation". (v.45).

5. **The New Mystery Form of the Kingdom.** Because Israel rejected Christ's offer of the Messianic Kingdom, the offer was withdrawn, postponed and substituted with judgment by the Romans in 70 AD. The mystery form of the Kingdom known as the Church age was then introduced.

Many of the parables revealed the character of the Church age, such as:

- i) The **Sower** (Matthew 13:3-23). The church age would be characterised by sowing the seed of the Word of God (Luke 8:12) throughout the world by Jesus and his followers, met by varying responses depending on the attitude of the hearers.
- ii) The **Wheat and Tares** (Matthew 13:24-30). In the Church age Satan will try to defeat God's program by sowing weeds (darnel) among the good seed. Satan's seed will imitate and closely resemble God's seed. Only at harvest can both kinds be distinguished. Christians who sow the word of God in the church age may expect Satan's opposition to spreading Christ's gospel.
- iii) The **seed growing by itself** (Mark 4:26-29). As physical seed germinates and grows because of life in the seed, so the mystery form of the Kingdom will grow because of life-giving power in the seed of the word of God sown in people's hearts.
- iv) The **mustard seed** (Matthew 13:31,32). The mystery form of the Kingdom would begin insignificantly but grow to great size. The Church age began with 11 disciples and grew to millions of people in Christendom.
- v) The **leaven** (Matthew 13:33-35). When the Church age began, evil (leaven) would be present which would spread throughout Christendom to permeate the whole system by Christ's return.
- vi) The **Hidden treasure** and the **Pearl** (Matt. 13:44-46). Christ's plan in this Church age is to die on the cross, to purchase a treasure (Israel) and a Pearl (the church) out of the field (the world).
- vii) The **Dragnet** (Matthew 13:47-50). During the Church age the gospel will go out like a dragnet, catching two kinds of fish, good and bad, useful and useless. At the end of the tribulation the angels will cast the wicked into a furnace of fire, and allow the righteous into the millennium.

6. **Warnings to Prepare for Christ's Millennial Kingdom.**

In Matthew 24:3 the disciples asked Jesus "what shall be the sign of thy coming and of the end of the world?" Jesus listed many signs that would be fulfilled in the 7 year tribulation (Matthew 24:4-26). Some (16) are: Deception (v.4,11,24), False Christs (v.5), Wars (v.6), famines, pestilences and earthquakes (v.7), persecution (v.9), disloyalty (v.10), false prophets (v.11), little love (v.12), worldwide gospel preaching (v.14), Jewish temple in Jerusalem, (v.15), great trouble (v.21,22), false prophets showing great signs and wonders (v.24) sun and moon darkened (v.29), the fig tree of Israel budding (v.32-34). These signs will be given to unsaved Israel to warn them that the Kingdom is being offered again and of Messiah's soon arrival.

- a) The **budding Fig tree** parable (Matthew 24:32-34) picturing Israel's nationhood warns that Christ's coming is near, at the doors. **Question:** How should we respond to these signs?
- b) The **watching doorkeeper** parable (Mark 13:33-37) teaches **watchfulness** and **faithfulness** in serving Jesus, because we don't know when Christ will return.
- c) The **watching homeowner** parable (Matt. 24:42-44) teaches us to **watch** and be **prepared**. As thieves come when unexpected, so Christ's return at the rapture will be at an unexpected time.
- d) The **wise and evil servants** parable (Matthew 24:45-51) teaches Christians to be faithful to our Bible teaching ministry in view of Christ's return. A faithful and wise servant will fulfil his Bible teaching work, but a foolish and evil servant will neglect his Bible teaching ministry and will live for himself and his fleshly lusts. He will be severely rebuked by Christ at His return and be deprived of the joys of Christ's Kingdom. We must watch & be ready for Christ's return.

7. Three Judgments Before the Millennium.

This age will end in judgment, details of which are given in Matthew 25.

a) The wise and foolish virgins (Matthew 25:1-13): **Judgment on living Israel.**

After Christ returns to earth (Matthew 24:30), angels will regather living Israel from all over the earth (v.31), back to the land promised to Abraham (Genesis 12:7).

Deuteronomy 30:1-10 teaches that Israel's entry to the Millennium kingdom blessings depended on repentance and receiving Christ as their Messiah and Saviour. Hence no unsaved Jew or Gentile will enter the Millennium (Ezekiel 20:38).

The wise and foolish virgins parable states that Israelites living at the time of Christ's return will be judged to see which Jews are prepared to enter the Kingdom (by possessing the Holy Spirit) and which Jews are not prepared to enter the Kingdom (by being unsaved).

The **virgins** in an Oriental wedding refer to guests at the banquet (**Jews**).

The **bride** is the **Church** (Rev. 19:7,8; 21:9; II Cor. 11:2; Eph. 5:23-32) who appears on earth with the **Bridegroom** who is **Jesus Christ**. Hence living Israelites (10 virgins) will be brought back to the land for a judgment to see who is prepared to enter Messiah's Millennial Kingdom (5 wise virgins) and who is not prepared and will therefore be excluded (5 foolish virgins).

b) The sheep and the goats (Matthew 25:31-46): **Judgment on living Gentiles.**

"When the Son of man shall come in His glory....before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats." (v.31,32).

The sheep will enter the Millennium because of how they treated Christ and helped His brothers in the tribulation. Their works prove the genuineness of their saving faith, because no one is saved by works. "Brothers" (Matthew 25:40) refers to persecuted Israelites as a whole in the tribulation, or to the persecuted 144,000 Israelite preachers (Revelation 7). Hence, the goats on the left will not have faith, and will not have produced works of helping persecuted Israelites. Sheep will enter and goats will be excluded from the Kingdom. Hence in 2 judgments the whole world will be judged to see who qualifies for entry into Christ's millennial Kingdom.

c) 5,2,1 Talents (Matthew 25:14-30): **Judgment to Reward Believers' Faithfulness.**

A master travelling to a far country delivered his goods to his servants, and in his absence required them to trade these goods for a profitable return. When the master returned, these servants were called to give account of their success in trading. Those found faithful were allowed to enter the joy of their Lord and were made ruler over many things (v.21,23). On the other hand, the one servant who through fear, hid his master's talent in the earth, returned the talent with a nil profit. Because he was unfaithful he was excluded from the Kingdom, lost the talent, and was denied rule in the millennium. Those who are faithful and prepared will enter the Kingdom and will be made ruler over many things, with great authority. Christ predicted this judgment to occur just before the millennium in Matthew 24:40,41 when he said:

"Then shall two be in the field: the one shall be taken (away in judgment), and the other left (to enter Christ's millennial Kingdom). Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken (away in judgment), and the other left (to enter Christ's Kingdom)".

8. Life in Christ's Mystery Form and Millennial Kingdom. Many parables were given to teach the disciples what the King expects of His subjects who will live in the Kingdom.

i) Obedience - Two sons. (Matthew 21:28-32). Obedience is a test of sonship. A man asked his 2 sons to work in his vineyard. The first son refused, but later on obeyed (picturing tax collectors and prostitutes). The second son agreed to work, but never showed up (picturing the Pharisees).

Question: Which son did the Father's will? The first son did.

Despised people like tax collectors and prostitutes were entering the Kingdom of God instead of Pharisees and religious leaders who did not repent and believe. What a shock!

ii) Love - Two Debtors (Luke 7:41-50).

During Christ's earthly ministry, He showed compassion on the poor, sick, sorrowing, outcasts and sinners. This compassion will be required to be shown by His people in the Kingdom. This parable was spoken in the house of a Pharisee who objected to an ex-prostitute showing love and devotion to Christ. Christ replied how a creditor forgave the debts of a large debtor

(pictured the the ex-prostitute) and a small debtor (pictured by Simon the Pharisee). Who would love the creditor more? Obviously the debtor who had been forgiven the most would love the most. Hence more love for Christ will be shown by those who are forgiven more. Also, Christ always accepts love from forgiven sinners.

The Good Samaritan (Luke 10:27,30-37). Mercy (love in action) is to be shown to anyone in need, whose needs we can meet. Christ commanded the lawyer to show mercy as the Samaritan did. Those in Christ's Kingdom must show love to God and man because God has forgiven us.

iii) **Prayer** will play a key role in life in the Kingdom.

a) The **basis of prayer** is the merit of Christ's atoning blood.

The **Pharisee** and **Tax Collector** parable (Luke 18:9-14) shows how to approach God in prayer. The Pharisee by telling God about his righteousness, incorrectly approached God on the basis of his good works. God rejected his prayer. The Tax Collector, by seeing no merit in himself, claimed the blood of Christ saying, "God be merciful to me a sinner". He thus went home justified before God (Luke 18:14).

b) **Persistence in Prayer: The Persistent widow** (Luke 18:1-8).

Christ taught that we must persist in prayer to be answered. Even a hard hearted, indifferent judge, though unmoved by the **justice** of a widows request, can be moved by her persistence. The **Persistent friend at midnight** (Luke 11:5-13). A man had a visitor arrive, and not having bread to feed him, went to his neighbour at midnight to ask for 3 loaves. The neighbour being in bed would've had to disturb his whole family to give his neighbour the 3 loaves, so was unwilling to assist.

Lesson: "Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity (persistence) he will rise and give him as many as he needeth." (Luke 11:8). Jesus concluded: "**Ask** and it shall be given you; **seek** and ye shall find; **knock** and it shall be opened unto you". (Luke 11:9).

This parable defines intercessory prayer: The man asking the sleeping neighbour was not the one in need, but was representing another person who was in need.

Definition: An intercessor represents the needy person to the one who can meet that need. Intercessory prayer is totally unselfish, because it is concerned for others needs, not one's own needs. Hence, unselfish intercessory prayer will characterise Kingdom life.

iv) **The Right use of wealth.**

The Pharisees regarded wealth as a sure sign of God's blessing and proof that the person was righteous and certain of entering heaven. Christ used parables to correct this wrong thinking:

a) The **wise use of present opportunities: The unjust steward** (Luke 16:1-13).

A righteous person will act wisely, knowing that he must give account to God of his stewardship in the future. He will not misuse his money selfishly thinking only of the present. When the steward wasted his master's goods, he lost his job, so he wisely used his present position to secure his future by reducing the amount owed by his master's debtors, so they would give him accommodation. Christ commended him, not for his dishonesty, but for wisely using present opportunities for future gain.

Christ applied this truth to our use of wealth in v.8-13. If we are not faithful in handling worldly wealth now, who will entrust us with true riches later in eternity?

Hence people will wisely use material possessions in the Kingdom.

b) **Material possessions are temporary. The Rich man and Lazarus** (Luke 16:19-31). The rich man who died left all his wealth behind, yet his soul continued to exist in hell without his wealth. This rich man believed the Pharisees' doctrine that wealth was a sign of God's favour. Jesus teaches here that:

* Your wealth cannot save you.

* The beggar was saved because he trusted God for salvation, not because of his poverty.

* Poverty is not necessarily a sign of God's displeasure or punishment for sin.

* Poverty is no barrier to gaining true eternal riches.

- c) The **Result of selfishness and covetousness. The Rich fool** (Luke 12:16-21) parable shows that one's use of wealth will reveal if he is righteous or unrighteous. This man, already wealthy, found his riches greatly increased by an abundant harvest. This increased wealth gave him an opportunity to show his love for God and fellow man by sharing his wealth with needy people. He refused to do this and instead stored them up for his own use. This wrong use of wealth showed that he was unrighteous. Christ taught that we must rightly use our wealth now for other's salvation, for earthly wealth to benefit us in the next life.
- v) **Faithfulness. The Faithful and Wise Steward.** Luke 12:42-48.
This parable teaches that "privilege brings responsibility now and accountability to God later". If we are given authority and we misuse it, then we will lose it.
"It is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful." (I Corinthians 4:2).
Faithfulness to our privileges and responsibilities will characterize Kingdom life.
- vi) **Humility. Seats at the Wedding Feast.** Luke 14:7-11.
We must take a lower seat as a sign of humility, not seeking the best seats for ourselves. Let the host honour him that deserves it. Don't honour yourself, let others honour you instead. In the Beattitudes (Matt5:3-12), Christ described righteous people who will be citizens in His Kingdom.

THE PARABLES OF JESUS CHRIST.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. The Two Houses | Matthew 7:24-27 (Luke 6:47-49). |
| 2. The New Cloth and New Wineskins | Matthew 9:16-17. |
| 3. The Sower | Matthew 13:5-8 (Mark 4:3-8; Luke 8:5-8). |
| 4. The Weeds | Matthew 13:24-30. |
| 5. The Mustard Seed | Matthew 13:31-32 (Mark 4:30-32; Luke 13:18-19) |
| 6. The Yeast | Matthew 13:33 (Luke 13:20-21). |
| 7. The Hidden Treasure | Matthew 13:44. |
| 8. The Pearl of Great Price | Matthew 13:45-46 |
| 9. The Fishing Net | Matthew 13:47-50. |
| 10. The Unforgiving Servant | Matthew 18:23-35. |
| 11. The Workers in the Vineyard | Matthew 20:1-16. |
| 12. The Two Sons | Matthew 21:28-32. |
| 13. The Wicked Vinegrowers | Matthew 21:33-46 (Mark 12:1-12; Luke 20:9-19). |
| 14. The Marriage of the King's Son | Matthew 22:1-14. |
| 15. The Two Servants | Matthew 24:45-51. |
| 16. The 10 Virgins | Matthew 25:1-13. |
| 17. The Talents | Matthew 25:14-30. |
| 18. The Seed Growing Secretly | Mark 4:26-29. |
| 19. The Doorkeeper | Mark 13:34-37. |
| 20. The Rude Children | Luke 7:31-35. |
| 21. The Two Debtors | Luke 7:41-43. |
| 22. The Good Samaritan | Luke 10:25-37. |
| 23. The Friend at Midnight | Luke 11:5-8. |
| 24. The Rich Fool | Luke 12:16-21. |
| 25. The Barren Fig Tree | Luke 13:6-9. |
| 26. The Great Supper | Luke 14:15-24. |
| 27. The Unfinished Tower and the King's Rash War | Luke 14:28-33. |
| 28. The Lost Sheep | Matthew 18:12-14 (Luke 15:4-7). |
| 29. The Lost Coin | Luke 15:8-10. |
| 30. The Prodigal Son | Luke 15:11-32. |
| 31. The Shrewd Manager | Luke 16:1-9. |
| 32. The Servant's Reward | Luke 17:7-10. |
| 33. The Unjust Judge | Luke 18:1-8. |
| 34. The Pharisee and the Taxgatherer | Luke 18:9-14. |
| 35. The Pounds | Luke 19:1-27. |

15. EVENTS IN THE LIFE OF CHRIST and HARMONY OF THE GOSPELS

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
Introduction: A. The Source of Knowledge. B. The Pre-existence of God.			1:1-4	1:1-18
I. INTRODUCTION of the King.				
A. Arrival of the King.	1:1-17		3:23-38	
1. His Ancestry.				
2. His Advent.				
a) Annunciation of John's Birth to Zechariah.			1:5-25	
b) Annunciation of Jesus' Birth to Mary.			1:26-38	
c) Arrival of Mary in Judea to visit Elizabeth.			1:39-45	
d) Anthem of Mary.			1:46-56	
e) Advent of John the Baptist.			1:57-80	
f) Announcement of Jesus' Birth to Joseph.	1:18-25			
g) Advent of Jesus Christ.			2:1-7	
h) Announcement to the Shepherds.			2:8-20	
3. His Infancy and Childhood.				
a) His Circumcision at Bethlehem.			2:21	
b) His Presentation in the Temple.			2:22-38	
c) His Infancy - in Bethlehem, the wise men.	2:1-12			
- in Egypt, to flee Herod.	2:13-18			
- in Nazareth.	2:19-23		2:39	
d) His Boyhood - His Growth.			2:40	
- His Visit to Jerusalem.			2:41-50	
- His Development.			2:51-52	
B. Ambassador of the King.				
1. Message to John.		1:1	3:1-2	
2. Message from John.	3:1-6	1:2-6	3:3-6	
3. Explanation from John.	3:7-10		3:7-14	
4. Promise by John.	3:11-12	1:7-8	3:15-18	
C. Approval of the King.				
1. At His Baptism.	3:13-17	1:9-11	3:21-23	
2. Through His Temptation in Judean Desert.	4:1-11	1:12-13	4:1-13	
3. By His Herald - John to the Leaders.				1:19-28
- John testifying to Christ.				1:29-34
II. AUTHENTICATION of the King.				
A. Acceptance of His Person.				
1. Belief by the First Disciples.				1:35-51
2. Belief Through the First Miracle.				2:1-11
3. Sojourn in Capernaum.				2:12
4. Possession of the Temple, expelling traders.				2:13-22
5. Acceptance in Judea, talking to Nicodemus.				2:23-52

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
6. Witness of John.	4:12	1:14	3:19-21 4:14	4:1-4
7. Withdrawl from Judea to Galilee.				
8. Acceptance in Samaria, woman at well.				4:5-42
9. Acceptance in Galilee.				4:43-45
B. Authority of the King.				
1. Christ's authority to preach.	4:17	1:15	4:14-15	
2. Christ's authority over disease.				4:46-54
3. Christ's rejection in Nazareth.			4:16-30	
4. Christ's residence in Capernaum.	4:13-16			
5. Christ's authority over nature.	4:18-22	1:16-20	5:1-11	
6. Christ's authority over demons.		1:21-28	4:31-37	
7. Christ's authority over sickness.	8:14-17	1:29-34	4:38-41	
8. Christ's authority to preach.	4:23-25	1:35-39	4:42-44	
9. Christ's authority over defilement.	8:2-4	1:40-45	5:12-16	
10. Christ's authority to forgive sins.	9:1-8	2:1-12	5:17-26	
11. Christ's authority over men.	9:9-13	2:13-17	5:27-32	
12. Christ's authority over tradition.	9:14-17	2:18-22	5:33-39	
13. Christ's authority over the Sabbath.				
- through healing a paralytic.				5:1-47
- through controversy over grain.	12:1-8	2:23-28	6:1-5	
- healing withered hand.	12:9-14	3:1-6	6:6-11	
14. Christ's authority to heal.	12:15-21	3:7-12		
15. Commissioning the Twelve.	10:2-4	3:13-19	6:12-16	
16. Christ's authority to interpret the Law.	5:1-7:29		6:17-42	
a) The Subjects of the Kingdom.		5:1-16		6:17-26
- their character.		5:3-12		6:20-26
- their influence.		5:13-16		
b) Relation of the King to the Law.				
- the Fulfiller.		5:17-20		
- Rejection of Traditional Law.		5:21-48		
1. Murder.		5:21-26		
2. Adultery.		5:27-30		
3. Divorce.		5:31-32		
4. Oaths.		5:33-37		
5. Retaliation.		5:38-42		
6. Love.		5:43-48		6:27-36
- Rejecting of Pharisaic Practices.		6:1-7:6		6:37-42
1. Almsgiving.		6:1-4		
2. Prayer.		6:5-15		
c) Instruction to those entering the Kingdom.	7:7-29			
- Prayer.		7:7-11		
- True Righteousness.		7:12		6:31-45
- The Way to Heaven.		7:13-14		
- Warning to False Teachers.		7:15-23		
- Two Foundations.	7:24-8:1		6:46-49	
17. Recognition of Christ's authority.	8:5-13		7:1-10	

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
18. Recognition of Christ's authority in Nain.			7:11-17	
19. Witness of the Twelve.	9:35-11:1	6:6-13	9:1-6	
III. CONTROVERSY over the King.				
A. Rejection of John the Baptist.	11:2-19		17:18-35	
B. Curse of the Cities of Galilee.	11:20-30			
1. Condemnation for unbelief.	11:20-24			
2. Explanation of unbelief.	11:25-27			
3. Invitation to belief.	11:28-30			
C. Reception by a sinner.			7:36-50	
D. Witness to the King.			8:1-3	
E. The Leaders Rejection of Christ.	12:22-37	3:20-30		
F. The Leaders Request for a sign.	12:38-45			
G. Christ rejects the Nation.	12:46-50	3:31-35	8:19-21	
H. Revelation in view of rejection.				
1. The Course of the Kingdom in this age.	13:1-53	4:1-34	8:4-18	
a) Parable of Sower and Soils.	13:1-9	4:1-9	8:4-8	
b) Purpose of Parables.	13:10-17	4:10-12	8:9-10	
c) Parable of Sower and Soils Interpreted.	13:18-23	4:13-20	8:11-15	
d) Parable of the Lamp.		4:21-25	8:16-18	
e) Parable of the Weeds.	13:24-30			
f) Parable of the Growing Seed.		4:26-29		
g) Parable of the Mustard Seed.	13:31-32	4:30-32		
h) Parable of Yeast Mixed in Flour.	13:33-35			
i) Parable of Weeds Explained.	13:36-43			
j) Parable of the Hidden Treasure and Pearl.	13:44-46			
k) Parable of the Dragnet.	13:47-50			
l) Parable of the House Owner.	13:51-52			
m) Conclusion.	13:53	4:33-34		
2. Jesus' Power over Nature.	8:18-27	4:35-41	8:22-25	
3. Jesus' Power over Demons.	8:28-34	5:1-20	8:26-39	
4. Jesus' Power over Disease and Death.	9:18-26	5:21-43	8:40-56	
5. Jesus' Power over Blindness.	9:27-34			
I. Rejection in Nazareth.	13:54-58	6:1-6		
J. Death of John the Baptist.	14:1-12	6:14-29	9:7-9	
IV. INSTRUCTION of the Twelve.				
A. Feeding the 5,000.	14:13-21	6:30-44	9:10-17	6:1-13
B. Rejection of an offer to make Him King.	14:22-23	6:45-46		6:14-15
C. Instruction through the Storm.	14:24-33	6:47-52		6:16-21
D. Reception in Gennesaret.	14:34-36	6:53-56		
E. Instruction on the Bread of Life.				6:22-71
F. Instruction on Defilement.	15:1-20	7:1-23		7:1
G. Reception in Tyre and Sidon.	15:21-28	7:24-30		
H. Reception in Decapolis.	15:29-38	7:31-8:9		
I. Rejection in Magdala.	16:1-4	8:9-12		

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
J. Warning against Rejection.	16:5-12	8:13-26		
K. Confession of Peter.	16:13-20	8:27-30	9:18-21	
L. Instruction on His Death.	16:21	8:31-33	9:22	
M. Instruction on Discipleship.	16:22-28	8:34-9:1	9:23-27	
N. Revelation of the Kingdom.	17:1-8	9:2-8	9:28-36	
O. Instruction on Elijah.	17:9-13	9:9-13		
P. Instruction on Dependence.	17:14-21	9:14-29	9:37-43	
Q. Extra Instruction on His Death.	17:22-23	9:30-32	9:43-45	
R. Instruction on Sonship.	17:24-27			
S. Instruction on Humility.	18:1-5	9:33-37	9:46-48	
T. Instruction on Pride.	18:6-14	9:38-50	9:49-50	
U. Instruction on Forgiveness.	18:15-35			
V. Instruction on Discipleship.	8:19-22		9:57-62	
W. Challenge by His Brothers.				7:2-9
X. Journey to Jerusalem.			9:51-56	7:10
V. OPPOSITION to the King.				
A. Conflict at the Feast of Tabernacles.				7:11-52
1. Christ's Authority Questioned.				7:11-15
2. Christ's Explanation.				7:16-24
3. Christ's Person Questioned.				7:25-27
4. Christ's Explanation.				7:28-30
5. Response.				7:31-36
6. Christ's Invitation.				7:37-52
B. Conflict over the Law.				7:53-8:11
C. Conflict over the Light.				8:12-20
D. Conflict over Christ's Person.				8:21-59
E. Conflict over Healing a Blind Man.				9:1-41
F. Conflict over the Shepherd.				10:1-21
G. Witness of the 70 sent out.			10:1-24	
H. Conflict over the Question of Eternal Life.			10:25-37	
I. An Example of Fellowship.			10:38-42	
J. Instruction In Prayer.			11:1-13	
K. Conflict over Healing a Dumb Man.			11:14-36	
L. Conflict over Pharisaic Ritualism.			11:37-54	
M. Instructing the Disciples.				
1. Hypocrisy.			12:1-12	
2. Covetousness.			12:13-34	
3. Watchfulness.			12:35-41	
4. Faithfulness.			12:42-48	
5. The Effect of Jesus' Coming.			12:49-53	
6. The Signs of the Times.			12:54-59	
7. Repentance.			13:1-9	
8. Israel's Need.			13:10-17	
9. The Kingdom Program.			13:18-21	
N. Conflict at the Feast of Dedication.				10:22-39

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
VI. PREPARATION of the DISCIPLES by the King.				
A. Withdrawl from Judea.				10:40-42
B. Instruction on Entering the Kingdom.			13:22-35	
C. Instruction in a Pharisee's House.			14:1-24	
D. Instruction on Discipleship.			14:25-35	
E. Instruction on God's Attitude to Sinners.			15:1-32	
1. Parable of the Lost Sheep.			15:1-7	
2. Parable of the Lost Coin.			15:8-10	
3. Parable of the Lost Son.			15:11-32	
F. Instruction on Wealth.			16:1-31	
G. Instruction on Forgiveness.			17:1-6	
H. Instruction on Service.			17:7-10	
I. Instruction on Lazarus.				11:1-54
1. Miracle of Restoration.				11:1-44
2. Conflict over the Miracle.				11:45-54
J. Instruction on Thankfulness.			17:11-19	
K. Instruction on Christ's Coming.			17:20-37	
L. Instruction on Prayer.			18:1-14	
M. Instruction on Divorce.	19:1-12			
N. Instruction on Entering the Kingdom.	19:13-15	10:13-16	18:15-17	
O. Instruction on Eternal Life.	19:16-30	10:17-31	18:18-30	
P. Instruction on Christ's Death.	20:17-28	10:32-45	18:31-34	
Q. Instruction on Israel's Need.	20:29-34	10:46-52	18:35-43	
R. Instruction on the Kingdom Program.			19:1-28	
1. A lesson in Personal Faith.			19:1-10	
2. Instruction on the Postponed Kingdom.			19:11-28	
VII. OFFICIAL PRESENTATION of the King.				
A. Arrival in Bethany.				11:55-57
B. Triumphal Entry to Jerusalem.	21:1-11	11:1-11	19:29-44	12:12-19
C. Authority of the King.	21:12-19	11:12-18	19:45-48	
D. Invitations by the King.				12:20-50
E. Proof of the King's Authority.	21:20-22	11:19-25	21:37-38	
F. The King's Authority Challenged.				
1. By the Priests and Elders.	21:23-46	11:27-33	20:1-19	
2. By the Pharisees and Herodians.	22:15-22	12:13-17	20:20-26	
3. By the Sadducees.	22:23-33	12:18-27	20:27-40	
4. By the Pharisees.	22:34-40	12:28-34		
G. Challenge by the King.	22:41-46	12:35-37	20:41-44	
H. Judgment by the King.	23:1-39	12:38-40	20:45-47	
I. Instruction at the Treasury.		12:41-44	21:1-4	
VIII. PREPARATION for the DEATH of the King.				
A. Predictions by Christ.				
1. The Question.	24:1-3	13:1-4	21:5-7	
2. The Tribulation.	24:4-26	13:5-23	21:8-26	
a) The First Half.	24:4-8	13:5-8	21:8-11	

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
b) The Second Half.	24:9-14	13:9-13	21:12-19	
c) Repetition and Exploration.	24:15-26	13:14-23	21:20-26	
3. The Second Advent.	24:27-30	13:24-27	21:27-28	
4. The Regathering of Israel.	24:31			
5. Parenthetical Exhortations.	24:32-51	13:28-37	21:29-36	
a) The Fig Tree.	24:32-44	13:28-37	21:29-36	
b) The Faithful Servant.	24:45-51			
6. Judgment on Israel.	25:1-30			
a) The Ten Virgins.	25:1-13			
b) 5 Talents.	25:14-30			
7. Judgments on Gentiles.	25:31-46			
B. Preparation for Christ's Death.				
1. Prediction of His Death.	26:1-2	14:1	22:1	
2. Plan of the Rulers.	26:3-5	14:1-2	22:2	
3. Pouring of the Ointment.	26:6-13	14:3-9		12:2-8
4. Promise to Bethany.	26:14-16	14:10-11	22:3-6	
5. Preparation of the Passover.	26:17-19	14:12-16	22:7-13	
6. Passover Observance.	26:20	14:17	22:14-30	
7. Provision of an Example.				13:1-20
8. Prediction of Judas' Betrayal.	26:21-25	14:18-21	22:21-23	13:21-30
9. Prediction of Peter's Denial.	26:31-35	14:27-31	22:31-38	13:37-38
10. Provision of a Memorial Supper.	26:26-30	14:22-26	22:17-20	
C. Precepts by Christ.				
1. Prologue.				13:31-35
2. Problems.				13:36
3. Promises.				14:25-31
4. Instruction on their Present Experience.				
a) Fruit bearing.				15:1-17
b) Foe of the Disciples.				15:18-27
5. Instruction on the Future.				
a) Ministry of the Holy Spirit.				16:5-15
b) Result of the Resurrection.				16:16-28
c) Conclusion.				16:29-33
D. Prayer by Christ for Believers.				
1. His Prayer for Himself.				17:1-5
2. His Prayer for His Disciples.				17:6-19
3. His Prayer for the Family of Believers.				17:20-26
E. Prayer in the Garden.	26:36-46	14:32-42	22:39-46	18:1
IX. REJECTION of the King.				
A. The Arrest.	26:47-56	14:43-52	22:47-53	18:1-12
B. The Religious Trial.				
1. Examination before Annas.				18:12-23
2. Examination before Caiaphas.	26:57-68	14:53-65	22:63-65	18:24
3. The Denial by Peter.	26:58-75	14:54-72	22:54-62	18:15-27
4. Condemnation by the Sanhedrin.	27:1	15:1	22:66-71	
5. Death of Judas.	27:3-10			

	<u>MATT</u>	<u>MARK</u>	<u>LUKE</u>	<u>JOHN</u>
C. The Civil Trial.				
1. Trial before Pilate.	27:2-14	15:1-5	23:1-5	18:28-38
2. Trial before Herod.			23:6-12	
3. Trial before Pilate.	27:15-26	15:6-15	23:13-25	18:39-40
4. Mockery and Scourging.	27:27-30	15:16-19		19:2-3
D. Procession to Calvary.	27:31-34	15:20-23	23:26-33	19:16-17
E. The Crucifixion.				
1. First Three Hours.	27:35-44	15:24-32	23:34-43	19:18-27
2. Second Three Hours.	27:45-50	15:33-37	23:44-46	19:28-30
3. Accompanying Signs.	27:51-56	15:38-41	23:45-49	
F. The Burial of Christ.	27:57-61	15:42-47	23:50-56	19:31-42
G. The Sealing of the Tomb.	27:62-66			
X. The RESURRECTION of the King.				
A. Preparation by the Women.	28:1	16:1		
B. Opening of the Tomb.	28:2-4			
C. Visit of the Women.	28:5-8	16:2-8	24:1-8	20:1
D. Report to the Disciples by the Women.			24:9-12	20:2-10
E. Appearance to Mary Magdalene.		16:9-11		20:11-18
F. Appearance to the Women.	28:9-10			
G. Report of the Guard.	28:11-15			
H. Appearance to Two on Emmaus Road.		16:12-13	24:13-32	
I. Report of the Two to the Disciples.			24:33-35	
J. Appearance to the Ten.		16:14	24:36-43	20:19-25
K. Appearance to the Eleven.				20:26-31
L. Appearance to 7 Disciples.				21:1-25
M. Commission to the Disciples.	28:16-20	16:15-18		
N. Final Commission.			24:44-49	
O. Ascension of Christ.		16:19-20	24:50-53	



16. ANGELS

Bible Reading: 2 Kings 6:8-17 and Hebrews 1:14.

Aim: To be encouraged from God's teaching about His angels ministering to us.

Introduction:

Is there intelligent life apart from man in the universe? Yes. Are they friend or foe? They are both. Is their civilisation older than ours? It is. Will we ever communicate with them? Some people have already. Who are these extraterrestrials? They are angels.

The Word "angel" occurs 273 times in Scripture. (108 times in Old Testament, 165 times in New Testament). In the Greek New Testament it is "angelos", in the Hebrew Old Testament it is "mal'ak", both meaning messenger. Sometimes it means "human messenger", but mostly it means "heavenly messenger". It basically means "one who is sent".

In Biblical appearances, angels always manifest themselves as males, never as women or children (except maybe in Zechariah 5:9 where they seem to appear as women angels). They always appear youthful, like the angel at Christ's tomb (Mark 16:5).

Moses and the tabernacle craftsmen knew what winged cherubim angels look like, because they made two cherubim of gold on the ark of the covenant (Exodus 37:6-9), as did Solomon (1 Kings 6:23-32).

The winged, human faced bulls of Assyria and Babylon may have resembled cherubim guarding Eden.

Balaam's donkey saw the angel but Balaam did not. (Numbers 22:31). They have selective visibility.

The main tasks of angels are to:

1. Deliver messages from God to man (Daniel 9:21-23).
2. Encouraging and ministering to people's needs (1 Kings 19:1-8).
3. Opposing the work of Satan and demons (Daniel 10:20).

Benefits of studying the doctrine of angels are:

1. They constantly **watch** our lives (Daniel 4:17). Hence we will improve our conduct.
2. They **protect** us, hence we understand God's care for us (Hebrews 1:7).
3. As we see their great strength and authority as they humbly perform small tasks, we learn to serve God with humility also.
4. As God created many holy, powerful angels who worship Him, so we are encouraged to **worship** God (Revelation 22:8,9).
5. Understanding the **angelic conflict** helps us to be more committed to winning the spiritual war for people's souls.
6. As **God opposes and judges** wicked angels, so He will oppose and judge us if we fall into sin.
7. Much **evil in this world** is from evil angels. This helps us to understand human affairs.
8. We will be **more cautious** to watch for the deception of evil angels.
9. As angels deliver us from danger, so we can **trust our lives to God** who sends them (Hebrews 1:14)
10. As angels are **completely devoted to God** and ready to serve Him, so should we follow their example. Their unceasing service should motivate us to be more devoted in our service to God.

I. EXISTENCE OF ANGELS.

Jesus, Paul and most great Bible characters taught their existence. In Matthew 4:11, angels ministered to Christ after His wilderness temptation. The word "angel" first occurs in Genesis 16:7, where the angel of the Lord ministered to Hagar after Sarah had mistreated her (1913 BC). The existence of angels is tied to the reliability of the testimony of Christ and the Bible.

II. ORIGIN OF ANGELS.

Angels, like man, were created by a special act of God. They were not formerly men, nor did they evolve, but were created as angels, and do not procreate (Matthew 22:28-30). They are called "sons of God" (Job 1:6; 2:1) because they are directly created by God.

"All the sons of God" shouted with joy at the creation of the earth (Job 38:4-7). This shows that God created angels before He created the earth.

“Praise ye him, all his angels.....for he commanded, and they were created.” Psalm 148:2,5.
 Jesus Christ created them all (John 1:1-3, Colossians 1:16). The purpose of their creation was to glorify and worship Jesus Christ (Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:6; Revelation 4:11).

III. THE FALL OF ANGELS.

1. The Fact of their Fall. All angels were created sinless, but Lucifer who wanted to be like the Most High (Isaiah 14:12-17, Note his five “I wills”) through pride led a rebellion of angels against God. Ezekiel 28:15-17 describes Satan’s fall. Some angels are evil (Psalm 78:49; Matthew 25:41; Revelation 9:11; 12:7-9). This is because they left their own principality and proper habitation (Jude 6) and sinned (2 Peter 2:4).

2. The Time of their Fall. Their fall occurred before the fall of man.

3. The Cause of their Fall. They were created perfect with all affections of their heart directed to God
Question: How could such a being turn away from God?

Answer: Their fall was due to their deliberate, self-determined revolt against God. They chose self and their interests in preference to God and His interests.

Question: What motive caused their revolt?

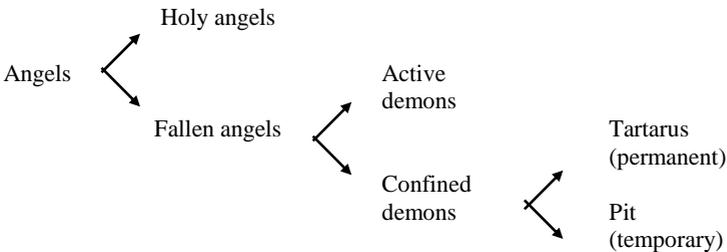
Answer: Undue ambition and the desire to surpass God, along with great prosperity, beauty, selfishness, pride, discontentment with what they had, and craving to get all that everyone else had. The cause of Satan’s fall, was the cause of the fall of other evil angels.

IV. THE RESULT OF THEIR FALL.

- a) All of them lost their original holiness and became corrupt in nature and conduct (Matthew 10:1).
- b) Some were cast down to hell (Tartarus) & are held there in chains until judgment day (2 Peter 2:4).
- c) Some are left free to oppose the work of good angels (Revelation 12:7-9; Daniel 10:12,13,20,21).
- d) The ground was cursed because of Adam’s sin (Genesis 3:17-19), and creation is groaning because of the Fall (Romans 8:19-22).
- e) They will be cast to the earth in the middle of the seven year tribulation (Revelation 12:8,9), then into the pit for 1,000 years. Then following their judgment (1 Corinthians 6:3), they will be cast into the Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:41; 2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6).

“And the angels which kept not their first estate but left their own habitation, He hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.” (Jude 6).

A. Classification of Angels



B. Number of Angels.

“to an **innumerable** company of angels”. (Hebrews 12:22).

“And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was **ten thousand times ten thousand**, and thousands of thousands.” (Revelation 5:11).

The number of angels is innumerable, 200 million is just an initial estimate of what John could see around God’s throne. Hence angels constitute an exceedingly large number which cannot be counted. There is no increase or decrease in their number because they neither reproduce nor die.

C. Fact of their Organisation.

God is the Author of order and organisation, not of confusion (1 Corinthians 14:33). Both human and angelic societies are organised.

Angelic organisation is seen as follows:

i) “There was a day when the sons of God (angels) came to present themselves before the Lord.” Job 1:6 and 2:1. There are stated assemblies among God’s angels when they meet to praise God and report their service to Him. They, as well as us, are accountable to God. At these meetings God discusses the conduct of Christians on earth with the angels, as seen in the case of Job, where God testifies of Job as a “perfect and upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil.” (Job 1:8).

ii) “I saw the Lord sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing by Him.... And the Lord said, who shall persuade Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And there came forth a spirit, and stood before the Lord,and said, I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.” (1 Kings 22:19-23).

Again God discusses with the angels how to bring about the death of evil King Ahab in battle. God even uses evil angels to achieve His plans in both believers and unbelievers lives.

iii) Angels gathered in order to witness the creation of the world. “Who laid the corner stone (of earth): when the morning stars (angels) sang together, and all the sons of God (angels) shouted for joy?” (Job 38:7,8).

iv) Jesus Christ is the captain of the host (army) of the Lord. Joshua then worshipped Him as God. (Joshua 5:13-15). God’s armies are organised for war. Jesus Christ is their Captain, and Michael the Archangel under Jesus Christ. In the middle of the 7 year tribulation Michael and his angels fight and expel Satan and his angels from heaven, destroying their place (Topos⁵¹¹⁷ = territory, location, place), casting them to earth to suffer defeat and imprisonment in the pit 3½ years later. (Rev.12:7-10)

Demons loosed from the pit in the tribulation show organisation by having a king over them named Abaddon (destroyer) or Apollyon (Revelation 9:11). Thus Satan’s armies are well organised.

- v) Organisation levels amongst angels are seen in eight titles given to them:
- ∇ **Principalities**⁽⁷⁴⁶⁾ are princes or chiefs among angels (Ephesians 1:21; 3:10; Colossians 2:10), or among demons (1 Corinthians 15:24; Ephesians 6:12; Colossians 2:15).
 - ∇ **Powers**⁽¹⁸⁴⁹⁾ or **Authorities** (Gk: Exousia¹⁸⁴⁹) (1 Peter 3:22).
 - ∇ **Dominions** (Gk: Kuriotes ²⁹⁶³) = lord or mighty one, an order of angels (Eph. 1:21; Col. 1:16).
 - ∇ **Angels**
 - ∇ **Rulers** of the darkness of this world (Gk: Kosmokrator ²⁸⁸⁸) meaning “holders of this world, or Lord of the world.” This is used of Satan and his angels (John 12:31; 2 Corinthians 4:4).
 - ∇ **Spiritual wickedness** in high places, or wicked spirits. (Ephesians 6:12).
 - ∇ **Thrones** (Gk: Thronos ²³⁶²) referring to heavenly Kings, with a seat of power (Colossian 1:16).

<u>Romans 8:38</u> Principalities Powers Angels	<u>Ephesians 1:21</u> Principality Power Might Dominion	<u>Ephesians 3:10</u> Principalities Powers in heavenlies	<u>Ephesians 6:12</u> Principalities Powers Rulers of the darkness of this world Spiritual wickedness in high places
---	--	---	--

<u>Colossians 1:16</u> Thrones Principalities Powers Dominions	<u>Colossians 2:10</u> Christ is the Head of Principalities and Powers	<u>Colossians 2:15</u> Christ spoiled Principalities and Powers	<u>1 Peter 3:22</u> Angels, authorities and powers being made subject unto Him.
---	--	---	--

God has organised the good angels, and Satan has organised the evil angels.

Application: Angels are organised, and demons are organised, yet Christians individually and in groups, often feel no need to be organised, especially in fighting evil, in winning souls, and in teaching the Bible. Believers often feel they can “go it alone”, have no need of church, or expect victory without any prior, organised preparation and discipline. Believers often miss the best because they don’t plan their good works and evangelistic activities.

D. Ranking of Angels.

Within classes of angels there seems to be various ranks appointed by God. Different angels are created for different purposes, just as God has gifted different believers for different tasks.

The angels may be classified as follows:

- i) Governmental Rulers - Thrones
(based on order of listing - Principalities
implying rank) - Authorities
- Powers
- Rulers of the darkness of this world
(The rule of angels is often manifest through earthly rulers.) Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; Ephesians 6:12.
- Wicked spirits
- Angels
- ii) Cherubim - Defend God’s holiness against human pride.
- iii) Seraphim - Give unceasing worship, and have a ministry of purification.
- iv) Living creatures
- v) Individual angels - Michael, Gabriel, Lucifer
- vi) Specially designated angels - Are known by the service they render
 - Angels of judgment - Gen.19:13; 2 Sam. 24:16; 2 Kings 19:35; Ezek 9:1,5,7; Ps.78:49
 - The Watchers - Daniel 4:13,23
 - Angel of the abyss - Revelation 9:1
 - Angel over fire - Revelation 14:18
 - Angel of the waters - Revelation 16:5

V. APPEARANCE OF ANGELS

What do angels generally appear as?

1. **Young men.** “And entering into the sepulchre, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a long white garment: and they were amazed.” (Mark 16:5).
2. **Lightning.** “His countenance was like lightning, and his raiment white as snow.” (Matthew 28:3).
3. **Shining garments.** “Behold, two men stood by them in shining garments.” (Luke 24:4).
4. **Face like the sun.** “I saw another mighty angel come down from heaven, clothed with a cloud; and a rainbow was upon his head, and his face was as it were the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire.” (Revelation 10:1).
5. Clothed in **pure and white linen**, and
6. Their breasts **girded with golden girdles**. (Revelation 15:6).

Because of angels’ splendour and great glory, we can understand why unsaved (Colossians 2:18) and believers (Rev 19:10;22:8,9) have attempted to worship them, and why God stops us from seeing them.

VI. NAMES OF GOOD ANGELS

A. Michael the Archangel. His name means “who is **like** God?” It teaches the incomparableness of God and devotion to God’s will. He contrasts with Satan’s pride who declared “I will be **like** the Most High.” (Isaiah 14:14).

Michael is mentioned **five** times in the Bible, always warring against Satan’s forces:

1. He helps a lesser ranked angel break free from the evil angel Prince of Persia to answer Daniel’s prayer: “But, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me;” Daniel 10:13,21.
“There is none that holdeth (supports) with me in these things, but Michael your prince.” 10:21.

We see here that:

- a) Michael is one of the chief princes, which implies that there may be other archangels.
 - b) Michael is Israel's prince guardian angel, assigned to Israel.
 - c) Satan assigns evil angels to increase the evil and corruption in a nation, as in the case of the evil angel called the Prince of Persia (a Principality), who is assigned to Persia.
 - d) "I remained there with the Kings of Persia" (10:13) shows angelic "thrones" referred to as the "Kings of Persia".
2. Michael will stand up to protect Israel in the future 7 year Tribulation, as their guardian angel: "At that time shall Michael stand up, the great Prince which standeth for the children of thy people: and there shall be a time of trouble...." (Daniel 12:1).
3. People hear Michael's voice shout out at the coming of Jesus Christ to catch up believers at the rapture in 1 Thessaloninas 4:16.
"For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the **voice** of the **archangel**, and the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first." (I Thessalonians 4:16).

Question: Why does Michael shout at the rapture?

Answer: Because Israel comes back into God's prophetic program with the 70th week commencing, leaving only 7 years until Christ sets up His Kingdom on earth. This is cause enough to shout for joy.

4. Michael disputes with Satan about the body of Moses.
"Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, the Lord rebuke thee." Jude 9. In this situation, and in spite of Michael's power and greatness, not even he dare bring a railing accusation against Satan, but falling back in dependence upon God, he declares, "The Lord rebuke thee."

We cannot rebuke Satan, but only say to him, as Michael did, 'The Lord rebuke thee' Zech3:1,2
"He showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the Lord, and Satan standing at his right hand to resist him.

²And the LORD (first person) said unto Satan (second person), the LORD (third person) rebuke thee, O Satan:..."

We see the Trinity mentioned here, that is, the first person of the JHVH Godhead rebuking Satan in the name of another member of the JHVH Godhead.

5. Michael and his angels fight against and defeat Satan and his angels, destroying their place in the heavens, and casting them into the earth. (Revelation 12:7-12). This occurs in the middle of the seven year tribulation, causing rejoicing among those angels and departed saints who dwell in the heavens.

This should comfort us knowing that God's angels are more powerful than Satan's angels, and that ultimate victory is God's and the Christians. Not only does Michael overcome Satan in the heavens, but Christians on earth will overcome Satan in three ways:

- i) By the blood of the Lamb.
- ii) By the word of their testimony.
- iii) By loving not their lives unto death.

Lesson: The problem with Christians today is that they love their lives on earth with all its luxuries that they don't make any sacrifices to achieve anything for God and in winning of souls to Christ.

Conclusion: Michael's activities are always seen in connection with warfare with Satan, and with the resurrection of the body. If one so great as Michael, the chief angel of God's angelic armies, does not rely on his own strength in opposing Satan but respects his evil power, how much more must we rely upon God. (Ephesians 6:10-12; 2 Peter 2:11).

B. GABRIEL. His name means "the mighty one". He is never called an archangel. As Michael's job is to war against Satan's armies, Gabriel's job is always as a **messenger, revealer and interpreter** of God's purposes concerning Israel and the Messiah to the prophets of Israel. He appears **four** times in Scripture, as follows:

1. Gabriel appeared as a man to Daniel with the task “Gabriel, make this man to understand the vision.” (Daniel 8:15,16). This sets in place the role of Gabriel to **interpret God’s Word** to the prophets of Israel. This is an example of the first mention principle in Scripture. This vision in Daniel 8:15-27 interprets the future Medo-Persian empire, the Greek empire, Alexander the Great and his four successors, and Antichrist’s activities at the time of the end.
2. The man Gabriel, in answer to Daniel’s prayer, flew swiftly, and informed Daniel saying “I am now come forth to give thee skill and understanding” (Daniel 9:21,22). He **interpreted the 70 week prophecy** to Daniel concerning the time of Messiah’s first coming, and some events of Christ’s second coming. (Daniel 9:20-27).
3. Gabriel **predicts the birth of John the Baptist** to Zacharias (Luke 1:10-20). As the people prayed, Gabriel appeared to Zacharias to declare “thy prayer is heard” (1:13). He describes himself as “I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent ... to shew thee these glad tidings” (1:19).
4. Gabriel **predicts the birth of Jesus Christ** and His ministry as King on David’s throne to Mary before Jesus was conceived. (Luke 1:26-38).

Conclusion: a) Gabriel, as one who is swift to reveal and interpret God’s message concerning Christ and Israel. So should we follow his example to be swift to carry God’s message of Christ to the lost. Gabriel is seen in association with the **Holy Spirit’s** ministry of interpreting God’s Word.

b) Michael is seen in association with **Jesus Christ** at the rapture (1 Thessalonians 4:16), and in fighting Satan, which Jesus does at His glorious appearing.

c) Lucifer’s sin of pride was to desire to be like the **Most High**.

Hence these three angels have some association with the three persons of the Godhead.

C. **CHERUBIM.** (Cherub singular) are heavenly beings of the highest order, created with incredible power and beauty.

1. **Description.** During Ezekiel’s captivity in Babylon, he received a vision of God’s glory involving four living creatures (Ezekiel 1:1-28).

a) Each has **four faces**, being that of a man, lion, ox and eagle.

“They four had the face of a **man**, and the face of a **lion** on the right side: of an **ox** on the left side,and of an **eagle**.” Ezekiel 1:10.

“Every one had four faces; the first face was the face of a **cherub**, and the second face was the face of a **man**, and the third the face of a **lion**, and the fourth the face of an **eagle**”. Ezekiel 10:14.

By comparing these two passages, we see that a **cherub** has the face of an **ox**.

b) “I knew that they were the cherubims. Every one had **four faces** apiece, and every one had **four wings**; and the likeness of the **hands** of a **man** was under their wings. Ezekiel 10:20,21

c) “The sole of their feet was like the sole of a **calf’s foot**.” Ezekiel 1:7.

d) “The noise of their **wings**, was like the noise of **great waters**, as the voice of the Almighty.” Ezekiel 1:24.

e) A **man** (Christ) sat on a sapphire throne high over their heads. Ezekiel 1:26.

f) “The living creatures ran and returned as the appearance of a **flash of lightning**.” Ezek. 1:14

g) “Their whole body, backs, hands, wings and wheels were **full of eyes** round about” Ezek 10:12

2. **Scriptural occurrences.**

i) Cherubim first appear at the gate of the **garden of Eden** after man was expelled (Genesis 3:24). They guarded the way to the tree of life lest sinful man should eat of it and live forever in an unredeemable state (Genesis 3:22). They teach us that sin and paradise are incompatible. Sinful man cannot approach God without the righteousness of Christ.

Statues of winged bulls and lions with human faces guarded the entrances of temples and palaces of ancient Babylon and Assyria. These nations were near the garden of Eden.

ii) Golden images of cherubim facing each other appear on the **mercy seat** of the Tabernacle (Exodus 25:17-22). God said “There I will meet with thee, and I will commune with thee from above the mercy seat, from between the two cherubims.” (Exodus 25:22).

They are hence called “cherubims of glory” shadowing the mercy seat; of which we cannot now speak particularly.” Hebrews 9:5. They guarded the holiness of God against sinful man breaking God’s law. When they saw the blood on the mercy seat, judgment was stayed.

- iii) They appear as **tapestry on the curtain of the tabernacle**, separating unholy people from God’s presence in the Holy of Holies (Exodus 26:1).
- iv) “Hezekiah prayed before the Lord, and said, O Lord God of Israel, which dwellest between the cherubims,” (2 Kings 19:15).
- v) Solomon in his temple “set the cherubims within the **inner house** and he overlaid the cherubims with gold. He carved all the **walls** of the house ... with cherubims, palm trees and open flowers.” (1 Kings 6:21-29).
- vi) Ezekiel while captive in Babylon received visions of the glory of God with four living creatures (1:1-28) later identified as cherubim (10:4,18-22).
- vii) The **Millennial temple** will have cherubim carved on its inside walls:
“From the ground unto above the door were cherubims and palm trees made, and on the wall of the temple.” (Ezekiel 41:20).
- viii) John sees four living creatures very similar to cherubim in heaven in Revelation 4:6-8 “in the midst of the throne, and round about the throne, were four beasts **full of eyes** before and behind. And the first beast was like a **lion**, ... and the second beast like a **calves**, and the third beast had a face as a **man**, and the fourth beast was like a flying **eagle**.”

3. Purpose and Duties of Cherubim

Cherubim are never called angels because they are not messengers in their duties. They never carry instructions from God to men.

- i) Their purpose is to **proclaim** and **protect** God’s **glory, presence** and **holiness**.
- ii) They are never sent from God’s presence but are confined to God’s throne. They designate the **place of God’s presence**, as in the Garden of Eden, the Tabernacle, and in Solomon’s temple.

The Shekinah glory represents God who is dwelling between the cherubims:

“Thou that **dwest** between the **cherubims**, shine forth.” Psalm 80:1.

“The Lord reigneth: let the people tremble: he **sitteth between the cherubims**.” Psalm 99:1

- iii) They show the **unapproachableness** of God.
- iv) They show God’s **glory**.
- v) They show God’s **intervention** in human affairs in Ezekiel 1.
- vi) Above the mercy seat they show how God can meet sinful man on the basis of blood sacrifice, and through a God given priesthood. These pointed to Christ as our only blood sacrifice to atone for our sins and as our great High Priest.
They also teach the grace of God that provides salvation for man and access to God through Jesus Christ’s blood sacrifice.

D. **SERAPHIM**. Or “burning ones” are only mentioned in Isaiah 6:2,6.

Cherubim are under God’s throne. “**Above** the firmament that was over their heads was the likeness of a throne...” (Ezekiel 1:26).

‘This is the living creature that I saw **under** the God of Israel. they were the cherubims’ Ezek.10:20

The Seraphim stand above God’s throne.

“...a throne....**above** it stood the seraphims” (Isaiah 6:1,2), their name meaning “burning ones” speaking of their consuming devotion to God.

“**Above** it stood the seraphims: each one had 6 wings; with two he covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he did fly.”

The symbolism is clear: “with two (wings) they cover their faces” shows that even the most exalted spirits cannot bear the full vision of God’s **glory**.

“with two (wings) they cover their feet” - shows their **reverence**, their hesitancy to tread uninvited upon holy ground.

“with two (wings) they did fly” - shows their **swiftness** to obey God’s commands.

They cried to each other “Holy, Holy, Holy, is Yahweh of hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.” (Isaiah 6:3).

Their duties are to lead heaven in the worship of God’s holiness, and to purify God’s servants for true worship and service. Hence they are concerned with worship and holiness, whereas cherubim are concerned with justice and might.

Application: They show that a sinner must be cleansed of sin before he can stand before God and serve Him (as in Isaiah’s case). Isaiah’s lips, now cleansed (by the hot coal) are now ready to speak God’s message to men (Isaiah 6:8,9).

E. GUARDIAN ANGELS.

“Take heed that ye despise not one of these **little ones**; for I say unto you, that **in heaven their angels** do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.” (Matthew 18:10).

The holy angels minister to the saints (Hebrews 1:14):

1. Through giving assistance, protection and deliverance (Lot in Genesis 19:11);
“He shall give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways.” (Psalm 91:11);
“Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, Abed-nego who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in Him.” (Daniel 3:28);
“The angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors (for the apostles).” (Acts 5:19);
“Then said they, It is his (Peter’s) angel.” (Acts 12:15).
2. Through giving encouragement. “There stood by me this night the angel of God, whose I am saying, Fear not, Paul...” (Acts 27:23,24).
3. Through watching over and representing believers in heaven. “The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.” (Psalm 34:7).
4. Through bringing people that they are assigned to, to hear the gospel, receive Christ as Saviour, and to serve God in this life. (Matthew 18:10).

When a person gets saved, their angels rejoice in heaven that the person they are assigned to has been saved. When we preach the gospel and lead people to Christ, we are cooperating with God and with holy angels who are assigned to the new believer from birth.

F. GENERAL NAMES OF ANGELS.

1. **Angel** is a supernatural, heavenly being who serves God’s purposes.
2. **Ministering spirits.** “Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?” (Hebrews 1:14).
“Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers a flaming fire.” (Psalm 104:4).
They minister for God in spiritual service.
3. **Host** shows God’s angels as His army. Angels are called upon to bless the Lord.
“Bless ye the Lord, all ye his hosts; ye ministers of his that do his pleasure.” (Psalm 103:20,21)
“Hosts” shows God’s heavenly army as a military force to accomplish His will and to fight His battles. God’s name, Yahweh of hosts, shows God as Commander in Chief of a great heavenly army. (Psalm 89:8).
4. **Chariots of fire** protected Elisha and his servant from the Syrian army. “Behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.” (II Kings 6:16,17). Four chariots which executed God’s military judgments on nations around Israel are seen in Zechariah 6:1-8. Elijah was caught up to heaven in a chariot of fire in 2 Kings 2:11.
5. **Watchers** denote angels as spectators of people and events of earth. God uses them to control and judge the world governments.
“Behold, a watcher and an holy one came down from heaven. ... This matter is by the decree of the watchers ... to the intent that the living may know that the Most High ruleth in the Kingdom of men.” (Daniel 4:13,17).
On four occasions angels are said to be observing:
 - a) Angels rejoice with God when one sinner repents (Luke 15:10).

- b) “Whosoever shall confess me before men, him shall the Son of Man confess before the angels of God: but he that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God.” (Luke 12:8,9). They watch us confessing or denying Christ publicly.
- c) All of Christ’s life on earth was “seen of angels”. (1 Timothy 3:16).
- d) Angels watch the Beast worshippers being tormented forever. (Revelation 14:10,11).
6. **Sons of God** (Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7; Genesis 6:2,4) is used of angels. The Hebrew is “bene elohim”, meaning in contrast with man, angels belong to the class of Elohim (God) speaking of their might. In Job 1 and 2, they assemble before God, serve Him and answer to God.
7. **Sons of the mighty**. (bene elim).
 “Who among the **sons of the mighty** can be likened unto the Lord?” (Psalm 89:6).
 This describes the great strength of angels.
 “Give unto the LORD, O ye **mighty**...glory and strength.” (Psalm 29:1).
 “Bless the LORD, ye his angels, that excel in **strength**...” (Psalm 103:20).
Note: Often the expression “son(s) of” describes a class of persons. For example:
 a) sons of the prophets (2 Kings 2:3,5,7,15; 6:1) refer to a class known as **prophets**.
 b) sons of belial (1 Samuel 2:12; 25:17,25) means a class of lawless **or worthless persons**.
 c) sons of Asaph (Nehemiah 11:22) refer to a class of **singers** founded by Asaph.
 d) sons of Levi (Nehemiah 12:23; Malachi 3:3 “He shall purify the sons of Levi”) refers to the **priestly class** descended from Levi.
 e) sons of Arcturus (Job 38:22) refers to a class of **stars** belonging to the brightest star in the constellation Bootes. “Canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?”
 f) Jesus Christ as the only begotten Son of God means that He is uniquely of the class of **God**.
8. **Gods** (Elohim⁴³⁰ in Hebrew), sometimes applies to angels, though Elohim mostly refers to God.
 “Thou hast made him (man) a little lower than the **angels** (elohim).” Psalm 8:5.
 “Give unto the LORD, O ye **mighty** (Hebrew “El” meaning angels)...glory.” Psalm 29:1.
 “Worship him, all ye gods (Elohim⁴³⁰ or angels)”. Psalm 97:7; 138:1.
 “Elohim” is used of angels as of God because they are like God as spirit beings.
 The same word is used of man. “I have said, Ye are gods (Elohim⁴³⁰) and all of you are children of the most High.” It is used in Psalm 82:6 and in John 10:33,34 by Jesus. It means “magistrates” here because of the dignity and honour of their office is applied to man.
9. **Flaming Fire** (Psalm 104:4 and Hebrews 12:29) reveals their holiness and zeal for God.
10. **Princes or Principalities**. These are angels that are princes over certain nations. Satan is the prince of this world (John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11), having demon princes over the nations (Daniel 10:13,20,21; 12:1).
11. **Stars**, used of angels, denotes their heavenly nature and dwelling place. (Job 38:7). Both angels and stars are called “the host of heaven”. (Psalm 33:6; Nehemiah 9:6; “They fought from heaven; the **stars** in their courses fought against Sisera.” Judges 5:20.). Note that astrology is connected with demon worship through the term “stars”, or “host of heaven”: “they burned incense unto Baal, to the sun, to the moon, to the planets, and to all the host of heaven.” 2 Kings 23:5; Jeremiah 19:13; “God gave them up to worship the host of heaven.” Acts 7:42.
 Satan is described in his rebellion against God as a “great red dragon and his tail drew the third part of the **stars** of heaven, and did cast them to the earth.” Revelation 12:3,4.
 “I saw a **star** fall from heaven to the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit.” Revelation 9:1.
 Stars then symbolise angels. Astrology and worship of the stars is condemned in Deuteronomy 18:10-14 as being connected with demonism. (Jeremiah 10:2; 2 Kings 23:5; 2 Chronicles 33:3; Isaiah 47:13).
12. **Angel of light**. “Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.” (2 Corinthians 11:14).

VII. NATURE OR CHARACTER OF GOOD ANGELS.

A. The **nature** of angels is as follows:

1. **Created beings.** Revelation 4:11; “He commanded and they were created.” Psalm 148:5.
2. **Spirit beings.** Hebrews 1:14; Psalm 104:4. They are not limited to the physical realm.
3. **Immortal.** “Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels.” Luke 20:34-36
4. **A company of beings, not a race.** “An innumerable company of angels.” Hebrews 12:22.
5. **Innumerable.** They are innumerable from man’s viewpoint. Only God knows their number.
6. **Higher than man.** “Thou madest him (man) a little lower than the angels.” Hebrews 2:7.
7. **Invisible.** “visible and invisible” Col. 1:16. At times they can become visible to human eyes.
8. **Intelligence.** They have greater knowledge than man but are not omniscient (Matthew 24:36). They have continued to learn since their creation (Eph. 3:10). They learn more of the wisdom of God by studying churches and Christians. Their learning capacity has not been corrupted by sin as has man’s. They do not have to study the past, because they have experienced it.
9. **Strength.** Paul calls them “mighty angels” (2 Thessalonians 1:7).
One angel killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers in a night (Isaiah 37:36).
We should pray “God help me to be strong to do your work.”
“His angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.” Psalm 103:20.
One angel killed 70,000 Israelites due to David’s sin. 2 Samuel 24:15,16.
One angel rolled away a four ton stone from Christ’s tomb.
10. **Personality.** This is proven because they have **intelligence** (Matthew 8:29; Daniel 9:23; 10:21; 1 Peter 1:12), **emotions** (Luke 2:13; James 2:19; Revelation 12:17), and **wills** (Luke 8:28-31; 2 Timothy 2:26; Jude 6). These are the three necessary features of personality. The Holy Spirit shows these qualities, proving He is a person, not an active force as JW’s claim. They can render intelligent worship to God.
They are held responsible for the quality of their service and for their moral choices.
11. They neither marry nor die. Matthew 22:30; Luke 20:35,36.
12. Angels eat food. “Man did eat angels’ food.” Psalms 78:25
13. Angels dwell in the heavens. John 1:51; Ephesians 3:10.
14. Believers shall judge angels. 1 Corinthians 6:3.
15. They are not bound by natural laws, because they are spirits:
 - they can enter locked prisons (Acts 12:7).
 - open prison doors (Acts 5:19).
 - ascend in a flame of fire (Judges 13:19,20).
 - travel great distances very quickly, faster than the speed of light.An angel apologised to Daniel for taking 21 days to travel from heaven to earth. Dan. 10:12,13
16. Force of appearance. Mary, Zacharias and the shepherds were greatly afraid at their sighting. The Roman soldiers at Christ’s tomb trembled for fear and became as dead men (Matt. 28:4).
17. Angels observe human activities.

B. The **character** of good angels is as follows:

1. **Holy.** Mark 8:38; Revelation 14:10. They are sinless and are unable to fall.
2. **Meek.** 2 Peter 2:11; Jude 9. Their character resembles the meekness of God. They are humble in contrast to the pride of fallen angels.
3. They **worship** God. Hebrews 1:6; Revelation 22:9. Good angels never accept worship from man, though fallen angels seek to be worshipped.
4. They **obey God** immediately and unquestioningly. (1 Peter 3:22).
“ye ministers of his that do his pleasure.” (Psalm 103:20,21).
5. Their **knowledge** is limited, but has increased over time, particularly as they study God’s workings on earth. (1 Peter 1:12).
6. **Stronger than man** (2 Peter 2:11);

“Angels are greater in power and in might” (Revelation 18:1,21); “a mighty angel” (2 Thessalonians 1:7); one angel killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers in one night, and rescued King Hezekiah and Jerusalem (2 Kings 19:35).

7. **Patience.** Numbers 22:22-35 shows the angel gently resisting Balaam going to curse Israel.
8. **Joy.** They rejoice at the creation of earth (Job 38:7) & rejoice over people being saved. Luke 15:10
9. They are **clothed** in white linen, bright as light. No darkness is in them. (Revelation 15:6).

VIII. THE WORK AND MINISTRY OF GOOD ANGELS.

They minister to worship God in heaven, and to serve man on earth.

A. They minister to God in:

1. Worship and praise. In Isaiah 6:3 and Revelation 4:6-11 they worship God for His holiness, worthiness, creation and omnipotence.
2. Service to God and men. Since “angel” means “messenger”, they carry God’s messages to men such as Manoah, Zacharias (Luke 1:19), Mary (Luke 1:26-33), & the shepherds at Christ’s birth.
3. Governing the universe.
In Psalm 103:19,20 God’s rule is associated with the service of angels:
 - in controlling **nature**, such as winds (Revelation 7:1), the seas (Revelation 16:3), the sun’s heat (Revelation 16:8,9).
 - in controlling **nations**. Behind the scenes, good angels oppose Satan & his angels. Dan.10:13,21
Evil angels may influence governments to oppose the gospel and Christians. For our needs we have the armour of God (Eph. 6:10-13) and the angels of God (2 Kings 6:17; Heb. 1:14).
4. Protecting believers. They may harass our enemies (Psalm 35:4,5,6) and deliver us from their wicked works (Psalm 34:7; Psalm 63:9; Hebrews 1:14).
5. Execute God’s judgments, as in the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 9:1-13), plaguing Egypt (Psalm 78:43,49), destroying Egypt’s firstborn (Exodus 12:13,23), chastening Israel by killing 70,000 Israelites (1 Chronicles 21:15-18), killing 185,000 Assyrian soldiers (2 Kings 19:35), and Michael and his angels will judge Satan and his angels (Revelation 12:7-9).

B. They minister to Christ in:

1. Predicting His birth to Mary, assuring her that her child would be the God-man and Saviour. Luke 1:26-28.
2. Announcing His birth to shepherds. Luke 2:8-15.
3. Protecting Him as a baby from Herod by warning His parents to flee to Egypt, then return to Nazareth after Herod’s death. Matthew 2:13-21.
4. Strengthening Christ during His earthly trials in the wilderness. After this trial “angels came and ministered unto Him.” Matthew 4:11.
In Gethsemane when He faced the full wrath of God for our sins, an angel came to strengthen Him. Luke 22:43.
5. Defended Christ at His request. When He was taken prisoner, He could have called 12 legions of angels to rescue Him, but He willingly went to the cross to pay for our sins. Matthew 26:53.
6. Announced His resurrection. An angel rolled away the stone from Christ’s tomb to let people in, and later announced Christ’s resurrection to those coming to the tomb. Matthew 28:6; Luke 24:5-8
7. Angels are subject to Him in heaven now. “Angels, authorities and powers being made subject unto him.” 1 Peter 3:22.
8. Angels rejoice when God saves a repentant sinner. Luke 15:10.
9. Angels now worship the God-man in heaven. Revelation 5:11,12.
10. Angels predicted Christ’s bodily return in the clouds. Acts 1:11.
11. Angels accompany Christ when He returns in glory. Matthew 25:31.
12. Angels worship Christ when He returns. Hebrews 1:6.
13. Angels gather the saved and wicked at Christ’s return. Matt. 13:39-43; 24:31; 2 Thess. 1:7-10.

C. Angels are present at the beginning of new dispensations or at great events.

1. At Creation, “the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy.” Job 38:7

2. At the **giving of the Law**, at Mount Sinai, God used angels to deliver the Law to Moses, as seen from:
 - i) Galatians 3:19 “the law was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator.”
The Law came from angels to Moses the mediator, then to the people.
 - ii) Acts 7:38,53 “Who have received the law by the disposition of angels and have not kept it.”
 - iii) Hebrews 2:2 “For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast....”
God’s giving of the law through angels explains the Jews high regard for angels. It explains why Hebrews 1 and 2 shows the superiority of Christ over angels, and why Christ replaced the Mosaic law.
3. At Christ’s birth, resurrection, ascension and return.
4. They **minister to believers**. As God loves us, so angels are also interested in us, as seen in Daniel 10:11, “O Daniel, a man greatly beloved.”
Their ministry shows God’s love and care for us, in these forms:
 - a) **Revealing** God’s will and word to men. Much of the books of Daniel and Revelation were given through angels.
 - b) **Guiding** and directing people to win others to Christ.
An angel directed Philip to go south from Samaria to the Gaza desert to win the Ethiopian eunuch to Christ. (Acts 8:26). Notice that the angel gave the general direction, but the Holy Spirit pointed out the exact person (Acts 8:29).
An angel directed Cornelius to send for Peter who would tell him how to be saved. (Acts 10:1-8; 11:13,14). Notice again that the Holy Spirit gave Peter specific instructions (Acts 10:19; 11:12).
 - c) **Providing** physical needs such as food and water. For example:
 - i) To Hagar and Ishmael in the desert (Genesis 21:17-20).
 - ii) God providing manna known as angels food to Israel in the wilderness. Psalm 78:23-25
 - iii) When Elijah had fled from Jezebel and had lay down to die, an angel awoke him and provided him with “a cake baked on the coals, and a cruse of water.” (1 Kings 19:5-7).
 - iv) Angels ministered to Christ after His 40 days fasting and His temptation by Satan in the wilderness. (Matthew 4:11).
 - d) **Protecting** or guarding believers from physical danger:
 - i) God sent an angel to shut the lions’ mouths when Daniel was thrown into the lions’ den. (Daniel 6:20-23).
 - ii) God sent an angelic army to surround and protect Elisha and his servant at Dothan from the Syrian army. Elisha said “Fear not: for they that be with us (angels) are more than they that be with them.” (2 Kings 6:16-17).
 - iii) God sent an angel to kill 185,000 Assyrians who were laying siege to Jerusalem. Isaiah 36,37.
 - e) **Delivering** believers from harm:
 - i) When the Jewish leaders imprisoned the apostles, an angel opened the doors, led them out and told them to keep preaching. (Acts 5:17-20).
 - ii) Peter was delivered from prison by an angel causing his chains to fall off, opening the prison doors and leading him out. (Acts 12:5-10).
 - iii) God delivers from harm, by sealing the 144,000 Israelite witnesses in the Tribulation so they are preserved to complete their job of preaching the Gospel to the world.
 - f) **Strengthening** and **encouraging** believers to continue preaching and serving God:
 - i) After setting the apostles free from prison, an angel encouraged them to continue preaching. (Acts 5:19-20).
 - ii) An angel appeared to Paul at sea in a storm predicting that he would be preserved from death at sea so he could preach at Rome. (Acts 27:23-25).
 - g) **Sent in answer to prayer**:
 - i) Daniel prayed for Israel’s restoration to the land and an angel came to instruct him and answer his prayer. (Daniel 9:20-24).

- ii) Daniel prayed and fasted, so God sent an angel to give him the detailed history of the next 300 years. (Daniel 10:10-12).
 - iii) When Herod imprisoned Peter, the church prayed for his release without ceasing, and God sent an angel to deliver him. (Acts 12:1-17).
- h) Carrying believers to heaven:**
 Angels carried Lazarus' spirit to paradise at death (Luke 16:22).
 Michael disputed with Satan over Moses' body (Jude 9).
 Scripture shows that the Holy Spirit's and angels' ministry differs as follows:

Angels

1. External and physical.
2. Minister for us.
3. Guard our bodies and pathway.
4. May be agents to answer prayer.

Holy Spirit

1. Internal and Spiritual.
2. Minister in us.
3. Guards our spirits and guides us the right way.
4. The Prompter and Director of our prayers (Romans 8:26,27).

- i) Angels **observe believers**. Angels learn and develop from observing the work of God and men on earth in this church age. Luke 12:8,9; 1 Corinthians 4:9, 11:10;
 "I charge thee before God and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels....do nothing by partiality." 1 Timothy 5:21.
- j) Angels **execute judgment on unbelievers and nations**. For example:
 Herod was eaten of worms (Acts 12:23), and Sodomites were blinded and destroyed (Genesis 19:13,11).
- k) **Future work of angels**. They will gather the elect when Christ returns. (Matthew 24:31). They will separate the saved from the lost at Christ's coming. (Matthew 13:39,49,50).

Question: What do they observe?

- i) **Salvation**. They aim to learn more about God as they observe the operation of salvation in people. "of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently which things the angels desire to look into." 1 Peter 1:10-12.
 As angels learn and develop, they can worship and serve God with more understanding and devotion.
- ii) **Worship**. Angels observe worship in a local church, looking for evidence of woman's subjection to man. "For this cause ought the woman to have power on her head because of the angels." 1 Corinthians 11:1-10. A woman's long hair (v.15) or head covering evidenced her submissive condition of heart, as she worshipped God. (v.3).
- iii) **Work and witness**. Angels observe the ministry of each believer in any local church. Paul charges Timothy before God and the holy angels to administer his church impartially, "I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality." (1 Timothy 5:21).
 Paul describes the Apostles and all believers as a public spectacle involved in a life and death struggle with Satan over the souls of men. God, Satan, man, good and evil angels, watched the Apostles and believers fighting daily for the souls of men. "We are made a spectacle unto the world, to angels, and to men." (1 Corinthians 4:9).
 When a sinner understands the gospel and repents, the angels rejoice from their "grandstand" in heaven. (Luke 15:10). Angels will hear Christ confessing or denying people who confessed or denied Him on earth before men (Luke 12:8,9); Angels will witness the rewarding of believers. (Matthew 16:27). The fact that angels observe us should cause us to walk soberly in dedication, dependence on Christ, and in dignity.

IX. ACTIVITY AND WORK OF EVIL ANGELS (DEMONS)

Under Satan's control are a great number of evil spirit beings known as demons, authorities, principalities, powers, rulers of darkness, etc..

These are symbolised in Scripture by:

1. Fowls of the air. (Matthew 13:4,19).
2. Unclean and hateful birds in a cage. (Revelation 18:1-3).
3. Unclean frogs (Revelation 16:13,14).
4. Locusts from the bottomless pit. (Revelation 9:1-10).

The activity of demonic spirits is summarised as, "The thief cometh to steal, and to kill, and to destroy." (John 10:10).

These spirits attack mankind spiritually, mentally, emotionally, physically and morally. Examples of this are:

1. They **oppose** God's servants by "taking away the word sown." Matthew 13:19.
2. They **hinder** the Gospel: "but Satan hindered us". 1 Thessalonians 2:18.
3. They **take** people captive: "who are taken captive by him". 2 Timothy 2:26.
4. They **blind** unbelievers' minds. 2 Corinthians 4:4.
5. They **sow tares** (children of the devil) among wheat (believers in a local church), to destroy its outreach. Matthew 13:39.
6. They **seduce** people to believe error so as to stop them achieving God's plan for their lives. They seek to lead astray, tempt, corrupt, and to cause people to be obsessed with false ideas. 1 Timothy 4:1; Mark 13:22; 1 John 2:26.
7. They **trouble** people as in the case of Saul (1 Samuel 16:14).
The Hebrew word for "trouble" means "to terrify, to make fearful or afraid."
It means agitation of mind, perplexing and uneasiness.
8. They **oppress** people: "healing all that were oppressed of the devil." Acts 10:38.
"Oppress" means to "overburden in body or mind."
9. They **vex** people, meaning "to suffer at the hands of another, to harass, to mob, to experience pain" (Acts 5:16; Luke 6:18); "Vexed with unclean spirits".
"My daughter is grievously vexed with a devil." (Matthew 15:22).
10. They **bind** people: "whom Satan hath bound these 18 years." Luke 13:16.
This means "to tie up, confine, to fasten by binding cords around".
11. They **deceive** people: This is a sign of Christ's return. Matthew 24:4,5,11,24.
12. They **possess** people. They occupy, own and indwell a person, sometimes causing lunacy, blindness, and dumbness. Matthew 4:24.
13. They **buffet** people, meaning "to hit with blow after blow, to punch, to slap, and to fight against." 2 Corinthians 12:7.
14. They **resist** people, meaning they "stand up against, to act as an adversary, and to oppose." Zechariah 3:1-3.
15. They **torment** people (Revelation 9:1-11; 16:13-14).
16. They **wrestle** against us (Ephesians 6:12), seeking to pin us to the ground so we achieve nothing for God, or to throw us out of the ring or race of life for people's souls.

Question: What do we have to oppose them and to defend ourselves?

Answer: The Lord has given the believer mighty spiritual weapons to defeat the attacks of Satan:

1. **The Word of God.** Satan's power to deceive is due to people's ignorance of God's Word. God's people are often destroyed for lack of knowledge (Hosea 4:6). Jesus used the Word of God when He said "it is written" to defeat Satan (Matthew 4:1-10).
2. **The Whole Armour of God.** Ephesians 6:10-18. Truth, righteousness, gospel of peace, shield of faith, helmet of salvation, sword of the Spirit, praying and watching.
3. **Jesus Christ living in us.** At salvation, Jesus Christ, the Father and the Holy Spirit indwell the Christian. Greater is He that is in you than he that is in the world. (1 John 4:4).
4. **The Filling and Power of the Holy Spirit.** The Holy Spirit filled believer has the power to withstand, fight and conquer all the power of the enemy.

“If I cast out devils by the Spirit of God.”

“First bind the strong man, and then he will spoil his goods.” Matthew 12:28,29.

5. **Fellow believers in a local church.** “Nevertheless, God that comforteth those that are cast down, comforted us by the coming of Titus.” 2 Corinthians 7:6.
A reason for coming to church is for comfort, as believers use spiritual gifts to help each other.
6. Good angels ministering to us.
7. The Name of Jesus Christ. Acts 16:18.
8. The Blood of Jesus Christ cleansing us from sin. Revelation 12:11.

X. JESUS CHRIST’S SUPERIORITY TO ANGELS.

The Book of Hebrews in showing Christ’s perfection and superiority to the Old Testament system and persons, begins by showing Christ’s superiority to angels, who were highly esteemed by the Jews.

In Hebrews 1:2,3 **Christ is given a seven-fold exalted position** as:

1. **Heir of all things** (2). As the Son of God He is possessor or Lord of all things. All things are His “All things that the Father hath are mine.” (John 16:15; 17:10).
An heir is one who acquires anything. The title “heir” denotes His rank and dignity.
2. **By whom also he made the worlds.** v.2. (eternity, the universe).
Christ is the agent of creation, the Creator Himself. John 1:3,10; Colossians 1:16; Ephesians 3:9; 1 Corinthians 8:6.
3. **Who being the brightness of His glory.** v.3.
Brightness means radiated splendour. The rays of the sun are its “brightness”, or that by which the sun is seen and known. The sun itself we do not see; the beams which flow from it we do see. Hence, if God the Father be represented as the Sun (“The Lord God is a sun..” Psalm 84:11; Malachi 4:2), then Christ is the radiance of the sun. He is that by which we perceive or know God. “Neither knoweth any man the Father save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal Him.” (Matthew 11:27). As the sun’s rays are of the same substance as the sun, so is Christ of the same substance (full Deity) as God the Father.
“**Glorify**” means praise, applause, honour, dignity, splendour, dazzling light, excellence and perfection of God as resembling a bright light. This word is applied to:
 - the sun and stars. (1 Corinthians 15:40,41).
 - to the light Paul saw on the Damascus road. (Acts 22:11).
 - the shining of Moses face. (2 Corinthians 3:7).
 - the celestial light surrounding the angels. (Revelation 18:1).
 - to glorified saints (Luke 9:31,32).
 - to the dazzling splendour or majesty of God enthroned. (2 Thessalonians 1:9).
4. **The express image of his person.** v.3.
“Express image” means a character stamped. Christ is the exact resemblance of the Father, as an image is of the stamp. “Who is the image of the invisible God.” Colossians 1:15.
5. **Upholding all things by the Word of His power.** v.3.
Christ upholds or sustains the universe by His powerful word or command.
Proof that Christ is God omnipotent:
 - God spake, and it was done. (Psalms 33:9).
 - Jesus commanded the waves and winds, and they were still. (Matthew 8:26,27).
 - Jesus spoke to diseases and they departed, to the dead and they arose.
6. **He had by Himself purged our sins.**
By Himself = not by blood of bulls and lambs, but by his own blood.
Purged = purified, expiated (John 15:2)
= having made purification for our sins.
Cleansing us from all sin is why Christ came (1 John 1:7). Having done this:
7. **He sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on High,** His work of redemption being finished.

In Hebrews 1:4-14 we find **seven Old Testament quotations**, all of which prove the **superiority of Christ to the angels**. They are:

1. Christ has a **more excellent name**, “**my Son**” than the angels. 1:4,5.

This is quoted from Psalm 2:7, “The Lord hath said unto me, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee.” Paul pinpointed the day of this begetting as the resurrection of Jesus Christ in Acts 13:33, “God hath fulfilled the same unto us their children, in that he hath **raised up Jesus** again; as it is also written in the second Psalm, Thou art **my Son**, this day have I begotten thee.” “Begotten” refers to the “Huios” (Son) entering the offices of Prophet, Priest and King. The name “sons of God” is applied to Christians (John 1:12; I John 3:1,2) and to angels (Genesis 6:2,4; Job 1:6; 2:1), but the argument here is that the name “my son” has never been given to any angel in particular.

From eternity past, Jesus Christ was God the Son.

At His incarnation, He humbled Himself to become a man.

In His resurrection He glorified His humanity, receiving back the eternal glory He had veiled.

2. Christ has a **better relationship** as the **Son of David** (1:5). This is quoted from 2 Samuel 7:14 “I will be his Father, and he shall be my son.” This promise was given to David to have a permanent heir/descendant to sit on His throne, to comfort David, after God forbid him from building the Temple. The immediate application was to David’s son, Solomon, whom God would love and discipline as a son (Psalm 89:27). The ultimate application is to Jesus Christ as the greater than Solomon, and the fulfiller of the Davidic Covenant.

3. **Christ receives worship of all angels**. 1:6. “Let all the angels of God **worship** Him.” God commanded all the angels to worship Christ, which proves that Jesus Christ is God. None of God’s angels would worship a mere creature, or heaven would be full of idolaters. Jesus Christ is not Michael the archangel, because Michael must worship Jesus as well. We only worship God, never a creature. “Worship him, all ye gods (angels).” Psalm 97:7.

4. **Christ is served by angels**. 1:7. “And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.” This is quoted from Psalm 104:4. Angels often served Christ when He was on earth. (Matthew 4:11; Luke 22:43). Angels obey God’s will as the wind (spirits) and lightning (flame of fire), while the Son is Lord of all.

5. **Christ is called “God enthroned”**. 1:8. This is quoted from Psalm 45:6,7:

“But unto the Son he saith, **thy throne, O God**, is for ever and ever...”

Christ’s deity is proven here by Him **owning the throne**, and by Him **being called “God”**.

i) Angels minister before the throne, they do not sit on the throne.

Psalm 110 teaches that Jesus Christ is now enthroned in glory, but not yet enthroned on earth. Both God and the Lamb own the one throne in heaven.”

“...proceeding out of the throne (of God and of the Lamb).” Revelation 22:1.

“but the throne (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it.” Revelation 22:3.

ii) The Father here calls the Son “God”, proving Jesus Christ’s Deity.

6. **Christ is the Eternal Creator** of all things. 1:10,11,12.

“And, Thou Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the **earth**; and the heavens are the works of thy hands. They shall perish but thou remainest...”

This is quoted from Psalm 102:25-27 being addressed to JHVH.

Here in Hebrews 1:10-12, the writer applies it to Christ, hence calling Christ JHVH God. The angels did not lay the foundation of the earth, only Jesus Christ as God did that. He will one day fold up and change the old creation into a new universe. Everything around us changes, but Jesus Christ never changes, He is the same yesterday, today, and forever (Hebrews 13:8).

7. **Christ as King of Kings sits on the Father’s right hand** (1:13,14), the place of honour. This quotes Psalm 110:1. Christ applies this passage to Himself in Matthew 22:43,44.

Peter applies it to Christ in Acts 2:34,35 “until I make thine enemies thy footstool,” means to reduce Christ’s enemies to entire subjection. Ancient warriors stood on the necks of conquered kings as a sign of complete triumph over them.

Conclusion: No angel can lay claim to any of the above attributes of Christ. Christ is fully God and fully man. Angels serve Christ and us who are saved.

XI. SATAN'S TACTICS.

“Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices.” 2 Corinthians 2:11.

Aim: To war a good warfare we must know our enemy's devices and put on the whole armour of God to defeat Satan's devices.

1. THE NAMES OF SATAN

- a) The Anointed **cherub** who covers. Ezekiel 28:14,16. Before he fell, he was a high ranking guardian for God. “Anointed” means that he had a special position.
- b) The **Prince of this world**. John 12:31; 16:11. Satan rules a world of unsaved men and fallen angels.
- c) The **Prince of the power of the air**. Ephesians 2:2.
- d) The **Prince of demons, Beelzebub**. Matthew 12:24; Luke 11:15.
- e) The **god of this world**. 2 Corinthians 4:4. His job is to blind the minds of unbelievers, lest they be saved.
- f) **Lucifer**. Isaiah 14:12, son of the morning.
- g) **Satan** means adversary or opposer. Zechariah 3:1; Revelation 12:9. He opposes God, His program and His people. This name occurs 52 times in the Bible.
- h) The **Devil** (35 times used). Luke 4:2,13; Revelation 12:9 means slanderer, one who trips up. He utters maliciously false reports that injure another's reputation. He seeks to slander God, Christ and believers.
- i) The **Old Serpent**, identifies his crafty deception, as with Eve. Revelation 12:9; Genesis 3:1,14
- j) The **Great Dragon**. Revelation 12:3,7,9 portrays him as a terrifying, destructive beast seeking the total devastation of Christians.
- k) The **Evil one**. John 17:15; 1 John 5:18. The Greek noun “ho poneros” shows Satan to be intrinsically wicked and corrupt, who seeks to corrupt others. The Greek article “ho” shows Satan to be a specific person, not just evil as a concept. Christ prayed to keep believers from the power of the evil one (John 17:15) in which the whole world lies (1 John 5:18).
- l) **Destroyer**. Revelation 9:11. Satan destroys physical and spiritual life.
- m) **Deceiver**. Revelation 12:9; 20:3. He continuously deceives the whole world, until Christ returns to defeat him. Too many Christians are ignorant of the “wiles of the devil”. Eph. 6:11.
- n) The **spirit that now works in the children of disobedience**. Ephesians 2:2.
- o) **Murderer**. John 8:44.
- p) **Liar**. John 8:44.
 - He abode not in the truth.
 - There is no truth in him.
 - It is his nature to lie.
 - He is a liar and the father of lies.

2. SATAN'S ACTIVITY AND TACTICS

Satan opposes and attacks God, nations, unbelievers and Christians.

a) **GOD:**

- i) Satan opposes **God's person**. Since Satan desired to be like the Most High, so his power and activities are directed against God. His attack on Adam was really an attack on God's character and control (Genesis 3:1-5). Satan induced Cain to murder Abel, a man of God (1 John 3:12). God is love and promotes love, whereas Satan is hateful and promotes hate (1 John 3:7-15). God is life & creates life, whereas Satan seeks to bring death (Hebrews 2:14).
- ii) Satan opposes **God's program**:
 1. He introduces counterfeit lying **philosophies**. He may deny God's existence or control of affairs (Psalm 14). To explain the universe, he substitutes evolution for creation, human progress for the need of divine salvation. He substitutes atheism, agnosticism and relativism for God's truth.
 2. He introduces counterfeit lying **religions**. Here we find:

- **False ministers**, Satan’s ministers who transform themselves into angels of light (2 Corinthians 11:13-15). Satan may gain control of theological colleges or churches through a board of deacons or a disobedient preacher. He seeks to control and destroy a church’s work for God.
 - **False doctrines**, which he spreads through demons “doctrines of devils” (1 Timothy 4:1-3), who teach righteousness by works.
 - **False Christs**. (1 John 2:18,22; 4:3).
 - **False followers**. Matthew 13:38,39 .These profess to believe in Christ, but are Satan’s counterfeits. These will sow discord among the brethren. Proverbs 6:19.
- b) **NATIONS**: He deceives the nations, leading them astray from God’s truth. At Christ’s return, Satan will be bound for 1,000 years “that he should deceive the nations no more.” (Revelation 20:3). Upon his release he will go out to deceive the nations again. (Revelation 20:7,8-10). “The devil that **deceived** them was cast into the lake of fire...” (Revelation 20:10). He is the “god of this world”, including unsaved men and evil angels. (2 Corinthians 4:4). He offered the nations to Christ in the wilderness temptation. Christ did not dispute Satan’s right to make this offer, but Christ refused Satan’s quick way of obtaining rule of the earth. (Matthew 4:8-10). Satan influences nations to oppose Israel and Christians (Daniel 10:13,20; “but Satan hindered us” 1 Thess. 2:18), and the spread of the gospel. During the tribulation, he will control the world through the Antichrist.
- c) **UNBELIEVERS**: Satan prevents people from accepting God’s truth by:
- i) **Snatching away the gospel** (Luke 8:12). Some people who hear the gospel are prevented from understanding it, lest they believe it and are saved.
 - ii) **Blinding people’s minds to the gospel** (2 Corinthians 4:3,4). He puts a barrier in people’s minds to understanding the gospel. Perishing sinners hence think that the gospel sounds foolish and irrelevant (1 Corinthians 1:18).
 - iii) **Building false religions** (1 Timothy 4:1-3). He uses men who preach lies of salvation by human works, or he persuades men that there is no need of salvation, only progress.
 - iv) **Promoting a false lifestyle** (Ephesians 2:1-4) “In time past ye walked according to the course of this world....fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind”. The philosophy of the age or “course of this world” is self-centred and self-promoting. It is based on pleasure, possessions and position. “Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world....” (1 John 2:15-17). Satan energises the “sons of disobedience” to follow the world. Unbelievers being satisfied with the things of this world and materialism are kept from desiring a relationship with the living God.
- d) **SATAN’S OPPOSITION TO CHRISTIANS**: He seeks to defeat believers in their personal life and service to Christ. The wise Christian will be aware of Satan’s tactics and guard against them (2 Corinthians 2:11), some of which are:
- i) **Warring** against Christians. What appears to be human opposition may really be Satan’s attacks. We are not wrestling against “flesh and blood”, but against spiritual forces of wickedness in high places (heavens). We must put on the whole armour of God to counter these attacks. Ephesians 6:10-18.
 - ii) **Accusing and slandering** Christians. Revelation 12:10. As the “devil” means slanderer, so he accuses us before God for our sins and imperfections. He slanders one believer against another, causing break in fellowship due to imagined wrongs of another believer. This is done to get believers out of good, soul-winning, missionary-minded churches, and hence to weaken the gospel outreach in the world. He also works on Christians with **untaught consciences** to engulf them in continual guilt and fear in order to cause them to hate the preacher for preaching against sin, when all they need to do is to confess and forsake their sins to remove their guilt.
 - iii) **Planting doubts**. Satan seeks to get us to:
 - Doubt God’s goodness.
 - Doubt God’s Word.

- Doubt God's concern for us.
 - He emphasises God's restrictions as unjust (Genesis 3:1).
 - He claims that God's warnings and Word are untrue. (3:4).
 - He claims God's interests as selfish, and limiting to man's development. (3:5).
- Hence, he maligns God's character and challenges God's authority.

iv) Tempting us to sin:

- a) To **lie** (Acts 5:3). Satan is the father of lies, and he tempts others to lie. To lie is to tell a falsehood in whole or in part for personal gain, and to the loss and hurt of another.
- b) To **sex sins**. (1 Corinthians 7:5; 6:13-20). Satan presents a philosophy of the priority of bodily satisfaction. Fornication, adultery, homosexuality or masturbation comes from a preoccupation with bodily needs. These are based on false self-gratification. God has provided marriage for the normal expression of sexual needs.
- c) To **occupation with this world**. (1 John 2:15-17; 5:19). The world is Satan's system built on self-promotion. Its philosophy and practice are anti-God. Satan seeks to influence and defeat us through "the lusts of the flesh" (pleasures), "the lusts of the eyes" (possessions), and the boastful "pride of life" (self-promotion). These attitudes affect all of us to some extent, knowingly or unknowingly. Some, such as Demas (2 Timothy 4:10) have fallen for it.
- v) To **relying on human strength and wisdom**. (1 Chronicles 21:1-8). Satan tempted David to have confidence in the number of His soldiers, and Peter to resist Jesus on the basis of his human wisdom. He moved the Corinthians to judge Paul's message and ministry according to human wisdom as being foolish and weak (1 Corinthians 1:18-25). Satan tries to get us to rely on our strength and wisdom because he can easily defeat what is purely human, since it is not based on God's word or power.
- vi) To **pride in spiritual matters**. (1 Timothy 3:6). Satan attacks church leaders in order to destroy congregations. Hence Paul urged novices not to be pastors, lest being lifted up in pride, they fall. Any spiritual ability carries with it the danger of self-satisfaction and self-confidence which gives Satan an opportunity.
- vii) To **discouragement**. (1 Peter 5:6-10). Satan would have us occupied with our difficulties and overcome with our cares. Peter tells us to cast all our cares upon Christ, for He cares for us. He then tells us to beware of Satan walking about as a roaring lion seeking to devour us. (1 Peter 5:7-8). Persecution, rejection, lack of appreciation, physical and spiritual difficulties may lead us to discouragement, despair and to defeat.
- viii) **Persecution**. (Revelation 2:10).
- ix) **Preventing service** (1 Thessalonians 2:18). Satan once thwarted Paul from coming to help the Thessalonians.
- x) **Infiltrating local churches** through:
 - a) false teachers – we must test all things by God's Word.
 - b) false disciples - Satan sows evil seed.
- xi) **Promoting division**. Strife and anger give the devil a chance to promote division (Ephesians 4:26,27).
- xii) **Counterfeiting**. When Satan said, "I will be like God," he meant that he wanted to be worshipped as God. Thus he set up a rival religion, a complete imitation of all that God does, as seen in this list of counterfeits:
 - Satan has a throne (Revelation 2:13).
 - Satan has doctrines of devils (1 Timothy 4:1).
 - Satan has a synagogue (Revelation 2:9 and 3:9).
 - Satan has a cup of devils and a communion table of devils (1 Corinthians 10:21).
 - Satan has a counterfeit fellowship with devils (1 Corinthians 10:20).
 - Satan transforms himself into an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14).
 - Satan has ministers that appear as ministers of righteousness (2 Corinthians 11:15).
 - Satan has false apostles (2 Corinthians 11:13), and false prophets (2 Peter 2:1).

- Satan has a Kingdom (Matthew 12:26).
- Satan does counterfeit miracles, signs and wonders (Revelation 16:14).
- Satan has a harlot church, Mystery Babylon to counterfeit the bride of Christ. (Rev. 17:5).
- Satan and his demons seek to be worshipped (1 Corinthians 10:20; Matthew 4:8-10; Revelation 9:20).
- Satan counterfeits the Holy Trinity, with his unholy trinity of Satan, Antichrist and the False Prophet.
- Satan wants to live in human bodies as the Holy Spirit does (John 13:27; 1 Cor. 6:19).
- Satan seals his followers with a name in their forehead which is the counterfeit of God's Name on His peoples' forehead. (Revelation 13:16 with 7:1-3).
- Satan counterfeits believers baptism by immersion with infant sprinkling.

XII. HOW MAY A DEMONICALLY OPPRESSED PERSON RECEIVE DELIVERANCE?

He must:

1. **Receive Christ as Saviour.** In Christ there is the position and power for deliverance.
2. **Confessing sins to God.** A person must judge his personal involvement in occult practices as rebellion against God and as the sin of siding with Satan. (1 John 1:9). They must confess family occult sins even back to grandparents. Daniel 9:4-6; Nehemiah 1:5-6.
3. **Remove occult objects, books, music, images.**
 Godly King Asa "took away the **altars** of the strange gods, and the high places, and broke down the **images**, and cut down the **groves**: and commanded Judah to seek the Lord God, and do the law and commandments....the Kingdom was quiet before him." (2 Chronicles 14:4,5).
 Ephesian converts destroyed their occult books (Acts 19:17-20). Many occult objects have a demon invoked curse on them, and open the door for Satan's influence. Occult friendships should be broken because they will try to pull you back.
4. **Submit to God, resist the devil** and he will flee from you (James 4:7). Christ promises forgiveness and deliverance to those who call upon His name for deliverance from the occult. Be confident about our position and authority in Christ. Ask: "Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?"
5. **Cultivate your Christian life and gospel presentation.** Get busy serving God. The devil finds great opportunity to tempt us if we are doing nothing for God. David gave into temptation when he should have been on the battlefield. (2 Samuel 11:1,2). We must be filled with the Holy Spirit daily. How? By:
 - a) Studying the Word of God daily brings growth and defence against Satan. (1 Peter 2:2)
 - b) Prayer achieves God's purposes as we ask and receive.
 - c) Christian fellowship at church brings encouragement and stability as we learn of God, praise God and encourage each other.
 - d) Sharing the gospel with the unsaved will strengthen our faith and knowledge, as well as actively warring against Satan. Unselfish dedication to God's work will assist in Satan's defeat, as we "love not our lives unto the death." (Revelation 12:11).
 - e) We must put on the whole armour of God (Ephesians 6:10,18). When we do these things, we will resist Satan in God's power and take his strongholds in people's lives (2 Corinthians 10:3,4).

People may enter Satan's occult bondage by family heredity, personal experience, or transference from an occultic person.

17. HOW TO LEAD A PERSON TO CHRIST

Five stages to be mastered are:

- I. Starting the conversation
- II. Verses to share and questions to ask
- III. How to challenge a person to receive Christ as their Saviour
- IV. Giving assurance of salvation.
- V. Getting the first follow-up appointment.

Use these questions by going through the "STOP" tract.

Ask for an appointment where you can go through this "STOP" tract without interruption.

I. STARTING THE CONVERSATION. HOW?

Question 1: Say: "This is for you." Hand the STOP tract to them and when they take it, say, "This explains how you can be sure of going to heaven, have eternal life and know God personally. Have you thought much about God before?"

Question 2: One question please: If you were to die tonight (or sometime) do you know 100% for sure if you would go to heaven? (No). If 'Yes' ask 'Why?' If they say 'I'm good' say 'God has different way'
Question 3: Would you like to be 100% sure of going to heaven? (Yes).

Question 4: This paper shows from the Bible how to be 100% sure of going to heaven. After they read the front page, say, "If you look inside you'll see it makes 4 points."

II. VERSES TO SHARE AND QUESTIONS TO ASK.

1. ALL HAVE SINNED (Sin causes problems for us and others)

Question 1: Would you be so kind as to read the first heading and **verse** underneath please? Draw line.

Question 2: What do you think is the main idea in this verse? (All have sinned). Ask him to circle 'sin'

Question 3: What does sin mean? (Breaking God's laws). These pictures explain what sin is.

Picture 1: This man is running away from God. He cares nothing about God or others. He only cares about himself. He is selfish. Do you know any selfish people? (Yes). We are all a bit selfish aren't we? Sin is selfishness, going our own way, putting ourselves first. Breaking the chief and second commandments of not loving God and our neighbour (Matt 22:38,39) makes us great sinners.

Picture 2: Sin separates us from God. A fight puts a wall between 2 friends. Our sins offend others so they avoid us. Our sins offend God, so sin separates us from God. We are sinners in 2 ways:

i) We are sinners by nature, having inherited a sin nature from Adam. ii) We are sinners by choice.

Picture 3: Imagine a scale of 0-100% perfection, God is 100% perfect, but we, compared with God, are about 0% perfect. Compared with some people we are "good", but compared with God's perfection we are all big sinners. Sin is falling short of God's standard of perfection.

Picture 4: Sin is breaking the Ten Commandments. Number 1 says "No other Gods", yet how often have we all put something or ourselves ahead of God, like money, sport, pleasure, self? If you think you've broken this, put a circle around 1. [continue this with each commandment up to number ten].

2 says 'no images or lucky charms.' Have you every had an idol or lucky charm? If 'yes' circle 2.

3: Have you ever used God's Name as a swear word, like "O my God" or "I swear to God"? Circle 3.

4: God gave Sabbath to Jews & Sunday to Christians. Ever missed church on Sunday? (yes). Circle 4.

5: Honour you mum & dad? Ever had a conflict with your mum or dad? (yes). Put circle around 5.

6: Don't murder. Ever killed someone? (No). Ever hated someone? (1 John 3:15). Hate=murder in mind

7: No adultery. Jesus said adultery is having sex thoughts to a woman he's not married to (Mt5:28).

8: Don't steal. Ever stolen something or borrowed & not returned? (yes). Put a circle around 8.

9: Don't tell lies. Ever told a lie? (yes). Put a circle around 9.

10: Don't covet. Ever wanted something you should not have? (yes). Put a circle around 10.

Question 4: Under the pictures it says "We are all great sinners compared with the Holiness of God?"

Do you agree that you, me and everybody in the world is a big sinner compared with God?

(Yes). If "Yes", put a tick (✓) on the left of this line please. **Do you agree that sin creates problems?**

Question 5: Do you want the God of the Bible, to be your God? If "Yes", put a tick (✓) on the left.

Quest 6: Do you want to finish with sin and come to be friends with God? If "Yes" tick the left.

2. PUNISHMENT ON SIN IS DEATH.

Question 1: Would you be so kind as to **read the second heading** and the **2 verses** underneath please?

Question 2: We've just seen that we are all big sinners compared to God. (Put bracket next to the verse)

What is the consequence of sin? The wages of sin is death. Put a circle around death please. This means that because we have all sinned by breaking God's laws, we are all heading to death.

Question 3: What is death? 2 deaths: First death is when our body dies. The second death is worse.

Question 4: What is the second death in the last verse? (Lake of Fire). Put circle around lake of fire. This means that because we have all sinned, the law of God says that we are all heading to death, hell & the Lake of Fire. This is bad news. Nobody wants to go to the lake of fire as the penalty for our sins.

Question 5: Why did God make the lake of fire? Remember that Satan was once an angel in heaven who led a rebellion against God. He wanted to take over the universe. He broke the laws of God. God made the lake of fire as a punishment for Satan and his angels. (Draw 2 arrows from Law to Lake of Fire. Write Satan & 'us' next to each). We humans have also broken the law of God. The law must be applied equally to all law-breakers. For example, if I rob the bank, I go to jail. If you rob the bank, you go to jail. Satan broke the law, Satan is going to the lake of fire. We humans have broken the law, so the law says we should go to the lake of fire. This is bad news. God understands that there is a difference between Satan and humans. **What is it?** Answer: Satan chose to get a sin nature, but we humans were born with a sin nature that we inherited from Adam. We did not choose to get a sin nature. So God made a way out of the lake of fire for people, but not for Satan. What is this way out? Can you read the second part of Romans 6:23 please?

Question 6: What is a "gift?" (free present, take it or leave it, receive it or reject it). Circle around gift.

Question 7: What is "eternal life?" (going to heaven when we die, knowing God now as a good friend.

Question 8: Who do we get eternal life through? (Jesus Christ our Lord). Put circle around Jesus Christ

Question 9: Can you please read Ephesians 2:8,9? Put a line next to this in the margin. From this verse

Question 10: What is the wrong way to get eternal life? Answer: "Not of works." Circle this.

We don't get it through our good works, or any religion, but only through Jesus Christ. Good works never cancel bad works. If I rob the bank & go to jail, being good to the prison officer won't get me out of jail. Here we have a "tug of war". The law of God is pulling us to the lake of fire. The justice of God is pulling us to the lake of fire. But the love of God wants us to go to heaven. What is the solution?

3. JESUS CHRIST TOOK ALL OUR PUNISHMENT

Question 1: Would you be so kind as to **read the 3rd heading** & the **verse** under it please? Draw line.

Question 2: What do you think is the **main idea in this verse?** (Christ died for us). Put circle over this.

Question 3: What does this mean? Explain the sketch:

Think back 2000 years ago to when Jesus Christ was dying on the cross (draw cross). God knew about everybody who ever lived from the start to the end of the human race (draw a time line from start to end). God knew about you and me living now in 1995 (draw 2 lines). God knew about every sin that I did from the day I was born till the day I will die. God knew about every sin that you would do from the day you were born to the day you will die. God knew about everybody's sins who ever lived in the **past** and God knew about everybody's sins who would ever live in the **future** (draw many lines before and after 1995). When Jesus was dying on the cross, God took all the sins off you, me and everybody who ever lived past, present and future, transferring all those sins off us, and placing them on to Jesus Christ. God regarded Jesus as the sinner and God the Father made Jesus Christ take the full punishment on the cross in about 6 hours for all our sins, instead of us being punished forever in the lake of fire. (draw a circle around the timeline and draw an arrow on to Christ and an arrow into the lake of fire).

"The Lord has laid on him the iniquity of us all". Isaiah 53:6. Draw bracket around this verse.

Jesus became the **SAVIOUR** (sin-bearer, saving agent, substitute) of all people, taking the full punishment for all of our sins on the cross instead of us being punished forever for our sins in the lake of fire. **He became the "SAVIOUR of all people"**. Jesus is now "**AVAILABLE to be our SAVIOUR**". Draw circles around "Saviour" and "available". Jesus is now the Saviour of all people. He is ready and available to be your Saviour, if you want Him to be. So right now, all your, mine and everybody's past, present and future sins have been paid for by Jesus Christ on the cross.

Note: People have estimated that 100 billion people have lived in recorded history (write 100 billion). Can you imagine how you would feel being punished forever for your sins in the lake of fire? Multiply that punishment that you would have gone through by 100 billion people's punishment? Can you imagine all that punishment being squeezed onto one man, Jesus Christ, in about 6 hours? That's what Jesus Christ went through on the cross for you and for me. Jesus said, "It is finished" saying that every sin that you, me and everybody ever did, Jesus Christ has been punished for them in full on the cross. The door into heaven is open for all people to enter. How may we enter heaven? **Point 4** tells us how:

4. a) **BELIEVE** that Jesus Christ
- is **GOD the SON (100% God and 100% man)**
 - **DIED FOR OUR SINS, IN OUR PLACE**
 - **ROSE AGAIN BODILY from the DEAD, then**
- b) **RECEIVE JESUS CHRIST** as their **SAVIOUR**.

Question 1: Would you be so kind as to read **Point 4** please? Put a bracket around the left of the box.

Explanation: Have you heard that we must believe in Christ to enter Heaven? What does this mean?

Answer: Believe has 2 parts. We must believe 3 things in our mind, then act on them by doing part 4b.

Question 2: Do you believe that Jesus Christ is 100% God and 100% man? (Yes). Put a tick next to it.

Question 3: Do you believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross in our place being punished for all of our past, present and future sins to become our Saviour? (Yes). Draw a tick next to it.

Question 4: Do you believe that Jesus Christ rose from the dead bodily after 3 days & is alive today? (If yes, put a tick). This means you are now 90% into heaven. All you need to do now is to tell God that you now receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour. This means that you now accept Christ's Blood-Sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for your sins, trusting Christ alone to save you, not your good works or any religion. **Then we are given free forgiveness and eternal life right now.**

Explanation of 3 Pictures: It's like God offers us all a pardon, which is Jesus Christ as our Saviour.

When we receive Christ as our Saviour (now point to the second picture), all of our sins & guilt fall off us, & (point to the third picture) Jesus Christ has taken the full punishment for our sins on our behalf.

He reads bottom line. We can be sure of this because of promises God has given us to claim in the Bible

Back page: These 3 verses each have a condition that we must claim and a promise that God gives us.

• **John 1:12** **Question 1:** Would you read the top verse please? Draw a bracket around this verse.

Question 2: What must we do in first part of this verse? (receive Christ as our Saviour). Circle receive

Question 3: What do we then become in second part of this verse? (sons of God). Circle sons of God

Explanation: This means we get born into God's family. God becomes our Heavenly Father. We become His sons. We then call God "Dear Heavenly Father". We are "Born Again." You know how you were born into your parent's family? (yes). That was your first birthday. When you receive Christ as your Saviour you get born again into God's family. You get a second birthday. Would it be nice to be a son of God?

• **Romans 10:13** **Question 1:** Would you be so kind as to read the middle verse please? Draw bracket.

Question 2: What must we do in the first part of the verse? (Call on Jesus Christ to save us). Circle call

Question 3: When we call on Christ to save us, what happens to us? (we shall be saved). Circle saved.

Question 4: Saved from what? (Lake of Fire). Ask him to draw a circle around 'lake of fire'.

Question 5: If this person dies 50 years later, where would they go to? (heaven).

Question 6: Why? (Because they called on Christ to save them and He saved them.)

• **I John 5: 12,13** **Question 1:** Would you be so kind as to read the **third verse**, please? Draw bracket.

Question 2: If a person has the Son by receiving Christ as Saviour, what do they have? (eternal life).

Question 3: If a person has not got the Son as Saviour, what is true? (They don't have eternal life)

Question 4: Is it possible to know for sure that we have eternal life?(yes). Please circle Son, life, know.

III. HOW TO CHALLENGE A PERSON TO RECEIVE CHRIST AS SAVIOUR.

Do you see the 2-ways picture? This shows that there are 2 ways in life: the way of death leading to hell and the way of life leading to heaven. We are all born on the way of death leading to hell due to sin, but when we receive Christ as our Saviour, we pass from death to life and from hell to heaven.

Question 1: You may as: "How may we receive Jesus Christ as our Saviour?" **Answer:** We must claim the promises in the top three verses. If we receive Christ as Saviour, we become sons of God. If we call on Christ to save us, we shall be saved. If we receive the Son as our Saviour, we are given eternal life.

Question 2: These promises are summarised in the prayer at the bottom of the page. Would you be so kind as to read it quietly to yourself to see if it makes sense? Draw a bracket on the left side of this.

Question 3: Does it make sense? (yes).

Question 4: Does this prayer express what you honestly want God to do? (yes).

Question 5: God is in this room now. He hears all we say & think. If you tell this to God & mean it, then God will hear you, Jesus Christ will save you, give you eternal life & you'll become a son of God. Because this makes sense, says what you want God to do and Jesus is here, would you like to tell this to God right now? To make it easy, we could pray this to God together, a few words at a time after me. Would that be OK? (yes). (He prays the prayer at the bottom of the page, a phrase at a time, after you).

IV. HOW TO GIVE ASSURANCE OF SALVATION

• **Romans 10:13** **Question 1:** Would you be so kind as to read the second top verse please.

Question 2: Just then, did you call on Christ to save you from your sins and the lake of fire, take you to heaven when you die, and give you the gift of eternal life? (yes).

Question 3: Were you honest? (yes).

Question 4: Then, what does God say that you are now? (saved).

Question 5: Saved from what? (sins and the lake of fire).

Question 6: If you died now, where would you go? (Heaven).

Question 7: Why? (because I called on Christ to save me and God says I'm saved).

Question 8: If we call on Christ to save us, would he say yes or no? Yes. "Him that comes to me..."

• **John 1:12** **Question 1:** Would you read the top verse please?

Question 2: Just then, did you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? (yes)

Question 3: What does God say that you are now? (A son of God). You are now in God's Family. God is now your Heavenly Father and you are His son. You may now call God, "Dear Heavenly Father." This is called being "BORN AGAIN." Today is your second birthday.

Question 4: Would you like to write today's date under the prayer? (They sign and date tract & keep it).

• **1 John 5: 12,13** **Question 1:** Would you be so kind as to read the third verse please?

Question 2: Did you receive Jesus Christ the Son as your Saviour? (yes)

Question 3: Since you now have the Son, what do you also have? (eternal life)

Question 4: If you died tonight, where would you go? (Heaven)

Question 5: Why? (because you have Christ as your Saviour)

Question 6: Can you know for sure that you have eternal life? (yes)

Question 7: Why? (Because God says, "that ye may **know** that ye have eternal life).

• **John 5:24** **Question 1:** Would you please read the verse next to the diagram?

Question 2: What 3 things do you now have?(eternal life, no condemnation, passed from death to life).

• **John 10:28** **Question 1:** Is it possible to lose eternal life?

Question 2: Would you read **John 10:28** please?

Question 3: What does "never perish" mean? (never lose eternal life. We can, however lose rewards).

Question 1: Romans 10:9 is a test to prove you are truly saved. 2 conditions are true if you are saved.

Firstly, you have already told me that you believe God raised Christ from the dead. True? (yes).

Secondly, you have not yet had a chance to confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus. This means that if you can tell just one person, "I have received the Lord Jesus Christ as my Saviour" it means you are truly saved. Would you like to tell me or a friend that you have received Christ as your Saviour? (yes) Ask him to tell you or someone else now. Shake hands with him & say, "Welcome into God's family".

Question 2: God knows all about you and me, but we don't know all about God. How can we learn more about God? By reading the Bible daily, starting at John or Matthew, coming to church, praying.

Question 3: Who do you know that you would like to see saved? When can we meet them to tell them?

V. HOW TO GET THE FIRST BIBLE STUDY?

Question 1: Give him "Established in the Faith". **Ask:** Which of these subjects in front interest you?"

Question 2: Would it be possible for us to meet together sometime in the next few days to look at them? (yes).

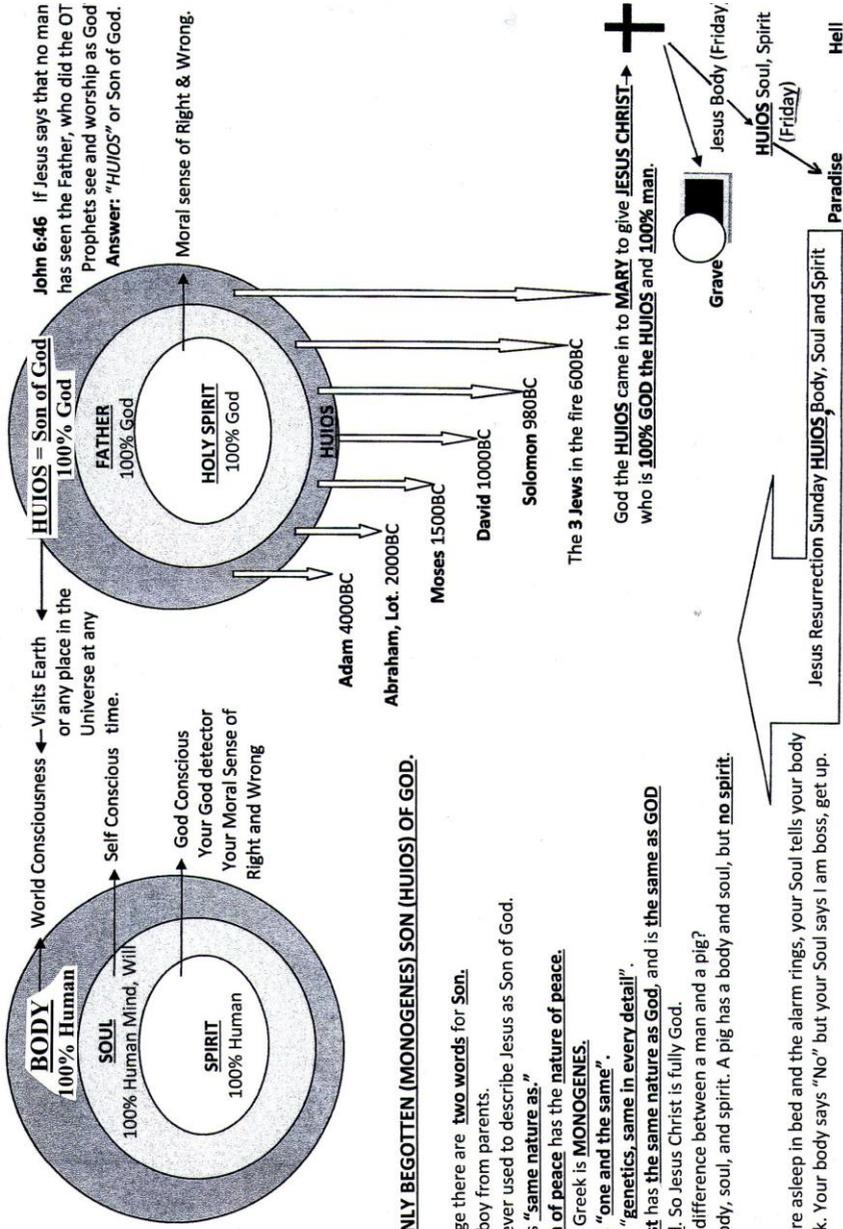
Question 3: When would suit you? Get his name, phone number and date. Visit him. **96**

TRINITY = "ONE GOD" with "3 PARTS" or 3 "PERSONS" = FATHER, SON AND HOLY SPIRIT

Matthew 28:19 ...baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

1 MAN

1 GOD



2. JESUS CHRIST IS THE ONLY BEGOTTEN (MONOGENES) SON (HUIOS) OF GOD.

1. In the Greek language there are two words for Son.

- a) TEKNON is a boy from parents.
- TEKNON is never used to describe Jesus as Son of God.
- b) HUIOS means "same nature as."

Example: Son of peace has the nature of peace.

2. ONLY BEGOTTEN in Greek is MONOGENES.

- a) MONO means "one and the same".
- b) GENES means "genetics, same in every detail".

So Jesus Christ has the same nature as God, and is the same as GOD in every detail. So Jesus Christ is fully God.

Question 1. What is the difference between a man and a pig?

Answer: A man has a body, soul, and spirit. A pig has a body and soul, but no spirit.

Question 2. When you are asleep in bed and the alarm rings, your Soul tells your body to get up and go to work. Your body says "No" but your Soul says I am boss, get up.

18. SOUL WINNING TEST QUESTIONS

1. State 5 fishing places (places to meet unsaved people):
 - a).....
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
 - e)
2. Give 5 questions to ask to start a Soul Winning conversation:
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
 - e)
3. Give 4 stages in leading a person to Christ:
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
4. A. Explain ‘all have sinned’ according to the tract to someone.
Get that person to sign that you have done it correctly:
Signature:.....
- B. Give 4 questions to ask under Point 1:
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
5. A. Explain ‘punishment on sin is death’ to someone.
Get that person to sign that you have done it.
Signature:.....
- B. Give 6 questions to ask under Point 2:
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
 - e)
 - f)
6. A. Give 3 questions to ask under point 3,
“JESUS TOOK ALL OUR PUNISHMENT”:
Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- B. Explain “Christ died for us” to someone, drawing the sketch.
Get that person to sign that you have done it correctly.
Memorize this explanation word for word.
Signature:.....

7. A. Explain to someone what it means to “believe in or on Christ” using 4 questions:

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- Q4:

8. A. Ask 3 questions of John 1:12.

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:

Write out the explanation that follows:

.....

.....

.....

B. Ask 6 questions of Romans 10:13.

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- Q4:
- Q5:
- Q6:

C. Ask 4 questions of I John 5:12,13.

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- Q4:

9. Explain the “TWO-WAYS” Diagram to someone.

Get that person to sign that you have done it correctly:

Signature:

10. Give 5 questions used to challenge a person to receive Christ as Saviour.

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- Q4:
- Q5:

Get that person to sign that you have done it correctly.

Signature:

11. Give 8 questions to ask of Romans 10:13 to give a person assurance of salvation:

- Q1:
- Q2:
- Q3:
- Q4:
- Q5:
- Q6:
- Q7:
- Q8:

12. Give 4 questions to ask of John 1:12 to give assurance of salvation:
 Q1:
 Q2:
 Q3:
 Q4:
13. Give 7 questions to ask of I John 5:12,13 to give assurance of salvation:
 Q1:
 Q2:
 Q3:
 Q4:
 Q5:
 Q6:
 Q7:
14. Give 2 questions to ask of John 5:24 to give assurance of salvation:
 Q1:
 Q2:
15. Give 3 questions to ask of John 10:28 that help reinforce the security of the believer:
 Q1:
 Q2:
 Q3:
16. In Romans 10:9, what 2 conditions will be true if he is genuinely saved:
 Test 1:
 Test 2:
17. What 2 things do you give him after he is saved?
 a)
 b)
18. What 5 pieces of information do you ask him for after he is saved?
 a)
 b)
 c)
 d)
 e)
19. What 10 things should you tell a new Christian after he is saved?
 a)
 b)
 c)
 d)
 e)
 f)
 g)
 h)
 i)
 g)

20. How will you get him to come to church?

- a)
- b)

21. Name 10 lessons you may teach him in follow-up Bible studies:

- a)
- b)
- c)
- d)
- e)
- f)
- g)
- h)
- i)
- j)

The whole assessment is worth 100 marks, the above being worth 50. To obtain the remaining 50 marks for this subject, use the above approach with 10 people, either through door-knocking, open air or somewhere else. Bring one person to church. Try this approach. It contains the Word of God. It really works.



IF NOT A MISSIONARY SOON A "MISSING-ARY"

19. ADVANTAGES of using the ‘STOP’ TRACT in SOUL WINNING

Problem: Why is the world not yet won to Christ?

Why are Christians fearful of evangelizing?

Answer: It is because most Christians do not know how to share the Gospel clearly with an unbeliever. The sad fact is that 80% of Christians have never led anyone to Christ.

The average Christian does not know:

- a) How to start a conversation with an unbeliever in an unembarrassing way, nor does he know:
- b) What verses to use to share the gospel, nor the logical order of the verses, nor the questions to ask to keep the person’s interest, nor does he know:
- c) How to challenge a person to receive Christ as Saviour, nor does he know:
- d) How to give assurance of salvation to a new convert.
- e) As well, he is scared of rejection, so he keeps quiet.

Because of these problems in a Christian’s mind, he, being fearful of rejection and failure, never even bothers to attempt to share the gospel and so he remains spiritually unfruitful, never seeing anyone saved, and justifies this lack of fruit by saying things like:

- a) I don’t have the gift of evangelizing, that others have.
- b) It’s not up to us to share the gospel, it is the work of the Holy Spirit.
- c) I do other things well like teaching the Bible, etc.
- d) Don’t make me feel guilty by telling me that I should share the gospel.

Sharing the gospel by using the **STOP** tract is a presentation that any average Christian can learn to use successfully.

The only reason you will not see results from this pamphlet is if you don’t try to use it. Soul winning is like anything else in life. It must be learned.

Do you find these reasons for using the **STOP** tract convincing enough for you to use it regularly to share the Gospel?

1. People can understand the gospel better with a **visual aid**.
2. Getting them to read Roman road verses **keeps them concentrating** on the plan of salvation more than by you just telling them.
3. When you ask them to tell you what a verse means, it is their interpretation and **they consider their interpretation to be right**. They will never argue with their interpretation.
4. People will always remain interested as long as **they are doing the talking**.
You thus keep their concentration on the gospel message.
5. A good conversation must be a **two-way dialogue**, not just you doing all the talking.
6. When you ask questions **you know** by their answers if **they understand the gospel** message.
7. The **STOP** pamphlet keeps you on a **logical path**.
If they side-track you, you can always bring them back to the Gospel.
8. If they don’t get saved then, they may get **saved later** at home.
9. **New Christians** can easily lead people to Christ because they don’t need to memorise verses. The verses are all written out. They just need to be able to read and ask others to read verses.
10. The new Christian can easily **memorise Romans 10:13** to get assurance of salvation.
11. They can record their **spiritual birthday**.
12. They can instantly get **security** of salvation by reading **John 10:28**.
13. It is a **proven workable method** when followed correctly.
14. It contains **all the key verses** on salvation and omits the non essential verses.
15. It stops you from talking too much and too long.
16. It is the **cheapest tract available** (2 cents a copy. You may print it copyright free.)
17. It leads easily to **follow up** of the new Christian by using the Answers Book.
18. **Several pictures describe each concept**. For example:
 - 4 pictures describe “all have sinned”
 - 3 pictures describe “penalty of sin”
 - 1 picture describes “Christ paid penalty”
 - 3 pictures describe “how to receive Christ as Saviour”
 - 1 picture describes “passing from death to life”

19. It has **BIG PRINT** so that old people with bad eyesight can read it.
20. Thirteen pictures make it interesting to read.
Ten key Scripture verses hit the mark.
21. The **STOP** tract is meant to be **gone through** and **explained to people** to lead them to Christ, **not** just given out.
22. It is available in **twenty languages**.
23. **Everyone gets used to using the one tract.**
This removes the confusion of using various tracts.
One good workable tract is better than 100 unfamiliar tracts.
24. It **takes the fear out** of starting a soul winning conversation. It's as easy as giving out a tract.
Give it to a person as a conversation starter:
Say, "This pamphlet explains how to be sure of going to heaven. If you died sometime do you know 100% for sure that you would go to heaven?" Would you like to be sure? This shows how.
25. This approach has been **tested, tried and shown to work thousands of times** over 30 years of soul winning.
Every bug has been ironed out of it.
26. It is **short, simple**, not complicated, and easy to use.
27. Instructions on how to use it are in **THE "ANSWERS" BOOK**, chapter 17.
28. It takes the pressure off you starting the conversation because the tract becomes the unbeliever's focus of attention, not you.
29. It **takes the pressure off you** not knowing what to say as the tract tells you what to say.
30. **Multiplication of souls saved, soul winners trained, disciples and soul-winning pastors** accelerates more quickly if everyone gets used to using the same tract, as well as training others in the use of the one tract.

20. MISSIONARY STRATEGY and DUTY STATEMENT

This is the mission strategy and duty statement that Liberty Baptist Church (LBC) requires of missionaries and pastors it sends out to a foreign mission field. LBC intends to have field representatives to visit and encourage affiliated pastors and churches. **Our missionaries' duties** are to:

1. **Meet key national Independent Baptist pastors** in foreign countries.
2. Give a copy of our **LBC Statement of Faith** to every pastor to see if they can agree to work with us on the basis of full agreement with our doctrine and outreach strategy.
3. **Translate and print STOP tracts** and **"Established in the Faith" books, train pastors**, showing workers how to use them properly. Distribute them to many local churches free of charge.
 - a) Find loyal, godly Baptist Pastors in some country. Email "Established in the Faith" book to them.
 - b) Ask him to find a good Christian printer to quote the cost to print 3000-5000 copies of this book.
 - c) Email the pdf of this book to the printer with printing instructions. Ask him to send you a draft.
 - d) If the draft copy is 100% correct, send 50% of the cost to your Christian friend to give to printer.
 - e) Ask your Christian friend to visit the printer to check the master and the early printing.
 - f) Pay the final 50% on completion. Ask your friend to give these to all his churches.
 - g) He should teach them how to use this book, explaining the charts and How to use Stop tract.
 - h) He should ask these pastors which other churches may want 50 copies of this book.
 - i) Take more copies of Stop tract and this book to these other churches. Teach them how to use it.
4. Conduct a **pastors school** to teach pastors, workers, and students:
 - a) how to use the STOP tract to do soul winning;
 - b) LBC Bible Doctrine and Statement of Faith;
 - c) answers to major false doctrines in their area;
 - d) how to disciple their people, and get their people discipling by multiplication;
 - e) how to use the ANSWERS book as a teaching tool; and
 - f) how pastors can become self supporting.
5. **Visit existing churches** to teach soul winning, to distribute STOP tracts, and start soul winning outreach programs.

6. **Visit new churches** willing to affiliate with LBC to assist them with tracts, Bibles, etc.
7. Endeavour to **start a Bible College** to be taught and administered by national workers.
8. If LBC sends and supports a missionary, he must be **100% loyal to and under the authority** of LBC and not under the authority of any other religious organisation.
If he is not willing to work according to these strategy guidelines, he disqualifies himself from LBC support. If he changes his doctrinal position after going to the mission field, his support is to be cut off after 2 unheeded warnings.
9. LBC members shall **review annually** the activities, efficiency, and appropriate level of financial support of each missionary.
10. The missionary must **present the gospel in one session with unsaved people** and not spread the one gospel presentation over months or years. Every effort must be made to make the gospel his first message to unsaved people. He **must challenge unsaved people to receive Christ as Saviour after each gospel presentation**. Sharing the gospel to unsaved people must take precedence over teaching other Scripture unless the other Scripture is used as a brief background to the gospel message. **He must not delay giving the gospel** to unsaved people lest they die and go to hell.
11. He shall conduct **individual and group discipleship Bible studies in churches**.
12. He shall **coordinate nationals to start other Independent Baptist churches** of the LBC doctrine.
13. The missionary must **only use tracts approved by LBC**.
14. The "Jesus" video shall be used where possible in outreach to other areas.
15. He shall **challenge believers to be baptised** as soon as possible after salvation in the local Independent Baptist church.
16. He must **present the gospel using the STOP tract at least once every week**.
17. The missionary must sign that if he stops doing or believing these things that he shall tell us so we can assess if his support is to be continued or not. He shall be asked to show evidence of his missionary activities to substantiate his adherence to LBC doctrine.
18. He shall keep a missionary journal including - daily narrative, summary of events, living conditions, new needs; statistics, name and number saved and baptised; date of Bible seminars; contacts, resources available (eg. clinics, transport); financial records; interesting events (eg. chief getting saved, new areas of opportunity).
19. **Each national church** shall be independent and Baptist in doctrine, solely responsible for their own decisions. There shall not be an external hierarchy telling local churches what to do. LBC shall act in an advisory capacity to the local church and supporting the local church by providing tracts, workers handbooks, Bibles and other doctrinally sound material.
In return, LBC fellowship expects local churches to:
 - a) fellowship **in harmony** with other churches in the fellowship;
 - b) **use STOP tracts** (or other LBC approved tracts) to rapidly spread the gospel to their people.
 - c) seek to **train new pastors** in LBC Bible Colleges, not in other Colleges unless LBC approved.
 - d) **be loyal** to other LBC churches; and not to sow **discord** among the brethren. (Prov. 6:16-19).
20. He shall communicate with LBC at least every 3 months to give an update on the mission work and to advise of any activities in his mission area that may influence or restrict him in conducting his mission work. These activities could be political, military, social, environmental or religious. He must inform LBC immediately of any activities that place his ministry or health at risk.
21. He shall provide accurate and **reliable records** of all expenditure.
22. He shall keep records in a book of the **names of people saved** to assist him in their follow up, to see them baptised and regular in church attendance. This record could be extended to include the names of potential converts.
23. Members of LBC may designate special offerings to specific needs such as printing of tracts, Bibles, buildings, books, national pastors' support.
24. Missionaries sent and supported by LBC must have a **proven track record of leading people to Christ** in Australia using our soul winning approach. Each national church should contribute to another country's LBC church missions project.

21. WHY CHRISTIANS SHOULD DO SOUL-WINNING?

Bible Reading: 2 Corinthians 5:3-21; Proverbs 11:30

I. WHAT IS SOUL-WINNING?

Soul Winning is starting a conversation with an unsaved person, and sharing God's plan of Salvation with him, from the Bible, so that he clearly understands HOW he may receive Christ as his Saviour, and have eternal life. It is leading a person to Christ.

II. WHY SHOULD WE DO SOUL-WINNING?

These reasons must be firmly grounded in our minds, and we must teach them to every person that we disciple as soon as possible.

1. God commands us to. "Go and preach the gospel to every creature". Mark 16:15.
2. That is why Christ came. 'The Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost' Luke 19:10
3. We must ALL appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ to receive REWARDS for faithfully serving Christ. II Corinthians 5:10.
4. Because of HELL - "knowing the terror of the Lord, we persuade men". II Corinthians 5:11. Hell is HOT, Heaven is SWEET, and JESUS SAVES". See Luke 16:19-31; Mark 9:42-48.
5. THE LOVE OF CHRIST Compels us. II Corinthians 5:14.
6. People are BLESSED by being saved, and by becoming a new creature. II Corinthians. 5:17.
7. God has given us the MINISTRY (Job) of Reconciliation. II Corinthians 5:18.
This job is to bring God and man together.
8. We are AMBASSADORS for CHRIST. II Corinthians 5:20.
9. So Christ will say to us: "Well done thou good and faithful servant." Matthew 25:21.
10. Soul - Winners are the BEST Christians. Matthew 4:19.
11. Soul - Winners will shine as the stars forever. Daniel 12:3.
12. So that we won't be ashamed before Christ. 1 John 2:28.
13. There is a great need, but few labourers (Soul winners). Matthew 9:36-38.
14. JESUS was a soul - winner. John 4; Luke 19:10.
15. Not to have BLOODY HANDS. Ezekiel 3:17,18.
16. We have very little time to do soul-winning (John 9:4). We can't do S.W. in heaven, only on Earth.
17. Soul - Winning and Disciple - making is the only hope to save Australia from sin, judgment and bad government. Ezekiel 22:30.
18. We'll PERISH without a VISION of Soul Winning and Disciple Making. Proverbs 29:18.
19. Soul - Winning glorifies Christ. When people get saved, they praise God.
20. Soul - Winners are WISER, know the Bible BETTER, and have LESS FEAR.
21. GIVE (the Gospel), and it shall be given unto you. Luke 6:38.
Look after God's interests and He'll look after yours.
22. To plant and build Soul-Winning churches all over the world.
23. To HURT SATAN and to make heaven rejoice. Luke 15:3-7.
24. It's a PRIVILEGE that angels don't have. Acts 10:3-8.
25. Those you win to Christ will thank you in heaven, and love you always.
26. God gives greater opportunities for service (in this life and the next) to those who are faithful in little things such as Soul-Winning. Matthew 25:21.
27. It's great to see God use you.
28. If we don't win them to Christ, the world or cults will win them for Satan.
29. "WOE is unto me if I preach NOT the gospel". 1 Corinthians 9:16; Luke 12:47.
30. Soul-Winning is the most exciting way to spend your life.
31. You set a MULTIPLICATION CHAIN going that may have millions of people in it. 2 Timothy 2:2
32. JESUS is COMING SOON!!
33. Soul-Winning increases your love for people and for God.
34. Example of Christians in the past e.g. martyrs. Revelation 17:6.
35. It is the BEST WAY to MAKE FRIENDS.

36. It makes you HAPPY and brings UNITY in your church.
37. You may win a great person to Christ.
38. Today, with modern technology such as international air transport, a missionary can fly to the mission field overseas in 24 hours. He can link up with national workers in third world countries to train them, and provide them with tracts, Bibles, books and medical clinics to win thousands of spiritually hungry people to Christ. He can be vaccinated against malaria and other tropical diseases that killed thousands of missionaries last century. We can print and distribute vast quantities of literature to win and train millions of people for Christ and Bible truth.
39. The wealth that we have in the West can be used to multiply the gospel and to build many churches in the Third World.
40. Developing countries are very open and hungry for the Gospel. We should take advantage of these open doors in Africa, India, China, Philippines, Eastern Europe, and South American countries to saturate these countries with literature, the gospel and true Bible doctrine.
41. Our life's goal should be great usefulness to God by doing Soul-Winning.
42. You may die tomorrow and have no more chances to do Soul-Winning.
43. You may be surprised by the prosperity that will come to you by Soul-Winning. Ecclesiasties 11:6.

Bad Consequences of Churches that Quit Soul-Winning.

I. Personal Consequences.

1. You are making a conscious decision to deliberately disobey God. (Matthew 28:18-20; Mark 16:15). Those who don't do SW because they are ignorant, are less blameworthy than those who know how to do it and don't do it. Stopping SW is not ignorance, but a deliberate decision to disobey God.
2. When you deliberately disobey God by quitting SW, your heart will become cold, hard, guilty and indifferent to the needs of others. (Zechariah 7:8-13). God wanted Israel to show His love to the world, but Israel stopped their ears. So God stopped His ears to their cry when they fell under God's judgment.
3. You Grieve the Holy Spirit, by quitting SW. (Ephesians 4:30). We are not programmed to carry guilt. We have three choices when faced with guilt: a) Confess it to God, b) Transfer the guilt to others by blaming them, c) Close your ears to the Holy Spirit's voice and sear your conscience.
4. You lose the sense of God's presence in your life, you become unstable and double minded with one foot in the world and one foot in church.

II. Ministry Consequences.

5. You are no longer a part of God's great program: "repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations,..." (Luke 24:46). When we fall in line with God's program, we become a SW church. (Christ came to seek and to save that which was lost. Luke 19:10). Christ passed His program onto all churches today. The centre of a church is SW or it will be something else, such as music, drama, etc.. If you go SW, everything else comes together, such as Bible study, follow up, more young men training to be preachers, prayer, zeal, rebuking sin, hating worldliness and false religion, etc.
6. Those who quit SW become critical of soul winners, soul winning, running buses, standards, holy living, and accuse us of legalism. They quit soul winning, so they attack soul winners. The mark of spirituality is: a) Not a big crowd. You can get a crowd by carnal methods, b) Not a lot of money, but c) Changed lives.

III. Community Consequences.

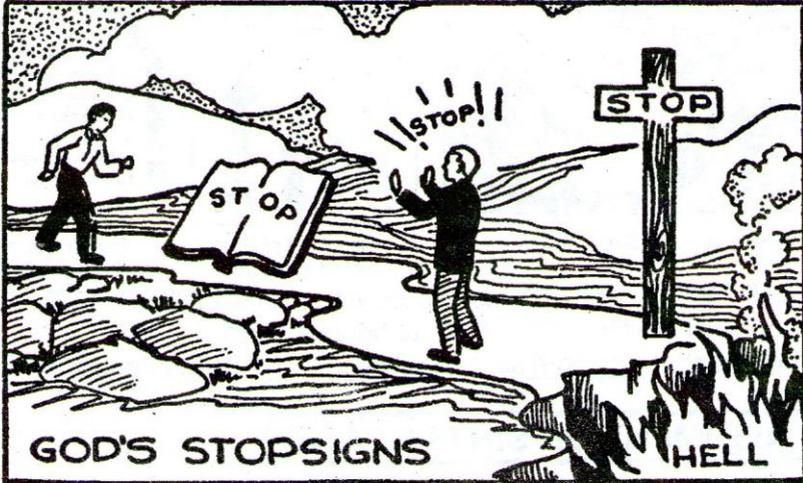
7. No Lighthouse in the community. People need to know that someone still believes the Bible and its standards of holiness. When you quit SW, there's no true prophet in your community.
8. Old Landmarks get removed. We must show the community how far they have moved from the Bible.
9. World missions will die as non-SW churches lose their vision.
10. Our children won't know how to win the lost, so they depart from SW and Bible standards. We can't pass on to the next generation what we don't know.

Conclusion: Remember the consequences of turning back.

Watch [Youtube explanation](#): “[STOP Tract – How to be sure of heaven \(part 1,2\)](#)”

STOP!

And think “Where will you spend eternity”?



**THE GIFT OF GOD
IS ETERNAL LIFE!**

**HAVE YOU
RECEIVED IT?**

Jesus Christ said, “Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.” Matthew 11:28

“Seek ye the LORD while He may be found, call ye upon Him while He is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man (forsake) his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and He will have mercy upon him; and (let him return) to our God, for He will abundantly pardon.” Isaiah 55:6,7

HOW can we be SURE of having ETERNAL LIFE?
We must KNOW 4 things:

1. ALL HAVE SINNED

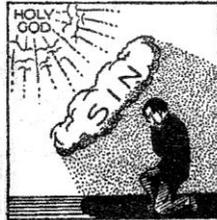
"For ALL HAVE SINNED, and come short of the glory of God."

Romans 3:23

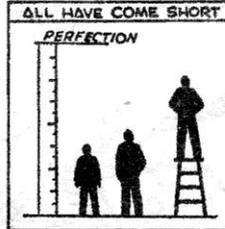
Sin is:



Putting self first



Separation from God



Coming short of God's perfect standard

1. No other Gods
2. No graven images
3. Don't take God's name in vain
4. Keep Sabbath day Holy
5. Honour your father and mother

6. Don't murder
7. Don't commit adultery
8. Don't steal
9. Don't bear false witness
10. Don't covet

Sin is disobeying God's Law - the Bible

• We are all GREAT SINNERS compared with the HOLINESS OF GOD.

Q1: Do you want the God of the Bible to be your God?

Q2: Do you want to turn from sin and come to God? (Repentance)

2. PUNISHMENT ON SIN IS DEATH

"For the wages of sin is DEATH; but the GIFT OF GOD is ETERNAL LIFE through Jesus Christ our Lord."

Romans 6:23

"And DEATH and HELL were cast into the LAKE OF FIRE. This is the SECOND DEATH."

Revelation 20:14

Explanation: Because we have all sinned, God's Law says that we are all heading to death, and to the Lake of Fire. This is bad news. Neither you nor I want to go to the Lake of Fire. Is there a way out? Yes! God is offering us the free gift of eternal life which we get through Jesus Christ, not through good works or any religion.

...Death is:



When our body dies.



"By grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God: NOT OF WORKS lest any man should boast." Ephesians 2:8,9

A gift is a free present, just take it or leave it. Eternal life means to know God personally now, and to go to Heaven when you die.

Therefore, the LAW of God says we should go to the Lake of Fire, but the LOVE of God wants us to go to Heaven.

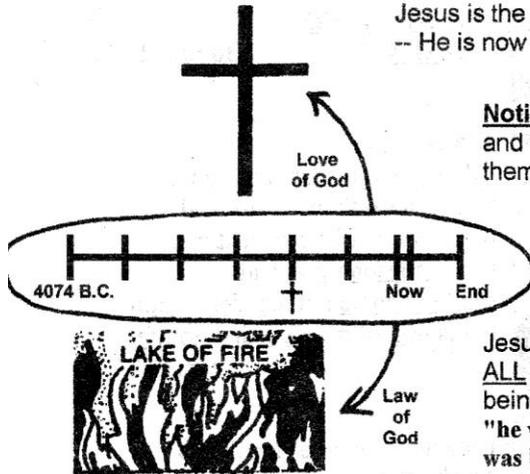
Notice how God has provided free forgiveness and eternal life.



3. JESUS TOOK ALL OUR PUNISHMENT

"But God commendeth his LOVE toward us,
in that while we were yet sinners,
CHRIST DIED FOR US." Romans 5:8

Jesus is the SAVIOUR of ALL PEOPLE.
-- He is now AVAILABLE to be YOUR SAVIOUR.



Notice: God took all our past, present and future sins OFF US, and placed them ON CHRIST.

"we have turned everyone to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." Isaiah 53:6

Jesus took the FULL PUNISHMENT for ALL our sins on the cross, instead of us being punished forever in the Lake of Fire. "he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities." Isaiah 53:5

Christ is now the SAVIOUR (sin-bearer) of ALL people.
The DOOR into Heaven is now open for ALL people to enter.
But HOW may we enter Heaven?
Those who:

4. (a) BELIEVE that JESUS CHRIST

- is GOD the SON (100% God and 100% Man)
- DIED FOR OUR SINS, IN OUR PLACE
- ROSE AGAIN BODILY from the DEAD, then

(b) RECEIVE JESUS CHRIST as their SAVIOUR

are given FREE FORGIVENESS and ETERNAL LIFE right now.

This means that you now accept Christ's Blood-sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for your sins, trusting Jesus Christ alone to save you, not your good works or any religion.



We can be SURE of this because of these promises God has given us to claim in the Bible:

Question: In these verses, what must we do and what will we become?

“But as many as **RECEIVED** him,
to them gave he power to become the **SONS OF GOD**”.

John 1:12

“For whosoever shall **CALL** upon the name of the Lord **SHALL BE SAVED.**”
Romans 10:13

“He that has the **SON** has **LIFE**;
and he that has **NOT** the **SON OF GOD** has **NOT LIFE**.
...that ye may **KNOW** that ye have **ETERNAL LIFE**...”

I John 5:12,13



Jesus said,
“Verily, verily I say unto you,
he that heareth my word, and
believeth on him that sent me,
has **everlasting life**, and
shall not come into condemnation,
but is **passed from death unto life.**”

John 5:24

The choice is yours: **Claim** the gift of eternal life now, by receiving Jesus Christ as your **Saviour**, telling God something like this:

- Almighty God, I have sinned against You in thought, word and deed. I'm sorry for this and I want Jesus Christ to forgive all my sins.
- I now receive you, **Lord Jesus Christ**, as my **Saviour** and my **God**, and I now **call** on you Lord Jesus, to
 - **save** me from my sins and the Lake of Fire,
 - take me to Heaven when I die, and
 - give me the **gift of eternal life** right now.
- I now open the door of my heart and life for you, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God, forever in Jesus' name. Amen

Signed: Date:

Jesus said, “I give unto them eternal life; and **they shall never perish.**” John 10:28

Q1: Did you call on Jesus Christ to save you from your sins? Were you honest? In Romans 10:13 what does God say you are now? What are you saved from? If you died now, where would you go? Why? Now that you are saved, do you think it is possible to lose eternal life?

See John 10:28 (above). What does “never perish” mean?

“If thou shalt **confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus** and shalt **believe in thine heart** that God hath **raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.**” Romans 10:9

Q2: How can you get to know God better? Study your Bible daily (1 Peter 2:2); talk to God; attend a Bible teaching Church (Hebrews 10:24,25); tell others how Christ can save them; get baptised (Acts 10:47,48); tell someone you are saved (Romans 10:9) and live obediently for Christ.

If you decided to receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour, please phone or write to us at the address below, so we can send you literature to help you to know Jesus Christ better.

LIBERTY BAPTIST CHURCH, PO Box 188, Cherrybrook NSW 2126. Ph (02) 9875 4321.

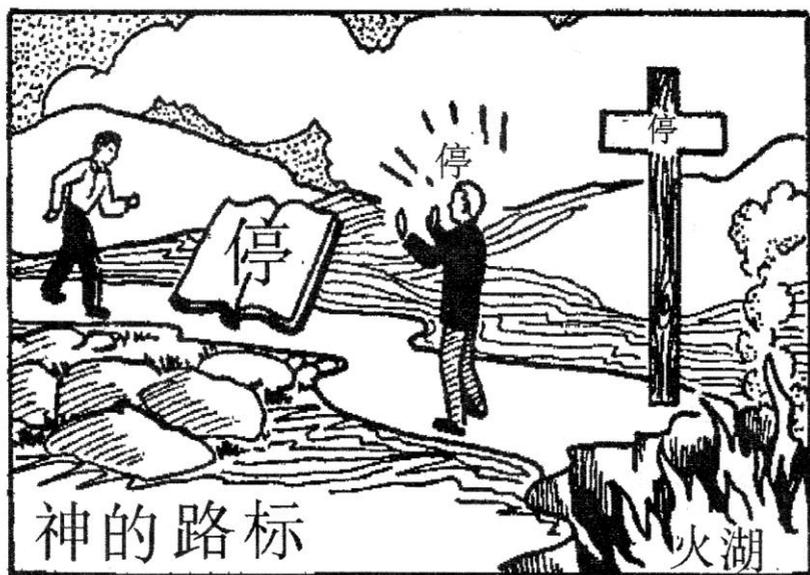
Senior Citizens Centre, Cnr North Rocks Rd and Farnell Ave, North Rocks, Sundays at 9:30 am & 6pm.

www.keithpiper.org and www.libertybaptistchurch.org.au

Search Youtube for “STOP Tract – How to be sure of heaven (part 1.2)”

请停一停！

想一想：你会在哪里度过永生！



上帝所赐的
永生
你已有了吗???

耶稣说：“凡劳苦担重担的人可以到我这里来，我就使你们得安息”
(马太福音 11：28)

“当趁耶和华可寻找的时候寻找他，相近的时候求告他。恶人当离弃自己的道路；不义的人当除掉自己的意念。归向耶和华，耶和华就必怜恤他；当归向我们的神，因为神必广行赦免。(以赛亚书 55：6，7)

如何确定自己有永生？请听四件很重要的事。

第一，世人都犯了罪

“因为世人都犯了罪，亏缺了神的荣耀”（罗马书 3：23）

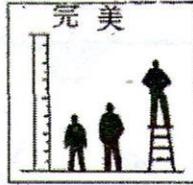
罪是。。。



*偏行己路



*与圣活的神隔离



*达不到神的标准

- 神的圣洁比较之下。我们都是大罪人。

- 你要圣经中的神成为你的神吗？

- 你(今天)可愿意解决这罪的问题以致能与神和好？

1. 不可有别的神
2. 不可雕刻偶像
3. 不可妄称耶和
华的名
4. 当守安息日
5. 当孝敬父母

6. 不可杀人
7. 不可奸淫
8. 不可偷盗
9. 不可作假见证
10. 不可贪恋

*触犯神的律例-圣经

第二，罪的刑法 - 死

“因为罪的工价乃是死，唯有神的恩赐，在我们的主基督耶稣里，乃是永生。”（罗马书 6：23）

“死亡和阴间也被扔在火湖里。这火湖就是第二次的死”
(启示录 20：14)

解释：因为我们都有罪，神的法律说到我们会引向死亡，和火湖这是个不幸的消息，你和我都不想进火湖，那有没有出路呢？答案是有的。神提供我们免费的礼物—永生。这只能通过耶稣基督，不是只是靠做好事和其它宗教。



“你们得救是本乎恩，也因着信，这并不是出于自己，乃是神所赐的。不是出于行为，免得有人自夸。”

(以弗所书 2：8-9)



这份礼物是免费，我们只需要拿或不拿。永生意味着现在个人去了解神，和死后去天堂，因此神的法律说到我们应该去火湖，但神的爱向我们去天堂。注意到神提供我们免费的原谅和求生。

第三，耶稣代替我们死

“唯有基督在我们还作罪人的时候为我们死。神的爱就在此向我们显明了。”
(罗马书 5: 8)



耶稣现在就能成为你的救主。

耶稣是每一个人的救主。

他赦免了每一个人。。。从前的罪。现在的罪，未来的罪。

我们都如羊走迷；各人偏行己路；耶和華使我们众人的罪孽都归在他身上。” 以赛亚书 53: 6



注意：神已经除去我们一切的罪。他让基督身体来担当罪的后果。死，成了我们的代罪羔羊，免去我们原本要在火湖里所受的惩罚。

哪知他为我们的过犯受害，为我们的罪孽压伤。
以赛亚书 53: 5

天国的门是开着的，可是人要如何进去呢？

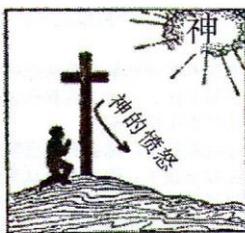
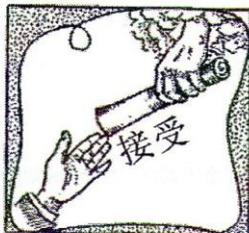
第四，(一) 相信耶稣基督：

- 是神的儿子。
- 为我们(罪人)而死。
- 身体从死里复活。

(二) 接受耶稣基督为个人救主。

如果你作这个决定，你的罪即及时得了赦免，且有永生。

现在被给予免费的宽恕和永恒的生命。意思是现在你接受基督血的牺牲在十字架上。像你付罪的债，只有通过基督去拯救你，不是通过做好事或是你的宗教。



我能如此确定，因为我们能领取神在

圣经中的应许：

“凡接待他的，就是信他名的人，他就赐他们权柄，作神的儿子。”
(约翰福音 1: 12)

“因为凡求告主名的，就必得救。”(罗马书 10: 13)

“人有了神的儿子就有生命。没有神的儿子就没有生命。我将这些话写给你们信奉神儿子之名的人，要叫你们知道自己有永生。”
(约翰一书 5: 12-13)

你选择了什么？



耶稣说：

“我实实在在地告诉你们那听我话，又信差我来者的，就有永生，不至于定罪，是已经出死入生了。”

(约翰福音 5: 24)

要接受基督为救主来领取永生的恩惠，你只须告诉神：

“全能的神：

- 我过去曾背逆你，在思想，言语及行为上犯罪，深感惭愧，我需要耶稣基督赦免我一切的罪。
- 现在我接受你—主耶稣基督作我的救主，我的神。现我求告主耶稣：
 - 求我脱离罪恶及火湖之苦。
 - 当我死后，带我进入天堂。
 - 即时赐给我永生。
- 此刻，我打开心门，让耶稣进来作我的救赎主，生命的主宰，我的良友及我的神，直到永永远远。奉主耶稣的名祷告。阿们”

姓名：..... 日期：.....

“耶稣说：我又赐给他们永生他们永不灭亡。。(约翰福音：10：28)

问题

- 1: 你有没有呼叫耶稣基督从你的罪去拯救你？你是否忠诚？
- 2: 在罗马书10: 13神正在和你说什么呢？
- 3: 你从什么中得救呢？
- 4: 若你现在死了，你会到哪里呢？为什么？
- 5: 现在被拯救了，你会不会认为你可能失去永生？看约翰福音28，不会“灭亡”是什么意思？
- 6: 你怎样去更好地了解神？每天学习圣经（彼得书 2: 2）；

和神谈话：参加圣经学习的教堂（希伯来书 10: 24, 25）；

告诉别人基督会怎样拯救他们；洗礼，（使徒行传10: 47, 48）；

告诉别人你已被拯救了（罗马书10: 9）和随从基督。

www.keithpiper.org
www.youtube.com

Answers Course Lesson 7

நில்லுங்கள் !

நின்று சிந்தியுங்கள்.

“உங்கள் நித்தியத்தை எங்கே செலவழிப்பீர்கள்”?



தேவனுடைய கிருபை வரமோ
நித்திய ஜீவன்

நீங்கள் அதை பெற்றுக்
கொண்டிருக்கிறீர்களா?

இயேசு கிறிஸ்து சொன்னார் : “வருத்தப்பட்டு பாரம் சுமக்கிறவர்களே நீங்கள் எல்லாரும் என்னிடத்தில் வாருங்கள் நான் உங்களுக்கு இளைப்பாறுதல் தருவேன்,” மத்தேயு 11:28.

கர்த்தரைக் கண்டையத்தக்க சமயத்தில் அவரைத் தேடுங்கள், அவர் சமீபமாயிருக்கையில் அவரை நோக்கிக் கூப்பிடுங்கள். துன்மார்க்கன் தன் வழியையும், அக்கிரமக்காரன் தன் நினைவுகளையும்விட்டு கர்த்தரிடத்தில் திரும்பக்கூடவன்; அவர் அவன்மேல் மனதுருகுவார்; நம்முடைய தேவனிடத்திற்கே திரும்பக்கூடவன்; அவர் மன்னிக்கிறதற்குத் தயை பெருத்திருக்கிறார், ஏசாயா 55:6,7.

நாம் நித்திய ஜீவனை பெற்றுக்கொள்ள முடியும் என்னும் நிச்சத்தை எப்படி பெற்றுக்கொள்ள முடியும்?

அதற்கு 4 காரியங்களை நாம் கண்டிப்பாக அறிந்திருக்கவேண்டும்:

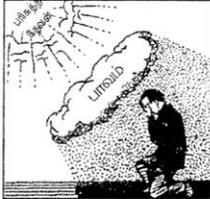
1. நாம் அனைவரும் பாவிகள்

“எல்லோரும் பாவம் செய்து தேவ

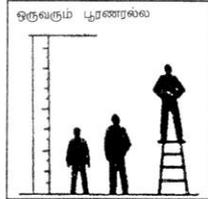
மகிமையற்றவர்களானார்கள்.” ரோமர் 3 : 23



சுயத்தை முதலிடத்தில் வைத்தல்



தேவனைவிட்டு பிரிவு



தேவனுடைய பூரண நிலைக்கு குறைவுபட்ட நிலை

1. வேறே தேவர்கள் இல்லை.
2. விக்கிர வணக்கம் கூடாது.
3. தேவனுடைய நாமத்தை விண்ணிலே வழங்கக்கூடாது.
4. ஓய்வு நாளை பரிசுத்தமாக ஆசரிக்க வேண்டும்.
5. பெற்றோரை கண்படுத்த வேண்டும்.

6. கொலைசெய்யாதிருப்பாயாக.
7. விபச்சாரம்செய்யாதிருப்பாயாக.
8. களவு செய்யாதிருப்பாயாக.
9. பொய்சாட்சி சொல்லாதிருப்பாயாக.
10. இச்சியாதிருப்பாயாக.

நியாயப்பிரமாணத்தை (பரிசுத்த வேதாகமம்) மீறவது பாவமாகும்.

தேவனுடைய பரிசுத்தத்தோடு ஒப்பிடும்போது நாம் அனைவரும் பாவிகள்.

கேள்வி 1 : பரிசுத்த வேதாகமத்தின் தேவன், உங்களுக்கும் தேனாயிருக்க விரும்புகிறீர்களா?

கேள்வி 2 : பாவத்திலிருந்து விலகி தேவனை நோக்கி வர விரும்புகிறீர்களா? (மனந்திரும்புதல்)

2. பாவத்தின் சம்பளம் மரணம்

“பாவத்தின் சம்பளம் மரணம்; தேவனுடைய கிருபை வரமோ நம்முடைய சுர்த்ராகிய இயேசுகிறிஸ்துவினால் உண்டான நித்திய ஜீவன்.” ரோமர் 6 : 23

அப்பொழுது மரணமும் பாதாளமும் அக்கினிக்கூலிலே தள்ளப்பட்டன இது இரண்டாம் மரணம். வெளி.20:14

விளக்கம்: நாம் அனைவரும் பாவம் செய்திருக்கிறபடியால் தேவனுடைய நியாயப்பிரமாணம் சொல்லுகிறபடி நாம் அனைவரும் மரணம் அடைந்து பின்பு அக்கினிக் கடலில் சென்றடைவோம். இது ஒரு கெட்ட செய்தியாகும். விரும்புவார்களா? இல்லவே இல்லை.

அப்படியானால் இந்த அக்கினிக் கடலுக்குத் தப்ப ஏதாகிலும் வழி உள்ளதா?ஆம்! இயேசுக் கிறிஸ்துவின் வழியாக தேவன் நமக்கு நித்திய ஜீவனை இலவசமாக தர விரும்புகிறார். அதை நமது மதத்தின் மூலமாகவோ, நற்கிரியைகளின் மூலமாகவோ நாம் பெற்றுக்கொள்ள முடியாது.

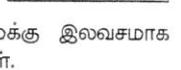
கிருபையினாலே விசுவாசத்தைக் கொண்டு இரட்சிக்கப்பட்டீர்கள்; இது உங்களால் உண்டானதல்ல, இது தேவனுடைய ஈவு, எபேசியர் 2:8,9. ஒருவரும் பெருமை பாராட்டாதபடிக்கு இது கிரியைகளினால் உண்டானதல்ல.

இலவசமாகக் கிடைப்பதே பரிசு என்றழைக்கப்படுகிறது. அதை நாம் நமக்குச் சொந்தமாக எடுத்துச் செல்லமுடியும். நித்திய ஜீவன் என்றால் தேவனை தனிப்பட்ட முறையில் அறிந்து மரணம் வரும்போது பரலோகத்திற்குச் செல்வதாகும்.

ஆகவே, தேவனுடைய நீதி சொல்கிறது நாம் அக்கினிக் கடலுக்குச் செல்ல வேண்டும். தேவனுடைய அன்பு நாம் பரலோகத்திற்குச் செல்ல விரும்புகிறது. தேவன் நமக்கு இலவசமாக மன்னிப்பையும் நித்திய ஜீவனையும் எப்படி அளித்துள்ளார் என்பதைக் கவனியுங்கள்.

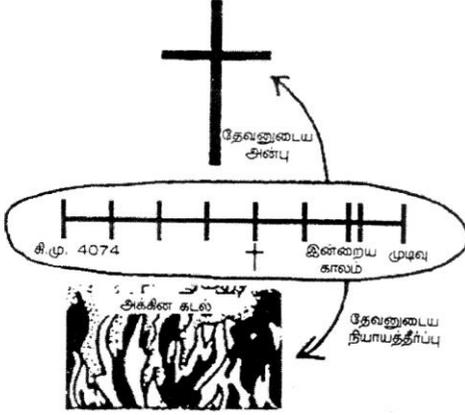


அதுவே மரணம் எனப்படுகிறது



3. இயேசு நமது எல்லா தண்டனையையும் ஏற்றுக்கொண்டார்

நாம் பாவிகளாயிருக்கையில் கிறிஸ்து நமக்காக மரித்ததினால் தேவன் நம்மேல் வைத்த தமது அன்பை விளங்கப் பண்ணுகிறார். ரோமர் 5:8



இயேசு கிறிஸ்து அனைத்து மக்களுக்கும் இரட்சகர். அவர் இப்பொழுது உங்களுக்கும் இரட்சகராக இருக்க ஆயத்தமாயிருக்கிறார்.

கவனிக்க : தேவன் நமது கடந்தகால, நிகழ்கால எதிர்கால பாவங்களை நம்மிலிருந்து எடுத்துவிட்டு அதை இயேசு கிறிஸ்துவின்மேல் வைத்துவிட்டார்.

நாமெல்லாரும் அவனவன் தன் தன் வழியிலே போனோம் கர்த்தரோ நம்மெல்லாருடைய அக்கிரமத்தையும் அவர்மேல் விழப்பண்ணினார். ஏசாயா 53:6

நித்திய நித்திய காலமாக நாம் அக்கினிக் கடலிலே தண்டனை பெற்றுவிடக்கூடாது என்பதற்காக நம்மெல்லாருடைய பாவங்களையும் தன்மேல் எடுத்துக்கொண்டார்.

நம்முடைய மீறுதல்களினிமித்தம் அவர் காயப்பட்டு நம்முடைய அக்கிரமங்களினிமித்தம் அவர் நொறுக்கப்பட்டார். ஏசாயா 53:5

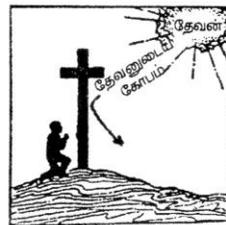
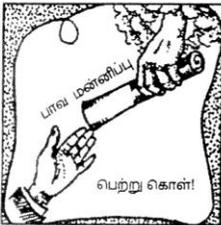
இப்பொழுது இயேசுகிறிஸ்து எல்லா மனிதருக்கும் இரட்சகர் (பாவ பரிசாரம்). எனவே, பரலோகத்தின் வாசல் இப்பொழுது எல்லாரும் பிரவேசிக்கும் வகையில் திறந்திருக்கிறது. ஆனால் நாம் எப்படி அதற்குள் செல்லமுடியும்?

4. (a) எவ்வெல்லாம் இயேசுக் கிறிஸ்துவை

- தேவகுமாரன்
- நமக்கும் பதிலாக அவர் நமது பாவங்களுக்காக மரித்தார்
- மரணத்திலிருந்து தமது மாம்ச சரீரத்தோடு உயிர்தெழுந்தார் என விசுவாசித்து

(b) அவரை நனது சொந்த இரட்சகராக ஏற்றுக்கொள்கிறார்களோ

அவர்களுக்கு இவ்வசமான பாவ மன்னிப்பும் நித்திய ஜீவனும் இப்பொழுதே கிடைக்கும். அதாவது, நீங்கள் இப்பொழுது இயேசு கிறிஸ்து நமது பாவங்களுக்கு முழு விலையாக சிவ்வையின்மேல் செய்த இரத்த தியாகத்தை ஏற்றுக்கொண்டு அவர் ஒருவேரே நம்மை இரட்சிக்கமுடியும் மற்றபடி, மதங்களோ, நற்கிரியைகளோ இரட்சிப்பதில்லை என்பதை நம்புகிறீர்கள்.



பரிசுத்த வேதாகமத்தில் தேவன் இவ்வாக்குறுதிகளை கொடுத்துள்ளபடியால் நாம் இதன்மேல் மிகுந்த நிச்சயத்தோடு இருக்கமுடியும்.

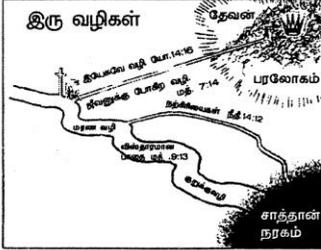
கேள்வி : கீழ்க்காணும் நாம் எப்படியாக இருப்போம்? நாம் என்ன செய்யவேண்டும்?

அவரை ஏற்றுகொண்டவர்கள் எத்தனை பேர்களோ அத்தனை பேர்களும் தேவனுடைய பிள்ளைகளாகும்படி அவர்களுக்கு அதிகாரம் கொடுத்தார். யோவான் 1:12

ஆதலால் கர்த்தருடைய நாமத்தை தொழுதுகொள்ளுகிற எவனும் இரட்சிக்கப்படுவான். ரோமர் 10:13

குமாரனை உடையவன் ஜீவனை உடையவன், தேவனுடைய குமாரன் இல்லாதவன் ஜீவன் இல்லாதவன். உங்களுக்கு நித்திய ஜீவன் உண்டு என்று நீங்கள் அறியவேண்டும். 1 யோவான் 5:12,13

இயேசு சொன்னார் :



என் வசனத்தைக் கேட்டு, என்னை அனுப்பினவரை விசுவாசிக்கிறவனுக்கு நித்திய ஜீவன் உண்டு; அவன் ஆக்கினைத் தீர்ப்புக்குட்படாமல், மரணத்தை விட்டு நீங்கி ஜீவனுக்குட்பட்டிருக்கிறான் என்று மெய்யாகவே மெய்யாகவே உங்களுக்கு சொல்லுகிறேன். யோவான் 5:24

இயேசுக் கிறிஸ்துவை உங்கள் இரட்சகராக ஏற்றுக்கொண்டு நித்திய ஜீவனை பெற கீழ்க்காணும் ஜெபத்தை செய்வது உங்களது விருப்பத்தைப் பொறுத்தது.

- சர்வ வல்லமையுள்ள தேவனே, நான் உமக்கு விரோதமாக என் சிந்தனையினால் வார்த்தையினால், செயலினால் தவறு செய்திருக்கிறேன்; நான் அதற்காக வருந்துகிறேன். எனது எல்லா பாவங்களும் மன்னிக்கப்பட விரும்புகிறேன்.
- இப்பொழுதே என் இருதய கதவைத் திறந்து கர்த்தராகிய இயேசுகிறிஸ்துவை எனது சொந்த இரட்சகராக ஏற்றுக்கொள்கிறேன். இயேசுவின் நாமத்தில் பிதாவே, ஆமென்.

கையொப்பம் :

தேதி :

இயேசு சொன்னார்: “நான் அவைகளுக்கு நித்திய ஜீவனை கொடுக்கிறேன்; அவைகள் ஒருக்காலும் கெட்டுப் போவதில்லை”. யோவான் 10:28

கேள்வி 1 : உங்கள் பாவங்களிலிருந்து இயேசுக் கிறிஸ்து உங்களை இரட்சிக்க உண்மையாகவே நீங்கள் அவரை அழைத்தீர்களா?

ரோமர் 10:13-ன் படி நாம் இப்பொழுது இரட்சிக்கப்பட்டிருக்கிறோம். இனி நமக்கு மரணம் வருமென்றால் நாம் எங்கே போவோம்? நித்திய வாழ்வை நாம் இழக்க முடியுமா? யோவான் 10:28 கூறுகிறபடி நாம் அழிந்துபோவதில்லை.

“கர்த்தராகிய இயேசுவை நீ உன் வாயினாலே அறிக்கையிட்டு தேவன் அவரை மரித்தோரிலிருந்து எழுப்பினாரென்று உன் இருதயத்திலே விசுவாசித்தால் இரட்சிக்கப்படுவாய்” ரோமர் 10:9

கேள்வி 2 : நாம் எப்படி தேவனை இன்னும் நன்றாக அறிந்துகொள்ள முடியும்?

தினமும் வேதம் வாசிக்க வேண்டும் (1 பேதுரு 2:2); தேவனோடு பேச வேண்டும் (ஜெபம்); சத்தியத்தை பிரசங்கிக்கும் சபைக்கு செல்லவேண்டும் (எபிரேயர் 10:24,25); ஞானஸ்நானம் பெறவேண்டும் (அப்போஸ்தலர் நடபடிகள் 10:47,48); நீ இயேசு கிறிஸ்துவை ஏற்றுக்கொண்டாய் என்பதை பிறருக்கு அறிவிக்க வேண்டும் (ரோமர் 10:9); மேலும் இயேசு கிறிஸ்துவுக்கு கீழ்ப்படிந்து வாழ வேண்டும்.

இயேசு கிறிஸ்துவை உங்கள் சொந்த இரட்சகராக ஏற்றுக்கொள்ள தீர்மானித்திருப்பீர்களானால் தயவுசெய்து எங்கள் முகவரிக்குக் கடிதம் எழுதுங்கள். நீங்கள் இன்னும் இயேசுகிறிஸ்துவை அறிந்துகொள்ள வேறு சுவீசேஷ பிரதிகளை நாங்கள் உங்களுக்கு அனுப்புவோம்.

MOUNT OLIVE BAPTIST FOUNDATION

P.O. Box-5, Tiruvattar - 629177, Kanyakumari District, Tamil Nadu, India

E-mail: newhope@vsnl.net

HINTO!

At isipin “Saan ka mananatili sa kabilang buhay?”



**ANG KALOOB NG
DIOS AY
BUHAY NA WALANG HANGGAN!**

**ITO BA AY
TINANGGAP MO NA?**

Sinabi ni Cristo Jesus, “Magsiparito, sa akin, kayong lahat na nangapapagal at nangabibigatang lubha, at kayo’y aking papagpapahingahin.” Mateo 11:28

“Inyong hanapin ang Panginoon samantalang siya’y masusumpungan, magsitawag kayo sa kaniya samantalang siya’y malapit: Lisanin ng masama ang kanyang lakad, at ng liko ang kaniyang mga pagiisip; at manumbalik siya sa Panginoon, at kaaawaan niya siya; at sa aming Dios, sapagkat siya’y magpapatawad ng sagana.” Isaias 55:6,7

Paano tayo makatitiyak na mayroon tayong buhay na walang hanggan? May apat (4) na bagay na kailangan nating alamin:

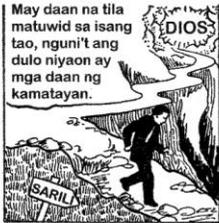
- 1) Walang ibang Dios
- 2) Walang sasambahing imahan
- 3) Huwag gamitin ang ngalan ng Dios ng walang kabuluhan
- 4) Panatilihin banal ang araw ng Pangiling
- 5) Igalang ang iyong ama at Ina

- 6) Huwag papatay
- 7) Huwag makiklapid
- 8) Huwag magnanakaw
- 9) Huwag magpapatang
- 10) Huwag maghahangad sa pag-aari ng iba

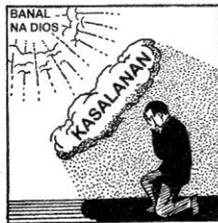
1. ANG LAHAT AY NANGAGKASALA

“Sapagka’t ang lahat ay nangagkasala nga, at hindi nangakaabot sa kaluwalhatian ng Dios;” *Roma 3:23*

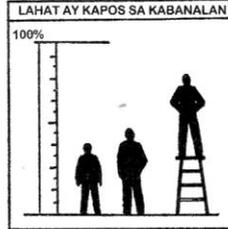
Ang kasalanan ay ito:



Inilalagay ang sarili muna



Pagkakahilay sa Dios



Kinapos sa pamantayan ng Dios

Lahat tayo ay ganap na makasalanan kung ihahambing sa kabanalan ng DIOS. Tanong Blg. 1: Nais mo bang ang DIOS ng Biblia ay maging iyong DIOS? Tanong Blg. 2: Nais mo bang wakasan ang iyong relasyon sa kasalanan at magkaroon ng bagong relasyon sa DIOS? (Pagsisisi)

2. KABAYARAN NG KASALANAN AY KAMATAYAN

“Sapagka’t ang kabayaran ng KASALANAN ay KAMATAYAN; datapwa’t ang kaloob na walang bayad ng DIOS ay BUHAY na WALANG HANGGAN kay CRISTO JESUS na Panginoon natin. *Roma 6:23*

“At ang kamatayan at ang Hades ay ibinulid sa dagatdagatang apoy. Ito ang ikalawang kamatayan, sa makatuwid ay ang dagatdagatang apoy.” Apo.20:14

...Kamatayan ay:

Paliwanag: Sapagka’t ang lahat ay nangagkasala nga, ang kautusan ng DIOS ay nag-sasabi na tayong lahat ay patungo sa kamatayan at sa dagatdagatang apoy. Ito ay masamang balita.

Kahit ikaw man o ako ay hindi nagnanais na mabulid sa impiyerno.

Mayroon bang paraan upang ako’y hindi mapapunta sa impiyerno? Opo!

Inaalok tayo ng DIOS ng buhay na walang hanggan. Wala itong kabayaran sapagkat natatamo ito sa pamamagitan lamang ni Jesus at hindi sa mabuting gawa o relihion “Sapagka’t sa biyaya kayo’y nangaligtas sa pamamagitan ng pananampalataya; at ito’y hindi sa inyong sarili, ito’y kaloob ng DIOS; hindi sa pamamagitan ng mga gawa, upang ang sinuman ay huwag magmapuri.” *Efeso 2:8,9*

Ang regalo ay walang bayad na kaloob, puede mong tanggapin o tanggihan. Ang buhay na walang hanggan ay nangangahulugan na personal mong kilalanin ang DIOS ngayon, at ikaw ay tutungo sa langit kapag ikaw ay namatay.

Sinasabi sa Banal na Langit na tayo ay dapat mapunta sa impiyerno subalit ang pag-ibig ng DIOS ay nagnanais na tayo ay mapasalangit.

Pansinin kung paano ang DIOS ay nagkaloob ng walang bayad na kapatawaran o buhay na walang hanggan.



Kapag yumao na ang katawan



ANG PANINIBAGONG BUHAY GAYA NG BAGONG PAHINA AY HINDI MAKAKABURA NG NAKARAANG KASALANAN



3. TINANGGAP NI JESUS ANG LAHAT NG ATING KAPARUSAHAN

“Datapwa’t ipinagtatagubilin ng DIOS ang kanyang pag-ibig sa atin, na nang tayo’y mga makasalanan pa, si CRISTO AY NAMATAY DAHIL SA ATIN”

Roma 5:8

Si JESUS ang TAGAPAGLIGTAS ng LAHAT ng TAO. Siya ngayon ay NAKALAAAN upang maging TAGAPAGLIGTAS MO.

TANDAAN: Inalis ng Dios ang lahat ng ating nakalipas, kasalukuyan at hinaharap na mga kasalanan, at inilagay iyon kay Cristo Jesus.

“...tayo ay tumungo bawa’t isa sa kanyang sariling daan; at ipinasan sa kaniya ng Panginoon ang kasamaan nating lahat. Isaias 53:6

Inako ni Jesus sa krus ang BUONG KAPARUSAHAN ng ating mga kasalanan. Sa halip na tayo ang maparusahan ng walang hanggan sa DAGATDAGATANG APOY.

“Nguni’t siya’y nasugatan dahil sa ating mga pagsalangsang, siya’y nabugbog dahil sa ating mga kasamaan...” Isaias 53:5

Si Jesus ang tagapagligtas ng lahat. Ang pintuan ng langit ay bukas ngayon para sa lahat subali’t paano tayo makapapasok sa langit? Sila lamang na:

4. (a) SUMAMPALATAYA NA SI KRISTO AY

- DIOS Anak
- Namatay para sa ating mga kasalanan
- nabuhay muli matapos mamatay

(b) TUMANGGAP KAY KRISTO BILANG KANYANG SARILING TAGAPAGLIGTAS.

Sila ay makatatanggap ng KAPATAWARAN at BUHAY NA WALANG HANGGAN ngayon din. Ang ibig sabihin nito ay tanggapin mo ngayon ang dugong-handog ni Kristo bilang kabayaran ng iyong kasalanan, pagtiwalaang tanging si Kristo lamang and magliligtas sa iyo, hindi ang iyong mabubuting gawa o ano mang relihion.



Tayo ay nakatitiyak dahilan sa kanyang mga pangako.

Tayo ay pinagkalooban ng DIOS mula sa Biblia ng mga bagay na maaari nating panghawakan.

TANONG: Sa mga talatang ito, ano ang dapat gawin at anong bunga kapag ginawa natin ito??
“Datapwa’t ang lahat ng sa kanya’y NAGSITANGGAP, ay pinagkalooban niya sila ng karapatang maging mga ANAK NG DIOS, sa makatuwid baga’y ang mga nagsisisampalataya sa kanyang pangalan.”

Juan 1:12

“Sapagka’t ang lahat na NAGSISITAWAG sa pangalan ng Panginoon ay MANGALILIGTAS.”

Roma 10:13

“Ang kinaroroonan ng ANAK any kinaroroonan ng BUHAY; ang HINDI kinaroroonan ng ANAK NG DIOS ay hindi kinaroroonan ng BUHAY. . . . upang inyong MAALAMAN na kayo’y mayroong BUHAY NA WALANG HANGGAN.” *I Juan 5:12,13*



Sinabi ni JESUS:

“Katotohanan, katotohanan sinasabi ko sa inyo, ang dumirinig ng aking salita, at sumasampalataya sa kaniya na nagsugo sa akin, ay may buhay na walang hanggan, at hindi mapapasok sa paghatol, kundi lumipat na sa kabuhayan mula sa kamatayan.”

Juan 5:24

Ang pagpili ay nasa iyo: Tanggapin mo ang **KALOOB** na buhay na walang hanggan sa pamamagitan ng pagtanggap kay Cristo **JESUS** bilang sariling **TAGAPAGLIGTAS**. Manalangin ka ng ganito:

- Makapangyarihang **DIOS**, ako po ay nagkasala sa isip, salita at sa gawa. Patawarin po ninyo ako, Panginoon ko.
- Tinatanggap kita Panginoong **JESUS** bilang aking **DIOS** at Tagapagligtas, at ngayon Panginoong **JESUS** nais ko pong:
 - iligtas mo ako sa aking mga kasalanan at sa impiyerno,
 - dalhin mo po ako sa langit kapag ako ay namatay, at
 - ipagkaloob mo po sa akin ang buhay na walang hanggan ngayon din.
- Binubuksan ko ngayon ang pinto ng aking puso at buhay para sa iyo Panginoong **JESUS**. Tinatanggap kita bilang Tagapagligtas, Kaibigan at **DIOS** sa aking buhay, sa pangalan ni **JESUS**. Amen

Lagda: Petsa:

“At sila’y binibigyan ko ng walang hanggang buhay; at kailan ma’y hindi sila malilipol.” *Juan 10:28*

Q1. Nanalangin ka ba kay Cristo Jesus ng taos sa puso na iligtas ka sa iyong kasalanan? In Roma 10:13 Ano ang sabi ng Dios patungkol sa iyo ngayon? Saan ka ligtas ngayon? Kung ikaw ay mamatay ngayon, saan ka pupunta? Bakit? Sa ngayon na ligtas ka na,puede pa bang mawala ang iyong buhay na walang hanggan?

Basahin mo ang **Juan 10:28**(sa itaas). Ano ang ibig sabihin ng “kailan ma’y hindi sila malilipol”?

“Sapagka’t kung ipahahayag mo ng iyong bibig si Jesus na Panginoon, at sasampalataya ka sa iyong puso na binuhay siyang maguli ng Dios sa mga patay ay maliligtas ka.” **Roma 10:9**

Q2. Paano mo mas lalong malalaman ang ating Panginoon? Pag-aralan mo ang iyong Biblia araw-araw(1Pedro 2:2);Kausapin mo ang Panginoon. Dumalo sa simbahan na ang itinuturo ay ang Biblia(Hebreo10:24,25);Ipamalita sa ibang tao kung paano sila mailligtas ni Jesus sa kanilang kasalanan;magpabautismo(Mga Gawa 10:47,48) sabihin sa tao na ligtas ka na(Roma 10:9) at mamuhay ng may pag sunod kay Cristo Jesus.

www.keithpiper.org

23. CORRECT MENTAL ATTITUDES IN SOUL WINNING. Get a real burden.

Bible Reading: “Follow Me and I Will Make You Fishers Of Men.” Matthew 4:19; Psalm 126.

1. Be a good **listener**. This tells you where people are at.
2. **Ask questions** that require them to think and to talk about themselves. Get them talking. Ask questions based on what they say. Ask “Why?”
3. **Do not fear** what people will say. II Timothy 1:7.
4. Learn by **experimenting** with people as to how they react to what you say.
5. **Be happy** and not over serious. Use humour appropriately.
6. **Pray** the following points before you go: a) Cleanse me from sin, b) Fill me with your Holy Spirit, c) Satan to be bound, d) Give me words to say, e) Guide me to hungry hearted people.
7. **Diagnose** people’s spiritual condition to see if they are saved or lost.
Ask: If you died tonight are you 100% sure of going to heaven? Would you like to be sure?
8. **Perservere** with people:
 - a) To get the first soul winning appointment,
 - b) To get the first follow up appointment,
 - c) To get them to come to Church,
 - d) To keep them coming to Church,
 - e) Become their friend in their problems.
9.
 - a) If you can’t lead them to Christ, ask others in the Church to try. Don’t just forget them.
 - b) **Introduce** them to other Christians in the Church to follow them up.
10. **Give them literature** after they are saved: a) Bible, b) “STOP” tract, c) This book. d) Follow up.
11. **Make a time** each week to: a) Follow them up in Bible study, and answer their questions.
b) To go soul winning, or talk to someone in an appointment.
12. **Be filled** with the Holy Spirit in the morning through prayer and Bible study. LISTEN TO GOD.
13. Ask younger and other Christians if they have someone that they want to see saved. If so, make an appointment to go and see them.
14. PRINCIPLE I: The more people you talk to, the more people will be saved, the more you learn
PRINCIPLE II: Ask for an appointment where & when you can sit down undisturbed for an hour
PRINCIPLE III: Try to lead husband and wife to Christ together.
PRINCIPLE IV: Recognise that one partner may grow faster than the other.
PRINCIPLE V: If one time slot is unsuitable, then choose another.
PRINCIPLE VI: It can be very hard to lead a group to Christ. Talk with those who are interested.
PRINCIPLE VII: Be friendly with everyone you meet. You may be able to talk to them later on.
PRINCIPLE VIII: Nothing ventured, nothing gained!!!! The worst thing people can say is NO.
15. **Excuses** of Christians not wanting to witness to people are:
 - a) I may lose my friends. **Answer:** God will give you better saved friends.
 - b) I do not know enough yet to say anything. **Answer:** You learn by doing, so go out and try.
 - c) I’ll just be a good example and people will ask me how to be saved .
Answer: NO! Many people are “good”. God says to GO (Mark 16:15).
 - d) I don’t want to be pushy, or ram it down his throat. **Answer:** You throw out the bait, see if he is interested, then take the conversation to the gospel or make an appointment.
16. **Do not say irrelevant things**. Only say things that will share the gospel or make an appointment.
17. Be a good **appointment getter** and a good appointment keeper.
18. Work well and co-operate with other Christians in the church, to win their friends & your friends.
19. **Notice people** who are spiritually hungry.
20. With everything people say, think of ways to turn it to the gospel introduction.
21. Think that some **relative** or friend, may be praying for a person to be saved that you meet.
22. **WRONG ATTITUDE:** I will not lead him to Christ in case he makes a false profession. **Answer:** Encourage him to receive Christ. If he is honest and understands the gospel, Christ **will** save him.
23. When they are saved, ask them **who they know** that they would like to see saved and going to heaven? Go and visit them.

24. WHAT DOES GOD GIVE US WHEN WE RECEIVE CHRIST AS OUR SAVIOUR ?

1. We become **sons of God**. “But as many received Him to them He gave power to become the sons of God.” John 1:12. This means....
2. We get **born again**. “Except a man be born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God.” John 3:3. “Ye must be born again.” John 3:7. We were born many years ago physically into our parent’s family. When we receive Christ as our Saviour, we are adopted or born into God’s family as His sons, with full rights to all the privileges of being in God’s family (Romans 8:15).
3. We are **saved** from the penalty of sin, which is hell, and the Lake of Fire.
We are saved from the power of sin as we yield obediently to Christ’s Word.
We are saved from the presence of sin when we get to heaven. “For whosoever...” Romans 10:13
4. We get **eternal life**, living with God forever. “He that has the Son, has life.” I John 5:12.
5. We are **reconciled** to God by the death of Christ. Romans 5:10. God has removed the barrier of sin, producing peace between God and us.
6. “We are **justified** by faith in Jesus Christ as our Saviour.” Romans 5:1.
This means that we are declared righteous, pardoned and all our sins are removed.
We are entitled to all of God’s promised blessings. It is just as if we had never sinned.
7. We are 100% **acceptable** to God because of Jesus Christ. We do not need to perform perfectly in order to win God’s acceptance. “He has made us acceptable in the beloved (Christ).” Eph. 1:6.
8. “We are **forgiven** all trespasses.” Colossians 2:13. Forgiveness is the legal act of God where He removes all the charges held against a sinner because Christ has made proper payment for his sins.
9. We are **redeemed**. This means that we are bought by Christ out of the slave market of sin, set free from sin’s bondage, we now belong to Christ, and we are Christ’s servants to do God’s will. We are not to live a life of selfish ease, but to be useful to God’s purposes.
“...ye are not your own. For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God’s.” I Corinthians 6:19,20.
10. We are **indwelt and led** by the Holy Spirit. God’s Spirit now lives in us permanently. We must not disobey His leading. “If any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.” Romans 8:9. “For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.” Romans 8:14.
11. We will receive a new, young **resurrected body** that will never die. Romans 8:11.
“His flesh shall be fresher than a child’s: he shall return to the days of his youth.” Job 33:25.
“This mortal must put on immortality.” I Corinthians 15:53.
12. We are **new creatures** with a **new Divine nature**.
“If any man be in Christ, he is a new creature....all things are become new.” II Corinthians 5:17.
13. God gives us many **exceeding great and precious promises** in the Bible for us to claim to guide and help us in life. By these we become partakers of the Divine nature. II Peter 1:4.
14. God has given us **all things** that pertain to **life and godliness**, through the **knowledge** of him that has called us to glory (in heaven) and virtue (now). II Peter 1:3.
15. Being justified by faith, we have **peace** with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. Romans 5:1.
“Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you.” John 14:27. “Peace of God.” Philippians 4:7.
16. We are **servants** of God. “Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ.” Romans 1:1.
“...being made free from sin, and become servants to God.” Romans 6:22.
17. We are **ambassadors** for Christ. II Corinthians 5:20. We are God’s representatives on earth with God’s message of salvation to mankind.
18. We are given many Christian **brothers and sisters to help and care for us**.
“A new commandment I give unto you, that ye love one another as I have loved you.” John 13:43
19. We have a **home and mansion in heaven**. II Corinthians 5:1,8.
“In my Father’s house are many mansions....I go to prepare a place for you.” John 14:2.
20. We are now **friends** of God. “I have called you friends”. John 15:15.
“Ye are my friends, if ye do whatsoever I command you.” John 15:14.
21. We can lay up for ourselves **treasures in heaven** which we cannot lose. Matthew 7:20.
Our response to God giving us so many good things now and in eternity is to love Him and obey Him.
“If ye love me, keep my commandments.” John 14:15.

25. DOES A PERSON HAVE TO CALL ON CHRIST TO BE SAVED?

Bible Reading: Job 33:23-30.

Aim: To prove that we must not just believe in our mind the facts of the Gospel, but that a person must call on Christ to be saved.

Introduction:

One big difference between a Fundamental church and a liberal/apostate/Roman Catholic/Modernist church is on how a person appropriates salvation.

In a Fundamental church, a sinner is presented with the facts of the gospel and challenged to call/receive/ask/pray/claim (as a lost sinner) on Jesus Christ to save him. In a liberal church, a sinner may be presented with some facts of the gospel, but he is rarely challenged to call on Christ to save him. It is rarely made clear to him that if he takes the gift of eternal life in Christ, then it will become his for certain, and for ever.

Story Illustration: Why Wilson was hanged.

In 1829 George Wilson, in Pennsylvania, was sentenced to be hanged by a United States Court for robbing the mails and for murder. President Andrew Jackson pardoned him, but this was refused, and Wilson insisted that it was not a pardon unless he accepted it. That was a point of law never before raised, and the President called the Supreme Court to decide.

Chief Justice John Marshall gave the following decision: "A pardon is a paper, the value of which depends upon its acceptance by the person implicated. It is hardly to be supposed that one under sentence of death would refuse to accept a pardon, but if it is refused, it is no pardon. George Wilson must be hanged!" And he was hanged.

Provisionally the gospel of Christ which is the power of God unto salvation is for every one irrespective of what he may be or what he may have done. Potentially, it is only to "every one that believeth." - Sunday School Times.

1. ERRORS REGARDING SALVATION

What are some wrong terms that people use in challenging people to appropriate salvation?

1. **Give your heart to Jesus.** This is wrong because this is spoken to a saved person, a son of God. "My son, give me thine heart, and let thine eyes observe my ways." Proverbs 23:26.
2. **Invite Jesus into your heart.** This is wrong because it does not specify what you want Christ to do. What do you want Christ to do in your heart? Help you? Do good works? No! It must be to save you from sin by Christ's work on the cross.
3. **Commit your life to Christ.** This is wrong because it carries the thought of dedicating your life to obey Christ and hoping to get salvation in return for good works that you promise to do.
4. **Believe in God or Christ.** This is not clear, but is ambiguous. What must we believe about God or Christ? In their existence? No. Even if you believe that Christ paid for all your sins on the cross, this is not salvation because many people believe this to be true, but do not want salvation or do not want to give up their sins. One must **want salvation** and **ask** for it.
5. **Accept Christ.** This is not clear because: "What are we accepting Christ to do for us?" It must be to save us or to be our Saviour from sin.
6. **Trust in God.** To do what? Must be to save me from sin.
7. **Have faith in God.** To do what? Must be to save me from sin.

2. SCRIPTURES PROVING THAT WE MUST CALL ON CHRIST TO BE SAVED

Let us challenge people to call on Christ to save them, as these scriptures command us to:

1. Romans 10:13 "For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." "To call on the Lord means to pray in faith for salvation." "Bible Knowledge Commentary", Walvoord and Zuck P.481. Joel 2:32 and Acts 2:21 contain the same verse.
2. Jeremiah 29:12,13 "Then shall ye call upon me, and ye shall go and pray unto me, and I will **hearken** unto you. And ye shall **seek** me, and **find** me, when ye shall **search** for me with all your heart. And I will be found of you, saith the Lord." v.14.

3. Isaiah 55:6,7 “**Seek** ye the Lord while he may be found, **call** ye upon him while he is near: Let the wicked **forsake** his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him **return** unto the Lord, and he will have mercy on him; and to our God for he will abundantly pardon.”
The wicked are commanded to seek and call upon the Lord for salvation.
The gospel invitation defined involves four things:
i) Seeking (desiring, inquiring after) the Lord while He may be found. v.6.
ii) Calling upon Him while He is near.
iii) Repentance - the wicked being willing to forsake (or abandon) his evil way of life, and the unrighteous man forsaking his wrong thoughts.
iv) Faith - returning to the Lord, receiving God’s salvation, mercies and pardon.
4. Jonah 3:4-10 The greatest revival ever, took place when Jonah preached to the Ninevites and they were all saved. We see the following steps in their salvation:
i) The people of Nineveh **believed** God. v.5.
ii) **Cry mightily** unto God. v.8.
iii) Let them **turn** every one **from his evil way**. v.8.
Result: God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did it not.
5. Jeremiah 10:25 Unbelievers are described as those that “call not on thy name”. Therefore, believers are those who “call on God’s name”. “Pour out thy fury upon the heathen that know thee not, and upon the families that **call not on thy name**”.
6. Zechariah 13:9 Another great revival is when the nation of Israel is saved at Christ’s second coming. Notice how they get saved; by **CALLING** on the name of the Lord:
“I will bring the third part through the fire, ... they shall **CALL on my name**, and **I will hear them**: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, the Lord is my God.”
Lesson: When we call on the name of the Lord to save us, He hears us, and we are then saved; just as Israel will be.
7. Job 33:23-30 shows several things that are necessary for a person to be saved:
i) An **interpreter** or gospel preacher. v.23.
ii) A **ransom**, or One who has paid for our sins, Jesus Christ. v.24.
iii) He shall **pray unto God**... v.26.
iv) If any **say**, I have sinned, and perverted that which was right, and it profited me not. v.27.
Results:
a) He will be delivered from going to the pit. v.24,28,30.
b) His flesh shall be fresher than a child’s; he shall return to the days of his youth. (Resurrection body). v.25.
c) He will see God’s face with joy. v.26.
d) He will render unto man God’s righteousness. v.26
e) His life shall see the light. v.28.
8. John 4:10,15,26 Jesus tells the woman at the well, that there are three steps to salvation in v.10, these being: “If thou knewest:
a) the **gift** of God
b) **who** it is that saith to thee, “Give me to drink.”
c) Thou would have **asked of him**, and he would have given thee living water.”
Condition c) In v.15 she **asks** Christ for living water: “Sir, **give me** this water.
Condition b) In v.25,26 she **knows**/believes **who** is speaking to her: “Jesus saith unto her, I that speak unto thee am he (Messiah).”
She is then saved because she understands **who Christ is**, and **she has asked** for Christ to “give me this water.”
9. “And in all things, whatsoever ye shall **ask in prayer, believing**, ye shall receive.” Matt.21:22.
This states that believing is tied in closely with “**asking in prayer**.”
If you believe God can do something for you, you ask Him for it in prayer.

If you believe Christ can save your soul, you will ask Him in prayer to save your soul. Ye have not because ye ask not.” James 4:2

Question: Why are people not saved?

Answer: Because they ask not.

This means that if you ask Christ for salvation, believing, you’ll get salvation. A person must acknowledge to God their need of salvation. This is asking God to save them.

“Therefore I say unto you, what things soever ye desire, when ye **pray, believe** that ye receive them, and ye **shall** have them.” Mark 11:24.

This expresses dependence upon the Lord, as we pray to God, humbly requesting as an inferior from a superior. Here, belief and prayer are linked.

10. Notice these clear New Testament examples of people who were saved by calling on Christ to save them:

i) **Bartimaeus** Mark 10:46-52

Step 1: “He began to CRY OUT, and say, Jesus thou Son of David, have mercy on me.” v.47. He called out for Christ to save him.

Step 2: “He, casting away his garment, rose, and came to Jesus.” v.50 He responds to Jesus’ command for him to be called. Jesus calls him. Casting away his garment pictures the sinner wanting to cast away his sin in repentance.

Step 3: He says “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”

The sinner must ask Jesus to save him, in reply to Jesus’ question.

“What wilt thou that I should do unto thee?” Jesus asks this question to every sinner. To be saved we must answer “I want to be saved.”

Step 4: Bartimaeus is saved from sin by faith and also receives his sight. Jesus said “Go thy way; thy faith hath made thee whole.” v.52. Bartimaeus’ faith involved:

1. Crying out
2. Casting away his garment (repentance)
3. Acknowledging Jesus to be Lord God (Deity)
4. Telling Jesus exactly what he wanted (calling on Christ to save him).

Step 5: “Immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way. v.52. After we receive the blessing of salvation, we must follow Jesus also.

ii) **The Publican** Luke 18:9-14

Theme: Salvation is not obtained by trusting in our own righteousness.

Step 1: “Two men went up to the Temple to pray; a Pharisee and a Publican.” v.10. Salvation is not in going to church.

Salvation is not in a wrong kind of prayer in trusting our good works.

Step 2: The Publican said “God be merciful to me a sinner.” v.13.

He called upon the name of the Lord in his distress at his sin to save him. We must see our sins as distressing to us and hurtful to God. His sins distressed him as seen by his four statements:

- a) He stood afar off.
- b) He would not so much as lift up his eyes to heaven.
- c) He smote upon his breast, realising the sinfulness of his heart.
- d) He **called** upon the name of the Lord to save him, **saying:** “God be merciful to me a sinner.” v.13.

Calling upon the name of the Lord to save us is a heartfelt response at distress of our sin: “In my distress I called upon the Lord, . . . he heard my voice.” Psalm 18:6.

Psalm 118:5 “I called upon the Lord in distress: the Lord answered me.”

Step 3: “This man (the Publican) went down to his house justified rather than the other (Pharisee):.. for he that humbles himself shall be exalted.” v.14.

If we are **distressed at our sin, not trusting our good works, but call upon the name of the Lord** Jesus Christ to save us, we are justified ie. made right in God’s eyes. This is true salvation.

iii) **Zacchaeus**. Luke 19:1-10

Step 1: “He **sought** to see Jesus who he was; and could not for the press.” v.3 To be saved we must seek to see Jesus, seek to know who Jesus is - God and Saviour (John 6:36, 40). seek to overcome obstacles to get to Jesus eg. Zacchaeus’ shortness.

Step 2: After climbing a tree to get a closer look at Jesus, Jesus responded to him by saying: “Zacchaeus, make haste, and **come down**; for today I must abide at thy house.” v.5 To be saved we must - come down from our high position, humbling ourselves.

- accept Jesus’ offer inviting Jesus to come to stay at our house/life.

Step 3: “He made haste, and came down, and **received Him joyfully**.” v.6

To be saved we must make haste, immediately respond to Jesus Christ’s offer of salvation.

- come down, humbling ourselves from whatever high position we think we hold in life.

- receive Christ as our Saviour from sin joyfully into our life to take up residence with us.

Step 4: “Zacchaeus stood and said unto the Lord; Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken anything from any man by false accusation, I restore him fourfold.” v.8

Zacchaeus was so distressed by his sin, and so much wanting Christ to be his Saviour that he wanted to be completely right with God and man. He offered to make restoration to anyone he had wronged. This showed the sincerity of his repentance.

Step 5: “Jesus said unto him, **this day is salvation come to this house**, forasmuch as he also is a son of Abraham.” v.9

Note: - Salvation comes in a day, not over many years of good works.

- Salvation comes when we **seek Christ, come down** from our high position **receive Christ joyfully** as our Saviour.

- Salvation’s result is to want to do the right thing by God and man.

iv) A **Dying Thief**. Luke 23:39-43

Step 1: He rebuked the unrepentant thief’s wrong selfish attitude to Christ. To be saved we must be willing to **take a stand** for Jesus Christ, even if it means going against the crowd.

Step 2: He said: “Dost not thou fear God, seeing thou art in the same condemnation? And we indeed justly; for we receive the due reward of our deeds.” v.40,41.

To be saved we must

- **fear God**

- be aware of our **own sinfulness**

- be aware that we are **worthy of God’s judgement**.

Step 3: “But this man hath done nothing amiss.” v.41 To be saved we must

- recognise **Jesus Christ’s sinlessness**.

Step 4: “He said unto Jesus, Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom.” v.42

To be saved we must

- recognise that **Jesus is God**, the “Lord”.

- **call on Jesus to save us**: “Lord remember me when you come into your kingdom.”

- recognise that **Jesus is our only Mediator** to get us to heaven, not Mary, not saints, not

Buddha, not any other religious figure, not good works, only Jesus Christ can save us. I Tim 2:5

Notice: He also believed that Jesus was the King of the Jews, and that Jesus would come to earth again as King of the earth.

Step 5: Jesus assures him of **his salvation**: “Today, shalt thou be with me in paradise.” v.43.

When we call on Jesus to save us, He saves us and keeps us saved, so that whenever we die we are promised to be with Jesus in paradise. For believers this means that on death, we go instantly to heaven to be in God’s presence. **Question:** Are you really saved? If not, then call on Christ to save you today as these four men did 2,000 years ago.

11. Notice six very clear steps in the process of salvation in Romans 10:12-15.

1. A person is SENT

2. That person PREACHES the Gospel

3. People HEAR the Gospel

4. People BELIEVE the facts of the Gospel (Believe in Him)

5. People CALL on the name of the Lord to save them
6. People are then SAVED.

Notice in v.12 “the same Lord over all is **rich** unto **all** that **CALL** upon him.”

Note: We only experience the riches of Christ’s salvation when we call on him to save us.

12. **Objection:** But isn’t believing in Christ just enough?

Answer:

- a) If we believe in Christ, we will call on Christ to save us, or at the very least acknowledge to Christ our desire, or our need for Christ to save us from our sin.
 - b) Romans 10:10 links “BELIEF” and “CALLING”.
Belief comes first, then is followed simultaneously/immediately by calling: “with the heart man **believeth** unto **righteousness**; and with the mouth **confession** is made unto **salvation**.” Rom. 10:10
We learn here that:
 - A confession of Christ is as indispensable to salvation as believing. Jesus affirms this in Matthew 10:32, Luke 12: 8,9.
 - There can be no true salvation where we are not willing to confess the Lord Jesus. “No man can **say** that Jesus is the Lord but by the Holy Ghost.” 1 Corinthians 12:3
 - c) Romans 10:9 links “**confessing** with your mouth the Lord Jesus” with “**believing** in your heart that God has raised him from the dead.”
“Confess” here means: to express our agreement with what God holds to be true. It is a public open declaration as seen by “with thy mouth”, regarding our sin, our lost estate, our need of the Saviour. We confess that Jesus is our Lord, that He has a right to rule over our soul eg. Paul in Acts 9:6 “Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?”
“Believe in your heart” means that the external confession corresponds with the internal feelings.
 - d) “Whosoever **believeth** on him shall **not be ashamed**.” Romans 10:11.
If we have true belief in Christ as Saviour, we will not be ashamed to declare it.
 - e) Acts 26:27 “King Agrippa, believest thou the prophets? I know that thou **believest**. Then Agrippa said unto Paul, Almost thou persuadest me to be a Christian.”
We learn that: Agrippa believed that Jesus was the fulfillment of the prophets’ message. Believing the facts is not enough to save a person. One must receive Jesus Christ as our Saviour.
13. Other scriptures teaching that we must call on Christ to be saved:
- i) “I will **call** upon the Lord, who is worthy to be praised: so shall I be **saved** from my enemies (eg. satan, sin, hell)” Psalm 18:3.
 - ii) “**Save** Lord: let the king hear us when we **call**.” Psalm 20:9.
 - iii) “**Call** upon me in the day of trouble: I will **deliver** thee, and thou shalt glorify me.” Psalm 50:15. The Lord’s method of delivering (saving) us from trouble is for us to call on Him to save us. So it is that by calling on the Lord, He will save us from hell.
 - iv) “As for me, I will **call** upon God; and the Lord shall save me.” Psalm 55:16.
 - v) “Quicken us, and we will **call** upon thy name. Turn us again O Lord God of hosts, cause thy face to shine; and we shall be **saved**.” Psalm 80:18, 19.
 - vi) “For thou, Lord, art good, and **ready to forgive**; and plenteous in mercy unto all them that **call** upon thee.” v.5
“In the day of trouble I will **call** upon thee: for thou wilt **answer** me.” v.7. Psalm 86:5,7.
 - vii) “He shall **call** upon me, and I will answer him: I will be with him in trouble, I will **deliver him** and honour him.” Psalm 91:15.
 - viii) “Moses and Aaron among his priests, and Samuel among them that **call** upon his name; they **called** upon the Lord, and **he answered them**.” Psalm 99:6.
 - ix) “in the day when I **call** answer me speedily.” Psalm 102:2.
 - x) “O give thanks unto the Lord; **call** upon his **name**.” Psalm 105:1.
 - xi) “I will take the **cup of salvation**, and **call** upon the name of the Lord” Psalm 116:13.
 - xii) “The Lord is **near** unto **all** them that **call upon him**, to all that call upon him in truth.. he also will **hear** their **cry**, and will **save** them.” Psalm 145:18,19.

- xiii) “Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of **salvation**. And **in that day** shall ye say, Praise the Lord, **call** upon his name...” Isaiah 12:3,4.
- xiv) “Then shalt thou **call**, and the Lord shall **answer**.” Isaiah 58:9.
- xv) “Before they **call**, I will **answer**; and while they are yet **speaking** I will **hear**.” Isaiah 65:24.
- xvi) “**Call** unto me, and I will **answer** thee” Jeremiah 33:3.
- xvii) “Here he hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that **call** on thy name. Acts 9:14. All who are saved are described as those who “call on thy name.”
- xviii) “With **all** that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord.” 1 Corinthians 1:2.
- xix) “Follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that **call on the Lord** out of a pure heart.” 2 Timothy 2:22

Believers are described again as people who “call on the Lord.” We are saved by calling on the Lord, and we continue in total dependence upon God to call on the Lord for all our needs.

- xx) **In my distress** I **called** upon the Lord, and **cried** to my God: he did hear my **voice** out of his temple, and my **cry** did enter into his ears. 2 Samuel 22:7.

If we are truly convicted of our sins, and of our need of Jesus Christ to be our Saviour, then we will call on Christ to save us. Being **distressed** by our sins, our normal response is to immediately call on Christ to save us.

In John 6:28-34, Jesus tells us that to work the works of God, we must **believe on Christ**. The people’s response is to say “Lord, evermore **give us** this bread” v.34, that is to say “we want it, we now ask for it, we now receive it.”

Jesus replies: “Him that **cometh to me** I will in no wise cast out.” v.37

“everyone which **seeth**²³³⁴ the Son, and **believeth**⁴¹⁰⁰ on him, may have everlasting life:”v40 **seeth**²³³⁴ in Greek means to look at, to comprehend, recognise,acknowledge. Therefore we must see (recognise who Christ is) and believe on him (receive, call, ask, come, take, confess Christ as Saviour) to be saved.

3. DEFINITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH SALVATION.

1. **REPENT**: to change the mind, to regret. Acts 2:38.
2. **CONVERT**: (1378 in Strong’s Concordance) = to turn.
= to turn from self and sin and receive Christ as Saviour. “Except ye be converted and become as little children ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.” Matthew 18:3.
“Repent and turn to God (convert) and do works meet for repentance.” Acts 26:20.
3. **BELIEVE**: (pisteuo in Greek), **have faith, to trust**
“Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved.” Acts 16:31.

Question: What does “believe” mean for salvation?

Answer: Believe is a **SUMMARY** word.

It summarises a number of things that we must believe in order to be saved. If one is missing, a person is not saved.

a) **Belief has FACTS to rest upon**

Believe is a summary statement that assumes an understanding of other scriptures pertinent to salvation. “Believe” implies that the person believes, or is firmly persuaded that:

1. He is a sinner.
2. He is heading to hell.
3. His good works can’t save him.
4. Christ died as his Substitute/Saviour/Sin bearer on the cross to be punished for his sin in the sinners place.
5. He is willing to turn from sin, and turn to God.
6. Jesus Christ is 100% God and 100% man.
7. Christ rose bodily from the dead.
8. We must receive, call, ask, come, take or confess Christ as Saviour.

- b) **Belief** involves **deciding** either **for** or **against Jesus Christ and his offer of salvation**: “But the gift of God is eternal life..” Romans 6:23.

c) **Believe** can be used with **different prepositions**.

i) **Believe in** (“en” in Greek) in John 3:16 means “**to confide in someone**.”

ii) **Believe on** (“epi” in Greek) in Acts 16:31 means “**laying hold on** the object of faith.” Therefore, one needs to “confide in Christ” or “lay hold on Christ” or “call on Christ to save”, in order to have salvation.

d) **Believe** in the New Testament **uses other words interchangeably**:

i) **Receive**: “But as many as **received him**, to them gave he power to become the **sons of God**, even to them that **believe** on his name”. John 1:12. (Acts 2:21

ii) **Call upon**: “For whosoever shall **call** upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.” Rom.10:13;

iii) **Ask**: “thou would have **asked** of **him**, and he would have given thee living water.” John 4:10.

iv) **Come**: “Him that **cometh** to me I will in no wise cast out.” John 6:37.

“let him that is athirst **come**. Revelation 22:17.

v) **Take**: “whosoever will, let him **take** the water of life freely.” Revelation 22:17.

vi) **Confess**: “If thou shalt **confess** with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt **believe** in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” Romans 10:9.

“For with the heart man **believeth** unto righteousness; and with the mouth **confession** is made unto salvation.” Romans 10:10. Charles Ryrie in “So Great Salvation” well says:

Key: “The person who **receives**, or **calls upon**, or **asks**, or **comes**, or **takes**, or **confesses**, this person **believes**.”

Question: Isn’t it just enough to tell people to believe in or on Christ?

Answer: No, because, most people think that “believe” means “mental assent to the facts of the Gospel” or “just believing that God or Christ exists.” This is not Bible belief for salvation. They must understand the Bible facts of the Gospel before they can believe.

The Old Testament, not the New Testament, uses the word “**look**” in the context of being saved in Isaiah 45:22, “**Look** unto me, and be ye **saved**, all the ends of the earth.”

This reminds us of saving belief (John 3:14,15), and of the snake bitten Jews in the wilderness looking at the brass serpent on a pole (Numbers 21:5-9) to be healed of snake bite. This is a picture of the new birth. This is still an individual communicating his desire to Christ to be saved. It is a non-verbal call in the mind to God for salvation.

4. BAD EFFECTS OF THIS DOCTRINE OF “NOT CALLING”.

1. It eliminates human responsibility, and emphasises exclusively divine sovereignty.

2. Christians therefore never tell a sinner to call on Christ to save them and people rarely ever get saved (using this approach), and Christians stop being soul winners.

3. Christians never start discipling people, because they never lead anyone to Christ.

4. It sets up division between Christians.

Some people believe the following false or misleading statements:

a) “*A person does not need to pray in order to be saved.*”

Answer: This is false. A person must **communicate to God** his desire for Christ to save him, be it verbally or mentally. Surely this is prayer. See the four men saved in section 2.

b) “*Salvation in Christ is received through faith alone & is not dependant on **any action of man**.*”

Answer: This statement is false. Believe, faith, trust are all summary words that summarise the eight concepts of salvation discussed previously. If a person believes these eight things, he is saved, he believes, he has faith in Christ, and he trusts Christ for salvation. Notice that salvation is appropriated when a person believes the eight things and responds in one of these six ways by either receiving, calling on, asking, coming, taking, or confessing Christ as Saviour. Surely this is an action of man, by which he appropriates salvation. However, none of these are good works, which the Bible clearly says cannot save us. Ephesians 2:8,9. An action is not a work.

5. OLD TESTAMENT PICTURES OF SALVATION

These show that people were not saved by just believing the facts of the Gospel.” They had to appropriate God’s way of escape by taking the action God commanded them to. For example:

1. **God offered animal skins to Adam and Eve**

When they accepted these, it showed that they were accepting the blood sacrifice of an innocent animal dying in their place. This pictured Christ’s perfect future sacrifice that they were trusting in.

2. **Abel offered a blood sacrifice to God which was accepted**

Cain’s vegetable bloodless sacrifice was rejected.

3. **Noah’s Ark** is a picture of **Christ saving** and keeping us saved. Noah and his family had to enter the Ark to be saved. Those who refused to enter the Ark were drowned.

4. **Israelites in Egypt** on the **Passover night** had to kill a spotless lamb and apply its blood on the doorposts and lintel of their house, or their firstborn would have died. Just believing that a lamb’s blood applied would save them was not enough. They had to apply the blood. So must we by calling on Christ to save us.

5. **Snake bitten Israelites in the wilderness** had to move outside their tents to look at the brass serpent on a pole. Then they were healed upon looking. John 3:14. It wasn’t enough to believe that looking would heal. They had to act by looking. So we are saved by calling on Christ to save us.

6. **Naaman the Syrian leper** was told to dip seven times in the Jordan river to be healed of leprosy. Only when he believed it and dipped himself did he get cured of leprosy.

All these people had to believe, then appropriate in order to be saved. If we believe in Christ, we will appropriate Christ by calling on Him to save us, or receive Christ as our Saviour etc.

Question: Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour?

Question: Are you sharing the Gospel daily and challenging people to receive Christ as their Saviour?

26. A CHRISTIAN SHOULD (among others)

1. **Walk** in the Lord. Colossians 2:6
2. **Meditate** upon the Word of God. Psalm 119:97; 1 Timothy 4:15
3. **Wait** upon the Lord. Isaiah 40:31
4. **Seek** the Lord for guidance. Proverbs 3:5,6
5. Always **seek God’s will** and fulfil it. Romans 12:2
6. **Be not fearful.** 1 Timothy 1:7; Ephesians 6:10
7. Be **vigilant** and sober. 1 Peter 5:8
8. **Resist** the devil. James 4:7
9. Be faithful in **servng** God. Keep the faith. 1 Timothy 4:7
10. Be a faithful **steward.** 1 Corinthians 4:2
11. Maintain **good works.** Titus 3:8; Matthew 5:16
12. **Glorify** the Lord in everything. 1 Corinthians 6:20
13. Be an **example** of the believers. 1 Timothy 4:12
14. **Avoid disputes.** Philippians 2:14; 2 Timothy 2:23; Titus 3:9; 1 Timothy 6:5
15. Abstain from all **appearance of evil.** 1 Thessalonians 5:22
16. Refrain from closeness with the **opposite sex.** 2 Timothy 2:22; Proverbs 7:5
17. Be **filled with the Spirit.** Ephesians 5:18
18. Be filled with the **love** of Christ. Romans 5:5
19. **Love Christ** as the First Love. Revelation 2:4; Luke 14:26
20. **Live** for Christ daily. Philippians 1:21
21. Be **kind** to others. Romans 12:10; Colossians 3:12
22. **Forgiving** others, even enemies. Matthew 5:44
23. **Confess** all sins and be cleansed. 1 John 1:9
24. Maintain a **good family.** 1 Timothy 3:3,4; 5:8
25. Love Christ’s **appearing.** 2 Timothy 4:8
26. **Be not slothful** in business. Romans 12:11

by Jacob Chelli, President of the Berean Baptist Bible College, Bangalore, India.

27. TESTS OF A PERSON'S SALVATION

Aim: To discern whether to counsel a person to be saved or to believe that he is already saved.

Problem: With many people we meet it is very hard to tell if they are saved. Jesus predicted this in His parable of the wheat and the tares. Matthew 13:24-30,36-43. You can discern by their fruits whether or not they are saved. Matthew 7:15-20.

What are some ways of testing to see if a person is really saved?

1. LOVE THE BRETHREN (A desire for Church)

“Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of God; and every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God.” 1 John 4:7; 1 John 2:9-11; 1 John 3:14-19.

2. DISLIKE FOR SIN

This results in a true believer overcoming the world by faith in Christ. ‘For whatsoever is born of God overcomes the world:& this is the victory that overcomes the world, even our faith.’ 1John 5:4

3. LISTENING TO TEACHING and ADVICE OF GODLY CHRISTIANS

"We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error." 1 John 4:6.

If a person is rebellious to Christians over an important issue and refuses to hear (or heed) them, then we are to count him as a heathen. Matthew 18:15-17.

4. CONFESS THAT JESUS IS THE SON OF GOD TO OTHERS with your mouth ‘Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.’ 1 John 4:2,3,15.

“If thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” Romans 10:9.

5. KEEP HIS COMMANDMENTS

“And he that keepeth His commandments dwelleth in him, and He in him.” 1 John 3:24a; 2:3-6.

6. POSSESSING THE HOLY SPIRIT

“And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.” 1 John 3:24; 4:13

7. JESUS CHRIST IS PRECIOUS TO YOU

“Unto you therefore which believe he is precious.” 1 Peter 2:7a.

Is Jesus Christ precious to you? If He is, you can't take His name in vain.

8. GOOD WORKS characterise our life after salvation. James 2:14-26.

9. GOD DISCIPLINES A TRUE BELIEVER WHEN HE SINS. Hebrews 12:5-11.

10. IF YOU HAVE CHRIST (the SON) YOU HAVE LIFE. 1 John 5:11-13.

CONCLUSION

Just because a person professes to be a Christian, it doesn't mean that he is really saved. Matthew 7:21-23
If someone has honestly received Jesus Christ as his Saviour from sin, understanding that Jesus is 100% God and 100% man, he is saved. These fruits confirm that he is saved. Some people claim to be Christians, but are not sure of going to heaven, have not understood the gospel, are lost & going to hell.



28. ANSWERS TO COMMON OBJECTIONS MET IN SOUL WINNING

Bible Reading: 1 Peter 3:15

Aim: To give Christians answers to objections met in soul winning so we can win more souls to Christ.

Introduction: Many people with whom we share the gospel have genuine questions they want answered which hinder them receiving Christ. By providing clear, simple answers to these questions, many more people may get saved. Notice three things about these people:

- 1) Don't spend all your time answering objections or arguing.
- 2) Briefly answer objections. Bring the conversation back to the gospel immediately. Satan may put questions in their minds, to sidetrack you from preaching the gospel. Don't fall into this trap.
- 3) Check if they are sincere and open to the truth.

Answers to common objections are:

1. What about those who have never heard the gospel, such as people in Africa?

Doesn't this mean God is unjust in sending people to hell if they have never heard?

- a) In Titus 2:11 God says that they have heard enough about God that if they follow it up they will get saved through Christ. 'The grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men.'
Question: How much do you know about ancient heathen individuals secret thought life? (Nothing)
- b) In Romans 1:18-21 God says that He has shown them His eternal power and Godhead through creation, so they are without excuse.
- c) In Revelation 5:9 people from 'every kindred, tongue, people and nation' that ever existed will be in heaven, singing that 'Christ was slain and has redeemed us to God by thy blood.'
- d) In Acts 17:27, God says of pagans that 'they should **seek** after the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and **FIND HIM**, though he be **not far** from everyone of us.'
This means that if pagans seek God, they will find Him. Helen Keller was born blind, deaf,&dumb. When she got saved, she said that she always knew God was there, but didn't know His Name.
- e) Jeremiah 29:13 says that if people seek God with all their heart, they will find Him.
'Ye shall seek me, and find me, when ye shall search for me with all your heart.'

2. Is Christ the only way to God? What about other religions?

- a) John 14:6 Jesus said 'I am the way, the truth & the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me'
- b) Acts 4:12 'Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.'
- c) 1 Timothy 2:5 'For there is one God,&**one mediator** between **God** and **men**, the man Christ Jesus'
Question: Why is Jesus Christ the only way to God?
- a) He lived a sinless life. (John 8:46).
- b) He was God, and had the credentials to prove it. (John 8:24; 5:18,23).
- c) He solves the sin problem, by paying for our sin on the cross. (Isaiah 53:6).
- d) He rose from the dead. (Luke 24:39-43).
- e) The Old Testament prophets predicted details of His life. (Isaiah 9:6; Micah 5:2; Psalm 22:16).
- f) Jesus predicted the future correctly (Matthew 24:1-34).

Only Jesus Christ deals with the sin problem by paying the penalty for our sins on the cross, which God's law required. No other religion solves the sin problem; they only tell us to do good works and hope for the best, without any certainty of eternal life. Christ promises us eternal life if we receive Him as our Saviour. Who else has Christ's credentials?

3. Won't a good life get me to heaven? I'm a good person.

You may be good compared to men, but not compared to God. Scripture states good works don't save.

- a) Isaiah 64:6 'all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags.'
- b) Ephesians 2:8,9,10 'By grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: not of works lest any man should boast.'
- c) Titus 3:5 'Not by works of righteousness which we have done'.
Salvation is **gift**. (Romans 6:23; John 4:10; II Corinthians 9:15).

Question: If salvation is by good works, how good do you have to be?

Question: If salvation is by good works, then why did Christ have to die on the cross? Who saves man?

4. Isn't the Bible full of errors?

Name one! 'The words of the Lord are pure words . . . thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever'. (Psalm 12:6,7).

Question: Whom did Cain marry? Answer: His sister: 'he begat sons and daughters.' Genesis 5:4.

The right attitude about apparent contradictions is to shelve what you don't know until you learn more.

We know the Bible is the **faultless Word of God**, because:

Jesus Christ **said it was God's Word**, proven by

Jesus Christ **rising from the dead**; and Jesus Christ **accurately predicted the future**.

5. Why does God allow suffering? Why do the innocent suffer if God is loving?

'Wherefore, as by one man (*Adam*) sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.' (Romans 5:12).

- a) When man rebelled against God and sided with Satan, he brought the consequences on himself. The nature of sin is that it spreads and affects others.
- b) God allows:
 - i) The lost to suffer – to make them aware of the shortness of time and lengthiness of eternity; as well as to shake complacent Christ-rejecting sinners out of their proud self dependence, causing them to look to God and hence be saved. It is better to suffer a while on earth and be saved, than to be well off on earth and suffer in hell for ever.
 - ii) Believers to suffer as discipline **or** to make us more like Christ. (Romans 8:28,29).
- c) The correct attitude to suffering is that because we don't know all the facts, we should not judge God, since our knowledge is so small. Job suffered, not knowing all the facts, but he honoured God in his trials. God blessed him later with twice as much after his suffering was over.
- d) God has prepared to stop suffering later in heaven.
- e) God can turn suffering into great blessing for many. 'For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, saith the Lord, thoughts of peace, and not of evil, to give you an expected end.' Jeremiah 29:11

6. What about all the hypocrites in the church?

- a) You are responsible to God for yourself, so don't judge others. 'So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God'. (Romans 14:12).
- b) Don't compare yourself with others, or with the worst, but with Christ. We are all sinners. 'For we dare not . . . compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they . . . comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.' (2 Corinthians 10:12).
- c) Some of the hypocrites in the church are proud and trust their good works for salvation, while despising others, like the Pharisees whom Christ condemned.
- d) Churches are made of people who know they are sinners and who know they need God.
- e) If you have a standard and don't keep it, then you are a hypocrite as well. You aren't perfect. Fix your own sins first before you condemn others. (Matthew 7:3,4,5).

7. What about Science opposing and disproving the Bible, eg: Evolution.

- a) True science which is based on observable facts, supports the Bible. Evolution is not observable.
- b) 'Avoid . . . oppositions of science falsely so called.' (1 Timothy 6:20).
- c) Science is learning&changing as man thinks up new theories. The Bible is God's revelation to man.
- d) The history of science is full of discarded theories. The Bible has not needed to be revised, but contains many scientific facts unknown when written, but proven true later by modern science. The Bible has a better record of being proven right than has science.
- e) Evolution is wrong because:
 - i) mutations never produce a new species of animal life;
 - ii) uniformitarianism is proven wrong by Noah's Flood;
 - iii) Transitional fossils between species are non-existent;
 - iv) Dating methods of rocks are in error, disagreeing with one another
- v) How does evolution explain how sex & reproductive systems evolved?

8. How can miracles be possible?

- a) Ask: 'If God exists, would miracles be too hard for Him?'
- b) 'For with God nothing shall be impossible.' (Luke 1:37).

9. Some people think that God does not exist.

- a) 'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.' (Genesis 1:1). Creation's intelligent complex life forms prove there is a Creator God.
- b) God's existence is 'clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made . . . so that they are without excuse.' (Romans 1:19,20).
- c) 'The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God.' (Psalm 14:1).
Atheism is an excuse to hide behind sin. The atheist thinks, 'If there is no God, then there is no judgment, then I can sin (do what I want) and get away with it.'
- d) Atheism claims to know everything, even all that does not exist.

Questions to ask Atheists:

- i) What percent of the total knowledge of the universe do you possess? (nil or small).
- ii) Is it possible for God to exist outside your sphere of knowledge? (Yes).
Therefore, because you are not infinite in knowledge, you can't say God does not exist, can you?
- e) Jesus Christ's prophecies, life, miracles, death and resurrection prove God's existence.
- f) Ask: Are you open to find out if God exists or not? Or do you have a closed mind?
- g) Ultimate proof of God lies in knowing God personally.
- h) Jesus said that God exists. This is proven by Jesus rising from the dead. This proves God exists.
- i) Conversation between an atheist and a Christian: Atheist said, 'God is dead'.
Christian replied, 'That's strange. I spoke to Him 5 minutes ago and He wasn't even sick.'

10. I don't need a crutch. I'm OK!

Everyone has a sin problem with God. Some realise it, others do not. You have broken God's laws, and the penalty awaits you. Your need is to come to Christ for **forgiveness**, not a psychological crutch. You may be OK now, but you can't cope with hell forever.

29. HINDRANCES TO SUCCESSFUL SOUL-WINNING

Bible Reading: Romans 10:1-15.

Aim: To re-motivate us to the seriousness of soul winning. What things hinder Christians from being successful soul winners?

1. Getting sidetracked to something else: eg. making money (Matthew 13:22), not following Jesus (Matthew 4:19), losing your vision of eternity (Proverbs 29:18).
2. Not praying 'Ye have not because ye ask not.' James 4:2. We must pray to become better soul winners. Some results of prayerlessness are laziness, no zeal, and no love for souls.
3. Not following the Roman Road plan. Romans 3:23; 6:23; 5:8; 10:13. Use the STOP Tract!
 - a) When Christians don't use it they fail as soul-winners.
 - b) They then conclude that they don't have the gift of soul winning.
 - c) They then give up on soul winning.
4. Not following up those contacted. Be friendly, spend time with new and young Christians to encourage them. Don't fear failure or rejection. Have a home Bible study with them.
5. Not doing soul winning wholeheartedly. Have a special time to do soul winning each week eg. Sunday 3-5pm. "Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might." Ecclesiastes 9:10. Not sowing means not reaping. Ecclesiastes 11:1-4.
6. Fear of what people will think. Proverbs 29:25. The worst that can happen is that the person may not want to see you again. This frees you to go see someone else.
7. Sin in your life. II Peter 2:19. Sin brings us into bondage, and hinders the Holy Spirit from powerfully working through us. Confess sin to God continually.
8. Not loving God or people enough. "the love of Christ constraineth us." II Corinthians 5:14.

Conclusion: If you know someone you want to tell the gospel to, let me know, and we'll go together so you can learn from the preacher how to do soul winning. Ask God to give you a burden for soul winning. This is why we exist as a church.

30. DOOR-KNOCKING

'Go out into the highways & hedges, & compel them to come in, that my house may be filled' Luke 14:23
'And daily in the temple, & **in every house**, they ceased not to teach & preach Jesus Christ.' Acts 5:42
Everyone in the church over five years of age should be encouraged to come door-knocking for the purpose of sharing God's plan of salvation with all people who will listen. Follow this advice:

- 1) **Meet** at a central and comfortable location for prayer and planning.
- 2) Give **literature** to all who come:
 - a) STOP tracts, Mailbox club lesson 1, John's gospel for new converts, RC tract, Answers book.
 - b) Book to record names, addresses, phone numbers of keen people; NH= not home. Neg=negative
- 3) **Pair up** so that an experienced person goes with one who is less experienced.
- 4) **Pray** around the group before going, asking God for:
 - Hungry hearted people prepared by God
 - Love for sinners
 - The right words to speak
 - Fill you with the Holy Spirit
 - To bind Satan's forces from interfering while talking to people
 - People to be saved that day and to come to church
- 5) Allocate pairs to do **one street at a time**. Pastor or planner should have an area map where he records which streets have been covered and new streets needing visiting.
- 6) If people get saved, ask them for a **home Bible study** the following week.
- 7) Be **polite**, not aggressive. Leave if they ask you to. Remember you are looking for the people that God has prepared for you to speak with. Spiritually hungry people are the ones to spend time with.
- 8) When you meet people at the door, say: 'Good afternoon. I'm dropping by to leave this with you. This explains how you can know God personally and be sure of going to heaven.'

Q: Have you thought much about God before?

Q: May I ask a question please?

Q: If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure that you'd go to heaven?

Q: Would you like to be sure of going to heaven?

Q: (If 'yes', ask:) This pamphlet shows from the Bible how we can be sure of going to heaven. May we look at it please?(If they say 'no', then say:) If you wish, you may prefer to read it in your own time. You'll find that it makes four points:

- 1) All of us have sinned and broken God's laws. I think you'd agree with that.
- 2) Because we've all sinned, there is a penalty on sin which is death and hell, to which we are all heading. This is bad news. None of want to go to hell, do we? The good news is that God offers each of us the gift of eternal life which we get through Jesus Christ, not through our good works or any religion.
- 3) Jesus Christ took the full punishment on the cross for our sins. Instead of us being punished in hell forever, Jesus had our sins taken off us and placed on Him, thus dying as our Saviour, sin-bearer and substitute. He is now available to be your Saviour if you want Him to be.
- 4) How may we enter heaven? We must believe that:
 - a) Jesus Christ is **God** the Son;
 - b) Jesus Christ **died** in our place as our Saviour;
 - c) Jesus Christ **rose** again bodily from the dead, then
 - d) **Receive** Jesus Christ as your Saviour, etc.
- 5) On the back page we see 3 promises: If we Receive Christ as our Saviour we become a son of God, if we call on Christ to save us we will be saved, and if we have the Son we have life.
- 6) These promises are summarised in the prayer at the bottom of the page. Would you be so kind as to read it to see if it makes sense. Does it make sense? (Yes). Does it express what you honestly want God to do? If yes, would you like to tell this to God after me?
- 7) Follow-up and visit those who are interested and whom you lead to Christ. Invite them to church and for a follow-up Bible study. Give them "Established in the Faith" book. Ask: "Which of these subjects interest you?" Ask: "Would it be possible for us to get together some time to look at them?" (yes). "When would suit you?" Phone them and regularly visit good contacts.

31. WHAT AN INDEPENDENT BAPTIST CHURCH STANDS FOR

Bible Reading: Matthew 16:5-12

Aim: To make it clear as to what an Independent Baptist Church is and what it stands for, so that we can have strong convictions as to the truth of our position. To beware of the leaven of false doctrine.

Introduction

To many people an Independent Baptist church is something new. To those people in denominations, they find the concept of each church being independent and accountable only to God as difficult to understand. Yet this is precisely the New Testament pattern.

Jesus, in Matthew 16:5-12, compares false doctrine to leaven (ie: yeast), something which permeates the whole batch. Jesus tells his disciples in v.6 to TAKE HEED and BEWARE of the leaven of the Pharisees and the Sadducees.

Jesus explains this leaven in v.11,12 to be their false doctrine. Today, much false doctrine exists in Christendom, and we must be very careful to check every idea with the Bible.

Independent churches that baptised believers by immersion were the norm up to 300 AD. They paralleled the Eastern Orthodox and Roman churches. They predated the Reformation. It is not new, nor novel. It lays claim to a long, and glorious heritage. It has been a persecuted church.

Today there are millions of Independent Baptist churches all over the world in China, India, Africa, North and South America, Asia and Europe. They meet in buildings, houses, or in open air in poor countries.

What makes an Independent Baptist church so distinct? An Independent Baptist church is a:

- 1. SELF GOVERNING CHURCH** with no external hierarchy. All churches in the New Testament were independent, autonomous, self governing, responsible only to God, not to the commands of some man made hierarchy. The leading of the Lord is sought on all matters and this independence of a man-made hierarchy actually increases our dependence on the Lord. In Revelation 2,3 each church is accountable to Jesus Christ, not to an external, man-made hierarchy.
- 2. BIBLE CENTRED CHURCH**
An Independent Baptist Church is a Bible believing, teaching and obeying church. The Bible is central in every service, because God “has magnified his Word above all his name.” Psalm 138:2. The Bible is the verbally inspired Word of God, without error and is the standard by which all behaviour and beliefs are judged. 2 Timothy 3:16,17 and 2:15.
- 3. KING JAMES VERSION** of the Bible is used, and not modern versions because of their many omissions and errors. This is because they were translated from mainly two corrupted manuscripts namely Codex Vaticanus and Codex Sinaiticus. Omissions in modern versions include:
Matthew 17:21; 18:11 and 23:14
Mark 7:16; 9:44, 46; 11:26 and 15:28
Luke 17:36 and 23:17
John 5:4
Acts 8:37; 15:34; 24:7 and 28:29
Romans 16:24
Verses changed, left out partly, or cast doubt on are: Mark 16:9-20; 1 Timothy 3:16; 1 John 5:7,8 and John 3:13; 1 Corinthians 15:47.
We believe in 100% inspiration and preservation of the whole Bible to today as in the King James Version which is translated from the vast majority of NT manuscripts (Psalms 12:6,7).
- 4. ACCURATELY INTERPRETING THE BIBLE**
The Bible has only one correct interpretation. This means it is not of any private interpretation (2 Peter 1:20). Rules for correct interpretation are applied such as grammar, context, history, cross-references, word meanings, and whether a passage is literal or figurative speech.

- 5. BELIEVERS BAPTISM BY IMMERSION**, not infant sprinkling.
 Baptism means to dip or immerse and pictures the Gospel of Christ's death, burial and resurrection. Baptism is for adult believers, not for infant unbelievers (Acts 8:37, Mark 1:9-11).
 by: Immersion, not sprinkling (Matthew 28:19, 20).
 to: Obey Christ, not to get saved.
 by: a Bible-believing Church, not a false church.
 "Sprinkling" in Greek is "rantizo"; Immersion is "baptizo". The early church immersed believers, but never sprinkled them. Sprinkling was a pagan practice introduced later. Baptism by immersion after salvation shows that a person wishes to obey God's Word rather than men.
- 6. SOUL WINNING and MISSIONARY MINDED**
 An Independent Baptist church takes the Great Commission seriously as we are accountable to Christ to be fishers of men (Matthew 4:19, Matthew 28:19,20). We do not just witness, but we seek to explain the Gospel clearly to lost people, challenging them to receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour from sin. We also see the need to preach the Gospel in regions beyond, and the starting of Independent Baptist churches all over the world.
 We believe that men are eternally damned to hell without Christ as their Saviour, and it is our responsibility to spread the Gospel to all the world.
- 7. PREMILLENNIAL, LITERAL INTERPRETATION OF PROPHECY**
 An Independent Baptist Church looks for the blessed hope of believers being caught up to heaven at the return of Christ to the air (Titus 2:13 and 1 Thessalonians 4:16,17) and to the glorious appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ to rule on the earth for 1,000 years. Prophecy is to be taught and taken literally except where the passage uses figurative language. 1,000 years rule of Christ is literally 1,000 years. We look for the catching away of believers, seven year tribulation, glorious return of Christ to earth, 1,000 year rule of Christ, new heavens, new earth, and new Jerusalem. Since about 25% of the Bible is prophetic, we dare not ignore it.
- 8. CREATION BY GOD IN SIX LITERAL DAYS**
 An Independent Baptist Church believes that when God says He created the heaven and earth in six literal days, He means exactly what He says. (Exodus 20:11). God did not use the unscientific theory of evolution to create life. We resist the modernist trend to believe evolution. We choose to believe God as Creator rather than man's vain philosophy and deceit of evolution, which is woefully lacking real evidence.
- 9. PURITY OF LIFE. SEPARATION FROM WORLDLINESS AND SIN. A COMMITMENT TO HOLINESS, GOD AND TRUTH.**
 "Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world." 1 John 2:15,16.
 2 Corinthians 6:14 - 7:1 tells us to "come out from, be separate from, and touch not the unclean thing, and to perfect holiness in fear of God."
 Jesus warned His disciples (Matthew 7:15-23), as did Paul warn the Ephesian elders (Acts 20:28-30), against grievous wolves who would come in sheep's clothing. Jude 3,4 warned against those who would creep in unawares and for us to earnestly contend for the faith (doctrine). 2 Peter 2:1 warns against false teachers in the church. We are to "flee fornication" and all ungodliness. The Independent Baptist Church stands apart from apostasy (1 Timothy 4:1,2). We do not fellowship with churches which teach false doctrine (Hebrews 6:1,2) or tolerate unbelieving religious leaders (Romans 16:17,18).
- 10. NOT FIVE POINT CALVINIST (not TULIP doctrine)**
 We do not believe that God chooses one person to be saved before birth and another person to be damned. This is not the just God of the Bible. God makes salvation 100% available freely to all mankind, and God holds man 100% responsible to receive Christ as Saviour. Man is totally depraved, but can still call on Christ to save him. God chooses people not unconditionally, but

on the condition of Christ's blood sacrifice being claimed for oneself. Salvation is not limited to those who would be saved, but Christ tasted death for every/all men (Hebrews 2:9).

God's grace to be saved is not irresistible but resistible (Acts 7:51; 1 Peter 1:4,5). Saints do not persevere in salvation, but Christ keeps us saved forever.

11. **REVEREND MELODIOUS WORSHIP, NOT ROCK MUSIC**

"Rock music has always been the devil's music." D. Bowie.

Ephesians 5:19 "Making melody ... to the Lord."

It is wrong to bring rock music into the church. Don't use worldly music to worship God.

Don't use worldly music to reach the world for Christ.

12. **AVOID PAGAN PRACTICES** like infant baptism, black robes, rosary beads, statues, Mary worship, holy water, confession to priest, and confirmation.

13. **NOT TONGUES SPEAKING, SLAYING IN SPIRIT, or NEW REVELATIONS**

1 Corinthians 13:11 "When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things."

1 Corinthians 14:22 "Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not ..."

1 Corinthians 14:15 "I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also..."

The tongues gift was a temporary sign to warn unbelieving Jews to repent or God would judge them. They failed to repent, so God used Titus, the Roman General, to destroy Jerusalem in 70 AD. Hence, the tongues gift is no longer relevant after 70 AD. Praying in tongues is wrong because we must understand what we are praying for. (1 Corinthians 14:15).

"Slaying in the Spirit" is not endorsed for Christians in the Bible. It was a warning of coming judgment on Israel in 712 BC, "they might go, and fall backward, be broken, and snared, and taken." Isaiah 28:13. Therefore don't do it. New revelations from God are not necessary because the Bible is our only and complete revelation from God for this age (2 Timothy 3:16,17).

14. **HELL**

An Independent Baptist Church teaches the reality of a literal burning hell of fire that Christ rejecters send themselves to after death. Jesus Christ warned people against going to hell many times, such as:

"Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels."

"These shall go away into everlasting punishment, but the righteous into life eternal." Matthew 25:41,46.

"Into hell where their worm dies not, and the fire is not quenched." Mark 9:44,46.

Some people may not like hearing about hell, but we must tell people all the relevant facts. Hell is relevant to unbelievers.

CONCLUSION

An Independent Baptist Church is more concerned about pleasing and obeying God, than about pleasing men. The Word of God will judge us at the last day (John 12:48). We won't have to give account of our lives to men, but to God (Romans 14:12). It is very important **WHAT** we believe.

Matthew 5:19 "Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called **THE LEAST** in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall **DO** and **TEACH** them, the same shall be called **GREAT** in the kingdom of heaven."

Question: Do you want to be called "the least" or "great" in God's kingdom?

Therefore, get involved in doing God's work in an Independent Baptist Church. If you are in a church that does not hold to these important truths or holds false doctrines **GET OUT OF IT NOW**. You will never reform it by staying in it. God says: "What fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord." 2 Cor. 6:14,17; Rev. 18:4,5.

Question: Will you be like many chief rulers who believed on Christ, yet were afraid of being put out of the synagogue because "they loved the praise of men more than the praise of God."? John 12:42,43.

32. STATEMENT OF FAITH of LIBERTY BAPTIST CHURCH (Independent).

"..... where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty." 2 Corinthians 3:17.

I. NAME.

The church shall be known as Liberty Baptist Church (Independent).

II. GOALS AND OBJECTIVES.

The purpose and programme of this church is to obey the Great Commission of Jesus Christ. (Matthew 28:19-20). The practice by Pastors and people of soul-winning, discipleship, baptism, Bible teaching, fellowship and edification of the church are the reasons for this church's existence.

The church's aim is to show forth Jesus Christ as Lord and Saviour in all things.

Excessive administration will be avoided as will any social or secular activity that tends to divert the church from its God given responsibilities. The financial and physical resources of this church are to be constantly focused on fulfilling the Great Commission.

III. COVENANT (Mutual Agreement).

As members of Liberty Baptist church we accept the following agreement.

Having been led by the Holy Spirit to receive the Lord Jesus Christ as our Saviour, and upon our public profession of our faith in Him, having been baptized in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, we do now most solemnly and joyfully enter into covenant with one another as one body in Christ.

We promise that we will watch over and counsel one another in the spirit of brotherly love (Galatians 6:1,2), that we will remember one another in our prayers (James 5:16), and that we will help one another in sickness and in distress.

We further agree, by the aid of the Holy Spirit, to walk together in Christian love (John 15:12); to strive for the growth of this church in grace, knowledge, holiness and comfort of Christ (II Peter 3:18); to promote its prosperity and spirituality; to sustain its worship, ordinances, discipline and doctrines; to give it a sacred preeminence over all institutions of human origin (Ephesians 5:26,27); and to contribute cheerfully and regularly to the support of the ministry, the expenses of the church, the relief of the poor (James 1:27), and the spread of the Gospel through all nations.

We further covenant to maintain family and private devotions (Deuteronomy 6:4-25); to educate our children in the Word of God; to seek the salvation of our family and acquaintances; to live carefully in this present world (II Timothy 2:22-26; Titus 2:12); to be just in our dealings, faithful in our responsibilities, and exemplary in our behaviour (I Timothy 4:12); to avoid all gossip, backbiting and excessive anger (Titus 2:6-8); to abstain from everything that will cause our brother to stumble (Romans 14:13; 15:3), or that will bring reproach upon the cause of Christ (I Thessalonians 5:22); and to strive to grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Saviour, that amidst evil and good report we will humbly and earnestly seek to live to the honour and glory of Him who loved us and gave himself for us (I Corinthians 10:31-11:1; Philippians 2:3,4,14-16,20,21).

We also agree that when we remove from this place we will, as soon as possible, unite with some other church where we can carry out the spirit of this covenant and the principles of God's Word (Hebrews 10:24,25).

IV. DOCTRINAL STATEMENT.

Members of this church shall hold as an essential part of their profession of faith the following evangelical doctrines:

1. The Scriptures.

We believe that the Holy Bible is God's infallible, inerrant Word, supernaturally and verbally inspired in totality, through holy men of old, such that the actual words were God's words without error or contradiction. The Bible therefore is, and shall remain to the end of the age, the only complete and final revelation of the will of God to men (II Timothy 3:16,17); the true basis of Christian union and the supreme and only standard by which all human conduct, creeds and opinions should be tried. The Word of God has been preserved in the vast majority of the manuscripts from which the Authorized Version (King James Version) has been translated.

- a) By "the Holy Bible" we mean that collection of sixty-six books, from Genesis to Revelation, which, as originally written and preserved to today does not only contain and convey the Word of God, but **IS** the very Word of God.
- b) By "Inspiration" we mean that the books of the Bible were written by holy men of old, as they were moved by the Holy Spirit, in such a definite way that their writings were supernaturally and verbally inspired and free from all error and omission as no other writings have ever been or ever will be inspired (II Peter 1:19-21; II Timothy 3:16; Matthew 24:35; Rev. 22:18,19).

2. The True God.

We believe that there is only one living and true God, the Creator and Supreme Ruler of heaven and earth; perfectly holy, worthy of all possible honour, confidence and love, who is the Upholder, Redeemer and Saviour of mankind. In the unity of the Godhead, there are three persons, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, equal in every Divine perfection and executing distinct but harmonious offices in the great work of redemption. (Matthew 28:19; I Peter 1:2; II Corinthians 13:14)

3. The Deity of Jesus Christ.

Jesus Christ is the second person of the Godhead. He is co-existent, co-equal and co-eternal with God the Father of whose person and glory He is the exact expression. This absolute deity of Jesus Christ is indissolubly combined with His perfect humanity in one Person. He is the one and only Mediator between God and man. (I Timothy 2:5; John 20:28; I Timothy 3:16; Philippians 2:6; Colossians 2:9,15-19; Hebrews 1:2,3; John 1:1-4).

4. The Holy Spirit.

We believe that the Holy Spirit is a Divine Person, equal with God the Father and God the Son, and of the same nature. The Holy Spirit was active in the creation (Genesis 1:2); in relation to the unbelieving world He restrains the evil one until God's purpose is fulfilled (II Thessalonians 2:6, 7). He convicts the world of sin, of righteousness and of judgment (John 16:8-11). He bears witness to the truth of the Gospel in preaching and testimony. He seeks to glorify Christ in all things (John 16:14,15). He is the agent in the new birth (John 3:3-8). He seals, endues with power, guides into all truth (John 16:13), teaches, witnesses to our salvation (I John 3:24), sanctifies and helps the believer.

The gifts of the Holy Spirit are given to the church for mutual edification (Ephesians 4:7-16). The temporary, miraculous sign gifts (for example, tongues, interpretation of tongues, miracles, apostleship, prophecy, knowledge and healing), were intended to be transitional and foundational. These ceased when Israel finally rejected the gospel (I Cor. 13:8-13; 14:21,22; Mark 16:17-20).

5. Creation.

We believe in the Genesis account of creation, and that it is to be accepted literally, and not allegorically or figuratively. Man was created directly in God's own image (Genesis 1:26,27), and after His own likeness. Man's creation was not a matter of evolution (atheistic or theistic) by change of species by developments through periods of time from lower to higher forms, but that all life was made directly by God, and God's established law was that they should bring forth only "after their kind".

6. Fall of Man.

We believe that man was created in innocence under the law of God, but by voluntary transgression fell from his sinless and happy state (Genesis 3:1-24) in consequence of which, all mankind are now sinners (Romans 5:12) by nature and by choice, therefore being under just condemnation without defence or excuse (Romans 1:18-20).

7. Virgin Birth.

We believe that Jesus Christ was begotten of the Holy Ghost in a miraculous manner, born of Mary, a virgin, as no other man was ever born or can ever be born of a woman. Mary is not an object of worship or prayer, but just a chosen vessel (Luke 1:46,47). Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and God the Son (Genesis 3:15; Isaiah 7:14; Luke 1:26-38; Matthew 1:23).

8. Salvation.

a) **The Purposes of God.**

Election and predestination are according to God's fore-knowledge of man's response to the conviction of the Spirit of God. (I Peter 1:2). All men are called to salvation, convicted of sin and enlightened. They therefore are able to exercise faith in Christ. It is God's desire that all men without exception should be saved (II Peter 3:9), though He knows beforehand that many will reject His free offer of mercy.

People are not predestined or ordained to believe, but those who of their own free will, exercise faith in Christ, in God's fore-knowledge, are appointed to eternal and heavenly blessing and they are eternally secure from the moment of conversion (Romans 8:29; I Timothy 2:4-6; Ezekiel 18:23)

b) **Christ's Atonement for the Sin of Mankind.**

The sinner is able to be redeemed from the guilt, penalty and power of sin through the sacrificial death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. In His death, Christ is the sinners' representative and substitute (II Corinthians 5:21). Something happened to Christ, and because it happened to Christ it need not happen to us. i.e. Because Christ died for our sins, we need not die for them if we accept His sacrifice. The sinner is reconciled to God and justified, not by human merit, but by Divine grace and by faith alone in what Christ has done (Ephesians 2:8,9,10). This atonement is sufficient for the whole world (Hebrews 2:9), but efficient only for those who personally believe in Christ as their Saviour.

Christ honoured God's law by His sinless obedience (Hebrews 4:15), and by His death made a full atonement for our sins (Colossians 2:14-17). His atonement consisted not in setting us an example by his death as a martyr, but was the voluntary substitution of Himself in the sinner's place, the just dying for the unjust, Christ the Lord, bearing our sins in His own body on the tree. Having risen from the dead for our justification (Romans 4:25), He is now enthroned in heaven (Heb 1:8), and in His perfection is in every way qualified to be a suitable (Hebrew 7:25), compassionate (I Peter 5:7), and a completely sufficient Saviour (I John 2:2).

c) **Freedom of Salvation.**

We believe that the blessings of Salvation are made free to all by the Gospel of Christ (Rom 1:16), that it is the duty of all to accept salvation freely, being sorry for their sins and having an obedient faith (Acts 2:37). Nothing holds back the Salvation of the greatest sinner on earth (John 6:37), except his own desire to sin (John 3:19,20), and his willing refusal of the Gospel (Acts 13:46). This refusal puts a man in a very great judgment (Rev 14:11; Matt 25:46). Repentance is a sincere and thorough changing of the mind and disposition in regard to sin, involving a sense of personal guilt and helplessness, apprehension of God's mercy, a strong desire to escape or be saved from sin, and a desire to abandon it.

d) **Repentance and Faith.**

We believe that repentance and faith are solemn duties (Luke 13:3), and also graces that cannot be separated (Hebrews 6:1), worked in our souls by the Spirit of God (John 16:8). Therefore, being deeply convicted of our guilt (Luke 5:8), danger (Jude 23), and helplessness (Luke 23:42), and of the only way of salvation being through Jesus Christ (John 14:6; Romans 10:9), we turn to God with true sorrow (Romans 10:10), confession and asking for mercy (Luke 18:13); at the same time heartily receiving the Lord Jesus Christ and openly confessing Him as our only and all-sufficient Saviour (Hebrews 10:10,12,14).

Faith is **produced** by the **Word of God** (Romans 10:17), showing our need, stating the promises, and conditions, and pointing out the blessings of salvation. Saving faith **begins** with **intellectual belief** of the Word of God, that Christ is available as our Saviour. **Prayer** is the **means to faith**, where we claim the promise of Christ as Saviour. Having done this we are then saved by faith in Jesus Christ.

e) **Regeneration.**

We believe that to be saved, sinners must be **regenerated** or born again (John 3:3), (a change of state). Regeneration means getting a **new mind** (I Corinthians 2:15,16), a new nature

(II Peter 1:4), and becoming a new creature (II Corinthians 5:17; Ephesians 4:24). A new governing power has come into the regenerated man's life by which he is enabled to become holy in experience. All this is done in a way above our understanding by the power of the Holy Spirit, working with God's Truth (I Peter 1:23). The results of regeneration can be seen in our lives in the fruit of the Spirit, and in **newness of life** (Romans 6:4).

f) Justification is the judicial act of God whereby those who put faith in Christ as Saviour are declared righteous in God's eyes, and free from guilt and punishment due for their sin. (In effect, it is just as if I've never sinned). It is a change of position before God (Romans 5:1,2). We have acceptance with God on account of Christ's righteousness (II Corinthians 5:21). Justification includes the forgiveness of sin (Romans 4:7,8), and the imputation of the righteousness of Christ (Romans 4:20-25). It brings us into peace and favour with God (Romans 4:20-25).

g) Sanctification.

Sanctification is living a life separated from a sinful world and dedicated to God.

Each believer is free from sin's guilt, but daily needs deliverance from sin's power. The Old Man (the Old Human Spirit which has produced a habit pattern or way of life in the soul, Romans 6:6), has been crucified, but the principle of sin still operates in the believer's members (Romans 7:17), and will continue to do so until the redemption of the body at the coming of Christ for His Saints. Victory over sinful tendencies is the privilege of every believer, by the Holy Spirit's control and filling. Victory is appropriated by faith (Romans 6:6; 7:21-25; 8:2).

Sanctification is the way by which we are made to share God's Holiness (Hebrews 10:10,14). It is a progressive process (Psalm 119:9), commencing when one is born again (II Corinthians 5:17), and is carried on in the heart of the believer, by the Holy Spirit (John 16:13-15), through the Word of God (Colossians 3:16), self-examination (I Corinthians 11:31), self-denial (Luke 9:23), watchfulness (Revelation 16:15; Matthew 24:42,44,46), and prayer (Luke 18:1).

h) Security of the Believer.

We believe that once a person has been born again into the family of God by faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour, it is impossible for him to lose his salvation. He is kept saved by the power of God unto eternal salvation. (I Peter 1:4, 5; John 10:28).

9. Church.

The Church is the body of Christ composed of true believers in the Lord Jesus Christ. She has her visible form in the local assembly which is responsible for fulfilling the Great Commission (Matthew 28:19,20), ministry and mutual fellowship. The church is built on the foundation of the apostles (New Testament) and the prophets (Old Testament). (Ephesians 2:19-22). Evangelists, pastors and teachers are given in our time to teach and lead (Ephesians 4:11-13). Jesus Christ is the only Head and Founder (Matthew 16:18) of the Church by which all the saved are directed as members of His body (Ephesians 4:15; 5:23). The gifts of the Spirit are given to the church for her edification (Ephesians 4:12).

10. Offices.

The only offices in a true Church are **Pastors** (also called Bishops, I Timothy 3:1, Elders and Overseers), and **Deacons** (servants), who are appointed by the church for spiritual leadership and service. These are to be fit men as in I Timothy 3:1-12; Titus 1:5-9; I Peter 5:1-4; and Acts 6:1-8.

11. Ordinances of Baptism and the Lord's Supper.

a) We believe that Scriptural **Baptism** is the immersion of a believer in water (Acts 2:41; John 3:23; Mark 1:9-11), in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit (Matthew 28:19). It is a public declaration of a person's faith in Jesus Christ as their Saviour, symbolizing the believer's identification with Christ in His death, burial, and resurrection as the means of salvation, with its effect in our death to sin, burial of our Old Man, and resurrection to a new way of life. (Romans 6:1-6; Acts 8:38).

- b) The **Lord's Table** is to be a constant reminder of the sufferings of Christ, His broken body and precious blood by which salvation is purchased and heaven opened. (Acts 20:28). The elements of the supper are unleavened bread and the fruit of the vine (Matthew 26:26-29). In the Lord's Supper the believer remembers the Lord Jesus Christ till He comes again (I Corinthians 11:26). The taking of the elements does not impart forgiveness, but should be an occasion for solemn self-examination, and putting right any division which may occur within the Body of Christ. All true believers of the Lord Jesus are invited to the Table. This ordinance shall be observed on a regular and frequent basis (I Corinthians 11:23-29).

12. The Resurrection of the Dead.

Christ arose bodily "the third day according to the Scriptures" (I Corinthians 15:4); that He ascended "to the right hand of the throne of God", and that He alone is our "merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God".

After death, the bodies of men return to dust, but their spirits and souls return immediately to God (Ecclesiastes 3:21), the righteous to be with Him in heaven (II Corinthians 5:8), and the unrighteous to be reserved for the judgment (Hebrews 9:27). There will be two resurrections, the saved will be resurrected at the first resurrection (I Thess 4:13-18; Revelation 20:4-6; Matthew 27:51-54), and the unsaved at the second resurrection. (Rev 20:11-15; Acts 24:15; I Cor 15:1-58).

13. The Return of the Lord Jesus Christ.

We believe in and accept the Sacred Scriptures upon these subjects at their face and full value.

At the end of this age, according to His promise (John 14:3), Jesus Christ will return personally and visibly in His glory to the earth (Mark 8:38). The full consummation of the Kingdom awaits His return. He will appear in the air (I Thessalonians 4:16,17), and He will bring His saints with Him (I Thessalonians 4:13). "The dead in Christ shall rise first", and the living saints "shall be changed in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye." The time of this event is known by no man (Matthew 24:44). Following this event will be a time of very great trouble on the earth called the Tribulation (Matthew 24:21,22). This Tribulation will see the death of many on the earth and only those who have Jesus Christ as Saviour have any hope of being delivered from this great trouble. (I Thessalonians 5:9). Christ will therefore come initially to the air as the Heavenly Bridegroom to receive His Church before the Tribulation, and later come as King of Kings after the Great Tribulation when He will judge the nations and reign over all the earth for 1,000 years. (Revelation 20:1-7; Matthew 24:3-31; 25:31-34).

14. The Righteous and the Wicked

We believe that there is a basic and important difference between the righteous and the wicked (Matthew 25:31-33). Only those who through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour are justified, and are therefore truly righteous in God's sight (Romans 3:24-26). This is because the believer's sins have been judged in Christ and at the first resurrection, believers receive rewards for faithful service. (II Corinthians 5:10; I Corinthians 3:11-15; Romans 14:10; Revelation 22:12). All others, being unbelievers, are under the wrath of God (John 3:36), and immediately upon death enter the literal fire and torment of hell (Luke 16:19-31). They remain there until the end of the 1,000 year rule of Christ, where they are resurrected bodily to stand before the Great White Throne to be judged according to their works. They will then all be consigned to a literal lake of fire where they will suffer everlasting punishment. (Revelation 20:11-15; 14:10,11).

15. Satan.

Satan is a created angelic being, who was once holy, enjoyed heavenly honours, but through pride and rebellious ambition to be like the Almighty, fell and drew after him a host of angels who now make up the demon hordes. He is now the evil prince of the power of the air, the unholy god of this world, man's great tempter, the enemy of the Godhead, the accuser of the saints, the author of all false religions, the chief power behind the present apostasy, the force behind the Antichrist and the chief of all the powers of darkness. He is destined to final defeat at the hands of God the Son, and to the punishment of an everlasting justice in the lake of fire, a place prepared for him and his angels. (Matthew 25:41; Ezekiel 28:1-19; Revelation 12:4; 20:10).

16. Civil Government.

We believe that civil government is of divine appointment (Romans 13:1-7) for the interest and good order of human society. Rulers are to be prayed for (I Timothy 2:1-3), conscientiously honoured (Matthew 22:21), and obeyed (Matthew 17:24-27; Romans 3:31) except in matters clearly opposed to the will of Almighty God (Acts 4:19), who is the only True King and Lord of Heaven and Earth (Revelation 19:16).

17. Missions.

We believe that the command to give the Gospel to the World is clear and unmistakable and that this commission is given to the churches. (Acts 1:8; 13:1-5).

Having read the Statement of Faith of Liberty Baptist Church (Independent) and finding myself in agreement with the doctrines, principles and practices contained herein, I hereby apply for membership of this church and agree to conscientiously work towards the achieving of its goals as stated above.

Signed:.....

Date:.....

The Cost, Curse and Cure of Adultery

“Whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he *that* doeth it destroyeth his own soul. A wound and dishonour shall he get: and his reproach shall not be wiped away.” Proverbs 6:32-35

“Thou shalt not commit adultery.” Exodus 20:14.

(Matthew 5:28

“Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her has committed adultery with her already in his heart.”

Challenge: When tempted to commit adultery, consider these consequences for you and for others:

1. God: Grieving the Lord who redeemed me.

2. Jesus Christ: At the Judgment Seat of Christ having to look Jesus in the face and give account.

3. Spouse: Inflicting untold hurt on your best friend and loyal wife, losing (her) respect and trust.

4. Children: Hurting your children, destroying your example and credibility and nullifying your efforts to teach them to obey God. There is a high chance that they will follow your sinful example.

5. Your Family: Causing shame to your extended family.

6. Yourself: a) Creating unforgettable guilt. God can forgive you, but you may not forgive yourself.

b) Creating memories and flashbacks that may plague future relationships with your wife.

c) Possibly catching sexually transmitted diseases (such as chlamydia, gonorrhoea, syphilis, herpes, AIDS), infecting your spouse, resulting in infertility, death or birth defects in your children.

d) Regret and loneliness if your adulterous partner leaves you, losing both your wife and your lover.

e) Losing possible rewards in heaven (II John 8; I John 2:28; Rev 3:11).

f) God will discipline you in some ways on earth (I Thess 4:3-8).

7. Ministry: Wasting years of ministry training by losing your testimony & credibility to teach Bible.

8. Your Teachers: Wasting the years of hard work that others have invested in training you to teach.

9. Christian Community: Undermining the good example & hard work of other Christians in your area

10. Satan: Bringing great pleasure to Satan and to the enemies of Christ (II Samuel 12:14).

11. Your Disciples: Causing shame and pain to your friends, your converts and those you’ve disciple.

12. The Woman: Causing her possible pregnancy, personal and financial costs and a lifelong reminder.

13. The Woman’s Husband and Children: Hatred, resentment & loathing at breaking up their family.

Conclusion: Think through these consequences of adultery before and if you face this temptation.

Adultery is too expensive and not worth it. “Be sure your sin will find you out.” Numbers 32:23.

Prevention is the key. There is no cure to these consequences. “Resist the devil & he will flee from you”

33. REASONS FOR COMING TO CHURCH

If you are: i) not coming to God's house regularly, or ii) not seeking to build it, then

Consider these reasons why you should fully direct your energies to build this and other local churches:

1. God commands us to meet together to **consider one another** and to **PROVOKE** one another to **love** and to **good works**. "And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works: Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much more, as ye see the day approaching." Hebrews 10:24,25.
2. To rescue people from **HELL**. "And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments.....and said,..... I am tormented in this flame." Luke 16:23,24.
3. By coming to church, you **TEACH YOUR CHILDREN** that God's **House is important**.
By not coming to church, you teach your children to forsake **God, God's House, God's people** and **God's work**. You also teach them that the things of God **do not matter**. Deuteronomy 6:4,9.
4. Coming to church is an **unselfish thing** that we do: i) To put ourselves out to help others,
ii) To glorify God,
iii) To extend God's kingdom. Matthew 6:33.
5. You will never be **fruitful 100 fold** by avoiding church. Do you want to be fruitful? Matt. 13:23.
6. If you know what is right and don't do it, God will **count you as unfaithful**. Luke 12:42-48.
7. It **proves our love for God** and for others. II Corinthians 8:8.
8. If **Christ gave eternal life to us**, we should give our time and life for God and others. II Cor. 8:9.
9. Not to suffer **loss of rewards in eternity**. I Corinthians 3:10-15.
10. Coming to church **proves our salvation**, because we show our love for the brethren. I John 3:14-16
11. **Jesus** went to God's house weekly. Luke 4:16.
12. To **learn obedience**. If we obey God by attending church, we'll obey God in big things. Luk 16:10-21
13. To become a **Bible Teacher**. Hebrews 5:12.
14. To be **great** in God's eyes like Moses who: i) Refused worldly honour, v.24
ii) **Chose to suffer affliction with the people of God**,
iii) Did not pursue the pleasures of sin for a season,
iv) He had respect for the recompense of **God's eternal reward**. (Hebrews 11:24-27).
15. We are being **watched** by so great a cloud of witness of angels and departed believers. Heb. 12:1.
16. To be a **labourer** in God's harvest. Matthew 9:36-38.
To **reap and receive eternal wages** and **gather fruit** unto eternal life. John 4:34-38.
17. a) To **multiply our talents**. Matthew 25:19-21.
b) For **God to say "Well done** thou good and faithful servant."
c) To become **ruler over many things**. Matthew 24:44-45.
18. To lay up **treasures in Heaven**. Matthew 6:19.
19. The **Lord is coming soon**. I John 2:28; Romans 14:12. We will all have to give **account of our life and actions** to God. We will be either **confident** or **ashamed**. Revelation 3:11.
20. If you **reject the Holy Spirit's promptings** on big things like church, you'll never hear God's promptings on important smaller things.
21. The preacher's **message** at church is often exactly what you **need to hear** from God.
22. To get **re-motivated** and **inspired to serve God**.
23. To set up a **lighthouse** for the **truth of Christ** and **salvation** to the community. Matthew 5:16.
24. So you can notice and **encourage** any **new or struggling people**.
25. So you can get the **advice** of **Godly Christians** regarding **problems** you may have.
26. So you can help **fight** and pull in the **spiritual battle for souls**. Ephesians 6:11-19.
27. So you can **learn soul winning**. Matthew 4:19.
28. So you honour the Lord with your **tithes** and support and send out **missionaries**. Malachi 3:7-12.
29. You get your **next instructions from God** at church.
30. It is the **first base** to spiritual growth.
31. Building this church is a key to **multiplying other churches**.
32. It gives you **self discipline** to learn more.

34. BAPTISM

Aim: To be convinced about believers' baptism by immersion.

To encourage believers to get baptised as soon as possible after salvation.

The conditions of Bible baptism are:

- a) Right candidate - believer. Acts 8:35-39.
- b) Right motive - obedience to Christ. Matthew 28:18-20.
- c) Right method - immersion. Mark 1:9-11.
- d) Right authority - local church. Acts 2:41,47.

Baptism pictures:

- a) The **Gospel** of Christ's death, burial and resurrection that I am trusting in to pay for my sins, as I go down in, under and come up out of water.
- b) **Death** to my old way of life, **burial** of my old man & his habits, & **rising** to a new life with Christ.

We should get baptised because:

- a) Christ was baptised by immersion. Mark 1:9-11.
- b) We can completely obey Christ here.
- c) It greatly helps us take a confident stand publicly for Christ.
- d) It helps our unsaved family and friends to understand the gospel.
- e) It is the answer of a good conscience toward God, meaning that our conscience is eased. 1 Pet.3:21

1. MEANING OF BAPTISM.^{908, 911}

- a) baptizo = to **whelm, make fully wet, dip, cover wholly with a fluid.**
It never means **sprinkle** (Greek = rantizo⁴⁴⁷²), nor does it mean **pour** (Greek=ekcheo¹⁶³²).
- b) Baptism means "**identification**" with a person, a group, a message, or an event. For example, John's baptism associated his followers with his message of righteousness.
 - i) For James and John to be baptised with **Christ's baptism** meant to be associated with Christ's suffering (Mark 10:38-39).
 - ii) To be baptised with the **Spirit** associates one with the body of Christ (I Corinthians 12:13) and with the new life in Christ (Romans 6:1-10).
 - iii) To be baptised unto **Moses** (I Corinthians 10:2) involved identification under his leadership in bringing the Israelites out of Egypt.
 - iv) To be baptised for the **dead** (I Corinthians 15:29) means to be identified with the Christian group and take the place of a believer who had died.
 - v) **Christian baptism** (by immersion in water, after salvation) means identification with the **message of the gospel**, the **person of Christ** the Saviour, and with the **group of believers** and **their beliefs**.
- c) Baptism signifies **repentance** and **forgiveness of sins** (in Acts 2:38, "for" here means "because of"). Forgiveness has already been received at salvation.
- d) Water Baptism signifies **Spirit Baptism**, when the Holy Spirit indwells us at salvation. I Corinthians 12:13.
- e) Baptism means **obeying Christ's command** to be baptised. Matthew 28:18-20.
- f) Baptism means **separation from sin by death.**
"For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God." Colossians 3:3.
- g) Baptism means to **identify with a local church.** I Corinthians 12:13.

2. IMPORTANCE OF BAPTISM.

Baptism is not part of the Gospel. "For Christ sent me not to baptise, but to preach the gospel" (I Corinthians 1:17) and does not save us from hell. Baptism is very important as a step of obedience after salvation. Some people who hold to infant sprinkling as the correct baptism, when confronted with the Biblical facts of immersion baptism, defend their position by saying that baptism is not an important doctrine. However, the Bible emphasizes baptism's importance as follows:

- a) **Christ was baptised** (Mark 1:9-11; Matthew 3:13-17). Note that Jesus came up out of the water showing that He was in, under the water. He was baptised to fulfil all righteousness meaning that it was an example for us to follow to live righteously. (I Peter 2:21).
- b) **Christ approved** of his disciple's baptising. John 4:1,2.
- c) **Christ commanded** that people be baptised in this age. (Matthew 28:19,20). This applies to the apostles and to all believers in the church age, as seen in Christ promising His presence with us all to the end of the age.
- d) **The early church gave an important place to baptism** as seen in these cases: Acts 2:38,41 (Pentecost); 8:12,13 (Simon); 8:36-38 (Eunuch); 9:18 (Paul); 10:47,48 (Cornelius' household); 16:15,33 (Lydia and Philippian jailer); 18:8 (Crispus and the Corinthians); 19:5 (John's disciples were rebaptised).
The early church never thought of a believer remaining unbaptised.
- e) The New Testament uses baptism **to picture important theological truths**. For example, Romans 6:1-10 shows our union with Christ in his death, burial and resurrection. "For as many of you as have been baptised into Christ have put on Christ" (Galatians 3:27). This verse shows our putting on Christ.
I Peter 3:21 shows that baptism saves us from a bad conscience.
- f) Hebrews 6:1,2 states that the doctrine of Baptisms is a foundation principle of the **Doctrine of Christ**. It is as important as repentance, faith, resurrection and judgment.
- g) It proves that we wish to **obey Christ** and the **Bible** rather than men.

3. THE METHOD OF BAPTISM: IMMERSION, POURING or SPRINKLING?

- a) Baptism in the Greek is "Baptizo" which undoubtedly means immersion, never sprinkling "rantizo", or pouring "ekcheo".
- b) In Mark 1:10, Jesus came "up out of the water" showing that we too should be baptised by immersion.
In Acts 8:38,39, the Eunuch came "up out of the water" showing that he had to have been "in under the water".
- c) Only immersion pictures the meaning of baptism, which is death to my old way of life, burial of my old man with his habits, and rising to a new life with Christ. Romans 6:1-4.
- d) "Pouring", not "sprinkling", was the first exception to immersion and was allowed in the case of sickness. This was called "Christian baptism." Cyprian (250 AD) was the first to approve of sprinkling. Even non-immersionists admit that immersion was the only baptism of the first and second century churches.

Objections: Infant sprinklers think that there MAY have been babies in the Philippian jailer's household in Acts 16:30-34. Yet they forget to read v.34 which says "believing in God with ALL HIS HOUSE". Since all his household believed, no babies were present. They must all have been of a believing age and therefore qualifying for believer's baptism by immersion.

4. THE CANDIDATE FOR BAPTISM.

Question: Should believer's ONLY or babies of believing parents be baptized?

Answer: "What doth hinder me to be baptized?"

I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God" (Acts 8:36,37). This is the condition of baptism, yet how can a baby believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God? He cannot. Therefore it is wrong to baptise a baby.

Objection: The circumcision argument.

"Colossians 2:11,12 links circumcision and baptism. Since babies were circumcised under the Old Covenant, shouldn't they be baptised under the New Covenant?"

Answer:

- a) This circumcision is the Holy Spirit circumcising the heart at salvation, because it is made "without hands." Colossians 2:11.
- b) Circumcision shows membership in the Old Covenant, but does not show personal faith. Circumcision initiated people into a theocracy which did have unbelievers in it. However, baptism initiated people into a **believing community**, entry into which is gained by personal faith.
- c) The Biblical order is always believe first and then be baptised as seen in Acts 10:44-48 (Cornelius' household) and 16:14,15 (Lydia).
- d) All who believed in the house were baptised. Acts 16:33,34. This excludes babies from being baptised.

5. THE MOTIVE FOR BAPTISM.

- a) To **obey** Christ's command in Matthew 28:18-20. Here we can completely obey Christ.
- b) Christ was baptised by immersion (Mark 1:9-11). We **should follow Christ's example**. I Peter 2:21.
- c) To **publicly show** our personal faith in Christ. Believers baptism is the believer's decision. Infant baptism is the parent's decision, thus robbing the individual of the chance to publicly express his faith in Christ by baptism.
- d) It helps **unsaved family** and friends to understand the gospel in picture form. It can lead to their salvation.
- e) It is the answer of a **good conscience** towards God. I Peter 3:21.
Our conscience is eased by obeying Christ.

6. EXAMPLES OF BAPTISM.

All these (except Jesus) were saved and baptised.

- i) Jesus. Matthew 3:13-16.
- ii) 3000 Believers at Pentecost. Acts 2:41.
- iii) Samaritans. Acts 8:9-12.
- iv) Simon. Acts 8:13.
- v) Ethiopian Eunuch. Acts 8:36-39.
- vi) Paul. Acts 9:18.
- vii) Cornelius, family and friends. Acts 10:44-48.
- viii) Lydia and her household. Acts 16:14,15.
- ix) Philippian jailer and his household. Acts 16:30-34.
- x) Corinthians and Crispus' household. Acts 18:8.
- xi) John's disciples were rebaptised. Acts 19:1-5.
- xii) Crispus and Gaius. I Corinthians 1:14.
- xiii) Stephanas' household. I Corinthians 1:16.

Roman Soldier's Oath

Early Christians called baptism a "sacramentum", which in Latin means a soldier's oath of absolute devotion and obedience to his general.

There are 6 baptisms mentioned in the Gospels:

- i) John the Baptist's was a national baptism to show Israel's reception of John's message. Mark 1:4.
- ii) Jesus' baptism. This was immersion in water by John (Matthew 3:15) and with the Holy Spirit by the Father. Matthew 3:16.
- iii) Baptism of sin upon Christ at Calvary. Matthew 20:22.
- iv) Baptism of the Holy Spirit on believers at Pentecost. Matthew 3:11.
- v) Baptism of fire of God's wrath on sinners during the Tribulation. Matthew 3:12.
- vi) Baptism of believers in water. Matthew 28:19.

Question: Why was Christ baptized when He never sinned?

- i) To identify Himself with John the Baptist. John 1:31-34.
- ii) To identify Himself with Israel. John 1:11.
- iii) To identify Himself with sinner. "He was numbered with the transgressors". Isaiah 53:12.
- iv) To identify Himself with the offices of Prophet, Priest and King, because all three were anointed in the Old Testament.
- v) To fulfil all righteousness (Matthew 3:15). Jesus was picturing His work of death, burial and resurrection in making righteousness available to all.
- vi) To set us an example to be baptized. If it was good enough for Christ to be baptized by immersion, then it should be good enough for us. Baptism is an act where we humble ourselves to do things God's way (immersion) instead of man's way (sprinkling). Satan always counterfeits God's way. Infant sprinkling is Satan's counterfeit to believers' baptism.

Question: Will you be baptized God's way or by Satan's counterfeit way?

Conclusion:

All believers were baptized immediately after they believed. If you were baptized before salvation, you just went in a dry sinner and came out a wet sinner. This does not qualify as baptism. If you have been saved and not yet baptized, you are disobeying Christ's command. Please tell your pastor today that you wish to be baptized by immersion.

Baptizing The Cheque Book.

Pastor R.E.Neighbour was in the baptismal pool with a railway engineer. The pastor was ready to proceed with the baptismal service. "Wait!" whispered the engineer; "I forgot something. I want to return to the robing room, and get my cheque book and let you baptize it with me!". Oh, that more of our cheque books were "baptised". Oh, that more of God's children were taking with seriousness their financial responsibilities to God's work!



35. FRIENDSHIP

Theme: Building a church through Friendship. What sort of friend are you?

Bible reading: Proverbs 27:1-27.

Aim: For us to be the type of friends to others that Jesus Christ is a friend to us.

Introduction:

One of the greatest blessings that God offers us is the gift of His friendship, love and acceptance.

"Henceforth I call you not servants...but I have called you friends..." John 15:15.

If we are to be Christ like, we should show this same friendship of Christ to others.

Question: Why are some people unsuccessful at winning people to Christ?

Answer: One reason may be that they are not willing to be friends to those that they share Christ with. For any church to grow, quality friendships must be shown.

Notice these verses about friendship:

1. To him that is afflicted, pity should be showed from his friend. Job 6:14.
2. Yea, mine own familiar friend in whom I trusted, which did eat of my bread, hath lifted up his heel against me. Psalms 41:9.
A friend loveth at all times, and a brother is born for adversity. Proverbs 17:17.
4. A man that hath friends must show himself friendly: and there is a friend that sticketh closer than a brother. Proverbs 18:24.
5. Every man is a friend to him that giveth gifts. Proverbs 19:6.
6. Faithful are the wounds of a friend. Proverbs 27:6.
7. Thine own friend, and thy father's friend forsake not. Proverbs 27:10.
8. Iron sharpeneth iron; so a man sharpeneth the countenance of his friend. Proverbs 27:17.
9. Jesus ... a friend of publicans and sinners. Matthew 11:19.
10. Jesus to Judas at his betrayal: "Friend, wherefore art thou come?" Matthew 26:50.
11. Make no friendship with an angry man, lest thou learn his ways and get a snare to thy soul. Proverbs 22:24.
12. Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him for righteousness, and he was called the friend of God. James 2:23.
13. Know ye not that friendship of the world is enmity with God. James 4:4.
14. Our friends salute thee. Greet the friends by name. III John 14.

1. WHAT IS A FRIEND?

A friend is a trusted confidante to whom I am mutually drawn as a companion and ally, whose love for me is not dependent on my performance, and whose influence draws me closer to God.

2. THREE LEVELS OF FRIENDSHIP.

- a) Casual friends or acquaintances. These are people that you know of.
- b) Close personal friends.
- c) Intimate best friends. Those few with whom we share our deepest feelings (maybe 3 or 4 people).

3. EIGHT CHARACTERISTICS OF A GOOD FRIEND.

- a) **Loyal:** Most men will proclaim every one his own goodness, but a faithful man who can find? Proverbs 20:6.

Loyalty means:

- i) Defending my friend, especially in hard times. "At my first answer no man stood with me, but all men forsook me.....Notwithstanding, the Lord stood with me, and strengthened me." II Timothy 4:16,17.
 - ii) Supporting your friend in difficulty and in prosperity.
"A friend loveth at all times, and a brother is born for adversity." Proverbs 17:17.
- b) **Deep Sharing:** This consists of:
 - i) **Listening** "Let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, and slow to wrath." James 1:19.
Listening means that we open our ears, and alert our minds to words and meanings. We listen instead of talking.

Too often we listen only to decide when it is our turn to talk. Don't dominate the conversation. We need to listen to:

- **what is said** (the words),
- the **message conveyed** (the ideas),
- **its meaning** (what is behind ideas and thoughts),
- **the message behind the words** (real or hidden meanings).

ii) **Speaking** the right amount in the right way.

"A wholesome tongue is a tree of life." Proverbs 15:4.

"A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver." Proverbs 25:11.

iii) **Accepting the other person** just as they are. "We are accepted in the Beloved." Eph 1:6

iv) **Understanding the other person.** For the Lord giveth wisdom: out of his mouth cometh knowledge and understanding. Proverbs 2:6.

If we really care for our friends, we will seek to understand them.

- c) **Fun to be with.** Do things together, such as: Tennis, hiking, holidays, common interests.
- d) **Stimulating.** We should stimulate and encourage our friends to spiritual development and to personal growth. Help them to solve their problems, ask non-threatening questions and propose some new activities.

"Let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works; not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together..." Hebrews 10:24,25.

- e) **Encouraging.** Share Scriptures, pray together and lift their loads. Encouraging others can keep them from sin.

"But exhort one another daily ... lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin." Hebrews 3:13.

- f) **Self-sacrificing.** "Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends." John 15:13.

A true friend gives sacrificially to meet another's needs. Self-sacrifice instead of selfishness measures the depth of friendship.

"Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others." Philippians 2:4.

- g) **Agape Love.** Giving expecting nothing in return. Say: "I love you."

Ask God to give you an honest love for your friends.

- h) **Spiritually Challenging.** Friends drive us toward God, or away from God.

Question: Do you stimulate others to a closer walk with God?

Do you pray together?

Do you share common spiritual concerns?

"He that walketh with wise men shall be wise." Proverbs 13:20.

Note: TIME and EFFORT builds these qualities into a friendship.

4. WHY WE NEED FRIENDS.

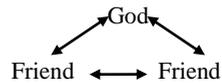
Eight Benefits of Close Friends:

eg. David and Jonathan; Paul was a teacher and friend to Timothy.

- a. **Emotional encouragement.** A good friend builds us up by letting us know that he accepts us and loves us.
- b. **Help in trouble.** "A brother is born for adversity." Proverbs 17:17.
- c. **Personal stability.** Friends and family keep us from rash decisions and from self-centred wanderings. Attend church.
- d. **Spiritual help and counsel,** will help us to speak the truth in love.
- e. **Freedom of expression,** to speak openly and freely without fear of being condemned.
- f. **Protection from loneliness and isolation.**
- g. **Love and acceptance.** We need to be loved for who we are.
- h. **Opportunities to give ourselves to others.** We benefit by giving friendship.

7. HOW TO MAKE LASTING CHRISTIAN FRIENDS.

Key: As both friends draw closer to God, they also grow closer to each other.



a) **Provoke each others spiritual growth.**

"Provoke one another to love and to good works." Hebrews 10:24,25.

Stir up people's thinking processes by asking questions and by teaching. II Peter 3:1.

b) **Prayer** lifts us up together into God's presence, and draws us closer to each other.

c) **Accountability.** A Christian friend has the right to hold us responsible for our actions that may be wrong. "Faithful are the wounds of a friend." Proverbs 27:6.

d) **Encouragement or Exhortation.**

Say to people: "I love you"; "I appreciate you"; "You're doing a good job."

Fathers should encourage their children. Pastors and people should encourage each other.

Encouragement can take several forms:

i. **Appreciation** for action.

ii. **Sympathy** in distress or sorrow.

iii. **Support** to accomplish something.

iv. **Thanks** for favours.

v. **Personal presence** in time of need. "Exhort one another daily." Hebrews 3:13.

Exhortation is a spiritual gift. Romans 12:8.

e) **Helping and serving.** Be sensitive to your friend's needs.

f) **Have fun together.** Do things together, go places together.

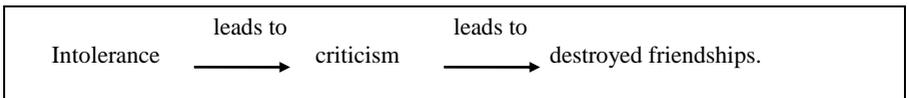
g) **Teamwork in the spiritual battle.** Friendships are best maintained in the midst of the spiritual battle. Go soul-winning together. The dependability of a friend must be fostered.

8. HINDRANCES TO FRIENDSHIP.

a) **Failure to recognise** our need of friendship. We then substitute acquaintances for friends.

b) **A lifestyle that's too busy.** Do things together, like Bible study and shopping.

c) **Intolerance** for the habits, activities, personalities and practices of others. Give friends space to be themselves.



d) **Selfishness** is taking, but friendship is giving.

e) **Criticism.** Friendship cannot grow in the uncomfortable, depressing atmosphere of criticism. What is criticism? Criticism stems from a poor self image, an angry spirit, faulty comparisons and misunderstandings.

f) **Insensitivity** to others needs. Some people bypass or ignore signals that reveal if a friend is depressed, tired, troubled, fearful or irritated.

"Rejoice with them that rejoice, weep with them that weep." Romans 12:15.

g) **Envy** is wanting what is not rightfully ours. Jealousy is wanting what is rightfully ours.

"Who is able to stand before envy?" Proverbs 27:4. Envy reveals a possessive attitude and an unwillingness to share the friendship with anyone else. Envy occurs where:

i) one friend achieves success, or

ii) one friend begins to spend time with another person.

h) **Unrealistic expectations.** Don't be easily disappointed in friends. No one is perfect.

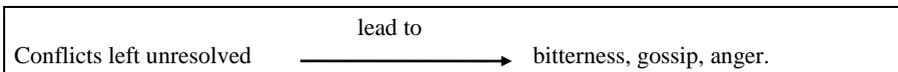
i) **Betraying confidences** and **gossiping** destroys trust which friendships are based on.

9. **HOW TO IMPROVE YOUR MARRIAGE FRIENDSHIP.**

- a. **Review the past**, discussing problems that affect you today without defensiveness or criticism. Listen carefully to learn about your spouse and yourself.
- b. **Set aside time to talk.** Have a good free-flowing meaningful conversation every day.
- c. **Renew your lifetime commitment** to each other.
- d. **Do fun things together**, for example, go out for a meal regularly.
- e. **Think of ways** that you can help your spouse reach their personal goals.
- f. **Be the spouse** God wants you to be. Read Ephesians 5:1-33. Fulfil your God-given role in your marriage. Pray daily for and with your spouse.
- g. **Read the Bible** together, and **pray together** daily.
- h. **Guard against divisive influences**, such as selfishness, or too many one-sided decisions, or excluding your spouse from activities.
Monitor the daily health of your marriage.
- i. **Remain an interesting person** who is enjoyable to be near.
- j. **Keep respect and courtesy** at the core of your marriage.
Be courteous. I Peter 3:8. Refuse to take each other for granted.
- k. **Constantly tell your spouse** "I love you.", etc.

10. **HOW TO RESTORE A BROKEN FRIENDSHIP.**

- a) **Determine what is the source of conflict.** Hebrews 12:14-15.
We cannot live in harmony when problems exist.
We need to know where these problems come from:
 - Have I spoken harshly or unjustly to a friend?
 - Have I neglected contact because of a rushed schedule?
 - Do I avoid friends if they are in trouble or sinning?**Key:** Too often we are willing to settle for an easy stand off, rather than to press through the painful process of honest confrontation and resolution.



- b) **Initiate restoration.** Matthew 5:23,24; 18:15.
Question: Have you hurt someone, or has someone hurt you?
Answer: You are responsible for restoring the friendship.
Peace can come when we confront and heal broken friendships.
- c) **Fix problems quickly.** Restoration of friendship is easiest when the offence is still recent. If hurts accumulate, restoration becomes harder.
- d) **Go in an attitude of humility.**
 - i) Discover why the conflict occurred.
 - ii) Find a time to talk privately with your friend without time constraints.
 - iii) Decide beforehand to accept all responsibility for the quarrel that is your fault.
 - iv) Listen to the words and meanings carefully.
 - v) Ask for forgiveness without placing blame.
- e) **Allow time to heal.** It takes time for trust and confidence to rebuild.
- f) **Pray for full recovery** of the relationship, and for your attitudes.

CONCLUSION.

What sort of friend are you?

Only as we are Christlike in our friendships, and as we become closer friends to Christ will a really great church be built for His glory. Are you prepared to pay the price to be a good friend?

36. HOW TO START AN INDEPENDENT BAPTIST CHURCH

1. **Select a pastor** who is Biblically qualified and who agrees with the Statement of Faith (chapter 32). He must also know what an Independent Baptist church stands for.
2. **Select a meeting hall** available on Sundays 9:30am- 11:00am, 1.00-5.00pm and 6.00pm - 8.00pm.
3. **Start with outreach by:** a) inviting Christians you know who are not going to church.
b) Door knocking to lead people to Christ and inviting them to attend your church.
c) Having a home Bible study with people individually for one hour a week in their home.
4. **Keep a list of all contacts.** Telephone them regularly (Saturday) and visit them weekly or when possible, especially if they have ill health. Love them and meet their needs.
5. **Print** or get “STOP” tracts for soul winning outreach and visitation for your people to use.
6. **Make an order** of service as follows: a) Opening song. b) Opening prayer. c) **Song service**-4 songs, d) Bible reading. e) Announcements. f) Special item in song or a testimony. G) Bible Reading. g) Offering. h) Sermon/message/preaching. i) Invitation/Closing song. j) Closing prayer. k) Tea, cake.
7. Have the **Lord’s Supper** and a **fellowship lunch** and on the first Sunday morning of each month.
8. Hold a **soul-winning seminar**, using the information in chapters 17-19,22,23,29,30.
9. Hold a **Discipleship Seminar** using chapters in this book you consider needful.
10. Have a home, **mid-week Bible study** and **prayer meeting** on Wednesday at 7.30 pm.
11. Allocate different areas for pairs or groups of people to doorknock.
a) Give them an **exercise book** to record names, addresses and phone numbers of contacts.
b) Then **say** at the door: “I’m dropping by to leave this pamphlet with you”. (Give ‘Stop’ tract.)
“This tells you how you can know God, be sure of going to heaven and have eternal life.”
“Have you ever thought much about God?” “One question if I may ask please: If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure if you’d go to heaven?” “Would you like to be sure?”
(Yes). “Well, this pamphlet summarizes four Bible truths showing how to be sure of going to heaven.” “If you look on the inside, the first truth is that ‘All have sinned’.. as in Chapter 17.
12. When people get saved, **baptize them** after church on Sunday. Hand them a baptism certificate.
13. Those who wish to become a **member** of your church with voting rights, may do so by being saved, baptized and by signing the Liberty Baptist Church Statement of Faith.
14. **Support the Pastor financially** through the weekly offerings. “The husbandman that laboureth must be first partaker of the fruit.” II Timothy 2:6. Pastor must be able to spend all his time working to build this church. If he is not full-time, he will not be able to help the church grow.
15. Get a **Youth Pastor** to start Bible study groups for teens during the week and take them soul winning.
16. Have a **church dinner** every six months.
17. Support a **church planting pastor** who fits the missionary strategy and the duty statement of Chapter 20. Send him out to start an Independent Baptist church where God calls him, supporting him initially so that, as his church grows, it can soon support him full time.
18. Pastor, write all your sermons in **note books** or on your **PC**. Keep records of them for later use.
19. Pastor and people **MUST go soul winning every week**.
20. Appoint a **treasurer** and have two or more signatories to the bank account.
21. From your offerings, **purchase quantities of ANSWERS books** for your people. Make Answers books available free to your people to help disciple new people to spread sound Bible doctrine. Buy KJV Bibles to give away to new converts and Old Schofield KJV Bibles for people to buy.
22. Purchase **song books**, eg “Soul Stirring Songs and Hymns” by John Rice.
23. Start a **Sunday School** for pre-schoolers and primary children, starting mid-way through the morning service when the preaching starts or before church starts.
24. **Teach Scripture classes** in government schools. Teach from “Established in the Faith” books.
25. Use **Mail Box Club** to follow-up children aged 8-14. Use **King of Kings** comics for teens.
26. Useful **Commentaries:** Willmington’s Guide to the Bible, Barnes NT Commentary, The Bible Knowledge Commentary by Walvoord & Zuck, The Bible Exposition Commentary–NT, Vol I, II by W Weirsbe, Answers.
27. Pastor’s **sermon outline:** Title, Bible Reading, Aim of Message, Introduction (pose problem), Body of Sermon (several main points), Conclusion and Challenge.

37. THE LORD'S SUPPER

Bible Reading: Matthew 26:20-30; I Corinthians 11:23-34.

Memory Verse: I Corinthians 11:24-26, "And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me...."

Aim: To understand the meaning and purpose of the Lord's Supper. To remember Christ's sufferings.

1. Purpose of the Lord's Supper.

- i) **Obedience** to Christ's command: "this do in remembrance of me." (I Corinthians 11:24).
- ii) **Commemoration:** To **remember** Christ. (I Corinthians 11:25). We should remember Jesus Christ's incarnation, birth, baptism, ministry, transfiguration, temptation, miracles, teachings, sufferings, Gethsemane, trials, mockings, scourgings, death, burial, resurrection, ascension and second coming.
- iii) **Proclamation:** To show forth the **Lord's death**. (I Corinthians 11:26). The gospel is proclaimed in an object lesson. The broken bread pictures Christ's broken body. The grape juice (unfermented) pictures Christ's blood shed for the remission of sins. We don't partake to get forgiveness of sins.
- iv) **Examination:** v.28 commands us to examine ourselves before eating and drinking the Supper. We are to judge our hearts and lives, and confess any known sin to God. (v.31). Psalm 139:23.
- v) **Anticipation:** To show our belief in **Christ's return**. "...till he come." (I Corinthians 11:26). We partake with glad thoughts of Christ's soon return.

2. Participants: Who may partake of the Lord's Supper?

- i) Only those who have received Christ as Saviour and are baptised.
- ii) Only those who have confessed their sins and are in fellowship with God. I John 1:9.

3. Requirements: Self Examination is essential before the Lord's Supper. I Cor 11:28; Psalm 139:23,24

- i) **Who** do we examine? Ourselves only. "But let a man examine himself..." (v.28).
- ii) **Why** must we examine ourselves? – it is a Bible command, (v.28).
-- to eat unworthily brings judgment, weakness, sickness and early death. (v.29-31).
- iii) **How** do we examine ourselves? Ask: -- Am I really saved? (II Corinthians 13:5).
-- Is there any unconfessed sin in my life? Such as self pity, pride, laziness, impurity, covetousness, disobedience, worldliness, lust, lack of Bible reading, prayer, soul winning.
-- Do I genuinely repent of my sins? -- Do I obey Christ's commands?
-- Do I love God and other believers? Have I forgiven those who've sinned against me?

4. Elements: of the Lord's Supper are unleavened bread and unfermented grape juice being the symbols of Christ's body and blood. "and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup." v.28.

5. Results: -

- i) the believer is **cleansed**, as he examines himself and confesses any known sin. (I John 1:9).
- ii) the believer is **strengthened** by fellowship with Christ and with believers.
- iii) the believer is **edified** (built up) as he meditates on Christ's death and return.

6. Procedure: First have a moment of personal prayer for each person to confess his sins to God. Then:

1. Invite two men to the front and hand the bread to them.
2. Pastor says: "For I have received of the Lord that which I also delivered unto you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: and when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take eat,...." I Corinthians 11:23-24.
3. Pastor asks one of these men to pray for the remembrance of Christ's broken body.
4. Ushers hand out the bread. Hold on to the bread until all have received it.
5. Pastor says: "And when He had given thanks, he brake it and said, take eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me." I Corinthians 11:24. People eat bread now.
6. Pastor says: "After the same manner also he took the cup...." I Corinthians 11:25.
7. Pastor asks the other person to pray for the remembrance of Christ's shed blood.
8. Ushers hand out the grape juice.
9. Pastor says: 'After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.' (v.25).
All drink grape juice now. After a moment of quiet prayer, ask people to turn to our Closing song:
10. Sing "Amazing Grace" or another suitable song as the Closing song. Close in prayer.

38. WHY THE CHURCH EXISTS

Bible Reading: Matthew 28:18-20; Ephesians 4:11-16.

Aim: The main purpose for the church's existence is to evangelise the world and build up believers.

Introduction: Many people who attend churches wonder what is the purpose of the local church. Some people ask, 'Why go to church?' 'Why go to this particular church instead of another?'

Question: Why did Jesus Christ institute the church?

Answer: Jesus said, 'I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.' (Matthew 16:18). This tells us that local churches are to attack the gates of hell, and take captive hell's prisoners. Let us study several reasons for the church's existence:

1. To preach the Gospel and make disciples (teach) of all nations.

God wants us to evangelise the world with the blessed message of eternal life through Jesus Christ. The Great Commission is stated five times by Jesus Christ in the following passages:

- a) Matthew 28:18-20 '**Go** ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.'
- b) Mark 16:15 '**Go** ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature'.
- c) Luke 24:47 'And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.'
- d) John 20:21,23 'As my Father hath sent me, even so **send I you** . . . Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained.'
- e) Acts 1:8 'But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost parts of the earth.'

The main reason God leaves His church in the world, is to save people from hell by preaching the gospel. Gordon G Johnson writes: 'One day Dr Wilfred Grenfell, medical missionary to Labrador, was guest at a dinner in London, together with a number of socially prominent British men and women. During the course of the dinner the lady seated next to him turned and said, "Is it true, Dr Grenfell, that you are a Missionary?" Dr Grenfell looked at her for a moment before replying. Then he said, "Is it true, madam, that you are not?"' (*My Church*, p 88).

2. To edify believers

Edify means to build up believers in their spiritual life. Edify (3618, 3619) comes from the word 'to construct, or to be a house-builder.' Edification is the purpose for which a church exists as a gathered community. Most of the New Testament was written for the edification of believers. These letters were sent to churches to be read and studied for their spiritual growth and development.

The following verses teach us about edification:

- a) I Corinthians 14:26, 'Let all things be done unto **edifying**.' Every believer should seek to build up each other, rather than to pull each other down.
- b) I Thessalonians 5:11, 'Wherefore **comfort** yourselves together, and **edify** one another, even as also ye do.' Strive to build up each other, and to establish each other in Bible truths.
- c) II Peter 3:18, 'But **grow in grace** and in the **knowledge** of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ'. Christlike character may be cultivated as much as one wishes to possess. Growth in grace may begin as a grain of mustard seed, and will increase as it is cultivated. To know Jesus Christ means to possess correct views of His person as fully God and fully man, His character, teachings & work.
- d) Jude 20, 'But ye, beloved, **building up** yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost.' We should establish ourselves most firmly in sound doctrine and in fulfilling our Christian duties such as prayer.
- e) Ephesians 4:11-16, Apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors and teachers were given to:
 - i) **Perfect** the saints;
 - ii) Fulfil the **work** of the ministry;
 - iii) **Edify** the body of Christ (v.12,16).

Their job is to build up believers in knowledge, in truth and in godliness.

3. **To glorify God:** ‘That the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you, and ye in him . . .’ (II Thessalonians 1:12). **How do we glorify God?** Through our:
- i) **Praise and prayer.** ‘Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me.’ (Psalm 50:23; Hebrews 13:15).
 - ii) **Fruitbearing.** ‘Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit: so shall ye be my disciples.’ (John 15:8).
 - iii) **Believing and obeying God’s Word.** ‘He (Abraham) staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; and being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.’ (Romans 4:20,21).
 - iv) **Preaching the Gospel.** ‘Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have free course, and be glorified . . .’ (II Thessalonians 3:1).
 - v) **Suffering.** ‘If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the Spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you.’ (I Peter 4:14,16).
 - vi) **Preaching God’s Word and serving.** ‘If any man **speak**, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man **minister**, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ.’ (I Peter 4:11).
 - vii) **Giving.** ‘But to do good and to **communicate** forget not: for with such sacrifices God is well pleased.’ (Hebrews 13:16). To communicate is to share what you have with others.
4. **To baptize believers.** ‘Baptising them in the name of the Father, and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost.’ Matt.28:19. God commands churches to baptise, and believers to be baptised after salvation.
5. **To teach believers God’s Ways.**
 ‘Commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to **teach** others also.’ (II Timothy 2:2) .
 ‘The servant of the Lord must . . . be apt to **teach**.’ (II Timothy 2:24).
 ‘These things command and **teach**.’ (I Timothy 4:11).
 In the church ‘. . . that by my voice I might **teach** others also.’ (I Corinthians 14:19).
 ‘For when for the time ye ought to be **teachers** . . .’ (Hebrews 5:12).
 ‘Daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to **teach** and preach Jesus Christ.’ Act 5:42
 God wants us to pass our Bible knowledge on to others.
6. **To provide fellowship for believers.**
 ‘They continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and **fellowship** . . .’ (Acts 2:42).
 ‘James, Cephas and John gave to me and Barnabus the right hands of fellowship.’ (Galatians 2:9).
 Fellowship (koinonia=2842) means “partnership, social participation, communication, contribution and distribution.” God designed people for fellowship, not for isolation. God has put in the human heart the desire to know and be known, to love and be loved. This is best achieved in a local church.
- a) The **basis** of Christian fellowship – the person of Christ (I John 1:3).
 - b) The **nature** of Christian fellowship – sharing doctrine and goods (Acts 2:44-47).
 - c) The **danger** of **losing** Christian fellowship by sin (I Corinthians 10:16,21).
 - d) The **responsibilities** of Christian fellowship are to:
 - i) Bear one another’s burdens;
 - ii) Gently restore one another (Galatians 6:1);
 - iii) Comfort and exhort one another;
 - iv) Edify one another;
 - v) Pray for one another;
 - vi) Forgive one another;
 - vii) Rebuke sin in each other. (Ephesians 5:11).
7. **To provoke each other to love and good works.**
 ‘And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works: Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together as the manner of some is . . .’ (Hebrews 10:24,25).
 ‘As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith’. (Galatians 6:10).
 By coming to church, we can do good to those attending. We can provoke them to do good works and to show love to others. If we forsake church, we can’t encourage any fellow believers, and we are saying that we don’t care about them.

8. To act as a restraining and enlightening influence in this world.

‘Ye are the salt of the earth . . . Ye are the light of the world.’ (Matthew 5:13-16).

If we work together in church we can have a bigger impact on the world for Christ.

9. To prepare rulers for the future millennial kingdom.

‘If we suffer, we shall also reign with him . . .’ (II Timothy 2:12).

‘Well done, thou good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.’ (Matthew 25:21,23).

Conclusion: The task of a local church is to make as many people like Jesus Christ in the time God has given us. God the Father so greatly loves God the Son, that He desires to populate the universe in eternity with people like Jesus Christ. (I John 3:2). He wants to start the work in repentant sinners now.

Challenge: Are you working with God in this church to achieve this goal to your greatest ability?

Your service to Christ now will have a great effect in eternity.

Therefore, let us win the lost, make disciples and edify one another in a good church.

39. USHERS DUTIES

A Pastor should appoint a head usher and assistant ushers to ensure the smooth running of the weekly church services. James 2:1-4 describes a church usher who favoured a rich man and discriminated against a poor man. This is what an usher should **not** do. Ushers’ duties should be as follows:

- 1) Be given a **key** to open up the church;
- 2) Be at church **at least** 30 minutes before the starting time of the service.
- 3) They should turn on the **lights**, the heaters, the public address system and open windows.
- 4) They should be **dressed neatly** with a collar, tie and coat (unless you’re in a very hot land).
- 5) They should give a **songbook, bulletin or visitors card** (and pen) to all who enter.
- 6) They should **smile and warmly welcome** everyone by name who enters by saying something like: ‘I’m so happy to see you. How are you today? We hope you enjoy our service’.
- 7) **Introduce new people** or shy people to those you think will befriend them.
- 8) If there are not many seats left, ask, ‘May I lead you to a suitable seat?’
- 9) Encourage people to **sit closer to the front** before they fill up the back rows.
- 10) Help people with **babies** to find a suitable seat.
- 11) **Delegate people** to do jobs that need doing, eg: car park attendant, lady to manage babies/creche.
- 12) Be alert to **minimize any noise** or disturbances and to help people in any need.
- 13) Be alert to **pastor’s instructions** to hand out any papers.
- 14) Be alert to come forward to take up the **offering**.
- 15) **Come into the service** and enjoy the singing, preaching, etc.
- 16) **Open songbooks for latecomers** at the song being sung.
- 17) Collect filled-out **visitors cards** off people as they leave the service
- 18) **Count the offering** after the service, or appoint someone to count it, approved by the pastor. This may be the deacons or treasurer’s job. Have a 4 week roster of 4 x 2 people.
- 19) **Inform the Pastor** of newcomers or of any special need.
- 20) **Allocate good soul-winners** to lead interested newcomers to Christ.
- 21) Look for people without a friend and ensure that **someone is talking with them** at all times.
- 22) **Build and maintain a warm, happy, Godly atmosphere** in the service.
- 23) **Return songbooks** to cupboard after the service. Delegate children to collect songbooks off seats.
- 24) **Pick up** any rubbish or papers that are on the floor.
- 25) After everyone has gone home, **close windows** and lock doors.
- 26) Prepare the hall for the evening service.
- 27) **Appoint a person to take your place** if you will be absent any Sunday. Appoint trainee ushers.
- 28) Remind people on **canteen roster** to put out morning tea and clean up after morning tea.
- 29) **Pray** before the service.
- 30) Place a **full glass of drinking water** at the pulpit for the preacher.
- 31) Prepare (or appoint someone to prepare) the **Lord’s Supper** when required.
- 32) Only tell a complaint to the person themselves. If you tell another, they’ll tell that person.

40. PASTOR'S ETHICS

'Be not deceived: evil communications corrupt good manners (Greek: *Ethos*)'. I Corinthians 15:33.

Manners = *Ethos* in Greek = **Ethics** = proper Christian behaviour to God's people.

Nobody can destroy you but you. People can lead you to self-destruct.

You can put yourself in a spiritual position for God to reward you. Slander destroys ethics.

1. **Don't visit people of another church.** Do you want other pastors stealing your people?

Do unto others as you'd have them do to you. There is a God in heaven Who can build your church.

Don't build your church on proseletysing. Build it on soul winning.

People will be loyal to you if you are loyal to your pastor. 'What you sow you reap.' Galatians 6:7.

2. **I won't make an appointment** with a member of another church **without a letter from their Pastor.**

I'm not going to be unethical. There's a God of justice in heaven who can reward you for your ethics or discipline you for your greedy lack of ethics. You'll be blessed if you are blessable.

God can send people your way. Do you want other pastors chasing your people?

3. **I will not hire someone from another church** unless I have permission from his Pastor to talk with him.

When an Assistant Pastor or a member leave a church and complain about how bad the pastor was, you assume the Pastor was hard to work for. You often wrongly assume the fight was the Pastor's fault. The sports world is more ethical than some pastors.

You should stick with the preacher and think the preacher is right. (I Timothy 5:19).

4. **I will not hire a worker** without a **good reference** from his former employer.

Most employers will trust the former employer more than you do. Get a reference for everybody you employ. This stops difficult workers from wrecking your church.

5. **I will cut ties when I leave a church.** If you phone your old people they'll compare Pastors.

6. **I will not talk to a prospective Bible College student at another church if they have a Bible College of their own.** The pastor may want him to attend their Bible College.

7. **I will treat my predecessor ethically.**

This will get God's blessings. If you take over an existing church you get your predecessor's **buildings and people**. Never criticize the previous pastor. Many of your people still want to love the previous pastor. I don't have to be on people's number one love list.

If they want to love others more than me, that's OK, as long as they love me a bit.

Church growth depends more on a pastor's ethics than on outreach programmes.

I do not require others to treat me with perfect ethics because I want to be right with God.

You cannot be right with God and wrong with His people.

You better **keep your heart right** and **your relations with the people right**.

'Be not deceived evil communication corrupts good manners.' I Corinthians 15:33.

Preachers should try to get right with each other. People should try to reconcile with each other.

The future of your ministry depends more on your ethics and manners than on your oratory.

What he did to me is between him and God and it can't effect my ministry, but what I do to him can affect my ministry. If other pastors visit my members, I don't get upset about it.

If you love someone and they leave you, can you turn the tap of love off? 'Love never faileth'.

Love people who leave your church. They helped build this church with their tithes and work.

There's more to the ministry than preaching and being against Hollywood and Rock music.

'Love your enemies, Bless them that curse you; Do good to them that hate you.' Matthew 5:44.

You are likely to have a long and happy ministry if you try to be ethical, love your people and your enemies. Your future in the ministry depends on your ethical behaviour to others..

41. Things Dead Churches Won't Teach You. (Revelation 3:1-22).

Aim: To identify and to reject error. To rescue people from error. To appreciate sound doctrines in a fundamental church. To leave churches that teach error, or not teaching these truths.

Question: What will dead, modernist, lukewarm churches rarely teach?

- 1) Salvation. That you can be saved today by calling on Christ to save you. (Romans 10:13).
- 2) Soul winning. How to win people to Christ. How to train soul winners. (Proverbs 11:30).
- 3) Separation from error and false doctrines. (Romans 16:17).
- 4) Need to rebuke error and not to tolerate it. (Ephesians 5:11; II Timothy 4:1-3).
- 5) New Evangelical and Ecumenical errors will destroy your life's work for Christ. (II John 8-11).
- 6) Calvinist errors. (II Peter 3:9 'God is not willing that any should perish.')
- 7) Evolution's errors. God created a young earth in 6 days 6000 years ago. (Exodus 20:11).
- 8) Charismatic errors summarized by T.R.A.S.H.. (I Corinthians 14:21-25).
- 9) Modern Bible Version errors and the inerrancy of Scripture. (Psalm 12:6,7).
- 10) Infant Sprinkling and Confirmation errors. (Acts 8:37).
- 11) Roman Catholic errors. (Revelation 17).
- 12) Muslim errors. (I John 2:22).
- 13) Rock Music errors. (Ephesians 5:19; Ecclesiastes 7:5).
- 14) Soul Sleep error.
- 15) Rewards and crowns are available to believers in heaven. (Revelation 22:12).
- 16) Judgment Seat of Christ. (II Corinthians 5:10; I Corinthians 3:10-15).
- 17) 70 Week Prophecy and 7 Year Tribulation (Daniel 9:24-27; Matthew 24:21,22).
- 18) Rapture (I Thessalonians 4:16,17); Millennium (Revelation 20).
- 19) Book of Revelation simply and clearly explained.
- 20) Seven Dispensations that world history consists of.
- 21) Future conversion of Israel. (Romans 11:1,2,25-27).
- 22) The Lake of Fire and literal hell fire for Christ rejecters. (Rev. 20:14,15; Mark 9:44,46,48).
- 23) Personal devil who opposes and seeks to destroy us. (I Peter 5:8).
- 24) Security of the believer. (John 10:28; I Peter 1:4,5).
- 25) Importance of printing and distributing Gospel tracts and books.
- 26) Preaching against sin, rebuking error. (II Timothy 4:2-4).
- 27) Fornication and sodomy are sins. (I Thessalonians 4:3-8).
- 28) Spiritual warfare over people's souls. (Ephesians 6:10-18).
- 29) Importance of sound doctrine and rightly dividing the word of truth. (II Timothy 2:15).
- 30) Cessation of miraculous, personal gifts of prophecy, tongues, knowledge, miracles, apostle, prophet and healing gifts in the first Century. (I Corinthians 13:8-15).
- 31) Reality of all the Bible's miracles.
- 32) Dinosaurs lived from Creation to the Flood, and were destroyed in the Flood. (Job 40,41).
- 33) Training preachers and church planters. (Acts 13:5).
- 34) Door-to-door soul-winning. (Acts 5:42).
- 35) What is the Gospel? (I Corinthians 15:1-4).
- 36) Abstaining from alcohol (Proverbs 20:1), pornography, touching women (I Cor. 7:1,2), etc..
- 37) Young ladies dress modestly. (I Timothy 2:9).
- 38) No female pastors, preachers or deacons. (I Timothy 3:2).
- 39) Long hair on men is wrong. (II Corinthians 11:14).
- 40) Church run by pastoral authority. (Hebrews 13:7,17,24). See "apostles and elders" in Acts.
- 41) Home Schooling using ACE curriculum. Evil influence of State schools. (Proverbs 19:27).
- 42) Child raising principles and child discipline. (Proverbs 22:6).
- 43) Separate from bad peer groups. (Psalm 1:1-3).

42. Valuable Things a Good Church Produces.

Bible Reading: Luke 13:6-9.

Aim: To show that the job of a church & its people is to produce spiritual fruit. What is that fruit?

Introduction: Many Christians don't appreciate the Church in general or a good church in particular. Many people don't see or understand the valuable things that a sound church produces. When we see what this church produces, we will support it more as we help produce the fruit God expects. Two examples of God removing an unfruitful steward of His Word are:

- 1) Jesus came to Israel for three years, looking for spiritual fruit but found none (Luke 13:6-9). Jesus said to cut down the tree of Israel if it didn't bear fruit. This reminds us of Jesus removing the candlestick of an unfruitful church, like that at Ephesus. (Revelation 2:5).
- 2) Because Israel failed to bear spiritual fruit, God took away the light of the Gospel testimony from Israel, and gave it to local churches. (Matthew 21:33-46, especially v.41,43).

Question: What Fruit Does a Good Church Produce?

- 1) Souls saved; peace and joy of going to heaven. (John 15:16 'that your fruit should remain.')
- 2) Soul winners produced. (Matthew 4:19 'Follow me and I will make you fishers of men.')
- 3) Preachers trained and sent out to pastor and plant churches. (Acts 8:4-8).
- 4) New churches started in Australia and overseas.
- 5) Thousands of lives rescued from sin, confusion, loneliness, fear & false doctrine (II Cor 5:17).
- 6) Bible Truths and convictions taught and established in many people's minds. (I Peter 2:9).
- 7) Godly marriage partners are trained and found in church. (Ephesians 5:21-25).
- 8) Tools developed to help win souls & train disciples, eg STOP tracts, *Answers* book, pamphlets.
- 9) It helps us avoid shipwrecking our faith on the rocks of false doctrines. It rightly divides God's Word so we clearly know what God wants of us in all issues of life. (II Timothy 2:15).
- 10) It links us with a worldwide network of strong Christians, churches, and useful resources.
- 11) It is a refuge from the evils of the world.
- 12) It provides Godly role models for young people. (I Timothy 4:12).
- 13) It sets high moral standards of love, self-sacrifice and Bible truths that we seek to achieve.
- 14) It provides a happy, peaceful, spiritual environment where Godly Christians comfort, strengthen, encourage and train each other. (James 3:17,18).
- 15) It encourages other Christians to keep on serving God. It gives answers to life's problems.

43. Things a Good Church is Compared To.

Commitment to a good soul winning church is essential if we are to:

- a) Win the world to Christ, and
- b) Enjoy the benefits of a local church.

These symbols to which God likens a local church, show much about our purposes in serving God:

- 1) **A Building:** 'Ye are God's building' (I Corinthians 3:9; Ephesians 2:19-22; I Timothy 3:15; Hebrews 3:6; 10:21).
 - a) We are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets. This means there are no more apostles and prophets today because they are in the foundation and not in the superstructure.
 - b) Jesus Christ is the chief cornerstone on which the whole building holds together. Eph 2:20,21.
 - c) We are fitly framed together.
 - d) We are to grow to a holy temple.
 - e) The Holy Spirit builds us together as a habitation of God. (v.22).
 - f) We are as living stones built as a spiritual house to offer spiritual sacrifices to God. I Peter 2:5
- 2) **A Farm, Field or Husbandry** 'Ye are God's Husbandry.' (I Corinthians 3:9).
'He that receiveth seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word and understandeth it; which also beareth fruit ... some 100 fold, some 60, some 30.' (Matthew 13:23, 8).

Question: What is the good ground that the seed is planted in?

Answer: A local church with true doctrine and practice (no weeds) will produce much fruit in a believer's life. We are born to reproduce and to be fruitful. We will never bear much fruit unless we get seriously involved in a good local church.

- 3) **A Temple**: ‘Know ye not that ye are the Temple of God.’ (I Corinthians 3:16; II Cor. 6:16). Solomon’s temple is a type of the local church, as follows:
- i) Both are built with gold (I Kings 6:20-32; I Peter 1:7; 2:5). Christians face many trials.
 - ii) As in Solomon’s temple there were many windows to lighten it (I Kings 6:4), so a local church should enlighten people with the light of the gospel and heavenly truths for life.
 - iii) As both Jews (Solomon) and Gentiles (Hiram King of Tyre) were involved in constructing Solomon’s temple (I Kings 5:1-12), so local churches are made up of Jews and Gentiles. (Ephesians 3:6).
 - iv) As the glory of the Lord filled Solomon’s temple (I Kings 8:10,11), so the Holy Spirit of God indwells and fills believers. (I Corinthians 3:16; Ephesians 5:18).
 - v) As Cherubim guardian angels were carved in the walls and doors of Solomon’s temple (I Kings 6:23-32), so angels observe the local church and are involved in ministering to it. (I Corinthians 4:9; 11:10; I Peter 1:10-12; Luke 15:10; I Timothy 5:21).
 - vi) As Solomon’s temple was viciously attacked by literal Babylonians (II Kings 25:9), so local churches have been viciously persecuted by the Roman Catholic system known as Mystery Babylon. (Revelation 17:5,6).
 - vii) As Solomon’s temple and Jerusalem’s wall were rebuilt in troublesome times (Daniel 9:25), so local churches are built in troublesome times, facing much opposition from enemies. (Acts 8:4; 14:22).
 - viii) As Solomon’s temple and Jerusalem’s wall were rebuilt by using a sword and trowel (Nehemiah 4:16-18), so local churches are built by defeating false doctrines with the sword of the Spirit (Ephesians 6:17) and by teaching God’s Word correctly (trowel).
 - ix) As the rebuilders of Solomon’s temple and Jerusalem’s wall were looked on as poor, weak and contemptible persons (Nehemiah 4:2), so people who build local churches are seen by the world in the same way.
 - x) As rebuilders of Solomon’s temple and Jerusalem’s wall had to remove much rubbish (Nehemiah 4:2,10), so building local churches involves removing much Popish rubbish, worldly rubbish and tradition rubbish. (I Peter 1:18; Colossians 2:8).
 - xi) As the ‘nobles put not their necks to the work of the Lord’ (Nehemiah 3:5) in rebuilding Solomon’s temple and Jerusalem’s wall, so it is often true today that many wealthy, socially important Christians do very little to build up local churches. (I Cor. 1:26-29).
- 4) **The Pillar and Ground of the Truth**: ‘the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.’ (I Timothy 3:15). A local church is like a pillar because:
- i) It preaches and promotes stability of Doctrine.
 - ii) Local churches support the truth of God’s Word.
 - iii) Many other institutions in society depend on Bible truths taught by local churches, such as our legal system; democratic government (Romans 13:1-6); missionary activity; good literature; Bible Colleges; Christian school system; soul winning; Sunday schools, welfare, art, health, science, military, commerce, etc.
- 5) **An Olive Tree**: ‘thou being a wild olive tree, wert grafted in among them, and with them partakest of the root and fatness of the olive tree.’ (Romans 11:17).
- i) Local churches like an olive tree’s leaves should be always green. Greenness means life and sap in the branches. ‘Her leaf shall be green ... neither shall cease from yielding fruit.’ (Jeremiah 17:8). ‘His leaf also shall not wither.’ (Psalm 1:3; 92:12-14).
 - ii) Local churches, like olive trees, should greatly abound with fruit. ‘that bringeth forth his fruit in his season.’ (Psalm 1:3). (John 4:36; 12:24; 15:2,8,16; Romans 7:4; I Corinthians 9:7; Philippians 1:22; 4:17; Colossians 1:10).
 - iii) Olive oil was used to fuel lamps to shed light and to dispel darkness (Matthew 25:3,4). So must local churches shed the Gospel light to a sin-darkened world. (2 Corinthians 4:4,6).
 - iv) As an olive branch is a symbol of peace (Genesis 8:11), so a local church should be a place where the peace of God prevails (Romans 5:1) & the Gospel of peace is sent out. Ephesians 6:15.

- 6) **A Golden Candlestick:** ‘the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.’ (Revelation 1:20).
- i) Local churches must shine forth the light of God’s Word, Christ’s salvation, and Godly example to a sin-darkened world. “Let your light so shine before men..” (Matthew 5:16) “Walk as children of light.” (Ephesians 5:8).
 - ii) Golden candlesticks are very valuable and precious, so local churches are very precious to God.
 - iii) As removing a candlestick brings darkness, so God may remove a church due to its apostasy and leaving its first love. (Revelation 2:4,5).
- 7) **A Merchant Ship:** ‘which hope we have as an anchor of the soul.’ (Hebrews 6:19).
- i) As a merchant ship brings merchandise from a far country, so do good churches bring spiritual blessings from heaven, of eternal life (II John 5:12,13); peace of God (Romans 5:1); comfort of the Holy Ghost (Acts 9:31); fruit of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22,23); wisdom from above (James 3:17); Godly lifestyle – ‘our conversation is in heaven’ (Philippians 3:20); reports of a better country. (Hebrews 11:16); etc.
 - ii) As a sailing ship sails sweetly along under a favourable wind, so do local churches progress under the favourable wind of the Holy Spirit – The wind bloweth where it listeth.’ (John 3:8); ‘There came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind.’ (Acts 2:2). The Holy Spirit is represented by a wind. Sailing ships need wind to progress.
 - iii) As a ship navigates by a compass, so local churches find true direction, doctrine and guidance from God’s Word.
 - iv) As merchant ships cast nets into the sea to catch fish, so local churches cast out the Gospel net as fishnet of men to catch men for Christ. (Matthew 4:19).
 - v) As some ships are tossed about in all directions by stormy winds, so some churches and Christians may be tossed to and fro with every wind of doctrine (Eph. 4:14) & persecution.
 - vi) In stormy winds, every person tries to save the ship from sinking. So, when trouble, persecution, heresy or fighting hits a local church, all members should pray to God and work wisely for the church’s and their own safety. They must not try to destroy it.
 - vii) As a ship’s direction is determined by its rudder, so a church’s direction is determined by how its people use their tongues. (James 3:4,5).
 - viii) As a ship without an anchor is in danger of being destroyed on rocks, so a local church which doesn’t rightly divide the word of truth (II Timothy 2:15) and doesn’t set its hope in God’s Word (Hebrews 6:19) is in danger of making shipwreck of its faith (I Timothy 1:19) on the rocks of false doctrines.
 - ix) As merchant ships greatly enrich those cities and countries to which they belong, by bringing rare and excellent merchandise, so local churches, by bringing treasures from heaven, greatly enrich poor sinners, cities and nations with treasures of truth, peace, pardon and heavenly blessings. ‘She is like the merchants’ ships; she bringeth her food from far’ (Proverbs 31:14). So is a good church like an ideal woman, the bride of Christ.
 - x) As merchant ships need a skilful pilot to prevent shipwreck, so local churches must let Jesus Christ the ‘captain of their salvation’ navigate and guide them through the dangers of this world (Hebrews 2:10), to avoid smashing on the rocks of false doctrines, errors, human inventions and heresies.
- 8) **A Flock:** ‘Feed the flock of God.’ (Acts 20:28).
- i) As sheep need feeding, so do Christians in a church need to be fed the Word of God.’ (Acts 20:28).
 - ii) As sheep are clean, tame and gentle, so this is God’s will for Christians.
 - iii) As sheep may go astray, so may Christians. (Psalm 119:176).
 - iv) As sheep have many enemies, so do Christians have many adversaries. (Romans 8:36).
- 9) **A Body:** ‘For we being many are one bread, and one body.’ (I Corinthians 10:17). ‘For by one Spirit are we all baptised into one body.’ (I Corinth. 12:13). ‘For the edifying of the body of Christ.’ (Ephesians 4:12; 2:16). ‘He is the head of the body, the church.’ (Coloss.1:18,24).

- i) As every natural body has a head, so Christ is the head of the church. (Col.1:18; Eph. 1:22)
 - ii) As a natural body has many members (I Corinthians 12:14,20), so a church consists of many believers called members of His body: ‘We are the Body of Christ, and members in particular.’ (I Corinthians 12:27).
 - iii) In a natural body, members differ in strength, honour and use, such as arms, legs, fingers, hands, eyes, ears, kidney, heart, liver, etc. so churches have members each differing in honour and use, such as pastors, teachers, evangelists, helpers, givers, etc.
 - iv) In a natural body, if one member suffers, all members suffer with it. So in a church, when one saint suffers, all sympathise and suffer with him. (I Corinthians 12:26).
 - v) In a natural body, all members take care of each member. So in a church, every believer should seek the welfare and take care of all other members. (I Corinthians 12:25).
 - vi) As all members in a natural body receive direction and nourishment from the head, so do all members in a church receive direction and nourishment from Jesus Christ. (Colossians 2:18,19).
 - vii) As a natural body increases in strength, size and beauty, so a church increases in strength, size and glory and she reproduces other churches. (Ephesians 4:15,16).
- 10) An Inn:** ‘And brought him to an Inn.’ (Luke 10:34). See Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-37).
- i) As an Inn provides rest and security to travellers as they journey from one city or country to another, so a church provides for believers’ needs as they travel through the wilderness of earth to heaven.
 - ii) As an Inn has an Innkeeper who helps and cares for guests, so in a church there are pastors and workers who receive, welcome and help all poor sinners who enter.
 - iii) As an Inn provides convenient food for travellers, so a church refreshes the souls of all pilgrims entering with the sincere milk of the Word of God, or strong meat as needed. (Hebrews 5:12-14; I Peter 2:2).
 - iv) As an Inn is not a permanent dwelling place but a traveller only stays for a night and is gone, so a church is not a permanent residence. We are here for a short time (a night) we have no continuing city, but we rest here a while on our journey to heaven. Hebrews 13:14
- 11) A Family or Household:** ‘Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named’ Eph 3:15. ‘ye are no more strangers & foreigners, but fellow citizens...of the household of God.’ Eph 2:19 ‘As we have opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.’ (Galatians 6:10).
- i) In a Family there are people of different ages, strength and tasks, so there are in a church babies, young men, fathers, grandfathers, teachers, rulers, and servants. (I John 2:12:14).
 - ii) The head of a Family cares for and provides for all in it. (I Timothy 5:8). So Christ supplies all our needs (Philippians 4:19; Matthew 6:25-30).
 - iii) As there is order and discipline in a Family, so there is order and discipline in a church. (Hebrews 12:5-11).
 - iv) As a Family has commitment, love, sharing and close relationships, so a church should show the same qualities.
- 12) A Chaste Virgin:** ‘I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.’ (II Corinthians 11:2).
- i) As the Jewish High Priest could marry only a virgin (Leviticus 21:10-15), so Jesus Christ our Great High Priest will marry His virgin, the church.
 - ii) As a virgin is kept pure from fornication, so the church and every Christian should be kept pure from idolatry, love of the world, and anti-Christian worship.
 - iii) As a virgin, engaged to a husband, longs for the wedding day, so the church longs for the return of the Bridegroom, when Christ will take her to Himself. ‘The marriage of the Lamb is come.’ (Revelation 19:7,8).
 - iv) As an engaged virgin is greatly loved by her husband, so Christ greatly loves His Bride the church. (Ephesians 5:25).

- 13) **A Bride or a Wife:** ‘As the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything.’ (Ephesians 5:24).
- i) As a wife has made a covenant to be married to a husband, so the church and every true Christian has made a covenant to be married to Jesus Christ. (Romans 7:1-4).
 - ii) As a wife and husband give themselves wholly to each other, so do Christ and every true Christian give themselves wholly to each other. ‘They gave themselves to the Lord’ 2 Cor 8:5
 - iii) As a wife renounces all other men, so all true Christians must renounce sin, self and justification by the law to keep themselves faithful to Christ. (Romans 7:4). (Eph 5:24,33)
 - iv) As a wife obeys & reverences her husband, so churches should obey & reverence Christ.
 - v) As a wife has legal right to her husband’s estate, so Christians will inherit much of Christ’s possessions in eternity. (Revelation 21:7; Ephesians 1:11,14,18; I Peter 1:4).
 - vi) As a wife strives to please her husband (I Corinthians 7:34), so churches and all true Christians strive to please Christ. (Colossians 1:10).
 - vii) As a wife is in close communion with her husband (Matthew 19:6; Eph. 5:31), so the church and all true Christians are brought into a close relationship with Christ: ‘Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.’ Matt. 25:40.
 - viii) As a wife is troubled when she has offended her husband, so all true Christians are grieved when they have offended Christ. (Song of Solomon 5:6).
 - ix) As a wife knows her husband’s mind and secrets, so does the church have the mind of Christ and secrets that are hid from the world. (Psalm 25:14; I Corinthians 2:16).
 - x) As a wife bears children to her husband and cares for them, so the church is to bear spiritual children for Christ and care, feed and nourish them.
 - xi) As a wife married to a King has servants, so the church married to Christ has angels ‘ministering to them that are heirs of salvation.’ (Hebrews 1:14).

14) **A House:** ‘But Christ over his own house: whose house are we.’ (Hebrews 3:6).

- i) As a house is built on a sure foundation, so the church is built on the only sure foundation of Christ. ‘Other foundation can no man lay than...Jesus Christ.’ (I Cor 3:11). ‘Upon this rock I will build my church.’ (Matthew 16:18).
- ii) As a house is built by a wise masterbuilder (I Corinthians 3:10), so we need to take heed how we build local churches on the foundation of Christ: ‘Another buildeth thereon ... let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon.’ (I Corinthians 3:10).
- iii) As a house may be built of gold, silver, precious stones, or wood, hay and stubble, so a local church (or individual Christian) may build with quality materials of suffering for Christ, Bible wisdom and soul winning, or of worthless things such as rock music, man’s wisdom, false doctrines and entertainment.’ (I Corinthians 3:12-15).
- iv) As a house is built for a family to dwell in, so a church is built for Christ and His family to dwell in. (Ephesians 2:19).
- v) As a house is a place of security to defend from dangers, so is a local church a place of security from evil, worldliness and false doctrines.
- vi) As a house has a way and a door leading into it, so a local church has a way and door of Christ leading into it’: ‘I am the way....’ (John 14:6). ‘I am the door.’ (John 10:9).
- vii) As a house is a place of prayer, Bible reading and family instruction, so is a church a place of prayer, Bible preaching, family instruction and service.

44. **Don’t Attend a Counterfeit Church.** Some marks of a counterfeit church are:

- 1) Counterfeit Gospel – salvation by works. II Corinthians 11:4; Galatians 1:6-9; 3:10.
- 2) Counterfeit Jesus Christ – Mormon Jesus, JW Jesus, RC Jesus is not the Bible Jesus (II Cor. 11:4).
- 3) Counterfeit Baptism – Sprinkling of babies or adults. (Acts 8:37; Mark 1:9-11).
- 4) Counterfeit Preachers – Non Soul Winners (II Tim. 4:5), Bible Correcters (Jer. 36:23; Rev. 22:19).
- 5) Counterfeit Doctrines – of devils. (I Timothy 4:1).
- 6) Counterfeit Filling of the Holy Spirit – tongues, Toronto ‘blessing’, animal noises. (II Cor. 11:4).
- 7) Counterfeit Bibles – Modern Versions which omit about 2% of the NT. (Revelation 22:18,19).
- 8) Counterfeit Titles – Father, Pope, Reverend. (Revelation 17:3; Psalm 111:9).

45. **HOW TO HAVE GENUINE REVIVAL** (II Chronicles 29-31).

A number of ingredients are necessary to maintain genuine revival. Major Bible revivals were:

- 1) Hezekiah's revival. (II Chronicles 29-31).
- 2) Jonah's revival at Nineveh. (Jonah 3).
- 3) Jerusalem revival. (Acts 1-12).
- 4) Paul's revivals in his three missionary journeys. (Acts 13-28)

I. Hezekiah's Revival: How Hezekiah promoted revival in II Chronicles 29-31.

- 1) Mothers must train their children in God's ways from infancy. (29:1).
- 2) Honour and repair God's House. (29:3).
- 3) Train preachers, Bible teachers, priests and Levites. (29:4-19).
- 4) Remove filthiness out of the Holy place. (29:5,16-19; 30:14; 31:1; Romans 12:1,2).
- 5) Make a covenant to surrender to serve God in soul winning & disciple making. (9:10,11).
- 6) Gather the rulers to honour the House of the Lord. (29:20).
- 7) Restore private and public prayer. (29:11; 30:27).
- 8) Restore public worship, singing and thanksgiving. (29:20-36).
- 9) Restore visitation by mail and door-knocking. (30:1-13,6).
- 10) Humble ourselves to God. (30:11; 7:14).
- 11) Restore Bible teaching by levites (30:22). *Answers* books may help.
- 12) Encourage preachers by paying them full salaries. (31:4).
- 13) Restore tithing (31:5-12): 'The Lord hath blessed his people.' (31:10).
- 14) Promote good, right, truth and holiness. (31:18,20).
- 15) Seek God wholeheartedly and do God's work wholeheartedly. (31:21).

II. Paul's Revivals. How did Paul promote revivals in Acts 13-28?

- 1) Churches to send out church planting, soul winning, Bible teaching missionaries. (13:1-3)
- 2) Select trainee missionaries to go with them (Mark in Acts 13:5; Timothy in Acts 16:1-4)
- 3) Preach to people who desire to hear the Word of God. (13:7).
- 4) Rebuke error when you meet it. (13:8-11).
- 5) Look for God-conscious people to preach to. (13:14-16).
- 6) Tell people to turn from vanities to the Living God. (14:15).
- 7) Teach many people God's Word. (14:21,22; 15:35).
- 8) Train and ordain pastors in every church started. (14:23).
- 9) Report back to sending church to encourage people & recruit more missionaries. 14:27,28
- 10) Refute false doctrines properly. (15:1-).
- 11) Revisit churches started to encourage them. (15:36-).
- 12) Establish churches in the faith. (16:4,5).
- 13) Baptise converts immediately. (16:14,15; 16:30-34).
- 14) Reason with people from the Scriptures on the proof of Jesus Christ's death, resurrection and Messiahship. (17:1-4; 17:10-12; 18:4,5; 19:26).
- 15) Preach at every opportunity. (17:15-17).
- 16) Train promising Christians, eg: Apollos (18:24-28).
- 17) Train orphan Christians, eg: John's disciples (19:1-7).
- 18) Separate the disciples from error and false doctrines. (19:8-10).
- 19) Get believers to burn evil objects from their unsaved days. (19:11-20).
- 20) Spend blocks of quality time teaching disciples in each area. Two years at Ephesus (19:10); three months in Greece (20:1-3); a long time at Antioch (14:26-28).
- 21) Train the Pastors in a pastors school or conference. (20:17-35).
- 22) Write Bible messages to churches to edify and equip them to serve God better (28:30,31)

III. A Modern Revival: First Baptist Church of Hammond, Indiana, USA, and Hyles-Anderson Bible College are the closest modern-day examples I have seen which apply these revival principles. I wholeheartedly recommend Hyles-Anderson Bible College to any young man or woman considering Bible College, for the following reasons:

- 1) Their intense evangelistic atmosphere. All faculty and students are required to go soul winning weekly and bring these converts to the First Baptist Church on their buses. Over 10,000 new converts were baptised each year since 1996 after each Sunday service.

- 2) Their Biblically-sound Fundamental Doctrinal emphasis:
They believe in a literal hell with fire and brimstone.
They stand for the King James Bible as the only inerrant English Bible.
They stand for the local New Testament Church as the only true church.
They believe in redemption through the blood of Christ, salvation by grace through faith alone, and the premillennial Second Coming of Jesus Christ. (Acts 2:42).
- 3) Their Separatist Position: Absolutely no drinking, smoking or dancing is allowed. No student may attend Hollywood movies, play cards or participate in questionable amusements. They do not fellowship with liberals, the world or apostasy. (Romans 16:17)
- 4) Their High Moral Standards and Old-fashioned Discipline: Young ladies are not allowed to leave Campus unchaperoned. Young men and young ladies may not date alone in cars. Absolutely no hand-holding or other intimacies are allowed between the sexes. There are date nights with bus transportation and adequate chaperones provided by the College. Student insubordination is absolutely forbidden. (I Corinthians 7:1).
- 5) Their Modest Dress Code: Skirts above the knees are not allowed. Men must wear neckties to class and have short haircuts. Young ladies may not wear shorts or slacks.
- 6) Their Emphasis on Manners, Courtesy and Culture: They oppose pagan humanism of many Colleges. They teach courtesy, proper manners, Christian grace and refinement of how young people should conduct themselves to glorify Jesus Christ. (I Peter 3:8).
- 7) The Practical: They blend the best scholarship with the best practical teaching possible. Young preachers are taught how to start soul-winning churches, how to build church buildings, how to borrow money from lending institutions, how to raise money and adopt a budget, and how to organise, operate and perpetuate a New Testament Church. Every student who has left our church to study at Hyles-Anderson College has returned far more trained, mature, equipped and loyal to Christ and to our church than when they left. They increased in love, fellowship and appreciation to me as their sending Pastor.
- 8) Their Local Church Emphasis: God's program for service today is in the local New Testament Church. They are committed to training preachers who will build Bible-believing, fundamental, separated, soul-winning churches. They also aim to train pastors, evangelists, song leaders, youth workers, bus directors, missionaries, Christian school teachers and administrators, who can enter the ministry upon graduation.
- 9) Their strong three-fold emphasis on:
 - a) The students' spiritual life and personal walk with Jesus Christ. Every teacher is a dedicated Christian and consistent soul-winner.
 - b) The strong academic curriculum teaches how to reach the masses, and what to teach and preach to those reached.
 - c) The practical 'how to do it' side of church ministries which have worked in First Baptist Church when applied elsewhere.
- 10) Proven Results in First Baptist Church which has:
 - a) A church membership of over 100,000 believers.
 - b) Over 10,000 baptisms per year for the last 5 years.
 - c) Over 1,000 pastors and missionaries trained, now serving in USA and overseas.
 - d) Over 1,000,000 people in Chicago claim to have been saved through First Baptist's ministry and have walked the aisle to confess Jesus Christ publicly as their Saviour.
 - e) Their Annual Pastors School every March since 1967 attracts about 10,000 pastors and workers to train, motivate and reinvigorate them to win the world for Christ.
 - f) Over 2,200 full-time students attend Hyles Anderson College. Campus accommodation
 - g) Visitors are greatly impressed with their Christian love, warmth, commitment, zeal & manners shown to each other & to visitors. All is done very well & professionally.

I recommend people training at Hyles Anderson College. Order an application packet from: Admissions Dept; Hyles Anderson College, 8400 Burr Street, Crown Point, Indiana, USA, 46307.
Phone: 1-219-365-4031 or **Fax:** 1-219-365-2029. Why not visit Pastor's School in March 18-21?

46. 47 SIGNS OF CHRIST'S RETURN FULFILLED SINCE 1940

Question: How do we know the Bible is true?

Question: How do we know that Jesus Christ is the only true way to God and heaven?

Answer: Because the Bible is the only book in the world that accurately predicts the future.

Anybody can write a religious book and claim that it is from God. But no man can predict the future in great detail with 100% accuracy as the Bible does.

The Bible contains hundreds of clear prophecies about Jesus Christ's first coming, every one of which came true.

The Bible also contains hundreds of clear prophecies about events surrounding Jesus Christ's second coming. Many of these prophecies have been fulfilled since 1940.

This leads us to conclude that Jesus Christ's second coming may be close.

God challenges all religions to prove that they are from God, by predicting future events:

“Show the things that are to come hereafter (in the future), that we may know that ye are gods.” Isaiah 41:23.

If a religion cannot accurately predict the future, then it is not from God, but is false, man-made, and must be rejected.

Challenge: Consider how the Bible has successfully predicted these 20th Century events:

1. **Travel** will increase. “seal the book, to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, knowledge shall be increased.” Daniel 12:4. The time of the end will see an increase in the number of people travelling to and fro around the world. With the invention of airplanes, cars, trains and ocean liners, cheap world-wide travel is possible for most people. These inventions are unique to the 20th Century. Before 1900 few people traveled outside their country.

2. **Knowledge** shall increase in the time of the end:

“Seal the book to the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.” (Daniel 12:4). The time of the end will see a great increase in knowledge.

The 20th Century has seen an enormous increase in man's knowledge because of so many scientific and technological advances. 20th Century inventions confirming this include: electricity, electronics, computers, nuclear energy, space travel, satellite communications, telephone, internet, TV, jet travel, medical advances, radio and space telescopes, military technology, ‘smart’ bombs, many new chemical compounds, drugs to treat most diseases, motor cars, iphone, GPS, credit card, calculator, printing press, radio, ATM, fridge, robots, TV, trains, light globe, etc.

3. **World population** shall greatly increase. “The number of the army was...200 million.” Rev 9:16. This army will come from beyond the Euphrates River, possibly China, and will kill one third of mankind. Only 20th Century China has the ability to raise an army of 200 million soldiers. As of the year 2018, China's population is about 1.39 billion people. Never before could any nation raise an army this size

4. **False religions** will increase. When Jesus was asked ‘What shall be the sign of thy coming?’ He replied: “Take heed that no man deceive you. For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.” (Matthew 24:3-5).

Here, we see that the first sign Jesus spoke of was religious deception by false Christs.

Today we have so many false religions and religious deception that this prophecy has clearly been fulfilled. It is estimated that over 3000 cults exist in the world today. All these have a book other than the Bible as sole authority, a gospel of good works rather than Jesus Christ for salvation, and a founder other than Jesus Christ. Mormons put Jesus' name in their title.

5. **Evil** shall increase. “In the last days, perilous times shall come.” 2 Timothy 3:1-5.

God says, “I will **punish** the world for their **evil**.” (Isaiah 13:11).

“The LORD cometh out of his place to **punish** the **inhabitants of the earth** for their **iniquity**.” (Isaiah 26:21).

Examples of modern wickedness include: witchcraft; murder of unborn babies; same-sex marriage; widespread drug addiction; violent movies; internet and magazine pornography; terrorist bombings; hostage taking; blowing up passenger planes; schoolyard massacres; genocide of Pol Pot killing 2 million people in Cambodia; Stalin starving 30 million Ukrainians in WWII; Communist persecution of minorities over 70 years; Hitler gasing 6 million Jews in WWII slave camps; widespread political bribery and corruption.

Moral conditions today match those predicted in the last days in 2 Timothy 3:1-5.

“This know also that in the **last days** **perilous times** shall come. For men shall be:

- a) Lovers of their own selves (self-centred)
- b) Covetous (greed for money and power is everywhere)
- c) Boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents
- d) Unthankful – to God and others for blessings
- e) Unholy – people loving sin and caring little about God
- f) Without natural affection – abortion is against a mother’s natural love for her baby
- g) Trucebreakers, false accusers
- h) Incontinent – lacking sexual control
- i) Fierce – terrorists and brutal dictators
- j) Heady – given to intoxication by alcohol or drugs
- k) Lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God – people prefer TV, sport, vacations, entertainment, rather than God, the Bible and Church.

God says of these. “From such TURN AWAY.”

6. **Missiles** with “**tails** like **serpents** (rocket exhaust) & **heads** that **hurt** (explosive heads).” Rev 9:17-19

These are some of the weapons used by the 200 million man army coming from the East described in Revelation 9:17-19 as having “**tails** like serpents (rocket exhaust) and **heads** that hurt (explosive warheads).” Rockets and missiles are a basic weapon of modern warfare.

They were only developed in WWII. How was this known in 96 AD?

Examples include: a) The US “MX” ICBM each contains 10 nuclear warheads.

b) Each of 30 US Trident submarines is 170 metres long, and carries 24 Trident missiles, each tipped with up to 17 nuclear warheads. This gives a total of up to 408 nuclear missiles per sub, enough to destroy more than 100 major cities in one blow



7. **Nuclear** weapons of mass destruction shall be invented.

Before Christ returns, man will discover the power to destroy the earth. One reason that Christ returns is to stop man destroying the earth.

“And should destroy them which destroy the earth” (Revelation 11:18).

“For then shall be great tribulation . . . and except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved.” (Matthew 24:21,22).

“I will shew wonders in the heavens & in the earth, blood, fire & pillars of smoke.” Joel 2:30.

“the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left.” Isaiah 24:6.

Up until 1945, man could not destroy the earth with weapons such as guns, spears & swords. Since 1945, with the invention of atomic and hydrogen bombs, entire cities can be destroyed in minutes. Scientists estimate that a major nuclear war could kill over 500 million people initially, but another 4,000 million people could starve to death in the next year due to nuclear winter. This would be caused by smoke from nuclear fires preventing sunlight from reaching the ground. Farming could stop and worldwide famine could result. Nuclear winter could also devastate the earth’s ozone layer, permitting more harmful UV radiation to enter the earth. (World Book Encyclopedia)



8. **Global government, economy and internet.** “He causes all...to receive a mark in their right hand or in their foreheads, that no man might buy or sell save he that had the mark, name or number of the beast. His number is 666.” Revelation 13:16-18.

To cause “ALL” people to receive this mark in order to buy and sell, requires a global government, a global electronic fund transfer computer system accessed by a microchip, and a global economy. The only missing part is a global government to enforce this implanted microchip fund transfer system.

9. **Artificial intelligence (AI).** “He had power to give life to the image of the beast, that it should speak.” Rev. 13:15. AI software understands human speech and speaks. It includes computer science, linguistics, etc. This includes robots that communicate with people.

10. Electronic fund transfer at point of sale (EFTPOS) shall be invented.

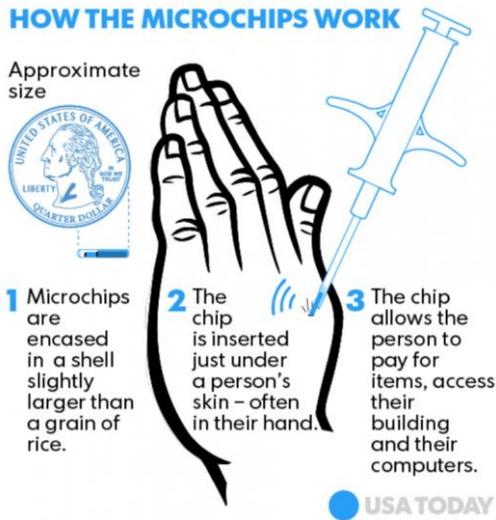
Today, using your credit card you can purchase goods at most shops by inserting your card into a machine that electronically transfers money from your account to the shop's account as payment for goods purchased. The Bible predicts that a time will come when people will receive a mark or a number known as "666" implanted in their right hand or forehead, as the method of buying and selling. This number "666" may well be an 18 digit bank account number contained in a smart electronic chip implanted under the skin, which specifies every person's bank account in the world.

This system is already available today and is known as "implantable biochip technology". It is used to identify dogs and other animals. Some people are already receiving microchips in their right hands for identification purposes.

How did the Bible know this in 96AD? Revelation 13:16-18 states that:

"He causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand or in their foreheads. And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, of the number of his name . . . the number of the beast . . . is 666."

11. Implantable Biochips.



12. Satellite TV.

This is described in Revelation 11:8-10 when people all over the world see the two witnesses' dead bodies lying in the streets of Jerusalem for 3½ days.

"They of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three and a half days...." (Revelation 11:9). This is possible today by satellite TV and internet TV.

13. Europe will unite as a world power as the European Union (EU). 5 world empires are Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome and Revived Rome (EU). Daniel 2:19-49.

After Babylon conquered Israel in 606 BC, the "times of the Gentiles" began. God told the prophet Daniel that 4 great world empires would rise and fall before God's Kingdom would be set up on earth. These four empires are Babylon (606-536 BC), Medo-Persia (536-330 BC), Greece (330-67 BC), Rome (67 BC -) and a final European power that would be like and rise from the earlier Roman Empire. The vision of these empires looked like a statue of a man. The vision is explained in Daniel 2:19-49 and represented as follows:

When the European Union becomes a world power, Jesus Christ will return and set up His Kingdom on earth.

“in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed.” (Daniel 2:40-44).

A similar verse states that when Israel is built up as a world power, Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, will appear in His glory:

“When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory.” (Psalm 102:16).

This European Union will, under a future President, known as the Antichrist, confirm a seven-year treaty with Israel. America’s pro-Jewish position is pushing Palestinians towards Europe as a preferred peace broker. Western European nations have united under the Treaty of Rome (1957-58) thus setting up the European Economic Community (EEC). The Maastricht Treaty (1993) transformed the EEC into the European Union (EU) creating European citizenship, with economic and monetary union. The Amsterdam Treaty (1997) integrated Central and Eastern Europe into the EU. The EU includes 28 countries as of 2018. These are: Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Ireland, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Spain, Slovakia, Slovenia, Sweden and the United Kingdom. This gives a modern Revived Roman Empire as predicted in the Bible (Daniel 2:19-49).

Today, the European Union has a:

- a) European Parliament, of 766 members from 28 countries, represent 503 million Europeans
 - b) European currency, the Euro as of 1st January 1999.
 - c) European army, known as NATO, with a membership of 28 European countries.
 - d) European President appointed by secret ballot of members of the Parliament.
- Only the 20th century has seen all of Europe unite since 450 AD.



14. EU Muslim migrants: “they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another.” Daniel 2:43. Due to the displacement of refugees from the Syrian war, many Muslims have migrated to Europe in search of a better life. Many poverty-stricken Muslims from North African countries have migrated to Europe to access Europe’s social welfare system. These Muslim migrants believe and live by the Quran’s commands to commit Jihad against “infidel” Europeans as their ticket into paradise. As of 2018, there are about 30 million Muslims in Europe, about 6% of the population. These Muslims refuse to assimilate into European, Western, Christian values. Instead, many live in Muslim “no-go” zones where they enforce Sharia Islamic laws and reject European culture. It is very clear that these Muslim immigrants “mingle themselves with the seed of men (Europeans) but shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.” Daniel 2:43. Their Islamic culture is as weak as clay, due to their god “Allah” being Satan who “weakens the nations.” (Isaiah 14:12). Islam will never assimilate with Christianity, because the Quran does not understand how Jesus is the Son of God (Q 6:101) or part of the Trinity.

15. Common sins of today are prophesied: “Neither repented they of their murders (abortion), sorceries(drugs), fornication, thefts.” Revelation 9:21.

After the 200 million man army kills 33% of mankind, the following is said of the people who survive this nightmare:

“Neither repented they of their murders (abortions and violence), nor of their sorceries (drugs), nor of their fornication (sex outside marriage), nor of their thefts (stealing).”

a) Today, the murder of millions of unborn babies (abortion) has been legalized in most countries. Percentage of abortions per 1000 women aged 15-39 are: Australia (17%), UK (20%), US (20%), Canada (19%), China (26%), Cuba (46%), Greenland (85%), Israel (14%), South Korea (19%), Russia (37%), Sweden (25%), France (20%), Germany (9%). Source: www.johnstonsarchive.net/policy/abortion.

b) Today, millions of people are taking drugs for pleasure and anti-depressants. Anti-depressants have over 2000 bad recorded side-effects. (youtube: Marketing of madness.)

c) Today, fornication or sex outside marriage is very common. Fornication also includes homosexuality. Same-sex marriage is legalized in many countries. God strongly disapproves of these sins. “abstain from fornication....the Lord is the avenger of all such.” 1 Thess. 4:3-8.

d) Today, thefts, stealing or financial corruption is everywhere. Theft is seen in excessive government taxation, crooked builders, retirement fund managers charging fees for no service and scam marketers.

16. Most churches are lukewarm, rich & increased with goods, don’t know they are blind.

“Because thou art lukewarm and neither cold nor hot, I will spue thee out of my mouth.

Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked (17).”

Revelation 3:14-19.

Modern Christendom is accurately predicted as being

a) lukewarm, neither cold nor hot spiritually,

b) rich and increased with goods,

c) not knowing that it is wretched, miserable, poor, blind and naked, that is, blind to itsspiritual poverty. (Revelation 3:14-19), and

d) asleep: “While the bridegroom (Christ) tarried, they all slumbered and slept.” (Matthew 25:5). This well describes most sleepy 20th Century churches where very few preachers tell people about the signs of Christ’s return being fulfilled daily, the events of Christ’s return, or how to be saved from hell. Many clergy prefer to entertain people with rock music, dancing

girls, flashing lights and telling people what they want to hear, rather than warn them to reject and separate from false doctrine. Many churches are not preaching sound Bible doctrine or winning souls to Christ. Many preachers are too scared to warn people about hell, God's judgment, or the tribulation to come on earth, in case they offend people. The current ecumenical movement of churches with false doctrines joining together will lead to a one-world religion that God describes as "the great whore" in Revelation 17.

17. Most Christians are asleep, ignore hell, tribulation: "While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept." Matthew 25:5.

Most churches and Christians know nothing about the signs of Jesus' second coming being fulfilled all around the world. Most churches don't lead people to Christ or disciple new Christians. They ignore hell, the 7 year tribulation and the Judgment Seat of Christ. They focus on money, pleasures and entertainment.

18. Scoffers in last days deny Bible prophecy (Amillennialism), Noah's flood (3:5), teach evolution (3:4). 2 Peter 3:3-8.

"Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts" 2 Peter 3:3.

a) Today, so many people believe and teach evolution, that they hate, reject and scoff at the Bible's teaching of God creating earth and the universe in 6 days, about 6000 years ago.

b) They scoff at and ignore the evidence for Noah's Flood in 2418BC.

c) So many churches scoff at and deny the clear Bible teachings of a literal rapture, 1000 year millennial rule of Christ on earth. They ignore Israel's return to their land as a fulfilment of Bible prophecies (Ezekiel 36:24). They believe "replacement theology" that the church has replaced Israel and that Israel has no future in God's plans.

19. More persecution of Christians.

"I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God". Revelation 20:4.

"I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:" Rev 6:9. As Islamic influence expands, groups like ISIS and Boko Haram believe that they must practise the Quran's commands for "Muslims should strike off the heads of unbelievers in the battlefield and massacre them." (Q47:4). Many Christians in the Middle East, Nigeria and Egypt are being killed for their Christian faith.

20. Many Iranian refugees:

"There shall be no nation where the outcasts of Elam (Iran) shall not come" Jeremiah 49:36. With the Islamic regime coming to power in Iran in 1979, their ruthless violence, torture, imprisonment and killing of anyone deemed to be "un-Islamic" has forced millions of Iranians to flee Iran to every other country. The Ayatollah's have unknowingly fulfilled this Bible prophecy.

21. Iran will have an evil, anti-Christian government until Jesus returns.

"I will set my throne in Elam and will destroy from thence the king (Ayatollah) and the princes (Mullah's, Basij, Separ, Etalat), saith the LORD." Jeremiah 49:38. This evil Iranian government has spread terror, violence and oppression all over the Middle East against Jews, Christians and Sunni Muslims through Hamas, Hezbollah and Houthi rebels.

22. China's Belt and ROAD initiative (BRI) is a play for global power. Australian, 12May17 "the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared," Revelation 16:12.

China as the Kings of the East (Revelation 16:12) are predicted to cross a dried up Euphrates River, possibly to take the Middle East oil fields to fill the power vacuum created

after the Russian/Muslim armies are destroyed (Revelation 9:13-16).

This army will number 200 million men and will kill one third of mankind: “the number of the horsemen were 200 million (v 16); . . . and out of their mouths issued fire, and smoke and brimstone (v 17). By these three was the third part of men killed.” (Revelation 9:16-18).

Today, China is an economic power seeking more control of other nations through this “Belt and Road initiative” where they access Middle Eastern markets. It is promoted as economic, but it has military implications. China is also seeking to control many poorer nations by loans with strings attached (debt traps). China has little or no oil reserves of its own and would be tempted to go to war to secure what oil remains amongst a threatened and dwindling world supply.



23. The Hinder influence of the Holy Spirit in American Christians voting for Trump in the 2016 US elections, stopped the **One World, Globalist, Antichrist agenda** of the Democrats from getting into government in the White House. Today, many left-wing, atheist, globalists want to break down the independence of nation-states and make them support a world government. Donald Trump won the US Presidency due to Evangelical Christians voting for his Christian policies of anti-abortion, Christian judges, permitting church involvement in elections, anti-Islam, pro-Christian, pro-Israel, pro America and anti-globalism. When the Christians are taken out of the world at the rapture, the left-wing, globalists will take power and instal the antichrist and his one-world government. He will make his 7 year covenant with Isael and start the 7 year tribulation period.

“For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now **letteth** (hinders) will let (hinder), until he (Holy Spirit in Christians) be **taken out of the way** (at rapture of church). Then shall that Wicked be revealed..” 2 Thessalonians 2:7.

“he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: that no man might buy or sell save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.....666.” Revelation 13:16-18.

24. Jews returned to their land to form the state of **Israel** in 1948.

“I will gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land.” Ezekiel 36:24.

“I will open your graves,.... and bring you into the land of Israel.” Ezekiel 37:12.

“When the Lord shall build up Zion, **he shall appear in his glory**.” Psalm 102:16.

God has **re-established the nation of Israel** in their ancient homeland in the latter days.

The 20th Century has seen the return of many Jews to the ancient land of Israel from all parts of the world, resulting in the re-establishment of the modern state of Israel, and its entry to the United Nations in May 1948. As of the year 2000AD there are about 6 million Jews in Israel. God states through the prophet Ezekiel that Jews will return to their land in a condition of unbelief in Jesus Christ as their Messiah, but will later change their minds to receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and Messiah when He returns to rescue them from the Antichrist’s invading armies. The prophet Daniel (in Daniel 9:26) states that Israel’s Messiah at His first coming would be **killed** (“cut off”), then the Jewish **temple** and the **city** of Jerusalem would be destroyed (70AD). This proves Jesus Christ to be Israel’s Messiah.

25. Israel has been “brought back to their land from the sword” (Ezekiel 38:8) of 6 million Holocaust deaths by Nazi Germany. This states that Jews would be killed on a large scale just before they started returning to their land as a nation on 14 May 1948.

26. 1 million Jews left Russia for Israel from 1990-2000.

“I will say to the north, Give up; and to the south, Keep not back: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth;” Isaiah 43:6.

With the collapse of USSR and the Russian economy, many Russian Jews have left the financial hardships of Russia for a new life in modern, free, and prosperous Israel.

This fulfils another Bible prophecy where God says:

“Fear not; for I am with thee: I will bring thy seed from the east (Yemen, Arabia) and gather thee from the west (Europe, USA, Britain): I will say to the north (Russia) “Give up”; and to the south (Ethiopia) “Keep not back”: bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth.” (Isaiah 43:5,6).

Since Israel’s founding as a nation in May 1948, God has regathered many Jews from the East (Yemen, Arabia, Iraq, Iran), from the West (Europe since the WWII holocaust, Britain, USA), from the North (Russia and Eastern Europe), and from the South (Ethiopian Jews known as Falashas, and South Africa).

27. Israel shall be militarily superior to Egypt.

“The land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt, every one that maketh mention thereof shall Be afraid in himself.” (Isaiah 19:17).

How has this prophecy been fulfilled? On four occasions Egypt declared war against Israel, and in each war Israel quickly and convincingly smashed the Egyptian military.

i) War of Independence: 29 November 1947-24 February 1949.

ii) The Sinai War: 29 October -5 November 1956.

iii) The Six Day War: 5-10 June 1967.

iv) The Yom Kippur War: 6-25 October 1973.

28. Egypt will be a **base kingdom** (Ezekiel 29:14,15). Today, Egyptian population is 20% illiterate, 12% unemployed, Islamic, unstable, lost 4 wars against Israel, is struggling with Islamic terrorists, anti-Christian, and depends on foreign aid..

29. Israel shall rebuild the waste cities and inhabit them.

“the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be built.” (Ezekiel 36:10,11).

“I will settle you after your old estates.” (Ezekiel 36:10).

“I will multiply men among you, all the house of Israel, even all of it: and the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be builded.” (Ezekiel 36:11).

“Today, all throughout Israel there is a massive building program of houses to accommodate 70,000 new Jewish immigrants per year”. The Jerusalem Post, 2 May 1998:

“Israel will triple its built-up space by 2020 as it races past every other developed country in Its rate of population growth.” This has been fulfilled in the last 20 years.

30. Israel shall be tilled, planted and fruitful agriculturally.

“Behold, I am for you, and I will turn unto you, and ye shall be tilled and sown.” Ezekiel 36:9

“I will multiply the fruit of the tree, and the increase of the field. . . “ (Ezekiel 36:30).

“The desolate land shall be tilled, whereas it lay desolate in the sight of all that passed by.”

“They shall say, this land that was desolate is become like the Garden of Eden.” (Ezekiel 36:34,35).

“The desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.” (Isaiah 35:1).

Today if you visit Israel, you will notice rose bushes everywhere, fruit trees, eucalypt trees and much tilled land cultivated as farms.

31. Muslims want Jerusalem:

“I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people.” Zechariah 12:3.

Muslims want control of Jerusalem because they think that Mohammad dreamed that he went from there to heaven on a horse. So all the Muslim majority countries vote against Israel in the UN for this reason. Biblically ignorant Western countries seek to pacify Muslims by voting against Israel to preserve their trade benefits with Muslim nations.

32. UN resolutions condemn Israel:

“Every tongue that shall arise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn’ Isaiah 54:17.

The first part of this prophecy has been fulfilled by many nations in the United Nations Council meetings arising to speak words of judgment and condemnation against Israel for defending the land that God has given her. Many nations in the UN have consistently voted against Israel. The only nations that vote in favor of Israel are the USA and some small Pacific Islands. From 2006-2016, the UN Human Rights Council, passed 68 out of 135 resolutions against Israel. From 2012-2015, the UN General Assembly passed 83 out of 97 resolutions against Israel. UNESCO adopts about 10 resolutions a year against Israel.

The second part of this verse will be fulfilled in the Millennium after Christ returns, when Israel, as the chief nation on earth, will condemn those nations that voted against her.

“The nations shall see and be confounded at all their might.” (Micah 7:16) .

“The nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted.” (Isaiah 60:12).

33. Muslims hate Israel:

“You had a perpetual hatred and shed the blood of the children of Israel.” Ezekiel 35:5.

This Muslim hatred of Israel is due to Muslims belief in the Quran’s and Hadith’s anti-Jewish statements, such as “People of the book are the vilest of all creatures” (Q 98:6).

Muslims in Gaza and the West Bank teach their children from kindergarden to hate Jews and kill Jews to take the land of Israel.

34. God calls Yassar Arafat, Abbas, the Palestinians and nations that claim Israel’s high places (Jerusalem, Hebron, Golan, West Bank) as “ours” as “the enemy.”

At a Fatah rally on 25 June 2000, Arafat made threats of a renewed uprising, shouting, “Palestine is ours, ours, ours ! We have a few weeks left ahead of us and at the end of it we Will declare statehood . . . with its capital Jerusalem.” (ICEJ News 26 June 2000).

Ezekiel prophesied 2600 years ago that Israel’s neighbors would say these very words which Arafat said in June 2000:

“Thus saith the LORD God; Because the enemy hath said against you, Aha, even the ancient high places are ours in possession (v 2); that ye might be a possession unto the residue of the heathen, and ye are taken up in the lips of talkers . . . (v 3) which have appointed my land into their possession . . . with despiteful minds (v 5). Surely the heathen that are about you shall bear their shame.” (v 7). (Ezekiel 36:2,3,7). Notice several prophecies that have recently come true within this prophecy:

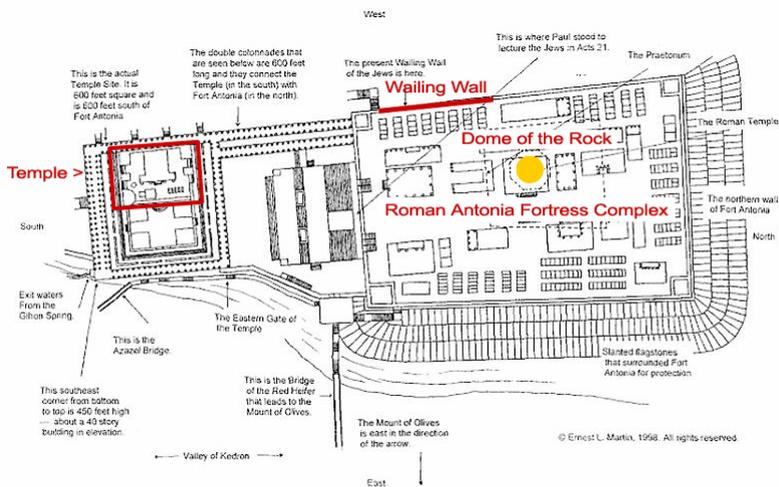
- a) The ancient high places of Israel are Jerusalem, Hebron, Bethlehem, Nazareth, Golan Heights, all of which are claimed by Arafat as belonging to the Palestinians or Syria. (v 2).
- b) The phrase “lips of talkers” describes how the Palestinians seek to gain control of these ancient high places by “negotiation” and by the “peace process” where they claim control over this land in exchange for peace (v3). “I will gather all nations who have parted my land.” Joel 3:2.
- c) The phrase “with despiteful minds” perfectly describes the malice, cruelty and anger that Palestinians have for Israel as seen in the exploding car bombs, car ramming and in educating Palestinian school children to hate Israel.
- d) The phrase “appointed my land into their possession” describes how Israel has been pressured by Clinton, Bush, Obama, Arafat and Abbas to give up land that God says belongs to Israel.

35. Muslims aim to “wipe Israel off the map”: “Let us cut them off from being a nation.” Psalm 83:4-18

This is regularly stated by the leaders of Iran, Gaza, PLO and ISIS saying “Death to Israel.”

36. Jewish Temple will be built in Jerusalem (holy city). “Rise and measure the temple of God” Revelation 11:1,2. The Temple Institute in Israel has advanced preparation to rebuild the temple. They have bred red heifers to sacrifice, trained the priesthood and built the vessels and furnishings for the temple. See “The Temple Institute” on youtube.

37. Mosque of Omar occupies “the court which is outside the temple...is given to the Gentiles.” Revelation 11:2. Today, the Muslim mosque of Omar occupies the same place that was the courtyard of Solomon’s and Herod’s temples in Jerusalem. Truly, this place is “given to the Gentiles” as prophesied. The Muslim Waqf, in Jordan, has administrative control of the Temple Mount. Herod’s Temple had restricted temple courts being that of priests, Israelites, women, and the gentiles.



38. Israel would **lose control of Jerusalem** “until the times of the gentiles be fulfilled.”

Luke 21:24. This prophecy of Jesus in 33AD has been fulfilled from the destruction of Jerusalem in 70AD until today, where Muslims control many parts of Jerusalem, such as the Mosque of Omar, Al Aksar mosque, Tomb of the Patriarchs, West Bank, etc.

39. Russia (Magog), **Iran, Turkey** (Togarmah), **Libya** will attack Israel from the mountains of Israel. Many **Muslim nations** shall **oppose Israel**.

The prophet Ezekiel predicted that in the latter years, a group of nations would invade the regathered nation of Israel. Russian and Iranian militaries are now present on the mountains of Israel, being in south Syria near the Golan Heights. These invading nations are stated in Ezekiel 38:5,6 as being:

- a) Persia, which today includes Iran and Iraq.
- b) Ethiopia, today including Ethiopia and Sudan.
- c) Libya
- d) Togarmah, which today is known as Turkey.

Each of these six nations today is strongly Muslim and anti-Israel. The Bible predicts that they will be led by Russia in their invasion of Israel, and that God will destroy these Muslim armies on the mountains of Israel by a great earthquake (38:19,20), by them fighting each other (38:21), by pestilence (maybe biological weapons v.22), by an overflowing rain (maybe a mudslide v.22), by great hailstones, and by fire and brimstone (maybe the same means that God used to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah).

It is interesting that these Muslim nations are all strongly allied to each other in their hatred of Israel. Many are already calling for a Jihad (holy war) against Israel. They surely will get a Jihad, but will be destroyed in the process, thus discovering that God is against Islam.

“Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee (five-sixths or 83% of the invading armies will be destroyed). (Ezekiel 39:1,2). Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel, thou and all thy bands, and the people that are with thee (v.4) . . . Thou shalt fall upon the open field; for I have spoken it, saith the Lord God.” (Ezekiel 39:1,2,4,5).

Israel will take seven years to burn the weapons (39:9), and will take seven months to bury all the dead army (39:11-14), so great will be the destruction.

40. They seek “to **take a spoil** (asset)”. Ezekiel 38:12. This spoil may be Israel’s Leviathan oil and gas fields.

41. Saudi Arabia (Sheba and Dedan), **USA** (merchants of Tarshish), **Britain protest** this invasion, but will not intervene militarily to support Israel.

“Sheba and Dedan (Saudi Arabia), and the merchants of Tarshish (Britain and USA), with all the young lions (British Commonwealth countries) thereof, shall say unto thee, Art thou come to take a great spoil? (Ezekiel 38:13). Thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the **latter days**.” (Ezekiel 38:16).

Notice that these nations today are militarily aligned with each other into two camps as God prophesied 2600 years ago. Saudi Arabia has closer ties with Israel against their enemy Iran. These events all happen AFTER Israel is back in their land, just as we see today.

This shows that we are now living in the latter days, and just before Jesus Christ’s return.

42. The “**Two-State Solution**” pushed by the UN triggers the Antichrist’s and world armies invasion of Israel at the Battle of Armageddon at the end of the 7 year tribulation, where he only takes **half** of Jerusalem. **Why does Antichrist only take “half” of Jerusalem?**

Because today, the “Middle East peace process proposes a “**2-state solution**” where the

Muslim Palestinians have a State in the West Bank with their capital being east Jerusalem and Israel having a state with its capital being west Jerusalem.

Israel will never agree to give up their control of Jerusalem to the PLO, so the Antichrist leads the world's armies to impose this "2-State solution" by force on Israel.

"I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle; and the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished; and half of the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the people shall not be cut off from the city." Zechariah 14:2.

Jesus returns and judges the nations for scattering Israel and "parted my land." Joel 3:2.

43. Passenger air travel brings rich US Jews to Israel. "Who are these that fly as... doves?" Isaiah 60:8,9. Passenger airplanes would be **invented** before Jesus Christ returns.

At the beginning of Christ's rule on earth, Israelites from all over the world will be regathered to the land of Israel. The prophet Isaiah asked who they were whom he saw flying as a cloud, like doves to their lofts or windows.

This is a clear reference to modern passenger jumbo jet air travel.

"Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows? . . . the ships of Tarshish (USA) first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them unto the name of the LORD thy God, and to His Holy One of Israel, because he hath glorified thee (Israel)." (Isaiah 60:8,9) .

Today there are about 7 million Jews in New York, USA. Many of these Jews are very wealthy. New York could be said to be the financial capital of the world because of the New York Stock Exchange in Wall Street.

This prophecy contains several interesting prophetic details:

- a) Today, air transport is by Jumbo jets, many of which are painted white like doves, and shaped like doves. By 1950, jet passenger planes were making daily non-stop flights across the Atlantic Ocean.
- b) Today, many Jews live in the USA (Tarshish), which is far away from Israel.
- c) Today, many American Jews are wealthy, as seen from them bringing their silver and gold with them back to Israel.

44. When Jesus returns, to him shall be given the gold (oil?) of Sheba (Saudi Arabia). Ps72:15
What is the "gold" of Saudi Arabia? It sounds like a reference to the Arabian oil fields.

45. Leaders of USA, Saudi Arabia, island nations bring gifts to Jesus when He returns.

"The kings of Tarshish (USA) and of the isles (UK, Australia, NZ, Philippines) shall **bring presents**; the kings of Sheba and Seba (Arabia) shall offer gifts." Psalm 72:10.

46. Jerusalem's East Gate will be shut as it is today: "This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened." Ezekiel 44:1,2.

Today if you visit Jerusalem's East Gate or Golden Gate, you will notice that it is completely bricked up so that nobody may enter it. Jesus Christ, who is the God of Israel, entered it on a donkey on His way to be crucified. The prophet Ezekiel foretold:

"Then he brought me back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looks toward the east and it was shut. Then the LORD (*Jehovah the Father*) said unto me: This gate shall be shut, it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter in by it; because the LORD (*Jehovah the Son*), the God of Israel, hath entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." Ezekiel 44:1,2.

Ottoman Sultan Suleiman the Magnificent walled it up in 1541, fulfilling Bible prophecy.

47. This gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness to all nations; then shall the end come. Matthew 24:14. Satellite TV, radio, internet, ex-Muslims do this.

Conclusion: We must teach all nations how to be saved, how to live by the Bible and the signs of Jesus Christ's second coming being fulfilled today.

47. THE SECOND COMING OF JESUS CHRIST TO EARTH

AIM: 1. To summarise Bible teaching on the Second coming.

2. To motivate Christians to fervently serve Christ in view of Christ's return at any time and our accountability to Him.

A. FACT OF CHRIST'S RETURN

Jesus promised it (John 14:1-3).

Angels promised it (Acts 1:8-11).

B. WHEN WILL CHRIST RETURN

No human or angel knows the day or the hour of the rapture (Matthew 24:36).

We can, however, observe some signs in the world today indicating that Christ's return may be near:

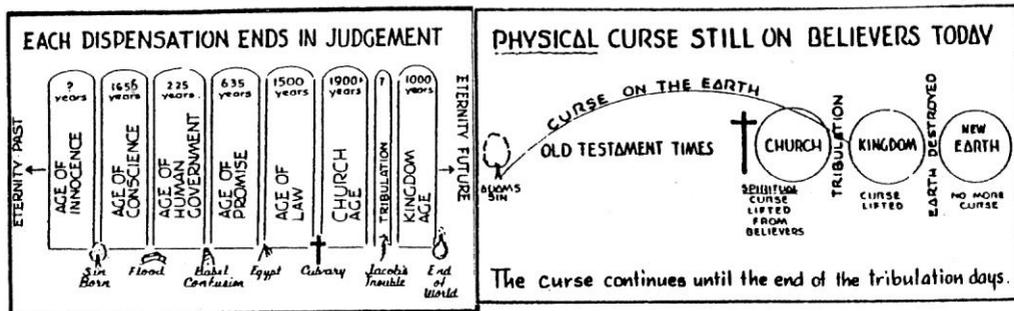
C. SIGNS OF CHRIST'S RETURN

1. Return of the Jews to the land of Israel (Ezekiel 37:1-14,21-28; Matthew 24:32,33; Joel 1:6,7).
2. Rise of Russia, Iran and Turkey as anti-Israel powers (Ezekiel 38-39).
3. Rise of 10-nation revived Roman Empire in Europe (Daniel 2:40-44; 7:7-28, Revelations 13).
4. Ability of man to destroy the earth (Revelations 11:18).
5. Increase in travel and knowledge in the time of the end. (Daniel 12:4).
6. Ecumenical movement including the World Council of Churches and Rome leading to a One-World religious system called "Mystery Babylon" in Revelations 17 and 18.
7. One world money system (Revelations 13:16-18).

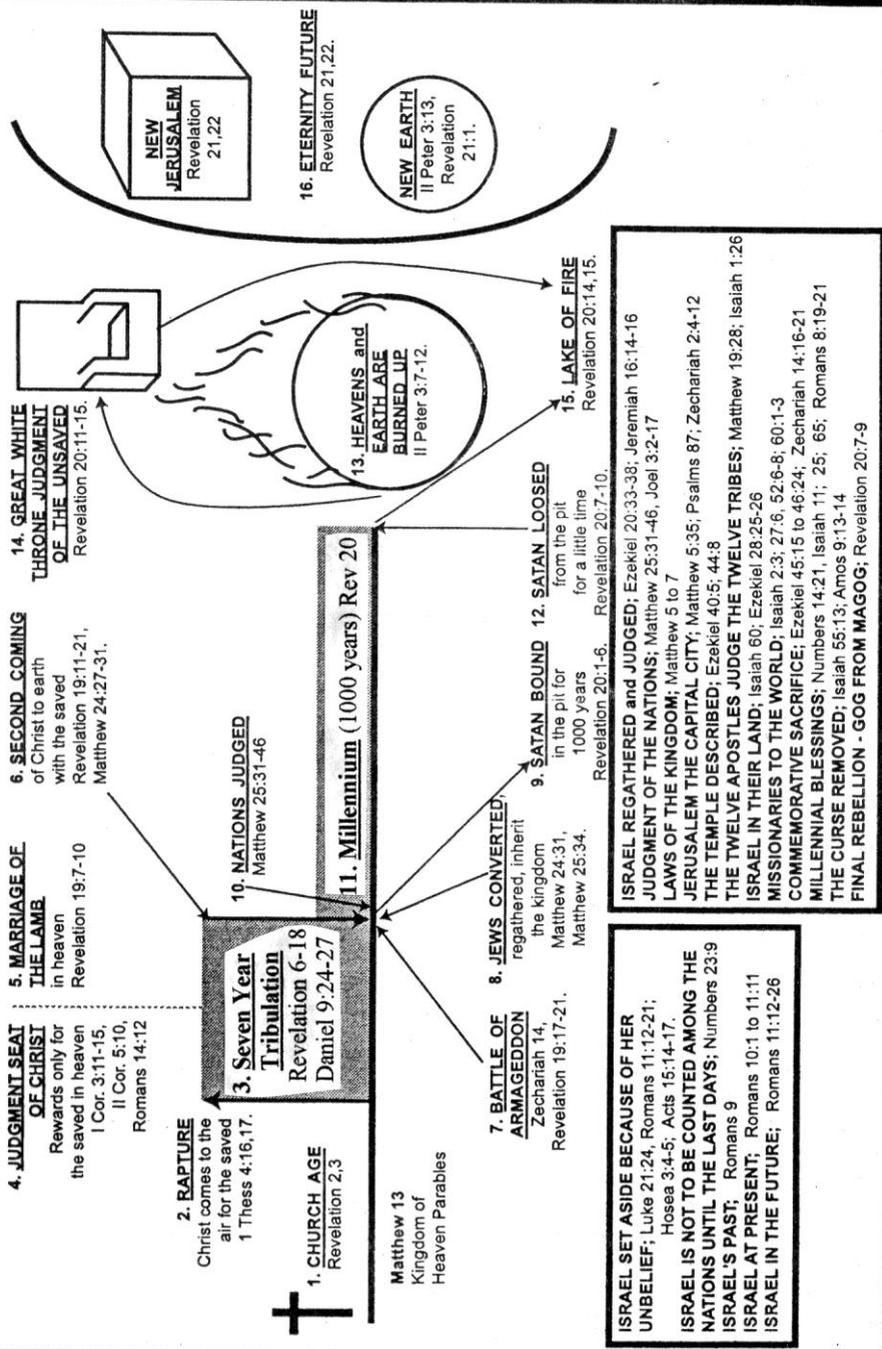
D. WHY STUDY CHRIST'S SECOND COMING?

1. About one quarter of the Bible refers to it.
2. Christ taught it. (Matthew 24-25)
3. It increases our desire to serve God in winning souls and making disciples, because Jesus may come today, requiring us to give account of our life to Him. (1 John 2:28; Matthew 24:42-44).
4. God blesses those who read the prophecy of Revelation. (Revelation 1:3).
5. It tells of ultimate victory for Christ and the believer, and his forces. This is why Satan doesn't want us to study and teach it.
6. It encourages us in our trials that the spiritual war will soon be over, guaranteeing us peace forevermore.

E. WHAT ARE THE ORDER OF EVENTS IN GOD'S PROGRAM?



WHAT ARE THE ORDER OF EVENTS IN GOD'S PROGRAM?



ISRAEL REGATHERED AND JUDGED; Ezekiel 20:33-38; Jeremiah 16:14-16
 JUDGMENT OF THE NATIONS; Matthew 25:31-46, Joel 3:2-17
 LAWS OF THE KINGDOM; Matthew 5 to 7
 JERUSALEM THE CAPITAL CITY; Matthew 5:35; Psalms 87; Zechariah 2:4-12
 THE TEMPLE DESCRIBED; Ezekiel 40:5; 44:8
 THE TWELVE APOSTLES JUDGE THE TWELVE TRIBES; Matthew 19:28; Isaiah 1:26
 ISRAEL IN THEIR LAND; Isaiah 60; Ezekiel 28:25-26
 MISSIONARIES TO THE WORLD; Isaiah 2:3; 27:6; 52:6-8; 60:1-3
 COMMEMORATIVE SACRIFICE; Ezekiel 45:15 to 46:24; Zechariah 14:16-21
 MILLENNIAL BLESSINGS; Numbers 14:21, Isaiah 11: 25; 65; Romans 8:19-21
 THE CURSE REMOVED; Isaiah 55:13; Amos 9:13-14
 FINAL REBELLION - GOG FROM MAGOG; Revelation 20:7-9

ISRAEL SET ASIDE BECAUSE OF HER UNBELIEF; Luke 21:24, Romans 11:12-21;
 Hosea 3:4-5; Acts 15:14-17.
 ISRAEL IS NOT TO BE COUNTED AMONG THE NATIONS UNTIL THE LAST DAYS; Numbers 23:9
 ISRAEL'S PAST; Romans 9
 ISRAEL AT PRESENT; Romans 10:1 to 11:11
 ISRAEL IN THE FUTURE; Romans 11:12-26

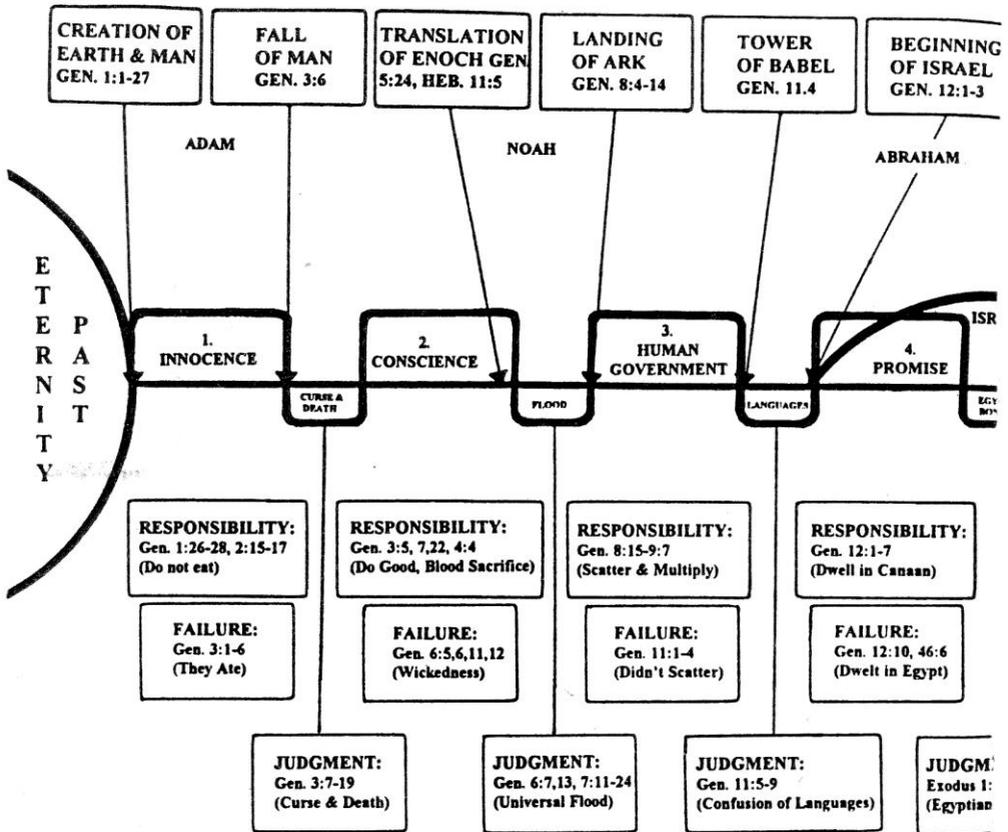
1. **THE CHURCH AGE** from the Apostles (Ephesians 4:7-12) to the Rapture.
The 7 Churches of Revelation 2 and 3 describe:
 - a) Church periods that this age is divided into.
 - b) Churches existing in John's time.
 - c) The spiritual condition of any church at any time.
 - d) The spiritual condition of any believer at any time. When Jesus begins a parable with: "The Kingdom of heaven is like unto..." He is describing what the Church age or the outward form of Christendom will be like from Pentecost to the Rapture.
2. **RAPTURE** is the catching away of all dead and living believers from earth to heaven.
This occurs when Christ comes to the air (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18; 1 Corinthians 15:51-54; 11 Thessalonians 2:1-12; Revelation 3:10; 4:1-2). This event ends the Church age.
Then commences the 7 year Tribulation with the Antichrist signing his 7 year covenant with Israel. The Rapture is the "blessed hope" of Titus 2:13 that believers are waiting for. Believers will be raptured before the Tribulation period, and will not pass through any of it because:
 1. We are looking for Christ to come (Titus 2:13). We are not looking for the Antichrist to confirm the covenant with Israel. (Daniel 9:27).
 2. Christ's coming is called a "blessed hope" and the Tribulation is not a blessed hope to look forward to going through.
 3. "God hath not appointed us to wrath . . ." (1 Thessalonians 5:9).
 4. The Church and John are raptured at Revelation 4:1,2 which is before the start of the Tribulation. (Revelation 6:1).
 5. The Tribulation is likened to Noah's Flood and the Judgment on Sodom and Gomorrah where God spared the righteous. (Matthew 24:37).
 6. God will keep the Philadelphian Church from (out of) the Tribulation period (Rev 3:10).
 7. If we are to be raptured midway or at the end of the Tribulation, we would know the day of Christ's return, which no man knows. (Matthew 24:35).
 8. 24 elders in Rev. 4:4 have "on their heads crowns of gold", only possible for resurrected bodies.
3. **THE 7 YEAR TRIBULATION** is the greatest time of trouble that Jews or the world have ever seen. It is:
 - a) Divided into 7 seals, 7 trumpets and 7 vials (bowl) judgments.
 - b) Described in Revelation 6-18.
 - c) Stated in Matthew 24:21-22 and Daniel 12:1.
 - d) Ruled by the Antichrist (II Thessalonians 2:3-12; Revelation 13; Daniel 7:19-27) from the 10 nation Revived Roman Empire in Europe.
 - e) Lasts for 7 years. Daniel 9:27 (1 week means 1 group of seven years, each with 360 days). In Matthew 24:21 the second half of the Tribulation is called the Great Tribulation. Revelation 11:1-3 states that it lasts 3 1/2 years, 42 months or 1260 days. It commences with the Antichrist placing the abomination of desolation in the rebuilt Temple at Jerusalem (Matthew 24:15 and Daniel 9:27) and the Antichrist persecuting the Jews.
4. **JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST** occurs after believers are raptured. It takes place in heaven during the first half of the 7 year Tribulation period. The quality of a believer's works after salvation are examined. He either receives rewards or suffers loss of rewards.
Are you living for Christ and eternity or for self and this life only? What does Christ think of you? What rewards or treasures have you laid up for yourself in heaven? (Matthew 6:19-21).
5. **MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB** (Revelation 19:7-10).
The Church is known as the Bride of Christ (Ephesians 5:23-33).
The marriage and marriage supper between Christ and all raptured saints occurs in heaven before Christ and His saints return to the earth for the Battle of Armageddon.
6. **SECOND COMING OF CHRIST TO EARTH**
 - a) He comes with the saved. (Zechariah 14:5).
 - b) He comes with lightning speed. (Matthew 24:27-31).
 - c) He comes 2520 days (2 x 1260 days) after Antichrist signs his covenant with Israel. Dan 9:27.

7. **BATTLE OF ARMAGEDDON** (Revelation 19:17-21; Zechariah 14:1-15).
 - a) At the end of the 7 year Tribulation, the Antichrist and armies of all nations gather around Israel to destroy Jews and to take Jerusalem. (Revelation 16:12-16).
 - b) Christ and all the saved then return from heaven (Revelation 19:11-16).
Christ defeats the armies of Antichrist instantly at the plain of Megiddo (Revelation 14:14-20). The geography is like a winepress, and blood flows three feet deep for 200 miles.
 - c) After victory at Megiddo and Bozrah (Isaiah 63:1-6) Christ comes and stands on the Mount of Olives, which splits east-west (Zechariah 14:4). He then enters Jerusalem through the now closed East-Gate (Ezekiel 43:1,2).
 - d) Christ will then be King over all the earth and the people that attacked Jerusalem will be plagued by what seems to be nuclear explosions, which will dissolve their flesh (Zechariah 14:12-15; Isaiah 24:5-6).
8. **JEWES ARE CONVERTED**
 - a) After being rescued by Christ following Armageddon, Jews notice the wounds in Christ's hands and realise that their ancestors crucified their long-awaited Messiah. (Zechariah 13:6).
 - b) This causes repentance and mourning, resulting in the Jewish people being saved by calling on Christ to be their Saviour. (Zechariah 12:10 and 13:9).
 - c) Jews all over the earth are then regathered into Israel. (Isaiah 11:11; 43:5-7; 60:8,9; Matt 24:31).
9. **SATAN IS BOUND** in the pit for 1000 years along with his angels. (Revelation 20:1-3).
10. **THE NATIONS OF THE WORLD ARE JUDGED** according to how they treated God's people during the Tribulation. The righteous (sheep) enter the Millennium, and the others (goats) enter everlasting fire. (Matthew 25:31-46).
11. **THE MILLENNIUM** or 1000 year reign of Christ starts when Christ returns to the earth.
What will this period be like?
 - a) Christ will regather all Jews to Israel (Isaiah 43:5-7).
 - b) Jerusalem will be the world capital, from where Christ rules the earth in person (Isaiah 2:1-4)
 - c) The Jews will become missionaries to the Gentiles (Isaiah 27:6; 61:6; Psalm 67:2).
 - d) Christ builds the Millennial Temple (Zechariah 6:12-15).
 - e) Animal creation will be changed (Isaiah 11:6-9 and 65:25).
 - f) Humans will live much longer (Isaiah 65:20-22; Zechariah 8:4), as long as trees, possibly 1000 years as before the Flood.
 - g) Peace and prosperity will characterise Christ's rule (Isaiah 2:4) as will universal knowledge of the Lord and private ownership (Micah 4:1-4).
12. **SATAN IS LOOSED** from his prison after the 1000 years and deceives the unsaved of the nations to invade Jerusalem. Fire from God devours them and Satan is then cast into the lake of fire forever (Revelation 20:7-10).
13. **THE HEAVEN AND EARTH ARE THEN BURNT UP WITH FERVENT (NUCLEAR LIKE) HEAT** (11 Peter 3:7-12).
14. **THE GREAT WHITE THRONE JUDGMENT** of the unsaved occurs where all the unsaved people are taken from hell and given immortal, resurrected bodies. This is the second resurrection or tare judgment. (Matthew 13:24-30,36-43).
They are then judged according to their works. Since the works that they have trusted in to gain God's acceptance fall short of Christ's perfect works, they are all cast alive into the.....
15. **LAKE OF FIRE** where they are tormented forever (Revelation 20:11-15).
16. **ETERNITY** then commences with a new heaven and new earth, as well as the New Jerusalem (1500 miles long, broad and high) coming down from God as the residence of the church (us) forever. (Revelation 21:22).

SATAN'S PATH
ISA. 14:12-15

JOB 1:7

EPH. 2:2



**THIS MAP SHOWS GOD'S "PLAN OF THE AGES" 2 Peter 1:20-21
FROM : ETERNITY PAST TO ETERNITY FUTURE God's Holy Word**

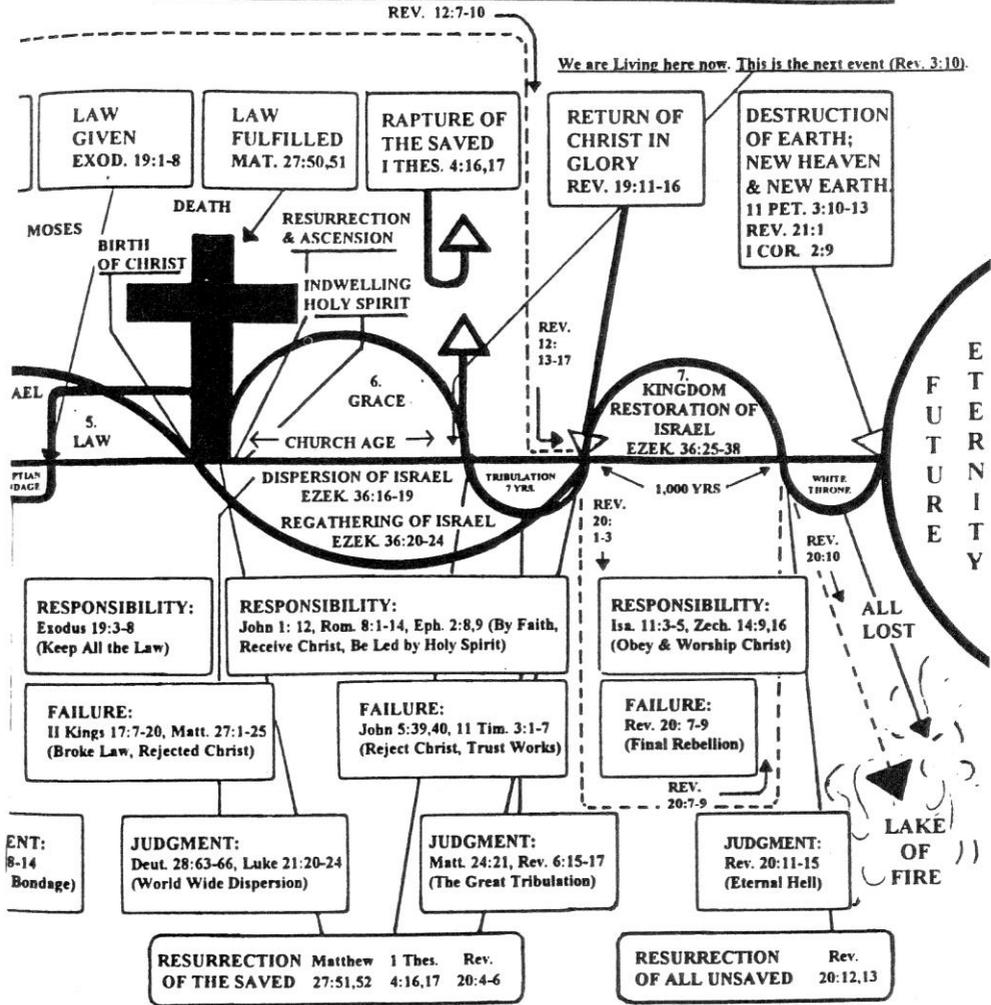
This map shows God's "Plan of the ages" from Eternity Past to Eternity Future as recorded in His inspired written word (II Pet. 1:20,21).

There are 7 dispensations in the outworking of God's overall eternal purpose (Eph. 1:9,10). In each man is given a specific test or responsibility; each ends in failure and this brings judgment. The overall revelation of the dispensational tests show that man is utterly *sinful and lost* (Rom. 3:10,23).

Salvation in every dispensation is by the GRACE OF GOD (un-deserved, un-earned gift) and is received BY FAITH. Some examples are Abel, Heb. 11:4; Enoch, 5:6; Noah, 7; Abraham, 8-19; Moses, 23-29. See also Eph. 2:8,9; Rom. 6:23.

We are now living in #6. Grace or Church age. This dispensation will end with the return of Christ. He will first return in the clouds to resurrect the DEAD IN CHRIST, to change the LIVING IN CHRIST and RAPTURE or receive them up together to Himself (John 14:1-3; I Thes. 4:16,17). This event MAY BE SOON—notice the *regathering of Israel*—SUDDEN (I Cor. 15:52); and a SEPARATION of the saved (born-again, in Christ; John 3:6,7; Rom. 8:1,9) from the *unsaved*. THOSE WHO REJECT CHRIST TO THE RAPTURE OR THEIR DEATH WILL NOT HAVE ANOTHER OPPORTUNITY (II Thes. 2:10-12; John 14:6)! Then after the 7 year Tribulation Judgment, Christ will return to the earth IN HIS GLORY with His saints to establish the 1,000 year Kingdom on the earth (Matt. 24:29,30; Rev. 19:11-20:6; Jude 14,15).

48. 7 DISPENSATIONS



The Tribulation will be God's wrath on *this* Christ rejecting world and men will beg the mountains to *fall on them* to hide them (Rev. 6:12-17). There will be wars and **AT LEAST 1/3 THE WORLD'S POPULATION WILL BE KILLED** (Rev. 6:4,8; 9:15-18)! Men will be scorched with *fire*, there will be *great earthquakes* and *100 pound hail*. Cities will fall and *every island and mountain will disappear. AFTER THE RAPTURE* (Rev. 3:10; 16:8, 9, 18-21).

The White Throne will be God's final judgment on all who have rejected His GRACE, BY FAITH salvation. They will be resurrected from all ages, judged, then cast into the Lake of Fire forever (Rev. 20:11-15).

NOW TWO QUESTIONS :

- #1. If the Rapture comes today, will you be taken?
- #2. Would you like to KNOW you will be with Christ? IF SO, PLEASE FILL OUT THE QUIZ ON THE BACK...

49. THE RAPTURE - Jesus Christ's Second Coming for the Church.

Bible Reading: 1 Thess 4:13-18; John 14:2,3; 1 Cor 15:51-53; Titus 2:13; Rev.3:10; 4:1,2; Isaiah26:19

Aim: To comfort and motivate one another with the truth of Christ's return to take us to heaven.

Introduction: Jesus Christ's return will be in two stages. One for His bride the Church, known as the "catching away" or "rapture". (1 Thess. 4:13-18). The rapture will be followed by a seven year period known as the Tribulation. This will begin with the Antichrist from Europe making a treaty with Israel and breaking it after three-and-a-half years. The last three-and-a-half years of the Antichrist's reign will be the Great Tribulation spoken of by Christ in Matthew 24:21. This will be followed by the second stage of Christ returning to earth with believers to rule the world in righteousness. Zech 14:1-5; Jude 14

Definition: The term "rapture" comes from the Latin word for "caught up" in I Thessalonians 4:17.

Before the seven year tribulation, Christ will descend from heaven, and catch up the Church to heaven to be with Himself. The Tribulation will then be unleashed on an unbelieving world.

The Scriptures teaching the "catching away" are as follows:

- a) I Thessalonians 4:16-18: "For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: & so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words."
- b) John 14: 2,3: Jesus said: "I go to prepare a place for you (v.2). And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself: that where I am, there ye may be also."
- c) I Corinth 15:51-53: "We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and...must put on immortality."

d) Titus 2:13: "Looking for that blessed hope (*rapture*), and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ." Rev 3:10; Rom 8:23; 13:11; Phil 3:20,21; 1 Thess 1:10; 5:9; 2 Thess 2:1

e) Revelation 4:1,2: John experienced the rapture: "After this I looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me: which said, Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter...and immediately....in heaven."

We may summarise the main events of the rapture from I Thessalonians 4:6-17, as follows:

- i) One day, Jesus Christ will descend from heaven and we will hear a shout, a voice and a trumpet.
- ii) All dead believer's bodies will be resurrected to rejoin their spirits and souls in the air.
- iii) All living believers will receive resurrection bodies, and be caught up to meet the Lord in the air.
- iv) We will receive immortal, resurrection bodies, a place Christ has prepared for us in heaven, comfort forever in the presence of Christ, and rewards promised in 2 Corinthians 5:10.

The rapture is called a comfort and a blessed hope. Notice several things about the rapture.

1. Rapidity of the Rapture = Immediately (I Corinthians 15:51,52).

"we shall all be changed in a moment (Grk: *atomos* 823), in the twinkling (Gk: *rhipe* 4493) of an eye."

The speed with which the rapture will occur is described by these two Greek words which mean:

a) "atomos" = without a cut, indivisible. This is the word from which "atom" is derived, meaning "that which cannot be divided." When referring to time it means "an indivisibly small instant of time; a point of time which cannot be divided." It means "immediately."

b) "rhipe" = a quick motion, such as a fling or toss. A blink, wink, jerk, or twinkle of an eye. The least duration of time. People will not have time to call on Christ for salvation, or to do what they planned. Believers must serve Christ now so that we won't be ashamed at His coming. (I John 2:28).

2. Reason For The Rapture = To keep the Church out of the Tribulation.

The Church will be caught out of the world to be kept from the 7 year Tribulation period. The rapture will be as unexpected as a thief in the night. (I Thess.5:2-4). "God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation (*deliverance from the tribulation wrath*) by our Lord Jesus Christ." I Thes 5:9. Christ said to the faithful, Bible-loving Philadelphia church, "Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from (Greek: 'ek' = out of) the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them which dwell upon the earth." (Revelation 3:10).

Christ will spare His bride from going through the wars, famines, Antichrist's persecutions, earthquakes, and other judgments that will come on an unbelieving world.

The purpose of the Tribulation is to bring Israel and unbelieving nations to repentance (Rev. 9:18-21).

In Revelation 6:8, 25% of the world's population are killed.

In Revelation 9:18, 33% of the rest are killed. This leaves only 50% of the world's population alive.

3. Requirement to be Raptured

Only those who have been saved by calling on Christ to save them from their sins, will be raptured.

"The dead in Christ shall rise first." (I Thessalonians 4:16).

"we (all living believers) which are alive and remain shall be caught up..." (v.17).

Q: Are you trusting Jesus Christ to save you, or your good works to gain God's acceptance?

Some people in this room may be left behind if Jesus Christ returned today.

Q: Would you be taken to be with Christ, or would you be left behind to enter the 7 year Tribulation?

Can you imagine what it would be like to be left behind?

a) You phone your Christian friends, and they are nowhere to be found.

b) The newspapers and television report millions of missing people.

c) Many driverless cars will have crashed on the roadside.

d) People will panic about their missing family and friends. They will demand an explanation. Was it the rapture predicted in the Bible? Antichrist will offer a false yet plausible explanation that many will believe (2 Thess. 2:8-12), maybe that UFOs took Christians who were resisting the new world order.

Q: Will you be saved and taken, or lost and left behind? Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour today.

4. Rewards after the Rapture.

Following the rapture, all Christians will appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ (2 Cor. 5:10; Romans 14:10,12; 1 Cor. 3:10-15) to receive rewards according to the quality of our service to Christ after salvation. Some Christians will suffer loss of rewards that they could have earned. (1 Cor. 3:15).

"every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour." (I Corinthians 3:8).

Q: Will you win rewards, or will you lose rewards?

5. Revelation of the Sons of God.

When Christ appears, we shall be just like Him, even though we may now appear unattractive and unimportant. We will have a glorious, immortal body just like Jesus Christ has now.

"Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not appear what we shall be; but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is." 1 John 3:2.

"For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us. For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God." Romans 8:18,19.

God has predestined every believer to be conformed to the image and likeness of Christ. (Romans 8:29)

6. Our Response to the Rapture.

"Every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself (sanctification), even as he is pure." 1 John 3:3.

Question: How should we now live? If we knew we'd be "caught up" next year, we should:

a) Live pleasing to God by reading and studying the Bible, and praying daily.

b) Learn How to win people to Christ so they'll be caught up to heaven and won't go through the Tribulation. Pastors should conduct a soul-winning training session this week. We want to rejoice with people in heaven who we have led to Christ on earth. We only have a short time to do soul-winning.

We are in a war for eternal souls now. Don't be lazy, but get busy rescuing people from hell. After the rapture you'll have no chance to pluck people from hell. You'll never see your unsaved family and friends again. You can rest forever in eternity, but now is the time to win souls to Christ.

a) Confess and forsake any known sins. 1 John 1:9.

b) Dedicate your life wholeheartedly and completely to winning souls and serving Jesus Christ.

7. "**Be ye also Ready**, for in such an hour as ye think not, the Son of Man cometh." (Matthew 24:44).

"Redeeming the time, because the days are evil." Ephesians 5:16.

Conclusion: Are you ready to face Christ? Are you saved? Are you winning souls daily or weekly?

Is there any known sin in your life that you need to confess and forsake? Do so today.

50. The JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST: How It Will Change Our Behaviour

Bible Reading: II Corinthians 5:10; Romans 14:10-12; I Corinthians 3:10-15; Colossians 3:23-25.

Aim: To let the Judgment Seat of Christ change our behaviour now.

Introduction: One day after the Rapture, every Christian must give an account to God of the way he has lived since his salvation. Our Christian lives will be “on display” (made manifest). This will determine **not** our salvation, but the **amount** of rewards we will receive when we get to heaven. “Lay not up for yourselves treasures on earth...but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven.” Matthew 6:19,20.

The Judgment Seat of Christ will be a place of:

1) Review – of our life from salvation to death.

It will show if we have lived for Christ and others, or for self.

Question: When Jesus returns, will I have a grudge against a friend?

Question: Will I have left my love for Jesus Christ, the Bible, souls, or the local church?

Question: If Christ came today, how many of the 19 commands in I Thessalonians 5:1,11-22 would I be obeying? “And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming.” (I John 2:28). It is as if God gives us a **block of land** (**foundation** of salvation in Christ-3:11) in heaven, but we build the **house** (12) by our work after salvation.

2) Reward

The Judgment Seat of Christ in Greek is “**Bematos** tou Xristou” (II Cor. 5:10) known as the Bema Seat.

i) The **Meaning** of the Bema Judgment: It was a raised platform in the middle of an Olympic arena where the judge sat. After the contests were over, the winners would assemble before the Bema seat to receive their rewards from the judge. It was not a condemning seat, but a reward seat. Losing the race didn’t mean execution, it only meant no reward. The Christian life is a race, and the divine umpire is watching every contestant. After the Church age has finished at the rapture, Christ will gather every Christian before the Bema Seat to examine our life’s work and to give the proper rewards to each.

ii) The **Fact** of the Bema Judgment.

“For we must all **appear** before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.” 2 Corinthians 5:10.

iii) The **Purpose** of the Bema Judgment.

- not to determine whether one enters heaven.

- not to punish believers for sins committed before or after salvation.

(See Psalm 103:10-12; Isaiah 38:17; 44:22; Micah 7:19; Hebrews 8:12).

- to **give account** to Jesus Christ of how we used our abilities, opportunities and responsibilities from the moment of our salvation. Hence:

a) In the **past**, God dealt with us **sinners**. (Ephesians 2:1-3; Romans 5:6-8).

b) In the **present**, God deals with us as **sons**. (Romans 8:14; I John 3:1,2; Hebrews 12:5-11).

c) In the **future**, God will deal with us (at the Bema Seat) as **stewards**. (I Corinthians 3:11-15).

iv) The **material** to be tested at the Bema Judgment.

At salvation, Christ becomes our foundation. (I Corinthians 3:11).

After salvation, we must build on this foundation. (I Corinthians 3:12-15).

God classifies believers works into 2 groups:

a) Those of **indestructible** and **eternal** value described as:

- gold = the trial of our **faith** (I Peter 1:7).

- silver = **wisdom** gained, favour with God (Proverbs 2:4; 3:14; 8:10; 22:1; Malachi 3:3).

- precious stones = **souls won** to Christ (Malachi 3:16,17).

b) Those **destructible** and **useless activities** of no eternal value are described as wood, hay and stubble. (I Corinthians 3:12-15).

Question: For what actions will we be rewarded at the Bema Judgment Seat of Christ?

1) How well we **treasure** other believers. Hebrews 6:10; Matthew 10:41,42.

2) How well we **submit** to authority and exercise authority over others. Hebrews 13:17; James 3:1.

3) How well we **use** our God-given abilities. I Peter 4:10; Luke 19:11-26; Matthew 25:14-29.

4) How well we **use our money**. I Timothy 6:17-19; I Corinthians 9:6,7.

- 5) How much we suffer for Jesus. Matthew 5:11,12; 10:29,30; I Peter 4:12,13; 2 Cor. 4:17; Rom. 8:18.
- 6) How well we use our time. Ephesians 5:16; Colossians 4:5; I Peter 1:17.
- 7) How well we run the particular race God chooses for us. Philippians 2:16; 31:13,14; I Cor. 9:24.
- 8) How well we control the old nature. I Corinthians 9:25-27.
- 9) How many people we witness to and win for Christ. Proverbs 11:30; I Thess. 2:19,20; Daniel 12:3.
- 10) How well we react to trials and temptations. James 1:2,3; Revelations 2:10.
- 11) How much we love the doctrine of Christ's return. II Timothy 4:8.
- 12) How faithful we are to God's Word and to feeding the flock of God. I Peter 5:2-4.

v) The **Results** of the Bema judgment:

- a) Some will receive rewards (I Cor 3:14). 5 crowns may be abilities we enjoy to glorify Christ. p266
- b) Some will suffer loss. (I Cor. 3:15).

vi) **What determines** whether we receive a reward?

a) **QUALITY**: "of what sort it is." (I Cor. 3:11-15 esp. v.13).

Would you prefer a handful of gold or a truckload of hay?

b) **MOTIVE**: Jesus may ask "Why did you serve Me?" To be seen of men (Matthew 6:1,2,5) or for:

- Love for Christ. II Cor. 5:14,15.

- Love for others. II Cor .5:11.

- Our works are to be judged. II Cor. 5:10.

c) We will be rewarded for WHAT WE ATTEMPTED. Matthew 25:21.

Did you invite anyone to church? Did you tell anyone how to be saved?

God calls us to be obedient and faithful.

3) **Re-evaluation** = to calculate the value of my life's effort again. Many things that seem big and important to us now, will seem small and worthless in heaven.

eg: The widow who gave 2 mites (2 x ¼ cents) gave more than the rich men.

"for unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required." Luke 12:48.

You are talented. God expects you to use your talents, not waste them.

4) **Recognition** = Many nobodies on earth now, will be somebodies in heaven.

Many somebodies on earth now, with be nobodies in heaven.

The rich man and the beggar Lazarus were reversed in status in eternity.

5) **Regret** of a life misspent and of opportunities wasted. If you don't abide in Christ you'll be ashamed.

"Now little children, abide in him: that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence and not be

ashamed. I John 2:28. "Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but

that we receive a full reward." 2 John 8. "Hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown."

Revelation 3:11.

The worldly minded, lazy, selfish Christian at the Judgment Seat of Christ will be very regretful.

6) **Rejoicing** of great rewards received by some. I Thessalonians 2:19,20.

"For the Son of man shall come in the glory of His Father with his angels; and then he shall reward

every man according to his works." Matthew 16:27.

"Behold I come quickly; and my reward is with me to give every man according as his work shall be."

Revelation 22:12.

Challenge:

a) **Christian**: Have you been living for Christ? Have you got sin or resentment in your life that you'd be ashamed of if you saw Christ today? Raise your hand if you need to get right with God?

b) **Lost**: Maybe you're not sure you are saved. You're not sure you'd go to heaven. You're not sure you know Christ as your Saviour and Friend. You will have no reward except hell, because the wages of sin is death. If you'd like to be saved, raise your hand and come out in the invitation so you can see how you may be saved.

I Corinthians 3:14-17 has 3 kinds of builders:

i) The **wise** builder (3:14): the studying, soul winning, Spirit-filled Christian. "If any mans work abide"

ii) The **worldly** builder (3:15): the carnal Christian "If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss"

iii) The **wicked** builder (3:17):the unsaved. "If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy

Question: To which group do you belong?

Judgements of the Great Tribulation

51.

The Seven Seals

1st Seal	White horse - rider has bow, crown given to him - went out conquering to conquer.	Antichrist
2nd Seal	Fiery red horse - rider given power to take peace from earth - given great sword to kill one another.	Conflict on Earth
3rd Seal	Black horse - rider has pair of scales in hand. Wheat and barley measured out in return for money - warning not to harm oil and wine.	Scarcity on Earth
4th Seal	Pale horse - rider's name - Death. Hades followed. Given power to kill 1/4 of earth with sword, hunger, death and beasts.	Widespread Death
5th Seal	Cry of martyred souls under altar wanting revenge - must wait till fellow servants and brethren, also martyred.	Persecution
6th Seal	Great earthquake - sun blackened, bloodlike moon, falling stars - sky recedes as scroll - mountains and islands move. People hide in caves, rocks and mountains.	Cosmic Disturbances

7th Seal	Silence in heaven - 1/2 hour. Fire thrown to earth - noises, thunderings, lightnings, earthquake	The Seven Trumpets
-----------------	--	---------------------------

1st Trumpet	Hail and fire mingled with blood thrown to earth. 1/3 trees burned, all grass burned.	Vegetation Struck
2nd Trumpet	Something like great mountain of fire thrown into sea (meteor?). 1/3 sea - blood, 1/3 living creatures in sea died and 1/3 of ships destroyed.	Seas Struck
3rd Trumpet	Great burning star like torch fell on 1/3 rivers and springs. Poisons 1/3 of waters with wormwood - many die from bitter waters.	Waters Struck
4th Trumpet	1/3 sun darkened, 1/3 moon darkened, 1/3 stars darkened, 1/3 day and 1/3 night did not shine.	Heavens Struck
5th Trumpet	Bottomless pit opened - smoke darkens sun and air - locusts (demons) given power like scorpions - harm men without seal of God on foreheads - 5 months torment - then death.	Demons Torment Mankind
6th Trumpet	Four angels bound at River Euphrates released to kill 1/3 mankind - Satan's army of 200 million - 1/3 mankind killed by fire, smoke and brimstone.	Satan's 200 million army kills 1/3 Mankind

1st Woe
2nd Woe

7th Trumpet	The Seven Thunders Sealed Up	
--------------------	-------------------------------------	--

7th Trumpet	Kingdom proclaimed - temple in heaven opened - ark of covenant seen - lightnings, noises, thunderings, earthquake, great hail.	The Seven Bowls (Vials)
1st Bowl	Poured out on earth, foul and loathsome sore on those with mark of beast and those who worshipped his image.	Malignant Sores
2nd Bowl	Poured out on sea - became like blood of dead men - every living creature in sea died.	Sea Turns to Blood
3rd Bowl	Poured out on rivers and springs - became blood.	Waters Turn to Blood
4th Bowl	Poured out on sun - men scorched with fire.	Men are Scorched
5th Bowl	Poured out on Beast's throne - kingdom became full of darkness - gnawed their tongues because of pain.	Darkness and Pain
6th Bowl	River Euphrates dries up - way of kings of east prepared. Unclean spirits like frogs from mouth of dragon, beast and false prophet work signs to gather kings to Armageddon.	Euphrates Dried Up
7th Bowl	Poured out into air - great earthquake. Great city - 3 parts, cities of nations fall, Babylon judged, islands flee away, mountains disappear, great hail stones each weighing talent.	Earth Utterly Shaken

3rd Woe

52. THE RUSSIAN and MUSLIM INVASION of ISRAEL

Bible Reading: Ezekiel 36, 37, 38, 39.

Aim: To see how current events are leading to the invasion by Russia and Muslim nations of Israel.

Introduction.

The Prophecies in Ezekiel 36-39 have much to say about the world today.

The following benefits come from such a study:

1. It shows the future destruction of Russian military might.
2. It shows that God is against the Muslim religion and Muslim nations by God destroying their armies when they invade Israel.
3. It shows that God has a great future for Israel by protecting her in this invasion.
4. It proves the Bible to be true as it correctly predicts many aspects of modern world politics.
5. It contains a very likely reference to Britain and the United States in Bible prophecy.
6. The destruction of Russia and Muslim nations opens the way for Europe under the Antichrist to become the major world power in the Tribulation period.

Background:

One of the greatest proofs of the Bible is the survival of the Jew since Abraham's time 4000 years ago. In spite of attempts to destroy them by Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, Rome and Hitler they continue to survive. After 1900 years of wandering among the nations, they are back in their own land as a nation since 1948. Israel today is the focal point for world interest and peace. It is the centre of political, industrial and Muslim conflict as the world's industries are so dependent on Middle Eastern oil supplies.

I. EZEKIEL 35: PROPHECY AGAINST MOUNT SEIR.

Question: Why did God devote a second prophecy to Edom (cf. 25:12-14), and why was it placed in the section on Israel's restoration?

Answer: Most likely Edom was listed here to represent God's judgment on all nations who oppose Israel. Edom was a type of all Israel's future enemies. The Edomites, who lived south of the Dead Sea "had a perpetual hatred, and shed the blood of the children of Israel" (v.5) when the Israelites fled the Babylonians at Jerusalem's fall in 586 BC. Edom will be the scene of frightful bloodshed at the battle of Armageddon, when Israel's enemies will be purged out at Christ's second coming. "Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah?..." Isaiah 63:1-6. Edom's sin was her hatred of Israel, just like the Muslim nations hate Israel today. When God restores Israel at the start of the Millennium, He will judge all nations of the world based on their treatment of Israel. (Matthew 25:31-46). Ezekiel 35 divides into 3 sections, each ending with the promise "thou shalt know that I am the Lord," v.5,9,15, each section being 35:1-4; 5-9; and 10-15.

II. EZEKIEL 36: RESTORING ISRAEL TO HER LAND.

In Ezekiel 36:1, Ezekiel prophesies to the "mountains of Israel". These mountains are highest at Hebron and Jerusalem. These are the two locations that the PLO is seeking to take off Israel in 1996 as part of the 'peace' process. God's reply to the PLO and to other nations trying to get Israel to give up Jerusalem and Hebron is as follows:

"Because the enemy hath said against you, Aha, even the **ancient high places** (Jerusalem, Hebron) are ours in possession....v.2

Surely in the fire of my jealousy have I spoken against the **residue of the heathen** (nations e.g. PLO, USA), and against all Idumea, which have appointed **my land to their possession**...v.5

Surely the heathen that are about you (Israel), they shall bear their **shame**". v.7

i) Punishing Israel's enemies. (1-7). Edom again represents all nations that would harm Israel.

God promised with an uplifted hand of a solemn oath (v.7), to punish Israel's enemies for their sin in hounding, slandering (v.3), plundering (v.4,5), rejoicing over and hating Israel, and appropriating His land for themselves (v.5).

ii) Restoring Israel's land. (v.8-12). God states that:

"I am for you, I will turn unto you, ye shall be tilled and sown, I will multiply men upon you...the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be builded. (v.9,10).

I will settle you after your old estates, and will do better unto you than at your beginnings" v.11

I will cause men (Israel) to walk upon you,...they shall possess thee.” v.12

- iii) **God will remove Israel's reproach.** (v.13-15). The mockery and humiliation that Israel has been forced to endure (v.3-6) will cease, as she is restored to prestige as God's chosen people.
- iv) **God's chastening of Israel.** (v.16-23). When Israel dwelt in their own land, they defiled it by their sins (v.16,17). God judged them for their murders and idolatry (v.18), and scattered them amongst heathen countries. v.19.

There they profaned God's holy name (v.20), but God had pity on them (v.21). God will sanctify His name, so the nations may know that "I am the LORD." (v.23).

- v) **9 Steps in Israel's regathering.** (v.24-38):

1. I will **gather** you out of all countries, and bring you into your own land. (v.24).
2. I will sprinkle clean water upon you, and ye shall be clean.

God will **forgive** and **cleanse** Israel of all her filthiness and idolatry (v.25).

3. I will give you a **new heart** and a **new spirit**, taking away your stoney heart (v.26). This was the new birth that Jesus mentioned in John 3:3,5,10 that Nicodemus should have known about as one of Israel's master teachers. (Jeremiah 31:33,34 Ezekiel 11:19; 18:31).
4. I will put my **Holy Spirit** within you. (v.27). This will enable Israel to walk in God's ways.
5. Ye shall **dwel**l in the land in peace, prosperity and agricultural fruitfulness. (v.28-30).
6. Ye shall **remember** your own evil ways,...and shall loathe yourselves for your sins and abominations. (v.31).
7. "**Not for your sakes** do I this" means that God will restore them for Christ's sacrifice sake, not for their works (v.32).
8. Israel's conversion will bring a **great city renewal**, and reclamation of **desert** regions (v.33,34) to be like the Garden of Eden (v.35).
9. When Israel **prays** to God, He will **increase them** like a flock of sheep.
"I will yet for this be inquired of by the house of Israel." (v.37,38).

III. EZEKIEL 37: ISRAEL'S NATIONAL RESURRECTION.

The Vision of the Valley of Dry Bones

This vision shows the national and spiritual restoration of Israel back to the land, as promised in chapter 36. Israel was "dead" as a nation, deprived of her land, her king and her temple. She had been divided and scattered among the nations over the last 1900 years, so that restoration and unification seemed impossible. Hence God gave two signs (37:1-14 and v.15-28) to illustrate the future restoration of Israel to the land in the last days. They are:

A. The Valley of Dry Bones. v.1-14.

The hand of the Lord carried Ezekiel in the Spirit and set him down in the midst of a valley full of very many, very dry bones. God asks Ezekiel in v.3 "Can these bones Live?" He replied "O Lord God, Thou knowest", realizing that humanly speaking it was impossible, yet it was possible for God. God told Ezekiel to prophesy to the dry bones. As he did, he observed 3 stages in new life:

- i) **Skeleton stage:** "Bones came together, bone to his bone". v.7.

This corresponds to events in 1897 AD where Theodore Hertzl called the first Zionist Congress to reclaim Palestine as a national home for the Jews.

Also, in 1917 AD, General Allenby captured Jerusalem off the Turks. The Balfour Declaration was passed by the British Government promising Palestine as a national home for the Jews. This was in appreciation of Chaim Weizman's invention of an improved method of making explosives, thus giving Britain a greater fire power advantage in World War I.

- ii) **Sinews, flesh and skin** came on the skeletons: This corresponds to the establishment of Israel as a nation in Palestine in 1948, by a United Nations mandate. When Britain moved out in 1948, Egypt, Iraq, Syria, Lebanon and Saudi Arabia attacked Israel. Israel won this war, increasing her territory from 5000 square miles to 8,000 square miles.

On June 5, 1967, President Nasser of Egypt, with 185,000 troops from Egypt, Iraq, Syria, Jordan and Saudi Arabia declared war on Israel. Immediately, the Israeli air force destroyed 400 Russian built, Arab war planes on the ground in one day. Israel captured Jerusalem and the Golan Heights in what became known as the Six Day War.

On October 6, 1973, the Yom Kippur War began when the Arabs attacked Israel on the Jewish Day of Atonement holiday, with much modern Russian weaponry. Israel suffered greatly but finally won, capturing vast quantities of Russian arms. In 1990, Russia permitted 750,000 Jews to emigrate to Israel.

iii) **Breath** stage: “Breath came into them, and they lived, and they stood up upon their feet, an exceeding great army”. v.10.

The word “slain” in “Breathe upon these slain” (v.9), means that over history the Jews were “killed, murdered and butchered”, as they were persecuted. This breath stage corresponds to **national restored Israel receiving the Holy Spirit** as promised in Israel’s New Covenant (36:24-28). This occurs after Armageddon when Christ returns to rescue them from destruction by the Antichrist. This prophecy will be ultimately fulfilled when Christ regathers believing Israelites to Israel in the Millennium. See Jeremiah 31:31-34.

Question: What do these dry bones represent?

Answer: “These bones are the whole house of Israel. v.11.

Explanation: “Behold they say, **Our bones are dried, and our hope is lost: we are cut off** for our parts”. v.11.

- “We are cut off” means “it’s all over for us”. Their outlook was grimly hopeless as represented by the long unburied, sun bleached dry bones in a valley.
- The valley symbolizes Israel’s depressed, persecuted, humiliated, low condition while scattered among the nations.

God’s purposes of restoring Israel:

1. To show Israel that their future is more glorious than ever, and that it is not all over for Israel.
2. To show that Israel is still “My people”. Twice God addresses Israel as “O my people” v.12,13.
3. To settle Israel in her ancient homeland as a regenerated nation, which embraces 4 events:

a) Bringing the Israelite people **out from the nations**.

“I will open your graves and cause you to come out from your graves”. v.12.

Graves represent Israel’s place of non-existence among the nations.

They are dead nationally and spiritually, like the prodigal son.

b) Israel will be **brought into the land**. “I will **bring** you into the land of Israel”. v.12.

This happens gradually over a period of time, as follows:

YEAR	1870	1900	1914	1948	1955	1960	1965	1970	1978	1991	1996
ISRAEL’S POP.	10,000	40,000	80,000	758,000	1,600,000	1,900,000	2,300,000	2,500,000	3,200,000	4,600,000	5,000,000

c) Israel’s **spiritual rebirth** at Christ return. (Zechariah 12:10-13:9).

“I shall put my Spirit in you, and ye shall live” v.14. The word “live” in v.3,5,6,9,10 means to “live spiritually”. (Ezekiel 36:24-28; Joel 2:28,29; Jeremiah 31:31-34; John 3:3,4).

d) Israel will be **settled securely** and permanently in the land. “I shall place you in your own land”. v.14. “Place” (‘nuah’ in Hebrew) means “cause you to rest, settle down, remain in security and quietness”.

B. The Sign of Two Sticks v.15-28.

i) **The Sign Given**. 37:15-17. Ezekiel was told to take 2 sticks and write **Judah** on one stick, and **Ephraim** on the other, then to join them together into one stick.

After Solomon died in 931 BC, the nation of Israel split into the Northern kingdom of 10 tribes known as Israel or Ephraim (Hosea 5:3,5) and into the Southern kingdom of 2 tribes known as Judah, being its larger tribe. Assyria took Israel into captivity in 722 BC, and Babylon took Judah captive in 606, 597 and 586 BC.

Note: Mormons wrongly claim that the 2 sticks represent the Bible (the stick of Judah) and the Book of Mormon (the stick of Joseph or Ephraim).

This wrong idea ignores the clear interpretation in v.18-28. It tries to impose a foreign meaning on the context of the sticks. Where is Mormonism mentioned here? Nowhere!

- ii) **The Sign Explained.** 37:18-28. The uniting of the 2 sticks pictured God restoring His people Israel to the land and reuniting them as a single nation in the land. When united, Israel will be led by King David himself (34:23,24) ruling under Jesus Christ as King of Kings.

8 Results of Israel's Restoration to the land:

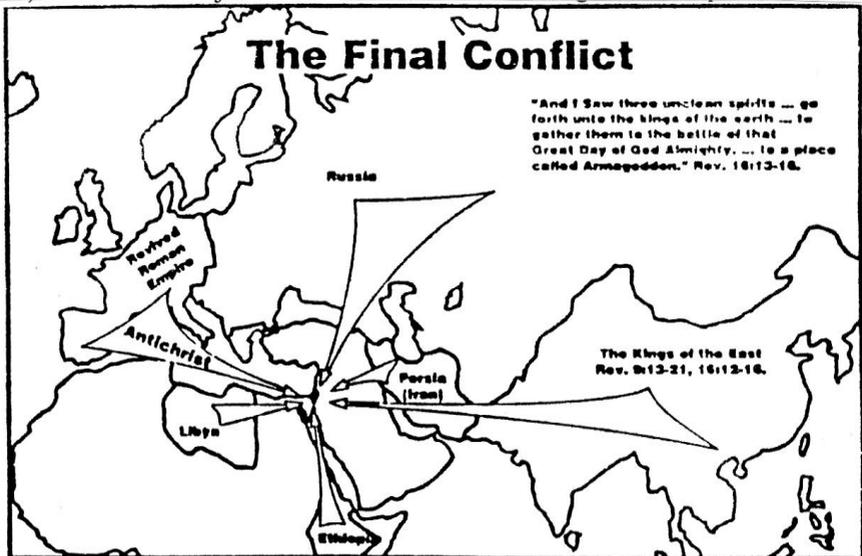
1. The nation will be **united** as 12 tribes. v.21,22; Ezekiel 34:23,24.
2. **David** will be resurrected to be their King under Christ.
3. Israel will be **cleansed** of idolatry and all other sins. v.23.
4. Redeemed Israel will **possess the land** given by God to Jacob. Genesis 28:12-17.
5. God will make a new, everlasting **covenant of peace** with them. v.26a.
6. God will **multiply & prosper** them, placing them **securely & permanently in the land.**v25
7. God will set His **sanctuary** in the midst of them forever. God's sanctuary will be the literal millennial temple. (Ezekiel 40:1-31; 44:31).
8. God's **tabernacle** will be with them. v.27. God's dwelling place, like the pillar of cloud and fire in the wilderness, will be a token of God's presence on every house in Jerusalem to defend them. (Isaiah 4:5,6).

IV. EZEKIEL 38: RUSSIA, IRAN, ETHIOPIA, LIBYA, GOMER AND TOGARMAH (TURKEY) INVADE ISRAEL.

Introduction: Ezekiel 38 and 39 describe Russia's last bid for world conquest, and are in the context of prophecies of Israel's restoration to the land (Ezekiel 36,37). Although Israel is militarily superior to her Arab neighbours, the possibility of a Russian attack has been her constant fear.

This battle is part of a series of battles that take place in the 7 year tribulation, just before Christ's visible return. Notice several phases of events here:

- i) A political leader known as Antichrist will head up a 10 nation European confederacy, that will confirm a 7 year peace covenant with Israel (Daniel 9:27). This explains the strange statement in Ezekiel 38:11 of Israel "dwelling safely", something that has never happened in 2000 years of Israel's history. This would locate the time of Russia's invasion as being around day 1000 of the 7 year tribulation period.
- ii) By Russia and her Muslim allies suffering a disastrous defeat, this changes the world political situation and balance of power so greatly, that the Antichrist can easily become a world dictator by the middle of the 7 year tribulation.
- iii) The Great Tribulation (the last 3½ years) will see another world war (Daniel 11:40-45; Rev. 16:12-16). This will occur just before Christ's second coming. It can be pictured as follows:



Ezekiel 38, 39 reveals a future invasion of Israel by the armies of Russia, Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya, Turkey and Gomer. These invaders will be decisively destroyed. A search of history finds no such battle or outcome. Prophecies not yet fulfilled, will be fulfilled just as literally as previously fulfilled prophecies.

1. The TIME of this invasion.

When will this invasion occur? Several time indicators point to this battle occurring before the middle of the 7 year tribulation. These are:

- i) When Russia, Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya and Turkey **are all united against Israel**. 38:1-6. Today Fundamentalist Muslim governments are in control of all these countries except Russia. Because Russia has lost her east European allies to Europe, she is now looking to Iran to forge economic alliances.
- ii) “In the **latter years** thou shalt come into the land...that is gathered out of **many people**”. v.3. Today for the first time in 1900 years, Israel has become a nation in the land having been gathered out of many people. (This was not the case when Israel returned from Babylon in 536 BC as **Babylon was only one nation** to return from). This regathering from many nations only happens in the latter years, just before Jesus Christ’s return. Hence, from 1948 onwards is the latter years.
- iii) “It shall be in the **latter days**”. v.16.
- iv) “They shall dwell **safely** all of them”. v.8,11. Since 1948, Israel have never dwelt safely in the land. The only time that they dwell safely is in the first half of the 7 year tribulation period, when Israel enjoys the peace covenant confirmed by the Antichrist European ruler. (Daniel 9:27).
- v) Israel at this time is called “a land of **unwalled villages**” v.11. This is the situation today worldwide, because walls are no defense against enemy missiles or heavy firepower. Before 1500 AD city walls were necessary, but today they are useless. Hence Ezekiel 38,39 describe events after 1500 AD.
- vi) **Sheba and Dedan** (Saudi Arabia), the **Merchants of Tarshish** (USA), and the **young Lions** (British Commonwealth countries) **protest** to the invasion in v.13. Today the US Sixth Fleet is permanently stationed in the Persian Gulf to protect it’s oil supply line from Saudi Arabia. The US and Saudia Arabian alliance repelled Iraq in the Gulf War of 1991. This western alliance is in place today.

Since there will be no warfare in the millennium (Isaiah 2:1-4; Micah 4:3,4), this invasion cannot take place after Christ returns to earth. It cannot occur after the middle of the tribulation, because the Antichrist then begins his persecution of Israel.



The invasion cannot occur after the middle of the Tribulation because the Antichrist then begins his persecution of Israel. Israel will not dwell safely then. Hence Israel only feels safe and secure in the first half of the Tribulation under the Antichrist’s peace covenant.

2. REASON FOR the INVASION.

One reason for the Russian/Muslim invasion of Israel is “to take a spoil” (mentioned 3 times in 38:12,13) or a “great spoil”. What might this spoil be? Some have suggested that it may be Israel’s offshore Leviathan, Tamar and Dalit gas and oilfields. Leviathan contains about 622 billion cubic metres (or 21.9 trillion cubic feet) of gas. As per the US Geological Survey (USGS) estimates, the entire Leviathan Basin holds a mean approximation of **1.7 billion barrels of recoverable oil** (600 million barrels of oil beneath the gas layer) and a mean of **122 trillion cubic feet of recoverable gas**. Saudi Arabia has **250 trillion cubic feet of gas reserves** and **268 billion barrels of oil reserves**. According to BP’s Statistical Review of World Energy, global oil reserves at the end of 2012 were **1.7 trillion barrels**. Given that the world consumes about 86 million barrels of crude oil per day, some may conclude we’ll run out of oil in 55 years, or sooner if we increase consumption. Feb 1, 2014.

The Leviathan Natural Gas Field was discovered in December 2010. The discovery is located about 130 km west of Haifa, Israel. “And of **Asher** he said, *Let **Asher** be blessed with children; let him be acceptable to his brethren, and **let him dip his foot in oil.**” (Deut 33:24). **Leviathan is opposite Asher.***

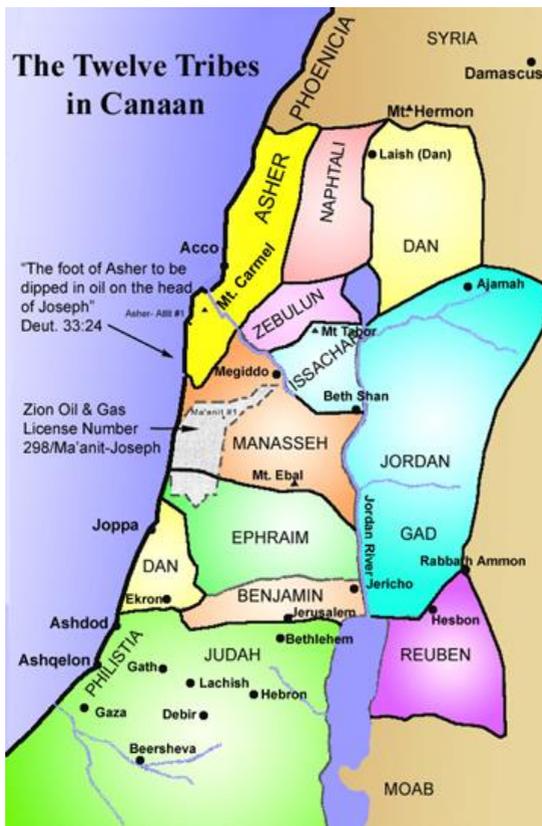
Russian President Vladimir Putin and Israeli PM Benjamin Netanyahu agreed to allow major concessions for Gazprom to develop the Leviathan reserves. (Australian newspaper, 19 October 2015).



Oil is a finite resource and when it is used up there will be no more. During World War II, it was America’s supply of oil and Japan’s lack of it that determined the outcome of the war.

When the US realized in 1943 that it would eventually run out of oil, negotiations focused on securing supplies from Saudi Arabia and the Persian Gulf states (Sheba and Dedan).

If ever the Arab Gulf States needed the US, it was in 1990 when the Iraqi army moved into Kuwait and threatened Saudi Arabia. Because of the US success in Operation Desert Storm, the US consolidated its position as protector and partner of the Arab Gulf States (Sheba and Dedan) who control much of the world’s oil resources. Today we see Russia, Iran, Libya, Ethiopia, Sudan and Turkey associating together. At the same time we also see the Merchants of Tarshish (England and the USA) allying with Saudi Arabia (Sheba and Dedan) as prophesied in Ezekiel 38. Oil has played a major part in the providence of God, in bringing the oil rich Arab states together with the USA in preparation for their final role in the last days before Christ’s return.



3. IDENTITY of the INVADERS.

“Son of man, set thy face against God, the land of **Magog**, the chief (Rosh) prince of **Meshech** and **Tubal**, and prophesy against him, (v.2), And say, thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief (Rosh) prince of Meshech and Tubal:..... (v.3).

Persia (Iran), Ethiopia, and Libya with them: all of them with shield and helmet:**Gomer**, and all his bands; the house of **Togarmah** of the north quarters, and all his bands and **many people** with thee. Thou shalt come from thy place out of the **north parts**.” v.6,15.

Note: An alternative rendering of v.1,2 is “prince of Rosh, Meshech and Tubal”.

Should the Hebrew word for “chief”, (Rosh) be taken as an adjective (chief prince) or as a proper noun (prince of Rosh)? Both are possible and acceptable.

The invaders named are:

1. Gog (the leader) from **Magog**, who is the prince of **Rosh, Meshech** and **Tubal**. v.2,3.
2. Persia (Iran). v.5.
3. Ethiopia (Ethiopia and Sudan). v.5.
4. Libya. v.5.
5. Gomer. v.6.
6. Togarmah (Turkey). v.5.

Let us trace each of these nations identity:

1. The leader will be Gog, from **Magog**, the prince of **Rosh, Meshech** and **Tubal**. What country is represented by Magog, Rosh, Meshech and Tubal? Russia!

- a) **Jerome**, a prominent church leader (345-420 AD) stated that Magog was located north of the Caucasus mountains, near the Caspian Sea. “Gog and Magog”, with the Scythians, who lived near the Black Sea from the Caucasus to the Danube. (*A.R. Millard, “Scythians”, International Standard Bible Encyclopedia 1988, 4, 365*).
- c) The **Caucasus mountains** of Russia mean “Gogs fort”. (*L. Bauman, Russian Events in the light of Bible Prophecy, p. 23-25, D. Pentecost, “Things to Come”, p.327*).
- d) **Gesenius**, the famous 19th century Hebrew lexicographer says of:
 - **Magog**⁴⁰³¹ - “a great and powerful people inhabiting the extreme recesses of the north, who are at some time to invade the Holy land. Ezekiel 38,39. Greeks called them Scythians”. p.447.
 - **Rosh**⁷²²⁰ - proper noun of a northern **nation undoubtedly the Russians**,....and described by an Arabic writer Ibn Fossilan of 10th century, as dwelling on the river Volga. (p.752). So, Rosh can be a proper noun. Genesis 46:21 states Rosh as one of the sons of Benjamin.
 - **Meshech**⁴⁹⁰² - proper Moschi, a barbarous people inhabiting the Moshian mountains.
 - **Tubal**⁸⁴²² - proper noun, the Tibareni, a nation of Asia Minor, dwelling by the Euxine Sea, west of the Mosch.
- e) **Geographical** proof: Ezekiel states in 3 passages (38:6,15; 39:2) that this invading nation comes from the “uttermost part of the **north**” (as the Hebrew renders it). Moscow is directly north of Jerusalem, on the same longitude, as can be seen on a map.
- f) **Linguistic** proof: J. Walvoord in “The Nations in Prophecy,” p.107, 108 states that “Rosh may be the root of modern Russia....Meshech is similar sounding to Moscow, and Tubal is similar sounding to the Russian Province of Tobolsk.”
The American Standard Version translates it as “the prince of Rosh”.
- g) The 7 sons of Japheth were Gomer, **Magog**, Madai, Javan, **Tubal**, **Meshech** and **Tiras**. These settled into areas which became known as:
 - Gomer in Cappadocia, possibly Germany.
 - Magog, Tubal and Meshech in Russia.
 - Javan in Greece.
 - Madai in Media.
 - Tiras near Greece. (Genesis 10:1,2).

The Table of the Descendants in Genesis chapter 10 shows where Noah’s descendants settled.

2. **Persia (Iran)**. This is a fundamentalist Islamic state that sponsors terrorism.
3. **Ethiopia**. This includes modern **Sudan**, an Islamic Fundamental state that severely persecutes Christians in the South.
4. **Libya**. A fundamentalist Islamic state under Colonel Qaddafi that sponsors terrorism against Israel and the West.
5. **Gomer**¹⁵⁸⁶ - his descendants may have spread to modern Germany.
6. **Togarmah**⁸⁴²⁵ - occupies the area of modern **Turkey**, which has recently become a fundamentalist Muslim state.

Four of the six invaders are fundamentalist Muslim states, that hate Israel.

A fundamentalist Muslim is one who believes strongly in the Koran and the Islam religion. The move back to these basic beliefs was triggered by the defeat of the Ottoman Empire in 1922.

When Israel defeated the **Egyptian** army in 1948 and 1949, in the Sinai war in 1956, in the Six day war in 1967, and in the Yom Kippur War in 1973, each of these defeats was seen as the Muslim god, Allah, judging Islamic countries because of their lukewarmness, by allowing Israel to be victorious over them. From 1973, fundamentalist Muslims became much more militant. In 1979, President Sadat of Egypt commenced peace talks with Israel. In 1982 Sadat arrested about 2000 militant Islamic fundamentalists, he purged the army of 200 militant Islamic officers, and he forced the registration of 40,000 mosques in Egypt. He was soon assassinated by four Islamic soldiers.

At the same time in Iran, the Shah was forced to flee the country and the Ayatollah Khomeini became the leader and spokesman for the Islamic government. In 1979 he taught that the world was in the last

stage of world history, and because Allah had predestined Muslims to take the world for Allah, they had to be 100% committed to Allah.

He taught that Israel was a satanic vehicle permitted by God to oppose Islam because of the lukewarmness of the Muslim masses. He taught that unless Israel was defeated and Jerusalem liberated, they could not move onto world victory.

This Islamic revolution has swept much of the world and has started Islamic terrorist groups such as Hamas in Gaza, Jihad in Israel, Hezbollah in Lebanon and other groups elsewhere such as in Sudan. All of these groups believe that they must take the world by force and terror, starting with Israel.

There is a revolution in the Islamic world. Islam believes it must remove corrupt and ineffective Islamic governments and install fundamentalist ones. This has led to much unrest in the Middle East and Africa, especially in Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia and Lebanon. In Iran, Libya, Ethiopia and Sudan strong Islamic governments have come to power.

The INVASION predicted in Ezekiel 38 and 39 will be a combined Muslim confederacy led by Russia. Today we see Iran (Persia) leading a Muslim revival determined to destroy Israel. **Iran** has military, nuclear, space and economic agreements with Russia. **Sudan** has come under a Muslim government and is closely aligned with Iran. Iran has sent 30,000 Muslim “missionaries” to Sudan to take all of Africa for Islam. **Libya** is armed by and economically tied to Russia. In 1995 Libya and Russia signed a \$1.5 billion agreement to build infrastructure projects, and Russia has defended Libya against US accusations that Libya is manufacturing chemical weapons. **Turkey** now has a fundamentalist Muslim government. Turkey has signed a \$23 billion contract with Iran for a natural gas supply. Russia’s political and economic alignment with southern Muslim nations is the prelude to a military mobilization against Israel.

We know from Ezekiel 38,39 and Revelation, that Islam will not control the world, but will be destroyed by God when Islamic nations and Russia attack Israel. God will use these Islamic nations to bring Israel to repentance, and bring glory to the God of the Bible. Islam’s defeat will prove to Muslims that their religion is not of God, and that the true God is the God of Israel.

The present unsolved Middle East peace accord between Israel and the Arabs will culminate in the Antichrist’s 7 year peace covenant with Israel. Israel’s Prime Minister Mr. Netanyahu has rejected the creation of an independent Palestinian state. He will not hand back the Golan Heights to Syria. He has taken discussions on Jerusalem off the agenda. He will expand, not remove, Jewish settlements on the West bank. All these things will make peace with the Arabs difficult to achieve, and will open the door for the Antichrist as the European ruler to enter the scene as a man of peace who will provide a solution to the Arab/Israeli peace problem. Israel will then dwell safely for 3½ years under his “protection”. However, before he comes to power and makes his 7 year peace covenant with Israel, Jesus Christ will have returned to the air to catch away all dead and living believers to heaven as foretold in 1 Thessalonians 4:13-18 and in 1 Cor. 15:51-53. Let us be about our Heavenly Father’s business because the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ draws near.

4. The EVENTS of the INVASION.

In **Ezekiel 38:3** God says “I am against thee O Gog”.

Question 1: Why would God be against Russia?

- Answer:**
- 1) Russia has for many years persecuted the Jews and supplied military equipment to the Arabs to wage war against Israel.
 - 2) The old Soviet Union has taught Atheism, has blasphemed God, has persecuted millions of Christians, and has threatened many nations with nuclear destruction.

In **Ezekiel 38:4** Gog or Russia is compared to a wild beast running out of control, whom the Lord will turn around, put hooks into his jaws (2 Kings 19:28), and bring him and his vast army to their destruction on the mountains of Israel.

Question 2: Why does this army ride horses when no armies today ride horses, but use tanks?

Answer: Several answers may be possible:

- a) Russia’s economy may be so broken that their oil production cannot completely fuel a large army.
- b) The world oil supplies may have run so low that Russia may have run out of oil and may see the remaining Middle East oil as the door to world control.
- c) Horses may include and picture all kinds of modern military transport.

Ezekiel 38:5, 6. In addition to Iran, Ethiopia, Sudan, Libya, Gomer and Turkey, many other people or nations will participate in the invasion as well.

Ezekiel 38:7. “be thou a **guard**⁴⁹²⁹ unto them”. “Guard” here means a commander or ruler, one to whom reverence is due, one who is observed as a leader by the other armies.

Ezekiel 38:8. This verse describes the time of the invasion as:

- i) Many days after 587 BC. This was not fulfilled before 1996 AD.
- ii) In the **latter years** thou shalt come into the land that is brought back from the sword. Jews have been greatly persecuted and killed over the last 1900 years, but have now returned to Israel.
- iii) Israelites have been **gathered** out of many people to return to the land this century.
- iv) Israel will **dwell safely** all of them. Not in 2000 years has this happened. It will only happen by their 7 year peace covenant with Antichrist. Today Israel is armed and living in fear of its neighbours.
- iv) The land has been a **ruined waste** since 70 AD when Jerusalem fell to the Romans (Ezekiel 38:9). The invasion will be like a **storm**⁷⁷²² (to rush over, tempest, devastation, destruction) and a **cloud**⁶⁰⁵¹ (a thunder cloud covering the land) as the armies advance over land to Israel.

Ezekiel 38:10,11,12. Russia and her allies will think an evil thought, plan or plot against Israel. Russia will notice Israel’s geographical, economic and political importance. Israel’s new cities not having walls, bars or gates present an amazing prophetic detail of today as the end time, when ancient walls and gates will have been made obsolete by modern weapons of war. Israel dwelling safely and at rest is due to the Antichrist’s peace covenant guaranteeing Israel’s security. The invaders will covet regathered Israel’s silver, gold, cattle and goods, as well as Israel’s strategic position.

Ezekiel 38:13. **Sheba** and **Dedan** (Saudi Arabia), and the merchants of **Tarshish** (England, America), with all the **young lions** thereof (Canada, Australia, New Zealand, British Commonwealth countries) shall protest against this invasion, but will not intervene militarily.

Question 3: Who are these protesters?

- a) **Sheba** and **Dedan** (Isaiah 21:13; Jeremiah 25:23,24) are in Saudi Arabia today.
- b) Merchants of **Tarshish**⁸⁵⁴⁹. Jonah took a ship from Joppa to flee to Tarshish from the presence of the Lord (1:3). The furthest place known was Spain. This land was rich in silver (Jeremiah 10:9), iron, tin and lead (Ezekiel 27:12). These metals are found in Tartessus in Spain, which attracted the Phoenicians who founded colonies in Sardinia in Spain, where we find Phoenician monumental inscriptions in the 9th Century BC bearing the name Tarshish.

Columbus requested financial assistance of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain to fund his expedition to the Americas in 1492. The result was that South America was colonized by Spain and Portugal, while North America was colonized by England and France.

- God’s judgments in the Tribulation will be against the ships of Tarshish. Isaiah 2:16.
- “The Day of the Lord is.....upon all the ships of Tarshish. Revelation 8:9 states that the second trumpet judgment in the Tribulation will result in one third of the ships being destroyed: “a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea...and the third part of the ships were destroyed”. Revelation 8:8,9.
- Early in the millennium, airplanes and the ships of Tarshish will bring Jews back to Israel: “Who are these that **fly** as a **cloud**...?”
- “Surely the isles shall wait for me, and the **ships of Tarshish** first, to bring thy sons from far, their silver and their gold with them, unto the name of the Lord thy God.” Isaiah 60:8,9.
- America has about 7 million Jews, and she assists America’s wealthy, converted Jews to return to the land of Israel to take up their role as the Messiah’s servants.

Hence Tarshish seems to represent a maritime power such as Spain, the United States and England.

- c) The **young Lions**: England’s national symbol is the lion. Hence the young lions may represent the nations that England colonized such as Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and other British Commonwealth countries. You would expect these nations to protest against Russia’s invasion of Israel, but to not intervene militarily due to the fear of nuclear war.

Ezekiel 38:14. Russia will know that Israel dwells **safely** under the military protection of Europe under the Antichrist. Hence, Russia's invasion of the Middle East may have a secondary purpose of **challenging Europe's power** and alliance with Israel.

Ezekiel 38:15. Russia comes out of the **north** parts, literally the "farthest extremities and recesses of the north parts" (3411). Moscow and Leningrad are some of the northern most major cities on earth. "All of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army".

Russian military today is indeed a mighty army.

Ezekiel 38:16. The invasion of Israel will come from all sides. From the north will come **Russia; Turkey and Iran** from the east, **Sudan and Ethiopia** from the south, and **Libya** from the west. They will advance as a cloud to cover the land. This enormous army will overrun all obstacles just as a cloud sailing across the sky.

"It shall be in the **latter days.**" This comforts us living today as we see these events lining up that we are now living in the latter days just before Christ's second coming.

A result of this invasion will be that the nations will be so shocked by the outcome of this invasion that they will know that God has intervened in protecting Israel. By God destroying the invaders, God will show His holiness and power to all the nations. Israel will be delivered and God will be glorified.

Ezekiel 38:17. When Gog from Russia invades Israel, God asks him the question in v.17. The words "he" and "old time" indicates that this question is asked in the future when the invasion takes place. This will be a question that many people in the world at the time will ask.

"Are you the one prophesied in Ezekiel 38,39 that would invade Israel in the latter days? Is this the fulfillment of a Bible prophecy?" Maybe God the Holy Spirit will put this question in people's minds who will know this prophecy at that time. God asks the question if Gog is the one whom the prophets (plural) of Israel have prophesied in old time about.

Question 4: What other prophets have discussed Russia's invasion?

Answer: 1) **Daniel 11:40** mentions "At the **time of the end** shall the King of the south (Ethiopia and Sudan) push at him (the Antichrist): and the King of the north (Russia) shall come against him (Antichrist) like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow (like a cloud, Ezekiel 38:16) and pass over."

Because of the Antichrist's peace covenant with Israel, a Russian attack on Israel will be seen as an attack on the Antichrist's European empire. The events that catapult the Antichrist to world rule commence with the King of the South (Ethiopia, Sudan, but not Egypt because the land of Egypt shall not escape v.42) pushing at him (the Antichrist's ally Israel). Then the king of the north (Russia) will come against him (Antichrist as protector of Israel) like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen (Ezek. 38:4,15), and with many ships (the Russian naval fleet in the Black Sea and Mediterranean Sea). v.40,41 - Russia will enter into the glorious land (Israel). Ammon (Jordan) will escape Russia's hand.

v.42 - the land of Egypt shall not escape.

v.43 - Russia will control Egypt's gold and silver treasures. The Libyans and Ethiopians shall be at his steps (in his company, allied with Russia, as stated in Ezekiel 38:5).

v.44a "But tidings out of the **east** (China) and **north** (Antichrist's armies mobilizing against him) shall trouble him:". At this point the Russian leader will hear the disturbing news that the armies of the Antichrist, coming from north of Egypt, and the eastern armies coming from China and Japan (Kings of the east, Rev 16:12) are mobilizing to challenge Russia's bold move of aggression.

v.44 - "therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many (of Israel)". As a result, Russia will set out in a great rage to destroy many people of Israel.

v.45 - "He shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas (Mediterranean and Dead Seas) in the glorious holy mountain (Jerusalem)." The Russian ruler Gog is described as pitching his tents between the Seas and at Jerusalem.

"yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him."

The destruction of Russian military might will destroy the balance of power in the first half of the Tribulation. The Antichrist's European empire, will suddenly be propelled to a position of world dominance with the demise of Russia, so that people will ask: "Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?" Revelation 13:4.

- 2) **Zechariah 12:1-4** mentions “Jerusalem as a burdensome stone for all people: all (such as Russia) that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces....”.

5. THE DEFEAT OF GOG’S ARMY.

Ezekiel 38:18. When Russia attacks Israel in her demon-inspired plan to thwart God’s plan for Israel, God’s fury, jealousy, and fiery hot anger will be aroused.

God will bring about a series of disasters to destroy the invading armies:

- i) **38:19,20.** First, there will be a **great earthquake** in the land of Israel. This earthquake will affect fish, birds, beasts and all ground creatures.

- All men that are on the face of the earth shall shake at my presence.
- Mountains shall be thrown down, steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. This may be the great earthquake described in Revelation 6:12,14 “every mountain and island were moved out of their places.”

- ii) **38:21.** This great earthquake interrupts Gog’s invasion plans, spreading fear and confusion through the ranks of his forces, just the same effect as described in Revelation 6:15-18. In the pandemonium, communication between the four invading armies will break down. The confusion will result in the armies **fighting each other**, “every man’s sword shall be against his brother.”

- iii) **38:22.** A third judgment brought on the army will be **plague and bloodshed**. This may be caused by them using chemical weapons against each other, or it may be what God used against Sennacherib of Assyria (Isaiah 37:36). “I will plead against him with pestilence and blood.”

- iv) A fourth judgment God rains upon these armies will be an overflowing **rain**, great **hailstones**, **fire & brimstone**. The **rain** will combine with dirt and debris from the earthquake to produce massive mud slides and floods which will destroy, demobilize and sweep away Gog’s military equipment. Great **hailstones** will pelt the survivors, killing many (Joshua 10:11; Revelation 16:21).

The earthquake may reactivate volcanoes to spew out burning sulfur and hot ash, (as occurred with Sodom and Gommorah in Genesis 19:24), thus destroying the invading army.

The result is in **Ezekiel 38:23.** i) God will **magnify** and **sanctify** Himself.

- ii) I will be **known** in the eyes of many nations. iii) They shall know that I am the **LORD**.

6. FOURTEEN RESULTS OF GOG’S DEFEAT. Ezekiel 39:1-29.

Ezekiel 39 amplifies chapter 38 giving more details of the invasion’s aftermath:

1. **39:1,2** - I will turn thee back and leave one-sixth of the. v.2.
2. **39:3** - I will disarm you.
3. **39:4,5** - You will fall upon the mountains of Israel, you and all your bands and people with you. v.4. You will fall upon the open field. v.5.
4. **39:4b** - I will give you to the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured. v.4b.
5. **39:6** - I will send a fire on Magog (Russia), and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles.

Question 1: Who are those that **dwell carelessly in the Isles**?

Answer: The Isles refer to the farthest reaches of the known world (Ezekiel 26:15,18; 27:3,15,35). The Isles may refer to island nations such as England, North and South America and Australia. People in these countries certainly are given over to pleasure seeking, material comforts and luxuries. These people do dwell carelessly. They don’t care much about God or suffering humanity, only about themselves getting more money, holidays, entertainment and pleasure.

Question 2: What is meant by God sending a **fire on Magog** and **island dwellers**?

Answer: Perhaps as Tarshish (US, Great Britain) challenges the Russian/Muslim invasion, there would be a nuclear shoot-out, where Russia and the United States fire nuclear tipped warheads at each other in an effort to destroy the other first. This is called “MAD” meaning “mutually assured destruction”. This would leave the USA and Russia crippled, resulting in Europe and the Antichrist being in control of the Middle East and its oil resources. Deprived of oil, the Kings of the East (China and Japan) would then have no alternative but to amass a vast army to cross the Euphrates river to occupy and control the Middle East oil fields as predicted in Revelation 16:12-16. This will bring all nations to the Battle of Armageddon in order to control the remaining world’s oil supplies.

“I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle.” Zechariah 14:2.

Note: Joel tells us that the remnants of the Russian army will retreat deep into Russia:

“I will remove far off from you the **northern army**, and will drive him into a land barren and desolate, (possibly Siberia), with his face toward the east sea (possibly the Caspian Sea), and his hinder part toward the utmost sea (possibly the Arctic Sea), and his stink shall come up....” Joel 2:20.

6. **Israel’s Repentance.** Ezekiel 39:7.

“I will make my **holy name** known in the midst of my people Israel.

I will not let them pollute my **holy name** any more.

The heathen shall know that I am the Lord, the **Holy one** in Israel”.

Through all this God will teach Israel that He is Holy & will not be profaned by their sins any more.

7. **39:9,10** - The Israelites shall **burn the weapons** for **7 years** so that they need not cut wood from the field or forests. This shows the completeness of Gog’s defeat. The plunderers will be utterly plundered. Israel will burn Gog’s weapons in the Tribulation period and into the Millennium.

8. **39:11-16** - The Israelites shall be burying **Gog’s army** for **7 months**.

i) The smell of dead corpses will be so bad that passengers will stop their noses. v.11.

ii) Gog’s multitude will be buried on the east side of the Dead Sea in the valley of Hamon-gog, (meaning hordes of Gog) in Jordan, on the highway from Syria to Egypt via Petra. v.11.

iii) All the Israelites will help in burying the dead, v.13. Burial specialists will search the land for 7 months to bury corpses and to cleanse the land. v.14. Passengers (or travelers), on seeing a bone, will set up a marker sign next to it for the buriers to bury it.

iv) The burial operation will be so vast that a town will be set up in the valley at the gravesites to accommodate those workers cleansing the land. It will be named “Hamonah”, meaning “the multitude or horde”, to commemorate the victory over Gog, and will be the headquarters of the burial operation. v.16.

9. **39:17-20** - An invitation is given to every bird and beast to come to God’s sacrifice on the mountains of Israel to eat the flesh and drink the blood of mighty men, of princes of the earth, of all men of war, and of horses, who have come to invade Israel. This feast occurs before the soldiers are buried.

10. **39:21** - The **nations will see God’s glory.** v.21.

“I will set my glory among the heathen.” “Glory” is used 16 times in Ezekiel (1:28; 3:12,23; 8:4; 9:3; 10:4,18,19; 11:22,23; 39:21; 43:2,4,5; 44:4), and in each instance it refers to the shekinah glory cloud, just the same cloud that led Israel through the wilderness. This same shekinah glory cloud will be set among the nations of the world in the millennium for all to see. (Isaiah 66:18).

“All the heathen (nations) shall see my judgment that I have executed...”

Question: How will all nations see God’s destruction of the Russian and Muslim armies?

By satellite/cable television news broadcasts.

11. **39:22** - “Israel shall know that I am the Lord their God from that day forward.”

Israel will turn back to God. God’s dramatic, shocking defeat of Gog will force Israel to acknowledge God’s power. Many Jews will be saved through this.

12. **39:23,24** - The nations shall know that Israel went into captivity for their sins. It was not God’s failure, but it was due to Israel’s uncleanness and transgressions that God had to judge them.

13. **39:25-28** - Early in the millennium, God will regather the whole house of Israel out of their enemies lands (v.27) into the land of Israel. None will be left among the nations (v.28). It will be compulsory for all Jews to return to the land of Israel under Jesus Christ. (Isaiah 60:8,9; 66:20).

14. **39:29** - Verses 25-29 look ahead to early in the millennium when God will restore Israel to the land and when God will pour out His Holy Spirit on the house of Israel when He returns at Armageddon to rescue them from the Antichrist. (Zechariah 12:10).

Conclusion: Let us be ready for Christ’s return to catch us away. Let us watch current events as signs pointing to the nearness of the catching away of believers. Let us win many souls to Christ and teach God’s word all over the world before Christ returns. The Muslim religion is wrong in its stand against Israel, Jesus Christ and the Gospel. God will show His wrath against the Muslim nations when He destroys their armies as they invade Israel. This is a great proof of Islam being wrong, because Islam believes Ezekiel to be a true prophet of God. It is Ezekiel that prophecies Russia’s and Islam’s destruction. Muslims must leave Islam today and receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and God. 207

53. THE MILLENNIUM or RULE OF CHRIST ON EARTH: WHAT IT WILL BE LIKE

Bible Reading: Isaiah 11:6-9; 65:19-25; 66:15-24; Micah 4:1-6. Zech. 14:1-9,12,16-21; Rev. 20:1-10.

Aim: To see what Christ's rule on earth will be like. To be encouraged by God's plans for this earth. To be motivated to serve Christ while we have time.

Introduction:

The Millennium is Christ's 1000 year rule on earth, in person, after His return. The key events are:

1. The seven year Tribulation ends with Antichrist's armies attacking Israel.
2. Christ returns to defeat Antichrist's armies.
3. Jews are converted on seeing Jesus Christ's wounds.
4. Jesus Christ enters Jerusalem to proclaim His Kingdom.
5. Satan and his demons are bound in the pit.
6. Sheep and goat nations are judged. Matthew 25:31-46.
7. Nature and world conditions are restored.
8. Peace prevails on earth. (Isaiah 2:4).
9. At the end of 1000 years, Satan is released from the pit, and deceives the nations to attack Jerusalem. They do so but are destroyed.
10. The earth is then destroyed by fire.
11. Unsaved people are resurrected, judged and cast into the lake of fire with Satan and his demons.
12. God makes a new heaven, a new earth, and a new Jerusalem.

I. We will study the Millennium as regards to:

1. JESUS CHRIST

Christ's feet shall stand on the Mount of Olives. After winning Armageddon, He will then sit on the Throne of David. Zechariah 14:1-9,12-21. "Yea, all kings shall fall down before Him." Ps 72:11. Three things will characterise His kingdom: a) Universal peace. Isaiah 2:4;
b) Universal righteousness. Jeremiah 23:5,6;
c) Speedy judgment on sin. Zech. 14:17-19; Psalm 2:8,9.

2. CHURCH will reign with Christ over the Gentile world.

"The Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee." Zechariah 14:5.

"Do ye not know that the saints shall judge the world?" I Corinthians 6:2.

"If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him." 1 Timothy 2:12.

"Thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities." Luke 19:17.

"I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was given to them." Revelation 20:4,6.

"To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne." Revelation 3:21.

3. ISRAEL. Notice 6 things:

a) Israel is to be regathered - initially in unbelief. Ezekiel 37:1-6; 39:22; 36:24; Isaiah 11:11. The 1948 founding of Israel is the forerunner to Israel's final regathering.

b) Israel will repent and be converted. Zechariah 12:8,9,10; 13:6,8,9; "So all Israel shall be saved." Romans 11:15,25,26.

c) The Temple and its worship will be restored. Isaiah 66:20-24; "I will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore." Ezekiel 37:26,28. The Old Testament sacrifices were typical and pointed to Christ. The Millennial sacrifices will be memorial and point back to Christ.

d) Israel will be divided east/west among the 12 tribes. Ezekiel 47,48.

e) Israel will have judges. Isaiah 1:26; Matthew 19:28.

f) Israel will evangelize the Gentiles who are born in the millennium. Isaiah 61:6; 66:19; Zech. 8:21-23; "Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the earth with fruit." Isaiah 27:6.

4. NATIONS will be judged for their sin. Isaiah 24:1,5,6,19-23; 26:9,21.

The sheep nations will inherit the kingdom. Nations will come weekly to worship at Jerusalem.

5. SATAN and his demons will be bound in the abyss for 1000 years. Rev. 20:1-3,7-10; Matth 8:29.

6. NATURE will be regenerated, and the social order will be set right.

a) The nature of ferocious animals will be changed. Isaiah 11:6-9; Romans 8:19-22.

b) Great topographical changes will occur. Zechariah 14:4,5,8.

- c) Rain and soil fertility will be restored. Joel 2:22-27; Isaiah 35:1; Amos 9:13-15.
- d) Crop failure will be for those refusing to worship at Jerusalem. Zechariah 14:17-19.
- e) Human life will be prolonged, as before the flood. Isaiah 65:20-24.
- f) Sickness will decrease.

7. CONDITIONS IN GENERAL

- a) Great joy and happiness. Isaiah 35:10.
- b) Physical healing will come to many. Isaiah 35:5,6.
- c) Great material prosperity and security. Micah 4:4,5; Isaiah 65:21.
- d) Earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord. Isaiah 11:9.
- e) No more wars. Isaiah 2:4; Micah 4:3.
- f) Man's headship in creation will be restored.

II. The Error of Amillennialism was born out of Roman Catholic theology that:

- 1) Augustine taught that the Kingdom is the church which is reigning on earth now.
- 2) Augustine taught that the millennium is to be interpreted spiritually as fulfilled in the church.
- 3) Augustine taught that the binding of Satan occurred during Christ's earthly ministry (Luke 10:18)
- 4) Augustine taught that the first resurrection is the new birth of a believer. (John 5:25).
- 5) Augustine believed in a literal 1000 year millennium between Christ's first and second comings. Since Christ did not return around 1000AD, modern Amillennialists think that 1000 years is a symbolic reference to the time between Christ's first and second comings.

III. Titles of the Millennium

- 1) The world to come "unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come" Hebrews 2:5.
- 2) The Kingdom of heaven "theirs is the kingdom of heaven" Matt 5:10; "Thy kingdom come" 6:10.
- 3) The Kingdom of God (Luke 19:11 "they thought that the kingdom of God should immediately appear").
- 4) The Kingdom of Christ (Revelation 11:15 "the kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord and of his Christ").
- 5) The Regeneration (Matthew 19:28 "in the regeneration when the Son of Man shall sit in the throne of his glory"). "Regeneration" occurs here and in Titus 3:5 concerning the new birth. It means "re-creation." The Millennium will be to the earth what salvation is to the sinner.
- 6) Times of Refreshing (Acts 3:19,20 "When the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord; And he shall send Jesus Christ.")
- 7) Times of Restitution "Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things" Acts 3:21.
- 8) Dispensation of the Fullness of Times (Eph. 1:10 "he might gather together in one all things in Christ").

IV. Purpose of the Millennium

- 1) To Reward believers. "For the Son of Man shall come in the glory of His Father with his angels and then he shall reward every man according to his works." (Matthew 16:27).
- 2) To Fulfil the Lord's Prayer. "Thy Kingdom come." (Matthew 6:9-13; Luke 11:1-4).
- 3) To Deliver Creation from the Bondage of Corruption. (Romans 8:19-22).
- 4) To Fulfil three Old Testament Covenants:
 - a) Abrahamic Covenant promising that Israel would become a mighty nation (Genesis 12:1-3) and that Israel would own the land forever (Genesis 17:7,8).
 - b) Davidic Covenant that from David would come an everlasting throne (2 Samuel 7:12,13) an everlasting Kingdom (2 Chronicles 13:5), and an everlasting King (Luke 1:31-33).
 - c) New Covenant that God would forgive Israel's iniquity (Jeremiah 31:31-34), give Israelites new hearts and use Israel to teach the Gentiles (Isaiah 42:6,7; Hebrew 8:8-13).
- 5) To prove that despite man's environment or heredity, unregenerate man will fail as seen by his rebelling against Christ's perfect rule at the end of the 1000 years. (Revelation 20:7-10).
- 6) To Glorify believers. "If we suffer, we shall also reign with him." (2 Timothy 2:12).
 "For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us." (Romans 8:18).

V. Millennial Temple Sacrifices will be reinstated.

“The Levites...shall slay the burnt-offerings and the sacrifice for the people (v.11).

They shall eat the meat-offering, and the sin-offering, and the trespass-offering.” (Ezekiel 44:11,29).

“This is the place where the priests shall boil the trespass-offering and the sin-offering, where they shall bake the meat-offering.” (Ezekiel 46:20).

“All they that sacrifice shall come and take of them and seeth therein.” (Zechariah 14:21).

Q: Why the need for animal blood sacrifices in the Millennium? Wouldn't this mean a retrogression in God's program? Doesn't Hebrews 9 and 10 say that blood sacrifices ended with Christ's death?

“Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.” (Hebrews 10:18).

Answer: These animal blood sacrifices will be reinstated as:

- a) A reminder of the need of the new birth based on Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross for our sins.
- b) An object lesson of the costliness of salvation.
- c) An example of the awfulness of sin.
- d) An illustration of the holiness of God.

During the millennium, millions of children will be born and raised in an age that will know no sin, sorrow, suffering, war, sickness, fear, Satan, hatred, jail or drugs. In spite of their perfect environment, these children will still need the new birth. Animal blood sacrifices will illustrate an object lesson teaching them the above four truths to remind them of their need to be saved.

VI. Early Christians who believed in a literal 1000 year Millennium.

Amillennialists such as Philip Mauro attack Premillennialism by denying any historical evidence of Premillennialism before Schofield:

“if it had been possible to produce from the copious writings of the “Church Fathers” any proof that the doctrine concerning the Kingdom of God taught by the Schofield Bible and by certain Bible schools of our day was ever held by Christians, real or nominal, in times past, it would have been produced long ago.” (The Gospel of the Kingdom, Mauro, p.104).

Answer: Well Mr. Mauro, here is your Premillennial proof. It's a pity you never bothered to check.

- 1) Justin Martyr (110-165AD): “But I and others, who are right-minded Christians on all points are assured that there will be a resurrection of the dead, and a thousand years in Jerusalem, which will then be built, adorned and enlarged as Ezekiel, Isaiah and others declare.” (Vol. 1, p.239).
- 2) Papias (70-155AD): “There will be a millennium after the resurrection from the dead, when the personal reign of Christ will be established on this earth”. (Vol. 1, p.154).
- 3) Tertullian (145-220AD): “We do confess that a Kingdom is promised to us upon the earth...it will be after the resurrection for a thousand years in the divinely-built city of Jerusalem...After its thousand years are over,...there will ensue the destruction of the world...” (Vol. 3, p.342,343).
- 4) Commodianus (240AD):
“For then after a thousand years they are delivered over to Gehenna.” (Vol. 4, p.211).
“according to God's command, living again in the world for a thousand years...they who make God of no account when the thousandth year is finished shall perish by fire.” (Vol. 4, p.218).
- 5) Lactantius (260-330AD): “the dead will rise again,...when again restored to life, they may reign with God a thousand years.” (Vol.7, p.218).
“that righteous King and Conqueror will institute a great judgment on earth respecting the living and the dead,...and will build the holy city, and this Kingdom of the righteous shall be for a thousand years. But when the thousand years shall be fulfilled, and the prince of the demons loosed, the nations will rebel against the righteous.” (Vol.7, p.254).
- 6) Victorinus (died 304AD): “I do not think the reign of a thousand years is eternal,...they cease to reign when the thousand years are finished.” (Vol.7, p.359).

VII. What led to a decline in Premillennial beliefs?

- 1) When Constantine (272-337AD) united church and state, the church received wealth and worldly honours. To hope for a coming King and an earthly Kingdom would have been extremely displeasing to Constantine. This worldly patronage of the church diminished the hope of a soon coming Christ.
- 2) The Rise of the Alexandrian School. Origen openly attacked Premillennialism (Chiliasm) and introduced the allegorical method of interpretation where he interpreted millennium passages spiritually and not literally. Dionysius of Alexandria, Origen's disciple continued his teachings.
- 3) Augustine (354-430AD), bishop of Hippo taught that "The first resurrection is the rising of dead souls into spiritual life beginning with Christ's ministry, from which the millennium dates; the devil is bound and expelled from the hearts of Christ's disciples; the reign of the saints is their personal victory over sin and the devil; the beast is this wicked world and his image is hypocrisy; the millennium will end in 650AD, ending history's 6000 years, and introducing the rise of Antichrist." This nonsense was rejected by people such as the Waldensians, the Paulicians, William Tyndale (1480-1536), Nicholas Ridley, Hugh Latimer (1555 died), the Huguenots in France, Anabaptists, Moravians, John Wesley and many others who adopted a literal interpretation of prophetic scriptures.

VIII. Doctrinal Errors of Amillennialism:

- 1) Amillennial spiritualising of scripture tacitly denies the verbal, plenary, inspiration of scripture.
- 2) Amillennials ignore the exact meaning of words such as "a thousand years".
If God inspired the words of scripture, then we must accept their common meaning.
- 3) Amillennials ignore the near and remote context of scriptures which demand a premillennial interpretation. Every scripture must be interpreted in conformity with all other parts of scripture.
- 4) Amillennialists have not yet produced an outlined system of Amillennialism that they all agree on.
- 5) Amillennials accept a literal interpretation for most of the Bible, but in eschatology they resort to spiritualization. They hence use 2 different and contradictory principles of interpretation.
- 6) Amillennials allegorical or spiritualising methods of interpretation did not spring from piety, but from Origen (185-254AD), who borrowed it from the heathen theories of Plato.
- 7) It is sometimes correct to say that Israel typifies the church as premillennials rightly do, but it is wrong for amillennials to teach that Israel is the church. Figurative language does not negate literal interpretation.
- 8) Fulfilled prophecy forms the pattern in interpreting unfulfilled prophecy. Since fulfilled prophecy has come true literally, so will unfulfilled prophecy come true literally.
- 9) Amillennials using allegorical interpretation of prophecy disagree with and discredit each other.
- 10) Amillennial, allegorical interpretation favours modernism. It is almost impossible to find a Premillennial Modernist, but most modernist protestantism is amillennial. Hence, amillennial allegorism is a step towards modernism.
- 11) Amillennial allegorism leaves large portions of Scripture unexplained. It cannot explain many scriptures, such as Zechariah 14, Ezekiel 37-39. All prophetic scriptures are easily explained by the premillennial literal interpretation approach.
- 12) Amillennialism fails to understand Daniel's 70 Week Prophecy (Daniel 9:24-27). If these 490 years were fulfilled literally, so will the future 1000 year millennium be fulfilled literally.

IX. Bible Verses Teaching the 1000 year Rule of Christ on Earth.

- "He laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil & Satan, & bound him 1000 years (2) "that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled." Rev 20:3.
"they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years." Rev 20:4.
The rest of the dead lived not again until the 1000 years were finished. This *is* the first resurrection. 20:5
"They shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years." Rev 20:6.
"When the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison." Rev 20:7.
"After two days will he revive us: in the third day he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight." Hosea 6:2. See 2 Peter 3:8.

54. JESUS CHRIST WILL PERSONALLY APPEAR ON EARTH

Many groups deny that Jesus Christ will literally appear on earth in person to rule for 1000 years. These groups include Jehovah's Witnesses, Seventh Day Adventists, and some Amillennials. The devil does not like the idea of Christ returning to rule on earth in person because it means that Satan will lose control of the earth and be imprisoned in the pit for 1000 years.

What Bible passages clearly state that Jesus Christ will literally return to land on earth in person to rule?

1. JESUS CHRIST'S BODY WILL BE ON EARTH.

If parts of Christ's body are on earth, then Christ must literally be on earth, as seen in these passages:

1. His **feet** will be on earth.
"His **feet** shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east." Zechariah 14:4.
2. His **hands** will be on earth.
"One shall say unto Him, what are these **wounds in thine hands**? Then He shall answer, those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends." Zechariah 13:6.
3. His **garments** will be on earth.
"Who is this that cometh from Edom, with **dyed garments** from Bozrah? This that is glorious in His apparel, travelling in the greatness of His strength?....I have trodden the winepress alone;..... their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments." Isaiah 63:1-3.
The blood of antichrist's soldiers will be sprinkled on Christ's garments when He returns to rescue Israel.
4. He shall **sit** and rule on His throne.
"He (the BRANCH) shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon His throne." Zech. 6:13.
5. His **voice** shall be heard at Jerusalem.
"The Lord shall utter **His voice** from Jerusalem; and the heavens and the earth shall shake: but the Lord will be the strength of the children of Israel." Joel 3:16.
"He shall **speak peace** unto the heathen: and His dominion shall be from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth." Zechariah 9:10.
6. Jerusalem shall be called "**The Lord is there**".
"The name of the city from that day shall be The Lord is there." Ezekiel 48:35.
7. He will **tread** or walk on the earth.
"For, behold, the Lord cometh forth out of his place, and will come down, and **tread** upon the high places of the earth." Micah 1:3.
8. He will **stand** at the latter day upon the earth.
"For I know that my redeemer (Christ) liveth, and that **He shall stand** at the latter day upon the earth." Job 19:25.

2. JESUS CHRIST WILL BE SEEN IN PERSON ON EARTH.

If people will see Christ after His return with their physical eyes then He has to be physically present on earth. Titus 2:13 states clearly "the glorious **appearing** of the great God."

1. "They (the house of David and inhabitants of Jerusalem) shall **look upon me** whom they have pierced....." Zechariah 12:10.
2. "Behold he cometh with clouds, and **every eye** shall **see** him....." Revelation 1:7.
3. "They (all the tribes of earth) shall **see** the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory." Matthew 24:27-31, v.30.
4. "When the **Lord** shall build up Zion (Israel), he shall **appear** in his glory." Psalm 102:16.
5. "The Lord shall be **seen** over them. The Lord of hosts shall defend them (Israel)." Zechariah 9:14-15.

3. **JESUS CHRIST IS TO BE PERSONALLY IN THE MIDST OF ISRAEL.**

If Christ dwells at Jerusalem, is in Jerusalem, and is in the midst of Israel, then He is personally present on earth after His second coming.

1. “The Lord shall reign **over** them **IN** Mount Zion from henceforth, even for ever.” Micah 4:7
2. “I will cleanse their (Israel’s) blood.....for the Lord **dwelleth IN** Zion.” Joel 3:21.
3. “Ye shall know that I am **IN** the **midst** of Israel.” Joel 2:27.
4. “So shall ye know that I am the Lord your God **dwelling IN** Zion, my holy mountain: then shall Jerusalem be holy.....” Joel 3:17.
5. “The Lord of hosts shall reign **IN** Mount Zion, and **IN** Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.” Isaiah 24:23.
6. “The King of Israel, even the Lord, is **IN** the **midst** of thee: thou shalt not see evil anymore. The Lord thy God **IN** the **midst** of **thee** is mighty.” Zephaniah 3:15,17.
7. “Many nations shall be joined to the Lord in that day, and shall be my people: and I will **dwell IN** the **midst** of thee.....” Zechariah 2:11.
8. “Thus saith the Lord; I am returned unto Zion, and will **dwell IN** the **midst** of Jerusalem:...” Zechariah 8:3.
9. “Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts **IN** Jerusalem.” Zechariah 8:22.
10. “Yet have I set my King **upon** my holy **hill** of Zion.” Psalm 2:6.

4. **JESUS CHRIST DOES CERTAIN ACTIONS WHICH COULD ONLY BE DONE IF HE WAS PHYSICALLY PRESENT ON EARTH.**

1. **All the saints** shall come with Christ back to earth.
“The Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee.” Zechariah 14:5.
2. **Christ shall fight** against antichrist’s armies.
“Then shall the Lord go forth and fight against these nations, as when he fought in the day of battle.” Zechariah 14:3.
3. **All nations will worship Christ at Jerusalem.**
“Every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem, shall go up from year to year to **worship** the King, the Lord of hosts, and to keep the feast of Tabernacles.” Zechariah 14:16.
“Yea, all kings shall **fall down** before him: all nations shall **serve** him.” Psalm 72:11.
4. **Christ will judge the peoples of earth.**
“The Lord cometh to judge the earth: with righteousness shall he judge the world, and the people with equity.” Psalm 98:9.
“When the Son of man shall come in His glory, and all the holy angels with Him, then shall He **sit** upon the throne of His glory:
And before Him shall be gathered **all nations**:and he shall **separate** them one from another” Matthew 25:31-32.
“He shall **judge** among the nations, and shall **rebuke** many people....” Isaiah 2:4.
5. **Christ will teach the nations His ways.**
“Many people shall say, come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will **teach** us of his ways.” Isaiah 2:3.

Conclusion: “Your God will come with vengeance.” Isaiah 35:4.

“This same Jesus which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come **in like manner** as ye have seen him go into heaven.” Acts 1:9-11.

55. Daniel's "70 Week" Prophecy.

Bible Reading: Daniel 9:24-27.

Aim: To understand the Seventy Week Prophecy as a proof of Divine inspiration of the Bible, and as the key to unlocking all Bible prophecies of Christ's Second Coming.

Introduction:

God's program would be finished in seventy heptads, or seventy sevens of years. The KJV calls heptads "weeks". History interprets this as 70 x 7 prophetic years = 490 years.

"**Seventy weeks** are determined upon thy people (Israel) and upon thy holy city (Jerusalem)". (v.24).

Today, people think in terms of tens (e.g. decades). Daniel's people thought in terms of sevens (heptads).

For example:

a) Seven days in one week.

b) Every seventh year was a sabbath rest year (Leviticus 25:1-7).

c) Seven 'sevens' = 7 x 7 = 49 years brought Israel to the year of Jubilee (Leviticus 25:8-12).

d) 70 x 7 years is a span of 490 years.

After the 490 years have finished for Israel and Jerusalem, God will have completed six things.

(1) WHAT DO EACH OF THESE SIX THINGS MEAN?

1. To finish the transgression, of Israel after 490 years. Israel's sin of disobedience will be brought to an end at Christ's second coming, when she repents and receives Christ as her Saviour and Messiah.

Christ's work on the cross has made possible His future 'finishing' of Israel's transgression.

2. God will make an end of sins.

Christ would be punished for Israel's and the world's sins on the cross. At Christ's second coming He will remove Israel's sins (Ezekiel 37:23; Romans 11:20).

3. God will make reconciliation for iniquity.

Reconciliation = atone = to cover, to expiate. God's final atonement for Israel's sin (iniquity) is when she repents at Christ's second coming, as atonement provision has been made at the cross.

4. God, being satisfied with Christ's death, will bring in everlasting righteousness.

God will establish a 1000 year kingdom characterised by righteousness (Isaiah 60:21; Jeremiah 23:5-6).

5. God will seal up the vision and prophecy.

All God's promises for Israel will come to pass in the millennial kingdom. Until they are fulfilled, prophecies are unsealed. When fulfilled, they are sealed (Hebrew (2856) - closed up, make an end).

6. God will anoint the most Holy.

This refers to the consecration of the millennial Temple that Christ builds (Ezekiel 43:1-5, Zechariah 6:12,13), not by literal oil, but by the presence of the Shekinah glory cloud. The Tabernacle, altar, and all the holy vessels were anointed with oil (Exodus 29:36; 30:26-28).

The anointing of the most holy is not a reference to Christ's anointing. Rather the 'most holy' in the Hebrew are technical words that are always translated in the Old Testament by the phrase 'the Holy of Holies.'

(2) IMPORTANCE OF THE SEVENTY WEEK PROPHECY

The Daniel 9:24-27 prophecy is important because:

1. It proves the truth of the Bible. Because the first 69 weeks finished exactly as predicted to the very day (173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC to 3pm Sunday March 29, 33 AD), this is an unanswerable argument for the Divine inspiration of the Bible. Only the all-knowing God could predict the very day that Messiah would ride into Jerusalem to present Himself as the Prince of Israel.

2. It shatters the critics' arguments who reject the early date of the book of Daniel of 540 BC and place it about 150 BC, seeking to deny the clear predictions of Daniel 11 that were fulfilled from 330 BC to 167 BC. The critics are troubled by these predictive prophecies in Daniel 11 because this proves the Divine authorship of the Bible.

Question: If Daniel was written in 150 BC as the critics claim, how did it correctly prophecy the date of Christ's entry to Jerusalem as 29 March, 33 AD?

3. It disproves the allegorical Amillennial theory of interpreting prophecy, and proves the Premillennial position of Christ returning to earth for literal Israel at the end of a literal seven year tribulation, described in Revelation 6-19. If the first 69 weeks are literally 173,880 days, so the future 7 year tribulation (1 week) will be literally 2520 days (360 x 7).

4. It is the time key to understand all New Testament prophecy. Revelation 11:2-3; 12:6,14; and 13:5 describe a future 3 1/2 year period (1260 days, or 42 weeks) being the last half of the seven year tribulation, which equates to the last half of the 70th week (Daniel 9:27).

(3) BACKGROUND

While Daniel was captive in Babylon from 605-537 BC, as he was praying for Israel and confessing their sin, the angel Gabriel came to give him the 70 week prophecy. Daniel knew that the 70 year captivity predicted by Jeremiah in Jeremiah 25:11,12 was nearing completion, so he asked about Israel's imminent return to their land. Gabriel's message was that Israel's ultimate return to the land would not be after the 70 year Babylonian captivity, but after the 70 week period stated in Daniel 9:24-27.

(4) MAIN FEATURES OF THE 70 WEEK PROPHECY

1. It deals with Daniel's people (Israel) and city (Jerusalem). 'Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people, and upon thy holy city...' Daniel 9:24.
2. Two different princes are mentioned:
 - a) Messiah the Prince, and
 - b) The prince that shall come (v.26).
3. The time period is 70 weeks, made up of 7 weeks + 62 weeks + 1 week (v.25,27).
4. It starts with 'the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem.' (v.25).
5. The end of the 69 weeks will be marked by the appearance of Messiah as the Prince of Israel. (v.25).
6. After the 69 weeks, two predictions are that:
 - a) Messiah the Prince will be 'cut off', and
 - b) Jerusalem will be destroyed by the people of another prince coming in the future. (v.26).
7. The 70th week begins with a covenant being made between the 'prince that shall come' and the Jewish nation for a period of 1 week (v.27).
8. In the midst of this 70th week, the coming prince will (1) break this treaty, (2) cause the Jewish sacrifices to cease, and (3) will greatly persecute the Jews to the end of the 70th week (v.27).
9. Great blessings for Israel will come when the 70 weeks are fully completed (v.24).

(5) MEANING OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS.

'Week' in Hebrew means 'a period of seven' or 'heptad'. It is used 20 times in the Old Testament as follows:

1. 3 times it means 'a unit of seven' days (Ezekiel 45:21, Daniel 10:2,3).
2. 6 times it means 'normal 7-day week' (Genesis 29:27,28; Leviticus 12:5; Deuteronomy 16:9; Jeremiah 5:24).
3. 5 times it means the 'Feast of Weeks' (Exodus 34:22; Numbers 28:26; Deut. 16:10,16; II Chronicles 8:13).
4. 6 times it means a 'unit of seven' without reference to days (Daniel 9:24-27). In Daniel 9:24-27, '1 week' refers to a 'unit of 7 years'. Hence Daniel is discussing 70 'units of seven years' or 490 years.

We know this because:

1. In the context, Daniel had been thinking in years, and in multiples of 70 years. 'The number of years....seventy years in the desolation of Jerusalem.' Daniel 9:1,2.
2. Each year of Babylonian captivity represented one 7-year cycle of past history where Israel had not observed the seventh year rest. Thus the context is years, not days. The 70 year captivity was due to Israel violating 70 sabbatical years over a 490 year period in the past. Now Daniel predicted 70 units of seven years decreed for another 490 years into Israel's future.
3. It is impossible to fit the events discussed in 9:24-27 into 490 days, or 490 weeks (regardless of any starting point), only 490 years. Jerusalem could not be rebuilt & destroyed in 490 days (1 yr 3 months) or 490 weeks (9yr).
4. In 9:27, the covenant that will be confirmed for one 'unit of seven' will be broken in the middle. If 'weeks' means 'units of 7 years', this means that the covenant would be broken at the 3 1/2 year point. This fits perfectly well with the 'time, times and half a time' in Daniel 7:25; 12:7; Rev. 12:14, the 1260 days (Rev. 12:6; 11:3) and the 42 months (Rev. 11:2).
5. The Hebrew word for 'weeks' means years in the Mishnah (Baba Metzia ix. 10; Sanhedrin v1).

Note: According to the false 'Day-Year' theory used by SDAs and JW's, they would have us believe that the first 69 1/2 weeks equal 486 1/2 years (490 - 3 1/2 years). But the last 1/2 week they claim equals 1260 years. This is contradictory and inconsistent. The last 1/2 week must also be literally 1260 days (Rev. 12:6), if the first 69 weeks were 173,880 days, as proven by history.

Question: If these 70 'weeks' consist of 490 years, **what is the length of the year?**

Answer: Our year is 365.24219879 days. The prophetic year of scripture is 360 days (12 months of 30 days each), as seen from:

- i) **History:** The Flood lasted from the 17th day of the 2nd month (Genesis 7:11) to the 17th day of the 7th month (Genesis 8:4). This is 5 months. Genesis 7:24 and 8:3 gives this same period as being 150 days. This gives 30 days in each month, or 360 days in each year.

ii) Prophecy:

Daniel 9:27 describes the Roman prince persecuting the Jews for 3 1/2 years.

Daniel 7:25 describes this Roman prince persecuting the Jews for 'a time, and times, and half a time' (3.5 years).

Revelation 13:4-7 describes this same ruler persecuting the Jews for 42 months (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Revelation 12:13,14 describes this persecution as lasting 'a time, and times, and half a time' (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Revelation 12:6 describes this persecution of the Jews as lasting 1260 days (i.e. 3 1/2 years).

Hence we have 3 1/2 years stated as being 1260 days or 42 months.

Hence the length of the prophetic year in the 70 week prophecy is 360 days (1260 days/ 3.5 years = 360 days/yr).

(6) WHEN DID THE 70 WEEKS BEGIN?

"Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks, and sixty-two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times." 9:25.

Daniel shows the starting point of the 70 week prophecy to be the issuing of the command to restore and build Jerusalem, where the street and the wall will be built in troublous times.

Notice 3 things about Jerusalem's rebuilding:

1) "Restore and build" means to restore Jerusalem completely to its former state.

2) "Street and wall" mean a complete restoration.

3) Rebuilding the city would be in troublesome times. Can we locate this commandment and fix its date accurately?

(7) WHICH COMMAND IS REFERRED TO?

The 70 "sevens" would begin with the going forth of the commandment to restore and build Jerusalem. This decree was the fourth of four decrees issued by Persian rulers to the Jews. The decree we want concerns rebuilding the city of Jerusalem, not the house of God or the Temple.

1. Cyrus' decree on October 29, 539 BC was to rebuild the temple, not the city.

'In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia... he made a proclamation... saying... "All the kingdoms of the earth hath the Lord God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all his people? The Lord his God be with him, and let him go up.'" II Chron. 36:22,23; Ezra 1:1-4, 5:13,17.

This decree concerned the return of Jewish captives, and rebuilding the temple. It said nothing about a complete restoration of the city.

Keil (p.365), Leupold (p.417-26) and E.J. Young falsely conclude that this decree marks the start of the 70 weeks.

E.J. Young in 'The Prophecy of Daniel: A Commentary', p202, states:

"This edict [of Cyrus], furthermore, was issued in fulfilment of the prophecy of Jeremiah, and it speaks expressly of going to Jerusalem and building there the temple- the first and most important step in rebuilding the city. In this connection also one should consider the prophecies of Isaiah 44:28 in which Cyrus is described as 'saying to Jerusalem, Thou shalt be built; and to the temple, Thy foundation shall be laid'. Likewise Isaiah 45:13 declares of Cyrus, 'he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives.' Lastly, it should be noted that the book of Ezra pictures Jerusalem as an existing city (c.f. Ezra 4:12, 9:9)".

It cannot be denied that this was the year in which the effects of the going forth of a word began to appear in history.

Answer: This may seem convincing, but there are **3 problems with this view:**

a) Cyrus' decree in Ezra 1:1-4 refers to the rebuilding of the temple and not to the city. We agree that there were inhabitants, and a city was built in Cyrus' time as predicted in Isaiah 44:28 and 45:13. It was not a city that could defend itself as described in Daniel 9:25. Young quotes two passages to support his view:

Ezra 4:12,13,16 is a letter to the king from Ezra's enemies. They emphasised rebuilding the city, but Ezra was rebuilding the temple in reality.

Ezra 9:9 'to set up the house of our God, and to repair the desolations thereof, and to give us a wall in Judah and in Jerusalem.'

This was written in **457 BC**, and refers to Artaxerxes reign (464-423 BC), and not to Cyrus' reign.

Also, the Hebrew word for 'wall' is a fence used to surround a vineyard, and not a military defensive wall.

The only other mention of walls in Ezra are the temple walls (Ezra 5:3,8,9), not city walls.

Hence, neither of the passages is in the context of Cyrus' decree, nor do they refer to building a defensive wall.

b) We must differentiate between starting to rebuild a city (Cyrus' decree) and restoring a city to its former state (Artaxerxes' decree in Nehemiah). For example, Japan rebuilt itself after WWII, but that is quite different from restoring it to its pre-WWII military state.

c) If we wrongly accept the 70 weeks as beginning with Cyrus' decree (539 BC), then Messiah the Prince should have arrived in 63 BC (i.e. after 69 weeks = 69 x 7 x {360/365.25} of our years, which is 476 years later.

539 BC plus 476 yrs gives 63 BC.

2. Darius I decree in 512 BC

This decree confirmed Cyrus' decree to rebuild the house of God. Tatnai, Governor of Judah, questioned the Jews' right to rebuild the temple (Ezra 5:3-17). Darius searched out Cyrus' decree, and then issued a decree himself in 512 BC confirming Cyrus' original decree (Ezra 6:1-12).

"Then Darius the king made a decree... "Let the work of this house of God alone; let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this house of God." (Ezra 6:1,7).

"This house was finished in the sixth year of Darius." (6:15).

Hence Darius' decree is not the starting date of the 70 weeks because:

- a) It specifically refers to the temple, and not to the city.
- b) It was not a new decree, but only confirmed Cyrus' decree.

3. Artaxerxes Longimanus' decree to Ezra in 457 BC

This decree concerns finances for animal sacrifices at the temple.

"I (Artaxerxes King of Persia) make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel... which are minded of their own free will to go up to Jerusalem, go with thee... carry the silver and gold... let it be diligently done for the house of the God of heaven, to beautify the house of the Lord at Jerusalem." Ezra 7:11, 13, 15, 23 and 27.

Each of these first 3 decrees concerns building the Temple/ House of God at Jerusalem, not the city. Since an unwallled city was no threat to a military power, a temple could be built with no threat to the Persian government. This decree encouraged more Jews to return to Jerusalem, and it helped the temple worship. Some claim that this decree (457 BC) was the starting point of the 70 week prophecy, and that the end of the 69 weeks was 27 AD (marking the start of Christ's ministry). They claim the middle of the 70th week to be Christ's crucifixion in 30 AD. They claim 33 AD to be the end of the 70th week marked by Stephen's death, and Paul's conversion. (Their calculation is 457 BC + 490 of our years = 33 AD). This is wrong because they have ignored the 360 day prophetic year, and failed to deduct 1 year in going from 1 BC to 1 AD.

This theory is wrong because:

- i) This decree says nothing about rebuilding the city, but only discusses temple worship.
- ii) To have the 69 weeks end at the start of Christ's ministry in 27 AD is wrong, because:
 - The cutting off of the Messiah (Daniel 9:26) cannot describe the descent of the Holy Spirit on Christ at the start of His ministry, and
 - Christ began His ministry in 29 AD, not 27 AD (see H.W. Hoehner, p.29-44).
- iii) What does 'confirming the covenant' mean in Daniel 9:27? If it refers to Christ, what covenant did Christ confirm at the start of His ministry, and how did Christ break the covenant at His crucifixion? It does not fit the facts.
- iv) To say that the middle of the 70th week refers to Christ's crucifixion in 30 AD is wrong because:
 - The sacrifices did not cease at Christ's crucifixion, and
 - 33 AD is the correct date of Christ's crucifixion, not 30 AD.
- v) To say that the 70 weeks ended in 33 AD with Stephen's death and Paul's conversion is pure guesswork. Daniel 9:27 and Acts 8,9 never even imply this.

Hence Artaxerxes' decree to Ezra in 457 BC cannot be the start of the 70 week prophecy.

4. Artaxerxes Longimanus' decree to Nehemiah at 10pm March 4, 444 BC, in Nehemiah 2:1-8.

At this date, Artaxerxes granted the Jews permission to rebuild Jerusalem's city walls.

King: "For what dost thou make request?" Nehemiah 2:4.

Nehemiah: "That thou would send me unto Judah, unto the city of my fathers' sepulchres, that I may build it." (Nehemiah 2:5).

"A letter unto Asaph... for the wall of the city... And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my God upon me." (Nehemiah 2:8).

This decree is the one prophesied by Daniel (9:25) that starts the 70 week prophecy, for these reasons:

- i) This clearly refers to the restoration of the city (2:3,5) and of the city gates and walls (2:3,8).
- ii) King Artaxerxes wrote a letter to Asaph to supply materials to rebuild the walls (2:3,8).
- iii) No later decrees were given by Persian kings to rebuild Jerusalem.
- iv) The book of Nehemiah and Ezra 4:7-23 teach that the walls were restored in distressing circumstances, as predicted by Daniel (Daniel 9:25).
- v) The walls were broken down (Nehemiah 2:13), and the gates were burned (Nehemiah 2:17) when Nehemiah visited Jerusalem. No earlier decree had restored the city walls and gates.

(8) WHAT DATE WAS THE DECREE?

Nehemiah 1:1 states that Nehemiah heard of Jerusalem's broken walls and burned gates (1:3) in the month of Chisleu (November/December) in Artaxerxes' twentieth year.

Then later in Artaxerxes' 20th year in the month Nisan (March/April), Nehemiah was granted permission to restore the city and to build its walls (2:1) (Why was March after November in the same year?)

Because Nehemiah used a year starting at Tishri, which started at September).

Question: What year did Artaxerxes' rule begin?

Answer: Artaxerxes came to the throne when his father died on December 17, 465 BC ('The Fifth Century Jewish Calendar at Elephantine', S.H. Horn and L.H. Weed, Journal of Near Eastern studies, XIII (Jan. 1954), p 4, 20, 9).

Artaxerxes' first year of reign would be Nisan 464 to Nisan 463, since the Persian year started at Nisan (March).

Therefore, Artaxerxes' 20th year would be 445 BC. The report to Nehemiah (1:1) occurred in Chisleu (Nov./Dec.) 445 BC. The decree of Artaxerxes (2:1) occurred in Nisan (March/April) 444 BC. See the following chart.

Nehemiah 2:1 does not specify which day of Nisan the decree was given.

The crescent of the new moon would have appeared at about 10pm on Nisan 1, 444 BC (March 4), late enough to be missed. On March 5, 444 BC the new moon crescent would have been visible early to all. Since no day is given in Nisan in the Bible, Jewish custom would understand the day to be the first day of a visible new moon crescent, March 5, 444 BC, which was the date of the decree. To be exact, the starting time of the decree was 10pm 4 March 444BC.

(9) WHEN DID THE 69 WEEKS END?

The 7 weeks and the 62 weeks are continuous, making a total of 69 weeks between Artaxerxes' decree to restore Jerusalem, and the coming of Messiah the Prince. (See 'Chronological Aspects of the Life of Christ' by H.W. Hoehner, p129-131).

"After 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself..." Daniel 9:26.

In Christ's first coming, He would not receive His kingdom promised in the Old Testament.

Therefore the 69 weeks (7+62) would end with Christ's entry to Jerusalem on 3pm Sunday March 29, 33 AD, then Christ would be killed on Friday 3 April 33AD.

Christ died on Friday, Nisan 14 in 33 AD (Friday April 3, 33 AD in a Julian Calendar), according to H.W. Hoehner, in his excellent book 'Chronological Aspects of the Life of Christ'.

A prophetic year is 360 days in length, because:

- i) Ancient countries of India, Persia, Babylon, Assyria, Egypt, Mava, Israel, Arabia and China, all had 12 months of 30 days each, thus giving a 360 day year.
- ii) The 70th week of 7 years (Daniel 9:27) will be broken in the middle, making 1260 days, or 42 months, or 3 1/2 years (Revelation 11:2,3; 12:6; 13:5). This gives a 30 day month, or a 360 day year.
- iii) The 5 months of Flood waters (Genesis 7:11 and 8:4) are equated to 150 days (Genesis 7:24 and 8:3). This gives a 30 day month or 360 day year.

Having found that 1) The "weeks" are groups of 7 years,

2) The length of the prophetic year is 360 days, and

3) The 70 weeks began on 10pm March 4, 444 BC, we may calculate the date of Christ's triumphal entry.

4) Number of days in 69 weeks = 69 x 7yrs x 360 days = 173,880 days.

5) Number of years from 10pm March 4, 444 BC to March 29, 33 AD = 444 + 33 - 1 = 476 years.

(Note: subtract 1 year, because only 1 year expired from 1 BC to 1 AD).

Number of days from March 4 (Artaxerxes' decree) to March 29 (Christ entering Jerusalem on donkey) = 25 days.

Question: How many days from March 4, 444 BC (Artaxerxes' decree) to March 29, 33 AD (the day Christ entered Jerusalem on a donkey to proclaim Himself king)?

Answer: Number of days in 476 years = 476 years x 365.24219879 days/yr = 173,855.28662404 days = 173,855 days, 6 hours, 52 minutes, 44 seconds.

Number of days from March 4 to March 29 = 25 days.

Therefore, the total number of days = 173,855 + 25 = 173,880 days.

This proves that the 173,880 days predicted in the 69 weeks between Artaxerxes' decree and the Coming of Messiah the Prince, equals the same number of days that actually elapsed from March 4, 444 BC to March 29, 33 AD, the day of Christ's triumphal entry into Jerusalem, known as Palm Sunday.

The 483 Years in the Jewish and Gregorian Calendars.

Jewish Calendar (360 days per year)

$(7 \times 7) + (62 \times 7)$ years = 483 years

$$\begin{array}{r} 483 \text{ years} \\ \times 360 \text{ days} \\ \hline 173,880 \text{ days} \end{array}$$

Gregorian Calendar (365 days a year)

444 B.C. to A.D. 33 = 476 years*

$$\begin{array}{r} 476 \text{ years} \\ \times 365 \text{ days} \\ \hline 173,740 \text{ days} \\ + 116 \text{ days in leap years}^{**} \\ + 24 \text{ days (March 4- 29)} \\ \hline 173,880 \text{ days} \end{array}$$

* Since only one year expired between 1 B.C. and A.D. 1, the total is 476 years, not 477 years.

** A total of 476 years divided by four (a leap year every four years) gives 119 additional days. But three days must be subtracted from 119 because centennial years are not leap years, though every 400th year is a leap year.

(10) NEW TESTAMENT VERIFICATION OF THIS DAY

March 29, 33 AD is therefore definitely fixed as the **end of the 69 weeks**, and the date of **Christ's triumphal entry** to Jerusalem on a 'foal of an ass' to offer Himself as Messiah the Prince and King of Israel.

Christ knew that this was the day predicted in Daniel 9:25, from His words in Luke 19:28-44, especially **verse 42** "**this thy day**" and **verse 44** "because thou knewest not the **time** of thy visitation."

"And when he was come near, he beheld the city, and wept over it, saying, "If thou had known, even thou, at least in this **thy day**, the things which belong unto thy peace! But now they are hid from thine eyes... they shall not leave in thee one stone upon another; because thou **knewest not the time of thy visitation.**" Luke 19:41,42,44.

Notice these details taking place on **Sunday, March 29, 33 AD**:

1. Jesus, knowing that this was the last day of the 69th week, sends his disciples to find a "colt the foal of an ass" upon which He would ride as King into Jerusalem. This **fulfilled the prophecy in Zechariah 9:9** given in 487BC: "Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold thy King cometh unto thee: he is just and having salvation; lowly and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass."
2. The whole multitude of the disciples, understanding the meaning, shouted "**Blessed be the King** that cometh in the name of the LORD." (**Psalm 118:22-26**).
3. Jesus now commends the disciples' shouts, and rebukes the Pharisees' protest, saying: "If these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out." v.40.
4. Because Jesus foreknew that the Pharisees and Jerusalem would reject Him as King and Messiah, Jesus wept over the city, saying: "If thou had known, even thou, at least in **this thy day**, the things which belong unto thy peace!" Luke 19:42.

Question: What day was Jesus referring to?

Answer: Israel's day on which their Messiah the Prince would present himself as King to Israel, exactly 173,880 days after 10pm March 4, 444 BC.

Question: What were "the things which belong unto thy peace"?

Answer: The same 6 things mentioned in Daniel 9:24. But now for a time these things are to be hid from Israel's eyes, their enemies the Romans will conquer them, destroying their city Jerusalem and Temple. This happened in 70 AD. Why? 'Because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation.' Luke 19:44.

The exact fulfilment of this prophecy **proves the accuracy of Daniel**, the **inspiration of the Bible**, and the truth of **Jesus Christ as Saviour & Messiah**. Only God can predict to the very day '**things that are not yet done.**' Isa 46:10. So the 173,880 days finished the very day that Christ entered Jerusalem on a colt to offer Himself as Messiah the Prince to Israel, which was Sunday, Nisan 9 (March 29), 33 AD. Only 5 days later on Friday, Nisan 14 (April 3), 33 AD, Jesus was cut off, or crucified.

March 4, What day and year was 173,880 days after March 4, 444 B.C.?

444 BC

BC 444	443	442	441	440	430	425	19 years				
425				415	405	400	25 years				
400				390	380	375	25 years				
375				365	355	350	25 years				
350				340	330	325	25 years				
325				315	305	300	25 years				
300				290	280	275	25 years				
275				265	255	250	25 years				
250				240	230	225	25 years				
225				215	205	200	25 years				
200				190	180	175	25 years				
175				165	155	150	25 years				
150				140	130	125	25 years				
125				115	105	100	25 years				
100				90	80	75	25 years				
75				65	55	50	25 years				
50				40	30	25	25 years				
25				15	5	4	3	2	1	1 AD	25 years
1 A.D.				11 A.D.		21 A.D.				26 AD	25 years
26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33				7 years
											476 years

- Artaxerxes' command to restore and build Jerusalem March 4, 444 B.C.
- Coming of Messiah the Prince after 69 weeks = $69 \times 7 \times 360$ days = 173,880 days
- Number of Gregorian ("our") years = 173,880 days or **476.06766 our years**
365.2422 days/yr
- **476 years** after **March 4, 444 B.C.** = **33 A.D.** according to chart above
- Number of days from **March 4** to **Messiah the Prince's coming** = **0.06766 of a year** x **365.2422 days/year** = **24.7 days.**
- Therefore Messiah came on **10pm 4 March + 24.7 days = 3pm Sunday 29 March, 33AD**

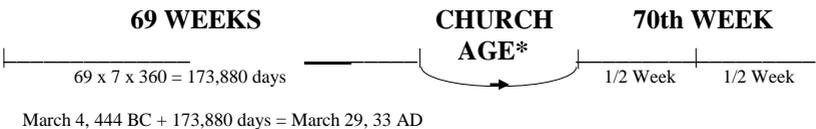
(11) WHY THE GAP BETWEEN THE 69TH AND 70TH WEEK?

March 4, 444 BC

Nisan 1 of Artaxerxes' 20th Year
Nehemiah 2:1-8

March 29, 33 AD

Triumphal Entry on Nisan 9, 33 AD
Luke 19:28-40



Verification

444 BC to 33 AD = 476 years

476 years x 365.24219879 days = 173,855 days
+ days between March 4 & 29 = 25 days
173,880 days

Rationale for 360-Day Years:

1/2 week Daniel 9:27

Time, times and 1/2 time Dan. 7:25, 12:7.
Rev. 12:14.

1,260 days Rev. 12:6, 11:3.

42 months Rev. 11:2, 13:5.

Thus 42 months = 1,260 days = time, times and 1/2 a time
= 1/2 week = 3.5 years.

Therefore, 1 month = 30 days, 1 Year = 360 days.

* Messiah cut off *after* 69 weeks April 3, 33 AD

a) Some people hold to the Continuous view, that the 69th week continues immediately onto the 70th week without any gap or break. Obviously, if this view is correct, the 70th week is past, having ended early in the book of Acts. They believe that Christ appeared as Messiah the Prince at John's Baptism, and that Christ died in the middle of the 70th week, after 3 1/2 years of ministry.

JW's, SDAs, Christadelphians etc. change the 1260 days of the second half of the 70th week into 1260 years.

This view is clearly false because the first 69 weeks amounted to 483 years, yet how can 1 week be 1260 years?

b) The Gap view includes a great parenthesis of time after the 69th week. This gap is the church age.

Then later, after the rapture of the church, the 70th week commences. Hence the 70th week of 7 years is still future.

Amillennialists ask 'What right do we have to break the 70th week off the 69th week?'

Amillennialists teach that:

a) Christ's First Coming ministry was in the 70th week,

b) There was no interval between the 69th and 70th week,

c) The 6 actions predicted in Daniel 9:24 are being fulfilled today in the church.

This amillennial view is false because it ignores the facts that:

a) v.26 says that Christ is cut off after the '7 and 62 sevens', not in the 70th 'seven'.

b) Christ's earthly ministry was 3 1/2 years in length, not 7 years.

c) God's 6 actions in Daniel 9:24 pertain to Daniel's people (Israel) and His 'Holy City' (Jerusalem), not the church.

Consider these reasons for a GAP between the 69th and 70th week:

1. To view the 6 actions in Daniel 9:24 as being fulfilled at Christ's first coming is impossible. Was everlasting righteousness brought in then? Not at all.

These only refer to Israel, as the context states, and none of these have happened to Israel as yet.

Paul sees Israel's conversion as in the future, as seen by these statements in Romans 11:25-27.

a) Blindness in part is happened to Israel, until the fullness of the Gentiles be come in. Romans 11:25,

b) The Deliverer shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob v26,

c) This is my covenant unto them, when I shall take away their sins. v27.

The 'most holy' to be anointed is always the 'Holy of Holies' in Hebrew, never does it refer to Christ.

2. The Messiah was 'cut off' or crucified AFTER the 69th week, and not during the 70th week as the passage would have stated had it been the case. See v.27 where the sacrifices are to be stopped 'in the midst of the week'.

3. An unseen **time gap is common in Old Testament** prophecy, such as:

a) **Isaiah 9:6** 'Unto us a child is born... and the government shall be upon his shoulder..'

Between these 2 events are at least 2000 years of time.

b) **Zechariah 9:9,10** 'Thy King cometh upon a colt, he shall speak peace unto the heathen, his dominion shall be from sea to sea.'

Between these 2 predictions are at least 2000 years of time.

c) **Isaiah 61:1,2** is an example approved by Christ: 'To proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord (first coming) and the day of vengeance of our God (Second coming).'

Jesus in Luke 4:16-21 read this in a Nazareth synagogue, stopping at the comma after "acceptable year of the Lord", stating that "This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears". Why did Jesus stop in the middle of a sentence? Because the next part, "the day of vengeance of our God" has not yet been fulfilled after 1970 years.

Therefore Jesus laid down the principle of the "Gap interpretation".

4. Time gaps are quite acceptable to the Oriental mind, which are little concerned with a continuous chronology.

Orientalers are more interested in the next important event, not in the time which might intervene. The Bible is an Oriental book, humanly speaking. Old Testament prophets often saw events predicted as mountain tops, without knowing the ground between them. We Anglo-Saxons have a passion for a continuous chronology that the Orientals do not possess.

5. The person who confirms the covenant in Daniel 9:27 **cannot refer to Christ because:**

a) The nearest antecedent is 'the prince that shall come' v.26.

b) At no time in Christ's earthly ministry did He confirm an already existing covenant.

c) If Christ did confirm a covenant at His first coming, when did He break it? **Would Christ break a covenant that He has made?** Therefore the covenant-confirmer is not Christ, but the 'prince that shall come' (Antichrist).

6. **Christ's death did not cause the animal sacrifices and oblation to cease immediately**, as v.27 demands.

The Jews continued to sacrifice animals until Jerusalem's destruction in 70 AD, which was 37 years later, well after the Amillennials 3.5 years expired.

7. The person in Daniel 9:27 correlates very well with the wicked person in 7:25, and the Antichrist in Rev. 12,13.

The Antichrist has not yet appeared and been judged as described in Daniel 9:27 and Revelation 19.

8. The **events of Daniel 9:27b** refer to the **last half of the 70th week**. These fit well into the last 3 1/2 years of the Tribulation described in Revelation 6-19, which is yet future.

9. The **abomination of desolation** has **not yet happened**. In Matthew 24:15, Jesus said that it would occur **after** His earthly ministry. It would start the great tribulation (the last 3 1/2 years), which would be followed immediately by Christ's second coming in glory. Christ did not return in 70 AD. The book of Revelation (written in 96AD) speaks of Jerusalem's destruction as yet future (Rev. 11:1,2 and 16:19), and not as something fulfilled in the past in 70AD.
10. A time gap is demanded by the **historical fulfilment** of Messiah being cut off and Jerusalem being destroyed in v.26, which take place **after** the 69th week and **before** the 70th week in v.27. This was 37 years after Christ's death in 33 AD. By the Amillennials' theory, the 70 weeks should have finished 3 1/2 years later, by 37 AD. The historical fulfilment of Jerusalem's destruction in 70 AD **demand a gap of at least 37 years**.
11. If the 70 weeks are continuous, as Amillennials believe, then the 70th week must have ended by 7 years after Christ's crucifixion, or sometime early in the book of Acts.
Why does the history of the book of **Acts contain nothing that corresponds with Daniel 9:27**?
Where in Acts are the Jewish transgressions finished, or the end made of the Jews' sins? Nowhere! Instead, Israel's sins increase to Acts 28 where Paul turns to the Gentiles.
12. A time gap after the 69th week is the **most natural reading** of the passage. It also fits well with all other Bible passages on prophecy. Christ's future second coming is in the 70th week.

(12) FOUR DANGERS THAT RECOGNISING THIS GAP PROTECTS US FROM.

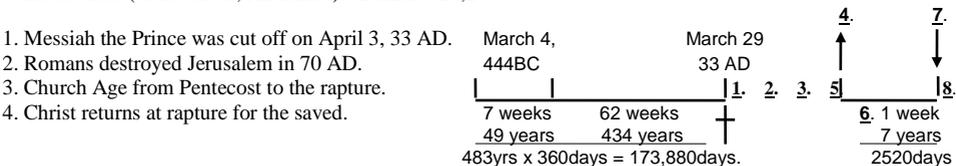
1. The efforts to connect the 69th week with the 70th week has led many scholars to **confusion, despair and frustration** in their attempts to find a **historical fulfilment of Daniel 9:27**. Their great error was their failure to see the great time interval between the 69th and 70th weeks.
2. This **gap principle** of Bible interpretation explains the **whole of our present church age**. It is passed over by the prophets with comparative silence.
3. By understanding that the 70th week is future, we will be saved from the **Amillennial error** that **God is finished with Israel**. "70 weeks are determined upon **thy people**" (9:24), said the angel to Daniel.
If the last week is yet future, there is still a place for national Israel in God's plan.
4. This unknown time gap before the 70th week makes it utterly impossible to set a date for Christ's second coming. Every date setting scheme for Christ's return requires a continuous prophetic chronology covering the present age. Without this, date-setters are helpless. Hence no man knows which day Christ will return.

(13) WHAT THIS PROPHECY TEACHES US OF THIS PRESENT AGE.

- i) "The end thereof shall be with a **flood**." (9:26). This flood will be a tsunami flood caused by the greatest earthquake ever, described in Rev 16:18-20.
- ii) "Unto the end of this church age, **war** and desolations are determined" is a literal translation of Daniel 9:26b. True, the last 2000 years have been characterised by **continuous wars all over earth**.
- iii) God is in control over the events of this sinful age.

(14) TWO PRINCES: MESSIAH the JEWISH PRINCE and ANTICHRIST the ROMAN PRINCE. 9:26,27

- a) **Christ**: "From the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto **Messiah the Prince** shall be 7 weeks and 62 weeks." (v.26).
- b) **Antichrist**: "After 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the **people of the prince that shall come** shall destroy the city and the sanctuary;
And **he** shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week **he** shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations **he** shall make it desolate, even until the consummation (end of 7 year tribulation), and that determined (Antichrist's punishment) shall be poured upon the desolate (or desolator, Antichrist)." Daniel 9:26,27.



5. The prince that shall come (antichrist) confirms a 7 year covenant with Israel.
6. Antichrist breaks this covenant after 3 1/2 years or 1260 days, by causing Jewish sacrifices to cease. He then persecutes Israel.
7. Christ returns in person at the end of 70th week to destroy the European Antichrist and to rescue and save Israel.
8. Christ sets up His 1000 year Kingdom of peace on earth. This present church age is the interval between the 69th and 70th week. This was predicted by Christ in Matthew 16:18 "I will build my church." In this gap, Israel was set aside temporarily, which Christ prophesied in Matthew 21:43,

“The Kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.”

Note: 2 different princes are “**Messiah the Prince**” and “**the prince that shall come**.” They cannot both be Christ because it is “the **people** of the **prince that shall come**” who **destroy Jerusalem** after Christ’s crucifixion in 33 AD. Jerusalem was destroyed by **Roman** people, **not by Jewish people**. Hence the ‘prince that shall come’ cannot be the Jewish Messiah, but must be a **future leader of the Roman Empire**.

This future Roman prince is:

1. The little horn- Daniel 7:8. (Daniel 7:20.
2. That horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look was more stout than his fellows-
3. The king of fierce countenance- Daniel 8:23.
4. The wilful king- Daniel 11:36.
5. The man of sin- II Thessalonians 2:3.
6. The beast out of the sea- Revelation 13:1.
7. The antichrist- I John 2:18.

Question: In Dan. 9:27 who does the ‘**he**’ refer back to? (“He shall confirm the covenant with many for one week”).

Answer: “He” refers back to the “**prince that shall come**” because:

1. This is the antecedent.
2. “He” will make a covenant with the Jews for 7 years. There is absolutely nothing recorded in Christ’s earthly ministry that remotely resembles a 7 year covenant. Produce evidence from history to show where it begun and when it ended. Such evidence cannot be found.
3. The theory that “Christ made this covenant when He started His earthly ministry, and that by His death He caused the Jewish sacrifices to cease”, breaks down because:
 - a) There is no reference in the Gospels to such a covenant.
 - b) The death of Christ did not stop Jewish sacrifices. They continued until Jerusalem’s destruction in 70 AD.
 - c) According to this theory, Christ died “in the midst of the week”, the sacrifices should have ceased then immediately. But they did not.
4. To insist that Messiah made the 7 year covenant, puts the 70th week in the past (from 30-37 AD) immediately following the 69th week. This is wrong because Christ in Matthew 24:15 states that the **70th week is still future**.
5. The maker of this 7 year covenant cannot be Christ, because **His covenants** with Jews and Christians are **everlasting** (Psalm 89:30-37), not limited to 7 years.

Therefore the Roman prince, or antichrist, makes the 7 year covenant with the Jews. Christ foretold this in John 5:43. “If another (antichrist) shall come in his own name, him ye will receive” (as your Messiah) John 5:43.

Question: What does it mean “Messiah shall be cut off; but not for himself”?

Answer: i) “Cut off” means executing the death penalty on a criminal. This is a prediction of Christ’s crucifixion.

- ii) “But not for himself” means that He would at this time have nothing for Himself, since Israel rejected Christ, the kingdom that He offered could not be instituted at that time. Hence Christ did not receive the royal glory as King on David’s throne over Israel. This prophecy predicted:
 - Christ’s offer of Himself to Israel as her Messiah,
 - Israel as a nation rejecting Christ as her Messiah, and
 - Christ’s crucifixion.

9:26b. Four events that will happen in the gap period of the church age are mentioned:

- 1) **Messiah** would be cut off. This happened on April 3, 33 AD.
- 2) The **people** of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city & the sanctuary (Temple). This happened in 70AD.
- 3) The end of the gap period will see a unification of Europe as we have the EU of today, the antichrist’s empire.
- 4) **Wars** and **desolations** are determined to happen all through the gap period of the church age.

The generation that rejected the Messiah would be judged by the **people** of the ruler to come, destroying the city (Jerusalem) which contained the sanctuary (Temple). The ruler to come is that final head of the Roman Empire, the little horn of Daniel 7:8.

It is important to understand that the **PEOPLE** of the ruler, **NOT** the **RULER HIMSELF**, will destroy Jerusalem. This proves 2 points:

- 1) The future Antichrist prince will **come from** a last days **Roman empire**, since his people are the Romans who destroyed Jerusalem in 70 AD, and
- 2) The **future prince** is **not Messiah the prince**, because Christ’s people are the Jews. **Antichrist’s people** are **Romans**.

When Israel’s leaders rejected Christ by attributing His power to Beelzebub, the prince of demons (Matt. 12:24), Christ said that this sin if persisted in would find no forgiveness (Matthew 12:31-32). Jesus also warned that the Gentiles would destroy Jerusalem (Luke 21:24), that Jerusalem would be desolate (Matthew 23:38), and that its destruction would be so complete that not one stone would be left on another (Matt. 24:2). This destruction came in 70 AD at the hands of Titus who killed, according to Josephus, about 1 million Jews and took about 100,000 Jews captive as slaves. Israel’s sufferings would continue until the end of the 70 weeks at Christ’s second coming.

(15) EVENTS OF THE 70TH WEEK

1. Rapture of the church occurs. The 70th week lasts from Antichrist's covenant to Christ's glorious return.

The 70th week is future because Christ places the abomination of desolation of the 70th week just before His glorious return (Matthew 24:15-30).

The true church must first be caught up to heaven, then the 70th week can start. In II Thessalonians 2:1-9, esp. v.6-8, "And now ye know what withholdeth (Holy Spirit in the church) that he (antichrist) might be revealed in his time... only he (Holy Spirit in believers) who now letteth (restrains) will let (restrain), until he (Holy Spirit in the church) be taken out of the way. And then shall that Wicked (antichrist) be revealed..."

Since the restraining power is the true church indwelt by the Holy Spirit, it is clear that the coming Roman prince cannot be revealed as long as the true church remains on earth. Once the church is caught away to heaven, the Roman prince is revealed when he confirms his 7 year covenant with the Jewish people. This starts the 70th week. The 70th week will end at Christ's glorious return because:

- i) The Messiah brings to Israel the blessings of Daniel 9:24.
- ii) Christ, on returning, destroys the Antichrist's great power.

2. The 70th week provides the exact time framework for the events of Revelation 6-19.

The only time information given in Revelation 6-19 is:

- i) 42 months (11:2; 13:3),
- ii) 1260 days (11:3; 12:6),
- iii) A time, and times, and half a time (12:14).

Each of these specify 3.5 prophetic years of 360 days each. These passages have three schools of interpretation:

- i) Some regard all prophetic numbers as symbolic, and therefore meaningless for chronology.
- ii) Some hold the unbiblical "year-day" theory. These regard the 69 weeks as 173,880 literal days, but then change their interpretation so that the last 1260 days become 1260 years. Let us be consistent. If the first 173,880 days are days, so the last 1260 days must also be days.
- iii) Some, correctly, have understood that the 3 1/2 years are exactly one-half of 7 years. The 70th week is divided into 2 halves.

This is the key to the interpretation of the books of Revelation and Daniel.

The key passage is **Revelation 11:2,3** thus:

"But the court which is without (outside) the temple leave out, and measure it not; for it is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city (Jerusalem) shall they tread under foot 42 months."

And I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy 1260 days, clothed in sackcloth."

Notice 2 important things here:

- i) Since the 42 months of verse 2 is a 3 1/2 year period during which **Gentile powers tread under foot Jerusalem**, this must refer to the **LAST HALF** of the 70th week, because it is in the middle of the 70th week that the Roman prince **stops the Jewish sacrifices** and becomes their persecutor (Daniel 9:27).
- ii) It is also clear that the 1260 days of verse 3 is a 3 1/2 year period that must refer to the **FIRST HALF** of the 70th week, because the 2 witnesses testify during this period, and they cannot be killed until the Roman prince reaches the height of his power in the middle of the week, when it is "given to him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them." (Revelation 11:7 and 13:7).

Therefore we have the entire 70th week events as:

1. 70th week begins in Revelation 6:1,2 with the revelation of the Roman prince. (Day 1).
2. Rising power of the Roman prince. } (Days
3. Testimony of the 2 witnesses. } 1-1260).
4. Killing of the 2 witnesses, and } (Day
5. 7th angel sounding (Rev. 11:1-15). } 1260).
6. Roman prince's absolute world control. } (Days
7. Roman prince terribly persecutes Israel. } 1260- 2520).
8. 70th week ends in Rev. 19:11-21 with the revelation of the Lord Jesus Christ. (Day 2520).

3. The 70th week begins with the Roman prince making a firm covenant with Israel. Daniel 9:27.

One thing involved in this covenant will be the re-establishing of the Jewish sacrifices in a rebuilt temple in Jerusalem.. The present Middle-east peace talks may lead to an agreement for Europe to guarantee Israel's protection and a Temple in return for peace.

4. In the middle of the 70th week, the Roman prince will reverse his friendly attitude to the Jews and “cause the sacrifice and oblation to cease.” Daniel 9:27.

Today’s world involves “power politics”, where force has taken the place of morality, where treaties are made and often broken. The Roman prince will only honor a “god of forces.” Daniel 11:38.

Why will the Roman prince break his treaty with Israel?

- i) Being the devil’s man, he will hate Israel.
- ii) After using Israel’s wealth and influence to reach the top of world power, having no further need for them, he will persecute them. As the **Jew** will pay dearly for her treaty with the Roman beast, so will the **great harlot** (apostate church) pay dearly for her ride (Rev. 17:16) in seeking to advance her cause along with Antichrist.
- iii) From II Thessalonians 2:4 and Revelation 13:8-15, he will take his seat in the temple of God in Jerusalem, and demand to be worshipped as God. To the Jew, this will be the “abomination of desolation” (Matthew 24:13), and many will refuse to worship him. This refusal will be the antichrist’s pretext for breaking the treaty and causing the Jewish temple sacrifices to cease. His treaty with the “many” (9:27) means that some Jews will reject the treaty. The 2 witnesses will denounce this treaty throughout their ministry.

5. The breaking of the covenant will start great desolations for the Jewish people.

This trouble lasts from the middle to the end of the 70th week (3 1/2 years). This is exactly the time specified in:

- i) Daniel 7:25, during which the antichrist “shall wear out the saints of the most high” for a “time, times and dividing of a time”.
- ii) Rev. 13:5-7, when the antichrist “shall make war with the saints...and overcome them”, for 42 months.
- iii) Rev. 11:2, during which the Gentiles shall tread down Jerusalem for 42 months.
- iv) Rev. 12:6,14, where the woman (Israel) will be protected by God for 1260 days (v.6) and “a time, times and half a time.” (v.14).

Hence all these prophecies fit together perfectly: the same persecutor, the same nation being persecuted, and exactly the same length of time of persecution. This refutes converting the 1260 days into 1260 years. This is the “time of Jacob’s trouble.” (Jeremiah 30:7).

6. The end of this 7 years will conclude the 70 week prophecy and usher in the blessings of Daniel 9:24.

Remember, all these blessings refer to the Jewish people and the city of Jerusalem. This is the context.

- 1,2. It is Jewish transgression and sin that is brought to an end (1,2). No more after the 70th week will Israel rebel against God and her Messiah.
3. To “make reconciliation for iniquity” does not refer to Christ’s death, but refers to God reconciling Israel unto Himself at Christ’s glorious appearing on the basis of His sacrifice on Calvary.
4. To “seal up the vision and prophecy”, means not that all prophecies will be fulfilled, but that the fountain of prophecy will be sealed because, with Christ personally on earth, His word will go forth directly, and no longer through prophets.
5. To “anoint the most holy” refers to consecrating the millennial temple as a place of worship and prayer for all nations at the start of the Millennium, by the personal presence of Christ there.

Conclusion:

The covenant in Daniel 9:27 could not have been made or confirmed by Christ at His first coming, as Amillennials teach, because:

- a) Christ’s ministry did not last 7 years,
- b) Christ’s death did not stop the Jewish sacrifices and offerings,
- c) Christ did not set up the abomination that causes desolation (Matthew 24:15).

Amillennials suggest that Christ confirmed (in the sense of fulfilling) the Abrahamic covenant, but the Gospels nowhere indicate Christ did that at His first coming.

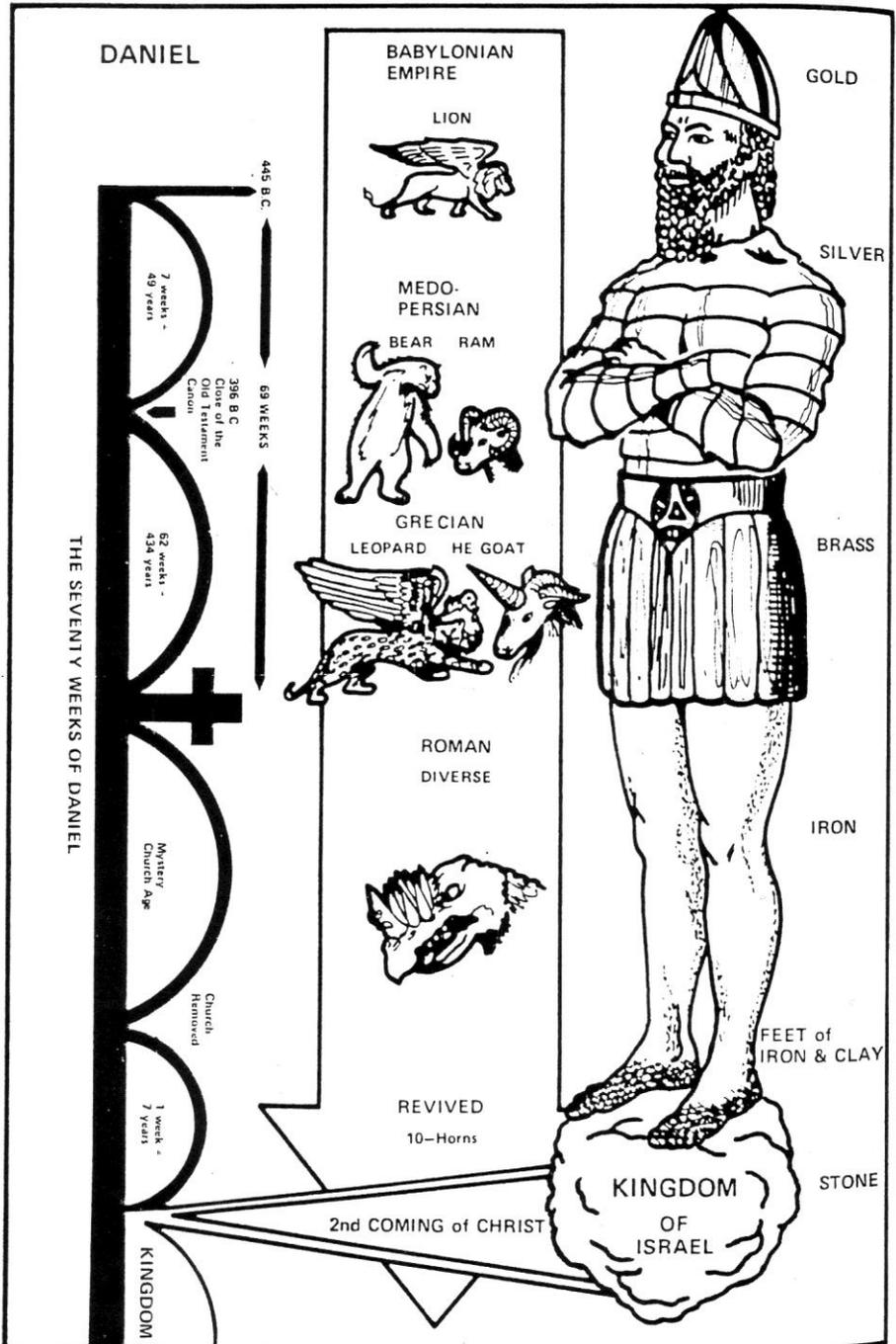
Since the events in the 69 weeks were fulfilled literally in 173,880 days (v.24-26), the 70th week must likewise be fulfilled literally in 2520 days. A correct understanding of this 70 week prophecy will refute the false ideas of:

- a) **Amillennials**, who **spiritualize prophecy**, **reject any future for national Israel**, and **reject a literal future 7 year tribulation** and **future 1000 year rule of Christ** on earth.
- b) Seventh Day Adventists, who accept a literal 173,880 days for the first 69 weeks, but falsely think that 2520 years make up the last 1 week.
- c) Jehovah’s Witnesses, who mistakenly use the 70th week prophecy to predict the date of Christ’s second coming.

The 70th week prophecy, correctly understood, forms the basis of the **pre-millennial, literal interpretation** of prophecy based on **mathematically accurately fulfilled prophecies**.

Let us strongly uphold the pre-millennial faith in a time of apostasy and unbelief in churches today.

56. Second Coming Charts



The "70 Weeks Prophecy" of Daniel 9:24-27

Start Date:

10pm 4th March 444 BC
Decree of Artaxerxes I
(Ardeshr 464-424 BC)
to Rebuild Jerusalem.
Nehemiah 2:1-8

516 B.C.
Temple finished

536 B.C. Decree
of Cyrus to
rebuild the
Temple

70 years
Babylonian
captivity
Jer 25:11.

Capture of
Jerusalem by
Nebuchadnezzar
in 606 BC

70 weeks (sevens) = 490 years

3pm 29 March 33 AD

69 weeks = 483 years

62 weeks = 434 years

Birth of Christ
17 June, 2 BC

7 weeks = 49 years
The city built in
troubulous times.

69 x 7 = 483 prophetic years
483 x 360 = 173,880 days

From 4 March 444 BC to Sun 29 March 33 AD

EXACT!

173,880 days = 476.06766 years
365.2422 days/yr

1 week = 7 years

Approx 2,000 years
church age a mystery,
hid, not revealed in
past ages. Eph 3: 8-10

Church Age

Messiah
cut off on
2:52 pm Friday,
3 April 33 AD

70 AD
Romans destroy
the city & sanctuary

	Full Moon 33 AD
Jan 4	10:15
Feb 3	04:22
Mar 4	22:21
Apr 3	14:52 P
May 3	04:55

Luke 19:42.

"Messiah the Prince"

Finish Date:

"to finish the transgression, to make an end of sins, make reconciliation for iniquity, bring in everlasting righteousness, seal up the vision and prophecy, and anoint the most Holy (place)." 9:24.

In the midst of the week, (1260th day) the Roman prince (Antichrist) breaks his covenant with Israel, and sets up the abomination in the Jerusalem temple that makes it desolate. Daniel 9:27; Matt 24:15; Revelation 13:14,15.

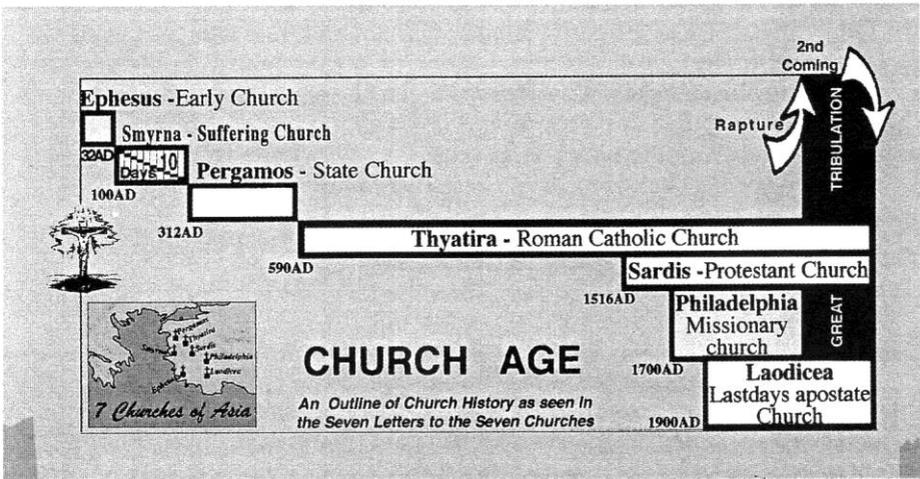
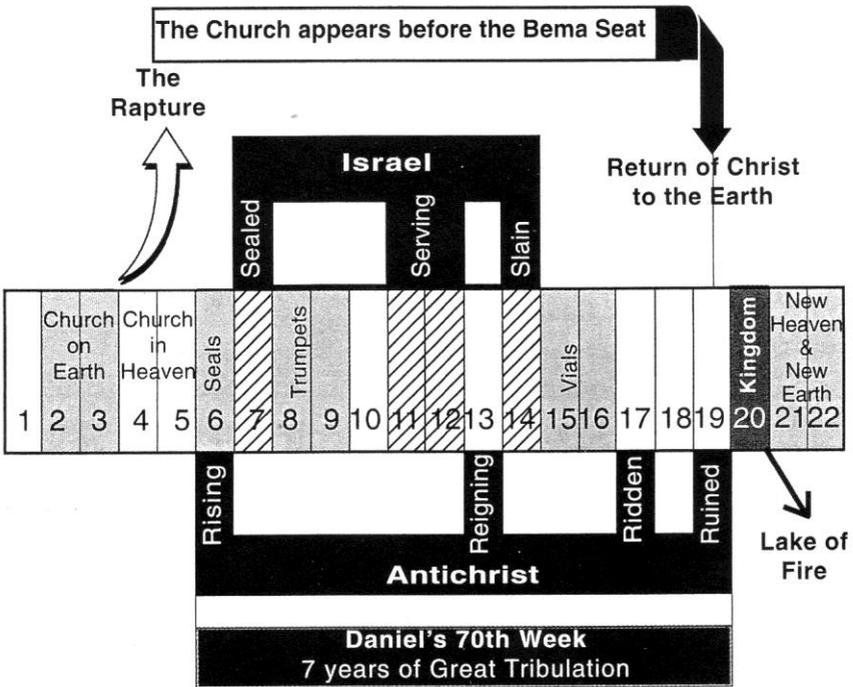
Great Tribulation

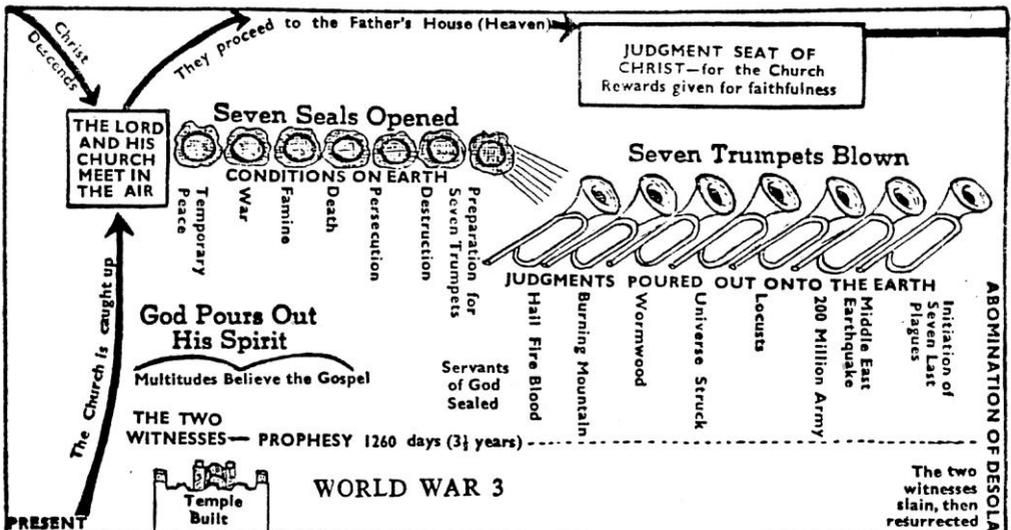
1000 year

Kingdom

of Jesus Christ
ruling on earth.
Rev 20; Hosea 6:2

The Revelation of Jesus Christ





THE FIRST 3 1/2 YEARS OF TRIBULATION

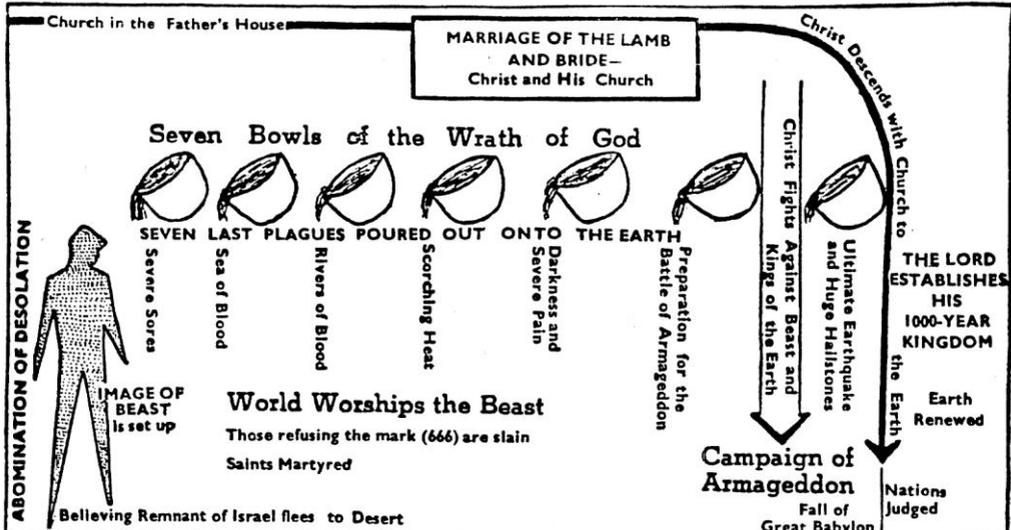
The Beast Ascends

as Man of Peace makes covenant with Israel

CONSOLIDATES POWER— Enters Holy Land

Beast sits in Temple

— Breaks Covenant — claims to be God



THE SECOND 3 1/2 YEARS—THE GREAT TRIBULATION

Beast Reigns Over the Whole World

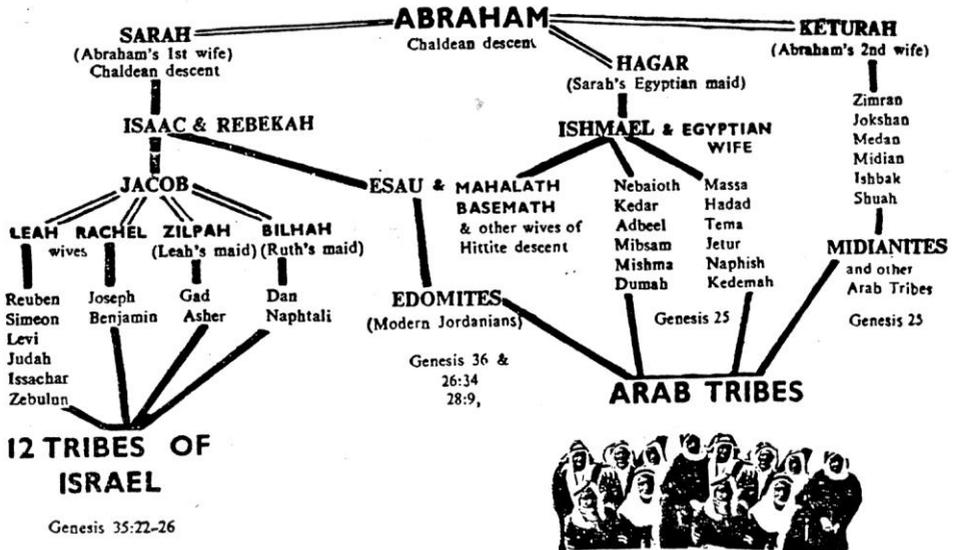
World Church Destroyed

Beast & False Prophet cast into the Lake of Fire

KINGDOM ERA →

Satan Bound 1000 Years

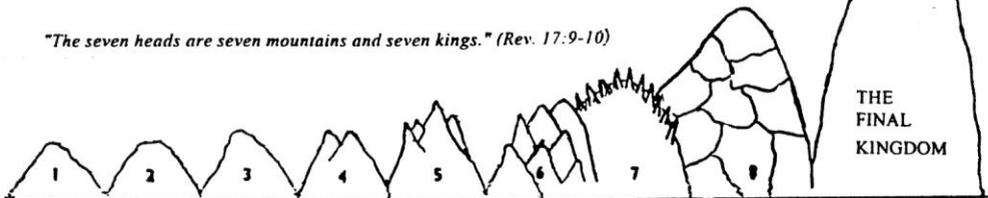
Beginnings of the Jewish and Arab Races



THE BEAST KINGDOMS OF THIS WORLD

to be replaced by the Kingdom of Messiah

"The seven heads are seven mountains and seven kings." (Rev. 17:9-10)



	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	ASSYRIA	EGYPT	BABYLON	MEDO-PERSIA	GREECE	ROME	EUROPE	WORLD	MESSIANIC
				2 kingdoms combined	became 4 kingdoms	on seven mountains	ten nations	ten regions	
			68 years	205 years	270 years	132 years	3 1/2	3 1/2	1000 years
Beginning of Babylon the Harlot Religion at Babel		Daniel 2 - GOLD head	SILVER chest	BRONZE body	IRON legs	IRON feet	CLAY & TOES	STONE cut without hands becomes a great mountain and fills the whole earth	
Nimrod & Semiramis		Daniel 8 -	RAM	GOAT	LEOPARD	BEAST with iron teeth	10 HORNS and little horn	BEAST with seven become eight heads Rev 13 & 17	Daniel 2:35
		Daniel 7 - LION with eagle wings	BEAR	LEOPARD	BEAST with iron teeth	10 HORNS and little horn	BEAST with seven become eight heads Rev 13 & 17	1 'seven' (7 years)	
		Daniel 9 -	69 sevens (483 years)	(CHURCH)					

THE SEVEN CHURCHES OF REVELATION

	<p>EPHESUS The Apostolic Church Rev 1:1-7</p> <p>30-100 1st Century Early Church</p>	<p>SMYRNA Persecuted Church Rev 2:8-11</p> <p>100-312 Persecuted by pagan Rome</p>	<p>PERGAMOS The Indulged Church Rev 2:12-17</p> <p>312-606 Union of Church and State (Constantine)</p>	<p>THYATIRA The Pagan Church Rev 2:18-29</p> <p>606-Tribulation Development of Church of Rome</p>	<p>SARDIS The Dead Church Rev 3:1-6</p> <p>606-Tribulation Protestant Reformation</p>	<p>PHILADELPHIA The Church Christ Loved Rev 3:7-13</p> <p>1750-Rapture Great Evangelical Awakening</p>	<p>LAODICEA The Lukewarm Church Rev 3:14-22</p> <p>1900-Tribulation Apostasy of Last Days</p>
<p>The Revelation of Jesus Christ (Character of Christ)</p>	<p>SOVEREIGN LORD (2:1) Holding 7 stars walking in midst</p> <p>Good works, labour, patience, faithful to truth, hated deeds of Nicolaitans</p>	<p>RISEN LORD (2:8) First and Last Dead and Now Alive</p> <p>Works, tribulation, poverty, suffering (10 days)</p>	<p>WARRING LORD (2:12-17) He that hath a sharp sword.</p> <p>Works, Held fast my name. Has not denied my faith – martyr.</p>	<p>JUDGING LORD (2:18) Eyes like a flame of fire. Feet like brass</p> <p>Works, Love, service, faith, patience.</p>	<p>OMNISCIENT LORD (3:1) Seven spirits Seven stars</p> <p>Works, A name that thou livest</p>	<p>AUTHORITATIVE LORD (3:7) Holy, true, key of David. Opens and shuts</p> <p>Works, Missions, a little strength, kept my word, not denied my name.</p>	<p>DIVINE LORD (3:14) Amen, faithful and true witness. The beginner of Creation</p>
<p>Commendation I know thy ...</p>	<p>Thou has left thy first love</p>		<p>False teaching of Balaam and Nicolaitans (2:14,15)</p>	<p>Thou allowedest the false prophetess Jezebel to teach: idolatry; compromise; immorality.</p>	<p>Dead (spiritually)</p>		<p>Thou art lukewarm, increased with goods, rich but blind spiritually. Wretched, miserable, poor, blind, naked.</p>
<p>Condemnation</p>	<p>Remember from where thou art fallen, repent, repeat first works.</p>	<p>Fear not, be faithful unto death</p>	<p>Repent (2:16)</p>	<p>Hold fast (2:22,25)</p>	<p>Watch, strengthen the things that remain, remember, repent, hold fast. (3:2,3)</p>	<p>Hold fast (3:11)</p>	<p>Buy gold tried by fire and white raiment. Anoint thine eyes. Be zealous and repent (3:18,19)</p>
<p>Counsel. I counsel thee</p>	<p>Removal (2:5)</p>		<p>War (2:16)</p>	<p>Death (2:23)</p>	<p>Invasion (3:3)</p>	<p>Separation (3:16)</p>	
<p>Caution</p>	<p>Eat of the tree of life (2:7)</p>	<p>Crown of Life. Not hurt of the 2nd death.</p>	<p>Will I give hidden manna, white stone, new name (2:17)</p>	<p>Will I give millennial rulership over the nations. The morning star (2:26-28)</p>	<p>White raiment, I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life. I will confess his name before Father and angels (3:5)</p>	<p>I will make him a pillar in the temple, new name. Kept from the hour of temptation coming on the whole world [Great Tribulation] (3:10,12)</p>	<p>I will grant to sit with me in my throne. (3:21)</p>
<p>Challenge Promise to overcomers. <i>To him that overcometh...</i></p>							

57. DISCIPLESHIP BY MULTIPLICATION

One of the greatest problems in the churches today is the lack of follow up teaching given to new Christians. It is one thing to know the Bible, which many Christians know very well, but it is another thing to be able to teach it to new Christians, which few Christians ever do at all.

Churches need to see the importance of and get involved in following up new Christians. This will solve the following problems that hinder church growth:

1. The Pastor has a great burden of soul winning and Bible teaching. He can't do it all by himself. The work can be **shared by others** if they are well taught on how to win and teach others.
2. Many church members have **never led anyone to Christ**. This can be solved by following them up and by teaching them how to share the gospel by using the "Stop" tract.
3. Many church members **do not know how to answer the cults** and other false doctrines.
4. Many people come to church, but **never get established in growing spiritually**, then drop out.
5. Many people come to church, but **never make close friends**, so they leave and go elsewhere. Somebody helping them to grow would solve this problem.
6. Many church members are **bored and doing nothing to serve God**. They could easily arrange for a weekly Bible study to help a new Christian to grow.
7. Some church people **get taken away by cults and false doctrines** thus leaving the church believing error. The aim should be for everyone in a church being trained to:
 - i) grow spiritually themselves,
 - ii) win people to Christ regularly,
 - iii) teach others, establishing newer Christians in Basic Bible doctrines, so that they can grow to win and train others.

When this occurs, strong church growth in numbers and quality will take place.

This is summarised in:

- i) Hebrews 5:12 "For when for the time **ye ought to be teachers**."
- ii) II Timothy 2:2 "And the things that **thou** hast heard of **me** among many witnesses, the same commit thou to **faithful men** who shall be able to teach **others** also."

Question: What do we learn about follow-up from these two verses?

1. Hebrews 5:12 states that **all** believers **ought** to be able to teach others, either one-to-one, in small groups, or to large groups.
2. In II Timothy 2:2 there are 4 human links needing to be in place for successful follow up to occur.
 - i) **Paul**. Paul taught a group of many witnesses, as a local church.
 - ii) **Timothy**. Timothy had to pass on what Paul committed to him to faithful men.
 - iii) **Faithful men**. Faithful men had to teach others also.
 - iv) **Others**. Others had to find faithful men to teach, who would pass these truths onto others.
3. If each person in this network faithfully teaches others also, the Christian population in a country will multiply rapidly. If each person commits himself to train one other person each year, then the number of believers can double each year according to the following table:

Year	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
you	2	4	8	16	32	64	128	256	512	1024
Year	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
you	2000	4000	8000	16000	32,000	64,000	128,000	1/4 m	1/2 m	1 million
Year	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
you	2mil	4mil	8mil	16mil	32 m	64 m	128 m	256m	512 m	1 billion

4. If a famous evangelist won 10,000 people to Christ every day, after 30 years there would be 109 million people saved, which is only one-tenth of the multiplication network.

5. Why is the world not yet won to Christ? Because very few Christians bother to commit themselves to new Christians to properly train them to win and train others in a multiplying network. They give in to sin and laziness. They do not commit themselves to teaching others properly.
6. Discipleship by multiplication in the context of a local church is God's method of growth as seen in human population growth from Adam and Eve in 4074 BC to 6,000 million people alive today.
7. If you train just 1 person every year for 20 years, you personally will have trained only 20 people, but your network will have won and trained 1 million people in that 20 year period.
8. A Pastor should begin by teaching to a group of people the contents of this follow up book at least one night each week. Then these people should teach this material to faithful men, who will teach others also.
9. You must invest time teaching **faithful men**. Not every one will prove to be faithful. People must be faithful to : 1) God, 2) The Bible 3) His Church, 4) To coming to training meetings weekly, 5) to regularly meeting with his faithful man, 6) to teaching others in the network.

1. **DESCRIPTION OF MULTIPLYING DISCIPLES.**

Year 1: You i) **win** one person to Christ, and
 ii) train him to **win** people to Christ.
 iii) train him in the **follow up material** in this book.
 iv) **Impart a vision** to him to train and equip new Christians to win and teach others also.

Year 2: At the beginning of year 2, both you and your disciple **win one** and **train one** by repeating the 4 steps of year 1. (4 trained workers are at the end of year 2).

Year 3: At the beginning of year 3, each of the 4 **win one** and **train one** by repeating the 4 steps of year 1. (8 trained workers now).

Year 4: At the beginning of year 4, each of the 8 **win one** and **train one** by repeating the 4 steps of year 1. (16 trained workers now).

So the process continues as people train other new Christians in the contents of this book.

2. **RESULTS OF YOU ADOPTING THIS FOLLOW UP MINISTRY.**

- i) If you and your network **win one** and **train one** every year for 33 years, the world will be won to Christ in 33 years.
- ii) Each decade, the number of people in your network multiplies by 1000. (ie. year 1, 2 people; year 10, 1000 people; year 20, 1 million people; year 30, 1,000 million people).
- iii) Multiplication is not very impressive until about the eighth or ninth year, where you have about 256 or 512 people in your network or Church.
- iv) This multiplying chain reaction often goes faster if your disciple brings their spouse or friend to be trained in your group at the same time.
- v) Everything depends on you thoroughly teaching your man so that he can win and teach others. The network breaks down if your man quits or can't inspire and teach those 3 generations from him.

You → 1st Generation → 2nd Generation → 3rd Generation
 (Paul) (Timothy) (faithful men) (others)

Addition (just winning but not teaching them) looks more impressive initially, but fails dismally in the long term as the drop-out rate begins to break down the network by laziness, false doctrines and lack of training.

Schematically the network looks like this:

iii) **The Value of Discipling to the Discipler.**

- a) Discipling **brings joy** to the discipler when you see them grow and get victory. "I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth." III John 4.
"For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even **ye** in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at His coming." I Thessalonians 2:19,20.
- b) Discipling **purifies** the discipler's life. We mature as we minister the Word of God to people. My weak areas become apparent as I begin to disciple others.
- c) Discipling **develops ministerial skills**. The discipler learns how to teach and counsel his disciple. We learn how to guide someone into a ministry, how to inspire people to service, and how to preach and teach.
- d) Discipling **provides an outlet** for the discipler. By passing on what you learn, you stay fresh. The Sea of Galilee abounds with life because it takes in and gives out. The Dead Sea is lifeless because it takes in and never gives out.

iv) **The Value of Discipling to the Local Church.**

It **strengthens** each church by developing Godly leaders. It **increases the number** attending each Sunday as you have trained people to follow up new contacts and visitors. It plugs the leaks. It **stops a church from dying** because it gets everybody working towards a common goal. It brings **more people to Christ** as you train more soul winners. Some of your trained workers will go out to **start other churches**.

v) **The Value of Discipling to the World.**

- a) If Christians become disciplers, some will be **missionaries** to start churches overseas.
- b) It will help **reach the world** for Christ as our people get a world vision. "Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel." Mark 16:15.

Ask Yourself: What am I doing that will have an impact on this world for Christ? What am I doing that will have eternal consequences? What is eternal?

- a) **GOD.** "The eternal God is thy refuge". Deuteronomy 33:27.
- b) The **Word of God.** "The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand forever". Isaiah 40:8.
- c) **People.** "the gift of God is eternal life....." Romans 6:23.

Will you invest your life in the things of this world which will shortly pass away, or will you invest your life in the eternal souls of people in rescuing them from hell so that they can enjoy heaven forever? Would you put your money in a company that was soon to go bankrupt? Nothing should motivate us more than to see people's **eternal souls** rescued from **everlasting hell** by the **eternal Word of God**.

5. **FACTORS AFFECTING FOLLOW UP.**

What factors must we practice to ensure effective follow up of those people that we see saved.

i) **Relationship.**

- a) The discipler must be in a right relationship with the **Lord** because he will be transferring his life's convictions to the disciple. "So being affectionately desirous of you, we were willing to have imparted unto you, not the gospel of God only, but also our own souls, because ye were dear unto us." I Thessalonians 2:8.
- b) The discipler must cultivate a spiritual and close, trusting friendship relationship with the **person being disciplined**. "But we were gentle among you, even as a nurse cherisheth her children." I Thessalonians 2:7.

ii) **Commitment** of time and energy.

Ask yourself: Do I believe in the importance of follow up? Am I willing to spend the time necessary to develop disciples? Am I willing to rethink my present activities and stop those that are not a priority? Our priorities should be rearranged so that we spend time with the Lord, time with our family, time each week going soul winning, and time each week in personal follow up of new Christians or Christians who are new to our church who may not hold right Bible beliefs yet.

iii) **Concentration** on a few at a time.

Effective follow up will never happen if you attempt to work with too many people at one time. For multiplication to take place, your disciples need to become well trained and spiritually mature. Aim to work thoroughly with a few faithful and trustworthy people at a time who will reproduce themselves by winning and teaching others. Share the load by getting others to do follow up as well in a team situation in your local church. Don't let the many urgent needs around you pressure you into not concentrating on a few. Christ disciplined the twelve by concentrating on them in order to create the leadership necessary to adequately promote the growth of the early church.

iv) **Duration.**

Follow up may take one year or more per person. It will take time for the results of a multiplication ministry to become obvious to bystanders. Christ poured three years into the twelve apostles. During the last six months, He spent nearly all of His time with them. This insured massive multiplication of the early church over the next twenty-five years, yet there were only five hundred followers at His death.

If there was a better way, Christ would have used it. It takes multiplication three to five years to become obvious. Many Pastors and Christians are **spiritually short sighted**. They don't notice or appreciate the groundwork laid for a ministry over the years.

Get a vision for spending time with people to ensure quality follow up and multiplication. "A little one shall become a **thousand** and a small one a **strong nation**: I the Lord will hasten it in his time." Isaiah 60:22.

v) **Teaching and Training.**

Follow up = Teaching doctrine
+ Training in soul winning and personal Bible Study
+ Spiritual growth.

To do effective follow up and produce multipliers, your Timothy/disciple needs to be properly trained to start the process and to continue the process. Training needs to be easily transferred. How? By teaching the contents of this follow up book to all those who you lead to Christ. A new believer needs to join a sound, fundamental, soul winning, Bible teaching church that stands strongly for the truths contained in the Bible.

A lukewarm church will produce lukewarm Christians.

vi) **Environment.**

A new Christian's growth is dependent on the spiritual environment (church) that he places himself in. The degree of soul-winning and Bible teaching zeal of his church will control his spiritual vitality. A lukewarm, cold, Bible denying, liberal church or church with false doctrines can destroy his growth because that church denies Bible truths such as:

- i) Importance of Bible study and correctly interpreting Scripture.
- ii) Need to win people to Christ.
- iii) Filling of the Holy Spirit.
- iv) Loving fellow believers in truth. The Word of God is truth.
- v) Fruit of the Spirit needing to be exhibited always.

6. **QUALITIES ESSENTIAL TO SEE EFFECTIVE PERSONAL FOLLOW UP.**

Personal Follow up is imparting our own souls. I Thessalonians 2:8.

Factor 1: Be Open and Involved.

Allow yourself to become involved with another person. This is threatening because they may reject you. It is time consuming to build lives. Follow up is not just giving information, but helping people to **apply** what is taught.

View a new Christian how God does, as a new creature in Christ with potential to win many to Christ (2 Corinthians 5:16,17). Don't be discouraged by his temporary lack of progress. He must know that you are there, that you really care, and that you are available and open to talk with and help him anytime. Confront people with their problems and help them to solve them. Share Bible solutions to all of his problems and questions. 238

Factor 2: Believe in the Importance of Follow Up.

This must be a lifelong conviction. This will determine the degree of your effectiveness. You are sure to encounter problems in following people up, but you must not give up this habit of follow up. We must continue in the face of problems. If your disciple drops out, go find someone else to disciple. Claim the promise of I Corinthians 15:58 that your labour is not in vain in the Lord. You are not wasting your time. He may come back later when he finds that sin doesn't help him.

Factor 3: Desire to be Used.

Question: Can you honestly say to God that you desire Him to use you?

Isaiah, after seeing how utterly sinful he was before God, was then in the right frame of mind to respond in full surrender to God's call on his life. "Here am I; send me." Isaiah 6:8.

Paul desired to be used to help the church at Rome "For I long to see you, that I may impart unto you some spiritual gift, to the end ye may be established." Romans 1:11-13.

Our attitude should be: "Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled." Matthew 5:6.

How can we show our desire to be used? Our words of commitment must be followed by actions. "But be ye **doers** of the Word, and not hearers only deceiving your own selves." James 1:22.

- a) Get as much training as possible in soul-winning, follow up and understanding Bible doctrine.
- b) Be consistent in outreach "in season and out of season." II Timothy 4:2.

Factor 4: Be Available.

God can use anyone, in spite of his limitations, as long as he is available.

- a) **Jeremiah**, after God's call found many excuses why he couldn't do what God wanted:
 - i) I cannot speak.
 - ii) I am a child. Jeremiah 1:6.
 - iii) He was untrained.
 - iv) He was afraid. Jeremiah 1:8.

God's answer is in Jeremiah 1:7,8,9.

- i) **Say Not**, I am a child.
- ii) Thou shalt **go** to all that I shall send thee.
- iii) Whatsoever I command thee thou shalt **speak**.
- iv) **Be not afraid** of their faces.
- v) I am **with thee** to deliver thee.
- vi) Behold I have **put my words** in thy mouth.

Jeremiah's excuses were a cover for his unavailability. Jeremiah became available when he saw that God could overcome his limitations.

- b) **Moses** at the burning bush is the best example of man's excuses and God's responses. Exodus 3:1-4:13. God calls Moses in Exodus 3:7-10 to bring Israel out of Egypt.
 - i) **Moses first excuse:** "Who am I?" (3:11). Problem of **insignificance**. He considered himself to be just an average person and not cut out for such a big job. This was a faulty argument because: He was trained in Pharaoh's palace, and **God's response:** "Certainly I will be with thee." (3:12).
God + an obedient yielded Christian = a majority.
A Christian is never a normal nobody. God being with you makes you an important somebody. Paul said, "I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me." Philippians.4:13

- ii) **Moses second excuse:** "What is His name?" (3:13). Problem of **authority**. Many people feel that they have no authority to challenge people to be saved, to live for Christ, or to teach others in personal follow up.
God's response. "I AM hath sent me unto you." 3:14.
 "For when for the time ye ought to be teachers." Hebrews 5:12.
 Jesus said "All power (authority) is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and **teach** all nations, **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: **Teaching** them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and lo I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen." Matthew 28:18,19,20.
 You have the authority to win people to Christ, and to teach believers in follow up because God gave it to you. When you use God's Word, empowered by His Holy Spirit, you are under His authority when you preach the gospel and teach the Bible.
- iii) **Moses third excuse :** "They will not believe me." 4:1.
 Problem of **lack of credibility**. Who would believe Moses?
God's response: God gave Moses a rod which changed to a serpent, a hand that could change to become leprous, and ten plagues proving God's power over Egypt's false gods.
 God has given us the Sword of the Spirit, the Word of God, and a changed life to prove His power.
- iv) **Moses fourth excuse:** "I am not eloquent." 4:10. Problem of **inability to speak well**.
God's response: "Who hath made man's mouth? Go, and I will be with thy mouth, and teach thee what thou shalt say." Our natural limitations are not a problem for God, but serve to reveal God's power all the more.
- v) **Moses' fifth excuse:** "Send someone else." 4:13. Problem of **unwillingness**.
 This was Moses' last excuse that caused God to use someone else, Aaron. If we are unwilling to go, then God will use another person to do the work and you will lose out on earthly blessings and heavenly rewards.
 Moses was unwilling to be a speaker, so God used Aaron as Moses' mouthpiece. Hence unwillingness is the only limitation stopping God from using you.

Factor 5: Consistent Godly life.

If you hide secret sins, sooner or later they will be seen by people. Demonstration of a Christlike life is a very important factor in developing people. If you are Christlike, then your people find it easier to be Christlike. You will reproduce yourself. You will lead or mislead.

"Be ye followers of me, even as I also am of Christ." I Corinthians 11:1.

"Be thou an example of the believers in word, in conversation, in charity, in spirit, in faith, in purity." I Timothy 4:12.

False teaching is like canker or gangrene. (II Timothy 2:16,17).

When your disciple is mature, he will be like his teacher. (Luke 6:40).

Factor 6: Growing in Christ.

Continue to grow in your relationship with Christ. You'll never take anyone past where you've reached in your personal growth in Christ.

"I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus." Philippians 3:12-14.

Paul strove to grow more like Christ even near his death. If we are yielded to Christ and strong in the Word of God, we will be effective and fruitful in the Lord's service.

Factor 7: Overcome rebellion and bitterness.

If you can't accept yourself, you'll be afraid that others won't accept you either. This fear prevents you from being open and honest with people. Examples include:

- i) We are unwilling to accept ourselves as God made us.
- ii) We rebel against the parents that God gave us.
- iii) We rebel against our financial position. We get resentful towards God for our "raw deal" and become bitter.

We should understand God's promises in:

- i) Romans 8:28, "We know that all things work together for good to them that love God."
- ii) Philippians 4:11, "I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content."
- iii) I Thessalonians 5:18, "In everything give thanks"

Conclusion: Follow up = communicating our life by example + teaching Bible truths.

7. HOW PAUL DISCIPLED THE THESSALONIAN BELIEVERS.

Paul described how he taught them by showing them 15 qualities in I Thessalonians 2:1-20. We should demonstrate these qualities also:

1. v.2 **Bold** in God to speak the Gospel with much contention.
2. v.3 **Exhortation** was not of deceit, uncleanness or guile.
3. v.4 Spoke not as **men-pleasers** but as God pleasers.
4. v.5 We didn't use **flattering words**, nor a **cloak of covetousness**.
5. v.6 We **didn't seek glory of men**.
6. v.7 We were **gentle** as a **nurse**.
7. v.8 We were **affectionately desirous** and were willing to impart the **Gospel** of God and our own **souls**.
8. v.9 Remember our **labour** and **travail** night and day.
9. v.10 Remember how **holily, justly** and **unblameably** we **behaved**.
10. v.11 We **exhorted, comforted** and **charged** everyone of you as a father doth his children.
11. v.13 We **thank God** continually, because ye received the Word as from God.
12. v.14 They became **Church members**.
13. v.14 They were **willing to suffer**.
14. v.17 We endeavoured greatly to **see your face**.
15. v.19, 20 Paul's **attitude**: Ye are our hope, joy, glory, crown of rejoicing at the Second Coming.

8. GOALS OF FOLLOW UP.

We should teach new believers to know and apply:

1. Assurance of salvation. Romans 10:13.
2. Security of the Believer. John 10:28.
3. God accepts you because of Christ. Ephesians 1:6.
4. Confess all known sin to God immediately. I John 1:9.
5. Tell someone that you are saved. Romans 10:9.
6. Record your spiritual birthday. John 3:3.
7. Put Christ first. Romans 12:1,2.
8. Daily Bible reading and study. I Peter 2:2.
9. Daily Prayer. I Thessalonians 5:17.
10. Commitment to a sound local church. Hebrews 10:24,25.
11. Soul winning at every chance. Matthew 4:19; Proverbs 11:30.
12. Guidance. Proverbs 3:5,6.

Teach the chapters in this book each week in personal or group follow up.

9. MARKS OF A DISCIPLE.

Christian discipleship is an all out commitment to Jesus Christ as Lord of our lives. Nothing less than unconditional surrender is a fitting love response to the sacrifice of Calvary.

"When I survey the wondrous cross
On which the Prince of Glory died,
My richest gain I count but loss,
And pour contempt on all my pride.
Were the whole realm of nature mine,
That were an offering far too small;
Love so amazing, so divine,
Demands my soul, my life, my all." Isaac Watts.

Discipleship is our opportunity to tap the infinite resources of God. It is our chance to give our lives to something truly great, rather than to mediocrity. Christ confronts us with a choice: the path of discipleship or the path of mediocrity. Many start off well, but choose mediocrity later in life. They are not stayers. Will you drop out?

Why people don't want to make Jesus Lord:

1. Christ may ask us to **do** something that we don't want to do.

Answer: Who knows best, God or us? Psalm 84:11.

2. We think that we know what is best for us.

3. We are not sure that God has our best interests at heart.

Answer: God could make life unbearable for us if He wanted to. Jeremiah 29:11.

Let us now check our lives with these marks of discipleship:

1. **Supreme love for Christ.** Luke 14:26.

"Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment." Matthew 22:37,38.

"If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple." Luke 14:26.

Hate: This means that our love for Christ must be so great that our great love for family members and for ourselves, in comparison, would seem like hatred.

Many Christians choose to live a mediocre Christian life because they love themselves more than Christ. A disciple puts Christ first, and separates himself from sin, worldliness, and false doctrine. Ask yourself: "Is God first in all areas of my life?" A Christian should hate sin because it **offends God** and **creates many problems for us and others.**

A disciple seeks to live a godly, pure life. Old habits may cling to us, but the Holy Spirit can give us victory.

"For sin shall not have dominion over you." Romans 6:14.

"Teaching us that denying ungodliness and worldly lusts." Titus 2:12.

2. **Deny himself.** Luke 9:23.

When self is denied the throne of our life, Jesus may take the throne. The result is a demonstration of the fruit of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22,23) by an attractive relationship with Christ and fellowmen. This shows itself in a desire to win people to Christ, Christlike character, stability and Christian maturity. Say: "Lord, what would thou have me to do?"

3. **Take up your cross daily.** Luke 9:23 and 14:27.

"If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, take up his cross daily and follow me."

The cross is an instrument of death. We must die to our wishes, reckoning ourself dead to sin and alive to God. Yield our members as instruments of righteousness. Know. Reckon. Yield. Romans 6:11-13.

"I am crucified with Christ." Galatians 2:20.

"I die daily." I Corinthians 15:31. Dead men have no rights.

4. **Follow Christ.** Luke 9:23.

"Come after me." Luke 14:27.

Christ's life was one of complete obedience to His Heavenly Father. A disciple must also live in complete submission to God. Jesus constantly called people to "Follow me". A disciple shows a **burden for soul-winning** he gives his testimony of salvation well, and presents the Gospel regularly and clearly.

"Follow me and I will make you fishers of men." Matthew 4:19.

A disciple is a **learner**. He is teachable, open to instruction, rebuke and encouragement from his leaders and fellow believers.

"A wise son heareth his father's instruction." Proverbs 13:1.

5. **Forsakes all that he has.** Luke 14:33.

"So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not **all** that he hath, he cannot be my disciple." Luke 14:33.

This is the most difficult and unpopular of all the terms of discipleship. What does this mean? This does not mean to give away all that you have, but to **use all** that you have and are to further the gospel, glorify Christ and to build your church. A disciple **gives regularly** to his church (tithe) and gives offerings above the tithe to prove his love (II Cor 8:8). The tithe is the obedience gift. The offering is the love gift.

6. **Love and Continue in the Word of God.** John 8:31.

"Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on him, if ye continue in my Word, then are ye my disciples indeed." John 8:31.

A disciple has a consistent daily Bible study and prayer time, seeking God's face and communicating with Christ. "I lift up my soul unto thee." Psalm 143:8.

Do you hunger for and regularly take in God's Word? A disciple shows faithfulness to teach the Word. He takes time to hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on the Bible, applying it to his life.

7. **Love other Christians.** John 13:34,35.

"A new commandment I give unto you, that ye love one another; as I have loved you, that ye also love one another. By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another." John 13: 34,35.

We show our love to other Christians by:

- i) Practicing the **15 qualities** of love in 1 Corinthians 13:4-7, such as patience, kindness, humility and showing an unconditional concern for others.
- ii) A disciple is actively involved in a sound, Bible-believing **church**. Hebrews 10:24,25.
- iii) A disciple shows a **servant heart** by helping others.

"the house of Stephanus...have addicted themselves to the ministry of the saints". I Cor 16:15
Leaders are leaders because they are the greatest servants of others. The way up is down.

Challenge: Do you meet these conditions of discipleship? Are you a true disciple of Jesus Christ? What impact on the world will you leave behind after you've died?

How many people will have been saved and become disciples through your ministry at your life's end?

Yield yourself today to be a true disciple of Christ all your life. Seek to multiply disciples by personal follow up and by teaching them in your church.

Question 1: Ask a new Christian or orphan Christian: Which chapters in "Established in the Faith" book interest you?

Question 2: Would it be possible for us to get together sometime in the next few days to look at them?

Question 3: Ask "When would suit you?" Then keep that appointment every week, and use the Bible studies in this book as the basis of your Bible studies.

58. RUNNING A DISCIPLESHIP SEMINAR (Hints for church growth and strengthening).

Two problems in church work are:

1. How to **get people to come** to church, and **2.** How to **keep them growing** in sound doctrine.

People come to church from **two sources**:

1. Those that **your church members** lead to Christ. These new converts are babes in Christ and generally know very little about the Bible or what fundamental doctrines your church holds to.

2. People who join your church **from other churches**. These people may already be saved and believe some of the things that a fundamental church stands for. They may also bring with them some false doctrines. If you don't quickly re-teach these people, they will quickly re-teach your people and your church will **drift from sound doctrines** and you will lose some members.

A Pastor may not have time to re-teach all these people everything he wants to on a one-to-one basis.

Often, **new Christians will drift away** if they are not quickly taught in Bible doctrines to the point where they can really begin to grow.

Also, **children of your members** need to be grounded in the doctrines of your church. Sometimes, them just coming to one or two meetings a week will not be enough to quickly ground them.

How do we solve this problem of the need to rapidly teach these new members in the key doctrines?

A **DISCIPLESHIP SEMINAR** can be a very helpful thing. What does this involve?

1. Type up a pamphlet/flyer stating some subjects to be taught, date, time and place of the seminar. It is good to make it on a Saturday from 10 am to 6 pm, at the church, a hall, or the pastor's house.

2. Provide lunch from 12 - 1 pm, and **afternoon tea** from 3 pm - 3.30 pm.

Session 1 is from 10 am - 12 noon; session 2 is from 1 pm - 3 pm; session 3 is from 3.30 pm - 6 pm.

During these 3 sessions you can cover perhaps 15 - 20 different subjects.

3. You should **invite all those new attendees at your church** who need to know what you stand for. You may door knock to invite people to a **BIBLE UNDERSTANDING SEMINAR**.

4. What is to be taught? As a pastor you are **very busy** and may not have the time to prepare all the notes for all the subjects that should be taught.

Even if you have prepared the notes, they need typing and you must photocopy a set of notes for each person who attends. You may have over 20 people attending. This means a lot of photocopying cost.

A solution to this problem is the studies in "ANSWERS" by Keith Piper. This book has been put together over 28 years of pastoral work in personal discipleship in local independent Baptist churches.

It contains most of the subjects that you would want to teach your people in a local church setting.

What do you teach? You will find simple, comprehensive Bible studies on each subject in this book.

Select what chapter topics you think you need to teach to your people on the Saturday seminar. You may have 2 or 3 seminars on consecutive Saturdays or over a Christmas holiday period on a longer list of subjects if you wish. The chapters that you may select studies from are in the Table of Contents.

5. Provide a copy of the "ANSWERS" book to each person who attends the seminar so that they can follow along with you as you teach. They will want a permanent record of the studies that you teach. Set them chapters to read in their own time. Who do they know that want to read some chapters?

An added benefit to your church is that you can get more people in your church doing discipleship and follow up as they learn to run seminars in their own homes using this material. Having these studies will stop them from teaching false doctrines.

6. Pass a sheet of paper around during your church services to see who wishes to attend the seminar. This will allow you to order the right amount of food and books.

7. Make a list of people to invite. Phone them 2 weeks before the seminar to invite them and remind them to come. You will have great fun and fellowship as your people spend a day studying God's Word.

8. Have a seminar every 3 months. "ANSWERS" books may be obtained by phoning **Keith Piper** on 61-2-9875-4321 or writing to him at **PO Box 188, Cherrybrook, NSW, 2126, AUSTRALIA**. Please attempt one of these seminars. You will find that your church will grow in understanding God's Word, in unity and in fellowship as you set a lot of these doctrines straight in your people's minds. **They will then be able to teach others also and multiply a network of disciples all over the world.**

59. CHALLENGING QUESTIONS TO MOTIVATE CHRISTIANS

These questions may be used to challenge and motivate lukewarm Christians into becoming dedicated, serious minded, committed disciples of Jesus Christ. These questions may help new Christians get **eternal values**, instead of just earthly values, and also to help them grow to take their place as workers and teachers in local churches worldwide. "It is **more blessed to give** than to receive." Acts 20:35.

"**Neither count I my life dear** unto myself, so that I might **finish my course with joy**." Acts 20:24.

Ask: "What are you doing in this life for Jesus Christ?" What topics and questions should we ask them?

1. HELL. "I am tormented in this flame." Luke 16:24.

- Do you believe in a literal **hell** that unsaved people go to after death?
- Has God given you the **responsibility** to rescue people from hell?
- What is the **best strategy** you can use to achieve this life goal? Use Stop tract & multiply disciples.

2. WORLD. "Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel." Mark 16:15.

- Do you want to see the **world won to Christ**?
- How can you best **achieve** this? (by multiplying disciples through local churches).
- Have you heard of **Discipleship by Multiplication**?
- Do you **understand** how it works?
- Do you want to be **part of a worldwide network** of multiplying disciples?
- Can you see your life's potential **in multiplying millions of disciples** for Jesus Christ?

3. DISCIPLE. "If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed." John 8:31.

- What is a **disciple** of Jesus Christ? (Luke 9:23-26; Mark 8:32-38; Matthew 16:22-28).
- Are you a disciple of Jesus Christ? What kind of disciple are you?
- Do you want to be a disciple and a disciple-maker for Jesus Christ? (John 8:31).
- Are you willing to continue in Christ's Word, count the cost and **pay the price** to become one?

4. JUDGMENT. "We must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ." 2 Corinthians 5:10.

- Do you believe that you will have to **give account** to God as to how you used your abilities and talents at the Judgment Seat of Christ? (2 Corinthians 5:10 and Romans 14:12).
- Have you used your life to **maximum usefulness** for Jesus Christ and in leading people to Christ?
- If your life was judged today, would you have any **regrets** at wasting your life by not serving God?
- Would you be **ashamed** if you wasted your life for God? (1 John 2:28).
- How can you **best use your talents** and abilities for God and getting people into heaven? Do these:
 - learn to **share the gospel** easily and clearly using the "STOP" tract.
 - support and **help other Christians** to win the lost.
 - **buy gospel tracts** and Established in the Faith books for third world countries to equip churches to win their countries to Christ.
 - **make disciples** yourself.
 - learn the Bible and **grow** in knowledge in a soul winning, Bible teaching church. Teach the Bible.

5. LIFE GOAL. "Where there is no vision, the people perish." Proverbs 29:18.

- What is your **life's goal**? (soul winning, Bible teaching, church planting).
- How can you **best achieve** this goal? (work in a church team with overseas pastors).
- What things **last forever** that we can invest our lives in? (Word of God and people).
- Why invest your life in things of this world which will all pass away, when you can invest your life in things of **eternity** which will never pass away?

"He is no fool who gives what he cannot keep, to gain what he cannot lose".

"Only one life, 'twill soon be past. Only what's done for Christ will last".

Jesus says, "I died for you. What have you done for me?"

"Expect great things from God. Attempt great things for God". William Carey.

"I look upon this world as a wrecked ship. God has given me a lifeboat and said to me, 'Moody, save all you can.' " D.L.Moody. "Evangelization of the world in this generation." Moody's motto.

6. ETERNAL VALUES. "Every man's work shall be made manifest." 1 Corinthians 3:13.

- Do you have **eternal values**?
- How much **treasure** have you laid up for yourself in heaven? (Matthew 6:20).
- Why not do something **really great for God** and step out from the mooing herd?
- What will you be remembered for in **100 years** from now?

7. **SHARE THE GOSPEL.** "Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men." Matthew 4:19.

- a) Do you know how to **lead a person to Christ** easily and clearly? Would you like to **learn**?
- b) How will you explain to Christ if you've **done nothing** to win people to Christ?
- c) Do you want to invest your life in things of **eternal value**?
- d) When can we meet for a **discipleship Bible study**?
- e) Will you come to **church** this Sunday?
- f) Will you come soul winning or **door knocking** with me this week?

"Set your affection on **things above**, not on things on the earth." Colossians 3:2.

"Lift up your eyes, look on the fields for they are **white already to harvest**." John 4:35.

"Go into the highways, and **as many as ye shall find**, bid to the marriage." Matthew 22:9.

"Whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, **I will repay thee**." Luke 10:35. (Luke 16:11.

"If therefore ye have not been faithful in unrighteous mammon, who will commit to your trust the **true riches**?"

"Moreover, it is required in stewards, that **a man be found faithful**." 1 Cor. 4:2.

"If any man's work shall be burned, **he shall suffer loss**." 1 Cor. 3:15. (1 John 2:28.

"Abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and **not be ashamed** before him at his coming."

60. QUALITIES YOU NEED TO MAKE DISCIPLES

Bible Reading: 2 Timothy 2:1-26.

Aim: To make us the most effective disciple makers possible and show us the areas lacking in our disciple making ministry.

Introduction:

Many people train at Bible College and yet fail when they seek to have an effective people ministry later on. We are all convinced that:

- i) people without Christ go to hell, and
- ii) the Great Commission is important to us today.

Yet how can we have an effective, fruitful ministry for Christ? I wish to share some things that are big in my life as I seek to make disciples of people for Jesus Christ. We need:

1. **LOVE** for God, the Bible and people.

"The greatest of these is charity (*God's agape love*)". 1 Corinthians 13:13.

"The love of Christ constrains us". 2 Corinthians 5:14.

"Love one another with a pure heart fervently". 1 Peter 1:22.

"They shall prosper that love thee (Jerusalem)". Psalm 122:6.

"I will love thee O Lord, my strength". Psalm 18:1.

"I have loved the habitation of thy house". Psalm 26:8.

"A friend loveth at all times". Proverbs 17:17.

We need love for Christ, believers, the house of God, lost people and the Bible because our patience is going to be tried. We will be hurt, insulted, rejected and misunderstood.

2. **ZEAL** "The zeal of thine house hath eaten me up." John 2:17.

Christ was zealous for the honour of God's name, that all people hold it highly. We should have an intense desire to build a church for God's glory. Are you obsessed with zeal to get people saved and built up, to make disciples to present to Jesus Christ as trophies of grace? Are you zealous against the cults who push lies about God and deceive people into hell? You get zeal as you stay close to God. Zeal can stop you backsliding into laziness.

3. **PERSEVERANCE AND DETERMINATION**

"And let us not be weary in well doing, for in due season we shall reap if we faint not." Gal. 6:9
Here God promises us success if we persevere.

"Therefore my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord." 1 Corinthians 15:58

"They that sow in tears shall reap in joy. He that goeth forth and weepeth, bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again with rejoicing bringing his sheaves with him." Psalm 126:5,6

Never give up because you never know what great person you may win to Christ. Just think of what success God has given you so far as an encouragement.

4. **STUDY AND KNOW THE BIBLE**

If you delight in the law of the Lord and meditate in it day and night, whatever you do will prosper. (eg: discipling) Psalm 1:2,3.

"Study to show thyself approved unto God." 2 Timothy 2:15.

"Take..... the sword of the Spirit which is the word of God." Ephesians 6:17.

"Thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name." Psalm 138:2.

If you don't know the Bible then:

- i) you can't disciple people.
- ii) you can't refute Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons, Catholics, etc.
- iii) you can't stay on fire, keen and motivated.

5. **BE A SOUL-WINNER, DO DOOR KNOCKING**

"He that winneth souls is wise". Proverbs 11:30.

"I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house." Luke 16:27.

When you door-knock you may tell people: "Excuse me, someone you know has asked for me to come to your house to tell you something very important on how to go to heaven and avoid what he is going through." See Luke 16:27.

"Daily in the Temple and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ. Acts 5:42

"They that turn many to righteousness shall shine as the stars forever and ever". Daniel 12:3.

Soul winning results in:

- i) you staying keen.
- ii) the church growing.
- iii) people spending forever in heaven.

Are you a soul winner?

6. **BE COURAGEOUS AND FEARLESS**

"The fear of man bringeth a snare". Proverbs 29:25.

"We ought to obey God rather than man". Acts 5:29.

"God hath not given us the spirit of fear". 2 Timothy 1:7.

"The battle is the Lord's". 1 Samuel 17:47.

"Come and let us go over to the garrison of these uncircumcised: it may be that the Lord will work for us: for there is no restraint to the Lord to save by many or by few". 1 Samuel 14:6. (Jonathan's idea was, let's give it a go, you never know what good may happen).

"We may boldly say: The Lord is my helper: I will not fear what man shall do unto me". Hebrews 13:6.

Discipline yourself to go doorknocking every week and don't fear what people will say to you. If they reject you, go find someone else.

7. **BE A BIBLE TEACHER**

You build a church on three things: soul winning, prayer and Bible teaching.

Paul tells Timothy to "Preach the Word". 2 Timothy 4:2.

Jesus tells Peter to "Feed my sheep". John 21:16.

"They continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine". Acts 2:42.

"Paul and Barnabus continued in Antioch teaching and preaching the word of the Lord". Acts 15:35

There is a need for:

- i) expository and topical teaching.
- ii) apply it to their lives.
- iii) use illustrations.
- iv) buy helpful books to feed the flock.
- v) set up a Bible college in your church.

People want to hear God's Word and what it says about how they should live.

8. PLAN FOR GROWTH

Never be content unless new people are getting saved and coming to church each week. If your church doesn't grow it will die. Plan to double every one or two years. Get as many people in your church as possible working in a ministry. People grow as they are personally discipled and have their questions answered. Have a vision of reaching 100, 500, 1000 or more and plan how to get there.

9. CHURCH PLANTING

Set your long term goal as winning Australia for Christ by starting Bible teaching, soul winning churches in every Australian town. Everywhere Paul went on his first, second and third missionary journeys his goal was to set up churches in each city to propagate the Gospel after his death. Follow the example of some US churches with 5,000 people attending weekly. Give your life to it.

10. FIGHT THE DEVIL

We are in a very intense spiritual warfare over the souls of men. Satan's forces will attack you in many different ways. Look to Jesus in all these attacks. Some attacks will be:

- i) false doctrine causing you to separate from Godly men.
- ii) Pastors and other Christian workers will offend you.
- iii) you can get sidetracked chasing money in a job and not doing soul winning, disciple making and church planting.
- iv) beware of adultery and fornication.
- v) laziness.
- vi) running away from problems. Make sure that you face people with problems.
- vii) Pride: people want to be number one.

11. PRAY MUCH

Prayer is where we defeat the forces of Satan that keep people in bondage. Prayer keeps us close to God. We protect our people by a hedge of prayer. Prayer fills us with the Holy Spirit. Prayer reveals to us the will of God. Prayer focuses the power of God through our life. Prayer makes you strong and courageous in God's work.

12. LINK IN WITH STRONG BELIEVERS

Realize that you can't do it all by yourself. Have people that will encourage you in the Lord. Other strong believers will give you new ideas that you are not aware of. Paul did his missionary work in a team.

13. GOOD MARRIAGE

1 Timothy 3:4,5,11. Rule your own house well. Your children must be in subjection. Wives must be grave, sober and faithful. Spend quality time daily with your wife and children so that you will stay close to them. If they go off the rails into rebellion, you ought not to be a pastor. Get your wife doing a ladies ministry. Give your children reasons why they believe. Your marriage will be a pattern of other marriages in the church. Don't take your wife for granted, but love her.

14. LEADERSHIP

We lead by means of:

- i) humility.
- ii) being a servant.
- iii) training your workers.
- iv) creating an atmosphere of excitement in serving God.
- v) lead by example: to get them to jump one inch, you must jump one foot.
- vi) spending time with people especially when they have problems.
- vii) wisdom is the principal thing. Proverbs 4:7.

15. INITIATIVE

Don't be lazy. Get up and do things for God. William Carey said,

"Expect great things from God. Attempt great things for God."

"Lord thy pound hath gained 10 pounds". Luke 19:16.

If one thing doesn't work, try something else. Use your God-given brains. Ask God for new ideas to win more people to Christ. Have faith to try things. If we are faithful on earth now, we will have authority over 10 cities later. If you want a great ministry some day, be a reliable servant in little things now.

16. BE ENTHUSIASTIC and EXCITED

Angels rejoice when people get saved. When you win a person to Christ, you have made a friend forever. Be happy about having good Christian friends.

17. CULTIVATE A DEEP RELATIONSHIP WITH GOD

Get to know God really well through: the Word of God, suffering, prayer, obedience and working with people in soul winning and disciple making.

18. MAKE SURE YOU PRACTICE WHAT YOU PREACH

Otherwise people will call you a hypocrite. "A bishop must be blameless". 1 Timothy 3:2.

You must be 100% honest and approachable.

19. STAY IN ONE AREA FOR A LONG TIME

Be patient to build a strong foundation over a long period of time. Some pastors have problems in one church so they run away to another church to escape. This kills the compounding effect of their past years in the church.

20. CONQUER REJECTION

"Yea and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution". 2 Timothy 3:12.

"Therefore, endure hardness as a good soldier of Jesus Christ". 2 Timothy 2:3.

Don't let people who reject you turn you away from your life's goal and ministry. Don't take rejection personally. They are rejecting Christ, not you.

21. IMPART A VISION OF MULTIPLICATION

2 Timothy 2:2. Paul taught Timothy who taught faithful men, who taught others. If you and they win and train one person per year to win and train another person each, you will double each year. In 10 years you will have 1000 people saved. In 20 years you will have 1,000,000 people saved. In 30 years you will have one billion people saved. Teach this to all those that you disciple.

22. CONCENTRATE ON THOSE WHO ARE REALLY INTERESTED

See if they become interested after a few home Bible studies. Don't waste time on people who don't care. "Commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also." 2 Timothy 2:2.

23. BE A GOOD LISTENER

"Let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak and slow to wrath". James 1:19.

24. START A BIBLE COLLEGE

Start a Bible College in your church to train workers and pastors to go and start more churches. Teach the material in this book.

25. HAVE A SENSE OF HUMOUR

This is a release for pressure. "A merry heart doeth good like a medicine." Proverbs 17:22.

CONCLUSION:

Are you really determined by God's grace to make disciples? Spend time with a new convert for 6 – 8 weeks studying this material.

61. BIBLE COLLEGE CURRICULUM

- 1) Genesis (p.1162,1086,1087,1127); Pentateuch (p.35,1055), The Tabernacle (p.43)
- 2) Psalms - Outline of Each Psalm (p.1109,1163,1182).
- 3) Old Testament Bible History; Chronology of the OT (p.36,37,42); Bible Customs (p.1196).
- 4) Job (p.1153,1156), Proverbs (p.1145), Ecclesiastes (p.1198), Song of Solomon
- 5) Major Prophets: Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Daniel, Ezekiel (p.195,214,226-232).
- 6) Minor Prophets:
- 7) Gospels: Matthew, Mark, Luke, John, Life of Christ. (p.38,87-93,1074,1164,1166,1092,1194).
- 8) Acts and Life of Paul (p.40,41,1083,1096,1105,1106)
- 9) Epistles: Romans to Jude (p.286,321,382,1079-1082,1103,1154,1155,1157,1172,1173)
- 10) Revelation and Prophecy (p.171-233,1121,1122,1125,1127,1196).
- 11) Soul-winning, Door-knocking (p.93-137,1057,1083,1088), Building Sunday School; Bus Ministry
- 12) Preaching and Sermon Outlines (p.1052-1200)
- 13) Cults: Roman Catholics (p.707-734), Mormons (p.793-810), SDAs (p.735-792), Islam (p.951-1038)
- 14) Jehovah's Witnesses and Trinity (p.811-947)
- 15) Apologetics (p.1-23,134-135)
- 16) Pastoral Ethics (p.162); Marriages (p.341-343), Funerals, Lord's Supper (p.158)
- 17) Missions (p.103,309-320)
- 18) Church History (p.309-320)
- 19) Errors of Charismatic Movement (p.476-543,1056)
- 20) Why Reject Modern Bible Versions (p.544-569)
- 21) Theology
- 22) How to Plant a Church (p.138-170,234-249,1168)
- 23) Christian Living (p.285-386)
- 24) Counselling: Depression (p.304-306), Marriage (p.362-369,1059,1106)
- 25) How to Run Ladies Meetings; Pastor's Wife
- 26) Basic Greek
- 27) New Evangelical Errors (p.570-603).
- 28) Angels (p.73-92)
- 29) Parables (p.59-65)
- 30) Prayer (p.291-298,1131)
- 31) 49 Character Qualities (p.327-330)
- 32) Teen Work (p.337-351,370-381,1058,1059,1077,1089,1093,1100,1123,1142,1151-1153,1155,1178)
- 33) Principles of Bible Interpretation (p.1039-1053)
- 34) Scripture Memory (p.307-308,326)
- 35) Discipleship (p.234-284)
- 36) Ecclesiology: Doctrine of the Church (p.138-170, 273,274,281-282,1168)
- 37) The Godly Woman (p.272,337-344,1123)
- 38) Romans (p.1079-1082,1122)
- 39) I and II Corinthians (p.321,482,520-538)
- 40) Doctrine of Salvation - Soteriology (p.124-133,387-390,433-450,455,604-696,1062)
- 41) Church Administration and Leadership
- 42) WORK REPORT of hours spent weekly in soul-winning and Follow-up Bible Study
- 43) Church music and soul-stirring songs (p.467-475)
- 44) Home Schooling (p.451-454,1178-1181).
- 45) Spiritual Growth (p.284,286,291,299,324,327,334,355,370,375-381,570-603,1059,1068,1093, 1100,1110,1111,1119,1124,1134,1137,1138,1140,1150,1152,1155,1157,1162,1166,1168-1172).

62. WHAT ALL CHRISTIANS MUST KNOW

BIBLE WISDOM FOR LIFE.

Now that you have received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, you are a son of God (John 1:12), and a new creature: “old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.” (II Cor. 5:17). God wants us to live differently from the world and to please Him. You will find many enemies seeking to stop your growth in Christ. Will you drop out of serving God, or will you grow to experience the best that God has for you?

Here are some key Bible truths that will help you grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

1. LOVE and OBEY JESUS CHRIST, and GOD WILL BLESS YOU.

“them that honour me, I will honour.” I Samuel 2:30.

2. OBEY GOD in DIFFICULT TIMES.

“Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely for my sake.

Rejoice and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.” Matthew 5:10,12.

It may be easy to obey God in good times, but God permits trials to develop character qualities for our good and other’s good. Even our family may persecute us.

3. ALL THINGS WORK TOGETHER FOR GOOD TO THEM THAT LOVE GOD.

If we continue obeying and trusting God in all of life’s situations, then God promises to turn even the worst events to our good. This requires patience. Romans 8:28.

4. BE PATIENT for GOD TO BRING HIS PLANS TO PASS.

“For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.” Hebrews 10:36. God wants to cure us of anger and impatience. Let’s learn to trust God.

5. READ and STUDY the BIBLE EVERY DAY.

The Bible gives us wisdom, strength, love, joy, peace, faith, hope, victory over worry, and God’s answers to all of life’s problems. The Bible is God’s textbook for our life.

“Great peace have they which love thy law, and nothing shall offend them.” Psalm 119:165.

“As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby.” I Peter 2:2.

“Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.” Psalm 119:11.

Learning and obeying the Bible prevents problems.

6. PRAY TO GOD DAILY.

Friends grow closer if they communicate daily. So it is with God. If we start the day in prayer and Bible study, thanking God, confessing sin, asking for others needs and our needs, then we will draw closer to God and He will draw near to us. “Pray without ceasing.” I Thess. 5:17

“The effectual, fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.” James 5:16.

7. STOP REBELLING AGAINST GOD.

All your life you may have been pleasing yourself. Now is the time to put God first, others second, and yourself last. This is how to have real joy.

Jesus first

Others second

Yourself last.

“Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft.” I Samuel 15:23.

Are you rebelling or are you submitting to God and the Bible?

“The rebellious dwell in a dry land.” Psalm 68:6.

8. YE ARE NOT YOUR OWN.

For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's. I Corinthians 6:19,20. Our life's goal should be to glorify God by doing HIS will. We must say "NO" to sin, selfishness, pride, anger, and the devil's lies.

9. LOVE GOD with ALL your HEART, SOUL, MIND, and STRENGTH. LOVE the BIBLE.

LOVE Christians and LOST PEOPLE. Matthew 22:37,38.

10. COME TO CHURCH EVERY SUNDAY.

Do all you can to help it grow. Encourage others there.

"I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the Lord". Psalm 122:1.

"Let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works: Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together as the manner of some is..." Hebrews 10:24,25.

"...the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth." I Timothy 3:15.

11. HUMBLE YOURSELVES therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time. I Peter 5:6. Avoid pride. Stay humble to God, the Bible & others. Benefits of humility: "Before honour is humility." Proverbs 15:33.

"By humility and fear of the Lord are riches, honour and life." Proverbs 22:4.

12. SUBMIT YOURSELVES to the PASTOR/ELDER. I Peter 5:5.

A Pastor/Shepherd's job is to feed and protect the sheep from wolves, from false doctrines and from deception. God has placed Pastors in a "rule over you" authority position, not to hurt you, but to protect you. Notice the words "our authority" in II Corinthians 10:8. If you submit to them you are protected. If you rebel you suffer. "Let the elders that **rule** well." I Timothy 5:17.

Five responsibilities to spiritual authority in a local church:

1. **Remember** them which have the **rule over you**...whose faith follow.
2. **Obe**y them that have the **rule over you**, and submit yourselves; for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account that they may do it with joy and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you. Hebrews 13:7,17.
3. **Greet** them that have the **rule over you**, and all the saints. Hebrews 13:24.
4. **Know** (appreciate, respect) them which labour among you and **are over you** in the Lord, and admonish you. I Thessalonians 5:12.
5. **Esteem them very highly in love** for their work's sake. Be at peace among yourselves. 5:13

13. DON'T WORRY, but TRUST AND OBEY GOD.

"Casting all your care upon him; for He careth for you." I Peter 5:7.

"Be careful for nothing; but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus." Philippians 4:6,7.

"Take no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof." Matthew 6:34.

14. AVOID SIN.

Remember, sin brings you trouble, and obedience brings you God's blessings.

"My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye **sin not**." I John 2:1.

15. CONTINUED SIN BRINGS DISCIPLINE.

If believers continue in sin without repenting, God will discipline us through trouble or suffering.

The benefits of God's discipline in Hebrews 12:5-11 are:

- i) We give God reverence. (v.9).
- ii) We profit by attaining holiness. (v.10).
- iii) We yield the peaceable fruit of righteousness. (v.11).
"Before I was afflicted, I went astray." Psalm 119:67.

- 16. BE WATCHFUL FOR THE DEVIL'S ATTACKS.**
 "Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour. Whom resist steadfast in the faith (by Bible doctrine)." I Peter 5:8,9.
- 17. SOUL WINNING.** Seek to win people to receive Jesus Christ as Saviour.
 "Follow me and I will make you fishers of men." Matthew 4:19.
 "He that winneth souls is wise." Proverbs 11:30.
- 18. ASSURANCE OF SALVATION.** Be sure you are saved based on Bible promises.
 "For whosoever shall **call** upon the name of the Lord shall be **saved**." Romans 10:13.
 "He that has the Son has life.....That ye may **know** that ye have eternal life." I John 5:12,13.
- 19. JESUS CHRIST KEEPS US SAVED FOREVER.**
 "I give unto them eternal life, and they shall never perish." John 10:28.
 "To an inheritance incorruptible, undefiled, that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you. Who are kept by the power of God, through faith unto salvation..." I Peter 1:4,5.
 Jesus Christ is 100% responsible for saving us. Jesus Christ is 100% responsible for keeping us saved.
- 20. MEMORIZE BIBLE VERSES,** then whatever you do shall prosper.
 "Thy word have I hid in my heart, that I might not sin against thee." Psalm 119:11.
 "This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt **meditate** therein day and night, that thou mayest **observe** to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have **good success**." Joshua 1:8.
- 21. CONFESS SIN TO GOD IMMEDIATELY.**
 "If we confess our sins he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness." I John 1:9.
 To confess ("homologeo" in Greek) sin means to call sin what God calls it. "He that covereth his sins shall not prosper: but whoso confesseth and forsaketh them shall have mercy." Proverb 28:13
 If we don't confess our sins to God, we are out of fellowship with God and become miserable, self centred and depressed.
- 22. TELL SOMEONE THAT YOU HAVE RECEIVED JESUS CHRIST AS SAVIOUR.**
 Say: "I HAVE received the Lord Jesus Christ as my Saviour."
 "If thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord JESUS, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved." Romans 10:9.
- 23. GET BAPTIZED,** after salvation, by full immersion in water, in a local Bible teaching church to obey Christ's command in Matthew 28:19,20.
 "Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you."
- 24. TRUST GOD** with your life to do the right and best things for you, always.
 Proverbs 3:5,6 shows that God will guide us if we do 3 things:
 1. "Trust in the Lord with all thine heart; and
 2. lean not unto thine own understanding.
 3. In all thy ways acknowledge him, and he shall direct thy paths."
- 25. REWARDS.** Revelation 22:12.
 God promises rewards for us in heaven according to our works for Christ in this life. "Behold I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be."
- 26. INVITE A FRIEND TO CHURCH,** and invite a friend to meet a soul-winner who will share the gospel with him. "Go out into the highways and hedges, and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled." Luke 14:23. This verse tells us to do door knocking, and to look for people who are wanting to be saved.

27. **GOD ACCEPTS US 100% AS WE ARE**, because we have accepted Christ as our Saviour. “he hath made us accepted in the Beloved”. Ephesians 1:6.
We can accept ourselves because God accepts us.
God does not accept our sinful behaviour, but chastens us.
28. **LOVE NOT THE WORLD**, neither the things that are in the world. “The world passes away and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth forever.” I John 2:15,17.
Don’t love worldly things such as rock music, bad magazines, bad books and movies, drugs, alcohol, fornication, false religions, horoscopes, palm reading, gambling, etc.
These will pull you away from God and your life will be of no use to God. “Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them.” Ephesians 5:11.
29. **RESIST TEMPTATION.**
The devil lies to us that if we sin, we will be happier.
God says: “Be sure your sin will find you out.” Numbers 32:23.
This means that if we sin the following things will happen:
- i) God will be displeased.
 - ii) We will be found out some time.
 - iii) We will feel guilty.
 - iv) We will experience the bad consequences or punishment.
 - v) Our children will be likely to follow our sinful example.
 - vi) When our spouse or friends find out, they will no longer trust us.
 - vii) We will live in fear of being caught.
 - viii) Every sin you give into, reinforces a bad habit pattern. This makes it easier to sin again.
- “There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man, but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.” I Corinthians 10:13.
So when you are tempted, look for the way to escape.
30. **SEEK WISDOM.**
Definition: Wisdom is the insight into the true nature of things. It is the ability to discern actions and their results. Pray to God daily for wisdom.
“If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God.....and it shall be given him.” James 1:5.
“The **fear of the Lord** is the **beginning of wisdom**: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding.” Proverbs 9:10.
“Wisdom is the **principal thing**; therefore get wisdom: Exalt her and she shall promote thee, she shall bring thee to honour....” Proverbs 4:7,8.
31. **PROVISION.**
God promises to supply our needs if we put Him first.
“But **seek ye first** the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.” Matthew 6:33.
32. **AVOID WRONG FRIENDS**, such as the ungodly, sinners and scornful.
“Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the **ungodly**, nor standeth in the way of **sinners**, nor sitteth in the seat of the **scornful**.” Psalm 1:1.
Ask God for godly friends who love Jesus Christ. Seek to study, understand, learn, apply, memorize and meditate on the Bible. Then whatever you do will prosper.
“But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and nightwhatsoever he doeth shall prosper.” Psalm 1:2,3.
“My son, if sinners entice thee, **consent thou not**.” Proverbs 1:10.
“...he shall be holden with the **cords of his sins**.” Proverbs 5:22.
“Make no friendship with an **angry man**....Lest thou learn his ways, and get a snare to thy soul.” Proverbs 22:24,25.

33. BE PATIENT, and WAIT UPON THE LORD.

We live in an age when everybody wants everything now. Patience builds character. It detaches us from materialism, anger, covetousness, and selfishness. Patience helps us to trust the Lord.
“Wait on the Lord, be of good courage, he shall strengthen thine heart.” Psalm 27:14; James 1:2-4

34. When things GO WRONG, don't panic but trust God to bring good out of evil.

“And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God....” Romans 8:28.

35. JESUS Christ is RETURNING again to catch up the living and the dead believers to heaven, giving us resurrection bodies. Then He will bring us back with Him 7 years later to land on earth, taking it over as King of Kings, and Lord of Lords.

“For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.” I Thessalonians 4:16,17.

36. DON'T FIGHT WITH YOUR FAMILY.

“He that troubleth his own house shall inherit the wind.” Proverbs 11:29.

The Lord promises to protect us as we stay fearing God.

“The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that fear him and delivereth them.” Ps. 34:7.

“Many are the afflictions of the righteous: but the Lord delivereth him out of them all.” Ps. 34:19.

“Hast thou not made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side?” Job 1:10.

Satan could not get past the hedge of protection that God had put around Job and all his possessions. Satan had to get God's permission to attack Job.

37. The Lord is GOOD. Definition of good: all the qualities of an ideal person.

“O taste and see that the Lord is good: blessed is the man that trusteth in him.” Psalm 34:8.

“O how great is thy goodness, which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee.” Psalm 31:19.

Since God is good to us, we should be good to God and man.

38. GOD CREATED the HEAVEN and the EARTH in SIX LITERAL 24-HOUR DAYS.

“In six days the Lord made the heaven and the earth...” Exodus 20:11.

“In the beginning God **created** the heaven and the earth.” Genesis 1:1.

“...from the beginning of the **creation** which God **created**....” Mark 13:19.

“From the beginning of the **creation** God made them male and female.” Mark 10:6.

Evolution is wrong because:

- i) Sudden appearance of life in Cambrian strata (supposedly 500 million years old) shows an early unevolved complexity.
- ii) Man's recorded history only goes back to about 3000 BC.
- iii) 220 dating methods indicate a young earth of about 6,000 years old.
- iv) We find no transitional fossil forms in the fossil layers between one species and another.
- v) Misplaced fossils - for example, a shoe print on a trilobite.
- vi) Brontosaurus cave paintings in Zimbabwe. This means that man and dinosaurs co-existed.
- vii) No beneficial mutations causing a new species have been found.
- viii) Complexity of the human body shows an intelligent Designer.(eg:babies made in 9 months)
- ix) Second Law of Thermodynamics is opposed to Evolution.
- x) Bad social effects of evolution. For example, no morality means no accountability.

39. WIN YOUR COUNTRY TO CHRIST, and BLESSINGS will follow.

“Blessed is the nation whose God is the Lord...” Psalm 33:12.

“Righteousness exalteth a nation: but sin is a reproach to any people.” Proverbs 14:34.

“When thou makest a feast, call the poor, the maimed, the lame, the blind: And thou shalt be blessed...” Luke 14:13,14.

- 40. GIVE THANKS always to God and to others.** I Thessalonians 5:18.
 “In everything give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you
- 41. DON’T YOKE UP with UNBELIEVERS in MARRIAGE or in BUSINESS PARTNERSHIPS** (2 Corinthians 6:14-20). They please themselves. They don’t care about God.
- 42. The TONGUE.**
 Avoid bad speech, slander, lies, swearing, etc.
 “Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile.” Psalm 34:13.
 “A soft answer turneth away wrath; but grievous words stir up anger.” Proverbs 15:1.
 “...let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath.” James 1:19.
 “The tongue....is an unruly evil, full of deadly poison.” James 3:8.
- 43. GUIDANCE.**
 God promises to guide us in the right way all our life.
 “The steps of a good man are ordered by the Lord..” Psalm 37:23.
 “Thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying, This is the way, walk ye in it....” Isaiah 30:21.
 “The Lord shall guide thee continually...” Isaiah 58:11.
 “I will instruct thee, and teach thee in the way which thou shalt go: I will guide thee with mine eye.” Psalm 32:8.
- 44. BE TRUTHFUL ALWAYS.**
 Telling lies makes people distrust you.
 “Thou desirest truth in the inward parts.” Psalm 51:6.
 “Lying lips are an abomination to the Lord: but they that deal truly are his delight.” Proverbs 12:22.
 “A righteous man hateth lying.” Proverbs 13:5.
 “Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour: for we are members one of another.” Ephesians 4:25.
- 45. Get ETERNAL VALUES.**
 Many people just live for this life and money, never thinking that at death they must leave it all behind. A person with eternal values lives for Jesus Christ, winning people to Christ, and laying up treasures in heaven. Matthew 6:20.
 “So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.” Romans 14:12.
 “The world passes away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth forever.” I John 2:17.
 If we live for this life only, we will lose rewards in heaven.
- 46. Aim to be PERFECT, SINLESS, HOLY.**
 “Mark the perfect man, and behold the upright: for the end of that man is peace.” Psalm 37:37.
 “Be ye holy; for I am holy.” I Peter 1:16.
 “Let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.” II Corinthians 7:1.
 Never tolerate any sin ever in your life.
 “Holiness becometh thine house, O Lord, forever.” Psalm 93:5.
 “All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, reproof, correction that the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works.” 2 Tim. 3:16,17.
 If you never do anything wrong, but always seek to please God, you will never have regrets or self-inflicted trouble.
 Jesus said, and so should we: “I do always those things that please him.” John 8:29.
- 47. DON’T BACKSLIDE.** ‘The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways.’ Proverb 14:14
 Don’t neglect daily prayer and Bible study, church or soul-winning. People backslide when they become filled with their own ways, and depart from God’s ways. Such people become very selfish. God soon disciplines them.

48. **WORSHIP GOD.**

Worship means to acknowledge God's worth. "O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the Lord our maker." Psalm 95:6.

"O worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness." Psalm 96:9.

"...true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.

God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth." John 4:23,24.

We must worship God daily in family devotions and weekly in church. We worship God by praise, obedience, thanks, Bible study, church involvement, Gospel preaching, tithing, prayer etc.

49. **DON'T COMPLAIN.**

Often, the more that people have, the more they complain. Think of all the good things that God has given us. Don't focus on what we haven't yet got. "that there be no complaining in our streets." Psalm 144:14.

"These are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts." Jude 16.

50. **HOW TO HAVE FAVOUR and a GOOD REPUTATION.**

"Let not **mercy** and **truth** forsake thee.....

So shalt thou find **favour** and **good understanding** in the sight of God and man." Proverbs 3:3,4

"Mercy and truth preserve the king." Proverbs 20:28.

i) Show mercy to people by helping them in need.

ii) Always be truthful to people. Don't be deceitful.

Then God and man will show you favour and good understanding.

51. **BE TEACHABLE. ACCEPT REPROOF IN A HUMBLE MANNER.**

When someone rebukes you, don't reject him, but think if what he says is true. Learn from it, and be corrected.

"Poverty and shame shall be to him that refuseth instruction: but he that regardeth reproof shall be honoured." Proverbs 13:18.

"Rebuke a wise man, and he will be yet wiser." Proverbs 9:8,9.

"Open rebuke is better than secret love." Proverbs 27:5.

52. **SPEAK GOOD, ENCOURAGING WORDS TO PEOPLE.**

So many difficult and discouraging things happen to people, that we need to encourage, help and strengthen people with kind words. Encourage people at church. "Heaviness in the heart of a man maketh it stoop: but a **good word** maketh it **glad**." Proverbs 12:25.

"Let everyone of us please his neighbour for his good to edification." Romans 15:2.

Barnabus means the "son of consolation." Acts 4:36; 9:27.

53. **DON'T BE LAZY**

Work hard for God and use your time efficiently to lay up treasures in heaven. Time is a very precious asset.

"Redeeming the time, because the days are evil." Ephesians 5:16.

"Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways and be wise:she gathers her food in the harvest." Proverbs 6:6-11.

"...the soul of the diligent shall be made fat." Proverbs 13:4.

"His lord answered and said unto him, Thou wicked and slothful servant...Take therefore the talent from him, and give it to him who has 10 talents." Matthew 25:26,28.

If we don't use our God given abilities, we will lose them. We don't have much time because life is short and Jesus will return soon.

54. **A GOOD NAME IS VERY VALUABLE.**

"A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches." Proverbs 22:1.

Sin gives you a bad name, and obeying God gives you a good name, before God and men.

Many believing chief rulers "loved the praise of men more than the praise of God." John 12:43.

55. DON'T BE PROUD.

“Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth.” I Corinthians 8:1.

One of the greatest failures of young Christians is that as they gain some knowledge, they become proud, break fellowship with their pastor and leave their church which taught them everything they know spiritually. They usually justify their leaving by looking hard for the smallest faults in the pastor or people in their church. They accuse them of legalism, etc., when the real problem is pride and rebellion inside them.

They should try to build the church that they were saved in, rather than expecting people to wait on them. Young Christians from age 17-30 are mostly prone to this. They forget all the good things that people have done for them. Ingratitude, fault-finding, and a critical spirit describes this person.

“Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall.” Proverbs 16:18.

“A man’s pride shall bring him low.” Proverbs 29:23.

Many people who leave one church in pride, will leave the next church as well.

They think that they are running away from their problems. The problems are inside them, and they carry their sins in their baggage to plague them at the next place.

56. BE FRIENDLY and YOU WILL HAVE FRIENDS.

Don’t sit back waiting for people to befriend you. Instead, you must go to people to make friends with them. Be friendly and speak to new people at church.

“A man that hath friends must show himself friendly.” Proverbs 18:24.

“Thine own friend, and thy father’s friend, forsake not.” Proverbs 27:10.

Be loyal and committed to godly Christian friends and to church.

57. CHOOSE WISE, GODLY Christians AS YOUR BEST FRIENDS.

“He that walketh with wise men shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.” Proverbs 13:20.

“Go from the presence of a foolish man, when thou perceivest not in him the lips of knowledge.” Proverbs 14:7.

“Fools make a mock at sin.” Proverbs 14:9.

Only choose friends of those people who will make you a better Christian. Avoid those who will pull you down. We are like our friends, or we are becoming like them. You should meet wise, godly people at church.

58. DON'T LOOK AT or DRINK ALCOHOL.

Alcohol destroys millions of lives and marriages each year.

Companies produce and sell alcohol to make money, yet it costs the community more money than taxes raised. It is a deadly poison.

“**Look not** thou upon the wine when it is red....At the last it biteth like a serpent and stingeth like an adder. Thine eyes shall behold **strange women**, and thine heart shall **utter perverse things**. They have stricken me...,they have **beaten me** and I felt it not. I will **seek it yet again**.” Proverbs 23:31-35.

Notice the above five troubles that people get from alcohol. God warns us to reject alcohol..

“Wine is a mocker, strong drink is raging: and whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise.” Proverbs 20:1. The wine that Jesus drank was non-alcoholic because it was made by adding water to a concentrate made by heating the water out of fresh grape juice (wine). This prevented fermentation. If you drink alcohol in moderation, you encourage others to drink also.

59. DON'T TAKE DRUGS eg: Marijuana, heroin, cigarettes, etc.

People mostly take drugs because their bad friends ask them to, or to experience something new, or to cope with life’s pressures.

“A fool has no delight in understanding, but that his heart may discover itself.” Proverbs 18:2.

60. BE FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT DAILY.

How? By studying God's Word, praying, obeying God, confessing sin, etc.

"Be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit." Ephesians 5:18.

Don't be filled with self, fear or the world, but with Christ, the Holy Spirit, the Word of God and the things of God.

61. STOP LISTENING TO WRONG INFORMATION,

such as evolution, immorality, pornography, rebellion, feminism, false religions, occult, astrology, rock music, complaining, self-pity, lies, Bible denying philosophy, wrong theology.

"Cease my son, to hear the instruction that causeth thee to err from the words of knowledge." Proverbs 19:27.

"The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God." Psalm 14:1.

62. PRAISE GOD continually.

This will focus our attention on God's goodness.

"By him therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise to God continually, that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name." Hebrews 13:15.

"Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me." Psalm 50:23.

"Oh that men would praise the Lord for his goodness, and for his wonderful works to the children of men." Psalm 107:8.

"Seven times a day do I praise thee." Psalm 119:164.

63. BE CONSTANTLY FAITHFUL.

Be faithful to God, to a good church, and to God's work all your life.

"Moreover, it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful." I Corinthians 4:2.

"Most men will proclaim every one his own goodness: but a faithful man who can find?" Proverbs 20:6.

"Confidence in an unfaithful man in time of trouble is like a broken tooth, and a foot out of joint." Proverbs 25:19.

An unfaithful man cannot be relied upon. Don't be unfaithful. If we are faithful in the small things, we'll be faithful in the big things.

"He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much." Luke 16:10.

Will Christ say to you: "Well done thou good and faithful servant?" Matthew 25:21.

64. TRAIN CHILDREN IN GOD'S WAYS.

This is done by the Word of God, and by being a godly example to them. If you don't train them correctly, they will learn wrong values from the world, school, TV, peers, etc., thus breaking your heart and bringing shame to you. "Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old, he will not depart from it." Proverbs 22:6.

"Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child; but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him." Proverbs 22:15.

"Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from HELL." Proverbs 23:14.

We must teach our children to live by the Bible as the right guide to living. We must discipline our children with a rod, breaking their rebellious spirit to get them to obey their parents and God before they reach age of 5 Years.

"The rod and reproof give wisdom: but a child left to himself brings his mother to shame." Proverbs 29:15.

We train children by kind instruction, the rod and by much love.

65. PRAY FOR A WISE AND GODLY WIFE OR HUSBAND.

"A prudent wife is from the Lord." Proverbs 19:14.

Most people marry someone like themselves. If you are a person of wisdom, godliness, and character, you should seek to marry someone just the same.

66. YOUNG LADIES, be a VIRTUOUS WOMAN FOR GOD.

“Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price is far above rubies. A woman that feareth the Lord, she shall be praised.” Proverbs 31:10-31.

Don't be a rebellious feminist. Seek to marry a godly husband who will be a good helper in God's work, and who will help you to raise up the next generation to be godly. God's will for young ladies is found in I Timothy 5:14,

“I will therefore that the younger women **marry, bear children, guide the house**, give none occasion for the adversary to speak reproachfully.”

67. FLEE FORNICATION and ADULTERY.

“Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is outside the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.” I Corinthians 6:18.

“Whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul.” Proverbs 6:32.

“Marriage is honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge.” Hebrews 13:4.

Be content to wait until marriage. Sex before marriage acts like a wedge.

When a couple live together before marriage, the man has what he wants, but the girl wants the security of marriage. She pesters him to get married.

He says, “We can't afford it now, wait until later.”

She gets angry. He resents an angry, insecure woman.

They fight. Then they split up. At age 30, they must start again to find someone suitable. It happens all the time.

68. BE GODLY IN YOUR YOUTH.

“Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not...” Ecclesiastes 12:1.

If you are godly in your youth, you establish a habit of godliness, thus making it easier to be godly all your life. Prepare yourself by Bible study, prayer and soul-winning to be a servant of God or a missionary. Have a personal sense of destiny. “Who knows whether thou art come to the kingdom for such a time as this?” Esther 4:14.

69. The LOVE OF MONEY is the ROOT OF ALL EVIL.

Money is a good servant to further the Lord's work, to help others and to purchase our needs, but it becomes a tyrannical master that can enslave our minds and rob us of time, peace, and happy relationships when we place too high a value on it. We cannot take money with us when we die, so we should be more concerned with laying up treasures in heaven. Proverbs 23:5 says that “riches certainly make themselves wings and fly away...”

God entrusts us with money to use for His purposes.

70. LAY UP TREASURES IN HEAVEN. Matthew 6:19-21.

“Set your **affection** on things above, not on things on the earth.” Colossians 3:2.

What do you love the most, earthly or heavenly things? Heavenly things last forever and are ours to keep. Earthly things are lent to us by God for a time to use for God. Jesus told about a rich fool who died and went to hell, leaving all his material possessions behind. “God said unto him, Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee: then whose shall those things be, which thou hast provided? So is he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not **rich toward God.**” Luke 12:20,21.

We can lay up treasures in heaven by winning people to Christ, living by Bible truths, and by building churches. We will then be welcomed by those people into “everlasting habitations” (Luke 16:9). We will have an “abundant entrance into Christ's everlasting kingdom.” 2 Peter 1:11

Question: Are you rich toward God? Are you laying up treasures in heaven?

71. BE COURAGEOUS FOR GOD.

“The righteous are bold as a lion.” Proverbs 28:1.

“Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might.” Ecclesiastes 9:10.

Attempt great things for God. Expect great things from God.

72. IDENTIFY DANGEROUS SITUATIONS and AVOID THEM.

“A prudent man foreseeeth the evil, and hides himself; but the simple pass on and are punished.” Proverbs 27:12.

73. DON'T GIVE UP SERVING GOD

because people's eternal destiny is at stake. We need to rescue people from going to hell.

“Let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.” Galatians 6:9

“A just man falleth seven times, and rises up again.” Proverbs 24:16

“If thou faint in the day of adversity, thy strength is small....shall not he render to every man according to his works?” Proverbs 24:10-12.

Keep serving God in the one place all your life because you will build up a wide range of contacts. You will have a strong home base church to reach the world. Trouble is sure to come and the devil wants you to quit, but don't.

“Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.” I Corinthians 15:58. Claim this promise when you feel like giving up. Something good may be just around the corner. If you give up, you'll miss all the good future blessings. Remember and appreciate the good past blessings. If you quit, you'll discourage others so they may quit. God will be displeased. If you persevere, you'll encourage others to persevere. God's work will then progress.

74. WHERE THERE IS NO VISION, the PEOPLE PERISH. Proverbs 29:18.

Have a vision of the great plans and opportunities that God has for your life. Attempt great things for God. You only get **one chance** at this life to win souls for Christ. Don't waste your life by living for self and sin, but fully yield and surrender your WILL to follow God's plans for your life to win and teach people for Christ.

Telling people how to be saved is something that we cannot do in heaven. Get a vision of winning many people to Christ, and starting many churches all over the world. Otherwise, you'll perish by getting sidetracked into something useless for God and of no eternal value.

75. DON'T HARDEN YOUR HEART AGAINST GOD and YOUR PASTOR.

“He that hardens his heart shall fall into mischief.” Proverbs 28:14.

“He that being often reprov'd, hardeneth his neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy.” Proverbs 29:1.

Many teens and adults learn some Bible, then they think that they know it all. They proudly despise and reject older and wiser Christians and their Pastor. They harden their hearts against God, then they fall into deep sin, sorrow and discipline. Don't you be one of these.

76. DON'T LEAVE the PLACE OF SPIRITUAL BLESSING: A GOOD CHURCH.

Abraham went to Bethel (House of God), the place of blessing. (Genesis 12:7-13:4). When a famine came, he went **down** to Egypt (v.11), a type of the world. While in Egypt, Pharaoh wanted to take Abraham's wife Sarai, except the Lord plagued Pharaoh's house. Pharaoh then rebuked Abraham for lying that Sarai was his sister. Then Abraham returned to Bethel.

Lesson: The devil will always try to get you to leave a good church (Bethel) against the pastor's advice. He will tempt you to go somewhere else, so that he can get you away from spiritual blessings. Be content, stay where you are, even if you feel you are going through a famine as Abraham did. Learn to be committed to your church. If you leave, something much worse than a famine can happen, and often does. For example, marrying a wrong person, getting into a church teaching error, etc. Jacob went to Egypt in a famine, and put 2 million descendants into bondage.

77. DON'T BE LIKE CHILDREN

Tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine. Unbiblical religious people will lie in wait to **deceive** you by fraud, and by cunning **craftiness** of false doctrines. Ephesians 4:14.

78. BEWARE OF WOLVES IN SHEEP'S CLOTHING.

One of Satan's first and favourite attacks on young Christians is to deceive and confuse them by religious wolves.

a) Jesus warned against wolves: "Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits." Matthew 7:15,16.

b) Paul warned against wolves: "For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock. Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them. Therefore, watch & remember" Act 20:29-31

Stay loyal to the pastor and people who led you to Christ. Wolves will criticize the pastor to you to seduce you away from the under-shepherd.

79. BE LOYAL

When godly people help you, be loyal to them, your church, your pastor, God, your parents, and to the work of God. Don't be like a grasshopper, hopping from church to church. Be stable, committed and loyal. Remember the good that godly people have done to you. "Whoso rewardeth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house." Proverbs 17:13.

80. WHAT YOU SOW, YOU WILL SURELY REAP.

"Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting." Galatians 6:7,8.

When you are tempted to sin, or to reject a Godly person, remember that when you sin against someone, then someone else will do a similar sin against you. For example, David murdered Uriah and committed adultery with Bathsheba. He reaped the bad consequences of four of his sons being murdered, his daughter being raped, and his wives being sexually violated. If you sow good, you reap good. If you sow evil, you will reap evil.

81. The purpose of life is USEFULNESS to God and others.

So many people are bored in life because they are living for themselves. These are selfish people. The aim of life is usefulness, not pleasure. Self discipline is necessary to achieve things for Christ in this life. Most young people think that the purpose of life is to live for pleasure, themselves and entertainment. Young people must quickly learn self discipline to study the Bible, to win souls to Christ, to do follow up, to resist temptation and to be committed to church as it seeks to win the world for Christ. "It is good for a man that he bear the yoke in his youth." Lam. 3:27.

82. GOD IS ABLE TO DO EXCEEDING ABUNDANTLY ABOVE ALL THAT WE ASK or THINK. Ephesians 3:20.

When concerned, let us persevere serving God, because when we give God complete control of our lives, God can do exceeding, abundantly above all that we ask or think. Have faith to step out and do things for God. He will pleasantly surprise you by the great end results.

83. CHILDREN OBEY YOUR PARENTS in the Lord, because:

- i) It is right,
- ii) That it may be well with thee,
- iii) That you may live long on the earth. Ephesians 6:1-3.

84. SUBMITTING YOURSELVES ONE TO ANOTHER, in the fear of the Lord. Ephesians 5:21

This is the key to a happy marriage:

- i) **Wives duty:** Wives submit yourselves unto your own husbands as unto the Lord. Eph. 5:22.
- ii) **Husbands duty:** Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church and gave himself for it. Ephesians 5:25.

85. PUT ON THE WHOLE ARMOUR OF GOD,

that you may be able to stand against the devil's devices. We are in an intense spiritual warfare between God's kingdom and Satan's kingdom over the souls of men going to heaven or hell. We must stand and put on the armour of:

- i) **Truth** around our waist,
- ii) **Righteousness** as our breastplate,
- iii) **Gospel of peace** on our feet,
- iv) **Shield of faith** to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked,
- v) **Salvation** assurance as a helmet,
- vi) **Word of God** as the sword of the Spirit,
- vii) **Praying** always,
- viii) **Watching** for all saints. Ephesians 6:10-18.

Many people get saved, but through disobedience and carelessness they don't put on the whole armour of God. They soon become defeated, and waste their lives for God.

86. HOW TO HAVE VICTORY OVER SIN and TEMPTATION.

- 1) **Know** that our old man (old nature) is crucified with Christ. Romans 6:6.
- 2) **Reckon** ourselves to be dead to sin, but alive to God.
- 3) **Yield** our members as servants to righteousness unto holiness. Romans 6:19.
- 4) **Resist** the devil and he will flee from you. James 4:7.

87. COMFORT.

"We know that all things work together for good to them that love God..." Romans 8:28.

"If God be for us, who can be against us?" Romans 8:31.

"I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory that shall be revealed in us." Romans 8:18.

"He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?" Romans 8:32.

Nothing "shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord." Romans 8:39.

88. SIX STEPS TO PEOPLE GETTING SAVED are:

1. one is SENT,
2. one PREACHES the gospel,
3. people HEAR,
4. people BELIEVE,
5. people CALL on the name of the Lord to save them,
6. people are SAVED. Romans 10:13-15.

"How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace."

"Faith cometh by hearing and hearing by the word of God." Romans 10:17

89. GIVE JESUS CHRIST FULL CONTROL of YOUR LIFE.

"Present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service." Romans 12:1.

"My son, give me thine heart, and let thine eyes observe my ways." Proverbs 23:26.

Put Jesus Christ in the driver's seat of your life, letting him take you where He wishes.

90. RENEW and TRANSFORM your MIND by the WORD of GOD.

"Be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect will of God." Romans 12:2.

All your life up until salvation, you may have taken in worldly, wrong values. Be willing to let the Bible transform your mind by saturating your thinking with God's thoughts. Reject all wrong thinking. Find and fulfil God's will for your life by letting the Bible transform your mind.

91. USE YOUR SPIRITUAL GIFTS, that Christ gave you at salvation to build up your church.

The 11 permanent gifts are:

1. **Evangelist** (Ephesians 4:11) - ability to lead sinners to Christ, and teach and motivate Christians to share the Gospel.
2. **Pastor/Teacher** (Ephesians 4:11) - preach, teach, feed and lead Christians.
3. **Teachers** (I Corinthians 12:28) - ability to communicate and clarify Bible doctrines.
4. **Helps or ministering** (I Corinthians 12:28; Romans 12:7) - giving practical assistance.
5. **Rule or governments** (I Corinthians 12:28; Romans 12:8) - organize, administer, and promote people or projects with diligence.
6. **Mercy** (Romans 12:8) - helping sick or suffering people in a cheerful manner.
7. **Exhortation** (Romans 12:8) - ability to give challenging, encouraging words. Stay for exhortation after the church service.
8. **Giving** (Romans 12:8) - ability to accumulate and give large sums of money to further God's work. Give simply.
9. **Wisdom** (I Corinthians 12:8) - ability to rightly apply human and divine knowledge.
10. **Spirit Discernment** (I Corinthians 12:10) - ability to distinguish between demonic, human and divine works.
11. **Faith** (I Corinthians 12:9) - ability to believe and expect great things from God.

The 7 temporary gifts ceased in the first century. These are Apostles, prophecy, miracles, healing, knowledge, tongues, and interpretation of tongues. "Confirming the word with signs following." Mark 16:20. Once the N.T. word was confirmed by signs, then sign gifts were no longer needed.

92. WE MUST ALL APPEAR before the JUDGMENT SEAT OF CHRIST. Romans 14:10; 2 Corinthians 5:10. "So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God." Romans 14:12 Believers will either be rewarded if our life's work for Christ abides to eternity, or we will suffer loss if we don't serve Christ. I Corinthians 3:11-15.

"...every man shall receive his **own reward** according to his **own labour**." I Corinthians 3:8.

"And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men; Knowing that of the Lord **ye shall receive the reward** of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ. But he that doeth wrong shall receive for the wrong which he hath done: and there is no respect of persons." Colossians 3:23-25.

93. UNREPENTED SIN SPREADS THROUGH A CHURCH,

like leaven (yeast), then God judges the sin.

"Know ye not that a little leaven **leaveneth the whole lump**? **Purge out** therefore the old leaven, that ye may be a new lump..." I Corinthians 5:6,7.

Many churches are destroyed by tolerating sin. God hates sin and so must we.

Don't keep company or eat meals with anyone that is called a brother if he continues unrepenting in the sins of: i) fornication ii) covetous iii) idolater iv) railer (cursing, abusive), v) drunkard vi) extortioner.

"Do not ye judge them that are within (the church)? But them that are outside God judges. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person." I Corinthians 5:11-13.

94. MEN HAVE SHORT HAIR. Don't follow worldly fashions.

"Doth not even nature itself teach you, that, if a **man** have long hair, it is a shame unto him? But if a **woman** have long hair, it is a glory to her." I Corinthians 11:14,15.

Men must look different to women. Demons in Revelation 9:8 have long hair.

95. The WILDERNESS GENERATION that sinned teaches us that:

- i) we should not lust after evil things,
- ii) neither be idolaters,
- iii) neither let us commit fornication,
- iv) neither let us tempt Christ,
- v) neither murmur ye. I Corinthians 10:1-12.

96. LIVE the FAITH-REST LIFE.

The wilderness generation failed to enter the promised land because they refused to believe God's promises.

"Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.....the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it. For we which have believed do enter into rest....Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest...." Hebrews 4:1,2,3,11.

When faced with difficulties we can either trust God, or blame God. We should rest in God's promises for victory, knowing that God is in control.

97. PREACH the GOSPEL.

"Woe is unto me if I preach not the Gospel." I Corinthians 9:16.

"Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men." Matthew 4:19.

"....preach the gospel in the regions beyond you..." II Corinthians 10:16.

If we don't preach the gospel, people will go to hell.

98. GOD PERMITS HERESIES in churches, to see who is approved and who is disapproved.

Those who stand up for the truth are approved by God. Those who believe the false doctrine are disapproved by God. Whenever a conflict arises in your church it is a test to see if you have the courage to take the side of truth.

"For there **must** be also heresies among you, that they which are **approved** may be **made manifest** among you." I Corinthians 11:19.

99. EACH LOCAL CHURCH is like a BODY,

that needs each member to work together to pull their load, so that the Lord's work gets done. Therefore, let us co-operate, loyally maintaining unity in our church work. I Corinthians 12:12-27

100. LORD'S SUPPER GUIDELINES. I Corinthians 11:23-34.

1. The bread (unleavened) reminds us of Christ's body that was broken for us. v.24.
2. The grapejuice (non-alcoholic) reminds us of Christ's blood shed for our sins. v.25.
3. We do it in remembrance of Jesus Christ. v.25.
4. It shows the Lord's death till He come. v.26.
5. We must first examine ourselves, then confess any sin before taking the Lord's supper.v.28.
6. We must judge our sins, or God will judge us with sickness or death. v.29-34.

101. 4 COMMANDS IN I Corinthians 10:31-33.

- i) "whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God." v.31.
- ii) "Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the Church of God." v.32.
- iii) "....not seeking mine own profit, but the profit of many, that they may be saved." v.33.
- iv) "Be ye followers of me, even as I also am of Christ." 11:1.

102. 8 REGULATIONS FOR THE GIFT OF TONGUES:

Tongues are:

- i) A sign, not for believers, but to unbelievers. I Corinthians 14:22.
 - ii) God promised to use tongues to warn the Jews to repent. v.21.
 - iii) Gentiles, unbelievers, and those unlearned in the Old Testament think you are mad if you speak in tongues. 14:23.
 - iv) Only 2 or 3 should speak in tongues in the church in the first century. 14:27.
 - v) They should speak by course, meaning one after the other. 14:27.
 - vi) Let one interpret, otherwise keep quiet. 14:27,28.
 - vii) Women should not speak in tongues in church. 14:34.
 - viii) Don't pray in tongues, because "understanding is unfruitful." 14:14,15.
 - ix) A childish gift, only for the childhood days of the church before it left Judaism in 70AD.13:11
- Since the Jews ignored the tongues warning to repent, God judged them by the Roman army destroying Jerusalem in 70 AD. Tongues then ceased, and are not applicable today.

103. NOW ABIDETH FAITH, HOPE and CHARITY, THESE THREE. I Corinthians 13:13. Faith, hope and love are permanent in the Church Age. Prophecy, tongues and knowledge (of God's will before the full Bible was completed) were temporary gifts in the church age, each passing away in the first century. Any people giving "new revelations" not contained in the Bible are false prophets giving false prophecies. Revelation 22:18.

104. The GOSPEL that Paul preached is that:

- i) Christ died for our sins,
- ii) Christ was buried,
- iii) Christ rose again the third day. I Corinthians 15:1-4.

105. TAKE EVERY OPPORTUNITY TO SERVE GOD.

"For a great door and effectual is opened unto me, and there are many adversaries." I Cor. 16:9.

106. REJECT SATAN'S DEVICES and RESIST the DEVIL.

- i) "Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are **not ignorant** of his devices." II Corinthians 2:11.
- ii) **Submit** yourselves to God. eg. church, Bible study and prayer.
- iii) "**Resist** the devil and he will flee from you.
- iv) **Draw** near to God, and He will draw near to you." James 4:7,8; I Peter 5:8,9.
Use these 4 tactics to defeat Satan's attacks on us. See p.334.

107. WHEN BELIEVERS DIE, we ENTER HEAVEN.

"We are confident and willing....to be absent from the body, and to be **present with the Lord**" (in heaven). II Corinthians 5:8.

"Them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with Him." I Thessalonians 4:14.

"For I am in a straight betwixt two, having a desire to **depart**, and **TO BE WITH CHRIST**..." Philippians 1:23.

"Wherefore, seeing we also are surrounded by so great a **cloud of WITNESSES**." Hebrews 12:1. Dead believer's souls in heaven witness our life on earth, not in soul sleep.

"...the **heavenly Jerusalem**....to the **SPIRITS of just men** made perfect." Hebrews 12:22,23.

"I saw under the altar the **souls of them** that were slain for the word of God..." Revelation 6:9.

"To an inheritance, incorruptible, undefiled..... reserved in heaven for you." I Peter 1:4.

"The **LORD** my God shall **come**, and **all the saints with thee**." Zechariah 14:5. Come from where?
Use these verses with Jehovah's Witnesses, SDA's and Christadelphians.

108. REASONS FOR SERVING GOD and WINNING SOULS.

1. We labour, that,....we may be **accepted** of him. II Corinthians 5:9.
2. We must all appear before the **judgment seat of Christ**; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad. 5:10.
3. Knowing the **terror of the Lord**, we persuade men. 5:11.
4. The **love of Christ** constrains us. 5:14.
5. He died for all, that they which live should **not henceforth live unto themselves**, but unto him which died for them and rose again. 5:15.
6. People become **new creatures** in Christ. 5:17.
7. God has given us the **ministry and word of reconciliation**. 5:18,19.
8. We are **ambassadors for Christ**. 5:20.

109. FIVE CROWNS for FAITHFUL BELIEVERS.

1. Incorruptible crown – for those who master the old nature. I Corinthians 9:25-27.
2. Crown of Rejoicing – for those who win people to Christ. I Thessalonians 2:19,20.
3. Crown of Life – for those who endure temptation. James 1:12; Revelation 2:10.
4. Crown of Righteousness -for those who love Christ's appearing (rapture). II Timothy 4:8.
5. Crown of Glory - for faithful pastors. I Peter 5:2-4.

110. DO NOT MARRY AN UNBELIEVER.

“Be not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion has light with darkness? II Corinthians 6:14.

Wherefore **come out** from among them, and **be ye separate**, saith the Lord, and **touch not the unclean thing**; and I will receive you. II Corinthians 6:17. Don’t mix with worldly things, or enter a long term business partnership with unbelievers or marry an unbeliever. Don’t work with Christians in outreach who don’t hold the doctrine of Christ. Hebrews 6:1,2.

111. SEEK PEACE IN YOUR CHURCH.

“I fear lest, when I come,....there be debates, envyings, wraths, strifes, backbitings, whisperings, swellings (pride), tumults, ...uncleanness, fornication, lasciviousness.” II Corinthians 12:20. If Christians in a church fight each other, they will not be winning people to Christ. Christians who quit soul-winning and quit fighting the devil, often fight each other.

112. BEWARE of those coming to you preaching.

1. **Another Jesus** whom we have not preached,
2. If ye receive **another Spirit**, which ye have not received,
3. **Another Gospel**, which ye have not accepted. II Corinthians 11:4.

Beware of “false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light. Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness.” II Corinthians 11:13-15.

“If any man preach **any other gospel** unto you than that ye have received, **let him be accursed.**” Galatians 1:9.

113. DON’T BE MEN PLEASERS, but be a GOD PLEASER.

“If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.” Galatians 1:10.

“We **ought to obey God** rather than men.” Acts 5:29.

They (chief rulers who believed), because of the Pharisees did not confess Jesus, lest they should be put out of the synagogue: For they **loved the praise of men** more than the **praise of God.**” John 12:42,43. Always do what is right in God’s eyes.

114. WE ARE NOT SAVED BY OUR GOOD WORKS.....

or in keeping the Law, or by baptism, or by sacraments, etc, but by FAITH in CHRIST as SAVIOUR. “Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ...not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.”

Galatians 2:16. Good works never cancel bad works.

“If righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain.” Galatians 2:21.

“For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: not of works, lest any man should boast. For we are his workmanship created in Christ Jesus unto GOOD WORKS’ Ephesians 2:8,9,10. The law sees what we do wrong. It does not care what we do right.



115. WALK IN THE SPIRIT, and ye shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh. Galatians 5:16.

This means to be continually filled with the Holy Spirit. Ephesians 5:18.

- The works of the flesh are:
Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellingsthey which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.
- But the fruit of the Spirit is:
Love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance. Galatians 5:19-23.

116. WALK WORTHY. Ephesians 4:1-6:24. How?

1. Lowliness, meekness, longsuffering, forbearing one another in love, keep the unity of the Spirit. 4:2,3.
2. Evangelists, Pastors/teachers use your gifts to:
 - a) Perfect the saints.
 - b) Do the work of the ministry.
 - c) Edify the body of Christ. 4:11-13.
3. Don't be like children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine. 4:14.
4. Speak the truth in love, that you may grow up... 4:15.
5. Walk not as other Gentiles walk in their vain mind, having darkened understanding, ignorant, blind hearts, being past feeling, given to lasciviousness (continuous evil thoughts), uncleanness, greediness. 4:17-19.
6. Put off the former conversation of the old man. 4:22.
7. Be renewed in the spirit of your mind. 4:23.
8. Put on the new man, created in righteousness and holiness. 4:24.
9. Put away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour. 4:25.
10. Be angry and sin not. 4:26.
11. Don't give place to the devil. 4:27.
12. Steal no more, but labour to give to needy people. 4:28.
13. Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but speak good edifying words. 4:29.
14. Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God. 4:30.
15. Put away all bitterness, wrath, anger, clamour, evil speaking and malice. 4:31.
16. Be kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you. 4:32.
17. Be followers of God. 5:1.
18. Walk in love. 5:2.
19. Let not fornication, uncleanness, covetousness, filthiness, foolish talking, jesting be once named among you. 5:3,4.
20. Walk as children of light. 5:8.
21. Prove what is acceptable to the Lord. 5:10.
22. Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them. 5:11.
23. Walk circumspectly (cautious, prudent, discreet) wisely. 5:15.
24. Redeeming the time, because the days are evil. 5:16.
25. Understand what the will of the Lord is. 5:17.
26. Be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit. 5:18.
27. Sing psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs in melody to the Lord. 5:19.
28. Giving thanks always for all things unto God. 5:20.
29. Submitting yourselves one to another in the fear of God. 5:21.
30. Wives submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as to the Lord. 5:22.
31. Husbands love your wives, even as Christ loved the church, and gave himself for it. 5:25.
32. Children obey your parents in the Lord. 6:1.
33. Fathers provoke not your children to wrath. 6:4.
34. Servants obey your masters, ... as unto Christ. 6:5.
35. Masters forbear threatening. 6:9.
36. Be strong in the Lord. 6:10.
37. Put on the whole armour of God, to stand against the wiles of the devil. 6:11
38. Pray always. 6:18.
39. Watch with all perseverance and supplication for all saints. 6:18.

117. DON'T COMMIT SUICIDE.

“To abide in the flesh is more needful for you.” Philippians 1:24.

God has given us the gift of life. We must use our life for Christ and others. We must win souls to Christ and teach Christians. It is the Devil's voice telling you to suicide. Reject his words.

Suicide is very selfish. Care about serving God and helping others. Most problems are short lived. If you wait a while, the problem tempting you to suicide will soon be forgotten. If you suicide, you will miss all the good things in the future.

118. EXPECT SUFFERING.

“For unto you it is given in the behalf of Christ, not only to believe on him, but also to suffer for his sake.” Philippians 1:29.

“We must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.” Acts 14:22.

“Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.” II Timothy 3:12.

“That no man should be moved by these afflictions: for yourselves know that we are appointed thereunto.” I Thessalonians 3:3.

119. DON'T BE SELFISH, but CARING and HELPING OTHERS. Philippians 2:20,21,4.

“I have no man likeminded, who will naturally care for your state.” v.20.

“For all seek their own, not the things which are Jesus Christ's.” v.21.

Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others.” v.4.

Selfish people complain, find faults and think little of others. If we are selfish, other believers have to work harder, “to supply your lack of service toward me.” Philippians 2:30.

120. FORGET THE BAD PAST EVENTS. You can't change them.

“This one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, I press toward the mark for the prize...” Philippians 3:13,14.

Many psychiatrists try to delve back into your past to make you relive or resolve past bad situations. This is wrong. Learn lessons from past mistakes and sins, don't dwell on them, but press toward and work for the future prize in heaven.

121. REJOICE IN THE LORD ALWAYS. Philippians 4:4.

Look on the bright side. Be an optimistic, rejoicing Christian.

122. THINK ON EIGHT KINDS OF THINGS.

Whatsoever things are true, honest, just, pure, lovely, good report, virtue, and praise, think on these things.” Philippians 4:8.

Don't look at bad movies, bad books, or anything against these 8 values.

123. BE CONTENT with what God sends your way. Philippians 4:11,12,13,19.

“Godliness with contentment is great gain. For we brought nothing into this world, and it is certain we can carry nothing out. And having food and clothing let us be therewith content. They that will be rich fall into temptation, and a snare, and into many foolish and hurtful lusts....For the love of money is the root of all evil.....But thou, O man of God, flee these things; and follow after righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness.” I Timothy 6:6-11.

- “Not that I speak in respect to want: for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content. v.11.
- I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: everywhere and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. v.12.
- I can do all things through Christ which strengthens me.” v.13.
- My God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus.” v.19.

124. CHRIST DEFEATED ALL SATAN'S ANGELS and POWERS at his death and resurrection. Let us not fear the devil, but fear God.

“Having spoiled principalities and powers.” Colossians 2:15.

125. DON'T TOLERATE EVIL and SIN, but REBUKE IT.

“Whom we preach, **warning every man**, and **teaching every man** in all wisdom; that we may present every man **perfect in Christ Jesus.**” Colossians 1:28.

Of all errors, **toleration** is the most dangerous and will damn many people to hell. Other errors only overturn one truth, but by toleration of sin and false doctrine, way is made to overturn all the truths in scripture. “Warn them that are unruly.” I Thessalonians 5:14.

Toleration sets up all errors opposite to truth. People who tolerate errors, will not tolerate believers who are intolerant of errors. They think we are narrow-minded or legalist. This sin of toleration becomes the open door to all false doctrines.

126. BEWARE.

- 1 Lest thou **forget the Lord**, which brought thee...out of bondage. Deuteronomy 6:12.
- 2 Beware that thou forget not the Lord thy God, in not **keeping his commandments**.... Deuteronomy 8:11.
3. Beware of the **Lord disciplining us**. “Smite a scorner, and the simple will beware.” Proverbs 19:25.
4. Beware of **false prophets**, which come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Matthew 7:15.
5. Beware of **men**: for they will deliver you up to councils. Matthew 10:17.
6. Beware of the leaven of **false doctrine**. Matthew 16:12.
7. Beware of the **scribes**, which love to go in long clothing,.....loveth the chief seats,.....which devour widow’s houses, and for a pretence make long prayers: these shall receive greater damnation.” Mark 12:38-40.
8. Beware of **covetousness**: for a man’s life consists not in the abundance of things which he possesses. Luke 12:15.
9. Beware of **dogs** (outside) beware of **evil workers** (inside), beware of the concision (legalism). Philippians 3:2.
10. Beware lest any man spoil you through **philosophy** and **vain deceit**, after the **tradition of men** (Roman Catholic Church), after the rudiments of the **world**,and not after Christ.Coloss2:8

127. FULFIL YOUR MINISTRY.

“And say to Archippus, Take heed to the ministry which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou **fulfil it.**” Colossians 4:17. We all have been given a ministry that God wants us to fulfil.

We must not be lazy, sidetracked, fall into sin or give up. Fulfil God’s plans for your life. Start doing something for God today. Don’t waste your life on things of no eternal value. Have a sense of destiny, of the importance of your life for eternity, for souls and for Jesus Christ .

128. 14 CHARACTERISTICS of a DISCIPLE - MAKER. I Thessalonians 2.

1. We were bold to speak the Gospel, with much contention. v.2.
- 2 Our exhortation was not of deceit, uncleanness or guile. v.3.
- 3 We speak; not as pleasing men, but pleasing God. v.4.
- 4 We never used flattering words, nor a cloke of covetousness. v.5.
5. We never sought glory of men. v.6.
6. We were gentle among you, even as a nurse cherishes her children. v.7.
7. We affectionately desired you, imparting to you our own souls. v.8.
- 8 We laboured and travailed night and day, so as not to charge you. v.9.
- 9 We behaved ourselves to believers holy, justly and unblameably. v.10.
10. We exhorted, comforted and charged every one of you, as a father does his children, that ye would walk worthy of God. v.11.
11. We thank God that ye received the Word of God as God’s Word. v.13.
12. Ye became followers of the churches of God in Judea. v.14.
13. We endeavoured to see your face with great desire. v.17.
14. Ye are our hope, glory, joy, our crown of rejoicing at Christ’s coming. v.19.

129. FIVE BENEFITS OF SUFFERING.

“ye also have suffered like things of your own countrymen.” I Thessalonians 2:14.

1. It proves the reality of our faith. It weeds out mere professors. I Peter 1:7.
2. It enables us to comfort and encourage others who are going through trials. 2 Corinthian 1:4
3. It develops character eg: patience. Romans 5:3.
4. It makes us more zealous in spreading the Gospel. Acts 8:3,4.
5. It helps remove the dross from our lives. Job 23:10.
6. It proves our love for Christ, as we patiently endure suffering.

130. SEVEN EVENTS OF the RAPTURE I Thessalonians 4:13-18.

1. Them also which **sleep in Jesus** will God (the Son) bring with Him. 4:14.
Christ who is God will bring dead believers spirits and souls with Him.
2. The Lord himself shall **descend from heaven** with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of God. 4:16.
3. The **dead in Christ** shall **rise first**. 4:16.
4. We which are **alive and remain** shall be **caught up** together with them in the clouds. 4:17.
5. We will **meet the Lord** in the air. 4:17.
6. So shall we **ever** be with the Lord. 4:17.
7. **Comfort** one another with these words. 4:18.

131. WE ARE MADE UP OF SPIRIT, SOUL and BODY. I Thessalonians 5:23.

132. ANTICHRIST SHALL COME after BELIEVERS are CAUGHT UP. II Thess. 2:1-12.

133. MEN, GET A JOB, DON'T BE LAZY: “If any would not work, neither should he eat.” 2 Thess. 3:10.

134. EXHORTATIONS. I Thessalonians 5:11-26.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Comfort yourselves | 11. Rejoice evermore |
| 2. Edify one another | 12. Pray without ceasing |
| 3. Esteem Pastors very highly | 13. In everything give thanks |
| 4. Be at peace | 14. Quench not the Spirit |
| 5. Warn the unruly | 15. Despise not prophesyings |
| 6. Comfort the feebleminded | 16. Prove all things |
| 7. Support the weak | 17. Hold fast to that which is good |
| 8. Be patient to all men | 18. Abstain from all appearance of evil |
| 9. Don't render evil for evil | 19. Brethren, pray for us |
| 10. Ever follow what is good | 20. Greet all the brethren. |

135. WITHDRAW YOURSELVES FROM EVERY BROTHER walking DISORDERLY,

who walks not after the traditions received from the apostles. II Thessalonians 3:6.

“If any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed.” 3:14.

“Mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned;& avoid them. By good words & fair speeches they deceive the hearts of the simple” Rom.16:17-18

“Cast out the scorner, and contention shall go out; yea strife and reproach shall cease.” Prov. 22:10
“....an abomination unto him,....he that soweth discord among the brethren.” Proverbs 6:19.

136. FAITHFUL SAYINGS.

1. Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. I Timothy 1:15.
2. If any man desire the office of a bishop, he desires a good work. 3:1
3. Bodily exercise profits little, but godliness is profitable to all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come. 4:9.
4. If we be dead with him, we shall also live with him. If we suffer with him, we shall also reign with him. If we deny him, he also will deny us. If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself. II Timothy 2:11-13.
5. They which have believed in God might be careful to maintain good works. Titus 3:8.

137. INSTRUCTIONS FOR WOMEN.

1. Women adorn themselves in **modest clothing**, with reverence and sobriety. I Timothy 2:9.
2. I suffer not a woman to **teach**, nor to **usurp authority over the man**, but to be in silence. 12
Women must not teach men in spiritual things, nor be pastors because:
 - i) Adam was first formed. 2:13
 - ii) Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the transgression. 2:14.
3. I will that the younger women: I Timothy 5:14.
 - i) Marry.
 - ii) Bear children.
 - iii) Guide the house.
 - iv) Give no occasion for the enemy to speak reproachfully.
4. She shall be saved from a purposeless life by **childbearing** if she continues in faith, charity, holiness, sobriety. I Timothy 2:15.
5. Aged women be holy, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teach young women to:
 - i) be sober.
 - ii) love their husbands.
 - iii) love their children.
 - iv) be discreet.
 - v) be chaste.
 - vi) keepers at home (“keep” means “to guard”)
 - vii) good.
 - viii) obedient to their own husbands. Titus 2:3-5.
6. Be in subjection to your own husbands. I Peter 3:1.
Have chaste conversation (pure life), and fear (reverence). v.2.
7. Have a meek and quiet spirit, of great price in God’s sight. Christian wives should not think of outer attire as the source of genuine beauty. I Peter 3:3-6.
8. Let your women keep silence in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak; but to be under obedience...It is a shame for women to speak in the church. I Cor. 14:34,35.
9. Help men in Christian work: ‘Women which laboured with me in the gospel.’ Phillipian 4:3

138. INSTRUCTIONS FOR MEN. Genesis 18:19.

1. God will have all men to be saved, and come to the knowledge of the truth. I Timothy 2:4.
2. I will that men pray everywhere, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting. 2:8.
3. Rebuke not an elder, but entreat him as a father. 5:1.
4. If any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he has denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel. 5:8.
5. Be an example of believers in word, conversation, charity, spirit, faith, purity. 4:12.
6. Give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine. 4:13.
7. Meditate upon these things, give thyself wholly to them, that thy profiting may appear to all. 4:15.
8. Take heed to thyself, and to doctrine. Continue in them. 4:16.
9. Thou, man of God, flee these things (love of money), but follow righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness. 6:11.
10. Fight the good fight of faith. War a good warfare. 6:12.
11. Avoid oppositions of science falsely so called. 6:20.
12. Aged men be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith, in charity, in patience. Titus 2:2.
13. Young men be -sober minded, -a pattern of good works in all things, -uncorrupt doctrine, -grave, -sincere, -sound speech that cannot be condemned, so no one has any evil to say about you. Titus 2:6-8.
14. So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. Ephesians 5:28.
15. Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong. I Corinthians 16:13.
16. Ye younger, submit yourselves unto the elder. I Peter 5:5.

17. Young men, when you know some Bible, you are still a novice. You may be lifted up with pride, then you may fall into condemnation of the devil. I Timothy 3:6.
Many young men get proud, think they are smarter than their pastor and older Christians, then leave church, then fall, then backslide, often into deep sin. Beware of pride.

139. QUALIFICATIONS FOR A PASTOR/BISHOP/ELDER.

If you want to be a Pastor you must meet these qualifications:

I Timothy 3:1-7.

1. Blameless.
2. Husband of one wife.
3. Vigilant.
4. Sober.
5. Good behaviour.
6. Given to hospitality.
7. Apt to teach.
8. Not given to wine.
9. No striker.
10. Not greedy of money.
11. Patient.
12. Not a brawler.
13. Not covetous.
14. Ruling well his own house.
15. Having his children in subjection
16. Not a novice.
17. He must have a good report of outsiders
18. Let elders that rule well have double honour. I Timothy 5:17.
19. Labour in the word and doctrine.
20. Given continually to prayer and ministry of the word. Acts 6:4.
21. Them that sin rebuke before all, that others also may fear. I Timothy 5:20.
22. Do nothing by partiality. Don't prefer one before another. I Timothy 5:21.
23. Lay hands suddenly on no man, (don't ordain men without proper investigation).
If they sin, you become a partaker of their sins. Keep thyself pure. I Timothy 5:22.
24. Put people in remembrance of words of faith and good doctrine. I Timothy 4:6.
25. Exercise thyself unto godliness. I Timothy 4:7.
26. Withdraw yourself from false teachers. I Timothy 6:3-6.
27. Able by sound doctrine to exhort and convince gainsayers. Titus 1:9.
28. Be a teacher: speak the things which become sound doctrine. Titus 2:1.
29. Speak, exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Titus 2:15.
30. Remind people to be subject to powers, to obey magistrates, be ready to every good work, speak evil of no man, be no brawlers, gentle, show all meekness to all men. Titus 3:1,2.
31. Preach the word. II Timothy 4:2-7.
32. Be instant in season, out of season.
33. Reprove.
34. Rebuke.
35. Exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.
36. Endure afflictions.
37. Do the work of an evangelist.
38. Make full proof of thy ministry.
39. Fight the good fight of faith, finish your course, keep the faith.
40. Feed the flock of God means to feed, care, lead, guide and protect. I Peter 5:1-3.
41. Take the oversight (episkopos means "bishop rule") not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre (corrupt money), but of a ready mind.
42. Don't be a lord over God's heritage.
43. Be examples to the flock.

Titus 1:5-9.

1. Blameless.
2. Husband of one wife.
3. Watch in all things. II Timothy 4:5.
4. Sober.
5. Not soon angry.
6. Lover of hospitality.
7. Holding fast the faithful word.
8. Not given to wine.
9. No striker.
10. Not given to money.
13. Not self-willed (arrogant).
14. Having faithful children
not accused of riot or unruly.
15. Lover of good men.
16. Just.
17. Holy.

140. **QUALIFICATION OF DEACONS.** I Timothy 3:8-10.

If a man does not meet all of these qualifications he should not apply to be a deacon, nor should a pastor appoint him as a deacon. He will cause problems.

Who ordains new pastors? Existing pastors. Titus 1:5.

Who appoints deacons? The existing pastor, because the deacon's job is to be a servant to the pastor, and the pastor must feel that he can work with his deacons.

A deacon has no ruling authority in a New Testament Church.

A pastor does have authority.

A pastor may dismiss a deacon at anytime if the deacon fails to meet these qualifications:

1. Grave.
2. Not double-tongued (that is, saying something to one person, and denying it to another).
3. Not given to much wine.
4. Not greedy of money.
5. Holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience. This means having sound doctrine and a good pure life.
6. Let them first be proved.
7. Let them use the office of a deacon (that is, do the work).
8. Being found blameless.
9. Honest.
10. Full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom. Acts. 6:3.
11. Husband of one wife. I Timothy 3:12.
12. Rule their children and their own houses well.
13. Deacon's wives must be grave, not slanderers, sober, faithful in all things. I Timothy 3:11.

If a deacon thinks that he no longer meets these qualifications he should resign as a deacon.

Sins of Deacons: 1) Wanting to take over the church. In order to do so they must remove the Pastor. They try to do this by slandering him to the people so they will take the deacon's side.

2) Weak, disloyal deacons sometimes take the side of wolves who lead a rebellion against the Pastor. When the Pastor stands his ground, they leave the church, often joining a liberal, apostate, non soul winning, dead, social church. They will try to take as many simple, ungrateful people with them who forget all the good the Pastor has done for them.

3) Slandering the Pastor to the Youth group, and taking the youth group off to start a church.

If a deacon wants to start a church, do so with the soul winning Pastor's permission and blessing.

4) Allowing people to play deacon off against the Pastor. Taking people's side against the pastor without bringing the matter to the Pastor.

(Hebrews 13:7,17,24.

5) Thinking he has authority, when no Scripture gives him any authority. Pastor has the authority.

141. **SIGNS OF FALSE TEACHERS - AVOID THEM.**

Some shall depart from the faith or sound doctrine:

1. Giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils.
2. Speaking lies in hypocrisy.
3. Having their conscience seared with a hot iron.
4. Forbidding to marry.
5. Commanding to abstain from meats. I Timothy 4:1-5.
6. Consent not to the words of the Lord Jesus Christ and godly doctrine.
7. Speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them. Acts 20:30.
8. A man that is an heretic after the first and second admonition reject. Titus 3:10.
9. Hardened hearts: "Today if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts." Hebrews 3:7.
10. They don't hold the Doctrine of Christ. Hebrews 6:1,2.
11. They stumble at Christ "the rock of offence", His Deity, being disobedient. I Peter 2:8.
12. They privily (quietly) bring in damnable heresies. II Peter 2:1.
13. Many shall follow their pernicious ways. II Peter 2:2.
14. The way of truth is evil spoken of. II Peter 2:2.
15. They speak evil of things they understand not. II Peter 2:12.

16. They beguile unstable souls. They seduce unwary, unsteadfast souls. II Peter 2:14.
17. They wrest, twist, distort scriptures that are hard to understand. II Peter 3:16.
18. They confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. II John 7.
19. They despise dominion (authority). Jude 8.
20. They are murmurers, complainers, walking after their own lusts. Jude 16.
21. They separate themselves from brethren and from truth. Jude 19.
22. They have not the Holy Spirit. Jude 19.

142. TEN PICTURES OF AN IDEAL CHRISTIAN. II Timothy 2:1-26.

1. **Son** (2:1). Be strong in grace.
2. **Steward** (2:2). In the New Testament a steward was entrusted with the profitable running of his master's estate. We must pass on Bible doctrine to faithful men who shall be able to teach others also. Paul taught Timothy, who taught faithful men, who taught others.
3. **Soldier** (2:3,4).
 - i) Endure hardness as a good soldier of Jesus Christ.
 - ii) Don't get entangled with worldly affairs.
 - iii) Please Christ who has chosen us to be a soldier.
4. **Athlete** (2:5).
 - i) We must strive for masteries and rewards.
 - ii) We must strive lawfully, live by the rules, then we are crowned in heaven.
5. **Farmer** (2:6,7).
 - i) We must labour hard to sow.
 - ii) We will then enjoy reaping the fruits.
6. **Teacher** (2:11-14).
Put people in remembrance that:
 - i) To die with Christ is to live for Christ. (2:11).
 - ii) To suffer for Christ now is to reign with Christ later. (2:12).
7. **Study to be a Skilled Workman** (2:15,16,17).
As a student we must:
 - i) Study the Word of God to be an approved workman to God.
 - ii) be "unashamed before men."
8. **Vessel**. Vessel of gold or silver, prepared for honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, prepared for every good work. (2:20,21).
9. **Follower** (2:22,23).
 - i) Follow righteousness, faith, charity and peace.
 - ii) Flee youthful lusts.
 - iii) Avoid foolish and unlearned questions.
10. **Servants** (2:24-26).
 - i) Be gentle to all men.
 - ii) Apt to teach, patient.
 - iii) Instructing meekly those opposing themselves.

143. WHAT PEOPLE WILL BE LIKE IN THE LAST DAYS. II Timothy 3

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Lovers of their own selves. | 12. Unholy. |
| 2. Covetous (Advertising industry). | 13. Without natural affection (abortion). |
| 3. Boasters. | 14. Trucebreakers |
| 4. Proud. | 15. False accusers. |
| 5. Blasphemers (speak evil of God). | 16. Incontinent (lacking sex control). |
| 6. Disobedient to parents. | 17. Highminded |
| 7. Fierce. | 18. Lovers of pleasures more than God. |
| 8. Despisers of those that are good. | 19. Having a form of godliness, but denying the power. |
| 9. Traitors. | 20. Ever learning, and never able to come to the knowledge of truth. |
| 10. Heady (apt to intoxicate). | |
| 11. Unthankful | |

“Evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving & being deceived.” 2 Tim. 3:1-7,13

Our response to these sins is seen in II Timothy 3:9-16.

1. Remember, they shall proceed no further. Their folly shall be manifest unto all men. 3:9.
2. The Lord shall deliver us from all trouble. 3:11
3. Follow Paul’s life example:
 - i) Doctrine. vi) Charity.
 - ii) Manner of life. vii) Patience.
 - iii) Purpose. viii) Persecutions.
 - iv) Faith. ix) Afflictions. 3:10,11.
 - v) Longsuffering.
4. All that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution. 3:12.
5. Continue in what you’ve learned and been assured of. 3:14.
6. Hold to verbal inspiration of scripture, which is useful for:
 - i) Doctrine - authoritative teaching.
 - ii) Reproof - pointing out error.
 - iii) Correction - getting us back on track.
 - iv) Instruction in righteousness - keeping us on track. 3:15-17.

144. SEVEN TYPES OF CHRISTIANS II Timothy 4:9-20.

- 1 Demas - has forsaken me having loved this present world. 4:10.
2. Luke - is with me. 4:11.
3. Mark - is profitable to me for the ministry. 4:11.
4. Tychicus - I have sent to Ephesus (obedient worker). 4:12.
5. Alexander the coppersmith - did me much evil, he greatly withstood our words. 4:14.
6. Trophimus - I have left at Miletum sick. 4:20.
7. Jesus Christ - stood with me and strengthened me. 4:17.

145. THREE CHARACTERS IN III JOHN.

- i) GAIUS - walks in the truth. He does faithfully whatever he does. 3,5.
- ii) DIOTREPHES - loves to have the pre-eminence. He receives us not. 9,10.
- iii) DEMETRIUS - has a good report of all men, and of the truth itself. 12.

146. SODOMY IS A SIN, AN ABOMINATION, HATEFUL TO GOD.

- i) Sodom and Gomorrah....giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire. Jude 7.
- ii) God gave them up to vile affections. Romans 1:26-29.

For even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature: (v.26)
Likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that fitting punishment of their error. (v.27)
They did not like to retain God in their knowledge. God gave them over to a reprobate mind. (v.29).
- iii) Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God?...nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind. I Corinthians 6:9.
- iv) Thou shalt not lie with mankind, as with womankind: it is abomination. (Leviticus 18:22). the land itself vomits out her inhabitants. Leviticus 18:25.
- v) If a man also lie with mankind, as he lies with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination: they shall surely be put to death.... Leviticus 20:13.
- vi) There shall be no whore of the daughters of Israel, nor a sodomite of the sons of Israel.....these are abomination unto the Lord thy God. Deuteronomy 23:17,18.

147. DON'T GET A TATTOO on your flesh. Leviticus 19:28.

Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor print any marks on you: I am the Lord.

148. DON'T LOOK AT the NAKEDNESS of a WOMAN.

Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of a woman....it is wickedness. Leviticus 18:17.

This forbids looking at nude women in books, magazines, videos, clubs, or anywhere outside your marriage partner.

149. DON'T CONSULT FAMILIAR SPIRITS or HOROSCOPES.

i) A man or woman that has a familiar spirit, or that is a wizard, shall surely be put to death. Leviticus 20:27.

ii) The soul that turns after people that have familiar spirits, and after wizards, to go a whoring after them, I will even set my face against that soul, and will cut him off from among his people. Leviticus 20:6.

iii) There shall not be found among you any one that:

1. makes his son or daughter to pass through the fire.

2. uses divination - prophecy by interpreting omens.

3. observer of times - attempt to tell the future by observing signs, eg: bird movements, etc

4. enchanter - to cast a spell over. Bind people by magical mutterings.

5. witch - use of magic, sorcery, attempt to control people or events by power given by evil spirits.

6. charmer - objects having occult power, protect by magic.

7. consulter with familiar spirits - one who supposedly consults with the dead, but really communicates with demons.

8. wizard - one who professes to practice magic.

9. necromancer - attempting to contact the dead to get advice or manipulation or see the future. For all that do these things are an abomination to the Lord. Deuteronomy 18:9-14.

iv) When they shall say unto you, seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? Isaiah 8:19.

Manasseh.....worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them.....provoked the Lord to anger. II Chronicles 33:3,6.

v) Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; Jeremiah 10:2.

vi) Take good heed.....lest you lift up your eyes unto heaven, and when you see the sun, the moon, the stars, even all the host of heaven, and should be driven to worship them, and serve them. Deuteronomy 4:19.

150. DON'T CHEAT.

i) Swear unto me here by God that thou wilt not deal falsely with me. Genesis 21:23.

ii) Ye shall not steal, neither deal falsely, neither lie one to another. Leviticus 19:11.

iii) The getting of treasures by a lying tongue is a vanity tossed to and fro of them that seek death. Proverbs 21:6. What you sow, you will reap. If you cheat people, then people will cheat you, and your children will become cheats, suffering the consequences also.

iv) That which is gone out of thy lips thou shalt keep and perform. Deuteronomy 23:23.

151. CHRISTIAN DUTY.

i) What doth the Lord require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God. Micah 6:8.

ii) Now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to **fear** the Lord thy God, to **walk** in all his ways, and to **love** him, and to **serve** the Lord thy God with all thy heart and all thy soul, to **keep** the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes. Deuteronomy 10:12,13.

iii) Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. The second is..Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. Matthew 22:37-39.

- iv) True worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship Him. John 4:23.
- v) Seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church. I Corinthians 14:12

152. CONSCIENCE

Having always a conscience void of offence toward God, and toward men. Acts 24:16.

153. DRESS to HONOUR the LORD.

- 1) The woman shall not wear that which pertains to a man, neither shall a man put on a woman's garment: for all that do so are abomination unto the Lord. Deuteronomy 22:5.
- 2) Women.....adorn themselves with modest apparel, with shamefacedness (reverence) and sobriety; not with broided hair, or gold, or pearls, or costly array. I Timothy 2:9.

154. DON'T BACKSLIDE.

- i) I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast LEFT thy first love. Revelation 2:4.
- ii) Then Jesus said unto the twelve, will ye also go away? John 6:67.
- iii) The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways. Proverbs 14:14.
- iv) No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God. Luke 9:62.
- v) Return, ye backsliding children, and I will heal thy backslidings. Jeremiah 3:22.

155. DON'T BE A FOOL. 40 Foolish Philosophies:

- 1) Because thou hast relied on the king of Syria, and not relied on the Lord thy God....thou hast done foolishly. II Chronicles 16:7.
- 2) The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God. Psalms 14:1.
- 3) Fools because of their transgression, and....iniquities are afflicted. Psalms 107:17.
- 4) Fools despise wisdom and instruction. Proverbs 1:7.
- 5) The prosperity of fools shall destroy them. Proverbs 1:32.
- 6) "A foolish woman...calleth passengers...her guests are in the depths of hell." Prov 9:13,15,18
Don't go to prostitutes. "He that goeth after her....as a fool to the correction of the stocks."
Proverbs 7:22.
- 7) He that hideth hatred with lying lips, and that utters a slander, is a fool. Proverbs 10:18.
- 8) It is as sport to a fool to do mischief. Proverbs 10:23.
- 9) The way of a fool is right in his own eyes. Proverbs 12:15.
- 10) The heart of fools proclaims foolishness. Proverbs 12:23.
Reject teachers who teach false doctrines against the Bible.
The mouth of fools poureth out foolishness. Proverbs 15:2. (JW's)
The mouth of fools feedeth on foolishness. Proverbs 15:14.
This refers to those who go to false churches to feed on false doctrine.
- 11) It is abomination to fools to depart from evil. Proverbs 13:19.
- 12) He that walketh with wise men shall be wise, but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.
Proverbs 13:20.
- 13) Go from the presence of a fool, when thou perceivest not in him the lips of knowledge.
Proverbs 14:7.
- 14) Fools make a mock at sin. Proverbs 14:9.
- 15) A wise man feareth and departeth from evil: but the fool rageth and is confident. Prov. 14:16.
- 16) He that is soon angry dealeth foolishly. Proverbs 14:17.
- 17) He that is hasty of spirit exalteth folly. Proverbs 14:29.
- 18) A fool despises his father's instruction. Proverbs 15:5.
- 19) The eyes of a fool are in the ends of the earth. Proverbs 17:24.
- 20) A fool hath no delight in understanding, but that his heart may discover itself. Proverbs 18:2
- 21) A fool's mouth is his destruction, and his lips are the snare of his soul. Proverbs 18:7.
- 22) He that answers a matter before he heareth it, it is folly and shame unto him. Proverbs 18:13.

- 23) Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child; but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him. Proverbs 22:15.
- 24) A foolish man spendeth it up. Proverbs 21:20.
Don't spend all your money, but save some for later and for God's work of teaching others.
- 25) Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest thou also be like unto him. Proverbs 26:4.
- 26) As a dog returneth to his vomit, so a fool returns to his folly. Proverbs 26:11.
- 27) Though thou should bray a fool in a mortar among wheat with a pestle, yet will not his foolishness depart from him. Proverbs 27:22.
- 28) He that trusts in his own heart, is a fool. Proverbs 28:26.
- 29) A fool utters all his mind. Proverbs 29:11.
- 30) The heart of fools is in the house of mirth (laughter). Fools seek only entertainment. Ecclesiastes 7:4.
- 31) It is better to hear the **rebuke of the wise**, than for a man to hear the **song of fools**. Eccles 7:5
This means that it is better to go to church to hear wise rebuking of sin, than to stay at home or go to a rock concert to listen to rock music.
- 32) As the crackling of thorns under a pot, so is the laughter of the fool. Ecclesiastes 7:6.
- 33) Anger resteth in the bosom of fools. Ecclesiastes 7:9.
- 34) A fool also is full of words. Ecclesiastes 10:14.
- 35) Every one that **hears** these sayings of mine, and **doeth them not**, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand. Matthew 7:26.
- 36) God said unto him, "Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee: then whose shall those things be, which thou hast provided?
So is he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God. Luke 12:20,21.
- 37) Oh fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken. Luke 24:25.
- 38) Wisdom of this world is foolishness with God. eg. evolution, false ideas, etc. I Cor. 3:19.
- 39) Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of faith? Are ye so foolish?
Foolish people say that salvation is by works of the law. Galatians 3:2-3.
- 40) Walk circumspectly, not as fools, but as wise. Redeeming the time for the days are evil. Ephesians 5:15,16.

156. DO UNTO OTHERS.

All things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them; for this is the law and the prophets. Matthew 7:12.

157. DON'T BE A GOSSIP.

- i) He that repeats a matter separates very friends. Proverbs 17:9.
- ii) A talebearer revealeth secrets: but he that is of a faithful spirit concealeth the matter. (11:13)
- iii) The words of a talebearer are as wounds..... Proverbs 18:8.
- iv) Where there is no talebearer the strife ceaseth. Proverbs 26:20.
- v) Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment. Matthew 12:36.
- vi) He that keepeth his mouth keepeth his life: but he that openeth wide his lips shall have destruction. Proverbs 18:3.
- vii) Curse not the rich in thy bedchamber: for a bird of the air shall carry the voice, and that which hath wings shall tell the matter. Ecclesiastes 10:20.

158. DON'T BE GREEDY.

- i) He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house. Proverbs 15:27.
- ii) He that loveth silver shall not be satisfied with silver; nor he that loveth abundance with increase. Ecclesiastes 5:10.
- iii) They are greedy dogs which can never have enough. Isaiah 56:11.
- iv) What is a man profited, if he gain the whole world, and lose his own soul. Matthew 16:26.
- v) The love of money is the root of all evil. I Timothy 6:10.

159. HOW TO BE HAPPY.

- i) Happy is the man whom God correcteth; therefore despise not thou the chastening of the Almighty. Job 5:17.
- ii) As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man; so are children of the youth. Happy is the man that hath his quiver full of them. Psalm 127:4,5.
- iii) Blessed is every one that feareth the Lord; that walketh in his ways....happy shalt thou be, and it shall be well with thee. Psalm 128:1,2.
- iv) Happy is that people whose God is the Lord. Psalm 144:15.
- v) Happy is the man that finds wisdom, and..that gets understanding. Proverbs 3:13.
- vi) He that hath mercy on the poor, happy is he. Proverbs 14:21.
- vii) Whoso trusteth in the Lord, happy is he. Proverbs 16:20.
- viii) Happy is the man that feareth alway. Proverbs 28:14.
- ix) Where there is no vision the people perish, but he that keepeth the law, happy is he. Proverbs 29:18.
- x) If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye do them. John 13:17.
- xi) Happy is he that condemneth not himself in that thing which he alloweth. Romans 14:22.
- xii) Behold, we count them happy which endure. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord: that the Lord is very pitiful, and of tender mercy. James 5:11
- xiii) If ye suffer for righteousness sake, happy are ye. If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye. I Peter 3:14; I Peter 4:14.

160. LEARN TO HATE SIN.

Sin destroys people's lives, bringing untold misery to millions. We must hate sin, but love the sinner. Let us rebuke sin.

Ye that love the Lord, hate evil. Psalm 97:10.

I will set no wicked thing before mine eyes: (eg: Television)

I hate the work of them that turn aside..... Psalm 101:3.

Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way. Psalm 119:104.

I hate vain thoughts: but thy law do I love. Psalm 119:113.

I hate and abhor lying: but thy law do I love. Psalm 119:163.

These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination to him:

1. a proud look
2. a lying tongue
3. hands that shed innocent blood, eg: abortion.
4. a heart that devises wicked imaginations, eg: bad movies.
5. feet that be swift in running to mischief, eg: drug sellers.
6. a false witness that speaks lies, eg: gossips, slanderers.
7. he that soweth discord among the brethren. Proverbs 6:16-19.

God hates people who bear false witness and sow discord. The fear of the Lord is to hate evil: pride, arrogancy, the evil way, and the froward (wicked) mouth, do I hate. Proverbs 8:13.

So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitanes, which thing I hate. Rev. 2:15.

Nicolaitanes is "conquering the laity", a priestly heirarchy as in the Roman Catholic church.

161. THE HEART.

The heart is the central part of man where his affections lie. So much is said about the heart that the reader should study it from Strong's Concordance.

- i) Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with **all thine** heart. Deuteronomy 6:5.
- ii) The Lord hath sought him a man **after his own heart**. I Samuel 13:14.
- iii) Man looks on the outward appearance, but the Lord looks on the heart. I Samuel 16:7.
- iv) Keep thy heart with all diligence, for out of it are the **issues of life**. Proverbs 4:23.
- v) As he thinketh in his heart, so is he. Proverbs 23:7.

- vi) He that **hardeneth** his heart shall fall into mischief. Proverbs 28:14.
- vii) The heart is **deceitful** above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? Jerem7:9
- viii) For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies; these are the things which defile a man. Matthew 15:19,20.
- ix) For with the heart man **believeth** unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation. Romans 10:10.
- x) Let us draw near with a **true** heart. Hebrews 10:22.
- xi) See that ye love one another with a **pure** heart fervently. 1 Peter 1:22.

162. USE OPPORTUNITIES TO SERVE GOD in your CHURCH.

- i) Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest. John 4:35.
- ii) As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith. Galatians 6:10.
- iii) Cast thy bread upon the waters: for thou shalt find it after many days. Ecclesiastes 11:1.
Give a portion to seven, and also to eight: for thou knowest not what evil shall be upon the earth. Ecclesiastes 11:2.
He that observeth the wind will not sow; and he that regardeth the clouds shall not reap. Ecclesiastes 11:4.
In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening withhold not thine hand: for thou knowest not which shall prosper, either this or that, or whether they both shall be alike good. Ecclesiastes 11:6.
- iv) Now is the accepted time; behold now is the day of salvation. II Corinthians 6:2.
We only get 70 or 80 years to serve God. Let us use every day as an opportunity to lay up treasures in heaven.
Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy Lord. Matthew 25:21.

163. STAY AT ONE CHURCH.

In the United States, the largest and most effective churches have Pastors and Pastoral team workers who have been in the one church for an average of 25 years. In the last 2 centuries, 79% of U.S. Pastors would stay in the one church all their life. Those who changed churches were frowned upon.

Many pastors and people leave their church because they disagree with something the Pastor said or does. The Pastor is mostly right, more so than young Christians.

Yet many young Christians think that they know more than their Pastor. When they go to another church they often have a problem in that church, so they leave and go elsewhere. They have taken their problems with them.

They make a habit of running away from problems, rather than working through them. Consider these reasons to commit yourself to one church all your life:

1. Strong, stable churches have strong, stable and committed Pastors and people.
2. Staff turnover in a business is costly in lost production, so it is with people changing churches.
3. If you change churches for no good reason you encourage other people to leave the church. It is a domino effect as other people leave, following your example. You serve Satan's purposes by weakening your church.
4. Things are rarely as good elsewhere. When you join another church, you don't always see all the problems in the new church. You discover them after 6 months. Then what will you do? Will you leave again?
5. It will take you 12 months to get to know everybody in the second church as well as you know everybody in the first church.
6. If you want to change churches to have a better ministry, look at the ministry opportunities in the first church. There are often greater ministry opportunities here that you haven't yet recognized. There are many new people in the first church for you to follow up.

7. The temptation to change churches mostly happens to people in the 20 to 30 year age group. These people have been saved, grown and learned enough to be zealous, but haven't learned enough to appreciate the value of their first church, Pastor and people.
8. If you leave, **you lose your support group**. You have to build trust again in the second church.
9. Your wife and children have established **friendships in your first church**, so why uproot and destabilize them by going elsewhere.
10. If you leave church number 2, the first Pastor won't know, so he won't be in a position to help you. You are then likely to backslide into deep sin, and to drop out of church altogether.
11. Satan wants to get you out of the first church's protection, and **away from the protection** of your Pastor/Shepherd. You may be like a wandering sheep who thinks he knows better than the shepherd.
12. If you leave the first church, you **throw more weight on other church members** as you drop your responsibilities and go elsewhere.
eg: If you let go of the rope in a tug-of war, the rest of your team has to pull harder, and may lose. You leaving a church, often tilts the scale against God's work in a spiritual war.
13. There are at the time of writing no really big Independent Baptist churches in Australia, because people keep leaving them to go elsewhere.
14. **Disloyalty and lack of commitment** in society spills over into the churches. Most churches have a very big turnover rate of uncommitted people. eg: 40% of church attenders leave every 2 years. Is it any wonder that churches fold up, Pastor's give up, and our country is going to the devil. Don't quit, but be loyal to your Church.

164. DON'T LISTEN TO ROCK MUSIC.

Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your hearts to the Lord. Ephesians 5:19. Watch the video: "Rock and Roll: a search for God".

Rock music is not **melody**. Rock music is not praise to the Lord.

5 main themes of rock music are: sex, drugs, rebellion, false religions, devils.

"The Lord **JEHOVAH** is my strength and my song." Isaiah 12:2.

"It is better to hear the **rebuke of the wise**, than for a man to hear the **song of fools**." Eccles. 7:5.

165. INSTRUCTIONS FOR GOVERNMENT.

What does the Bible teach about how to govern a country? The world's most stable countries have a constitution full of Bible principles. Rulers must ask: "What does God think of this law?"

1. He that ruleth over man must be **just, ruling in the fear of God**. II Samuel 23:3.
2. Rulers must **not** be a terror to good works. Rulers must be a **terror to evil works**. Rom. 13:3.
3. Thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating covetousness; place such over them, *to be rulers* of thousands, hundreds, fifties, tens. Ex 18:21
4. Rulers should **praise** those who do **good**. "...do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same." Romans 13:3.
5. Rulers are the ministers or **servants of God**.
6. Rulers must **promote that which is good**, not evil.
"he is the minister of God to thee for good." Romans 13:4.
7. Rulers **must execute criminals** guilty of **murder**.
"...whosoever sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed." Genesis 9:6.
"If I be an offender, or have committed anything worthy of death, I refuse not to die" Act 25:11
"For blood defileth the land: and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it." Numbers 35:33.
8. Rulers must **suitably punish evildoers**.
"he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil." Rom. 13:4.
9. Rulers must charge **taxes, tribute, custom** and duty. "For this cause pay ye tribute also.....render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear for whom fear; honour for whom honour." Romans 13:6,7.
The people must pay taxes, and show fear and honour to politicians, judges, policemen, etc.

10. Be **kind** to the people, **please** them, and **speak good words** to them.
 “If thou be kind to this people, and please them, and speak good words to them, they will be thy servants forever.” II Chronicles 10:7.
11. Rulers must show **mercy** and **truth**. Proverbs 16:6.
 “Let not mercy and truth forsake thee,so shalt thou find **favour** and **good understanding** in the sight of God and man.” Proverbs 3:3,4.
 If a ruler shows mercy to people, upholds truth, shuns and fights corruption, God and man will favour him and show good understanding to him.
12. Rulers must **raise the people’s living standards**. “In the multitude of people is the king’s honour: but in the want of people is the destruction of the prince.” Proverbs 14:28.
13. Rulers must **not oppress the poor**, but **help the poor**. Daniel 4:27.
 “He that oppresses the poor reproaches his Maker.” Proverbs 14:31.
14. Rulers must **promote righteousness**, by passing godly laws, not sinful laws. Proverbs 16:12.
 “Righteousness exalteth a nation: but sin is a reproach to any people.” Proverbs 14:34.
 Governments must not pass laws favouring abortion, homosexuality or occult activities.
 “Thou shalt not lie with mankind as with womankind: it is an abomination....the land itself vomits out her inhabitants.” Leviticus 18:22,25.
15. A King, President or Prime Minister must **write a copy** of the Law, **read** it, **learn** it, and **keep it all his days**. He must **not be lifted up in his pride**.” Deuteronomy 17:18-20.
16. Rulers must have **good, godly advisers**. “Without counsel purposes are disappointed: but in the multitude of counsellors they are established.” Proverbs 15:22.
17. Rulers must first of all **please the Lord**, then peace comes. “When a man’s ways please the Lord, he maketh even his enemies to be at peace with him.” Proverbs 16:7.
18. Rulers must give **righteous, right speeches**.
 “Righteous lips are the delight of kings; and they **love him that speaketh right**.” Prov 16:13.
19. Rulers must be **strong, wise** and **godly**.
 “Be thou strong, and show thyself a man, and keep the charge of the Lord thy God to walk in His ways....that thou may **prosper** in **all** that thou do.” I Kings 2:2,3.
20. Rulers must **pray to God** for a **wise** and **understanding** heart to discern and judge between good and bad. I Kings 3:9.

166. PRECIOUS THINGS.

What should we really give our life to that is precious to God?

1. “The **redemption of their soul** is precious.” Psalm 49:8. Soul-winning.
2. “Precious in the sight of the Lord is the **death of his saints**.” Psalm 116:15. Martyrs.
3. “He that goeth forth and weepeth, bearing precious **seed**.” Psalm 126:6. Sowing the gospel.
4. “How good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in **unity!** It is like the precious ointment....blessing.” Psalm 133:1,2,3. Believers who are united in the truth.
5. “She (**wisdom**) is more precious than rubies.” Proverbs 3:15. Wisdom.
6. “The **lips of knowledge** are a precious jewel.” Proverbs 20:15. Knowledge.
7. “A **good name** is better than precious ointment.” Ecclesiastes 7:1. A good name.
8. “Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones (**souls won to Christ**),” I Corinthians 3:12.
9. “That the **trial of your faith**, being much more precious than of gold that perishes, though it be tried with fire.” I Peter 1:7. Trials and suffering.
10. “Redeemed...with the precious **blood of Christ**.” I Peter 1:18, 19. Christ’s blood.
11. “Behold, I lay in Zion a **chief cornerstone**, elect and precious.” I Peter 2:6.
12. “Unto you therefore which believe **he** is precious.” I Peter 2:7. Jesus Christ.
13. “To them that have obtained like precious **faith**.” II Peter 1:1. Doctrine.
14. “Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious **promises**.” II Peter 1:4.

63. WHAT IT MEANS TO SURRENDER 100% TO JESUS CHRIST

Bible Reading: "I beseech you therefore brethren by the mercies of God, that ye **present your bodies** a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And **be not conformed** to this world; but **be ye transformed** by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, acceptable and perfect will of God." Romans 12:1,2.

If we are to have a great impact on the world for Christ, we must be seriously committed to studying God's Word, learning soul winning by doing it, working hard following up new converts and thinking hard how to serve God more effectively. Apply these principles of surrender to your own life:

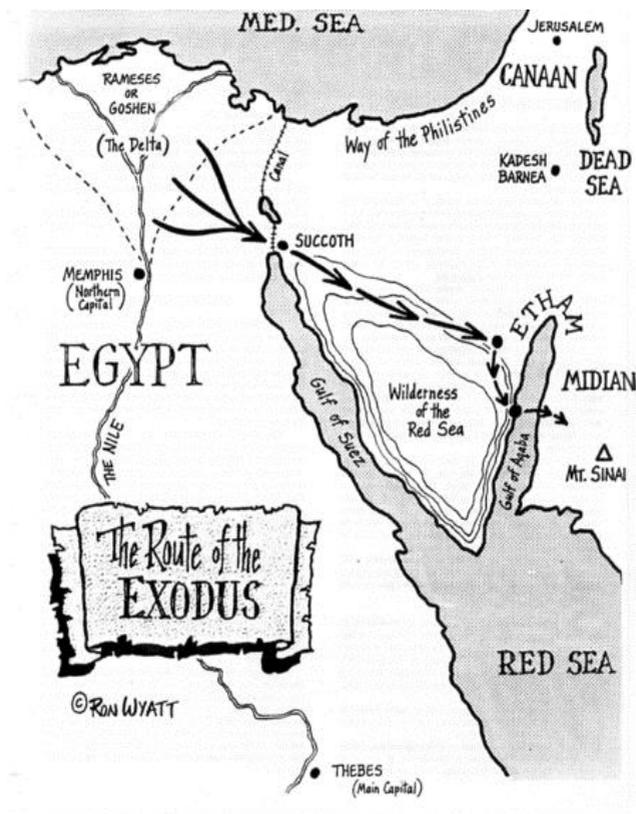
1. Pray daily, using a prayer list (confess, thank, other's needs, my needs).
2. Read, study, and memorize the Bible daily.
3. Tell someone that you have surrendered 100% to Jesus Christ.
4. Ask God to fill you with his Holy Spirit daily.
5. Take opportunities to hand out tracts and ask people, If you were to die tonight, would you be 100% sure of going to heaven?
6. Take opportunities to teach or preach.
7. Ask God to open doors for greater service.
8. Take opportunities to have Bible studies with others.
9. Pray 1 Chronicles 4:10, Matthew 9:38, Isaiah 6:8.
10. Decide on a time to come to a fundamental, soul-winning, Independent Baptist Bible college.
11. Challenge people to be saved and fully surrendered to God.
12. Love and choose the most Godly people to be your close friends.
13. Learn as much as you can about serving God as fast as you can.
14. Keep saying "Yes" to God and opportunities to serve God.
15. Ask God for someone to lead to Christ and teach the Bible to each week.
16. Ask God for the courage and boldness to do God's will.
17. Give me a hatred for sin, and a love for holiness and righteousness.
18. Give me eternal values.
19. Give out tracts to as many people as possible.
20. Ask God to make me a powerful, Spirit-filled, Bible teacher and soul-winner.
21. Ask God for more ideas to win souls and to serve God better.
22. Make me loyal to this church.
23. Keep me humble and make me wise. Give me wisdom.

Lord Jesus Christ, I _____ completely surrender myself to Your perfect will - body, soul and spirit - for now and all eternity for You to do whatever you choose with my life. I am no longer my own property, but Jesus Christ's. I now choose to make only those decisions that will fully glorify God Almighty and that will bring people to Christ, and will teach Your Word. I yield myself to daily prayer and to the serious study of Your Word, and to the winning of souls to Christ, and to planting churches here and anywhere in the world that You may choose. Equip me and prepare me now for Your perfect plan for my life. Make me a hard worker for You. Fill me with Your Holy Spirit daily. Give me a hatred for sin and a love for Jesus Christ and true holiness. Make me a bold servant of Yours. Help me to hear and obey Your voice always. I totally renounce the Devil and all his works. Give me a great love for God, the Bible, and people, and to have eternal values, now and always.

Signed: _____ Date: _____

Witnessed by: _____

64. THE CHRISTIAN LIFE PORTRAYED IN ISRAEL'S JOURNEY



1. Bondage in Egypt, pictures our bondage to the devil. Acts 7:6.
2. Deliverance by the Passover blood, pictures Christ our Passover. I Corinthians 5:7; Exodus 12:13.
3. Leadership of the cloud, pictures the leadership of the Holy Spirit. Exodus 13: 21, 22; 1 Corinthians 10:1.
4. Baptism in the sea, pictures water baptism. I Corinthians 10:2.
5. Marah and Elim, picture bitter experiences in the Christian life followed by spiritually refreshing and uplifting blessings leading to righteousness after suffering. Exodus 15:22-27.
6. The church in the wilderness, pictures joining a local church after salvation. Acts 7:38; Hebrews 4:1,2,11.
7. Victorious leadership of Joshua, pictures entering into the faith-rest life of victory in Christ's resurrection life. Hebrews 4:1-13.

LESSONS: I Corinthians 10:1-18.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. Don't lust. | 5. Don't murmur or complain. |
| 2. No idols. | 6. Let Israel be an example of not to lust. |
| 3. Don't commit fornication. | 7. Don't be proud. |
| 4. Don't tempt Christ. | 8. Temptation has a way of escape. |

65. BE FILLED WITH THE SPIRIT

Ephesians 5:18.

What is the meaning and the conditions of being filled with the Holy Spirit?

The filling of the Holy Spirit is the source of all vital spiritual experience in life.

Every day can be a day of victory through the power of the Holy Spirit.

When you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, the Holy Spirit came to live in you.

The Holy Spirit makes it possible for every Christian to live a fulfilled, joyful life.

I. FACTS ABOUT THE HOLY SPIRIT.

The Holy Spirit is God. II Corinthians 3:17. "The Lord is that Spirit."

The Holy Spirit is a person. Revelation 2:7. "Hear what the Spirit **saith**." John 16:8. See p.929,930.

The Holy Spirit gives us power to live the Christian life. Galatians 5:22,23.

The Holy Spirit gives us power to witness for Christ. Acts 1:8.

The Holy Spirit is more powerful than any other Spirit. I John 4:1-4.

The Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter." John 16:7.

The Holy Spirit authored the Bible. II Peter 1:21.

The Holy Spirit holds back and limits Satan's full power. II Thessalonians 2:7-14.

The Holy Spirit convicts people of sin, of righteousness, and of judgment. John 16:8-11.

The Holy Spirit builds local churches.

The Holy Spirit led, anointed, empowered and raised Jesus Christ. Romans 8:11.

The Holy Spirit has five ministries in believers' lives:

1. He **regenerates** us. John 3:5, "Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit,.."
2. He **baptizes** us. I Corinthians 12:13. "By one Spirit are we all baptized into one body."
3. He **indwells** us. I Corinthians 3:16. "Know ye not that...the Spirit of God dwelleth in you."
4. He **seals** us. II Corinthians 1:22. "sealed us, and given us the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts."
5. He **fills** us. Ephesians 5:18. "be filled with the Spirit."

The Holy Spirit does these things in our lives:

1. Prays for us. Romans 8:26. "the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be"
2. Guides us. Romans 8:14. "For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."
3. Teaches us. I John 2:27. "the same anointing teacheth you of all things..."
4. Empowers us for soul winning. Acts 1:8. "Ye shall receive power after that the Holy Ghost is come.."
5. Imparts the love of Christ to us & through us. Romans 5:5 "love of God is shed abroad in our hearts"
6. Gives us liberty. II Corinthians 3:17. "where the Spirit of the Lord is there is liberty."
7. Conforms us to the image of Christ. II Corinthians 3:18. "changed into the same image by the Spirit"
8. Strengthens our new nature. Ephesians 3:16. "strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man."
9. Reveals Bible truths to us. I Corinthians 2:10. "God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit."
10. Assures us of salvation and service. Romans 8:16. "The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit."
11. Fills our mouth with appropriate things. Mark 13:11. "it is not ye that speak, but the Holy Ghost."
12. The Holy Spirit gives gifts to individual believers:

Seven temporary gifts that ceased by 96 AD:

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Apostles. | 2. Prophets. | 3. Miracles. | 4. Healing. |
| 5. Tongues. | 6. Knowledge. | 7. Interpretation of tongues. | |

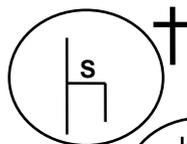
Eleven permanent gifts:

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Wisdom. | 2. Discerning of Spirits. | 3. Giving. |
| 4. Exhortation. | 5. Ministering. | 6. Mercy. |
| 7. Administration. | 8. Faith. | 9. Teaching. |
| 10. Evangelism. | 11. Pastor/Teacher. | |
13. The Holy Spirit gives us the fruit of:
1. **Souls** being saved: "Gather fruit unto life eternal". John 4:35,36.
 2. **Christlikeness**: "The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance." Galatians 5:22,23.

I. THREE TYPES OF PEOPLE.

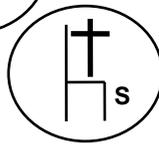
1. **UNSAVED** person without Christ:

- Jesus is outside his life.
- Self is on the throne.
- This person is under the judgment of God.



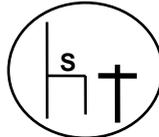
2. **SPIRIT-FILLED** Christian:

- Jesus lives within this person.
- Christ is on the throne, and Christ controls this person's life.
- This Christian now lives to serve Christ.



3. **SELF-CENTRED** Christian - Carnal (I Corinthians 3:1-3):

- Jesus Christ is still his Saviour and is in his life.
- Self is on the throne, controlling his life.
- The Holy Spirit does not have full control of his life.



The self-centred Christian cares more about pleasing himself, than about pleasing God. He is like a baby who wants his own way.

Symptoms of the self-centred Christian are:

Often he:

- does not fully trust God.
- has sinful thoughts.
- disobeys God's Word.
- has little interest in the Bible.
- has a poor prayer life.
- does not help others come to Christ.

He may:

- feel guilty.
- be discouraged and depressed.
- be jealous.
- judge others harshly.
- worry.
- be angry.

Question: Which kind of person are you like?

III. FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT contrasted with spiritual maturity.

Christians are encouraged to "grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ". 2Peter3:18

This is **gradual growth** over time to spiritual maturity.

However, any Christian may be filled with the Holy Spirit by meeting the conditions.

A newborn believer may be filled with the Holy Spirit, but immature.

A mature believer may lack the fullness of the Holy Spirit.

Only Christians **YIELDED TO GOD** are filled with the Holy Spirit.

Here the Holy Spirit works in people in entire freedom from hindrance.

Filling of the Holy Spirit means that the **Holy Spirit** has more of us.

It does not mean that "we have more of the Holy Spirit", because we get all of the Holy Spirit at salvation.

Old Testament filling of the Holy Spirit was temporary for a special purpose.

New Testament filling of the Holy Spirit is the universal experience of all yielded believers.

IV. THE COMMAND TO BE FILLED WITH THE SPIRIT.

"Be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit". Ephesians 5:18.

"Be filled" is 'plerousthe' in the Greek language. It's tense indicates a **continuous command to keep being filled with the Holy Spirit.**

- Filling** of the Holy Spirit is a **moment by moment relationship**, that may be hindered by sin.
- Baptism of the Holy Spirit**, in I Corinthians 12:13, is in the "aorist" tense, meaning an action which takes place **once and for all.**

Regeneration, indwelling, sealing, and baptism of the Holy Spirit are accomplished once and for all at the time of salvation.

Filling (“PLEROO”) of the Holy Spirit is like:

1. **Water filling a glass.**
2. **Wind filling a sail** and therefore carrying a ship along. To be filled with the Holy Spirit is to be moved along in our Christian life by God Himself, as writers of the Bible were “moved along by the Holy Spirit”.
3. **Salt permeating meat** to flavour and preserve it. God wants the Holy Spirit to permeate our lives so that all we say, think and do reflects God’s presence.
4. **Total control.** For example, a person filled with sorrow (John 16:6) is no longer under his control, but is totally under the control of sorrow.

The same is true for one who is filled with fear (Luke 6:11), filled with faith (Acts 6:5) or Satan (Acts 5:3). He is no longer under his own control, but is under the total control of that which dominates him. Being filled with the Holy Spirit detaches us from the desires, standards, aims and fears of the world.

Being filled with the Holy Spirit makes all else that is NOT God’s will of secondary importance.

V. HOW TO BE FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT.

If you **want** God’s Spirit to direct your life and give you power to live:

1. You must **WANT** the Holy Spirit to fill you.

“Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness.” Matthew 5:6.

2. **CONFESS YOUR SINS.** Agree with God that you have sinned. Thank God for forgiving you because of Christ’s death for you. Turn away from your sins and choose to obey God. I John 1:9.

3. **GIVE THE THRONE** of your **LIFE** to **JESUS CHRIST.**

“Yield yourselves to God.” Romans 6:13.

To live the Spirit filled life, you must be willing to let Jesus Christ control everything you do, e.g. your money, free time, work and relationships with family and friends.

4. We are **filled with the Holy Spirit** by **FAITH** as we **ASK FOR IT IN PRAYER.**

Tell God now: “Lord Jesus, I have been controlling my life.

I agree with you that this is sin.

Please take control of my life, as I yield to you.

I want to obey you. Thank you for forgiving me.

I now trust you to fill me with your Holy Spirit.

Thank you for filling me as you promised.”

5. **STAY FILLED.** Every time you take control of your life through sin, disobeying God in thought, word or action, **breathe spiritually:**

i) **EXHALE-** Confess your sin to God (I John 1:9). Thank God for forgiveness. Turn from the sin.

ii) **INHALE-** Ask Jesus Christ to again take the throne of your life (Yield- Romans 6:13). Trust the Holy Spirit to fill you again. Remember the command of Ephesians 5:18, and the promise of I John 5:14,15. **Note:** Breathe spiritually every time the Holy Spirit shows you sin and you will have a joyful and victorious life that honours God. Let the Holy Spirit keep controlling your life.

6. **FILL OURSELVES WITH GOD’S WORD.**

“Let the Word of Christ dwell in you richly.” Colossians 3:16.

God’s thoughts then become our thoughts. Ephesians 5:18,19.

7. **QUENCH NOT the SPIRIT.** I Thessalonians 5:19.

Don’t suppress, stifle, resist or oppose the Holy Spirit’s will.

Don’t say “No” to the Holy Spirit.

When the Holy Spirit leads us to do something, don’t pour water on (i.e. quench) the Holy Spirit. Be yielded to the will of God as the rule of our life. Quench means refusal to follow the evident leading of the Holy Spirit.

Yieldedness to the Holy Spirit includes:

a) Submission to the plain teaching of the Word of God.

b) Obedience to the guidance of the Holy Spirit, e.g. soul-winning, Bible reading, prayer.

c) Acceptance by faith of the acts of God, e.g. suffering. Luke 22:42.

8. GRIEVE NOT the SPIRIT. Ephesians 4:30.

The presence of sin in any form grieves the Holy Spirit and involves:

- i) Quenching the Holy Spirit: refusing to follow the Holy Spirit's leading; resisting Holy Spirit's will
- ii) Loss of fellowship with God.
- iii) Loss of the fruit of the Spirit.

Spiritual darkness then descends on the person.

The Christian is given time for self-judgment and confession of sin. If we neglect this opportunity and persist in sin, God intervenes and chastens the Christian by trials.

9. WALK IN THE SPIRIT, and ye shall not fulfill the lusts of the flesh. Galatians 5:16.

This means to walk daily by the power and presence of the Holy Spirit, who dwells within. It involves:

1. **Reckon** ourselves dead to sin and the **sin** nature.

Christ's death not only atones for the guilt of sin, but Christ's death also has power to deliver us from the bondage of sin. HOW?

- As we know our old man **dead with Christ** (Romans 6:6).
 - As we reckon ourselves **dead to sin's habit pattern** left from the old man, and reckon ourselves alive to Christ (Romans 6:11).
 - As we yield ourselves to God, as those that are alive from the dead (living in resurrection power), and yield our members as instruments of righteousness unto God (Romans 6:13).
2. Love each other as Christ loves us. John 13:34.
 3. Every thought must be brought to the obedience of Christ. II Corinthians 10:5.
 4. We must be longsuffering towards all. I Thessalonians 5:14.
 5. Always follow that which is good. I Thessalonians 5:14,15.
 6. Comfort and edify each other. I Thessalonians 5:11.
 7. Know them (appreciate and respect Pastors) who work to the point of weariness... and be esteeming them most highly with a divine and self-sacrificial love because of their work. I Thessalonians 5:12,13.
 8. Be at peace among yourselves. 5:13.
 9. Warn them that are unruly (i.e. soldiers who desert). 5:14.
 10. Don't render evil for evil to any man, but always follow good. 5:15.
 11. Rejoice evermore. 5:16.
 12. Pray without ceasing. 5:17.
 13. In everything give thanks. 5:18.
 14. Quench not the Spirit, i.e. stop stifling and suppressing the Spirit. 5:19.
 15. Despise not prophesyings, i.e. don't get restless during preaching. 5:20.
 16. Prove (test) all things. 5:21.
 17. Hold fast that which is good. 5:21.
 18. Abstain from all appearance of evil. 5:22.
 19. Pray for us, and each other. 5:25.
 20. Greet all the brethren. 5:26.

Question: Is it wrong to preach that we must DO, WORK or STRIVE?

Answer: No. We "do" as we "yield" constantly to Christ. "Do all things..." Philippians 2:13,14. "Because for the work of Christ he was nigh unto death...to supply your lack of service". Philippians 2:30. "So have I strived to preach the Gospel." Romans 15:20. "Strive for masteries." II Timothy 2:5.

Question: What if I don't feel like going soul-winning and feel condemned and guilty?

Answer: If we think something should be done, check if it is God's will for me at the time, e.g. to sleep, or phone people, or go soul-winning, or Bible Study.

I may not feel like doing God's will. (This is sin and disobedience).

I must confess it to God and regain fellowship.

I then claim the filling of the Holy Spirit.

I then go and do God's will in the power of the Holy Spirit by yielding to God.

VI. RESULTS OF BEING FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT.

As you continue growing in Jesus Christ, God will continue to change your life.

As you let the Holy Spirit lead and control your life every day:

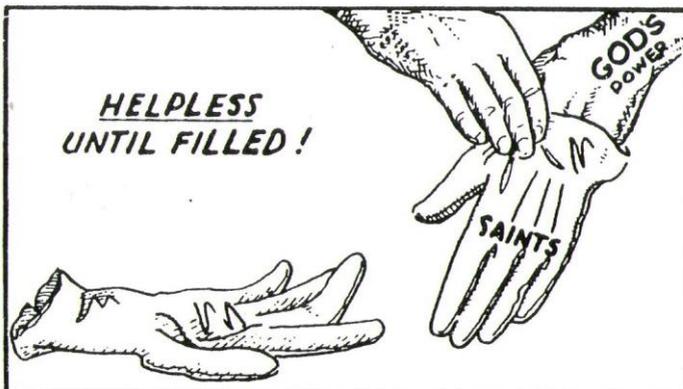
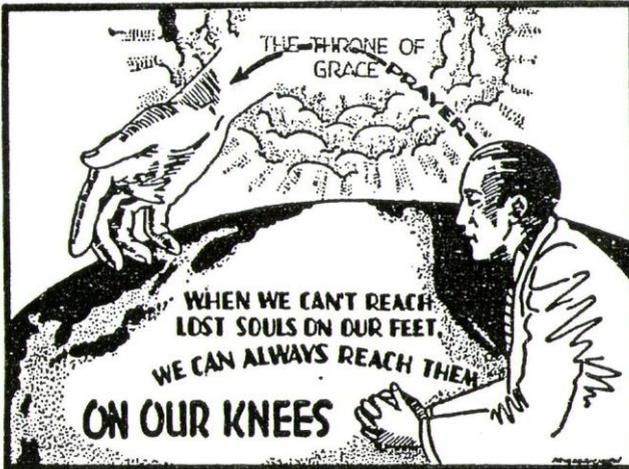
1. Your life will show the fruit of the Spirit more and more. Galatians 5:22,23.
2. Your prayers will be more effective. James 5:16.
3. Your understanding of the Bible will increase. II Timothy 3:16,17.
The teaching of the Holy Spirit warns us against error.
4. You will have greater power to witness. Acts 1:8.
5. You will have God's power to defeat temptation and sin, and to live a life of victory. I Cor. 10:13.
6. You will be guided to apply Bible truths to life's problems. You'll have less self-inflicted trouble.
7. You will worship God in praise and thanksgiving, which is the fruit of a life lived in fellowship with God.

CONCLUSION:

A Christian can only live a Spirit-filled life by faith.

Are you filled with the Holy Spirit?

The following picture used by kind permission from Paul Friederichsen from books called God's Word Made Plain, God's Way Made Easy, God's Truth Made Easy, God's Relief for Burdens, Prophecy Unveiled and Like Them That Dream.



66. PRAYER: COMMUNICATING WITH GOD

"Open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it". Psalm 81:10.

Aim: To convince us of the value and effectiveness of prayer.
To receive what we need through prayer.
To pray daily in the morning.

Introduction:

"Power belongeth unto God." Psalm 62:11. God has many things for us that we can have for the asking.
"Ask, and ye shall receive" Matthew 7:7,11.

The poverty and powerlessness of the average Christian is explained in James 4:2,

"Ye have not because ye ask not." This means that our asking actually has an effect on events.

"The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much." James 5:16.

Prayer is one of the hardest things to do. Why? Because we don't always see instant results. It may seem like a waste of time. It is an act of FAITH, which we cannot perform in the strength of the flesh.

Definition:

Prayer is asking specific things from God and receiving them. Prayer is worship addressed to the Father, in the name of Jesus Christ, and in the power of the Holy Spirit. Prayer is having two-way fellowship with God. It's not just talking **TO** God, but **WITH** God.

God promises to hear our prayers, as He promises in Psalm 102:17.

"He will regard the prayer of the destitute, and not despise their prayer."

Question: Why do so many Christians achieve nothing for God, never see any miracles, seem depressed, bored and get nothing out of their spiritual life?

Answer: Because they rarely pray or read the Bible.

We need to: a) see the value of daily morning prayer to ourselves and others, and
b) discipline ourselves to pray daily.

I. HOW PRAYER BENEFITS OURSELVES AND OTHERS.

Objection 1: The sceptic may ask: "Does daily prayer achieve anything?"

Answer: God says that it does and people's experience proves that it does.

If we were **really convinced** that we really received whatever we prayed for, we would pray more seriously and more often.

Objection 2: Some may say: "I'm OK, I don't need anything".

Answer : Don't you see any needs of others to pray for? Attempt some work for God, seeking to win people to Christ and teach God's Word. Then you'll have much to pray for.

What direct benefits does prayer bring us?

1. **Fullness of Joy.** "Ask and ye shall receive that your joy may be full." John 16:24.
We get what we ask for, and we get fullness of joy. If we don't pray, we are full of self and problems. Prayer fills us with the Holy Spirit and with joy.
2. **We build ourselves and others up by prayer.**
"Building up yourselves in your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost." Jude 20.
3. Prayer brings **relief from burdens.** 'Casting all your care upon him, for he cares for you.' I Peter 5:7
4. Prayer develops a **humble and right attitude in us.** It keeps us from becoming proud. God then **exalts us** in due time. "Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God that he may exalt you in due time." I Peter 5:6.
5. Prayer makes us **sober and alert** to Satan's devices.
"Be sober, be vigilant : because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion walketh about seeking whom he may devour." I Peter 5:8.
6. "The **Peace of God** which passes all understanding shall keep our hearts and minds through Christ Jesus", when we fulfil the conditions of:

- i) Be **careful** for nothing. (don't worry about anything).
 - ii) **Pray** for every need.
 - iii) **Thank** God for all his goodness. Philippians 4:6,7.
7. Prayer will **HEAL OUR LAND** from trouble (II Chronicles 7:13,14) if God's people
- i) Humble themselves.
 - ii) Pray.
 - iii) Seek God's face.
 - iv) Turn from their wicked ways.
- Then God promises to:
- i) Hear from heaven,
 - ii) Forgive our sin,
 - iii) Heal our land.
8. Prayer **summons strong angelic forces** into the spiritual battle on our side to achieve things required and to give us **victory** (Daniel 10:12-14). This prayer gave Daniel **knowledge** of the future history of Israel (Daniel 11).
Therefore, prayer gives us:
- i) **power** in the spiritual, angelic realm, and
 - ii) knowledge as to what to do.
9. We **receive what we ask God for** in Matthew 21:18-22 if we fulfil the conditions of v.22 of:
- i) Asking in prayer, and
 - ii) believing God's will to be done.
10. **Prayer and fasting** can cast powerful demons out of people. Mark 9:24-29.
11. If we draw near to God in prayer, **God will draw near to us**.
"Draw near to God, and he will draw near to you." James 4:8.
12. **Humility and exaltation**. "Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he will **lift you up**."
James 4:10. **Prayer** results in **humbling us** which results in **God lifting us up**.
13. Prayer relieves **affliction** and can **cure sickness**. James 5:13-15.
14. Prayer can turn the **rain off** and **on**. James 5:17,18.
15. God shows us new **great and mighty things** through prayer. Jeremiah 33:3.
16. Prayer strengthens us to **resist temptation**.
"Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation." Matthew 26:41.
17. Prayer **defeats Satan**. "I have prayed for thee that thy faith fail not." Luke 22:31,32.
18. Prayer **saves any sinner**. "God be merciful to me a sinner." Luke 18:13.
"For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." Romans 10:13.
"thou would have **asked** him, and he would have given thee living water." John 4:10.
19. Prayer **restores backsliders**. James 5:16,19,20.
20. Prayer **sends forth labourers**. Matthew 9:36-38.
21. Prayer has power to **give us WISDOM**. James 1:5.
"If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God....it shall be given him."
We can have God's wisdom for every decision in life. God doesn't want us to grope in darkness **or** in our own foolishness. He greatly desires us to know His way and is willing to make it known upon our asking. Oh the joy of knowing and walking in God's ways. We can have all this for the asking.
22. Prayer **reveals our true condition** of weakness, selfishness, sinfulness and powerlessness, Eg:

- i) **Isaiah** was brought face to face with God. He **saw himself** as God saw him and he cried out: "Woe is me for I am undone: because I am a man of unclean lips." (Isaiah 6:5). Then a life of power began for Isaiah and God sent him forth to do a mighty work for the Lord. Isaiah 6:8,9.
- ii) **Moses** met God at the burning bush. He was then emptied of his former self confidence and saw his utter unfitness for the Lord's work. Then the Lord sent him out as a mighty man of power. Exodus 3:10-22. Compare this with Exodus 2:11-15.
- iii) **Job**, after meeting God cried, "I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes." Then the Lord turned the captivity of Job, he received power to intercede for his friends and he bore abundant fruit. (Job 42:5,6,10,12).
- iv) **David** prayed in Psalm 139:23,24 "Search me, O God; and know my heart: try me and know my thoughts. And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting" If we pray this to God, He will search us and reveal "SELF" to us as God sees it. This brings a consequent utter emptying of self, and room will be made for the incoming power of God.
23. Prayer has power to **cleans** our hearts from sin, and **prevent us from sinning**. Psalm 19:12,13; I John 1:9. The Holy Spirit works in our lives in answer to our prayers. In Luke 22:40 the disciples slept when they should have prayed. Christ prayed and triumphed gloriously in his greatest hour of need. We must prepare ourselves for temptation by meeting it with prayer. Many of us are led into defeat and denial of Christ, as Peter was, by sleeping when we ought to be praying.
24. Prayer has power to **govern our tongues**. "The tongue can no man tame." James 3:8. God can and will tame our tongue in answer to believing prayer. Pray: "Set a watch, O Lord before my mouth; keep the door of my lips." Psalm 141:3.
25. Prayer has power to **OPEN OUR EYES** to **BEHOLD WONDROUS THINGS OUT OF GOD'S WORD**. Psalm 119:18. When we look to God to interpret the Bible in earnest, believing prayer,
- difficulties vanish,
 - obscure passages become as clear as day,
 - old familiar passages show new meaning.
- The soul-winning man of prayer can best understand the Bible.
26. Prayer **brings** the **FILLING** and **POWER** of the **Holy Spirit into our lives to make us like Christ** and to serve Him. Proverbs 1:23. When we turn at God's reproof in prayer, He pours out His Spirit to us and makes known His Words to us. "I bow my knees that I might be strengthened with might by the Holy Spirit." We have little power of the Holy Spirit in our life and service because we spend so little time in thought and in prayer. Every precious spiritual blessing is given by God in answer to true prayer.
27. Prayer has power to bring **SALVATION TO OTHERS**. Prayer avails for the salvation of others where every other effort fails. Paul, an enemy of the early church was saved by earnest prayer. Many are led to Christ after some other person has been praying for them. Prayer will bring blessings upon a church. Prayer will settle quarrels. Prayer will resolve misunderstandings. Prayer will root out heresy, and Prayer will bring revival from God. Genuine revivals are brought down by prayer. We need people to devote themselves to calling upon God till He visits this land with a mighty outpouring of His Holy Spirit. Prayer will bring wisdom and power to Gospel Ministers. Paul was a great worker for God, yet he so deeply felt the need of the prayers of God's people, that he asked for them from every church to which he wrote, except the backslidden Galatian church. "They that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength." Isaiah 40:31.

True prayer takes **TIME** and **THOUGHT**, but it is the great timesaver. If we are to know the fullness of power of the Holy Spirit, we must be men and women of prayer.

"Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit for all saints." Ephesians 6:18.

To pray "in the Spirit" is to pray in the name of Christ; it is to pray consistently with God's nature and will. It is **not** praying in tongues as Charismatics think about Romans 8:26,27 because these groanings cannot be uttered, yet tongues are uttered. The Holy Spirit prays with our spirit. To pray rightly is to pray as the Holy Spirit prays, to join our petitions with His petitions and our will with the Holy Spirit's will. It is to line up our will, mind and desires with the Holy Spirit's will, mind and desires.

2. WHAT SHOULD WE PRAY FOR?

God commands us to pray for many things. To stop our thoughts from wandering in prayer, a list of these divine prayer requests may be made:

- a) **ADORATION.** The Lord's or Disciples' prayer should be taught to everybody from a child.
"Our Father which art in heaven
Hallowed be Thy Name
Thy Kingdom come
Thy will be done, as in heaven, so in earth.
Give us day by day our daily bread
Forgive us our sins, for we also forgive everyone
that is indebted to us.
Lead us not into temptation,
but deliver us from evil.
For thine is the kingdom, and the power and the glory forever. Amen." Matthew 6:9-15.
- b) **CONFESSION.** "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness". I John 1:9.
Lord, I forgive those who have wronged me.
Lord, I confess my sins of _____.
- c) **THANKS and PRAISE.** "In everything give thanks." I Thessalonians 5:18.
Thank you Lord for my family _____
my Church, my Pastor _____
my friends _____
for supplying my needs of food, clothing, shelter, for a free country to serve you, for the Bible, for fellow workers, for a job, health, for Your love.
- d) **SUPPLICATION (humbly asking).**
a) **Others Needs** (Ephesians 3:14-16).
Help my spouse and I to be the best example of Christian marriage to everybody and to be greatly used to serve You. Help us to have a really great impact on this world for Christ.
1. Give Pastor _____ encouragement, wisdom and strength to guide and teach the church the best way. Hebrews 13:17,18.
Give these missionaries Pastors hearts, make them preach the gospel of Christ to many people, let them do the work of an evangelist, see many saved, many disciples and many churches started. Give them many **good**, faithful workers to help them. Keep Satan bound and out of Churches, Bible Colleges and out of all ministries. Let the Word of God have free course and be glorified. Let us and them be delivered from unreasonable and wicked men. II Thessalonians 3:1.
List the **missionaries** names:

2. **Pray for people in your church.**

3. For kings, Prime Ministers, Presidents and for all in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.
Prime Minister: _____,
Premier: _____, I Timothy 2:1,2.
4. For all men to be saved, and come to the knowledge of the truth. I Timothy 2:4.
5. Lord "The harvest truly is plenteous, but the labourers are few.
I pray therefore the Lord of the harvest, that you will send forth labourers into the harvest."
Matthew 9:36 -38. "Here I am, send me." Isaiah 6:8.
6. Lord I pray for the peace of Jerusalem. Psalm 122:6. Even so come, Lord Jesus. Rev. 22:20.
7. I pray for those who despitefully use me and persecute me. Matthew 5:44.

b) My Needs.

1. Lord, I need You to give me **your wisdom to:**
 - decide right in all situations.
 - guide your people in right and wise decisions.
 - win souls continually and bring them to church.
 - defeat Satan's temptations.
 - teach many Christians, so they can teach others also.
 - build churches in Australia and overseas.
 - study and know Your Word very well.
 - visit and do soul winning.
 - organise many new churches like Paul.
 - be powerfully effective in prayer and understanding prayer.
 - teach my wife and children to be powerful servants of God. James 1:5.
2. "The Lord God of your fathers make me 1,000 times as many as I am and bless me as you have promised me." Deuteronomy 1:11.
3. "Oh that you would bless me indeed and enlarge my coast, and that thine hand might be with me, and that thou would keep me from evil that it may not grieve me. And God granted him (Jabez) that which he requested." I Chronicles 4:10.
4. Lord give me many mighty men and women as went with David and Saul. I Samuel 10:26.
"Give me a band of men and women whose hearts you have touched to fulfil **all** your will."
5. Lord, "make me a man after your own heart, who shall fulfil all your will." Acts 13:22.
6. Let us see our spiritual poverty, to stay humble all our days, and to tremble at Your Word.
"But to this man will I look, even to him that is poor, and of a contrite spirit and trembles at my word." Isaiah 66:2.
7. Lord, we pray for you to revive our hearts and bring a revival to Australia:
Lord we, a) Humble ourselves now, b) Pray to You,
c) Seek Your face, d) Turn from our wicked ways.
Please Lord, a) Hear from heaven, b) Forgive our sin c) Heal our land.
Revive me, our church and Australia. II Chronicles 7:14.
8. Lord relieve the suffering of believers being persecuted for their faith in You. Hebrews 13:3

9. Lord, let us be:
 - a) Filled with the knowledge of Your will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding.
 - b) Walking worthy of the Lord.
 - c) Be fruitful in every good work.
 - d) Increasing in the knowledge of God.
 - e) Strengthened with all might ... to all patience and long suffering with joy. Col. 1:9-12.
 - f) Thankful to You.
10. Lord, we pray that:
 - a) You would count us worthy of this calling.
 - b) Fulfil all the good pleasure of your goodness.
 - c) Fulfil the work of faith with power.
 - d) The name of Christ might be glorified in us. II Thessalonians 1:11,12.
11. Lord, we pray that:
 - a) Our love may **abound** more and more in all **judgment**.
 - b) We may **approve things** that are **excellent**.
 - c) We may be **sincere** and **without offence** until the day of Christ.
 - d) We may be **filled with the fruits of righteousness**. Philippians 1:9-11.
12. Lord, turn all Muslim, Hindu, Roman Catholic people to be truly saved by faith in Christ.
13. Lord give us greater ability to spread your Gospel all over the world.
14. Lord fill me with your Holy Spirit today and produce the fruit of the Spirit in me today.
15. Judge and remove all those who preach a false Gospel.
16. Let our church grow and our ministry win many to Christ. Give our work for you good success. Strengthen us in times of trouble. Pour out your mercy and grace upon us.
17. Lord give us _____ souls saved this year, and _____ disciplined this year. Let us see _____ Christians become soul winners this year.
18. "Create in me a clean heart, O God, and renew a right spirit within me." Psalm 51:10. Keep me possessing the joy of my salvation. Let me be disciplined and efficient in my time and service to you. Don't let me put things off. Give me a field that I can fully exploit for you. Through us, raise up people who are **WHOLEHEARTED, SINGLE MINDED** and with a **FIGHTING SPIRIT**.

Lord teach me to praise, thank and trust you in all things. Prepare me Lord for what you have prepared for me. Make me a hard worker for you in soul winning. Make me a fisher of men. Bring us to walk worthy of you Lord in all things. Show us successful ways of quickly starting and building churches in Australia and overseas. Keep me from making serious mistakes. Help our church to grow to 10,000 in attendance.

3. WHERE TO PRAY.

- a) Everywhere.
- b) In our bedroom. Matthew 6:6.
- c) In church. "Two men went up to the Temple to pray." Luke 18:10.

4. WHEN TO PRAY.

- a) **Daily**. "Be merciful unto me for I cry unto thee **daily**." Psalm 86:3.
- b) **Evening, morning** and **noon**, will I pray and cry aloud and he shall hear my voice. Psalm 55:17; Daniel prayed 3 times a day. Daniel 6:10.
- c) **Morning**. "My voice shalt thou hear in the morning, O Lord." Psalm 5:3.
- d) **Always**. "Pray without ceasing" IThess5:17; Men ought always to pray & not to faint. Luke18:1
- e) **Mealtimes**. John 6:11.

5. DIRECTION OF PRAYER.

- a) Pray - **TO** the Father "Our Father which art in heaven."
- **IN THE NAME OF JESUS** "Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name." John 16:24.
- **THROUGH** the Holy Spirit. Romans 8:15,16,26,27.
- b) We pray to Jesus as Stephen did at his death.
"Lord Jesus, receive my spirit." Acts 7:59; I Corinthians 1:2.
- c) We must **not pray to Mary** or to **dead believers**. "There shall not be found among you any one that is a necromancer." (one who contacts the dead). Deuteronomy 18:11.

6. REASONS FOR PRAYER.

- a) God **commands** us to. I Timothy 2:8; I Thessalonians 5:17.
- b) **Christ's** example. I Peter 2:21-23.
- c) **Early churches'** example. Acts 2:42.
- d) It is **God's chosen method** for:
 - Defeating the devil. Luke 22:31,32.
 - Saving the sinner. Luke 18:13.
 - Restoring the backslider. James 5:16.
 - Strengthening the saint. Jude 20.
 - Sending out labourers. Matthew 9:38.
 - Curing the sick. James 5:13-15.
 - Achieving the impossible. James 5:17,18.
 - Receiving good things. Psalm 102:17.
 - Getting wisdom. James 1:5.
 - Getting peace. Philippians 4:6,7.
 - Keeping us from sin. Matthew 26:41.
 - Glorifying God's name. Revelation 5:8.
 - Revealing the will of God. Luke 11:9,10.
- e) It is our **Christian duty**.
- f) Because God **hears** and **answers** our prayers.
- g) Because we **gain access to God's throne**. Hebrews 4:16.
- h) **Paul's** example.
- i) We are **blessed by God** and **filled with His Holy Spirit** by prayer.
- j) We **achieve much more** than by not praying.
- k) It is a **cure for depression, fear, worry and trouble**.

7. HINDRANCES TO PRAYER.

If your prayer life seems difficult, it may be because of one of these reasons. See which reasons apply to you and confess the cause to God.

- a) **Asking amiss** or wrongly to serve our selfish lusts. James 4:1-3.
- b) **Loving** the world. James 4:4.
- c) **Pride**. James 4:6; Job 35:12,13.
- d) **Unconfessed sin**. James 4:8; Proverbs 28:13; Psalms 66:18.
- e) Not considering **God's will** in your plans. James 4:13-15.
- f) **Marital discord**. I Peter 3:7. Every husband must honour his wife.
- g) **Laziness**, not bothering to ask. James 4:2.
- h) **Lack of Faith**. Not seeing the importance of prayer. Doubting if prayer will change things. Not seeing prayer as a means of being blessed. Doubt, unbelief. James 1:5,6.
- i) **Not keeping God's commandments** and not doing those things that are pleasing in God's sight. I John 3:22.
- j) **Insincerity**. Matthew 6:5; Deuteronomy 4:29.
- k) **Robbing God**. Malachi 3:8-10.
- l) **Refusing to submit to Bible teaching**. Zechariah 7:12,13; Proverbs 28:9.
- m) **Refusing to forgive** or to be forgiven. Matthew 6:12,14,15.

- n) **Refusing to help the poor and needy.** Proverbs 21:13.
- o) **Satanic activity.** God, for a short time may allow satanic interference to block the believer's prayer line, to test and to purify us. Daniel 10:10-13.
- p) **Disobedience.** Micah 3:4; Deuteronomy 3:26.
- q) **Not abiding in Christ.** John 15:7.
- r) **Sleepiness** hinders prayer. Matthew 26:40-44.
- s) **Giving up, losing heart.** Luke 18:1.
- t) **Vain repetition.** Matthew 6:7.
- u) **Praying contrary to God's will.** I John 5:14.
- v) **Wickedness** hinders prayer. Proverbs 15:8,29.

8. QUALIFICATIONS OF PRAYER. Prayer should be:

- a) **Humble.** Psalms 10:17. "Thou hast heard the desire of the humble."
- b) **Bold.** Hebrews 4:15,16. "come boldly to the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy,..."
- c) **In Faith.** Hebrews 11:6; James 1:6,7. "without faith it is impossible to please him."
- d) **Sincere.** Psalm 145:18."The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon him,...in truth."
- e) **Simple.** Matthew 6:7. "Use not vain repetitions."
- f) **Persistent.** Luke 18:1-7. "men ought always to pray, and not to faint."
- g) **Definite.** Psalm 27:4. Too often our prayers are so vague and indefinite, that they are meaningless, and provide no basis for divine action. eg. "Lord save that soul nearest to hell."
- h) **Biblical,** in accord with the Word of God. I John 5:14,15. "Ask any thing according to his will."

9. EXAMPLES OF ANSWERED PRAYERS.

We are greatly encouraged by those who persevered in prayer and received great results.

- a) The apostles gave themselves to prayer and to the ministry of the Word. Acts 6:2-4.
- b) Cornelius gave money and prayed. Acts 10:1-6,31,44. An angel tells Cornelius that his prayers have been heard and that he should go to Peter to see how to be saved.
- c) The Jerusalem church prayed for God to deliver Peter from jail. Peter was released. Acts 12:5-16
- d) Israel prayed to be delivered from slavery in Egypt and God raised up Moses to deliver them. Exodus 3:1-8.
- e) Hezekiah and Isaiah prayed for God to spare Jerusalem from the Assyrian king's army. That night the angel of the Lord went out and killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers. Isaiah 36,37.
- f) Hannah who was barren, asked God for baby Samuel and bore 7 children. I Samuel 1:1-28.
- g) Abraham's servant prayed for a bride for Isaac and found Rebekkah. Genesis 24:12-14.
- h) Elisha prayed to open his servant's eyes to see the Lord's army surrounding the city. He saw the mountain full of horses and chariots of fire. II Kings 6:13-23.

Conclusion. Let us be convinced of the value of prayer and pray specifically, fervently, persistently and daily as we live and work for Jesus Christ.



67. GROW IN GRACE

“But grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.” II Peter 3:18.

Aim: To give some general instructions to young Christians as to how to grow in grace, be strong in the Lord and to avoid backsliding.

Introduction:

To grow as a Christian one must:

- a) Methodically - Study and obey the Bible, Pray, Obey God, attend Church, and Do Soul Winning.
- b) Cultivate Spiritual Graces and a quality Christlike lifestyle.

Let us see some things that the Holy Spirit wants to cultivate in our lives and check if we are listening to Him and acting on His voice.

I. “GROWING IN GRACE” DEFINED

Grace is used in two senses: a) in GOD - it is undeserved favour.
b) in MEN - it is holiness.

Therefore, to grow in grace is to grow in holiness, to be more like God, to govern our conduct more and more by the same principles that God does.

God wants to glorify Himself and to fill the Universe with holiness and happiness.

Growing in grace is not gradually giving up sin. We must, at salvation, give up sin instantly and wholly.

II. HOW TO GROW IN GRACE

- 1) Be saved and love Jesus Christ with all your heart, soul, mind and strength. (Matthew 22:35-40).
- 2) Repent of all known sin.
- 3) Make a full surrender and consecration to God of everything we are, have, desire and love.
- 4) An intense desire to learn more of God’s Ways through the Holy Spirit’s leading.
- 5) Keep up with our convictions of duty and with our growing knowledge of God’s will. (John 14:15).
- 6) An increasing and confident faith in God’s character so that we’ll trust him in the dark as well as in the light, whether we understand why or why not He deals such with us. (John 10:27 like sheep).
- 7) A deeper personal acquaintance with Christ. (John 14:21).
Christ has promised to manifest himself personally to those who love and obey him.
- 8) Watch against besetting sins such as levity (foolishness). Hebrews 12:1.
If you yield to temptation once, its easier to yield again.
- 9) Censoriousness. - Young Christians begin full of zeal and are soon amazed at the coldness and apathy of many churches and Christians. They are likely to say critical things against them.
Be careful about what you say to and about other Christians, even though it may be true.
- 10) Pride - thinking that you are greater than other people.
“Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.” I Corinthians 10:12.
- 11) Anger and Temper with workmates, neighbours, the government or events.
“Let all bitterness, wrath, anger, clamour and evil speaking be put away...” Ephesians. 4:31.
- 12) Selfishness - don’t act from selfish motives. Think of what God wants first, then put others second.
- 13) Sloth and Laziness - How many young Christians stop and decline by laziness, as if there was no work to do. Proverbs 6:6-11.
- 14) Envy - If you see others going ahead of you in prosperity, in influence, in talents and in the Lord’s work, examine your feelings and see if it pleases you. If the sight gives you pain, beware!
- 15) Impure Thoughts. Make a covenant with your eyes, ears and all your senses, or they’ll prove to be the inlet of temptation and sin. If you find yourself in danger, turn your thoughts away instantly and think of something else, such as Scripture, people’s needs, or Christ’s example.
- 16) Maintain great firmness of purpose and decision of character to be undeviating in the performance of secret duties (prayer and Bible study) and in obeying the truth no matter what others may say or think (I Corinthians 15:58).
- 17) Meekness is patience under injuries. When you are reviled, learn not to revile again. If persecuted, don’t threaten back. I Peter 2:21-23.

III. PROOF OF GROWTH IN GRACE

What will a Christian be like when he is growing in grace?

- 1) He does things, less because he feels like it, and more because it is right.
For example, “I don’t feel like praying” - do it anyhow; “I don’t feel like church” - do it anyhow.
- 2) More love to God resulting in a growing veneration for all the commands of God.
“Lord what will thou have me to do?” Acts 9:6.
“The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.” Proverbs 9:10.
- 3) More love to men. As young Christians grow in Godliness, they feel more and more a desire that all the world should be converted to God. They have more heart-breaking agony at the dreadful state of men in their sins. I Samuel 17:45-47.
- 4) They have greater humility and self abasement. James 4:10; I Peter 5:5,6; Isaiah 66:2.
- 5) An increased abhorrence of sin, feeling less disposed to compromise with sin.
“Ye that love the Lord hate evil.” Psalm 97:10.
- 6) Less love for the world. I John 2:15,17.
He seeks wealth and honour only to glorify God, and of doing good to men.
He is less desirous of worldly company and carnal conversation. He will love to read the most spiritual books and will love the company and conversation of the most spiritual Christians.
He will love attending the most pungent, and searching spiritual preaching.
- 7) An increased delight in fellowship with saints. I John 3:14.
- 8) He finds it more easy to exercise a forgiving spirit and to pray for his enemies. He easily gets over injuries. “Be ye kind one to another, tender-hearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ’s sake hath forgiven you.” Ephesians 4:32.
- 9) He becomes more ready to bestow property, being willing to give all that is in his power to extend Christ’s Kingdom. Luke 6:38.
- 10) His time, talents, property and life itself have value only in relation to Christ’s kingdom and eternity. Matthew 6:19-21. He lives by eternal values.
- 11) He is more willing to confess faults to men. Matthew 5:23,24.
- 12) He regards less and less either the good or bad opinions of men and is less influenced by what “other people say” and popular opinion.
- 13) He will expect frequent and agonising conflicts with Satan.
Spiritual Christians are doing Satan a great injury and therefore he sets himself against them.
“Be strong in the Lord and in the power of His Might.” Ephesians 6:10.
- 14) A growing peacefulness under sudden and crushing disasters.
“Love, joy, peace” Galatians 5:22. “He is our peace”. Ephesians 2:14.
- 15) A growing realization and confidence in the wisdom, goodness and providence of God.
He develops a state of mind that sees God’s hand in everything. Romans 8:28.
- 16) A growing jealousy for:-
 - a) the honour of God.
 - b) the purity and honour of His Church.
 - c) the rights of God and all men. “Is there not a cause?” 1 Samuel 17:29.

IV. EVIDENCES OF BACKSLIDING

How do you detect backsliding in yourself or another?

1. Being wary of giving money or time to promote the kingdom of Christ.
2. Stops coming to church.
3. Reluctant to converse on spiritual matters. Young Christians delight to discuss spiritual issues.
If you leave your first love, watch out.
4. Less interest in private and public prayer, Bible reading and drawing nearer to God.
5. More delight in public meetings than in secret communion with God.
6. If you find yourself growing very much critical and afraid of the measures that good men pursue (and that God blesses) for promoting revivals, you are backsliding.
For example, people (Christians?) come here and say that we are too pushy, yet they never, ever lead a person to Christ. They are usually backsliders from a backslidden church.

V. HOW TO ESCAPE FROM BACKSLIDING

Backsliding is very hard to recover from because you resist what other Christians say and you avoid meeting with other Christians. The solution to recover from backsliding is:

1. ADMIT that you are backsliding.
2. APPLY and take God's REMEDY for your sin.
3. FIND your CAUSE of backsliding and give it up. God will hold you at arms-length and will frown upon you when you pray unless you search out & remove the cause of backsliding. Give up your idols.
4. Apply to the Lord Jesus Christ for PARDON and peace with God, as a guilty sinner. Confess your sins fully, forsake them, return to God, and He will have mercy on you. He will heal your backslidings & will remember your iniquities no more. Backsliding is why revivals cease.

VI. SOME THINGS WHICH SHOULD BE TAUGHT TO YOUNG CHRISTIANS

Aim: To know how to help and teach young Christians. "Feed my lambs." John 21:15.

Introduction: Why do Christians backslide? Because they aren't being fed or taught Bible doctrine and are not applying it to their lives. **What ought to be taught?**

TOPICS:

1. Basics such as "What all Christians must know". p.251.
2. Soul Winning - How to lead people to Christ. p.93
3. Apologetics - Answers to common objections met in Soul Winning. p.134.
4. How we know the Bible is true. p.1-18.
5. Second Coming of Christ. p.184.
6. Fundamentals of Bible Doctrine. p.141.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

1. Attending Church is Raising a Standard against the Devil.

"When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the Lord shall raise up a standard against him." Isaiah 59:19.

Today as the tide of evil increases, there is a greater than ever need for God's people to pull together by joining a sound church immediately they are saved. DON'T WAIT!

"Let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works:

Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another and so much the more as ye see the day approaching." Hebrews 10:24,25.

If you set out in your Christian life by waiting, most likely you will always be waiting and never do anything to much purpose. Never wait when God has pointed out your duty.

"The church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth". 1 Timothy 3:15.

Usually a young Christian's character through life is moulded according to how they are dealt with when first converted. When they are first brought in, their minds are soft and tender, and easily yield to the truth. They may then be taught easily. If you don't disciple them immediately, they'll be harder to disciple later on.

2. However dull your feelings may be, **if duty calls, DO IT.**

Distinguish between emotion and principle in your Christian thinking.

Do it because it is right. Don't wait until you feel like it.

KNOW, RECKON, and YIELD your members to God. Romans 6:6,11,13.

3. Teach them to **cultivate a tender conscience.** 1 Timothy 1:5,19. Don't resist your conscience.

When they see a "Thus saith the Lord", they'll be always ready to obey it, come what may.

4. **"YE ARE NOT YOUR OWN"**. 1 Corinthians 6:19,20. Know that all your time, property, influence, faculties, body and soul belong to God. When you submitted to God, you made a full surrender of all to Him. If you don't do this, don't call yourself a Christian, because the very idea of a Christian is to renounce self, and become entirely consecrated to God.

"Purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works." Titus 2:14.

5. **Pray without ceasing.** 1 Thessalonians 5:17.

Keep a watch over your minds and be all the time in a prayerful spirit. Pray always or you'll get far from God. When your conscience presses you, go to Christ, confess your sin fully, and pour your heart out to God. The Holy Spirit will lead you in prayer and the dark clouds of guilt will go away.

6. **Don't adopt a false standard** in your Christian life. Don't keep older Christians as a standard of holy living, but always look at Christ as your model. "Looking unto Jesus." Hebrews 12:2. Aim at being HOLY and don't be satisfied until you are as perfect as God.
7. **Don't aim at comfort**, but at usefulness in your Christian life.
Don't spend your time in seeking to be happy or on a spiritual high, but spend time in agonizing prayer for sinners and in pulling people out of the fire. Consider how the apostles travailed for souls and laboured in weariness, painfulness and in death to save sinners. Don't calculate on a life of joy and triumph. You may be called on to go through fiery trials.
 - a) Seek to go forward and be useful, not happy;
 - b) Talk about duty, not comfort;
 - c) Talk about triumph, not flights of joy;
 - d) Seek for righteousness, not entertainment; and
 - e) Seek how to know the will of God and do it. You'll be happy enough in heaven.
8. You must **learn to say NO to wrong activities of old friends**. If you go with them once, it will be easier to go with them again, then you'll start to backslide. Learn to resist the beginnings of temptation. "Be sober, be vigilant because your adversary the devil as a roaring lion" I Peter 5:8,9.
9. **Be Strictly Honest**. "Let us walk honest, as in the day." Roman 13:13.
Be straight in everything, so that God's pure eyes can see that your mind is perfectly upright. "Whatsoever things are honest." Phillippians 4:8. "Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles, that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they shall behold, glorify God in the day of visitation." I Peter 2:12.
10. Christianity is not high flights of feeling, but **obedience to God** from the heart, and voluntary submission to his will.
11. Christianity is **SELF DENIAL**. Mark 8:34-37; Matthew 16:27.
 - a) Christ exercised Self Denial to save sinners.
 - b) The Father exercised Self Denial in giving His Son and in sparing us.
 - c) The Holy Spirit exercises Self Denial in striving with unholy men to bring us to God.
 - d) Angels exercise Self Denial in watching over the world.
 - e) The Apostles exercised Self Denial in planting Christianity among many nations.Is it too much for us to exercise self-denial daily for Christ, the gospel and to build this church?
12. Be **temperate** (self controlled) in all things.
13. Show just as much Christianity, holiness and sincerity in all your **daily activities** as on Sunday.
14. **Aim at being perfect**.
Live entirely for God and obey all His Commandments. Sin should be the exception to our lives. Be as holy as God, and seek not to sin at all. "Be ye holy, for I am holy." I Peter 1:16.
15. **Exhibit your light** to the world or it will go out.
God won't go to the trouble of keeping a light burning that is hidden. You'll backslide. God may put you on the shelf. (1 Corinthians 9:27). "Let your light so shine before men that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven." Matthew 5:16.
16. **They should be taught HOW to win souls for Christ**. Live for this as the great purpose of life. The reason why we are left in the world is to pull sinners out of the fire. If you don't do this you are better off dead. Teach this immediately they are saved. "**Woe** is unto me, if I preach not the Gospel." 1 Corinthians 9:16.

VII. SOME EVILS OF DEFECTIVE INSTRUCTION

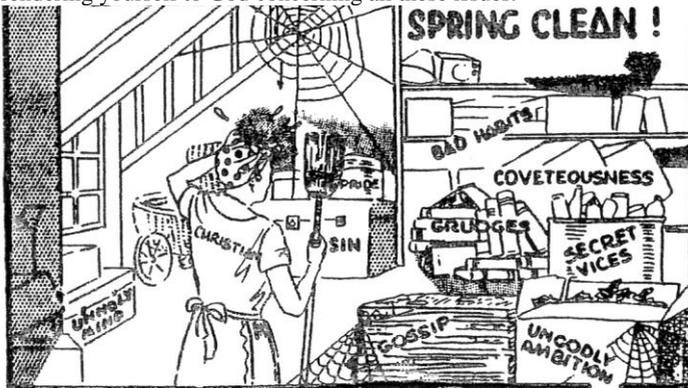
1. If not fully taught, they'll never be fully grounded in right principles.
2. If rightly taught, they'll take the right side on all great issues that come to the church. You can depend on them and the church will be stronger.
3. If they are not well taught, they will inevitably backslide and disgrace Christ.

VIII. HOW YOUNG CHRISTIANS SHOULD BE TREATED BY THE CHURCH

1. Older Christians ought to greatly help and teach younger Christians. If you don't teach them, they'll never grow.
2. Put young Christians to work in the church. Keep them looking to God. We are saved to serve.
3. They should be watched over by the church and warned of their dangers.
Young Christians don't know the dangers that surround them, such as:
 - a) the devices of Satan.
 - b) the temptations of the world.
 - c) the power of their own passions and faults.If not properly watched and warned, they will run right into danger.
4. Be tender in reproofing them. Don't be severe. They are easily thrown down. They are like a child starting to walk.

CONCLUSION and CHALLENGE

1. If churches had properly trained young Christians, the world would have been converted long ago.
2. They should be trained to work for Christ, just as carefully as young soldiers are trained for war.
3. Train young Christians to be intelligent, single hearted, self-denying, working Christians.
Train them: - how to pray,
 - how to talk to people about their souls,
 - how to win souls to Christ, and
 - how to disciple people.
4. If you want to get involved training someone, let me know.
Pray now surrendering yourself to God concerning all these issues.



68. TOOLS TO CONQUER WORRY, FEAR and DEPRESSION

Bible Reading: Psalm 34, 37 and 139.

Introduction: We all go through trouble and suffering in this life, yet we can control our reaction to it and gain victory. "With God, nothing shall be impossible." Luke 1:37.

God can cure our worries and depression only if we come to Him for comfort. The Bible is the book of comfort for us.

Question 1: Why do people get discouraged, depressed and worried?

Answer: By letting circumstances and events produce **fear** in their mind, rather than by keeping their **minds fixed** on the Lord. Isaiah 26:3 promises:

"Thou wilt keep him in **perfect peace**, whose **mind is stayed on Thee**: because **he trusteth** in thee."

Question 2: What TOOLS can we use from the Bible to relieve worry?

TOOL 1: GET RIGHT WITH GOD and MAN.

If my fear or worry are due to **sins** that I have committed, **confess** it to God, and **make it right** with the one wronged. "Be ye kind one to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake has forgiven you." Ephesians 4:32.

TOOL 2: DRAW NEAR TO GOD.

"Draw near to God and he will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands ye sinners. Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He shall **LIFT** you up." James 4:8,10.

As we draw near to God, **He lifts us up**. I Peter 5:5-10.

TOOL 3: CAST ALL YOUR CARE UPON HIM.

"Casting all your care upon Him for he careth for you." I Peter 5:7.

"Cast thy burden upon the Lord, and He shall sustain thee: he shall never suffer the righteous to be moved." Psalm 55:22.

TOOL 4: LEARN TO TRUST IN THE LORD'S GOODNESS.

Learn to **Trust** in the Lord's goodness and power to always do what is right for us.

"What time I am afraid, I will **trust in thee**." Psalm 56:3.

"It is better to **trust in the Lord** than to put confidence in man." Psalm 118:8.

"My God shall supply all your need." Philippians 4:19.

"Trust ye not in a friend, **put not** confidence in a **guide**." Micah 7:5.

"Whoso **trusts** in the **Lord**, **happy** is he." Proverbs 16:20.

"Trust in the Lord with all thine heart....." Proverbs 3:5,6.

TOOL 5: THANK THE LORD FOR PAST BLESSINGS.

Thank the Lord for **past blessings** and use this to build your trust that your current problem will be solved. "It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord, and to sing praises to thy name." Psalm 92:1.

"Enter his gates with thanksgiving and into his courts with praise....be **thankful** to him and bless his name." Psalm 100:4. "In everything give thanks..." I Thessalonians 5:18.

TOOL 6: MEMORIZE BIBLE VERSES THAT APPLY TO YOUR SITUATION and OF GOD'S GOODNESS.

"But his **delight** is in the law of the Lord and in his **law** doth he **meditate** day and night. He shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water whatsoever he doeth shall prosper." Psalm 1:2,3.

"...written for our learning that we through patience and comfort of the Scriptures might have hope." Romans 15:4.

"Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God." Mat4:4.

TOOL 7: KEEP AWAY FROM UNGODLY, ANGRY, AGGRESSIVE, FOOLISH PEOPLE.

"Make no friendship with an angry man, lest thou learn his ways and get a snare to thy soul." Pro22:24
Most problems in life are caused by mixing with wicked or foolish people. Psalm 1:1-3.

TOOL 8: CONTROL WHAT YOU THINK ABOUT.

Only think about **good** things, not bad things. "As he thinks in his heart, so is he." Proverbs 23:7.
If you think about **good** things, you'll be **happy**. If you think about **bad** things, you'll be **depressed**.
"Whatsoever things are true honest just pure lovely.....good report..... virtue any praise, **think on these things**. Those things, which ye have both learned, and received and heard, and seen in me do: and the God of peace shall be with you." Philippians 4:8,9.

TOOL 9: LEARN TO WAIT PATIENTLY ON THE LORD.

Learn to **wait patiently** on the Lord and **not fret** because of **evildoers**.

"Fret not thyself because of evildoers." Psalm 37:1.

"Delight thyself also in the Lord....He shall give thee the desires of thy heart. Commit thy way unto the Lord.....Rest in the Lord and wait patiently for Him." Psalm 37:4,5,7.

"My soul **wait** thou only upon God, for my expectation is from Him." Psalm 62:5.

"They that **wait** upon the Lord shall renew their strength." Isaiah 40:30-31.

TOOL 10: PRAY TO GOD IN TIMES OF SORROW.

Who do we seek counsel from in sorrow? It should be the Lord. Learn to pray effectively and fervently.
"Be careful for nothing, but in everything by prayer and supplication, with thanksgiving let your requests be made unto God." Philippians 4:6,7.

"Ask and it shall be given you; **seek** and ye shall find, **knock** and it shall be opened unto you." Matt 7:7

"They cried unto the Lord in their trouble, and he saved them out of their distresses." Psalm 107:13.

"If ye abide in me and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will and it shall be done unto you." John 15:7.

"Pray one for another, that ye may be healed." James 5:16.

"The Lord turned the captivity of Job, when he prayed for his friends." Job 42:10.

TOOL 11: EXPECT TROUBLE IN LIFE.

Then you won't get surprised when trouble comes. "In the world ye shall have tribulation." John 16:33.

"We must through much tribulation enter into the Kingdom of God." Acts 14:22.

"Many are the afflictions of the righteous, but the Lord delivers him from them all." Psalm 34:19.

"We are troubled on every side yet not distressed...." II Corinthians 4:8.

"Our light affliction which is but for a moment, works for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory." II Corinthians 4:17. "Let not your heart be troubled." John 14:1.

TOOL 12: BEWARE OF BELIEVING WRONG DOCTRINES or WRONG IDEAS.

Develop consistency, stability, faithfulness, commitment and reliability. "Be not carried about with strange doctrines. It is a good thing that the heart be established with grace." Hebrews 13:9.

"Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit..and not after Christ." Coloss. 2:8.

TOOL 13: FIX YOUR MIND ON HEAVEN, THE KINGDOM OF GOD and ON CHRIST'S SECOND COMING.

"I will come again and receive you unto myself...." John 14:3.

"Set your affection on things above and not on things on earth." Colossians 3:2. (Matthew 6:33.

"Seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness and all these things shall be added unto you."

"When Christ who is our life shall appear, then shall ye appear with him in glory." Colossians 3:4.

TOOL 14: LIVE ONE DAY AT A TIME.

Don't bring yesterday's problems forward to worry about today. Don't bring tomorrow's problems back to worry about today. "Take no thought for tomorrow: for tomorrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof." Matthew 6:34.

TOOL 15: FORGET THE PAST.

Forget the past, you can't change it, and **let God take care of the future**. "Forgetting those things which are **behind** and **reaching** forth unto those things are before (ahead)....". Philippians 3:13.

"We **wept** when we **remembered** Zion." Psalm 137:1. "Thou shalt forget all thy misery." Job 11:16.

"God has made me to forget.....all my toil, and my father's house." Genesis 41:51.

TOOL 16: BE FILLED WITH THE HOLY SPIRIT. Ephesians 5:18.

"The **fruit** of the **Spirit** is **love, joy, peace**, long suffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance." Galatians 5:22,23. Be filled with the **Holy Spirit**, not filled with **Self**.

TOOL 17: THINK ON GOD'S PROVISION and GOODNESS TO US.

"There has not failed one word of his good promise" I Kings 8:56.

"I will never leave thee nor forsake thee" Heb 13:5. "The goodness of God endures continually." Ps52:1

"The earth is full of the goodness of the Lord" Ps 33:5.

"No good thing will He withhold from them that walk uprightly." Psalm 84:11.

TOOL 18: BE GUIDED BY GOD and AVOID SIN.

"He that follows me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life." John 8:12.

"Thine ears shall hear a word behind thee saying, this is the way, walk ye in it...." Isaiah 30:21.

TOOL 19: LEARN THE PRINCIPLES OF HAPPINESS.

"Whoso trusts in the Lord, happy is he." Prov.16:20.

"A merry heart doeth good like medicine." Prov 17:22.

"Rejoice in the Lord always." Philippians 4:4 Happiness is a choice. When persecuted for Christ:

"Rejoice and be exceeding glad for great is your reward in heaven." Matthew 5:12.

TOOL 20: HAVE A LIFE GOAL of USEFULNESS TO GOD.

It is better to **serve God** and win souls to Christ, than to be **happy**. Be **God-centred** and **others-centred**, not **self centred**. "He that **finds** his life shall **lose** it: and he that loses his life for my sake shall find it." Matthew 10:39. "I have finished the **work** which thou gavest me to do." John 17:4.

"**Come unto me** all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and **I will give you rest** Take my yoke upon you, and **learn of me**.....ye shall find **rest** for your souls." Matthew 11:28,29.

"Go ye into all the world and preach the Gospel to every creature." Mark 16:15.

TOOL 21: GIVE TO GOD and TO OTHERS.

"**Give** and it shall be given unto you..... " Luke 6:38. "Ye have **robbed me**.....in tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a **curse** Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse that there may be meat in my house, and **prove me now** herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and **pour you a blessing** that there shall not be room enough to receive it." Malachi 3:8-12.

TOOL 22: GOD WILL NOT LET YOU BE TEMPTED ABOVE that YE ARE ABLE TO BEAR

"God will make a way to escape the temptation, that ye may be able to bear it." I Corinthians 10:13.

Look for the way to escape. Others have experienced the same temptations & found God to be faithful.

TOOL 23: FULFIL YOUR GOD-GIVEN ROLE IN LIFE.

"The **aged women** teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, to be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands. **Young men**....be sober minded, pattern of good works, in doctrine, showing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity, sound speech." Titus 2:3-8. "I will therefore that the **younger women marry**, bear children, guide the house" I Tim 5:14

TOOL 24: LEARN WISDOM from THE BIBLE.

"Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom." Proverbs 4:7.

"The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, and the knowledge of the holy is understanding." Proverbs 9:10. Wisdom will study the Bible to find answers to life's questions, and will obey the Bible even when it is difficult. By applying God's wisdom, we prevent bad things from happening to us and to our family. Preventing a problem is better than curing a problem.

TOOL 25: HONOUR GOD in ALL THINGS and GOD WILL HONOUR YOU.

".....them that honour me, **I will honour**." I Samuel 2:30. "But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness, and **all these things** shall be added unto you." Matthew 6:33.

Conclusion: When we feel depressed or worried, don't panic or fear, but trust the Lord, review these 24 tools and claim Romans 8:28. "We know that **all things** (even bad things) work together for **good** to them that **love God**.....". Do you love God? Then prove it by using these 25 TOOLS as part of your life and you will have victory over your worries, fears and depression.

69. ABC'S OF LIFE'S FOUNDATIONS

The Scriptures counsel new Christians to desire the sincere milk of the Word of God.

“As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that you may grow thereby, If so be ye have tasted that the Lord is gracious;” I Peter 2:2,3.

Christian parents need to help their children learn simple Bible verses that can be put into action in their lives so they will accept the Lord early in life and grow strong spiritually. These verses are arranged alphabetically so children can learn the alphabet while they are learning important verses.

The following are verses of doctrine and action. Help your children to apply these verses in everyday situations. People who have been saved later in life still need to learn these character-forming verses.

A. Ask, and it shall be given you. **Luke 11:9;**

All have sinned, and come short of the glory of God. **Romans 3:23;**

Abstain from all appearance of evil. **I Thessalonians 5:22.**

B. Be ye kind one to another. **Ephesians 4:32;** Be of good cheer. **Acts 23:11;**

Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved. **Acts 16:31;**

Be kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love. **Romans 12:10;**

Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only. **James 1:22.**

C. Children obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right. **Ephesians 6:1;**

Commit thy way unto the Lord. **Psalms 37:5;** Cease from anger. **Psalms 37:8;**

Comfort ye, comfort ye my people, saith the Lord. **Isaiah 40:1.**

D. Do all things without murmurings and disputings. **Philippians 2:14;**

Depart from evil and do good. **Psalms 34:14;**

Deceit is in the heart of them that imagine evil. **Psalms 37:4;**

The desire accomplished is sweet to the soul. **Proverbs 13:19.**

E. Even a child is known by his doings. **Proverbs 20:11;**

The eyes of the Lord are in every place beholding the evil and the good. **Proverbs 15:3;**

Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above. **James 1:17.**

F. Fret not thyself. **Psalms 37:1;** Fear not, for I am with thee. **Isaiah 43:5;**

For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son. **John 3:16;**

For by grace are ye saved through faith. **Ephesians 2:8.**

G. God loveth a cheerful giver. **II Corinthians 9:7b;**

A good man showeth favour and lendeth. **Psalms 112:5a;**

A good word maketh it (the heart) glad. **Proverbs 12:25b;**

Go from the presence a foolish man. **Proverbs 14:7a;**

Good is the word of the Lord. **Isaiah 39:8.**

H. Hear ye children, the instruction of a father. **Proverbs 4:1;**

Honour the Lord with thy substance. **Proverbs 3:9;**

Hear, O my son, and receive my sayings. **Proverbs 4:10;**

He that gathereth in summer is a wise son. **Proverbs 10:5;**

Here am I, send me. **Isaiah 6:8b;**

Honour thy father and thy mother. **Ephesians 6:2.**

I. In everything give thanks. **I Thessalonians 5:18;**

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. **Genesis 1:1;**

If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye do them. **John 13:17;**

I can do all things through Christ which strengthens me. **Philippians 4:13;**

I will not fear what man shall do to me. **Hebrews 13:6b;**

If any man lack wisdom, let him ask of God. **James 1:5;**

If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins. **I John 1:9.**

K. Keep thy tongue from evil. **Psalms 34:13;** Keep thee far from a false matter. **Exodus 23:7;**

Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins. **Psalms 19:13a;**

Keep thy heart with all diligence. **Proverbs 4:23;**

Keep thy commandments and live. **Proverbs 7:2;**

Keep in memory what I preached unto you. **I Cor. 15:2.** Keep the unity of the Spirit. **Ephesian 4:3.**

- L.** Love one another. **I John 3:11b**; Love your enemies. **Luke 6:27b**.
 Lying lips are an abomination to the Lord. **Proverbs 12:22**;
 Lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven. **Matthew 6:20**;
 Lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him. **I Corinthians 16:2b**;
 Let all your things be done with charity. **I Corinthians 16:14**;
 Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth. **Ephesians 4:29**.
 Let all bitterness, wrath, anger, clamour, evil speaking be put away from you. **Ephesians 4:31**.
- M.** Make a joyful noise unto the Lord. **Psalms 100:1**;
 My son, keep thy father's commandments. **Proverbs 6:20**;
 A merry heart doeth good like medicine. **Proverbs 17:22**;
 A merry heart maketh a cheerful countenance. **Proverbs 15:13**;
 My God shall supply all your need. **Philippians 4:19**;
- N.** Neither shalt thou profane the name of God. **Leviticus 18:21**;
 Neither murmur ye. **I Corinthians 10:10**;
 If any would not work, neither should he eat. **II Thessalonians 3:8,10b**.
- O.** Overcome evil with good. **Romans 12:21b**;
 To obey is better than sacrifice. **I Samuel 15:22b**;
 Obey my voice, and I will be your God, and ye shall be my people. **Jeremiah 7:23**;
 Owe no man anything. **Romans 13:8**; Obey them that have the rule over you. **Hebrews 13:17**.
- P.** Pray one for another. **James 5:16b**; Pleasant words are as an honeycomb. **Proverbs 16:24**;
 Pray without ceasing. **I Thessalonians 5:17**; Preach the word. **II Timothy 4:2a**.
- Q.** Quench not the spirit. **I Thessalonians 5:19**; Quicken me according to thy word. **Psalms 119:154**;
 Quit you like men, be strong. **I Corinthians 16:13b-14**.
- R.** Rest in the Lord. **Psalms 37:7**; Rejoice with them that do rejoice. **Romans 12:15**;
 Recompense to no man evil for evil. **Romans 12:17**;
 Redeeming the time, because the days are evil. **Ephesians 5:16**.
- S.** Seven times a day do I praise thee. **Psalms 119:164**;
 Sing unto the Lord, all the earth. **I Chronicles 16:23**;
 A soft answer turneth away wrath. **Proverbs 15:1**;
 Speak every man truth with his neighbour. **Ephesians 4:25b**;
 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs. **Ephesians 5:19**;
 Study to be quiet. **I Thessalonians 4:11a**;
 Study to show thyself approved unto God. **II Timothy 2:15**.
- T.** Trust in the Lord with all thine heart. **Proverbs 3:5**;
 To every thing there is a season. **Ecclesiastes 3:1**; Think on these things. **Philippians 4:8b-9a**.
- U.** Use hospitality. **I Peter 4:9**;
 Understanding is a well-spring of life unto him that hath it. **Proverbs 16:22a**
- V.** Vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord. **Romans 12:19**;
 Vanity of vanities, saith the preacher; all is vanity. **Ecclesiastes 12:8**; (John 3:3b).
 Verily, verily, I say unto thee. Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.
- W.** Whatsoever ye do, do it heartily as to the Lord. **Colossians 3:23**;
 Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might. **Ecclesiastes 9:10**;
 Wait on the Lord and keep his way. **Psalms 37:34**;
 Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation. **Matthew 26:41**;
 We are labourers together with God. **I Corinthians 3:9**;
 Work with your own hands. **I Thessalonians 4:11b**.
- X.** eXalt the Lord, our God. **Psalms 99:9**.
- Y.** Ye are the light of the world. **Matthew 5:14**. Yet will I not forget thee. **Isaiah 49:15b**.
 Yield yourselves unto the Lord. **II Chronicles 30:8b**;
- Z.** Zacchaeus, make haste. **Luke 19:5**.

70. GREAT CHRISTIANS INSPIRING LIVES

Bible Reading: Hebrews 11:32 - 12:2.

Aim: Do something great for God.

Introduction:

We all love inspiring, encouraging, true stories. The Bible is full of many people's life's stories who had a great impact on their country, generation and world for Christ. The exciting thing is that you and I can have a great impact on the world for Christ. We need to exercise our faith to pray and trust God to do great things through our lives, as we work together to win, baptize and teach people for Christ. Hebrews chapter eleven describes many people's lives of faith who did great things for God in freeing people from sin's bondage.

These are the "so great a cloud of witnesses" that are watching you and me today from heaven. Having run their race and finished their course, having passed the baton onto us today, they are cheering us on in the heavenly grandstands to best use our opportunities and talents to win this world to Christ.

The last 2000 years contain many Christians lives that can greatly inspire us. Let us consider some of their life's stories, so that we might be encouraged to attempt and to complete great things for God.

We will meet these people in heaven, so it's good to be encouraged by their lives now.

1. POLYCARP. 150 AD. "Be thou faithful unto death and I will give thee a crown of life". Rev. 2:10 Polycarp was the last one to be taught personally by the Apostle **John**. Since there were no images of gods in early Churches, the heathens concluded that Christians did not believe in the existence of the gods, so they accused Christians of being atheists.

Polycarp was arrested and brought to an arena in Smyrna before a great multitude and urged to renounce Christians by saying "away with the atheists". He instead, pointed to the crowd and said "Away with the atheists."

The proconsul said "Deny Christ and I will release you." Polycarp said "86 years have I served Him, and He has never done me wrong. How can I blaspheme Him, my King, who has saved me? I am a Christian." The crowd called for him to be burned, and he was burned at the stake without ropes."

2. PETER WALDO. 1176 AD.

He was a rich merchant of Lyons, France who sold all his goods and gave money to the poor. He believed that the Bible was the only rule of faith and practice. He and his followers went about two by two preaching. They memorized large parts of Scripture.

They did not believe in purgatory or in masses. They believed that prayers said "in a house, to be just as effective as in a church. They grew so numerous that the Roman Catholic church's very existence was threatened. The Dominican and Franciscan Catholic orders were started to oppose the Waldenses, but they failed. Then the Roman Catholic church started the Inquisition to try them for heresy and kill them. In Southern France, there were too many Waldenses for the Inquisition to kill, so the Roman Catholic Church organized armies to march into Southern France to kill them. For 20 years blood flowed like water. The Waldenses fled to the high valleys of the alps and survive today. John 16:1-3.

3. JOHN WYCLIFFE. 1320-1384.

John Wycliffe was born in England in 1320 and became an Oxford University Professor. In 1376 he began to rebuke the wealthy, corrupt clergy. He declared the Bible to be the only rule of faith, not the Church. He translated the Bible into English from Latin so that all could read it. He called the Pope the "Antichrist." He and his followers (Lollards) spread Bibles and his teachings all over England. A law was passed to burn his followers as heretics. Thousands were martyred, but Lollardism continued to the Reformation. Wycliffe died in peace in 1384.

29 years after his death, Catholic clergy dug up his bones and burned them for heresy. Why? Because Wycliffe opposed mendicant friars selling indulgences, and the doctrine of transubstantiation. The Catholic church opposed translating the Bible into English.

"The Lord gave the Word: great was the company of those that published it." Psalm 68:11.

"Oh that my words were now written! Oh that they were printed in a book!... That they were graven with an iron **pen** and **lead** in the rock forever." Job 19:23,24.

4. **JOHN HUSS.** 1369-1414.

John Huss was born in 1369 in Czechoslovakia. He could see the Biblical truth of Wycliffe's teachings. Huss began to preach strongly against Catholic clergy corruption. The Waldenses and the common people heartily welcomed Huss' teachings and he won almost all Bohemia to Christ. Huss taught that:

- 1) The Church consists of all people who are saved.
- 2) Christ is Head of the Church, not Popes or Cardinals.

The great Schism in the Roman Catholic church was happening at this time, having 2 Popes, John XXIII at Avignon and Gregory XII in Rome. Pope John promised indulgences to all those who would help him fight Pope Gregory. Huss condemned the selling of indulgences as contrary to the Bible. Pope John XXIII then excommunicated Huss. Huss declared it null and void.

In 1414 Emperor Sigismund invited Huss to attend a Council, promising him safe conduct. Huss accepted. Pope John XXIII then put Huss in prison for heresy.

Huss, the Bohemians and the Emperor protested his arrest, but the Pope said it was alright to deceive and betray heretics, because heretics have no rights.

After 8 months in prison, Huss was cursed, degraded and burned at the stake. A Catholic army invaded Bohemia to kill Huss' followers. War raged for many years. When the Reformation began in Germany, Bohemia still opposed Roman Catholicism. "Others were tortured, not accepting deliverance that they might obtain a better resurrection. Others had trial of cruel mockings and scourgings, yea of bonds and imprisonment. All these obtained a good report through faith." Hebrews 11:35,36,39.

Is Their Religion Enough?

People who should know better, tell me that the heathen are better off as they are, that their own religions satisfy them and meet their needs. Is that true? If so, then most certainly we should let them alone. But are they happy as they are?

a) I am thinking now of that **Mohammedan in Algeria** who slashed his head again and again with a large knife, until the blood flowed freely, then took newspapers and plastered them on top of his head; finally taking out a match and striking it, he set fire to the papers, hair, and blood. Can you imagine the agony? Why the self-inflicted torture? Because of his religion. He was laying up merit in heaven. Mohammedanism taught him to afflict himself, and he was doing it with a vengeance. Would you exchange places with him? Would you accept his Mohammedanism and give him your Christianity? Which religion would you prefer? Do you think Mohammedanism brought him peace and comfort and happiness; or the very opposite? I leave you to answer.

b) I am thinking of the **Africans** before Christianity, who killed their **twin babies**, believing them to be demon-possessed. If God should give you twins would you be willing to have them murdered? You would have to if you lived in Africa, for your religion would compel you to destroy them.

c) I am thinking of the **Hindu widows of India**, who because of their religion, have to lie down beside their husbands when they have died and allow themselves to be bound and burned alive. Thousands of them have gone into eternity screaming in agony, as they slowly burned to death. Would you exchange your religion for theirs? Do you think it brings them any pleasure, or any enjoyment? Yet you tell me to leave them alone, that they are better off as they are. What a callous philosophy!

d) I am thinking, too, of the pagans in **Africa**, who, when a chief dies, leaves orders for his widows-thirty, sixty, or a hundred of them to be thrown into the grave with him and bury them alive. Is that a pleasant prospect? Would you be satisfied with such a religion?

Until you, my friend, are willing to accept these religions with their consequences, and their abominable practices for yourself, you ought to be ashamed to say that the heathen are better off as they are. Their religions are religions of fear. They know nothing of peace and love. They have no hope.

Jesus Christ alone offers them life, abundant life and that which satisfies the heart.

Dr. J. Oswald Smith, The Sunday School Times.

5. **MARTIN LUTHER.** November 10, 1483.

He studied Law, but gave it up to become a priest. Luther visited Rome and was deeply shocked by Church corruption and evil. He deeply wanted salvation. So he tried to earn salvation by fleeing from the world and by doing good works. He couldn't find salvation in good works, so he studied the Bible more thoroughly. In 1512 he noticed Romans 1:17 "The just shall live by faith". He paused, he pondered, then joy unspeakable flooded his heart as he realized that he could be justified in God's sight by faith in Jesus Christ as his Saviour, without the works of the law.

His burden of sin rolled away. Up until now he had tried to earn salvation by his good works, but he had never been able to feel that he had done enough good works to take away his sins. God showed him that we are not saved by works, but by faith in Jesus Christ.

Tetzel had earlier greatly angered Luther by selling indulgences to people in market places of towns, saying: "As a coin in you pop, a soul from purgatory doth hop."

Now that Luther was saved he could see many errors and abuses in the Roman Catholic Church. Luther saw Tetzel deceiving people for eternity, so Luther wrote his 95 Theses against indulgences and nailed it on the Church door at Wittenburg on 31 October 1517. People came that day to see the Church's 5000 relics, but they read the 95 Theses and realised that they were true. These 95 Theses were printed in their own languages and sent all over Europe in 4 weeks. This almost stopped the sale of Indulgences. Luther defended his 95 Theses to the Pope.

Indulgence sales brought the Pope an immense income. Luther loosened the priests' hold on the people, because the Pope said that without mass, penance, confession and indulgences there was no salvation.

Fundamental Reformation teachings were that:

1. Early Church Writers showed that salvation is by preaching and receiving the Gospel.
2. All believers are priests who have direct access to God. We do not need a Roman Catholic priest to get to God.
3. A Church is a community of believers, not a heirarchy of officials.
4. The Bible, not church tradition, is the final rule of faith and morals.

The Pope summoned Luther to Rome to burn him as a heretic. Luther's powerful friend Frederick, Elector of Saxony vetoed this. Dr. Eck wrote an article against Luther, so Luther wrote 12 theses against Eck, showing that Rome's authority over other churches was based on forged documents. This greatly attacked the Pope's authority, so Eck challenged Luther to a debate at Leipzig. Eck got Luther to admit that some of Huss' ideas were right. This meant that Luther had sided with a condemned heretic. The Pope later excommunicated Luther with a Bull. Luther replied with a tract: "Against the Execrable Bull of Antichrist." Luther had read Valla's thesis which proved beyond the possibility of contradiction that the "Donation of Constantine" was a forgery. This enraged Luther to call the Pope an Antichrist.

The Pope got young Emperor Charles to judge Luther. Luther said: "I cannot recant unless proved wrong by Holy Scripture. My conscience is bound to the Word of God. Here I stand."

THE REFORMATION.

The Reformation reformed the church, but it also reformed many nations political, economic, social and cultural life.

On Luther's return from the Leipzig debate with Dr Eck, five men kidnapped him and hid him in the Wartburg Castle at the orders of Frederick the Wise for 10 months. During this time he translated the Bible from Latin to German, the language of the people. Step by step many important changes took place to make a vast difference between Catholic and Protestant.

1. The papacy was rejected.
2. The distinction between clergy and laity was rejected. Hebrews 4:16 teaches that all believers are priests having direct access to God.
3. There are no sacraments (not 7), but only two ordinances being Baptism and the Lord's Supper.
4. The sacraments are not needed for salvation. This was a big load off people's backs.
5. Praying to Mary and to the saints was done away with.
6. Worship of images was done away with.

7. Veneration of relics was done away with.
8. Pilgrimages to Rome and Jerusalem are not necessary.
9. Religious processions are not necessary.
10. Holy Water is not needed.
11. Outward asceticism, (going without to an extreme) is not needed.
12. Entering a monastery to retreat from the world are not not needed.
13. Prayers for the dead are not needed.
14. Belief in Purgatory is wrong.
15. Transubstantiation is wrong. The idea where the bread and wine are changed to the body and blood of Christ.

Luther added these extra changes.

1. The State should be above the church.
2. He translated the Bible to German. Church services were held in German, not Latin.
3. He established schools everywhere to ground children in Bible doctrine.
4. He wrote a new hymn book. The song "A mighty fortress is our God", was written by Luther.
5. He said that the Roman Catholic Church had left the New Testament Church's teachings.
6. In 1525, Luther married Catherine Von Bora, an ex-nun. He showed that priestly celibacy was not necessary. Titus 1:5,6.

6. ZWINGLI.

In Switzerland, Zwingli reformed the church. In 1518 he attacked the sale of indulgences, removed statues, abolished the mass, altars, relics, processions and transubstantiation. He said that in the Lord's Supper, the bread and grape juice symbolized Christ's body and blood. He died in battle in 1531.

7. CALVIN.

Calvin reformed the church in France. He was born in 1509. He studied logic, the early Christian writings, Bible and Law. Calvin fled Roman Catholic persecution and taught small groups in secret places. A new torture was invented to lift the victim in and out of the fire, instead of burning him all at once. Calvin fled to Basel, Switzerland where he studied and wrote "Calvin's Institutes." He sent it to King Frances I of France to show that Christians as firm Bible believers, deserved better treatment. Calvin went to Geneva where Farel enlisted his help in Switzerland. All of Norway, Sweden and Denmark embraced Lutheranism. Calvin translated the Bible into French. Both Luther and Calvin believed that Christians should be thoroughly grounded in Bible doctrine, and that salvation was by faith in Christ alone. He wrote a catechism.

Calvin's motto was "My heart for thy cause I offer thee, Lord, promptly and sincerely."

8. ANABAPTISTS.

Baptists existed since John the Baptist, Christ and the Apostles. Anabaptists were so called because they rebaptised people who had been sprinkled as babies. Anabaptists believed in:

1. The Fatherhood of God.
2. The Deity of Christ.
3. The Church as a body of converted believers, not a state church.
4. The Bible as God's authoritative word.
5. The Second coming of Christ.
6. Christ's commandments of love, holiness, self denial, humility and peace.
7. Passionate missionary concern to win lost people to eternal life in Christ.
8. Infant baptism was wrong, believers immersion was right.

They soon spread through Switzerland, Austria, South Germany, Bohemia, and Holland. Because of baptism by immersion, Roman Catholic, Lutherans, Calvinists and Zwinglians relentlessly persecuted the Anabaptists.

9. JOHN KNOX. 1514-72. "The righteous are bold as a lion." Proverbs 28:1.

John Knox reformed the church in Scotland. Scotland had a weak King fighting with Scottish lords, corrupt clergy, great poverty and universities of a low standard. Several young Scotsman went to Luther's Wittenburg University and returned to Scotland to spread Luther's doctrines. John Knox was ordained a Roman Catholic Priest. He was captured when the French invaded St Andrews and he worked as a galley slave. Knox helped Archbishop Cranmer of England write the 42 Articles for the church of Ireland. Knox after visiting Calvin returned to Scotland and preached against the Mass. In 1555 Knox urged Queen Mary to favour the Gospel. Being a strong Catholic she sentenced him to death, but Knox had fled the country, so she burned an image of him instead. Knox and his friends pledged to further "the most blessed Word of God and his congregation." After Knox returned to Scotland, the Reformation swept ahead rapidly. His preaching was powerful, direct, vigorous and plain. He used wit and cutting satire. Of his preaching they said: "Others lop off the branches, but Knox strikes at the root."

In the pulpit he was so energetic, he seemed to pound it to pieces and fly out of it. His preaching was like a spark in a gunpowder keg. People smashed images and statues. In 1560 the Scottish Parliament changed the countries religion from Catholicism to Protestantism. The Pope's and Priest's authority was abolished and the Mass was forbidden. Maintenance of the true religion was declared to be the prime duty of Government. Their order of service had: prayer, Bible reading, offering, sermon and singing. The Reformation was preserved unintentionally by Catholic Mary Queen of Scots by her immoral life, the burning of Protestants at the stake and her other unwise actions. These caused the leaders and people to turn to Protestantism. Knox died in 1572.

10. THOMAS CRANMER. 1489-1556.

Cranmer was the first Protestant Archbishop of Canterbury. The English Reformation passed through four stages.

- 1) **Henry VIII** (1509-1547),
- 2) **Edward VI** (1547-1553),
- 3) **Mary** (1553-1558),
- 4) **Elizabeth I** (1558-1603).

In 1525 Tyndale translated the Bible into English while being greatly persecuted.

In 1536 Tyndale was martyred near Brussels.

- 1) **Henry VIII** applied to the Pope for a divorce from Catherine to marry Ann Boleyn. The Pope did not reply, so Henry passed a law declaring himself to be the head of the Church of England. If anyone opposed this, they'd be killed. Catholic Thomas More who had burned many Lutherans at the stake, opposed this and was beheaded. Galatians 6:7 says that what you sow, you reap.

Henry took land away from the monasteries and gave the estates to his loyal friends. Henry rejected relics such as Malcus' ear, stones that stoned Peter, a crucifix that could turn its head, roll its eyes, move its lips and foam at the mouth and shed tears. A mechanical device was found inside it, which priests manipulated in order to deceive the people.

- 2) **Edward VI** came to the throne at age 9 years. He favoured the Reformation. That same year (1547) Parliament passed a law stating that:
 - 1) All people could partake of bread and grape juice.
 - 2) Images should be removed from churches.
 - 3) Celibacy of priests and nuns was done away with.
 - 4) The Prayer book dropped prayers for the dead.
 - 5) They adopted the 39 articles. Then Edward died of Tuberculosis.

- 3) **Bloody Mary (1553-58)** a strong Catholic came to the throne and reversed all the Reformation work of Edward. In 1555 she burned 75 Christians at the stake, including Hugh Latimer and Nicholas Ridley. Her next victim was Cranmer, Archbishop of Canterbury, appointed by Henry as the first Protestant Archbishop.

After Henry VIII death, Cranmer was the main moving force behind the Reformation in England. The Pope excommunicated Cranmer in 1555. Cranmer weakened and was pressured to sign a

statement denying Protestantism. Mary then decided to kill him in 1556. Just before he was to die, he renounced his denial, and once more strongly declared his Protestant faith. The hand which signed the denial, he held in the flames until it was burned to a crisp. He then was burned as a martyr and a hero. Mary died in 1558 having burned over 300 people to death.

- 4) **Elizabeth I** (1558-1603) was Mary's sister. Mary's persecutions were aimed at destroying Protestantism, but it greatly aroused anti-Roman Catholic anger. In 1559 Parliament rejected all Papal authority over England.
- * At this time, the eight Protestant countries were England, Germany, Switzerland, Holland, Scotland, Denmark, Norway, and Sweden.
 - * Now Rome formulated a creed at the Council of Trent of 1545-63.
 - * Emperor Charles V wanted to destroy Protestantism in its early days, but God raised up the Muslim Turks to attack Charles and a French war which distracted him from attacking Protestantism.

Catholicism was revitalized by 3 new weapons:

- 1) The Index, a list of banned books.
- 2) The Inquisition to try, torture and kill Protestants.
- 3) The Jesuit's job was to win countries back to Catholicism. They won back most of Poland, Austria, Ireland, Belgium, Bavaria and parts of South Germany.

11. FRENCH HUGUENOTS. 1562-1629. French Protestants.

France, like Germany was divided between Protestants and Catholics. The Huguenots were a strong, prosperous, intelligent, nobility class, but they were a minority.

Civil war broke out between Catholics and Protestants in 1562. In 1570 a brief peace was made. Catholic extremists alarmed Catherine de Medici with reports that Huguenots were plotting to take the throne. Catherine convinced Charles IX of this and they plotted to massacre all Huguenots.

All leading Huguenots were invited to the wedding of Henry and Margaret in Paris. On August 24, 1572 which was St. Bartholomew's day, bells were rung to signal the massacre to begin. Over ten thousand Huguenots were killed that day. Most French Huguenots fled to the new world (America) or other countries.

- * Protestants were burned at the stake as heretics in Italy, Spain, France, England, Scotland, but most in Holland (18,000). Phillip II of Spain tortured, burned, drowned and buried alive many Protestants. Spain and Holland fought each other in a bloody 18 year war. England supported Holland until Holland won a peace in 1609.
- * Phillip II of Spain formed an enormous fleet called the Spanish Armada of 130 ships, 180 priests and 30,000 men to conquer England. God defeated the Armada by sending a terrible storm which destroyed most of the ships. 5 years later, Phillip sent 100 ships to conquer England for Rome. God sent a gale destroying most of his ships.
"Praise the Lord...stormy wind fulfilling His Word." Psalm 148:7,8.
- * The Thirty Year War (1618-48). Rome and Catholics attacked Germany to destroy Protestantism. When things looked hopeless for the Protestants, King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden brought his armies in to win the war for the Protestants. Peace came in 1648. The German population was reduced from 15 million to 5 million in the 30 Years War.
There have been no major boundary changes since the treaty of Westphalia in 1648 between Protestants and Catholics. "I saw the woman drunk with the blood of saints." Revelation 17:5,6.

12. OLIVER CROMWELL.

Cromwell led English independent Christians in a war against Charles I who had persecuted Puritans after Elizabeth's death. Cromwell's 21,000 cavalry went into battle singing psalms. When not fighting they studied the Bible, prayed and sang hymns. They were never defeated. The King surrendered and was beheaded in 1649.

13. WILLIAM OF ORANGE.

In 1685, James II, a strong Catholic, came to the English throne, aiming to restore England to Catholicism. James II plotted with Louis XIV of France to attack England. The English in their distress appealed to William III of Orange (Holland) to help them. William with his army crossed the sea in 1688 and drove out James II. William and Mary were then crowned King and Queen of England. As a result of William's bravery he saved England, Holland and America for Protestantism and liberty against Catholicism. There were no more Protestant/Catholic wars after 1689.

14. COUNT VON ZINZENDORF.

He was born in Czechoslovakia, in 1700. As a child he saw a picture of Christ on the cross saying: "This I did for you. What do you do for me?" This made a great impression on him and his entire life was controlled by a love for Jesus and a burning desire to win souls for Christ. When aged 10 years old, he started a club to promote personal holiness and the evangelization of the world.

When aged 15 he and his classmates promised on every occasion to confess Christ and to seek the conversion of men. He bought a large area of land near Dresden. In 1722 he gave Christian David permission to let the Pietists come and live on his estates. He devoted his life to reorganize this group of 300 people to win the world to Christ. Where they lived was called Herrnhut, meaning the Lord's lodge. They were later called **Moravians**. Zinzendorf looked on the members of the Moravian church as soldiers of Christ who were to go to all the world to conquer it for Christ.

The Moravians were the first Protestant body to take seriously the Great Commission. They established missions in Africa, Asia, Greenland, Lapland, to the American Indians and home mission work. There are 70,000 Moravians today in United States. They had an impact on other denominations to soul winning, entirely beyond proportion to their small number. They first lit the torch of Protestant missionary zeal. "Go and preach the Gospel to every creature." Mark 16:15.

A Moravian asked Wesley if he knew Christ. This triggered Wesley's desire to be saved.

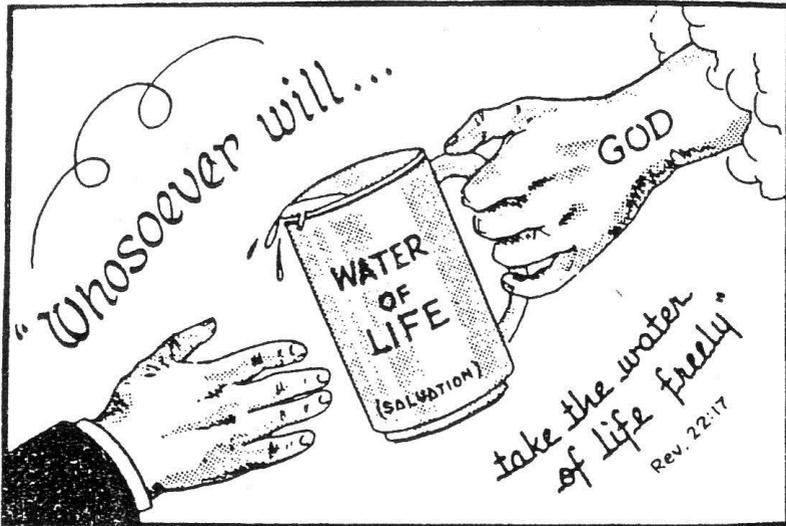
CONCLUSION:

Will you be like the Moravians?

Will you stand up for Christ like Protestants in Europe?

Will you deny Christ as Cranmer did only to feel shame afterwards?

Will you seek to win Countries for Christ like Knox?



70b. THE CHALLENGE OF MISSIONS

Bible Reading: Revelation 3:7-13.

Aim: To challenge us with opportunities that exist to be soul winners and Bible teaching missionaries.

Introduction: What will you do with your God-given life? Each of us are faced with many opportunities to serve God, yet we often don't notice them. We can be greatly inspired by stories of missionaries in the Bible. These became the basis for missionaries over the last 2000 years. We have the Great Commission of Christ in Matthew 28:18-20. God calls all of us to be a missionary either at home or overseas.

a) If you are a **young man**, pray and ask God if he wants you to be an overseas or home missionary. Then get prepared by learning Soul Winning and Bible teaching here and now. You say "I need a job to earn money." Then get a trade or source of income while you are preparing for missionary work. Trust God to supply your needs. He won't let you down. He hasn't let anyone else down yet.

b) Mothers: Train, equip and encourage your children to be missionaries. If I had 100 children, I'd want them all to be missionaries here or overseas. God had one Son and He made him a missionary.

c) Men: God may be calling you to train to be a missionary somewhere one day. Your life isn't finished when you retire from your secular job. Aim to retire early so that you can be a missionary until you die.

d) Young ladies: Train to be a Soul Winning, Bible teaching missionary. Marry a man with same goals.

1) The Philadelphian church in Revelation 2 was a missionary church that God gave an **open door**. 3:8. Today, God has given us open doors all over the world.

2) They had a **little strength**. So do we. God uses those with a little strength. Rev 3:8.

3) They **kept Christ's Word**. Avoid modern Bible versions that omit much of God's Word.

4) People **hated this church**, because Christ says that he will make their enemies worship before their feet, and to know that I have **loved thee**. That Christ loved this church is what mattered. Rev 3:9.

5) This church will be **kept out of the Tribulation**. Why? Because they kept God's Word. Rev 3:10.

6) This church had a **crown** reward in heaven. Rev 3:11.

7) Overcomers in this church will become a **pillar** in God's heavenly temple. Rev 3:12.

8) "He shall go no more out" means no more rejection as you get in soul winning, visitation and persecution. I go soul winning/door knocking each week so that I won't get scared of doing it.

9) I will **write** on him my new name and the city New Jerusalem's name. Rev 3:12.

Note: This Philadelphian Church is represented by the church from around 1700 to the Second coming who hold the truth of God's Word out to a lost world.

Let us look at some well-known missionaries of this period and be encouraged to follow their example.

15. DAVID BRAINERD. 1718-1747. To American Indians.

Brainerd was born in Connecticut, USA. He was saved in 1739 and entered Yale College to study for the ministry. He was expelled from Yale for criticizing a tutor and for attending a revival meeting forbidden by the rector. He was later appointed missionary to the American Indians and ordained in 1744. That year his health was poor and he saw little success among the Indians. But on 3 January 1745 he prayed and fasted all day for God to pour out his Holy Spirit on his work. The Lord laid John 7:37 on his mind: "If any man thirst let him come unto me and drink."

He preached this verse continually among the Indians. A key breakthrough occurred that year when his interpreter **Moses Tautamy** and his wife received Christ as Saviour and asked for baptism. Moses was a constant drinker and often had been drunk while interpreting.

After being saved, the change in Moses was dramatic. He interpreted differently and would often continue on preaching after David Brainerd stopped, exhorting the Indians to come to Christ.

Wherever David Brainerd went, revival broke out and many received Christ as their Saviour all that year. In 1747 tuberculosis compelled him to abandon his work. He went to Jonathan Edwards house and became engaged to his daughter, but died in October 1747. Jonathan Edwards later published his work and it inspired many to follow his work among the Indians. Missionaries such as William Carey, Henry Martyn and others were inspired by him.

16. WILLIAM CAREY. 1761-1834.

He was called the "Father of Modern Missions." His vision was to take the gospel to the entire world. He was saved at age 18 in a shoemaker's shop where he worked. He mastered 5 languages. He was ordained by the Particular Baptists in 1787 and began to urge that worldwide missions be undertaken. An older Calvinist preacher rebuked him for this, saying, "When God is ready to convert the heathen, he will do so without your help or mine."

One of Carey's famous quotes was: "Expect great things from God. Attempt great things for God." In 1792, the Particular Baptist missionary society was formed. They sent Carey to India as their first missionary. Carey took a job as a manager of an Indigo plantation to pay for the work. He founded 26 churches, 126 schools (with 10,000 students enrolled), translated the Bible into 44 languages, produced dictionaries, organised India's first medical mission, savings bank, Bible College and newspaper. He performed many agriculture experiments. He helped eradicate suttee (the practice of burning a widow when her husband died). He formed India's first printing company, paper mill and steam engine. He baptised his first Hindu convert in 1800. He inspired the formation of the: London missionary society in 1795, Netherlands missionary society in 1797, American missionary society in 1810, and the American Baptist Missionary Union in 1814. He sparked the entire Christian World to carry out the Great Commission.

17. JOHN WESLEY. 1703-1791. Founded Methodism.

Born in Epworth, England, the 15th child of Susanna and Samuel Wesley, a non-conformist pastor. At age 6 the house burned down and he was rescued from death. He saw himself as "a firebrand plucked out of the burning." They started the "Holy Club" at Oxford University and were called Methodists, meaning one that lives according to the method laid down in the Bible. He valued a "clean heart, a single eye, a soul full of God." John and Charles sailed to Georgia, America to convert the Indians, but failed miserably.

On the way home, the ship almost sank and he saw how 26 Moravians sang and trusted God, showing no fear of death. Spangenburg asked Wesley, "Do you know Jesus Christ?" Wesley did not know Christ yet. Wesley found no peace with God, because he sought it not by faith in Christ, but by the works of the Law. "I went to America to convert the Indians, but who shall convert me?" In England, they met Peter Bohler, a Moravian who taught a faith of complete surrender, instant conversion and joy in believing.

Wesley while reading Luther's preface to his Romans Commentary regarding the change which God works in us through faith in Christ, then trusted Christ alone for salvation, and received assurance that his sins were taken away and saved.

He believed that one should be able to tell the exact circumstances, time and place of their conversion. Wesley's life spanned the entire 1700's. England was in a contest with France for world supremacy. England then laid the foundation of her empire in India, North America, Australia, South Africa and Africa. England then became an industrial manufacturing power. Most preachers did nothing for Christ, and morals were low at the time.

In 1739 George Whitfield, an Anglican minister began preaching outdoors to Bristol miners. He invited Wesley to join him. Wesley then began 50 years of outdoor preaching in England, Scotland and Wales. The Anglican church closed its doors to Wesley. "I look upon the world as my parish," he said.

He gathered those who were saved into "Societies". He issued society tickets to be renewed quarterly to weed out people of false conversion. Each society was divided into classes of 12 members, who paid one penny weekly to pay off the property.

He divided areas into circuits where travelling preachers spent 8 weeks in one place.

Charles Wesley wrote thousands of Christian songs. John Wesley urged his lay preachers to study at home and he published many cheap, short, plain books for Christians, which made him wealthy, yet he gave it all away. He worked with Wilberforce to abolish slavery.

On ordaining his own preachers, he broke from the Church of England. They forbade him to preach in their churches. So he first preached on his father's tombstone to a large crowd.

He believed that people accepted Christ of their own free will. He was not a Calvinist as was Whitfield. He breathed new life into many other churches. Those influenced by him were **John Newton, William**

Wilberforce who helped stop slavery, **John Howard** who reformed bad prison conditions, and **Robert Raikes** the father of Sunday Schools.

He preached his last outdoor sermon in 1790 on Isaiah 55:6 "Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near."

He died on March 2, 1791 and memorial services were held throughout England, Wales, Scotland and Ireland. It is said that he stopped the French Revolution from spreading to England.

18. HUDSON TAYLOR. 1832-1905.

He founded the China Inland Mission. Born into a Methodist family, his parents and grandparents had entertained John Wesley in their home. His father had a deep concern for China. At age 5, he wanted to become a missionary to China. He was **home-schooled** because of his ill health. In 1849, he was saved at age 17 while reading a tract on the finished work of Christ in his father's study. That year he offered his life to Christ for full time missionary service. The Lord called him to China. He began to prepare his life to go to China. He learned the Mandarin language, Medicine and Theology. He learned to depend on God for everything. One day he was out visiting the poor, when a man asked him to come and pray for his wife. In the house, he found that it was full of starving children, a sick mother and her baby near death.

He gave the last coin he had to buy medicine and food for the family resulting in the mother's life being saved. Later that day a package of money arrived unexpectedly for him. In 1853, he set sail for China. No one met him on arrival. He travelled inland, which was dangerous but he preached the gospel, and handed out tracts and gospels to many people. He dressed as the Chinese do, winning him great respect. In 1858, he married Maria Dyer. In 1859, he took over the London Missionary Hospital in Ningpo. By 1860, the work was growing, but the labourers were few. He had to return to England to recover his health. Here he recruited many more missionaries who went with him to China. He founded the China Inland Mission. The work soon spread over much of China. His wife and son died in 1870. He remarried in 1872. More workers came to China from 1876-78. He died in 1905.

What so greatly influenced Hudson Taylor to become a spiritual giant for God?

1) **A Spiritual Home.** His father was an evangelist and his mother a woman of prayer. His father began to pray for China two years before Hudson was born. The family always honoured Christ, the Bible and prayer.

2) **A definite call from God.** Today, teenagers are not expected to get serious about God's will for their lives. Hudson dared to seek God's will for his life.

"I asked God to give me some work to do for Him, because Christ had done so much for me."

God then convinced him to become a missionary to China.

3) **God prepared him at home to sacrifice and serve.**

He trusted God to meet all his needs, he did away with all material comforts, he exercised, lived on a plain diet, he economized and learned how to do without. He therefore had extra funds to share with others.

4) **A love for all God's people and a desire for wide usefulness.** He prayed, "Lord give me wide usefulness."

5) **He depended wholly on the Lord.** He discovered the secret of the exchanged life in Galatians 2:20. Three Scriptures were the key to his life:

1) Mark 11:22 "Have faith in God." He sought the will of God through prayer and Bible study. He then committed the matter to God, and trusted God to work.

2) I Samuel 7:12 "Ebenezer....hitherto hath the Lord helped us."

3) Genesis 22:14 "Jehovah Jireh....the Lord will provide." The Lord will see to it.

CONCLUSION:

Will you surrender to be somebody for God? Will you trust God with your future as a missionary? Surrender today for God's purposes to be achieved in your life.

70c. FAMOUS MISSIONARIES LIVES

Bible Reading: Ezekiel 3:16-21; Romans 10:14,15.

Aim: To be challenged by the lives of missionaries to win people to Christ through missions.

Introduction:

One thing common in all greatly used people of God is that they had very little material resources, but they were strong in faith and set out to serve God not knowing how God would work things out.

Missionaries encountered many obstacles such as:

- 1) People they spoke to were suspicious of another culture.
- 2) Local superstitions.
- 3) Dislike of foreigners.
- 4) They wanted to cling to the religion of their fathers.
- 5) Modernist missionaries and cults giving a false Gospel.

19. HENRY MARTYN

He topped mathematics at Cambridge University and said "I was surprised to find that I had grasped a shadow." He obeyed God's call to India in 1806. He translated the Bible into Hindustani and Persian. His journals and letters appeared in 1837. These motivated many young men to missionary work. He died of illness at age 31.

20. ADONIRAM JUDSON 1788-1850.

He was an American missionary who sailed to India in 1812. He adopted Baptist views on board ship and severed his Congregational ties. In 1814, he went to Burma. He mastered the Burmese language and learned Buddhism so that he could interact with the people. He translated the Bible, made a dictionary and wrote many tracts. He trained evangelists and pastors informally.

He was unwillingly caught up in the British Burmese War. He was imprisoned, bound with 5 pairs of fetters and suffered fever, heat and hunger. He miraculously survived. He baptized his first convert after 6 years. His first two wives died. He later died at sea.

21. JOHN GEDDIE 1815-1872 New Hebrides.

He encouraged his Presbyterian Church in Canada to send a missionary to the New Hebrides but no one volunteered. So he went himself in 1847. He learnt the language, translated the Bible and other books and Bible study aids. "When he landed in New Hebrides there were no Christians. When he left in 1872 there were no heathens." Praise God.

22. JOHAN KRAPE 1810-1881.

He established a mission in Mombasa 1844 (Kenya) to reach 8 million Gallas people. His wife and newborn child died of fever. He studied languages and explored East Africa. He translated a Swahili New Testament, grammar and dictionary.

23. ROBERT LAWS 1851-1934.

This Scottish missionary established missions in Malawi and Tanzania. When he left in 1927 there were over 700 primary schools, a 60,000 member Christian community, 13 ordained African Pastors. He aimed for a Bible reading, self extending and self supporting evangelizing church with national leaders.

24. ERIC LIDDELL 1902-1945.

He was born in China of missionary parents, but educated in England. He represented Scotland in International Rugby. In the 1924 Paris Olympics he disqualified himself from the 100 metres heat because it was held on a Sunday. He went on to win a gold medal in the 400 metres race. A note of 1 Samuel 2:30 was slipped into his hand which read: "Them that honour me, I will honour." He went to China as a missionary and died of a brain tumour in a Japanese concentration camp in 1942.

25. D. L. MOODY 1837-1899.

Moody was an independent, non denominational evangelist. He was saved as a shoe salesman and started the YMCA for evangelizing youth. His independent stance greatly influenced later American Fundamentalism. From 1873-75, he and Sankey (his song leader) held a crusade in England with immense success. He returned to the US as a national hero and was invited everywhere to preach. His message was as simple as 3R's:

RUIN by sin

REDEMPTION by Christ

REGENERATION by the Holy Spirit.

He majored on saving souls. He said: "I look upon this world as a wrecked vessel. God has given me a lifeboat and said to me, Moody save all you can."

He believed: Get people saved first, then all else will be added later. He promoted Dispensational Premillennialism. Torrey and Schofield were his associates. He took over and renamed "Moody Bible Institute" to train gapmen to do soul winning. He started the Student Volunteer Movement in 1886. His motto was "evangelization of the world in this generation."

26. GEORGE MULLER 1805-98.

He was born in Russia and became a British citizen. He was saved in 1825 at a home prayer meeting. He set out to train to be a missionary to the Jews, but ill health led him to Pastor Ebenezer Chapel which grew from 18 to 227 in 3 years. He believed and taught that God would supply material needs by believing prayer alone. He founded a Bible institution to spread Bible truths. He copied Franke faith orphanage in Germany for Bristol. He eventually housed, educated and trained 2000 children in 5 houses at Bristol. At age 70 he set out with his wife on a worldwide mission lasting 17 years. He blessed many by testifying to the prayer answering God. A well known incident was how at his orphanage, he thanked God for food, with nothing on the table. Then came a knock on the door with bread coming from a bakery from a broken down cart.

27. R. A. TORREY 1856-1928.

In 1889, Moody asked Torrey to head up Moody Bible Institute. From 1894-1906 he pastored Chicago's Moody Memorial church. From 1902-06 he did mass evangelism with Charles Alexander in Australia, New Zealand, India, China, Japan, Germany, Britain and Canada. In one tour of England he saw over 70,000 people saved in 4 years. He wrote many books against liberalism & how to serve God.

28. BOB JONES 1883-1968.

He was a famous evangelist and founded Bob Jones University, South Carolina. Bob Jones opposed the worldliness of Christians. He opposed the atheist drift in educational institutions. He upheld Bob Jones University doctrine and moral standards. Billy Graham trained here.

29. CHARLES FINNEY 1792-1875.

He was the father of modern revivalism. He studied law in 1818, being saved in 1821 and ordained in 1824. He was against Calvinism. An estimated 1 million people were saved in his revivals in New York, Philadelphia, Boston and the United States. He stressed the ability of people to repent.

30. MARY SLESSOR 1848-1915.

She was born in Scotland. She received a meagre education. She became a Sunday School teacher and a mission helper. In 1876, she was sent to Calabar, West Africa, which was uncontrolled by any colonial power. It was divided into warring tribes. It was ruled by witchcraft and barbarous customs such as killing twins at birth. She was in constant danger all her life. Slessor won the confidence of tribal chiefs and peoples by her fearlessness and dedication, medical and language skills and sense of humour. She opened Africa to the gospel and to trade. She opposed slavery. From 1903 she opened up new territory to the north and west. She died at age 66, worn out by service to Africa.

71. WHAT IS LOVE?

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 13:4-7.

Rebuke: By seeking the ‘showier’ gifts, you are not exhibiting love. I Cor.13 describes true love. Paul now lists fifteen qualities of true love in action. Each is a verb, and focuses on what true love does or does not do. Paul is trying to change their habits by measuring their lives against fifteen qualities of true love in action. This is a portrait of Jesus Christ, whose name is not mentioned in I Corinthians 13, but who is described as the personification of love.

1. Love is PATIENT (longsuffering 13:4).

It is the ability to be inconvenienced or taken advantage of by a person over time, yet not be upset or angry. Patience never retaliates, never takes revenge for being hurt, and refuses to pay back evil for evil (Romans 12:17). If God is so patient with rebellious men, ought not we be patient with each other? Jesus prayed while dying on the cross: “Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do.”

2. Love is KIND (13:4).

Just as patience will **take** anything from others, kindness will **give** anything to others. It means to be serving, gracious, useful, generous and showing goodwill. A Christian husband, wife and children must be kind and helpful to each other. Paul challenged the Corinthians to show kindness by repenting of their selfish, jealous, proud, childish attitudes and to humbly use their gifts to edify others.

3. Love ENVIES NOT (13:4).

Here begins eight descriptions of what love is not. Don’t confuse jealousy with envy. Jealousy is wanting what is rightfully yours, such as your spouse. God is a jealous God. Envy is wanting what is not rightfully yours. Envy comes in two ways:

- I want what someone else has, for example, a better boat, etc.
- Wanting evil for someone else that you don’t like.

Examples include:

- Eve** was envious of God’s greater knowledge, to which Satan successfully appealed.
- Cain** was envious of Abel’s better sacrifice.
- Joseph’s brothers**, being full of envy, sold him as a slave.
- Babylonian officials**, being envious of Daniel, threw him into a lion’s den.
- Pharisees** crucified Jesus for envy.

“Wrath is cruel, and anger is outrageous; but who is able to stand before envy?” Proverbs 27:4.

A loving person is never envious, but is glad at the success of others, even if it disadvantages them. Eg: Jonathan still loved David when David was more popular and likely to take Jonathan’s throne.

4. Love DOES NOT BRAG (vaunts not itself, 13:4), or **boast**.

When a loving person succeeds, he does not boast of it or talk conceitedly. Love does not parade its achievements. Bragging is the other side of envy. Envy wants what others have, while bragging tries to make others envious of what we have.

Envy pulls others down, bragging brings us up. We dislike bragging in others, yet we brag ourselves.

The Corinthian believers were spiritual braggards, constantly seeking the spotlight of public attention. They wanted the showier gifts. They all wanted to talk at once, especially when speaking ecstatically. Most of their tongues-speaking was counterfeited, yet they bragged about it, as many Charismatics today. They cared nothing for Church harmony, order or edification, only for flaunting themselves.

“How is it then, brethren? When ye come together, every one of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine, hath a tongue, hath a revelation, hath an interpretation. Let all things be done unto edifying.” I Cor. 14:26.

Each did his own thing, as publicly as possible, to draw attention to himself, while disregarding what others were doing.

5. Love is NOT ARROGANT (is not puffed up, 13:4).

The Corinthians believers thought that they had arrived at perfection. None of us have any reason to boast because every good gift comes from God. They were arrogant & proud about their spiritual gifts. John the Baptist said of Christ, “He must increase, but I must decrease.” John 3:30.

“pride, arrogancy, and the evil way, and the froward (bragging, arrogant) mouth, do I hate.” Prov. 8:13. Pride and arrogance bred strife, filling their church. Arrogance is big-headed, love is big-hearted.

6. Love does NOT BEHAVE ITSELF UNSEEMLY (13:5) or RUDELy.

The loveless person is impolite, bad mannered, crude, careless of people's feelings or sensitivities. When the Corinthians came to the love feast, they were greedy to eat first and became drunken (11:21). During worship services, each one tried to outdo the other in speaking in tongues, each speaking at once. Many Christians have forfeited the privilege of sharing the gospel by being rude to an unbeliever who offends them. The rude messenger can become a barrier to the gospel.

In Charismatic churches, women are "slain in the Spirit," sprawled on the floor, while altar workers cover their thighs and underwear with rugs to minimize their indecent exposure. The Holy Spirit would not endorse indecent exposure in God's people. "Love does not behave itself unseemly." (13:5). God is not the author of confusion (14:33), nor of indecent behaviour. This slaying is not of the Holy Spirit.

7. Love SEEKS NOT HER OWN (not selfish, 13:5).

An English tombstone reads:

"Here lies a miser who lived for himself, and cared for nothing but gathering wealth. Now where he is or how he fares, nobody knows and nobody cares."

In contrast, a plain tombstone in St. Paul's Cathedral reads:

"Sacred to the memory of General Charles Gordon, who at all times and everywhere gave his strength to the weak, his substance to the poor, his sympathy to the suffering, his heart to God."

"Love seeks not her own" is probably the key to everything. Fallen sinful human nature wants to have its own way. Adam and Eve rejected God's way so that they could seek their own way. Self replaced God. Love is not preoccupied with its own things, but with the interests of others. Philippians 2:4.

The Corinthian believers were examples of what loving Christians should **not** be. They were extremely selfish. They did not share their food at love feasts. They sued each other in courts. They wanted what they thought were the "best" spiritual gifts for themselves. They should have used their spiritual gifts for the benefit of others, but instead they used them to make themselves feel good, building up themselves. Jesus, however, is our perfect model, living his life for others, never seeking his own welfare, but always the welfare of others.

8. Love is NOT EASILY PROVOKED (13:5).

Provoke means to arouse to anger. Love guards against being irritated, upset or angered by things said or done against it. Paul does not include righteous indignation here. Jesus was righteously angry with how the Pharisees mistreated the weak and opposed the Word of God, and how they made His Father's house into a den of thieves. (Matthew 21:11,12,13). But when Jesus was personally abused, He did not become angry. Paul and Christ were only angered by things that angered God. Paul did not become angry or easily provoked at those who beat him, jailed him or lied about him. Love never reacts in retaliation or revenge. The person who wants his own way is easily provoked. When everyone seeks his own rights, everyone grabs, no one gives and everyone loses. Love considers nothing its right, but everything its obligation. Telling our spouses that we love them is false if we continually get upset and angry at what they say and do. Telling our children that we love them is false if we often yell at them for doing things that irritate us. Love that seeks the welfare of others is the only cure for self-centredness.

9. Love THINKS NO EVIL (13:5) (not keeping record of wrongs suffered).

Keeping record of things done against us is a sure way to our and others unhappiness. "Thinks no evil" in Greek, is "logizomai" meaning "take into account," a book-keeping term for keeping a permanent record. When God pardons those who receive Christ as Saviour, He keeps no more record of their sins. "Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute (take into account) sin." Romans 4:8.

Love forgives, keeping no books, because it holds no resentment or grudges. If God so completely and permanently erases the record of our many sins against Him, how much more should we forgive and forget the much lesser wrongs done against us?

10. Love DOES NOT REJOICE IN INIQUITY (13:6) (sin).

Love never gets satisfaction from sin, whether ours or others. Doing wrong is bad, bragging about sin is worse. To rejoice in sin is to make wrong appear right. "Woe to them that call evil good, and good evil: that put darkness for light, and light for darkness...." Isaiah 5:20.

This is turning God's truth upside down. Many magazines, books and TV programs glorify sin and rejoice in unrighteousness. They teach that anything goes and that everyone sets their own standards of right and wrong. They say "Right is doing what you want." Sometimes rejoicing in iniquity takes the form of hoping that someone will fall into sin or trouble. Rejoicing in sin is wrong because:

- a) We are delighting in what **offends** and **grieves** God. When we enjoy sin, we prove our lack of love for God. Gossip reveals others sins and hurts them. Gossip is gloating over others shortcomings and sins. Gossip that is true is still gossip. A person is never helped by spreading the news of his sin.
- b) It produces **harmful consequences** to the sinner. He is out of fellowship with God.

11. Love REJOICES IN THE TRUTH (13:6) (The Word of God).

Righteousness is based on God's truth. Love rejoices in Bible truth and in sound doctrine. Love cannot tolerate wrong doctrine. What people believe, affects their well-being now, their eternal destiny and their understanding of God's will. Love will not compromise the truth, because it is unkind to mislead people by our failure to stand up for the truth. Love, truth and righteousness are connected. Love looks for the good, hopes for the good and emphasizes the good. Love rejoices in people living the truth.

12. Love BEARS (covers, supports, protects) **ALL THINGS.** (13:7).

The four qualities in 13:7 are hyperbole, the "all things" are exaggerations to make a point. Love rejects envy, bragging, arrogance, rudeness, selfishness, easy provocation, evil thoughts and sin. "All things" means all things acceptable to God's will. "Bear" means to cover, support and protect others from exposure, ridicule or harm. "Love covereth all sins." Proverbs 10:12. We measure our love for a person by how quick we are to cover his faults. For example, when one of our children does something wrong, we cover his faults by saying "He's a good boy, he didn't mean it." When someone we don't like does wrong, we say "That's typical of him." Love does not justify sin or compromise with error, but love warns, corrects, encourages, rebukes and disciplines. Love does not expose readily or broadcast wrongs. **Note:** Love feels the pain of those it loves and helps them carry the burden or hurt. True love is willing to bear the consequences of the sin of those it loves. "He was bruised for our iniquities." Isaiah 53:5. "Bear ye one another's burdens, and so fulfil the law of Christ." Galatians 6:2.

Fallen human nature has a perverse pleasure in exposing other's faults and failures.

13. Love BELIEVES ALL THINGS (13:7), not gullibly, but only on the basis of facts.

Love is not suspicious or cynical. Love believes all things in two ways:

- a) It believes in the **best outcome** for the wrongdoer, that the wrong will be confessed, forgiven, and restored to fellowship.
- b) If there is a doubt about a person's guilt or motivation, love will always conclude the most favourable possibility. Love will consider an accused person **innocent until proven guilty**. When a person fails, let us help them come good. For example:
 - i) **Job's** friends gave him no benefit of the doubt, because they had no true love for him. They were ready to believe the worst about him.
 - ii) The **Scribes** and **Pharisees** showed lovelessness by seeing the worst in others.

When Jesus forgave and healed the paralyzed man (Mark 2:1-12), the Pharisees accused him of blasphemy. Hatred believes the worst, love believes the best.

14. Love HOPES all things (13:7).

Even when a friend disappoints us, love still hopes. Failure is never final where God's grace is operating. For example, God would not take Israel's failure as final. Jesus would not take Peter's failure as final, and Paul would not take the Corinthian's failure as final. Bible promises give hope to encourage our prayers. We all hope that a rebellious child, a wayward spouse, an erring believer will be restored. Love refuses to take failure as final. "And now abideth faith, **hope** and charity..." (13:13).

15. Love ENDURES all things (13:7).

To endure ("Hupomeno" in Greek) was a military term used of an army holding a vital position at all costs. Every hardship and suffering was to be endured to hold on. Love holds fast to those it loves. Love endures all things at all costs. Love commits to others in good and bad times, for better or for worse.

Conclusion: Let us develop these qualities of love by developing our relationship with Christ.

Let us be givers to God and others and not just takers.

72. GUIDANCE: HOW TO FIND the WILL OF GOD

Bible Reading: I Thessalonians 5:12-23.

Aim: As Christians, we must renounce our will and be committed to doing God's will all our life. A problem every Christian faces is how to find God's will in daily decision making. Jesus Christ always fulfilled God's will for His life. "I have finished the work which thou gave me to do." John 17:4 "I come to do thy will, O God." Hebrews 10:7.

As Jesus was assigned a specific task to perform on earth, so each Christian is also assigned a special task. It is our responsibility to find and obey God's plan for our life.

I. GOD HAS A PLAN FOR EACH LIFE.

1. This plan is **suit**ed to our talents, personalities, needs, potential and environment. "For we are his **workmanship**, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them." Ephesians 2:10.
2. There is a **different plan** for each one of us. Paul said, "I have finished **my** course." II Timothy 4:7. "Let us run with patience the race that is set before us." Hebrews 12:1. "The God of our fathers hath chosen thee, that thou should know His will." Acts 22:14. God wanted Paul (and us) to know God's particular will for our lives. "I will instruct thee and teach thee in the way that thou shalt go: I will guide thee with my eye." Psalm 32:8.
3. God's plan is **very detailed**, step by step. "The steps of a good man are ordered by the Lord." Psalm 37:23. God doesn't always reveal the distant future, but He leads us step by step, day by day.
4. God's plan is **continuous**. "The Lord shall guide thee continually." Isaiah 58:11.
5. God's plan is **definite** and specific. "Thine ears shall hear a word behind thee saying, this is the way, walk ye in it." (Isaiah 30:21). The Lord guides us by His Holy Spirit through His Word.
6. God wants us to **enquire** about His plan and its daily details. "Cause me to know the way wherein I should walk." Psalm 143:8.
7. The will of God for you is always **good, acceptable** and **perfect**. "That ye may prove what is that good, acceptable and perfect will of God." Romans 12:2.

II. GOD'S PLAN CAN BE MISSED.

Sadly, it is possible for us to miss God's plan by seeking our own selfish, stubborn ways and plans. "O that thou had hearkened to my commandments, then had thy peace been as a river." Isaiah 48:18

III. GOD'S PLAN ALWAYS INCLUDES CERTAIN FEATURES.

1. **Sanctification** and **separation** from sin unto holiness. "For this is the will of God, even your sanctification." I Thessalonians 4:3. God is holy and He wills us to be holy.
2. **Supplication**, prayer and thanksgiving. "Pray without ceasing." I Thessalonians 5:17.
3. Be **Spirit filled**. "Quench not the spirit." I Thessalonians 5:19.
4. Be **submissive** to the Word of God. "Despise not prophesyings." I Thessalonians 5:20.
5. Be **saying thanks**. "In everything give thanks; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you." I Thessalonians 5:18.
6. Be **sexually pure**. "This is the will of God.....that ye should abstain from fornication." I Thessalonians 4:3.
7. Be **sober**. "Let us.....be sober." I Thessalonians 5:8.
8. Be **serene**. "Comfort one another." I Thessalonians 4:18. "Be at peace among yourselves." I Thessalonians 5:13.
9. Be **suffering**. "We told you before that we should suffer tribulation." I Thessalonians 3:3,4.
10. Be **surrendered**. "That ye should walk worthy of God." I Thessalonians 2:12.
11. Be **well doing**. "For so is the will of God, that with well doing ye may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men." I Peter 2:15.
12. Be **saved**. "Not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance." II Peter 3:9.

IV. METHODS OF GUIDANCE.

Question: How do we find God's will for our life in any situation?

How does God reveal His will to the seeking individual? God's methods are:

1. **The Bible.** Ask: "What Bible verses relate to this question that I need to apply?" Saturate yourself with the Word of God so that God can bring relevant verses to your mind. God's will is never contrary to the Bible.
2. **Circumstances - open or closed doors.** God, by circumstances, closes one door and opens another. "A great door and effectual is opened unto me, and there are many adversaries." I Corinthians 16:9. "I have set before thee an open door." Rev. 3:8. Nothing happens to Christians by accident. Each item is planned by God. We accept circumstances as guideposts in His leading. In driving, red lights are equally valuable as green lights. When we get a stop sign, we must wait patiently for God to guide us.
3. **Prayer.** "Ye have not because ye ask not." James 4:2.
 - i) Don't worry: be careful for nothing.
 - ii) Pray about everything: by prayer and supplication.
 - iii) Be thankful for past and present blessings: with thanksgiving.
 - iv) Let your requests be made known unto God.
 - v) Results: the peace of God that passes all understanding shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus. Philippians 4:6,7.
4. **Peace of God** must be sought before acting. How do we get the peace of God?
 - a) Be **filled with the Spirit** then you'll exhibit the fruit of the Spirit of love, joy, peace. Gal. 5:22.
 - b) **Occupation with Christ.** "He is our peace." Ephesians 2:14.
 - c) Endeavour to keep the **unity** of the Spirit in the bond of peace. Ephesians 4:3.
 - d) Be **crucified to the world, and glory in the cross.** "God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom the world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world. As many as walk according to this **rule, peace** be on them and mercy." Galatians 6:14-16.
 - e) **Preach the Gospel of peace.** "Feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace." Eph. 6:15
 - f) **Prayer** brings the peace of God that passes understanding. Philippians 4:6,7.
 - g) **Think** on things that are **true, honest, just, pure, lovely, good report, virtue and praise....**the God of peace shall be with you. Philippians 4:8,9.
 - h) Be **content.** "I have learned in whatsoever state I am therewith to be content." Philippians 4:11.
 - i) Put on **mercy, kindness, humility, meekness, longsuffering, forbearing and forgiving** one another. **Put on charity.** Be thankful. Let the peace of God rule in your hearts. Coloss. 3:12-15.
 - j) **Esteem the pastor** very highly in love for his work's sake. Be at peace among yourselves. I Thessalonians 5:13. If church members all submit to the pastor, as the pastor walks with the Lord, you'll have peace in your church.
 - k) **Live peacefully** with all men. Romans 12:18.
 - l) **Don't have fights** with people. Revelation 6:4.
5. **Good Advisors** - "In the multitude of counsellors there is safety." Proverbs 11:14.

V. QUESTIONS TO ASK TO DISCOVER GOD'S WILL.

Q1: Will it hinder my service to God? Is it a **weight**? "Lay aside every weight..." Hebrews 12:1.

Q2: Does it **advance God's plans** for my life?

Q3: Am I **yoking up with unbelievers**? II Cor. 6:14-18. Unbeliever's goals are to make money for themselves. Your goal is to serve God. **Don't ever enter a business partnership or marriage with an unbeliever!** You will lose and have a fight.

Q4: Am I **listening to the advice** of the **ungodly or unbelievers**? Psalm 1:1.

Q5: Is someone telling me a **lie**? Can I trust them? How do I know? How well do I know them? Are they experienced over many years in their field?

Q6: What **future problems** will this action lead to? (eg. who can stop my project, extort money or charge me excessively if a problem arises?).

Q7: **How much will it cost EXACTLY?** Are there any hidden costs or extras?

- Q8:** Why must I decide now? **Wait** up to one week after gaining all the facts to make your decision if it will **bind** you, so that you can reflect, get more information and ask more people. Keep your options open. Try to make the deal less binding rather than more binding.
- Q9:** Is this decision going to **bind me** in some way to other people who can hurt me? eg. they may get me over a barrel and extort money out of me, or do evil things to me.
- Q10:** Are people putting pressure on me to decide quickly to their advantage? Why?
- Q11:** Is it the voice of **my desires**, or is it what **God wants** me to do?
- Q12:** What **other options** exist?
- Q13:** Have I discussed this with three other expert advisors?
- Q14:** If in doubt, **DON'T!!!!** Wait on God. You might find a better opportunity shortly.

73. TWELVE “TONGUE TAMERS”

If we memorize these verses and use them to control our tongue, then we will have victory over the consequences of bad words. Ask the Lord to set a guard over our tongue so that we only say things that are pleasing to Him.

1. “He that keepeth his mouth keepeth his life; but he that openeth wide his lips shall have destruction.” Proverbs 13:3.
2. “Seest thou a man that is hasty in his words? there is more hope of a fool than of him.” Prov. 29:20
3. “He that answereth a matter before he heareth it, it is folly and shame unto him.” Proverbs 18:13.
4. “Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment.” Matthew 12:36.
5. “Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers.” Ephesians 4:29.
6. “A man hath joy by the answer of his mouth: and a word spoken in due season, how good is it!” Proverbs 15:23.
7. “Whose keepeth his mouth and his tongue keepeth his soul from troubles.” Proverbs 21:23.
8. “A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous words stir up anger....A wholesome tongue is a tree of life: but perverseness therein is a breach in the spirit.” Proverbs 15:1,4.
9. “Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise: and he that shutteth his lips is esteemed a man of understanding.” Proverbs 17:28.
10. “The words of a talebearer are as wounds, and they go down into the innermost parts of the belly.” Proverbs 18:8.
11. “For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile.” I Peter 3:10.
12. “If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man’s religion is vain.” James 1:26.



74. 49 CHARACTER QUALITIES

Copyright 1982, Institute in Basic Life Principles. Used by permission.

QUALITY	DEFINITIONS
1. ALERTNESS vs. Unawareness	Being aware of the physical and spiritual events taking place around me so that I can have the right responses to them. (See Mark 14:38.)
2. ATTENTIVENESS vs. Unconcern	Showing the worth of a person by giving undivided attention to his words and emotions. (See Hebrews 2:1.)
3. AVAILABILITY vs. Self-centeredness	Adjusting my personal responsibilities around the needs of those whom I am serving. (See Philippians 2:20-21.)
4. BOLDNESS vs. Fearfulness	Confidence that what I have to say or do is true and right and just in the sight of God. (See Acts 4:29.)
5. CAUTIOUSNESS vs. Rashness	Knowing how important right timing is in accomplishing right actions. (See Proverbs 19:2.)
6. COMPASSION vs. Indifference	Investing whatever is necessary to heal the hurts of others. (See I John 3:17.)
7. CONTENTMENT vs. Covetousness	Realizing God has provided everything I need for my present happiness. (See I Timothy 6:8.)
8. CREATIVITY vs. Under-achievement	Applying God's wisdom and practical insights to a need or task. (See Romans 12:2.)
9. DECISIVENESS vs. Double-mindedness	The ability to finalize difficult decisions based on the will and ways of God. (See James 1:5.)
10. DEFERENCE vs. Rudeness	Limiting my freedom to speak and act in order not to offend the tastes of others. (See Romans 14:21.)
11. DEPENDABILITY vs. Inconsistency	Fulfilling what I consented to do even if it means unexpected sacrifice. (See Psalm 15:4.)
12. DETERMINATION vs. Faint-heartedness	Purposing to accomplish God's goals in God's time regardless of the opposition. (See II Timothy 4:7-8.)

QUALITY

DEFINITIONS

- | | |
|--|---|
| 13. DILIGENCE
vs.
Slothfulness | Visualizing each task as a special assignment from the Lord and using all my energies to accomplish it.
(See Colossians 3:23.) |
| 14. DISCERNMENT
vs.
Judgment | The God given ability to understand why things happen to others and to me.
(See I Samuel 16:7.) |
| 15. DISCRETION
vs.
Simple-mindedness | The ability to avoid words, actions, and attitudes which could result in undesirable consequences.
(See Proverbs 22:3.) |
| 16. ENDURANCE
vs.
Giving up | The inward strength to withstand stress to accomplish God's best.
(See Galatians 6:9.) |
| 17. ENTHUSIASM
vs.
Apathy | Expressing with my spirit the joy of my soul.
(See I Thessalonians 5:16-19.) |
| 18. FAITH
vs.
Presumption | Visualizing what God intends to do in a given situation and acting in harmony with it. (See Hebrews 11:1.) |
| 19. FLEXIBILITY
vs.
Resistance | Not setting my affections on ideas or plans which could be changed by God or by others. (See Colossians 3:2.) |
| 20. FORGIVENESS
vs.
Rejection | Cleaning the record of those who have wronged me and allowing God to love them through me. (See Ephesians 4:32.) |
| 21. GENEROSITY
vs.
Stinginess | Realizing that all I have belongs to God and using it for His purposes.
(See II Corinthians 9:6.) |
| 22. GENTLENESS
vs.
Harshness | Showing personal care and concern in meeting the needs of others.
(See I Thessalonians 2:7.) |
| 23. GRATEFULNESS
vs.
Unthankfulness | Making known to God and others in what ways they have benefited my life.
(See I Corinthians 4:7.) |
| 24. HOSPITALITY
vs.
Loneliness | Cheerfully sharing food, shelter, and spiritual refreshment with those whom God brings into my life.
(See Hebrews 13:2.) |

QUALITY

DEFINITIONS

25. HUMILITY
vs.
Pride
26. INITIATIVE
vs.
Unresponsiveness
27. JOYFULNESS
vs.
Self-pity
28. JUSTICE
vs.
Fairness
29. LOVE
vs.
Selfishness
30. LOYALTY
vs.
Unfaithfulness
31. MEEKNESS
vs.
Anger
32. OBEDIENCE
vs.
Willfulness
33. ORDERLINESS
vs.
Disorganization
34. PATIENCE
vs.
Restlessness
35. PERSUASIVENESS
vs.
Contentiousness
36. PUNCTUALITY
vs.
Tardiness
- Seeing the contrast between God's holiness and my sinfulness. (See James 4:6.)
- Recognizing and doing what needs to be done before I am asked to do it. (See Romans 12:21.)
- The result of knowing that God is perfecting His life in others through me. (See Proverbs 15:13.)
- Personal responsibility to God's unchanging laws. (See Micah 6:8.)
- Giving to others basic needs without having personal reward as my motive. (See I Corinthians 13:3.)
- Using difficult times to demonstrate my commitment to God and to those whom He has called me to serve. (See John 15:13.)
- Yielding my personal rights and expectations to God. (See Psalm 62:5.)
- Fulfilling instructions so that God and the one I am serving will be fully satisfied. (See II Corinthians 10:5.)
- Arranging my life and surroundings so that God has maximum freedom to achieve His goals through me. (See I Corinthians 14:40.)
- Accepting a difficult situation from God without giving Him a deadline to remove it. (See Romans 5:3-4.)
- Using words which cause the listener's spirit to confirm that he is hearing truth. (See II Timothy 2:24.)
- Showing respect for other people and the limited time that God has given to them. (See Ecclesiastes 3:1.)

QUALITY

DEFINITIONS

37. RESOURCEFULNESS
vs.
Wastefulness
38. RESPONSIBILITY
vs.
Unreliability
39. REVERENCE
vs.
Disrespect
40. SECURITY
vs.
Anxiety
41. SELF-CONTROL
vs.
Self-indulgence
42. SENSITIVITY
vs.
Callousness
43. SINCERITY
vs.
Hypocrisy
44. THRIFTINESS
vs.
Extravagance
45. THOROUGHNESS
vs.
Incompleteness
46. TOLERANCE
vs.
Prejudice
47. TRUTHFULNESS
vs.
Deception
48. WISDOM
vs.
Natural Inclinations
49. VIRTUE
vs.
Impurity
- Wise use of that which others would normally overlook or discard. (See Luke 16:10.)
- Knowing and doing what both God and others are expecting from me. (See Romans 14:12.)
- Awareness of how God is working through the people and events in my life to produce the character of Christ in me. (See Proverbs 23:17-18.)
- Structuring my life around what is eternal and cannot be destroyed or taken away. (See John 6:27.)
- Instant obedience to the initial promptings of God's Spirit. (See Galatians 5:24-25.)
- Knowing by the prompting of God's Spirit what words and actions will benefit the lives of others. (See Romans 12:15.)
- Eagerness to do what is right with transparent motives. (See I Peter 1:22.)
- Not letting myself or others spend that which is not necessary. (See Luke 16:11.)
- Realizing that each of our tasks will be reviewed and rewarded by God. (See Proverbs 18:15.)
- Viewing every person as a valuable individual whom God created and loves. (See Philippians 2:2.)
- Earning future trust by accurately reporting past facts. (See Ephesians 4:25.)
- Seeing and responding to life's situations from God's frame of reference. (See Proverbs 9:10.)
- The influence God is having on others through my life regardless of my past failures. (See II Peter 1:3.)

75. GOD'S FAITHFULNESS IN TRIALS AND TESTINGS

Bible Reading: Job 23:1-17; Philippians 4:6,7.

Aim: To increase our faith in God and His Word, so that we have peace in all situations of life.

Introduction:

Peace means "knowing what to do whatever comes. It is knowing that every situation and every area of our lives are in God's competent hands."

Peace means that God cannot fail. If we sin against God, we are missing God's best; but as we humbly seek God's will and obey it, we have God's promise that "all things work together for good to them that love God." Romans 8:28.

As we go through the trials and testings of life, let us comfort one another with these promises of God:

1. GOD KNOWS ALL THAT ENTERS OUR LIVES.

"He knoweth the way that I take: when he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold." Job 23:10.

"I will be glad and rejoice in thy mercy: for thou hast considered my trouble; thou hast known my soul in adversities." Psalm 31:7.

"The Lord is good, a stronghold in the day of trouble; and he knows them that trust in Him." Nahum 1:7
God loves us in spite of what we are, and in spite of our sins.

"O LORD thou hast searched me, and known me. Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar off. Thou compassest my path and my lying down, and art acquainted with all my ways. For there is not a word in my tongue, but lo, O LORD, thou knowest it altogether. Thou has beset me behind and before, and laid thine hand upon me." Psalm 139:1-5.

God knows our needs long before we do. He is never surprised. Problems are allowed into our life by God for **our good** and for **His glory**.

"That no man should be moved by these afflictions: for yourselves know that we are appointed thereunto. For verily, when we were with you we told you before that we should suffer tribulation; even as it came to pass, and ye know." I Thessalonians 3:3,4.

2. GOD CARES.

God tells us that He cares for us in every trial and sorrow. "God is our refuge and strength, a very present help in trouble, therefore will we not fear." Psalm 46:1,2.

"Cast thy burden upon the Lord and he shall sustain thee: He shall never suffer the righteous to be moved." Psalm 55:22.

"Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me;.....my yoke is easy and my burden is light." Matthew 11:28-30.

"Casting all your care upon Him, for He careth for you." I Peter 5:7.

3. GOD IS ABLE.

People may know and care, but only God is able. How able is God? "Call unto me and I will answer thee and show thee great and mighty things that thou knowest not." Jeremiah 33:3.

"He will be our guide even unto death." Psalm 48:14.

"Call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee and thou shalt glorify me." Psalm 50:15.

"Now unto him that is **able** to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us." Ephesians 3:20.

"God is **able** to make **all** grace abound toward you; that ye **always** having **all** sufficiency in **all** things, may abound to **every** good work." II Corinthians 9:6-11.

4. GOD HAS A PURPOSE.

God has never done anything without a purpose.

Question: What are some of God's purposes for allowing trials and testings to enter our lives?

Answer:

- a) **To draw us to Christ** as Saviour. As long as things run smoothly most adults are complacent and see no need for Christ.

- b) **To prove His sufficiency.** When we give our problems to God, we get what God can do. "Give us help from trouble; for vain is the help of man. Through God we shall do valiantly: for He it is that shall tread down our enemies." Psalm 108:12,13.
 "Thus saith the LORD; Cursed be the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm, and whose heart departeth from the LORD. For he shall be like the heath in the desert, and shall not see when good cometh; but shall inhabit the parched places in the wilderness, in a salt land and not inhabited. Blessed is the man that trusteth in the LORD, and whose hope the LORD is. For he shall be as a tree planted by the waters, and that spreadeth out her roots by the river, and shall not see when heat cometh, but her leaf shall be green; and shall not be careful in the year of drought, neither shall cease from yielding fruit. The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked; who can know it?
 I the LORD search the heart, I try the reins, even to give every man according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings." Jeremiah 17:5-10.
 God allows adversity that we might be aware of our need for Him.
- c) **For God and His glory.** "We know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose." Romans 8:28.
 We must praise God when shattering things come into our lives because God is going to teach us something of His greatness.
- d) **To draw us to God's Word and to Prayer.** "The LORD God is a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly." Psalm 84:11.

Question: When testings come, where do we turn for help?

Answer: God's Word.

Question: When do we mean business most in prayer?

Answer: When the pressure is great and the heart is heavy. Jesus Christ is far more precious when we've been through trials, and watched Him deliver us as we trust Him.

"I walked a mile with **pleasure**,
 She chatted all the way,
 But not a thing I learned from her,
 For all she had to say.

I walked a mile with **sorrow**,
 And not a word said she,
 But oh, the things I learned from her,
 When sorrow walked with me."

Question: When have you learned the most?

Answer: When sorrows came.

Question: How are we going to know that we have a God who is faithful?

Answer: By going through testings.

Question: How did Daniel know that he had a God who shut lion's mouths?

Answer: By experiencing the trial of it, and seeing God give the victory.

We need to **know** this
 We need to say **with authority**
 "God will bring you through.
 I tested Him and He brought me through.
 I'm convinced He can bring you through."

Question: Why did Job go through all that trouble?

Answer: To be an example for our learning. "For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our **learning** that we through **patience** and **comfort** of the Scriptures might have **hope**." Romans 15:4.

Trials are to teach us that we might be convinced of the kind of God we have.

e) **Chastening.** "For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth." Hebrews 12:6.

God corrects and trains us.

The results of chastening are:

- i) We give God reverence. "Furthermore we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence: shall we not much rather be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, and live?" Hebrews 12:9.
- ii) Our profit. So we become holy. "For they verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure: but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness." Hebrews 12:10.
- iii) Peace and righteousness. "Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous; nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby." Hebrews 12:11.

Unless God puts His finger on some matter needing correcting, we need not assume that some suffering is chastening. God allows problems even when we are in the middle of His will.

f) **To minister to others.**

Question: How does God prepare us to minister to others?

Answer: "Blessed be God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies and the God of all comfort; Who comforteth us in **all our tribulation** that we may be able to comfort them which are in any trouble, by the comfort wherewith we ourselves are comforted of God." II Corinthians 1:3,4.

Where are you going to get comfort from: God or man? **Comfort** means to strengthen others with the same strength that strengthens us in our need.

Note: If you point people to anyone but Christ, you haven't properly comforted them. God comforts us, not just to make us comfortable, but to make us comforters. The same hand that puts us in the oven controls the heat and the timing also. Sometimes God wants to bring us to **yield to Him** and **allow Him** to have His way.

Then the sooner we submit to God, the sooner the trial can be removed.

CONCLUSION:

Being convinced that God knows, God cares, God is able, and that God has a purpose; how do I apply this to my need? **HOW?**

Don't just pray about it, but give the problem to the Lord.

"Casting all your care upon Him, for He careth for you." I Peter 5:7.

All events are permitted by God.

Realize that:

- a) God has a **perfect plan** for my life.
- b) As I **allow** Christ to **takeover** my life, He's going to bring me through hard places and sunny places.
- c) In either case I'm going to **thank Him**.

God told Paul, "My grace is **sufficient for you.**"

Paul's conclusion in all suffering was:

"Not that I speak in respect of want: for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content. I know both how to be abased, and I know how to abound: every where and in all things I am instructed both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me." Philippians 4:11-13.

Job, Elijah, Paul and others learned that God is sufficient in our testings.

Sometimes we must be brought to a place where Christ is **all we have** so that we might discover that Christ is **all we need**. Have you reached this point?

76. EIGHTEEN DEVICES SATAN USES AGAINST US

Bible Reading: II Corinthians 2:1-7.

Aim: To know and to reject the main devices that Satan uses against us.

Introduction:

"Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices." II Corinthians 2:11.
To grasp victory, we must know the strong points or devices that Satan uses against us.
Notice the 18 Deadly Devices of Satan.

1. DISAPPOINTMENT

We have all been disappointed by not getting what we wanted at times. But to the knowledgeable Christian, ALL disappointments are God's appointments and must be viewed as such, lest Satan gain the advantage. To be disappointed is to forget Romans 8:28 "We know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose."

2. DISCOURAGEMENT

Discouragement is the second stage. Disappointment leads to discouragement.

"Fear not, neither be discouraged...our brethren have discouraged our heart." Deuteronomy 1:21,28.

3. DESPAIR

Despair is the third stage of disappointment and discouragement. Unless checked, it can destroy your Christian life. To despair is to forget II Corinthians 4:8,

"We are troubled on every side, yet not distressed; we are perplexed, but not in despair."

To despair is to forget that God is working in our lives.

4. DOUBT

Satan attacked Eve in the Garden of Eden with doubt, by getting her to doubt God's Word. "He said unto the woman, yea, hath God said, ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?" Genesis 3:1.

To doubt is to forget to PRAY and to forget I Timothy 2:8,

"I will therefore that men pray everywhere, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting."

5. DISBELIEF

Disbelief is the final form of doubt. Genesis 3:4,5. To disbelieve is to forget Hebrews 3:12. "Take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God"

6. DISTRACTION

One can be side-tracked from God's perfect will by family or job. The real enemy of the BEST is not the WORST, but the GOOD. To be distracted is to forget Matthew 14:30, "But when he saw the wind boisterous, he was afraid; and beginning to sink, he cried, saying, Lord, save me."

7. DOUBLE MINDEDNESS

A "double minded" man in Greek means to be "double souled." To be double minded is to forget James 1:8 and 4:8, "A double minded man is unstable in all his ways." "Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded." Matthew 6:24; Ephesians 4:14; I John 2:15-17.

8. DISHONESTY

We can be dishonest by:

a) lying or cheating,

b) holding back certain facts, or

c) being less than we should be as pastors, parents or workers which is to cheat our people and children.

It is estimated that over \$500 million is raised each year by false "faith healers" who cannot do what they claim. To be dishonest is to forget 2 Corinthians 4:2, "But have renounced the hidden

things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the Word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God." Dishonesty comes by fear or by greed.

9. DECEIT

"With all deceivableness of unrighteousness." II Thessalonians 2:8-12.

"For we are not as many, which corrupt the Word of God." II Corinthians 2:17.

"Therefore seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not; but have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God." II Corinthians 4:1,2.

"For many deceivers are entered into the world." II John 1:7.

To be deceived is to forget Jeremiah 17:9,

"The heart is deceitful above all things and desperately wicked: who can know it?"

10. DULLNESS

Dullness means sleepiness to the things of God. The readers of Hebrews suffered dullness. They needed sound Bible teachers to bring them to their senses. Because they were dull, they could not be used by God. He states why: "For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat." Hebrews 5:12-14.

This dullness was also infecting the church of Corinth. Listen to Paul's stern admonition to them: "And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ. I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able. For ye are yet carnal: for whereas there is among you envying, and strife, and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?" I Corinthians 3:1-3.

To suffer dullness is to forget Hebrews 5:11, "Of whom we have many things to say, and hard to be uttered, seeing ye are dull of hearing."

11. DEADNESS

Deadness means unchecked dullness. Don't be dead like the Sardis Church, "I know thy works, that thou has a name that thou livest, and are dead." Revelation 3:1.

12. DEFAME

How often are Christians guilty of criticizing or belittling other believers. If we have something against a believer, tell him to his face. To defame someone is to forget Psalm 101:5, "Whoso privily slandereth his neighbour, him will I cut off: him that hath an high look and a proud heart will not I suffer."

13. DISCORD

Far more Bible believing churches have been split over discord than doctrine. Some trouble-maker begins his or her deadly gossip in a local church, raising questions and doubts in the minds of people, doubts that otherwise would have never been entertained. How effectively Satan uses this tool, and how painful it will be at the BEMA judgment seat of Christ for the carnal sowers of discord. To sow discord is to forget Proverbs 6:16-19, "These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto him: A proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood, an heart that deviseth wicked imaginations, feet that be swift in running to mischief, a false witness that speaketh lies, and he that soweth discord among brethren."

14. DEFILEMENT

Defilement with the things of the world. God insists upon clean vessels. A believer who defiles himself with the things of this world can never be fully used by God, regardless of his education, ability, energy or experience. To become defiled is to forget I Corinthians 3:16,17, "Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are."

15. DISCONTENT

One of Satan's favourite lies is to tell people that things will be better if they go elsewhere. For example, if they:

- a) change marriage partners,
- b) change churches.

Some people are always complaining. God says: "Be content with such things as ye have: for he hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee." Hebrews 13:5.

"Having food and raiment let us be therewith content." I Timothy 6:8.

"I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content." Philippians 4:11.

16. DELAY

Delay is used to, (a) postpone salvation; and (b) postpone service to God.

"I made haste and delayed not to keep thy commandments." Psalm 119:60.

17. DISOBEDIENCE

There are two famous men in the Bible named Saul.

- a) Both were from the tribe of Benjamin (I Samuel 9:2; Philippians 3:5).
- b) One was tall and impressive; the other short and unimpressive.
- c) OT Saul began as God's friend and ended up as God's enemy.
NT Saul started as God's enemy but ended up as God's friend.
- d) OT Saul went to the witch of Endor in his hour of death.

NT Saul turned to the Word of God in his hour of death.

What made the difference between these two men?

The Old Testament Saul was disobedient; the New Testament Saul was obedient.

"And Samuel said, Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because thou hast rejected the word of the Lord, he hath also rejected thee from being king." I Samuel 15:22,23.

To disobey is to forget Romans 6:14-18, "For sin shall not have dominion over you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness."

18. DEBT

"The rich ruleth over the poor, and the borrower is servant to the lender." Proverbs 22:7.

"Owe no man anything, but to love one another." Romans 13:8.

When we borrow money, we make ourselves vulnerable to many evils such as:

- a) Losing our job and being unable to pay the interest.
- b) Dishonest or incompetent business partners may steal or waste our money.
- c) The market price falling in what we are investing in so that we can't pay back the bank. As a result, the bank will take your house or other securities.
- d) Local councils or governments changing the laws to make your investment unprofitable, so that you can't sell the product for what you expected.
- e) Dishonest tradesman or builders who can threaten you by stopping a building project unless you pay whatever they ask. You can't get rid of them because no other builder wants to take on responsibility for another builder's possible mistakes.
- f) You can be tempted to be dishonest with money to bail yourself out.

Hence, great risks are associated with borrowing money. We should avoid debt because the devil can enslave us into working long hours to pay off bank interest and debt, so we have no time or energy left to serve the Lord.

Conclusion: Be sober, be vigilant. Don't be destroyed by Satan's devices.

77. NINE ISSUES THAT CONCERN YOUNG PEOPLE

Bible Reading: Proverbs 1:1-33.

Aim: To give Biblical answers to problems experienced by young people.

Introduction: Youth is a time when our values and future faith are being set. Some of peoples biggest mistakes are made in their youth that can badly affect the rest of their life.

Question: What issues are of most concern to young people?

Answer:

1. Whether you are accepted by the peer group.
2. Trusting God with your future in full surrender to Jesus Christ.
3. What career to choose?
4. What church to choose?
5. How to get on well with parents?
6. Choosing a boyfriend or girlfriend or spouse?
7. How to handle money wisely.
8. How to court Biblically, and reject sex before marriage?
9. How to cure boredom?

What does God's Word say about each of these questions?

1. PEER GROUP ACCEPTANCE.

Let these issues be your guidelines.

a) Reject and avoid an ungodly peer group. Psalm 1:1-6.

It is much better to have no friends than to have bad friends who will lead you astray. If you want Godly friends, pray to God and find them at Church. Friends need not be exactly your own age. We should relate well to people of all ages. If you have no or few friends your own age, make friends of older, mature Christians who will be able to teach you wisdom beyond your years. Remember, Jesus Christ is the best friend who sticks closer than a brother. Try to win people to Christ, teach them the Bible in a personal Bible study and you will have more friends than you can handle.

b) If you are naturally shy, then read the chapter on friendship, p.152.

He that hath friends must show himself friendly. Proverbs 18:24.

Be friendly and interested in others and they will be friendly and interested in you.

c) Remember that when you leave school, you may rarely ever see most of your classmates and peer group again. They go their way and you go your way on leaving school. So why be so concerned with earning their approval when they will probably never see you again, nor care enough about you to contact you later? Whether the peer group accepts you or not, is not important.

We ought to obey God, rather than men. Acts 5:29.

They loved the praise of men more than the praise of God. John 12:43.

Many cowardly Pharisees who believed on Jesus were too scared to confess Jesus openly for fear of being rejected by their fellow Pharisees. Don't you be a coward. When the bad peer group want you to sin by smoking, drinking alcohol, taking drugs, going to the bad movies, going to an unbiblical church, committing immorality or looking at bad magazines, just have nothing to do with them. Go find some better, Christian friends. **Aim to be popular with God**, as it is He that we will all have to give account of our lives to. Romans 14:12.

Key: If the bad group want you to do bad things **with** them today, they will do bad things **TO YOU** later on. If they are bad to God or others, they will be bad to you later.

2. TRUSTING GOD WITH YOUR FUTURE.

Many times when we are challenged to obey God, we think that we can't obey God because we may lose something. For example:

I can't come to church, because I have too much study.

I can't pray or read my Bible, because I'm too busy.

I can't say "no" to the bad crowd, because they may reject me.

Key: Whenever we can't see the future, it is an opportunity to trust God and to obey His Word, knowing that He will work things out for **our best**.

Question: Can you trust God to do the right thing by you? Can you trust God enough to even go through some suffering now while you do right, knowing that God is using suffering to teach you some important lessons that you will need later?

It is good that a man bear the yoke in his youth. Lamentations 3:27.

God wants to build character in us and sometimes suffering is the only way to do it. Sometimes we must use the lesson to **delay immediate gratification** in order to receive something better later on. For example, if you delay sex until marriage, you'll have more trust with your spouse. Study God's promises to us about His love, goodwill and provision, then we can be confident that He will guide us properly and do the right things for us in the future.

"**Seek ye first** the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and **all these** things shall be added unto you." Matthew 6:33. Memorize it and believe it.

3. WHAT CAREER DO I CHOOSE?

First, we must be absolutely committed to doing God's will for our life. God wants to use us to tell people how to be saved and to teach them the Bible. This should be our priority goal in life. We should aim to be a missionary. We should ask God if He wants us to be a missionary in Australia or overseas. If God wants you to receive some career training, ask Him what that might be and where you should study. It is clearly God's will that you **MUST NOT** study a course that is humanistic and anti-God in its course content. For example, you would not study social work at Sydney University because of its anti-Bible values.

"Learn not the way of the heathen." Jeremiah 10:2.

"Cease, my son, from hearing the instruction that causes to err from the words of knowledge." Proverbs 19:27.

If a lecturer teaches evolution, don't believe him on this subject.

Consider becoming self-employed, because greater freedom comes to serve God when you are your own boss. Aim to earn enough money to meet your own needs. Whatever God gives extra, give it to God's work to start fundamental, soul winning churches here and overseas. No matter what career you follow, you should consider **BIBLE COLLEGE TRAINING** either part-time or full-time so that you can properly understand and teach the Bible. Do not attend a non soul winning Bible College, or a para-church Bible College, or one that is not under your Pastor's authority, or one that teaches from a Modern Bible Version. Bible Colleges are the most dangerous places for you to get proud, backslide, hate your Pastor, leave your church, destroy your faith, and to apostatize. **BEWARE!!!!** Every Hebrew King had to write out a copy of the Bible in order to learn how to rule well. Deuteronomy 17:18-20. If the Bible is good enough for a King to learn, it's good enough for us to learn. Your life's goal should be to win or help win as many people to Christ as possible, to teach the Bible and to start many churches all over the world. This is the only thing that will last as having eternal value that we can invest our lives in.

4. WHAT CHURCH DO I CHOOSE?

A church must be an "ecclesia" meaning "called out of the world." If a church tries to be like the world to win the world, it is not a Biblical church. A true church must hold to the six principles of the doctrine of Christ in Hebrews 6:1,2 which are:

- a) **Repentance from dead works** - the prerequisite to salvation is that a sinner must forsake ALL hope in any works of his own as being able to earn salvation, such as baptism, good works, church attendance, etc. Ephesians 2:8-10.
- b) **Faith** towards God - salvation is by grace (God's undeserved favour), through faith in Christ (believing and claiming God's promises in the Bible), not of ourselves, but is a GIFT of God. It must be received, not earned. The act of receiving Christ as Saviour is the act of faith.
- c) **Baptisms** - of the Holy Spirit at salvation (1 Corinthians 12:13). and in water after salvation. Acts 10:47,48.
- d) **Laying on of Hands** - setting apart of men for a ministry. Acts 13:1-3.

e) **Resurrection of the dead** - Second Coming teaching must be premillennial, literal and visible return of Christ to the earth, along with the bodily resurrection of the just and the unjust.

f) **Eternal Judgment** - the unsaved upon dying go to a literal hell fire where they remain in torment (Luke 16:19-31) until the end of Christ's 1,000 year reign on the earth (Revelation 20:1-7). They are then resurrected, judged according to their works, and cast into a literal, never-ending, tormenting Lake of Fire (Revelation 20:10-15) prepared for the devil and his angels (Matthew 25:41,46).

II John 9,10,11 states that if anyone has not the doctrine of Christ, he has not God. Some churches do not hold to these teachings. We should not attend a church that breaks one of these six doctrines.

Some churches hold the following wrong doctrines:

- a) Some think that **baptism** makes a **baby** a **child of God**. See the extract from the Anglican Prayer Book Catechism. "...in my baptism; wherein I was made a member of Christ, the child of God, and an inheritor of the kingdom of heaven." John 1:12 refutes this heresy.
- b) Some **baptize babies**. Nowhere in the Bible do we see a baby being immersed.
- c) Some **sprinkle babies** and call it baptism, yet baptism in Greek clearly means "to immerse".
- d) **Confirmation** at age 7 or 14 by a minister laying hands on a person's head. Where is confirmation mentioned in the Bible? It arose because the false doctrine of infant baptism led to the false doctrine of confirmation.
- e) Some churches are **Amillennial** meaning that they don't teach prophecy or the second coming of Christ, not believing that Christ will return to earth to rule for 1,000 years of peace (Revelation 20). 25% of the Bible is prophecy of Christ's premillennial second coming before the 1,000 years. To reject this is to reject 25% of the Bible. How can you fellowship with a group that rejects 25% of the Bible?
- f) Some churches have ministers who wear **BLACK ROBES**. Where is this in the Bible? It is a carry over from the Roman Catholic Church, **which received it from paganism**.
- g) The **High Anglican Church** is 95% Roman Catholic.
- h) Some churches think it is all right to **ordain women** as Pastors. Yet Paul forbids this in I Timothy 2:12. "I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence." The male Pastor has authority in the church, not a lady.
- i) Many churches do not maintain **high standards** of behaviour. They allow a wide range of false beliefs and wrong doctrines in order to keep a large crowd attending. They are afraid to preach too hard against sin, error and false doctrines in case people leave their church, yet God wants us to be a holy church that is separated from error.
- j) Many churches tolerate the false **charismatic doctrines** of tongues, slaying in the spirit, false healings and false prophecies, etc.
- k) Many churches promote **modern versions** of the Bible which take verses out of God's Word. This doesn't seem to worry them, yet Christ states in Luke 8:12, "Then cometh the devil, and taketh away the word". The NIV removes 2% of the New Testament (2886 Gk words). Most don't notice or care.
- l) Many churches confuse the gospel of salvation by saying that people don't have to call on Christ for salvation. See John 4:10; Romans 10:13; Isaiah 55:6,7; Jeremiah 29:12,13.
- m) Some churches are **Modernist**, meaning that they deny the miracles in the Bible. Some Bible Colleges have lecturers who deny the Bible's miracles and think that the Bible is not the 100% inspired Word of God. They say that the Bible has mistakes and thus place themselves as a higher authority than the Bible. Some Baptist and Uniting Churches are plagued with these errors.
- n) Some churches, wishing to win young people, play **rock music** in their churches and **have dances**. Love not the world. Avoid worldly churches.
- o) Many churches are **not fervently soul winning**. If you got saved in an Independent Baptist Church, be loyal enough to stay where you got saved. Don't go off to another church that doesn't hold these values, hoping to find a girlfriend or boyfriend, or greener grass on the other side of the fence. Be content to stay where you are and work through any problems that you may have. Many people think they are running away from their problems, yet they are carrying their problems with them and unpacking them at their next stopover.

Question: What is wrong with Charismatic Churches?

1. Tongues - which are not for today. See the chapter explaining this. p.476-543.
2. False healing - they say "Come and be healed." If you don't get healed it's your fault because you haven't got enough faith. Yet dead Lazarus had no faith to be healed when dead. False advertising is lying.
3. Slaying people in the spirit – This is not in the Bible.
4. Word of prophecy - where some person comes and tells you a message supposedly from God to you. It's very hard to argue with God. This is his way of putting himself in an elevated position so that you find it hard to argue with God. He has privileged information that normal mortals don't have. Many of these "prophecies" prove to be wrong.
5. Modern versions of the Bible - because of their thousands of omissions. p.544-569.
6. Weak on standards and separation from evil. They'll join up with Roman Catholics any day of the week, as long as the priest speaks in tongues.

5. HOW TO GET ON WELL WITH PARENTS.

We have a problem today called the generation gap. Why? How did this develop?

Answer: It developed through the public school system, where children rebel against their parent's values and follow peer pressure to adopt their peers values in order to remain popular. Young people so much want to be accepted by their friends, or not to appear foolish in front of their peers that they will do almost anything to gain peer acceptance. When parents protest, they are called old fashioned and teens rebel even more.

Solution:

1. Teens must decide to **please God first** and not worry if their peers like them or not.
2. Young people must **trust God** to provide Godly friends
3. Young people must at all costs **reject** and **avoid** ungodly and bad friends from influencing them. See Psalm 1:1-6.
4. Young people must obtain their **ideas** and values from the **Bible** as they study it daily.
5. Children, **Obey** your parents in the Lord: for this is **right**. Ephesians 6:1; Colossians 3:20.
"Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise; that it may be **well** with thee, and thou mayest **live long** on the earth." Ephesians 6:1-3.

Three reasons are given why children should obey their parents:

1. This is **right**.
2. That it may be **well** with thee.
3. That thou may **live long** on the earth.

Young people, if you can submit to your parents and have a happy relationship with them, it is very likely that you will easily be able to submit to your spouse and have a happy marriage relationship.

Young men, if you want a good wife, watch how a young lady treats her father, because she'll treat you the same way.

Young ladies, if you want a good husband, watch how a young man treats his mother, because he'll treat you the same way.

Remember, young people, God's unchangeable law:

"Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man **soweth**, that shall he also **reap**." Gal. 6:7.
If you rebel against your parents now, your children or someone close to you will rebel against you later and break your heart. You may sin and get forgiveness from God, but you face two other problems:

- 1) **People** may not forgive you or trust you after you're sinned.
- 2) You may still have trouble with **bad consequences** years later for your sins, such as those people in jail, those who are addicted to drugs.

The world teaches rebellion and the Bible teaches obedience. When we obey God, parents and pastors, we are safe, because we are protected within their wall of authority. When a person rebels, he goes outside the wall of protection. He may feel freedom for a while, but the downside is that he is now in great danger to the many enemies that await him to destroy him such as drugs, AIDS, crime or false ideas that ruin people's lives. So, how can you get on well with your parents?

- a) **Obe**y them. When parents see that you obey them, they see that they can **trust** you, so they begin to relax the rules and give you more freedom, knowing that you are maturing in wisdom and are less likely to do silly things and ruin your life.
- b) **Respect** them. They are probably 30 years older than you which means that they have 30 years more experience than you. Because they love you and have given birth to you, have given you everything you have, done everything for you, fed, clothed and schooled you, you should respect, love and honour them in return.
- c) **Love** them, because they love you. It is right that we should love those who love us. Be thankful.
- d) **Communicate politely** with them. Many parents protest because their children spend so much time with their friends (or screen) that they never talk in depth with their parents. This causes parents to insist that their children stay at home. You must sit down and have a good talk with your mum and dad daily or weekly, just so that they know what you are doing.
- e) **Help them around the house**. This prepares you to manage your own house later. They have a big job cooking, ironing, paying bills and looking after you. So ask them what you can do to help.
- f) **Thank** them for what they've done for you such as cooking meals, ironing, working, etc. This helps you to develop a thankful attitude all through your life, especially to your future spouse. Then your children will be thankful and appreciative to you later.
- g) **See God speaking through their advice**. God gave you your parents to mould your character. God can use any faults that you think your parents have to teach you lessons for life. For example, if your father is easily angry, you learn not to be angry. God can reveal His will to you through your parent's advice.

6. CHOOSING A BOYFRIEND OR GIRLFRIEND OR SPOUSE.

Make a list of what you want in a spouse. They must be:

1. Saved.
2. Committed and dedicated to winning people to Christ and teaching the Bible.
3. Sound in doctrine and loyal to a fundamental, Biblical church.
4. Love and respect their parents.
5. Dress modestly.
6. Respect their pastor.
7. Not soon angry. "Make no friendship with an angry man, lest thou learn his ways and get a snare to thy soul." Proverbs 22:24.
8. Patient.
9. Wise, loving the Bible, loving God and wanting to serve God.
10. Hard worker, not lazy and not silly.

Do not let **physical attraction** blind you to the lack of other important qualities. Remember, you marry their brains as well as their bodies. When you are married, their problems become your problems. So marry a Godly person who will help lift your problems, not add to your problems. If you fight and argue a lot before you marry, you are sure to fight and argue a lot more after you are married. So marry someone that you don't fight and argue with.

Build the **spiritual** side of your relationship first as you both serve God together and study Bible issues together. Then develop **mental communication** and understanding as you get to know each other without interference of the physical side racing ahead.

Lastly, after you are married the **physical, sexual** side can have freedom to develop. Warning: if you allow the physical side to develop during courtship, it tends to hinder the growth of the spiritual and communication aspects, which so often leads to breaking up or divorce later.

7. HOW TO HANDLE MONEY WISELY

Money can be a good servant, or a very bad master. Money can bring great freedom to spread the Gospel, or money can be a great tyrant that enslaves you and hinders your work for the Lord. The love of money is the root of all evil. 1 Timothy 6:10.

Money is a gift from God, whereby **God tests our stewardship**, entrusting it to us to use to win people to Christ here and overseas.

Here are some key lessons to learn about money:

- a) Honour God with it by **giving God 10% of your income** and He will bless you in many different ways. Malachi 3:7-10; Luke 6:38; Leviticus 27:30,32.
- b) God entrusts some people with large sums of money for the purpose of spreading the Gospel all over the world. Should God entrust you with large sums of money, always remember that God has given it to you to use for **His purposes**.
"It is he that giveth thee power to get wealth." Deuteronomy 8:18.
You will have to give account to God in heaven as to how you have used this money to win people to Christ and build churches all over the world. If God can trust you with small amounts of money, He may trust you with large sums of money later. Luke 16:9-13.
- c) After giving 10% of your income to God, regularly and weekly, **save another 10% for later**, like the ant that saves food for later. Proverbs 30:25.
- d) Be willing to **get a job** and work hard, but never work on Sunday, except for a very good reason. Aim to attend two church services on Sunday. Don't let working for money keep you out of church. Ask God for a job that does not require working on Sunday. Exodus 20:8-11.
- e) Don't put a great percentage of your money into **depreciating assets** like cars.
- f) Aim to be **independent financially** and self-supporting so that you can retire from secular work early and serve the Lord as a full-time occupation.

8. HOW TO COURT BIBLICALLY, and WHY REJECT SEX BEFORE MARRIAGE

The movies and peers have greatly influenced the pursuit of immorality and having a physical relationship during courtship. We have to reject this as **CONTRARY** to God's ways in the Bible. God says: "It is **GOOD** for a man **NOT TO TOUCH** a woman. But to avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife...." 1 Corinthians 7:1,2.

"Treat the younger women as sisters, with **ALL PURITY**." 1 Timothy 5:2.

"This is the will of God... that ye should abstain from fornication... that no man go beyond and defraud his brother in any matter: because the Lord is the avenger of all such ... For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness...." 1 Thessalonians 4:3-8.

Fornicating is defrauding or robbing the girl's future husband of a pure bride (v.6). If you steal a girl's moral purity, God will take revenge on you for it with undesirable consequences. How?

God has many ways of disciplining disobedient humans.

If you don't like these moral standards, you are despising God. (v.8).

Keys to Biblical Courtship:

1. Pray for God to lead you to the girl of His choosing.
2. Go out in groups to minimize temptation.
3. Pray before each time you see her so that you will conduct yourself in a Christ-honouring manner.
4. Don't touch the girl, or you are likely to start the physical slide into fornication.
5. Develop good spiritual and mental communication.
6. Get home early.
7. Serve the Lord together, trying to win people to Christ and to teach the Bible together.
8. Be cheerful and filled with the Holy Spirit.

Why Reject Sex Before Marriage?

Within marriage, sex increases the commitment that binds two people together. Sex outside marriage has the opposite effect, becoming a wedge, a stumbling block, a hindrance to the development of mature love, very often breaking up the friendship altogether. Why does this happen?

1. **Sex before marriage prevents other aspects of the relationship from developing.**

Anybody can learn to kiss, but not everybody can learn to communicate meaningfully. Physical attraction is insufficient glue to build or maintain a lasting relationship. The qualities that hold a relationship together are **trust, honesty, respect, openness, deep friendship** and **spiritual intimacy** which take time and effort to develop. When you focus on the sexual/physical side, you

short circuit building these qualities and you end up with a poor foundation, without the spiritual communication developing first.

2. **Sex injects fear and guilt into the relationship.**

“Marriage is honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will **judge**.” Hebrews 13:4.

Guilt comes because premarital sex violates our God-given conscience. Fear comes because the male gets the **privilege of sex** without the **responsibility of commitment in marriage**. The female fears that he may leave her. She pesters him to get married. Since it may cost \$10,000 to get married (reception, ring, honeymoon, hire cars, dresses, hire suits etc), the male says that he **cannot afford** to get married right now so that she must wait till some indefinite time in the future. This is a subtle form of rejection. She worries and fears that he may never get around to marriage. She feels insecure, so she pesters him more to get married. He finally gets so sick of her nagging him that when he meets another likeable lady he finds an easy reason to leave lady number one. Then the family court enters the picture and there may be a splitting of his and her assets into 1/3 for him, 1/3 for her, and 1/3 for the lawyer. If there are any children, he must pay \$200 per week maintenance for his ex-partner to support the children and rent. This is how pre-marital sex can lead to financial hardship. Very often when couples live together without marrying they break up around age thirty and the girl finds that she has "missed the boat" and is unlikely to get married.

3. **Sex lays a foundation of distrust and lack of respect.**

She thinks that if he has sex with me outside of marriage, he may later on leave me to have sex with someone else if the opportunity presents itself. Mature love is based on the security of **exclusivity and permanence** of the relationship. If two people stay morally pure before marriage, each person feels a greater degree of security, trust and respect.

4. **Sex causes you to compare one person with previous partners.**

5. **Sex deceives you into thinking that you are in love.**

It is such an emotional thing that it can convince you that you are in love while overlooking other important factors that later on, when logic prevails, may make you dislike the person. Sex love can cause you to overlook his laziness, violence, drug addiction, lying, unfaithfulness, etc, all of which are a recipe for a disastrous relationship.

6. **The facts are against you:**

- a) Pre-marital sex tends to break up couples before marriage takes place.
- b) Those who have pre-marital sex are more likely to have their marriages end in divorce. For example, practising Christians' divorce rate is 1 in 1500, yet the community divorce rate is 700 in 1500. This is 700 times worse.
- c) Persons who had pre-marital sex are more likely to have extramarital affairs as well.
- d) Having pre-marital sex may fool you into marrying a person who is not right for you. Sex can blind you to a person's faults.

9. **HOW TO CURE BOREDOM**

- a) Get busy serving God. Teach a Sunday school class, run a Bible study, learn how to share the Gospel better and attend a doctrinally sound Bible College.
- b) Study the Bible and pray daily.
- c) Help your parents around the home and talk to them.
- d) Ring people to invite them to church.
- e) Pick people up and bring them to church.
- f) Study the Bible deeply, so that you really understand it well.
- g) Go out to share the Gospel weekly.

You think up a few more. Aim to prepare yourself for the Lord's work.

78. BARRIERS TO OBEDIENCE

Bible Reading: 1 Samuel 15:1-35.

Key: Faith is tested in the life of a Christian when obedience seems hard. After we are saved, faith and works are very closely linked. All disobedience is due to lack of faith.

WHEN IS OBEDIENCE HARD?

1. Sacrifice: Obedience is hard, when you think you'll lose out in some way. For example, Abraham sacrificed Isaac, his only son, at God's command. Sacrifice was a barrier to obedience, but faith overcame the barrier. Examples for us today are things like:

Purity in dating. It is a sacrifice not to touch, but I Corinthians 7:1 says "It is good for a man not to touch a woman."

Tithing. It is a sacrifice to tithe 1/10 of our income to God, thinking that we can't afford it because we have too many bills. People don't tithe because they have not the faith to trust God to bless them for giving. "Give and it shall be given you...." Luke 6:38.

When Israel did not keep the Sabbath for 490 years, God got all His Sabbaths at once in the 70 year captivity. God also can and will get His tithes, even if we don't tithe. "All the tithe...is the Lord's." Leviticus 27:30.

2. Reason: Obedience is hard when obedience **seems unreasonable**.

"For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and **my thoughts than your thoughts.**" Isaiah 55:8,9.

"Trust in the Lord with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding. In all thy ways acknowledge him and he shall direct thy paths." Proverbs 3:5,6.

"There is a way that seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death." Prov. 14:12

"And be not conformed to this world, but be **ye transformed** by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God." Romans 12:2.

3. Peer Pressure: Obedience is hard when obedience means doing something that nobody else is doing or not doing something that everybody else is doing. For example, Shadrach, Meshach and Abed-nego stood against the peer pressure of not bowing down to an image. They did this by faith. When a minority opposes a majority, peer pressure becomes an obstacle.

We all like to be liked and therefore so many Christians compromise in order to be liked by the peer group. It takes someone with character to stand against the crowd. The majority is usually wrong.

"Broad is the way that leads to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat." Matthew 7:13.

4. Suffering: "When they heard these things, they were cut to the heart, and they gnashed on him with their teeth." Acts 7:54.

God wanted Stephen to preach the Gospel to the Jewish leaders. Stephen had to preach conviction of sin while he had the opportunity. This message made them very angry.

Now someone may have advised Stephen to cut his message so that he didn't offend anyone, but then no one would have been convicted of sin and Saul may not have been saved. Stephen could have said, "Now let's cool it, I didn't mean to offend you." Stephen looked at God through the circumstance of suffering and he obeyed God. Faith overcame suffering as a barrier to obedience.

For example, the Reformers were burned at the stake rather than compromise with Roman Catholic error. "We ought to obey God rather than men." Acts 5:29.

God gave Jeremiah a promise for his faith to grasp. "I have made thee this day a defenced city, and an iron pillar, and brazen walls against the whole land they shall fight against thee; but they shall not prevail against thee; for I am with thee, saith the Lord, to deliver thee." Jeremiah 1:18,19.

For every barrier you face, there are promises that we can grasp to climb the wall. Faith grasps the promise-handles on the wall. "If we suffer with him, we shall reign with him." God proved faithful to Noah, Daniel, Jeremiah, the Reformers.....God's faithfulness helps us **overcome barriers to obedience**.

79. STAIRWAY TO HELL

Bible Reading: Revelation 9:13-21.

Aim: To warn teens and parents of Satan's tactics to destroy young people. To show parents how to rescue or prevent children from going to Satan.

Introduction:

Many parents have rebellious children and ask, "Where did I go wrong?"

Answer: You didn't realize that Satan was after your child and you didn't know how to rescue him God's way. Satan destroys people's lives using basically the same plan. God says that we are in a spiritual warfare (Ephesians 6:12). Teen, Satan is aiming at your eternal destruction. He's counting on you being stupid enough not to know what he's up to. There's only one reason why anyone would willingly stay on the stairway to hell - they've been tricked, eg: the idea that "I want to go to hell".

1. WHY CAN'T PARENTS AND TEENS GET ALONG?

Teens say, "Lay off me. You don't understand me. Why don't you leave me alone?" Then follows - yelling, screaming, doors slamming, tempers flaring and red faces. There are two types of parents:

- a) **Parents who are totally unfit to raise children**, eg: Those parents guilty of incest, kids hooked on drugs through their parents, children physically beaten, children put onto the streets for prostitution.
- b) **Parents who really do care.** Satan makes teens think that their parents don't care about them when they really do. Satan is doing all he can to destroy your parent - teen relationships.

2. STEPS TO HELL.

STEP 1: BREAKING UP THE PARENT - TEEN RELATIONSHIP.

"Honour thy father and thy mother..." (Exodus 20:12). When parents see their teens going the wrong way, they try to warn them. To stop the young person from listening to their warnings, Satan convinces the teen that the parents just **don't understand** or **care** for them. Once Satan has you believing that lie, he can keep you on his deadly path. You will **ignore your parents'** warnings and stumble further, convinced that you are doing the right thing. Cutting off communication is the first step. Your death and entry to hell are the last. Teens, please realize that when thoughts enter your mind like:

- a) "My parents don't care about me", or
- b) "They don't want me to have any fun", these are not **your** thoughts, they are lies from demons.
- c) "I want to do my own thing" – you are really doing Satan's thing.

Teen, you take your first step onto the devil's stairway when you let Satan ruin your relationship with your parents. "Children, obey your parents in the Lord." (Ephesians 6:1-3).

"My son, hear the instruction of thy father and forsake not the law of thy mother." Proverbs 1:8.

Teens, if your relationship with your parents is in bad shape, it's because Satan is at work. Go to your parents, ask their forgiveness for your wrong attitude and make things right with them.

STEP 2: GETTING YOU TO REJECT GOD.

To persuade you to reject God's warnings and open you up for destruction, the devil has another convincing lie. He plants the thought in your mind:

"Don't listen to God. He doesn't want you to have any fun."

STEP 3: REBELLION.

The themes of rock groups are **REBELLION, SEX, DRUGS, FALSE RELIGION** and **DEMONS**. For example, rock music encourages rebellion against parents, law, school and society.

A teen who submits to any kind of authority today is treated like a weirdo. It isn't cool to obey others. Their reasons are "I'm old enough to decide for myself "or" I got to do what I feel is right." When you rebel against authority, you are disobeying the instructions that God gave to protect you from Satan and demons. "Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft." 1 Samuel 15:23.

Rebellion against God is just as bad as Satan worship.

"Such as sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, being bound in affliction and iron; Because they rebelled against the words of God." Psalm 107:10,11.

God's commands of obedience are for your protection, not to stop you having fun. Movies and TV push rebellion, except rebellion against rock music. They say "Don't let anyone tell you what to do. You have your rights. It's your life". Satanists love rebellious teens. Rebellion always leads to ruin.

STORY.

Tim swallowed that lie at age 9 and grew more rebellious as he grew older. For a while he thought he had it made - total freedom. His life then began to fall apart. He was expelled from school and kicked out of home. He hated his boss telling him what to do. As a result, he couldn't keep a job. Getting cold and hungry, he turned to homosexual prostitution. His dreams turned to nightmares. He lived in slimy, rat-infested, run down holes. A never-ending parade of lust-filled perverts poured through his room, each vile experience leaving him feeling sicker and dirtier than the one before. The last time I heard from him, he was still walking the streets of a major city as a homosexual prostitute, dressed as a female. He said he was afraid that he had **AIDS** and wished he could die. His life was ruined. He rebelled and did what he wanted. But it didn't turn out the way he thought it would. It never does when you listen to the devil's lies.

STEP 4: PEER PRESSURE.

"My life really took a nosedive when I started hanging around with the wrong crowd." Satan will use bad friends to get and keep you on the stairway to hell. What your friends are today, you will be tomorrow.

- a) Hang around with the drug crowd and you'll be taking drugs before you know it.
- b) Become friends with thieves and you'll soon be stealing.

"My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not." Proverbs 1:10,15,16; Psalm 1:1,6; Proverbs 4:14,15; Teens and adults are hopeless followers (like sheep) searching frantically for someone to lead them. Satan will provide leadership for you by using your peers who have swallowed his lies to suck you down also. Peer pressure is the glue that holds Satan's plan together.

Everyone wants to be liked, accepted and popular. No-one likes to be **laughed** at, or to be an outsider or rejected. Some teens will do anything to belong. Watch a teen inhale their first cigarette. They choke, turn blue, get sick and vomit sometimes, but, to impress their friends, they keep at it. Watch a teen first drinking booze. It tastes terrible. He wants to spit it out. "But what will my friends think?" He drinks one, two, three beers, feeling miserable. Next day he tells his friends what a great time he had last night. Everyone was jealous. If only they knew the truth.

FOUND OUT A LITTLE TOO LATE.

Denise wanted to be accepted. Her parents were wealthy and she had everything except a rich and handsome boyfriend. She couldn't adequately impress her friends without one. When a potential "Mr Wonderful" came along, she couldn't bear the thought of letting him get away. "Anything to keep him", she thought. Before she knew it, she was pregnant. Things were not going the way she had planned. They never do when you buy Satan's goods. Her mum pressured her to have an abortion. Since she didn't want to be "tied down" with a baby and give up her "fun", she did.

When she awoke after the abortion, she began weeping uncontrollably. All at once it hit her like an exploding atomic bomb. She had taken the devil's bait. She realized she had been gravely deceived and knew she had murdered a precious and innocent little life, her own baby. She found out what Satan was up to, but it was a few minutes too late. Her little baby was already in a garbage bag and on it's way to the dumpster. The devil was laughing happily that he had snuffed out another young life.

I MUST IMPRESS MY FRIENDS.

Tom had a problem. He wanted to have friends. He watched some kids at school who were really "cool." They seemed to be having a lot of fun and everybody wanted to be part of their group. Tom heard that to be accepted by that group, you had to smoke, so he started smoking. Then he heard you had to drink, so he did that too. Next he learned to be really "cool", you had to run away from home. He did that too. Then, to really impress them, he began smoking pot. The "cool" kids responded and soon he was one of the "cool" one's too. He was "Mister Popular." Now that he had a reputation, he had

to keep it. More powerful drugs, dealing drugs and crime followed. Everybody was very impressed. He was extra cool. Little did Tom or any of his friends realise that Satan was using peer pressure to destroy another young life. When Tom died of a drug overdose, the devil had the last laugh. Tom wasn't cool. He was a fool. Peer pressure had killed another one.

Teenager, if Satan has got you hanging with the wrong crowd today, he will use peer pressure tomorrow to drag you down his stairway to hell.

STEP 5: DECEPTION - "IT LOOKS FUN".

Whenever Satan sets the trap for you, he will always make it look like fun in the beginning. Many teens are in Satanism because it looks like fun. The first step is fun. The last step will leave you screaming forever.

A former heroin addict was asked how he ever got himself to drive a needle into his arm and risk his entire life. He told me it wasn't like that when he started. In the beginning it was fun. He smoked pot and had a great time. The problem was that the fun soon ended and misery took its place. Once he was addicted he'd do anything to get high. It wasn't for fun anymore. Now it was survival.

An ACDC song states that: "Satan's gonna get you, gonna drag you to hell, no one's putting up a fight, you get into evil, you're a friend of mine, I'm gonna take you to hell, gonna get ya, Satan's got ya, Hells Bells." A boy who read porn who molested an 8 year old girl, said that he didn't want to hurt her, but something came over him that he couldn't control. Afterwards he hated himself and wanted to die.

Question: Why couldn't he just stop if he didn't want to do it anymore?

Why can't teens stop taking drugs and heroin when they know that they may die?

Why can't boys leave the homosexual scene?

Answer: Everyone of Satan's teasers (drugs, rock music, immoral sex, etc) were designed to open people up so that demons could be placed in them and eventually control them.

The devil will use rebellion, peer pressure and deception to prime you, then he'll apply one of his tried and tested tools to get his demons inside you. The stairway to hell now gets painful and you start to pay. These fun things you used to enjoy are now a cruel master.

STEP 6: ROCK MUSIC.

If you love rock music, the devil's claws are already firmly wrapped around your neck. The longer you listen to it, the tighter his grip gets. Almost every teen on the stairway to hell is addicted to rock music. Rock stars are sold-out servants of Satan, preaching to get you to hell. Only a grossly deceived person would idolize and worship people who are leading them to hell.

Ozzy Osborne: "Will he (demon) escape my soul, or will he live in me?"

Iron Maiden (song called "Number of the Beast"): "I'll possess your body and I'll make you burn."

Grim Reaper (song called "See you in Hell"): "I will take you to the very gates of hell."

Ozzy Osborne (song called "Nativity in Black"): "Now I have you with me under my power...You'll see who I am, my name is Lucifer, please take my hand."

KISS (song called "God of Thunder") says those who are enslaved by his music are under a satanic spell that will destroy their souls.

The purpose of rock music is to get demons inside you to destroy you and to drive you to hell.

ACDC admit that demons live in them, "Tearin' me apart, got the devil in me." One rock song is the actual oath of allegiance to Satan that is recited when a person becomes a satanist. Every time a person sings those lyrics, they are renewing their total allegiance to Satan.

Led Zeppelin: "The devil mocks their every step."

Lust: "The devil wants to stick you, wants your body, wants your spirit."

Backmasking: When played backwards, "In league with Satan" says "Satan, raised in hell, I'm gonna burn your soul."

Grim Reaper: "See you in hell."

Bonn Scott of ACDC died shortly after he sang, "I'm on the highway to hell."

DON'T TOUCH MY MUSIC.

If you want to prove that teenagers that are hooked on rock music are demon infested, just try to take their rock music away from them. Many things will cause a teenager's blood to boil, but mess with their music, and you have a war on your hands. Why? Because now you've got their demons riled up. When that happens, look out. There's no telling what the demons will drive them to do.

A 13 year old mother from Osaka, was so "obsessed" (another word for "possessed") with the satanic Heavy Metal rockers, Iron Maiden, that she sold her newborn twin baby girls to buy tickets to an up and coming Iron Maiden concert. The newspaper reported that when she was arrested, she was wearing a baseball cap and T-shirt displaying the rock band's eerie, 'Satanic like' logo. The article also said that her "belief in Iron Maiden is so strong, she threatened to kill herself unless she was allowed to wear her hat." Is there any question that demons controlled this young girl?

STEP 7: DRUGS.

An anti-drug slogan is "Just say no to drugs." People just can't, because by taking drugs they have opened a doorway for demons to enter their body.

Revelation 9:20,21 speaks of people worshipping devils and refusing to repent of sorcery (drug taking) "During a horrible experience with LSD, I had a shocking introduction to the spiritual realities of life. The devil was inside of me and quite systematically taking control of my will. As I resisted the ever increasing pressure within me to take my control away.....a voice inside of me kept saying, "This time I will have you fully! "I was completely terrified! Somehow I knew that this was Satan." The demons that entered this young man through his LSD "trips" began talking to him. This is not uncommon. Many drug abusers hear voices, but most don't know that they are the voices of demons. Hard core Satanism is on the rise, and experts are continually finding drug abuse directly linked to this growing demon possession problem.

New Agers view drugs as a way to draft soldiers into the New Age army. Drugs are tools to get demons inside young people. Drugs then transform them into blind servants of Satan. Everybody who is on heavy drugs started on marijuana. Demons don't let people quit drugs. People will steal, go into prostitution, and do anything to get drugs. Many people kill themselves while high on drugs, because that is what demons drive them to do.

STEP 8: DUNGEONS AND DRAGONS.

Purpose of D and D: When a player begins worshipping a new deity (Satan) in the game and asking help of characters (demons) in the game, they are doing exactly what out and out Satan worshippers are doing. They just don't realize it.

You say, "I don't believe D and D has anything to do with Satan and religion."

Page 25 of Deities and Demigods says: "Serving a deity is a significant part of D and D, and all players should have a patron god."

A 16 year old D and D player shot himself just hours after a D and D curse was placed on him.

STEP 9: ILLICIT SEX.

Illicit sex causes problems:

- Risk of AIDS, herpes, VD.
- Unwanted pregnancies.
- Abortions.
- Emotional problems.
- Fights with parents.

People think that God is mean, old fashioned and a kill joy who hates sex and punishes anyone who dares enjoy it. People think that Satan is in favour of sex. This is false. God ordained sex: "Marriage is honourable in all and the bed undefiled." Hebrews 13:4.

God created sex only for married couples: Galatians 5:19,21; Revelation 21:8; I Cor. 6:9-10,16,18;

"He that doeth it (commit adultery) destroyeth his own soul." Proverbs 5:3-5,8,11; 6:32; II Peter 2:19.

Homosexuality is forbidden in the Bible in Leviticus 20:13 and Romans 1:24-28,32.

God gave the minds and bodies of homosexuals to the control of demons, resulting in a reprobate mind. Once sexual demons enter your body they will never be satisfied. They will drag you to disgusting lows that you never thought you'd sink to.

STEP 10: SUICIDE.

One boy suicided because he had pimples. Another boy suicided because his girlfriend broke up with him. Rock groups sing of suicide. The MASH theme song is "Suicide is Painless."

STEP 11: HELL.

This is the final and irreversible step: Matthew 8:12; II Thessalonians 1:8,9.

"Satan....deceiveth the whole world." Revelation 20:10; Revelation 12:9.

Jesus Christ is your only hope of salvation. Renounce rock music, drugs and all other steps on the stairway to hell.

SOLUTION: "Let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God." II Corinthians 7:1.

Right Steps:

1. Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour.
2. Cleanse your house spiritually by burning rock records and other bad things.
3. Read God's Word, "Thy Word is Truth." John 17:17.
4. Talk to God. Pray without ceasing.
5. Make new Christian friends.

Don't get fooled again by:

1. Wrong Christians.
2. Wrong churches.
3. False teachers and preachers.
4. False Christian music.

"Know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God?" James 4:4.

8 PRINCIPLES FOR MUM AND DAD

1. Set a Godly example.
2. Live a consistent life. If it's wrong today, then it's wrong tomorrow.
3. Communicate with your children.
4. Provide spiritual training (Deuteronomy 6:6,7). Pray with them. Read the Bible with them.
5. Love your children.
6. Discipline them (Proverbs 13:24).
7. Be honest. Don't tell lies to teens.
8. Home School your children using the ACE Curriculum. Don't give them to an ungodly state school to train. "Learn not the way of the heathen." This will separate your children from ungodly peers.

I remember a mum and dad who told me their 14 year old son blasted rock music on his stereo while locked in his room in the basement. They hated it and knew it was wrong, but said that there was nothing they could do about it because he kept his door locked. They were both totally shocked when I suggested they get a sledge hammer, smash the door down, then take the hammer to smash his stereo and records.

Parents, stop letting your kids run your home. Rise up and take the leadership position that God commands you to take. The Bible says that if you will not discipline your children, then you don't really love them. You hate them:

"He that spareth his rod hateth his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth (disciplines) him betimes (early)." Proverbs 13:24.

Note: Parents, if you suspect that your children are being influenced for wrong in the school they attend, then pull them out and home school them using the internationally acclaimed, tried and tested Accelerated Christian Education program. This has proven successful in rescuing thousands of children from bad peers, teachers who promote error and from fear of ridicule and bullying. They will definitely receive a much higher quality academic education. Obey this command of God:

"Cease, my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge." Prov 19:27.

80. HOW TO BE WISE

Aim: To make us wise in all our dealings with God and man.

Bible Reading: Proverbs 4:1-27; 8:1-9,18.

Introduction: People can learn wisdom in three ways:

- a) From the Bible - this is the best way.
- b) From other people's mistakes - a good way.
- c) From their own mistakes - the worst way.

A great problem existing today is that:

- many people lack wisdom.
- this leads to situations being handled badly.
- this leads to conflict.
- this leads to broken relationships.
- this leads to loss of productivity and loss of happiness.

What is the solution? Get wisdom from an early age, from church, parents, the Bible and from other's mistakes. "Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child; but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him." Proverbs 22:15. We all start out foolish. We all must learn wisdom.

There are five crowns in Proverbs:

- a) Wisdom (4:9) gives a crown of glory.
- b) Virtuous Woman (12:4) is a crown to her husband.
- c) Riches (14:24) is the crown of the wise.
- d) Hoary (grey) head (16:31) is the crown of glory.
- e) Grandchildren (17:6) are the crown of old men.

1. FACTS ABOUT WISDOM

- a) **Definition:** Intelligent, sensible, judicious, using facts and reason carefully and correctly, skilful to judge, insight into problems, knowledge and love of the will of God. Handling life and it's problems from the Bible's point of view; moral insight. Skill in the affairs of life, sound judgment, good sense, prudent with others and knows how to regulate circumstances.
- b) "Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom; and with all thy getting get understanding." Proverbs 4:7.
- c) "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." Proverbs 9:10. Reverencing God is where wisdom starts.
- d) "Wisdom is better than rubies." Proverbs 8:11. It is very valuable and important to have wisdom, because if you have wisdom, you can achieve many other useful things.
- e) "The wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle and easy to be entreated, full of mercy and good fruits, without partiality, and without hypocrisy." James 3:17.
- f) Four things are exceeding wise in Proverbs 30:24-28.
 - i) Ants - they prepare their meat in the summer. **Plan Ahead.**
 - ii) Conies - they make their houses in the rocks. **Shelter from enemies.**
 - iii) Locusts - they go forth by bands. **Strength is in Organisation and in Numbers.**
 - iv) Spiders - they are found in King's palaces. **Get to the top. Get eternal life.**

2. HOW TO GET WISDOM

- a) **Come to Jesus** for salvation. "In whom (Christ) are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge." Colossians 2:3.
- b) **Fear God** - respect God and be afraid of sin and its consequences.
"The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." Proverbs 9:10.
- c) **Read the Bible** - "From a child thou has known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation." II Timothy 3:15.
- d) **Ask God for wisdom** - "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God." James 1:5.
"For the Lord giveth wisdom." Proverbs 2:6.

- e) **Be righteous** - "He layeth up sound wisdom for the righteous." Proverbs 2:7.
- f) The **rod** and **reproof** give wisdom; but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame." Proverbs 29:15.
- g) **Seek understanding**- "Wisdom rests in the heart of him that has understanding." Prov14:33

3. WHAT A WISE PERSON DOES

- a) **Is keen to learn**. "A wise man will hear and increase learning." Proverbs 1:5.
"Wise men lay up knowledge." Proverbs 10:14. Be keen to learn, open to God teaching us, study, learn from other's mistakes and from circumstances.
- b) **Listen to Wise Men and Avoid Fools**. "Hear the words of the wise." Proverbs 22:17.
"A wise son hears his father's instruction." Proverbs 13:1.
"He that walketh with wise men shall be wise, but a companion of fools shall be destroyed." Proverbs 13:20. Listen to your father, mix with wise men and avoid fools.
- c) **Be humble** - "With the lowly is wisdom." Proverbs 11:2. Don't think that you are too great to help people and mix with people. Be a servant, putting yourself out to help people.
- d) **Know what to say and when to say it** - "He that hath knowledge spareth his words. Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise." Proverbs 17:27,28.
"He that refraineth his lips is wise." Proverbs 10:19.
"There is.....a time to keep silence and a time to speak." Ecclesiastes. 3:7.
Think before you speak. It can be very humbling to take back wrong words.
- e) **Be a Soul winner** - live for eternity. "He that winneth souls is wise." Proverbs 11:30.
A wise man looks at people and life from an eternal viewpoint. He invests for heaven. He lays up treasure (people) in heaven. Let us rescue people from hell.
- f) **Be a teacher** - "The lips of wise men disperse knowledge." Proverbs 15:7.
Pass on God's truths to others. "Righteousness exalteth a nation." Proverbs 14:34.
The more people who know God, the better any nation is.
- g) **Be a peacemaker** - "Wise men turn away wrath." Proverbs 29:8.
"A wise man will pacify (anger)." Proverbs 16:14.
Live peaceably with all men, try to keep friendships.
- h) **See the consequences of events** - "A prudent man **forseeth the evil** and **hideth himself** but the **simple** pass on and are **punished**." Proverbs 22:3.
Many Jews fled Europe to the U.S. before World War II broke out when they saw Hitler's anti-Jewish policies. Many Jews stayed in Europe, ignored the signs and died in gas chambers. How well do you see the consequences of your actions on you and on your children? This is a reason to live righteously and wisely.
- i) **Be an achiever** - "Through wisdom is an **house builded**." Wisdom achieves things.
"A wise man is strong." Proverbs 24:5. He is unlikely to fall in time of trouble.
"By wise counsel thou shalt make thy war; in the multitude of counsellors there is safety."
Proverbs 24:6. Wisdom wins a war, in particular the spiritual war with Satan.
- j) **Wise men get rewarded** - "The wise shall inherit glory." Proverbs 3:35 and 24:14.
- k) **Wise men don't touch alcohol** - "Wine is a mocker, strong drink is raging; and whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise." Proverbs 20:1. Alcohol destroys wisdom.
- l) **Wisdom shows in your face** - "A man's wisdom maketh his face to shine." Ecclesiastes 8:1
- k) **A Godly wife is wise and kind** - She opens her mouth with wisdom; and in her tongue is the law of kindness." Proverbs 31:26.
- l) **Wise men often become rich** - "The crown of the wise is their riches." Proverbs 14:24.

CONCLUSION

Much more is spoken of wisdom in Proverbs. Read it, search it and do it. You will then become a wise person, you'll have a happy life and your children and grandchildren will be wise, happy and blessed. Wisdom starts at salvation. It is grown in an environment of humility, where we avoid wrong companions, admit our sins, learn from our mistakes and pick ourselves up to carry on pleasing God.

81. HOW TO HAVE JOY

“Yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory.” I Peter 1:8.

Aim: To know how to experience joy unspeakable.

Introduction: Many people today are unhappy and without joy. It seems that the more things that people have, the more they want, the more unhappy they are, and the less joy they have. Satan will always try to rob us of joy by getting us to sin. He offers us a swap: sin and reap a perceived benefit, which will cost us our joy and peace. Yet some people with very little material things have great joy. Why? Because joy is not based on having material goods.

Joy is **inner contentment, calm delight, cheerfulness and gladness.**

This joy that we receive at salvation is described as “unspeakable” (412) which means unutterable and inexpressible. It is so wonderful that it cannot be described fully. The next verse (v.9) describes heaven, so this joy that we have continues to heaven. We rejoice with so great joy that words cannot describe it (now), and this joy is full of glory (later when we get to heaven). This joy is only available to believers in Jesus Christ, so the obvious first step is to receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour.

Question: How can we experience this joy unspeakable?

Answer: We experience this joy as we do or think on the following:

1. STAY IN GOD’S PRESENCE

“Thou wilt show me the path of life: in thy presence is fullness of joy, at thy right hand there are pleasures forevermore.” Psalm 16:11.

Joy is found by: a) following the path of life that God sets out for us, and

b) staying close to God in His presence,

then we experience fullness of joy, pleasures forevermore and sweet fellowship with the Lord.

“Unto God my exceeding joy.” Psalm 43:4. “I will joy in the God of my salvation.” Habakkuk 3:18.

When we draw close to God, we experience the exceeding joy of His Person. Habakkuk 3:17,18,19. Even in economic hardship we can rejoice in the Lord. Inner joy and peace does not depend on outward prosperity. Joy comes from staying close to the God of my salvation.

2. HEAVEN

“He shall see his face with joy.” Job 33:26. “Enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.” Matthew 25:21,23.

“I will make thee ruler over many things” is a joyful prospect.

As we think of seeing Christ’s face in heaven, this thought fills us with joy now and joy later in heaven. We will experience great joy when we enter heaven if we have been faithful to Christ on earth. Faithful service now brings great rewards later.

Christ is able to present us faultless before the presence of His glory with exceeding joy. Jude 24.

3. FAITHFULLY ENDURING TRIALS

“Weeping may endure for a night, but **joy cometh in the morning.**” Psalm 30:5.

When we go through life’s trials, the key is to stay in close fellowship with the Lord. When the trial passes, then joy comes to us as we experience the victory.

“Count it all joy when ye fall into diverse temptations.” James 1:2,3,4.

This is because testings produce patience, so that we become complete and entire, wanting nothing. We become joyful when we come through trials, victorious in the strength of the Lord.

4. STAY MORALLY UPRIGHT, AVOID SIN

“Shout for **joy** all ye that are **upright** in heart.” Psalm 32:11.

If we are upright morally in our heart, this is a cause for joy. To have joy, be morally upright and forsake sin, because sin robs us of joy.

“Restore unto me the joy of my salvation.” Psalm 51:12.

It is right to avoid sin and to keep our joy. When we sin, we lose our joy as David did through adultery and murder. We must then confess our sin to God and make things right with others, then God can restore unto us the joy of our salvation. Remember, sin robs us of joy, so let’s avoid sin and stay upright as the way to keeping our joy.

5. GOD PLANS TO PROSPER US

“Let them shout for joy and be glad.....Let the Lord be magnified, which hath **pleasure** in the **prosperity of his servant.**” Psalm 35:27.

As we serve God obediently, it is a cause for joy to remember that God plans to prosper our hard work for Christ. We all like to prosper in the work that God has called us to do. When we go through difficult times, it is good to know that God will prosper our work for Him. This causes us joy.

“Your labour is not in vain in the Lord.” 1 Corinthians 15:58.

6. HOUSE OF GOD

“I went with them to the **house of God**, with the voice of **joy** and praise, with a multitude that kept holyday.” Psalm 42:4.

If we want joy we should come to **church**, the house of God on Sunday so that we can be taught God’s Word, to enjoy the **fellowship** of believers and to rest on God’s Holyday. There is **joy** in God’s house when believers are of one mind in the Word of God and as we praise God in joyful singing.

7. UNITY

(Philippians 2:2

“Fulfil ye my **joy**, that ye be **likeminded**, having the **same love**, being of one **accord**, of **one mind.**”

There can be no joy in any church unless there is unity of mind and belief. If an entire church all believe the same Bible truths, are of one accord, of one mind, all loving the same things, then there is peace, joy and direction in a church. A church divided against itself cannot stand. Those of different major beliefs should either believe what the church believes, or get out and find another church that believes as they do. Don’t hinder the work of a good church.

True unity can only be based on truth. Then joy can prevail.

8. SOUL WINNING when people are saved.

a) “They that sow in tears shall reap in **joy.**” Psalm 126:5.

When we go out and share the gospel with tears of concern over people’s lost condition, then God promises that we shall reap in **joy** as people get saved. There is joy in seeing people saved.

b) “My brethren, dearly beloved and longed for, my **joy** and **crown.**” Philippians 4:1.

“What is our hope or **joy**, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even **ye** in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming? For **ye** are our glory and **joy.**” 1 Thessalonians 2:19,20.

Those Paul led to Christ were his joy, hope, glory and crown. Leading souls to Christ brings us joy.

c) “There is **joy** in the presence of the **angels** of God over one sinner that repents.” Luke 15:10.

We should share in the angel’s joy by trying to lead people to Christ. Events on earth can make heaven rejoice. This proves that those in heaven know much of what happens on earth. Let us be soul winners so as to make heaven’s angels rejoice and share in their joy.

9. KEEP CHRIST’S COMMANDMENTS

“If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love. These things have I spoken unto you, that **my joy** might remain in you, and that **your joy** might be full.” John 15:10,11.

If we keep **Christ’s commandments**, Christ’s joy will be in us and our joy will be full. Those who rebel against God’s commands, lose Christ’s joy. Thus rebels look angry. Obeying God brings joy.

10. CONVERTS WALKING IN TRUTH

“I have **no greater joy** than to hear that my children **walk in truth.**” III John 4.

When we lead people to Christ, it is our greatest joy to see them walk in truth, in true Bible doctrine, taking their place serving the Lord in a sound Bible teaching Church. It is a grief to see new Christians going back to their old ways or following false doctrines. How do new converts walk in truth? By being taught God’s Word properly as they sit under a sound Bible teacher.

11. PRAYER

When we ask in Jesus Christ’s name, we receive, and our **joy** will be full. John 16:24.

If you are unhappy, check and see if you have had a good prayer time that morning.

Prayer brings joy. No prayer brings no joy.

12. REVIVAL

“The people with **one accord gave heed** unto those things which Philip spake....and there was great **joy in that city.**” Acts 8:4-8. When the Samaritans turned to the Lord, there was great joy in their city.

13. SUCCESS IN MISSIONS

“Paul and Barnabas declared the **conversion of the gentiles**; and they caused **great joy** unto **all the brethren.**” Acts 15:3.

We can have great joy by supporting soul winning missionaries. When they report multitudes turning to Christ, we experience great joy with them as we have shared prayerfully and financially in their work. Their blessing becomes our blessing.

14. FINISH YOUR LIFE'S WORK

“That I might **finish my course** with **joy**, and the ministry.....” Acts 20:24.

If we finish our life's race with **joy without being disqualified**, we have joy on entering heaven, not having given in to the devil. We must finish the work that God has given us to do on earth.

We lose our joy if we disgrace Christ by sin and drop out of the ministry.

15. A HAPPY MARRIAGE brings joy

“Live **joyfully** with the wife whom thou lovest all the days of the life of thy vanity.” Ecclesiastes 9:9.

If we succeed in our career, but fail in our marriage, we lose our joy and have great misery. Men must constantly court and love their wives in order to maintain a happy marriage. Men, watch for the danger signals in your marriage and fix the problems before it's too late.

16. FILLING OF THE HOLY SPIRIT

“With **joy** shall ye **draw water** out of the **wells of salvation.**” Isaiah 12:3.

“Out of his belly shall flow **rivers of living water.** But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive.” John 7:37.

We can be constantly filled with the Holy Spirit as we take in the water of the Word (Eph. 5:26) from the wells of salvation. As we are **filled** with the Holy Spirit, we bring forth the **fruit** of the Spirit of love, **joy** peace,.....(Galatians 5:22,23).

17. THE WORD OF GOD

“Thy words were found and I did **eat** them: and **thy Word** was unto me the **joy** and **rejoicing** of my heart.” Jeremiah 15:16. When we read and seriously meditate on God's Word, applying it to our life and obeying it, we experience great joy and rejoicing. Great joy comes from obeying God's Word.

18. THINKING OF THE FUTURE MILLENNIUM

“The **joy** of the whole earth, is Mount Zion...” Psalms 48:2.

When we think about when Christ will return to the earth in person to judge righteously and put down all evil, we are excited to see the **joy** that the whole earth will experience as Christ rules as King from Jerusalem over a regenerated earth.

“Everlasting **joy** upon their heads; they shall obtain **joy** and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.” Isaiah 35:10.

When feeling down, think of the **future joy** that you'll experience when you come to Jerusalem in the Millennium weekly and monthly (Isaiah 66:23), along with everybody on earth, to receive Bible teaching from Christ in a joyful, festival atmosphere.

19. CHRIST'S FIRST and SECOND COMINGS

Wise men rejoiced with **exceeding great joy** as they saw the star over the stable. Matthew 2:10.

So do we rejoice as we see Christ's coming drawing closer. Angels brought the shepherds good tidings of great joy to all people. We experience the joy of Christ's birth at Christmas. Luke 2:10.

CONCLUSION: Joy comes by doing things God's way. Sorrow comes to by doing things man's way. Follow these principles and you will have real joy and purpose in life. Remember the sorrow that Israel experienced because they disobeyed God and did not serve Him joyfully. Deuteronomy 28:47.

82. HOW TO INCREASE OUR FAITH

Bible Reading: Hebrews 11.

Aim: To apply these principles to increase our faith, and to step out to attempt great things for God.

Introduction: We are saved by faith in Christ as Saviour when, believing that He paid in full for all our sins and wants to save us. We then call on Christ to be our Saviour. Romans 10:13; John 1:12. As believers, we must continue to walk in faith day by day. “We walk by faith, not by sight.” 2 Cor 5:7.

QUESTION 1: What do we have faith in?

ANSWER: We have faith in God’s promises in the Bible that they are true and reliable. God can be counted on to do what is best and right for me, according to the goodness of His character and His loving purposes for me. “Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?” Genesis 18:25.

QUESTION 2: How important is it to walk by faith?

ANSWER: “But without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he that cometh to God must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of them that diligently seek Him.” Hebrews 11:6. “For by it the elders obtained a good report.” Hebrews 11:2.

QUESTION 3: How will having faith or trust in God affect my life?”

A:

1. I will not worry, but live in victory.
2. I will attempt more service for God.
3. I will pray more, expecting answers from God.
4. I will sin less, knowing that sin is due to mistrusting God’s power to solve my problems.
5. I will wait patiently for God to work out His plans in my life, as I focus on serving Him.
6. I will tell more people about Christ, believing that God’s Word will not return void, but will accomplish that which He purposes (Isaiah 55:11). “A little faith will bring your soul to heaven. A great faith will bring heaven to your soul.”

I. DEFINITION OF FAITH

“Now faith is the substance (assurance) of things hoped (expected) for, the evidence (conviction) of things not seen.” Hebrews 11:1.

It is a confident assurance that God will do what is right and best for us in what we hope and pray for.

II. BIBLE EXAMPLES OF GREAT FAITH

1. **Noah** prepared an ark to the saving of his house, even though he had never seen rain. Hebrews 11:7
2. **Abraham** left Ur at God’s command, not knowing where he went. Hebrews 11:8. Abraham by faith, when he was tried, offered up Isaac....accounting that God was able to raise him up, even from the dead.” Hebrews 11:17-19.
3. **Joseph** kept himself from adultery with Potiphar’s wife. Joseph stayed faithful to God in the dungeon jail with no knowledge as to whether he would ever be released.
4. i) **Moses** refused to be called the son of Pharaoh’s daughter.
ii) Moses chose to suffer affliction with the people of God, rather than enjoying the pleasures of sin for a season.
iii) Moses esteemed the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures of Egypt: for he had respect unto the recompense of the reward. 11:26.
iv) Moses by faith forsook Egypt, not fearing the wrath of the King.
v) Moses endured, as seeing Him who is invisible.
vi) Moses by faith kept the Passover, and the sprinkling of blood, lest he that destroyed the first born should touch them.” Hebrews 11:28.
5. **Joshua:** By faith the walls of Jericho fell down after they were compassed about seven days. 11:30
6. **Rahab** received the spies with peace, risking her life. 11:31.
7. **Gideon** with God and 300 men defeated 135,000 Midianites. Judges 6:1 - 8:10.
8. **David** by faith faced Goliath, killing him with one stone. 1 Samuel 17.
9. **Elijah** prayed for God to withhold rain for 3½ years, then prayed for rain. James 5:17,18.
10. **Job** endured suffering, yet he sinned not with his mouth, nor charged God foolishly. Job 1:22; 2:10.

11. **Hezekiah** by faith promoted a revival. II Kings 18.
12. **Nehemiah** by faith returned to Jerusalem to rebuild its walls. He faced great danger and opposition.
13. **Isaiah, Jeremiah and Ezekiel** preached God's message to the Jews who persecuted them.
14. **Daniel** prayed to God daily knowing that he would be thrown to the lions. "He was faithful." Dn 6:3
15. **Four friends** of a palsied man let him down through the roof to Jesus to be healed. Mark 2:5.
16. **Paul** and early Christians started churches all over the world in the face of much opposition.

III. ILLUSTRATIONS OF FAITH

1. When **Hudson Taylor**, the famous missionary, first went to China, it was in a sailing vessel. Very close to the shore of some cannibal's islands the ship was becalmed and it was slowly drifting shoreward unable to move. The savages were eagerly anticipating a feast.

The captain came to Mr. Taylor and besought him to pray for the help of God. "I will," said Taylor. "provided you set your sails to catch the breeze." The captain declined to make himself a laughing stock by unfurling in a dead calm. Taylor said. "I will not undertake to pray for the vessel unless you will prepare the sails." The captain agreed to Taylor's request.

While engaged in prayer, there was a knock at the door of his stateroom. "Who is there?" The captain's voice responded. "Are you still praying for wind?" "Yes." "Well," said the captain. "you'd better stop praying, for we have more wind than we can manage."

2. This story is told by the captain of a ship on which **George Muller** of Bristol was travelling. During his life he received more than 1,000,000 pounds from the Lord, without advertising. Every penny came as an answer to prayer.

"We had George Muller of Bristol on board" said the captain. "I had been on the bridge for twenty-four hours and never left it and George Muller came to me and said, 'Captain, I have come to tell you I must be in Quebec on Saturday afternoon.'" "It is impossible," I said.

"Then very well, if your ship cannot take me, God will find some other way. I have never broken an engagement in fifty-seven years; let us go down into the chart room and pray."

"I looked at that man of God and thought to myself, 'What lunatic asylum can that man have come from, for I never heard of such a thing as this?'" "Mr. Muller, do you know how dense this fog is?"

No, he replied, my eye is not on the density of the fog, but on the living God who controls every circumstance of my life. He knelt down and he prayed one of the most simple prayers. When he had finished, I was going to pray, but he put his hand on my shoulder and told me not to pray. As you do not believe He will answer, and as I believe that He has, there is no need whatever for you to pray about it.

I looked at him and George Muller said, "Captain, I have known my Lord for fifty-seven years and there has never been a single day when I have failed to get an audience with the King. Get up, Captain and open the door and you will find the fog has gone. I got up and the fog indeed was gone and on that Saturday afternoon George Muller kept his promised engagement. Sunday School Times.

IV. BARRIERS TO FAITH

1. Sacrifice: When you think you'll lose out in some way.
2. Reason: When God's commands seem unreasonable.
3. Peer Pressure: When obedience means going against the crowd.
4. Suffering: When obedience is likely to bring you suffering.

V. HOW TO INCREASE OUR FAITH

1. Hearing the Word of God.

"Faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the Word of God." Romans 10:17.

As we hear God's Word at church, study it privately, and believe God's promises to be true, our faith will increase. We must hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on God's Word.

2. Remember God's Past Answers to Prayer.

David strengthened his faith before he fought Goliath by remembering how God delivered him from the paw of the lion and the bear. I Samuel 17:31-37.

Notice Saul's lack of faith, compared with David's great faith. God's past victories encourage us to attempt great things for God today and to trust God in the future.

3. **Obey God in What you Know Already.**

"He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much." Luke 16:10.

If you don't do faithfully the little jobs that God has given you to do today, you won't do faithfully the bigger jobs that God may ask of you later in life.

4. **Ask God for Great Things Daily.**

You will receive what you ask for if you ask in Jesus' Name, according to His will. John 16:24 says "Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full."

Ask in faith for wisdom, nothing doubting. James 1:5-7.

Ask God to give you a mighty impact on the world for Christ.

5. **Listen to the Holy Spirit's Leading.**

Philip did this in Acts 8:26-31, resulting in the Ethiopian eunuch being saved.

As we listen to the Holy Spirit's leading, we become more used of God, others are blessed, God is glorified, and we are encouraged to attempt more things for God.

6. **By Meditating on God's Goodness of Character in the Bible.**

Notice how God loves us. He wants to bless us and lead us in the right way. Psalm 34:4-10,17-22.

Psalm 37:8 says: "O taste and see that the Lord is good: blessed is the man that trusteth in him."

"We know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose." Romans 8:28.

7. **By Trusting in the Lord rather than Fearing.**

"What time I am afraid, I will trust in thee." Psalm 56:3.

"The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away: blessed be the name of the Lord." Job 1:21.

Job continued to trust God even though he lost his wealth, health and children.

8. **Read how God answered missionaries prayers in the past.**

9. **Develop a Thankful Attitude**, thanking God for all things, knowing that God is working out His perfect will in our lives. "In everything give thanks." I Thessalonians 5:18.

10. Study facts proving **Creation, Fulfilled Bible Prophecies**, & proofs of the Bible from **Science and Archaeology**. These will convince us of God's Word being true and of God's care for us.

11. **Tackle Giants Courageously** in the Lord's strength. Joshua 1:5-9.

12. Have a **Humble Spirit** seeing **my natural poverty and need of God**. God will look to such a man.

"But to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, & trembles at my word." Isaiah 66:2

13. **Attempt New Things for God** to reach more people for Christ and to teach God's Word.

14. **Be content if you are unmarried**, using your time to serve God. God will provide a spouse if He wills in His own time. "Godliness with contentment is great gain." I Timothy 6:6.

15. **Learn to Wait upon the Lord** for Him to provide our needs.

"I waited patiently for the Lord; and he inclined unto me and heard my cry." Psalm 40:1.

16. **Tithe**, developing our faith in God's ability to provide. Malachi 3:7-12.

As we give money to God's work above what we think we can afford, God continues to abundantly provide our needs. We then have faith to give more.

17. Be a **Clean Vessel**, and God will use you more. II Timothy 2:20,21.

"Abstain from fleshly lusts which war against the soul." I Peter 2:11.

18. Be **Filled with the Holy Spirit** daily. Be aware of God's presence doing great things in our life.

19. Study to **Learn Soul Winning and Follow Up** by doing it. As people get saved and come to church through our outreach, our faith will increase.

CONCLUSION: Will you increase in faith? Will you apply these principles today?

"A coloured church congregation had met to pray for rain to release a long dry spell. The preacher looked severely at his flock and said: "Brothers and Sisters, you'll know why we is here. Now what I wants to know is-where is you' umbrellas?""

Will you attempt something in faith for God today, believing that God will bless your efforts, or will you have no faith, and attempt nothing for God?

83. HOW TO UNDERSTAND ADVERSITY

Bible Reading: Hebrews 12:1-15.

Aim: To understand God's purposes for adversity.

Key 1: Our first response to adversity should not be to try to remove it, but to allow adversity to reveal our true weakness.

Introduction: Adversity can be our greatest motivation for spiritual growth or our deadliest means of discouragement. The difference depends on us understanding God's purposes in adversity.

What does adversity do for us? What does God achieve through adversity?

1. Adversity is God's Way of Getting Our Attention.

The cares of the world can choke out the Word of God and drown out the voice of the Holy Spirit. While we are busy with our plans, goals, projects and friendships, God patiently reminds us in Jeremiah 35:14, "I have spoken unto you, rising early and speaking; but ye hearkened not unto us."

When **adversity comes**, we are suddenly faced with problems and pressures that are **too big** for us to resolve. Our inward response should be, "Unto thee, O Lord, do I lift up my soul. O my God, I trust in thee: let me not be ashamed, let not my enemies triumph over me." Psalm 25:1,2.

As **adversity continues** and our human strength is drained, Christ's invitation becomes more attractive, "Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest."

Matthew 11:28. God's ultimate purpose in getting our attention is to conform us to the **image of Christ**. Because of this, all adversity works together for **our good** (Romans 8:28,29). Through it we learn of Christ, who is meek and lowly. His burden is light.

2. Adversity is our Assurance that God Loves Us.

"For whom the Lord **loveth** he **chasteneth**." Hebrews 12:6,7,10,11.

Three results of chastening: 1. We give God **reverence**. 12:9.

2. Our **profit**, to be partakers of God's holiness. 12:10.

3. It yields the peaceable fruit of **righteousness**. 12:11.

When we recognise God's love in adversity, we can:

i) **Lift up the hands** which hang down and the feeble knees. v.12.

This means to get back serving God with our hands and legs.

ii) Make **straight paths** for your feet. v.13.

This means to get back on the path of righteousness. "He leadeth me." Psalm 23:3.

iii) Follow **peace** and holiness with all men. v.14.

This means that right relationships are restored with men and God.

iv) Avoid failing of the **grace** of God or bitterness will follow. v.15.

Failing of the grace of God means that one can not respond with the grace of God, but with envy, bitterness, nervousness, then carnality.

3. Adversity is God's Call for Self Examination.

"If we would **judge ourselves**, we should not be judged. But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord." 1 Corinthians 11:31,32.

God requires that we **search out**, **confess** and **forsake** every sin.

"He that covereth his sins shall not prosper." Proverbs 28:13.

God established the Lord's Table as the time and place for self-examination. If this is neglected, God may give **physical adversity** as a further motivation for self examination. 1 Cor. 11:28-30.

-If things are not going well for us, the reason may be that we **dishonoured our parents** "Honour thy father and mother....that it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth." Ephesians 6:2,5.

-If it seems that evil will not depart from our household, it may be because we have rewarded evil to those who did good to us, "Whoso rewardeth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house." Proverbs 17:13.

4. **Adversity is God's Way of Conquering Our Pride.**

- The adversity of **contention** reveals pride. "Only by **pride** cometh **contention.**" Proverbs 13:10.
- The adversity of **destruction** is the result of pride in a person.
"Pride goeth before destruction, and an haughty spirit before a fall." Proverbs 16:18.
- The adversity of **shame** is God's means of **humbling us.**
"When pride cometh, then cometh shame: but with the lowly is wisdom." Proverbs 11:2.
"A man's pride shall bring him low." Proverbs 29:23.
"Whoso exalts himself shall be abased and he that humbles himself shall be exalted." Luke 14:11
"God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace to the humble." James 4:6,7.

5. **Adversity is a Reminder of Our Weakness.** 2 Corinthians 12:7-10.

When all is going well, we are tempted to think that we don't need God. If we have a **thorn** in the flesh (v.7), Christ's **grace is sufficient** (v.9) and we learn to **glory** in our unchangeable features (v.9). We then experience the **power** of Christ upon us (v.9). When I am **weak**, then am I **strong** (v.10). I **take pleasure in infirmities** (weaknesses), reproaches and necessities (v.10).

6. **Adversity Motivates us to Cry Out To God.**

God responds to the cry of His children when we are in adversity.

"The righteous cry, and the Lord hears, and delivers them out of all their troubles." Psalm 34:17.

We should cry out in the right ways:

1. Cry out to God with our **voice.**

"I cried unto the Lord with my voice, and he heard me out of his holy hill." Psalm 3:4.

2. Cry out to God in **humility.** "He forgetteth not the cry of the humble." Psalm 9:12 .

Key 2: Our second response to adversity should be: Not to focus on outward circumstances, but to realize that we are dealing with **unseen spiritual powers.**

7. **Adversity is Evidence of Spiritual Warfare.**

Note: If we do not recognize when adversity is spiritual warfare, we will be **overwhelmed** and **tempted to give up.** When adversity takes the form of **confusion, suspicion, division** and **anger**, then spiritual warfare is on. Paul encouraged Christians to be **strong, courageous** and **prepared** to be **good soldiers.**

8. **Adversity is God's Method of Purifying our Faith.** This leads to Patience.

"But without faith it is impossible to please Him." Hebrews 11:6.

FAITH may need to be **tested** in the **fires of adversity.** "the trial of your faith." 1 Peter 1:6,7.
Faith is essential for living the Christian life.

Why? Because the ways of God are opposite to the natural inclinations of man.

Adversity may come from: 1. Those who **mock** God's principles, or

2. Because we **violate** God's principles.

In either case, adversity will strengthen our faith. **PATIENCE** comes from adversity.

"Knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience." James 1:3.

With this kind of **faith** and **patience**, we can obtain the promises of God.

"Followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises." Hebrews 6:12.

9. **Adversity Increases our Hatred for Evil.**

When God exposes secret sin, He allows others to see it's devastating consequences, such as:

Islamic terrorist bombings, Saddam Hussein; Homosexuality, AIDS; Fornication, Divorce; childhood lying, President Nixon's Lies. In this way, the simple (ignorant) are warned not to be fooled by Satan focusing our eyes on "the pleasures of sin which last for a season." Hebrew 11:25
God will **not be mocked** with our **sin.** Galatians 6:7,8.

Our **hatred of evil** should **increase** as we realize how:

1. Sin (as a thief) **robs us of our potential** for achieving & enjoying what God had planned for us;
2. Our sins **damage the lives of those whom we love.** We don't hate evil because we don't realize its final cost. Sin brings death. Adam and Eve did not realize the cost of their sin to all mankind.

10. Adversity reminds us to Pray for our Authorities.

God teaches us that a quiet and peaceable life is related to intercessory prayer for those in authority over us. 1 Timothy 2:1,2.

Note: Those who are in positions of responsibility **provide spiritual protection** for those under their care, such as parents and pastors. When there are failures in the life of a leader, the “umbrella of protection” develops “leaks”. Satan is given greater freedom to defeat those who are under that authority. Therefore it is important in order to be a good leader to submit to authority yourself. Even a little leak in a roof can let in a great deal of water. Spiritual leaders are judged by a higher standard. James 3:1. When we experience temptations, so do church leaders. They need our prayers.

11. Adversity is a Signal to Re-evaluate our Priorities.

Wrong priorities may result in much painful adversity, not only for us, but also for those who are affected by our lives.

Type 1: When we **fail to spend proper time with the Lord** in memorizing His Word, meditating and praying, we rob others of spiritual encouragement and direction. Instead, we become vulnerable to **transgression**. Psalm 107:17,19.
God saves us out of our distress with His Word. Psalm 107:20.

Type 2: When we try to **do more** than God intended us to do.
“Six days shalt thou labour and do all thy work.” Exodus 20:9.

12. Adversity is God’s way of Testing Our Work.

Every **spiritual house** that is built must be **tested** to prove that it is **founded on truth**. “rain descended (to test the roof), the floods came (to test the foundation), the winds blew (to test the structure), & beat upon that house, and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.” Matt 7:24-27
“The fire shall try every man’s work of what sort it is.” 1 Corinthians 3:13-15.

13. Adversity is God’s way of Testing our Friendships.

It will reveal which friends are concerned about **getting**.

It will reveal which friends are concerned about **giving**.

“A true friend loveth at all times and a brother is born for adversity.” Proverbs 17:17.

For example, the Good Samaritan’s commitment to his neighbour, who had fallen among thieves, continued until the man’s needs were met. Luke 10:30-37.

Contrasting example: The Prodigal Son while spending money, had many friends, but when his money ran out and hardship came, all his friends then left. On the other hand, Jonathan was loyal to David in bad times.

Key 3: Our third response to adversity should be:

Not to **live for Christ in our** own efforts, but to realize that **Christ must live in us** through the **power and filling of the Holy Spirit as we yield to Him.**

14. Adversity is God’s Call to Identify with Christ.

Adversity causes us to **want more of Christ’s power in our lives.** Galatians 2:20.

Paul suffered the loss of all things to win more people to Christ and to experience the power of Christ’s resurrection. God’s power becomes a reality to us from Romans 6,7,8.

-**Romans 6.** We learn to **know** that we are crucified with Christ. We learn how to **reckon** ourselves dead to sin and alive to God. We learn how to **yield** ourselves to God and our members as instruments of righteousness to God. (Romans 6:6,11,13).

-**Romans 7.** We discover a new problem. We are still overcome by the demands of the Law. We try to live according to God’s principles, but we can’t do it. We learn that our death in Christ also caused us to die to the Law, so that we are free to be controlled by God’s Spirit in order to bring forth spiritual fruit. (Romans 7:1-6).

-**Romans 8.** We learn our **source of power** over sin. This is the indwelling Holy Spirit of God based on our position in Christ. As we walk in **God’s Spirit** rather than in our **own flesh**, God is able to fulfil the righteousness of the Law in us. (Romans 8:2-4).

15. Adversity is **Motivation for Open Accountability to God and Others.**

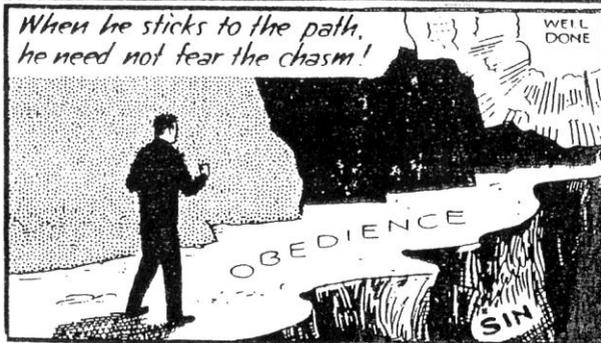
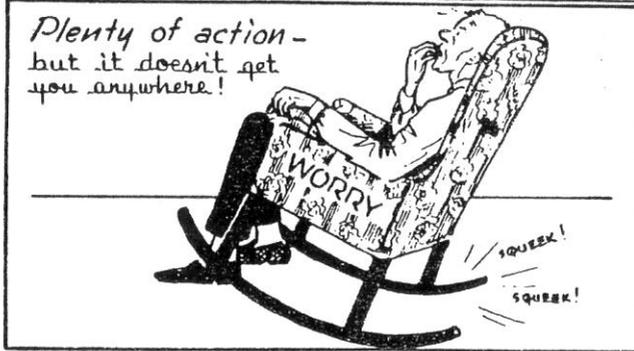
Aim to be **blameless** as we will be **accountable** to God. God's key to life, peace, wisdom and achievement is a moment-by-moment awareness of our accountability for all our words, thoughts, actions, attitudes and motives. This awareness is the fear of the Lord. It is the beginning of wisdom. When we lose our continual awareness of God, we think and act as if God did not exist. God responds by allowing adversity into our life. Judges 2:20-22.

16. Adversity **Prepares us to Comfort Others.** 2 Corinthians 1:3-5; 2 Corinthians 4:8-10.

Irritations are God's way of increasing our sensitivity to the needs of others, increasing our opportunities to serve God, and developing inward qualities. When God achieves His purposes through an irritation, He is then free to remove that irritation from our lives.

CONCLUSION: How do you respond to adversity? Will adversity make you better or bitter?

If we continually retreat from adversity, we force God to raise up new irritations or to set aside His best plan for our lives. Permanent irritations have a permanent benefit in our development and ministry.



84. STABLE HOMES PRODUCE HAPPY CHILDREN

(or Seven Ways to Have a Happy Marriage)

Bible Reading: Mark 10:6-9; Ephesians 4:18-33.

Aim: To identify, memorize and apply 7 Keys for a strong and happy marriage and secure children. A preacher, before marrying a couple, once said, "I'd rather have a funeral than a wedding. When you bury someone it stays done." He was a deeply concerned man. He had seen so many marriage break-ups. He asked, "Are these people committed to make it work - no matter what?"

Note: Divorce has reached epidemic stages in the US and Australia. It has happened during our lifetime, for example:

In 1900	1 in 100 marriages ended in divorce.
In 1960	14 in 100 marriages ended in divorce.
In 1987	40-50 in 100 marriages ended in divorce.

Divorce has tripled since 1900.

In an article, *Too Many Divorces, Too Soon*, noted anthropologist, Margaret Mead, showed how selfishness and growing irresponsibility destroys half of all marriages - and many of the children they produce. Writing in the February 1974 *Redbook* magazine, she said:

"In our generation divorce has become a part of the American way of life.....We no longer deeply believe that two people who have made the choice to marry should necessarily try to weather the storms that shake any vital, intimate relationship. Instead, more and more, our answer to a difficulty in marriage is: try it again with someone else."

All too often the motivation for changing marriage partners in such circumstances is the hope of finding someone who will please *me* - do things *my* way - meet *my* standards. If both husband and wife have this selfish, immature "me-first" attitude, someone is certain to be sadly disappointed.

The arrival of a child often triggers the crisis. Immature young couples who have not really learned how to give themselves to "living for the other" cannot cope with the pressure a baby creates.

Margaret Mead writes:

"Unprepared for parenthood, two young people who have become very close may see the new baby as an interloper. Or, if they are already restless, the baby may become just one more obstacle to pleasure and freedom. The mother is permanently stuck at home. The father is almost equally confined, or goes out alone. There is no money now for pleasure and almost nowhere the young couple can go for amusement with the baby. Then our current relief that a speedy divorce is the way out of the dilemma begins to take effect..... each accuses the other of things they both fear and long for. These being freedom from responsibility, a chance to get away, longing for better opportunities in life and a way out of their unhealthy situation."

Couples who separate end up with **deep hurts**. When there are children (and there are millions), they suffer the most. In addition to the millions who actually separate, many couples share a house and children but do not actually have a real home and marriage. Children from such families suffer in many of the same ways that children do whose parents actually separate. All these tragedies do not have to happen. They can be prevented. Learning and applying seven basic concepts will enable any couple to build a happy, stable and secure home - a home which cannot be destroyed. These are:

1. The Bible is God's rulebook and instruction manual for marriage.
2. Marriage is a permanent, unbreakable union.
3. Marriage cannot be a 50-50 proposition. Each partner must fulfil his or her own responsibilities 100% whether their partner does or not.
4. Both the husband and wife must recognize that they have distinctive personal needs which can be truly satisfied without guilt only in the marriage relationship.
5. At the same time both partners must be committed to recognizing and meeting their partner's needs which while different from their own are just as real and deeply felt.
6. All differences must be resolved God's way.
7. Recognize that a stable marriage must be based on trust and that a person can be trusted only as he or she is willing to trust the other completely.

Let us look at and apply these seven concepts in order to have good marriages ourselves, be able to teach others and prevent problems for them.

1. FOLLOW GOD'S INSTRUCTIONS IN THE BIBLE.

God thought up and instituted marriage. Marriages fail when people try to live together by their own rules rather than by God's rules. The tragic results are:

- a) Homes break up.
- b) Lives get shattered.
- c) Loyalties of children become divided.
- d) Children get bruises that hurt them all their lives.
- e) Dreams of the bride and groom become nightmares.

All because a couple ignores the Bible.

When a family regularly attend church together, the divorce rate is 1 in 50 (2%).

When both partners have received Christ as Saviour and faithfully follow God's guidelines for life and marriage, the divorce rate is 1 in 1525. Therefore, a Godly Christian has a 700 times better chance of success in marriage than has an unbeliever. WHY?

Because, by obeying God's instructions in the Bible, we can succeed. By ignoring God's way, tragedy results.

Principle: For success in any area in life, read and follow the instructions.

Therefore, to improve your chances 700-fold:

- a) Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour now.
- b) Get baptised, testifying that your old life and way of doing things died with Christ and is finished, and that you have been raised to a new way of life to do things God's way.
- c) Commit yourself personally to doing right.
- d) Read your Bible and pray every day with your partner and family.
- e) Be active in and attend every service in a Christ-centred, Bible-believing church, WHETHER IT IS CONVENIENT OR NOT. You will hear God's principles for living explained. You will be challenged to apply them.
- f) Look for opportunities to serve the Lord together. This will make you others-centred. Stable marriages are successful marriages.

2. REAFFIRM YOUR MARRIAGE AS A PERMANENT COMMITMENT and AN UNBREAKABLE UNION.

In the marriage vows, you promised "for better or for worse . . . till death do us part." This is Bible-based. Today, people see this merely as a ritual, but God says, "What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder." Matthew 19:6. Because people take their commitment very lightly, many marriages break up for immature and silly reasons. Then the unresolved problems, hurts and conflicts from the first marriage often prevent a second marriage from being really successful. God wants to bless your marriage and use you to bless each other, your children and others.

Challenge: To give stability to your marriage and security to your spouse, commit yourself now to stay married forever, no matter what. Then, tell the children of this commitment if old enough to understand, as it will give them security when they see their friends parents divorcing. It will also build their foundations in the attitude that their marriage is forever as well.

3. MARRIAGE IS NOT A 50/50 PROPOSITION.

(Each partner must fulfil his/her responsibilities 100%, whether the other partner does or not!)

Vows, if taken seriously, can keep a marriage together, but vows will not build a happy home. A home which is both secure and happy must be built on a real understanding of what makes a marriage successful. The slogan "marriage is a 50-50 proposition" is heard frequently. It sounds logical. However, the logic behind it can destroy many marriages. The basis of a 50-50 marriage is, "If you will do your part, I will do mine." It leads to tragedy because there are times in every marriage when someone fails. In a 50-50 marriage, this causes the other partner to step back & refuse to do his 50%. Then the battle rages.

The 50-50 marriage is not God's way. The husband and wife who start marriage on a 50-50 basis will always be checking to see if the partner is fulfilling his or her 50%. When one partner falls short, bitterness results in the other. The partner who feels cheated will withhold some of his 50% in an attempt to even the score. Things get worse. Even 90%-10% marriages will not work. The partner who is willing to give 90% will have a tendency to check to see if the partner is really fulfilling his or her 10%.

God's way in marriage is 100% - 100%. Each partner is expected to give his or her 100% even if the other partner fails completely. If only *one* partner in the marriage faithfully gives his 100%, the home cannot be destroyed. God uses right actions and attitudes of the faithful one to straighten out and restore the failing partner.

God's instructions for the 100% - 100% marriage are found in Ephesians 5:18-33. Different instructions and responsibilities are assigned to both husband and wife:

Wife:

- a) **Submit** yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. (Note that it does not add "if he does right and fulfils his responsibilities.")
- b) A wife should **not nag**, complain, lecture or teach her husband. She will win him to Christ by her behaviour. I Peter 3:1. When a man fails to be what he should be in marriage, God deals with him. Too often, the man does not hear the Lord or feel the Lord's pressure because he hears his wife too much and feels her pressure too much.

Husband:

- a) **Head** of the home. This does not mean that the wife is inferior, as seen from I Corinthians 11:3, "The head of Christ is God." Being under authority is not a position of inferiority. Jesus is God and is equal with the Father in all ways, yet in coming to earth as a man and dying for us, He submitted Himself to His Father in all things.

(Note: In submitting to His Father, He did not become inferior. He did all things because His Father wanted it. He loved His Father. Submission is not a mark of inferiority.)

- b) **Love your wife** enough to die for her. God, after telling wives to submit, severely limits the man's right to do anything that he pleases. God takes away man's right to use his authority irresponsibly by telling him, "Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it." Christ loves us as in Romans 5:8, "But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us."

Seeing Christ's love transform our hearts, brings us to love Him. So too a husband's patient, long-suffering love will finally win the wife's heart and change her behaviour. Christ does not cleanse and perfect us by beating on us. He uses His Word. God has no 50/50 marriage arrangements. Each partner is called upon to fulfil his/her own 100%, even if the other does nothing. God is not calling us to a life-long martyrdom, but will use these qualities to change the partner.

- c) **Be filled with the Holy Spirit** and be not drunk with wine (Eph. 5:18). As we are constantly filled with God's power and love, we can be the husband and wife He calls us to be.

What if we have not been giving 100%?

- a) Confess these failings to the Lord in detail.
- b) Ask your spouse for forgiveness for failing to be the spouse that God wants.
- c) Start submitting sweetly and lovingly.

4. RECOGNIZE THAT EACH HAS DISTINCTIVE PERSONAL NEEDS.

These needs can be truly satisfied without guilt only in the marriage relationship. Meet each other's needs. If you do not, then the security and stability of your home will be endangered. Both husband and wife have different but real needs.

Question 1: What is one big reason for marriage break-ups?

- A: When someone else outside the marriage begins to meet the emotional needs of the other. When this happens, the spouse is drawn almost irresistibly to the outsider. Then comes divorce.

Many fine people get caught in this trap without realizing why. They do not understand that the strong attraction they feel for someone other than their partner is just the result of the other person meeting an emotional need which should be fulfilled by the marriage partner. When two people are meeting one another's basic emotional needs there is a strong and growing desire for a complete physical relationship. Recognizing our basic emotional need and seeing that it can be fulfilled without guilt only within the marriage relationship is a vital protection against tragedy.

Question 2: What are these basic emotional needs of the husband and wife?

A: God tells husbands and wives how to meet each others needs. "Let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself, and the wife see that she reverence her husband." Ephesian 5:33

Question 3: What does a wife need?

- A:
- a) Love.
 - b) To hear that she is loved.
 - c) To receive regular evidence and reassurance of her husband's love, such as the thrill of little gifts, remembering important dates and events, and tokens of love.
 - d) Security, protection, home maintenance, etc.

Question 4: What does a husband need?

- A:
- a) To be respected and revered.
 - b) To know that his wife really thinks that he is the greatest.
 - c) To be assured of her respect, especially when he fails in some way.
 - d) To know that his wife is dependent on him, just as the church is dependent on Christ.

When the husband and wife do not recognize and work to meet the needs of their partners, grave dangers result. For example, a man who on the job is competent in accomplishing his assignments, and is polite, courteous and appreciative of the help of others, will find a woman respecting him (especially if she works for him). Because the woman is meeting his need for respect, he will be drawn to her. He will start desiring to meet her needs.

Soon he will compare the respect of the woman on the job with the nagging of his wife. The woman at the office or in the plant does not know that he does not take out the garbage and leaves his dirty socks or underwear on the bathroom floor. The woman on the job will not point out his failings (particularly if he is her boss) as his wife does. The woman on the job is in danger also. She does not realize that this very competent, appreciative man at work has all the shortcomings of her own husband. In the casual relationship at work (or wherever) these two people do not have to share unpaid bills, sick children, the need for a new washer, a second car, etc. Without realizing it, they soon find themselves meeting one another's basic needs. The man at work will be supplying the attention and kindness the woman needs. She will be giving the man the respect that he desires. Where two people are meeting these very basic needs for love and respect, the desire for a complete physical relationship becomes overpowering. Soon there is another broken marriage. It is happening all the time.

Recognizing your own basic need for reverence and respect (men) or love and attention (women) is an important safeguard against slipping into a relationship where these needs are met outside of marriage.

5. MAKE IT YOUR LIFE'S GOAL TO MEET YOUR SPOUSE'S NEEDS.

Their needs are just as real and deeply felt as yours. Husbands cannot know from their own experience how much wives need to be loved. They cannot really understand how wives need regular assurance and evidence of that love. Wives, from their own experience, cannot comprehend how their husbands need reverence and respect. The only way a husband or wife will ever come to realize that their partner has a real and deeply felt need, is to recognize his or her own personal needs.

The Husband. By seeing and admitting how much he needs respect and reverence from his wife, the husband is then able and prepared to understand that his wife also has a real, but deeply felt need.

The Wife. The only way a wife can really experience, feel or share the great need her husband has to be revered and respected, is to recognize her own deep hunger for love and the assurance of it.

When they see their own need, they are prepared to realize that a partner's need, while different, is just as deep and real.

Lesson: Recognizing our own emotional needs and seeing that our partner also has needs which are just as real and deeply felt as ours, will bring us a willingness to give ourselves to meeting the needs of our partner. As we do so, God will see to it that the partner begins to meet our needs.

The key to blessings in marriage is: Make it your life's goal to meet the needs of your partner.

In doing so, you will see your own needs met by God. "Give, and it shall be given unto you." Luke 6:38. This verse reminds people of money, but the principle goes much deeper than money.

God implies that we will get much more than we give. This principle applies in every area of life:

If we give LOVE.....	we will get LOVE.
If we give HELP.....	we will get HELP.
If we give ENCOURAGEMENT...	we will get ENCOURAGEMENT.
If we give A SMILE.....	we will get A SMILE.
If we give HATE.....	we will get HATE.

Therefore, when we give ourselves to meeting the needs of others, we will find others meeting our needs. This is especially true in marriage, and also true in Christian work, soul winning and disciple-making. Therefore, when both partners satisfy the other's needs, they become more and more important to each other, every part of the relationship blossoms and becomes fruitful. Problems which brought division will now bring husband and wife closer together. The physical relationship in marriage becomes completely fulfilling. Once other basic needs are met, then a life-long commitment can be made to satisfy the other's longings.

6. RESOLVE DIFFERENCES GOD'S WAY.

Eight Downward Steps Toward Divorce:

1. Long before a man or woman "puts away" his or her partner in divorce, there is always a "putting away" of the person from real companionship, communication and oneness.
2. When real closeness and union in marriage is broken, they are forced into a subtle form of adultery. This means that they seek to have their needs for companionship, meaningful conversation, oneness, attention and respect fulfilled by someone other than their marriage partner. This is "adultery" - diluting of marriage. Adultery has a broader meaning than just illicit sex outside marriage. God described Israel's worship of false gods and seeking help from them as adultery. Adultery (in a broad sense) = seeking to have one's needs met and fulfilled other than through the God-ordained channels method.

Therefore if a man "puts away" his wife from real oneness with himself and she seeks a substitute in soap operas, books, materialism, a job, or other things, he has forced her into a form of adultery. This type of "adultery" always precedes the actual illicit physical union outside marriage.

Such "putting away"..... the breaking of real oneness and communication in marriage....results from unresolved differences, unhealed hurts and unforgiven offences. Often the differences are very small. If they are not resolved, however, they will destroy real communication and oneness in marriage. The couple may continue sharing a house, smiling at each other and having a physical relationship (although it will not really satisfy). However, the real union is ended. Because some hurt has not been healed, one partner "puts away" the other from the very centre of his life and existence. The "putting away" is done when one partner's expectations are dashed again and again.

3. To avoid further hurts, the offended partner withdraws and erects a wall of protection.
4. The hurt person may seek to "get even". This hurts, offends or irritates the other person.
5. He or she then erects a barrier or wall also.
6. Even if divorce does not result (and it does not, in many cases), the marriage relationship becomes a stiff, cold, formal one, without real life, love or meaningful communication.
7. The partners no longer meet one another's needs.
8. Adultery (physical or emotional) results, as empty people seek fulfilment outside marriage.

What is the solution to this problem? God recognized the danger. It can happen in marriage or in any relationship between people. In two places in the Gospel of Matthew, the Lord Jesus gives procedures and assigns responsibilities through which all wrongs and hurts can be healed. In Matthew 18:15 the Lord says: "Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother."

Going to the person who has offended **with a proper attitude** is the key to seeing differences resolved. The proper way to approach a person who has offended is to go quietly and say “I need to ask your forgiveness. I got very upset with you because of.....It was wrong for me to react in this way. Will you forgive me?” In 99 cases out of 100, the other person will grant forgiveness and seek forgiveness for their own wrongdoing. The offender may or may not acknowledge his own wrongdoing immediately. Give God time to work on him, once you have confessed your own wrong attitudes or reactions. Taking the blame in this way, without looking at the wrongs of the other party, is God’s way of reconciliation. The Lord Jesus, in seeking to restore fellowship between God and man, took upon Himself everything which separated us from God. He took all of man’s sin and shame and guilt. Once He took our sin, we were made free to come back to Him. Our union with Him was renewed. He is our pattern.

In Ephesians 4:32 we are told to forgive one another as He forgives us, “And be ye kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ’s sake hath forgiven you?”

How did the Lord forgive?

Christ has done no wrong. Yet He took all of our guilt, blame, shame and punishment. For this reason we were freed to be one with Him again. We should be willing to do the same for others . . . and particularly for our marriage partner. When we truly forgive, we must put ourselves in the place where we can be hurt again. This is what the Lord Jesus commanded in the Sermon on the Mount. He said that instead of getting even (an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth) we should turn the other cheek (expose ourselves to getting hurt again). We have the same obligation when we realize that someone (including our husband or wife) feels wronged by us. God says that if we realize (or sense) that we have offended someone, we should go and get it settled. The surest way to settle any difference is by using God’s way of reconciliation. If we ask God, He will show us our fault.

Once forgiveness is granted, the foundation is laid for restoring communication and an openness in marriage. Without it, little differences and hurts erect high walls between two people who are supposed to be one. In effect, one or both partners “puts away” the other. Even if no divorce results (immediately or long term), one of two things happen. The home may become an ‘armed camp’ or, where there are few ‘open battles’, the relationship becomes a distant, formal one without the real oneness and blessings which marriage should produce. To avoid this tragedy, marriage partners should really commit themselves to resolving differences in God’s way, rather than just “getting over them”.

7. TRUST ONE ANOTHER COMPLETELY.

A stable marriage must be based on trust. A person can be trusted as he or she can trust the other completely. There must be trust to forgive and to go on when the other person has failed.

The alternatives to trust are (a) jealousy, (b) suspicion, or (c) protective walls built to hide behind.

We can give our partner unconditional trust only if we can trust the Lord to keep him right, and straighten him out if he fails. Husband and wife must commit themselves to earning the trust of their partner. This trust is commanded and demanded by the Word of God.

- a) **Husbands** must be able to trust their wives. Of woman, God says, “Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price is far above rubies. The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her.” Proverbs 31:10,11.
- b) **Wives** must also be able to trust their husbands. Only by trusting, can a woman obey the Word of God which says, “Wives submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.” Eph. 5:22.

Trusting God or our spouse can’t be based on feelings or what is likely to happen.

Trust is the result of a decision which we act upon.

CONCLUSION: Accepting and consistently applying these seven basic prerequisites will build stable, secure homes. Husbands and wives should study and memorize the foundational concepts for a stable marriage. Whenever one partner or the other senses that differences are developing in the home, prayerfully checking the list will show the cause. By faithfully following this practice, either partner in the marriage can be used of God to build a stable, secure home which cannot be destroyed.

Excerpts from “**Growing Up God’s Way**” by John A Stormer.

85. SCRIPTURE SWORDS FOR PERSONAL BATTLES

If neglected, the battlefields listed below may give way to enemy strongholds (see Ephesians 4:26-27 and 2 Corinthians 10:3-5). When tempted in these areas quote these scriptures to gain victory.

Each sword will force the enemy to make a speedy retreat.

ANGER: “Be ye angry, and sin not: let not the sun go down upon your wrath. Neither give place to the devil.” Ephesians 4:26-27.

ANXIETY: “Seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.” Matthew 6:33-34.

BITTERNESS: “Love your enemies... pray for them which despitefully use you.” Luke 6:27-28.

BURN-OUT: “Come unto me, all ye that labour & are heavy laden, & I will give you rest” Mat 11:28-30

COMPLAINING: “Do all things without murmuring and disputing, that ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world.” Philippians 2:14-15.

CONFUSION: “Shew me thy ways, O Lord, teach me thy paths... for thou art the God of my salvation, on thee do I wait all the day.” Psalm 25:4-5.

CRITICAL SPIRIT: “Be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ’s sake hath forgiven you.” Ephesians. 4:32.

DISCONTENTMENT: “For I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therewith to be content...both to be full and to be hungry, both to abound and to suffer need. I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.” Philippians 4:11-13.

DISCOURAGEMENT: “Fear thou not, for I am with thee; be not dismayed, for I am thy God; I will strengthen thee, yea, I will help thee, yea, I will uphold thee with the right hand of my righteousness.”

DOUBT: “Lord, I believe; help thou my unbelief.” Mark 9:24. (Isaiah 41:10.

ENVY: “Charity (love of Jesus) suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not...” I Corinthians 13:4.

FEAR: “Be strong and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be thou dismayed: for the Lord thy God is with thee whithersoever thou goest.” Joshua 1:9.

GOSSIP: “Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.” Romans 14:19.

MATERIALISM: “Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal: but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.” Matthew 6:19,20.

GUILT or CONVICTION: “If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse use from all unrighteousness.” I John 1:9.

GUILT FEELINGS (when you have already confessed): “There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.” Romans 8:1.

IMPATIENCE: “Thou art my God. My times are in thy hand.” Psalm 31:14-15.

FEELINGS OF INADEQUACY: Hear God say: “My grace is sufficient for thee: for my strength is made perfect in weakness.” 2 Corinthians 12:9.

LAZINESS: “Whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men.” Colossians 3:23.

LONELINESS: “When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee... when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned... for I am the Lord thy God.. since thou wast precious in my sight, thou hast been honourable, and I have loved thee.” Isaiah 43:2-4.

LYING: “Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour.” Ephesians 4:25.

PRIDE: “Whosoever shall exalt himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.” Matthew 23:12. (Proverbs 3:5.

RATIONALIZING: “Trust in the Lord with all thine heart:and lean not unto thine own understanding”

REBELLION: “Father... not my will, but thine, be done.” Luke 22:42.

RESENTMENT: “(Charity) seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil.” I Cor. 13:5

RESTLESSNESS: “Be still, and know that I am God.” Psalm 46:10.

SELF-CENTREDNESS: “Let nothing be done through strife or vainglory, but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves.” Philippians 2:3.

SELF-PITY: “Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow in his steps: Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth: Who when he was reviled, reviled not again; when he suffered, he threatened not: but committed himself to him that judges righteously.”

1 Peter 2:21-23.

WORRY: “The Lord is my shepherd: I shall not want (lack).” Psalm 23:1.

86. BIBLE KEYS FOR A HAPPY MARRIAGE

With so many broken marriages, we must know and apply the Bible’s principles for a happy marriage in **Ephesians 5:21-33**. These principles can only be applied by Spirit-filled Christians because marriage is a spiritual institution. What are these principles?

1. **SUBMIT YOURSELVES ONE TO ANOTHER.** Ephesians 5:21.

Both husband and wife must submit to meet each other’s needs above their own.

Each has special needs. Only as we fulfil each other’s needs can peace and happiness prevail.

2. **EACH SUBMIT TO GOD.** Ephesians 5:21. "Submitting yourselves.....in the fear of God."

Both marriage partners must live by God’s ways in the Bible. If one or both partners disobey Bible principles, problems are certain, which lead to frustration and possible divorce.

3. **WIVES SUBMIT TO YOUR HUSBANDS** as you submit to God. Eph. 5:22; 1 Peter 3:1-6.

Don’t shatter your husband’s ego or self respect, but hold him in high regard, helping him to achieve his goals as a help-meet. Genesis 2:18. God can change his heart if he is wrong. Proverbs 21:1. **Wives** submit to your own **husband’s** in everything. (Ephesians 5:24).

4. **UNDERSTAND** that the earthly marriage of a wife submitting to her husband is a **PICTURE** of the **Heavenly Marriage** of the **Church** submitting to **Christ** as her **Head**. Ephesians 5:23.

Aim to have a marriage as good as Christ and the Church.

5. **BOTH MUST BE SAVED.** They must have **received Christ as their Saviour**.

“He is the Saviour of the body.” Ephesians 5:23. Both must agree to live by Bible principles.

6. Wives must have a **MEEK** and **QUIET SPIRIT** which is in God’s sight of great price. 1 Pet 3:4

7. Husbands **DWELL WITH YOUR WIVES** according to **KNOWLEDGE**, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the **weaker** vessel. 1 Peter 3:7. Husband, realize that your wife is more vulnerable emotionally. Protect her from emotional stress and discomfort.

8. **PRAY TOGETHER.** "That your prayers be not hindered." 1 Peter 3:7.

9. **BE OF ONE MIND**, be compassionate, be loving, be pitiful, **BE COURTEOUS**.

Don’t render evil for evil, but bless when your spouse hurts you. 1 Peter 3:8,9.

10. **HUSBANDS LOVE YOUR WIFE.** How much? Ephesians 5:25. As **Christ loved the Church** and gave Himself for it. How much did Christ love the Church? Christ **died for the Church**.

Husband’s should be willing to die for their wife, to meet her needs, even to live for her daily.

11. **HUSBANDS SEEK TO:**

a) Keep your wife **holy** (sanctify her),

b) Keep her **spiritually clean by the Word of God**, as you read it together,

c) Make you and your wife without blemish (perfect in character). (Ephesians 5:27).

12. **HUSBANDS** love your wives as you love and look after **your own body** (5:28). If you love your wife and treat her right, she will love you and treat you right, and you will feel better. If you hurt and criticize your wife, she will hurt you. If you love your wife, you are loving yourself.

13. **HUSBANDS NOURISH and CHERISH your wife** and **meet her needs** as much as Christ meets the Church’s needs. Ephesians 5:29. **Nourish (1625)** means “to rear up to maturity.”

Cherish (2282) means “to warm, to brood, to foster.”

14. **WE MUST WORK TOGETHER** as bones in a **body** or **as a team**.

"For we are members of his body, of his flesh, of his bones." Ephesians 5:30.

15. **LEAVE YOUR FATHER AND MOTHER** when you get married. Don’t let parents-in-law interfere. Don’t live with your parents. Maintain good friendship with your parents. Ephes. 5:31

16. **Husbands CLEAVE to your wife as one flesh.** Ephesians 5:33.

Achieve oneness spiritually, mentally, emotionally and physically.

17. **Wife, REVERENCE your husband.**

Husband, LOVE your wife as yourself. Ephesians 5:33.

87. REASONS TO OBEY GOD

We live in an age of rebellion where many people care little about God, seek their own pleasure and ignore God. Many Christians are lukewarm. They are glad to be saved and going to heaven, but they don't care much about obeying and serving God. They are too busy having a good time, and living for themselves than to care about living for Christ and rescuing people from hell.

In order to be saved we must see ourselves as big sinners who have lived for self, wronged God and have broken the chief commandment of Matthew 22:37,38 of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength, and not loving our neighbour as ourselves.

When some Christians are asked to come to church they say: "You are always pushing me to come to church." A truly born again child of God with a new nature should find it a joy to come to church to fellowship with believers and to learn more of the Bible.

We should not ask, "How little can I do for God?", but we should ask: "How much can I do for God?" We should find it a joy to serve God. Consider these reasons to obey God:

1. God created us.

God allows us to live in His wonderful world of beauty that He has created for our enjoyment. To not obey God is to not acknowledge His goodness in giving us all these things richly to enjoy. It is selfish and very ungrateful to take all from God and give Him nothing or little in return. "Remember now thy creator" Eccles 12:1.

2. God has goodwill towards us.

God wants good things for us, "The goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance." Romans 2:4.

3. God knows what is best for us.

God's ways are better than our ways. God is much wiser and smarter than we will ever be. Often our wishes are based on wrong information.

"I am the Lord thy God which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldest go. O that thou had harkened to my commandments! then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea." Isaiah 48:17,18.

4. If we obey God today, then God will open up exciting new opportunities for us later.

"He that is faithful in that which is least is faithful also in much: and he that is unjust in the least is unjust also in much." Luke 16:10.

Every time we are challenged to obey God, we should view it as a test permitted by God. If we obey God we pass the test and blessing follows. For example, the Abrahamic covenant was given after Abraham passed the faith test in Genesis 13:5-18.

5. If we disobey God in any issue, we fail the test and loss results.

For example, Lot chose the best land for himself near Sodom, but he inherited trouble when he was captured by Amraphel in a war. He later lost everything in the destruction of Sodom. Genesis 14,19.

6. If we disobey God, our children will follow our example and disobey God also.

For example, Lot lost his reputation and testimony before his two daughters and sons-in-law when he asked them to flee from Sodom. "But he seemed as one that mocked unto his sons in law." Gen 19:14. Lot's two daughters so disrespected his lack of standards that they made him drunk and committed incest with him.

On the other hand Abraham obeyed God and his son Isaac obeyed God, following his father's good example.

7. If we obey God, our children and grandchildren will be likely to obey God also.

This will bring blessing to our following generations. For example, Abraham was greatly respected for his obedience to God by many generations of people to come.

8. If we obey God, we will be greatly respected by God and Godly people for years to come.

People will remember us with great respect and they will be encouraged to obey God as well. "The memory of the just is blessed: but the name of the wicked shall rot." Proverbs 10:7.

9. One act of disobedience leads to more disobedience

This is how bad habits are formed. The devil says "one sin won't hurt." This is a lie, because it is harder to do right after a sequence of giving in to sin. Many people fall into deep sin and trouble after giving in to a lot of small temptations.

10. If we obey god, then God will deliver us from trouble.

“The righteous is delivered out of trouble.” Proverbs 11:8.

11. If we obey God, we will prolong our days.

We all like to live a long and happy life. “Ye shall walk in all the ways which the Lord your God hath commanded you, that ye may **live**, and that it may be **well** with you, and that ye may **prolong your days** in the land which ye shall possess.” Deuteronomy 5:33.

12. Obeying God brings blessings.

“Them that honour me, I will honour.” I Samuel 2:30.

Our obedience will bless us and our children:

“O that there were such an heart in them, that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be **well** with **them**, and with **their children** forever.” Deuteronomy 5:29.

“Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse; a blessing if you obey the commandments of the Lord your God and a curse if ye will not obey the commandments of the Lord your God.” Deut. 11:26-28. Israel’s history proves that obedience brings blessing, and disobedience brings trouble.

13. Disobeying God brings discipline, trouble, problems.

“My son, despise not thou the chastening (discipline) of the Lord.” Hebrews 12:5.

If we remember that sin will bring God’s discipline upon us, we will fear God, knowing that He watches everything we do, approving or disapproving of our actions. God is powerful enough to permit trouble to come to us if we sin. Therefore we are strongly motivated not to sin.

14. Disobeying God stops our prayers from being answered.

“If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear me.” Psalm 66:18.

“ . . . that your prayers be not hindered.” I Peter 3:7.

15. Obeying God proves our love for him.

“If ye love me, keep my commandments.” John 14:15. All Christians claim to love God, but we prove our love for Him by obeying Him in difficult situations and in temptations. James 1:12.

16. God owns us now that we are saved.

We should live to please Christ who died for us. “Ye are not your own. For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God’s.” I Corinthians 6:19,20.

We are redeemed by Christ’s blood. This means that we are now bought back to Christ as our owner from the slave market of sin. “Why call ye me, Lord, Lord, & do not the things which I say.” Luke 6:46.

17. So Christ will say to us “Well done thou good and faithful servant.” Matthew 25:21.

If we obey Christ now, He will say “Well done” to us in front of all the believers and angels of all history. If we have disobeyed God on earth we will be ashamed later on in heaven.

18. So as to not be ashamed before Christ in heaven.

“And now, little children, abide in him; that, when He shall appear, we may have confidence and not be ashamed before Him at His coming.” I John 2:28.

Some believers will be ashamed at Christ’s coming because of a wasted life of sin and selfishness.

Other believers will have confidence, joy, glory and rewards at Christ’s return, because they used their time wisely for Christ and eternity, resulting in many people being saved.

19. Our obedience now, proves that God can trust us with great, exciting opportunities after Christ returns.

“Thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.” Matthew 25:21. Disobedience now will rob us of chances to enjoy heaven to the fullest. In heaven we will suffer loss of rewards for unfaithfulness now. (I Corinthians 3:15).

20. We will have to give account of our life to Christ.

“So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.” Romans 14:12.

How will you explain to God why you disobeyed Him? How will this make you feel?

“For he that in these things serveth Christ is acceptable to God, and approved of men.” Romans 14:18.

Will you happily explain to Christ how your talents brought ten talents? Will you “occupy till I come?” or will you hide God’s talents in the earth, wasting what opportunities God has entrusted you with?

21. We obey God so that we will not be wasters of time and talents.

“He that is slothful in his work is brother to him that is a great waster.” Proverbs 18:9.

“Remember how short my time is.” Psalm 89:47.

The prodigal son “wasted his substance with riotous living.” Luke 15:13.

To waste our time, talents and money on selfish affairs is so wrong when we see how the fields are white unto harvest, how souls are going to hell, and how so many poor people overseas are wanting the gospel. Time is one of our most valuable possessions. We must use it to win people to Christ and to teach God’s Word all over the world.

22. By obeying God, we conquer selfishness and develop a Christlike character.

“Give and it shall be given to you.” Luke 6:38.

People who are selfish are difficult to live with. Selfishness is a mark of immaturity. We must become givers, not takers. The more we give, the more we get. To be unselfish is one of the first lessons that we must learn in God’s school. When we obey God, we deny ourself, we take up our cross (death to self), and follow Christ (Mark 8:34). Selfish people seeking to “save their lives shall lose it. But whosoever shall lose his life for my sake and the gospel’s, shall save it.” Mark 8:35.

23. We obey God in order to thwart Satan’s planned destruction of our life.

“Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.” I Peter 5:8.

Satan is in the business of ruining people’s lives by getting them to depart from God, and to go their own way. We should watch, obey God and stay close to Christ lest we fall into Satan’s traps set to ruin our usefulness to God and our happiness. Satan wants, at all costs, to stop people getting saved. He does this chiefly by stopping Christians from growing and becoming dedicated soul winners and Bible teachers. Learn to look at life from an eternal viewpoint and to see yourself as playing a key role in changing people’s eternal destiny from hell to heaven. If you let Satan defeat you, this means that thousands of people will go to hell. See your life as playing an important, pivotal role in God’s plans. You must not desert God’s team.

24. We obey God in order to rescue people from hell.

If you fulfil God’s plans for your life, you can have a ministry that multiplies millions of disciples for Christ all over the world. These people will **love** you now and **thank you** forever in heaven **for your obedience** to preaching the gospel.

25. Obeying God brings eternal rewards in heaven. See Chapter 8 on Rewards.

26. To set a good example to others.

We teach by our lips and by our life.

“Your zeal hath provoked very many.” II Corinthians 9:2.

We either encourage people to serve God or we discourage people as they follow our example. Godly Hebrew kings encouraged the people to be Godly. Wicked Hebrew kings encouraged the people to be wicked and ungodly. We either bless or stumble others by our example. Let us be the best examples for others that Christ wants us to be.

27. To follow the example of great Christians in the past.

When we remember how the Apostles and many faithful Christians made great sacrifices in the past to advance the cause of Christ, we are motivated to follow their example to win our generation to Christ. In heaven we will meet those Christians and we will be asked: “What did you do for Christ in the spiritual war?” When we think of how many people were martyred for Christ, many of us will be greatly ashamed because of how little we did for Christ, when we had so many wonderful opportunities that others never had.

28. To win our country for Christ.

If we obey God, then our country and other countries can be won for Christ. If we disobey God by being lazy or sinning, then the cults and false religions will spread their lies to win our country for the devil. There is a constant spiritual war going on for the souls of men. We must never give up, but continue in the war for the souls of men. A strong church of obedient Christians will have a mighty impact on the world for Christ. A weak, small church of lukewarm, disobedient, lazy, sidetracked Christians will have little or no impact on winning the world for Christ. What an exciting goal to give your life to. Will you give Jesus Christ your best?

29. We are being watched from heaven by departed Christians who are cheering us on in the war for men's souls.

As in a relay, the past generation of Christians have passed the baton to us for winning our generation to Christ. Today we live at a time where the world's population is larger than it has ever been. We have a great opportunity to win more people to Christ than any previous generation. Believers in heaven are excited by our opportunities today. They are cheering us on to obey God and to win and train more people for Christ.

"Wherefore, seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight (hindrance or distraction), and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, looking unto Jesus . . ." Hebrews 12:1,2.

Will you serve God all the more as you read of the cheering in the heavenly grandstands for us to run our race well? Will you be a winner or a loser in God's race of life?

30. You'll be happiest obeying God.

"If ye know these things, happy are ye if ye **do** them." John 13:17.

"Where there is no vision the people perish: but he that **keepeth the law**, happy is he." Proverbs 29:18.

"Behold we count them happy which **endure**. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, and have seen the end of the Lord; that the Lord is very pitiful and of tender mercy." James 5:11.

The aim of life is not to be happy, but to be useful for God. When we are useful for God and accomplish His plans for us, then happiness comes as a by-product. As we make others happy, then we become happy, especially when we see them finding the joy of eternal life in Christ. Those who are constantly seeking happiness for themselves do not always find it. "He that loses his life shall find it." We find happiness and purpose in life as we lose our life in obeying and doing God's will, and in helping others find Jesus Christ.

31. God beseeches or begs us to obey Him.

"I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye **present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy**, acceptable unto God, which is your **reasonable service**. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God." Romans 12:1,2.

It is only reasonable that we present our bodies to God as a living sacrifice, completely burning in zeal to achieve God's good, acceptable and perfect will. Why do people not obey God? Because they want to be conformed to this world. This world will pass away, and only what's done for Christ will last.

"Only one life, it will soon be past. Only what's done for Christ will last."

"He that doeth the will of God, abideth forever."

We will be able to obey God if we study the Bible, allowing it to transform us and renew our minds away from the worldly thought patterns of our past. We need to see life from God's viewpoint, not from a worldly, humanistic, selfish, false viewpoint.

32. We obey God because of his greatness as God.

An employee who doesn't obey his boss gets fired. "A son honoureth his father, and a servant his master: if then I be a father, where is mine honour? And if I be a master, where is my fear? saith the Lord of Hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name. And ye say, how have we despised thy name?"

a) **Ye offer polluted bread** upon mine altar. v.7. How many Christians today offer God their leftover time, their least effort, their least interest and their lowest enthusiasm?

b) **Ye offer the blind** for sacrifice. v.8. How many Christians give God what they don't want or need, such as 20 cents in the offering. They are blind to the spiritual war.

c) Who is there even among you that would shut the doors for nought? v.10. How many Christians don't serve God unless they get paid. They don't serve God because they don't get paid for it. We should serve God without considering money.

d) Ye said also, **Behold, what a weariness it is**. v.13. How many Christians say how they can't be bothered serving God. They consider it too hard. "**I am a great King**, saith the Lord of hosts." v.14. Malachi 1:6,7,8,10,13,14. We must honour God above all earthly authorities because of the great God, King, Creator and Master that He is. He is God of the universe and we must honour and obey Him as such. It is serious to disobey the God of the universe.

33. Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft.

When Saul disobeyed God in sparing evil King Agag, God described Saul's disobedience as follows:

1. He is turned back from following me. I Samuel 15:11.
2. To obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken is better than the fat of rams. I Samuel 15:22.
3. Rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft.
4. Stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry.
5. Because you have rejected the Word of the Lord, He hath also rejected thee from being king. v.23. Sometimes when we disobey God, God rejects us or sets us aside from being used to achieve His best plan for us. We get second best or set aside completely. This is called being disapproved, or tested and found unacceptable.
6. The Lord hath rent the Kingdom of Israel from thee this day, and hath given it to a neighbour of thine that is better than you. v.28.

When we rebel, God may set us aside and use someone else to do the great work planned for us. When we disobey God, it is as serious a sin as witchcraft. We must repent of all disobedience.

34. We obey God so as to keep God's protective hedge in place. This ensures our safety.

When we obey God as Job did, who was "a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil", God places a hedge around us to protect us from Satan's attacks.

Satan said to God, "Hast thou not made an **hedge** about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side?" Job 1:8-10.

If we rebel against God, He may discipline us by removing the protective hedge to allow Satan to attack us. This may be what Paul meant when he said, "To deliver such a one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus." I Corinthians 5:5.

"Of whom is Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme." I Timothy 1:20.

Hence, a strong motivation to obey God is the thought of losing God's protection, and being delivered to Satan to beat us up.

35. Obeying God brings us victory over sin and temptation.

"This is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith." I John 5:4.

If we exercise faith in God's promises, then we will overcome worldly temptations and we will walk in victory over sin. See I Corinthians 10:13.

36. Obedience pleases God.

Our goal should be to please God in everything. We do this by walking in faith and obedience to God.

"But without faith it is impossible to please him." Hebrews 11:6.

Jesus said: "I do always those things that please Him." John 8:29.

Paul said, "Even as I please all men in all things, not seeking mine own profit, but the profit of many, that they may be saved." I Corinthians 10:33.

"If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ." Galatians 1:10.

"No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of this life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier." II Timothy 2:4.

"Enoch . . . had this testimony that he pleased God." Hebrews 11:5. Do you please God in everything?

37. Disobeying God Grieves the Holy Spirit.

"Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God." Ephesians 4:30.

It is a sin not to be filled with the Holy Spirit. Ephesians 5:18.

38. If we obey God, we more easily receive God's guidance.

God opens the windows of understanding God's will when we tithe. (Malachi 3:10).

39. To Gain Peace Of Mind.

"Great peace have they which love thy law, and nothing shall offend them." Psalm 119:165.

People will do anything to get peace of mind and freedom from guilt and fear. Sin brings guilt and fear.

Obeying God prevents sin, guilt and fear. We have peace knowing that we are in God's will whatever the outcome may be.

40. Obeying God makes us Christlike in character.

It produces character qualities such as humility, wisdom, patience, kindness and all the fruit of the Spirit. Galatians 5:22,23. It makes us more aware of our faults, more ready to admit any blame, and much easier to get along with others. We should constantly check our behaviour to see if we are obeying God.

41. Disobeying God Is Sin. “Be Sure Your Sin Will Find You Out.” Numbers 32:23.

A law of the universe is “What you sow, you reap.” Galatians 6:7.

If we sin against God or man, be it by committing a sin, or by neglecting to do what is right, it will have an adverse affect on us. Hence, we avoid sin because we want to avoid the bad consequences that will come back on us. We need to develop a regular habit of always obeying God on every issue, every day. Then we will experience the joy and blessings that come from obeying God.

88. PRINCIPLES OF SPIRITUAL GROWTH

Aim: To identify and apply Bible principles that will promote personal spiritual growth.

Introduction:

How does one maintain their spiritual vitality in a world that opposes spiritual things so strongly? How do we help others to maintain strong spiritual growth, strength, balance and good spiritual sense?

Sometimes we learn so much that we forget to tie together all the important Bible teachings.

What are these basic key truths? (Note: these are not in order of importance).

1. Sacrifice for God and for others.

This stops us from being selfish. Let Christ live in us controlling our behaviour and our decisions.

"present your bodies a living sacrifice..." Romans 12:1.

Put yourself out to help others and promote the cause of Christ on earth. Matthew 7:24-28.

"Neither will I offer burnt offerings (sacrifice) unto the Lord my God of that which doth cost me nothing." II Samuel 24:24.

Notice how the early apostles and early Christians made great sacrifices to plant churches all over the world. How about you? What ministry/service are you doing?

The world is full of selfish people, whose main goal in life is to accumulate wealth and material things for themselves.

God gave Christ to die for us; let us give our lives and time to build God's work all over the world.

"Give and it shall be given unto you." Luke 6:38. Sacrificing proves our love for God and for others.

God will not forget our work & labour of love in ministering to the saints. He will reward our service now and later.

2. Obey God whether you feel like it or not.

Many Christians **destroy** their lives through disobedience.

Our whole society teaches us to rebel against authority from our earliest age. School's teach rebellion, as do TV, rock music, universities, radio, undisciplined homes, permissive child philosophies, newspapers, books and magazines.

Question: Will you be a disobedient rebel against God, or will you be protected by submitting to God's authority figures, such as Pastors, God's Word, parents, police and your conscience? Suffering teaches us to obey God.

"Though he were a Son, yet learned he **obedience** by the things which He suffered." Hebrews 5:8.

"The Lord our God will **we serve**, and **his voice** will we obey." Joshua 24:24.

"Bringing into captivity every thought to the **obedience** of Christ." 2 Corinthians 10:5.

"To obey is better than sacrifice... for **rebellion** is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry." 1 Samuel 15:22,23.

Look up these verses on obedience: Nehemiah 9:16,17; Job 36:11,12; Isaiah 1:19,20; Acts 5:29; II Thessalonians 1:8 and 3:14.

"Obey them that have the **rule over you**, and **submit** yourselves." Hebrews 13:17.

"ye have **obeyed from the heart** that form of doctrine which was delivered you." Romans 6:17.

Question: How does the devil get you away from a good church?

Answer: A common method is to get you to **believe evil** about the **Pastor**. The devil uses people to spread lies about the Pastor so that you will disrespect him. You then leave the church and rarely ever

serve God obediently in a church again. The Pastor is placed there to protect people from wolves and false doctrines. For wolves to attack a believer they must entice him away from the Pastor/Shepherd. You will enjoy great safety in obeying your Godly Pastor who is true to the Word of God. He cares for you more than you think. Millions of Christians have made shipwreck of their faith by disobeying their Pastors. He knows more than you think.

If every Christian disobeyed God and their Pastor, God's work would go nowhere and fall apart quickly. A church must function like an army in obedience to authority. A Pastor is a Bishop which means a military commander. We must obey, because people's eternal souls are heading to hell and **need to be rescued.**

Matthew 7:24-27 teaches that if we **hear** Christ's sayings and **DO** them, we will be **wise** people whose lives will withstand the trouble and difficulties that come. Those who **DISOBEY** Christ's sayings **will** find that they may succeed for a little while, but when the storms of life come, their lives will fall apart with great ruin. Obedience is a matter of the **will** choosing God's ways.

"yield yourselves unto God." Romans 6:13.

"The churches walked in the fear of the Lord." Acts 9:31.

"let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and the spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God." II Corinthians 7:1.

"Pass the time of your sojourning here in fear." I Peter 1:17.

3. Fear God.

The Greek word for fear is "phobou" meaning "reverence, respect, honour, a deep and reverent sense of accountability to God. "So then everyone of **us** shall give account of himself to God." Romans 14:12.

Disobedience comes from pride and arrogance in thinking that we know better than God, pastors, parents, police, etc. It is rebellion, like witchcraft. Rebellion is Satan's problem. When you disobey God, you follow in the same steps as Satan. If you disobey your authority figures, your children will follow your example and disobey your wishes. Galatians 6:7.

"Be not deceived, God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap."

Believers should fear God's displeasure at sin. We should follow **JESUS'** example of obedience:

"I do always those things that please Him." John 8:29.

"Children, obey your parents in all things." Colossians 3:20.

"Enoch...had this testimony that he pleased God." Hebrews 11:5.

Obeying God is an act of faith, because often we think that if we obey God we will miss out on some immediate pleasure. Yet God promises that if we obey Him, He will exalt us in due time. **Obedience** and **faith** is choosing God's will instead of our will. It means being prepared to accept loss in order to please God. The obedient Christian is later on pleasantly surprised to learn that God "is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think." Ephesians 3:20.

God can bless you more for your obedience than what you can arrange for yourself by ignoring God.

"Them that honour me, **I WILL HONOUR.**" I Samuel 2:30.

"No good thing will he withhold from them that walk uprightly." Psalm 84:11.

We must not listen to the World, our faithless, unbelieving peers, nor to our fears, nor to the devil, nor to our own understanding, but to the Word of God as our guide. This is called "walking by faith" and this is the only way that we can please God.

"But without faith it is **impossible to please God**...(we) must believe that he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him". Hebrews 11:6.

All through our life we will be tested to see if we will obey God in faith, or take what appears to be a "short cut" against God's Word and thus sin. Which will you choose?

"No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affair of this life; that he may please him who has chosen him to be a soldier." II Timothy 2:4. (I Corinthians 10:1-11 (v.10).

"Neither murmur ye, as some of them also murmured and were destroyed of the destroyer."

"If a man have long hair it is a shame unto him." I Corinthians 11:14.

4. Duty.

Duty is a decision of the will to do what is commanded. We are under the law of liberty, and "the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death." Romans 8:2.

Many Christians have an elastic conscience, like King Saul, who was told to kill the Amalekites. He disobeyed God and as a result he lost the kingdom. **Obey God at all costs.** To obey is an act of faith. I John 2:28 says that some Christians will be ashamed in heaven because of a life of disobedience to Christ. We should feel guilty and convicted if we disobey God.

"If ye love me, keep my commandments." John 14:15.

Sometimes God may take away the joy of reading the Bible, of prayer, of church, of soul winning etc, so that we'll do them not because we feel like it, but because it is right. "we have done that which is our duty to do." Luke 17:7-10.

Duty is an act of love. Duty does things well, but **LOVE does things beautifully.**

The Christian race is like a marathon. We need commitment and determination as well as love for God and others in order to obey God's calling.

So many lazy Christians give up and drop out of serving God. I don't want to waste my opportunities. I want my life to count for Jesus Christ so that people will be in heaven through my life's work and so that God will say to me, "...well done thou good and faithful servant."

Will Christ say this to you, or will you be ashamed at His coming because of selfish disobedience?

5. Overlook other Christians faults.

Overlook other Christians faults as much as possible.

"As much as lieth in you live peaceably with all men." Romans 12:18.

If necessary, tell them of their faults so as to help them overcome them.

"above all things have fervent charity among yourselves, for charity shall cover the multitude of sins."

I Peter 4:8. Proverbs 10:12; Proverbs 12:16; 17:9.

Where they can't be overlooked, then confront the person in love according to Matthew 18.

6. Obey God whether you feel like it or not.

Say "Yes" to God and "No" to self. I Corinthians 9:23-27; Acts 5:32; 5:29.

We are in a race and we discipline our bodies to do God's will as an athlete for:

- a) the gospel's sake. I Corinthians 9:23.
- b) to save some. I Corinthians 9:22.
- c) to receive the prize. I Corinthians 9:24.
- d) to not become a castaway. I Corinthians 9:27.

7. Maintain the Basics daily of:

- a) Bible reading.
- b) prayer.
- c) confess sin to God.
- d) look for soul winning opportunities.
- e) be filled with the Holy Spirit and show the fruit of the Spirit.

8. If you have a problem tell the Pastor or another Christian.

Cultivate close, Godly friends. The Pastor can't read your mind. James 5:16. Don't keep problems to yourself because someone else has already gone through that problem and surely has some answers that will help you to get victory.

9. Help another Christian to grow.

Get a Timothy. Seek to teach what you learn to other people. Don't just take it all in. Your Christian life becomes more exciting when you get a Timothy that you are discipling. Who are you discipling this year? Find someone you can thoroughly pour your life into properly. Hebrews 5:11-14. Becoming a teacher of the Word is a big step to becoming a strong meat Christian. In Acts 9:20-29 Barnabus and other disciples helped get Paul started in his Christian life. In 2 Timothy 2:2, Paul helped Timothy get started. Who are you helping to get started?

10. Read Good Books, Especially The Bible.

Paul knew the helpful value of good books that teach Bible truths. 2 Timothy 4:13. A good Christian book is often just a sermon in print. By continually reading good books we:

- a) keep our mind on good things.
- b) we learn much faster.
- c) we can teach the Bible better.
- d) we can tap into others knowledge and experience.

11. Trust God's Love, Wisdom and Goodness in all circumstances of life, especially the bad, to be working out His best plan for us as He guides us in life. If we lose trust in God, then we will become very bitter and cynical. This is a problem with many older people. Proverbs 3:5,6; Job 12:15; Psalm 37:25,28; Romans 8:28; Matthew 6:23; Romans 8:32. Believe that God is teaching us and working out His plans in our lives for our and others good, eg: Joseph in Genesis 50:20. Trust God that He knows what He is doing. Ask God to show us how to solve our problems. Keep obeying God joyfully.

12. Realize that we are in a very intense Spiritual Warfare.

We are to fight to win the souls of mankind for Christ. We fight wrong ideas with the truth of the Bible. 2 Corinthians 10:3-5; Ephesians 6:10-18. When you understand that life and the history of the world is a battle and war between the forces of God and the forces of Satan, you can more readily see how you fit in and why world events happen, such as WW I and WW II. Satan and demons oppose your work for God, but God has given you:

- a) the armour of God to put on.
- b) the Holy Spirit indwelling you.
- c) angels to assist you.
- d) fellow Christians to encourage, teach and help you.

We are fighting wrong ideas that take control of people's mind and turn them from the truth of God, eg:

- a) evolution.
- b) lawlessness. The idea that I can make up my own rules.
- c) atheism.
- d) false religions.

13. Be Grateful to God and others. 1 Thessalonians 5:18.

If we are constantly saying thanks to God and to others, we develop humility, as we realize our dependence on God for all that we have. It kills pride. It gives us a happy joyful spirit as we constantly live a life of excitement and rejoicing in the many good things that happen to us that we are focusing on. It teaches us not to focus on bad things, but only the good. This is a big secret in living a life of victory. Philippians 4:8.

14. Be Humble.

Jesus first, others second, yourself last. This takes your mind off self. This then gives us mental stability and strength.

“Better it is to be of a humble spirit with the lowly, than to divide the spoil with the proud.” Prov 16:19

“I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.” Isaiah 57:15.

“Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven...Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth.” Matthew 5:3,5.

“Lord, I am not worthy that thou shouldst come under my roof.” Matthew 8:8.

“Whosoever shall humble himself as this little child, the same is greatest in the kingdom of heaven.” Matthew 18:4.

“Whosoever shall exalt himself shall be abased; and he that humbles himself shall be exalted.” Matthew 23:12.

“I say... to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think.” Romans 12:3.

“Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits.” Romans 12:16.

“God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble.” James 4:6.

If you want peace in yourself, with God and man, be humble.

If you want to be a good father to children, be humble.

If you want to be great, be humble.

If you want people to follow you, be humble.

If you want people to like you, be humble.

If you want God to uplift you, be humble.

If you want your wife to love you, be humble and seek to provide her needs. The way up is down.

15. Tithe.

Abram paid tithes to Melchizedek. Jacob paid tithes. The Israelites paid tithes to the Levites. Tithing is giving a tenth of your income to God's work in the local church. This is beneficial for several reasons:

- a) God will give you a blessing. Malachi 3:7-12.
- b) God will plug up waste and loss.
- c) People will see that you are blessed of God.
- d) You will get back the same measure that you give. Luke 6:38.
- e) They that preach the gospel should live of the gospel. Therefore the gospel goes out more.
- f) Christ endorsed tithing by the Pharisees. Luke 11:42.
- g) It is our way of acknowledging that all we have comes from God. John 3:27.
- h) It is designed to increase our faith as God blesses us more than we can give back to Him.

16. Get Baptized as soon as possible.

The conditions of Bible baptism are:

- a) Right candidate - believer. Acts 8:35-39.
- b) Right motive - obedience to Christ. Matthew 28:18-20.
- c) Right method – immersion. Mark 1:9-11.
- d) Right authority - local church. Acts 2:41,47.

Baptism pictures:

- a) Christ's death, burial and resurrection that I am trusting in to pay for my sins, as I go down in, under and up out of water.
- b) My death to my old way of life, burial of my old man with his habits, and rising to a new walk with Christ.

We should get baptized because:

- a) Christ was baptized by immersion. Mark 1:9-11.
- b) We can completely obey Christ here.
- c) It greatly helps us to take a confident stand publicly for Christ.
- d) It helps unsaved friends and family to understand the gospel.
- e) It is the answer of a good conscience toward God. I Peter 3:21. Our conscience is eased.

17. Ask Questions about the Bible and think Bible Doctrines through carefully.

Be a student of the Bible. II Timothy 2:15. Find out what the Bible is saying and work out how to apply it in every life situation. Ask questions of the Bible because:

- a) It helps you understand the Bible better.
- b) You can defend it better.
- c) Questions open up new concepts.
- d) It's wrong to accept every idea unquestioningly. We must check it with the Bible, because we may be believing something false. People believe false doctrines when they accept ideas without checking the Bible. "Prove all things." I Thessalonians 5:21.
- e) You will find the Bible to be true and without error. This will increase your faith.
- f) You'll teach the Bible better.

Be like the Bereans who searched the scriptures daily to see if Paul's teachings were so. Acts 17:11.

18. Attend two Church Services per week and one Teaching Study.

With one service per week you will mark time or backslide, but with two services per week you will grow. Develop a hunger for God's Word and God's house. Matthew 5:6; Psalm 19:7-11; Jeremiah 15:16

- a) The pastor generally spends so much time preparing suitable, helpful, practical teaching that we will miss some very important ideas if we miss one service.
- b) It makes us loyal to God's work and to each other.
- c) We learn things that we can teach to other people.
- d) It makes us disciplined and dedicated to God.

19. Learn as much as you can, as fast as you can.

This will allow you to be more useful in getting more people saved earlier in life. When you learn things, find someone that you can teach them to. Collect good messages in a notebook. This helps you to stay enthusiastic for Christ. Ask: What do I believe and why do I believe it?

20. Hell.

Problem: All unsaved people at death will go to hell fire, then to the Lake of Fire forever. What is hell like:

- a) Hell and worms forever. Mark 9:42-48.
- b) Torment, flame, separation, loneliness, bad memories. Luke 16:19-31.
- c) Weeping, wailing and gnashing of teeth. Matthew 13:41,42.
- d) Chains of darkness forever. II Peter 2:4.
- e) The Lake of Fire forever. Revelation 20:14,15.

If we love people, we will warn them about hell so that they see Christ as the answer, repent and receive Christ as Saviour.

Question: How can so few people win so many to Christ and eternal life and heaven in a short time?

Answer: By multiplying disciples who win people to Christ and train their disciples. 2 Timothy 2:2.

21. Get a World Vision of Multiplication, Missions and Winning the World to Christ.

Christ gave us all the Great Commission of Matthew 28:18-20 of:

- a) Teaching all nations about salvation in Christ.
- b) Baptize people when they are saved.
- c) Teach them to observe all things Jesus commands us in the Bible.

As one person can't go overseas and be in Australia as well, we send MISSIONARIES overseas and to other parts of Australia to plant Bible believing churches which seek to win people to Christ in their area. These churches may start other churches elsewhere. Our aim is to get as many people saved and trained in the fastest way, so they can win and train as many believers as fast as possible. This is called multiplication of disciples. 2 Timothy 2:2. See Discipleship by Multiplication chapter 57, p.234.

22. Keep Soul Winning as your Main Priority.

If you do, this will help keep you from error.

Problem: So many Christians get sidetracked and involved in things that don't help win people to Christ. Luke 19:10; Acts 4:12; Proverbs 11:30.

Ask yourself in everything you do, "How does this action lead to people getting saved?" This is the main reason why God left us on earth. It is to get people saved from the fires of eternal hell. Your efforts to lead people to Christ determines where they will spend the next infinite years. We can't win people to Christ in heaven, only on earth. If you stop soul winning you'll have less joy and may backslide. Speak to at least one person each day about Christ or give a tract out each day or go visiting once a week. If you don't know how to win souls, read chapter 17, p.93.

23. Get Eternal Values now.

Everyone of us is born with earthly values as being important, such as go to school, get a good job, earn lots of money, go on holidays, enjoy life, get married, look out for your own interests, etc. These are good in themselves but they don't lay up treasures in heaven. In Matthew 6:19-21, Jesus tells us not to lay up treasures on earth because we can't keep them permanently and forever, but to lay up treasures in heaven because we can never lose them. What are you really living your life for? What are your life's goals? Luke 12:16-21; Revelation 22:12; II John 8; II Corinthians 5:10. After getting saved, we must get eternal values, such as living for Christ and for eternity, not just for the present.

24. Take Every Opportunity to Serve God

This will develop your spiritual gifts. Don't make up excuses such as: "I can't do that." You'll never know Christ's enabling power if you don't attempt things for God. Give it a go. You may succeed.

- a) There are many people who could win many people to Christ if they only knocked on some doors and spoke to people.
- b) Many Christians could teach a Bible study if they asked new Christians for a weekly study.
- c) Many people at Bible College could start a church if they went out and worked at it.
- d) We would have more of God's blessings if we asked Him. "Ye have not because ye ask not." Matthew 25:14-30; Luke 12:42-48; Luke 19:11-27.

Principle: Use what you have got and you will get more. If you don't use it you'll lose it. John 6:1-14; Genesis 12:1-5; Exodus 3:1-14; I Samuel 14:6.

Hudson Taylor went to China and started the China Inland Mission. This mission later on had over 1000 missionaries in China, yet people opposed him and told him he was unsuitable and couldn't do it. "Expect great things from God. Attempt great things for God."

25. Make Best Christians your Best Friends.

If a person will be a bad influence on you or pull you down, then don't be close friends with them. Psalms 1:1-6; Proverbs 22:24; 27:17. Seek to win them to Christ, but don't let them win you to error.

26. Love God with All your Heart, Soul, Mind, Strength and Love your Neighbour as Yourself.

What are we told to love and to love not?

Love: God, Psalms 18:1; Thy Salvation, Psalms 40:16; Thy Law, Psalm 119:97;

Thy Commandments, Psalm 119:127; Wisdom, Proverbs 4:6; Judgment, Isaiah 61:8; Good, Amos 5:15; Mercy, Micah 6:8; Truth and Peace, Zechariah 8:19; Your Enemies, Matthew 5:44; One Another, John 13:35; Husbands love your wives, Ephesians 5:25; His appearing, II Timothy 4:8; Wives love your husbands and children, Titus 2:4; Let brotherly love continue, Hebrews 13:1.

Love not or hate: Evil, Psalm 97:10; Vain thoughts, Psalm 119:113; Lying, Psalm 119:163; Sleep, Proverbs 20:13; Robbery, Isaiah 61:8; False Oaths, Zechariah 8:17; Money, I Timothy 6:10.

If we love things other than God, we will become bitter and selfish.

27. Don't Be Lukewarm, Be Zealous, Hot, Keen, Not Half-Hearted.

God hates lukewarmness more than being cold. Revelation 3:15-17. Don't leave your first love, Revelation 2:4; Eccles. 9:10, 10:18; Proverbs 22:29; Proverbs 12:24; Proverbs 24:30-34; 6:6-11.

28. Have a very High View of the Local Church.

Do all you can to build it. Be a church planter and builder. Matthew 16:18; Acts 2:47; Eph. 5:25; Psalms 133:1; Ephesians 1:22, 23; Hebrews 10:24, 25; Mark 16:15.

The Local Church, by soul winning and multiplying and training disciples is the way to turn the world to Christ. If you or I desert the church, then God's work slows down, sin grows faster and more people have wrecked lives and go to hell. Let us plant churches everywhere before Christ returns.

29. Faithfulness. Revelation 2:10; James 1:12.

A crown of life is awarded to those that: a) Are faithful unto death,

b) Endure temptations,

c) Love God. I Corinthians 15:58; Galatians 6:9.

Aim: For us to be faithful to God's ways all of our life.

What is Faithfulness? Faithfulness is a continuous, steady, uninterrupted, reliable performance in life with all its responsibilities, without boasting about it.

Who should we be faithful to? God, the Bible's Commands, our spouse, our church, our friends, our employer, our employees, lost people in bringing them to the gospel, training Christians to reach the world for Christ, and in praying for people. I Samuel 12:23.

Faithfulness is my behaving to God and others just as how God behaves towards me.

Lamentations 3:23; Hebrews 13:5; Psalm 40:10; Psalms 89:1; 119:75,90.

Faithfulness is God and others being able to rely on us. Six reasons for faithfulness are:

a) It is **rare** in man. Proverbs 20:6.

b) It is **reflected** in Christ. Hebrews 3:1,2.

c) It is the **result** of living by faith in God's promises in the Bible. Acts 6:5,8.

d) It is **required** of stewards. I Corinthians 4:2.

e) It is **rewarded** by a crown of life. Revelation 2:10; Commendation by Christ, Matthew 25:21,23; cities in the kingdom, Luke 19:17,19; and reigning with Christ. Revelation 17:14.

f) We are solemnly warned against failing to be faithful. II Peter 3:17,18.

The Realm of Faithfulness. Where should we be faithful?

a) To support the local church. Hebrews 10:23-25; Luke 4:16. Christ was faithful in attending the synagogue every Sabbath and attending every Passover even at death. Acts 2:41,42.

b) In the basics: Feeding on God's Word, spiritual growth, holy living, fellowship with the Father and Son, warring against Satan, the world and the flesh, giving, following Christ.

c) In stewardship.

d) In service.

When you do all these, you are no longer a spiritual babe, but you are becoming a spiritual adult.

Conclusion: Will God say to you, "Well done thou good and faithful servant?" Matthew 25:21,23.

89. 14 MYSTERY DOCTRINES OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

Mystery: A truth hidden up to this point, but now revealed.

DOCTRINAL:

1. Mystery of the **FAITH**. I Timothy 3:9.
Those things most surely believed among us. Luke 1:1.
The Doctrine of Christ. II John 9; Hebrews 6:1,2.
The Apostle's Doctrines. Acts 2:42.
2. Mystery of the **GOSPEL**. Ephesians 6:19; Romans 16:25.
Christ died shedding His blood on the cross, to pay for our sins, was buried and rose again.
Christ offers forgiveness and justification to those who believe and call on Christ to save them.
3. Mystery of **CHRIST**. Ephesians 3:1-12. v.6.
Jew and Gentile are brought into one body, the church.
The distinction has been removed by Christ and we are made fellow heirs of the promises.
4. Mystery of the **BRIDE**. Ephesians 5:21-33, v.31,32 and Revelation 21:9.
As a husband and wife become one flesh, so the church becomes one flesh with Christ.
The church is the Bride and Christ is the Bridegroom.
5. Mystery of the **7 STARS** and **7 CHURCHES**. Revelation 1:20.
 - a) 7 Stars: Represent preachers bringing God's message to God's people.
 - b) 7 Churches: Predict the state of Christendom during each of the 7 different time periods from the Apostles to the Rapture.
6. Mystery of **GODLINESS**. I Timothy 3:16.
The secret of living a Godly life is occupying ourselves with Jesus Christ as seen here:
 - a) God was manifest in the flesh, means that Christ, as God, came as a man.
 - b) Justified in the Spirit, at His Baptism (Mark 1:9-11), Transfiguration and Resurrection. (I Peter 3:18, Romans 8:11).
 - c) Seen of Angels. Christ is the Head of all principalities and powers. Colossians 2:10.
Angels were present at **Christ's birth**, at His **40 days** fasting in the wilderness, at **Gethsemane**, at His **Resurrection** and at His **Ascension**.
 - d) Preached unto the Gentiles, means many Christians missionary labours.
 - e) Believed on in the world, means people who are saved.
 - f) Received up to glory, means His Ascension.

DISPENSATIONAL:

7. Mystery of the **KINGDOM OF HEAVEN**. Matthew 13.
In the Church age, Christendom will include genuinely saved people and false imitators, as shown by these 12 parables of the:
 - a) Sower
 - b) Wheat and Tares
 - c) Mustard seed
 - d) Leaven
 - e) Hid treasure
 - f) Pearl
 - g) Drag net
 - h) Unmerciful servant
 - i) Vineyard labourers
 - j) Marriage feast
 - k) 10 Virgins
 - l) Talents.

8. Mystery of **ISRAEL'S BLINDNESS**. Romans 11:25.
This is the temporary setting aside of Israel in the Church Age.
9. Mystery of the **RAPTURE OF THE CHURCH**. I Corinthians 15:51.
This is the coming of Christ to the air, prior to His visible appearing, to remove a select company of His people to Heaven, before judgment falls on an ungodly world. This is a truth never mentioned in the Old Testament. This is taught in John 14:1-3; I Thessalonians 4:13-16; Philippians 3:20-21; I Corinthians 15:51-58.
10. Mystery of **GOD'S WILL**. Ephesians 1:9,10.
God's purpose for man and the universe is that all things shall be headed up in Jesus Christ, and that through Jesus Christ blessing shall be brought to all things in Heaven and on Earth.
11. Mystery of **GOD**. Revelation 10:7.
This is why God has restrained so long for thousands of years in love and patience before judging man for his wickedness. Why has God allowed evil men to continue in wickedness and seeming to get away with it?
It is to allow men time to repent.

DEVOTIONAL:

12. Mystery of the **INDWELLING CHRIST**. Colossians 1:24-29.
God desires to dwell with and among His people, and in us.
"Christ in you, the hope of glory" is the secret of **holy** living, of **power** and **joy** in service. God dwelt with man in Eden, in the Tabernacle (Exodus 25:8); in the New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:3); the Holy Spirit indwelling believers (John 14:16-17,23), during Christ's life & ministry.
 - a) The secret of bearing fruit is found in John 15:4, "Abide in me."
 - b) The secret of sanctification, is found in Romans 6:1-19, "Know, reckon, yield."
 - c) Result: Christ governs my thoughts, actions and words.
Self will is expelled. I will have constant, intimate communion with Christ as my friend.

DIABOLICAL:

13. Mystery of **INIQUITY**. II Thessalonians 2:1-17, v.7. This means that:
 - a) Apostasy in doctrine will increase towards the end of the age.
 - b) Development of the deification of man (humanism).
 - c) Deception of those who deliberately reject the Gospel.
14. Mystery of **BABYLON THE GREAT**. Revelation 17 and 18. Note 17:18.
This is an evil, false religious system, with its capital at Rome, operating in the Church Age.

90. TITHING

Bible Reading: Malachi 3:8-12.

Aim: To give 10% of our income to God's work in a local church as a conviction and rule of life.

Introduction: Do we believe that all that we have is given to us by God?

"A man can receive nothing except it be given him from heaven." (John 3:27).

"Ye are **not your own**...For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's." (I Corinthians 6:19,20).

"they which live should **not henceforth live unto themselves**, but **unto him** which died for them, and rose again." (II Corinthians 5:15). Jesus said, 'It is more blessed to give than to receive.' (Acts 20:35). Christians who experience the love of Christ and the goodness of God giving us all good things richly to enjoy, will want to give to others to see the Gospel of Christ accepted by people all over the world. Jesus Christ has left us with a work to do of winning, baptizing and teaching all people for Christ. This is to be done by the sacrificial giving of God's people. We are to give our time, our energies, our finances and all we can to further the salvation of sinners.

I. COMMANDS TO TITHE

- 1) "**all the tithe of the land . . . is the Lord's**; it is holy unto the Lord." (Leviticus 27:30).
- 2) "**thou shalt truly tithe all the increase of thy seed, that the field bringeth forth year by year.**" (Deuteronomy 14:22).
- 3) "**Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse that there may be meat in mine house.**" Malachi 3:10.
- 4) "Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for **ye pay tithe of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy and faith: these OUGHT YE TO HAVE DONE, and not to leave the other undone.**" (Matthew 23:23).
- 5) "Do ye not know that they which minister about holy things live of the things of the temple? and they which wait at the altar are partakers with the altar? **EVEN SO** hath the Lord ordained that **they which preach the Gospel should live of the Gospel.**" (I Corinthians 9:13,14).

Lesson: As Old Testament Levites lived off the tithes of the people, **EVEN SO** today should pastors live off the tithes of God's people. Hence, tithing is also a New Testament principle. Grace will motivate us to give more than what the law required. Tithing was practised before the Law as seen from Abram and Jacob who tithed before the law was given.

II. EXAMPLES OF TITHING

If these Godly believers gave a tenth of their income to God, then surely we should follow their example to advance the cause of Christ:

- 1) **Abram** paid tithes to Melchizedek, priest of the Most High God:
"He (Abram) gave him (Melchizedek) tithes of all." (Genesis 14:20).
- 2) **Jacob** vowed a vow, saying: "If God shall be with me....of all that thou shalt give me **I will surely give the tenth unto thee.**" (Genesis 28:20-22).
- 3) **People in Hezekiah's Revival** (2 Chron31:5-12) "the tithe of all things brought they in abundantly (v.5). They also brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep (v.6). Since the people began to bring the offerings into the house of the Lord, we have had enough to eat, and have left plenty, for the Lord hath blessed his people". (v.10). 'brought in the offerings and tithes & the dedicated things faithfully.'" v.12.
- 4) **People in Nehemiah's Revival** (Nehemiah 13:10-12).

"I perceived that the portions of the **LEVITES had not been given them:**

for the **Levites** and the **singers**, that did the work were **fled everyone to his field** (v.10).

Then contended I with the rulers, and said, "**Why is the house of God forsaken?**" (v.11).

Then brought all Judah the tithe of the corn and the new wine and the oil unto the treasuries." v.12.

Lesson: Because the Levites and singers had not been paid (due to people not tithing), the Levites had to return to work in their fields to earn a living. When Nehemiah asked 'Why is the house of God forsaken?' people repented and brought their tithes into the house of God. This is like churches today.

- 5) **Backsliders in Malachi's time** (Malachi 3:8-12).

"Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say, Wherein have we robbed thee? In **tithes** and **offerings**. (v.8) Ye are **cursed with a curse:** for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation. (v.9).

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse (a local church), that there may be **meat in mine house** (so that a local church has the funds to do God's work in sending out the Gospel effectively), and prove me now herewith saith the Lord of hosts if:

- (1) I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it (v.10), and
- (2) I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes (v.11), and
- (3) All nations shall call you blessed (v.12).

This is spoken to Israel. It also applies to Christians serving God in a local church today.

- 6) The **Corinthian** and **Galatian churches** gave money in the Sunday collection as God had prospered them, so as to avoid a sudden gathering when Paul arrived. (I Corinthians 16:1,2).
- 7) The **Churches of Macedonia** gave beyond their power. (II Corinthians 8:1-9:15).

III. HOW ARE WE TO GIVE TO THE LORD?

- 1) **Systematically:** I Corinthians 16:1,2. Give tithes and offerings weekly.
"Upon the first day of the week (Sunday) let every one of you lay by him in store."
- 2) **Individually:** I Corinthians 16:2 "Let every one of you lay by him in store."
Not just the father, but the wife and children should tithe what they receive.
- 3) **Proportionally:** I Corinthians 16:2 "as God hath prospered him." The tithe did not belong to the person but to God. Under grace, being motivated by love, we should give more than the tithe.
- 4) **Cheerfully:** II Corinthians 9:7 "not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a **cheerful giver.**"
We should count it a great privilege and joy to give something back to Christ who gave His all for us.
- 5) **Give as Christ gave:** II Corinthians 8:9 "though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that ye through his poverty might be rich."
- 6) **Sacrificially:** (a) They gave out of their deep poverty (v.2). II Corinthians 8:2,3.
(b) They gave beyond their power (v.3).
(c) They first gave themselves to the Lord and unto us (v.5).

The widow gave 2 mites which was all her living. God measures gifts by how much we have left, not by how much we give. God sees the heart of the giver rather than the size of the gift. Let us give to Christ out of a loving heart.

- 7) **Secretly:** Matthew 6:1-4 "Do not your alms before men, to be seen of them." (v.1).
- 8) **Persistently:** II Corinthians 8:10,12. Make a decision how much to give and stick to it.
"Now therefore perform the doing of it." (v.11). Don't put off giving.
- 9) **Bountifully:** "He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully." II Corinthians 9:6.
- 10) **Purposefully:** "Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, so let him give." (II Cor. 9:7).

IV. WHY SHOULD WE GIVE TO GOD?

- 1) Because **we love Christ**. (II Corinthians 5:14-17).
- 2) It is important that **God's work gets done**, that souls get saved, that God's Word gets taught to people all over the world, that labourers are sent out, lives transformed, churches started. (Mark 16:15).
- 3) God promises to **reward** us openly if we give to Him secretly. (Matthew 6:1-4).
- 4) If we give to God, He gives more **grace** and blessings to us. (II Corinthians 8:1).
- 5) Giving to God brings **joy** to us. ('the abundance of their joy.' II Corinthians 8:2).
- 6) Giving beyond our power **increases our faith** as God provides supernaturally. (II Cor. 8:3).
- 7) Giving to other churches **produces fellowship** with those churches that we give to. (II Cor. 8:4).
- 8) Giving proves the **sincerity of our love**. (II Corinthians 8:8,24).
- 9) We give to follow **Christ's example of giving**. (II Corinthians 8:9).
- 10) To **produce an equality** between rich and poor believers. (II Corinthians 8:14,15).
- 11) To show our earnest **care** for fellow believers. (II Corinthians 8:16) eg: Titus.
- 12) Our zeal in giving will **provoke many others** to give also. (II Corinthians 9:2).
- 13) If we sow (give) **bountifully**, we'll reap **bountifully**;
If we sow (give) **sparingly**, we'll reap **sparingly**. (II Corinthians 9:6).
- 14) Give not grudgingly, or of necessity, for **God loves a cheerful giver**. (II Corinthians 9:7).

- 15) “God is able to **make all grace abound toward you**; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things may abound to every good work.” (II Corinthians 9:8).
- 16) “He hath dispersed abroad; he hath given to the poor: **his righteousness remaineth forever.**” (2 Cor 9:9). The results of giving will have an everlasting effect, testifying forever to our righteousness.
- 17) If we give, God will **multiply our seed sown** and will **increase the fruits of our righteousness.** (2 Corinthians 9:10). God will enable us to give more later and we will see more people saved.
- 18) God will **enrich us in every thing** to all bountifulness. (II Corinthians 9:11).
- 19) Giving will **cause many people to thank and glorify God.** (II Corinthians 9:11,12,13).
- 20) We will be the means of **answering other people’s prayers.** (II Corinthians 9:14).
- 21) If we are **stingy**, God can **blow on our wealth** so that we **lose it** like as if we put our money into a **bag with holes.** (Haggai 1:6-11).

V. **HOW A CHURCH SHOULD ALLOCATE ITS TITHES and OFFERINGS.**

- 1) “The **husbandman** that laboureth **must** be **first partaker of the fruits.**” II Timothy 2:6.
The husbandman is a farmer and Paul applies this to a pastor who pastors a church, preaches the Gospel, teaches the Bible and shepherds church members. If a pastor does these, **he should be paid FIRST** before any other bills are paid. Why? Because:
 - a) “Thou shalt **not muzzle the ox** that treadeth out the corn.” (I Timothy 5:18; I Corinthians 9:9,10).
 - b) “He that **ploweth should plow in hope**; and he that thresheth in hope should be partaker of his hope.” (I Corinthians 9:10). This means that a preacher must be financially rewarded for his work, so that he doesn’t give up hope of surviving in the ministry because of no pay.
 - c) “The **labourer is worthy of his reward.**” (I Timothy 5:18).
 - d) “Who goes a **warfare** any time **at his own charges**?” (I Corinthians 9:10). Soldiers don’t have to work at another job to pay for their tanks, guns and bullets. Their government pays them to go to war.
 - e) Every man who plants a **vineyard** is **permitted to eat his own fruit.** (I Corinthians 9:7).
 - f) Every man who **shepherds** & feeds a flock of animals is **allowed to eat of the flock’s milk.** ICor9:7 “He (Hezekiah) commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give the portion of the **priests** and the **Levites**, that they might be **encouraged** in the law of the Lord.” II Chronicles 31:4. If we don’t pay preachers properly, new preachers will find it **harder to get started** in the **ministry.** This results in **fewer churches being started**, more churches **without pastors**, more pastors **dropping out** to get other jobs, **less people getting saved**, and **more wickedness in society.** It is very important to adequately pay pastors.
- 2) A church must **pay the rental on its meeting hall.** Paul would have had to rent the School of Tyrannus for the two years that he taught in it daily. Acts 19:9.
- 3) A church must **pay a printer to print ‘STOP’ tracts** as a **major priority** so that its members can have tools to win people to Christ more easily. “Multiply your seed sown.” II Corinthians 10:10.
- 4) A church should then prayerfully consider **supporting some soul-winning missionary to start a church in its own city or state.** “In all Judea” (Acts 1:8). A church should have a strategy to train its members to become pastors who can plant churches in their main cities and outlying areas. They can then support each other to start more churches.
- 5) A church should use some funds to **start** or **grow fundamental churches in other countries.** This may take the form of giving money to:
 - Print foreign language STOP tracts; See www.keithpiper.org
 - Ship or print 5000 “**Established in the Faith**” and “**Answers**” books overseas;
 - Help pay pastors in poorer countries, especially church planting pastors.
 - Start Bible colleges under a church’s authority;
 - Start and equip malaria clinics or medical clinics;
 - Buy land and build churches on the overseas mission field.
- 6) A church should buy: a) Inexpensive Bibles to give away to new Christians;
 - b) Schofield Bibles to those who are serious;
 - c) Mailbox Club lessons to train new Christians;
 - d) *Answers* books to train its people and to do outreach.

Conclusion: Start tithing this Sunday to your local soul winning church.

91. GOOD WORKS or KEEPING THE LAW DOES NOT SAVE US

There are basically only two religions in the world today. These represent two different ideas as to how we gain acceptance with God and how we get into heaven. One is right. The other is wrong. These are:

I. GOOD WORKS. The idea that if I am **good enough**, then **God will accept me** into **heaven** (wrong)

The problems with this view are that:

1. **How good do I have to be?** Where is the cut off point that determines entry to heaven?
2. If I can get into heaven by my good works, then **why did Christ die?** They make it a useless waste.
3. How do you judge **how much salvation each good work buys you?**
4. If we have to earn our salvation, there is always that feeling of **guilt**, because maybe we haven't done enough good works to earn salvation.
5. If we are hoping to be saved by our good works, **then we could lose our salvation** by not keeping up the good works. This leads to **uncertainty**. We can never be sure of going to heaven as long as we trust in our good works.
6. Trusting in our good works leads to **fear** of missing heaven.
7. It leads to a **wrong comparison**. People say "I am a good person." They are comparing themselves with sinful man. We should compare ourselves with God. Then we appear as big sinners.
8. If we could be saved by our good works then, **we could boast**. (Ephesians 2:9). Do you think God would devise a system of salvation that allowed man to boast?
9. It causes some people to **give up trying to be good**, so they sin as much as they want.
10. Does "man save man" or does "God save man"?
11. It leads to a religion of **self denial** to earn salvation. God has given us richly in all things to enjoy.

Religious man likes to think that his good works can save him because:

1. It keeps people under the **control of religious leaders**, because people fear that if they stop coming to church, they will go to hell.
2. People like to feel that they have worked for their salvation and that **they deserve it**. They think "I earn everything else in life by hard work, why not my salvation?"
3. Man likes to make the rules himself, and **does not like God telling him what to do**. Sinful man does not want God to get the glory for saving him.

99% of the world's religions are religions of good works to earn salvation. Examples include: Roman Catholicism, Islam, Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons and Hinduism to name a few.

II. FAITH IN JESUS CHRIST AS MY SIN PAYMENT. (The right way).

This begins with the idea that **I am a sinner**, that I have broken God's laws, and that compared to God I am not a good person, but a self centred sinner.

God's laws that I have broken **condemns me to hell**. The good news is that Jesus Christ on the cross had all my sins laid on him, so that **Jesus Christ took the full punishment** for all my past, present and future sins that I deserved in hell forever. He thus became the **Saviour** of all people. We are now responsible to **receive** or **call** on Christ to be our Saviour from sin. When we do this Christ saves us and gives us the free gift of eternal life.

The benefits of Christ saving us instead of our works saving us are:

1. We can be **100% sure of going to heaven** because Christ is 100% responsible for saving us and for keeping us saved.
2. We can concentrate on **serving God in joy**, rather than in **fear** of trying to earn our entrance ticket to heaven.
3. We know that we will **meet our saved loved ones in heaven**.
4. We **rest** in **God's acceptance** of us because of Christ.
5. It releases us from the **bondage of fear** of trusting a man made organization to get us into heaven.
6. It leads us to **develop a loving relationship with Christ** as our Saviour, Friend and God, rather than Mary.
7. It leads us to base our beliefs for living on the **Bible**, not on some man made organization.

Let us study some Bible passages teaching that "good works don't save us".

1. Knowing that a man is:
 - a) not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ;
 - b) even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law;
 - c) for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified. Galatians 2:16.
2. If righteousness come by the law, then Christ is **dead in vain**. Galatians 2:21.
3. Received ye the Spirit by the works of the law, or by the hearing of **faith**? Galatians 3:2.
4. Abraham **believed God**, and it was accounted to him for righteousness. Galatians 3:6.
5. Know ye therefore that they which are of **faith**, the same are the **children of Abraham**. Gal. 3:7.
6. The scripture foreseeing that God would **justify the heathen through faith**. Galatians 3:8.
7. So then, they which be of **faith** are **blessed** with faithful Abraham. Galatians 3:9.
8. For as many as are of the **works of the law** are under the curse. Galatians 3:10.
9. For it is written, **Cursed is everyone that continues not** in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. Galatians 3:10.
10. But that **no man** is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident. Galatians 3:11.
11. The just shall live by faith. Galatians 3:11.
12. Christ has **redeemed us** from the **curse of the law**, being made a curse for us. Galatians 3:13.
13. That we might receive the **promise of the Spirit through faith**. Galatians 3:14.
14. If there had been a **law** given which could have given life, verily righteousness should have been by the law. This teaches that no law gave eternal life. Galatians 3:21.
15. The scripture hath concluded all under sin, that the **promise by faith of Jesus Christ** might be given to them that **believe**. Galatians 3:22.
16. But before faith came, we were kept under the law, **shut up** into the **faith** which should afterwards be revealed. Galatians 3:23.

This means that we were shut up in the prison of the law until salvation by faith in Christ came.
17. The **law** was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that **we** might be **justified by faith**. Galatians 3:24.
18. But after that faith is come, **we are no longer under a schoolmaster**. Galatians 3:25.

We are not under the schoolmaster of the Mosaic Law, but the new law of Christ.
19. For ye are **all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus**. Galatians 3:26.
20. Tell me, ye that desire to be under the law, do ye not hear the law? Galatians 4:21.
21. If ye be **circumcised**, Christ shall profit you nothing. Galatians 5:2.

This means that if you are trusting your circumcision to save you, or your good works, or your baptism, or your sacraments, or your church to save you, then Christ has not saved you. You are still lost and going to hell.
22. I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law. Galatian 5:3
This means that if you trust your works to save you, then you can only be saved by always keeping all the whole law, which no one can do. Therefore, those trusting their works are heading to hell.
23. Christ is become of **no effect unto you**, whosoever of you are justified by the law. Galatians 5:4.
24. the hope of **righteousness by faith**. Galatians 5:5.
25. For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing nor uncircumcision: **but faith** which worketh by love. Galatians 6:15; 5:6.
26. In whom also after that **ye believed, ye were sealed** with that holy Spirit of promise. Ephesian 1:13
27. For **by grace** are ye saved **through faith**;
 - i) and that **not of yourselves**;
 - ii) it is the **gift of God**;
 - iii) **not of works**, lest any man should boast. Ephesians 2:8,9.

Four times we are told here that we are not saved by works, but by faith.

Question: Where then do good works come in?

Answer: Good works come **after salvation** to show our gratitude to God in love for saving us.

"For we are his workmanship, **created** in Christ Jesus **unto good works**, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them." Ephesians 2:10.



28. That Christ may dwell in your hearts **by faith**. Ephesians 3:17.
29. And be found in Christ, **not having mine own righteousness**, which is of the **law**, but that which is of the **faith of Christ**, the **righteousness** which is **of God by faith**. Philippians 3:9.
30. **Not by works** of righteousness which **we have done**, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost. Titus 3:5.
31. Therefore **by the deeds of the law** there shall **no flesh be justified** in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin. Romans 3:20.
32. The righteousness of God **without the law** is manifested. Romans 3:21. (Romans 3:22.
33. The righteousness of God which is **by faith of Jesus Christ** unto all and upon all them that believe.
34. Being **justified freely** by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.
...a **propitiation** (forgiveness and favour) **through faith** in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins. Romans 3:24,25.
35. Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? **of works? NO:** but by the law of **faith**. Rom 3:27
36. Therefore, we conclude that a man is **justified by faith without the deeds of the law**. Roman 3:28.
37. One God, which shall justify the circumcision by faith, and uncircumcision through **faith**. Rom 3:30
Question: Does salvation by faith and not by works mean that we can go out and sin as we wish?
A: Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid: yea, we establish the law. Roman 3:31
The law is now written on the believer's heart, so that we obey the law of the Spirit of life from an inward motivation. Example: From 1788-1901, Australia was under British laws. After Federation in 1901, Australia is under a different legal system.
38. If Abraham were justified by works, he hath whereof to glory; but not before God. Romans 4:2.
39. Abraham believed God, and it was counted unto him for righteousness. Romans 4:3.
40. But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his **faith** is counted for righteousness. Romans 4:5.
41. David also describes the blessedness of the man, unto whom God imputes righteousness without works. Romans 4:6.
42. **Faith** was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness. How was it then reckoned?
When he was in **uncircumcision**. Romans 4:9,10.
Note: Abraham was saved by faith before he was circumcised. This teaches us that we are saved by faith before baptism, good works, sacraments or any human work.
43. Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. Rom 5:1
Note: Peace with God comes by faith in Christ, not by good works.
44. The Gentiles have attained to righteousness which is of **faith**. But Israel has not attained to righteousness. Why? Because they sought it not by faith, butby the works of the law. Romans 9:30-32.
45. But if it be of works, then is it no more grace. Romans 11:6.
Note: If you think you are saved by your own works, then you miss God's grace.
46. Who hath saved us not according to our works. 11 Timothy 1:9.
47. Q: What shall we do, that we might work the works of God?
A: Jesus this is the work of God, that ye **believe** on him whom he hath sent. John 6:28,29.
48. i) He said to the woman, Thy **faith** hath saved thee; go in peace. Luke 7:50.
ii) When he saw their **faith**, he said unto him, Man, thy sins are forgiven thee. Luke 5:20.
iii) Purifying their hearts by **faith**. Acts 15:9.
iv) That they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them that are sanctified by **faith** that is in me. Acts 26:18.

v) Jesus said unto him (Bartimaeus), Receive thy sight: thy **faith** hath saved thee. Luke 18:42.

vi) Daughter, thy **faith** hath made thee whole; go in peace. Mark 5:34.

vii) To a repentant leper: "thy **faith** hath made thee whole." Luke 17:19.

49. To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name, whosoever **believeth in him** shall receive remission of sins. Acts 10:43.

50. By him **all that believe** are **justified from all things**, from **which ye could not be justified** by the **law of Moses**. Acts 13:39.

Note: If the law of Moses could not justify anybody, how can keeping the laws of the Catholic Church, Jehovah's Witness, Mormon, Baptism, sacraments, or good works justify you?

OBJECTION: Question: "Doesn't James 2:14-26 teach that works save us?" **Ans:** No, because:

1. James in 2:10,11 says that even if we have kept the whole law always showing good works every day, except in one act of sin, we are guilty of breaking all the law. "For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all."
2. Wherever you have true believers, you have counterfeit believers. Eg: Neither the **priest** or the **Levite** who had religious training, helped the dying man. Matthew 7:21; Luke 10:25-37
3. A poor believer, hungry and without proper clothing entered a church. A **person** with dead faith saw the visitor in need, yet did nothing to meet his needs. He just said a few pious words: "Depart in peace; be ye warmed and filled". James 2:1-5,16.

Note: Each of these four people had dead faith. Each would defend the idea that he had faith, yet neither demonstrated that faith in loving works.

To help a needy person is an expression of love, and faith works by love. Galatians 5:6.

The question in James 2:14: "Can faith save him?" is alternatively translated: "Can that kind of faith save him?" What kind of faith? The faith that is never shown by practical works. The answer is "NO". Any declaration of faith that does not result in a changed life and good works is a false declaration. That kind of faith is dead faith.

"Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone." James 2:17.

True saving faith always produces works. God sees our faith in Christ as Saviour, then he saves us. **Man cannot see faith. Man can only see our works as the fruit of salvation.**

Faith is the **Godward** condition of salvation.

Works is the **manward** evidence of salvation.

James illustrates his point with two Old Testament characters:

1. **Abraham**. "Was not Abraham our Father justified by works, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar?" James 2:21.
 - a) Abraham was justified **before God** by age 85. "He believed in the Lord; and he counted it to him for righteousness." Genesis 15:6; 16:16.
 - b) Abraham was justified **before man** by age 137, when he offered up Isaac upon the altar. Genesis 22:1-14.
2. **Rahab**. "Likewise also was not Rahab the harlot justified by works, when she had received the messengers, and had sent them out another way?" James 2:25.
 - a) Rahab was justified **before God (salvation)** when she confessed with her mouth Jehovah to be God.
"For the LORD your God, he is God in heaven above, & in earth beneath." Joshua 2:11,1-14
 - b) Rahab was justified **before man (service)** when she received and sent the messengers out another way. "Then she let them down by a cord through the window." Joshua 2:15,16.

Conclusion:

1. Forsake trusting your works to save you, and receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour from sin today.
2. Leave any church that teaches a gospel of good works for salvation. God's curse is on such a church or religion. "If any *man* preach any other gospel unto you than that ye have received, **let him be accursed.**" Galatians 1:6-9.

92. EVIDENCE FOR CREATION in 6 DAYS in 4074 BC

Bible Reading: Genesis 1

Aim: To prove from the Bible, science and archaeology that evolution is wrong and creation is right. Sixteen Bible passages say that God created life on earth:

1. "In the beginning God **created** the heaven and the earth". Genesis 1:1.
2. "So God **created** man in his own image, ... male and female". Genesis 1:27.
3. "The Lord said, I will destroy man whom I have **created** ..." Genesis 6:7.
4. "The day that God **created** man upon the earth". Deuteronomy 4:32.
5. "Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who hath **created** these things, that bringeth out their host by number: he calleth them all by names by the greatness of his might" Isaiah 40:26.
6. "Hast thou not known? Hast thou not heard, that the everlasting God, the Lord, the **Creator** of the ends of the earth, fainteth not, neither is weary? There is no searching of his understanding." Isai 40:28
7. "I have **created** him (humans) for my glory". Isaiah 43:7.
8. "I have made the earth, and **created** man upon it". Isaiah 45:12.
9. "Hath not one God **created** us?" Malachi 2:10.
10. "For in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of **creation**, which God **created** unto this time". Mark 13:19.
11. "But from the beginning of the **creation** God made them male and female." Mark 10:6.
12. "For by him were all things **created**, that are in heaven and earth....." Colossians 1:16.
13. "For the invisible things of him from the **creation** of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse." Rom 1:20
14. "Who changed the truth of God (creation) into a lie (evolution), and worshipped and served the creature (himself) more than the **Creator** (God), who is blessed for ever. Amen." Rom 1:25.
15. "God, who **created** all things by Jesus Christ." Ephesians 3:9.
16. "For by him were all things **created**, that are in heaven, and are in earth....all things were **created** by him and for him." Colossians 1:16.
17. "Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou has **created** all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were **created**." Revelation 4:11.
18. "Remember now thy **Creator** in the days of thy youth, while the evil days come not" Eccles. 12:1.

Aim: God created man by intelligent design in 6 days 6000 years ago. Man did not evolve by unintelligent random processes over millions of years. We are accountable to God as our Creator. Most schools teach that evolution is right.

What scientific evidence is there for creation by God in 6 days 6000 years ago?

1. EVIDENCE FOR A YOUNG EARTH.

For evolution to be remotely possible, many millions of years are needed. If it can be shown that the earth is young (about 6000 years old), and not millions of years old (as required by evolution), then evolution would not have enough time to happen. Consider these examples pointing to a young earth:

I. EVIDENCE FROM STARS

1. Galaxy star clusters (spirals with billions of stars) move so rapidly that they would not stay together if the universe were very old.

2. Large Stars. Some stars are so large that they radiate energy 10,000 to 1 million times more rapidly than our sun. They could not have contained enough hydrogen to radiate this fast for millions of years, because their initial mass would have been too big. These O and B class stars, and P Cygni stars could not continue atomic fusion longer than 50,000 to 300,000 years.

3. Abundant Hydrogen in stars. Hydrogen in stars is continually being converted into Helium. Hydrogen cannot be made from other elements. Fred Hoyle states that, if the universe were as old as Big Bang theorists think, then there would be little hydrogen left, as it would be converted to Helium by now. Spectra from stars reveal abundant hydrogen in stars. This implies a young universe.

II. EVIDENCE FROM OUR SOLAR SYSTEM

4. Solar shrinking. Since 1836, over 100 different observers at the Greenwich Observatory and US Naval Observatory have measured the sun's diameter to shrink at 0.1% per century or 5 feet per hour. At this rate, 50,000 years ago the sun would have been so large as to boil earth's oceans, making life on earth impossible. 100,000 years ago our sun would have been twice as large.

5. Rare Solar Neutrinos. In 1968 it was discovered that our sun emits hardly any neutrinos. This lack of solar neutrinos irrefutably points to a recently created sun. (A neutrino is an uncharged particle of no or very little mass, travelling at the speed of light, and is produced in the sun when protons and electrons react to form neutrons.)

6. Comets elliptically orbit the sun and are thought to be as old as the sun. As comets orbit the sun, they lose some of their water and gases from the sun's heat, gravity and tail formation. The tail consists of material driven away from its head by solar energy.

Some comets regularly seen in the 19th Century have broken up and vanished, or plunged into the sun. All comets should self-destruct in a short time, less than 10,000 years. There should be no comets left.

Evolution cannot explain comets in an old solar system. Comets are young objects created in a young solar system.

7. Solar Wind. As the sun's radiation flows outward, it applies an outward force on very small particles orbiting the sun. All particles smaller than 100,000th of a centimetre should have long ago been 'blown out' of our solar system if it were billions of years old. Yet satellite studies show that these small particles are abundant and still orbiting the sun. This implies a young solar system.

8. Solar Drag. (Poynting-Robertson Effect). Small and medium size rocks circling the sun are gradually drawn into the sun by gravity. The sun acts like a giant vacuum cleaner, sweeping up about 100,000 tons of micrometeoroids each day. Each particle absorbs and re-radiates energy from the sun, causing them to slow down and fall into the sun. At today's rate, our sun would have sucked in most solar dust particles larger than 100,000th of a centimetre in less than 10,000 years, and all of it within 50,000 years. Yet the abundance of these particles, with no known source of replenishment, points to a young solar system.

III. EVIDENCE FROM OTHER PLANETS

9. Meteoroids bombarding Saturn's rings would have destroyed them in less than 10,000 years. (W T Brown, *In the Beginning*, p 18).

10. Solid Ammonia in Saturn's rings, with a higher vapour pressure than ice, could not survive long without vaporising into space. Young rings imply a young Saturn.

11. Jupiter's Moons. If they evolved, they should be physically alike, having the same amount of volcanoes and impact craters, but this is not so. Evolution claims that all planets were molten 5 billion years ago and volcanic activity stopped 4 billion years ago as they cooled. The moons Ganymede and Callisto have no volcanoes and **many** impact craters. Europa has no volcanoes and **no** impact craters. Io has 7 active volcanoes and **no** impact craters. Titan has volcanoes.

12. Jupiter, Uranus and Neptune (4) have rings, which could not survive 4 billion years. Jupiter's intense magnetic field radiation would sweep out its rings. (Bradford Smith, a Voyager Scientist).

13. Venus' high temperature and **little erosion**, imply a young age for Venus. If Venus was 4 billion years old, its dense atmosphere should have worn away its craters.

14. Mars has **little erosion** and **some water**. Mars has many sharp edged craters and volcanoes, as well as month-long dust storms. Several thousand years of this weather would have seriously eroded these edges and its strong colour differences. Powerful solar UV radiation would have long ago broken down the small amount of water, releasing the oxygen into the atmosphere and hydrogen into space.

Evolution predicts no surface water and much atmospheric oxygen, but measurements show the opposite being some surface water and very little atmospheric oxygen.

IV. EVIDENCE FROM OUR MOON

15. Lunar Gases. Argon 36 and Krypton 84 inert gases on the moon came from the sun as solar wind. Based on today's solar wind intensity, today's amount of these gases would occur in under 10,000 years.

16. Lunar Recession. Due to tidal friction, the moon is moving away from earth at about 4 cm per year (1 ½ inches). At this rate, 5 billion years ago the moon would have been 200,000 Km closer.

17. Lunar quakes, lava flows and gas emissions show that the moon is not a cold, dead body. It is still adjusting to inner stresses and is not yet in thermal equilibrium. If it were 5 billion years old, it would not show such thermal activity.

18. Lunar Isotopes. Short-lived Uranium 236 and Thorium 230 were found in moon rocks. If the moon were 5 billion years old, these isotopes would long ago have decayed to lead. But instead they are relatively abundant in moon rocks. Thorium 230 has a half-life of 75,400 years, and Uranium 236 of 23 million years.

19. Moon dust comes from meteorite dust and from solar radiation breaking surface rocks to dust at a rate of 3/10,000ths of an inch per year. The one-eighth of an inch of moon dust implies a young moon, not a 5 billion year old moon.

V. EVIDENCE FROM EARTH'S ATMOSPHERE

20. Atmospheric Helium comes from **radioactive decay** of Uranium and Thorium as they emit alpha particles (Helium nuclei), as well as alpha particles from the sun. Although hydrogen can escape earth's atmosphere, Helium cannot.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Years to reach present Helium level} &= \frac{\text{Present mass of Helium}}{\text{Rate of Helium formation each year}} \\ &= \frac{3,500,000,000,000,000 \text{ kilograms Helium } (3.5 \times 10^{15})}{300,000,000,000 \text{ kilograms Helium formed p.a. } (3.5 \times 10^{11})} \\ &= 11,600 \text{ years to reach present levels.} \end{aligned}$$

If earth was 4 billion years old, there would be 400,000 times more Helium in the atmosphere. Where is it? This date of 11,600 years is closer to the Biblical age of earth of 6,000 years.

VI. EVIDENCE FROM METEORITES

21. Meteorite Dust. 20 million meteors enter earth's atmosphere every 24 hours. These add 25 tons weight to earth each day. Meteorite mass added to the earth in 4 billion years

$$\begin{aligned} &= 25 \text{ tons} \times 365 \times 4,000,000,000 \text{ years} \\ &= 36,500,000,000,000 \text{ tons added.} \end{aligned}$$

Surface area of earth = 196,800,000 square miles.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mass of meteorite dust per square mile} &= \frac{36,500,000,000,000 \text{ tons}}{196,800,000 \text{ sq miles}} \\ &= 186,000 \text{ tons per sq mile} \end{aligned}$$

Where is all this meteorite dust? It is not there. This implies a young earth.

22. Meteorite Craters only occur on the earth's surface, never being found in the rock strata. If earth were 5 billion years old, we would find many meteorite craters in the sedimentary rock strata, but we don't. Thus all meteorites which have struck the earth, have hit it in the last 5000 years.

23. Meteorites and Tektite Showers are only found at or close to the earth's surface, never in the deeper sedimentary rock strata. If earth were ancient, many would be found all through the geological column. 'No meteorites have ever been found in the geological column' (Fred Whipple, 'Comets' in *The New Astronomy*, p 207). This points to a young earth with sedimentary strata deposited recently and quickly.

VII. EVIDENCE FROM THE GLOBE

24. Earth's Magnetic Field is decaying exponentially, according to measurements over 170 years.

<u>Authority</u>	<u>Year</u>	<u>Magnetic Moment</u> (amp/m ²) x 10 ²²
Gauss	1835	8.558
Adams	1845	8.488
Adams	1880	8.363
Vestine	1905	8.291
Dyson-Furner	1922	8.165
USC & GS	1945	8.066
Leaton	1965	8.013

This points to a half-life of 1,400 years. On this basis, Earth's magnetic field 7,000 years ago would have been 32 times stronger than it is today. 20,000 years ago it would have dissolved the earth. 1 million years ago it would have had greater magnetism (10215 Tesla) than all objects in the universe. It would appear that the earth could not be more than 6,000 to 7,000 years old. In 1979 NASA launched a satellite Magsat' to measure earth's magnetic field. The overall intensity of earth's field was found to be declining at a rate of 26 nanoteslas per year, with a half-life of just 830 years. Extrapolation shows that the field strength should reach zero in 1,200 years. (*Creation Research Quarterly*, June 1981, p 40). "In the next two millenia, if the present rate of decay is sustained, the dipole moment of the (earth's magnetic) field should reach zero." (*Scientific American*, December 1989). Since a past stronger magnetic field deflected more cosmic rays, this would have changed the rate of Carbon-14 production in the past, giving wrong Carbon-14 dates.

VIII. EVIDENCE FROM BENEATH EARTH'S SURFACE

25. Oil Well Pressure. When oil drillers first penetrate oil wells, oil gushes out because the oil and gas are under great pressure from surrounding rocks. Sedimentary rocks surrounding the oil wells are porous. Studies of these show that the oil would seep out before 100,000 years, but this has not happened. This great oil pressure argues strongly against millions of years age for oil wells, and implies an age for oil of around 10,000 years. Oil, coal and gas were formed during the Great Flood 4,400 years ago (in 2418BC).

26. Lack of Anciently Destroyed Oil Reservoirs. If earth were very old, we would find empty oil reservoirs, where all the oil had leaked out, leaving only residues which would show in drilling cores. Such locations are never found, thus showing that all the world's oil reserves were formed recently.

27. Earth's Molten Interior. Deep within the earth, the rocks are molten. The earth is slowly cooling from the surface inwards according to Stefan's Law of Radiation. Lord Kelvin in 1889 calculated that the earth could not be billions of years old because of earth's known rate of cooling, the existing temperature gradient in the earth, and the assumption that the earth could not have been hotter than "white hot" initially. "Popular Lectures and Addresses" (London: MacMillan, 1889, p.415).

If earth were billions of years old, it would have cooled far more than it now has, even if we assume a radioactively generated heating mechanism. (W T Brown, *In the Beginning*, p 17).

28. Zircon/Lead Ratios. Radiogenic lead slowly leaks out of Zircon crystals at normal temperatures, but leaks out more rapidly as the temperature increases. Careful study of zircon crystals from core samples 15,000 feet deep at 313 degrees centigrade in New Mexico show that almost no radiogenic lead had leaked from that super-heated zircon. This strongly points to a young earth.

29. Radiohaloes shorten geologic ages of millions of years to a few thousand years.

Radiohaloes are colour rings around microscopic radioactive minerals in rock crystals.

"Squashed" Polonium-210 radiohaloes indicate that Jurassic, Triassic and Eocene formations in the Colorado Plateau were deposited **within months** of one another, not from 225-255 million years apart, as evolution claims.

"Orphan" Polonium-218 radiohaloes, having no evidence of their mother elements, imply either instant creation, or drastic changes in radioactive decay rates.

IX. EVIDENCE FROM EARTH'S SURFACE

30. Topsoil accumulation. The average topsoil depth worldwide is 8 inches. Allowing for losses due to erosion, calculations show that it takes 300 to 1,000 years to accumulate one inch of topsoil. On this basis the earth would be about 6,000 to 8,000 years old.

31. Niagara Falls erosion is about 7 feet per year. From their first mapping in 1678 to 1842, the water wore away the top of the falls at a rate of 7 feet per year. Since the gorge is 7 miles long,

the age of the Falls = $\frac{7 \text{ miles} \times 5280 \text{ feet/mile}}{7 \text{ feet per year}}$ = 5,280 years (approximately)

7 feet per year

This is close to the time of Noah's Flood 4,400 years ago, especially since the Falls would have eroded faster just after the Flood. For other large waterfalls, the cut distances and rates of erosion agree well with the Falls' origin 4,400 years ago.

X. EVIDENCE FROM THE OCEANS

32. Coral Growth rates accurately measured under favourable growth conditions, show that no known coral formation is older than 3,500 years (A Roth, *'Coral Reef Growth', Origins*, Vol 6, No.2, 1979,p88)

33. Sea ooze. As fish and ocean plants die, they fall to the bottom and form an ooze, or very soft mud on the ocean floor at a rate of one inch every 1,000-5,000 years.

Measuring the depth of this ooze indicates a young earth.

34. Ocean Concentrations of elements from rivers and springs. If we assume, as evolutionists must, that the oceans were 100% freshwater (0% mineral content) at the beginning of earth's history, and knowing today's amount of each element in the oceans, we may calculate how long each element took to reach today's concentration level. Of the 51 main elements in sea water, 20 could have accumulated to today's level in 1,000 years; 9 other elements in 10,000 years, and 8 others in 100,000 years.

For example, Lead (2,000 years); Silicon (8,000 years); Vanadium (10,000 years); Cobalt and Nickel (18,000 years); Caesium (40,000 years); Bismuth (45,000 years); Mercury (42,000 years); Copper (50,000 years); Tin (100,000 years); Sodium (260 million years). Sodium gives the longest accumulation time, so by this method, earth could be no older than 260 million years.

35. Ocean sediment. There is not enough sediment on the sea floors for earth to be 5 billion years old. Rivers add about 28 billion tons of sediment to the oceans each year.

If this had occurred for 1 billion years, the continents would have eroded away many times. There would be a layer of sediment on the ocean floor at least 60 miles thick.

However, the average depth of sediment on the ocean floor is about 800 metres, and the continents have not eroded once yet. The Tasman Sea off Australia is not part of a subduction zone of ocean floor being pushed deep into the earth. Subduction zones could not dispose of 10% of incoming sediment. Hence, sea floors seem young.

36. Juvenile water coming out of volcanoes has never been in the oceans before. About 1 cubic mile of water is added yearly. 340,000,000 cubic miles of water are on earth's surface.

Question: How many years would it take to accumulate 340 million cubic miles of water?

Answer: 340 million years. This implies that there were no oceans 340 million years ago, the supposed age of fishes. So how could life have evolved in the oceans 2,000 million years ago if there were no oceans then? (Source: H. Morris, *Scientific Creationism*, p.156).

37. Delta Filling. The Mississippi river dumps about 300 million cubic metres of sediment into the Gulf of Mexico each year. If this river were millions of years old, the Gulf would have been filled long ago. Since the delta grows about 250 feet per year, it's age calculates to about 4000 years, very close to the Flood 4,400 years ago. Source: B.Allen, *Geologic Age of Mississippi*, CRS Vol. 9, p.96-114.

XI. EVIDENCE FROM LIVING THINGS

38. Tree Rings. The oldest living things are Bristlecone pines growing in Eastern Nevada, aged about 4,600 years old (sometimes producing 2 growth rings per year, so their age would be less), and Sequoia Gigantea in the Sierra Nevada Mountains, which are never older than about 4,000 years. These giant redwoods have no known enemies, and never have any dead trees among them. Unless man cuts them down, they never seem to die. 17 Bristlecone pines are dated about 4,000 years old. Since the Flood occurred about 2,418 BC, this implies that:

a) all the pre-Flood Sequoias and Bristlecones were wiped out by the Flood, and

b) there is no record of any living tree older than the Flood.

Question: If evolution were true, why do we find none of these trees dated 15,000 years or older?

Answer: Because evolution is false. These old trees were planted just after the Flood in 2418 BC.

With regard to **fossil tree rings**, the author has been unable to find any documented instances of fossil trees **having more than about 1500 rings**. This is significant since we are told that God (literally) made the Earth, and all that is in it 1656 years before Noah's Flood.

39. Dinosaur DNA is so rare that the first sample was discovered in 1995. DNA decomposes soon after the specimen dies. There is no known way for DNA to survive for 70 million years.

Cracking the dinosaur DNA

BEIJING: A professor from Beijing University has extracted DNA from a 70-million-year-old dinosaur egg, the *People's Daily* said yesterday. After one year's work, Professor Zhang Yun, helped by fellow professors at Beijing University, succeeded in extracting DNA from the egg, the newspaper said. The DNA was extracted without contamination of modern bacteria and Professor Zhang was carrying out research to determine whether the DNA was contaminated by prehistoric germs, the newspaper said. — Reuter



SMH 18 Feb 95
SYDNEY MORNING HERALD - 18 FEBRUARY, 1995

XII. EVIDENCE FROM ANCIENT CIVILIZATIONS

40. Man's Recorded History.

If man has lived on earth for 1 million years, why do we only find human records going back to about 3500 BC? This cuneiform tablet is the oldest human writing from Sumeria. When human records first appear, they show man to be highly developed with a sophisticated civilisation. This agrees better with a creation date of 4074 BC than with evolution's 1 million year history of man. Why did man do nothing for 1 million years? Because he has only been here for 6,000 years.

41. Bible Records. The Bible is valid history and should not be dismissed. It consistently verifies authentic archaeological research. If the Bible's post Flood dates have been confirmed as accurate by cross checking them with Assyrian, Babylonian, Egyptian and solar eclipse records, then surely the same accuracy must apply to Biblical dates from Creation (4074 BC) to the Flood (2418 BC) in Genesis 1-10.

42. Astronomical Records. Because of the rarity of solar eclipses at any given location, and because astronomers can date every solar eclipse going back thousands of years, when an ancient tablet or manuscript mentions a solar eclipse, we can accurately date that record, and other events associated with it in other countries. Before 2250 BC, we have no records of any solar eclipse being seen by man. "The earliest Chinese date which can be assigned with any probability is 2250 BC, based on an astronomical reference in the Book of History". (Ralph Linten, *The Tree of Culture* (1955), p 520).

43. Writing. The oldest writing is a Sumerian pictograph written on clay tablets dated about 3500 BC.

44. Pyramids. Do evolutionists expect us to believe that man sat around for 1 million years doing nothing, building nothing, showing no signs of intelligence or engineering, then suddenly design and build highly technical pyramids in Egypt, the oldest being the step Pyramid for King Zoser in about 2600 BC? This date closely matches the Biblical Flood date of 2418 BC. This confirms Bible chronology better than evolutionary speculation and guesswork.

Conclusion: The evidence for creation dating is clear and scientific, being confirmed from many scientific disciplines and archaeological records.

2. REFUTING THE GEOLOGICAL COLUMN TIMETABLE

The geological column is one of the most popular evidences used to demonstrate evolution. It seeks to prove evolution of life from simple to complex forms over 2 billion years. The chart below is supposed to represent the history of life in fossil format. Nowhere in earth do we find the complete sequence of fossils or strata as shown in this chart. The only real evidence for this chart is on paper and in some geologists minds.

ERA	PERIOD	EPOCH	RECORDS OF DISTINCTIVE LIFE	MILLIONS OF YEARS AGO
CENOZOIC	QUATERNARY	RECENT		
		PLEISTOCENE	EARLY MAN-----	2+
		PLIOCENE	LARGE CARNIVORES-----	10
	TERTIARY	MIOCENE	WHALES, APES, GRAZERS-----	27
		OLIGOCENE	LARGE BROWSING ANIMALS-----	38
		EOCENE	RISE OF FLOWERING PLANTS-----	55
PALEOCENE		FIRST PLACENTAL MAMMALS-----	70	
MESOZOIC	CRETACEOUS	DINOSAURS EXTINCT MODERN FLORAS-----	130	
	JURASSIC	DINOSAURS ZENITH PRIMITIVE BIRDS FIRST SMALL MAMMALS-----	180	
	TRIASSIC	APPEARANCE OF DINOSAURS-----	225	
PALEOZOIC	PERMIAN	CONIFERS ABUNDANT REPTILES DEVELOPED-----	260	
	CARBONIFEROUS: -PENNSYLVANIAN	FIRST REPTILES COAL FORESTS-----	300	
	-MISSISSIPPIAN	SHARKS ABUNDANT-----	340	
	DEVONIAN	RISE OF AMPHIBIANS FISHES ABUNDANT-----	405	
	SILURIAN	EARLIEST LAND PLANTS AND ANIMALS-----	435	
	ORDOVICIAN	FIRST PRIMITIVE FISHES-----	480	
	CAMBRIAN	ALL SUBKINGDOMS OF INVERT- EBRATE ANIMALS TRILOBITES BRACHIOPODS-----	570	
PROTEROZOIC ARCHEOZOIC	PRECAMBRIAN	NO INDISPUTABLE FOSSILS-----	570 TO 1,500+	

Question: How do evolutionists/geologists construct this time scale?

Answer: They start with the assumption that "since life is here, life has evolved". Any simple fossil is dated early, and any complex fossil is dated later.

Question: How are ages assigned to rock strata?

- A. 1. They approximate ages by spreading fossils over the total time assumed for their evolution.
 2. Radioactive datings and age estimates based on strata thicknesses assign more specific ages. Strata thicknesses are dated on the assumption that rock strata were laid down in the past at the same rate as today, about one foot every 5000 years.
 A worldwide Flood of Noah's kind would disprove this assumption. Most organisms on dying are not fossilised because they rot bacterially or are eaten by scavengers. For example, consider the millions of North American bison killed by Buffalo Bill and others. Where are their fossils? Nowhere, because they were not suddenly buried by a catastrophe, but were eaten by scavengers, or rotted, decayed and dissipated. Dust and leaves falling over a carcass will not preserve it.

Evolutionists follow this faulty circular reasoning:

1. Assume evolution.
2. Datings that fit are accepted, those datings not fitting are rejected.
3. Arrange rock strata on a chart so organisms progress from simple to complex.
4. Contradictions to "Correct" order are explained away.

3. FOSSILS and ARTEFACTS of Early Man that Contradict Evolutionary Succession.

- 1) Guadeloupe Woman was discovered in 1812 in the Caribbean island of Guadeloupe, in a 1 mile long limestone formation that evolutionists date as 28 million years old. This is a full 25 million years earlier than when man is supposed to have appeared on earth. When this 2 ton limestone block containing Guadeloupe woman was first exhibited in the British Museum in 1812 it was shown as proof of the Genesis Flood. In 1881 it was transferred to the museum's basement.
- 2) Calaveras skull found mineralised in 1876. It was found 130 feet below ground in the Sierra Nevada mountains of California. The skull was authenticated by a physician as equivalent to a modern man and certified by an evolutionist (J.D. Whitney, Chief of the California Geological Survey) as having been found in Pliocene Stratum (supposedly 2-5 million years old). This disproves evolutionary dating of rock strata and of ancient man.
- 3) Castinedolo skull found in Castinedolo, Italy is perfectly human and found in Pliocene strata (supposedly 2-5 million years old).
- 4) Two Moab skeletons were found in Cretaceous rock (at Moab, Utah) supposedly dated as 70-135 million years old. The University of Utah Anthropologist, J.P. Marwitt certified them as definitely Homo Sapiens. (Creation Res. Soc. Qtly, Sept 1973, p.110). Technicians at the University of Arizona dated the skeletons by the nitrogen retention test as under 5000 years old. F.A. Barnes in "The Case of the Bones in Stone" in "Desert" 38 (Feb. 1975, p.36) describes two 100 million year old human skeletons, buried under 15 feet of rock which was bulldozed off. Their bones were still together at the joints, and stained green by copper salts from the surrounding rocks. In turn, the surrounding rocks were stained by the organics from the bodies. Evolution dates this rock and hence this human skeleton at 97 million years before humans supposedly appeared.
- 5) Freiberg skull found in brown coal in 1842, displayed in the Mining Academy in Freiberg (Saxony). (Otto Stutzer, Geology of Coal, (1940), p.271).
- 6) Gold Chain in Coal. In 1891, Mrs S.W. Culp in Morrisville, Illinois, dropped and broke a chunk of coal to find embedded in it a 10 inch, 8 carat gold chain. Since evolutionists claim that coal was deposited in the Carboniferous period (300 million years ago), and man supposedly appeared 3 million years ago, they have the problem of a man-made gold chain dated 300 million years before man appeared on earth.

Question: How can a man made article exist before man appeared?

Answer: Evolution never happened, man is recently created 6000 years ago, the Geological Column and radiometric dating methods are wrong. (Morrisville, Illinois Times, June 11, 1891).

- 7) Iron Pot in Coal. Professor W. Rusch has reported an iron pot encased in coal dated by evolutionary standards at 300 million years old. (Creation Research Quarterly (March, 1971) p.201). The pictured affidavit reads as follows:



Sulphur Springs, Arkansas, November 27, 1948.

While I was working in the Municipal Electric Plant in Thomas, Okla. in 1912, I came upon a solid chunk of coal which was too large to use. I broke it with a sledge hammer. This iron pot fell from the center, leaving the impression or mold of the pot in the piece of coal. Jim Stall (an employee of the company) witnessed the breaking of the coal, and saw the pot fall out. I traced the source of the coal, and found that it came from the Wilburton, Oklahoma Mines.

Frank J. Kenwood

Sworn to before me, in Sulphur Springs, Arkansas this 27th day of November, 1948.

Julia L (?)

- 8) Child's Spoon. In 1937, Mrs Myrna Burdeck and her mother found a child's spoon in soft Pennsylvania coal. (Creation Research Quarterly, June 1976, p.74).
- 9) Metal Bowl. An intricately carved metal bowl was blasted out of solid pudding stone. (Scientific American, June 5, 1852).

10) **Bell Shaped Silver Vessel.** Workmen blasting near Dorchester, Massachusetts in 1851, found a bell shaped metal vessel with inlaid silver floral designs embedded in solid rock. (Scientific American, June 1851).

11) **Iron Nails.**

a) Sir David Brewster found an iron nail in Cretaceous rock (65-144 million years ago) in the Kingoodie Quarry, North Britain in 1845. The last inch of the nail was embedded in the stone. (David Brewster, Report of meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science, Vol. 14).

b) Hiram Witt while searching for gold in California 1851, dropped and broke a piece of quartz to find an iron nail with a perfect head inside. (The London Times, 1851).

12) **The Nampa Image** is a baked clay figure obtained from a well being bored in 1889 at Nampa, Idaho. It was pumped from rocks 300 feet deep under a “Tertiary” lava sheet (12 million years old.) The problem for evolutionists is how can a man made clay figure 12 million years old (supposedly) have been laid down before man evolved 3 million years ago (supposedly)?

Source: American Geologist, F. Wright, 23 (1899), p.267.



13) **Human and Dinosaur Footprints in the same rock strata:**

i) **Glen Rose, Texas** (40 miles south-west of Dallas) at the Paluxy River contains hundreds of Human footprints both normal and giant size, along side trails of large three-toed dinosaur and Brontosaurus footprints in early Cretaceous limestone dated 120 million years old. Both man and dinosaur are apparently running. These prints were first noticed after a 1908 flood when the Paluxy river rose 27 feet.

Clifford Burdick, a mining geologist and Ronald Bird, a paleontologist with the American Museum of Natural History carefully examined and reported on the footprints in “Natural History”, May 1939, p.255 and in “The Naturalist”, Spring 1957.

In 1938, Bird Transported some of the Brontosaurus tracks to the American Museum of Natural History in New York City.

Human footprints have been found in layers **below** that of the dinosaur footprints.

Over 100 human footprint trails have been studied in the Paluxy River area.

These refute evolution’s long ages and show that both man and dinosaur lived at the same time.

ii) **Turkmenia.** Notice this report in the Sydney Morning Herald, 21 Nov. 1983, “A report from the Soviet news agency, Tass, says that about 1500 tracks made by dinosaurs have been found in Turkmenia – but among those prints are those resembling the footprints of a man. According to Professor Amanniyazov, director of Turkmenia’s Institute of Geology: “If further analysis proves that the prints have been left by anthropoids, the history of mankind will be extended to 150 million, not 5 million years.””

Why did Professor Amanniyazov assume dinosaur extinction 150 million years ago as absolutely certainty? Why did he not consider the alternative position of dinosaurs living with man recently? The fact that dinosaur and human footprints have been found in the same rock strata proves that man and dinosaurs lived at the same time.

This is a great problem to evolutionists who believe that dinosaurs became extinct 70 million years ago. Evolutionists claim that dinosaurs died out 67 million years before man appeared.

These footprints prove that:

a) Man and dinosaur lived at the same time, and

b) The evolutionary geological column is completely wrong in its dating of rocks.

The evidence for these tracks being genuine are:

i) The tracks of man and dinosaur are widely distributed from Turkestan to Texas.

ii) The tracks are mostly exposed by bulldozers or erosion.

iii) Two Palaeontologists have pronounced them genuine:

- Dr. Camp of the University of California, and

- Dr. G. Westcott of Ypsilanti, Michigan.

- iv) The associated dinosaur tracks are accepted as valid.
 - v) Some prints have ridges of mud pushed up around them.
 - vi) Upon sawing through the footprints, the rock particles underneath are more compressed than particles surrounding the prints.
- Source: "Scientific American", A.G. Ingalls: "The Carboniferous Mystery" 162 (1940), page 14.
See R.L. Wysong "The Creation-Evolution Controversy", p.373.

iii) Trilobites in Shoeprint. In June 1968, William Meister unearthed a fossil shoeprint in the "Wheeler Mid-Cambrian" strata at Antelope Springs, Utah. Trilobites were embedded in both heel and toe. The shoeprint measured 10.25 inches long by 3.5 inches wide, belonging to a right foot which had stepped on several trilobites. Seven other shoe tracks were found in the area precluding this as a quirk. Man and trilobite living together would disprove 500 million years of the geological column. ("Why Not Creation?" M.Cook, Grand Rapids, Baker, 1970, p.185-193).

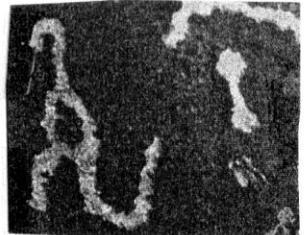
iv) Arizona tracks near Tuba City in the Glen Canyon group, which is late Triassic to early Jurassic strata, dated by evolutionists from 100-175 million years ago. Over 60 human tracks were mapped and photographed, some with shoes, some barefooted, some standing still, others walking. At least 300 tridactyl dinosaur tracks have been found in the same strata. (Creation Research Quarterly, Sep, Dec, 1989).

v) Nevada tracks. Miners digging in a coal seam in Fisher Canyon, Pershing County, Nevada, found a shoeprint so clear that traces of sewed thread are visible. The coal it was found in has an evolutionary date of 15 million years, long before man "evolved".
(Source: Andrew Tomas, "We Are Not The First", 1971, p.24).

vi) Nicaragua tracks. Human footprints were found near Lake Managua, Nicaragua, 16-24 feet beneath the surface, under 11 strata of rock. Mastodon bones and other fossils have been found in strata above the human footprints. Other human footprints have been found in South America; New Harmony, Indiana; St. Louis, Missouri; Herculaneum, Missouri; Kingston, New York; Berea, Kentucky; Carson City, Nevada. (Source: Creation Res. Soc. Qlty, March 1971, p. 205).

14) Hammer in "300 million year old" Limestone in London, Texas.

This hammer is obviously man made. The problem here for evolutionists is that this artefact shows that man lived at the same time as when limestone was deposited.
Source: "Creation or Evolution" G. Rehn.



15) Dinosaur Pictographs.

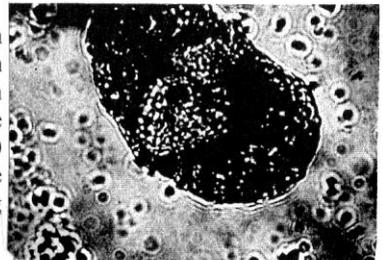
Pictures of dinosaur, ibex and other creatures have been found on the walls of the Havasupai Canyon by S. Hubbard, Honorary Curator of Archaeology of the Oakland Museum in the late 1800's. Does this show man and dinosaur living at the same time?
Source: "Arizona Highways". E. Scoyen, 27 July 1951 p.36-39.

16) Sculptures of Extinct Birds.

Jose Diaz Bolio, a Mexican archaeologist discovered ancient Mayan sculptures of a bird like an Archaeopteryx. This would create a 130 million year discrepancy between Archaeopteryx extinction and man's first appearance. Archaeopteryx and man should never have met if evolution is true.
Source: Science Digest, "Serpent Bird of the Mayans" 64 (Nov. 1968).

17) Five Toed Llama Etchings on Pottery. Evolution claims 5 toed Llamas were extinct 30 million years ago. Source: R.L. Wysong, p.378.

18) Pollen in Pre-Cambrian Strata. Pollen from Angiosperm and Gymnosperm trees (woody plants supposedly 260 million years old have been found in Pre Cambrian Hakati shale in the Grand Canyon (supposedly 570 million years old). The problem here for evolutionists is conifer pollen existing 300 million years before it appeared on earth. Some spores are stained with red oxide from surrounding rocks, thus proving that the spores are not from present day contamination.



Source: Nature, R. Stainforth, 210 (1966) p.292.

4. **FLOOD EVIDENCE**

Creationists state that all geological history can be explained by creation and a worldwide flood in the last 6000 years. Consider the following evidence for this:

1. **Pre-Cambrian void, then abundant, complex Cambrian fossils**

Pre-Cambrian rocks are the pre-Flood basement.

Post-Cambrian rocks are the post-Flood fossil rich strata. Earliest Cambrian rocks (supposedly 500 million years old) contain highly complex, diversified animal fossils which suddenly appeared.

Question: How could this complex range of fauna evolve so suddenly and quickly?

This was as unexplainable to Darwin as it is to Evolutionists today.

Answer: Creationists easily explain this as the pre-Flood, post-Flood demarcation.

The "2 billion year" geological column used to support the evolution of life, is actually a record of the destruction of life by the worldwide flood.

The geological column is a record of life's departure, not of life's coming.

The geological column represents 2 or 3 months deposition not 2 billion years, as this chart shows:

Evolution Model		Creation-Flood Model	
PRESENT thousands	PRESENT	NO SIGNIFICANT FOSSILIZATION OR SEDIMENTATION	thousands
GEOMETRICALLY billions	FLOOD	AQUEOUS BURIAL OF BILLIONS OF LIVING FORMS--FOSSILS VAST EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION	months
PRECAMBRIAN billions	PREFLOOD	CRYSTALLINE BASEMENT ROCKS: PREFLOOD ROCKS MINUS THOSE REMOVED BY THE FLOOD	thousands

2. **Fossilisation.** The existence of billions of plant and animal fossils preserved in the earth's crust speaks of a flood catastrophe. The fossil record is not "incomplete" as evolutionists argue, (incomplete only because it does not contain the links they need to prove evolution), but is quantitatively huge, with a greater variety of species than are alive today.

Consider these fossil examples supporting the worldwide flood:

- i) **Coal and Oil Reserves** even in polar regions can only be explained by the catastrophic burial of billions of plants and animals. Coal (fossil plants) were deposited by a water catastrophe, not by slow accumulation in swamps. Fossil trees extend through several layers of coal.
- ii) **Mammoths** by the millions cover about 14% of the earth's surface from Siberia to Alaska, frozen so rapidly that their flesh is edible today.
- iii) **Fossil Dinosaur Bones.**
 - in Dinosaur National monument Utah contain over 300 different kinds of dinosaurs.
 - in Geisseltal Germany, we find remains of 6000 fossil vertebrates.
- iv) **Closed Clams.** We find millions of fossil closed clams in a 3 foot stratum in Texas. Clams do not live packed together like this. Clam shells will open unless buried before death.
- v) Billions of **fossilised fish**, contorted in agony over 10,000 square miles, with 1000 fish in one square metre are found in England.
- vi) Millions of **fossil trilobites** rolled into defensive balls, and although marine, are found 7000 feet high on mountains.
- vii) **800 billion fossils of amphibians, reptiles and fish** covering 200,000 square miles in the Karoo formation of South Africa.

- viii) **Rain drops, ripple marks, worm trails, animal tracks, droppings, insect wing detail and feathers** are fossilised.
- ix) **Sharks** flattened to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick with the tail still upright suggest sudden catastrophic burial.
- x) **Rhinoceroses, camels, pigs, etc.** make up 9,000 fossil animals in one hill at Agate Springs, Nebraska.
- xi) A 14 foot **Porthus fish** has swallowed a 6 foot **Gillicus** fish, with no signs of digestion.
- xii) A **Perch** swallowing a **Herring** is caught in the action by very quick burial at fossil lake Wyoming. (Fig.)

Was deposition slow or rapid?

Question: Where is one example of fossilisation occurring on a scale today equivalent to the magnitude of fossil graveyards worldwide? Creationists insist that: “Fossilisation is unnatural, abnormal, catastrophic, quick and the exception. When we see worldwide fossilisation, and noting that water is required for fossilisation to occur, then we are pointed to Noah’s flood. The geological column does not record the coming of life, but the going and demise of life.”

The scientific community is aware of this, but they ignore it and shelve it to keep faith in uniformitarian evolution.

3. **Polystrate Trees.** Crossing several rock strata are trees preserved as well at their tops as at their bottoms. These fossil trees bridge an evolutionary imagined time span of millions of years, that would preclude their “in place” growth and fossilisation.

Question: Was this tree standing unweathered for millions of years while strata was slowly deposited all around it?

Answer: No! The sediment and tree were moved into place at the same time.

This fossil tree spans 20 feet of strata at Tennessee. Slow deposition of rock (uniformity) would not allow a tree to be fossilised before it would rot and fall over.



4. **Simple to Complex by Flood Fossil Sorting.**

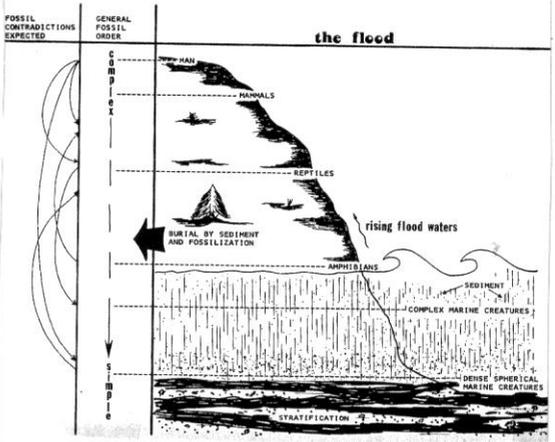
We observe a general sorting of fossils from simple, spherical, dense sea creatures to less dense, irregular shaped, complex creatures higher up.

- a) Evolutionists interpret this to mean that simple creatures lower down evolved to complex creatures higher up over time.
- b) Creationists match these observations with the sorting effect produced by Noah’s Flood, as follows:
 - i) Initial effects of the Flood would be to trap **smaller, simple, spherical, dense** sea creatures like **trilobites** in sediment.
 - ii) Then **plants and trees**, being immobile, would be swept off the earth and deposited, becoming coal of today.
 - iii) **Amphibians**, living close to the water’s edge and being relatively slow moving would be deposited next.
 - iv) **Reptiles and Dinosaurs** living further inland and being relatively slow moving (eg. brontosaurus) would be trapped next.
 - v) **Land mammals and birds** being faster-moving and living further inland would be next deposited (eg. lions).
 - vi) Finally, **man**, being more intelligent at fleeing to higher ground would be the last ones overcome by the Flood, and therefore appear on top of the rock strata. The final effect would be simple organisms lower in the sediment to complex organisms higher up in the sediment, although contradictions to this order would be expected due to randomness of the flood action. This is precisely what we see as predicted by Noah’s Flood.

PERIOD	ANIMALS	PLANTS
PRESENT	RADIOLARIA FORAMINIFERA HYDROZEA CYSTODEA ECHINOIDEA GASTROPODA INSECTA ARACHNIDA AMPHIBIA REPTILIA AVES	ALGAE MOSSES PSYLOPHYTES EQUISETACEAE FILICAE CYCADALES BENNETTITALES Gymnosperms Angiosperms Dicotyledones
PLIOCENE		
MIOCENE		
OLIGOCENE		
Eocene		
PALEOCENE		
CRETACEOUS		
JURASSIC		
TRIASSIC		
PERMIAN		
CARBONIFEROUS		
DEVONIAN		
SILURIAN		
ORDOVICIAN		
CAMBRIAN		

Fossil Record

The above vertical lines depict the existence of fossil forms of each of the major groups of plants and animals as they exist in the various geological strata. There is a noted absence of interconnecting forms (evolutionary tree branches), and the fossils appear "suddenly" at the Cambrian. (From W. Harland: THE FOSSIL RECORD)

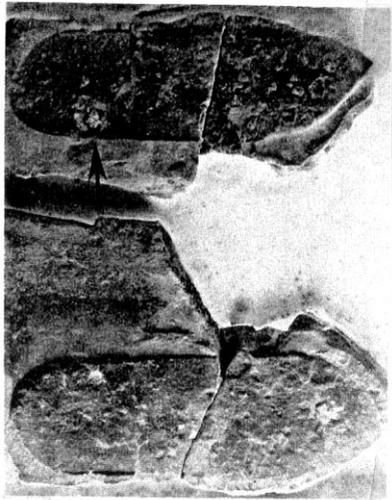


Flood Fossil Order

A flood would create, in general, a fossil order from simple to complex due to hydrodynamic selectivity, ecological zonation, and attempts to flee to higher elevations. A flood might also explain the frequent contradictions to this general order.



Fossil human and dinosaur footprints along the Paluxy River in Glen Rose, Texas. This shows that man and dinosaurs lived at the same time.



Squashed Trilobites

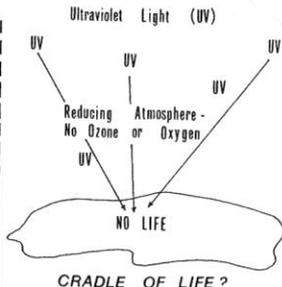
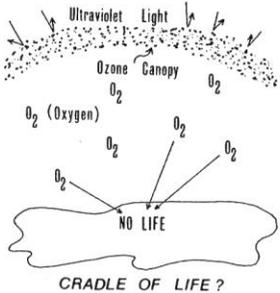
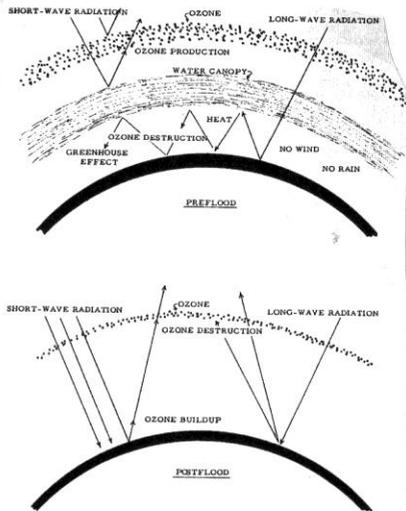
This shoe impression, showing heels, has trilobites squashed in the toe and heel. Actually, there is only one imprint that has split in half like a book. The arrow points to the trilobite in the heel. (Courtesy C. Burdick)

- HOUSE (ORDERED EFFECT) DEMANDS A COMPETENT CAUSE--- INTELLIGENCE
- COMPUTER SYSTEM (MORE..... DEMANDS..... A COMPETENT CAUSE--- ORDERED EFFECT) MORE INTELLIGENCE
- LIFE (A VASTLY ORDERED..... DEMANDS..... A COMPETENT CAUSE--- EFFECT) VAST INTELLIGENCE
- CHAOS AND DEGRADATION..... DEMANDS..... A COMPETENT CAUSE--- (AN EFFECT WITH NO ORDER) NATURAL, MINDLESS SPONTANEOUS PROCESSES



Bones in 100 Million Year Old Rock. This is one of two skeletons found in rock that is age-dated at 100 million years old. Note articulations. (F. Barnes, Moab, Utah)

Thus we have the conundrum: If oxygen were in the primitive atmosphere, life could not have arisen because the chemical precursors would have been destroyed through oxidation; if oxygen were not in the primitive atmosphere, then neither would have been ozone, and if ozone were not present to shield the chemical precursors of life from ultraviolet light, life could not have arisen. The evolutionist is in the position of "not being able to live with it, and not being able to live without it!"



Atmospheric Puzzle



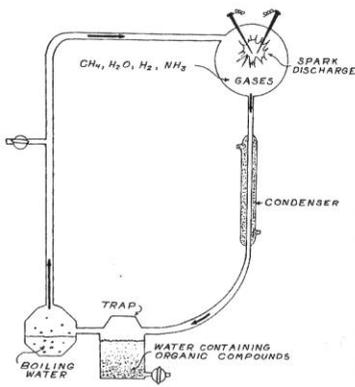
(Photo by C. L. Burdick)

CONTEMPORANEOUS FOOTPRINTS OF MAN AND DINOSAUR.

These tracks were both cut from the Paluxy River Bed near Glen Rose, Texas, in supposedly Cretaceous strata, plainly disproving the evolutionist's contention that the dinosaurs were extinct some 70 million years before man "evolved."

Canopy Implications

These two drawings depict hypothetical atmospheric conditions before and after the flood. In pre-flood times the water canopy would be expected to: (1) shield the earth from short-wave radiation; (2) trap long-wave radiation near the earth; (3) thicken the ozone canopy due to the entrapment of ozone-destroying long-wave radiation under the canopy; (4) level temperatures--greenhouse effect; (5) high longevity due to decreased mutations. With the loss of the canopy after the flood we would expect (bottom): (1) ozone buildup on earth; (2) increased short-wave radiation on earth; (3) temperature differentials yielding winds, rain, freezing and baking; (4) a drop in longevity due to increased ozone, radiation and mutations.



Spark Discharge Apparatus

In the Miller-Urey apparatus, the gases, methane, water, hydrogen and ammonia are subjected to spark discharges. These gases were supposedly the major gases of the primitive earth's atmosphere. The spark discharges are suggested to simulate lightning bolts. The products of the spark move into a trap as it is believed the early organic chemicals would have fallen into the oceans.

CRITERION	SIMILAR	DISSIMILAR
EYE ANATOMY	MAN-OCTUPUS	
HEART ANATOMY	MAN-PIG	
PRONATOR QUADRATUS	MAN-JAPANESE SALAMANDER	
FLAGELLUM	MAN-RODENT	
ACETYLCHOLINE		
HISTAMINE	MAN-PLANT	
BLOOD SPECIFIC		
GRAVITY	MAN-FROG	MAN-MONKEY
RED BLOOD CELL		
CONCENTRATION	MAN-FISH	MAN-SHEEP
HEMOGLOBIN	MAN-ROOT NODULES	
ABO AND RH BLOOD		
FACTORS		MOTHER-CHILD
CALCIUM-PHOSPHORUS		
CARBONATE	MAN-TURTLE	DOG-CAT
CYTOCHROME C	MAN-SUNFLOWER	MOLD-SUNFLOWER
	MAN-BULLFROG	RATTLESNAKE-FROG

Similarity Contradictions

There are many similarities that can be used to support proposed evolutionary relationships. However, the argument from similarity cannot be consistently applied since some similarities and dissimilarities contradict evolutionary relationships.

	HUMAN TRANSGRESSES	DIVINE DESTRUCTION	FAVORED FAMILY	ARK PROVIDED	WATER DESTRUCTION	HUMAN SEED SAVED	ANIMAL SEED SAVED	UNIVERSAL DESTRUCTION	LANDING ON MOUNTAIN	BIRDS SENT OUT	SURVIVORS WORSHIP	DIVINE FAVOR ON SAVED
ASSYRIO-BABYLONIA (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ASSYRIO-BABYLONIA (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PERSIA (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PERSIA (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
SYRIA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ASIA MINOR	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
GREECE	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
EGYPT	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ITALY	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
LITHUANIA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
WALES	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
SCANDINAVIA (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
SCANDINAVIA (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
LAPLAND	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
RUSSIA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
CHINA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
INDIA (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
INDIA (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ALASKA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ESQUIMAUX(CANADA)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
THLINKUT (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
THLINKUT (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
CREE	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
CHEROKEE(C. S.)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
MANDAN	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
LENNI LENAPE	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
TAKOBI	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PAPAGO(CHEIKO)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
NICHOGAN	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
TOLTECS	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
AZTECS	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
NICARAGUA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PERU	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
BRAZIL	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
LEWARD ISLANDS	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
FUJI ISLANDS (A)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
FUJI ISLANDS (B)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ANDAMAN ISLAND	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
HAWAII	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
SUMATRA	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

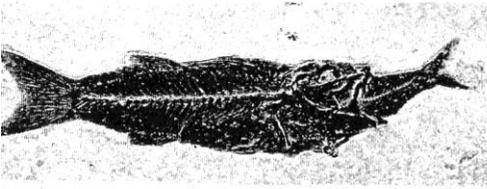


Fossil Graveyards: The Agate Springs, Nebraska fossil Graveyard contains about 9000 fossil animals in one hill (Rhinoceroses, camels, pigs, etc appear here).

**SCIENTIFIC DISCIPLINES
ESTABLISHED BY
BIBLE-BELIEVING SCIENTISTS**

Discipline	Scientist
Antiseptic Surgery	● Joseph Lister (1827-1912)
Bacteriology	● Louis Pasteur (1822-1895)
Calculus	● Isaac Newton (1642-1727)
Chemistry	● Robert Boyle (1627-1691)
Comparative Anatomy	● Georges Cuvier (1769-1832)
Computer Science	● Charles Babbage (1792-1871)
Dimensional Analysis	● Lord Rayleigh (1842-1919)
Dynamics	● Isaac Newton (1642-1727)
Electronics	● John Ambrose Fleming (1849-1945)
Electrodynamics	● James Clerk Maxwell (1831-1879)
Electromagnetics	● Michael Faraday (1791-1867)
Energetics	● Lord Kelvin (1824-1907)
Entomology of Living Insects	● Henri Fabre (1823-1915)
Field Theory	● Michael Faraday (1791-1867)
Fluid Mechanics	● George Stokes (1819-1903)
Galactic Astronomy	● William Herschel (1738-1822)
Gas Dynamics	● Robert Boyle (1627-1691)
Genetics	● Gregor Mendel (1822-1884)
Glacial Geology	● Louis Agassiz (1807-1873)
Gynecology	● James Simpson (1811-1870)
Hydraulics	● Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519)
Hydrography	● Matthew Maury (1806-1873)
Hydrostatics	● Blaise Pascal (1623-1662)
Ichthyology	● Louis Agassiz (1807-1873)
Isotopic Chemistry	● William Ramsay (1852-1916)
Natural History	● John Ray (1627-1705)
Non-Euclidean Geometry	● Bernhard Riemann (1826-1866)
Oceanography	● Matthew Maury (1806-1873)
Optical Mineralogy	● David Brewster (1781-1868)
Palentology	● John Woodward (1665-1728)
Pathology	● Rudolph Virchow (1821-1902)
Physical Astronomy	● Johann Kepler (1571-1630)
Reversible Thermodynamics	● James Joule (1818-1889)
Statistical Thermodynamics	● James Clerk Maxwell (1831-1879)
Stratigraphy	● Nicholas Steno (1631-1686)
Systematic Biology	● Carolus Linnaeus (1707-1778)
Thermodynamics	● Lord Kelvin (1824-1907)
Thermokinetics	● Humphrey Davy (1778-1829)
Vertebate Palentology	● Georges Cuvier (1769-1832)

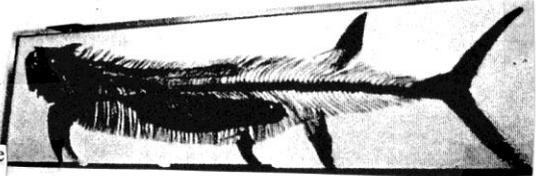
Flood Legend Features
The above chart depicts principle ideas from flood traditions of some cultures around the world that hold non-Biblical accounts. The 'X's' represent either partial or full representation of Biblical features. (Modified from B. Nelson, (Ref. 22) p. 189)



Fossil perch preserved in the act of swallowing a herring. Found in Eocene varves of Fossil Lake Wyoming. Rapid burial must have occurred to preserve this act.



Niagara Falls today showing part of the 7 mile gorge that has, until recently, been cut at about 4 to 5 feet a year. Dotted lines show the position of the Falls at the time of Lyell's visit in 1841. (Ontario Ministry of Tourism and Recreation). 405



The smaller six-foot ingested fish, Gillicus, shows no Sign of digestion by the larger 14 footfish, Portheus. Was burial rapid or slow?

CREATION - EVOLUTION EVIDENCE

1. BIOCHEMICAL STEREOSPECIFICITY
2. PROTEIN AND DNA PROBABILITIES
3. DNA AND INFORMATION SCIENCE
4. EFFECT OF MUTATIONS
5. GENETIC AND FOSSIL FIXITY
6. LACK OF TRANSITIONS
7. REVERSION TO TYPE
8. BIOCHEMICAL BIAS
9. COMPLEX ORGANS AND RELATIONSHIPS
10. SELFISH NATURAL SELECTION VS SELFLESS REPRODUCTION
11. MASS ACTION VS AQUEOUS SYNTHESIS
12. SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS
13. NEED FOR INTELLIGENT MANEUVERINGS IN EXPERIMENTS
14. REDUCTIONISM
15. LAW OF BIOGENESIS
16. EFFECT OF TIME
17. LIFE VERIFIED TO ONLY ABOUT 3000 BC
18. FOSSILS LOOK LIKE MODERN FORMS
19. PRE-CAMBRIAN VOID
20. FIRST LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS
21. EFFECT CANNOT BE GREATER THAN CAUSE
22. PRESENT-DAY UNIFORMITY
23. FOSSIL GRAVEYARDS SUGGESTING CATASTROPHY ETC. . . .

CREATION:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

EVOLUTION:

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

1. Glycine
 2. D-Alanine
 3. D-Valine
 4. D-Leucine
 5. D-Isoleucine
 6. D-Serine
 7. D-Threonine
 8. D-Cysteine
 9. D-Cystine
 10. D-Methionine
 11. D-Glutamic Acid
 12. D-Aspartic Acid
 13. D-Lysine
 14. D-Arginine
 15. D-Histidine
 16. D-Phenylalanine
 17. D-Tyrosine
 18. D-Tryptophan
 19. D-Proline
 20. D-Hydroxyproline
- L-Alanine
L-Valine
L-Leucine
L-Isoleucine
L-Serine
L-Threonine
L-Cysteine
L-Cystine
L-Methionine
L-Glutamic Acid
L-Aspartic Acid
L-Lysine
L-Arginine
L-Histidine
L-Phenylalanine
L-Tyrosine
L-Tryptophan
L-Proline
L-Hydroxyproline

There are about 20 different amino acids. Each amino acid, except glycine, can exist in both D and L stereoisomer forms. Did all these form by chance and fit together perfectly in DNA?

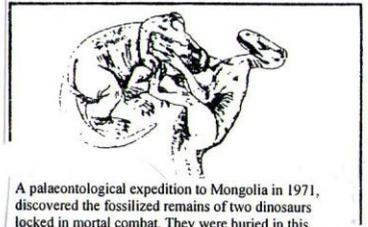
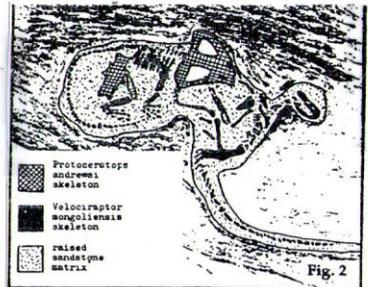
To decide between evolution and creation, we list the evidence supporting each model. We accept the model with the greatest evidence, and reject the model contradicted by the data.



The hammer pictured above was found in limestone rock dated by evolutionists at 300 million years old. It was found near London, Texas. The hammer is man made. What does this prove? It proves that man lived when limestone was laid down. Was it 300 million years ago? No. It was laid down in the Flood.

Odd, lumpy universe disturbs cosmologists

The universe is out of shape. It should be symmetrical and smooth with an occasional wrinkle, but a new portrait reveals **unsightly bulges** which have cosmologists scratching their heads. "It looks like God made the universe and then dropped it", cosmologist Paul Davies said of the image or "map". Specifically, the lopsided shape **doesn't fit** with the idea that the universe expanded abruptly and symmetrically in the instant after the **big bang**, 13.7 billion years ago. The troublesome map was produced by a team led by University of Pennsylvania astrophysicist Max Tegmark. They created it using data collected by the Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe, launched in 2001. But what's going on has Professor Tegmark baffled: "It's very bizarre" he said. Weekend Australian, March 8,9, 2003.



A palaeontological expedition to Mongolia in 1971, discovered the fossilized remains of two dinosaurs locked in mortal combat. They were buried in this position when they both perished in a sudden watery catastrophe. That both creatures died while fighting was confirmed by the clawed hands of Velociraptor – a meat eating dinosaur – were still grasping the armoured skull of a plant-eating Protoceratops. Even the claws on one foot of Velociraptor were positioned on top of the other animal's skull to gain better leverage to attack its victim. The huge, powerful beak of Protoceratops had buried itself within the soft underbelly of Velociraptor.

5. Flood Traditions. Every ancient culture has a Flood tradition. A survey of 120 tribes in North, South and Central America found every one to have a flood tradition. A post-Flood population would carry Flood ideas with them as they scattered across the world. Flood accounts of isolated groups would change over time, but the basic ideas of a universal Flood, safety in a ship, with few people surviving would survive. Noah's ark would have been almost impossible to capsize, having a length to width ratio of 6 to 1 (ie. 300:50 cubits).

Consider these Flood traditions, so similar to the Bible:

a) Babylon: Berosus (300 BC) tells of the archives of the temple of Marduk:

Xisuthros, a king, was warned by one of the gods to build a ship, and take into it his friends and relatives and all different kinds of animals, with all necessary food. Whereupon he built an immense ship, which was stranded in Armenia. Upon subsidence of the Flood, he sent out birds; the third time, they returned not. He came out, built an altar, and sacrificed.

b) Egyptians had a legend that the gods at one time purified the earth by a great Flood, from which only a few shepherds escaped.

c) Greek tradition: Deucalion, warned that the gods were going to bring a flood upon the earth, for its great wickedness, built an ark, which rested on Mount Parnassus. A dove was sent out twice.

d) Hindu tradition: Manu, warned, built a ship, in which he alone escaped from a Deluge which destroyed all creatures.

e) Chinese tradition: Fa-He, founder of Chinese civilization, is represented as having escaped from a Flood sent because man had rebelled against heaven. He and his wife, 3 sons and 3 daughters were spared.

f) England: Druids had a legend that the world had been re-peopled from a righteous patriarch who had been saved in a strong ship from a Flood sent to destroy man for his wickedness.

g) Polynesians have stories of a Flood from which 8 people escaped.

h) Mexicans: One man, his wife and children, were saved in a ship from a worldwide Flood.

i) Peruvians: One man and one woman were saved in a box that floated on the flood waters.

j) American Indians: Various legends, in which 1, 3 or 8 persons were saved in a boat above the waters on a high mountain.

k) Greenland: The earth once tilted over, and all men were drowned, except one man and one woman, who re-peopled the earth. (International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia). Calculations show that Noah's Ark only needed to be half-full to carry pairs of all kinds of land animals and food.

l) The Epic of Gilgamesh: George Smith of the British museum found in tablets from the library of King Assurbanipal at Nineveh, Flood accounts very similar to the Bible's. These accounts were copied from tablets of the First Dynasty of Ur (2200 BC), which when later found contained expressions such as: "the age before the Flood". Gilgamesh, living about 200 years after the Flood, tells how he visited Noah on the island of Utnapishtim, who tells the story of the Flood and his escape, as follows:

"The assembly of the gods decided to send a Deluge. They said, On the sinner let his sin rest. O man of Shuruppak, build a ship, save your life. Construct it with six stories, each with seven parts. Smear it with bitumen inside and outside. Launch it upon the ocean. Take into the ship seed of life of every kind. I built it. With all that I had I loaded it, with silver, gold, and all living things that I had. I embarked upon the ship with my family and kindred. I closed the door. The appointed time arrived. I observed the appearance of the day. It was terrible. All light was turned to darkness. The rains poured down. The storm raged like a battle charge on mankind. The boat trembled. The gods wept. I looked out upon the sea. All mankind was turned to clay, like logs floating about. The tempest ceased. The flood was over. The ship grounded on Mt. Zazir. On the seventh day I sent out a dove; it returned. I sent out a swallow; it returned. I sent out a raven; it alighted, it waded about; it croaked; it did not return. I disembarked. I appointed a sacrifice. The gods smelled the sweet savour. They said, Let it be done no more."

5. EFFECTS OF THE FLOOD

It is impossible to understand anthropology and geology without understanding the effects of the Flood. Evolution is based on uniformitarianism. Creation explains geological features on the basis of Flood catastrophism. Evolutionary uniformitarianists declare that all geological features were caused by gentle processes and natural forces that are operating today.

Uniformitarianists find difficulty in explaining the causes of:

- 1) mountain building
- 2) geosynclines
- 3) petroleum
- 4) coal measures
- 5) glaciation
- 6) world wide warm climates especially at the poles.
- 7) mineral deposits
- 8) peneplains (mountains flattened by erosion)
- 9) saline deposits, nor can they explain the nature of
- 10) overthrusting
- 11) vast volcanic terrains
- 12) continental uplift processes
- 13) metamorphism
- 14) granitization
- 15) extinction of whole faunas.

Evolutionary Uniformitarianists have difficulty explaining the cause of:

- 1) **Immense fossil graveyards.** 75% of land is covered by sedimentary rocks which contain many billions of fossils of plants and animals that died suddenly. Yet fossilization does not normally occur today, because it requires sudden death, immediate burial and great pressure. This is exactly what happened in the Flood. Fossil deposits like the 800 billion vertebrate fossils in the Karro Beds off Africa are not forming today. Immense fossil beds such as dinosaur graveyards in the Gobi Desert, Agate Springs Quarry in Nebraska, the Rockies, Black Hills, Sicilian hippopotamus beds, etc, being thrown together in disorderly masses can only be explained by a worldwide Flood. As with many animals, dinosaurs gathered together in times of danger. The rising floodwaters finally overtook and buried them in “dinosaur graveyards”. In the Dinosaur National Monument in Utah and Colorado, over 300 dinosaurs have been excavated.
- 2) **Dinosaur Extinction.** Most species are already extinct. What caused all the dinosaurs to become extinct so quickly? The worldwide Flood explains this perfectly.
- 3) **No Transitional forms** between species in the past or today. If evolution was true, we’d expect millions of transitional fossils, but we find none. Why? Because evolution never happened. Each twig on the imaginary plant and animal “family trees” is a distinct plant or animal type, with no intermediate life forms to connect the twigs. There are no branches, no trunk, only twigs. The rest of the tree is imaginary.
- 4) **PreCambrian Void of Fossils.** Beneath Cambrian strata, we find no fossils at all because the Pre-cambrian void was the Pre-Flood basement rocks. This is astonishing & disappointing to evolutionists.
- 5) **Sudden Explosion of Life in Cambrian Strata.** The lowest stratum with fossils is called “Cambrian”, having at least 1500 species of complex invertebrates, all marine of which 60% are trilobites and 30% are brachiopods. Why did so much complex life suddenly appear? Answer: They didn’t evolve, but being the slowest moving creatures, they were buried first in the rising flood waters.
- 6) **Fossil Placement** is from slow moving creatures in the lowest strata to faster moving creatures in higher strata, and not from simple to complex creatures. This, along with many misplaced fossils show that the Creation/Flood model better explains fossil placement.
- 7) **Polystrate Fossil Trees** extending vertically through up to 20 feet of multiple rock strata. These trees were quickly covered by the strata, otherwise each tree would have decomposed while waiting

100,000 years for strata to form around it. From top to bottom, these trees sometimes span “millions of years” of strata. Obviously, both the trees and sediments around them were deposited at the same time. The Flood easily explains this, but evolutionary uniformitarianism cannot possibly explain it. In May 1980, the explosion of Mount St. Helens filled Spirit Lake with vertically floating logs due to the weight of their roots. In the Flood, as vertically floating logs washed into an area, they were covered rapidly by sediment, thus forming polystrate fossil trees.

8) Coal and Oil Formation. Most geologists agree that coal came from ancient plants and oil came from ancient marine animals. Neither coal nor oil is being formed naturally today. No coal or oil is found in Pleistocene (ice-age) deposits, but instead was quickly laid down during the Flood. “Petroleum occurs in rocks of all ages from the Cambrian to the Pliocene, but no petroleum has been formed naturally since the Pliocene.” (Ben B. Cox, Bulletin of the American Association of Petroleum Geologists, May 1946, p.647).

Question: Why did no petroleum form after the Pliocene era?

This is a mystery to evolutionary geologists, but it is no problem to Flood geology.

Answer: From the beginning of the Cambrian to the end of the Pliocene was when the Flood produced all the oil and coal reserves. Because of Flood conditions, other things were also deposited in those coal strata, such as boulders, fossil trees, and shale and sandstone strata in between coal deposits.

9) Overthrusts. Evolution requires that strata with fish fossils (of “older evolutionary age”) will be underneath strata with land animal fossils (of “younger evolutionary ages”). Instead, we find examples of what evolutionists call “overthrusts” with “older fossil bearing strata” on top of “younger fossil bearing strata”. Evolution is totally baffled by this reversal of strata sequence.

Question: How can the Swiss Matterhorn and North American Appalachians rest on top of what evolutionists think is younger strata?

Answer: The Flood turbulence explains this easily as follows:

At some point, some land animals and plants (evolutionary younger) were covered by Flood-borne sediments. Then, during the Flood, waters with fish (evolutionary older) were carried in from some distant location and deposited in a pile of sediment above the land creatures.

10) Worldwide Flood Legends.

Races and tribes from all over the world have traditions about a great Flood that covered all the earth.

a) One survey of **120 tribal groups** in North, Central and South America revealed Flood traditions in each group. (International Standard Bible Encyclopedia, Vol. 2, p.822).

b) Another survey of ancient literature lists **41 nations with Flood legends**, including:

Assyria, Babylon, Alaska, Asia Minor, Aztecs, Brazil, Cherokee, China, Egypt, Eskimo, Fiji, Greece, Hawaii, India, Italy, Lithuania, Nicaragua, Mexico, Persia, Peru, Russia, Scandinavia, Sumatra, Syria, Wales, etc. (“The Deluge Story in Stone”, B. Nelson (1968)).

c) Sir James G. Frazer in “Folklore in the O.T.” (1919), Vol. 1, p.146-330) lists **143 ancient Flood records**, including: 11 from ancient Greece, 6 from Europe, 29 from Persia and India, 31 from Australia, Southeast Asia and the Pacific, 63 from North, Central and South America and 3 from Africa. (“Symposium on Creation IV, (1972), p.36-38, Donald W. Patten).

11) Chinese language characters record ancient Biblical Flood and Creation details, such as:

a) Boat in Chinese, combines the words vessel and eight (Genesis 7:7,13; 8:13).

b) Rebellion and **Confusion** in Chinese, combine the words tongue and walking, reminding us of the scattering of mankind at the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4-9).

c) Devil in Chinese, combines the words man, garden and private, reminding us of the temptation of man in the garden of Eden (Genesis 3:1-7). (‘God’s Promise to the Chinese’, Nelson, Chock, Broadberry, 1997).

II. PRE FLOOD CONDITIONS

12) Warmer climate. “And God said, Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters. God made the firmament, and divided the waters which were UNDER the firmament (ocean) from the waters which were ABOVE the firmament (water vapour canopy).” Genesis 1:6,7

The firmament separated the water canopy above the earth from the ocean below on the earth.

A great pre-flood water canopy would imply several things, much of which is scientifically verifiable:

a) **Greenhouse Effect** world-wide. The water canopy would have captured long-wave radiation (heat) to heat the earth. Similarly, the dense clouds of Venus give it an even temperature. We have pole to pole evidence that the pre-flood world was subtropical. Under the ice caps we find palm leaves, fruit trees, vast subtropical forests, tropical marine creatures, and coal beds, all explained by a pre-flood water canopy. Fossil-bearing rocks from all “ages” were laid down during a warm climate worldwide, with none of today’s climate zones.

b) **Arctic fossils** are similar to those of low latitudes. (W.J. Miller, An Introduction to Historical Geology (1952), p. 116).

c) **Large coal deposits** are found in Antarctica, proving that it once had a warm climate with much vegetation and large trees.

d) In **Alaska** and the **Arctic Circle** have been found fossilized mangroves, palm trees, a 90 foot high plum tree with green leaves and ripe fruit, mammoths, sabre tooth tigers, etc.

13) Lower Sea Levels. In the past, the ocean basins filled up with water, as seen by extinct volcanoes hundreds of feet under today’s sea level with their tops flattened off (seamounts). What caused them? Answer: Volcanic activity began before the Flood ended. These volcanoes in the ocean basin had their summits eroded away by storm and wave action as sea levels reached their summits. The oceans kept filling and rising, and the horizontal tops became submerged.

14) Coral Atolls are also explained by rising Flood sea levels. Coral only grows within 200 feet of the ocean surface, yet the remains of earlier coral are found much deeper in the ocean. As oceans neared their present level, coral atolls were built above seamounts.

15) Similarities between plants and trees in Brazil and West Africa imply that the South Atlantic did not exist as a broad ocean before the Flood.

III. POST FLOOD EFFECTS

16) Submarine Canyons are found just where our major rivers enter the oceans. Many of these V-shaped canyons are extensions of major rivers, such as the Amazon Canyon, the Hudson Canyon, the Ganges Canyon, the Indus Canyon and the Congo Canyon. What forces could gouge out canyons that are sometimes 15,000 feet below sea level? These canyons could only have formed if the ocean level was then **lower**, and was gradually filled by floodwaters pouring from the skies through these rivers, then the ocean floors sank.

17) Underwater River Channels on the ocean floor. Modern sounding equipment has revealed many river beds extending from the continents on the ocean floors, e.g. the Congo river runs 145 miles under the Atlantic ocean, the Hudson river has dug a channel 90-300 miles under the Atlantic Ocean.

18) Large River Gorges with small streams. In the past, these rivers carried a far greater volume of water, as seen by the many large boulders left in these gorges. Evolutionists think a little stream cut through solid rock over millions of years to produce these gorges.

These rocks were not hard rock when first laid down by the flood, but soft mud and loose sand. The gorge was created by great quantities of this soft mud being washed away by enormous volumes of floodwaters receding in the few years after the Flood.

19) Sedimentary rock strata worldwide were all laid down during and after the Flood by its immense wave and storm erosion.

20) Mountain Building. There were no high mountains before the Flood. “all the high hills, that were under the whole heaven, were covered. Fifteen cubits upward did the waters prevail; and the mountains were covered. And all flesh died.” (Genesis 7:14-21).

Mountain building includes the production of our present folded and volcanic mountains and ranges, as well as raising of continental masses and sinking of ocean basins.

On the basis of fossil evidence, most scientists believe that most of our mountain ranges uplifted during the Pleistocene or late Pliocene periods (both of which occurred shortly after the flood). E.g. Alps, Andes and Himalayas mountains rose and sea basins sank. Water flowed into these basins, and under its great weight they sank even further.

Rock strata being water-logged and pliable folded up, down, sideways or was overturned, giving rise to our present great, non volcanic mountain ranges. Most of the floodwaters (now in the oceans) came

from underground, not from the skies (Genesis 7:11). This up-swelling of water in giant geysers caused violent upheavals underground. The ground became folded, crunched and twisted as it adapted to the huge forces unleashed, leading to continents rising and seafloors sinking.

21) Vulcanism. Flood water coming from underground, most likely would have been accompanied by volcanic eruptions. The volcanic ash shooting up into the water canopy would have provided the dust necessary to condense the water canopy into rain drops, thus causing the 40 days of rain.

Genesis 7:11 gives this as the order of events: “the same day were all the **fountains** of the great deep broken up, and the **windows** of heaven were opened”.

Vast volcanic action would produce huge lava flows. This would explain the origin of today’s Indian Deccan Plateau containing volcanic rock two miles deep, as well as the Igneous American Columbian plateau in NW USA covering 200,000 square miles and averaging 3000 feet deep.

When water came out of the ground, rocks shifted to fill these gaps, leaving huge cracks down which water flowed and contacted molten magna. The release of so much water from deep underground caused immense low and high pressures within the earth. Rocks shifted to fill these gaps, leaving huge cracks down which water flowed, hitting the molten rock.

This caused exploding jets of lava to pour out of the earth’s surface, producing thousands of volcanoes. For example, in 1883, the volcanic island of Krakatoa developed a sideways crack, through which seawater poured, flowing down the main vent hole. This caused the explosion which was heard 4800 kilometres away, produced tidal waves 130 feet high and drowned 36,000 people on nearby islands. It caused a worldwide temperature drop lasting 5 years. There are thousands of extinct volcanoes at Pleistocene (Flood) levels worldwide.

Oozing lava built India’s Deccan Plateau which in some places is 3 km deep. No ancient volcanic lava beds are ever found below the Cambrian level, because the Cambrian marks the beginning of the Flood. Volcanic action occurred during and after the Flood as seen from pillow lavas formed when lava ejects from underwater volcanoes. Pillow lava is the most abundant volcanic rock on earth.

22) Ice Age. There are over 10,000 extinct land and underwater volcanoes worldwide. During the Flood they poured out so much smoke that they darkened the sky, resulting in rapid cooling of the earth. These pollutants would have remained 16-50 km high for many years, triggering the Ice Age. A four-fold increase in atmospheric dust could decrease average surface temperature by 3 derees C. Rapid cooling caused by thousands of volcanic explosions during and after the Flood, brought on the Ice Age.

23) Animals frozen at the Poles implies catastrophe, not uniformitarianism. In Siberia and Alaska, millions of mammoths and other animals have been snap-frozen in ice in some areas, and deposited in watery graves in other areas. These mammoths died suddenly, in intense cold and in great numbers. Death came so quickly that the swallowed vegetation is yet undigested in their stomachs and mouths. The Bereskova Mammoth of Siberia had edible flesh. Its stomach contained 30 pounds of undigested subtropical vegetation, and its mouth was full of partly chewed food. The time between death and freezing can be determined accurately by the extent of water separation within the cell. Water begins to separate within the cell at death, and ceases to separate at freezing. The small extent of separated water indicates that they were rapidly frozen at temperatures below –150 F.

Question: What dropped the mammoths so quickly with such unearthly cold?

Answer: Frozen food experts say that these mammoths must have been frozen at well below –150F. Sled dogs have been in Arctic blizzards under –80F for days without freezing.

Even the centre of these mammoths were snap frozen and undecomposed. These cold temperatures exist in Jupiter’s satellites Callisto, Ganymede, Io and Europa, as well as in Saturn’s icy rings, crust and satellites, along with Uranus and Neptune. If icy particles nearing –200F were deposited on earth from such a cosmic visitor, this could produce a great icy avalanche of supercooled ice that would immediately asphyxiate these animals, freezing their lungs solid. They would drop immediately followed by death and freezing within minutes. Wrangel, the explorer, observed on Bear Island (Medvizhi Ostrova) that the soil consisted of only sand, ice and so many mammoth bones that this seemed to be the chief substance on the island. Ice is conically stacked in places at 15,000 feet deep in the Arctic and 10,000 feet deep at Byrd Station in Antarctica. The Catastrophism model suggests that:

a) the ice was transported across the solar system in a comet-like orbit to the Earth-moon region.

b) the second phase was a deflection of the cold, icy particles by earth's Van Allen radiation belts. These electrically charged particles of ice were redirected over the magnetic polar regions, reducing their velocity, causing them to descend over a vast magnetic polar area and concentrate in different locations during their descents, thus forming the centres or nodes of the ice mass and the snap freezing of all living things in the area. The effect of this was to:

- i) completely condense the pre-flood **water vapour canopy** that allowed tropical climates at the poles.
- ii) increase the earth's inclination from perpendicular to **23 ½ degrees**.
- iii) ultimately **raise sea levels** by 350 ft to 450 ft.
- iv) flood the **continental shelves**.
- v) cause **orogenic uplift** in the Pacific rim and Himalayas.
- vi) cause a bleeding of lava, forming new **basalt plateaus** on several continents.
- vii) cause a rash of over **10,000 new volcanoes** which further **reduced temperatures** worldwide.
- viii) cause **glacial scouring**.
- ix) increase **ocean salinity** due to increased rainfall and water running off continents and rivers.
- x) Bury billions of animals and trillions of plants, many being preserved today as **fossils**.
- xi) cause **early human civilization** to develop in glacier free areas such as Egypt, Mesopotamia, India and China. As the Ice Age retreated, civilization spread further.
- xii) Make human survivors and their early generations very **catastrophe-minded**.
- xiii) Ice sheets moved southward down the continents causing the **Ice Age** and **glaciation**.
- xiv) **Reduced human longevity**. See graph.

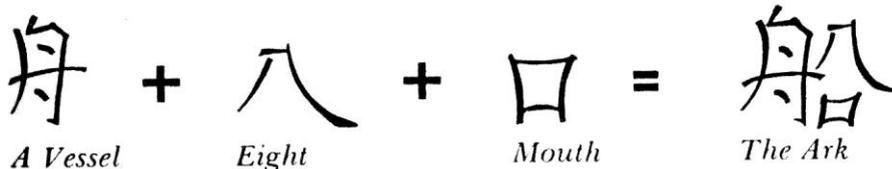
24. Glaciation. There is abundant evidence that northern Asia, all of Canada, and about 25% of USA were once covered by glacial ice. These were caused by:

- a) The darkening of the skies by volcanic dust,
- b) The loss of earth's thermal blanket, the water vapour canopy, which gave the pre Flood world a greenhouse effect. These glaciers scoured solid granite and left dumps of sediments and boulders at their sides and ends.

25. Sudden Warming. After the Flood, volcanic activity declined, the volcanic dust settled back to earth, and much of the earth warmed up again, causing a rather rapid receding of the glacial sheets. Sudden warming quickly increased the melting of ice, draining of glacial lakes, and water runoff through rivers and deltas into the oceans.

26. Radiation, Size, Longevity. The pre-Flood water canopy and great ozone canopy would have greatly shielded the earth from short-wave (high frequency) gamma, x-rays, and UV radiation. (This would have invalidated C-14 production and hence C-14 dating before the flood). These harmful rays cause mutations, and ageing. If these rays were largely kept out, we would expect greater health, lifespan and possibly size of pre-flood creatures. Some pre-Flood insects had 2 foot wing spans. Some birds had 30 foot wing spans. Some dinosaurs weighed 50 tons. Some humans had feet 20 inches long. Today we are seeing larger squids in some areas due to higher carbon dioxide levels associated with global warming.

Conclusion: The facts taken as a whole point to a worldwide Flood and not to long ages of sedimentary strata production and evolution through transitional species.



The Chinese ideographs prior to the simplification of the written language in 1948, showing how the symbols were combined to form the specific word "Ark" in the context of the Genesis Flood. (Kang and Nelson 1979)

6. ASSUMPTIONS IN RADIODATING.

Evolutionists rely heavily on radiometric dating to give them the billions of years required for evolution to have any chance of happening. Major radiodating methods are:

i) Uranium – Thorium – Lead dating, based on the decay of Uranium and Thorium into Radium, Helium and Lead.

ii) Rubidium – Strontium dating based on the decay of Rubidium to Strontium.

iii) Potassium – Argon dating based on the decay of Potassium into Argon and Calcium.

These dating methods are only accurate if certain assumptions **always** apply to **every** specimen tested, these assumptions being:

i) Each system must be **closed** from any **contamination** of the parent or daughter products, from water, chemicals, changing radiation from space or rock pressure.

ii) In the beginning there were **no daughter products in the sample**, only elements at the top of the radioactive chain were present. For example, all the U238 had no lead 206 in it; and no lead 206 existed anywhere else.

At creation, all things were created with the appearance of age. Radioactive minerals would be partially decayed on the first day. How far decayed? No one knows.

Evolutionists think that Polonium only occurred as a daughter product of Uranium decay, yet Robert Gentry's studies show that Polonium 218 was in granite when it was created in solid form.

It is impossible to know what was initially in any given sample of radioactive mineral.

iii) The **decay rate must have always been the same**, and never have changed.

The decay rate of any radioactive mineral can be altered:

a) If the mineral is hit by high energy particles from space (such as cosmic rays, neutrons, etc)

b) If there is, for a time, a nearby radioactive mineral emitting radiation.

c) If physical pressure is applied to the radioactive mineral.

d) If certain chemicals contact it.

iv) If any **changes** occurred in the past in earth's **atmospheric protecting blanket**. Cosmic rays, photons, high energy mesons, etc. enter our atmosphere continually, some travelling up to 100 metres underground and 1400 metres underwater. If our atmosphere was more heavily water saturated than today, it would produce a major change in radioactive minerals decay rates. Before the Flood, there was much more water in the air.

v) The **Van Allen radiation belt** encircling the earth about 450 miles above us is intensely radioactive. It emits 3000-4000 times as much radiation as cosmic rays entering the earth.

Any **change in the Van Allen belt** would greatly affect the decay rate of radioactive minerals. But we know little about this belt or whether it has changed in the past, since it was only discovered in 1959.

vi) John Joly of Trinity College, Dublin found evidence that the **long half-life minerals** have **varied in their decay rate in the past**. This would invalidate all possibilities of age calculation by radioactive methods. (A.F. Kovarik, Bulletin 80, National Research Council, June 1931, p. 107).

Why we cannot trust Uranium – Thorium – Lead Dating Methods.

3 types of U/Th dating are:

a) Uranium 238 decays to Lead 206, with a half-life of 4.5 billion years.

b) Uranium 235 decays to Lead 207, with a half-life of 0.7 billion years.

c) Thorium 232 decays to Lead 208, with a half-life of 14.1 billion years.

1) **Contamination:** Lead could be **mixed in** with the Uranium or Thorium (Faul, Nuclear Geology, 1954)

2) **Leaching:** Some of the **Uranium** and its **daughter products** could have **leached out**. Lead can be leached out by **weak acid solutions**.

3) **Neutron capture:** **Lead 207** (thought to have been formed only by decaying Uranium 235), could have been formed from Lead 206 by capturing free neutrons from neighbouring rocks. Also Lead 208 (thought of as forming only by Thorium 232 decay) could have been formed by capturing free neutrons from Lead 207. Lead 208 could have formed by capturing free neutrons from Lead 207. Cooke extensively checked this, and discovered that almost all radiogenic lead in the earth's crust could have been produced by **neutron capture** instead of by Uranium or Thorium decay. This alone totally invalidates Uranium and Thorium dating methods.

4) **Intense heat damages radiodating clock settings.**

Evolutionists think the earth was originally molten, yet molten rocks produce wild variations in radioactive materials clock settings.

Question: “Why do the radioactive ages of lava beds, laid down within a few weeks of each other, differ by millions of years?” (Electromagnetics and the Appearance of Age, Glen R. Morton).

Why we cannot trust Potassium Argon dating:

Radioactive potassium decays into calcium and argon gas.

1) **Argon gas** has been found to quickly leave the mineral, escaping into other rocks and the atmosphere. (G.W. Wetherill, Science, Sep. 20, 1957, p.545).

2) **Potassium can be leached out of rocks.**

Rancitelli and Fisher found that 60% of potassium can be leached out of an iron meteorite by distilled water in 4.5 hours. (Planetary Science Abstracts, 1967, p.167).

Heavy rainfall transfers potassium from one location to another.

It is unbelievable – but true – that potassium-argon dating is a key dating method used to date sea floor spreading from ocean bottom basalt lava.

Key: Submerged volcanic rocks, produced by lava flows in 1800-1801 off the coast of Hawaii near Hualalai were dated using potassium-argon dating to range from 160 million years to 2960 million years (Science, Oct.11, 1968; Journal of Geophysical Research, July 15, 1968).

Note: Just one major catastrophe – such as a worldwide Flood would have ruined the usefulness of all our radiodating methods because of:

i) **Massive contamination** problems as water, chemicals and radioactive substances moved from one place to another.

ii) **Major Radioactive rate changing activities** (such as atmospheric, magnetic and radioactivity changes) would have reset the radiodating clocks.

iii) Redistributing of **rock pressure** above radiogenic rocks would have reset their clocks.

iv) **Reversals of the earth’s magnetic core** was caused by shock waves from surface events such as earthquakes, volcanoes, giant geysers, seafloor shrinking, and massive mountain building.

Note: H.C. Dudley, in laboratory tests, changed the decay rates of 14 different radioisotopes by varying the pressure, temperature, magnetic field strength, stress, etc.

(H.C. Dudley, “Radioactivity Re-examined”, Chemical and Engineering News, April 7, 1975, p2).

All these forces operated during and after the Flood. They would have dramatically affected rocks radioactive clocks, thus invalidating all radiometric dating methods used today.

7. REFUTING EVOLUTIONARY EVIDENCE

Many High School and University Biology textbooks continue to give evidences of evolution which have been disproved years ago. Examples include:

1. **False Transitional Forms.** There are no examples of any species changing to another species, but evolutionists claim 6 examples hoping that people will be ignorant enough of scientific discoveries to believe evolution’s claims. Remember that changes within a species is not evolution.

a) **The Horse Series.** Evolutionists have selected a variety of different sized animals, arranged them from small to large, and called them a “horse” series. A leading evolutionist says: “The uniform continuous transformation of Hyracotherium (Eohippus) into Equus, so dear to the hearts of generations of textbook writers, never happened in nature.”

(G.G Simpson, Life of the Past, (1953), p. 119). Note these problems with the “Horse Series”:

i) **The number of rib bones does not agree with the sequence.** The 4 toed Hyracotherium has 18 pairs of ribs, the next creature has 19 pairs, the next has 15 pairs, and Equus has 18 pairs of ribs.

ii) **Never found in consecutive strata.** Nowhere in the world are the horse series fossils found in successive strata.

iii) **Recent fossils below earlier fossils.** In South America, the “more recent” one-toed animal is found **below** the “more ancient” three-toed creature.

- iv) Evolutionists call a badger a horse. The first horse (Hyracotherium or Eohippus) is like our modern rock badger (hyrax) now living in Africa, with a suction cap on its feet to climb trees.
- v) There are over 20 different fossil horse sequences in different museums worldwide.
- vi) You could show the same size increase by comparing small to large dogs, which we know do not show transitional forms across species.
- b) Archaeopteryx is a bird**, not a transitional form between a reptile and a bird.
Archaeopteryx occurs in only 2 clear fossils found in 1861 and 1877 in Solnhofen quarry, Germany in Jurassic limestone (supposedly 150 million years). 2 possibilities about Archaeopteryx are:
- A) It is a bird**, not a transitional half reptile, half bird, because:
- i) Scientists declared it a bird at the International Archaeopteryx Conference in Eichstatt, Germany in 1982, and not a reptile or half reptile/half-bird, and not the ancestor of modern birds.
 - ii) How could reptile scales turn into feathers? Evolutionists cannot explain how this could happen.
 - iii) Bones like a bird. It had thin, hollow wing and leg bones as a bird.
 - iv) Not earlier than birds. It does not predate birds because other bird fossils have been found in the same Jurassic strata as archaeopteryx.
 - v) It has modern bird feathers. (Science 203 (1979), p. 1020, A. Feduccia and H.B. Tordoff).
 - vi) It has no intermediate feathers from scales to feathers, nor have these ever been found.
 - vii) It has well developed wings designed for flight, with asymmetric feathers. Flying birds have more feather on one side of the shaft than non flying emus, ostriches, etc.
 - viii) No prior transitional forms from reptile to archaeopteryx. It has fully developed bird wing bones and flight feathers.
 - ix) Other birds had teeth as well as Archaeopteryx. (P.Moody, Intro. to Evolution (1970), p.196-197)
 - x) Modern birds below it. 2 crow sized birds were discovered in the Triassic Dockum Formation in Texas, which according to evolution, would be 75 million years older than Archaeopteryx. (Nature, 322, Aug.21, 1986, p. 677; Science, 253, July 5, 1991).
- B) Archaeopteryx may be a hoax**. In 1985 some of the leading scientists in England (Fred Hoyle, R.S. Watkins, N.C. Wickramasinghe, J. Watkins, R. Rabilizirov and L.M. Spencer) declared Archaeopteryx to be a carefully contrived hoax (British Journal of Photography, March-June 1985) because of slab mismatch, cement blobs being left on the fossil during the feather etching process, and the feather markings had been carefully imprinted on the fossil by an unknown hand.
- c) Domestic Animals like dogs and pigeons**. Scientists acknowledge that all dogs descended from a common dog ancestor and that all dogs are still dogs. All biologists classify dogs as being in the same species, yet there are far greater differences among dogs than there are among Darwin's finches. There are many sub-species of domestic animals such as dogs, cats, cattle, sheep, pigeons and chickens due to selective breeding. Man cannot cross-breed different species, including apes. Pigeon fanciers have bred many colour variations of pigeons, but all these pigeons can still interbreed and are still pigeons. All pigeons are sub-species of the basic species type known as the rock dove.
- d) Flies and Bacteria resistant to DDT** are claimed to be evolutionary changes by "natural selection" (really "natural variation"). Some flies have become resistant to DDT, and some bacteria have become resistant to antibiotics. But here again, the flies are still flies, and the bacteria are still bacteria. No species change occurred. When DDT is stopped, soon the various strains return.
- e) Peppered Moths in England** are the most often discussed evolutionary "proofs" of natural selection. If this is the best example of evolution, then surely evolutionists have no case. There can be light and dark peppered moths, but they are still peppered moths. They are just variations within a species (Biston Betularia). This is not evolution, but simply a change in the ratio of black and white moths within a stable species. No new species results. "Since it begins and ends with peppered moths and no new species is formed, it is quite irrelevant as evidence for evolution". (On Call, July 2, 1973, p.9).
- Note: Variation within a species is not evolution.
- When Harrison Matthews wrote the introduction for the 1971 edition of Darwin's "Origin of Species", he denied evolution in several respects, especially of the peppered moth:

“The (peppered moth) experiments beautifully demonstrate natural selection – or survival of the fittest – in action, but they do not show evolution in progress, for however the populations may alter in their content of light, intermediate, or dark forms, all the moths remain from beginning to end (Biston betularia).” (page xi).

Anyhow peppered moths do not normally land on the sides of trees.

Evolutionary photos were made of dead moths pasted onto the sides of trees.

f) **Galapagos Finches.** The DNA gene pool within a given true species can be broad enough to produce hybrids, varieties or sub-species. This is why Darwin’s finches on Galapagos Island, can produce bills of different length. When Darwin visited the Galapagos Islands, 600 miles from the South American mainland, he found several different finches, which had developed some different habits and diet. Little crossbreeding between these 14 finch varieties occurred. Yet they were still all finches (Geospizinae). These finches had blown in from South America, adapted to their environment, and produced several sub-species. Darwin was certain that this showed cross-species evolution (change into new species). But they were still finches. This was his main evidence of evolution that he brought back to England. Darwin, knowing nothing about genetics and the DNA boundary to changes across basic types, imagined a new species had occurred. In reality they were sub-species of single parent species that in the past, had reached the island from South America, yet Darwin called them different species, and therefore claimed them to be a proof of evolution.

2. **Comparative Anatomy or Similar Structures.**

A major problem for evolutionists is that evolution is not occurring now, and the fossil record shows that it has not occurred in the past. Similarities in plants and animals show that:

a) A single **Designer** made creatures with similar designs, because of the purpose they must fulfil.

b) Not because they are related or evolved from each other, eg.

i) Similar designs of big spoons, little spoons and ladles do not prove they evolved from each other, but that they were designed to fulfil a similar purpose.

ii) Similar designs of automobiles such as Ford, Toyota, Nissan, BMW do not prove they evolved from each other but that they were all designed to travel along roads, be sat in, carry engines & luggage.

Key: Similarities only show that we have the same Creator.

Evolutionists use these examples of similar structures to prove evolution.

i) **Xylem:** “Ferns, conifers and flowering plants all have vascular tissue, including conducting vessels (xylem) which transport water throughout the plant. This suggests that these plant groups had a common ancestor”. (High School Biology textbook, K. Mudie, J.Brotherton).

Answer: This similarity arises because it is the best way for these types of plants to grow, so the Designer used this basic pattern for nearly all trees. Plants do not have the intelligence to decide how they shall be structured.

ii) **Pentadactyl limb:** This is the “5-boned” arm and leg found on most land vertebrates.

Evolutionists think that they inherited this from aquatic ancestors, lobe-finned fish.

Question: Why would all vertebrate arms and legs have a pentadactyl limb?

Answer: Because it is the best design. There is no better way to design a simpler limb with such a wide range of movement. The same Designer made them all.

iii) **Aortic arches:** All blood flowing out of the heart first flows up through the aortic arch, then branches into 4 main arteries to produce 5 aortic arch patterns. If evolution were true, then all animals in each of these 5 aortic arch types would be closely related to each other, but this is not the case as is seen from animals in each group, such as:

a) Animals with the first type of aortic arch are: horse, goat, donkey, zebra, cow, sheep, pig, deer.

b) Animals with the second type of aortic arch are: whale, mole, shrew; porpoise, hedgehog.

c) Animals with the third type of aortic arch are: skunk, bear, kangaroo, rat, raccoon, dog, possum, squirrel, beaver, mouse, wombat, porcupine, cat, weasel.

d) Those with the fourth type of aortic arch are: dugong, some bats, sea cows, platypus, echidna, man.

e) Animals with the fifth type of aortic arch are: walrus and African elephants.

Question: Do these show any coherent evolution? No.

Question: Does this prove that humans evolved from echidnas? No.

iv) **Other similarities** which **disprove evolution:**

- The eye of man and octopus are very similar.
- The heart of man and pig are very similar.
- The concentration of red blood cells of man and fish are very similar.
- The specific gravity of blood of man and frog are very similar.
- The structure of hemoglobin of man and root nodules are very similar.
- The cytochrome C in the cell of man, sunflower and bullfrog are very similar.

v) **Blood Serum test** for antibodies is used to support evolution but other inconclusive tests are ignored. Blood serum tests of man and animals give varying percentages of precipitation. Kangaroo is 0%, and man is 100%. According to this evolutionary “proof”, man descended from apes, which descended from sheep, which descended from deer, which descended from horses, which descended from kangaroos, which descended from nothing.

vi) **DNA count in relation to size.** Surely the DNA count of various creatures will increase in relation to their size. Consider these examples:

Colon bacteria 0.0047; yeast 0.07; snail 0.67; sea urchin 0.90; chicken/duck 1.3; carp 1.6; green turtle 2.6; cattle 2.8; man 3.2; toad 3.7; frog 7.5; lungfish 50; amphibian 84.

Man is not at the top of the list as evolution would require.

Note: By calling an impossibility “evolution”, does not make it possible.

3. Comparative Embryology (Haeckel’s Theory of Recapitulation).

Definition: “Comparative Embryology is the study of different animals’ embryos, looking for similarities that suggest a common ancestry. All chordates have embryonic gill pouches.

Only in fish and amphibian embryos do these develop into gills. Why do human embryos possess gill pouches? Evolutionists think that we inherited them from an aquatic ancestor”.

(High School Biology Textbook K. Mudie, J. Brotherton, p.278, (2000)).

i.e: Human embryos are said to repeat or “recapitulate” various stages of their ancestors evolution, such as “gill slits” representing the fish stage, the “yoke sac” representing the lizard/reptile stage.

Answer: a) The human embryos “**yoke sac**” makes the blood until bones develop to make blood, whereas a bird “yoke sac” is the food source a chick lives on until it hatches. Human and bird “yoke sacs” have completely different functions. They only look alike.

b) The human embryos “**3 small folds**” are not gills or slits implying human evolution from fishes, but the upper fold will develop into the middle ear canals, the middle fold will become the parathyroids, and the bottom fold will become the thymus gland.

c) The human embryos “**tail**” is not a tail implying human evolution from reptiles, but the forming spine from which muscles attach. Yes, it is true that we were once small round things, but this does not prove we evolved from marbles or ball-bearings.

Comparative embryology just looks at the outside appearance instead of finding the real reason these structures are there. Ernest Haeckel in 1866 first championed this false idea calling it the “Law of Recapitulation” or “Biogenetic Law”. Haeckel in 1868 and 1874 published fraudulent charts to prove his “law”. Haeckel had drafting ability, and he carefully redesigned embryo pictures so they would look alike. Haeckel faked human embryos to look like a dog embryo, when they are quite different.

The following scientists exposed Haeckel’s frauds:

- Wilhelm His**, a German embryologist and father of modern embryology, exposed Haeckel’s hoax in a detailed 1874 paper (Unsere Korperform), concluding that Haeckel was dishonest and discredited.
- F. Keibel**, professor of anatomy at Freiburg University (1915), said, “it clearly appears that Haeckel has in many cases freely invented embryos or reproduced illustrations in a substantially changed form”.
- At Jena, 5 professors at **Haeckel’s University** charged him with fraud. He was convicted by a university court.

- iv) His deceit was thoroughly exposed in a book by **J. Assmuth** and **Ernest Hull**, entitled “Haeckel’s Frauds and Forgeries” (1915). They quoted 19 leading authorities of the day opposing Haeckel.
- v) In 1997, **Dr. Michael Richardson**, an embryologist at St. George’s Medical School in London, assembled a scientific team that photographed the growing embryos of 39 different embryo species. In a 1997 interview in the London Times, Richardson said this about Haeckel: “This is one of the worst cases of scientific fraud. It is shocking to find that somebody one thought was a great scientist was deliberately misleading. He copied a human embryo, pretending that the salamander, pig and all the others looked the same at the same stage of development. They don’t.....these are fakes.” (Michael Richardson, quoted in “An Embryonic Liar”, The London Times, August 11, 1997, p.14). In spite of such full disclosure, Haeckel’s “biogenetic law” and fraudulent drawings continue to be printed in school textbooks to today, deceiving millions of teens. Embryonic similarities point to a single Creator, not to a common ancestor.
- vi) In 1921, **Professor Walter Garstang** in a famous paper destroyed Haeckel’s unsound theory of recapitulation. Those educational institutions that continue to teach comparative embryology are not educational institutions, but are institutions for miseducation.

4. Chemicals of Life formed on Primitive Earth.

Evolutionists have tried to guess what chemical conditions on a primitive earth would spontaneously generate life from non-life.

In 1953, at the University of Chicago, Miller and Urey mixed ammonia, hydrogen, methane and water vapour to simulate earth’s early atmosphere. After one week of subjecting this to electrical discharges they found that some amino acids had formed. Later if Hydrogen Cyanide was added, more amino acids formed.

Question: Does this prove evolution of amino acids to living creatures?

Answer: No, for these reasons:

- 1) Evolution is teaching spontaneous generation, a Dark Ages error that life came from non-life, which was refuted over 140 years ago by Louis Pasteur (1860). Evolutionists change the name to “biopoiesis” so students won’t suspect anything.
- 2) Urey and Miller only produced dead chemicals, not life. Just because amino acids are in living things, does not make them living.
- 3) There are over 2000 complex enzymes required for a living organism, yet not one of these could have been formed on earth in 20 billion years. (Fred Hoyle, New Scientist, 19 Nov. 1981). Urey and Miller only produced a few small amino acids, and no enzymes.
- 4) If by remote chance a living creature was formed, it had to have all its parts working perfectly on day one of its existence, or it would have died and killed any evolutionary process. Its reproductive organs would have to have been working perfectly.
- 5) It would have had to find a mate who by chance had also evolved that same day with all its parts also working perfectly on Day one of its existence, including reproductive organs.
- 6) Both living creatures would have wanted to reproduce and their offspring would have had to have both the ability and desire to reproduce.
- 7) Urey and Miller’s amino acids were formed in million dollar, well-equipped laboratories, by highly intelligent, skilled staff using purified chemicals, not in an impure, oxygen rich, seashore environment.
- 8) The Law of Mass Action (that chemical reactions move from high to low concentration), would have water hydrolysis any proteins formed, back to the original amino acids, which would then break down to separate chemicals. A research team, at Barlian University in Israel, said that this complication would make synthesizing only one protein totally impossible at one chance in 10¹⁵⁷. They concluded that no proteins were ever produced by chance on earth.
- 9) Not just a few, but hundreds of thousands of amino acids would have to exist long enough and know how to form themselves into correct sequences of complex DNA and proteins.
- 10) Chemical compounds in living creatures were meant to be inside them, not outside them where they would be quickly destroyed.

11) Without **water loss**, proteins cannot form in water. Lab technicians do not use seawater or freshwater to prepare dead amino acids.

12) It is well known that **chemicals of life** will **decompose** if **oxygen** is in the air. Oxidation causes these amino acids to break down to individual chemicals again.

“**With oxygen** in the air, the first amino acid would **never** have gotten started: **without oxygen**, it would have been wiped out by cosmic rays.”

(Francis Hitching, *The Neck of the Giraffe*) (1982), p.65). Because oxygen will break down amino acids, evolutionists are forced into deciding that earth’s primitive environment had no oxygen, (called a “reducing atmosphere”), and that later on, **oxygen entered** the atmosphere so that life could breathe.

A “**reducing atmosphere**” could have had carbon dioxide, methane, hydrogen, ammonia and nitrogen. An “**oxidizing atmosphere**” such as now exists, has **carbon dioxide**, water, nitrogen and **oxygen**.

Here are some reasons against a primitive reducing atmosphere:

- i) If life evolved in a reducing atmosphere, it would **immediately die** from **lack of oxygen**. Plants would die from lack of CO₂. No chlorophyll or food would be produced.
- ii) **Oxidized iron** (ferric oxide) occurs in early rocks, proving the atmosphere had oxygen back then.
- iii) **No ozone layer**. With no atmospheric oxygen (O₂), there would be no ozone (O₃) either, which would allow solar UV light to destroy any life that may be formed.
- iv) **Deadly Peroxides**. A reducing atmosphere would produce peroxides through photolysis of water, which would kill any evolving life. (Abelson, “Some Aspects of Paleobiochemistry” in “Annals of NY Academy of Science”, 69, 1957, p.275).
- v) **Water means oxygen**. There is much oxygen in water and in the atmosphere. Electricity will dissociate water to oxygen and hydrogen. This disproves the origin of life by evolution. (R.T. Brinkman, “Dissociation of Water Vapour & Evolution of Oxygen in the Terrestrial Atmosphere”. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 74, 1969, p.5366).

Do evolutionists think that ancient earth had no water?

Conclusion: Evolution by spontaneous generation of life from chemicals could not occur **with oxygen** or **without oxygen**.

13) There is more to a living organism than chemical compounds, proteins and fatty acids in a typical animal. There are thousands of very complicated, very different **enzymes** which scientists do not know how to produce. There are also massive **DNA** and other **coding** problems which no scientist has ever synthesized.

14) One minute after an animal dies, it still has all its chemicals, proteins, fatty acids, DNA & codes, but it **no longer has life**. Scientists **cannot produce life**. How do they expect rock & seawater to do so?

15) Amino acids **do not occur naturally in rich enough concentrations**. For example, phosphorus is needed to form DNA, and nitrogen is needed to form amino acids, but phosphorus and nitrogen concentrations are too low in nature.

16) Even if evolution could produce an animal, it would need a **living food source** made **just as rapidly**.

17) Most evolutionists do not understand how complex life really is. How could all these features happen by **accident**, when intelligent scientists cannot reproduce them by **design** in laboratories?

i) **Q1:** Have you ever tried to synthesize in a lab just one complex molecule found in an average tree? The tree makes large quantities of it in hours, at room temperature and pressure, but intelligent scientists using high temperature and pressure cannot make some tree molecules in 1 year.

ii) For evolution to succeed, the **total organic** and **cellular complexity** of a **species** had to be invented by chance - and it had to do it fast-within seconds, or the creature would immediately die.

iii) A **cell** has a **nucleus**, which contains **chromosomes**, which contains **genes**, which contain **DNA**, which contains the **genome** (or gene pool of all a species **traits**). A human adult contains about 100,000 billion cells. DNA contains phosphate, deoxyribose and 4 types of bases called adenine, guanine, thymine and cytosine. The number and **order** of these bases are unique for each species. DNA divides at about 1000 base pairs per second. DNA is a massive databank, with indexes, electrical polarity, and instructions when and where to switch between cellular processes.

Q2: What is the mathematical possibility of just one DNA molecule forming by chance?

Answer: An average protein may include 300 amino acids. The DNA gene controlling this has about 1000 nucleotides. There are 4 kinds of nucleotides in a DNA chain. A DNA chain of 1000 links could exist in 4^{1000} different forms (10^{600} forms).

Q3: How could random action produce the right combination out of 10^{600} possibilities for "error"? In addition, proteins, enzymes, fats, carbohydrates, etc would have to instantly form at the same time in an organism – and then be endowed with life. Without life, none of these raw materials, even if arranged in correct order, would function. Then this “evolved animal” would need **food, air, water, reproductive organs** and a **mate** to propagate life.

Consider this example: Each haemoglobin molecule contains protein with the correct sequence of 574 left-handed (L) amino acids. In living tissues, the L form of amino acids is found. In lab synthesis, equal amounts of left handed (L) and right handed (D) forms of amino acids are formed. There is no way to synthesize the L form in a laboratory by itself.

18) Enzyme systems do not work in the body, until they are **all there**. Did all enzymes of an organism evolve at once? No way!

19) Before advanced computers were developed in the 1970s, evolutionists could glibly say, “Given enough time and enough chance, living creatures could form from seawater and lightning.” Today, computer scientists program into computers all the factors involved in evolving life and conclude that regardless of how much time was allotted for the processes, evolution could not produce life forms.

The probability of forming 124 specifically sequenced proteins of 400 amino acids each is 1 chance in $10^{64,489}$ ie: 1 with 64,489 zeros after it. Hence it is impossible to randomly form proteins, DNA, amino acids or cells.

8. DID HUMANS EVOLVE FROM APE-LIKE ANCESTORS?

Evolution’s gift to mankind is the lie that we are just animals, only slightly removed from apes, with no moral standards, no laws worth obeying, no future, no hope & no God to comfort us in sorrow or death. From first grade of school, children are taught that we evolved from cavemen, their “proof” being supposed half-man/half-ape remains.

Question: Is it true that these skeletal remains have been found? Is man really related to apes?

Answer: a) Man’s DNA is different from apes and monkeys.

b) Man’s number of vertebrae are different from apes and monkeys.

c) Man’s cranial (brain) capacity is very different from apes. Compare orang-utans and chimpanzees (275-500cc), gorillas (340-752cc), with man (1100-1700cc).

d) Man walks habitually upright. Great apes do not.

Question: If man is the same as 1 million years ago, why did he only leave writings, buildings and artefacts since 3000 BC?

Key: Early civilizations were advanced, but occasionally, groups would migrate to new areas and for a time live in “stone age cultures” until they could build cities. Cavemen wandered from warm to colder climates and chose to live in caves for a time before building homes in their new land.

Diodorus Siculus (in 60 BC) wrote of primitive people living in caves along the shores of the Red Sea. That both advanced civilizations and primitive cave cultures lived at the same time, does not prove human evolution from another species. This coexistence of advanced & primitive peoples occurs today.

Question: Were these bones belonging to human ancestors via evolution? Consider the following:

1) Neanderthals. In 1856, workers blasted a cave in the Neander Valley, near Dusseldorf, Germany to discover limb bones, pelvis, ribs & skullcap inside. Virchow, a German anatomist, said that the bones were those of modern men afflicted with rickets and arthritis, because of bowed legs caused by lack of sunlight.

a) Neanderthals apparently lived at a time when there was not as much sunlight. The Ice Age came due to volcanic dust pollution worldwide which reduced sunlight. European weather at the time was cold enough to force people to stay in caves so they received even less sunlight.

b) In 1973, H. Israel showed that modern humans living to extreme age develop Neanderthal features such as heavy eyebrow ridges and an elongated cranial vault (1600cc). There is definite evidence that

they were several hundred years old. This correlates well with Bible records in Genesis 11 of long human lifespans from the Flood to Moses. (Arphaxad lived 438 years, Salah 433, Eber 464, Peleg 239, Reu 239, Serug 230, Nahor 148, Terah 205, Abram 175).

c) In 1908 a Neanderthal skeleton was found in Poland, buried in a suit of chain armour not yet fully rusted. (“Neanderthal in Armour”, Nature. April 23, 1908, p. 587).

d) They had well developed art, culture and religion. Most scientists agree that Neanderthals were just humans who lived in caves for a time. School textbooks have not yet caught up with this.

2) **Cro-Magnon Man**. Some Cro-Magnon skeletons have been found since 1868 in France in a cave. Some were over 6 feet tall, with slightly larger cranial volume than humans today. Some were artists. They kept astronomy records. They were normal humans, not apes, nor transitions from ape to man.

Q1: Why is it that each time, only one specimen is found? Why not hundreds? If these are our ancestors, there should be millions of such specimens.

Q2: Why are only small pieces of bone found for each specimen – never a complete skeleton? The less that is found, the easier it is to make unfounded extrapolated claims for it.

Q3: If these bones are supposed to be “1 million years old”, why did they not decay in damp Europe, Kenya and China? How could million year old bones possibly be found in damp earth?

3) **Java Man**. Found by Eugene Dubois in 1891 consisted of a skullcap, a femur 50 feet away and 3 teeth some distance away. Dubois assumed that:

a) All these bones were from the same individual, b) They were 1 million years old, c) So he told people it was “half human/half ape”, and called it “Pithecanthropus erectus” (erect ape man). Humans were found buried nearby. The small skullcap portion could fit a human or a gorilla. Most scientists think it was a human skull portion, but school textbooks still cite it as about 500,000 years old.

4) **Pittdown Man**, found in 1912, fooled the scientific world for 40 years until 1953 when Weiner and Oakley showed it to be a hoax. Someone had put an ape jaw with a human skull, filed the teeth and stained them to appear as an ancient matching set.

5) **Australopithecus**, and **Ramapithecus** is the name given to some ape bones found in Africa.

They are all apes. Oxnard and Zuckerman concluded that Australopithecus is an ape, not human, nor a transition between the two. “Lucy” (an Australopithecus) found in Ethiopia in 1975 had a chimp-sized skull (450cc) and “was surprisingly short-legged”. (Time, 7 Nov.1979, p.68).

6) **Nutcracker Man** (Zinjanthropus) was found in 1959 by Lois Leakey in Olduvai Gorge, East Africa. Its jaw was much larger than its skull. This was probably another case of mismatched skull parts. Its skull was ape-like. Because tools were found nearby, Leakey decided it was halfhuman.

A human skeleton was found above it in 1913. In 1961, its skull was dated by the inaccurate Potassium-Argon method at 1.75 million years. In 1968, the same skull was dated by the more accurate Carbon-14 method at 10,100 years. Eventually Leakey conceded that it was just another ape skull.

7) **Peking Man** was found in 1927-1936 in a Peking garbage dump with thousands of animal bones. These human bones totalled 14 skulls, 11 jawbones, 147 teeth and a couple of small arm bone and femur fragments along with stone tools. These were human bones with smaller brain capacity (1000cc, which some people have today). They had prominent Neanderthal brow ridges, which some people have today. The openings of the skull bases had been widened and smashed, as if someone had wanted to scoop out the brains. No pelvis or ribs were found. All the skulls disappeared during WWII in 1941. In the 1950s, Ernst Mayr renamed them as **Homo Erectus** and grouped them with Java Man.

Conclusion: All these bones look only like ape bones or human bones, but never transitional forms.

9. THE MAN - ANIMAL GAP

Evolutionists say that man is just another animal because we have evolved from other animals.

The Bible says that man is specially created in the image of God to have dominion over the animals.

Little is discussed about the differences between man and animals. Consider these differences:

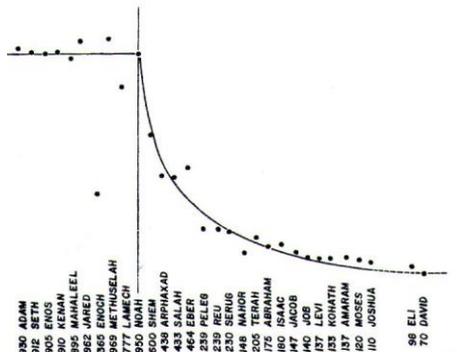
1. Only man can benefit from accumulated knowledge passed on to the next generation as history.

2. Only man is religious.

3. Only man has an innate sense of morality, of right and wrong, of violated conscience.

4. Only man makes and uses fire and tools.
5. Only man produces art.
6. Men sing, apes don't.
7. Only man communicates abstract thoughts in sentences, writes, invents and composes.
8. Only man conceptualises eternity.
9. Only man surrounds death with ceremony and funerals.

ANTE-DILUVIAN AND POST-DILUVIAN PATRIARCHS



10. Man is unique physically, biochemically, neurologically, posturally with an upright heel-toe walk. How could these have evolved? Man is so far above animals that he could not have evolved from them. This graph shows how human lifespans dropped from about 900 years before the Flood to today's lifespans after the Flood, as depicted in Genesis chapters 5,11.

10. WAS ANCIENT MAN PRIMITIVE as EVOLUTION CLAIMS?

Evolution pictures modern man as very smart, and ancient man as an unintelligent primitive animal-like creature. This is flattering to the ego of modern man and makes evolutionists proudly feel that they are at the top of an advancing evolutionary chain. But is this true?

Was ancient man unintelligent? Evolution incorrectly pictures ancient man as an ape-like creature called Australopithecus, Cro-Magnon, Neanderthal, Homo Habilis, Homo Erectus etc. who did nothing significant for 3 million years, then around 2500 BC suddenly began to build cities and be civilised. Maybe man never was around for 3 million years if he left nothing behind to show for it. Archaeology shows ancient man as very intelligent, even able to do things that we cannot do today.

Question: Why the sudden explosion of intelligence and culture around 2500BC?

A. Because this represented early post-Flood civilisation. The pre-flood civilisation was destroyed in Noah's Flood of 2418 BC, according to Bible chronology.

Question: What about cavemen?

A. Primitive tribes of men have existed in the past just as they do today. They were not the first humans, but degenerate off-shoots of mainline human culture.

Job 30:5-8 discusses cavemen: "They were driven forth from among men.....To dwell in the cliffs of the valleys, in **caves** of the earth and in the rocks." Many ancient civilisations peaked in culture, but were destroyed after violence, gross immorality, human sacrifice (abortion) and demonism (occult) appeared.

Question: Where did Cain get his wife?

A. He married one of his sisters. "Adam ...he begat sons and daughters". (Genesis 5:4).

The law forbidding marrying a sibling was not given until Moses in 1500 BC.

Question: How intelligent and capable was ancient man?

A "Nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do". (Genesis 11:6).

Question: What artefacts did he leave to show his intelligence?

1. **Metallurgy.** "Tubal-cain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron". Genesis 4:22.

At the foot of Mount Ararat in Turkey, Russians have found hundreds of ancient ruined smelting furnaces for bronze, copper, tin. Source: K. Megertchian, Bible Science Newsletter, Feb 1978, page 3.

Some metal Egyptian artefacts of 2000BC have been electroplated with gold.

Source: 'Ancient Electroplating', 1933 Annual Log, Scientific American Publishing Co, New York, p.85

2. Corrosion Resistant Chinese Sword

Metal swords buried for 2200 years in a Chinese Emperor's Tomb had been treated with a preservative that had prevented any corrosion. These swords were alloys of tin, copper, magnesium, nickel, cobalt and 10 other elements. Source: National Geographic, April, 1978.

3. Diamond Tipped Iron Cutting Tools

"The sin of Judah is written with the pen of iron, and with the point of a diamond". Jeremiah 17:1 (601 BC). 20th Century industry was not the first to discover diamond cutting tools.

4. Printing a Book using Iron or Lead Letters

"Oh that my words were now written! Oh that they were printed in a book!

That they were graven with an iron pen and lead in the rock forever." (Job 19:23,24).

Sceptics once doubted Moses' (1500 BC) ability to write. Here we see Job (maybe 2000 BC) thinking of printing a book using iron or lead letters, which is what we use today.

The evolutionary idea that ancient earthlings were too primitive to develop technology on their own, gave rise to Erik von Daniken's book "Chariots of the gods" where he suggests that superior aliens brought this technology to earthmen from outer space.

Solomon tells us that there is nothing new under the sun. "There is no new thing under the sun. Is there anything whereof it may be said, See, this is new? it hath been already of old time, which was before us. There is no remembrance of former things...." (Ecclesiastes 1:9-11).

He is saying that our new inventions have already existed in ancient times, and that we have forgotten them. Job said a similar thing: "For inquire, I pray thee, of the former age...." (Job 8:8).

Long lifespans allow for greater knowledge. Job 12:12 says:

"With the ancient is wisdom; and in length of days is understanding".

How much science, technology, commerce and industry could develop if people like Einstein, Getty, Isaac Newton, and Da Vinci, lived for 900 years?

If the Flood occurred in 2418 BC, this date compares well with man's oldest civilised records going back to about 3500 BC. These ancient civilisations appear in an advanced state, without any trace of primitive generations leading up to them. This contradicts evolution.

5. The Great Pyramid of Cheops. This is one of the oldest buildings on earth. Imagine the engineering technology required to mine and transport such heavy stones (2 million x 21/2 tons each block), as well as have no movement in the foundation over 4000 years.

6. Pyramid of the Sun, near Mexico City is 216 feet high. Its base is 720 feet x 760 feet (Cheops is 750 x 750 feet). Some think that there may be 100,000 pyramids in Mexico.

7. Mayan solar year.

The ancient Mayans of Central America calculated a solar year to be 365.2420 days long. Only recently have astronomers calculated it to be 365.2422 days.

Source: National Geographic, December 1975, v.148:6, P.783.

8. The Piri Reis Map of 1513.

This map was copied from more ancient maps going back to before Christ. The curious thing about this map is that it outlines the actual land coastline of Antarctica. Today the south pole ice pack permanently covers the Antarctic coastline so that the land coastline is not visible. Only in 1953 by modern technical methods was Antarctica's land coastline charted. How could they chart the coastline in 1513? Source: Ancient Man: A Handbook of Puzzling Artefacts. W.R. Corliss p.88.

9. Phoenician Language Stone in West Virginia USA.

This stone found in 1838, had Phoenician writing inscribed on it used in Spain before Christ. How did it get to the USA? Source: "America B.C." Barry Fell, Simon and Schuster, N.Y. 1976 p.21.

10. Ancient Polynesians had colonised every habitable island in the Pacific Ocean by 30 AD.

They knew how to navigate by the stars and by ocean currents. Modern man had only discovered these navigation techniques recently. These Polynesians had methodically covered over 15 million square miles of open sea. Source: National Geographic, "Polynesians", December 1974.

11. Easter Island.

The early Polynesians who settled Easter Island carved over 600 smoothly sculptured heads out of iron hard volcanic rock, some weighing 90 tons. Most are 12 to 15 feet high, one being 40 feet tall. How were they carved and moved several miles from their quarry? What was their purpose as they look over treeless plains? “World’s Last Mysteries”, Readers Digest, 1967, p.94.

12. Ancient Ceramic Battery. in the Baghdad Museum. This ceramic jar contains a copper cylinder suspended in the jar. This copper cylinder had an iron core inserted in it. When grape juice was put in the jar containing the copper cylinder and iron core, it produced an electric current of 1.5 volts. Ancient people used electricity because electroplated relics have been found dating back to 2400 BC, just after the Flood. “Electric Batteries of 2000 Years Ago”, H. Schwalb, Science Digest, V.41, p.17, April 1957.



13. Solomon’s 3 Year Ship Voyages. I Kings 10:22 in 1000 BC. Solomon joined with King Hiram of Phoenicia to send ships on 3 year voyages to bring imports from distant lands. Where did they go to? Was it Africa, America, or India? If the Polynesians mastered the Pacific ocean by 30 AD, why couldn’t the Phoenicians cross the Atlantic, which was a shorter distance?

14. Ziggurat at Ur, Iraq (2100 BC). The tower of Babel built just after the Flood was a Ziggurat.

15. Giant Stones of Tiahuanaco in Bolivia.

In Bolivia, high in the Andes mountains at 13,000 feet, are the ruins of Tiahuanaco, containing massive stone stairways built seemingly to accommodate a race of large people. Some walls are 16 feet x 26 feet x 1 foot thick. Other stones weigh from 10 tons to 100 tons each. The stones were quarried and moved from 60 miles away without wheels or roads. How did they do it?

Natives in the time of the Spanish conquistadors state that: “The great stones one sees at Tiahuanaco were carried through the air to the sound of a trumpet”. Source: “The Worlds Last Mysteries,” p.138

16. 2000 Ton stone at Baalbek, Lebanon.

70 foot high columns at Baalbek dating from Roman times were quarried in Egypt, moved across the Mediterranean Sea, then over mountainous regions to Baalbek. The foundation stones are much larger. One stone measuring 14 feet x 16 feet x 66 feet, weighs about 2000 tons. Even with modern equipment we could not move it. Source: National Geographic, April, 1985.

17. 6000 Terracotta Statues of China’s First Emperor.

These statues of soldiers and horses cover 500 acres dating back to 200 BC. Every soldiers’ face has a different expression. Imagine the kilns needed to fire thousands of life sized horses.

This emperor, Chin Shih Huang Ti, codified China’s laws, standardised Chinese writing, and built canals and public roads. Source: National Geographic, April 1978.

18. Perfectly Preserved Woman for 2100 Years.

A Chinese noblewoman was perfectly preserved wrapped in 20 layers of fine silk. Her skin is still pliable, her hair was still firmly rooted in her scalp, and X-rays can identify her last meal eaten and internal organs. How did they halt natural decay processes immediately, and for so long? Printed cloth was also discovered in her burial chamber; not painted, but printed. Gutenberg simply re-discovered printing in 1450. Source: National Geographic, May 1974.

19. Glass lens from ancient Egypt was also discovered.

20. Wooden carving of an aeroplane with a vertical tail fin, and streamlined wing design was tested and found to be aerodynamically ideal for mechanised flight. Ancient people may have used flying machines. Source: “Ancient man: A Handbook of Puzzling Artefacts”. W.R.Corriss, Vol.5, p.88, 1972.

11. SCIENTIFIC DEVELOPMENTS UNKNOWN TO DARWIN, that Refute Evolution.

Had Darwin foreseen the coming scientific developments, he would have seen his theory to be in error. These include:

1. **Gregor Mendel** had not yet established or published his work on the laws of heredity and genetics, showing that characteristics passed from parent to offspring according to precise mathematical ratios. They do not derive by chance random processes in what Darwin called “blending inheritance.”
2. **First law of Thermodynamics** stating that energy can neither be created or destroyed, was only just being developed by Joule and Lord Kelvin. This showed that the universe could not have created itself.
3. **Second law of Thermodynamics** states that the universe is degenerating to more disorder. This shows that things do not of themselves become more organised with time, as evolution requires.
4. **Louis Pasteur** was just beginning his famous experiments showing that all life comes from life, never from non-life.
5. **Mathematical laws of probability**, showing that the chances of life occurring by chance are effectively zero, had not yet been applied to the theory of evolution.
6. **Molecular biology**, showing that the cell is so enormously complex (like the entire city of Sydney), that it could not possibly have formed by chance, had not yet commenced as a science.
7. The **Fossil record** had not yet been studied sufficiently for palaeontologists to be able to say, as they now do, that intermediate links between species do not exist.

Any one of these concepts or laws, if known to Darwin and the world in 1859 would have been enough to destroy Darwin’s evolution theory.

These 6 counter evidences show that evolution **could not** have taken place, while the fossil record shows that evolution **did not** take place.

Today, many scientists modify evolution in any way they can to get around the proofs against it.

Question: Why is evolution still popular?

Answer: Because of what the alternative involves. If the Biblical account of Creation is true, then man has sinned against God, and there will be a Day of Judgment for sinful man for rejecting Christ as Saviour and Creator. Acts 17:31 says: “He (God) hath appointed a day, in which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man (Christ) whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.”

12. BAD EFFECTS OF EVOLUTION

Human conduct is modelled on the philosophy that is accepted at the time.

Few people realise the evil far reaching social effects of the Evolution theory.

1) A **New Code of Ethics**. Evolution claims that **people are just animals**, so there is **no right, no wrong, no morality**, just the law of the jungle that the fittest, most ruthless, aggressive animals survive. So by evolutionary reasoning, humans may behave ruthlessly or aggressively, or any way they please. It has given society a **new code of ethics** of survival of the fittest, might is right and the law of the jungle, which replaces God’s law of love and service. Evolution claims that whatever enables the individual to survive is right and good for the individual and society, be it cunning or cruelty, cowardice or deceit.

Huxley believed that it was cunning and ruthlessness (violence) that enabled man to evolve from the beasts. The law of the jungle directs human progress, he thought.

This twisted thinking has resulted in the increase of youth crime today. Evolution is the greatest curse in today’s **education** system. This supposed beastly nature of man leads to people behaving worse than animals, broken homes, increased divorce, increase in crime and violence, all resulting from the acceptance and practice of evolution. Jesus Christ on the other hand said: “By love serve one another”.

2) **Spread of Atheism** among the **educated masses**. Evolution is **atheistic, anti-Christian** and **anti-Bible**. Evolution and Christianity are totally incompatible opposites. If evolution be true, then the Fall of Man is false, sin is necessary to survive, **Christ's death** and **salvation** are not needed. Millions of young people have lost their faith in God by studying Evolution theory. Huxley said: "Evolution, if consistently accepted, makes it impossible to believe the Bible". Evolution leads a person to a state of defiance against God as Creator and Saviour. If evolution was true, then the Christian faith is a mass of error. Sin is not evil, it is only the method evolution uses to progress. Nietzsche said: "Neither crime, cruelty, sexuality, nor intoxication need be matters of shame or repentance". To him, Christian morality was the chief obstacle preventing the emergence of a superman. Some foolish clergy endorse evolution through ignorance.

3) **On Western Culture**. Darwinism unleashed a moral holocaust on the world, teaching a most vicious set of moral principles that man is an animal and that the most successful animals are those that are the first to attack and destroy. Darwinism **broke man's link with God** and set him adrift in a purposeless cosmos, altering how men viewed themselves, from morally accountable creations of God to vicious animals accountable to nobody. Evolution provides no uplifting standards, values or morality. Darwinism is **brutalising mankind** today, by giving scientific sanction to bloodthirsty selfish desires. Evolution has entered every sphere of behaviour, such as business, science, education and government. The Satanist, Anton La Vey, said that Satan gave him the message that, "We are only animals, and we should do as we please". This is evolution's message. In order to make atheists of everyone, Julian Huxley taught that the **schools** must be controlled by evolutionists. Evolution is the greatest curse in our education system. Evolution is the social basis for intensified war, immorality, divorce and criminality, which has brought anguish to millions.

4) **Marxism and Communism**. Karl Marx who wrote "Das Capital", the basis of Communism, saw Darwinism as a scientific basis for his theory of social progress. Marx wrote to Engels on 16 Jan. 1861, "Darwin's book is very important and serves me as a basis in natural selection for the class struggle in history." (C. Zirkle, "Evolution, Marxism Biology and the Social Scene", 1959 p.88).

Marx wished to dedicate his book "Das Capital" to Darwin, but Darwin politely declined the offer. Yeroslavsky, a friend of Joseph Stalin wrote of him:

"Comrad Stalin began to read Darwin and became an atheist". (Landmarks in the Life of Stalin, 1940, p.8). Stalin killed millions of his own countrymen in World War II by confiscating the Ukrainian's food. Evolution is a founding principle of communism. Communists oppose and persecute Christians. Both Lenin and Stalin were ardent evolutionists, as are the Chinese Communists.

5) **World Wars I and II, Militarism** is based on evolution. Nietzsche, the German militarist and Haeckel helped lay the evolutionary foundations for German militarism which led to WWI and WWII. Inspired by Darwin's writings, they pioneered Nazi violence. While Lenin and Marx applied evolution to the class struggle for supremacy, Haeckel and Nietzsche applied evolution to permit Germany as the "super race" to conquer inferior races. Hitler's book titled "Mein Kampf" (1925) meaning "My Struggle", was taken from Haeckel's German translation of Darwin's phrase, "the struggle for existence". Nietzsche, the German militarist extended Darwin's principle of "survival of the fittest" to inspire his nation, as the "fittest nation" to subjugate the world by war.

Hitler applied evolution, claiming that his German race with its superior intellect and Aryan blood was best fitted to survive and control the world. He said: "The whole of nature is a continuous struggle between strength and weakness, an eternal victory of the strong over the weak". This false theory led to his and Germany's shameful defeat in 1945, thus showing the world that his philosophy was a lie, and proved the truthfulness of God's Word:

"The race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong". Ecclesiastes 9:11.

Jesus said: "The meek (not the aggressive) shall inherit the earth". Matthew 5:5.

Evolution influenced Hitler's views on the master race, genocide and human breeding experiments. (R. Clark, "Darwin, Before and After", 1948, p.115). "Mussolini's attitude was completely dominated by evolution. In public utterances, he repeatedly used the Darwinian catchwords while he mocked at perpetual peace, lest it hinder the evolutionary process." (R. Clark, p.115).

6) **Racism.** The full title of Darwin's 1859 book is: "On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection, or the Preservation of Favoured Races in the Struggle for Life". Leading racists have been evolutionists. Darwin and Thomas Huxley were both evolutionists and racists: "Looking to the world at no very distant date, what an endless number of the lower races will have been eliminated by the higher civilized races throughout the world".

(Charles Darwin, Life and Letters, p.318). In the 1910's, the war was against nations; in the 1930s and 1940s, the war was against races, and in the 1970's onward, the war has been against the unborn. "Whites are higher up the evolutionary scale than blacks" is a false claim of some evolutionary thinkers.

7) **Abortion and Crime.** Evolutionist abortionists say to women considering an abortion: "Don't worry, the foetus is only in the fish stage". They rarely say how abortion increases breast cancer. According to evolution, there is no right, no wrong, no God, no devil, only evolution which makes all things right. Murder, lawlessness, robbery, abortion, lying, cheating, hedonism and exploitation is acceptable to evolution. By offering evolution in place of God as a cause of history, Darwin removed the theological basis of the moral code of Christendom.

13. DARWIN'S MYSTERY ILLNESS

Darwin called his book "The Origin of Species" published on November 24, 1859, "my accursed book." He thought of himself as a Devil's chaplain. His son Francis recalled him saying, "I never gave up Christianity until I was forty years of age."

In the year before publication he was rarely able to write for more than 20 minutes at a time without stomach pains. He finished the proof in between fits of vomiting. He said to his friend J.D. Hooker 10 days before the proofs were bound:

"I have been very bad lately; one leg has swelled like elephantiasis, eyes almost closed up, and covered with a rash and fiery boils. It was like living in hell. In 1864 he wrote to Hooker: "I suppose few human beings had vomited so often during the last 5 months." He lived in self doubt, fearing that he had devoted his life to a fantasy. He was too sick to attend his book launch, or to attend the debate between Thomas Huxley and Bishop Samuel Wilberforce at Oxford on June 30, 1860, or to attend the awarding of his Copley medal in 1864.

Darwin knew that his idea would destroy the faith of millions of people in God as their Creator. But what if he was wrong? How could he accept the responsibility of what effect his theory of "no accountability to God" would have on others? Symptoms of his illness included vomiting, headache, giddiness, twitching muscles and spots before the eyes. This is an anxiety-caused psychoneurosis.

14. WHY DO EVOLUTIONISTS HOLD SO STRONGLY to Theory so Lacking in Evidence?

1) Some don't like being responsible to God judging them for their sins.

2) Sexual freedom. "We objected to the morality because it interfered with our sexual freedom".

Aldous Huxley, "Confessions of a Professed Atheist", Perspectives on the News, Vol.3 June 1966, p.19

3) A Way to hide from God. "Darwinism removed the whole idea of God as the Creator of organisms from the sphere of rational discussion." (Julian Huxley).

4) It will help destroy religion.

15. Carbon-14 Dating Assumptions

Willard Libby (1908-1980) at the University of Chicago discovered the Carbon-14 dating method in 1946 to date remains of plants and animals. It is summarised as follows:

1) Cosmic rays enter earth's atmosphere and transform normal carbon (C-12) to the radioactive carbon isotope (C-14) with a half-life of 5730 years.

2) Carbon-14 atom combines with oxygen in the atmosphere, to form carbon dioxide, with C-14 in it.

3) Plants and trees absorb this carbon dioxide to make sugar by photosynthesis.

4) Animals and humans eat plants and absorb carbon dioxide. Some carbon dioxide contains carbon-14. The ratio of normal carbon-12 to radioactive carbon-14 in the air and in living things is constant until it's death when it stops taking in new carbon.

5) After death the carbon-14 decays with a half life of 5730 years while the amount of carbon-12 remains constant in the sample. By measuring the ratio of carbon-12 to carbon-14 in the sample and comparing it with the ratio in the living organism, the age of a formerly living thing may be estimated. Note: “Fewer than 50 percent of the radiocarbon dates from geological and archaeological samples in north eastern North America have been adopted as “acceptable” by investigators.” (J.Ogden, “The Use and Abuse of Radiocarbon” in the Annals of New York Academy of Science, Vol. 288, 1977, p.167-173).

Assumptions and Errors in Radiocarbon dating:

1. **Atmospheric Carbon**: For the past several million years, earth’s atmosphere is assumed to have had the same amount of atmospheric carbon that it now has.

Answer: We know atmospheric conditions were different in ancient times, but we do not know to what degree this would invalidate ancient dates determined by C-14 analyses.

2. **Cosmic rays** have reached earth in the same amount as that now.

Answer: Less cosmic rays would have entered earth’s atmosphere before the Flood due to the earth’s stronger magnetic field then and due to the water vapour canopy. This would have resulted in less C-14 forming before the Flood than is being formed now, thus giving the appearance of greater age of pre-flood plant and animal specimens.

3. **Magnetic Field Strength** is assumed to be constant. This assumption is false, because earth’s magnetic field strength is decaying with a half-life of 1400 years. A stronger magnetic field before the Flood would lessen the cosmic rays entering earth, lessen the amount of C-14 being formed, and give C-14 dates older than the true age.

4. **Amount of Carbon-14 at death** is assumed to be known. Answer: How can we know exactly how much C-14 an organism possessed at death? No one can know this for sure.

5. **Water vapour canopy**. If earth was warmer or contained more water in the atmosphere (caused by a water canopy, surrounding earth), then less C-14 would be produced, thus giving C-14 dates of pre-flood organisms older than their true age.

6. **Volcanic activity** during and after the Flood would have blocked out much cosmic rays, thus reducing the amount of C-14 being formed. Post-Flood organisms would have received less C-14 than those today, thus making those animals and civilizations appear to be much older by C-14 dating methods than their true age. With the passing of time, C-14 levels would have increased until about 1000BC, where they would have been close to today’s levels. **Key**: This is why radiocarbon dates back to 600BC correlate better with historically proven dates over the last 2600 years. Discrepancies still exist since 600BC. Prior to 600BC, dates given by radiocarbon analysis begin lengthening out greatly.

7. **Loss of Carbon-14** from a specimen by the flood, rainfalls, oceans and below ground moisture will invalidate its C-14 age. If there is less Carbon-12, there’ll be less C-14 in a specimen.

8. **Sunspot effect** on C-14 production.

i) From 1100-1240AD there was high sunspot activity (cool spots) giving less C-14 production.

ii) From 1420-1530AD and from 1639-1720AD there was low sunspot activity, no aurora seen, an increase in solar wind, and higher C-14 production.

9. **Libby’s Carbon-14 Discrepancy**. Libby found a serious discrepancy at a certain point in past history that indicated his assumed build up of atmospheric C-14 was inaccurate. (“Evolution or Degeneration?”, H.R Seigler, 1972, p.80-81). Seigler suggests that the catastrophic effects of the Flood would explain this discrepancy along with the vast water canopy shielding earth from C-14 buildup. Before 1600BC radiodating tends to go wild. The Flood (2418BC) and abnormal post-Flood conditions explain this.

10. **Carbon-14 Data points to the Flood**. Millions of plants and animals died during the Flood. We would expect that C-14 dating should produce many specimens that died at about the same time.

In 1970, R. Whitelaw of Virginia Polytechnic Institute carefully compiled 25,000 C-14 dates from the research literature, of people, animals and vegetation. He charted his results which showed that deaths peaked at about 4500 years ago (about 2500BC).

This agrees well with the Bible’s date for the Flood as 2418BC. 15,000 out of 25,000 C-14 dates peaked around 2500BC. (R. Whitelaw, CRS Quarterly, 7. (1970):56).

11. **Amino Acid Dating** by Decomposition. Traces of amino acid still exist all through the fossil strata. This means that no fossils are millions of years old as evolution requires.

16. Big Bang Baloney- EVIDENCE DISPROVING THE BIG BANG THEORY

Did the Universe begin with a super explosion of a small mass 10 billion years ago?

Briefly, the following problems are observed in our solar system that defy the Big Bang explanation:

1. Uranus and Venus rotate in the opposite direction to the other planets.
2. Some planets have eccentric or tilted orbits.
3. Some planet's satellite moons move in retrograde (backwards) motion.
4. Our moon has a lower density than earth. If it was thrown out from earth, it's density would be more.
5. The sun's angular momentum is $1/2000$ th of the planets.

This small angular momentum makes it unlikely that the planets could be thrown out of the sun.

Source: "Unlocking the Mysteries of Creation". D.R. Peterson, p.45.

Big Bang theory says that a large quantity of nothing condensed by gravity into a single tiny spot and then exploded outward into hydrogen and helium to eventually form stars, galaxies, planets and moons.

Question: What is wrong with this theory? A lot!

1. Nothingness cannot pack together.
2. There would be no ignition to explode a speck of nothingness.
3. The theoretical explosion would fall back on itself giving a theoretical black hole. R L St.Peter, 1974.
4. There is not enough anti-matter in the universe. A Big Bang would produce equal amounts of matter and anti-matter, but only small amounts of antimatter exists. (Asimov's New Guide to Science, p.343).
5. The anti-matter from the Big Bang would have destroyed all the regular matter.
6. There is no way to unite all the outward rushing particles from the central explosion, because they would keep getting farther apart over time travelled. (See Novotny's research).
7. The particles would maintain the same speed and direction forever, with no way for them to begin circling each other as gas clouds. Linear motion would not change to angular momentum.
8. Neither hydrogen or helium in outer space would clump together, because gases on earth push apart, but never clump together. Gas clouds in space expand, and don't contract to form anything.
9. Careful analysis has revealed that there is not enough matter in gas clouds to produce stars.
10. If the Big Bang theory were true, instead of a universe of evenly mixed stars and galaxies, there would only be an outer rim of fast moving matter.
11. There is not enough matter in the universe to explain the origin of matter and stars. The universe is 100 times less dense than the Big Bang theory requires. Where is this "missing mass"? This too little matter could not form stars.
12. The Big Bang would only produce hydrogen and helium, not the other 90 elements.
13. The nuclear gaps at atomic mass 5 and 8 make it impossible for hydrogen and helium to produce any heavier elements, because neither a proton or neutron can be attached to a helium nucleus of mass 4. If it were not for this important "helium mass 4 gap", the sun would radiate uranium towards earth. There is no stable atom of atomic mass 5 or 8. So a hydrogen fusion reaction (bomb) combines hydrogen to form deuterium, which doubles to form Helium 4 and stops there. Hence a hydrogen explosion (even in a star), does not cross mass 5 gap (E.g. H=1.008; Deuterium=2.016; He=4.006; Lithium=6.939; Beryllium=9.012; Boron=10.811, etc.).
14. There are no first-generation stars (containing only hydrogen and helium) in the sky, which supposedly exploded to give second-generation stars, as the Big Bang theory requires.
15. Random explosions do not produce intricate orbits of suns, binary stars, galaxies, star clusters, planets and moons.
16. There are not enough supernova explosions to produce the heavier elements. We can see stars up to 15 billion light years away, but why are we not seeing many stellar explosions far out in space? Because the Big Bang theory is wrong. The stars are doing fine.
17. The most distant stars, which evolutionists date to the time of the Big Bang, are not exploding, and yet contain heavier elements.
18. According to the Big Bang theory, older stars should have more heavy elements because they are continually making them. But all stars, from 'young' to 'old', have similar amounts of heavy elements
19. Why do some stars spin backward to other stars? The Big Bang theory can't explain this.

20. Why do stars turn? Why do galaxies rotate? Why do planets orbit stars?

Why do binary stars circle one another? How could super fast straight line motion from a Big Bang change to rotating and orbiting motion with angular momentum?

21. Why is the universe so “lumpy” with galaxies grouped into galaxy clusters, which are grouped into larger super clusters?

22. Evolutionists claim that background radiation in space is the best evidence that the Big Bang occurred as the last remnant of a Big Bang explosion. This is wrong because: a) It is too smooth.

b) It comes from all directions except one direction being the Big Bang source.

c) The radiation is too weak to fit the theory. (Fred Hoyle).

d) It lacks the required 2.7K black body spectrum required for the Big Bang theory.

e) The spectrum should be a much hotter 100 K black body spectrum than its 2.73K spectrum.

Instead, this background radiation is what we’d expect from the billions of stars in the universe.

23. According to Big Bang theory, the further we look out into space, the further back into time we see.

This means that the furthest stars and galaxies should be the youngest.

Yet research shows that furthest away stars are just like those nearby.

24. If Big Bang theory were true, all stars would be moving in the same direction, but stars, clusters and galaxies are moving in various directions opposite to one another.

25. Every star is redshifted to some extent. The further a star or galaxy is from us, the more its light is shifted. Big Bang theory concludes that this proves that the universe is expanding outward from the source of the Big Bang. They base this on the hypothesis that the “speed theory” of redshift is the only cause of the redshift. (If light is travelling towards us, the wavelength is compressed or blueshifted. If it is moving away from us, the wavelength is stretched out or redshifted). Other explanations for redshift:

a) Gravitational redshift. In 1915, Einstein predicted that gravity could bend light and thus cause a redshift. This was later proven correct. As light travels towards us from distant stars, it passes other stars, which slightly slows the beam, causing its spectrum to be shifted towards the red.

b) Second-order Doppler shift: A light source moving at right angles to an observer will always be redshifted. This would be explained by the universe moving slowly in a vast circle around a centre.

c) Energy loss redshift: Light waves may lose energy as they travel across long distances.

Big Bang theory maintains that the speed redshift is the only cause of the redshift, so they can say that the universe is expanding outwards as a result of the Big Bang.

Speed redshift is not the only cause of redshift because:

a) Nearly all stars and galaxies are redshifted. If Big Bang theory really occurred, the universe would be rushing out from where the explosion occurred, not away from earth.

If there was a Big Bang we could locate its origin by measuring redshifts.

b) The closest stars and galaxies are the least redshifted. The further away a star is, the more would gravitational and energy loss redshifts slow it.

c) Quasars strongly disprove the speed theory of redshift. Some quasars have redshifts of 300% which equals speeds over 90% of the speed of light. Some quasars have redshifts of 400%.

Three quasars, according to the speed theory are moving faster than the speed of light.

One quasar appears to be moving 8 times faster than light, which is impossible.

26. Most binary stars circling one another are different composition. Big Bang theory can’t explain this.

27. Stars within globular clusters ought to be all crashing into one another if any nonthinking force brought them together, but they are not.

28. Stars never get closer than 3.5 light years apart. Would randomness produce this? No.

29. Stellar evolution is non-observable. Stars are not evolving in space. Plants and animals are not evolving on earth.

30. The sun would have to spin extremely fast to hurl off planets and moons, yet it rotates very slowly.

31. Big Bang theory cannot explain where stars, planets and moons originated, nor how they arrived at their present precise, intricate orbits. How could every moon be located at the precise distance to keep it from flying into or away from its planet, from a Big Bang explosion?

32. Uranus and Venus rotate backward compared to all the other planets. The other 7 rotate forward.

33. One third of the 60 moons rotate opposite to the rotational direction of their planets. Why?

34. Our planets and moons are so strikingly different that they could not have originated from the same Big Bang source. “If you look at all the planets and the 60 or so satellites (moons), it’s very hard to find two that are the same.” (Ross Taylor of ANU Canberra, in “The Solar Systems New Diversity”, Richard Kerr, Science 265, 2 Sep 1994, p.1360).

35. The chemical makeup of Earth’s moon and Earth are distinctly different, implying that the moon formed under different conditions.

36. Nearly all of Saturn’s 17 moons are extremely different. It has 3 sets of moons sharing the same orbit. Some moons travel clockwise, others travel anti-clockwise. The surface of Iapetus is 5 times darker on one side than the other. Hyperion is potato shaped.

Enceladus has an extremely smooth surface, whereas other moons are much rougher.

Why? Titan’s atmosphere is thicker than earth’s. How could all these moons originate by chance?

Elemental Forces of the Universe.

37. Gravity Force is perfectly balanced. a) If gravity were stronger, smaller stars could not form.

b) If gravity were weaker, bigger stars could not form, no heavy elements could exist, only dwarf stars would exist, which would radiate light too feebly to support life.

38. Proton/Neutron mass ratio

The neutron mass can only exceed the proton mass by twice the electron’s mass (About 1 part per 1000).

a) If the proton to neutron mass ratio were less, atoms would fly apart.

b) If the proton to neutron mass ratio were greater, atoms would crush together, quickly decaying into a neutron, positron and neutrino, thus destroying hydrogen, the main element in the universe.

The Master Designer planned that the proton’s mass would be slightly smaller than a neutron’s mass, otherwise the universe would collapse. If protons decayed, the universe would collapse.

39. Photon mass to Barvon mass ratio.

If this ratio were higher, stars and galaxies could not hold together by gravitational attraction.

40. Nuclear force holds an atom together.

a) If it were smaller, there would only be hydrogen and no heavier elements.

b) If it were larger, there would be no hydrogen but only heavier elements.

With no hydrogen there would be no stable stars, and no life.

c) If it were 1% weaker or stronger, carbon could not exist, nor could life exist.

d) If it were 2% stronger, protons could not exist.

41. Electromagnetic Force in an atom binds negative charged electrons to a positively charged nucleus

a) If it were smaller or larger, no chemical bonds could form.

b) If the electron charge were 3 times larger, no element could exist other than hydrogen.

c) If the electron charge were one-third as large, all neutral atoms would be destroyed by the lowest heat-such as is found in outer space.

Conclusion: It would be impossible for evolution to produce the correct balance of these forces.

They were planned. These 4 basic forces (gravitational, electromagnetic, weak and strong nuclear

forces) differ so greatly in strength, that the strongest is 10⁴⁰ times stronger than the weakest of them.

Yet Big Bang theory mathematics requires that all basic forces had to be the same strength before and just after the Big Bang Explosion occurred. Evolutionists cannot claim that these precise, delicate

balances of forces occurred by “natural selection”, or “mutations”, for we are here dealing with the basic properties of matter. There is no room for gradual “evolving”.

The proton-neutron mass ratio has always been the same. It will not change. It began just right. There was no second chance. This applies to all the other forces and balances in elemental matter and the laws of physics governing them.

If you open a typical science book on astronomy, you will find theories about the origin of the universe and stars stated with great certainty to the public.

By 1970, so much scientific data had repudiated the basic aspects of various cosmologies, that in April 1972, the top minds in stellar physics, chemistry and astronomy gathered at the Nice Symposium to resolve:

a) How did the first cloud break apart and change into stars?

b) How did the gas clouds whirl to form stellar objects to solve the angular momentum problem?

c) How did the gas push itself into solids?

d) How did the planets, with their present properties and solar distances form?

If you attend such a closed-door conference, you will find worried men, desperate theories, scientific facts condemning these theories, a lack of alternative explanations, an atmosphere of hopeless despair in the face of unproven ideas, and no solutions or scientific experiments to alleviate the situation.

Key: The problem is that evolutionists do not want the public to know that scientists cannot figure out how galaxies, stars and planets originated.

17. SCIENTISTS SPEAK AGAINST EVOLUTION

1) "In spite of nearly a century of work & discussion there is still no unanimity regarding the details of the means of evolution". R. Goldschmidt, "Evolution viewed by one Geneticist", "American Scientist, Vol. 409, Jan 1952, p.84

2) "Evolution is baseless and quite incredible". (Ambrose Flemming, President of British Association for Advancement of Science). Darwinism is a belief in the meaninglessness of existence.

3) "Today our duty is to destroy the myths of evolution. Some refuse to acknowledge the inadequacies and falsity of their beliefs". (Pierre-Paul Grasse).

4) "Scientists who go about teaching that evolution is a fact of life are great con men, and the story they are telling may be the greatest hoax ever." (T.N. Tahnisian, Physiologist for the Atomic Energy Commission, quoted in Fresno Bee, 20 Aug. 1959).

5) "The naked truth and human nature travel in opposite directions. We have no reliable evidence as to the evolutionary sequence of invertebrate phyla". (John Bonner, American Scientist, June 1961, p.240).

6) "Throughout the past century there has always existed a significant minority of first-rate biologists who have never accepted the validity of Darwinian claims." M.Denton, "A Theory in Crisis", 1986, p327.

7) "When men cling to an outworn theory with no supporting evidence, the problem is within the mind." (Norman Macbeth, Darwin Retried, (1971), p.77).

8) "The German zoologist, Berhard Rensch (1959) provided a long list of leading authorities who have been inclined to the view that macroevolution (changes across species) cannot be explained in terms of microevolutionary processes (changes within species), or any other currently known mechanisms.

These dissenters cannot be dismissed as cranks, creationists or vitalists, for among their ranks are many first-rate biologists." (Michael Denton: A Theory in Crisis (1985), p. 86).

9) "Science positively demands creation". Kelvin. 10) "The theory of evolution is a scientific mistake." (Louis Agassiz, Harvard Univ. Professor, 'Evolution or Creation' (1986) p.139 by H. Enoch).

11) "Evolution not only conveys no knowledge but it seems to convey anti-knowledge." (Colin Patterson, Address at the American Museum of Natural History, 5 Nov. 1981).

12) "That a theory (of evolution) so vague, so insufficiently verifiablehas become a dogma can only be explained on sociological (not scientific) grounds." G.R.Taylor, Great Evolution Mystery, 1983, p.232-3 We need to stop letting this sacred cow (of evolution) walk through our halls of science.

Key: Scientists are disadvantaged by holding to evolution, because they try to make everything fit the theory of evolution, and ignore the mass of evidence which does not fit evolution.

13) "Evolutionism is a fairy tale for grown ups. It is useless." (Bounoure, La Monde et La Vie (Oct. 1983), Director of Research at the National Centre of Scientific Research in France).

14) Darwin in his later days became aware of the lack of real evidence for his evolutionary speculation and wrote: "As by this theory, innumerable transitional forms must have existed, why do we not find them embedded in the crust of the earth? Why is not all nature in confusion instead of being, as we see them, well-defined species?" (H. Enoch, Evolution or Creation (1968), p. 139).

Conclusion: Reject evolution as an unproven, unscientific, dangerous lie. Questions for evolutionists:

Q1: How does evolution occur? **Answer:** By beneficial mutations giving rise to a new species.

Q2: Give some examples of beneficial mutations that have given a new species? I can't, there are none.

Q3: Then why do you believe a theory when there are no examples of it happening?

Q4: If evolution has not been proven since 1859, why do you believe it and trust it?

Q5: Did man sit around and do nothing for one million years, leaving no records, artifacts or buildings, then suddenly, around 2,500 BC build the pyramids?

Note: Evolution by random processes cannot occur due to the lack of "information" which is needed to direct unintelligent systems! A computer cannot run without software. God put intelligence into life.

Source: "The Evolution Cruncher", Vance Ferrell, 2001. evolution-facts.org Phone 931-692-5777.

93. JESUS CHRIST KEEPS US SAVED FOREVER

Bible Reading: John 10:22 -30.

Aim: To prove from the Bible that when Jesus Christ saves us, He keeps us saved forever. We cannot lose Christ's salvation.

Introduction: Many religions that teach works for salvation, also teach that we can lose salvation. This follows logically because if we are saved partly or wholly by our works, then we can fail to keep up the good works and hence lose salvation. The truth is that if we call on Christ to save us, and He saves us, then He keeps us saved forever. The following scriptures show this:

1. "I give unto them eternal life; and they shall **never perish.**" John 10:28.
 - This is an unconditional guarantee.
 - Eternal life means saved for eternity.
 - What does "never perish" mean?
2. "Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you **will perform it** until the day of Jesus Christ." Philippians 1:6.
 - Christ will perform His work in us to the Second Coming.
3. "The steps of a good man are ordered by the **LORD**... Though he fall, he shall not be utterly cast down: for the **LORD** upholdeth him with his hand ... The **LORD** .. forsaketh not his saints; they are **preserved for ever.**" Psalms 37:23-28.
 - Four times God tells us that He keeps us saved.
4. "For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to **separate** us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord." Romans 8:38,39.
 - For a born again believer to be lost, he must somehow be separated from the love of God, and become an object of God's wrath. Paul says that this is impossible.
5. "Wherefore he is able also to save them **to the uttermost** that come unto God by him, seeing he **ever liveth to make intercession** for them." Hebrews 7:25.

"to the uttermost" means "forever."
6. "By his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained **eternal redemption** for us." Hebrews 9:12.
 - Redemption means to buy back by paying a price. Since we have an eternal redemption, we are redeemed for all eternity.
7. "... receive the **promise** of **eternal inheritance.**" Hebrews 9:15.
 - Our inheritance is for eternity.
 - Our eternal inheritance is promised by God.
8. "And as we have borne the image of the earthy, **we shall also bear the image** of the **heavenly.**" 1 Corinthians 15:49.
 - "Shall" means that it is a certainty that we will bear the heavenly image.
9. "To an inheritance **incorruptible**, and **undefiled**, and that **fadeth not away, reserved in heaven** for you, who are **kept** by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time." 1 Peter 1:4,5.
 - Six times God tells us that we are secure forever.
 - "Fadeth not away" means perpetual.
10. "I am persuaded that He is able to **keep** that which I have committed unto him against that day." 2 Timothy 1:12.
 - Paul had committed the keeping of his soul to Christ. He was sure that Christ would keep him saved to his heavenly kingdom.

11. "The Lord **shall deliver me** from every evil work, and will **preserve me** unto his **heavenly kingdom...**" 2 Timothy 4:18.
 - The Lord will deliver us and preserve us.
12. "Who **shall also confirm** you unto the **END**, that ye may be blameless in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. God is faithful ..." 1 Corinthians 1:8,9.
13. "When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then **shall ye also appear with him in glory.**" Colossians 3:4.
 - Ye shall appear with Christ in glory, no if's or but's.
14. "This is the **promise** that he hath promised us, even eternal life." 1 John 2:25.
 "In hope of eternal life which **God, that cannot lie, promised..**" Titus 1:2.
 - God has promised eternal life to us, and He cannot lie.
15. "Him that cometh to me I will in **no wise cast out.**" John 6:37
 - If we come to Jesus Christ for salvation, He will not cast us out of salvation.
16. "If our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, **we have a building of God**, an house not made with hands, **eternal** in the **heavens.**" 2 Cor. 5:1.
 - We know that if our body dies, we go to heaven for eternity.
17. "And this is the record, that God **has given** to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.
 "He that has the Son has life ... that ye may **KNOW** that ye have eternal life." 1 John 5:11,12,13.
 - God has recorded that we may know that we have eternal life in Christ.
18. "Whosoever believeth in him **should not perish**, but have eternal life."
 "For God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him **should not perish**, but have everlasting life.
 "He that believeth on the Son **hath everlasting life** ..." John 3:15, 16, 36.
 - Twice God says that we will not perish.
 - Three times God says that we have eternal life.
19. "There is **joy** in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repents." Luke 15:10.
 - If we could lose salvation, angels would not rejoice at salvation, but when we enter heaven.
 - If we could lose salvation, we could not know for sure, as 1 John 5:13 says we can
20. "For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that **not of yourselves**: it is the gift of God: not of works lest any man should boast." Ephesians 2: 8, 9.
 - God is very zealous for us to know that God alone is responsible for man's salvation.
 Every argument against the eternal security of the believer is based on the human element. As God definitely **excludes all human element in salvation**, every one of these arguments is thereby ruled out.
21. "Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the **promise** might be **sure** to **all the seed ...**" Romans 4:16.
 - Eternal life is promised,
 - it is sure,
 - it is to all believers.

Question: If we receive salvation by faith and not by the works of the law (good works), then why is it necessary to keep the law (to keep up good works) in order to keep salvation?

22. "Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but **fellowcitizens** with the saints, and of the household of God." Ephesians 2:19.
- All who truly know Christ as their Saviour, are already "citizens" of heaven, enrolled and registered in heaven.
23. Six times God says that we can **KNOW** that we have eternal life:
- i) "that believe in the name of the Son of God; that ye may **KNOW** that ye have eternal life." 1 John 5:13.
 - ii) "**now** are we the sons of God,... we **KNOW** that, when he shall appear we shall be like him." 1 John 3:2.
 - iii) "we **KNOW** that ... we have ... an house eternal in the heavens." 2 Corinthians 5:1.
 - iv) "**KNOWING** that he which raised up the Lord Jesus, shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present us with you." 2 Corinthians 4:14.
 - v) "Do ye not **KNOW** that the saints shall judge the world?
KNOW ye not that we **SHALL** judge angels? 1 Corinthians 6:2,3.
 - vi) "be ye steadfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye **KNOW** that **your labour is not in vain in the Lord.**" 1 Corinthians 15:58.
- If we lead a person to Christ, then they lost salvation, our labour would be a waste of time, in vain. However, it is not in vain, because God keeps them saved, even if they backslide.
24. "I will **never leave thee**, nor forsake thee." Hebrews 13:5.
25. "For by one offering He hath **perfected forever** them that are sanctified." Hebrews 10:14.
26. Eleven things that "**SHALL BE**", prove that Christ keeps us saved. There is no question about whether or not certain things will be so. It is plainly stated that they "**SHALL BE**".
- i) "Then **shall** ye also appear with him in glory." Colossians 3:4.
 - ii) "Being now justified by His blood, we **shall** be saved from wrath through him." Romans 5:9.
 - iii) "They which receive the gift of righteousness **shall** reign in life." Romans 5:17.
 - iv) "He that raised up Christ from the dead **shall** also quicken your mortal bodies." Romans 8:11.
 - v) "The glory which **shall** be revealed in us." Romans 8:18.
 - vi) "Who **shall** also confirm you unto the end." 1 Corinthians 1:8.
 - vii) "We **shall** also bear the image of the heavenly." 1 Corinthians 15:49.
Written to those at Corinth and "in every place." 1 Corinthians 1:2.
 - viii) "We **shall** all be changed." 1 Corinthians 15:51.
 - ix) "**Shall** raise up us also by Jesus, and **shall** present us with you." 2 Corinthians 4:14.
 - x) "When he **shall** appear, we shall be like Him ..." 1 John 3:2.
 - xi) "We **shall** judge angels." 1 Corinthians 6:3.
27. "The gifts and calling of God are **without repentance**." Romans 11:29.
- Eternal life is a gift from God. Romans 6:23.
 - Holy Spirit is a gift from God. 1 Thessalonians 4:8.
 - Righteousness is a gift from God. Romans 5:17.
- God will not take back His gifts.
28. Sin is not charged against us.
- "Their sins and iniquities will I **remember no more**." Hebrews 10:17.
- "God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto Himself, **not imputing their trespasses unto them**." 2 Corinthians 5:19.

29. **Chastening** proves salvation's permanency.
 Chastening is a corrective discipline to purify our life, like "child training".
 God chastens us now in this life, in love when we sin to return us to His will.
 "My son, despise not thou the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when thou art rebuked of him.
 For whom the Lord loveth, he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth. If ye
 endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the Father
 chasteneth not? But if ye be without chastisement, whereof ALL are partakers, then are ye
 bastards, and not sons." Hebrews 12:5-8.
- **Three results** of chastening in Hebrews 12:9-11 are:
 - i) we give God reverence;
 - ii) for our profit - we learn holiness;
 - iii) yielding the peaceable fruit of righteousness.
 - **Two methods** of chastening in I Corinthians 11:29,30 are: i) sickness; and ii) death.
 "When we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with
 the world." 1 Corinthians 11:31,32.
30. Our **destiny** is to be **conformed to the image of His Son**, not to be lost.
 "For whom he did foreknow, He also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of His Son ..
 called ... justified ... glorified." Romans 8:29,30.
31. We are **indwelt** and **sealed** by the Holy Spirit **unto the day of redemption**.
 "Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are **sealed unto the day of redemption**."
 Ephesians 4:30.
 "I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that he may **abide with you
 forever**; even the Spirit of truth." John 14:16.
 Question: Did Jesus promise that the Holy Spirit will abide with them until they became lost?
 NO! Forever.
32. Christ is our **Advocate** and Intercessor.
 Question: If sin in a believer's life will cause him to be condemned, then for what purpose is
 Christ our Advocate or Intercessor?
 "Christ who also maketh intercession for us." Romans 8:34.
 "He **ever** liveth to make intercession for us." Hebrews 7:25.
 "If any man sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous." 1 John 2:1.
33. Our union with Christ, means we are in Christ.
- i) Now ye are the body of Christ, and **members** in particular." I Corinthians 12:27.
 Question: Will Christ permit his body to be dismembered? No.
 - ii) Our sin was counted as Christ's, now we have Christ's righteousness.
 "He hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the
 righteousness of God in him." 2 Corinthians 5:21.
 - iii) "If children, then heirs, ... joint heirs with Christ." Romans 8:17.
 Because I am "in Christ", my eternal future is linked to Christ's as a joint heir.
 If Christ can be lost, so can I.

Conclusion

Security, not fear, produces Godly living. Romans 12:12; 1 Corinthians 6:15.
 Loss of salvation is never threatened.

94. A CLOSER STUDY OF PASSAGES THAT SOME USE TO TEACH LOSS OF SALVATION

Some Bible passages may appear on the surface to teach that a saved person may be lost. However, on closer study they perfectly harmonize with the overwhelming weight of Scripture which teaches the security of the believer.

The basic principle of Bible study and interpretation is that the Bible is one great, harmonious presentation of truth, and that each part agrees with every other part. If an apparent meaning contradicts the vast body of Scripture, then we must seek another meaning.

Question: Why do people misunderstand verses of this kind?

Answer:

1. Some verses concern chastening of believers.
2. Some are taken out of context.
3. Some refer to unbelievers.

Note: You must not throw out 1,000 clear verses on security of the believer and hold on to two or three unclear verses that require deeper study that on the surface seem to teach loss of salvation.

Let us consider answers to these passages:

1. Ezekiel 3:20; 18:4 and 33:13,18 teaches about **physical death** as a **punishment for the sin** of Israelites under the Law dispensation, not loss of salvation.

a) *“Again, When a righteous man doth turn from his righteousness, and commit iniquity, and I lay a stumblingblock before him, he shall die; because thou hast not given him warning, he shall die in his sin, and his righteousness which he hath done shall not be remembered: but his blood will I require at thine hand.”* (Ezekiel 3:20).

b) *“Behold, all souls are Mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is Mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die.”* (Ezekiel 18:4).

c) *“When I shall say to the righteous, that he shall surely live; if he trust to his **own righteousness**, and commit iniquity, all his righteousness’ shall not be remembered; but for his iniquity that he hath committed, he shall die for it.”* (Ezekiel 33:13).

d) *“When the righteous turneth from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, he shall even die thereby.”* (Ezekiel 33:18).

- a) Ezekiel 3:20. “he shall die in his sin”. If a righteous person had left the path of righteousness, he was in danger of **physical death**. This does not refer to a person losing salvation. The one who obeyed God’s Law was to be protected during the approaching Babylonian judgment, but those who broke the Law **could expect death**.

- b) Ezekiel 18:4 “The soul that sinneth, it shall die.” Check the context: A proverb in Israel was “The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children’s teeth are set on edge.” Ezekiel 18:2. This meant that people thought that they were suffering, not because of their sins, but because of their parent’s sins. They were blaming God for punishing them unjustly. God saw that this false proverb had to be refuted. It is true that the effects of sin are serious and long lasting, but **God does not punish innocent children for the parent’s sins**. **In blaming others**, they were **denying their own guilt**, and **charging God with injustice**. God replies: “The soul that sinneth, it shall die.” (18:4), meaning that **those who are guilty will receive their own deserved punishment**; in some cases “death.”

- c,d) Ezekiel 33:13,18 is Ezekiel’s second commissioning as a **watchman** with a different message (587 BC). “for his iniquity that he hath committed, he shall die for it”. It was still an **individual accountability** and **responsibility**, but the message’s thrust was on God’s restoration of Israel. His first commissioning in 3:1-21 in 595 BC was a ministry of judgments, which was now completed.

Conclusion: These passages are not referring to spiritual death of a righteous man losing salvation, but to a righteous man who **turns to sin**, and his sins bringing the punishment of **physical death** upon him.

2. “But he that shall **endure unto the end**, the same shall be **saved**.” (Matthew 24:13).
Some say that we must endure to keep ourselves saved until we die, or we will lose salvation. The Bible never says that salvation from the penalty of sin is by enduring. It is by believing on Christ, not by our works. Believers in the seven year Tribulation period must endure the Antichrist’s persecution until the seven years are finished. It is not referring to the spiritual salvation of a believer’s soul, but refers to people being rescued by Christ returning to defeat the Antichrist.
3. “And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw there a man which **had not on a wedding garment**: And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless. Then said the king to the servants, **Bind him hand and foot, and take him away and cast him into outer darkness**: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.” (Matthew 22:11-13).
This parable is about a king who prepared a wedding (marriage feast) for his son (Matthew 22:1-4).
1. Marriage feast = the Millennial age, beginning when Christ returns to earth.
2. Man without a wedding garment = someone not clothed in Christ’s righteousness, and is therefore unsaved.
3. Outer darkness = he is cast into darkness outside Christ’s kingdom. At the beginning of Christ’s 1,000 year kingdom, all who are not saved are taken from the earth in judgment as represented by this man. (Matthew 13:41,49; 3:12; 25:30, 41-46; 24:37-41).
4. **Five wise and five foolish virgins**
“And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, **I know you not**” (Matthew 25:10-12).
Some say the five foolish virgins who took no oil represent Christians who have lost their salvation. Not so!
1. Marriage feast = the 1,000 year kingdom age of Christ on earth.
2. Five wise virgins = those saved.
3. Five foolish virgins = unsaved people, because:
a) They took no oil. Oil is a symbol of the Holy Spirit.
“If any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.” Romans 8:9.
b) The Lord says: “I know you not.” See Matthew 7:21-23.
5. **Parable of three servants**
“And cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth.” (Matthew 25:30).
The earthly kingdom set up by Christ will be a place of light and blessing. To be cast into “outer darkness” means to be cast out of the kingdom into the darkness of death outside. The word “servant” does not always refer to believers. All men are responsible to serve God. eg: rulers are the ministers of God (Romans 13:4), as are ungodly kings (Jeremiah 25:9). The servant cast into outer darkness represents an **unbeliever** who is on the earth at the time of Christ’s return who is taken from the earth in judgment.
6. “Ye therefore, beloved, seeing ye know these things before, beware lest ye also, being led away with the error of the wicked, **fall from your own stedfastness**.” (2 Peter 3:17).
It does not say “fall from your salvation”, but from “your own stedfastness.” “Stedfastness” in Greek means: “firm condition of mind.” A person may be saved, but be unstedfast in his mind. It is not discussing loss of salvation, but losing one’s mental convictions on various issues.
7. “Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth **take heed lest he fall**.” (1 Corinthians 10:12).
The context here is a warning to Christians about the possibility of falling into sin or backsliding. It does not teach that a believer may fall out of salvation.

8. **The Vine**

*"I am the true vine, and My Father is the husbandman. Every branch in Me that beareth not fruit **He taketh away**: and every branch that beareth fruit, He purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you. Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in Me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without Me ye can do nothing. **If a man abide not in Me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered**: and men gather them, and **cast them into the fire**, and, **they are burned**." (John 15:1-6).*

This passage is an illustration and the problem is that it is possible to stretch an illustration far beyond its intended meaning.

- a) Abiding in the vine = a Christian abiding or remaining in close, unbroken fellowship with Christ. Fruit is produced.
- b) Abiding not in the vine = broken fellowship with Christ and fruitlessness.

This refers **not** to our "**standing**" before God of **salvation**, but to our "**state**" of **not living in close fellowship with Christ**. We are faced with three problems in this passage:

- 1) "**He taketh away**" (15:2), means that those believers who do not bear fruit are taken away or lifted up out of their place. Taketh away = lifted up from the ground. The Father reserves the right to remove an unfruitful believer to heaven. This is maximum discipline of physical death. Fruitful branches are purged or pruned to bear more fruit. Therefore, both fruitful and unfruitful branches are under the immediate care of the Father (the Husbandman).

Purging means to cleanse a branch from filth and impurity by washing off insects, parasites and moss. The **washing** is by the Word of God. (15:3).

- 2) "He is **cast forth** as a branch, and is **withered**." (15:6).

If a believer does not abide in Christ, he is out of fellowship with Christ, his public testimony is rejected by men, and his **spiritual vitality** is **diminished** or **withered**. He is like the castaway in 1 Corinthians 9:27 who is disapproved but not lost. All backsliders have a **withered, reduced spiritual vitality**.

- 3) "Men gather **them**, and **cast them into the fire, they are burned**." (15:6)

Notice the plural pronouns "them" and "they". It is not "men gather **him**, and cast **him** into the fire, and **he** is burned", as it would have been if it referred to losing salvation or to a professor. The "**them**" and "**they**" are what issues from the one who has been cast forth as a branch - dead works: wood, hay, stubble, which will be burned at the Judgment Seat of Christ, as 1 Corinthians 3:15 tells us: "If any man's work shall be burned (the same word as in John 15:6), he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire."

Key: Hence "them" and "they" refer to the **believers dead works** which are burned up at the Judgment Seat of Christ.

9. "Let **that** therefore abide in you, which ye have heard from the beginning. **If that** which ye have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, **ye also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father**. And this is the promise that He hath promised us, even eternal life." (1 John 2:24-25).

If believers resist the lies of antichrists, and let the **Bible truth** that they had heard from the beginning "**abide**" in them, they would continue to **abide in unbroken fellowship** with God the Father and God the Son. "**That**" refers to **Bible doctrine**, which, if it remains in us will keep us in unbroken, close fellowship with the Son and the Father.

10. "What is meant by "**overcometh**"?"

*"He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; **He that overcometh shall not be hurt of the second death**." (Revelation 2:11). See Revelation 2:7,17,26; 3:5,12,21 where "overcometh" is used in a similar way.*

Some feel that this verse means that a believer must do good works, or not do certain sins in order to “overcome” or he will lose his salvation. “Overcomes” is explained in 1 John 5:4,5.

“For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith. Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God?” “He that overcometh”, then, is **every born-again believer**. These verses in Revelation 2 and 3 are really **verses of security**, for the things promised to “overcomers” are for **all believers**.

11. *“He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment: and **I will not blot out his name out of the book of life**, but I will confess his name before My Father, and before His angels.”* (Revelation 3:5).

Some think that this verse implies that God may blot some people's names out of the book of life. The verse says nothing about blotting out any name, but it is a promise that God will not blot out the name of him “that overcometh”. According to 1 John 5:4,5 “He that overcometh is “he that **believeth that Jesus is the Son of God**.” This is a verse of assurance to all believers that we are eternally secure. “Him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.” John 6:37.

12. *“If any man’s work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.”* (1 Corinthians 3:15).

This passage refers to the Judgment Seat of Christ, for Christians only. Christian’s works are judged. Some receive rewards (1 Corinthians 3:14). Some suffer loss of reward (3:15), but all believers are saved.

13. *“Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: **be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life**.”* (Revelation 2:10).

Some people think that those who are faithful unto death will receive eternal life. This verse **does not say eternal life**, it says “crown of life”, which is one of the rewards given to Christians at the Judgment Seat of Christ. It is given to those who endure temptation, and hence prove their love for Christ. (James 1:12).

14. *“Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man **take thy crown**.”* (Rev. 3:11)

Crown does not refer to eternal life, but to a reward given to Christians for **faithful service**. They may lose rewards if they don't hold fast to sound Bible doctrine, and fall into deception, sin, and false doctrine.

15. *“But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, **eateth and drinketh damnation to himself**, not discerning the Lord’s body.”* (1 Corinthians 11:28-29).

Damnation seems to imply eternal punishment in hell. “**Judgment**” is an alternative word, as seen from v.30,31,32. “For this cause many are weak and sickly, ... many sleep.” Judgment here is God “chastening” His own. It does not discuss loss of salvation.

16. *“**Having damnation**, because they have cast off their first faith.”* (1 Timothy 5:12).

Damnation again means “**judgment**” taking place in this life, not in eternity in hell, as seen by “having”, which is present tense, not future in hell. Wuest paraphrases it: “incurring (the reproachful) judgment (of their fellow Christians) because they have nullified their first faith.” The passage is about younger Christian widows who vow not to remarry, but change their mind and marry again, and may therefore incur the judgment of others for breaking their vow.

17. *“For Demas hath forsaken me, having loved this present world, and is departed unto Thessalonica; Crescens to Galatia, Titus unto Dalmatia.”* (2 Timothy 4:10).

Demas was saved, but a **backslidden** fellow worker of Paul’s. Colossians 4:14, Philemon 24. There is no mention here of losing salvation. All too often, the pleasures of this world lure Christians to forsake the work of Christ, and to become unfruitful.

18. *“If any man see his brother sin a sin which is not unto death, he shall ask, and he shall give him life for them that sin not unto death. **There is a sin unto death: I do not say that he shall pray for it.**” (1 John 5:16).*
 Some sins are **not** punished by a believer being quickly put to death by God. Sometimes a Christian may sin so seriously that **God judges** that sin with **swift physical death**, eg: Ananias and Sapphira. We don’t need to pray for it. Loss of salvation is not being discussed here.
19. *“But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: **lest** that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself **should be a castaway**.” (1 Corinthians 9:27).*
Castaway means **disapproved** (Greek is “adokimos”). It means that by sin and disobedience, a believer is **put on the shelf** and is of no use to God. (Like an athlete left off the team). “Dokimos”, in Greek means “approved”, and is used in Romans 14:18; 16:10; 1 Corinthians 11:19; 2 Corinthians 10:18; James 1:12 and 2 Timothy 2:15.
20. *“Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and **be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage**. Behold, I Paul say unto you, that if ye be **circumcised, Christ shall profit you nothing**. For I testify again to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to do the whole law.” (Galatians 5:1-3).*
 The **“yoke of bondage”** is not a lost condition, but a condition of being under the law, of attempting to **keep the law as a necessity for salvation**. If the Galatians were to put themselves under the law, and submit to the rite of circumcision, they would **deprive** themselves of the effects of the ministry of the risen Christ. Hence “Christ shall profit you nothing.”
21. *“**Christ is become of no effect unto you, whosoever of you are justified by the law; ye are fallen from grace**.” (Galatians 5:4).*
“Fallen from grace”, does not mean loss of salvation, but by insisting on works to remain saved, they have put themselves in a position under the law where **grace is unable to continue working**. Galatian’s theme is not salvation from the penalty of sin, but an appeal to live in the liberty of grace, instead of law bondage. This teaching by Judaizers deprived these Galatian Christians of their **dependence** on the **Holy Spirit’s work of grace in their lives**. This is what is meant by “fallen from grace.”
 The context is the sanctifying work of the Holy Spirit, not salvation. The cure is to: “walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lusts of the flesh.” Galatians 5:16. Galatians 5:22,23 describes the result of walking in the Spirit, which is to exhibit the Fruit of the Spirit.
Key: These Galatian Christians had fallen from grace in the sense that **they had deprived themselves of the Holy Spirit’s ministry** of giving them **daily grace for daily living**. (2 Corinthians 12:9).
22. *“Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip. For if the word spoken by angels was stedfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward; **How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation**; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard Him.” (Hebrews 2:1-3).*
 We cannot **neglect our salvation** until it is ours. This is speaking of Christians who neglect their salvation. A man may be married and **neglect his wife**, but she is still his wife. Christians do not lose their salvation by neglecting it, but they do **lose their joy and fellowship with the Lord**. They are also chastened in this life by God (“receive a just recompense of reward.”)
23. *“Take heed, **brethren**, lest there be in any of you an **evil heart of unbelief**, in **departing from the living God**.” (Hebrews 3:12).*
 This verse is written to Christians (“brethren”) as a **warning against backsliding**. We must guard against a **sinful, unbelieving heart**, as shown by the wilderness generation, whose heart turned away from God. The preventative remedy is to **“exhort one another daily ... lest any of you be **hardened** through the deceitfulness of sin.”** Hebrews 3:13. No loss of salvation is meant.

24. “Let us therefore **fear**, lest, a promise being left us of entering into **His rest**, any of you should seem to come short of it.” (Hebrews 4:1).

Israel at Kadesh-Barnea failed to enter the “rest” of the land of Canaan because of their unbelief in God’s promises to safely bring them into the land.

- Many Christians today **wander spiritually**, not knowing the **faith-rest life** of blessings that is rightfully theirs by believing the Bible’s promises for joyful living. They fail to possess the blessings already theirs (Ephesians 1:3) because of unbelief.

25. “For it is **impossible** for those who were **once enlightened**, and have **tasted of the heavenly gift**, and were made **partakers** of the Holy Ghost. (5) **And have tasted the good word of God**, and the **powers of the world to come**, (6) If they shall **fall away**, to renew them again unto **repentance**; seeing they **crucify to themselves** the Son of God afresh, and put Him to an open shame. (7) For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from God (8). But that which beareth thorns and briars is rejected, and is **nigh unto cursing**; whose **end is to be burned**.” (Hebrews 6:4-8).

This is a warning to Christians that unless they go on to spiritual maturity, God may not let them. They will not lose their salvation, but they will lose the blessings and rewards that could have been theirs if they had claimed them. They will become unfruitful and produce works fit only to be burned.

Notice the context in which this passage is found.

In **Chapter 3** of Hebrews we have an **illustration** of the **Children of Israel hardening their hearts** and **refusing** to enter the promised land (Canaan) because of **unbelief**. God had promised to give them the land and to drive out the inhabitants from before them, but they **refused to believe Him**. Because of this, God would not let them enter the land *even when they desired to do so* and they wandered for forty years until their “carcasses fell in the wilderness”. Hebrew 3:17

In **Chapter 4** the writer of Hebrews shows that there is a “**rest**” for believers, but that **some may not enter** into that **rest** because of unbelief. The land of Canaan is an illustration of that rest. Canaan does not illustrate Heaven, for even though it was a place of victory it was still a place of conflict. It illustrates for the believer that place of **spiritual maturity** where there is **victory, blessing and rest**.

In **Chapter 5**, the writer of Hebrews points out to the believers that **they need to grow up spiritually**. There are many things that he would like to say to them but he cannot because they are still babes in Christ. This thought is continued into **Chapter 6** where he says in **verse 1** that they should **leave the basic things** of the “doctrine of Christ” (the milk) and **go on to “perfection”** (spiritual maturity). In verse 3 he says, “And this we will do, *if God permit*.” There is, evidently, the **possibility that God will not permit some to go on to spiritual maturity**. Then follows the awful warning of verses 4-8.

Lance B. Latham writes: “**The repentance that can no longer be effected is toward their perfection!** These Christians, ‘dull of hearing’, ‘milk’ Christians, and ‘babes’ need this fearful warning - just as we need it today. There comes a time, in God’s infinite knowledge and wisdom, when they cannot go on to perfection. ‘It is impossible - to renew them again unto repentance’ (not justification).”

God did not abandon the Israelites when He refused to let them enter Canaan but continued to watch over them and care for them. He continued to feed them with manna and to deliver them from their enemies. God will not abandon His own today even though He refuses them the blessings that could have been theirs if they had gone on to spiritual maturity. Notice that those to which this passage refers:

1. “**were once enlightened**.” (v.4). Enlightened (φωτισω) is translated “illuminated” in Hebrew 10:32, where it refers to all believers. See Eph.1:18 “your understanding being enlightened.”
2. They “**have tasted of the heavenly gift**.” This goes beyond the idea of just sampling salvation or coming to the threshold of salvation without really believing. The Greek word translated “tasted” in Hebrews 6:4,5 (γευομαι) is the same word used in Hebrews 2:9 where it says concerning Jesus, “**That He should taste death for every man**.” Did Jesus just sample death or did **He enter thoroughly into it**? The latter for certain. The same word is translated “eat” in Acts 10:10; 20:11; 23:14. The word may also be translated “**experience**”. “They have experienced the heavenly gift.” “They have experienced the good Word of God, and the powers of the world to come.” See Matthew 16:28.
3. They “**were made partakers of the Holy Ghost**.” **Partakers** is used in:
 - i) Hebrews 3:1 “partakers of the heavenly calling.”
 - ii) Hebrews 3:14 “partakers of Christ.”
 - iii) Hebrews 12:8 “chastisement, whereof all are partakers.”
 “If any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.” Romans 8:9.
4. They “**have tasted the powers of the world to come**.” 6:5.
 This implies that there had been at least some fruit in their lives due to the Holy Spirit working. **Verse 6 does not state from what the believer is falling away**. Therefore this must be determined by the **context**. The writer is speaking of **going on to perfection (spiritual maturity)** in verses 1 to 3 and this is evidently still the subject here (the “for” at the beginning of verse 4 ties the passages together). They are **falling away from going on to spiritual maturity**. The cares of this world are choking their fruitfulness.
5. “**It is impossible ... to renew them again unto repentance**.” 6:6.
 The word “**repentance**” is used, not salvation. Repentance means a “change of mind.”
 - i) When the **unsaved** repent, they change their mind about the person and work of Christ.
 - ii) When the **saved** repent of their misdeeds, **restoration** results, not fresh justification. When a believer fails to repent, he **fails** to receive the restoration of fellowship he needs, God will **judge** him now (1 Corinthians 11:31-32), and he will **lose rewards** at the Judgment Seat of Christ. (2 Corinthians 5:10).

There is evidently a point in the life of a Christian, who repeatedly refuses to go on to spiritual maturity, at which God will no longer allow him to go on to spiritual maturity even though the Christian desires to do so, a point at which God will no longer allow him to have the blessings that could have been his if he had only fully believed. He is still the Lord’s own. He will watch over him, but he cannot enter into the rest illustrated by Canaan.

In Hebrews 12:16-17 Esau is given as an example of one who did not value his birthright and sold it for a morsel of meat (food). Because of this he lost out on the blessing that could have been his and “**found no place of repentance**, though he sought it ... with **tears**.” Some **Christians today do not really value their spiritual birthright** and as a result of **worldliness** lose out on the blessings that could have been theirs, and though they later seek it, they find “no place of repentance.”

In Hebrews 6:7-8 the writer uses the **earth** (soil) that “**bringeth forth herbs**” as an illustration of a Christian whose life is **fruitful**. The writer uses the **earth (soil) which “beareth thorns and briars”** to illustrate a Christian whose life is **unfruitful**, but bears only **that which is worthless**. This is similar to the two kinds of ground in the parable of the **Sower** (Matthew 13:1-23; Mark 4:1-25; Luke 8:4-15). The good ground brought forth much fruit (Matthew 13:23) but the ground with the **thorns**, was **unfruitful** because of the “**care** of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches.” (Matthew 13:22).

6. *“They crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame.”* 6:6. Those who renounce their Christian faith are taking a step that amounts to a fresh public rejection of Christ. They are agreeing with Jesus’ enemies that He deserved to die on the cross. Backslidden Jewish believers going back to Judaism are particularly referred to here. They have a deeply hardened heart against all efforts to win them back, not to Christian conversion, but to Christian commitment.
7. *“That which bears thorns and briars is rejected, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned.”* 6:8.

Question 1: What bears thorns and briars? Answer: The soil.

The soil (believer) is not destroyed by fire, but the unwanted thorns and briars are.

Question 2: What is to be burned? Answer: Thorns and briars.

“Rejected” is “adokimos” in Greek, and means castaway (1 Corinthians 9:27) or disapproved or loss of rewards in heaven. Every Christian’s works will be tried by fire (1 Corinthians 3:13). If his works are burned up, he loses rewards. If his works remain, he is rewarded.

John 15:6 speaks of useless works of believers being burned:

“men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned.”

In Hebrews 6:9 the writer does not believe that his readers have gone as far as those in 6:4-6. He is persuaded better things of them, and things that accompany salvation.

Conclusion:

Hebrews 6:4-8 was written to Jews at a time when many, due to persecution, were giving up the Christian faith, and returning to the old Jewish faith. It was also written to Jews when Temple worship was still going on. Judaism in effect crucified Christ again by their continued sacrifices. These Jewish believers who were going back to Judaism were crucifying Christ afresh. It says nothing about loss of salvation.

26. *“For if we sin wilfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins. But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries.”* (Hebrews 10:26,27).

The warning here is against defection from the faith. Most sin is deliberate, but the writer here is influenced by the Old Testament teaching about sins of presumption (Numbers 15:29-31) which lay outside the sacrificial provisions of the Law. Apostasy from the faith is such a wilful act that for those who commit it, no sacrifice for sins is left.

Key: If the sacrifice of Christ should be renounced, there remained no other available sacrifice which could shield an apostate from God’s judgment by raging fire.

Hebrews 10:28-31. If defiance of the inferior Mosaic covenant brought such punishment, the punishment for defying the superior New Covenant would be much greater.

- To **tread** under foot the Son of God, and
 - to **count** the sanctifying blood of the covenant an unholy (common) thing, and
 - to **insult** the Spirit of grace who wooed him to Christ, this kind of spiritual rebellion calls for a much worse punishment than the death penalty under the Mosaic Law. The writer was **not** thinking of hell. Many forms of divine punishment are much worse than immediate death:
1. Jeremiah said “The punishment ... of my people is greater than the punishment of the sin of Sodom that was overthrown in a moment.” Lamentations 4:6.
 2. “They that be slain with the sword are better than they that be slain with hunger ... the hands of the pitiful women have sodden their own children...” Lamentations 4:9,10.
 3. King Saul’s last days were burdened with such mental and emotional trouble that death by suicide was a release. Don’t regard this punishment as an idle threat. God has claimed the right to take vengeance and to judge His people. Hebrews 10:30.

27. *“Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompense of reward.”* (Hebrews 10:35). A Christian may lose his confidence, without losing salvation.

28. "Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man **draw back**, **My soul shall have no pleasure in him.**" (Hebrews 10:38).

If a Christian **draws back** (**backslides**) he will be chastened by the Lord in His displeasure. This verse does not say that he is lost, as v.39 proves: "But we are not of them who **draw back** unto **perdition**; but of them that believe to the saving of the soul."

God may be displeased with believers, but this does not mean or say that salvation is lost.

29. "And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall **take away** his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book." (Revelation 22:19).

Question: Does a person who gets **his part taken from the book of life** lose his salvation? Not so. Consider the following:

What is the book of life?

1. Exodus 32:32-35 "Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin -; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of **thy book** which thou hast written. And the Lord said unto Moses, **Whosoever hath sinned against me, him will I blot out** of my book."
2. Psalm 56:8 "... put thou my tears into thy bottle: are they not **in thy book**?"
3. Psalm 69:28 "Let them be blotted out of the **book of the living**, and not be written with the righteous."
4. Psalm 139:16 "In **thy book** **all my members are written.**"
5. Daniel 12:1 "... there shall be a time of trouble, ... at that time **thy people shall be delivered**, every one that shall be found written in **the book**."
6. Malachi 3:16 "Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a **book of remembrance** was written before him for them that **feared the Lord**, and that **thought upon his name.**"
7. Philippians 4:3 "**My fellowlabourers**, whose names are in the **book of life**."
8. Revelation 3:5 "**He that overcometh**, the same shall be clothed in white raiment and I will not blot out his name out of the **book of life**, but I will confess his name..."
9. Revelation 13:8 "All that dwell upon the earth shall **worship him**, whose names are not written in the **book of life** of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world."
10. Revelation 17:8 "They that dwell on the earth shall **wonder**, whose names were not written in the **book of life** from the foundation of the world, when they beheld the beast."
11. Revelation 20:12 "another book was opened, which is the **book of life**: and the **dead were judged out of those things** which were written in the books, **according to their works.**"
12. Revelation 20:15 "And whosoever was not found written in the **book of life** was **cast into the lake of fire.**"
13. Revelation 21:27 "They which are written in the Lamb's **book of life** (shall **enter the New Jerusalem.**)"
14. Revelation 22:19. "And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the **book of life**, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book."

Note: 1. **We never read of names being entered into the book of life during a person's life.**

- a) For believers today, our names are in the Book of Life. Philippians 4:3.
 - b) Believer's names are written in heaven. Luke 10:20.
 - c) As the church of the firstborn, our names are written in heaven. Hebrews 12:23.
 - d) Tribulation overcomer's names are written in the Book of Life from the foundation of the world. Revelation 17:8.
2. **Names may be blotted out of the Book of Life.**
 - a) Moses prayed, "blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book." Exodus 32:32.
 - b) "Let them be blotted out of the book of the living..." Psalms 69:28.
 - c) Sardis overcomers names will not be blotted out. Revelation 3:5.

Therefore, many names (if not everybody's names) are in the Book of Life originally, but names are eventually blotted out for a final rejection of Christ and His Word, from which Christ can see no repentance. There is no reference to believer's names being written in the book at the moment of conversion.

3. These names in the Book of life **will be confessed by the Lord** before His Father. "Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father.." Matthew 10:32; Luke 12:8.

Conclusion: Revelation 22:19 assumes that a true child of God will not tamper with the Scriptures. Revelation 3:5 says that a believer's name will not be blotted out because of his faith in Christ, which all overcomer's have (1 John 5:4,5). Some have seen the Book of Life, not as the roll of those who are saved, but a list of those for whom Christ died, that is, all humanity who ever had physical life. As they come to maturity, they have the responsibility of receiving or rejecting Christ. Those who reject Christ find their names blotted out of the Book of Life. Those who accept Christ as Saviour are confirmed permanently in the Book of Life. This viewpoint is to be preferred.

30. "Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and thou standest by faith. Be not highminded, but fear: For if God spared not the natural branches, take heed lest He also spare not thee." (Romans 11:20-21). Read all of Romans 11.

Question: Who is this spoken to? "take heed lest He also spare not thee."

Answer: Romans 11:13 reads "For I speak to you **Gentiles.**" The natural branches are the Jews, broken off because of unbelief (11:20). Through the Jews fall, salvation is offered to the Gentiles (11:12). **The warning here is to the Gentiles, not to individual believers** that they will be cast out. In the millennium, Gentiledom will be cut off, as was Israel, and Israel will be restored to it's former place as the channel of God's blessings to earth.

31. "Remember therefore from whence thou art fallen, and repent, and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick out of his place, except thou repent." (Revelation 2:5).

This warning of **removing thy candlestick** is to the local church at Ephesus (1:20), not to an individual Christian. When churches become lazy and compromising, and allow unbelievers to control it, they lose their candlestick and cease to be one of God's churches.

32. "I will spue thee out of my mouth." (Revelation 3:16).

This warning is to the **lukewarm Laodicean church**, not to any individual believer. Rev. 3:20 is an invitation to individuals. Eternal security does not apply to local churches, only to individuals.

33. "Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; By which also ye are saved if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain." (1 Corinthians 15:1-2).

Nowhere in the Bible is anyone said to be saved from hell **by keeping anything in their memory**. Salvation from the **penalty** of sin is an already accomplished fact for the believer, not a process now going on. However, each day the believer is being saved from the power of sin, as a continuing process in his life. How? By keeping Bible preaching in his memory.

- 1 Corinthians 15:1 is the **past** tense of salvation "which they **had received**" (Greek: aorist, active, past, indicative) in which they stand. This shows that they were already saved from the **penalty of sin**.
- 1 Corinthians 15:2 is the **present** tense of salvation "By which also ye are saved" (literally: are being saved daily; Greek: present, passive, indicative - indicating action now going on). They are "being saved" from the **power of sin**, they are growing in grace, maturing as Christians, if they were keeping in memory (holding fast) what Paul preached to them.
- "**Unless ye have believed in vain**" means unless your belief was "unreal" - unless they had never really been saved.

34. *“Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more **in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.**”* (Philippians 2:12). This command is in the **present** tense of salvation, being saved from the **power** of sin in their daily lives, growing in grace, growing in Christlikeness, in sanctification. **“Work out your own salvation”** is urging Christians to **mature spiritually**. There is no hint here of an unsaved person doing good works to earn salvation because:
1. Those addressed were already saved: “my beloved”.
 2. The Bible clearly teaches that nobody is saved by works. When Paul was with them, he taught, inspired, and encouraged them to grow in grace. Now in Paul’s absence they were responsible to grow in grace. They have justification. Paul speaks about their sanctification. Carry your growth to Christlikeness. 1 John 3:3 commands each believer to “purify himself”. “Work out your own salvation” means to cultivate a field that you already own. “Work out” means to “put into practice in their daily living.” They were not told to work **for** their salvation, but to work **out** their salvation. It means to **work out the details of your salvation, applying it to daily living.**
35. *“Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in so doing thou shalt both **save thyself**, and them that hear thee.”* (1 Timothy 4:16). Again, salvation here is in the **present** tense. This is not talking about salvation from the **penalty** of sin (past), but of **salvation from the power of sin (present)**. Timothy was already saved, but continuing in sound doctrine would save him and others from false doctrine, unbelief and error. Hence “save thyself” means to save yourself from false doctrine and carnality.
36. *“While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me have I **kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition;** ...”* (John 17:12). Some say that this verse shows that Judas was once saved, but that he lost his salvation. **Answer:** Jesus says that He kept those that the Father had given Him. “This is the Father’s will ... that of all which He hath given me I should lose nothing..” John 6:39. “...of them which thou gavest me have I lost none.” John 18:9. Judas was never given by the Father to Jesus. “Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that **believed not**, and who should **betray** Him.” John 6:64. “Have I not chosen you twelve, and one of you is a **devil**? He spake of **Judas Iscariot** ...for he it was that should betray him...” John 6:70,71. Judas was **chosen as one of the twelve**, not chosen to be saved. In John 17:12, Judas is not listed as an exception to those that Jesus had kept, but **in contrast to** those that He kept. None of those that the Father gave to Jesus was lost, but Judas was lost. “That he may take part of this **ministry and apostleship**; from which Judas by transgression fell...” Acts 1:25. **Judas fell** from an **official position of ministry and apostleship**, he did not fall from salvation, because he was never saved.
37. *“From that time many of His disciples (followers) went back, and **walked no more with Him.**”* (John 6:66). Even a true believer may backslide and walk out of fellowship with the Lord. Loss of fellowship is not loss of salvation.
38. *“Fight the good fight of faith, **lay hold on eternal life**, whereunto thou art also called...”* (1 Timothy 6:12). **“Lay hold on eternal life,”** means that Paul wanted Timothy to **experience more** of what eternal life is about in his daily life. Seek and seize the crown of victory as eagerly as competitors at the Greek games sought the winner’s prize.

39. *“Laying up in store for themselves a good foundation against the time to come, that they may **lay hold on eternal life.**” (1 Timothy 6:19).*

Rich people need to use their riches to win people to eternal life in Christ in heaven. They must not live only for this life, but **live for eternity, laying hold of the issues of eternal life.** Use what God has given you for eternal blessings and the salvation of others.

40. *“Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which **no man shall see the Lord.**” (Heb 12:14)*

We who believe already have holiness.

“Ye are a chosen generation, a holy nation ...” 1 Peter 2:9.

Hebrews 2:14 tells us to “**follow holiness.**” This means that we should seek, through yielding to the Holy Spirit, to cultivate true holiness in our daily lives. We should seek to cultivate that which is already true of us in our eternal standing before God. Since no sin can stand in God’s presence, Christians will be sinless when we see the Lord (1 John 3:2). In view of this, let us pursue holiness here and now.

41. *“Looking diligently lest **any man fail of the grace of God:** lest any root of bitterness springing up trouble you, and thereby many be defiled.” (Hebrews 12:15).*

After we have been saved by grace, grace continues to work, teaching us to live “soberly, righteously and godly.” Titus 2:11,12. Some believers can be so controlled by sin and envy, that they can no longer respond to some people with the grace of God, but with envy, bitterness, anger and nervousness. They react in carnality, not in grace. They have failed of the grace of God. They, by bitterness, cut themselves off from the grace of God operating in their lives. They constantly act ungraciously.

42. *“To present you **holy and unblameable**²⁹⁹ and **unreproveable**⁴¹⁰ in His sight: if ye **continue in the faith** grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which ye have heard ...” Colossians 1:22,23.*

Some say that salvation is ours only **IF we continue in the faith.** Here “IF”(1489) means “that which is taken for granted.”

Answer 1: v.22,23. We will be presented holy, unblameable, and unreproveable in his sight: IF (or since, or it is taken for granted):

a) ye continue in the faith grounded and settled, and

b) be not moved away from the hope of the Gospel.

It is taken for granted that these two conditions will be fulfilled, “IF” means **certainty.** This passage is not looking to the future, but speaks of the Christian’s present condition as a test of the reality of his salvation.

Answer 2: If we continue in the faith (sound Bible doctrine) we will be presented, holy, unblameable, and unreproveable in his sight at the Judgment Seat of Christ. We will be approved, we will have confidence, and not be ashamed at his coming if we abide in Christ (1 John 2:28), and continue in the faith of sound doctrine (Colossians 1:22,23). If we don’t abide or continue in the faith, we will be disapproved, ashamed and lose rewards at Christ’s coming. The subject is rewards, not loss of salvation.

43. *“But Christ as a Son over His own house; **whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.**” (Hebrews 3:6).*

Some say that this verse teaches loss of salvation if we do not **hold fast our confidence** firm to the end. This is false because:

Answer: The writer in Hebrews 3:5 speaks of Moses being faithful in all his house (the Tabernacle). The writer uses the word “we”, to include himself in the scope of this admonition. Moses’ house was a sphere of priestly activities v.5. Christ’s house v.6, is **not** the body of Christ, of all believers. In 3:12 the writer warns us against “an evil heart of unbelief in departing from the living God. Should any believer do this, they would forfeit their robes in the Son’s priestly house, which is only maintained by holding firmly to their Christian profession. The writer did

not mean loss of salvation. The writer was thinking in priestly terms. As long as the readers held firmly to their Christian commitment, they also functioned within Christ's priestly system. Just as a Levite could withdraw from participating in Moses' tabernacle, so too may a true Christian withdraw from his priestly role as a servant of Christ. Therefore, **Christians (as some Levites did) could withdraw from their priestly service to God** over God's house.

44. *"Brethren, if any of you do err from the truth, and one convert him; Let him know, that he which converteth the sinner from the error of his way shall **save a soul from death**, and shall hide a multitude of sins." (James 5:19-20).*

The sinning one here is a believer who has gone astray from the path of truth or has backslidden. To patiently go after such a person and to turn him again to obey the Lord is to save him from physical death, of God's discipline, and will hide, or cover or prevent a multitude of sins. He is preserved from going into more sin, by being restored.

45. *"Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth." (1 Timothy 4:1-3).*

These people spoken of here have departed from the faith of their fathers. There is no reference here to departing from personal faith. "The" before faith, means "Faith as that body of doctrine which Christians believe", not faith as an action. **These people never believed**.

46. *"For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the **latter end is worse with them than the beginning**. For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them." (2 Peter 2:20,21).*

Here it speaks of "knowledge" of Christ, but it does not say that they have received Christ. Knowledge is not enough to save a person. One must appropriate that knowledge to himself and accept Christ's payment for sin. When these teachers or their victims reject the knowledge about Jesus Christ, their end is deeper corruption (entanglement), and a more severe degree of punishment. For example, many children have been raised in a Christian home, been taught the knowledge of Christ from infancy, and been religious, attending church regularly. They have escaped much of the outward pollution of the world. But if they reject Christ as Saviour, and go into sin, they will be worse off than if they had never known about the way of righteousness. Peter chose dogs and pigs (lowest animals v.22) to describe people who knew the truth and turned away from it. A **dog** pictures a false teacher. A **pig** pictures the natural **unsaved man** who may look cleansed outwardly but still loves the mud (the things of the world), and as soon as the restraint is off, he will go back to the filth in which he once lived. *"But it is happened unto them according to the proverb, The **dog** is turned to his own vomit again; and the **sow** that was washed to her wallowing in the mire."*(2 Peter 2:22). The dog and the pig were never saved.

47. *"From which some having swerved have turned aside unto vain jangling." (1 Timothy 1:6).*
This refers to Christians who have been lead astray by false teachers into fruitlessness (vain jangling). "Vain jangling" (3150) means "senseless, mischievous, vain talking" which well describes believers who have swallowed false doctrine, and talk about it to others, trying to persuade others of their false views.

48. *"Holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck: Of whom is Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered unto Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme." (1 Timothy 1:19-20).* It is possible to be shipwrecked and live.

- **Holding faith** means faithfulness to the Christian cause, as a soldier. He should steadfastly believe true doctrine.
- **Good conscience** means to honestly follow what is right.

Men make shipwreck of their faith by not keeping a good conscience. Men shipwreck their faith because they wish to indulge in sin. To remain faithful demands moral purity.

Sins and departing from true doctrine will shipwreck a man's faith. Delivering a person to satan, is to allow satan to bring physical suffering to disobedient Christians. Many Christians who put away faith (doctrines) by believing false doctrine, are still saved.

49. *"And their word will eat as doth a canker: of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus; Who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and **overthrow the faith of some.**" (2 Timothy 2:17-18).*

Hymenaeus and Philetus taught false doctrine. A Christian may believe and teach some false doctrines. The Lord will chasten him, but it does not say that he will lose his salvation. **"Overthrow the faith"** means to depart from true doctrine.

50. *"Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and **I will receive you.**" 2 Corinthians 6:17.*

"Wherefore" means "since you are a peculiar people, and God dwells among you", come out from idolaters and unbelievers.

"Come out" (Isaiah 52:11) where Jews are called to leave their exile in Babylon with its idols.

"Be separate" from all worldly corrupting influences.

"Touch not the unclean thing" means to be pure from idolatry etc.

"I will receive you" means "I will enjoy fellowship with you."

"I will be a father unto you" means God will protect us as a father protects His children if we forsake idolatry.

Obedience brings God's fatherly protection. Disobedience brings self inflicted suffering.

Some think that this verse says that God will only receive those who come out and be separate.

This appeal for a separated life is based on the previous verse (v.16 "Ye are the temple of the living God). Therefore v.7 **is an appeal to holy living based on the security of the believer that we are the temple of God.** There is no threatened loss of salvation. God promises "I will receive you." There is no "if" condition here.

51. *"If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him: **IF we deny Him, He will also deny us.**" (2 Tim 2:12).*

Some say that this verse means that if we deny that we know Him, then He will deny that He knows us and we will be lost. **Answer:** The word "**deny**" here means "**to withhold**".

If we deny Him (**withhold** from Christ) our service, or our fellowship, He will deny us (**withhold** from us) the **blessings, joy and fellowship that could have been ours.**

It cannot mean loss of salvation because Paul uses "we" including himself and Timothy. He never thought that he could lose salvation. What else could it mean?

The context in v.12 is **suffering**. Some Christians suffered with Christ. They will reign with Christ in the millennium. Some Christians deny Christ during suffering or in their lives. Deny means "**not willing to suffer for Christ**" and "failing to confess Christ." Peter denied Christ but he did not lose his salvation. Christ rebuked him for denying Him.

At the Judgment Seat of Christ, the Lord will deal with our failures and successes. If we deny Christ now, Christ will deny us blessings, rewards & heavenly privileges in front of the holy angels.

- "Whosoever therefore shall **confess** me before men, him will I also confess before my father which is in heaven. But whosoever shall **deny** me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven." Matthew 10:32,33.

- "He that denieth me before men shall be denied before the angels of God." Luke 12:9.

- "Whosoever shall be ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation; of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he cometh in the glory of his Father with the holy angels." Mark 8:38.

We will be held accountable for our unfaithfulness by denying us some earthly joy and some heavenly privileges.

95. WRONG VALUES TAUGHT IN SCHOOL, MEDIA AND SOCIETY **(9 ERRORS OF HUMANISM)**

Bible Reading: Psalm 1; Acts 20:31.

Aim: To expose errors in society and to warn parents of what their children may be learning at school.

Introduction: We all agree that much error is taught in schools, media and society.

What is it? How can we help our children recognize it and reject it as false? If your teenager listens to heavy rock music, grows his hair long, smokes cigarettes, takes drugs, rebels against God's and your authority, you can be sure that they learnt it from school and peers.

If we don't warn our children of error, they are very prone to be deceived by it and we will lose our children as they depart from our convictions, God's values and from service to God.

The Public school actively teaches the religion of humanism.

Question: What is humanism?

Answer: Humanists believe that men, not God determine values and that these values are based on prevailing circumstances. Humanists enthusiastically seek to remake the world in man's image.

NOTE: **Nobody thinks without making assumptions. Those assumptions are a person's religion.**

Humanists speak very dogmatically as if they are right.

In the name of church/state separation, humanists have largely removed from school textbooks all Bible doctrines and replaced their own humanist doctrines.

What are some main false humanist views that state schools teach that are anti-Biblical that we must guard children against?

1. EVOLUTION: That man gradually emerged by chance from lower life forms over millions of years.

Humanists believe that man invents truth and invents his own value system.

However, since men originate from God, then truth and values must come from God.

"So God created man in his own image." Genesis 1:27a.

"Know ye that the Lord He is God. It is he that hath made us, and not we ourselves." Psalm 100:3.

2. SELF AUTHORITY: The belief that man is his own authority & is not accountable to a higher power. This "self-sufficiency" generates self interest, self-gratification, self-indulgence and self-righteousness (ie: I am right, who are you to tell me what to do?)

Each individual is told to define his own values and order his own conduct.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

"Think of a situation that would probably result in a difference of opinion between yourself and your parents. How would you defend your position? With what arguments would your parents counter? Write a dialogue between your parents and yourself." SE-189, col.2. par.2, **Psychology For Living**. McGraw-Hill Webster Div., c. 1983, Grade 5 Health.

These violate Biblical Principles:

"Woe unto them that are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight!" Isaiah 5:23

(See Jeremiah 17:9; 1 Corinthians 2:14).

"To obey is better than sacrifice. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry." 1 Samuel 15:22,23.

"Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right." Ephesians 6:1.

3. SITUATION ETHICS. The belief that there are no absolute rules to live by .

Thus man becomes the final authority for his actions, depending on circumstances.

This assumes that man may define different moral codes to fit different circumstances.

Therefore, there are no rules, no right or wrong, no guidelines, and people can do what they want.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

a) "There are exceptions to almost all moral laws, depending on the situation. What is wrong in one instance may be right in another. Most children learn that it is wrong to lie. But later they learn that it is tactless, if not actually wrong, not to lie under certain circumstances...."

SE-45, col.2, par.1, lines 5-11, **Inquiries In Sociology**, Allyn & Bacon, c. 1978. HS Psychology.

b) "Lesson 3: Values And Culture. What Are Values?"

It is important to work hard.....You should tell the truth at all times.....Stealing is bad.....Let each pupil decide for himself how he feels about each....Emphasise that this is not a test, and that there are no 'right' or 'wrong' answers.....". SE-10-11, TE-11, col.3, par. 2, **Man and Society**, Silver Burdett, 1972. Grade 5 Social Studies.

These Violate Biblical Principles: The Ten Commandments. Exodus 20:1-17.

"Be not deceived: God is not mocked; for whatsoever a man soweth, that he shall also reap." Gal. 6:7.

"So shall I keep thy law continually for ever and ever. I will walk at liberty; for I seek thy precepts." Psalm 119:44-45.

"Woe to them that call evil good and good evil: that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet and sweet for bitter. Woe to them that are wise in their own eyes." Isaiah 5:20,21.

4. SEXUAL PERMISSIVENESS: The belief that all forms of sexual expression are acceptable e.g. sex before marriage, homosexuality, adultery, etc. They believe that school sex education is necessary, provided it is taught without Biblical morals.

Since they believe in evolution, then right and wrong don't exist. Hence they think that any sex is OK.

They say that homosexuality is just an alternative lifestyle. God says homosexuality is an abomination.

They say abortion is alright. God says it is murder.

They say free sex is alright. God says it is fornication and He will judge them for it.

They say sexually transmitted diseases can be cured. Wrong: Herpes, AIDS, Hepatitis can't be cured.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

"Adolescent petting is an important opportunity to learn sexual responses and to gratify sexual and emotional desires without a more serious commitment." SE-161 picture caption, **Life and Health**, Random House, c. 1980, Grade 9-10 Health.

"Rarely is any physical harm done to the child by molesters and exhibitionists.." SE-234, col. 2.

"A person with variant sexual interests is not necessarily bad, sick, or mentally ill." SE-218,col.1.

"Venereal disease can be easily treated...." SE-103, col. 1. par. 2, lines 6-7.

"Delbert and Sally are living together while they are in college. They do not expect to marry... they feel that living together provides each other with love, affection and support." SE-278, col. 1, par, 2, **Person To Person**, Bennett, c. 1981 HS Homemaking.

"Divorce is considered an acceptable way of solving a problem." SE-109. par 3.

"Others have a 'til love do us part' attitude towards marriage. They see marriage as a short term goal. They seem to expect that someday their love will come to an end. They plan to end their marriage at the same time." SE-102, par.1, **Homemaking Skills For Everyday Living**, Goodheart-Wilcox Co., c. 1981, Grade 6-8 Homemaking.

These Violate Biblical Principles:

"When lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin when it is finished, bringeth forth death." James 1:15.

"Whoso causeth the righteous to go astray in an evil way, he shall fall himself into his own pit." Proverbs 28:10. (See also Galatians. 6:8; Leviticus. 18:22-30).

Marriage is honourable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge." Hebrews 13:4.

5. ANTI-BIBLICAL BIAS.

Humanism rejects the Bible as our sole authority and teaches children that it is not important to know the Bible. The Bible is relegated to a place of no importance.

This idea assumes that man is the source of all truth and value systems.

Humanism as Found In Public Schools Textbooks:

"Anthropologists studying human customs, religious practices, ritualism, and the priestcraft came to the conclusion that men created their own religious beliefs so that their beliefs answered their special needs. (The God of the Judeo-Christian tradition was a god worshipped by a desert folk. Heaven was high above the desert, cool and pleasant).

The Eskimos...reversed the concept...To the anthropologists religions were functional, they served man's needs, and they were clearly man created." SE-541, col. 1 and 2, **Perspectives In United States History**, Field, c. 1972, High School American History.

These Violate Biblical Principles:

"The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works, there is none that doeth good." Psalm 14:1 (see also Isaiah 55:8,9 and II Corinthians 4:3,4).

"Them that honour me, I will honour." 1 Samuel. 2:30.

Humanism in schools includes:

1. Science teaching says that creation is wrong, and man evolved.
2. English teaching says that the Bible is not the best literature to study. That written by man is better.
3. History starts with Napoleon in 1800, and the Battle of Hastings in 1066, not with Creation, Israel, Jesus Christ, or the Reformation.
4. Geography explains the world, ignoring the Flood.
5. Personal development ignores Salvation, prayer and Bible character.
6. Ancient History ignores Creation, Flood, Abraham, Israel and Moses.
7. Art is abstract and meaningless, not Biblical in content.
8. Music is Rock music, not melody to worship God.

6. ANTI-FREE ENTERPRISE.

The belief is that government ownership or control of the economy should replace private ownership of property and the free market economy.

This economic collectivism is known as 'Big brother movement', 'Cradle to the grave welfare', Socialism.

Humanism as Found In Public Schools Textbooks:

a) "Conclude the activity by pointing out that this breakdown in public morality revealed the need for greater government supervision."

TG-3, col. 2, par. 4, **A History Of The U.S. From 1877**, Holt, c. 1979, HS Sociology.

b) "**Learning Check.To Discuss:** Some people feel that the government should pay every family in the United States a minimum amount every year if they do not earn that amount by working. Would you support such an idea? If so, how much should this amount be? If not, why not? SE-407, **Civics Government and Citizenship**, Allyn & Bacon, 1993, Grade 8, Civil Government. c) "Communist governments provide many benefits for their workers...The governments also provide for health care, long vacations, and old age income. Personal incomes tend to be low...But expenses are also low. Most people in Eastern Europe can meet their daily needs without much difficulty. SE-325, col. 1, **World Geography**, Follett, 1980. HS World Geography.

d) "**Communist Countries...** All wealth is shared among the people according to their needs..." SE-318, col. 2, **World Geography**, Follett, c. 1983, HS World Geography.

These Violate Biblical Principles:

"He becometh poor that dealeth with a slack hand: but the hand of the diligent maketh rich." Prov. 10:4. "They shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree." Micah 4:4.

Question: Why does Satan hate free enterprise?

Answer: Because it provides wealth to send missionaries, to print Gospel tracts, and to build churches. Therefore, satan's aim is to make everybody poor, so that no money goes for Gospel preaching.

7. ONE WORLD GOVERNMENT. The belief that World govt. should replace national governments.

Question: Why does Satan want this?

Answer: It would bring in the Antichrist and it can pass laws that would stop the spread of the Gospel. It can more easily persecute and control Christians.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

a) "Go where you may and search where you will...search out every wrong... Then you will agree with me that, for revolting barbarity and shameless hypocrisy, America has no rival."

SE-88, **Many Peoples, One Nation**, Random House, c. 1973, Grade 5 American History.

b) "Write a constitution for a world government..." SE-451, col. 2, par.2 **American Citizenship, The Way We Govern**, Addison-Wesley, c.1979, HS Civil Government.

c) "Many people think a stronger UN or a new international organisation is needed if we and the other people of the world are to move safely into the 21st century. Only a stronger world body, they argue can meet tomorrows challenges..."

SE-785, **American Citizenship Program**, Scholastic, c.1977, Holy Spirit Civil Government.

These Violate Biblical Principles:

"So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth"...Genesis 11:6,7,8,9.

"He causeth all, small and great, rich and poor to receive a mark..." Revelation. 13:16-18.

8. DEATH EDUCATION. The belief that there is no hope of existence beyond the grave, no heaven or hell. Euthanasia and suicide are viable options.

Drugs are sold and used as a slow killer. Suicide is a theme of Rock music. Children are never challenged to think about heaven and hell. Death is stated as the end of it all and we can't know what lies ahead. It is implied that heaven and hell are not important issues to consider and plan for.

"When you are dead, you are dead" is the philosophy. No sense of God judging man's sin is mentioned.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

The Experience Of Dying. The individual experiences a cosmic consciousness, characterised by a sense of unity with other people, nature and the universe; a feeling of being outside time and space; and extra ordinary feeling of contentment and ecstasy." SE-530, col. 2, lines 12-17, **Life and Death**, Random house, c. 1980, Grade 9-10 Health.

These Violate Biblical Principles: "I am tormented in this flame." Luke 16:24.

"There shall be both a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and the unjust." Acts. 24:15b.

"He that sinneth against me wrongeth his own soul: all they that hate me love death." Proverbs 8:36.

"Hell...where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched." Mark 9:44,46,48.

"Lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven." Matthew 6:20.

9. A DISTORTED REALISM. The belief that all children should be exposed to a **widespread of viewpoints** such as bad language, immorality & perversions as acceptable modes of 'self expressions'. We should protect our children from evil, not teach them evil. "Be simple concerning evil."

"The truth shall set you free." Children need a clear guide to right and wrong as the devil, in order to destroy them and send them to hell, must break down their conscience and God's value system.

Lesson: BIBLE TRUTH = Reality; Anything else = Deception.

Humanism as Found In Public School Textbooks:

a) **"Talking About Your Own Ideas.** 1. Most people think that cheating is wrong, even if is to only get a penny, which is what Shan did. Do you think there is ever a time when it might be right? Tell when it is. Tell why you think it is right."

SE-76 **Communicating, The Health English Series, D.C.** Health,1973 Grade 3,Language &Grammar

b) "The moralistic value system remained firm in the rural areas and the small towns of America until World War II...since WWII, rural and small town America began to pass into history. Today urban America, with a changing set of values is taking over. "Protestant evangelists continue to crisscross the land, attempting to revitalise the old religion, the old culture. They preach the old values, the old standards, the old time religion. But now they represent a waning culture."

SE-514 **Perspectives In United States History**, Field, c. 1972, HS American History.

These Violate Biblical Principles:

"Be not deceived: evil communications corrupt good manners." I Corinthians 15:33.

"Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers." Ephesians 4:29. (Ephesians 5:11-12; Philippians 4:8).

Conclusion:

"Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them." Ephesian 5:10-14

Teach your children to watch for and reject these wrong values, & to learn scriptures that oppose them.

The best answer is to Home-school them yourself through Accelerated Christian Education (ACE).

96. BAPTISMAL REGENERATION

Question: Does baptism save a person from hell?

Answer: No, for the following reasons:

Baptism is not a part of the gospel. To include baptism in the gospel is to add a **work** to Christ's work on the cross. It means that if we must be baptised in order to be saved, then Christ's work on the cross was not good enough to pay for our sins. Those groups who believe in baptismal regeneration (the error that baptism saves us from hell) include:

- The Boston Movement International Churches of Christ.
- The Old Anglican Church Prayer Book, page 289. "my Baptism; wherein I was made a member of Christ, the child of God, and an inheritor of the kingdom of heaven."
- Roman Catholic Church as one of the sacraments.

I. THE GOSPEL.

The gospel that saves us is defined in I Corinthians 15:1-4. It contains no hint of baptism as part of it. "Moreover, brethren, **I declare** unto you the **gospel** which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; by which also ye are saved how that

- i) **Christ died for our sins** according to the scriptures;
- ii) And that **he was buried**,
- iii) And that **he rose again** the third day according to the scriptures.

II. FAITH IN CHRIST SAVES US, NOT BAPTISM.

It is never said that baptism saves us from hell, but many times the Bible says that faith or belief in Christ saves us. Consider these 16 examples:

- i) The woman who anointed Jesus' feet with ointment: "He said to the woman, **Thy faith** hath saved thee; go in peace." Luke 7:50.
- ii) The repentant leper: "**Thy faith** hath saved thee." Luke 17:19.
- iii) Blind Bartimaeus: "Jesus said unto him, Receive thy sight; **thy faith** hath saved thee." Luke 18:42.
- iv) Woman who touched Jesus: "Daughter, **thy faith** hath made thee whole; go in peace." Mark 5:34.
- v) Palsied man let down through a roof: "When Jesus saw their **faith**, he said unto the sick of the palsy, son, thy sins be forgiven thee." Luke 5:20; Mark 2:5.
- vi) Jews and Gentiles: "Put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts **by faith**." Acts 15:9.
- vii) "We believe that through the **grace** of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they." Acts 15:11.
- viii) "To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever **believeth in him** shall receive remission of sins." Acts 10:43.
- ix) "By him **all that believe** are **justified from all things**, from which they could not be justified by the law of Moses." Acts 13:39.
- x) "That they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them that are sanctified **by faith** that is in me." Acts 26:18.
- xi) "This is the work of God, that ye **believe** on him whom he hath sent." John 6:29.
Note: 50 verses in chapter 91 showing that "works do not save us."
- xii) **KEY PASSAGE:** Acts 10:43-48 teaches we are **Saved first, baptised later:**

If baptismal regeneration is right, then we should see people baptised first, then saved later, or saved and baptised simultaneously. We never see this. We do see many times people being saved first, then being baptised. Notice the first Gentile convert in the Church age, Cornelius and his household in Acts 10:43-48.

The order of events in Acts 10:43-48 are:

- Hear: a) **Peter preaches** that through Christ’s name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins. v.43.
- Saved: b) Cornelius’ household was **saved**, as seen by:
 “the **Holy Ghost** fell on all them which heard the Word....
 on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the **Holy Ghost**.” v.44,45.
 “they heard them **speak with tongues**, and **magnify** God.” v.46.
 “which **have received the Holy Ghost** as well as we.” v.47.
Four times the Bible says that they were saved.
- Baptised: c) Cornelius’ household was **baptised** straight away **AFTER** they were saved.
 “Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptised which **HAVE RECEIVED** (past tense) the Holy Ghost as well as we?” v.47.
 “And he commanded them to be **baptised** in the name of the Lord.” v.48.
- Two verses prove that they were **saved first, then baptised** afterwards.
- Conclusion:** The New Testament pattern is:

SAVED first, then **BAPTISED** later

This disproves Baptismal Regeneration, and shows that **Baptism does not save us**.

- xiii) The Blood of Christ saves us, not water.
 “In whom we have redemption through his **blood**, the forgiveness of sins.” Colossians 1:14.
- xiv) Believers in heaven sing of salvation by Christ’s blood, not by water baptism:
 “They sung a new song, saying ... thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by **thy blood** ...” Revelation 5:9.
- xv) Believers overcome satan, **not by water baptism**, but “they overcame him by the **blood** of the lamb, and by the **word** of their testimony...” Revelation 12:11.
- xvi) Paul did not teach a different plan of salvation in Acts 22:16 than he taught the Philippian jailer in Acts 16:31.
 “**Believe** on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved.”

III. MISUNDERSTOOD VERSES that seem to TEACH BAPTISMAL REGENERATION.

If water baptism saves us, then everybody who believed on Christ and died without the chance to be baptised are doomed to hell forever, just because no water was available.

Those who died as babies, or those saved on their deathbed, or those saved on the battlefield then killed would not have eternal life according to this false doctrine.

How do Baptismal Regenerationists arrive at this doctrine?

1. **1 Peter 3:21** “Baptism doth also now save us ...”
 Let us quote the full verse: “The like figure whereunto even baptism **doth** also **now** save **us** (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but **the answer of a good conscience toward God**) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ.”
 Notice the following about this verse:
 - a) Baptism saves **US**. **Question:** Who is the “us”?
Answer: “Us” is believers, those already born again, including Peter and his readers in the churches.
 - b) **Question:** How does baptism save believers in Christ?
Answer: Baptism saves us from having a bad conscience toward God, not from sins or from hell. When a believer is told that he must get baptised, he is faced with a choice. If I get baptised, I have a **good** conscience toward God, knowing that I have obeyed what God has commanded me.
 If I **don’t** get baptised, I have a **bad** conscience toward God, knowing that I have disobeyed what God has commanded me. Therefore, getting baptised saves a believer from a **bad** conscience toward God. Baptism is truly the “answer of a good conscience toward God.”

2. **John 3:5** “Except a man be **born of water** and of the **Spirit**, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.”

Baptismal Regenerationists think that “born of water” means salvation by baptism. Yet this contradicts all other salvation scriptures which we cannot possibly throw out.

Question: What does “born of water” mean?

Answer: Just as there are two parents required for physical birth, so there are two parents required for spiritual birth: the Spirit of God and the Word of God. The Spirit of God takes the Word of God, and when the sinner believes, He imparts eternal life.

The following verses show that “**born of water**” means born of the **Word of God**:

- a) James 1:18 “Of his own will **begat** he us with the **word** of truth ...”
- b) 1 Peter 1:23 “Being **born again**, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, **by the Word of God** ...”
- c) John 15:3 “Now ye are **clean** through the **word** which I have spoken unto you.”
- d) Ephesians 5:26 “That he (Christ) might sanctify and **cleanse** it (the church) with the **washing of water** by the **word**.”
The Word of God (symbolized by water) washes away our sins.
- e) Psalm 19:7 “The **law** of the Lord is perfect, **converting the soul**.”
God’s Word saves our souls.

The Bible is called “the sword of the Spirit.” Ephesians 6:17.

The following verses link the Spirit, or the Word, or the washing of the new birth:

- a) 1 Corinthians 6:11 “But ye are **washed**, ... sanctified, ... **justified** in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God.”
The Lord Jesus is the Word, who, along with the Holy Spirit, saves us.
 - b) Titus 3:5 “he saved us, by the **washing** of regeneration and renewing of the **Holy Ghost**”
 - c) John 6:63,68: “It is the Spirit that quickeneth; ... the **words** that I speak unto you, they are Spirit, and they are **life** ... Thou hast the **words** of eternal life.”
3. **Acts 2:38** “Then Peter said unto them, repent, and **be baptised** every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ **FOR the remission of sins**, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

Baptismal Regenerationists understand this verse to teach that repentance and baptism lead to forgiveness of sins. When the Jewish crowd asked what they should do, Peter said to **repent** (change their minds about Jesus Christ) and **be baptised** (give clear public proof of that change).

Question: What does it mean: “be baptised ... **for** the remission of sins?” Does it mean that baptism remits sins, or saves us from sin?

Answer: No! It means baptism “**because of**” the forgiveness of sins that had already taken place earlier at repentance.

“FOR” in Greek is “EIS” meaning:

- “**because of**”,
- “on the basis of”, or
- “on account of”, something.

For example,

1. “I am taking a tablet **for** a headache that I got in the past” means that I am taking a tablet “**because of**” a headache. This is the meaning of “for” (Greek: eis) in Acts 2:38. It does not mean that “I am taking a tablet **to give me** a headache in the future” as the baptismal regenerationist’s think “for” means in Acts 2:38.
2. “Ned Kelly is wanted **for** robbery”, can have two meanings, either:
 - i) Ned Kelly is wanted “**because of**” a robbery that he has committed in the past, or
 - ii) Ned Kelly is wanted “to help commit” a robbery in the future.

The Greek word “EIS” in Acts 2:38 is the first meaning in each of the above two examples. It is used to mean “because of” in these references:

1. Matthew 3:11 “I indeed ²baptise you with water **unto** (EIS = because of) ¹repentance (in the past).
2. Matthew 10:41 “He that ²receives a prophet **in** (EIS = because of) the ¹name of a prophet.”
3. Matthew 12:41 “They ²repented **at** (EIS = because of) the ¹preaching of Jonah.”
4. Mark 1:4 “Preach the ²baptism of repentance **for** (EIS=because of) the ¹remission of sins.”
5. Acts 7:53 “Who have ²received the law **by** (EIS=because of) the ¹disposition of angels
6. Acts 2:38 “Repent, and be ²baptised ... **for** (EIS = because of) the ¹remission of sins.”

[¹ means the first action, ² means the following action.]

Therefore in Acts 2:38 we should understand it to mean: “be baptised because of the remission of sins.” These Jews were to be baptised as a public witness that their sins had been forgiven. Peter did not suggest that baptism is necessary for the forgiveness of sins. Rather, he was calling for members of that generation which were guilty of having crucified Christ to separate themselves from a generation under the judgment of God. That separation was to be publicly signified through baptism. The baptism that they were challenged to submit to, signified that the people had received the forgiveness of sins.

Question 1: If baptism is essential for salvation, why did Peter say nothing about baptism as a condition for salvation in his 3 other sermons in Acts 3:12-26; 5:29-32; 10:34-43?

Question 2: If baptism is essential for salvation, why did Cornelius’ household receive the Holy Spirit (and hence salvation) before they were baptised? This clearly disproves the baptism regeneration position.

Question 3: Why does the same writer Luke say that **repentance results in remission of sins without baptism** in Luke 24:47 “that **repentance** and **remission** of sins should be preached in his name among all nations...”

“Saviour, for to give **repentance** to Israel, and **forgiveness** of sins.” Acts 5:31.

Conclusion: Acts 2:38 means:

1. **Repent** and you will be saved,
2. At salvation **you get the Holy Ghost**,
3. Then **be baptised** because your sins have been remitted.

4. **Acts 22:16** “And now why tarriest thou? Arise and be baptised, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

This verse of Ananias speaking to Paul has four segments:

- i) **Arise** (which is a participle, meaning “arising”).
- ii) **Be baptized** (a command to Paul).
- iii) **Wash away your sins** (a command meaning: “You Paul, wash away your sins”)
- iv) **Calling** on the name of the Lord. (“Calling on” is not a present participle, but is an arist (point in time) participle also translated “having called on” or “since you called upon.” This means “having previously called on the name of the Lord.”

Question 1: Does Acts 22:16 teach that water baptism washes away sins, and that we are saved by water baptism?

Answer: No. This question can be answered by asking two other questions.

Question 2: When was Paul saved? On the Damascus Road (which proves baptism does not save) or at Judas’ house with Ananias?

Answer: Several reasons indicate that he was saved on the road to Damascus:

- i) Ananias called him “**Brother Saul**” in Acts 22:13 and 9:17.
1 Corinthians 5:11 says that “brother” means “a believer.” “If any man that is called a brother.” Saul was called a brother.

- ii) The Gospel was presented to Saul on the Damascus road **directly** by **Christ**, not later by Ananias. Galatians 1:11,12, “the gospel which was preached of me is not after man. For **I neither received it of man**, neither was I taught it, but by the **revelation of Jesus Christ**.” Paul says here that Ananias did not preach the gospel to him, but Jesus Christ did. Paul would not have rejected Christ’s gospel message on the Damascus Road.
- iii) Paul had already submitted in faith to Christ by calling Him “Lord” in Acts 22:10 “What shall I do Lord?” and in Acts 9:6 “Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?” “No man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost.” 1 Corinthians 12:3.
- iv) Paul was filled with the Spirit BEFORE his baptism in water in Acts 9:17,18. “Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou might receive thy sight, and **be filled** with the Holy Ghost. And **immediately** there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received his sight therewith, and arose, and **was baptised**.”
- v) Revelation 1:5 and 7:14 both state that the Blood of Christ washes away sins, not water, as far as God is concerned, “unto him that loved us, & **washed us** from our **sins** in his **own blood**.” Revelation 1:5 “**washed** their robes, and made them white in the **blood** of the Lamb.” Revelation 7:14

Question 3: What do the words “wash away thy sins” mean?

Do they teach that water baptism brings salvation?

Answer: No. Because Paul was already cleansed spiritually. Water baptism is an outward picture expressing God’s inner work of washing away sin. “But ye are **washed**, ... but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and **by the Spirit** of our God.” 1 Corinthians 6:11.

Note: In 1 Corinthians 6:11 the washing refers to the inward cleansing of the heart by the Holy Spirit as seen by the use of the Greek: “apelousasthe” meaning “you were and are washed”, instead of the Greek: “ebaptisthete” meaning “you were baptised”.

The complete N.T. Word Study Dictionary by S. Zodhiates, p.232.

“He saved us by the **washing** of regeneration, and renewing of the **Holy Ghost**.” Titus 3:5.

Question 4: Why did Ananias use the words “wash away thy sins”?

Answer: Paul by killing Christians, had a bad conscience, bad memories and bad regrets. Baptism for Paul was truly “the answer of a good conscience toward God” (I Peter 3:21), showing to men that he had finished with the old life, and was truly forgiven and saved by Christ as a new creature. Ananias is saying to Saul: “show to men that your sins have been washed away.”

- 5. **Mark 16:16** “He that believeth and is baptised shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

A superficial reading of Mark 16:16 may suggest that sinners must be baptised to be saved. “He that believeth and is baptised shall be saved” is not the same as saying that “baptism is necessary for salvation”.

Question: What does it mean? What does baptism save us from?

Believing in Christ saves us from our sins and from hell (John 3:16).

Being baptised saves us from having a bad conscience toward God. (I Peter 3:21).

To teach that baptism saved us from hell would injure hundreds of verses teaching us that salvation is by faith in Christ alone and not by our works. We must not throw out hundreds of verses in order to force one verse to fit.

The last part of verse 16 omits baptism, saying that condemnation to hell comes **only** from **refusal to believe**, not from a failure to be baptised.

Note: John 3:18 is a similar verse that clarifies Mark 16:16.

“He that **believeth** on him is **not condemned**: but he that **believeth not** is **condemned already**, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.”

This verse proves that:

- i) The person who **believes** in Christ is **not condemned**, whether or not he has been baptised.
- ii) A person is **condemned**, “because he has not believed”, even if he has been baptised and attends church, etc.

Note: Baptismal Regenerationists try to get around the many scriptures saying that “he who believes in Christ is saved”, by saying that “**faith includes baptism**.” That is to say, if one believes in Christ he will be baptised, and they say that “faith is not complete until one is baptised.” This is false because:

- i) Mark 16:16. **Belief** and **Baptism** are separated as two different things.

“He that believeth and is baptised.”

If believing included baptism, then Jesus would not have added the word “baptism”.

- ii) Acts 2:38. **Repentance** and **Baptism** are separated as two different things.

“Repent and be baptised.”

If repentance included baptism, then Peter would not have added the word “be baptised”

It is never stated in the Bible that if one believes or repents, then he will be baptised.

Note: People can be saved from things other than hell, such as from:

- i) Antichrist’s persecutions (Matthew 24:13),
- ii) Physical death (Matthew 24:22; Acts 27:20,31),
- iii) Suffering (Matthew 27:42),
- iv) A purposeless life by childbearing (I Timothy 2:15),
- v) Drowning in the Flood (I Peter 3:20),
- vi) Slavery in Egypt (Jude 5).

- 6. **Galatians 3:27** “As many of you as have been **baptized into Christ** have put on Christ.”

Does “**baptized into Christ**” mean water or spirit baptism? Check the context:

“That we might be justified by **faith**.” Galatians 3:24.

“But after that **faith** is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.” v.25.

“For ye are **all** the children of God by **faith** in Christ Jesus.” v.26.

“For as many of you as have been **baptized into Christ** have **put on Christ**.” v.27.

“There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither bond nor free ...: for ye are **all one in Christ Jesus**.” v.28.

Because it is clear that v.24,25,26 and 28 all refer to justification by faith, then v.27, “baptized into Christ”, must refer to the Holy Spirit baptism at salvation, and not to water baptism. The context demands it.

“For by one Spirit are we **all baptized** into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into **one Spirit**.” 1 Corinthians 12:13.

Four reasons that Galatians 3:27 must be Spirit baptism:

- i) 1 Corinthians 12:13 clearly refers to Spirit baptism, placing us all in the body of Christ at salvation.
- ii) Both 1 Corinthians 12:13 and Galatians 3:28 say that in Spirit baptism, there is **neither Jew nor Greek**, neither bond nor free.
- iii) Galatians 3:27 says that being baptised into Christ is **putting on Christ**, referring to a change of garments. The believer has put off the dirty garments of sin (Isaiah 64:6), and by faith, received the robes of Christ’s righteousness (Colossians 3:8-15).
- iv) The **context** of Galatians 3:24,25,26 and 28 are all Spirit baptism of salvation by faith, not by water baptism, which appears nowhere in the context.

Therefore, faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour baptises us into Christ, not water baptism.

7. **Colossians 2:12.** Is this Spirit or water baptism?

“**Buried with him in baptism**, wherein also ye are **risen** with him through the **faith** of the **operation of God**, who hath raised him from the dead.” This is Spirit baptism because:

- i) It is through **faith**. It is the operation of God. It was the power of God that changed us, not the power of water.
- ii) v.11 compares salvation to the “circumcision made **without hands**.” This is an act of God at a time in the past. If it was made “without hands” then it was spiritually wrought, not wrought by man.
- iii) The **effect** of this was “the putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by circumcision of Christ.” v.11. It is not by water baptism.
- iv) v.13: “And you,... hath he quickened together with him, having **forgiven** you **all trespasses**.” This can only come by faith in Christ, which results in Spirit baptism.

Conclusion: Baptism here refers to the Baptism of the Holy Spirit by Jesus Christ at salvation, and not to water baptism.

8. **Romans 6:1-5**

The **literal** meaning of New Testament baptism is “to dip, to immerse.”

The **figurative** meaning of New Testament baptism is “to be identified with.”

For example, in 1 Corinthians 10:1-2 the Jewish nation was “baptised unto Moses” when it went through the Red Sea. There was no water involved in this baptism, because they went over on dry land. Here, the nation was identified with Moses, and baptism here means “identification with.”

In Romans 6:1-5, Paul had **both** the **literal** and **figurative** meanings in mind, because he used the reader’s experience of water baptism to remind them of their identification with Christ through the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

To be “baptised **into Jesus Christ**” (Romans 6:3) is the same as “For by one Spirit are we all baptised **into one body**” (1 Corinthians 12:13), which is Baptism of the Holy Spirit at salvation. Paul is not saying that their immersion in water put them “into Christ”, but that water immersion was a picture of what the Holy Spirit did at our salvation, identifying us with Christ in His death, burial and resurrection.

“Baptised into his death” means that every believer has a **new relationship to sin**. We are “dead to sin.” “I am crucified with Christ” (Galatians 2:20). We now walk in newness of life and in the power of Christ’s resurrection, because we share His life.

Too many Christians are “betweeners.” They live between Egypt and Canaan, saved but are never satisfied; or they live between Good Friday and Easter, believing in the cross, but not entering into the power of Christ’s resurrection life.

Conclusion:

Water baptism does not save us from damnation because:

- i) The blood of Christ saves us. Revelation 1:5; 7:14.
- ii) Baptism is not part of the gospel.
“For Christ sent me not to baptise, but to preach the gospel...” 1 Corinthians 1:17.
“The gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation to every one that **believeth**” Romans 1:16. Not “to every one that is **baptised**.”
- iii) Baptism is mentioned 80 times in the New Testament. Paul uses it only 16 times:
 - a) 11 refer to water baptism. 6 out of 11 times he uses it in I Corinthians 1:13-17 to explain that Christ sent him not to baptise.
 - b) Paul refers to water baptism only twice in his letters (I Corinthians 15:29).
 - c) Paul emphasizes Spirit baptism (in Romans 6:3; 1 Corinthians 10:2; 12:13; Galatians 3:27; Colossians 2:12) more than water baptism. Paul’s small usage of baptism proves that it does not bring salvation.
- iv) Salvation by water baptism takes away from the sufficiency of Christ’s sacrifice for our sins. Leave any church today that teaches the error of Baptismal Regeneration of infants or adults.

WHAT HAPPENS TO US AFTER DEATH? At death, the soul and spirit leave the body.

1. Unbelievers.

In the Old Testament, the spirit and soul of an unbeliever went immediately to the torment of **hell**, which is inside the earth. Notice these verses showing that people are conscious in hell, and that hell is inside the earth.

1. The **sorrows** of hell compassed me about. Psalm 18:5. Note: Hell has sorrows.
2. The **pains** of hell got hold of me. Psalm 116:3. Note: Hell has pains.
3. The **wicked** shall be turned into hell. Psalm 9:17. Note: Hell is for the wicked.
4. It is as high as heaven ... **deeper** than hell. Job 11:8. Note: Hell is deep in the earth.
5. A **fire** ... shall **burn** to the lowest hell. Deuteronomy 32:22. Note: Hell has fire.
6. **Hell** and **destruction** are never full. Proverbs 27:20. Note: Hell is like destruction.
7. Thou shalt beat him with the **rod**, and shalt deliver his **soul** from **hell**. Proverbs 23:14.
- 8.** **Hell** from **beneath** ... **stirs up** the dead for thee. All they shall **speak** and **say** unto thee, art thou become weak as we? Isaiah 14:9,10.
People's souls in hell can stir, speak and say, proving that soul sleep of unbelievers is false.
9. Unto the **nether** (lower) parts of the earth, with them that go down into the **pit**. Ezekiel 32:18. Note: The pit and hell are in the lower parts of the earth.
- 10.** The **strong** among the mighty shall **speak** to him out of the midst of **hell**. Ezekiel 32:21. Note: People in hell can speak, showing that they are not asleep.
- 11.** The **Zidonians** which are gone down with the **slain** ... **Pharaoh** shall **see** them, and shall be **comforted**, even **Pharaoh and all his army slain by the sword**. Ezekiel 32:30,31. Note: Pharaoh, after being killed in battle is comforted in hell by **seeing** the Zidonians, who have also been killed in battle, enter hell with him. People can see in hell, have comforting thoughts of other people suffering and thus, are not sleeping.
12. The rich man in Hell, could **see, hear, taste, touch**. **Four times** it says that he is tormented. "And in hell he lifted up his eyes, being in **torments**, and seeing Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom (v.23). And he cried and said, father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue; for **I am tormented in this flame** (v.24). But Abraham said, ...now he (Lazarus) is comforted, and **thou art tormented** (v.25). Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldst send him to my father's house: For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of **torment**." (v.28). Luke 16:19-31.

2. Old Testament Believers.

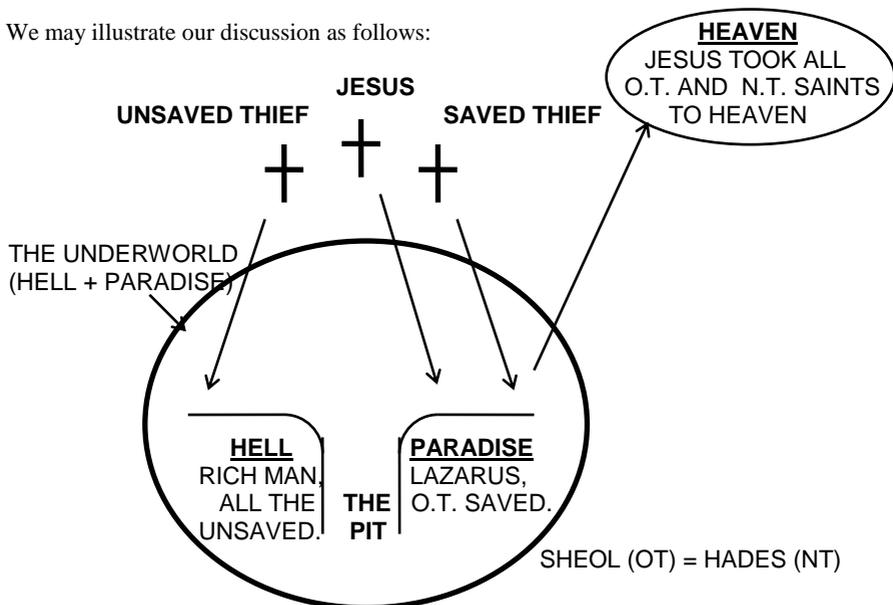
In the Old Testament, the spirit and soul of a believer went immediately to the comfort of **paradise** in the lower parts of the earth.

- a) "Now he (Lazarus) is **comforted**." Luke 16:25.
- b) "Jesus said to him, verily I say unto thee, **today** shalt thou be with me in **paradise**." Luke 23:43
Note: The Jehovah Witness translation of this verse is utterly childish. Jesus is supposed to have said, "verily I say unto thee today". **Well of course he said it today. When else would he be saying it? Yesterday?** "I say" is present tense.
- c) **Samuel's spirit** came up out of the earth after his death to tell Saul that tomorrow Saul, Jonathan and his other sons would be killed in battle, and would be with Samuel in paradise. "the woman said to Saul, I saw gods **ascending out of the earth**....What form is he of? And she said, an old man cometh up:and he is covered with a mantle. **Samuel** said to Saul,**Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up?**..tomorrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me." 1 Samuel 28:12-19
Note: Samuel was resting in paradise in the earth, and resented Saul disturbing him by bringing him up. Samuel was not asleep, just resting; not in soul sleep, but conscious.
- d) When Jesus died, he descended into the **lower parts of the earth**, and after preaching to spirits in prison (1 Peter 3:19), he led all Old Testament believers out of paradise (inside the earth) and up to heaven. "when he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive ... (now that he ascended, what is it but that he also **descended first** into the **lower parts of the earth?**)" Ephesians 4:8,9.

“By which also he went and **preached** unto the **spirits** in prison.” 1 Peter 3:19.

Jesus would not waste his time preaching to spirits imprisoned in the underworld if they were sleeping and could not hear him. You only preach to those who are conscious.

We may illustrate our discussion as follows:



3. New Testament Believers.

In the New Testament, the spirit and soul of believers go immediately upon dying to heaven. We know this because of these reasons:

- a) **To depart and to be with Christ in heaven is far better.**
 "For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to **depart**, and **TO BE WITH CHRIST**; which is **far better**." Philippians 1:23.
 Paul desired to depart his body by dying, so that he could be with Christ IN HEAVEN, which is far better than staying on the earth.
 It is far better to go to soul consciousness with Christ in heaven.
- b) **When we are absent from the body, we are present with the Lord in heaven.**
 "... knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord: we are confident, I say, and willing rather to be **absent from the body**, and to be **present with the Lord**." 2 Corinthians 5:6,8.
 When we are out of our body (death), we are present with the Lord. Where is the Lord now? In heaven. Therefore, a believer's spirit and soul go to heaven on dying.
- c) **Departed Believers watch us from heaven.**
 "Wherefore, seeing we also are surrounded by **so great a cloud of WITNESSES**, let us lay aside every weight ..." Hebrews 12:1.
 We are told to run with patience the race that is set before us, because **we are being watched from heaven by all the spirits and souls of dead believers**, some of whom are stated in Hebrews 11. It is like spectators in a grandstand watching athletes run their races.
- d) **Spirits of just men made perfect are now in heaven.**
 "But ye are come unto ... the heavenly Jerusalem ... to the general assembly and **church** of the firstborn, which are written in **heaven**, and to God the Judge of all, and to the **SPIRITS of just men made perfect**." Hebrews 12:23,24. This clearly tells us that when believers die, their spirits go to heaven immediately.

- e) **Christ at His Second Coming brings departed believers' souls with Him to the air.**
 1 Thessalonians 4:14 tells us that the spirits of believers who have died, are waiting in heaven until the day when Jesus Christ will bring their spirits and souls with Him at the second coming in the air to be rejoined with their resurrected bodies. "... **them** also which **sleep in Jesus** will God **bring with him**." Their dead bodies, buried in the grave will be resurrected to rejoin their spirits and souls which Christ will bring with him from heaven. Christ bringing their spirits and souls, shows that they are **with Christ in heaven** after death awaiting the resurrection.
- f) **Souls of departed believers are in heaven crying out for revenge.**
 After the rapture (catching away of believers to heaven) many people get saved in the seven year tribulation. Many of these are killed by the Antichrist. Do their souls go to soul-sleep in the grave? No! Their souls are seen under the altar in heaven:
 "I saw under the altar the **SOULS** of them that were **slain** for the word of God ... they **cried** with a **loud voice**, saying ..." Revelation 6:9,10.
 These souls of dead believers are in heaven. They can cry out with a loud voice. They have memory of their death on earth, crying for revenge. They are not unconscious or soul-sleeping in the grave.
- * For **12 other verses** that show **believers go to heaven**, see **page 24**.

Objection: Some verses come close to saying that the dead are unconscious eg. Psalm 30:9; 115:17; 146:4; Ecclesiastes 9:10; Isaiah 38:18,19. These say that a dead body can't praise God, but the soul is still alive. How do we understand these verses in the light of the vast majority of verses that teach that human souls are conscious after death?

1. "What profit is there in my blood, when I go down to the pit? **Shall the dust praise thee?** Shall it declare thy truth?" Psalm 30:9.
Answer: The Old Testament saints had a gloomy view of death. Death to them was seen as an interruption in their communion with God, even for believers. They saw death as a continuation of existence (Isaiah 14:9-11), but on terms which robbed it of all that deserves to be called life. David shared the common view, and he uses it as part of his appeal to God.
2. "The **dead praise not the Lord**, neither any that go down into silence. But we will bless the Lord." Psalm 115:17.
Answer: Jesus had not yet brought life and immortality to light through the Gospel. "But is **now** made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who **hath** abolished death, and **hath** brought **life** and **immortality** to light through the Gospel." 2 Timothy 1:10.
 Believers now have eternal life and an **immortal soul**. The Holy Spirit used Old Testament believers' limited understanding of the afterlife to urge them to praise God while they could.
3. **Question:** What about Psalm 146:4, "His breath goeth forth, he returneth to his earth; in that very day **his thoughts** (Heb: "esh-tonah" 6250) **perish**."?
Answer: When a person dies, his earthly plans, ambitions and thoughts perish with him. After death, we cannot contribute anything to fulfil our earthly ambitions. "Thoughts" in Hebrew mean "polished, sleek, plans formed in the mind." "His thoughts perish" means that his ambitions perish. "Eshtonah" (Heb: 6250) from "ashath"(6245) is only ever used of "thoughts" here in Psalm 146:4. "Thoughts" most commonly used in the Old Testament is "machashabah" (Heb: 4284), a different Hebrew word to that word used in Psalm 146:4.
 - "Thoughts that perish" are the wicked man's plans and purposes which come to naught at his death. The thoughts which go to the grave are his vain projects. eg: the thoughts of the rich fool of building bigger barns and of many years of ease and prosperity. All his selfish, worldly schemes, perished in that same night. (Luke 12:16-21).
 - Moses & Elias lived after death to talk with Christ on the Mount Transfiguration. Luke 9:30,31
 - Luke 20:38 "He is not a God of the dead, but of the living: for **all live** unto him."
 - Colossians 3:2 The New Testament tells believers to "set your affections on things above." This means that we go to heaven at death.

4. **Question:** What about Ecclesiastes 9:5,6,10?

Answer: These are written from the standpoint of knowledge "under the sun", from the viewpoint of natural man who lives without thoughts for God. This restates the philosophy of unbelievers that "when you're dead, you're dead".

"..the **dead know not anything** ..." Ecclesiastes 9:5.

Also their love, and their hatred, and their envy, **is now perished.**" Ecclesiastes 9:6.

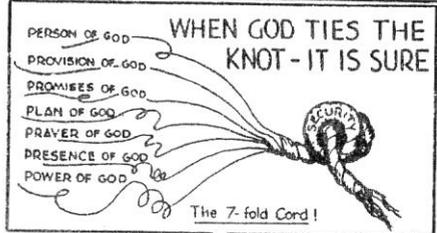
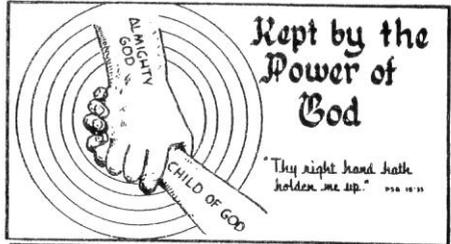
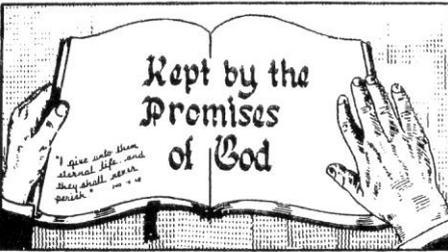
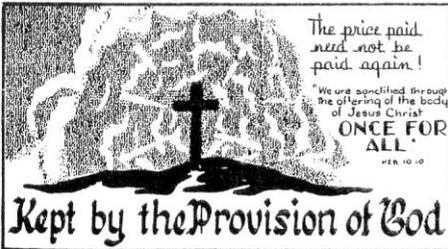
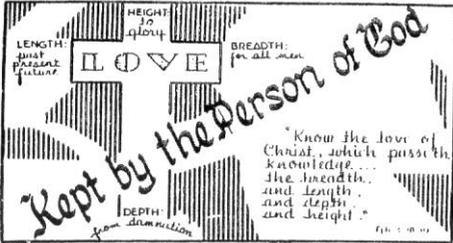
"There is no work, no device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, **in the grave** where thou goest." Ecclesiastes 9:10.

"For the **grave cannot praise thee**, death cannot celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit **cannot hope** for thy truth." Isaiah 38:18.

The term "sleep", when applied to death, refers to death of the body only. After the resurrection of Christ, believers went into the presence of Christ at their death.

CONCLUSION.

The "Soul-Sleep" error is held by Seventh Day Adventists, Jehovah Witnesses, and Christadelphians. Use these Scriptures to refute this error.



98. WHAT'S WRONG WITH "CHRISTIAN" ROCK MUSIC?

Bible Reading: Numbers 21:1-9

Aim: To examine "Christian" rock music compared with godliness, worship of Christ and the Bible.

Introduction:

The main reason that churches introduce rock bands into their services is in the hope that if they can be as close to the world as possible, the unsaved won't see too much difference, they will better "relate" to young people and hence have a better chance of winning them to Christ. However, God says:

"Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him." 1 John 2:15.

"Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? Whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God." James 4:4.

Strong words indeed that God speaks to churches that seek to imitate the world and worldly methods to reach people for Christ. God calls them the "enemy of God" and the "love of the Father is not in him."

God and Samuel strongly protested Israel's desire to "have a king over us: that we may also be like the nations." 1 Samuel 8:19,20.

Bringing rock music into a church is the same sin of desiring to be like the nations.

Christians should "be not conformed to this world" (Romans 12:2), but be people separated from worldly practices and separated to be holy like God.

As Bible believing Christians, we must rebuke error when we see it.

"I charge thee before God and the Lord Jesus Christ .. Preach the Word; be instant in season, out of season (when it is unpopular); reprove (Gk:1651 = tell a fault, convince, convict), rebuke (Gk:2008 = forbid, straightly charge), exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine." II Timothy 4:2.

"Nor faint when thou art rebuked of him." Hebrews 12:5.

"All Scripture.....is profitable for doctrine, for reproof ¹⁶⁵⁰, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: that the man of God may be perfect." I Timothy 3:16.

I. QUESTION: WHAT IS WRONG WITH WORLDLY, NON CHRISTIAN ROCK MUSIC?

- Answer:
1. It has ungodly themes of rebellion, drugs, sex, and demons.
 2. It's musicians set an ungodly lifestyle example of deep sin.
 3. David Bowie rock star says: "Rock music has always been the devil's music."
Little Richard says: "I believe this kind of music is demonic."
 4. Rock music contains many clear back masked and subliminal messages.

II. QUESTION: WHAT'S WRONG WITH CHRISTIAN ROCK MUSIC?

Reason 1. Very little CCM (Contemporary Christian Music) encourages heart searching or reproof.

Amy Grant's "Raining on the inside" ends with "WOW, You know I'm just getting really excited."

Compare this shallow message with the famous song: "Am I a soldier of the cross?"

Reason 2. Does the song Exalt Christ? or emphasise man?

e.g. Does it emphasise the singer's loneliness, the believer's needs, his feelings or does it glorify Christ? Compare it with the famous hymns: "Holy, Holy, Holy," or "O Worship the King."

Reason 3. Does the song lose the sense of God's majesty, solemnity, and reverence?

Reason 4. C-Rock teaches teens to sneer at traditional church music as boring, and to rebel against their parents and their church as being out of touch with their worldly music tastes.

This shows contempt for the richest wealth of Bible music ever created.

Four tests for good church music are:

- i) Music should uplift the church, not mock or criticise it.
- ii) Music should carry Bible messages, not anti Bible message
- iii) Music should bring more glory to God, than to the performer.
- iv) Music should feed the spirit more than the old flesh.

Classic Christian hymns don't feed the flesh, they show it rotten to the core.

Compare these songs:

Rock on - Stryper

"Come on everybody/put your hands above your head/Today we're screamin'/Cause tomorrow you might be dead/The earth is shakin', and the clouds are rolled away/Come on everybody/Get ready for the Judgment Day/Rock on, Got my feet on the ground/Got my eyes on Heaven/Rock on"

My Saviour's Love

"I stand amazed in the presence of Jesus the Nazarene/
And wonder how He could love me/A sinner condemned, unclean....."

Compare that piercing Bible truth to this C-Rock wisdom, by CCM star Charlie Peacock:

Big Man's Hat

"I used to have a big man's thoughts/In a young man's world/You got to have big man's thoughts/To make a big man's girl/And when I finally made that girl, she did not have a clue/That I would break her like a matchstick/That I could turn young love into the third world war...."

Reason 5: C-Rock departs from normal music.

Answer: Seidel, a concert pianist and 25 year Christian music expert states that:

"True godly music, will be composed of three elements - all in perfect balance with each other. They are: MELODY, HARMONY, and RHYTHM.

Rock "music" has no melody - only fragments of melody endlessly repeated. Since there is no true melody, there is no real harmony. There is only rhythm, and rhythm in and of itself is not music."

C-rock ends with a crash or long fade-out, with no resolution.

Reason 6: C-rock copies the world.

John 15:18 "If the world hates you, ye know it hated me..."

C-rock devotees feel secure in saying that there is no Scripture saying "Thou shalt not listen to Christian rock".

Answer: There is no verse that says "Don't beat your wife" either.

They desire to "Let me keep sinning."

Consider these verses against C-rock:

- i) I John 2:15,16 "**Love not the world**, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him."
C-rock looks like the world, and is worldly. When C-rock stars wear skin tight spandex, teased long hair, use smoke bombs, and strobe lights, this is the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh, and the pride of life.
If you can't see this as being worldly, you are in deep bondage to the flesh.
- ii) James 4:4 "...whosoever will be a **friend of the world is the enemy of God.**"
CCM stars look and act like the world.
CCM music and lyrics are like the world.
Kim Boyce: "Sounds a lot like Madonna." *Gospel Music Today* (1980).
Barren Cross: "They have the sound and intensity of Iron Maiden."
Amy Grant: "Lyrically, the only difference between Amy Grant's love songs and Olivia Newton John's, is that often Amy Grant's pronouns come with capital letters."
Stryper: "Outward trappings of ... Iron Maiden and Judas Priest."
Therefore C-rock stars learned from worldly, secular rock stars years ago.
- iii) Ecclesiastes 7:5 "It is better to hear the rebuke of the wise, than ...the **song of fools.**"

Objection: Fans say "That's just the music, the lyrics are the real difference."

Answer: Let's do an experiment. Which song is Christian and which is secular?

BURN IN HELL

"Take a good look in your heart/Tell me,
what you see?/ It's black and it's dark/
Now is that how you want it to be?/
It's up to you, what you do will decide
your own fate/Make your choice now,
for tomorrow may be far too late/And then
you'll burn in Hell/Oh burn in Hell/
You're gonna burn in Hell..."

Fiery judgment against sin: Twisted Sister.
The heathen produce more Biblical lyrics than so called Christian rock music.

SILENCE SCREAMS

"The folly in our passions/
The prisons of desire/ The
foolishness of bigots/Tinder for
the fire/In bitterness and exile/
As foolish as it seems/ In the
coldest, darkest spirit/Silence
screams/Silence screams/ The
echoes roar/Silence screams for-
evermore.."

Resurrection band: "Christian"

- iv) I Corinthians 10:20 "I would not that ye should have **fellowship with devils.**"
C-rock contains demon messages backmasked praising Satan.
- v) II Corinthians 6:14 "What fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion has light with darkness?"
- vi) Ephesians 5:11 "Have **no fellowship** with the **unfruitful works of darkness** but rather reprove them. For it is a shame (sin → guilt → shame) even to speak of those things which are done of them in secret."
C-rock fellowships with worldly darkness.

Reason 7. C-rock doesn't preach conviction of sin.

Wayne Watson: "I won't write a song that says "You better get right with God .. it makes people feel defensive."

That "defensiveness" is called Holy Spirit Conviction and no one gets saved without it. John 6:44 and 16:7-11.

Jesus Christ preached against sin: "Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish." Luke 13:5. Why are they scared of preaching against sin? Because they're afraid of "turning people off", offending cash customers and losing record sales.

We should separate from worldly, compromising rock music. Why? Because:

"As obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your ignorance." I Peter 1:14.

Christ, Paul, the Apostles and martyrs turned some people off and were killed for it. We all must choose to stand for Christ or for Satan.

Reason 8: C-rockers are Ignorant of Satan's game to COUNTERFEIT moves of God.

Answer: To be blind to this, is not to know the enemy. II Corinthians 11:12-15.

"The god of this world has blinded the minds of them which believe not." 2 Corinthians 4:3-4

What are C-rock fans ignorant of:

- i) Motive of money. If there's a dollar to be made, you can bet someone will slap the label "Christian" on it and open up a whole new market.
- ii) Backmasking and subliminal messages:
Why does Satan backmask? To gain MIND CONTROL.

The alcohol, tobacco and retail industries spend millions of dollars yearly on subliminal programming. Shops use it to fight shoplifting.

"Enchantment is a form of spell casting primarily involving mind control. Enchanters dispatch or assign wicked spirits to objects and places for whatever purpose the spell calls for...Enchantment controls the mind and is one of the most powerful spells that can be cast on a person...." David Meyer ex-occultist.

Jimi Hendrix revealed the conspiracy of subliminals 20 years ago.

ROCKING FOR JESUS

Under this chapter heading, Jeff Godwin reports on CHRISTIAN ROCK. He says that "Christian rock" is a contradiction in terms. "How can Christ be unequally yoked with the perverse paganism of Rock?" He cites the group STRYPER as being the forerunner of a new trend in Christian music - Heavy Metal Christian Rock. The music on STRYPER's albums was no different to W.A.S.P. or AC-DC. Only the words were positive praise to the King, WHEN you could hear them, that is.

Godwin maintains that Satan is the King of Rock, and that he does not stop at the door of the Gospel Record store. Rather, Satan is now mounting a strategic offensive against Christians, utilising willing, zealous believers to propagate the beat, the style and the hidden messages amongst young Christians.

Question: Some Christian Rockers argue that Rock music doesn't have to be satanic. If the lyrics are about Christ and salvation, it can be a legitimate form by which young people in a world of rock music can be won for Christ.

Answer: We are not talking here about lively gospel music. We're talking about ROCK! We are not talking about beat or even drums. We're talking about ROCK beat and style.

While some Christian Rockers may be seeking to win souls in the rock world, some Christian rockers are actually introducing young people to Rock music.

Can these young people be expected to maintain a preference for the "Christian" variety? Why not enjoy "worldly" rock also?

Or if some young people are won to Christ through Rock, are they then to be nurtured through Rock? Jeff Godwin comments: "There's one very simple test for Christians to use to determine what is and what is not godly music: Could you play that music as part of the Sunday morning worship service without offending God? I don't care if it's rock, Christian Rock, Country or contemporary: if the music can't fit comfortably into Sunday morning worship, then it is not worth playing at all. If such music cannot be used to praise the King, then why are you listening to it?"

Reason 9. Biblical precepts against Christian Rock music:

Firstly, God is concerned with the seed that produces the fruit. All seed produces of its own kind. Out of which womb was Rock music born? Was it born in the womb of Spirit-filled or unsaved musicians?

Secondly, God will not accept a blemished sacrifice! (Malachi 1:8-13). Every Christian concert or record should be an offering to the Lord. Is Rock music an acceptable offering to God?

"I've noticed", he says, "that musicians at Christian concerts seldom perform rock just before the message and invitation. It is not conducive to conviction of any kind because it is of another spirit. If it is of God, why not use it before the invitation? Why not a ripping rock segment just before the sermonette? It is reserved for the entertainment part of concerts, to the accompanying of fleshly whistles, shouting and grooving. It doesn't inspire them to kneel and pray, or even to bow their heads and worship. There is not one ounce of conviction in it - God refuses to touch it. What it does is turn audiences on to a fleshly display of jumping on seats, jiving and dancing in anything but a spiritual manner."

Thirdly, God has His prescribed boundaries for worship. (Malachi 1:12).

Fourthly, God is looking for overcomers who will search out the old paths and find the right way. (Jeremiah 6:16).

Fifthly, God will not tolerate the uncircumcised of heart in His house. (Ezekiel 44:7-13).

Sixthly, there can be no worship if the name of Baalim be on our lips. "God is saying, "My true worshippers will never again speak of, let alone do those things that represent the old life and former idols." Hosea 2:17.

Finally, it all comes down to our love for Christ, "If any man love the world, or the things that are in the world, the love of the Father is not in him". (1 John 2:15).

If we are going to line up with God, we need to stand up against rock, help pray it down, and refuse to support any Christian performer, group or station who continues pushing it.

Heavy-metal rock music can trap people, especially teenagers" into dabbling in disgraceful Satanic practices. For example, we denounce Rock star Ozzy Osborne's tune SUICIDE SOLUTION:

"Wine is fine but whiskey's quicker
Suicide is slow with liquor
Suicide is the only way out,
Don't you know what it's really about?"

Former Beatle John Lennon was shot to death in December 1980. "His "Double Fantasy" album had been in record stores for weeks. The song "Kiss, Kiss, Kiss", from that album, contains a backmask that Yoko Ono sang, which says, "WE SHOT JOHN LENNON."

If a demon didn't leave that little calling card, who did? How did Yoko Ono's human spirit KNOW, much less SAY, "We Shot John Lennon," long before the murder happened? Mark David Chapman (Lennon's killer) admitted that demonic spirits gave him the strength to carry out the execution.

There's only one answer. That backmasked message on Lennon's record didn't come from a human spirit, it came from a demon's throat!

So how do these messages GET into the music? It's really very easy. The demons just talk while their Rock and CCM dupes sing. Demons are well able to speak out loud, as Mark 1:23-25 makes very clear.

Reason 10. APPEARANCE OF C-ROCK STARS

"A proud look" Proverbs 6:16-17. Pride is one of seven abominations to God.

"Nor effeminate shall inherit the Kingdom of God." I Corinthians 6:9

"The lofty looks of man shall be humbled". Isaiah 2:11,12.

"The show of their countenance doth witness against them". Isaiah 3:9



BLOODGOOD

"The shew of their countenance doth witness against them; and they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not. Woe unto their soul! for they have rewarded evil unto themselves." Isaiah 3:9



SAINT

"An high look, and a proud heart, and the plowing of the wicked, is sin."

Proverbs 21:4
HOLY SOLDIER

"The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day. For the day of the Lord of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:"

Isaiah 2:11,12



MESSIAH PROPHET BAND

"These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto him: A proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood,"

Proverbs 6:16,17

Best description of CCM: "If you want to reach a broad Christian audience, minister and sell records,

1. Adopting popular secular music styles brings success.
2. Write your own music.
3. Follow the popular style.
4. Add Christian lyrics.
5. Send it out to the Christian market. That's CCM."

"Doth not even nature itself teach you, that if a man have long hair, it is a shame to him?" 1 Cor. 11:14. Long, womanly hair on men is a shame. Long hair symbolises rebellion. Men grew long hair in the 60's to rebel against the rules. Lipstick and earrings on men, and rock rebellion is the root of effeminate men. Jesus offended people because he told them the truth.

C-Rock stars offend people because they are disgusting. They violate Bible truth and common decency. Galatians 5:19-21 lists 17 works of the flesh. Match these with a C-rock concert:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Uncleaness, bondage | 1. Leather, chains, studs |
| 2. Shameful, unnatural | 2. Womanish hair on men |
| 3. Fornication, adultery | 3. Harlotry in women |
| 4. Lasciviousness, revellings | 4. Party time atmosphere |
| 5. Idolatry | 5. Jewellery, logos |

Reason 11. SUBMISSION VS. REBELLION

The real battle is not about a musical generation gap, it's about SUBMISSION vs. REBELLION. Submission is the hallmark of the Christian life. Without it, all you have is counterfeit spirituality. To resist the devil, you must first be submitted to God (James 4:7). Since C-Rock fans aren't truly submitted, they'll never be able to resist Satan, no matter how often they sing "To Hell With the Devil" (by Stryper).

The classic hymns so despised by youth today were all about SUBMISSION. That's why carnal Christians want no part of them.

Songs like: "Washed In The Blood," "Haven of Rest", "Jesus Paid It All", "To God Be The Glory", "Lord, I'm Coming Home", "Victory in Jesus", "Have Thine Own Way, Lord", "When I Survey The Wondrous Cross", "Take My Life and Let It Be", "I Surrender All", "Jesus Is All The World To Me".

These are all songs of SUBMISSION. Here's a lyrical example from just one of them:

"Have thine own way, Lord/Have thine own way/Thou art the potter/I am the clay/Mold me and make me/After Thy will/while I am waiting/Yielded and still..."

Now read these C-rock lyrics to see the difference between submission and rebellion:

ROCK THOSE BLUES AWAY - Bride

"I don't need nobody to ease my aching mind.

Don't need nobody complaining all the time.

I need to roll those blues, rock those blues away ...

Let me tell you honey, what I need.

I need a smooth playing guitar in my hand.

Listen to the rhythm of my band."

The 2000's will see a very intense war for the souls of youth. It's getting hotter by the day.

The carnal C-Rock supporting church has already made deals with the Antichrist system. And they will cut many more deals in the years to come.

It's tough to stand against the worldly, compromising, liberal tide, but it must be done.

Reason 12. EXCUSES USED TO JUSTIFY C-ROCK

Lie 1: They're going to listen to Rock anyway. This is a better alternative.

Answer: This is a LIE. Not every new convert is a Rock addict, but you can make a new convert a Rock addict by feeding him C-Rock.

When people get saved from drugs, crime, alcohol and turn fully to Christ, they reject these along with the Rock music that came with these things.

A better alternative? NO WAY!

C-Rock looks the same, sounds the same and produces the same fruit of rebellion.

C-Rock teaches kids to hate authority.

Lie 2: "We have to use C-rock because it is the music kids relate to today."

Answer: 11 Corinthians 6:14-18 tells us to be separate from every ungodly work.

"Touch not the unclean thing". v.15.

C-rock says "Touch it all you want to."

It is the gospel that relates, convicts and saves people, not Rock music, or any other ungodly trick.

The Holy Spirit's blessing is on God's Word, not on pagan noise.

Lie 3: God created music. Everything God created is good, so Rock music must be good and godly too.
Answer: The day Lucifer fell, music fell also. Music once used to worship Almighty God has been corrupted. Lucifer uses that music to get worship for himself, because he craved it.

Lie 4: Music is the universal language teens understand. We use C-Rock music to speak their language
Answer: The Holy Spirit has spoke to people for 6000 years without Rock music. C-Rock noise drowns out the Holy Spirit's voice. The Pastor, not kids are supposed to run the church. Give teens Soul-Winning, and they won't want Rock music.

Lie 5: Kids won't stay in a stuffy church. They need excitement or we'll lose them.
Answer: Give them the excitement of full surrender to Jesus Christ and Soul Winning as a goal in life, not selfish Rock music entertainment. We are not here to be entertained but to win a lost world to Christ

Lie 6: No one can live under those kind of rules. It's too hard and legalistic.
Answer: How harsh of God to ask us to obey Him. Jesus was willing to obey the Father to die for our sins. In Isaiah 30:10, Israel wanted to hear smooth things. (11 Timothy 4:3. "For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine, but will heap to themselves teachers. C-rock is a tool of Satan because it blocks the path to self-denial, purity, holiness, separation and total devotion to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Lie 7: Times have changed. The old ways don't work anymore. We should update.
Answer: The old ways you are tossing away are God's ways. They worked well for 6000 years. When we pray and clearly preach the Gospel, the Holy Spirit convicts and draws lost sinners to repentance and faith in Christ.
"Thus saith the Lord,...ask for the old paths, where is the good way, and walk therein, and ye shall find rest for your souls. But they said, We will not walk therein." Jeremiah 6:16.

Lie 8: Kids get saved through C-Rock.
Answer: "Abstain from fleshly lusts which war against the soul." I Peter 2:11.
Teens don't get saved from worldliness by C-Rock. Doing things man's way brings a mixture of good and bad results. Often the bad destroy much good. Doing things God's way brings only good results.

Lie 9: Satan's lie in C-rock is "Music is neutral."
Answer: Neutral music does not drive away demons, but David's music did drive away King Saul's demons. (I Samuel 16:14-23). Therefore, forsake C-rock and stop quenching the Holy Spirit.

Lie 10: "Only the words matter."
Answer: If you take Jesus Christ or the Bible out of the music, it's no more Christian than worldly rock music. Christian music by definition is about Jesus Christ, not about dope, abortion, starvation or self-esteem. Ephesians 5:19 says that we are "Singing and making melody .. to the Lord", not to people.

Lie 11: Keith Green says: "I have never ONCE seen a case where music was the direct cause of sin or wickedness in a person's life." **Keith Green says: "no music is intrinsically evil."**
Answer: Rock music produces a fleshly, sensual response regardless of the words used. Rhythm causes a bodily response. Rock music is predominately rhythm which produces a bodily response that is greater than it should be for Christians.

Lie 12: Christian rock music rhythm doesn't hurt anybody.
Answer: The rhythm (not the words) of rock music caused brain damage to laboratory animals ("Jarring Music Takes Toll On Mice" Richard Lipkin, Insight, April 1988, p.58), and killed laboratory plants ("The Secret Power Of Music" David Tame, 1984, Destiny Books, p.144-5). It's backbeats & breakbeats swamp, consume & dominate the listener. It's high pitched human and electronic screams give musical chaos. True music has loud and soft intensity. Rock music's intensity is as loud as possible (100db), for as long as possible. In I Kings 19:11,12 the Lord was not in the strong wind, nor in the earthquake, nor in the fire, but in "a still, small voice." Not like rock music.

Lie 13: In order to reach the lost, we must pre evangelize with Christian rock music.

C-Rockers say "Jesus Christ rocks."

Answer: C-rock confuses, pollutes and deceives the next generation of the body of Christ.

C-rock makes a vulgar image of God, glorifies self, and makes God in man's own rebellious image.

Lead singer, Bono Hewson of U2: "Bono dislikes the label "born-again Christian" - and he doesn't go to church either. He said, "I'm a very, very bad advertisement for God ..." CCM Magazine Nov' 88.

"The combination of sound, rhythm, colour and movement can be used to attract demonic spirits into people." - Alistair Crowley.

Lie 14: There's nothing wrong with rock bands in a church.

Answer: i) "They (the priests) have put no difference between the holy and profane, neither have they showed a difference between the unclean and the clean." Ezekiel 22:26.

There's supposed to be a difference between holy and profane (godless), clean and unclean, but Christian-rock tries to erase that line.

ii) Numbers 21:1-9 applies to C-rock. God's people loathed God's provision of manna. The things of God weren't good enough for them. They wanted the things they had when they were back in bondage in Egypt. Today, for some Christians, old fashioned, traditional Christian music isn't good enough any more. Some believers long for the same old garbage that they had back in their unsaved, "bondage to sin" days.

iii) "Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them." Eph.5:11. "Come out from among them and **be ye separate**, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing" II Corinthians 6:17. There is much filthiness, vulgar lyrics and immodest dress in Rock music.

Conclusion:

Parents, if you've been wondering where all that rebellion in your kids has been coming from lately, then check this review of CCM "brides", "Live to die":

"This release is chock full of straight ahead, full throttle grinding and pounding. It's the type of sound your parents will hate". CCM Magazine Sept. 1988.

This is compromise with the world. This clearly breaks the fifth commandment.

Three clear facts of C-rock are:

1. It's not based on the Bible,
2. It is opposed to the Bible,
3. It wants nothing to do with the Bible.

III. Bible verses against C-Rock

1. Romans 12:2 i) Be not conformed to this world.

Christian-Rock music people try to be as much like the world as possible.

ii) Be ye transformed. Your life is supposed to change when you get saved. Christianity isn't supposed to change itself to suit you. No change in life, means no salvation.

iii) By the renewing of your mind. Once saved, your mind should do a complete turn around. You should see this trash music for what it is.

2. I Peter 4:3,4 Once you are saved, old friends will think it strange that you no longer run with them to the old worldly junk.

3. Ecclesiastes 7:5 "It is better to hear the rebuke of the wise, than for a man to hear the song of fools."

4. Romans 16:17 "Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned; and avoid them."

5. Ephesians 5:11 "Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them"

6. Hosea 7:8-10 "He hath mixed himself among the people." Did Israelites win the pagan Canaanites to the Lord when they mixed with their ways? NO. The opposite occurred. Israelites became pagans.

Lessons: 1. C-Rock breeds rebellion.

2. The Word of God is all the relating that anyone needs.

3. When real repentance hits, everything changes.

4. When people repent, Satan gets mad.

5. There's more to Christian Rock than meets the eye.

Russian Church Leaders Request U.S. Christians to Stop Sending Rock Music

The head of the Unregistered Union of Baptist Churches in Russia and an elder of the same group have sent an 'Urgent Message to the Churches of America from the Persecuted Church in Russia.'

The letter, from Peter Peters and Vasilij Ryzhuk, was printed in 'Christian Info News,' a monthly Christian newspaper from British Columbia, Canada:

“For 30 years we have suffered intense persecution, and now freedom is bringing another great harm to our churches. This damage is coming from the Christians in America who are sending rock music and evangelists accompanied by rock bands.

Our young people do not attend these meetings because we have all committed not to participate in secular entertainment.

This is a great burden on our hearts. Many come with Bible in hand and rock music. We are embarrassed by this image of Christianity. We do not know what words to use in urging that this be stopped. We abhor all Christian rock music coming to our country.

Rock music has nothing in common with ministry or service to God. We are very, very against Christian Americans bringing to our country this false image of "ministry" to God. We need spiritual bread; please give us true bread, not false cakes. It is true that rock music attracts people to the church, but not to Godly living.

We were in prison for 15 years and 11 years for Christ's sake. We were not allowed to have Christian music, but rock music was used as a weapon against us day and night to destroy our souls. We could only resist with much prayer and fasting.

Now, we have a time of more openness, and we are no longer taken to prison. However, now it is Christians from America who damage our souls. We do not allow this music in our church, but they rent big stadiums and infect teenagers and adults with their rock music.

We, the leadership and congregations of the Unregistered Union of Baptist Churches, the former Persecuted Church, have made an agreement not to allow rock music in our church. We urge you to join with us and we advise you to remove rock music from America.

Do not desecrate our teenagers with it. Even the unbelievers recognise it is unholy music and they cannot understand how American Christians can be so much like the world. We can give you the conclusion that after Russian unbelievers have attended the rock concerts where Christ's Word was preached, the people were very disappointed and disillusioned with Christianity.

We call this music from hell. We urge all Americans to stop giving money for the organisation of such concerts in Russia. We want only traditional Christian music in our churches. This is the unanimous decision of all our leaders.”

God and Samuel strongly protested Israel's desire to “have a king over us: that we may also be **like all the nations**.” I Samuel 8:19,20.

Bringing rock music into a church is the same **sin of desiring to be like the nations**.

Christians should “be not conformed to this world” (Romans 12:2), but be people separated from worldly practices and separated to be holy like God.

The main reason that churches introduce rock bands into their services is in the hope that if they can be as close to the world as possible, they will better “relate” to young people and hence have a better chance of winning them to Christ. However, God says:

“Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man loves the world, the **love of the Father is not in him**.” I John 2:15.

“Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? Whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the **enemy of God**.” James 4:4.

Strong words indeed that God speaks to churches that seek to imitate the world and worldly methods to reach people for Christ. God calls them the “enemy of God” and the “love of the Father is not in him.”

99. THE OLD TESTAMENT BACKGROUND OF TONGUES

Tongues were given: 1. To warn unbelieving Jews to repent because of judgment to come.

2. To confirm the New Testament Word as from God by signs. Mark 16:17-20.

3. To confirm the Apostles as God's true messengers.

I. TO WARN UNBELIEVING JEWS. "In the law it is written, with men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people (Jews); and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord. Wherefore, tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not." 1 Cor. 14:21,22. Isaiah, in 712 BC (Isaiah 28:11), had in simple Hebrew, warned the Jews to repent from their sinful ways. They rejected his plain message in Hebrew, and so God said that He would speak to them in the tongues of foreigners, such as the Assyrians, to see if this would cause them to repent. Paul quotes this to show that the main purpose of tongues in the first century was to authenticate the new message of Christ to unbelieving Jews in order to bring them to repent of their sins.

This is seen in the following instances:

1. The Jews who had come to Jerusalem on the day of Pentecost were from 16 areas of the ancient world each speaking their own language or dialect. They each heard the apostles speaking the wonderful works of God in their own dialects. This message convicted them of their sin of crucifying Christ, bringing 3,000 of them to true repentance (Acts 2).
2. The gift of tongues to Cornelius' household was to convince the Jewish Christians that God would save believing Gentiles. Here the Jews had believed on Christ, but disbelieved that God would save the Gentiles as He had only saved Jews up until then.
3. Tongues in the church at Corinth was a sign to unbelieving Jews.
 - a) The Corinthian church was closely observed by Jews, because Paul started it in the Jewish synagogue (Acts 18:1-5).
 - b) The unbelieving Jews put Paul out of the synagogue, so Paul's missionary team went to win Gentiles (18:6), by moving the new church to Justus' house which was joined to the synagogue next door (18:7). The unbelieving Jews watched the church closely since it met right next door.
 - c) Soon "Crispus the chief ruler of the synagogue believed on the Lord with all his house." Acts 18:8
 - d) Sosthenes was chosen as the new chief ruler of the synagogue to replace Crispus. Sosthenes was soon saved, because Paul writes in 1 Corinthians 1:1, "Paul....and Sosthenes our brother." Hence, the Corinthian church was started in the synagogue, it met next door to the synagogue, and it had two ex-chief rulers of the synagogue as it's members! Certainly the unsaved Jewish community at Corinth carefully watched the Corinthian church. God gave the gift of tongues, the gift intended as a sign to unbelieving Jews, to this church thereby proving that the gospel of Christ was to be received by the Jews. Tongues were **never** given as a sign to Gentiles. The Gentiles had no dispensational hurdle of Mosaic legalism to jump over to come to Christ.
4. Tongues as a warning to Jews can be seen from Old Testament events, summarised by:
 - a) God has a message for the people.
 - b) The people refuse to listen to God.
 - c) God causes tongues to be heard as a sign of judgment to come.
 - d) Dispersion follows.

Event 1: Tower of Babel. Genesis 11.

Foreign tongues first appear in Genesis 11:1 "The whole earth was of one language, and of one speech"

1. God has a **message** for the people: After the Flood, God said:
"Be fruitful, and multiply, and fill the earth." Genesis 9:1.
2. The people **refuse to listen** to God: They built a great tower,
"...Lest we be scattered abroad over the face of the whole earth." Genesis 11:4.
3. God caused **tongues** to be heard as a **sign of judgment**. God said, "Come, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech." Genesis 11:7.
4. **Dispersion** followed, "So the Lord scattered them abroad from there upon the face of all the earth." Genesis 11:8.

Event 2: Disobedient Israel. Deuteronomy 28.

God promised Israel blessings if they obeyed God's Law, and cursings if they broke God's Law.

1. God has a **message** for the people:
"If thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to observe and to do all His commandments.....all these blessings shall come upon thee....." Deuteronomy 28:1.
2. The people **refuse to listen** to God.
"If thou wilt not hearken.....all these curses shall come upon thee." Deuteronomy 28:15.
3. God causes **tongues** to be heard as a **sign of judgment**: One curse that God promised was a foreign conquering nation speaking strange tongues.
"The Lord shall bring a nation against thee from far.....as swift as the eagle flieth; a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand." Deuteronomy 28:49.
4. **Dispersion** follows: "The Lord shall scatter thee among all people....." Deuteronomy 28:64,65.
This happened to Israel in 721 BC, Judah in 606 BC, and Israel in 70 AD.

Event 3: Babylonian tongues heard by disobedient Judah in 606 BC. Jeremiah 3-5.

1. God has a **message** for the people:
"Return ye backsliding children, and I will heal your backslidings." Jeremiah 3:22.
2. The people **refuse to listen** to God: "thou hast consumed them, but they have refused to receive correction....they have refused to return." Jeremiah 5:3.
3. God caused **tongues** to be heard as a **sign of judgment**. If Israel would not heed Jeremiah's warnings, then God would speak to them by strange tongues and swords of an invading nation.
"Lo, I will bring a nation upon you from far.....a mighty nation,.....a nation whose language thou knowest not, neither understandest what they say." Jeremiah 5:15.
4. **Dispersion** follows: "As ye have forsaken Me, and served strange gods in your land, so shall ye serve strangers in a land that is not yours." Jeremiah 5:19.

Event 4: Assyrian tongues heard by disobedient Israel in 721 BC. Isaiah 28.

When Paul discusses the purpose of tongues in 1 Corinthians 14:21- 22, he quotes Isaiah 28:11 to show that tongues were given as a sign of judgment to unbelieving Israel: ".to them that believe not." 14:22. Sophisticated Israelites were sick of Isaiah's rebukes that sin was rampant, judgment was coming, and a return to God was the only answer.

In Isaiah 28:9,10 they claimed that he was teaching them like newly weaned babies, "line upon line....". Your repetitious teaching is fit for infants, they said. They rejected God's message, messenger, and teaching methods. God responded to their scoffing by imitating their mockery (Isaiah 28:9,10), and promising unintelligible language of a foreign conqueror: "For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people." Isaiah 28:11. God first spoke to them through Isaiah's clear and simple message, which they ignored. Now God will speak in judgment to them through stammering, lisping, Assyrian lips and another tongue. The Assyrian language sounded much less cultivated than Hebrew. Assyrian only had 3 vowels: a, i, u. Israel would hear Assyrian harsh, foreign tongues as they invaded and destroyed many Israelite towns in 721-720 BC under Sennacherib. Note the same pattern:

- a) God has a **message** for the people: "Woe to the crown of pride, to the drunkards of Ephraim. To whom he said, This is the rest wherewith ye may cause the weary to rest." Isaiah 28:1,12.
- b) The people **refuse to listen** to God: "yet they would not hear." Isaiah 28:12.
- c) God caused **tongues** to be heard as a **sign of judgment**:
"For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people." Isaiah 28:11.
- d) **Dispersion** follows: "that they might go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken (captive)." Isaiah 28:13.

Note: To Israel, foreign tongues was a sign of God's judgment and curse upon them. Likewise the absence of foreign tongues was a sign that Israel was under the blessing of God. In the millennium, God promises Israel in Isaiah 33:19 that ".....thou shalt not see a fierce people, a people of a deeper speech than thou canst perceive; of a stammering tongue, that thou canst not understand."

Event 5: New Testament tongues to Israel 33-70 AD.

Israel did not learn from the tongues warnings that led to the Assyrian and Babylonian captivities in 721 and 606 BC. So God again warned them by Christians speaking in tongues from 33-70 AD to warn them to repent or God would judge them. This happened by Titus the Roman general destroying Jerusalem in 70 AD. We see the same pattern:

1. God has a **message** for the people: "Come unto me.....and I will give you rest." Matthew 11:28.
"We do hear them speak in our tongues.(v.11). Peter said unto them, Repent(v39)."Acts 2:11,38,39.
2. The people **refuse to listen** to God:
"O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not." Matthew 23:37.
3. God causes **tongues** to be heard as a **sign of judgment**.
 - a) Christ warned Israel of soon coming judgment, "Behold, your house is left unto you desolate.....Verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down." Matthew 23:38; 24:2.
 - b) God caused foreign tongues to be spoken and heard as a sign of judgment to unbelieving Israel in Acts 2,10,19; I Corinthians 12-14. When God caused believers to speak in tongues, the Jews understood the message. Tongues were a sign gift to unbelieving, Christ-rejecting Israel. "Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them (Christians) that believe, but to them (Jews) that believe not." I Corinthians 14:22.
4. **Dispersion** follows: Jesus Christ correctly foretold this in Luke 21:20-24. "And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh (v.20). They shall be led away captive into all nations....." (v.24). This happened in 70 AD when Titus the Roman general destroyed Jerusalem, killing 1 million Jews and taking 100,000 captive as slaves.

Question: When did tongues cease?

Answer: If foreign tongues were really a sign of coming judgment on Israel, then once this judgment had come (in 70 AD), the tongues sign gift would no longer be necessary. The Biblical gift of tongues had ceased by 70 AD. The last historical mention of tongues is in 1 Corinthians, written in 59 AD. Tongues served their purpose and tongues ceased as God said,"tongues shall cease."1 Corinthians 13:8.

II. TO CONFIRM THE WORD WITH SIGNS (Mark 16:17-20).

"And these signs shall follow them that believe;

- sign 1.in my name shall **cast out devils**;
- sign 2.they shall **speak with new tongues**;
- sign 3.they shall **take up serpents**; and
- sign 4.if they **drink any deadly thing**, it shall not hurt them;
- sign 5.they shall **lay hands on the sick**, and they shall recover .

And they (Apostles) went forth, and preached every where, the Lord working with them and confirming the Word with signs following. Amen." Mark 16:17-20.

The New Testament, being a new revelation, needed to be confirmed that it was from God. This was done by miraculous signs of the Apostles, one of which was tongues. **If the five signs above were fulfilled in the Apostle's lifetime, then Mark 16:17-20 is satisfactorily fulfilled.** It does not say that these five signs would always happen to all believers. Verse 20 tells us that God kept His promises of verse 17,18. Charismatics assume that verse 17 and 18 mean that all believers will always speak in tongues and do these signs. This is wrong because:

1. I Corinthians 12:30 asks, "do all speak with tongues?" This is a rhetorical question implying "No."
2. 2 Corinthians 12:12: "Truly the signs **OF AN APOSTLE** were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds." These were signs belonging to the apostles, not to every believer. "Were wrought", being in the past tense, means that these sign gifts had ceased.
3. Acts 2:43: "Many wonders and signs were done by the Apostles."
4. Acts 4:33 "And with **great power** gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus."

Question:Who had great power to bear witness of the resurrection?The apostles, not every believer.

5. Acts 5:12-16 "And by the hands **of the apostles** were many signs and wonders wrought among the people (v.12)..and believers were the more added to the Lord (v.14)...insomuch that they (believers) brought forth the sick into the streets, and laid them on beds and couches, that at the least the shadow of Peter passing by might overshadow some of them...they were healed **every one**." (v.16). Notice: a) Signs and wonders were done by the apostle's hands, not by every believer. (v.12). b) Believers brought sick people to Peter to heal, because they could not heal them themselves. c) Every one was healed. No one does this today. Charismatics are wrong to claim the gift of healing for today. Since apostolic healing has ceased, so have the other four signs, tongues included.
6. Acts 14:3 "and granted **signs** and **wonders** to be done by **their** (Paul and Barnabus) hands."
7. Acts 15:12 "gave audience to Paul and Barnabus, declaring what **miracles** and wonders God had wrought among the Gentiles by them."
8. Acts 19:11: "God wrought special miracles **by the hands of Paul**."
9. Romans 15:19 "Through mighty signs and wonders,...I have fully preached the gospel of Christ."
10. Hebrews 2:3-4 show that signs, wonders, miracles, and some gifts of the Holy Ghost were restricted only to the apostles (those who heard Christ), & were not available to future generations of Christians: "How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which:
 - a) **at the first** began to be spoken by the Lord (Christ),
 - b) and was confirmed unto us by **them** (apostles) that heard him (Christ), (v.4) God also bearing **them** (the apostles) witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to His own will."

Notice here that in:

Verse 4: God bore the **apostles** witness with signs, wonders, miracles and gifts. God did not bear witness to the **next generation** of Christians with signs, etc, only to the apostles.

Verse 3: The apostles confirmed Christ's salvation message to the next generation, because the apostles heard Christ speak during His three year ministry. The next generation never confirmed Christ's message with signs etc.

Question: When did God bear the apostles witness with signs, etc.?

Answer: "At the first," not always.

All the Greek verbs used in Hebrews 2:3-4 are in the **aorist tense**, indicating a completed fact which can never be repeated.

Peter refers to this early time element of signs, miracles, tongues, etc, in Acts 11:15, where he describes the tongues speaking gift in Cornelius' household, not as a regular happening, occurring time after time since Pentecost, but as similar to the tongues gift **last poured out at Pentecost**. "As I began to speak, the Holy Ghost fell on them, as on us at the beginning." When? "AT THE BEGINNING." Hence, signs were to "follow" for a time, not to accompany believers for all time.

11. Hebrews 6:5 "And have tasted the good Word of God, and the **powers of the world to come**." These apostles' miracles are described as "powers of the world to come", meaning Christ's future millennial Kingdom, not powers of this present Church Age. Therefore, many signs, wonders and miracles performed in the first century will be **regular events in the millennium**, but not until then.
12. Acts 28:8,9 "Paul...healed him. **Others** also, which had diseases in the island, came, and were healed."

III. TO CONFIRM THE APOSTLES AS GOD'S TRUE MESSENGERS.

Hebrews 2:3,4. "God also bearing **them** (the Apostles) witness, both with signs, and wonders and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost..."

Thus, tongues, signs and miracles authenticated the apostles' authority. God did the same for Moses, Elijah, Elisha, Christ, etc. as their miracles confirmed that they were from God (Christ is God).

When Jesus Christ commanded the apostles to "preach the gospel to every creature" (Mark 16:15), He knew that the apostles would have to go to the Gentiles. This would meet with much Jewish racial opposition. Hence, Christ gave them miraculous sign gifts that they would perform in order to confirm and authenticate the gospel message as being from God. This tongues gift seen at Cornelius' household convinced the Jewish Jerusalem Council to send the gospel to the Gentiles. Acts 11:15-18.

IV. THE EARLY CHURCH WRITERS UP TO 320AD SAY THAT TONGUES CEASED IN THE FIRST CENTURY.

A good way to check any doctrine is to see what the early Christian writers, many of whom were taught personally by the apostles, said about it. Their comments reveal practices of the early Christian church. There is overwhelming evidence from history that tongues did cease in the first century, because:

1. **No mention of tongues** can be found in any of **Paul's later epistles**, only in 1 Corinthians, one of the earliest letters written. Romans, being a thorough doctrinal study, never mentions tongues. **Ephesians 4-6** when discussing how to walk worthy, never mentions tongues. When discussing **qualifications of pastors** and **deacons** in 1 Timothy 3 and Titus 1, Paul never mentions tongues as a necessary gift. Tongues are only mentioned in Mark 16 (33AD), Acts 2,10, 19 (33, 41, 54 AD respectively) and 1 Corinthians (59 AD) in a rebuking, correcting, restricting manner. He is **not endorsing it**, but limiting its wrong use.
2. **Chrysostom**, a preacher in 347-407 AD, in discussing tongues in 1 Corinthians states: "This whole place is very obscure, but the obscurity is produced by our ignorance of the facts referred to and by their cessation, being such as then used to occur, but now no longer take place." [Homilies, XXIX, 1]
3. **Augustine** around 410 AD stated that tongues was a sign adapted only to Biblical times.
4. **Clement of Rome** in 96 AD wrote to the church at Corinth to correct the same problems that Paul corrected. Clement mentioned every problem except tongues. Why? Because tongues had ceased.
5. **Origen** (185-254 AD) in all his voluminous writings gives no hint that tongues or other sign gifts were a normal occurrence in his day.
6. Others, like Ignatius of Antioch who wrote to Ephesus, Justin Martyr (100-167 AD), Irenaeus (130-195 AD) bishop of Lyons, never mention tongues.
7. **Tertullian** (155-202 AD) describes it as an apostolic occurrence, not as a phenomena of his time.
8. **Montanus** (150 AD) who was regarded as a heretic because his prophecies went unfulfilled, and claimed to be a successor to the apostles, spoke in tongues. Polycarp and Papias who were disciples of John spoke against Montanus as a heretic.

The table below shows that tongues in the Book of Acts only occurred when Jews were present.

<p><u>JERUSALEM</u> <u>ACTS 2</u></p> <p>TONGUES JEWES</p> <p>3000 devout unbelieving Jews at Jerusalem needing to hear tongues as a sign of judgment.</p>	<p><u>SAMARIA</u> <u>ACTS 8</u></p> <p>NO TONGUES NO JEWES</p> <p>No Jews would live at Samaria due to racial hatred.</p>	<p><u>CAESAREA</u> <u>ACTS 10</u></p> <p>TONGUES JEWES</p> <p>Peter and six Jewish Christians not believing that Gentiles could be saved.</p>	<p><u>CORINTH</u> <u>ACTS 18</u></p> <p>TONGUES JEWES</p> <p>Many unbelieving Jews living at Corinth needing to hear tongues as a sign of judgment.</p>	<p><u>EPHESUS</u> <u>ACTS 19</u></p> <p>TONGUES JEWES</p> <p>Many unbelieving Jews living at Ephesus needing to hear tongues as a sign of judgment.</p>
<p>1. Apostles spoke in tongues. 2. 3000 people saved. 3. 3000 people baptised. NOTE: 3000 people did <u>not</u> speak in tongues.</p>	<p>1. Samaritans believed. 2. They were baptised. 3. Peter and John laid hands on them. 4. They received the Holy Spirit. NOTE: Samaritans did <u>not</u> speak in tongues. NOTE: Phillip did <u>not</u> lay hands on Samaritans, because only an Apostle could impart the Holy Spirit by laying on hands.</p>	<p>1. Cornelius believed. 2. Holy Spirit fell on him. 3. He <u>spoke in tongues</u>. 4. He was <u>baptised</u>. NOTE: They spoke in tongues to convince the Jewish Christians that Gentiles could be saved, and that God was no longer working only through the Jews.</p>		<p>1. John's disciples believed. 2. They were baptised 3. Paul laid hands on them. 4. The Holy Spirit came on them. 5. They <u>spoke in tongues</u>. NOTE: Tongues warned the Jewish Community at Ephesus of coming judgment. It also identified John's disciples with the Apostles and with Pentecost.</p>

V. QUESTIONS TO ASK CHARISMATICS PROVING TONGUES TO BE UNBIBLICAL

- Q1:** Did you speak in tongues because **someone asked you to**, or did tongues come to you without you seeking it, and without anyone suggesting you to do it, as in the New Testament?
- Q2:** When you were asked to speak in tongues, did you say “No, **wait** until I have thoroughly and completely studied and understood every verse on the subject?”
- Q3:** Do you use your tongue as a warning to **Jews** to repent?
- Q4:** Do you always have your tongue **correctly interpreted**? “Wherefore let him that speaketh in an unknown tongue pray that he may interpret.” I Corinthians 14:13.
- Q5:** Do you speak in tongues to **edify yourself** or to **edify the church**?
“**Seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church.**” I Corinthians 14:12.
- Q6:** Do **women** speak in tongues aloud in your church?
“Let your women keep silent in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak....for it is a shame for women to speak in the church.” I Corinthians 14:34,35.
- Q7:** Do two **or at the most three** speak in “tongues” at your meetings? I Corinthians 14:27.
- Q8:** Do your “tongues” speakers speak **in turn** after being interpreted, or do they all speak **at the same time**?
- Q9:** **Which spirit** gave you your tongue? If you think it is the Holy Spirit, can you prove it? How?
- Q10:** Did you receive your tongue when someone told you to **relax**, be passive, blank out your mind, and let anything come out? or
- Q11:** Were you **strongly refusing** anything which satan might send you? Did you constantly pray for God to keep you from everything not of Him when people challenged you to speak in tongues?
- Q12:** Does your tongue ever **get out of control**, or does it take over your prayer time?
- Q13:** **What do you learn** more about **God** through your tongue?
- Q14:** Do people in your church **suppress their tongues** if there is **no genuine interpreter present**?
“But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church...” I Corinthians 14:28.
- Q15:** Can you find one Biblical example of a **woman** speaking in tongues?
- Q16:** What does I Corinthians 13:11 have to do with the subject of tongues, prophecy and knowledge?
“When I became a man, I put away childish things.”
- Q17:** Who are tongues intended for, and who are tongues not intended for? I Corinthians 14:22.
“Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not:”
- Q18:** Why were there no tongues in Samaria in Acts 8?
- Q19:** Why did Phillip not lay hands on the Samaritans to impart the Holy Ghost?
- Q20:** Why could Peter and John impart the Holy Ghost by laying on of hands, but not Phillip?
- Q21:** Was Phillip a bad Christian? (No. It was a gift that only the Apostles had.)
- Q22:** Some Charismatics claim that Joel 2:28-32 teaches that today’s tongues are a sign of Christ’s second Coming. What does the Bible say?
- Answer:** “**Afterward**” in Joel 2:28 pinpoints the time of the Spirit’s outpouring in this passage. It is **after** Jesus Christ has returned at His glorious appearing, that is, His second coming. The context of Joel 2 **does not allow us to link** this outpouring of the Spirit to events **before** Christ returns. This refutes the thought that today’s tongues are a “sign of Christ’s second coming.”
- Conclusion:** The gift of tongues is NOT for today.

100. WHY PROPHECY, TONGUES and KNOWLEDGE GIFTS CEASED IN THE FIRST CENTURY AD.

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 13:8-13.

Aim: To show that tongues ceased in 70 AD with the destruction of Jerusalem. To show that prophecy and knowledge gifts ceased in 96 AD with the completion of the New Testament.

Introduction: If these three gifts ceased in the first century, then the modern tongues movement is not of God and should be rejected as unbiblical. The following exegesis of I Corinthians 13:8-13, is intended as a springboard to understand how the entire Bible teaching on this subject fits together to show that the purpose of tongues was a warning to Israel, and hence, ceased by 70 AD. It will be shown that prophecy and knowledge gifts were God's temporary means of revelation to the early Church until the completed New Testament had been given. Today, God speaks through His Word, not through some person claiming to give a prophecy from God.

I. TEMPORARY GIFTS of PROPHECY, TONGUES and KNOWLEDGE contrasted with PERMANENT FAITH, HOPE and CHARITY for the CHURCH AGE. 1 Corinthians 13:8-13.

13:8. "Charity never faileth; but whether there be prophecies, **they shall fail** (Greek: Katargethesontai); whether there be tongues, **they shall cease**³⁹⁷³ (Greek: pausontai), whether there be knowledge, **it shall vanish away**" (Greek: Katargethesetai).

Question 1: When does CHARITY (Agape love) stop? Answer: "Charity never faileth" (v.8). This means that love will continue on forever. It is the only one of the 6 phenomena discussed here that continues forever. This means that faith, hope, prophecy, tongues and knowledge all stop, but when?

a) I Corinthians 13:13 tells us "And **now abideth** faith, hope and charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity."

We learn here that faith, hope and charity continue all through the church age.

b) This means that prophecy, tongues and knowledge are not said to continue all through the Church age, but cease sometime before the second coming (rapture) of Christ.

Question 2: When does FAITH stop?

Answer: When Christ returns at the rapture to catch the church up to heaven.

- II Corinthians 5:7 "For we walk by faith, not by sight."

When we get to heaven we will see what we had faith in, so that faith will give way to sight.

- I Peter 1:9 "Receiving the **end**⁵⁰⁵⁶ (Greek: telos) of **your faith**, even the salvation of your souls." This tells us that faith will end when we get to heaven, thus enjoying salvation or deliverance from the presence of sin. "Telos" means "end, result, termination, ultimate fate, completion in respect to time, or fulfilment."

- Hebrews 12:2: "Looking unto Jesus the author and **finisher**⁵⁰⁴⁷(teleiotes) of our **faith**."

Jesus Christ finishes our faith when He returns for us at His second coming, and we "reach our goal" ("teleiotes" in Greek) of heaven with our resurrected, glorified bodies.

Hence faith ends for all church age believers at the second coming of Christ.

Question 3: When does HOPE stop?

Answer: When we get what we are hoping for in heaven. For example, if you are married, you are not hoping to get married because you then possess what you hoped for. Believers are hoping for Christ's second coming (Titus 2:13), and the resurrection of the dead (Acts 23:6). When we have what we hope for, then hope finishes. "Looking for that **blessed hope** and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ." Titus 2:13.

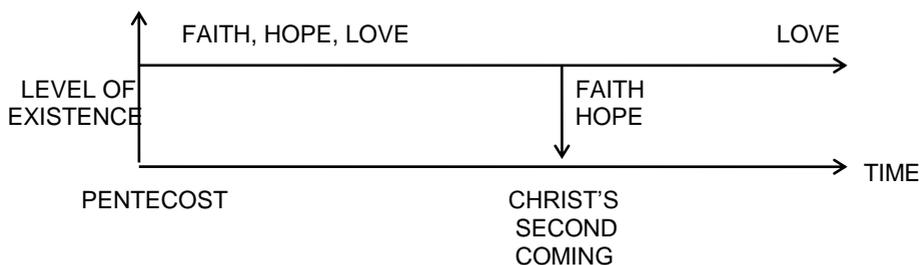
"...of the **hope** and resurrection of the dead am I called in question." Acts 23:6 and Acts 26:6.

"...**hope that is seen is not hope**: for what a man **seeth**, why doth he yet **hope** for?" Romans 8:24.

Hope will only remain until we see Christ and receive our resurrection bodies at His second coming.

Hence hope is valid only until the second coming.

Knowing that love continues forever ("charity never faileth") we can draw the following graph:



Key: Hence faith will be lost in sight; hope will be lost in reality; and love continues for all eternity.
 “And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity.” I Corinth. 13:13.
 Because **only** faith, hope and charity are abiding throughout the church age, these three alone, then prophecy, tongues and knowledge must cease sometime **INSIDE** the church age. The time these (and the other temporary gifts) ceased had to have been before the completion of the New Testament.

Question 4: When do PROPHECY and KNOWLEDGE gifts cease?

Answer: “Whether there be prophecies, **they shall fail** (Greek (2673): Katargethesontai);..... whether there be knowledge, **it shall vanish away** (Greek (2673): Katargethesetai).”

Meaning: “Katargeo” means to render inoperative, to make inactive, to be done away, to supercede, put an end to. With Paul it always denotes a complete cessation, not a temporary or partial ceasing. Every occurrence of “Katargeo” in I Cor. 13:8,10 is in the passive voice, indicating that something shall make prophecy and knowledge inactive.

Question 5: What are prophecy and knowledge?

1. The gift of prophecy in the apostolic church was speaking new revelation from God, to instruct and edify. Prophecy has a secondary meaning of forthtelling God’s Word to teach and comfort the Church. This is Bible teaching of today. Teaching replaced first century prophecy. A person knew, then prophesied. They were twin gifts.
2. The gift of knowledge in the apostolic Church was the ability to understand and know the mind and will of God. It was revealed truth, not learned. It is seeing as the Holy Spirit sees. It was used to teach believers certain doctrines which had not as yet been written as part of the New Testament.eg:

Peter knew who Jesus really was. Matthew 16:17.

Agabus knew and then prophesied about Paul being bound at Jerusalem. Acts 21:10-12.

Paul knew the demonised damsel’s message to be false. Acts 16:18.

Such knowledge, like prophecy, was as authoritative as the scriptures in the early church.

Each of these gifts can refer to either:

- a) an **action** - the exercising of the gifts in the church where he prophesies or gives a word of knowledge.
 - b) **content** - in Matthew 13:14,15 Christ quotes what Isaiah said 750 years earlier, which was now part of Scripture. When prophecy or knowledge became codified as scripture, they stood alone, no longer as the “act” of prophecy and knowledge, but as the “content” of prophecy and knowledge, now become written scripture.
3. The gift of tongues (or unlearned languages), was similar yet inferior to prophecy and knowledge in that the tongues speaker needed to be translated. Paul said in I Corinthians 14:18,19 “Yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, that by my voice I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an unknown tongue.”
 Speaking in a tongue and having it translated only allows the speaker to say half as much in a given time, as could a prophecy or word of knowledge in the common tongue. Tongues were cumbersome verbage. Prophecy, tongues and knowledge form the subject of I Corinthian 13:8-13. Something is going to happen to each of them. None of them are to abide during the Church age, as will faith, hope and love. They are transient gifts.

13:8 “Whether there be tongues, **they shall cease** ³⁹⁷³” (Greek (3973): pausontai).

Here “pausontai is used in an absolute sense, to cease, to come to an end.”

[“The Complete N.T. Word Study Dictionary”, S. Zhodiatas, p.1132.]

“Pausontai” is in the middle voice, indicative mood, meaning that the action of ceasing will come from within, rather than from outside.

“Cease” means that tongues would fulfil their function (of warning Jews of coming Judgment), and render themselves obsolete, unneeded, ended. Literally it means “tongues shall make themselves to cease, or automatically cease of themselves.” [A.T. Robertson Vol.IV, p.179.]

13:9 “For we know in part, and we prophecy in part.” Since v.9 omits tongues, it would appear that tongues would cease before the removal of prophecy and knowledge. “In part” defines quantity, and the word “perfect” meaning “complete” is the opposite to “in part.”

Knowledge of doctrine in the pre-canon period of the Church Age was fragmentary. The 14 mystery doctrines of this dispensation had not yet been completely given in New Testament Scripture. They could only teach from the Old Testament and by direct revelation from God via prophecy and knowledge. They knew in part, and consequently, they prophesied in part.

13:10 “But when **that** which is perfect (Greek: “teleion” meaning complete) is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.” (Greek: “Katargetheseta” meaning to render inoperative).

Prophecy and knowledge, both being “in part”, will be done away with when the perfect shall come.

Question 6: When does the PERFECT come?

- a) If it is the second coming of Christ, then prophecy, tongues and knowledge are allowable today.
- b) If it is the completed New Testament Scriptures of 96 AD then prophecy, tongues and knowledge have all ceased in the first century and are not for today.

Question 7: To answer Question 6, we must ask another question: What is ‘that which is perfect?’

Answer: Several opinions are:

1. Jesus Christ at His second coming.
2. The perfected state of the believer at Christ’s return.
3. After the millennium in the new **heaven** and new **earth**.
4. The completed New Testament Scriptures.

II. 12 REASONS WHY THE “PERFECT” IN V.10 REFERS TO THE COMPLETED NEW TESTAMENT SCRIPTURES:

1. “When that (Greek: To Teleion) which is **perfect** is come.”
The pronoun “THAT” in Greek, describing the perfect, is neuter.
Christ however is masculine, not neuter, so “that which is perfect” cannot refer to Christ or His return. The Bible is neuter. This fits the context perfectly.
2. “**Perfect**” in Greek means “**complete, finished**”. The N.T. by 96 AD was completed and finished as God’s revelation for this Church age. The completed N.T. canon of Scripture would serve the same purpose that prophecy, tongues, knowledge, apostleship, healing, miracles and other temporary spiritual gifts had once performed. Christ is never called the complete or finished one.
3. “Perfect” cannot mean Christ’s return, because Christ’s second coming is foreign to the context of I Corinthians 12,13,14 being mentioned nowhere in these 3 chapters. The subject of I Corinthians 12,13,14 is spiritual gifts to the church in the church age. To extend prophecy, tongues and knowledge into the millenium or after the millenium is to miss the focus and context of the passage.
4. **James 1:25 describes the perfect as the Bible, the perfect law of liberty.**
The meaning of “perfect” in scripture can be determined by it’s use in other passages of scripture. “Teleion”, the “perfect” or “completed” was already in the New Testament when Paul wrote. James had already referred to the Word of God as the “**perfect law of liberty**” in James 1:25.
“But be ye doers of the **word**, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.” James 1:22.

“But whoso looketh into the **perfect law of liberty**, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.” James 1:25.

“Perfect” in James 1:25 in Greek is “teleion” the same as “perfect” in 1 Corinthians 13:10. In James 1:25 “perfect” clearly refers to the soon to be completed Bible, and this must be the same meaning in I Corinthians 13:10.

In James 1:22-25 the perfect law of liberty is the Bible.

Therefore, in I Corinthians 13:10 the perfect is the Bible.

Key Question: If James 1:22-25 says, **Perfect** (v.25) = **Mirror** (v.23,24) = **Bible** (v.22,23,25) then what is “perfect” in I Corinthians 13:8-13, **Perfect** (v.10) = **Mirror** (v.12) = ?

5. **James 1:23** and **1 Corinthians 13:12** both describe the Bible as a **mirror/glass** that we see our **reflection** in.

“For if any be a hearer of the **word**, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a **glass**.” James 1:23.

“For now we see through a **glass** darkly; but then the perfect, completed Bible has come) face to face.” 1 Corinthians 13:12.

As we look into a **mirror** to see the true **physical** condition of **our face**,

so we look into the **Bible** as a mirror to see the true **spiritual** condition of our heart and life.

Some people look into a mirror and forget their physical appearance.

Some people look into the Bible mirror and forget their spiritual appearance.

Therefore, GLASS MIRROR = PERFECT = the WORD OF GOD.

Therefore, 1 Corinthians 13:12 describes the “perfect” as a glass mirror, just as James 1:23 does.

6. **2 Corinthians 3:18** also shows the **glass**, and hence the perfect to be the **Word of God**, which transforms us.

“But we all, with open face beholding as in a **glass** the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.”

The mirror/glass is a symbol of the Word of God. (James 1:22,25).

As we look into God’s Word and we see Jesus Christ, the Holy Spirit transforms us into the very image of Jesus Christ. “**We all**” means all believers, seeing in the Bible/glass, the glory of the Lord. “**Open face**” means that we can hide nothing from God; We must be open and honest with Him.

We can be conformed to the image of Jesus Christ (“He also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of His Son....”. Romans 8:29) and go from glory to glory, by the Holy Spirit changing us as we saturate ourselves in the Word of God.

“are **changed** (**Greek:** metamorphoumetha) into the same image from glory to glory.”

The Greek word “changed” gives us the word “metamorphosis” which describes the process of an insect changing from an ugly worm into a mature beautiful butterfly. The changes come from within. So it is when we meditate on God’s Word and in it see Jesus Christ, then the Holy Spirit transforms us into the image of Jesus Christ.

In the Bible we see the glory of Christ and are changed into His image.

13:12. “For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part;....”

In I Corinthians 13:12, only a few New Testament books were completed. The glory of the Lord revealed in the word was not complete. First century believers could neither see Christ, nor themselves, in the full light of God’s revelation. They could only see darkly or dimly. However with the completion of Scripture, not only would the glory of Christ be revealed in greater fullness, but so would the believer’s own reflection become clearer. Why? Because the believer after 96 AD has more Scripture to transform him into Christ’s image. The “perfect” is the **opposite** of that which is “**in part**.” Paul viewed his own writings as Scripture (1 Thessalonians 2:13). He knew that new revelation was being given and that one day it would cease. In the same way that God had completed the Old Testament, God would also complete the New Testament. Paul’s use of the phrases “we know **in part** and we prophesy in **part**” (13:9) show that he is dealing with a partially completed Bible that was being added to by the Apostle’s revelations from God.

7. The **Second Coming** is never called “perfect” in the New Testament, but the **Bible** is called the perfect law of liberty in James 1:25. ‘The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul.’ Psalm 19:7
8. The **completed New Testament fulfilled the same job** as did the temporary gifts of **prophecy** and **knowledge**. Once prophecy and knowledge were codified (written down) as the New Testament, then prophecy and knowledge ceased. ie. New revelation of prophecy and knowledge ceased when the full N.T. revelation for this age was completed.
9. **Christ’s second coming** is **neither complete nor morally perfect**. In the millennium, the sinner will die 100 years old (Isaiah 65:20). The millennium ends with satan’s release from the pit and some nations rebelling to attack Christ at Jerusalem. This is not a perfect or complete situation at all.
10. **Faith** and **Hope finish at the second coming** (13:13).

Therefore, prophecy, knowledge and tongues, each **not abiding** during the church age, **must end well before faith and hope ends** (compare 1 Corinthians 13:8 with 1 Corinthians 13:13).

Prophecy, knowledge and tongues end well before the second coming.

Prophecy and knowledge end by the coming of the perfect, completed Word of God in 96 AD.

Tongues ended by 70 AD, with Titus destroying Jerusalem and the judgment predicted coming on the Jews for rejecting Christ’s gospel. You don’t warn people after the punishment has fallen.

11. The **completed Bible** is **able to make believers complete** by giving us all things that pertain to **life and godliness**. (II Peter 1:3,4). We don’t need new revelation.

“According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto **life and godliness**, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory (in heaven) and virtue (now on earth). Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious **promises** (in the perfect Bible) that by these ye might be partakers of the **divine nature** (changed from glory to glory).” II Peter 1:3,4.

This is obtained through:

- 1) the knowledge of Christ found in the Bible, and
- 2) by claiming the exceeding great and precious promises in the Bible.

Everything that we need today for life and Godliness to make us mature, completely equipped Christians is found in the Bible. Hence, the Bible is appropriately called the “complete Completer” for us today, the exact meaning of “teleion” in I Corinthians 13:10.

12. The **completed Bible** (all Scripture) **can make the man of God “perfect”** (Greek: “artios”⁷³⁹) meaning “complete, sufficient, completely qualified; a synonym of “teleion”, thoroughly furnished unto **all good works**.” II Timothy 3:16,17.

Here again, “all Scripture” making the man of God perfect, supports “perfect” in I Corinthians 13:10 as meaning the Bible, and not the second coming of Christ. Therefore, when the perfected, completed Bible comes, then the “in part” prophecy and knowledge shall be done away. This happened in 96AD when John finished writing Revelation 22:21.

Question 8: Why is tongues not mentioned in I Corinthians 13:9,10 as being done away with by the perfect?

Answer: It is because **tongues had already ceased in 70 AD** with the destruction of Jerusalem, being the judgment on the Jews that tongues pointed to (I Corinthians 14:21,22). After 70 AD, there was no more purpose for tongues, so the tongues gift ceased forever by 70 AD. Tongues were not in existence to be done away with by “the perfect.” Tongues had ceased 26 years earlier.

Those who think that the “perfect” is Christ’s return and reject it as meaning the completed New Testament Scripture, do so because:

1. They **have not studied every word, phrase, or verse** of I Corinthians 13 in its context, **or**
2. They are **mentally influenced by someone** with leaning towards Pentecostalism, **or**
3. They are influenced by **some interdenominational teacher** whose decision about this scripture is non-committal so as to retain his popularity with both charismatic and non charismatic groups.
4. **No scripture** is ever produced in proof that the Holy Spirit did **not** mean the complete N. Testament. If knowledge ended at Christ’s return, and if knowledge meant normal knowledge, then all Christians would be imbeciles in heaven.

Note: It is not good to say that God spoke to you and told you to do something, because if you are wrong, you lose your credibility. Instead, say “I felt led or burdened by the Lord to.....”.

13:11 ‘When I was a child, I spake as a child (tongues), I understood as a child (knowledge), I thought as a child (prophecy is verbalised thoughts): but when I became a man, I put away childish things.’

Question 9: What have childish things got to do with temporary gifts of prophecy, tongues and knowledge?

Answer: Paul is comparing a **human** advancing from childhood to adulthood, with the **church** passing from infancy in the first century marked by prophecy, tongues and knowledge gifts, to maturity marked by believers depending on the Bible, faith, hope and charity from 96 AD to the rapture. By 96 AD the childish gifts of prophecy, tongues and knowledge had ceased, and church manhood had been reached. So Paul used **2 illustrations** to show the passing of prophecy, tongues and knowledge, and the permanence of the completed Bible, along with faith, hope and charity for the church age:

a) A **person** growing from **childhood** to **adulthood** and putting away the childish temporary things of prophecy, tongues and knowledge in I Corinthians 13:11.

Paul is here saying to the Corinthian believers “put away the childish things of prophecy, tongues, and knowledge, because manhood will soon be reached.”

In the first century, a boy was recognised as a mature man when he got married, left his parents home and established his own home.

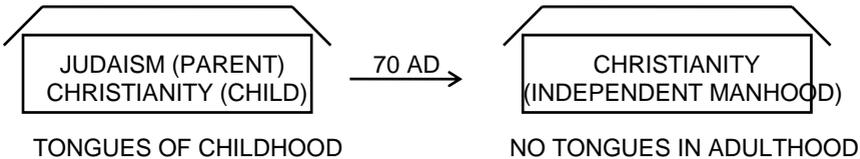
In the first century, Judaism was regarded as the parent religion, where Christianity (the child) resided. The early Christians enjoyed the protection of Judaism as an officially recognised religion. Christianity seemed like another Jewish sect.

Sulpicius Severus in discussing Titus’ destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD, states that:

“Titus formed the deliberate purpose to destroy Christianity and Judaism in one blow, believing that if the Jewish root were torn up the Christian branch would soon perish”. [F. Farrar “The Early Days of Christianity” p.326.]

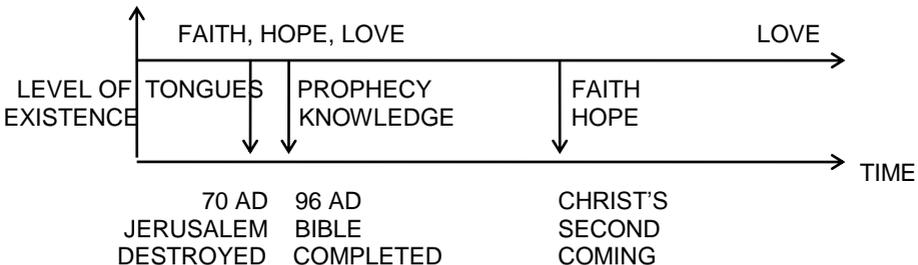
Judaism was the parent/home religion and Christianity was the child religion. But with the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD, the church moved out of its childhood home. It became a separate, independent, distinct religion, able to grow without the Jewish temple and without the protective umbrella of the Jewish religious system. Christianity had left the Jewish parents home and had reached manhood. It had left childhood behind.

This was another reason for putting away the childish things of tongues.



In Revelation 22:18,19 God finished prophecy and knowledge revelations by giving us the completed Bible with a warning against new prophecies. There would be no more partial revelations given by prophecies or knowledge. They had forever been superseded by a completed Bible.

Tongues ceased in 70 AD, prophecy and knowledge ceased in 96 AD. This graph summarizes it:



When Paul wrote I Corinthians 12,13,14 around 55AD, the infant church was still a child in its childhood home. Tongues still had a purpose. No one then was to forbid speaking in tongues. However, after Jerusalem's destruction in 70AD genuine tongues ceased, never to be heard again from the lips of the matured church (13:11).

With **manhood** reached by 96AD, heralded by complete/perfect **knowledge** in the Bible ("understanding" in 13:11) and complete/perfect **prophecy** codified in the Bible ("thought" in 13:11), childish things of prophecy, tongues and knowledge were forever put away. To revert to these would be a tragedy, a breakdown in manhood, and a pathetic **regression to infancy**. Tongues are not for the church today, because they ceased in 70 AD. Church history agrees with this. C.L. Rogers analyses the writings of Irenaeus, Tertullian, Origen, Chrysostom, Justin Martyr from 100-400 AD from every area of the Roman Empire and states that: "the miraculous gifts of the first century died out and were no longer needed to establish Christianity." (p.143).

Language is the verbalising of one's thoughts and denotes one's level of understanding. Tongues in the early church, were thus like infancy childish language to a man.

When we hear a baby speaking childish language, we think it is cute and normal. However, when a full grown man reverts to baby talk because of some mental breakdown, we think it is a pathetic disability, horrible and to be pitied. This is because men are expected to have "put away childish things." **What is normal in infancy is abnormal in adulthood.**

So, also for the Church to revert to tongues, is to revert to babyhood. Paul at that early date (55AD) is telling the Corinthians to recognise tongues as a passing phenomena. The time was fast approaching when they would have to grow up, put away their tongues babytalk and become full grown men, living by faith, hope and love as taught in the perfect/completed Bible.

b) Looking into a **mirror** of the Bible to see one's true spiritual condition.

"For **now** (55AD) we see through a glass (mirror) darkly; but **then** (96AD) face to face: **now** (55AD) I know in part; but **then** (96AD) shall I know even as also I am known." I Corinthians 13:12. An expanded explanation of this would be:

"For **now** (55AD) we **see** (prophecy as a temporary gift) through a **mirror** (a partly given New Testament) **darkly** (a blurred image, partial revelation by prophecy and an incomplete New Testament); but **then** (96AD when the full New Testament is given) **face to face** (we see ourselves clearly in the completed New Testament, as we see our true physical condition in a perfectly reflecting mirror): **now** (55AD at the time of writing) **I know** (I have the temporary gift of knowledge) **in part** (only part of the New Testament was given, along with the gift of knowledge only gave a partial view of God's full New Testament revelation due to be completed by 96AD); but **then** (96AD when the full New Testament would be given) shall I **know** (I will have the full **New Testament** revelation intended by God to equip me for the ministry, for a holy life, and for godliness (II Peter 1:3,4) even as also **I am known.**"

With the completion of Scripture, there was a completion of the **portrait of Christ** that reflected His glory. What was "dim or dark" at the writing of I Corinthians 13:12 (at 55AD) became **clear** at the completion of scripture in 96AD, so that believers could see the Lord and their own changing likeness to Him "face to face."

In **13:12** Paul compares the New Testament Church without a complete New Testament to a person looking into a polished metal mirror giving a blurred reflection. All they had was the partial revelation of prophecy, tongues and knowledge to tide the church over until they received the full New Testament in 96AD. This only gave them an imperfect understanding of divine truths, like a blurred mirror reflection.

"But **then face to face**" refers to the time when the full New Testament would be available to allow accurate and full understanding of spiritual truths for this age.

- "Then shall I know **even as also I am known.**"

- When the full, complete finished New Testament is available for personal study (96 AD) then shall I know the necessary spiritual truths for living a godly life in the church age now **as well as God knows and reveals my true spiritual condition through His Word**, the completed Bible.

This is not talking about knowing Christ face to face in heaven or knowing as much as God knows, because this would require us to have the infinite knowledge of God in heaven. We will never be as all knowing (omniscient) as God.

Literally: “Then shall I know (God’s mind about every situation of life), even also as I am known (by God about every situation and problem that I may encounter in life).”

That is, the Bible has the answer to every situation of life. How true.

13:13. “And now abideth faith, hope, charity, **these three**, but the greatest of these is charity.”

At the time of writing (55 AD), only faith, hope and charity were continuing during the church age to the rapture. “**These three**” emphasises that it is only faith, hope and charity that will abide. Prophecy, tongues and knowledge are excluded as not abiding, and hence ceased in the church age by 96 AD.

Today, we have the apostles and prophets with us only in the sense that we have their New Testament writings which are still their prophecies. They laid and finished the New Testament foundation. Ephesians 4:11 lists three of the gifts that will be with us until Christ’s return: evangelists, pastors and teachers. For these three types of men, there are 3 qualities to be displayed: faith, hope and love, as shown in I Thessalonians 1:3 “Remembering without ceasing your work of **faith**, and labour of **love**, and patience of **hope**....”

Faith, Hope and Charity as Triplets elsewhere:

Another key proof that prophecy, tongues and knowledge are finished by 96 AD, and are not for today is that we often see **faith, hope and charity** mentioned as triplets being all that we need for a God-pleasing Christian life. Note the **absence of prophecy, tongues and knowledge** in these passages, showing that **they are not needed today**.

1. I Corinthians 13:13 “And now abideth **faith, hope, charity**, these three.”
2. Galatians 5:5,6 “...the **hope** of righteousness by **faith**. ...faith which worketh by **love**.”
3. Ephesians 1:15,18 “I heard of your **faith** in the Lord Jesus, and of the **love** unto all the saints,...that ye may know the **hope** of his calling...”
4. Colossians 1:4,5 “Since we heard of your **faith** in Christ Jesus, and of the **love** which ye have to all the saints, for the **hope** which is laid up for you in heaven, whereof ye heard before in the word of the **truth** (perfect Bible) of the gospel.”
5. I Thessalonians 1:3 “Remembering without ceasing your work of **faith**, and labour of **love**, and patience of **hope** in our Lord Jesus Christ.”
6. I Thessalonians 5:8 “But let us who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of **faith** and **love**; and for an helmet, the **hope** of salvation.”
7. I Timothy 1:1,2,5 “Lord Jesus Christ which is our **hope**; unto Timothy, my own son in the **faith**: Now the end of the commandments is **charity** out of a pure heart...”
8. I Peter 1:21,22 “that your **faith** and **hope** might be in God. Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the **truth** (perfect Bible) through the Spirit unto unfeigned **love** of the brethren, see that ye **love**...”

Conclusion: All we need is **FAITH, HOPE** and **LOVE** to live pleasing to God. Eight times it is repeated. You don’t need a prophecy, tongue or word of knowledge. They are not mentioned. So drop prophecy, tongues and knowledge, and build up ourselves in faith, hope and love.

II. FURTHER QUESTIONS.

Question 10: Why would God allow Dedicated Christians to experience the sign and revelatory gifts if they are not from Him?

Many evangelical churches have lapsed into cold, lifeless formalism. They may be doctrinally right, but they have lost their fervent love and zeal for God. If a charismatic church has a high regard for the Bible, prayer, soul winning zeal and a willingness to attempt great things for God, then this fills a void left by dead Churches. Among these good things there resides a deceiving cancer that undermines the good that is being done. This cancer is the matter of new revelations from God of tongues, prophecy, words of knowledge, visions or dreams.

Neil Babcox, a former charismatic pastor left the charismatic church because of this issue. He says, "When a prophet said "Thus saith the Lord", he meant that the very Word of God was being proclaimed with infallibility, purity and divine authority. The prophecies that I had spoken and heard others speak paled and diminished to the point of nothingness compare with the Bible.

Ezekiel protested, "Thus saith the Lord God, "Woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing!" Ezekiel 13:3.

Isn't that what we were - "prophets who had seen nothing?"

When the genuine prophets of God spoke, they spoke with certainty regarding every word. This finds no parallel today. The Bible's prophets knew with 100% certainty that they were speaking the very words of God.

"The spirit entered into me when he spake unto me, and set me upon my feet, that I heard him that spake unto me." Ezekiel 2:2.

Many who prophesy and claim to speak new revelations from God today know in their own hearts that they don't have the certainty of the Bible prophets, yet they continue to speak "new" revelations.

"Then the Lord said unto me, The prophets prophesy lies in my name: I sent them not, neither have I commanded them, neither spake unto them: they prophesy unto you a false vision and divination and a thing of nought, and the deceit of their heart." Jeremiah 14:14.

"I have heard what the prophets said, that prophesy lies in my name....they are prophets of the deceit of their own heart. ...I will even punish that man and his house." Jeremiah 23:25,26,34.

"they ...have spoken lying words in my name, which I have not commanded them." Jeremiah 29:23.

"Because Shemaiah hath prophesied unto you, and I sent him not, I will punish Shemaiah." Jer.29:31,32

"The prophets prophesy falsely, ...and my people love to have it so..." Jeremiah 5:31.

It is serious error to claim to speak new revelation from God, given the deception of Mormon prophecy. This emphasis on new revelation undermines the authority of Scripture. Dave Hunt rebukes the positive and possibility thinking of Paul Yonggi Cho and Robert Schuller with their occultish visualisation techniques, temptation to power and deification of man which is invading the church.

Charismatics teach that a proper understanding of Scripture does not come through correct **interpretation**, but through **revelation** (only to certain leaders), and that these new revelations **supplement the Bible**, and **that these must be accepted as a "great move of God."**

- Charismatics often say: "...we have revelation knowledge as God continues to speak to His people." This sounds really spiritual, but it is adding to Scripture. Because the Scriptures are perfect, we cannot add to them.
- John Wimber states: "rational control (of the mind) must be forfeited for tongues speaking to occur, for ecstatic worship, for messages from God to be received directly into the mind, and for miraculous healings to happen."
- Charismatics Kenneth Copeland and Kenneth Hagin's heresies were exposed in "The Agony of Deceit." Kenneth Copeland claimed that Jesus spoke new revelation to him, saying: "Jesus did not come to earth as God, but only as a man; Jesus never claimed to be God during his earthly ministry."
- John White, a famous author, claims that Jesus Christ personally appeared to him on three occasions to give new revelation that would become part of Scripture.

Question 11: Why would God allow dedicated Christians to experience and give in to influences that are not from Him?

Answer: Every moment of his life, the Christian must battle spiritually with the world, the flesh and the devil. This is part of the maturing process. All believers are tempted with pride, worry, fear, sin and disobedience. Does God allow believers to sin? Yes, of course.

“Blessed is the man that endureth temptation, for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.” James 1:12.

The Lord allows us to test every experience by Scripture, or to go by our feelings. God will allow us to be tempted in all forms. This includes the temptation to depart from Scripture by believing false revelations. Signs and wonders can have sources other than God (Deuteronomy 13:1-5; II Thessalonians 2:9,10; Revelation 13:13,14; Matthew 24:24).

Jesus warns four times of deception at the end of the Church age in Matthew 24.

If a Christian swaps the **sword of the Spirit**, and takes up **feelings** or **human reasoning**, he opens himself up to satan’s deception.

Many Christians in dead churches know very little scripture. In daily struggles with sin and temptation, believers are most vulnerable to the attraction of false instant spirituality. Rather than live by the Word of God for victory, one may seek the apparent short cut of tongues, prophecy, power evangelism, healing, etc as the answer to his problems.

Charismatic leaders who criticise Bible teachers who urge careful study of the Bible, are hence criticising the legitimate spiritual gift of teaching. They urge charismatics to follow them without questioning their interpretation. They oppose non-charismatics by asking: “Who did God use, the educated Pharisees or the simple apostles?” They thus forget II Timothy 2:15,

“**Study** to show thyself approved unto God...rightly dividing the word of truth.”

Along the way we all have difficult times, as seen by Elijah under the Juniper tree (I Kings 19:4,5), David fleeing from Saul, Paul’s beatings, etc. Don’t seek a quick fix to gain instant spirituality. The devil offered Jesus a short cut to earth’s kingdoms by avoiding the cross. The devil will offer us many short cuts seeming to easily solve our problems. We must stick to the basics: study the Word, pray, confess sin, yield to Christ, abide in Christ, and take up the cross daily. These require work, watching and warfare. Don’t swap the Word of God for an experience.

The main damaging side effect of charismaticism is the welcoming and accepting of heretics, apostates, nominal Christians and Roman Catholics into the Church. A person can pray to Mary, then speak in tongues, thus being accepted into many charismatic fellowships. Charismatics emphasise unity at the expense of doctrine.

Question 12: Why would God allow dedicated Christians to continue in error and deception to their hurt or spiritual detriment?

Answer: I Kings 13 reveals that even a dedicated and fearless prophet of God must suffer the consequences when he chooses deception over the clear revelation of God.

An unnamed man of God (v.1) was sent to Bethel “by the Word of the Lord” to prophesy against King Jeroboam and his idolatry (v.1-3). When the King tried to arrest the prophet, the King’s hand withered (v.4,5). He begged the man of God to intercede to God to restore his hand. (v.6). The man of God showed mercy, prayed to God and Jeroboam’s hand was restored. Then King Jeroboam offered him a reward (v.7) but the man of God refused (v.3-10).

Why? He refused to stop for food because the clear revelation of God forbid him from receiving food or drink or retracing his steps (v.9). So far he had walked in complete obedience to the Word of God. He had passed the tests of:

1. **Fear** because he had boldly carried out his job of proclaiming God’s Word to the King.
2. **Compassion/Mercy**. He had not allowed the King’s threats to dry up his mercy. He willingly, lovingly prayed for Jeroboam’s hand to be restored without revenge.
3. The test of **faithfulness to God** over human favour had been overcome, because he turned down the King’s offer of hospitality and reward .
4. The test of **deception**, was the final test which he sadly failed.

Why? God had clearly told him not to receive hospitality, but he rejected the clear revelation of the Word of God for a new revelation, and it cost him his life.

There was an old prophet living nearby who heard about his faithful stand. The old prophet had lived in compromise at Bethel and invited the man of God home to dine with him (v.11-15).

The man of God refused saying that he was under strict orders from God not to eat, drink or retrace his steps (v.16.17). The old prophet replied in v.18,

“I am a prophet also as thou art; and an angel spake unto me by the word of the Lord, saying, bring him back with thee into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water. But **he lied** unto him.”

Why did he lie? We are not told.

a) Maybe he was **envious** at seeing a true prophet faithfully discharge his duties, when he had lived in compromise.

b) Maybe he **resented** the man of God and had a **convicted conscience**.

The old prophet claimed a new revelation from God. The man of God had to decide:

a) Would he accept at face value the new revelation, or

b) Would he continue to cling to God’s previous revelation?

Sadly, the once fearless and faithful prophet succumbed to deception. God allowed this to happen to a dedicated man of God. Why? Because in our pilgrimage on earth, there will always be the choice to follow the clear teaching of God’s Word, or to replace it with the shallow promises, prophecies and deceptions of man.

The man of God retraced his steps back to the home of the old prophet and ate with him (v.19). Over the meal, the old prophet revealed that because the man of God had disobeyed the Word of God, he would die (v.20-22).

And that is exactly what happened (v.23-26) because a lion slew him in the way.

From this we see that if God allowed a dedicated prophet of God to choose between the clear teaching of the Lord and deception, surely the Lord will let us have this choice today. Many Christians suffer poor spiritual lives because they give up the Word of God, and embrace teachers who prophesy or give new revelations of their own spirit.

Question 13: But why doesn’t God step in and chasten His children to woo them back to obedience? (Hebrews 12).

Answer: The Holy Spirit and the Word of God continually call the believer to faithfulness and obedience (Phil. 2:12,13). Deception and impoverishment are the bitter fruits of turning away from the Word of God. Sometimes God will allow His children to remain deceived as a chastisement until they turn again in submission to the Word of God. Their salvation in Christ is secure through Christ’s blood sacrifice. They may serve the Lord faithfully in other areas and even be used successfully by God, but they will miss God’s best blessings on earth and they will lose rewards in heaven.

God will allow believers to choose whether to glorify Christ through submission and obeying scripture or to rebel. For dedicated servants of God who put aside the clear revelation of God and embrace new revelations, in this life they will be deceived and impoverished, and in the next life they will suffer loss of rewards at the judgment seat of Christ (II Corinthians 5:10).

Examples of charismatic deception are tongues, false healings, new revelations, words of knowledge spoken about other people, slaying in the “spirit”, “Toronto” experience, etc. Consider two examples:

Slaying People in the Spirit is a Charismatic invention whereby hands are laid on a person’s head and they lose consciousness, causing them to fall backwards onto the floor. **THIS IS NOT IN THE BIBLE**, so forget it. Laying hands on people is well known in the occult as a means of transferring demons. It is more likely demonically influenced and all the more reason why we should avoid this movement.

Surrender of Mind and Emotions to Group Pressure. On entering a Charismatic meeting, we meet many people dancing, throwing arms in the air, speaking in tongues, on an emotional high and appearing very happy. The average Christian realises that he is not always like this, nor is the church from which he has come (which is made to appear dead and lifeless in comparison). He and his church are made to feel inferior and below what God expects. He has always had thoughts that his Christian life hasn’t always been as good as it ought to have been. He immediately concludes that these people have a one-shot-sure-fire-answer to spirituality when they ask him if he has been baptised in the Holy

Spirit or spoken in tongues. If he is not careful, he will assume that these people are right, without studying the Bible or without praying the issue through. He may then agree to speak in tongues (gibberish), which makes the Charismatics very happy. He feels much love, acceptance and unity as a result, all because of an experience that he has had. He then begins his Christian life by making his experience the authority on which he determines spiritual truth, and not the Bible. He then defends his decision logically by saying what wonderful love and unity these people have and “power” (false albeit). He asks, “how can they be wrong when they show such qualities?”

Why do charismatics succeed so much?

- i) Because most churches are DEAD and show no spiritual life, no one ever gets saved and nothing miraculous ever happens.
- ii) The Bible teaching on this issue is not taught.
- iii) People equate emotional show and bubblyness with spirituality.
- iv) Everyone would like an instant formula for spiritual success in the Christian life. Tongues is easy.
- v) People are lazy. They find it easier to believe what they are told, especially by “happy, persuasive people”, than to study and search the Bible for themselves.
- vi) It looks as if all churches are uniting by tongues speaking and this is, on the surface seen to be a good thing, yet it ignores Bible doctrine. People are told to hold hands, form a circle, and this show of “love” causes many well-meaning Christians to sacrifice dearly held essential Bible truths for which our ancestors died, and to unite with error. This is just what Rome wants to bring us all back to the “Mother of Harlots” and form the Super-church of Revelation 17, which will be destroyed by the antichrist that she brings to power.

Question 14: If sign and revelatory gifts are not for today, and are not from God, why do they produce apparently good effects in believers lives?

Step 1. Many Charismatics claim to be enriched by speaking in tongues, making prophecies, words of knowledge, casting out demons and sign gifts, etc. They may have a greater interest in the Bible, prayer and witnessing. How could such positive results not be from God?

Step 2. Any military strategist knows that an enemy will often give up ground in order to gain a greater victory (Israel defeated Ai with this tactic. Joshua 8:15-21). Satan is not afraid of prayer, Bible study or bold witness that is contrary to the Word of God, especially when it promotes error and advances his own kingdom. Satan does strongly oppose genuine prayer, Bible study and gospel preaching when it is done Biblically and in the filling of the Holy Spirit. Satan is happy to pull back opposition to Bible study, prayer and witness, if he can woo the believer away from Bible decision-making and into experiential decision-making (which is Satan’s greater sought-after victory).

Step 3. If a believer moves into experiential decision making, Satan can withdraw his opposition to Bible study, prayer and witness. The believer then attributes his advancement in prayer, Bible study and witness to his new tongues experience. This serves to lure the believer deeper into his experiential decision making, and hence further away from 100% Bible authority only. Hence, by giving some ground, Satan leads believers into greater deception. The believer thus more strongly clings to non Biblical experiences.

Step 4. The believer who accepts sign and revelatory gifts is replacing Biblical authority with experiential authorities. Interpretation of verses becomes heavily weighted towards vindicating his experiences.

Step 5. People are genuinely saved, they in turn accept the signs and wonders message, and the deception grows. The basis for Christian fellowship is no longer the Bible, but a common experience such as tongues. That is why Roman Catholics, liberal protestants, some evangelicals and heretics unite in ecumenical charismatic fellowship. Tongues causes divisions in churches, just as it did at the Tower of Babel.

Many Charismatics are not completely sure that their prophecies are from the Lord. Many are troubled at healings that relapse. Many Charismatics say that they are Spirit-filled yet live inconsistent lives.

Satan’s contest in Eden was to steal Adam’s loyalty away from the Word of God (“Yea, hath God said?”) and for him to live independent of God and His Word.

Question 15: Do Christians know when they are being mislead?

Answer: No, not always. In Matthew 16:21-23, Peter in expressing his love for Christ, was deceived by Satan in trying to stop Christ from going to the cross. Jesus looked past Peter's love and saw Satan leading Peter away from the revealed will of God. **Note:**

- 1) With the **heart** one receives or trusts Christ for salvation.
- 2) With the **will** one obeys Christ.
- 3) With the **mind** one abides in Christ.

Heart means: Intellect, will, affections, loyalties. **Will** means: Action, commitment.

- Many Christians spend hours in Christian bookshops looking for a book to give them the secret of victorious living. If they can't find the power of God in a book, they will seek it in an experience.
- The goal of the Christian life is to remain Spirit filled, to find the will of God and do it.

Question 16: Are there any Biblical examples of Satan giving up spiritual ground in order to gain spiritual advantages?

Answer:

- 1) Satan offered Christ the world's kingdoms in exchange for Christ's worship. Matthew 4:8-10.
- 2) The demonized damsel proclaimed that Paul's team were servants of the Most High God who showed the way of salvation. Acts 16:16-18. Why? So the gospel would be associated with the occult. Many churches have changed from being a lighthouse to a weather vane. Instead of lighting the way in the darkness, many churches merely turn with whatever fashion or worldly wind blows at the time. Our Lord Jesus Christ is to take pre-eminence in all things. The Holy Spirit's job is to reveal and exalt Jesus Christ. The problem of powerless Christians is due to believers failing to surrender totally to the lordship of Jesus Christ.

Living the Christian life is described by: "Warfare", "fight", "run the race", "yield not", "work out", and "press towards." The Christian life is a disciplined life of constant vigilance and taking up the cross daily. There are no short cuts to instant spirituality.

Roman Catholic charismatics have greater zeal for Mary, Mass, the Papacy, and praying to saints etc. If Satan can achieve this, he will stop opposing Charismatic churches so that apparent growth occurs.

Question 17: If the sign and revelatory gifts today are not from God, why are Charismatic churches the fastest growing churches in the world?

Answer:

1. Much Charismatic growth is by attracting Christians from **other churches**. Because many Charismatic churches place **little emphasis on sound doctrine**, this breeds an atmosphere of **acceptance**, which assists numerical growth. If you never rebuke sin, have worldly attractions, and give people everything they want, you'll see growth, but you won't please God. Charismaticism weakens churches that are committed to the fundamentals of the faith, while it energises ecumenical liberal, worldly churches.
2. **Numerical growth does not equal God's stamp of approval. Mormons, Jehovah Witnesses** and cults can boast amazing growth statistics, yet their beliefs are very unbiblical. What about growth of Charismatic churches that hold to the fundamentals of the faith? Jesus' parables of the wheat and tares (Matthew 13:24-30; 36-43), mustard seed (13:31,32), and the leaven (13:33) all predict outward growth in Christendom, but this growth would be accompanied by growth in evil influences (leaven, birds) from within. Numerical growth does not mean that God approves all a church's doctrines. Numerical growth, even by true conversions can occur amidst false doctrine. eg. The Corinthian church grew rapidly, even though it had many false doctrines and sins. Many churches claim to be evangelical, but challenge them on:
 - 1) The 100% inerrancy of Scripture.
 - 2) The historical, literal accuracy of Genesis 1-11.
 - 3) The factual nature of Jonah being swallowed by a whale.
 - 4) The scientific accuracy of a literal 6 day creation week, and they prove to disbelieve the Bible.

Christ prayed that the Father would sanctify believers through His **Word** (John 17:17), before he prayed that believers would be **one** (John 17:21).

If we loudly profess to believe every Bible truth, except where the world and devil are at the moment attacking, we are denying Christ and proving disloyal. Today's battle against the Bible takes the form of an invasion of new revelations. This is why Rome can happily endorse the Charismatic movement because Rome also has her new revelations that are contrary to the Bible. We must be sound in **belief**, sound in a Godly **life**, and sound in **servicing Christ**.

III. 20 REASONS THAT TONGUES CEASED IN THE FIRST CENTURY.

1. Tongues were a sign of judgment against Jewish unbelief as a nation.

With the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD, God's judgment on Israel had been executed, and the tongues gift as a sign of coming judgment on Israel was no longer needed. I Corinthians 14:22 says, "Wherefore, tongues are for a sign NOT to them that believe, but to them that **believe not**."

"In the law it is written, with men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto **this people** (Jews); and yet for all that (all the tongues) **will** they (Jews) **not hear me** (warning ignored), saith the Lord." I Corinthians 14:21.

Tongues here were clearly a **warning to the Jews** that they ignored.

Paul quotes I Corinthians 14:21 from:

- i) **Deuteronomy 28:49** where God warns of judgment coming from "a nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand."
- ii) Jeremiah 5:15 "Lo I will bring a nation upon you from afar...a nation whose language thou knowest not..." (612 BC). Hence, Babylonian tongues warned Jews of coming judgment.
- iii) Isaiah 28:11,12 "With another tongue will he speak to this people." (712 BC). Here, Assyrian tongues warned the Jews of coming judgment.
- iv) Isaiah 33:19 "Thou shall **not** see a fierce people, a people of a deeper speech than thou canst perceive: of a stammering tongue that thou canst not understand."

Here the absence of foreign tongues will be a sign that Israel is under God's blessing. Paul applies the Jewish unbelief of Isaiah 28:11,12 from 712 BC to the first century Jewish unbelief. "This people", "they", and "them that believe not" all refers to Jews. There were many Jews at Corinth who did not believe (Acts 18). Hence, tongues were a sign of future judgment to the Jews.

2. There are 3 major outbreaks of miracles in Scripture:

- i) Moses and Joshua (1441-1370 BC) of about 71 years duration.
- ii) Elijah and Elisha (870-785 BC) of about 85 years duration.
- iii) Christ and the Apostles (28-70 AD) of about 42 years duration.

Continuous miracles in the Bible are the exception, and do not occur always, but in three periods. The miraculous gift of tongues occurred from 30 to 70 AD.

3. Tongues belonged to the infant days of the church.

"But when I became a man, I put away childish things." I Corinthians 13:11.

Tongues (along with prophecy and knowledge) would cease when the church became mature. The childhood days of the church ended, when Israel as a nation was judged. Then there was no longer any need for a sign to **authenticate** the apostles' message (Mark 16:17-20) which started the church. Nor was there need for a sign **against** the extinct Jewish nation.

The gifts of tongues, miracles, healing, etc had stopped by 70 AD, but of course God still performs miracles and heals as He chooses today in answer to prayer. Since some foundational gifts were temporary. Tongues, a lesser miraculous gift, was temporary also.

4. Tongues authenticated the apostles' message as from God.

"And they (apostles) went forth, and preached everywhere, the Lord working with them, and **confirming the Word** with **signs** (tongues, healing, exorcism etc.) following. Amen." Mark 16:20. Today the need for tongues has ceased. God has **authenticated** the **apostles** and the **New Testament** that they penned. This proves the temporary nature of tongues.

5. **Hebrews 6:5** shows that the only other age of miracles will be the **Millennium** described as “the powers of the **age to come**.”

Q. What are the **powers**?

A. The word rendered “powers” is “dunamis” (1411) in Greek, which is the usual New Testament word for **miracles**. These people had tasted, experienced or witnessed the apostles’ miracles.

Q. What is the “**age to come**”?

A. A common Hebrew expression for the **millennium** where the Messiah will rule as King on earth.

Q. Why therefore are miracles referred to as “powers of the **age to come**”?

A. Because they **would not** characterise the **church age** (which Hebrews 6:5 was quoted in), but the millennial Kingdom age to come.

6. **Hebrews 2:3,4** shows miracles (such as tongues) to be in the **past tense**, and **not continuously being experienced by the Hebrew Christians of 64 AD**.

“How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation which:

- 1) **At the first** began to be spoken by the **Lord** (in Jesus’ 3 year ministry) and
- 2) **was** (past tense) **confirmed** (same as Mark 16:20) unto **us** (second generation Christians) by **them** (apostles and first generation Christians) that heard **him** (Jesus Christ),
- 3) God also **bearing them** (the apostles, **not us or every** generation of Christians) **witness**, both with signs (eg: tongues, miracles, healings, etc) and **wonders**, and with **divers miracles** (miracles belonged to the apostles, not to every Christian. II Corinthians 12:12), and **gifts of the Holy Ghost** (eg. the temporary miraculous gifts), according to His own will.”
 - a) Notice the phrase “**at the first**”. This gives the **time** element which governs all these signs, miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost.
 - b) All Greek verbs in Hebrews 2:3,4 are in the **aojist tense** indicating a past completed act which can never be repeated.

7. This is also seen in **Acts 11:15**, where Peter describes **tongues at Cornelius household, not as a regular occurrence weekly** in every church, but only something that happened last time at Pentecost (Acts 2) “as on us **at the beginning**.”

8. **The Process of Elimination** shows tongues to be not for believers of today.

Tongues primary purpose was to warn unbelieving Jews to repent, or God would judge them.

They refused to repent, so God judged them in 70 AD, thus making tongues as a warning to the Jews no longer necessary. I Corinthians 14:22 is a key verse which says:

“Tongues are a sign, **NOT to THEM that BELIEVE, but to them that BELIEVE NOT...**”

Tongues are a sign for one of three types of people. Which one?

- a) **NOT FOR BELIEVERS**. 14:22. This means that tongues have no purpose for believers. For Christians to speak in tongues is not valid.
- b) **NOT FOR GENTILE UNBELIEVERS**. 14:23. Those **unlearned** in the Old Testament meaning of tongues, or **unbelievers**, “will they not say that ye are mad?” This describes **unsaved Gentiles**. Tongues are not for this group because the history of Assyrian and Babylonian tongues as a warning of a judgment to Israel meant nothing to them.
- c) **JEWISH UNBELIEVERS**. 14:21. “In the law (Isaiah 28:11; Jeremiah 5:15 and Deuteronomy 28:49) it is written, with men of **other tongues** (Assyrian, Babylonian, Roman) and other lips will I speak unto **this people** (Jews); and yet for all that will they **not hear me**, saith the Lord.”

9. Tongues had ceased by 70 AD because their use is **only mentioned** in the **earlier New Testament books**, such as Mark 16 (57 AD), Acts (54 AD), I Corinthians (55 AD).

In all the latter books, tongues are never mentioned.

Why? Because they never happened after 70 AD and were of no relevance to any churches thereafter.

Tongues are never commanded in any New Testament book for believers to practice.

I Corinthians 12,13,14 rebukes the Corinthians wrong use of tongues. It is not endorsing tongues to be practised. Charismatics think that the key to spirituality is tongues, a phenomena that is not mentioned in 24 out of 27 New Testament books.

Why are tongues ABSENT from **II Corinthians** to **Revelation**? If tongues were so necessary, you would definitely see them in the **rest of the New Testament**.

The book of Romans, which is well known as the most complete summary of Christian doctrine and practice in the Bible, does not once mention tongues. Why not? Because tongues, by the time Romans was written (60 AD) was almost finished as a gift and would be of **no relevance** in the Church age after 70 AD when God judged Jerusalem.

Think about it, if tongues were important, God would have mentioned them at least once in Romans, or II Corinthians, or Galatians, or at least in one letter to a church in a **positive context**.

10. The gift of tongues was never endorsed or practised by early church leaders.

Clement of Rome in 95 AD wrote a letter to the Corinthian church rebuking every problem that Paul rebuked except tongues. Why did he not mention tongues or miracles?

Justin Martyr (160 AD) visited many churches but never once mentions tongues, not even in his lists of spiritual gifts.

Origen (250AD) in his voluminous writings never mentions tongues, but argues against Celsus that the sign gifts of the apostles' age were temporary and were not exercised by Christians in the 3rd Century.

Chrysostom (347-407 AD) commented on the I Corinthians passage: "This whole place is very obscure: but the obscurity is produced by our ignorance of the facts referred to and by their cessation, being such as then used to occur, but now **no longer take place**." [Homilies, XXIX, 1].

Augustine (354-430 AD) said in speaking of Acts 2:4, "In the earliest times, the Holy Ghost fell upon them that believed: and they spake with tongues....these were signs adapted to the time. For there behooved to be that betokening of the Holy Spirit...that thing was done for a betokening and **it passed away**."

11. "Now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three..." I Corinthians 13:13.

Now (55AD) **abides** (continues) faith, hope, charity, **these three**" (not "these six prophecy, tongues, knowledge"). Since **faith and hope finish at Christ's return**, then prophecy, tongues and knowledge had to have finished by 96 AD because they were not abiding, but declining in 55AD.

12. Recorder Test (Independent interpreters) Disproves Interpretation of Tongues.

If no one passes the Interpretation test, then neither does anyone possess the genuine gift of tongues.

This scientific test will disprove anyone's claim to have the gift of "Interpretation of tongues."

Assemble one person who claims to have the gift of tongues, and another two people who claim to have the gift of interpreting tongues, keeping both groups separate.

Let the first person speak in tongues, while you record him speaking.

Then bring the first interpreter into the room to hear the recorded tongue replayed.

Record his interpretation of the tongue.

Then bring the second interpreter into the room to hear the same tongue replayed.

Record his interpretation of the same tongue. You will find that the second interpretation will **disagree** with the first person's interpretation.

Why is this? It is because no one today has the first century supernatural gift of interpretation of tongues, this gift having passed away by 70 AD.

It follows therefore, that if the interpretation gift is found to be **NON-GENUINE**, then the tongues gift is also **NON-GENUINE**.

Notice that when someone speaks gibberish, claiming that he is speaking in an unknown tongue, he is, by deception, taking advantage of the fact that his hearers do not know every language in the universe.

The hearer, who is caught off guard, finds it hard to state that this gibberish is not a language.

So let us turn the tables and ask if his two interpreter friends can interpret any tongue in agreement.

Note: A variation on this test is to get up in a Charismatic meeting, speak something in a foreign language that you know the meaning of, and then ask for it to be correctly interpreted, e.g. quote the Lord's prayer in Latvian. You will find that the interpretation given, will be nothing like the true meaning of what you said. You may then expose them publicly as deceivers and as being deceived.

13. Ephesians 4.5,6 describe **thoroughly** the **Walk** and **Service** of a **Spirit-filled believer**. Nowhere in this key passage is speaking in tongues mentioned.

Conclusion: "Walking worthy" does not include tongues.

14. Phonetics Test. Every language must have hundreds of different syllables to express the wide range of ideas in a society. Charismatic tongues only have less than 12 syllables repeated constantly. This is typical of gibberish that comes from a mind that is not expressing thoughts, but from a tongue **out of control from the mind.** **Note:** 4 syllables are, for example, seen in "Cha/ris/ma/tic". This shows that tongues are not real languages, but are just sounds made up on the spot at random.

15. Majoring on tongues **REVERSES** the **order of importance of spiritual gifts.**

In I Corinthians 12:28, God lists tongues as the **least important** of 8 gifts.

In I Corinthians 12:31, God tells the church to seek the "best" gifts.(ie:give more emphasis to teaching)

God gives gifts to believers "as HE will" (12:11), not as we insist.

Charismatics tell people to pray long and hard for the gift of tongues.

We are not to deliberately choose and insist on having the least gift and exalt it above the others. Why not place greater emphasis on the gifts of pastor-teacher, evangelists, helps, government, giving etc.? It is because these gifts involve hard work, but tongues (gibberish) is easy.

16. The **context** of **I Corinthians** is **rebuking 13 errors**, such as tongues. It is **not recommending tongues**. The Corinthian church was filled with problems that Paul corrects in this book, such as:

1. They were following their favourite **human leaders** causing divisions. 1:11-14.

2. " " favouring **human wisdom**. 1:18-2:13.

3. " " **carnal, living for self**, not being controlled by the Spirit. 2:14-3:7.

4. " " **forgetting the future Judgment Seat of Christ**. 3:8-23.

5. " " **proud**, thinking of themselves more highly than they ought. 4:1-21.

6. " " **failing to discipline**, by tolerating a fornicator. 5:1-13.

7. " " **taking fellow believers to court**. 6:1-20.

8. " " confused about **marriage**. 7:1-40.

9. " " confused about **liberty** thinking it meant licence to do anything,even stumbling others. 8,9,10

10. " " confused about **clothing, long hair** on men and the **Lord's Supper**. 11.

11. " " confused about **spiritual gifts**, especially tongues. 12-14.

12. " " confused about the **resurrection**. 15.

13. " " confused about the **collection**. 16.

As we can see the Corinthian church was deep in error and false doctrine. It was the only church that emphasized tongues as today's Charismatics do. Charismatics therefore place themselves in very bad company. Charismatics fail to understand that Paul is not endorsing tongues, but is rebuking the wrong use of tongues and is strongly **regulating** tongues contrary to today's Charismatics. The Corinthian church was the worst church for Charismatics to follow as an example.

17. They fail the **"Easy to be entreated" test.**

It is amazing how tongues speakers often become very angry, intolerant, irritable, impatient, nervous, very dogmatic, and extremely touchy when anything is said which disapproves of or corrects their idea of speaking in tongues.

"The wisdom that is from above is first pure, then peaceable, easy to be entreated..." James 3:17.

"The works of the flesh...are wrath, strife..." Galatians 5:19,20.

"Looking diligently lest any man fail of the grace of God." Hebrews 12:15.

18. The First Mention Principle of Tongues is in the Context of Judgment.

This is a well-established principle for correctly interpreting Scripture. It states that:

When any subject, word, expression or idea is first mentioned in the Bible, this shows God thinking on that subject, and is a guide to how we should understand this subject in the rest of the Bible. Example: The first mention of **Babylon, Babel, and languages** is in Genesis 11:1-9 where God confused man's languages so that they did not understand one another's speech. "The Lord scattered mankind abroad upon the face of all the earth." Man has remained divided by different languages ever since. Hence tongues are associated with division and confusion (the meaning of Babel), ever since the Tower of Babel; not with the blessing of God, but with the judgment of God.

"Thou shalt keep them secretly in a pavilion from the **strife** of tongues." Psalm 31:20.

19. PRAYING IN TONGUES is WRONG because UNDERSTANDING is ABSENT.

"For if I pray in an unknown tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful. What is it then? I will pray with the spirit and I will pray with the **UNDERSTANDING also.**" I Cor. 14:14,15.

Paul is saying here that if you pray in tongues, your spirit might be trying to express something, but your MIND (or understanding) has no idea what is being said. This is wrong behaviour, Paul says. For prayer to be genuine, we must pray with our **spirit** and with our **understanding**.

Praying in tongues fails the test of understanding. The mind and voice are disconnected.

Many Charismatics will try to justify praying in tongues by quoting Romans 8:26.

"...the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which **CANNOT BE UTTERED**".

This verse is not talking about praying in tongues because **tongues are uttered** vocal sounds.

The Holy Spirit speaks our thoughts to the Father with groanings which cannot be uttered by us, yet prayer tongues are uttered by people.

20. Mark 16:11-20 (especially v.17) shows that the signs that were to follow them that believe related to a brief period, not longer than that covered by the book of Acts, and described in v.19,20

"And these signs shall follow (3877) them (apostles because the context of v.11-14 shows unbelieving apostles four times) that **believe**;they shall speak with **new tongues**." v.17.

This refutes the Charismatic idea that everybody who believes all through the Church age should speak in tongues, lay hands on the sick and they shall recover, etc., because this belief only refers to the unbelieving apostles in v.11-14 who refused to believe in Christ's resurrection (v.11,12,14).

This continues as part of Christ's rebuke to the apostles for "their unbelief and hardness of heart." v.14.

IV. 7 REASONS WHY "THEM THAT BELIEVE" REFERS ONLY TO THE APOSTLES.

If we fail to read the entire context of Mark 16:9-20 we may get the impression that the v.17,18 sign gifts apply to **all believers** during all the church age.

There is good evidence that "**them that believe**" refers to **only the apostles**. Why?

Reason 1: Context is the Apostles' Unbelief in Christ's Resurrection.

In Mark 16:14, Jesus rebukes the apostles for their **unbelief** in His resurrection.

In v.11-14, four times the apostles' unbelief is mentioned as Jesus addressed the apostles:

v.11 "They (apostles), when they had heard that he was alive**believed not.**"

v.13 ".....**neither believed** they them."

v.14 "He.....upbraided them (apostles) with their **unbelief** and hardness of heart."

v.14 "because they (apostles) **believed not** them which had seen him after he was risen."

After this rebuke Jesus gives the apostles the Great Commission in v.15,16. Once the commission is given, Jesus returns to his immediate audience of the eleven apostles when He says in v.17,18 "These signs shall follow **them that believe**" (ie. those of you eleven apostles who believe in my resurrection).

In my name :

1. they shall they cast out devils.
2. they shall speak with new tongues.
3. they shall take up serpents.
4. if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them.
5. they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover.

Reason 2: Practical experience shows that promises 3,4,5 are not true for every believer today. In spite of continued failures to heal, Charismatics still think that these 5 promises are for all believers today. **The obvious problem** with this interpretation is that it does not deal with everything mentioned in the text.

a) No Charismatic can always fulfil the 5th promise. It says that they **shall** lay hands on the sick, and they **shall recover**. This means 100% recovery all the time. No one can heal every sick person today, as the apostles could in Acts 5:12-16.

“By the hands **of the apostles** were many **signs** and wonders wrought among the people.....**they** (believers) brought forth the sick into the streets.....and they were **healed every one.**” v.16.

John Wimber, a famous Charismatic laid hands on 250 Down’s Syndrome children with no cures.

Reinhard Boncke tried to heal over 200 Kenyans at Kisumu in Kenya without any success.

b) **“If they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them.”**

“If” means accidentally. The problem here is that many good Christians have become sick or died by poisoning. Have you as a believer ever vomited?

c) **“They shall take up serpents.”**

We ask a Charismatic to take up a deadly snake. He replies by saying: “No, that would be tempting God.” Yet in the first century this was a sign that the apostles did (**shall do**) to prove the Word of God and their authority. Some believers today have died in trying this. This shows that this is not for today.

Reason 3: AORIST tense of “believe” in Mark 16:17 refers to those who **did believe in the past, not who will believe in the future.**

“These signs shall follow them that **believe.**” The Greek word for believe here is “**pisteusasín**” which is an **aoíst** participle referring to those who **did believe in the past.**”

[S. Zodhiates, “Complete New Testament Word Study Dictionary,” p.1107],

“not those who would believe in the future.”

[S. Zodhiates, “Hebrew-Greek Key Word Study Bible,” p.1223].

The aorist tense refers to a past action at a point in time, not an event that recurs again into the future, as it would be if it was true of all believers.

Reason 4: Belief (Gk: pisteusasín in Mark 16:17) **does not refer to saving belief.** In John 3:16 and 5:24 saving belief is “pisteuwn”, a different word ending. Hence, “belief” in Mark 16:17 refers not to all future believers, but to the apostles believing in Christ’s resurrection at a point in time, once for all time.

Reason 5: “Do All speak With tongues?” 1 Corinthians 12:30 requires the answer “No, not all believers have the gift of speaking with tongues.”

Reason 6: The Purpose of these signs was to **confirm the Word of God** spoken and **written by the apostles**, as Mark 16:20 says.

“And **they** (apostles) went forth, and preached everywhere, the Lord working with **them** (apostles), and **confirming the Word** with **signs** (eg. tongues) following.”

Once the Word of God (the New Testament) had been confirmed by the apostle’s signs, then further signs were not needed. The signs had done their job of proving the New Testament as being from God. When the Bible was completed, then miraculous apostolic confirming signs were no longer needed.

Reason 7: Mark 16:20 continues the context to mean apostles.

This tells what happened to the apostles after they changed from unbelief in Christ’s resurrection, to believing it and preaching it everywhere with signs following.

Hence, in v.20, the context is still only the apostles doing signs, not every believer doing signs.

Conclusion: Either all five signs are valid for today or none are valid today. They only refer to first century apostles.

101. ERRORS OF THE CHARISMATIC MOVEMENT

Introduction: Some practices of the Charismatic Movement are not according to Scripture. These are:

1. Speaking in Tongues
2. New Revelations
3. Ecumenical Movement towards Rome
4. Slaying in the Spirit
5. Healing

Question: Why do people become interested in the Charismatic movement or Pentecostalism?

Answer: Because of worldliness, lack of vital, inspired ministry and spiritual deadness.

Don't become backslidden, cold or lazy for God, but be on-fire for God, souls and the Bible.

The main Charismatic/Pentecostal doctrine is that: "speaking in tongues is the initial evidence of the baptism of the Holy Spirit." They claim that one who has not spoken in tongues does not have the same power for service as one who has.

If we show that tongues are not for today, we have disproved the Charismatic Movement.

A fundamental law of life is that the Word of God must always govern our experiences. Tongues has divided the Christian world this century. The question is not "are tongues genuine?", but it is "are tongues Biblical?" When experience contradicts the Bible, then the Bible always takes precedence. Why? Because we can misinterpret our experience or have false experiences.

Let us examine tongues as follows:

1. Reasons why Biblical tongues are real languages and not Charismatic gibberish.

- a) Tongues could be interpreted, gibberish cannot.
- b) The Greek word "glossa" in the New Testament used for tongues means real languages.
- c) In Acts 2:6,8 those Jews at Pentecost heard God's message spoken in their own language or dialect. "Every man heard them speak in his own language." v.6,8,11.
- d) The same word "glossa" is used for tongues in Acts as in I Corinthians 12-14.
- e) "Glossa" is plural meaning many languages. Gibberish is singular as it is non-classifiable into more than one type of gibberish.
- f) 1 Cor.14:21 states that tongues were a foreign language given as a sign to unbelieving Israel.

2. Reasons for spiritual gifts.

Why are spiritual gifts given?

- a) To **glorify Christ**, not to glorify the Holy Spirit. "He shall glorify me." John 16:14.
- b) To **edify others**, not to edify self. "Seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church." 1Cor.14:12. Paul rebukes them for their wrong use of tongues in 1 Corinthians 14:4 "He that speaketh in an unknown tongue edifieth himself."
- c) To **equip the church** (Ephesians 4:12) for the work of the ministry.

3. Reasons for Tongues (see chapter 99 for a discussion of this).

Tongues were given to:

- a) Warn unbelieving Jews. (I Corinthians 14:21).
- b) Confirm the word with signs. Mark 16:17-20.
- c) Confirm the Apostles as God's true messengers.

I. PASSAGES MISUNDERSTOOD BY CHARISMATICS.

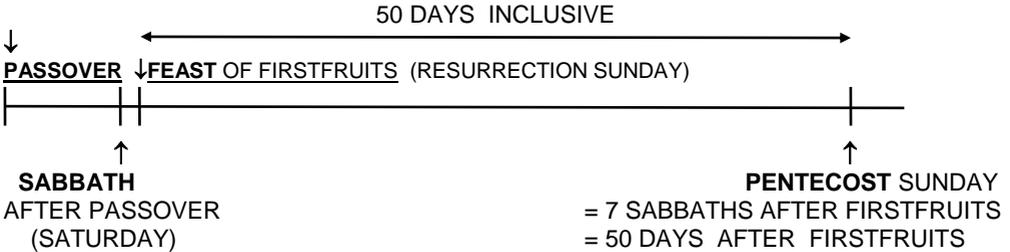
1. ACTS 2. TONGUES AT PENTECOST.

Pentecost means "fiftieth" because it was held 50 days after the feast of Firstfruits (Leviticus 23:15-22). The Jewish calendar in Leviticus 23 is an outline of Christ's work.

Passover pictures Christ's death as the Lamb of God (1 Cor. 5:7).

Next **Firstfruits** pictures Christ's resurrection (1 Cor. 15:20-23).
Sunday (Day 1)

Day 50 **Pentecost** pictures the formation of the church.



Passover came, then the **Sabbath**, then followed the **Feast of Firstfruits** which was always on the **first** day of the week (Sunday).

- Jesus rose from the dead on the Feast of Firstfruits (Sunday) and "became the firstfruits of them that slept." (1 Corinthians 15:20).
- Pentecost occurred 50 days after the Feasts of Firstfruits, which was the day that Christ rose from the dead (Leviticus 23:15,16). This was also a Sunday.
- Christians meet on Sunday, the first day of the week, because:
 1. On the Feast of Firstfruits (Sunday): → 1. **Christ** rose from the dead, and
 2. On the day of Pentecost (Sunday): → 2. the **Holy Spirit** indwelt believers, and
 3. On the day of Pentecost (Sunday): → 3. the **Church** formed.
- On the Feast of **Firstfruits**, the priest waved a sheaf of grain before the Lord.
- On **Pentecost**, the priest presented two loaves of bread. Why? Because at Pentecost the church formed, which in this age is made up of Jewish and Gentile believers united in one body (1 Cor. 10:17). Leaven (yeast) in the loaves (Lev.23:17) indicates the presence of sin in the church on earth.
- Pentecost, like Calvary, was a once-for-all event that will not be repeated. The Holy Spirit who came at Pentecost permanently indwells believers (John 14:16,17).
- Wind, fire and tongues accompanied the coming of the Holy Spirit.
- The filling of the Spirit gives believers power for witness and service (Acts 1:8). God never commands us to be baptised with the Spirit, because this happens at salvation when we receive Christ as Saviour. God does command us to be filled with the Spirit (Eph. 5:18) for power to serve Him. At Pentecost the Christians were baptised with the Spirit (Acts 2:18,38) and were filled with the Spirit (Acts 2:4). After that, they experienced many fillings with the Spirit (Acts 4:8,31; 9:17; 13:9,52; 6:3; 7:55; 11:24).

Question 1: Did only the 12 apostles speak in tongues at Pentecost or did all 120 speak in tongues?

Answer: The evidence supports only the 12 apostles speaking in tongues:

1. "**They**" in Acts 2:1 refers back to the "apostles" in 1:26.
2. The **apostles** only are addressed in Acts 1:1-13. Before Pentecost, only the apostles were promised that "ye shall be baptised with the Holy Ghost not many days hence." (Acts 1:5). "Ye" here only refers to the apostles.
3. "**them**" and "**they**" in Acts 2:3,4 on whom tongues fell refer to the apostles.
4. "every man heard **them** speak in his own language." (Acts 2:6).
The crowd heard **them** (the apostles) speak in tongues.

5. "Are not all these which speak **Galileans**?" Acts 2:7. Those who spoke in tongues were Galileans, not men of Judah. Even an angel called them "men of Galilee." (1:11).
6. When the men of Judea accused "**these men**" (2:13) of drunkenness, the group that responded were, "Peter.....with the eleven." (2:14), that is, the apostles.
7. Tongues was one of the sign gifts given to the apostles.
 "Truly the signs **of an apostle** were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds." 2 Corinthians 12:12.

Note: There is no record that the 3,000 people saved at Pentecost spoke in tongues, yet they all received the Holy Spirit when they were saved. (Acts 2:38).

No woman in Acts 2 is said to have spoken in tongues.

Historical background.

Question 2: Who were the **devout Jews** from every nation under heaven in Acts 2:5-12?

Answer: After Alexander the Great had conquered Tyre (332BC), he came to conquer Jerusalem. To his surprise, Jaddua, the High Priest, followed by the priests and people of Jerusalem came out to welcome him. Jaddua showed Alexander how he was prophesied in Daniel 8:1-8, 20-22 as the first king of Greece who would conquer the Persians whom Alexander despised. So impressed was Alexander with these Jews that he appointed them as administrators of his far flung empire, as far as India. These Jews became prominent leaders in their communities. It was descendants of these Jews who had flocked to Jerusalem for the feasts of Passover, Firstfruits and Pentecost that Peter spoke to in Acts 2:5, "And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven." The Greek word "Katoikeo" (2730) used here for "dwelling" means to have a fixed and permanent habitation, in contrast to "paroikeo" meaning a temporary resident. This refers to many wealthy foreign Jews who had a permanent residence in Jerusalem for the convenience of being near the temple. They were pilgrims visiting Jerusalem. These men came from India, Africa, Asia Minor etc. Because they had been living in other countries for over 300 years, they no longer spoke Hebrew. They were devout men, religious Jews, observing Jewish rituals, but like Nicodemus, were not yet born again. These visitors on the day of Pentecost heard the wind and came to investigate it. They were amazed to hear simple, uneducated Galileans suddenly speaking perfectly at least 16 languages from where these pilgrims came. Few people outside Parthia spoke or understood Parthia's guttural language.

The Medes came from high, wild, rugged plateaux beyond Assyria. To their utter surprise they heard their languages being clearly spoken at Jerusalem. Elamites came from east of Babylon. Pontus is now southern Russia. Arabians boasted many dialects. Each person on that day heard "the wonderful works of God" (the content of the Gospel) in his own language. (Acts 2:11).

Question 3: "**What meaneth this?**" Acts 2:12.

Answer: If the spectators had known Isaiah 28:11 they would have interpreted this to be a red alert danger signal of judgment soon to come. Peter presented the gospel, and concluded it with an invitation for them to be saved in Acts 2:39,40. "For the promise is unto you, and to your children (Jewish residents of Israel), and to all that are afar off (Jews of the dispersion), even as many as the Lord our God shall call. And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation." Jews were now being evangelised in Gentile languages.

Note: First century Jews warned fellow Jews of judgment soon to come, and of the plan of salvation as the only escape. Tongues continued until Jerusalem fell in 70AD.

Key: Wherever Jews lived throughout the first century world, the same means of evangelism was followed. Some believer who possessed the gift of tongues witnessed to them in the language of where they lived. Once God judged and scattered the Jews in 70AD, there was no further need for tongues. Consequently, the gift of tongues was withdrawn permanently. Hence "tongues were a sign not to believers, but to (Jewish) unbelievers!!" I Corinthians 14:22.

Acts 2:14-21. Peter explains the Holy Spirit's coming.

At Pentecost, no interpreter was needed since every man heard the message in his own native dialect. Peter denied the accusation of drunkenness by saying that it was only 9am and orthodox Jews did not eat or drink before 9am on a Sabbath or holy day (v.15). On the day of Pentecost, Peter quoted Joel 2:28-32 in conjunction with the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. His introductory words, "But this is that

which was spoken by the prophet Joel" (Acts 2:16), may seem to indicate that he considered Joel's prophecy as being completely fulfilled then. However it is apparent that the events of the day, though extraordinary, did not completely fulfil Joel's prophecy. The day of Pentecost events were only a partial fulfilment of Joel's prophecy. Joel's prophecy will be ultimately fulfilled just after the Tribulation when Christ returns to rescue Israel. The wonders in heaven and in earth (Acts 2:19,20) clearly did not occur on the day of Pentecost or on any other day in church history.

Notice the events of Joel 2:28-32 and Acts 2:17-21 as follows:

- v.28 1. Afterward (in the last days (Acts)), I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh;
2. **Your** sons and **your** daughters shall prophesy, (gender);
3. **Your** old men shall dream dreams, (age);
4. **Your** young men shall see visions, (age);
- v.29 5. Upon the **servants** and upon the **handmaids** in those days will I pour out my Spirit, and they shall prophesy, (Social class);
- v.30 6. I will show wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.
- v.31 7. The sun shall be turned into darkness,
8. The moon into blood, before the great and terrible day of the Lord come.
- v.32 9. It shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be delivered.
10. In Mount Zion, and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance for the remnant as the Lord hath said.

Explanation of Joel 2:28-32.

The Lord announced that "the great and terrible day of the Lord" (v.31) would see God "pour out my Spirit upon all flesh." The context shows that the "all flesh" refers more specifically to all inhabitants of Judah. Why? Because:

- a) the fourfold use of "**your**" (v.28) 'your sons and your daughters...your old men...your young men'
b) **Ezekiel 39:29** is a parallel passage: "...I have poured out my Spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord God."
c) **Zechariah 12:10** is a parallel passage: "I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced."

This pouring out of God's Spirit would be true regardless of gender, age or social class. Joel 2:30,31
The great and terrible day of the Lord will be preceded by wonders and signs of impending judgment (2:10 - "the sun and the moon shall be dark" and 3:15).

- Blood, fire, and pillars of smoke suggest the effects of warfare, possibly nuclear warfare.
- The sun turning to darkness occurs in Revelation 6:12 and 16:10.
- The moon turning to blood occurs in Revelation 6:12 "there was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood; and the stars of heaven fell..."
- Though these events will signal doom for God's enemies, God's people should interpret them as the precursors of their deliverance.

a) Matthew 24:29. "Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the **sun** be darkened, and the **moon** shall not give her light, and the **stars** shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken; Then shall appear the sign of the Son of Man..."

b) Mark 13:24-27. "After that tribulation, the **sun** shall be darkened, and the **moon** shall not give her light..."

c) Luke 21:25-28. "There shall be signs in the **sun**, and in the **moon**, and in the **stars**..."

Joel 2:32. At this time of judgment, whosoever (of the Jews) shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be delivered. "Whosoever" refers to repentant Jews, as seen in Zechariah 13:9, "they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people:"

Note: In Acts 2:16-21, Peter does not say that this is the fulfilment of Joel's prophecy, because the signs and wonders predicted had not occurred at Pentecost. Joel's prophecy concerns Israel before Christ's glorious appearing. Peter saw in Joel's prophecy an application to the church. Peter was saying: "This is that same Holy Spirit that Joel wrote about. **He is here!**" "This is that", means the Holy Spirit's coming, not the events of Joel's prophecy as they will come later. Pentecost was a sample of what Joel predicted.

Peter did not declare Pentecost as the complete fulfilment of Joel 2:28-32, but only as an illustration, a partial fulfilment, and a similar situation. Therefore, the supernatural signs that the multitude witnessed at Pentecost were the results of the Holy Spirit coming, yet only a glimmer of the future. **Key: "Afterward"** in Joel 2:28 pin-points the time of the Spirit's outpouring in this passage. It is **after** Jesus Christ has returned at His glorious appearing. The context of Joel 2 does not allow us to link this outpouring of the Spirit to events before Christ returns. This refutes the thought that today's tongues are a sign of Christ's second coming. Tongues at Pentecost prepared the way for Peter's message of salvation which brought 3,000 people to Christ that day. Charismatics often use Joel 2:28-32 to support the continuance of tongues today, as they quote Joel 2:23,24 of "the former rain, and the latter rain in the first month. And the floors shall be full of wheat..." The former rain, they say, is supposed to be the initial outpouring of the Spirit in Acts 2, and the latter rain is claimed to be today's Charismatic Movement.

The context clearly speaks of literal rain giving abundant crops. Spiritualising it, the former rain would mean the riches of David's and Solomon's kingdom, and latter rain would refer to even greater blessing of Christ's kingdom after His second coming.

Conclusion:

- a) Tongues at Pentecost were real languages understood by visitors to Jerusalem.
- b) Baptism of the Holy Spirit occurs at salvation. It is not to be sought, nor are tongues an evidence of this baptism.
- c) Tongues was a warning to unbelieving Jews to repent.
- d) Tongues was an evidence of the Holy Spirit coming to form the New Testament church, and to miraculously authenticate Peter's message of salvation.

2. THE CHARISMATIC DOCTRINE OF SUBSEQUENCE.

Acts is a book of transition, changes and history.

Changes happen in almost every chapter, such as:

- a) The Old Covenant fades out, and the New Covenant enters. Even Paul was caught in changes as seen by his Jewish vows (Acts 24:18 and 21:26) showing his tie to the Old Covenant.
- b) Acts passes from synagogue to church,
- c) Acts passes from law to grace,
- d) Acts passes from Old Testament saints to New Testament saints,
- e) Acts passes from Jewish believers, to the church made up of Jew and Gentile believers combined.

The only teachings in Acts that are normal for the church age are those that are doctrinally confirmed elsewhere in the New Testament letters to the churches.

Charismatics and Pentecostals take a different approach: They build their theology on the miracles of Acts 2,8,10,19 and on a misunderstanding of I Corinthians 12,13,14. (This is really a rebuke and criticism of tongues, not approval). Historical transition begins at Acts 2:4, the core point of all Charismatic teaching: "And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."

Doctrine of subsequence defined: Charismatics teach that at conversion a Christian receives the Holy Spirit in a limited way. Later on, in a subsequent experience the Christian receives the "fullness" of the Spirit, by being baptised with, in or of the Spirit. This experience is accompanied by speaking in tongues, new spiritual motivation, and sometimes miracles. They teach that the Baptism of Holy Spirit:

1. Is usually distinct from and subsequent to (after) the new birth.
2. Is evidenced initially by the sign of speaking in tongues.
3. It must be earnestly sought.

Question 1: Which passages do Charismatics use to teach subsequence?

Answer:

1. I Corinthians 12:13 cannot be used because it says that the Holy Spirit baptises every believer into the body of Christ at salvation. No tongues are mentioned, nor are we commanded to seek the Baptism. The gospels and epistles don't show subsequence.
2. Acts 2 and 8. Believers received the Spirit after salvation, an element of subsequence.
3. Acts 10. At Cornelius' household, believers were baptised in the Spirit at salvation. No subsequence.
4. Acts 19. John's disciples at Ephesus were baptised in the Spirit at salvation. No subsequence.
 - Believers spoke in tongues in Acts 2,10,19, but not in Acts 8 at Samaria.
 - Believers did not seek earnestly for the baptism in any of Acts 2,8,10,19.
 - None of Acts 2,8,10,19 ever commands tongues for anybody else.

Question 2: Charismatics claim that the disciples had the Holy Spirit long before Pentecost, because they were already saved and because of John 20:21-22, their proof passage.

Answer: To this we say "yes" the disciples were saved before Pentecost as seen from:

- a) Luke 10:20 "rejoice because your names are written in heaven," to the 70 sent out by Christ.
- b) John 15:3 Jesus to his disciples "Now ye are clean through the Word which I have spoken to you." but "No" they did not yet have the indwelling Holy Spirit because they were still pre-Pentecost.

Question 3: If tongues are necessary, why did none of the 5,000 who believed and received the Holy Spirit in Acts 2-4, also speak in tongues?

Answer: Because tongues are not an evidence of Baptism of the Holy Spirit. For something to be normal for everybody, it must happen to everyone. And it did not happen to everybody.

Consider that of all the 16 salvation events described in Acts, only 2 groups spoke in tongues:

1. Acts 2.....	3,000 at Pentecost.....	no tongues
2. Acts 3, 4.....	5,000 at the Beautiful gate.....	no tongues
3. Acts 5:14.....	Multitudes saved.....	no tongues
4. Acts 8:17.....	Samaritan believers.....	no tongues
5. Acts 8:37-39.....	Ethiopian eunuch.....	no tongues
6. Acts 9.....	Saul on Damascus road.....	no tongues
7. Acts 10:46.....	Cornelius' household.....	tongues
8. Acts 11:19-24.....	Greeks saved at Antioch.....	no tongues
9. Acts 16:14, 15.....	Lydia.....	no tongues
10. Acts 16:16-19.....	Demonised damsel.....	no tongues
11. Acts 16:25-34.....	Philippian jailer and his household.....	no tongues
12. Acts 17:1-4.....	Thessalonian believers.....	no tongues
13. Acts 17:10-12.....	Berean believers.....	no tongues
14. Acts 17:15-34.....	Athenian believers.....	no tongues
15. Acts 18:8.....	Crispus and Corinthians at salvation.....	no tongues
16. Acts 19:1-12.....	12 disciples of John at Ephesus.....	tongues
17. Acts 19:18-20.....	Ephesian believers.....	no tongues
18. Acts 28:23,24.....	Roman believers.....	no tongues

Question 4: John 20:21,22, "he breathed on them, and saith unto them, receive ye the Holy Ghost"

Charismatics think that after the resurrection, the eleven disciples received the Holy Spirit in the upper room, but that they later on received the Baptism of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost which then gave them their real power.

Answer: This view is wrong because:

- 1) John 20:22 was not a permanent indwelling of the Holy Spirit, but just a temporary filling of the Holy Spirit to supply their spiritual needs up to Pentecost, just like many Old Testament saints had for a short time. e.g. Samson, John the Baptist (Luke 1:15), Elizabeth (Luke 1:41), Zacharias (Luke 1:61) and Simeon (Luke 2:25).

These gospel passages were not intended to be the norm for today. This filling of the Holy Spirit must not be confused with the Baptism of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost, Caesarea and Ephesus (Acts 2:1-13; 11:15-18; 19:1-7). It may have been just a pledge or promise that would be fulfilled at Pentecost. Chrysostom (345-407 AD) and others held this view. John 20:26,27 shows the disciples still fearful behind shut doors, and faithless, eight days later.

- 2) John 7:39 "But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on Him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified."

This refutes the Charismatic idea that the disciples had the permanent indwelling Holy Spirit in John 20:22. They did not have the permanent indwelling Holy Spirit because Jesus had not yet ascended, nor was He yet glorified in heaven. The Holy Spirit would not come until after Jesus had ascended to heaven to receive the glory He had with the Father before the world began (John 17:1-5)

- 3) John 16:7 ".....if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you." Jesus ascended to heaven, then 10 days later, the Holy Spirit came at Pentecost.

- 4) Acts 1:8 "But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me...."

This teaches that in Acts 1:8 the Holy Spirit had not yet come upon the disciples. They were still waiting for the Holy Spirit to come on them. Here, receiving power to witness, came at the same time as they received the Holy Spirit. If the Holy Spirit had come on them in John 20:22, they would not have been waiting, nor would they be powerless.

- 5) Acts 1:4 "they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, ye have heard of me."

This promise was made in John 14:16, "I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that He may abide with you forever."

Here they were still waiting for the Holy Spirit. All these events occurred in a period of transition. The disciples believed in Christ and were Old Testament saints, but they never knew the full experience of the indwelling Holy Spirit until Pentecost. In the upper room there is no evidence that they were seeking or asking for the Holy Spirit, nor anywhere else in the New Testament. Christ had promised the Holy Spirit would come, they were just waiting for "not many days hence." Acts 1:5. No one asked for the Holy Spirit in Acts 2, 8, 10, 19 or anywhere in any letter to any New Testament church. Why? Because the Holy Spirit always indwells a person at the point of salvation. Romans 8:9 "If any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his." How can a believer have Christ, but not have the Holy Spirit? You can't separate the Godhead. "Ye are complete in Him." Colossians 2:10. If we have Christ as Saviour, we are complete; we do not need a second blessing, nor a baptism of the Holy Spirit because we already have it at salvation.

In Acts 2:2,3 Christians were first baptised by the Holy Spirit.

In Acts 2:4 they were then filled with the Holy Spirit, and the apostles spoke in tongues.

Tongues purpose was to:

1. Be a sign of soon coming judgment to warn unbelieving Jews to repent.
2. Authenticate the apostles as God's messengers and their message as being from God.

Charismatics claim that Acts 2 should happen to everyone. If so, why do we never see a rushing mighty wind, and cloven tongues of fire on people? The Charismatic Movement has decided to use tongues, and then looks for verses to back up their practice. Reject this error as unbiblical.

3. ACTS 8:4-19. SAMARITAN SUBSEQUENCE

“When they believed Philip, they were baptised.” v.12.

The apostles at Jerusalem sent Peter and John, “who when they were come down, prayed for them that they might receive the Holy Ghost (for as yet he was fallen on none of them...) (v.16)

Then they laid hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.” Acts 8:12-17.

Charismatics use this passage to support two errors:

a) Doctrine of **Subsequence**: The Samaritans received Christ and are baptised, followed by a time gap. Then they received the Holy Spirit.

b) **Slaving in the Spirit**: They lay hands on a person’s head, for them to “receive the Holy Spirit”, the person falls over backwards, and they have supposedly received the Holy Spirit.

Question 1: If the Holy Spirit can be given by laying on of hands, then why didn’t Philip lay hands on them, and save Peter and John the long journey?

Answer: God wanted the Samaritans to link their receiving of the Holy Spirit with the apostles and the Jerusalem Church.

Question 2: Why was there a delay in the Samaritans receiving the Holy Spirit after believing?

Answer: 1) Background: Much hatred existed between Jews and Samaritans. If the Samaritans had received the Holy Spirit at the moment they believed, the terrible rift between Jews and Samaritans could have continued into the Christian church, as permanent disunity. Pentecost was made up of Jewish believers. If the Samaritans had started their own Christian group, the age-old rivalries could have continued.

2) God wanted the Samaritans to understand the authenticating power and authority of the apostles, as channels of divine truth. The time gap was there to show the Samaritans that they were under apostolic authority.

3) It showed the Jewish Christians that the Samaritans were in the same Church, had the same Christ, the same salvation, the same Holy Spirit, and the same acceptance by God.

4) **Grammatical** reason, in Acts 8:16:

“For **as yet** he was fallen upon none of them.” The Greek word for ‘as yet’ is ‘OUDEPO’. Some lexicographers note that this word means that something that should have happened hasn’t happened yet. It was like saying that the Samaritans were saved, but for some strange reason, what should have happened (the Holy Spirit coming) had not occurred. ‘OUDEPO’ implies that the Holy Spirit should have come immediately.

This was not a Samaritan Pentecost, but a step of growth for the Church. God wanted everyone to know that there were not two churches, but only one. God wanted to reverse the hatred barriers right at the start. God wanted to establish the apostles’ authority outside Jewish society.

Question 3: Why is there no mention of tongues at Samaria?

Answer: It is because there were no unbelieving Jews present. Jews would not live at Samaria, because they hated the Samaritans greatly.

5) This phenomena of believers not receiving the Holy Spirit until Peter came and laid hands on them, was never repeated anywhere in the New Testament. It was a transitional period.

Hence it is wrong to conclude that receiving the Holy Spirit is a work subsequent to salvation, and that it requires the laying on of hands. **Philip could not do it**. Hence we cannot impart the Holy Spirit by laying on of hands.

If there was a rift between Samaritans and Jews, there was an almost unbridgable gulf between Gentiles and Jews. A Jew would not enter a Gentile's house.

Peter and six Jewish brethren (v.11-12), went to Caesarea. Peter preached the gospel to Cornelius, a Roman Centurion, and to his household.

"While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Spirit fell on them which heard the word. And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured the gift of the Holy Ghost. For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God." Acts 10:44-46.

Many Charismatics falsely conclude from this that anyone who gets saved must speak in tongues, as proof of salvation.

Question 1: Why did Cornelius' household speak in tongues (languages)?

Answer: Because there were Jewish Christians present who did not believe that the Spirit of God was for the Gentiles. Hence, this agrees well with 1 Corinthians 14:22 that tongues were a sign to Jews that believed not. Peter and his six Jewish friends were all astonished.

Question 2: Why were they all astonished?

Answer: Because the Holy Spirit fell upon a Gentile. Yet it happened here, and these Gentiles were speaking in tongues.

Question 3: How did these seven Jews know that these Gentiles had received the Holy Spirit?

Answer: "For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God." Acts 10:46.

The fact that the Apostles understood the Gentiles' tongues to be magnifying God indicated that the tongues were a known language to the Apostles. They knew the same gift of the Holy Spirit was given, because it was accompanied by the same sign, tongues, of Acts 10. The same tongues of Acts 10 were just like the tongues of Acts 2, as seen from these references.

"On the Gentiles **also**." Acts 10:45.

"To have received the Holy Spirit **as well as we**." Acts 10:45.

"The Gentiles **also**." Acts 11:1.

"The Holy Spirit fell on them, **as on us** at the beginning." Acts 11:15.

"God gave the like gift, **as he did unto us**." Acts 11:17.

"God **also**, to the Gentiles, granted repentance." Acts 11:18.

The Jews could no longer claim spiritual superiority over the Gentiles, only equality. (Ephesians 3:6 and Colossians 3:11).

• Charismatics should note two things:

a) There is **no gap** between belief in Christ and receiving the Holy Spirit. There is no subsequence here.

b) Tongues are mainly a judgment sign to unbelieving Israel (I Corinthians 14:21-22). God also used tongues to convince unbelieving Christian Jews that the Gentiles could receive the Holy Spirit, and that they ought to be welcomed as equals into the Church. Without tongues, the apostles would not have been convinced that the Gentiles could be saved.

Note: Acts 11:15 "As I began to speak, the Holy Ghost fell on them, **as on us at the beginning**."

The outpouring of the Holy Spirit at Cornelius' house occurred eight years after Pentecost, yet Peter could not point to any continuous flow of tongues among the churches, when he explained to the Jerusalem church leaders what had happened to the Gentiles. After eight years, Peter still had to say "As on us at the beginning", not "as on all the churches regularly". Here is a case where the absence of tongues speaks volumes. If speaking in tongues was a normal experience in churches, Peter would not have had to reach back to Pentecost to cite a similar example.

5. ACTS 19:1-6. JOHN'S DISCIPLES AT EPHEBUS.

NO SUBSEQUENCE.

Two Charismatic claims are made in this passage:

A) That speaking in tongues is the initial evidence of the Holy Spirit baptism.

B) That laying on of hands imparts the Holy Spirit to someone.

This is used to support "slaying in the Spirit."

Both of these claims can be shown to be false, in that tongues and laying on of the apostles' hands were for the following reasons, which are found in this passage:

A) **Tongues** were necessary to warn the many Jews in Ephesus that God's program had changed, and that the Jews needed to receive Christ as Saviour. Many Jews lived at Ephesus, as seen by:

- i) Twelve disciples of John the Baptist were Jewish. (19:3).
- ii) Paul spoke boldly to the **Jews** in the **synagogue** for three months, who hardened themselves, believed not, and spoke evil of that way. (19:8-9).
- iii) Paul separated his disciples to the school of Tyrranus for two years, so that all **Jews** and Greeks in Asia heard the word of the Lord Jesus. (19:9-10).
- iv) Vagabond **exorcist Jews** in 19:13 try to imitate Paul's casting out of demons in 19:12.
- v) Seven sons of **Sceva**, the **Jewish Chief Priest**, also tried to imitate Paul's casting out of demons, in order to establish their own authority as equal to Paul's, and hence to counter Paul's message. The demonised man leapt on them, and overcame them, so they fled out naked and wounded. (19:14-16).
- vi) This was known to all the **Jews** and Greeks at Ephesus. (19:17).
- vii) **Alexander** (v.33) was a Jew (1 Timothy 1:20; 2 Tim. 4:14). Therefore, Paul's authority, as a messenger of God to be believed, and Paul's message of Christ, to be received, was proven to all the **Jews** by signs of **tongues** (v.6), **miracles** (v.11), and **casting out of demons** (v.12-20).
- viii) Apollos, an eloquent **Jew** came to Ephesus and mightily convinced the **Jews** publicly that Jesus was Christ. (Acts 18:1-28).

Because of the **many Jews** at Ephesus, eight groups being mentioned, tongues spoken by John's twelve disciples was very much in keeping with its stated purpose in I Corinthians 14:21,22 as being a warning sign to unbelieving Jews at Ephesus to repent. This was the main reason why God gave tongues to these twelve men.

KEY: On every occasion that tongues were given, there were **unbelieving Jews** that needed tongues as a sign to convince them of something.

Acts 2: Unbelieving devout **Jews** at **Pentecost** heard the Apostles speak in tongues warning them to repent.

Acts 10: Cornelius' household at **Caesarea** spoke in tongues to warn unbelieving Christian **Jews** (Peter) that the Gentiles had received the Holy Spirit and should be welcomed into the church on an equal footing with Jews.

Acts 19:1-33: John's twelve disciples spoke in tongues at **Ephesus** to warn fellow unbelieving **Jews** to repent and believe Christ's gospel preached by Paul.

Acts 18:1-17 and **I Corinthians 12,13,14:** In Acts 18, **Jews** are mentioned 6 times at Corinth. Hence the tongues of I Corinthians 12,13,14 were within the correct context of warning the many Jews at Corinth to repent.

None of these men were seeking the gift of tongues.

Tongues at Ephesus were a sign to Jews at Ephesus (and elsewhere) that salvation was now only possible by faith in Christ. **Note:**

- a) Faith in Christ yet to come could no longer suffice, since Christ had arrived and purchased salvation on the cross.
- b) Knowledge only of John's baptism (Acts 19:2) could no longer suffice.
- c) Mosaic legalism, having performed its purpose, must be abandoned.

B) Charismatic error that **laying on of hands imparts the Holy Spirit**

This passage may seem to teach that salvation occurs and then the Holy Spirit is received after or subsequent to salvation, because of Acts 19:2,6.

“He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?” 19:2.

“And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues and prophesied.” 19:6.

If this error is not corrected by studying the context of Acts 18:24-19:7 of Apollos knowing only the baptism of John, another error is believed of making tongues a sign of receiving the Holy Spirit. Acts 2,8,10 shows that Acts 19 does **not** teach a second experience with tongues as evidence of such an experience.

These 12 disciples of John and Apollos mentioned here were not New Testament believers (Christians), but only disciples of John the Baptist. Like their teacher Apollos, they only knew John's baptism, and knew nothing of Holy Spirit baptism. (18:25 and 19:3).

Question 1: "Since ye believed" what? (19:2).

Answer: These 12 disciples were Old Testament **believers** still living in the superseded Old Testament age, similar to Jesus' disciples before Pentecost and to Old Testament saints.

They were baptised by John in water "unto (because of) remission of sins" (Matthew 3:11) yet to come in Christ.

They believed in Christ to come, but this belief did not impart the **baptism, indwelling, sealing, and filling** of the Holy Spirit. They did not have the New Testament salvation provided by Christ's death. They were like many Jews living in the transition period between the Mosaic age and the Church age. They still performed and trusted Mosaic ceremonies for salvation, while looking forward to Christ (Acts 15:1,5). These 12 Ephesian disciples, (like modern Charismatics) did not lack faith, but they lacked correct doctrine for faith to take hold of.

Paul's discussion with them was as follows:

John's disciples: "We are believers."

Paul: "Have ye received the Holy Spirit since ye believed?" v.2. (Paul knew that if they had've believed in Christ after Pentecost, they would have received the Holy Spirit).

John's disciples: "We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost." v.2.

Paul: "Unto what then were ye baptized?" v.3.

John's disciples: "unto John's baptism." v.3

(**Note:** Paul here realised that their missing link was information about Christ, not information about the baptism of the Holy Spirit. So Paul preached Christ Jesus to them, not the Holy Spirit).

Paul: John baptised with the baptism of repentance, saying that they should believe on Jesus Christ who was to come after John.

John's disciples: They believed.

They were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

Paul laid his hands on them.

The Holy Ghost came on them.

They spoke with tongues and prophesied.

Question 2: Why did Paul lay hands on them?

Answer: To show them that as Jews, they were no longer to follow John the Baptist's teachings, but they were to follow Christ's teachings as taught by the Apostles.

Paul laying hands on them imparted the Holy Spirit to them.

This would have strongly established the Apostle's authority to them.

Question 3: Why were they given tongues?

Answer: To connect them with Pentecost.

To show them that they were now part of the church with every other believer in Christ.

To warn other Jews at Ephesus to receive Christ, and that the Apostle's message was of God.

Note Acts 19:11,12, "God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul."

Many Jews were convinced by the tongues and miracles that established Paul's authority as a **messenger** of God, and with the **message** of God.

Sevea the Chief Priest's seven sons tried to duplicate Paul's miracles of casting out evil spirits. This was done in order to neutralize Paul's authority to stop Jews leaving the synagogue for Christ. The demonized man beat them up. This led to many more Jews and Greeks coming to Christ.(19:11-20). **Note:** The anointing of the Holy Spirit is the initial act of indwelling of the Holy Spirit as seen from Luke 4:18; Acts 4:27; 10:38; 2 Corinthians 1:21; I John 2:20,27. "Anoint" means to apply.

Question 4: Why was there a **short time delay** in them receiving the Holy Spirit after believing Paul's message?

Answer: A similar time delay occurred with the Samaritan believers in Acts 8 for the same reason. Receiving the Holy Spirit by Paul laying his hands on them identified the Ephesian disciples with the Christian church established since Pentecost under the **Apostle's authority**. In Acts 8, **no believers spoke in tongues** because there were **no unbelieving Jews in Samaria** that needed the warning to repent. Jews hated Samaritans and would not live in Samaria. Tongues at Ephesus connected this work with God's work at Jerusalem. God's program was no longer centred in Israel. The casting away of Israel in God's judgment was now underway.

Acts is not a norm for the church age, but a narrative of the transition period:

1. From Synagogue **to** church,
 2. From law **to** grace,
 3. From Old Testament saints **to** New Testament Christians,
 4. From mainly a Jewish body of believers **to** the body of Christ, with neither Jew nor Gentile.
- Once the transition between the old and new covenants had been accomplished, with the Holy Spirit poured out, the Holy Spirit was then available to all who believed in Christ at the time of belief. This is how God works today.

Peter was present in Acts 2,8,10. There must be one church, as Jesus prayed in John 17:20-21, not a Jewish church, a Samaritan church, and a Gentile church.

Jewish witnesses heard tongues spoken by Gentile converts in Acts 10, by John's disciples in Acts 19, and the Jewish witnesses Peter and John verified the **Samaritans'** conversion in Acts 8.

Paul wrote about the Holy Spirit many times, but he never stated that the normal Christian experience is the same as what people experienced in Acts 2,8,10,19.

Paul was saved in Acts 9, and gave his salvation testimony in Acts 22,24,26, yet never does he say that he spoke in tongues at his salvation.

The experience of the apostles is found in the transitional book of Acts, while the teaching of the apostles is in the epistles, which are our guide for today. In no New Testament epistle is there any teaching of a second blessing after salvation which is evidenced by speaking in tongues.

Michael Green in "I believe in the Holy Spirit" says: "The Charismatics were always out for power. Paul's reply was to boast not of his power but of his weakness through which alone the power of Christ can shine". When I am weak, then am I strong. The power of a Christian comes from the patient enduring of suffering, reviling, hardship and of thorns in the flesh.

6. DOES LUKE 11:13 TEACH THAT WE MUST ASK GOD FOR THE HOLY SPIRIT? NO

"If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him."

This was a **valid request** for the disciples **up until the end** of Christ's earthly ministry just as with some Old Testament saints who received a temporary filling for a task.

At the end of Christ's earthly ministry, he said: "**I will pray** the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever." (John 14:16).

The disciples were now **not** to receive the Holy Spirit in answer to their own petition, but **in answer to Christ's petition**. Hence today the Holy Spirit is given to all who believe, because of Christ's prayer, without the individual asking for it. When we receive Christ as our Saviour, we immediately receive the Holy Spirit also. (Romans 8:9,14,16). Believers today are not to pray for the Holy Spirit because this prayer of the disciples (for the Holy Spirit) was answered at Pentecost.

Charismatic's Careless Handling of Scripture.

Charismatics use these verses to keep people from questioning the movement.

7. THE SIN AGAINST THE HOLY SPIRIT. Matthew 12:22-32.

When you oppose a Charismatic, they often become very angry, and reply with scriptures that are misinterpreted and misapplied.

They claim that if you criticize tongues or Charismatic doctrine, you are doing what the Pharisees did who opposed Jesus in attributing Jesus' work to Satan. They accuse you of coming close to committing the unpardonable sin of blasphemy against the Holy Spirit.

Question: What does Matthew 12:22-32 really teach?

Answer: Jesus had just healed a man possessed with a devil causing blindness and dumbness. The obvious meaning of this miracle was that Jesus was the Messiah. The Pharisees, however, not wanting to believe in Jesus, **attributed His miracles done by the Holy Spirit to Satan.**

This blasphemy against the Holy Spirit can only be committed when one observes Christ physically on earth doing miracles. Since Christ is not physically on earth today, it is impossible to commit this sin of blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, that is, the sin of attributing the works of Christ to Satan.

Note: a) This sin was an historical event.

b) It can only be applied to one who rejects the work of the Holy Spirit in presenting Christ's salvation.

c) It can never be used in challenging a Charismatic viewpoint.

8. JESUS CHRIST THE SAME YESTERDAY, and TODAY, and FOREVER. Hebrews 13:8.

Charismatics use this verse to teach that: What happened "yesterday" during Christ's earthly ministry and during the apostle's lifetime, is happening now. They use this to claim that: tongues are for today, new revelations happen now, healings continue, & miracles of first century magnitude still happen now. Does the Charismatic interpretation of this verse stand up to hermeneutic principles?

Literally, Hebrews 13:8 means: Jesus Christ is unchanging yesterday, today and forever. This is true of **Christ's nature or essence.** But it is **wrong historically**, which disproves their claim. Why should "yesterday" only go as far back as Jesus' earthly ministry?

Note these problems with their position:

a) **Jesus never spoke in tongues** during His earthly ministry.

b) As far as "forever" is concerned, **none of the gifts are forever.** I Corinthians 13:8-13 clearly states that the gifts of prophecy, tongues and knowledge will not endure forever.

c) Do we still offer lambs as blood sacrifices? No, because while Jesus Christ is the same forever, **God's methods of operation change throughout history.**

d) Do we still walk about naked as Adam and Eve did in Eden before the Fall? No, because God's method of operation was different then. So with tongues. Charismatics force a meaning into Hebrews 13:8 that is not there in order to justify their belief that tongues, miracles, healing and prophecies are happening today just as they did in the first century.

9. THE PROMISES OF POWER IN MARK 16:17,18

"And these **signs** shall follow them that believe;

In my name **shall** they ¹cast out devils;

²they **shall** speak with new tongues;

³they **shall** take up serpents; and

⁴**if** they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them;

⁵they **shall** lay hands on the sick, and they **shall** recover."

Charismatics claim that today, these signs follow the preaching of the gospel where it is preached in the Holy Spirit's power and faith. These four "shalls" were deliberate proofs that the apostles performed to publically demonstrate their authority, yet nobody can do these at will today successfully.

This is shown to be false because of our previous discussion on Mark 16:11-20 (p.499-500).

10. WILL BELIEVERS DO THE SAME and GREATER WORKS THAN CHRIST'S MIRACLES AS JOHN 14:12 SEEMS TO SAY?

“Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the **works that I do** shall he do also; and **greater works** than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.”

Jesus' miracles were:

- a) Creation - turning water into wine.
- b) Healing the lame, lepers, blind and deaf.
- c) Casting out demons.
- d) Control of nature - stilling storms, walking on water, cursing the figtree, multiplying loaves.
- e) Raising the dead.

Question: Are there any documented cases of ordinary believers since 96AD doing the above miracles to the same degree as Jesus? No, never. No one comes close to Jesus' miracles. John 14:12 means that Jesus referred to the total ministry of believers preaching the gospel after Pentecost.

The greater works applied initially to the apostles that Jesus was speaking to. They were given power to perform special miracles as credentials of their office (Romans 15:18,19; Hebrews 2:3,4). For example, Peter preached one sermon and 3000 people were saved in one day. This may have been more than were saved in Jesus' entire three year ministry.

While Jesus' earthly ministry was confined to Palestine, the gospel in the church age would go to the ends of the earth.

These are the greater works that believers would do.

Believers works are greater in scope of influence and in **number**, but not greater in quality.

11. QUESTIONS ANSWERED

Question 1: What is the evidence of being filled with the Holy Spirit? Is it speaking in tongues?

Answer: This evidence of being filled with the Holy Spirit is:

- a) Exhibiting the fruit of the Spirit in Galatians 5:22,23 of “love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness and temperance.”
- b) Walking worthy of the Lord as described in Ephesians 4,5,6. We are filled with the Spirit as we exhibit these 40 qualities.

Tongues are not the evidence of being filled with the Holy Spirit because:

- a) All believers did not speak in tongues (I Corinthians 12:30).
- b) The Holy Spirit distributes gifts as He wills (I Corinthians 12:7-11).

Question 2: What about miracles being done by **Stephen** (Acts 6:8), **Philip** (Acts 8:5-8), **Barnabas** (Acts 14:3), the **seventy** (Luke 10:1,9,17,19), or in Mark 9:38-41?

Answer: Sign gifts authenticated the apostles and their appointed representatives. Stephen and Philip belonged to the seven appointed by the apostles in Acts 6:1-7 by the laying on of hands (v.6). Paul and Barnabas had hands laid on them as commanded by the Holy Spirit to go on Paul's first missionary journey. (Acts 13:1-3).

The seventy that Jesus sent out did not have the office of apostle, but were “sent ones” to proclaim Christ's Kingdom as Christ personally directed His program on earth. Both the seventy and the man casting out demons were before the church age started, and does not establish a precedent to be done by all church age believers.

Question 3: Does 1 Corinthians 1:7 include miracle workers in the Corinthian church other than the apostles?

Answer: “so that ye come behind in no spiritual gift.”

“**In no gift**” means “**in no favour, or gracious endowment**.” The word used here (Charisma) does not necessarily refer to miraculous endowments, but includes all the kindnesses of God towards them in producing peace of mind, humility, steadfastness, etc. Paul is saying that they possessed, in rich abundance, all those endowments which were bestowed on Christians. This does not teach that non apostles did miracles.

Question 4: Why would God allow **error in Charismatic** meetings where the Holy Spirit was blessing?

Answer: We must not assume that because God is blessing a church, then **all** aspects of that church please Him. Many Charismatics assume that because people are being saved in Charismatic churches, and large numbers attend, then all aspects of Charismatic doctrine and practice are God approved. In Revelation 2 and 3, the churches at Ephesus, Pergamos, Thyatira and Sardis each had good and bad aspects. Hence we must not think that because a church looks good in some areas, then all aspects of that church are good. Many people have been saved in churches with false doctrine.

Note: Satan's attacks are most pronounced in churches seeking to uphold sound **Bible** doctrine, who **win souls** to Christ, who seek to **live holy lives**, who **expose Satan's lies**, and who **attack Satan's Kingdom**.

Satan would not attack but help to build churches that teach error and promote Satan's Kingdom, such as JW's, Mormons, New Agers, etc.

Question 5: Do people have the genuine gift and power to "**slay people in the Spirit?**"

Answer: This has no Biblical basis whatsoever.

Any appeals to Daniel (Daniel 8:16-27), Peter, James and John on the Mount of Transfiguration (Matthew 17:1-7), John on Patmos (Revelation 1:17), Ezekiel (Ezekiel 2:1-3), or the multitude coming to arrest Jesus in Gethsemane (John 18:1-6), will not do, because in each case these people fell to the ground because of direct contact with **God** or an **angel of God**.

People instead **fall on their face**, (not on their back) and **worship God**, not become unconscious.

"and so falling down on his face he will worship God." I Corinthians 14:25.

This slaying in the spirit (**falling backwards**) is mentioned in Isaiah 28:11-13 where Israel was warned to repent after hearing other tongues (v.11), "yet they would not hear" (v.12) so God judged them by them "**falling backward**, and be broken, and snared, and taken." (v.13). Hence, people falling backward is a sign of God's judgment on those who refuse to hear God's warnings. This is a strong warning against the evil of Charismatic slaying in the spirit.

Question 6: How does the Holy Spirit lead us if not through revelations, visions, dreams & prophecies?

Answer: 1) "**Thy Word** (Bible) is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path." Psalm 119:105. God may use a passage of Scripture personally applied to our situation.

2) Circumstances.

3) Open and closed doors.

4) Wisdom of pastors. Some believers are bad advisors. God speaks to us through the Bible as we apply it to each situation. Avoid the advice of fools, ignorant and wicked people.

Leadings, impressions, hunches etc. are not always reliable because we may have overlooked some facts which lead us to a wrong impression. So, get all the facts, match them with Scriptures and make the choice based on whether a situation is in line with Bible truth, or against Bible truth. The Holy Spirit will then give you peace as you act according to the Bible.

Question 7: Isn't it a good thing for the Charismatic Movement to unite with Roman Catholics if they are **winning Catholics** to Christ?

Answer: The end never justifies the means. God calls us to be separate from sin and false doctrine. The Charismatic Movement has the approval of the Roman Catholic church who established the "Catholic Charismatic Renewal Office" in 1972.

The Charismatic Movement will bring about unprecedented ecumenical unity, which will lay the foundation of and usher in the worldwide harlot church of Revelation 17, Mystery Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots and abominations of the earth. This church will bear the name of Christ, but give loyalty to the Antichrist who will be able to perform signs and wonders (Revelation 13:3,13,14,15).

Popularity has slain more prophets of God than persecution ever did. In Christianity today, whatever is popular, whatever is accepted, whatever brings good feelings, whatever brings unity, all become the accepted norm for the church.

Luther said: "**Unity without truth is treason.**" Truth is being set aside in the name of unity. Darkness and light are mixing and embracing.

In John 17:17-21, Jesus **first** prayed that we would be sanctified by the truth of God's Word, (v.17), then He prayed for unity (v.21) based on truth. The basis for unity is always the truth of God's Word.

Question 8: Why should we question the source of prophecies and knowledge if they come true?

Answer: The test of a true prophet is 100% accuracy. We should consider all a "prophet's" predictions to see if every one always comes true. If he correctly predicts 99 times and one time he is wrong, then he is a false prophet (Deuteronomy 18:22). Also his prophecy must agree with all of Scripture. Demons have access to much information and can make correct predictions to win people over.

Question 9: Why do we have to go into such intricate and complicated studies to know the answers on these Charismatic issues? Why can't we just accept the Scriptures at their first surface interpretation?

Answer: The Bible has shallow parts and deep parts. Even Peter said that some of the Bible was hard to understand (2 Peter 3:14-16). Hence we need to study the Bible carefully and thoroughly (2 Timothy 2:15). The problem with the Corinthian church was that they were content with immaturity. Hence they could not understand other spiritual truths (I Corinthians 3:2,3). The Lord has given Bible teachers who must study the Bible to rightly divide it, so that Christians will not be tossed to and fro with every wind of doctrine.

Question 10: Are you saying that it is impossible to cast out demons today because of Mark 16:17-20?

Answer: No. Nobody today has the gift of casting out demons (a type of healing). Demons are cast out today because of the prayers of Christians (James 5:14-16) and by the power of the Lord Jesus, not because someone has the gift of exorcism.

Question 11: How do you explain that some people seem genuinely healed at Charismatic meetings?

Answer: When John Wimber visited Sydney in March 1990. At his meetings he invited people to come for healing of disorders such as:

- a) Bad backs and necks.
- b) Problems with left big toe.
- c) Nervous disorders.
- d) Unequal leg lengths.
- e) Breathing problems.
- f) Barrenness.

These conditions are not in the same league as Jesus' and the Apostle's healing the blind, lame, deaf, raising the dead, curing the insane, etc.

When John Wimber was asked if he had success in healing Down's Syndrome children, (a genetic disease which cannot be healed by psychosomatic factors), he replied that he had prayed over more than 200 such children, but he admitted that not one child had been healed. This shows the Charismatic healing Movement to be false.

In the Indonesian revivals it was claimed that God raised people from the dead. The trouble was that the locals had different definitions for death. If a person was unconscious they deemed him as dead.

Question 12: Doesn't Joel 2:28-32 say that before Christ returns men and women will prophesy, etc.?

Answer: No, it doesn't. Read Joel 2:27 which tells us that after Christ has returned in glory, Israel gets saved; then read Joel 2:28 which says afterwards (i.e. after Christ's return) your sons and daughters shall prophesy. This happens in the Millennium, not in the church age.

12. COUNTERFEIT ECUMENICAL UNITY OF TODAY'S TONGUES

When tongues appears in **fundamental** and **evangelical** churches, strife and division result.

Yet when tongues occur in **liberal** churches where doctrine is not important, then unity results.

The Charismatic Movement produces a counterfeit unity.

- a) Instead of **Christ** being the centre, they give the Holy Spirit central attention. Jesus said of the Holy Spirit, "He shall not speak of Himself. He shall glorify me." John 16:13,14.
- b) Instead of the **Bible** being the basis, their **experience** becomes the way of knowing God's will. "If they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them." Isaiah 8:20.

Old liberalism and new Pentecostalism have joined and denominational barriers began to fall.

- 1) An Assembly of God Pastor refers to an **Episcopal** priest who has recently received the Charismatic spirit baptism and ministry “power”, yet still does not believe in Christ’s virgin birth or resurrection. The Assembly of God Pastor well asks: “I can’t understand why God would give all that power to a fellow so far out on the liberal left.”
- 2) Pentecostal **Christadelphians** deny Christ’s deity, His pre-existence, and personality of the Holy Spirit, yet they speak in tongues. It does not matter what a person believes doctrinally, as long as he speaks in tongues as evidence of the “baptism of the Holy Spirit.”

Question 13:How can this experience be available to anyone regardless of how heretical are his views?

- 3) Rome took in the Charismatic Movement, when in 1975 Pope Paul VI blessed a gathering of Catholic Charismatics. Both Rome and the Charismatic Movement hold to similar positions on the Bible in that they both allow new revelations from God beyond the Bible.

Roman Catholic priest Edward O’Connor of Notre Dame writes in “The Pentecostal Movement in the Catholic Church”, p.23,28,32 that:

“Although they derive from Protestant backgrounds, the Pentecostal churches are not typically Protestant in their beliefs, attitudes or practices. p. 23.

Catholics who have accepted Pentecostal spirituality have found it to be fully in harmony with their traditional faith and life. p.28.

It cannot be assumed that the Pentecostal Movement represents an incursion of Protestant influence.” p.32.

O’Connor says that Catholic Charismatics have been brought back to Penance, devotion to Mary, and devotion to the Real Presence in the Eucharist, through their “baptism in the Holy Spirit.”

The Charismatic Movement does nothing to unsettle Roman Catholic faith or traditions.

The Catholic “spider” is about to welcome the Charismatic “fly” into its parlour.

Charismatics may have been “slain”, but not “in the Spirit”.

13. TRIBULATION APPROACH TO TONGUES

Tongues at best is a learned gibberish; at worst it is caused by demon possession as in occult tongues.

The devil uses tongues to:

a) **distract** from the real issue in salvation, which is faith in Christ as Saviour.

b) **distort spirituality**, as people think that tongues produces spirituality.

In Corinth, tongues had nothing to do with spirituality, but were associated with carnality.

Satan counterfeits Christ as the Head of the church, with the Antichrist to be the head of ecumenism.

In 2 Thessalonians 2:8,9 the Antichrist’s coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders. The antichrist will have a false gift of miracles, healings and tongues.

Some illnesses can be demon induced, and cures can be achieved by Satan removing the demons from people in order to deceive the world. Hence the Satanic counterfeit of tongues and healing will confuse the lost and hinder them from receiving the gospel. They will reject the truth, hence 2 Thess. 2:11 says, “And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion that they should believe a lie.” As a person consistently rejects truth, his heart is hardened, and he is incapable of discerning truth from error, and chooses error. eg. Pharaoh, JW’s, Mormons, etc.

“When they (religious leaders of the day) shall say unto you, seek unto them that have **familiar spirits**, and unto wizards that peep and mutter: should not a people seek unto their God.” Isaiah 8:19.

The Hebrew word for “familiar spirits” is “**OB**” and in the Greek Septuagint is “**EGGASTRIMUTHOS**”, both words meaning ventriloquist demons, fallen angels who control the vocal chords of their hosts. “Peep” means a high falsetto voice. o “mutter” means a deep hollow voice.

The best documented modern case of this is Helene Smith in Switzerland who spoke in an ancient language of India. At first, many thought that she had the gift of tongues. However, her “gift” proved to be a clear case of demon possession, because when the demon left her (Luke 11:24,28), she had no recollection of what had happened.

In 1 Kings 22:22, a wicked spirit appears in heaven, offering to fulfil a mission as a lying spirit in the mouth of false prophets on earth. Hence, a **lying spirit can impersonate the Holy Spirit**. Modern spirit-baptisms with tongues and healings are often due to demons impersonating the Holy Spirit.

Question: How will Satan successfully deceive the world into worshipping him?

Answer: By the Satanic **healing** of the Antichrist in Revelation 13:3,4,12-15, and by the miraculous gift of **tongues** that Satan gives to the Image (v.15).

Hence, Satanic healing and tongues will become a worldwide delusion as the Antichrist draws near.

In Matthew 24:4,5,23-26, “For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great **signs** and **wonders**, insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall **deceive** the very elect.”

Question: How will they deceive?

Answer: By signs and wonders.

Question: What will they be trying to make people believe?

Answer: That whenever they do these signs and wonders, it is the Holy Spirit manifesting His power.

Refuse to go and see what is going on.

Some Pentecostal preachers intentionally use hypnosis to temporarily heal people and to suggest to them to speak in tongues.

eg. An American Pentecostal “evangelist” and “healer” named Valdez, offered Franquin the hypnotist \$100,000 a year tax-free to be a Pentecostal evangelist and healer. Franquin refused. This was reported in the Sydney Daily Telegraph newspaper, Jan. 26, 1956.

14. HYPNOTIC IMITATION OF TONGUES AND HEALING.

Many Charismatic preachers are religious hypnotists.

Any good hypnotist can make his subject speak in tongues, or feel that he is healed of some illness (only to relapse later), or by a touch putting the poor victim into a trance (Charismatics call this “slaying in the spirit.”)

A Charismatic preacher can hypnotize people if the following conditions are met:

- a) The person must be **convinced** of the hypnotist’s ability,
- b) The person must be a **willing** subject,
- c) Repetitive, **rhythmic music**, as occurs in many Charismatic rock music bands.
- d) The person must be **expecting** something to happen (e.g.: to be healed, or to speak in tongues, or be slain in the spirit).

Most people can apply hypnotic suggestions if they knew how. When a preacher has unknowingly produced the necessary mental condition in a susceptible person, things happen which may deceive the preacher into thinking that he has some special gift of the Holy Spirit. When others think that he has this gift, they are ready to be the next victims.

Hypnotists admit that it is very simple to give a person a headache, toothache, shorten a limb, remove pain, pass a needle through a man’s hand painlessly, impart the “gift” of tongues, make a person feel and think that he is healed. (This is always a temporary healing just as Charismatic healings are). Religious hypnotists go on deceiving others, calling it the “Baptism of the Holy Spirit.”

Our body is like a **prison** to keep our spirit in, but it is also like a **fortress** to keep out the corruption of demon spirits. Normally our mind and body repels demonic attacks. But if we allow our mental fence to be broken down by surrendering control of our mind to another person or spirit or to group pressure (as in blanking your mind to speak in tongues, or allowing yourself to be slain in the spirit, or healed) then we are exposed to demonic attack. The victim is unable to restore the fence in his own power. He must re-submit to being only guided by the Bible, not by some religious hypnotist. The sad end of such a victim is that often, morality drops, Bible truth is rejected and error is embraced, spirituality wanes, tongues takes greater control, and mental breakdowns often occur.

Enoch Coppin, who was a hypnotist in his unsaved days had practised many hypnotic healings, the giving and taking away of bodily afflictions and speaking in tongues, insists that their source is the demonic forces of Satan.

15. MENTAL SUSCEPTIBILITY and SURRENDER OF THE WILL.

Once a person has been made mentally susceptible by:

- a) Wrongly applied, falsely interpreted **scriptures** (as in all cults),
- b) Listen to exciting **testimonies** of healings, tongues, and wonderful spiritual experiences, the door into his mind is open for Pentecostal seducing demons to enter, who impersonate the Holy Spirit.

Many Charismatic healers imply that someone in the audience has a very sinful sex problem. Many people have a temptation to sexual sin. This is used to make the person feel inferior, as a second rate Christian in need of so-called “Holy Spirit Baptism”. This is a commonly used trick to make people’s minds susceptible to think that they need tongues, healing, slaying, etc. as a solution to their problem. This is a high pressure selling technique. Many Charismatic healers trick people to believing that they are healers by claiming to make a person’s legs equal in length, when they were equal in the first place.

Example 1: Two old ladies on crutches came to the front of a Charismatic service to be healed. After the laying on of hands they were hypnotically convinced that God had healed them. On the way out they both fell down the steps breaking their hips. Friends then sent for the Charismatic healer to heal them, but he refused to come, nor did he visit them in hospital.

Example 2: A young man claimed to be healed from sinus. When asked how he felt, he replied, “I am healed, but I still have the symptoms.” He was surely deceived.

Question: What is the Charismatic spirit baptism?

Answer: The human being has two nervous systems, the voluntary in the brain, and involuntary which controls involuntary actions such as heart muscle contraction, breathing, etc. Normally the voluntary system is in control, but in the so-called spirit-baptism when one speaks in tongues, he by-passes his brain, allowing the subconscious mind to become active. Hence tongues comes from the involuntary nervous system as gibberish which is disconnected from the conscious commands of the brain. Hence, control of one’s life is given to the subconscious involuntary nervous system, when real control should be given to the mind controlled by the Bible as it directs the voluntary conscious mind, and as it consciously weighs every decision in accordance with Scripture to be right or wrong.

Question: Is healing in the atonement? Charismatics claim that healing is in Christ’s atonement for sin, as a benefit available to all believers today. If this was true, then no Christian should ever be sick or die. Physical healing has been secured by Christ’s atonement but we only get it at Christ’s return when we receive our resurrection bodies, not now in the Church age.

“with his stripes we are healed.” Isaiah 53:5; “by whose stripes ye **were healed.**” 1 Peter 2:24 Peter tells believers that the healing we have is “**past tense**”, a spiritual healing received at salvation. We do not have complete physical healing today because:

- 1) **Healing left Paul.** “**Trophimus** have I left at Miletum sick.” 2 Timothy 4:20. Paul couldn’t heal him.
- 2) “**Epaphroditus** ... was sick nigh unto death.” Philippians 2:25-27.

Why did Paul let him get so bad? Why didn’t Paul heal him straight away? **Why didn’t Epaphroditus heal himself**, if every believer can do it? Did he not have enough faith? Paul never criticized him for lack of faith. His raising to health was an act of divine mercy, not an atonement right.

- 3) “**Use a little wine for thy stomach’s sake** and thine often **infirmities** (sicknesses)”. 1 Timothy 5:23. This would have been madness if Paul could heal Timothy. Why didn’t Timothy heal his own stomach and other **often** sicknesses by laying on of hands as Charismatics do? Why use wine? Did Timothy lack the faith to be healed?

- 4) “Luke the beloved **physician.**” Colossians 4:14.

Luke would not have continued as a physician if he (along with all believers) could heal at will.

- 5) “**Is any sick among you?** Let him call for the elders of the church; and let **them** pray over him...” James 5:14-15. Why didn’t the sick man heal himself if healing is in the atonement? The “prayer of faith,” not the “gift of healing” shall save the sick. The sick believer was to call for the church elders, not the healer, or the person of great faith.

- 6) “I will glory in my **infirmities** (weaknesses, sicknesses)..” 2 Corinthians 12:9,10.

- 7) “The creature itself also **shall be delivered** from the bondage of **corruption.**” Romans 8:21.

102. FIRST CORINTHIANS 12.

I. BACKGROUND OF THE CHURCH AT CORINTH.

Corinth was a city of commerce, culture, religion and vice. Strategically located it became a trade centre for merchants from East and West. As its wealth increased so did its need for banks provided by pagan temples which people thought would never be robbed. As people lost respect for the gods, they robbed the temples. Jews provided a better banking service, so Jews became wealthy at Corinth. Corinth was the capital of the province of Achaia, a city of 700,000 people in Paul's day. Its population was Greek, Roman and Jewish.

Paul, Silas and Timothy started the church at Corinth in Acts 18 in 54AD. Many unbelieving, intolerant, bigoted Jews living in Corinth was the reason why tongues were so greatly used here. Paul spent two years teaching, preaching and organising the church. Paul wrote 1 Corinthians in 59 AD after his three year stay at Ephesus. (Acts 19).

II. PROBLEMS IN THE CORINTHIAN CHURCH.

Although they were "sanctified in Christ" (1 Corinthians 1:2), "enriched by Christ in all utterance and knowledge" (1 Corinthians 1:5), and "they came behind in no spiritual gift" (1:7), all was not well in the Corinthian church.

i) **It was not a spiritual church, but a carnal church.**

ii) **Division** (1:10; 11:18,19) and contentions (1:11). They followed human leaders (1 Cor. 1:12-15). Wherever tongues enters a church strong division will occur.

The only tongues speaking church in the New Testament epistles was a carnal, divided church. Paul's answer to divisions is to preach the gospel (1:17).

iii) **Selfishness.** They were carnal, babes in Christ (3:1). They were suing each other in court (6:6-8), they were misusing their Christian liberties (8:9-11), they were eating selfishly at their love feasts (11:20-22), and they were using the gifts for self-edification (1 Corinthians 12-14) just as many of today's Charismatics do.

iv) **Criticism.** They thought that they had spiritually outgrown Paul (4:3). In 2 Corinthians 10:10 they said of Paul that "his speech is contemptible." Paul here describes the situation as "some are puffed up." (1 Corinthians 4:6,18-20).

v) **Toleration of evil in the church.** There was fornication (5:1,2) and they failed to separate from evil (5:7, 11-13).

vi) **Heresy in the church**-usually accompanies evil. Some doubted the resurrection (1 Corinthians 15). Paul established the church at Corinth during his second missionary journey (Acts 18), spending 18 months there, then he left. Other pastors came, then many problems arose, such as rebellion against Paul's apostolic authority, etc. They perverted almost every aspect of their lives. They brought problems from paganism into the church. They misunderstood the Holy Spirit and equated His work with pagan ecstatic activity of the Acropolis temple, with its 1000 prostitute priestesses. The mystery Babylon religion of Corinth aimed to get its devotees into a semiconscious ecstatic hypnotic spell to contact their deities. Their mind would go into neutral and their emotions would take over. This made them feel very good. Many Charismatics today get into a similar state, attribute it to the Holy Spirit and conclude: "I felt so good, it must be of God." "Slaying in the Spirit" is a form of hypnosis and sometimes it is demonic. In 1 Corinthians 12:2, Paul says that they used to worship in the same way as pagans do in ecstatic demon religions. They were bringing these same old patterns into the church and letting demons invade their worship services. They could not distinguish between the acts of Satan and the work of the Holy Spirit.

Does the New Testament teach that when a Christian goes out of control, falls into a trance, and faints that it is of God? No. People only counterfeit what is valuable. Satan was busy counterfeiting spiritual gifts at Corinth, as well as today. In accepting the counterfeit, we forfeit the genuine.

III. THE NATURE AND PURPOSE OF GIFTS.

The Corinthians' self-indulgent spirit discussed in their sins of chapters 1-11, manifested itself also in spiritual gifts, thus producing selfishness, disunity, and chaos.

Do tongues turn a person inward to self concern and selfish interests, or does it open him up to others and their needs? Paul compares a church to a body, a family, an army, a temple, and a bride. The Corinthian church were like children with toys, instead of adults with valuable tools.

12:1 - "I would not have you ignorant." Though the Corinthians possessed spiritual gifts, they were ignorant of their nature, purpose and rules of use.

12:2 - "Ye know that ye were Gentiles, **carried away** unto these dumb idols, even as ye were led."

Paul reminds them of their past idol worshipping days, where they were **carried away**, led away or swept away in ecstasy, emotional hysteria, falling on the ground, and babbling in ecstatic speech, as Plato and Virgil record.

Paul is saying, "that is how it was when you were idolaters, but it should not be so now. Being swept away is not a sign of spirituality, but of your pagan days."

The Charismatic Movement today emphasizes "being carried away" or "slain in the spirit." The Holy Spirit does not produce what idolatrous worship produces. This practice is not in the New Testament, but is a worldwide occult experience. Paul here warns against false manifestations of spiritual gifts.

Note: In 1 Samuel 19:18-24, Saul has been trying to kill David. Saul sends three messengers after David, but the Spirit of God takes over them, restraining them from taking David (v.20), and causing them to prophesy. Finally Saul comes after David. The Spirit of God comes on Saul causing him to **prophesy** all day and all night, **take off his clothes** and **lie down naked**. This was God's **judgment** on him, to stop him from killing David. To suggest this is normal, desirable behaviour for all Christians today is absurd, it is not in the New Testament, and is ignoring the context. Such behaviour never happened to approved men of God.

Sadly, the modern Charismatic movement is ignorant of accurate knowledge of God's Word on tongues and other spiritual gifts. Paul's illustration in v.2 gently and firmly implies that demonic deception behind idols (1 Corinthians 10:20) can still harm the believer who enters the spiritual realm in ignorance of God's Word.

12:3 - "Wherefore, I give **you** to understand, that no man speaking by the Spirit of God, calleth Jesus accursed: and that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost."

Paul here warns the Corinthians and by application, the Charismatics today, that it is possible for Christians ("you" addressed) to speak by the Spirit of God or by another spirit. Some Corinthians became so confused, and their worship so paganized and frenzied, that they even allowed the Lord to be cursed in their meeting. Those who were saying "Jesus is accursed" claimed to be speaking by the Spirit of God. The Corinthians were warned of evil spirits who sought to creep in among them, pretending to be the Spirit of God. They too could give manifestations imitating the Holy Spirit's work. Before their conversion they had been led along blindly by the demon powers of these evil spirits, and had not gained sufficient maturity to be able to discern what was of the Holy Spirit and what was demon imitation, so they were given a way to test the spirits.

This tells us that evil spirits are still able to give manifestations of what seems like the Holy Spirit.

To truly say that Jesus is the Lord implies deity, as Lord implies sovereign authority. Old Testament Jews regarded Jehovah as too sacred to pronounce, so they used "Lord." When Polycarp was told to say "Caesar is Lord" (meaning God), he said "Jesus is Lord" (meaning God) instead.

"No man can say Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost." Jesus said that the Holy Spirit **would not speak of himself**, but would always speak of and promote the Lord Jesus Christ.

"Howbeit when he the spirit of truth is come, he will guide you into all truth: for **he shall not speak of Himself;He shall glorify Me.**" John 16:13,14.

The Holy Spirit is never the author of a statement like this:

"Now that you have received Christ you have salvation, but you need to receive the Holy Spirit to be a complete Christian."

This wrong statement says that Christ begins the work of salvation, but that the Holy Spirit completes it. "that in **all things** He might have the pre-eminence." Colossians 1:18.

Gardiner summarizes 1 Corinthians 12:1-3 as follows:

- i) God intends Christians to be concerned with the **total of spiritual life**, not just the spiritual gifts.
- ii) God does not want us to be **ignorant** of the purpose of spiritual gifts.
- iii) When the Holy Spirit controls a Christian, he is **not carried away** or out of control as idolaters were.

iv) **The Holy Spirit does not exalt Himself**, but exalts Christ as Lord.

12:4 "Now there are **diversities (varieties) of gifts**, but the **same Spirit**."

Charisma (gifts) are divine abilities for believers to speak or serve in the power of the Holy Spirit.

Spiritual gifts are not natural talents or skills. God gives believers varieties of supernatural spiritual gifts just as players on a team have varieties of positions.

Two types of gifts are: Speaking gifts and serving gifts.

"If any man **speak**, let him speak as the oracles of God; .. if any man **minister**, let him do it as of the ability which God gives." 1 Peter 4:11.

A believer's gifts can be an overlapping combination of different amounts of several gifts, for example, 40% evangelism, 60% teacher. We may be strong in one gift, but not as strong in another gift.

12:5 "Now there are **differences (varieties) of administrations**, but the **same Lord**."

Differences of administrations = varieties of ministries.

Even Christians with the same basic gift, may manifest that gift in many different ways.

E.g. One **teacher** may specialize in teaching children, while another teacher may specialize with adults.

One **evangelist** may be able to powerfully address large crowds, while another evangelist's strength may be in one-to-one evangelism.

Every gift is a help or service gift, never given for self-edification. A gift exercised in private is a perverted gift. God gives his gifts **to us**, but to use for others. If we are **personally blessed** by using our gifts, then that blessing is the by-product, not the purpose of gifts.

"As every man has **received the gift**, even so **minister (use) the same to one another**, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God." 1 Peter 4:10.

God lends us his gifts for us to use for other's benefits and for God's glory.

12:6 **Varieties of results.**

"There are **diversities (varieties) of operations**, but it is the **same God** which worketh all in all."

• **Operations** (1755) = the results energized by God's grace.

Both the bestowing and the empowering of gifts are God's domain. God gives us power to use spiritual gifts. We should not all expect to see the same results, but different results of our gifts. Every gift is as spiritual and important as any other. We should aim to discover, to faithfully use, and be grateful for the gift the Lord has given us. No other believer can take our place in God's work. God has given no one else exactly the same gift or ministry as you. If we do not use our gifts or fulfil our ministry it will not be fulfilled. We see the Trinity in verses 4,5,6. "The same Spirit...the same Lord,...the same God."

12:7 "But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to **profit** withal."

• **Manifestation** (5321) = to make visible. The work of the Holy Spirit is given to profit or visibly benefit individuals and the church as a whole. If we fail to use our gifts, we hinder others in using their gifts, and we cripple our own ministry.

Four profitable benefits result from using our gifts:

1. Christians benefit as individuals.
2. Churches grow in quality and quantity.
3. New spiritual leaders are raised up.
4. Unity, joy, love and fellowship blossom in a church.

Gifts are for the good of the whole church, not for the individual enjoyment. The Corinthians were using their gifts selfishly to promote themselves, and not to prosper the church.

12:8-11 **Eighteen Gifts.**

Question: Why are gifts given?

Answer: To build churches by glorifying Christ, to edify others, to equip the church, & to arm soldiers.

<u>1 Cor. 12:8-10</u>	<u>1 Cor. 12:28-30</u>	<u>Romans 12:6-8</u>	<u>Ephesians 4:11</u>
Prophecy	Prophets	Apostles Prophets	Apostles Prophets Evangelists Pastor/Teacher
Wisdom Knowledge Faith Healing Miracles Discerning spirits Tongues Interpreting tongues	Teachers Healing Miracles Tongues Interpreting tongues Helps Government	Teachers Ruling Ministry Exhortation Giving Mercy	

1. APOSTLE.

Apostolic requirements were:

- a) Must have seen the resurrected Christ. Acts 1:22; 1 Corinthians 9:1.
- b) Commissioned directly by Christ. Acts 26:15-18; Mark 3:13-19; Luke 6:13-16.
- c) Accredited by miracles. 2 Corinthians 12:12.

Apostle means “one sent forth with orders.”

Two kinds of Apostles are:

- a) Twelve Apostles of the Lamb. (The office). Luke 6:13; 22:29,30; Revelation 21:14.
- b) Apostles of the churches. Barnabas (Acts 14:14), Andronicus and Junia (Romans 16:7); Paul, Silvanus, Timothy (1 Thessalonians 2:6); Epaphraditus is “your messenger” (apostolos in Greek) Philippians 2:25; unnamed brethren as messengers of the churches. (2 Cor. 8:23).

The work of an Apostle was to:

- a) Lay the foundation of the church. Ephesians 2:20.
- b) Confirming (authenticating) the word preached, before the Bible was completed by the signs of apostles. 2 Corinthians 12:12; Hebrews 2:3,4.
- c) Oversight that Philip’s work at Samaria, and that Paul’s work amongst the Gentiles were according to sound doctrine. Acts 8:14 and 15:1-29.

Miracles of Apostles. “Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds.” 2 Corinthians 12:12.

Apostles could heal “**all manner** of sickness...Go to the **House of Israel.**” Matthew 10:1,5-8.

The Apostles’ miracles authenticated the gospel message, the messengers, struck terror in the minds of opponents, and established Christianity. Also notice in Hebrews 2:3-4 how confirming signs refer to Christ’s and the apostle’s ministry.

In Romans 15:18-19, Paul says that the Holy Spirit “wrought by me...through mighty signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God.”

There are no Apostles today. Having fulfilled their function, they passed off the scene. Since no one today can be an eyewitness of the resurrected Christ, and since the church foundation has been laid, there can be no apostles today (Revelation 2:2). The office ceased.

When people claim to be apostles today, it is because they are trying to usurp a pastor’s authority.

2. **PROPHET** means "one who proclaims the will of God, one to whom & through whom God speaks."
- Sometimes it was **predictive** - Agabus predicted a famine (Acts 11:27,28), and sufferings for Paul (Acts 21:10-14).
 - Speaking the **mind of God** under immediate divine inspiration and revelation eg: instruct, warn.
Note: Direct inspiration distinguished prophecy from teaching. Before the completion of the scriptures, the prophets were the inspired revelators of God's teaching to the churches. They told the churches what to do, believe and teach. They spoke to edify, exhort & to comfort. 1 Cor.14:3.
 Prophets: i) gave special **revelation** from God, and
 ii) their message had the **authority** of God.
 - The **Passing of Prophets and Prophecy**. Their purpose was to span the gap between the Old Testament and New Testament, and to establish the church upon a firm foundation of Biblical truth (Ephesians 2:20).

2nd-21st Centuries	All Christians	Superstructure
1st Century	Apostles and Prophets	Foundation
 - The church in Ephesians 2:20 is like a building with a **foundation** laid in the first century by Christ, apostles and prophets, and a **superstructure** being built after the first century. Once a superstructure is being built, you don't relay the foundation. The gifts of apostle and prophet passed away during the foundation period of the church. Montanus the heretic in 150 AD claimed that he was an apostle and prophet with new revelations, equal to or above the Bible. The early Christians responded by vowing that nothing could be added to scripture. New revelations of Joseph Smith, Christian Science, Ellen White and JW's are false prophecies. Scripture is now complete. "We have also a more sure word of prophecy." 2 Peter 1:19.
 - A secondary meaning of prophet is the **pastor/teacher** of today **proclaiming** the revealed truth of first century apostles and prophets. First century prophecy revealed new truth to mankind. Teachers have taken the place of the prophets.

3. WORD OF WISDOM.

"to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom." 1 Corinthians 12:8.

Distinguish firstly between the **gift** of wisdom that only some had in the first century, and the **quality** of wisdom which is available to all Christians who ask in faith. James 1:5.

- Definition:** an immediate grasp of the secret plans and purposes of God. It is direct intuition of the humanly unknowable mysteries of God. This wisdom became Scripture.
- Examples of the gift of word of wisdom:**
 - James** used the gift of wisdom at the Jerusalem council in Acts 15:13-18 to reveal God's purpose for the Gentiles, so clearly that there was "one accord" v.25, and "it seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us." v.28.
 - Paul** had the gift of wisdom, allowing him to know intuitively God's purposes, as stated by Peter: "Even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you." 2 Peter 3:15,16.
 "O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God." Romans 11:33-36.
 "Which things also we speak, not in the words which **man's wisdom** teacheth, but which the **Holy Ghost** teacheth." 1 Corinthians 2:13.
 - Peter's** confession: "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God" (Matthew 16:16). Jesus replied "...flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my father which is in heaven." No man told Peter who Jesus really was, but God gave him the gift of the word of wisdom.
 - Jesus** promised wisdom to his disciples when they would be taken to courts for Christ's testimony: "Settle it before in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: For I will give you a mouth and **wisdom**, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist." Luke 21:14,15.

5. **Stephen** speaking to the council who “were not able to resist the wisdom and Spirit by which he spake.” Acts 6:10. Stephen spoke from God by a revelatory wisdom that amazed his opponents.
6. **Peter and John**, when called before the council to explain their preaching “through Jesus the resurrection of the dead”, displayed this gift of wisdom that Christ promised, confounding the educated councillors at the spiritual depth and perception of their answers. “Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were unlearned and ignorant men, they marvelled; and they took knowledge of them, that they had been with Jesus.” Acts 4:13.

c) **When did wisdom pass away?**

When the Bible was complete, there remained no more need for the **gift** of wisdom, although the **quality** of wisdom is available to all who ask for it in faith. (James 1:5).

The Bible is now our source of wisdom. Doesn't the Bible tell us to pray for wisdom (James 1:5)? "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally,...and it shall be given him." The gift of wisdom was not given to all men, but the quality of wisdom can be.

4. **WORD OF KNOWLEDGE.** 1 Corinthians 12:8.

a) **Definition:** The ability to know and understand the mind and will of God. Knowledge is seeing as the Holy Ghost sees. It was not learned knowledge, but revealed truth.

b) **Examples of knowledge:**

- i) **Elisha** knew supernaturally about his servant Gehazi's greedy scheme to get money from Naaman. (2 Kings 5:20-27). (2 Kings 6:8-12.
- ii) **Elisha** knew supernaturally of Syrian King Benhadad's war plans against Israel.
- iii) **Peter** knew that Ananias kept back part of the price of the land. Acts 5:3,4.(Acts 27:21-24
- iv) **Paul** knew from God that his ship would be wrecked, but that all would survive to land.

c) **It is not natural knowledge** acquired by study.

During the Reformation scholars like Erasmus, Luther and others saved the world from the grip of Roman Catholicism. If they had given in to laziness, or relied on some word of knowledge to come to them, they would have achieved very little.

God tells us to: “Study to shew thyself approved unto God.” 2 Timothy 2:15.

d) **Is the word of knowledge available for us today?**

“Whether there be knowledge, it shall vanish away.” 1 Corinthians 13:8.

Knowledge will vanish away, make idle, be inoperative, rendered of no effect after it's temporary use was fulfilled by 96 AD. Hence, intuitive knowledge is not available today.

e) **When did knowledge vanish away?**

“When that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part (knowledge and prophecy) shall be done away.” 1 Corinthians 13:10. The “perfect” is the completed New Testament by 96 AD.

5. **DISCERNING OF SPIRITS.**

a) **Definition:** Judgment by evidence whether spirits are evil or of God.

The danger of false prophets required this gift to recognize the truth or falsity of their utterances. Because the prophet spoke by revelation, false prophets were inevitable. Paul told his converts not to despise prophesying, but to prove all things. (1 Thessalonians 5:20).

b) **Examples of spirit discernment:**

1. **Peter** clearly discerned Simon the sorcerer to be false, when Philip could not. (Acts 8:18-23).
2. **Paul** who had the gift of discernment saw clearly into the very soul of the false prophet Elymas who was seeking to stop the conversion of Sergius Paulus. (Acts 13:9-11).

As the New Testament had not yet been completed, there was no written word to appeal to except the Old Testament. The New Testament's completion in 96 AD made this gift of discernment **obsolete**, as we can now check every statement with the Bible.

Today we need discernment, but this is based upon knowing the Bible. Hebrews 5:11-14 states that, “by reason of use have their **senses exercised** to **discern** both good and evil.”

6. **HEALING.** “To another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit.” 1 Cor. 12:9. There are different kinds of healings for different kinds of sicknesses. We can be sick in our body, mind, or spirit.

a) **Errors about the gifts of healing:**

i) **Healing is in the atonement.** "with his stripes we are healed." Isaiah 53:5.

This predicts Christ healing people's souls of sin. If healing is in the atonement, why does any Christian ever die? We are not promised freedom from sickness or disease until after the resurrection. “For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth **in pain** together until now. And not only they, but **ourselves also**, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, **waiting for the adoption**, to wit, the redemption of **our body**.” Romans 8:22,23.

This redemption is at Christ's second coming, “Who shall change our vile body.” Phil. 3:21.

ii) **All sickness is due to sin** - False.

Some sickness is due to sin, eg. 1 Corinthians 11:30-32.

Many other reasons for sickness are:

a) Satanic in origin (eg. Job, the woman healed in Luke 13:11-26).

b) Burden of serving God (eg. Epaphroditus in Philippians 2:25-30).

c) From God to deepen our spiritual life (eg. Paul in 2 Corinthians 12:7-10).

d) God's glory (John 9:1-3).

If all sickness was the result of sin, then Job's comforters would all have been right (Job 2:4,5; 4:7,8), and once the sin was confessed, he could claim relief from the illness.

iii) **God always wills to heal** - False.

If the sick person does not get healed, they claim it is due to sin in his life or lack of faith.

Trophimus was left at Miletum sick (2 Timothy 4:20), **Timothy** needed to take a little wine for his stomach's sake (1 Timothy 5:23), Paul's thorn in the flesh (2 Corinthians 12:7-9), Jesus only healed one man at the pool of Bethesda (John 5:1-9), though many lay there sick.

c) **Gifts of healing in the first century, and God's general healing today.**

God often healed in answer to prayer. Examples include:

- **Abimelech** was healed in answer to Abraham's prayer (Genesis 20:7).

- **Miriam** was healed by God when Moses prayed for her (Numbers 12:14).

- **Hezekiah** was healed by God in answer to his prayer (Isaiah 38:4,5).

The Apostles could exercise gifts of healing at will, without faith or expectancy in the person being healed. Examples include:

- **Peter** healing the lame man at the temple gate (Acts 3:11).

- By the hands of the **apostles**...they were healed **every one** (Acts 5:12-16).

- **Philip** exercised gifts of healing at Samaria (Acts 8:5-7).

- **Paul** at Ephesus “God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul.” (Acts 19:11,12).

- **Paul** healed Eutychus at Troas (Acts 20:6-12).

This class of men who had gifts of healing at will, ceased in the first century.

Who can heal 100% of sicknesses today? No one.

d) **Gifts of healing were a sign.**

i) “These **signs** shall follow them that believe,...they shall lay hands on the sick, and **they shall recover**....the Lord working with them (Apostles), and confirming the **word** with **signs** following.” (Mark 16:17,18,20).

These are clearly sign gifts. These signs were tokens, or marks of divine authority and power, to authenticate the Apostles and the New Testament as from God.

ii) “**Jesus**....a man approved of God among you by miracles, and wonders, and **signs**..” (Acts 2:22 and John 20:30,31). Jesus' signs proved his claims about himself to be true.

iii) “Was confirmed unto us by **them** (apostles) that heard him (Christ); God also bearing **them** (apostles) witness, both with **signs** and **wonders**, and with divers miracles, and **gifts of the Holy Ghost**, according to his will.” (Hebrews 2:3,4.)

Gifts of healing were God's signature on the truth of the Gospel.

iv) Paul uses **signs** as a **proof** of his own apostolic ministry:

“Truly the **signs** of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in **signs**, and wonders, and mighty deeds.” (2 Corinthians 12:12).

Therefore, gifts of healing were a sign to authenticate the message, the New Testament as the word of God, and the messengers (apostles) in the founding days of Christianity.

e) **Gifts of healing were Temporary**

i) When the word of God was **completed** (Greek “teleion”), and **codified**, the purpose for the gifts of healing was fulfilled and the sign gifts were no longer needed. Now the basis for belief is faith in the Bible's promises, not by sight of healing miracles, etc...In this post-apostolic age of grace, we are to “walk by faith, not by sight.” (2 Corinthians 5:7).

ii) **Note**: “the manna ceased on the morrow after they had eaten of the old corn of the land; neither had the children of Israel manna anymore...” (Joshua 5:11,12).

The miracle of manna in the wilderness was no longer needed because Israel ate the fruit of the land from then on. So it is with us today. The miraculous sign gifts are no longer needed, because we have the written word of God to base all decisions on today. Since the purpose for gifts of healing are ended, the gifts of healing are withdrawn.

f) We see this withdrawal of healing gifts develop progressively in Paul's life. There was a time when God wrought special miracles by Paul's hands “so that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the **diseases departed** from them, and evil spirits went out from them.” (Acts 19:12).

Question: Why, later on, could Paul or Timothy **not** heal Timothy's stomach?(1 Timothy 5:23). Why could Paul, Epaphroditus, or any of his workers not heal Epaphroditus? (Philippian 2:25).

Why? Because, as the New Testament was progressively completed, so also were the temporary gifts of healing progressively withdrawn.

g) Peter healed at will in Acts 3:1-9, Acts 5:12-16, Acts 9:36-42, yet modern "healers" can do nothing like the apostles.

h) Dr. Nolen wrote the book, “Healing: A doctor in search for a miracle” after investigating worldwide claims of Charismatic healings like Kathryn Kuhlman’s and others, he states: “I have been unable to find any such miracle worker.”

Claims of healing are cheap. Proof of healing is scarce. Don’t be deceived by unsubstantiated Charismatic claims. Some claimed healings are due to hypnotism, and the power of suggestion related to the autonomic nervous system. Kuhlman had trained herself to deny, emotionally and intellectually, anything that might threaten the validity of her ministry. If you see a genuine healing today, it is an individual act of God, not due to a somebody with ‘gifts of healing.’

i) **What about claimed healings today?**

a) They may be due to **hypnotism**. Some healings can happen through hypnotherapy and the surrendered mind of the seeker.

Let no one claim that these are the greater works than those of Christ (John 14:12). Two old ladies who were crippled in wheelchairs came out the front in a healing service to be healed. They got out of their wheelchairs after being told that they were healed. After the meeting they both fell down the steps breaking their hips. The “healer” never came near them then nor did he visit them in hospital later.

b) **Often no real healings take place, in a miraculous sense**. How do false healers succeed and continue to operate? It is because 85% of all sick people get better by medicine or by natural means. To the other 15% they can say: “You don't have enough faith to be healed”, or “you are tolerating some sin.” Sometimes people who are supposed to be healed stop taking medicine and die.

c) **Some cures are Satanic**. If Satan can blind a person 18 years with a spirit of infirmity (Luke 13:10-16), surely Satan could undo this sickness if it would cause many to be deceived into accepting a false gospel and going to hell.

d) **Some are real healings by God today** but the gifts of healing were temporary, passing away in the first century, as the Bible became completed.

7. MIRACLES.

“To another the working of miracles.” (1 Corinthians 12:10).

Miracles, healings and tongues all belong to the sign gifts of the infant first century church. The Book of Acts and Church history show that these gifts ended by 96 AD. They were the credentials of the apostles and their message. (2 Corinthians 12:12).

a) Many Christians want miracles to **convince unbelievers to be saved**, but Abraham in Luke 16:29-31 says that they will not be persuaded even though one rose from the dead.

b) Miracles can be “**lying wonders**” (2 Thessalonians 2:9), or they can be **mistakenly interpreted**, e.g. Matthew 12:24; Acts 16:16.

c) **Definition**: The gift of miracles is the operation of God’s power in a believer’s life, giving him inherent ability to perform supernatural works. E.g.: Elisha’s axe head floating in 2 Kings 6.

A miracle can be described as a power, sign or wonder.

Miracles called “**signs**” **authenticated the divine mission of the doer.**

Miracles called “**wonders**” produce **astonishment in the beholder.**

Miracles called “**mighty deeds**” were supernatural.

All 3 are mentioned in:

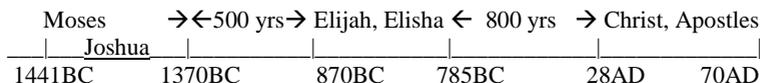
i) Acts 2:22 referring to ***Christ’s*** miracles, wonders and signs;

ii) 2 Corinthians 12:12 referring to ***Paul’s*** apostolic signs, wonders, and mighty deeds;

iii) 2 Thessalonians 2:4 referring to ***Antichrist’s*** power, signs and lying wonders;

iv) Hebrews 2:4 referring to the ***Apostles’*** signs, wonders, divers miracles, gifts of Holy Spirit.

d) **Large periods of Bible history are without miracles.** For example: Abraham, David, Solomon, Daniel, and John the Baptist did not perform miracles. Miracles are found in three periods of Bible history:



Explained as:

i) **Moses**: God authenticated Moses as God’s deliverer to convince Israel & Pharaoh. Ex4:1-5;7:3

Joshua: “as I was with Moses, so will I be with thee.” Joshua 1:5.

Joshua’s miracles at Jericho, Jordan and elsewhere authenticated Joshua’s leadership.

ii) **Elijah**: God authenticated Elijah’s message and God’s authority as Baal worship peaked, and as Jezebel sought to destroy the Levitical priesthood. Elijah’s miracles on Mt. Carmel of calling fire down from heaven had six authenticating purposes as seen by six “thats” in 1 Kings 18:36-37.

Elisha: Did 16 miracles to maintain God’s authority in Israel.

iii) **Christ**: God became man. This was proven by Christ’s signs, wonders and miracles. Acts 2:22; John 20:30,31.

Apostles: Signs confirmed their work, word and authority.

Key: In each of these three periods of miracles, two things occurred:

1) **New revelation** came, needing to be verified;

2) A man or **men of God** whose credentials as bearers of that revelation, needed to be verified.

Miracles never broke out **before** the messenger and his revelation arrived, but only **afterward**.

Therefore, on this basis, we should not expect miracles before the next great epoch of human history (i.e.: Christ’s Second Coming), but only **afterwards**.

e) **Purpose of Miracles in Scripture.** Why did God perform miracles in Bible times? 3 reasons:

i) To **introduce new revelation** (ie. **to verify a new message as from God**).

Miracles are only found at great points of spiritual history, to verify additions to scripture.

1) **Moses**: Miracles introduced this era. Moses introduced the Law, Tabernacle, sacrifices, and priesthood. The Pentateuch is written to codify God's new revelations to Israel.

2) **Elijah and Elisha**: Revived the prophetic era in an age of drastic spiritual decline.

God gave miracles to draw Israel back to the institution of prophecy. Judaism was built on the law and prophets. (Matthew 22:40).

3) **Christ and the Apostles**: The entire New Testament hangs on Christ and the apostles, whose miracles authenticated the new revelation of the New Testament.

ii) To **authenticate the messengers as being from God**.

Moses (Exodus 4:1-8) and *Joshua* (Joshua 3:7), then *Elijah* (1 Kings 17:24) and *Elisha* (2 Kings 2:15), then *Christ* (John 10:25) and the *Apostles* (2 Cor. 12:12) were attested as authentic by the miracles that God performed by them.

Miracles were God's testimony that those bringing in the new revelations (additions to Scripture) were indeed God's genuine official representatives, and not counterfeits, such as Joseph Smith, the founder of Mormonism, or Mohammed the founder of Islam.

"Believe me for the very works' sake." John 14:11.

Lack of miracles by modern cults show them to be false.

iii) To **instruct the observers**.

In each period the miracles had an impact on those who saw them:

1) **Moses: Pharaoh** (and the world) were taught the powerlessness of Egypt's gods, and the reality and power of Jehovah (Exodus 5:2; 9:27, 28; 10:16,17), when each miracle plague defeated an Egyptian god. **Lesson**: "Let my people go."

2) **Elijah: Ahab, Jezebel and Israel** were taught the powerlessness of Baal worship, and the need to turn to Jehovah (1 Kings 18:36-39), when the 450 prophets of Baal failed the fire test and were killed.

3) **Christ**: Taught **His disciples and Israel**, by His miracles that He was Israel's Messiah and God. (Matthew 8:26).

4) **Apostles**: Their miracles taught Israel and the church to honour and believe their authority (Acts 5:11-13), to accept the offer of salvation, the Kingdom, and the church.

f) **The Passing of Miracles in Scripture.**

i) **Gifts of miracles in the first century, and general miracles today.**

Those with the gift of miracles could perform any miracle any day at will ("the spirits of the prophets are subject to the prophets." 1 Corinthians 14:32). The gift has fulfilled its purpose and is gone. God still works miracles today in response to faith.

ii) **When the purpose of miracles was fulfilled, the gift ended.**

Until the Bible was completed, God often used miracles to authenticate a man's ministry and message as from God. Once the Bible was completed, the same need did not exist. This age is not an age of miraculous signs, but of spiritual power to convert sinners, and to build up believers. A gift of miracles implies a continued ability to do miracles again and again. No one has this gift today. The signs in Mark 16:17,18 are illustrated in Acts, the purpose being that of confirming the word (as from God) with signs following.

Question: Do people today raise the dead, call fire from heaven, walk on water, multiply loaves, fishes, oil, etc.? No. Never.

Answer: These were authenticating signs, and God has proven the reliability of the messengers and the message. Hence there is no longer any need for signs or miracles. The miraculous proofs of the gospel in Hebrews 2:3,4 are all in the **past tense**.

Today, the **test of a man's authority** is not his ability to work miracles. His authority comes from **how faithfully he adheres to the Word of God**. O.T. and N.T. miracles never lasted more than 70 years. N.T. miracles covered the lifetime of Christ and the Apostles, and then they ceased. They were done once, that they might be believed always.

iii) **The seeking of miracles is not a sign of spirituality.**

Jesus Christ says: “an evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign.” Matthew 12:39. Rather than glorifying God, sign-seeking detracts from faith in the Bible alone.

Charismatics try to prove the Bible by “miraculous” external evidence. When the miracles don’t come, or are proven false, does this disprove the Bible? No way, yet this is the logical conclusion to where the Charismatic signs movement leads us.

iv) **Miracles are not the ultimate proof of truth.**

Jesus emphasized this in Matthew 7:21-23, when supposed miracle workers are cast into hell. The Bible warns us in 2 Thessalonians 2:8-12 of a rise in the miraculous as a means of satanic deception in the last days. Not all miracle power in the Bible originates with God.

Note: Revelation 13:13-15 “He doeth great wonders, so that he makes fire come down from heaven.” Scripture alone keeps us from the serpent’s bite, and the deceiver’s snare.

8. **TONGUES.** “divers kinds of tongues.” (1 Corinthians 12:10).

a) **What is meant by tongues?**

Tongues are human languages that are understandable and known.

i) **3 Bible words for tongues:**

- 1) *Glossa* refers to the **organ** of the body, eg. Acts 2:3 “cloven tongues of fire” and **language** knowable in common conversation.
- 2) *Dialektos* = the language or dialect of a country or district. Visitors to Jerusalem heard their own dialect (Acts 1:19; 2:8).
- 3) *Heteroglossa* = tongue of a different language (1 Corinthians 14:21). All three may be unknown to the speaker, but known to the hearer. It is an unlearned language, a gift of the Holy Spirit.

ii) **Tongues at Jerusalem at Pentecost.**

“*Glossa*” is used in Acts 2:4,11 and “*dialektos*” in Acts 2:6, 8.

In Acts 2:1-11 note that:

- languages spoken were known;
- no interpretation was needed;
- they were so well spoken that the dialect was correct.

iii) **Tongues at Caesarea** (Cornelius in Acts 10:46) and **Ephesus** (19:6).

“*Glossa*” is used in Acts 10:46 and 19:6 denoting a knowable, translatable, human language just as in Acts 2. It was no different from Pentecost. Note “the **like** gift,” Acts 11:17.

iv) **Tongues at Corinth.**

“*Glossa*” is used 21 times to describe tongues at Corinth.

“*Heteroglossa*” is used only once in 1 Corinthians 14:21 to describe the actual language of Assyrian foreign invaders (Isaiah 28:11,12). None of tongues were **gibberish** (as is today in the Charismatic Movement), but were definite, translatable, human languages.

v) **Is the Baptism in Holy Spirit the same as speaking in tongues?** No!

Charismatic Kenneth Hagin wrongly says: “Speaking in tongues is always manifested when people are baptized in the Holy Ghost.”

Pentecostalist Donald Gee wrongly says: “The distinctive doctrine of the Pentecostal churches is that speaking with tongues is the “initial evidence” of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit.”

Question: What is the “Baptism in the Holy Ghost” according to the Bible?

Answer: a) It is an historic event **predicted** by Christ in Matthew 3:13, Mark 1:8, Luke 3:16, John 1:33 and Acts 1:4,5.

- 1) **It is an historic event** occurring on the day of Pentecost. Acts 11:15-17 and 1 Cor. 12:13.
- 2) Paul points **back to Pentecost**, the day the Holy Spirit came to indwell all believers. When somebody is saved today he is baptised in the Holy Spirit. “For by one Spirit are we **all baptised** into one body, ... and have been **all** made to drink into one Spirit.” I Corinthians 12:13.

It is a definite act in the past in which every believer has participated at the moment of salvation. It does not occur **after** salvation, but **at** salvation.

vi) The Bible asks a series of questions in 1 Corinthians 12:30.

“Do all speak with tongues? do all interpret?”

Key: The answer to these is obviously “No.” “**All**” do not speak with tongues, yet “**all**” have been baptised in the Holy Spirit (1 Corinthians 12:13). Therefore Baptism in the Holy Spirit is not initially evidenced by the gift of tongues, nor is it involved at all.

vii) Tongues were given to a select band of first century believers.

The Bible never urges believers to pray for the gift of tongues.

b) **Regulation of the gift of tongues.** What rules does Paul impose?

i) **Tongues are inferior.** Tongues comes at the end of gift lists in 1 Cor 12:8-10 and 12:28-30.

ii) **No more than 2 or 3 people were permitted to speak in tongues at church.**

“If any man speak in an unknown tongue, let it be by two, or at the most by three, and that by course; and let one interpret.” 1 Corinthians 14:27.

This limits the number who may speak in tongues in the church meeting. It insured against the danger of having an inferior gift monopolize the limited time.

iii) **They must speak one at a time, not all together.** “and that by course”.

iv) **Tongues must be interpreted.** “let one interpret.” I Corinthians 14:27.

“Wherefore let him that speaketh in an unknown tongue pray that he may interpret.” 14:13.

v) **If there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church.** v.28.

Tongues were to be planned. One had to first check to see if an interpreter was present. Then they had to limit tongues to three, and they had to decide who was going to speak first, second and third. It was not just unplanned as it happens today.

If he could keep silence, tongues could be easily controlled by the speaker.

Without an interpreter tongues were useless to the church. He was to speak to himself and to God. How could he himself be edified if he did not know what he was saying? (1 Cor. 14:2,14). God could understand him in his own language, so why speak in tongues?

vi) **Only men could speak in tongues, not women.**

“If any man speak in an unknown tongue.” 1 Corinthians 14:27.

“Let your women keep silence in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak” (I Corinthians 14:34). This forbids tongues by women in the assembly.

Question: But doesn't 1 Corinthians 11:5 contradict this verse:

“any woman who prays or prophesies with her head unveiled dishonoureth her head.”

Answer: This would be women praying with, prophesying, proclaiming or teaching to ladies or children, but not to men. (I Timothy 2:12).

vii) **Only use tongues when unbelieving Jews were present.**

Since tongues were a warning sign of judgment to come on unbelieving Jews as 1 Cor. 14:21,22 states, then unbelieving Jews should be present for this gift to be used, so as not to create chaos (14:23) by Gentile unbelievers thinking you are mad. Because of this, their use was limited. Only when unbelieving Jews were present were tongues to be used.

viii) **Tongues must edify others, not yourself.**

“...greater is he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive **edifying.**” 1 Corinthians 14:5.

“Now brethren, if I come unto you speaking with tongues, **what shall I profit you,** except I shall speak to you either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by doctrine?” 1 Corinthians 14:6.

“Seek that ye may excel to the **edifying** of the church.” 1 Corinthians 14:12.

“let all things be done unto **edifying.**” 1 Corinthians 14:26.

Edifying is the theme of 1 Corinthians 14. Whatever is done must edify others.

“He that speaketh in an unknown tongue, **edifieth himself.**” 1 Corinthians 14:4.

Note: The irony is clear. **Selfishness** edifies self, **selflessness** edifies others. If tongues do not edify others, they should not be used. This verse is a criticism of the Corinthians wrong use of uninterpreted tongues, yet Charismatics use it to allow tongues in private.

- ix) **Let all things be done decently and in order.** 1 Corinthians 14:40.

In their unconverted days, these Corinthians were “Gentiles, carried away unto these dumb idols.” 1 Corinthians 12:2.

They had been heathen idol worshippers out of control in emotional hysteria as a sign of being in touch with their gods. Now they were to wait their turn, only one speak at a time, and no more than three speak in tongues in one meeting.

- x) **Forbid not to speak in tongues.** 1 Corinthians 14:39.

Tongues speakers point to this verse as their badge of freedom that no one should forbid tongues. Many non-tongues speakers are confused by this verse, so they permit tongues.

Answer: Place this verse in the first century context when tongues were given. When the purpose for tongues was **still valid**, one must not forbid the **right use** of tongues.

Today we can forbid to speak in tongues because:

- 1) Most tongues today are **gibberish**, and not real languages
- 2) Most tongues today are **not the right use**, and not true to these rules.
- 3) Since the **purpose** of tongues has been **fulfilled** of warning unbelieving Jews to repent (70AD), then we can forbid what is an unbiblical, obsolete gift.

In the time of Paul’s letter being written (57AD), tongues were still needed and practised. The day of their demise had not yet come.

Note: Today, we should forbid tongues as an unbiblical practice.

- c) **Reason for the gift of tongues.**

Very few people are willing to study the Bible to discover the purpose for tongues. Most speak in tongues today because someone asks them to.

There is only one primary Bible reason for tongues:

<p style="text-align: center;">TO WARN FIRST CENTURY UNBELIEVING JEWS OF JUDGMENT TO COME</p>
--

14:20 “...Be not children in understanding, ...but in understanding be men.”

When the Corinthians truly understood the reason for tongues, they would move from childhood to adulthood in their understanding, and from the selfishness of childhood to the selflessness of manhood.

“With men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people; and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord” (1 Corinthians 14:21) is God’s warning sign to unbelieving Jews of Isaiah’s day as it is quoted from Isaiah 28:11,12.

Paul quotes this verse (1 Corinthians 14:22) as a warning of God to unbelieving Jews of the first century, “**Wherefore** tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that **believe not...**”

Note: “**Wherefore**” links what Paul says in v.21 with the conclusion of v.22, which is the reason or purpose for tongues to warn Jews who believe not, of impending judgment.

If this is the reason for tongues, it should be verified in Acts, and it is in the following ways:

- a) **Acts 2:1-13.** According to v.5 the people to whom languages were spoken at Pentecost were **unbelieving Jews** from other countries as seen from v.22,23, and by their cry of v.37. “What shall we do?” Thus, as Isaiah predicted, God spoke to “this people” through men using other languages, and the tongues were heard in their “own dialect wherein they were born.” (v.8).
- b) **Acts 8:1-18. Question:** Why were there **no tongues** spoken when the Samaritans received the Holy Ghost by Peter and John laying hands on them?

Answer: Because there were no Jews present at Samaria. Jews hated Samaritans and would not be caught dead living at Samaria.

Question: Why could Philip **not impart the Holy Spirit** by laying on of hands?

Answer: Because he was not an apostle, and God wanted the Samaritan believers to be associated with the apostles. This shows that if Philip could not impart the Holy Spirit by laying on of hands, nor can we do it today. This refutes “slaying in the spirit.”

c) **Acts 10:44-48.**

Question: Why did Cornelius' household, who were Gentiles, speak in tongues when they were not Jews.

Answer: Unbelieving Jews were present, who still thought that God only dealt with Jews alone and not with Gentiles. These Jews and Jews at Jerusalem needed convincing that God's dealings were shifting from unbelieving Judaism which was under impending judgment to include Gentiles in the church. "Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life." Acts 11:18.

Hence tongues spoken by Cornelius' household convinced the Jews of God accepting Gentiles into the church.

d) **Acts 19:1-9.** John the Baptist's twelve disciples at Ephesus were saved, baptised, Paul laid hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them, then they spoke with tongues.

--Tongues warned the large Jewish community at Ephesus of judgment to come.

--Tongues also identified John's disciples at Ephesus with Pentecost and the Apostles.

e) **Acts 18** and **1 Corinthians 12-14.** Tongues as a warning to Jews of coming judgment was relevant for the large Jewish community at Corinth who understood them (i.e.: as at Pentecost). Because Gentiles were present at the Corinthian church who did not understand the languages, the tongues had to be interpreted lest they say "that ye are mad." (v.23). Thus when no interpreter was present, there was to be no speaking in tongues. Hence the primary purpose of tongues was God warning the Jews to repent and believe or be judged.

The following chart summarizes the occurrences of tongues with Jews:

(See **Answers** book, Chapter 99, page 480)

9. **INTERPRETATION OF TONGUES.** 1 Corinthians 12:10,30; 14:5,13,26,27,28.

a) **Definition:**

1) It is **not** the learned ability to translate from one language to another.

2) It is the **supernatural ability to translate** the meaning of the tongues speaker, who was using a language unknown to the people in the church assembly.

3) In 1 Corinthians 12:10 and 14:26 the Greek word is "hermeneia" meaning "to explain, or interpret" the words spoken in a tongue.

4) In 1 Corinthians 12:30 and 14:6,13,27,28 the Greek word has "dia" (through) at the start of the word, which adds intensity, meaning "to interpret fully, to explain thoroughly."

b) **The Purpose of Interpretation** is to edify the church.

Tongues of themselves do not edify, unless interpreted. The tongues gift was incomplete without interpretation, which allowed people to understand what was said.

c) **Paul regulates tongues: If no Interpreter is present, then no tongues are to be spoken.**

At Pentecost there was no need for tongues to be interpreted, since these people heard what was spoken directly in their own language.

In Corinth the situation was different. Tongues did not occur in the open air, but in the church assembly. The gift of interpretation of tongues was very important to Gentiles in the assembly.

"If there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church." 1 Corinthians 14:28.

The interpreter avoided the charge of madness (v.23), and fulfilled the need for edification (v.26).

Interpreters were well known, and tongues could be avoided if the interpreter was absent.

c) **When did Interpretation of tongues cease?** Interpreting ceased when tongues ceased in 70AD, when its purpose was fulfilled. Both gifts ceased together. W. Criswell records this:

*A seminary graduate who had majored in Hebrew attended a tongues-meeting in California: In the midst of the meeting he stood up and quoted by memory the first Psalm in the original language. After he had finished, the interpreter arose and solemnly, piously made known in plain English what the brother had spoken in an unknown tongue. The **interpreter** made it an utterance, Spirit-inspired, about **women prophesying in church**. When the seminarian made known what he had done and what he had said, pandemonium broke loose. (7:219).*

When people insist in using gifts which the Bible says are obsolete, much confusion can arise.

IV. BAPTISM IN THE HOLY SPIRIT.

12:13 What the Baptism in the Holy Spirit is, and what the Baptism in the Holy Spirit is not.

What the Baptism with the Holy Spirit is NOT:

- i) It is NOT a repeat experience. 1 Corinthians 12:3.
At conversion we are baptized into the body of Christ, once and for all time.
- ii) It is NOT a subsequent experience to salvation.
- iii) It is NOT the same as the filling of the Holy Spirit.

What the Baptism of the Holy Spirit IS:

- i) New Testament Baptism in the Holy Spirit is a **one-off** event.
New Testament filling of the Holy Spirit is **continuous**. There are many fillings of the Holy Spirit, but only **one** Baptism of the Holy Spirit at salvation.
- ii) Baptism with the Holy Spirit is **never commanded** in the New Testament, but the filling with the Holy Spirit **is commanded** in Ephesians 5:18. "Be filled with the Spirit." "Filled" is in the imperative mood of command. "**Baptism of the Holy Spirit**" is **never** found in New Testament.
We are never told to seek, tarry or pray for the Baptism with the Holy Spirit.
- iii) The Baptism is **positional**, the filling is the experimental inflow of Divine power, affecting how we live, how we witness, and all we do for Christ.
- iv) It is NOT for some believers only, but for **all believers**.

I Corinthians 12:13 says that **ALL** members of the Corinthian church who were saved were baptized with the Holy Spirit, though **ALL** did NOT speak with tongues.

- v) It is NOT an answer to **agonizing prayer**.

Many believe in "tarrying for the Holy Spirit", quoting Christ's words to His disciples in Luke 24:49, "And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but **tarry** ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high."

This verse was for the disciples in pre-Pentecost days, as was Acts 1:4,5.

John 7:39 explains this time period as "the Holy Ghost was not yet given." These instructions were specifically for the disciples (Acts 1:13-15) during the 10 days between the ascension of Christ, and the descending of the promised Holy Spirit.

To one lady who had just returned from a tarrying meeting, Harry Ironside said: "You are 10,000 miles too far away, and 1900 years too late."

Tarrying was for 10 days before Pentecost, at Jerusalem in 33 AD.

- vi) **What the Baptism with the Holy Spirit IS.**

It is mentioned only seven times in the New Testament.

"He shall baptise you **with** the Holy Ghost." Matthew 3:11; Mark 1:8; Luke 3:16.

"Ye shall be baptised **with** the Holy Ghost." Acts 1:5.

"Ye shall be baptised **with** the Holy Ghost." Acts 11:16.

"So many of us as were baptised **into** Jesus Christ, were baptised **into** His death." Romans 6:3.

"For as many of you as have been **baptised into Christ** have put on Christ." Galatians 3:27.

"For by one Spirit are we **all baptised into one body**, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been **all** made to drink **into** one Spirit." 1 Corinthians 12:13.

1. It is baptism **in** the Holy Spirit.

Baptism marks an initial experience. We are immersed in the Holy Spirit as we are immersed in water. "**by** (Greek: en) one Spirit...". "En" is Greek for "in".

2. It is the **work of Jesus Christ**.

In Spirit baptism, the element is the Holy Spirit (as water is the element in water baptism), but **the baptiser is Jesus Christ** (Matthew 3:11, "**He** shall baptise you **with** the Holy Spirit.")

The Holy Spirit does **not** do the baptising. Christ is the Baptiser, who baptises us into His body with the Holy Spirit. Thus the baptism **with** the Holy Spirit, whether we are referring to Pentecost, or to the application of Pentecost to the newly regenerated soul at conversion, is the work of Christ Himself.

3. It is tied to the local church.

Question: What body are we baptised into in 1 Corinthians 12:13?

Answer: “Now **ye** are the body of Christ, and members in particular.” 1 Corinthians 12:27.

Fundamental to Spirit baptism is membership in a local “body of Christ”. To emphasize the baptism while at the same time downgrading membership in a local church is a contradiction in terms.

Charismatic prayer groups where Spirit baptism is sought, by-pass the authority of the local church, and the Word of God. Charismatics claim that when one receives the baptism he will speak in tongues as the initial evidence of Spirit baptism.

The gifts named in Mark 16:17,18 are associated with belief in Christ, not with Spirit baptism as a second experience.

Charismatic teachers all agree that you need the Spirit baptism, but they are not agreed on how you get it. eg. Some suggest prayer, obedience, repentance, sinlessness, yielding, tarrying, faith, etc. They talk much about the rest of this gift. Charismatic writer Robert Dalton expresses the effort required to receive this free gift of grace of Spirit baptism, “This experience ... is for all who desire it and are willing to pay the price.”

If you pay the price to get a gift, it is not a free gift!

When a Charismatic asks us: “Have you had the baptism OF the Holy Spirit?” our first answer can be, “There is no such thing as the baptism OF the Holy Spirit. If you mean the baptism WITH the Holy Spirit, yes I have, and so has every other Christian.” The baptism OF the Holy Spirit appears nowhere in Scripture, as the Holy Spirit does not do the baptizing, it is Christ doing it. Spiritual immersion, not water immersion is the subject of 1 Corinthians 12:13, Romans 6:3-5, and Galatians 3:27.

When Charismatics insist that there is a second experience to be called the baptism OF the Holy Spirit, they are actually redefining the doctrine of salvation. They are saying that salvation doesn't really give us everything that we think it gave us, that we are still lacking, that we need something more.

Nowhere in the Bible are Christians commanded to seek, or to receive the Holy Spirit or to be baptized “by” or “of” the Spirit.

The Bible doesn't tell us how to get the baptism of the Holy Spirit, but it tells us that we already have been baptized in the Spirit when we believed.

“And ye are complete in Him...” Colossians 2:10.

“His divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of Him that hath called us to glory and virtue.” 2 Peter 1:3.

Since we are “complete in Christ”, and “we have been given all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of Christ”, there is no point in seeking what is already ours.

The Bible never teaches us to get with a group of people who can teach us how to speak in tongues. All we need to do is yield to the Holy Spirit, who is already there, then we will have the Spirit's power.

As Saviour, Christ baptizes with the Holy Spirit, and as Judge, He baptizes with fire. The baptism with fire is the judgment of hell, burning the chaff with unquenchable fire (Matthew 3:11). It is not the Holy Spirit's baptism, but Christ's baptism with the Holy Spirit that places us into the body of Christ when we receive Christ as Saviour. All believers have this. We must not seek, or ask for that which we already possess. At salvation we are baptized in the Holy Spirit, as well as being sealed, indwelt, filled and regenerated.

Key: A person cannot enjoy what he has if he is forever seeking a non-existent second blessing.

What is lacking is people's full obedience, full trust and full submission, not Christ's full salvation, indwelling or second blessing.

V. BELIEVERS WHO THOUGHT that they were SUPERIOR and OTHERS INFERIOR.

12:14-16: “For the body is not one member, (eg. tongue) but many.”

The Tongues Movement, by saying that all believers should speak in tongues, says that the entire body should be a tongue (or have a tongue in it), which is false. Verse 14 refutes this by saying that the body is not one member (tongue), but many members, each with their own, but different function.

The Corinthian church was **divided** where it should have been united (eg. each following different leaders, whereas they all should have one leader, Christ). They **tried to be uniform**, in all seeking to have the showy gifts like tongues, where they should have been diverse in each being content to use their own God given gifts.

Many were unhappy and discontent with their gifts, envying someone else’s gifts.

The **foot** or **ear** represented believers who had developed an inferiority complex, perhaps because they had “behind-the-scenes” gifts like helps or mercy, etc. They felt inferior and useless because they were not given gifts like brothers **Hand** and **Eye** with the gift of tongues or interpretation of tongues.

Apparently, brothers **Hand** and **Eye**, being proud of their gifts, approached brothers **Foot** and **Ear** one day saying: “Unless you two can speak in tongues as we do, you are not spiritual; you will never make it in the Christian life. Quite possibly, you are not even saved.”

In great distress, brother **Foot** tried hard to become a Hand, and brother **Ear** tried hard to become an **Eye**. They may have prayed, fasted, and tarried, but to their dismay, each remained a **Foot** and an **Ear**. Once a foot, always a foot. Once an ear, always an ear. Why? Because this was the gift the Holy Spirit chose to give them. It could not be changed by human effort.

12:17 “If the whole body were an **eye**, where were the **hearing**.” Common sense should have told them, that as a church, they could get the job done better by each performing different ministries. If everyone spoke in tongues who would do the teaching? The church would become grotesque if it consisted of only one gift. Gifts can only function properly when you are filled with the Holy Spirit.

12:18,19 “But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him.” And if they were all one member, where were the body?”

God allocates gifts to each believer as God sees fit.

By being discontent and wanting gifts that they did not have, the Corinthians insulted God’s wisdom and goodness by saying that God had made a mistake.

By Charismatics saying that all must speak in tongues, they are contradicting God’s giving of gifts as He sees fit.

For the body to perform all its functions, many different parts must all work together. So it is in a church. If most of a church is inactive, the active members must do work for which they are not equipped.

There are two main reasons why some Christians never become involved in ministry:

- i) **12:15-17.** Some (like Foot and Ear) feel that they have no gifts or abilities that are worthwhile, so they rest and let others do all the work. These have an inferiority complex, saying: “**They don’t need me.**”
- ii) **12:18-21.** Others feel that they are so highly qualified that they do not really need the help of others to perform their ministry. These are the believers described in v.21, and counselled in v.22-31. Their attitude is, “**I don’t need them.**”

12:21 “The **eye** cannot say unto the **hand**, I have no need of thee: nor again the **head** to the feet, I have no need of you.” (v.21).

God has made all of His creation interdependent, and so He has made members of a church interdependent. Several prominent and gifted members carried on their ministries as if they were self-sufficient. They disdained the less significant members.

12:22 “Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be **more feeble**, are **necessary**:”

Weaker, more feeble members of the body are necessary, such as heart, lungs, kidneys, etc.

These members are hidden, performing their work in secret, not being seen publicly, and are necessary to our survival. If we lose a prominent part like an arm or leg or eye, we can still live. But if we lose our heart, lung, or kidneys we will quickly die. The less noticed parts (internal organs) seem to be weaker than the rest of the body such as limbs (external organs).

The hidden, weaker, internal organs are more necessary to our survival. Therefore, internal organs are more closely protected by the skeleton. They are more vulnerable, more necessary to our survival, and are therefore given more protection. You can live without legs, but you can't live without lungs.

Application and lesson: The most important ministries in a church always include some that are not obvious, such as prayer warriors providing spiritual power, or behind-the-scenes helpers. The Corinthian church failed to appreciate those having behind-the-scenes gifts. They magnified the showy gifts such as prophecy, tongues, healing, which is just what the Charismatic Movement does today.

12:23 “And those members of the body, which we think to be **less honourable**, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our **uncomely parts** have more abundant comeliness.”

“Less honourable” refers to private parts of the body such as thighs, waist, abdomen, buttocks, and chest. On these we bestow honour, meaning that we put attractive clothing on these parts, compared to the more presentable parts such as face and hands which need no clothing.

“**Uncomely**” (Greek, “aschemon”) means shameful, indecent, unpresentable or private parts needing to be covered. When people treat their uncomely parts with care and modesty, they come to have more abundant comeliness.

Application: A well known Christian with a prominent gift (like a face or hand), ought not to seek great honour for himself, but he should seek to help the well-being of those with less obvious gifts. Specially gifted Christians in leadership or prominence, should not look down on those with less noticeable gifts, but should care for and protect them, and “comfort the feeble-minded (fainthearted), support the weak, be patient toward all men.” 1 Thessalonians 5:14.

12:24 “For our **comely parts** have no need,” means that the more beautiful parts of the body need no special help.

Application: Those believers with more noticeable and attractive gifts are the **comely** members who have no need of encouragement and protection. Honour comes to them naturally (as the face), and that honour they should share with members whose gifts are less attractive. Spiritual greatness is determined by the spirit of servanthood, not by high position.

“God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that part which lacked.” God rewards people according to our attitudes as well as to how we use our gifts.

12:25 “That there should be **no schism** in the body; but that the members should have the **same care** one for another.”

God wants to avoid schism (or division) in the body, by everybody giving mutual support and encouragement. In ours and in God's eyes, every believer should be regarded as highly important. God wants every church member to have the same care for each other. We should care just as much for the rough new convert and each Sunday school teacher as the Pastor.

12:26 “And whether one member **suffer**, all the members **suffer** with it; or one member be **honoured**, all the members **rejoice** with it.”

The one who suffers is consoled, and the one who is honoured is rejoiced with. Only strong mutual love and concern can prevent or heal division and maintain unity in a church. There ought to be no envy, rivalry, competition, resentment, superiority or inferiority, only true Christian love.

12:27 “Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular.”

Paul reminded them that as a group they were the body of Christ, as well as individually they were part of Christ's body. They were one in Christ and should be united with each other.

12:28 “God hath set some in the church, **first** (1) apostles, **secondarily** (2) prophets, **thirdly** (3) teachers, **after that** (4) miracles, then (5) gifts of healings, (6) helps, (7) governments, (8) diversities of tongues.”

There is a priority list of gifts, some having more significance than others. Numbering the gifts shows that the gifts are **listed in order of importance**. Apostles and prophets are mentioned first and second because the church is built on them. (Ephesians 2:20). **Tongues are last** showing their **least importance**.

12:29,30 “Are **all** apostles? are **all** prophets? are **all** teachers? are **all** workers of miracles? Have **all** the gifts of healing? do **all** speak with tongues? do **all** interpret?”

Note:

- 1) Each question strongly implies the answer “No”, not all speak with tongues, etc. Charismatics contradict this verse when they say that all should speak with tongues.
- 2) “**All**” is mentioned seven times, and in each case the Greek word “pautes” which is the **masculine** gender is used. This means that **only men had the office of apostle, prophet and teacher**. Only men, and not women worked miracles, had gifts of healing, only men spoke with tongues and only men interpreted. The feminine of “all” is “pasai” in Greek used in Matthew 27:5,7 “then all (pasai) those virgins.”
- 3) **Only men spoke in tongues** as seen in 1 Corinthians 14:27. “If any **man** speak in a tongue... if there be no interpreter, let **him** keep silence in the church; and let **him** speak to **himself** and to God.”
- 4) “Let your **women** keep silence in the churches: for it is not permitted unto them to speak ... for it is a **shame for women to speak in the church.**” 1 Corinthians 14:34,35.

Charismatic women do not obey these verses, and their menfolk encourage their disobedience.

12:31 “But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet show I unto you a more excellent way.” Paul was commanding the **church as a whole** to **appreciate those people with the best gifts**, because most of them appreciated **wrongly the least gifts**. Paul was saying, “appreciate the apostles, prophets, teachers. Desire to have people in your assembly using these gifts.”

Question: Some think that he is saying that if you haven’t got certain gifts, then seek them.

Answer: This cannot be right because it contradicts the many statements that God is the One who distributes gifts, not man. eg. I Corinthians 12:8,11,18,28.

Then Paul shows us the more excellent way of love.

Covet = “zeloo” in Greek which means “to be ardently devoted to.”

It is in the **second person plural**, and is therefore **addressed to the entire church**. Paul is saying: “Whenever you meet, you should always desire that the best spiritual gifts be used (ie. teaching) but not tongues, which was the least gift. Since tongues was the lowest and least desirable gift, they were never to covet tongues. In the light of these clear Bible passages, it is inconceivable that 21st Century Christians should seek to obtain a **gift that no longer exists**, and one that was **inferior** even while it was operational.

(for exposition of 1 Corinthians 13, see “Answers” Chapter 71, p.321 and Chapter 100, p.482)



103. 27 REASONS WHY CHRISTIANS SHOULD NEITHER SEEK NOR DESIRE TONGUES.

The Charismatic Movement contends that:

- i) The New Testament gift of tongues should be sought and spoken by ALL Christians today. They seek to revive all gifts, but none are given so great importance as tongues.
- ii) The tongues gift is the true Biblical sign of the "Baptism in the Spirit."
- iii) Those receiving tongues receive a second blessing after salvation, enabling them to live more sanctified, powerful and joyful witnessing lives.
- iv) The tongues movement is claimed to be the "latter rain" revival foretold in Joel 2:23.

We must test all religious movements on the basis of:

- a) Their doctrines. 2 Timothy 4:2,3
- b) Their fruits. Matthew 7:15,16

Their spirits or powers behind a movement. "Test the spirits." 1 John 4:1-4..

Note the following reasons why tongues are not needed for Christians today:

1. **Tongues were classed as one of the lowest gifts.**

In 1 Corinthians 12:28 tongues are mentioned last in a list of 8 gifts. These are ranked in order of importance because we have "first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues."

God gives the gifts "according to his own will," not according to our seeking.

"Gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will." Hebrews 2:4.

1 Corinthians 12:8-11 lists 9 gifts, the last being tongues and interpretation of tongues:

"For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; to another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gift of healing by the same spirit,.... But all these worketh that one and the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will."

Note: Tongues were spoken on 3 occasions in Acts (2:4; 10:46; 19:6), but on none of these occasions are the recipients seeking, waiting or expecting to speak in tongues. At Pentecost, only the Apostles (12) spoke in tongues, but all who were saved (3000) received the Holy Spirit (2:38,39).

a) "Covet earnestly the best gifts" (12:31); tongues are not the best gifts, but one of the least gifts. (14:1).

b) Spiritual gifts could be desired (14:1) but not claimed in faith as a birthright. There is no command to seek them.

3. **Most modern tongues are a learned behaviour.**

People are told to blank out their mind and say whatever comes out; then go home and practice it. This is foreign to the New Testament.

4. **Tongues speakers may be deceived.**

Because a person speaks unintelligible sounds, it is not proof that he has the N.T. gift of tongues. Few Charismatics are prepared to examine tongues. We must "prove all things" (1 Thess. 5:21). How do you prove that tongues are genuine languages? In 1 Corinthians 14:27-29, Paul discusses wrong tongues which are not interpreted in the church, and wrong prophecy, thus teaching that others need to judge a prophecy. Tongues have been spoken by heathen religions, Mormons, etc..

5. **Tongues were a sign of God's wrath, displeasure and judgment on unbelieving Israel, never a sign of His blessing and approval on Christians.**

"Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that **believe not**" 1 Cor. 14:22

a) Acts 10:44-47; 11:16-18. Tongues used by Cornelius' household was a sign to unbelieving Peter and unbelieving Jewish Christians, that Gentiles were to be received into the family of God. In Acts 11:15 the phrase "as on us at the beginning" means that tongues had not been spoken since Pentecost which was 10 years earlier.

b) "Forbid not to speak in tongues" (1 Corinthians 14:39) was always on the understanding that tongues was a valid sign to warn Jewish unbelievers, until judgment came in 70AD. You don't warn people after judgment has come.

- c) In meetings where there were no unbelieving Jews, all teaching, praying etc. was to be in the language of those present (1 Corinthians 14:23-28). 1 Corinthians 14:19 states that in the church, 5 words understood are better than 10,000 words in tongues that are not understood.
- d) Israel wanted signs, but the church must live by faith. "An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign." (Matthew 12:39).
- e) The Corinthians were using tongues as a mark of spirituality, for personal gratification, and to gain attention. Paul rebukes this childish, selfish practice.

6. Tongues is one of several temporary gifts.

- i) Apostles. "are built upon the foundation of the apostles"
- ii) Prophets. "...and prophets." Ephesians 2:20.
Neither they nor the Lord appointed any successors to their office. "12 apostles of the Lamb." (Revelation 21:14). There are no Apostles or prophets alive today.
- iii) Knowledge. This was intuitive, revealed knowledge of doctrine before the Bible was completed. A completed, perfect Bible ended this gift along with prophecy in 96AD. 1 Corinthians 13:8-13. Today we must study to gain Bible knowledge. 2 Timothy 2:15. (1 Corinthians 14:21,22).
- iv) Tongues. With the setting aside of Israel in 70 AD, tongues and other sign gifts ceased.
- v) Interpretation of tongues - ceased in 70 AD when tongues ceased.
- iv) Gifts of healing. Paul lost this gift, as he could not heal Epaphroditus in 64AD (Phil. 2:26,27), Timothy's stomach in 65AD (1 Timothy 5:23) nor Trophimus in 66AD (2 Timothy 4:20). In Acts 5:12-16, Peter healed every one in 33 AD.
- vii) Gift of miracles -no one can do miracles today at their will as could the first century apostles.
- viii) Discerning of spirits - no one today has this gift because discernment comes through Bible knowledge of strong meat, full age Christians who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil (Hebrews 5:14). No one today would claim infallible judgment always in every issue of life, which is what this gift demands (1 Corinthians 12:10).

7. Historically, tongues ceased after 63-70 AD.

Tongues were withdrawn when Israel deliberately rejected the apostles testimony of Christ, as seen in Acts 28:22-28 where Paul pronounces God's judgment on Israel (63AD). Judgment fell in 70AD. In all New Testament epistles written after this pronouncement in 63AD (Romans; Ephesians; Philippians; Colossians; 1 & 2 Timothy; Titus; Philemon; Hebrews; 1&2 Peter; John; 1,2 & 3 John; Jude and Revelation) there is no mention of tongues. Why? Because with the setting aside of Israel, and the confirming of the word of God, sign gifts were no longer necessary. These facts of the gospel and the apostles message of the Bible having been established, confirmed, and authenticated for all time, it is now an act of unbelief to seek for signs today. Early church writers such as Polycarp, Papias, Cyprian, Chrysostom, Augustine, Origen, Clement of Rome, Justin Martyr etc. never mentioned tongues. Why? Because they had been withdrawn. Chrysostom says: "tongues....used to occur, but now no longer take place."

8. Modern tongues & Charismatic Movement is not another Pentecost or "latter rain" Joel 2:23

Joel's prophecy discusses Israel's restoration to their land in the Millennium. When this happens, and not before, the Holy Spirit will be poured out on all flesh. What happened at Pentecost was only an illustration, a small sample of what will happen in the Millennium. At Pentecost, there were no signs in the sun, moon etc, thus indicating that Joel's prophecy is to be fulfilled in the future Millennium. Joel said nothing about tongues being a sign of renewal. This age will end in apostasy and departure from the Faith, not in Joel's revival. **KEY:** "Afterward" in Joel 2:28 means that the Spirit will be poured on all flesh after Christ's second coming, and **not before**.

9. Tongues is not a sign of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit.

"For by one Spirit are we all baptised into one body." 1 Corinthians 12:13.

- i) All believers have the Holy Spirit Baptism.

"If any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his." Romans 8:9.

- ii) All believers have the Holy Spirit, but few believers spoke in tongues.

If we have received Jesus Christ as Saviour, we also have the Holy Spirit in us, because we cannot separate members of the Godhead.

10. Tongues were never intended to edify the speaker himself or the church.

- i) "He that prophesieth speaketh unto men to edification, and exhortation, and comfort" I Cor 14:3
"For ye may all prophesy one by one, that all may learn, and all may be comforted." 1 Cor 14:31
The edification, exhortation, learning and comfort of the local church was always the responsibility of the one who prophesied (gave instruction in an understandable language).
- ii) "He that speaketh in an unknown tongue edifieth himself," (1 Corinthians 14:4) does not teach that personal holiness is found in tongues speaking. On the contrary it describes the Corinthians selfishness who used tongues for personal pleasure and public display. Tongues speaking in a church does not instruct, edify, warn or strengthen believers. Holiness through tongues will always be shallow because it is based on feelings, not on Biblical edification.
- iii) Of all the tongues spoken today, new prophecies, new revelations and visions, not one iota of truth have been added to the inspired scriptures.

11. Tongues were never intended for prayer, praise or worship of God.

"For he that speaketh in an unknown tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth him; howbeit in the Spirit he speaketh mysteries." 1 Corinthians 14:2.

God does not need to be spoken to in a foreign language. This verse teaches that the Corinthians were using the gift of tongues out of place. Tongues were meant to be spoken to men, that is to JEWS. A person praying or singing in tongues simply spoke "mysteries" in his own spirit. He received no real benefit, the hearers were not helped, and God was not glorified. Prayer and praise must be with understanding in the common language. "What is it then? I will pray with the Spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also.....Else.....how shall.....the unlearned say Amen at thy giving of thanks?" 1 Corinthians 14:15,16.

This is not two different kinds of prayer, but two conditions of all prayer, praying in the leading of the Holy Spirit and with an understanding mind. If understanding is not present, hearers cannot say "Amen" to your prayer.

12. Tongues is not a sign of salvation.

Assurance of salvation comes from faith in God's Bible promises, not from any feelings of tongues.

13. Tongues is not a condition of keeping us saved.

Pentecostalism, as a movement, does not believe in the eternal security of the believer who trusts in Christ alone for salvation. Many Charismatics think that their future preservation depends on continuing in the Charismatic experience. Many fear of grieving the Spirit and losing the power, and hence losing salvation. Some Charismatics do believe in the security of a believer in Christ.

14. Tongues are not a means of attaining holiness.

The nine fruit of the Spirit in Galatians 5:22,23 have no relation to tongues. The Corinthians came behind in no gift (1 Corinthians 1:7), yet Paul called them carnal and babes (1 Corinthians 3:1). True spirituality is not determined by one's experience, gift or feelings, but by inner godly character (e.g. 1 Peter 3:4, "a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price", for ladies). It is right to be happy, joyful and to praise the Lord, but valuable character is better seen in times of testing, persecution, misunderstanding and suffering.

15. All spiritual gifts should exalt Christ, not the Holy Spirit.

Many Charismatics exalt the Holy Spirit above Christ. The Holy Spirit seeks to exalt Christ (John 15:26; 16:14). Hence the mark of a Spirit filled believer is that in life and speech, he glorifies Christ. (1 Corinthians 12:3).

"Christ shall be magnified in my body." Philippians 1:20; 3:8.

All gifts are given so that we may grow to the "fullness of Christ." Ephesians 4:13.

Charismatics use the earthly, human title "Jesus", as did demons. No disciple ever addressed the Lord as "Jesus", but as Lord, Christ or Master, or Lord Jesus Christ. Let us give Christ His full honour as the Lord Jesus Christ.

16. All gifts were given to produce church unity and harmony.

All gifts were given that there be no schism in the body (1 Corinthians 12:25). Truth unites, error divides. The continual search for tongues, healing, prophecy, gifts etc., has split many churches, broken friendships and divided homes. The Charismatic Movement claims a new kind of unity not based on Bible doctrine, but on having the tongues experience. One can be a "spirit-filled" tongues speaker and believe almost anything. Many Christians who a few years ago opposed the heretical World Council of Churches, now cheerfully unite with Catholic Charismatic renewal, hence compromising essential Bible truths.

17. Tongues and all spiritual gifts were to promote order and peace.

"God is not the author of confusion but of peace." 1 Corinthians 14:33.

"Let all things be done decently and in order." 1 Corinthians 14:40.

Church services should have one person speaking or praying at a time. In today's Charismatic meetings, there is much unrestrained noise, singing, clapping, shouting, tongues and dancing.

18. No Christian should surrender control of his mind and will.

Paul insisted that tongues and prophecy speakers should retain control of their mind and understanding:

"If there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church." 1 Corinthians 14:28.

"The spirits of the prophets are subject to the prophets." 1 Corinthians 14:32.

Famous Charismatic leader, Oral Roberts, instructs tongues speakers as follows:

"We have to by-pass our mind and make it inactive for the moment. The mind slips into the background when we are praying in tongues and remains in a state of neutrality." [*"Baptism With The Holy Spirit," 1966, p. 42.*]

New Age occult seminars similarly tell people to blank out their minds to yield control to some higher force, which in reality is to demons.

The New Testament never asks us to lay aside our sound mind, our self-control, our judgment or our reason, but to exercise these faculties in accordance with God's Word. Charismatics are told to overcome their inhibitions by by-passing their minds. People are brainwashed in cults like Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons and the Charismatic Movement by surrendering their minds and wills to the group or leader. The danger for a believer who submits his mind without resistance to outside influences to receive tongues, is:

a) He opens himself up to psychic and demonic deception and control.

b) He can place himself beyond the protection of the Holy Spirit, by asking for things contrary to God's will.

19. The last days will experience much deception, signs, lying wonders and more demon activity

Satan has always opposed believers and God's work. Satan opposes us as an angel of light (2 Cor. 11:14). The Corinthian believers were open to Satanic deception of another Jesus, another spirit, and another gospel (11:4) as Satan's ministers come as ministers of righteousness (11:15).

"There shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect." (Matthew 24:24).

In Old Testament times God permitted false prophets to work miracles in order to test His people.

Two tests of false prophets are:

a) If he performs signs to turn you away from the Lord. (Deuteronomy 13:1-5).

b) If he speaks in the name of the Lord, but the prophecy does not come to pass. (Deut.18:20-22).

Isaiah 8:19 describes familiar spirits that "peep and mutter", like tongues.

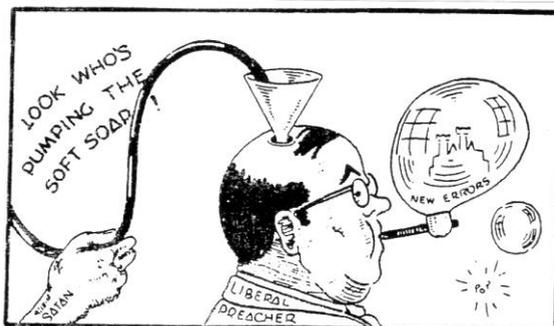
Israel rejected the Word of God for more sensational dealings with the spirit world.

Many see the Charismatic Movement as a Satanic deception permitted by God to test Christendom, and to pave the way for the Antichrist and the one world united Babylon religion of the last days.

"Even him (Antichrist) whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, and with all deceivableness....." 2 Thessalonians 2: 9,10.

"Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils? and in thy name done many wonderful works? And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me ye that work iniquity." (Matthew 7:22,23).

- 20. Charismatics confuse Baptism in the Spirit** (a once only experience at salvation -1 Cor. 12:13) **with the filling of the Spirit** (a continual daily experience for service obtained by confessing sin, prayer, and yielding to Christ. (Ephesians 5:18).
- 21. Doctrinal compromise.**
Ministers who deny fundamental Bible truths such as the virgin birth, verbal inspiration, creation, etc. are often warmly welcomed and accepted if they claim a Charismatic experience. Charismatics warmly accept Roman Catholic priests and people who continue to seek salvation through the sacraments, who still pray to Mary, and still celebrate the mass. Doctrinal errors are ignored to keep Charismatic unity.
- 22. Most Charismatics are not diligent students of Scripture.**
One can remain comfortable in his false beliefs as long as he refuses to face Biblical evidence to the contrary. One Australian Charismatic pastor could not find the book of Daniel in his Bible. He had to look up the table of contents. He thought Daniel was near Exodus.
- 23. Emphasis on Experience.**
Personal experience is a great enemy of truth. When confronted with a mass of Biblical evidence, most Charismatics typically reply: "I know I am right. I have experienced tongues or healing myself. I have seen a prophet make correct predictions. I have seen people healed. The Bible teachings must have another explanation."
Tongues is mostly a learned behaviour. If you blank out your mind, anyone can say gibberish. Most healings are temporary and are achieved by hypnotherapy. What about the false predictions? These make him a false prophet. Studies show that most Charismatic healings revert back to the illness. Hypnotise a person, tell them they feel better, and they will feel better, for a time, but later they revert back to the illness.
- 24. New Revelations.**
Charismatics continually claim to receive extra-Biblical revelations from God by tongues, prophecy, visions and dreams. Cults and Catholicism also claim revelations outside the Bible.
- 25. Damage to the local church.**
Many Charismatics use a local church as a base for propaganda purposes to invite people to a home Bible study and prayer group governed by self-appointed spiritual leaders who instruct in tongues and try to heal people. A local church seems too confined, compared with many people from many churches coming together for a Charismatic rally.
- 26. Laxity and moral danger.**
Some Charismatics think that they have "arrived" spiritually. They often lack motivation to press on further. The goal has been attained. Time for relaxation has come. Such carelessness explains much worldliness, sin and a rock music party atmosphere among Charismatics. Some receive "revelations" to divorce their spouse and remarry another person. Truth and reason then take a back seat.
- 27. Move back to Rome.**
The Charismatic Movement reversed the decline of the Ecumenical Movement from 1960. It is not a threat to Rome. Both emphasise emotionalism, miracles, healing, and the lack of final Bible authority. Charismaticism is not true Protestantism because it is not solely based on the Bible.



104. SERIOUS OMISSIONS IN THE NIV BIBLE

Introduction. Is God able to **preserve His word** to today?

Did Christians from 350 AD to 1881 AD not have the correct Word of God, until the Westcott and Hort heretics “saved the day” for God, the Bible, Christians and the world? Is God in control of Bible preservation or not? If God can give us His infallible word in the first century, is He unable to preserve it for Christians up to the 20th century?

By the year 500 AD, the NT manuscript text chosen by the **wealthy upper classes** who could afford to ignore the expense, was without exception of the Byzantine/KJV text type. Why?

These parchments being stained with purple and written in silver or gold, tell us that these wealthy, upper class Christians, who had greater knowledge of, and access to the true NT text, clearly preferred the Byzantine KJV text over the Alexandrian papyri. They would have known of the Alexandrian texts as corrupt, and hence rejected them. This is a strong argument for KJV readings. See “The Text of the New Testament” by Kurt Aland, p.77.

1. “Ye shall **not ADD** unto the **WORD** which I command you, **neither** shall ye **DIMINISH** ought from it,…” Deuteronomy 4:2.
2. “Satan cometh immediately and **TAKETH AWAY THE WORD**…” Mark 4:15.
3. Jesus said: “Till heaven and earth pass, **one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law**, till all be fulfilled.” Matthew 5:18.
4. “If any man **TAKE AWAY** from the **WORDS** of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city.” Revelation 22:19.

I. KEY CHANGES TO DISCUSS INITIALLY.

1. The NIV in **Luke 11:2-4 omits key parts of the LORD’S PRAYER.**

The devil would not want us to pray these omitted words.

Matthew 6:9-13 in both KJV and NIV includes these omitted words in the Lord’s Prayer.

NIV, NASB, et al	Luke 11:2-4	KJV
<p><u>OMIT</u> Father <u>OMIT</u> , hallowed be your name. Your kingdom come, <u>OMIT</u> .</p> <p>Give us each day our daily bread. Forgive us our sins for we also forgive everyone who sins against us. And lead us not into temptation <u>OMIT</u> .</p>	<p>Luke 11:2-4</p>	<p><u>Our</u> Father <u>which art in heaven</u> hallowed be thy name. Thy kingdom come. <u>Thy will be done,</u> <u>as in heaven so in earth.</u> Give us day by day our daily bread And forgive us our sins; for we also forgive everyone that is indebted to us. And lead us not into temptation; <u>but deliver us from evil.</u></p>

- a) **Which “FATHER”?** New Agers pray to another father which is not in heaven, but is the “god of this world”. “Ye are of your father the devil”. John 8:44. Satan likes being called “Father” because he wants to be like the Most High.
- b) **“OUR”** must be removed because it opposes the New Age idea of the “universal fatherhood of God”. They think God is the Father of all people. They object to God being the Father only of Christians (John 1:12).
- c) **“WHICH ART IN HEAVEN”** identifies the Father to be worshipped as God in heaven and not the devil.
- d) **“THY WILL BE DONE, AS IN HEAVEN, SO IN EARTH”.** The devil does not want us to pray that God’s will be done on earth as it is in heaven. Hence it is omitted.
- e) **“DELIVER US FROM EVIL”.** The devil doesn’t want us to pray for God to deliver us from evil but rather he wants evil to come to us. Evil is too black and white. The devil doesn’t want us to think about good and evil, heaven and hell. Hence he removes them from the Luke 11:2-4 Lord’s Prayer in modern versions.

2. The NIV, in Isaiah 14:12, BLASPHEMES CHRIST by putting Him in the place of Lucifer the devil?

NIV	Isaiah 14:12	KJV
How you have fallen from heaven, <u>O MORNING STAR,</u>		How art thou fallen from heaven, <u>O Lucifer, son of the morning!</u>
		how art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations. v.12 Thou hast said in thine heart.... I will be like the most High. v.14
But you are brought down to the <u>GRAVE.</u>		Yet thou shalt be brought down to <u>hell.</u> (v.15)

“Lucifer” (KJV) becomes “Morning Star” (NIV).

But JESUS Christ calls Himself “the bright and morning star” in Revelation 22:16.

So the NIV by inserting “morning star” in Isaiah 14:12,

- a) **Removes all mention of Lucifer** as the devil’s personal name from Scripture.
- b) **Blasphemes Christ** by accusing Him as the **One who weakens the nations.** v.12
- c) **Denies Christ’s deity** by stating that Christ wanted to be **like the most High.** v.14
- d) **Blasphemes Christ** by predicting that He will be **brought down to hell.** v.15
- e) They change “**hell**” to “**grave**”, thus **removing the warning against hell.** v.15
- f) **Blasphemes Christ** by saying that He has **fallen from heaven.** v.12.

Note: “MORNING STAR” (NIV) is a wrong translation because:

- a) “STAR” (3556 Kokab) appears nowhere in Isaiah 14:12.
- b) “MORNING” (7837 shachar) appears only once in v.12, (son of the morning), not twice as NIV claims.
- c) “LUCIFER” (1966 heylel) comes from the root word “to shine” (1984 halal), and means “shining one” or “bright one”.
- d) The Septuagint translates it as:
“How has Lucifer, that rose in the morning, fallen from heaven”.

3. NIV in **Micah 5:2** says **Christ has an ORIGIN**, wrongly making Him a **CREATED being**.

NIV	Micah 5:2	KJV
whose origins are from of old, from ancient times.		whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Note: This is a **sickening** heresy for NIV to say that Christ had **an origin**. It makes Christ a **creature**, and **not God**. "Goings forth" in KJV means that Christ always existed.

"**Of old**" (qedmah in Hebrew, 6924) means eternal, everlasting and is used of Jehovah in Habakkuk 1:12, "Art thou not from **everlasting**, O Jehovah my God, mine Holy One?" "**from everlasting**" (olam in Hebrew, 5769) means eternity, always, time out of mind.

4. NIV **omits "FORNICATION"** from the sins listed with sodomy in Romans 1:29.

NIV	Romans 1:29	KJV
They have become filled with every kind of wickedness,	_____	Being filled with all unrighteousness
OMIT	_____	fornication,
Evil	_____	wickedness,
Greed	_____	covetousness,
Depravity	_____	maliciousness,
They are full of envy	_____	full of envy,
Murder	_____	murder,
Strife	_____	debate,
Deceit	_____	deceit,
Malice	_____	malignity,
They are gossips	_____	whisperers.

Note: The word "fornication" has been completely removed from NIV and replaced with "sexual immorality" which allows the individual to define it.

5. NIV comes from a **WRONG SPIRIT** because **it fails the test** of **not being able to confess** that "**Jesus Christ is come in the flesh.**" I John 4:3.

NIV	I John 4:3	KJV
But every spirit that does not acknowledge Jesus OMIT is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist.		And every spirit that confesseth not that "Jesus Christ is come in the flesh " is not of God, and this is that spirit of antichrist.

This is an amazing test for the NIV to fail, because it proves that the NIV comes from a spirit that is not from God. The NIV cannot confess here that "Jesus Christ is come in the flesh". John says that NIV has the spirit of antichrist, as seen by its many omissions of Christ's names, titles and attributes.

To merely confess "Jesus", is not passing this test, because Paul warns us of people coming and preaching "another Jesus". Which Jesus are they confessing?

They may be confessing a different Jesus - "If he that cometh preacheth **another Jesus**, whom we have not preached..." (II Corinthians 11:4).

II. THE NIV DOWNGRADES JESUS CHRIST.

1. The NIV changes Matthew 5:22 to teach that CHRIST SINNED.

NIV	Matthew 5:22	KJV
Anyone who is angry with his brother <u>OMIT</u> will be subject to judgment.		That whosoever is angry with his brother <u>without a cause</u> shall be in danger of the judgment.

Because Jesus showed righteous anger in Mark 3:5, the NIV makes Christ a sinner subject to judgment. If Christ is a sinner, He cannot be our Saviour.

Bible critics love the NIV here because they claim Christ to be a sinner due to His anger in overthrowing the money changers' tables (John 2:15), and how He looked on the religious leaders with anger at them rebuking Him for healing on the Sabbath in Mark 3:5.

This is another contradiction in modern versions.
The KJV is consistent and without contradictions.

2. NIV denies Jesus' VIRGIN BIRTH in Luke 2:33 by stating that **Joseph was Jesus' father.** This denies that God was His Father. If Joseph was Jesus's father, then Jesus inherited a sin nature and He would be unable to save us. What a worry if the NIV is true!

NIV	Luke 2:33	KJV
The child's father and mother.		Joseph and his mother marvelled.

3. The NIV denies Christ WORSHIP in 6 out of 12 passages.

NIV (4352)		KJV (4352)
a man with leprosy came and knelt .	Matt. 8:2	there came a leper and worshipped him,
a ruler came and knelt before him	9:18	there came a certain ruler and worshipped him.
Woman came and knelt before him.	15:25	Then came she and worshipped him
Servant fell on his knees before <u>OMIT</u> him. (NKJV omits worshipped)	18:26	The servant fell down and worshipped him.
Mother of Zebedee's sons kneeling down . (NKJV omits worship)	20:20	the mother of Zebedee's children worshipping him,
he ran and fell on his knees	Mark 5:6	he ran and worshipped him.

Jesus Christ is God because **He is worshipped.**

"Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and Him only shalt thou serve." Matthew 4:10.

"Let all the angels of God worship him." Hebrews 1:6.

12 times in the New Testament, Jesus is worshipped (Greek: proskuneo 4352), yet the NIV and NASV change **worship** ⁴³⁵² (KJV) to **kneel** (NIV) or **bow down** (NASV).

Question: What is the difference?

Kneel or **bow down** is a position of the **body**, whereas **worship** is an attitude of the **spirit**.

Worship in Greek is "proskuneo" ⁴³⁵². Bow is "kampto, klino, or tithemi", and is used only in a mocking manner by Christ's executioners. For example:

"and bowing (tithentes) their knees worshipped (prosekunoun) him." Mark 15:19.

The other 6 times that the NIV translates “proskuneo” as “worship are: Matthew 2:11; 14:33; 28:9,17; Luke 24:52; and John 9:38. Why is the NIV inconsistent?

The NIV therefore detracts from Christ’s Deity.

4. The NIV in Ephesians 3:9 removes Christ from being **CREATOR**.

NIV	Ephesians 3:9	KJV
God, who created all things <u>OMIT</u>		God, who created all things by Jesus Christ.

5. The NIV lowers Christ from being God’s **SON** and **CHILD**, to merely God’s **SERVANT**. All believers are God’s servants.

NIV		KJV
has glorified his servant Jesus.	Acts 3:13	hath glorified his Son Jesus
raised up his servant <u>OMIT</u>	Acts 3:26	raised up his Son Jesus.
holy servant Jesus	Acts 4:27	holy child Jesus.
holy servant Jesus	Acts 4:30	holy child Jesus.

6. NIV removes Christ from being our **SOURCE OF STRENGTH** in Philippians 4:13. New Agers see Philippians 4:13 as a “fill in the blank” deity.

NIV	Philippians 4:13	KJV
I can do everything through him who gives me strength.		I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.

7. The NIV denies that we have been made an **HEIR OF GOD** through Christ.

NIV	Galatians 4:7	KJV
Since you are a son, God has made you also an heir <u>OMIT</u>		If a son, then an heir of God through Christ.

8. The NIV denies that Christ came to **SAVE LOST SINNERS** in Matthew 18:11.

NIV	Matthew 18:11	KJV
<u>OMIT</u>		For the Son of man is come to save that which was lost.

Why would Westcott and Hort reject Matthew 18:11? Because:

- i) they elevated Sinaiticus and Vaticanus to be the authority over all other manuscripts.
- ii) they add “interpolated either from Luke 19:10 or from an independent source, written or oral” with no historical or manuscript support. Some gullible people believe them. The critical text footnote lists 44 manuscripts with it and 20 without.

9. The NIV changes John 16:16 to deny **CHRIST’S ASCENSION**

NIV	John 16:16	KJV
In a little while you will see me no more, and then after a little while you will see me... <u>OMIT</u>		A little while and ye shall not see me: and again, a little while, and ye shall see me, because I go to the Father Note: This is in all uncials, all cursives, all versions, Nonnas (3 rd Century), Chrysostom, Cyril (4 th Century)

10. The NIV denies Jesus Christ's **DEITY** in I Corinthians 15:47.

NIV	I Corinthians 15:47	KJV
the second man is <u>OMIT</u> from heaven.	the second man is THE LORD from heaven.	

This verse is a very clear proof that Jesus Christ is God.

Who is "the Lord from heaven"? Only God is the Lord from heaven. Jesus Christ is God.

The NIV follows the Westcott and Hort, and Vaticanus lie and deletes it.

The KJV reading, "the Lord" is supported by the following manuscript evidence:

Uncials: Codex Alexandrinus (400 AD), K, P,

Minuscules: 81,104,181,326,330,436,451,614,629,1241,1739,1877,1881,1962,1984,1985,2127,2492,2495.

All the **Lectionaries** quoting I Corinthians 15:47.

Ancient versions: Syriac Peshitta (170 AD), Syriac Palestinian (420 AD), Gothic version (341 AD), Syriac Harklensis (616 AD), Armenian (400 AD).

Early writers: Origen, Basil, Chrysostom, Maximinus, Cyril, Euthalius, Theodoret, Cosmas, John of Damascus.

Also, doctrinally, no man has ever originated from heaven, because God dwells in light which no man can approach unto (I Timothy 6:16), and all men originate from earth. Even Christ's humanity originated from earth. However, Christ's deity came from heaven.

11. NIV denies Jesus' **OMNIPRESENCE** and hence denies Jesus' **DEITY** in John 3:13.

NIV	John 3:13	KJV
No one has ever gone into heaven except the one who came from heaven the Son of man <u>OMIT</u> .	And no man hath ascended up to heaven but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.	

Q1: How can Jesus talk to Nicodemus at Jerusalem and be in heaven at the same time?

Answer: Only God can be in 2 places at once, so John 3:13 shows that Jesus is God.

Hence the NIV coming from corrupt Vaticanus and Westcott and Hort, omits this proof passage of Jesus Christ's Deity.

Q2: Why does the footnote not tell us that the clause omitted "which is in heaven", is contained in all manuscripts in the world, except 5 of bad character?

It is found in all the Latin versions and all the Syriac versions, the Coptic, Ethiopic, Georgian and Armenian versions (10 versions), and by 38 church fathers.

995 manuscripts have it, with 5 omitting it (Burgon).

The NIV, by omitting this phrase, and not informing the reader of the great mass of manuscript evidence for its inclusion, serves to perplex the weak, unsettle the doubting, and to mislead the ill-informed. We retain this phrase because:

- i) It is quoted by manuscripts from **every area** of ancient Christendom,
- ii) It is **more ancient** (by 200 years) than the manuscript evidence for omitting it.
- iii) It is quoted by **more manuscripts**, in the proportion of 99 for to 1 against it.
- iv) It is quoted by **highly respected writers**. Origen, Didymus, Epiphanius, Cyril, Athanasius, Ambrose, Hippolytus 200 AD (vol. 5, p.225), Novatian 220 AD (vol 5. p.622) and Jerome, all quote and recognise the words in dispute.

Some early writers (Origen, and Jerome) sometimes end the verse at "Son of man" because they are emphasizing the first part of the verse. "The Revision Revised," J. Burgon, p.133

12. The NIV denies Jesus Christ's **DEITY** in I Timothy 3:16

NIV	I Timothy 3:16	KJV
HE appeared in a body.		GOD was manifest in the flesh

This change from "God" (KJV) to "He" (NIV) sabotages the verse most strongly proving that Jesus Christ is 100% God. (Westminster Confession, Section 8, par.2).

John Burgon in "The Revision Revised", p.485-497, shows that "God" (theos) is the correct reading because:

1) "Theos" (God) is the reading in **300 Greek manuscripts** containing I Timothy 3:16. Only 5 late manuscripts (9th, 12th, 13th Century) omit "God". The Uncials, Aleph, A and C have been altered so that either "God" or "who" can be deduced. (see point 5).

2) All the **Lectonaries** from the 4th Century onwards read "Theos" (God).

3) **Early Church writers** quote "Theos" meaning "God" as follows:

First Century: Ignatius (90 AD) in 3 places, Barnabus (90 AD).

Second Century: Hippolytus (190 AD) in 2 places in the second century.

Third Century: Thaumaturgus (270 AD), Dionysius of Alexandria (264 AD), the work "Constitutiones Apostolicae" (250 AD).

Fourth Century: Didymus of Alexandria (309 AD), Basil the Great (355 AD), Gregory of Nazianzus (355 AD) in 2 places, Gregory of Nyssa (370 AD), Diodorus (370), Chrysostom (380 AD) in 3 places.

Fifth Century: Codex Alexandrinus, (420 AD) Cyril of Alexandria (410 AD) in 2 places, Theodoret of Syria (420 AD) in 4 places, Athanasius' appendix (430 AD), Euthalius (458 AD), Macedonius II (496 AD).

Sixth Century: Severus of Antioch (512 AD), etc.

4) **Ancient versions** showing "God" are:

The Latin version (195 AD), Syriac Peshito version (170 AD), Harklean version (616 AD), Gothic version (341 AD), Ethiopic version (450 AD), Georgian version (550 AD), Slavonic Version (840 AD).

5) **Greek grammar rule** forbids "os" meaning "who" because:

"**mystery**" being a **neuter** noun (in Greek), cannot be followed by **masculine pronoun** (os) - "who". (p.426 Burgon).

Also, the few (6) manuscripts which have "who" (os) in the place of "God", do not have a complete sentence without the subject "God".

"Who was manifest in the flesh" makes no sense.

Also, logically, there would be no mystery in a man being manifested in the flesh.

The NIV, to avoid having a clause with no subject, arbitrarily drops the word "who" and invents a new word "He", which is not found in any Greek manuscript.

6) **The uncials** Aleph, A & C have been altered so that either "God" or "who" can be deduced. Although the middle stroke that distinguishes "God" from "who" has been retouched, the fine original stroke is discernible at each end of the fuller stroke of the corrector. (os) is the abbreviation of God in the manuscripts.

See Wetstein in 1716, quoted in "True or False", D.O. Fuller, p.33.

13. The NIV denies the **TRINITY** and **DEITY of CHRIST** in I John 5:7,8. This is called “The Johannine Comma”.

NIV	I John 5:7,8	KJV
For there are three that testify <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and the three are in agreement.		For there are three that (oi=masc) bear record <u>in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear record in earth,</u> the Spirit, and the water, and the blood and these (oi=masc) three agree in one”.

I John 5:7,8 is omitted by all modern versions. It is called the “famous Trinitarian Proof text”. Modernists claim that this passage ought not to be in the Bible, because it is not in most Greek manuscripts. Only 6 Greek manuscripts before the 7th Century omit v.7,8. (14 manuscripts before the 9th Century).

Background: Erasmus omitted it from his first edition of the printed Greek N.T. (1516), because it occurred in the Latin Vulgate and not in any Greek manuscript. To quieten the outcry that followed, he agreed to restore it if one Greek manuscript could be found containing it. Two Greek manuscripts, Codex 61 and 629 were presented, so Erasmus included it in his 1522 edition. Since these manuscripts are late (15th and 16th centuries) some think the readings are corrupt. What do we answer?

What early manuscript evidence exists for I John 5:7,8?

i) **Early church writers:**

- **Cyprian** 200-258 AD. “The Lord says, ‘I and the Father are one;’ and again it is written of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, ‘And these three are one’.”
If Cyprian quotes I John 5:7 from his Bible in 200-258 AD, it must be a valid reading.
His Bible was copied from an older manuscript containing this verse.
Cyprian lived only 100 years after John wrote the book of I John.
Cyprian would have had access to the original manuscript to check.
- **Priscillian** 350 AD, a Spanish bishop quotes I John 5:7,8.
- **Idacius Clarus** 360 AD, who opposed Priscillian quotes it.
- **Varimadum** 380 AD.
- **Cassiodorus** 485 AD.
- **Cassian** 435 AD.
- **Victor Vita** 489 AD.
- **Jerome** 450 AD.
- **Fulgentius** 533 AD.
- **Ps. Vigilius** 484 AD.
- **Ansbert** 660 AD.

ii) **Early Bible Versions:** Old Syriac 170 AD.

- Old Latin 200 AD, in North Africa and Italy.
- Italic 4th and 5th century. – Italic - Monacensis 7th century.
- Italic - Speculum 9th century.
- Latin Vulgate 4th, 5th century.

iii) **Greek minuscule manuscripts:** (UBS Greek NT, p.824; History of Debate over I John 5:7,8,p268).

- 221 in the 10th century.(variant). – 636 in the 15th century. (margin).
- 88 in the 12th century.(margin). – 61 in the 16th century.(Codex Montfortianus)
- 629 in the 14th century.(Ottobanianus) – 918 in the 16th century. (an Escorial ms).
- 429 in the 14th century (margin). – 2318 (a Bucharest manuscript).

iv) **Early writings:** Liber Apologeticus 350 AD. Council of Carthage 415 AD.

v) The heavenly and earthly witnesses in I John 1:9 confirm the existence of the heavenly and earthly witnesses in I John 5:7,8.

“If we receive the witness of **men**, the witness of **God** is greater.” I John 5:9.

vi) There are **5 Greek papyri** dated to the third century with curious gaps in I John 5:7,8

vii) **Greek grammar rules demand its presence**. NIV has mismatched genders in v. 7,8.

Question 1: If the NIV is right in omitting the Johannine comma, then why do we have a **masculine** Greek article (**oi**) in v.7 (**oi** marturountes = that bear record in heaven) wrongly agreeing with **three neuter nouns** (Spirit, water and blood) in v.8?

Spirit, water and blood are all **neuter** Greek nouns with **neuter** Greek articles, which would dictate a **neuter** Greek article in v.7, (if the Johannine comma was never in the original), but we have masculine articles (**oi**) in v.7,8. Why?

Question 2: What is it that causes the **masculine Greek article (oi)** in v.7 and (**oi**) in v.8?

Answer: It is the **two masculine nouns (Father and Word)** of the **Johannine comma** in v.7. These control the gender of the article connected with them to be a masculine article (**oi**) which is what we have.

Hence the problem is solved if the Johannine comma is part of the Greek text.

Therefore, the NIV and NWT have wrong Greek grammar by omitting the Johannine comma, as seen by them having a **masculine** article in verse 7 wrongly agreeing with **three neuter** nouns (Spirit, water and blood) in verse 8.

Question 3: Why would the Johannine Comma be absent from some **Greek** manuscripts, but present in **the Latin** manuscripts?

Firstly, because of a similar ending in v.7 and v.8, a scribe may have been distracted in v.7, but when resuming his copying, his eye fell on v.8 from where he continued copying, thus accidentally omitting the Johannine Comma.

Copies of this would have multiplied the mistake.

Secondly, between 220-270 AD, the heresy that Greek Christians were fighting was not Arianism (denying Christ’s deity) as this had not yet arisen, but Sabellianism (named after Sabellius) which taught that the Father, Son and Holy Spirit were identical, and that God the Father died on the cross when Christ died on the cross. The statement in the Johannine comma that “these three are one” seemed to support the Sabellian heresy that the Father, Son and Holy Spirit are identical. If, during the course of this controversy, manuscripts were discovered which had accidentally lost the Johannine Comma as described above, it is easy to see how the orthodox party would consider these mutilated manuscripts to be the true text. In the Greek speaking east, where the struggle against Sabellianism was most intense, the Johannine comma came to be unanimously rejected.

However, in the Latin manuscripts of Africa and Spain, where the influence of Sabellianism was not so great, the Johannine Comma was retained. This explains why the Johannine comma is strongly represented in the Latin manuscripts, and why we should retain it today. Source: “KJV defended”. E.F. Hills, p.204-208.

14. The NIV denies Jesus Christ’s **RESURRECTION BODY** in Ephesians 5:30.

NIV	Ephesians 5:30	KJV
For we are members of his body <u>OMIT</u>		For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones.

The NIV caters to the New Age movement which allows for an afterlife of the soul or spirit, but does not believe in a bodily resurrection.

NIV	Acts 2:30	KJV
But he was a prophet, and knew that God had promised him on oath that he would place one of his descendants <u>OMIT</u> on his throne.		Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, <u>according to the flesh he would raise up Christ</u> to sit on his throne.

This omission by NIV removes the fleshly, bodily resurrection of Christ.

15. Each of these 4 NIV alterations detracts from Christ's RIGHT TO JUDGE.

NIV		KJV
We will all stand before God's judgment seat. (According to NIV, God is the judge, not Christ).	Romans 14:10	We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ .
That the day of the Lord	II Thess. 2:2	that the day of Christ is at hand.
We should not test the Lord	I Cor. 10:9	Neither let us tempt Christ .
To seat one of his descendants upon his throne.	Acts 2:30	He would raise up Christ to sit on his throne.

16. The NIV removes "LORD" 39 times, "CHRIST" 52 times, and "JESUS" 87 times from the KJV New Testament. This is 178 removals of our Saviour's name.

It is very important to give Jesus Christ His rightful position as "Lord".

- i) "God hath made that same Jesus whom ye have crucified both **Lord** and **Christ**." Acts 2:36
- ii) "That the name of our **Lord** Jesus Christ may be glorified." II Thessalonians 1:4,12.
- iii) "If thou shalt confess with thy mouth the **Lord** Jesus...thou shalt be saved." Rom 10:9
"No man can say that Jesus is the **Lord** but by the Holy Ghost." I Corinthians 12:3.
- iv) "Certain men crept in unawares....ungodly men....denying the only **Lord** God and our **Lord** Jesus Christ". Jude 4.
- v) "There shall be false teachers among you...even denying the **Lord**..." II Peter 2:1.

Lord used in conjunction with **Jesus Christ** proves His eternal **Deity** and **pre-existence**. "Lord" connects Jesus Christ of the New Testament, with "LORD" of the Old Testament. Jehovah, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are alone given this title. II Corinthians 3:17.

17. NIV doesn't want Christ to be SET OVER the works of creation in Hebrews 2:7.

NIV	KJV
You have made him a little lower than the angels, You crowned him with glory and honour, <u>OMIT</u>	Thou madest him a little lower than the angels, thou crownedst him with glory and honour, <u>and didst set him over the works of thy hands</u>

Having a kingdom without Christ as King is the vision of Amillennialists, and New Age millennialists. They do not want Christ's Kingdom to come.

III. THE NIV CHANGES SALVATION VERSES.

1. The NIV in Mark 10:24 says it is **HARD TO ENTER** the kingdom of God.

NIV	Mark 10:24	KJV
Children, how hard it is <u>OMIT</u> to enter the kingdom of God.	Children, how hard it is for them that trust in riches to enter into the kingdom of God.	

It is very hard to enter the kingdom if you have to work to enter.

For those who trust their riches, they feel so secure that they don't need Christ.

It is easy to enter the kingdom if you humble yourself and call on Christ to save you.

A rich person will find it very hard to humble himself and call on Christ to save him.

2. The NIV omits **CHRIST'S BLOOD** in Colossians 1:14.

NIV	Colossians 1:14	KJV
In whom we have redemption <u>OMIT</u> the forgiveness of sins.	In whom we have redemption through his blood even the forgiveness of sins.	

We all know that salvation is by the shed blood of Christ.

“without the shedding of blood is no remission.” Hebrews 9:22.

Maybe the devil wants “the blood” out of the Bible, because believers overcome the devil by “the blood of the Lamb.” Revelation 12:11.

3. NIV teaches **UNIVERSALISM** (ie. that everybody is or will be saved).

NIV (God is in all = pantheism)	KJV (God is in Christians)	
One God and Father....in <u>OMIT</u> all.	Eph. 4:6	One God and Father....in you all.
The nations <u>OMIT</u> will walk by its light.	Rev. 21:24	The nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it:

4. NIV teaches here that **SALVATION IS A PROCESS** that one grows in.

NIV	I Peter 2:2	KJV
Like newborn babes, crave pure <u>spiritual</u> milk <u>OMIT</u> so that by it you may <u>grow</u> up in your salvation.		As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word that ye may <u>grow</u> thereby.

We “grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ” (II Peter 3:18), and “your faith groweth exceedingly” (II Thessalonians 1:3), but never does the Scripture say that we “grow up in our salvation”. This is because the UBS Greek text adds words “eis soterion” (in salvation), which are not in KJV/Textus Receptus. All Scripture teaches that salvation is an event occurring at one instant of time. A baby doesn't grow up in his birth, but in his new life. The NIV, by translating the Greek word “logikon” as “spiritual” instead of “the word”, points people away from the Word of God as the method of growth.

5. NIV teaches **PROCESS Theology**. Bible salvation is being born again in an **instant**.

NIV		KJV	
who are turning to God	Acts 15:19	are turned to God.	
to us who are being saved	I Cor 1:18	us which are saved.	
those who are being saved	II Cor 2:15	in them that are saved.	
you, because the darkness is passing	I John 2:8	you: because the darkness is past .	

6. Consider these **8 NIV omissions** which **ALTER DETAILS OF THE GOSPEL**.

Question: In John 6:47, what must a person believe to have eternal life?

KJV says we must believe on Christ, but NIV omits this.

NIV		KJV	
He who believes <u>OMIT</u> has everlasting life.	John 6:47	He that believeth on me hath everlasting life.	
blessing of <u>OMIT</u> Christ	Rom 15:29	blessing of the gospel of Christ	
In preaching the gospel I may offer it <u>OMIT</u> free of charge, and so not make use of my rights in preaching it .	I Cor 9:18	When I preach the gospel I may make the gospel of Christ without charge, I abuse not my power in the gospel .	
you, because the darkness is passing	I John 2:8	you: because the darkness is past .	
<u>OMIT</u> neither circumcision...	Gal. 6:15	For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth anything,	
You also were included in Christ	Eph. 1:13	In whom ye also trusted ,	
Redemption of those who are God's <u>OMIT</u> possession.	Eph. 1:14	redemption of the purchased possession	
<u>OMIT</u> This is my body which is <u>OMIT</u> for you.	I Cor. 11:24	Take eat , this is my body, which is broken for you:	

7. The NIV **MINIMIZES OUR NEED TO BE SAVED**.

The New Age movement says there's nothing to be saved from.

NIV		KJV	
<u>OMIT</u>	Matt. 18:11	For the Son of man is come to save that which was lost .	
<u>OMIT</u>	Luke 9:55,56	For the Son of man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them .	
The nations <u>OMIT</u> will walk by its light.	Rev. 21:24	The nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it.	

8. NIV omits a key verse showing that salvation cannot be partly by works and partly by grace. It is impossible to mix grace and works, for one cancels the other. **Salvation is free**.

NIV		Romans 11:6b		KJV	
<u>OMIT</u>		But if it be of <u>works</u> then it is no more <u>grace</u> : otherwise work is no more work.			

9. The NIV MINIMISES MAN'S SIN.

NIV		KJV
though the Lord makes his life a <u>guilt offering.</u>	Isaiah 53:10	When thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin.
Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed <u>OMIT</u>	I Cor. 5:7	Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us
Christ suffered <u>OMIT</u> in his body	I Peter 4:1	Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh
for the sins the people had committed in ignorance	Heb. 9:7	for the errors of the people (not in Greek)
experts in the law rejected Gods purpose for themselves	Luke 7:30	Lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves.

10. NIV in Romans 1:16 is **ashamed of the gospel of Christ** because it omits “of Christ.”

NIV	Romans 1:16	KJV
I am not ashamed of the Gospel <u>OMIT</u> , because...		For I am not ashamed of the Gospel of Christ: for...

Which gospel is the NIV talking about?

Paul warns us about many other false gospels in II Corinthians 11:4, (“another gospel”) but only the “gospel of Christ” is the true Gospel.

“If any man preach any other gospel unto you.....let him be accursed.” Galatians 1:9.

IV. CHANGES THAT DIMINISH GODLINESS.

1. The NIV goes easy and vague on sodomites or **HOMOSEXUALS** in the following 5 verses, replacing it with “**male shrine prostitutes**”, an obsolete archaic profession.

One can be a practising homosexual, but not a male shrine prostitute or a homosexual offender. This removes any Bible criticism or warning against homosexuality.

The NIV’s Dr. Virginia Mollencott says:

“My lesbianism has always been a part of me”. Episcopal Witness, June 1991.

NIV		KJV
not a shrine prostitute	Deut. 23:17	nor a sodomite
He expelled the male shrine prostitutes	I Kings 15:12	took away the sodomites.
He rid the land of the rest of the male shrine prostitutes	I Kings 22:46	the remnant of the sodomites , he took out
The male shrine prostitutes	II Kings 23:7	the houses of the sodomites
Nor male prostitutes nor homosexual offenders	I Cor. 6:9	not effeminate , nor abusers of themselves with mankind

The NIV editors aided the AIDS epidemic by silencing God’s warnings against sodomy.

2. The NIV omits “**TAKE UP THE CROSS**” in Mark 10:21.

NIV	Mark 10:21	KJV
Then come, <u>OMIT</u> follow me		and come, take up the cross , and follow me

New Christianity has put down their cross, not liking death to self (Galatians 2:20). They choose a “crown”, not a “cross”; “Happy” not “holy”; “easy” not “right”; and “now” not “later”.

The temptation to skip the **cross**, and capture the **crown** was presented to Christ by Satan in the wilderness. (Matthew 4, Luke 4).

For Jesus and Christians, the cross comes first, then the crown comes later in heaven.

“If we suffer with him; we shall reign with him”. II Timothy 2:12.

The devil doesn’t want us to fight him, but to take it easy.

3. The NIV adds “**WITHOUT PASSING JUDGMENT**” to Romans 14:1, which opens the door for all kinds of sin entering a church.

NIV	Romans 14:1	KJV
Accept him whose faith is weak, <u>without passing judgment</u> on disputable matters		Him that is weak in the faith receive ye, but <u>not to doubtful disputations</u>

In this verse, the NIV and the New Age movement say **don’t judge anyone**.

The NIV tones down sin in this verse so as not to offend anyone or condemn sinners. Many people today want a Bible that shows no act as sinful.

KJV means: “don’t receive him if he is going to dispute over doubtful issues”.

NIV here means the opposite: “Accept him, don’t judge him, no matter what he believes”.

The NIV here means when you have a dispute, don’t judge anyone.

4. NIV omits “**DON’T BEAR FALSE WITNESS**” in Romans 13:9.

NIV	Romans 13:9	KJV
The Commandments Do not commit adultery, Do not murder, Do not steal OMIT Do not covet		For this, Thou shalt not commit adultery, Thou shalt not kill, Thou shalt not steal, <u>Thou shalt not bear false witness,</u> Thou shalt not covet

Question: Why did they drop the 8th commandment from Romans 13:9?

Question: Isn’t changing or omitting from God’s Word a form of “bearing false witness”?

There are many man-made doctrines, such as celibacy, mass, purgatory, penance, prayers to Mary and Saints, infant sprinkling, confirmation, penance, idolatry, indulgences, gospel of works, confessional, inquisition etc, which bear false witness of God’s will.

5. NIV omits the command to **PARTAKE WORTHILY** in the Lord’s Supper.

NIV	I Corinthians 11:29	KJV
For anyone who eats and drinks <u>OMIT</u> without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself.		For he that eateth and drinketh <u>UNWORTHILY</u> eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord’s body.

Roman Catholicism teaches that participating in the **Mass is essential to gain salvation**. The NIV in I Cor. 11:29 omits the word “**unworthily**”. Why? The word “unworthily” in the KJV means that we need to be right with God (saved and sin confessed) **BEFORE** we take the Lord’s Supper or God will chasten us.

On the other hand, Roman Catholic doctrine of Communion says:

1. Confess sin to a priest first, then
2. Come to Mass to get salvation and worthiness to God **AFTER** the mass.

Catholic trusting the Mass for salvation, means that “eating Christ’s flesh” makes us worthy to God, yet the KJV “unworthily” means that we must be worthy **BEFORE** the Lords Supper. I Corinthians 11:28 says that we must examine ourselves and v.31 says that we must first judge ourselves in order to then partake in the Lord’s Supper **worthily**.

The United Bible Society NT Critical apparatus Greek text gives over 53 manuscripts which contain “unworthily”, and only 14 that omit “unworthily”, a ratio of 4:1.

6. The NIV omits or minimises references to BIBLE STUDY in the following verses.

NIV		KJV
Man shall not live on bread alone <u>OMIT</u>	Luke 4:4	Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God
Be diligent (Devil doesn’t want us to study the Bible)	I Tim. 4:15	Meditate upon these things: (Gk 3191 – to consider, weigh, ponder over something, so as to be able to perform well. Equal to meditate.) S Zodhiates
Do your best to present yourself (Devil doesn’t want us to study the Bible)	II Tim 2:15	Study to show thyself approved
Be shepherds (only Christ is stated as our Shepherd)	Acts 20:28	Feed the church of God (means: feed them Bible doctrine).
The word of God is living and active (A butterfly is active, but not powerful)	Heb. 4:12	The word of God is quick and powerful

The devil doesn’t want us to study, meditate, feed people, live by or have confidence in the power of God’s Word the Bible. We thus see the devil’s influence in the NIV.

7. The NIV omits “FASTING” 5 times, and weakens our PRAYER LIFE 3 times.

NIV		KJV
<u>OMIT</u>	Matthew 17:21	This kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.
This kind can come out only by prayer. <u>OMIT</u>	Mark 9:29	This kind can come forth by nothing but by prayer and fasting
in hunger	II Cor 6:5	in fastings
devote yourselves to <u>OMIT</u> prayer	I Cor 7:5	give yourselves to fasting and prayer
Four days ago I was <u>OMIT</u> praying	Acts 10:30	Four days ago I was fasting and prayed
pray <u>OMIT</u> that	Luke 21:36	pray always that
in prayer <u>OMIT</u>	Acts 1:14	in prayer and supplication
the <u>OMIT</u> prayer	James 5:16	the effectual fervent prayer

8. The NIV has removed HONESTY 13 times, replacing it with vaguer words.

Do you think that the KJV might produce more honest Christians than modern versions?

The word “honesty” is not a part of the New Age vocabulary.

NIV		KJV
those with a noble and good heart	Luke 8:15	they, which in an honest and good heart
choose seven men from among you who are known to be <u>OMIT</u> full of the <u>OMIT</u> Spirit	Acts 6:3	Look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom,
Be careful to do what is right in the eyes of everybody.	Rom 12:17	Provide things honest in the sight of all men.
<u>OMIT</u>	Rom 13:9	Thou shalt not bear false witness.
Let us behave decently,	Rom 13:13	Let us walk honestly,
Rather, we have renounced secret and shameful ways	II Cor. 4:2	But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty.
Taking pains to do what is right whatever is noble,	II Cor. 8:21	Providing for honest things,
So that your daily life may win the respect of outsiders,	Phil. 4:8	Whatsoever things are honest,
in all godliness and holiness	I Thes 4:12	That ye may walk honestly toward them that are without,
desire to live honourably in	I Tim. 2:2	life in all godliness and honesty
live such good lives	Heb. 13:18	in all things willing to live honestly.
found them false	I Peter 2:12	Having your conversation honest
who turn aside to false gods	Rev. 2:2	hast found them liars
they have been led astray by false gods	Psalm 40:4	such as turn aside to lies
	Amos 2:4	their lies caused them to err.

16 times the NIV avoids using the strong words of “honest, deceit, lies”, in every case using a vague, watered down alternative. The KJV does not lie.

“Surely they are **my people**, children that **will not lie**: so he was their **Saviour**” Isaiah 63:8

9. The NIV changes “RIGHTEOUSNESS” (KJV) to “PROSPERITY”.

“Men shall be....covetous” II Timothy 3:1,2.

NIV		KJV
with me are...wealth and prosperity.	Prov. 8:18	with me are...riches and righteousness.
finds life, prosperity and honour.	Prov.21:21	findeth life, righteousness and honour.
<u>OMIT</u>	Rom. 9:28	cut it short in righteousness.

There is a big difference between being prosperous and being righteous.

One can be prosperous, but not righteous.

The Laodicean church was “rich and increased with goods, but....wretched, miserable, poor” Revelation 3:17,18.

10. The NIV tells us to **take PRIDE in ourselves**, or **to BOAST**, whereas **God resists the proud** (James 4:6; I Peter 5:5). The New Age movement calls for extra self esteem.

“The Bible never urges self acceptance, self love, self confidence, self esteem nor any other selfisms popular today. The seductive gospel of self-esteem is now preached by prominent pastors”. D. Hunt.

“God resisteth the **proud**”. (James 4:6; I Peter 5:5). “The **pride** of life” (I John 2:16).

“being lifted up with **pride**, he fall into the condemnation of the devil”. I Timothy 3:6.

“**pride** goeth before destruction”. Proverbs 16:18.

Notice how the NIV changes “**rejoicing**” (Greek: kauchaomai) to “**pride or boasting**” (Gk: huperephanos). The word for “pride or boast” (Gk: huperephanos) is not in these verses.

NIV		KJV
Now this is our boast .	I Cor. 1:12	For our rejoicing is this
you can boast of us just as	II Cor. 1:14	we are your rejoicing
we will boast of you to take pride in us	II Cor. 5:12	to glory on our behalf
I take great pride in you.	II Cor. 7:4	great is my glorving of you
Then he can take pride in himself	Gal. 6:4	then shall he have rejoicing
brother...ought to take pride	James 1:9	brother of low degree rejoice
the rich should take pride in his low position, (note: “should take pride” is not in any Greek ms)	James 1:10	But the rich, in that he is made low

The NIV promotes self esteem by removing **meekness 31 times** (KJV) to **4 times** (NIV).

11. The NIV **changes “WORD” to “MESSAGE”**. “Words” are accurate, but a “message” allows for less accuracy and some error. Dynamic Equivalence Theory is false.

NIV attacks inerrancy of Bible		KJV “the Word”
<u>OMIT</u>	Acts 10:37	That word
tell the people the full message	Acts 5:20	to the people all the words ⁴⁴⁸⁷
who heard the message ...	Acts 4:4	them which heard the word ³⁰⁵⁶
These are not the sayings	John 10:21	These are not the words ⁴⁴⁸⁷ of him
because you say so	Luke 5:5	at thy word ⁴⁴⁸⁷ I will let down the net
catch Jesus in something he said	Luke 20:20	take hold of his words ³⁰⁵⁶
his message had authority.	Luke 4:32	for his word was with power ³⁰⁵⁶
the message of the Lord	II Thess3:1	the word ³⁰⁴⁶ of the Lord...free course

Greek: Rhema (4487) = to utter definite words; logos (3056) = word spoken as the expression of intelligence. S. Zodhiates

It is well known that the devil hates the word of God, hence we see “the word” replaced with something else in new versions.

NIV translators do not believe that the Bible is the 100% inspired Word of God.

The infallible Word of God becomes merely a message for a period of time (age).

The NIV is a deliberate attempt to destroy the doctrine of verbal inspiration of the Bible.

“If any man shall **take away** from the **words** of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life and out of the holy city.....” Revelation 22:19.

God considers every word to be important. Words are the building blocks of any message.

To change the words is to change the message.

The Bible is “God’s message” and not his words, contends Linton. He believes the Bible is “the wrong side of a beautiful embroidery. The picture is still there, but knotted, blurry - not beautiful, not perfect.” He calls Christians “amusingly uninformed”, who “presume the Holy Spirit dictated the actual **words** of the text of the original writers”.

“The NIV: Making of a Contemporary Translation” p.17-19, 34, 111, 117.

“For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law.” Matthew 5:18. (A “jot” is the smallest letter and a tittle is the smallest ornament placed on a letter.)

Spurgeon rejected Westcott and Hort’s changed Revised Version as a “TRICK to play”, as “belittling inspiration and inerrancy” and as a “loss of infallibility.”

**From C.H. Spurgeon’s ‘Final Manifesto’
given to his students at his Baptist College, April 1891.**

“It is sadly common among ministers to add a word or subtract a word from the passage, or in some way debase the language of sacred writ....Our reverence for the Great Author of Scripture should forbid all mauling of His Words...

No alteration of Scripture can by any possibility be an improvement...Today it is still the self-same mighty Word of God that it was in the hands of our Lord Jesus...

If this Book be not infallible, where shall we find infallibility? We have given up the Pope, for he has blundered often and terribly, but we shall set up instead of him a horde of little popelings, fresh from college....Are these correctors of Scripture infallible? Is it certain that our Bibles are not right, but that the critics must be so?...But where shall infallibility be found? ‘The depth saith, It is not in me’ yet those who have no depth at all would have us imagine that it is in them; or else by perpetual change they hope to hit upon it!”

All possibility of certainty is transferred from the spiritual man to a class of persons whose scholarship is pretentious, but who do not even pretend to spirituality. We shall gradually be so bedoubted and becriticized that only a few of the most profound will know what is the Bible and what is not, and they will dictate to all the rest of us. I have no more faith in their mercy than their accuracy....They will rob us of all that we hold most dear, and glory in the cruel deed. This same ‘reign of terror’ we will not endure, for we still believe that God reveals Himself rather to babes than to the wise and prudent....We do not despise learning, but we will never say of culture or criticism, ‘These be thy gods, O Israel.’” Do you see WHY men would lower the degree of inspiration in Holy Writ, and would fain reduce us to be supplanted ...whenever a man begins to lower your view of inspiration, it is because he has a trick to play, which is not easily performed in the light....To these who belittle inspiration and inerrancy we will give place by subjection, no, not for an hour!”

(This was proclaimed 10 years **AFTER** the Revised Version was published in 1881, engineered and dominated by Westcott & Hort whose Greek Text theory (“the oldest is the best”) has proven to be the **worst imaginable**).

12. The NIV in these verses **discourages Christians from SEEKING TO BE PERFECT** or complete. The NIV here waters down perfection. (The omitted parts of Matt. 5:44 are hard to do).

NIV		KJV
So that the man of God may be <u>OMIT</u> , thoroughly equipped for every good work.	II Tim. 3:17	That the man of God may be perfect , thoroughly furnished unto all good works.
.....who are loved by God.	Jude 1who are sanctified by God
Love your enemies <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> and pray for those who <u>OMIT</u> persecute you.	Matt. 5:44	Love your enemies bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you.

13. The NIV in these verses **encourages FIERCENESS** by these omissions and changes. “Men shall be ... fierce” II Timothy 3:2.

NIV		KJV	
<u>OMIT</u>	Matt. 5:44	<u>do good to them that hate you.</u>	
<u>OMIT</u>	Mark 11:26	<u>But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.</u>	
envy <u>OMIT</u>	Gal. 5:21	envyings <u>murders *</u>	
<u>Don't extort money.</u>	Luke 3:14	<u>Do violence</u> to no man,	
<u>not lovers</u> of the good.	II Tim. 3:3	<u>despisers</u> of those that are good	
one who loves <u>what is good.</u>	Titus 1:8	a lover of <u>good men.</u>	

* “Neither repented they of their murders”. Revelation 9:21 (in the Tribulation).

14. The NIV in these verses **changes “BLASPHEMY”** (KJV) to “**SLANDER**”. Blasphemy means “speaking evil of God, claiming the attributes of God”.

NIV		KJV	
Out of the heart comes <u>slander</u>	Matthew 15:19	Out of the heart proceed.. <u>blasphemies</u>	
<u>slander</u>	Mark 7:22	<u>blasphemy</u>	
rid yourselves of... <u>slander</u>	Col. 3:8	put off... <u>blasphemy</u>	
People will be..... <u>abusive</u>	II Tim. 3:2	Men shall be... <u>blasphemers</u>	
no one will <u>malign</u> the word of God.	Titus 2:5	the word of God be not <u>blasphemed.</u>	
They said many other <u>insulting</u> things to him	Luke 22:65	Many other things <u>blasphemously</u> they spake against him.	
who are <u>slandering</u>	James 2:7	Do they not <u>blaspheme</u> that worthy....	
became <u>abusive</u>	Acts 18:6	opposed themselves and <u>blasphemed</u>	
I know the <u>slander</u>	Rev 2:9	I know the <u>blasphemy</u> of them	
to <u>slander</u> his name	Rev 13:6	to <u>blaspheme</u> his name	

Slander is speaking evil of men. Blasphemy is speaking evil of God.

Blaspheme (or a derivative) occurs 58 times in KJV and 39 times in NIV.

15. The NIV in these verses **DISHONOURS GOD.**

NIV		KJV	
the only <u>OMIT</u> God.	I Tim 1:17	the only <u>wise</u> God.	
Grace, <u>OMIT</u> and peace from God	Titus 1:4	Grace, <u>mercy</u> and peace from God	
I was <u>angry</u> with.....	Heb. 3:10	I was <u>grieved</u> with that generation (Ps 95:10)	

The NIV in Titus 1:4 and Hebrews 3:10 shows God to be **unmerciful** and **angry**,

The KJV here glorifies God showing Him as **merciful** and **grieved** at sin, yet loving the sinner.

16. The NIV glosses over or COVERS UP the evil in mankind.

The NIV and champions of self-esteem portray man as lovable and attractive.

The KJV shows man as a disobedient, wicked, vile, envious, superstitious, weak, ignorant transgressor. Notice how the NIV paints a better picture of man:

NIV		KJV	
<u>OMIT</u>	Luke 22:64	they struck him on the face	
<u>OMIT</u>	Luke 22:68	nor let me go	
<u>OMIT</u>	Luke 11:54	that they might accuse him	
<u>OMIT</u>	Matt. 15:8	This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth	
<u>OMIT</u>	Mark 15:28	And the scripture was fulfilled which saith, "And he was numbered with the <u>transgressors</u> ".	
The wrath of God is coming <u>OMIT</u>	Col. 3:6	the wrath of God cometh on the children of disobedience.	
You are very religious.	Acts 17:22	ye are too superstitious.	
our lowly bodies.	Phil. 3:21	our vile body	
My conscience is clear.	I Cor. 4:4	I know nothing of myself.	
we speak as men approved of God.	I Thess. 2:4	We were allowed of God	
<u>OMIT</u> ...He will punish those who do not know God.	II Thess. 1:8	In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God	
the whole world is under the control of the wicked one.	I John 5:19	the whole world lieth in wickedness	
Woe to the <u>OMIT</u> earth.	Rev. 12:12	Woe to the inhabiters of the earth.	

17. NIV omits "HOLY" nine times, where the word is in the Greek Received Text.

	NIV		KJV
ANGELS	All the <u>OMIT</u> angels	Matt. 25:31	all the holy angels with him
HOLY SPIRIT	<u>OMIT</u> Spirit had not been given	John 7:39	Holy Ghost was not yet given
	the <u>OMIT</u> Spirit was	Acts 8:18	The Holy Ghost was given
	The <u>OMIT</u> Spirit	I Cor. 2:13	The Holy Ghost teacheth
DEACONS	Choose seven men from among you <u>OMIT</u> full of the Spirit	Acts 6:3	Look ye out among you seven men of honest report, full of the Holy Ghost
WIDOWS	<u>OMIT</u>	I Cor. 7:34	That she may be holy
BRETHREN	<u>OMIT</u>	I Thess 5:27	All the holy brethren
SCRIPTURE WRITERS	<u>OMIT</u>	II Peter 1:21	Holy men of God spake
This lowers divine inspiration by denying the holiness of those whom God used to write Scripture.			
PROPHETS	The spirits of the prophets	Rev. 22.6	Of the holy prophets
Satan doesn't want angels, deacons, widows, brethren, Scripture writers or prophets to be holy.			

V. NIV CHANGES WHICH SUPPORT CATHOLIC IDEAS

By changing some verses which are contrary to Catholic ideas, the NIV becomes more attractive to Catholics therefore opening up the market to Catholics. It also promotes the ecumenical movement, making it easier for Protestants and Catholics to work together.

1. Acts 8:37 disproves Catholic **INFANT BAPTISM**. NIV omits this verse.

NIV	Acts 8:37	KJV
<u>OMIT</u>	And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God	

Roman Catholicism sprinkles water on babies and calls it baptism.

Acts 8:37 strongly and clearly disproves this Catholic practice.

The NIV omits Acts 8:37, because the Eunuch having just been saved, and wishing to be baptised states the condition for correct Bible baptism to take place as being.

“I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God”.

Question: Can a new born baby believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God? No, never!

Hence Acts 8:37 presents a real problem to Roman Catholic infant sprinklers, because it disallows babies from being baptised because babies **CANNOT** satisfy the condition of believing that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.

Manuscripts that contain Acts 8:37 are **Minuscules**, 33, 104, 629, 630, 945, 1739, 1877.

Early church writers: Irenaeus (202 AD), Tertullian (220 AD), Cyprian (258 AD), Ambrosiaster (350 AD), Pacian (392 AD), Ambrose (397 AD), Augustine (430 AD).

Ancient versions: Harklean Syriac (4th cent), Armenian (5th C), Georgian (5th C), Italic (9th C), Old Latin (5th C), E uncial (6th C), Lectionary 59, etc.

By omitting Acts 8:37, infant sprinkling is not rebuked.

2. Having **IDOLS** is pagan. NIV omits this warning.

NIV	I Corinthians 10:28	KJV
But if anyone says to you, this has been offered in sacrifice <u>OMIT</u> then do not eat it.	But if any man say unto you, this is offered in sacrifice UNTO IDOLS , eat not.	
NIV	II Samuel 5:21	KJV
The Philistines abandoned their idols there, and David and his men CARRIED THEM OFF.	There they left their images, and David and his men BURNED THEM.	

Roman Catholicism does not like being criticised for its many **statues, images or idols**, placed in their churches. It would be better if they removed idols from their system, rather than from God’s Word. The Greek word for “sacrifice unto idols” is “eidolothuton”¹⁴⁹⁴ which is made of “eidolon”¹⁴⁹⁷ (idol) and “thuo”²³⁸⁰ (sacrifice).

UBS critical apparatus quotes 29 manuscripts with “unto idols”. Even Sinaiticus has it.

3. Luke 1:28 shows that Mary is just one **AMONG WOMEN**. The NIV omits this.

NIV	Luke 1:28	KJV
<u>OMIT</u>	Blessed art thou among women	

Roman Catholicism's "immaculate conception" of Mary teaches that she, being without sin, is above women, but Luke 1:28 teaches that she is only one among women.

4. The NIV in John 1:42 **hides the meaning of PETER BEING A STONE.**

NIV	John1:42	KJV
You will be called Cephas (which being translated is Peter)		Thou shalt be called Cephas, which is by interpretation, a stone.

Roman Catholicism regards Peter as the Rock, so the NIV rendering of John 1:42 hides the meaning of Peter being only a stone and not the rock as Catholics want him to be. You can't build a church on a stone. Christ is the Rock (I Cor10:4) that the church is built on, not Peter.

5. The NIV in I Peter 1:18 **omits Peter's rebuke of HUMAN TRADITION.**

NIV	I Peter 1:18	KJV
from the empty way of life handed down to you <u>OMIT</u> from you forefathers.		from your vain conversation received by tradition from you fathers

Roman Catholicism elevates church tradition to be more important than Bible doctrine. They don't like St. Peter criticising tradition. Omitting "tradition" from this verse would no doubt please Catholics by allowing them to keep their unbiblical church traditions.

6. Roman Catholicism over the last 1700 years has **TORTURED OR BURNED** at the stake anybody who rejected Roman Catholic dogma.

In Luke 9:51-56, the Samaritans did not receive Jesus on His way to Jerusalem.

James and John asked Jesus permission to "command fire to come down from heaven, and consume them, even as Elias did"? (Luke 9:54).

In verses 55,56 Jesus' reply is left out from the NIV, a full 26 words stolen from the text.

NIV	Luke 9:54-56	KJV
54 When the disciples James & John saw this, they asked, "Lord, do you want us to call fire down from heaven to destroy them? <u>OMIT</u>		54 And when his disciples James & John saw this, they said, Lord, wilt thou that we command fire to come down from heaven, and consume them, even as Elias did?
55 But Jesus turned and rebuked them, <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u> <u>OMIT</u>		55 But he turned and rebuked them, and said, <u>Ye know not what spirit ye are of.</u>
56 and they went to another village.		56 <u>For the Son of man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them.</u> And they went to another village.

Question: Would Rome want these words removed?

Answer: Yes, because this passage in the KJV clearly teaches that it **is wrong for us to burn with fire, torture, or destroy men's lives who reject the Gospel.** During the Inquisition, the Roman Catholic church from 1100-1800 AD burned, tortured and destroyed 68 million peoples lives. For example, Bloody Mary from 1550-57 burned over 300 people at the stake. This verse strongly rebukes the Roman Catholic Inquisition murders. Some Roman Catholic influence would like this verse cut out of the Catholic NIV. At least 48 manuscripts contain these verses, while only 29 manuscripts omit them.

7. NIV changes I Cor 9:27 to teach Catholic "self-flagellation (self-beating).

NIV	I Corinthians 9:27	KJV
<u>I beat my body</u>		I keep under my body

8. NIV in Rev 17:6 does not remind Catholics of their MARTYRING CHRISTIANS.

NIV	Revelation 17:6	KJV
I saw that the woman was drunk with . . . the blood of those who bore testimony to Jesus		I saw the woman drunken . . . with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus

Although the NIV translation in this verse is equally accurate as the KJV, the removal of the word “martyrs” hides the Roman Catholic history of martyring Christians.

9. “Firstborn” in Matthew 1:25 shows that Mary had OTHER CHILDREN.

NIV	Matthew 1:25	KJV
gave birth to a <u>OMIT</u> son.		brought forth her firstborn son.

Roman Catholicism’s “**perpetual virginity**” of Mary is disproved if Jesus is **not** Mary’s only Son. The KJV however includes the word “firstborn” in this verse to show that she had other children as well. This is confirmed in Matt 13:55-56, Mark 6:3 & John 19:26-27.

10. NIV by omitting Matthew 23:14 allows some religious leaders to DEVOUR WIDOWS’ HOUSES.

NIV	Matthew 23:14	KJV
<u>OMIT</u>		Woe unto you scribes, and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye devour widows’ houses, and for a pretence make long prayer: therefore ye shall receive the greater damnation.

Roman Catholicism believes that **prayers for the dead** can deliver them from **purgatory**.

The NIV omits this verse with the footnote: “Some manuscripts insert verse 14”.

The UBS critical apparatus lists 50 manuscripts with v.14, and only 19 that omit v.14.

Who would want verse 14 removed?

Question: Who would make supposed “long prayers” for a widow to get her property?

Answer: The context is a religious leader calling himself “Father” in Matthew 23:9.

Originally, we know that Christ spoke these words against the Pharisees, but we can see that this rebuke applies to any religious leader who is guilty of the same practice. The Roman Catholic church tells a widow when her husband dies that he has gone into the fires of purgatory to pay for his sins. The priest offers to say prayers for his speedy release from purgatory if the widow pays money to the priest. The widow normally has just enough spare cash to live on, and can’t afford to pay the priest. Hence, the priest says:

“Sell your house and give me the money to pray him out of purgatory”.

She being a loyal Catholic does so. Hence the priest devours widows’ houses.

Roman Catholic priests who take advantage of widows in the same manner as the Pharisees, will receive greater punishment in hell. Hence, by omitting Matthew 23:14, the NIV removes any charge against the Roman Catholic priesthood. “If people don’t like a verse, can they just chop it out?”

11. The NIV by changing I Corinthians 7:1 justifies Roman Catholic priestly celibacy.

NIV	I Corinthians 7:1	KJV
It is good for a man not to marry.		It is good for a man not to touch a woman.

A man is permitted to touch **his wife**, but not touch a single woman or another man's wife.

This change justifies Catholic **priest celibacy**, the cause of much priestly sexual abuse.

This dispels the myth that NIV just modernises the English without changing the meaning.

12. The NIV here **changes “FAULTS”** to **“SINS”** which **allows confession of sins to a priest.**

NIV	James 5:16	KJV
Confess your sins (hamartias) to each other, so that ye may be healed		Confess your faults (paraptomata) one to another . . . that ye may be healed.

Catholicism strongly controls her people through the Confession of sins to a priest, who then commands the sinner to do acts of penance in order to gain forgiveness or absolution of sins. This turns the sinner from confessing sins to Christ to confessing sins to a priest. Roman Catholicism changes the Greek word to “hamartias” to justify the confessional.

Question: You ask, “What is the manuscript evidence for “hamartias” in the NIV”?

Answer: None! Not one Greek manuscript in the world has “hamartias” (sins). All have “paraptomata” (faults) as in the KJV/Textus Receptus.

The evidence for sins (hamartias) is not listed in the “United Bible Society” 3rd edition of the Greek N.T. In the footnotes you will find Aleph,B,A etc, listed every time they appear in James 5:11-20, but they are not cited for James 5:16. Why?

Because “Tas hamartias” (sins) is a Roman Catholic addition to the Greek text, adopted by the NIV, RSV etc to promote the Ecumenical movement.

13. NIV adds **“with the PRIESTLY DUTY”** to Romans 15:16 with no manuscript support.

NIV	Romans 15:16	KJV
To be a minister of Christ Jesus to the Gentiles, with the priestly duty of proclaiming the gospel of God.		That I should be the minister of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles, ministering ²⁴¹⁸ the gospel of God.

Roman Catholicism wishing to elevate their priesthood system, quietly adds the priesthood to Paul’s ministry (see “The Complete NT Word Study Dictionary”), thus stating that if Paul had a priestly duty as an intermediary between God and man, it is therefore all right for Rome to have her priests as intermediaries between God and man. The NIV in this verse can be seen to wrongly endorse the Catholic priesthood.

Zodhiates states that “ministering” (2418) means “to be employed in a sacred office”.

The verb “ministering” means that Paul was willing to make sacrifices to spread the gospel of Christ. It does not mean sacrificing animals or re-sacrificing Christ as claimed in the mass (Hebrews 10:12,26 - “No more sacrifice for sins”).

14. NIV here removes the warning against **“VAIN REPETITIONS”** prayers eg Hail Mary

NIV	Matthew 6:7	KJV
When you pray, do not keep on babbling like the pagans		When ye pray, use not vain repetitions , as the heathen do.

Roman Catholicism instructs people to pray the rosary consisting of 15 “Our Fathers”, 15 “Glory be’s”, and 150 “Hail Mary’s” addressed to Mary as follows: “Hail Mary, full of grace...pray for us sinners”. The rosary has **TEN** times as many prayers addressed to Mary (150) as are addressed to God the Father (15), with **NONE** addressed to Christ. **It exalts Mary TEN times more than God.** This is clearly a **vain repetition** of prayers, thinking that God will be more likely to hear them for their much speaking.

A Catholic praying “Hail Mary” 20 times **would** be convicted by the KJV warning against “vain repetitions”, but he would not be convicted by the NIV “keep on babbling”.

105. QUESTIONS TO ASK MODERN BIBLE VERSION USERS

1. a) **Which Bible version do you use?** (NIV).
 - b) I use the KJV because of how the NIV handles Matthew 17:21. (What's it say?)
 - c) Do you have your NIV handy? Look up Matthew 17:21.
 - d) Look up Matthew 18:11; 23:14; Mark 7:16; 9:44,46; 11:26; 15:28; Luke 17:36; 23:17; John 5:4; Acts 8:37; 15:34, 24:7; 28:29; Romans 16:24.
 - e) Is it all right to take verses out of the Bible? How many words can you take out of the Bible for it to be a sin? Would a good man **add words** or a bad man **take out words**?
 - f) We know these verses are in the Bible because Tatian in his Diatessaron quotes every one of these gospel verses in 150 AD. He had access to the original autographs to copy these verses from. Even Codex Sinaiticus quotes Luke 23:17.
Irenaeus (120-202AD, Vol 1, p.433) & Cyprian (200-258AD, Vol 5, p.545) quote Acts 8:37.
2. **Would God use unbelievers and heretics** like Westcott and Hort to correct the Bible that has been used for 1500 years? NIV is based on W&H's mainly Vaticanus text.
3. **Has God preserved His Word to today** as Jesus promised in Matthew 5:18 "one jot or tittle shall in no wise pass from the law until all be fulfilled."
4. The United Bible Society (3rd edition) NT Greek text has omitted **2544** Greek words. (**2886** if you count Mark 16:9-20 and John 7:53-8:11), from the Received text (KJV). The Received Text by Robert Stephanus (1550AD) has **140,488** Greek NT words. The Nestle-Aland 26th edition and UBS 3rd edition has **137,602** Greek NT words, 2886 less. This is **2.1%** of the Greek NT words removed & never to be read in modern versions.
5. Why were Codex Vaticanus and Codex Sinaiticus (on which NIV is based) **not copied and distributed** if they are supposed to be the "oldest and best manuscripts"?
Answer: Because Christians recognized their many corrupt readings, it became impossible to "sell" them. Nobody bought them. They were not copied or distributed.
6. Why are Codex Vaticanus & Codex Sinaiticus in **such good condition** after 1500 years?
Answer: Because nobody used them having so many corrupt readings. If they were recognized as the true text, somebody would have paid good money for them, used them regularly and worn them out. You can always sell a good manuscript, but you can't sell a bad manuscript, except to a fool or someone who doesn't know what the true text is such as Westcott & Hort, Griesbach, Tregelles, Tischendorf and modern scholars.
7. **How do you explain the Majority Text's 98% domination of the manuscripts?**
Answer: They had to be good copies of the originals, as recognised by Christians since 96 AD. This dominance worried Westcott and Hort, so they guessed that around 250AD Lucian made a revision of the NT text from an assumed original Vaticanus type text to a Byzantine type KJV text. If this really happened, why is there no record of it in history, and why was there no protest against it? A protest would surely have happened. **Answer:** Because it is a figment of W&H's imagination. They made up this lie to support their theory. It has no historical basis or support.
8. If Codex Vaticanus and Codex Sinaiticus are the true text and so accurate, **why do they disagree between themselves 3061 times in the gospels alone?**
9. Would you trust men like **Westcott & Hort** to correct the Bible if you knew that they did not believe in ① Bible infallibility, ② New Testament miracles, ③ Creation, ④ Literal devil, ⑤ Heaven, ⑥ Second coming, ⑦ Christ's substitutionary death, ⑧ inviting people to receive Christ as Saviour, ⑨ Traditional theology?

Would you trust Westcott & Hort to correct the Bible if you knew that they:

1) decided between variant readings on the basis of their "inner consciousness"?
2) believed in Mary worship; 3) in sacrament devotion; 4) in baptismal regeneration; 5) purgatory; 6) private prayers for the dead; 7) Communism; 8) in contacting demons & working in "the Ghostly Guild?" See their biographies by their sons (Hort 2:248).

10. **Would the devil be interested in corrupting the New Testament text?** Yes certainly, because this was Satan's first temptation "Yea, hath God said?" (Gen. 3:1), in getting Eve to doubt God's Word. Yet W&H and modern version editors never consider this possibility. They treat the NT just like any ancient document.
11. **Would you expect to find the true New Testament text in Alexandria in Egypt** where God continually warns believers to avoid? No! Yet this is where Vaticanus and Sinaiticus are supposed to have originated.
12. Why did Westcott and Hort and modern version editors **reject and ignore the 98% of Byzantine/KJV text manuscripts** in favour of 2% of the manuscripts which show great disagreement with each other and many corrupt and variant readings?
13. The **cornerstone** of Hort's theory was that readings characteristic of the Received text are **never** found in quotations of Christian writers before 350 AD. He said "before that date we find Alexandrian and Western readings, but never Syrian". Hort's statement is proven wrong by:
- a) **Tatian's Diatessaron** (150 AD) ALWAYS gives the KJV reading for any Gospel verse that the NIV CHANGES.
 - b) The **Syriac Peshitta** version (170 AD) agrees with the KJV text and disproves W&H's theory of Alexandrian manuscripts being close to the original.
 - c) The **Gothic** version (341 AD) was produced by Ulfilas "little wolf", a missionary bishop to the Goths, and was circulating before Vaticanus or Sinaiticus were written in 350AD. According to Kenyon, Aland (p.210) and all the evidence, it was translated from the early Byzantine KJV text manuscripts.
 - d) Modern version advocates only list 13 out of 96 papyri, 9 out of 299 uncials, and 22 out of 2812 minuscules supporting the Alexandrian text. This means that 86% of papyri, 96% of Uncials and 99% of minuscules show a Byzantine text.
14. If Egypt is the right place to find the correct New Testament text, then **why do the main Egyptian papyri show the greatest degree of corruption** of any manuscripts? For example, why do papyri p66, p45 and p75 have the following mistakes? Colwell Ernest, *Scribal Habits in Early Papyri*. The Bible in Modern Scholarship. J.P.Hyatt. New York: Abingdon Press, 1963. p.370-389

	p66	p45	p75
Careless Readings	216	20	57
Singular Readings	482	275	257
Nonsense Readings	200	28	64
Leaps Forward	54	16	27
Leaps Backward	22	2	10

The Holy Spirit refused to send a single original autograph to Egypt, so what would Egypt know about the original correct readings? Very little!

15. Why did God **cut off the power of speech from modern version editors** such as Kenneth Taylor (Living Bible 1972), Philip Schaff (ASV 1892), Tregelles (New Greek Text 1857-72), Westcott (New Greek Text & RV 1870), J.B.Philips (1961), Wilkins (NASV)? Isaiah 8:19,20; Luke 11:14.

16. If anyone says "Byzantine (KJV) readings are inferior to Alexandrian", say "**Prove it**".

106. SEPARATION FROM NEW EVANGELICAL ERRORS

Aim: To show that the Bible commands believers to separate from errors such as are in the New Evangelical movement in order to preserve the holiness and effectiveness of local churches.

We must warn believers to reject and separate from these errors.

Bible Reading:

- a) “Now I beseech you, brethren, **mark** them which **cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine** which you have learned; and **AVOID them.**” Romans 16:17.
What are we commanded to do about disobedient brethren? AVOID THEM! That is separation.
- b) “Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye **WITHDRAW yourselves** from every brother that **walketh disorderly**, and not after the **tradition** which he received from us.” II Thessalonians 3:6
- c) “**Proving** what is **acceptable unto the Lord**. And **have no fellowship** with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather **REPROVE** them.” Ephesians 5:10,11.
- d) “I (Paul) **withstood** him (Peter) to the face because **he was to be blamed.**” Galatians 2:11-13.
- e) “If any man teach otherwise, and **consent not to wholesome words**, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the **doctrine which is according to godliness**; he is proud,...**FROM SUCH WITHDRAW THYSELF.**” I Timothy 6:3-5.

Introduction: “Speaking the truth in love” (Ephesians 4:15) is how we should approach people who hold wrong doctrinal positions. Many of us who hold true doctrines previously believed some false doctrines. We wanted people to tell us the truth in a kind way. We are all on a learning curve and we must be patient and loving to those who believe error. “The servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all men, apt to teach, patient, in meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth.” 2 Timothy 2:24,25.
This chapter teaches that:

- a) **Pastors** should not affiliate their churches with other churches or groups that believe false doctrines.
- b) **Individual believers** should not join or support churches that teach false doctrines.
If you do, you will help them spread their errors and God will hold you accountable.
- c) **God’s work will grow faster** if we separate from churches teaching error and support a church that teaches true doctrines. If we join up with churches teaching error, numbers initially may appear larger, but multiplication of quality disciples will not take place and future growth will be of poorer quality.
- d) We should **reprove (point out the errors of) those who believe false doctrines** so they may escape satan’s snare, bear fruit for Christ, and stop spreading error. Ephesians 5:11.

The New Evangelical disobeys God’s command to separate from apostasy.

God says, “Come out.” **New Evangelism** says, “No, we will remain in a group with false doctrines, we will infiltrate it, we will associate with it, we will dialogue with it.”

If this be correct, then we have no defence against error.

Illustration 1: At the end of WWII my father, along with many fellow soldiers were told at the New Guinea airport to board one of two aeroplanes to fly them back to Australia. While in the air, my father noticed that the other plane had changed course by a very small angle and was becoming further away until it passed out of sight. After several hours of flying, the plane on which my father was travelling safely landed at the Australian airport. The other plane which had drifted slightly off course was never seen again. It crashed in the sea, killing all those men on board.

What started as a small change in direction, later on resulted in the plane being hundreds of miles off course, running out of fuel and many men’s death.

So it is with the New Evangelical movement which started in 1948 by Harold Ockenga who wanted to work with those having false doctrines. Today it has culminated in many false doctrines invading mainstream churches, so that many once-strong soul-winning fundamental churches have been polluted by error and worldliness, leading to splits and the death of a strong Bible-based testimony.

Illustration 2: Everybody has a fence around their home or farm, because it defines the borders of their property. If all boundary fences were torn down, things would go on fairly well for the generation who knew where the fences used to be. However, future generations, who never knew where the fence used to be, would have trouble and constant fights over what was the right boundary.

“Remove not the ancient landmark.” Proverbs 22:28.

New Evangelicalism’s founding fathers (Harold Ockenga and Billy Graham) tore down the fences and today’s generation can’t even remember where they were.

We need to rebuild the fences, so that our churches know right from wrong, and are protected from the creeping influence of false doctrines. We pastors and workers must impress on our people the principles of separation from error.

Question 1: Is separation from error really that important?

What if we don’t preach or train our people to separate from error?

Answer: Then II John 8 will result: “Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought; but that we receive a full reward.”

If we fail to practise Biblical separation from error:

- 1) We will lose our life’s work, that is strong Bible preaching fundamental churches; and
- 2) We will lose our heavenly rewards.

Question 2: Do we have to rebuke believers who hold error?

Can’t we just keep quiet and love them?

Answer: When the apostle Peter defected in doctrine and practice by refusing to eat with Gentile believers fearing those of the circumcision, Paul said:

“I withstood him to the face, because he was to be blamed.” (Galatians 2:11-13). The sad result of Peter’s weakness and compromise with error was that other Jews, as well as Barnabas followed his example. If Paul had not had the courage to publicly rebuke Peter, then Peter’s error may have split the church for the next 2000 years. If we condone error by our silence, we aid its spreading. We must reprove believers who hold to error: “And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather **reprove** them.” (Ephesians 5:11).

It is wrong to treat apostate churches as if they are the same as fundamental churches. Some things, such as disagreements in politics, marriage and business, may be solved by compromise. On the other hand, there are some truths and convictions which cannot be compromised. **Martin Luther** refused to renounce his writings and said to his opponents: “Here I stand, I can do no other.”

Athanasius, who successfully argued the complete deity of Christ against the Aryans who denied it, was warned by a colleague: “The whole world is against you.”

Athanasius replied, “Then I am against the whole world.”

He would not compromise on so crucial a matter.

Two areas in which we are to separate are:

- 1) Personal separation from the works of the flesh and yield to the filling of the Holy Spirit;
- 2) Separation as a church from disobedient brethren (I Corinthians 5:5-13), apostate churches and denominations holding or endorsing false doctrines (II John 7-11).

Separation is the doctrine which stands at the cross-roads between Fundamentalism and New Evangelicalism. Why? “Know ye not that a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump?” (I Corinthians 5:6).

I. WOLVES IN SHEEP’S CLOTHING: **THE FUNDAMENTALIST-MODERNIST CONTROVERSY**

Jesus warned us to: “Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.” (Matthew 7:15).

Paul warned “that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock.” (Acts 20:29).

Wolves looking like sheep will creep in (Jude 4) with subtlety and stealth, to infiltrate churches, and hence would greatly impede the progress of the gospel. This is one of Satan’s chief devices.

Poison from Europe (1600-1900). Unbelieving scholars in England and Europe, such as Voltaire, Rousseau, Kant, Darwin and the Jesuits, taught philosophies which undermined Biblical Christianity and led to the great apostasy which overwhelmed many churches.

For example, **Evolution** arose to try to explain away God's existence as Creator.

German philosophers, such as **Hegel**, tried to remove religious thought from being absolute to being tentative. Out of this came the movement known as **modernism**, now referred to as theological liberalism, the key beliefs being:

- 1) A rejection of Biblical inspiration and **inerrancy**.
- 2) A **tolerance of all views** within the religious community.
- 3) An emphasis on the superiority of **human experience** over the revealed word of God (Schleiermacher).
- 4) A denial of the absolute **Deity of Christ**.
- 5) Emphasising the dignity and **goodness of man**.
- 6) Rejecting the **sinfulness of man** and rejecting the necessity of the new birth.
- 7) Origin of all things by **evolution** rather than by creation.
- 8) Rejection of supernatural intervention of God in history, eg: **miracles, resurrection, providence,...**
- 9) Emphasis on the **social gospel**, that the main mission of the church is to correct social ills. They say that sin is socially caused by a bad environment and salvation involves correcting social problems. Established denominations and theological colleges took in these liberal views, claiming that because times have changed since Christ and that for Christianity to be successful, the gospel must change also. They claimed that the Gospel message must be changed to suit modern man. Because liberals gained control of decision making in denominations, they were able to quickly spread their doctrines, so that I Timothy 4:1 was fulfilled: "Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall **depart from the faith**, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils."

1. LIBERALISM CHALLENGED

God raised many warriors to defend the historic Christian faith, such as Schofield, and W.B.Riley who published "the Fundamentals" in 1910, in which great Christian scholars wrote articles on the inspiration of Scripture, resurrection of Christ, virgin birth of Christ, His blood atonement, etc. People believing these truths became known as Fundamentalists.

In 1919, some fundamentalist leaders formed the World Christian Fundamentalist Association, with **W.B.Riley** as its first president.

Tremendous controversies took place as fundamentalists struggled to expose and oppose Bible-denying modernists who were sapping the life from churches.

J.Gresham Machen led the protest in the US Presbyterian Church against rising liberalism. The result was that Bible believing professors left Princeton Seminary to form another seminary. Many Baptist churches left the liberal Northern Baptist Convention to join the General Association of Regular Baptists (GARB).

J.Frank Norris challenged the apostasy in the Southern Baptist Convention, as did other men in Congregational and Methodist churches. Those men were ridiculed in the media, but they were true to Christ and His Word. They could say: "I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith." (II Timothy 4:7).

The Christian life is truly a fight. These men were fighting Fundamentalists.

2. DEVELOPING THE ART OF FENCE SITTING

The 1920s and 1930s saw many great battles between fundamentalism and modernism. The future of churches, colleges, seminaries and mission boards was at stake. Many Bible believers had poured their lives into churches and didn't want them to fall into the hands of the enemies of truth.

As the battle went on, some became weary of it, and did not want to be "fighting fundamentalists." They thought it was time for a new approach, and out of this came "New Evangelicalism."

SIX FACTORS THAT CAUSED A RISE IN NEW EVANGELICALISM

1. A reaction against perceived negativism of some fundamentalists.

Early New Evangelical leaders greatly emphasised the claim that Fundamentalists were too much “against” and not enough “for.” Their plea was “let’s be positive and not negative.” This is not Biblical. Scripture is both positive and negative. It is **for** some things and **against** others. We must strive for that same balance.

2. A desire to be accepted by the scholarly world.

Many young Fundamentalist scholars were viewed as deficient intellectually because they believed the Bible, so they adjusted their views to please the intellectual unbelieving leaders of the day. Paul had people facing the same temptation.

“Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.” (Colossians 2:8).

The desire to be intellectually respectable in the eyes of a Godless world, has ruined many a promising scholar. Why do believers think they need the support of unbelievers to do God’s work?

3. The influence of training in liberal unbelieving colleges. A man generally reflects the philosophy of the schools he trained in. Many young Fundamentalist scholars studied in liberal colleges under unbelieving lecturers. They considered it a broadening experience and as a result many made shipwreck of their faith.

What some people feel is their mind broadening is only their conscience stretching.

“Cease my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge.” (Proverbs 19:27).

4. The spirit of the age where dogmatism was becoming a hated concept.

There was a call for openness to tolerate and accept many false viewpoints.

5. Criticism that Fundamentalists lacked a concern for social action. This resulted in New Evangelicals following a social gospel. The New Testament church did not organise social programs to alleviate suffering in the **unsaved** world. This is the task of government.

The New Testament church did, however, meet the social needs of **believers**. (Acts 4:32-37).

James 2:15 exhorts us to show our faith by helping fellow believers who are destitute of daily food.

6. A growing ecumenical spirit which viewed Fundamentalists as too separatist.

The ecumenical movement of “let’s get together” gained momentum in the 1950s and 60s.

Evangelicals were influenced to welcome those holding to error. They forgot II John 10,11:

“If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into your house, neither bid him God speed: For he that biddeth him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds.”

They rejected the term “fundamental” in favour of the term “evangelical”.

The founding of Fuller Theological Seminary in California in 1947 as the first and leading New Evangelical college was a major milestone of the evangelical left wing. 1957 saw Billy Graham conduct his first ecumenical crusade in New York City.

3. LOOKING AT NEW EVANGELICALISM THROUGH SCRIPTURE

Accommodation is not taught in the New Testament. We are not to trim God’s message or method to win a hearing for the message. We must not seek to conform God’s Word to man’s desires. We must not be “conformed to this world.” (Romans 12:2).

Some think that an ecumenical spirit is brotherly and kind, and that love is more important than doctrine, appealing to John 17:11 where Jesus prayed that “they may be one.” They criticise fundamentalists who oppose the ecumenical movement with the charge of “sowing discord among the brethren” or continuing the “sin of division.”

Answer: Jesus’ prayer for all believers to be one has already been answered. Since we are all baptised by the Holy Spirit into the body of Christ (Galatians 3:27; I Corinthians 12:13), “we are all one in Christ Jesus” (Galatians 3:28) having spiritual unity in the bride of Christ. It is not talking about organisational unity.

New Evangelicals' Unwillingness To Separate From Churches Holding False Doctrine.

Fundamentalists believe in complete separation from all churches or fellowships which tolerate false doctrine, unbelief or compromise with error. New Evangelicals on the other hand believe "let us compromise doctrinal matters for the sake of evangelism."

Question: Why do some people not obey the Biblical command in II Corinthians 6:14-18 to break fellowship with those who promote unbiblical positions?

Answer:

1. Taking a stand against unbelief can be costly.

If pastors left a denomination with false doctrines, they would lose many **friends** and their **retirement** money. For some this is too great a price to pay.

2. One's **prestige** and **influence** in denominational leadership would be lost if he separated to become an independent pastor. Are influence, respect and position more important than obeying God?

Wasn't **Noah** a preacher of righteousness who was only supported by seven people?

Didn't **Jeremiah** get abused and imprisoned for rebuking the sinners of his day?

Didn't **Paul** get beaten, hated and jailed for preaching against the Jews' view of Jesus?

Didn't **John the Baptist** get imprisoned and beheaded for rebuking Herod's sins?

Didn't **Jesus** rebuke the Pharisees, Sadducees and scribes, not fearing the consequences or seeking their acceptance?

Many New Evangelicals today honour Spurgeon, but few of them would have stood with him when he rebuked the Baptist Union for its apostasy and was excommunicated as a result.

3. New Evangelicals have a different concept of the purpose of the church from the Fundamentalists.

Fundamentalists view the church as "**Donatist**," which regards **holiness and doctrine** as more important than unity in local churches.

New Evangelicals view the church as "**Augustinian**," which regards **unity** as more important than holiness and doctrine. If a church has **holiness** and sound **doctrine**, it will have **true unity**, which leads to quality outreach.

If a church has **external unity**, but **internal doctrinal divisions**, then the "leaven will soon leaven the whole lump" (Galatians 5:9) and will hinder quality outreach.

4. New Evangelicals see the church's mission to **penetrate** the world with Christian values.

Fundamentalists see the role of the church to **win the world to Christ** and to **disciple them**

(Matthew 28:18-20). Satan will remain the political and religious head of this world's system until Christ returns to defeat him. (II Corinthians 4:3-5).

"For we **preach not ourselves**, but **Christ Jesus** the Lord . . ." (II Corinthians 4:5).

We don't preach ourselves as the agent of social change, but we preach Jesus Christ as the Saviour of the world. The early church never tried to reform social culture.

The Holy Spirit today is moving among the nations "to take out of them a people for his name" (Acts 15:14), not to Christianise the nations.

New Evangelicals try to be good guys by **avoiding controversial subjects**. This dulls the cutting edge of Christianity. We must guard against civility and courtesy breeding timid preachers. The contemporary worldly attitude is against all absolutes, dogmatism and exclusiveness. This thinking has crept into the churches, so that now many churches defend homosexuality, evolution, abortion, feminism. How did these churches degenerate so far? By twisting the Word of God to the latest intellectual fashions of the world.

New Evangelicals have a burning desire to be accepted and recognised by the world, when the world despises the Word of God and has no intention of becoming Christian. This is pitiful and treasonous.

Question: What happens when people compromise sound doctrine?

Answer: Churches and Bible Colleges deteriorate spiritually.

Preachers seeking to be civil, de-emphasise the Bible's more offensive subjects such as accusations of heresy, sin, immorality, paganism, God's judgment, hell and intolerance of error. Did Jesus, Paul, and Peter seek to adjust their message to their worldly, unsaved hearers? No! Paul did not use flattering words (I Thessalonians 2:5).

4. NEW EVANGELICALS SEEK TO CAPTURE THEOLOGICAL COLLEGES

Generally a preacher is the product of the theological college he attended.

New Evangelicals, in order to spread their errors, had to capture theological colleges and seminaries, and thus mould the coming generation of leaders. Institutions that became New Evangelical were Wheaton College, Fuller Theological Seminary, Westminster Seminary, Talbot Seminary, etc. Each of these undermined the authority of Scripture, & denied the inerrancy & preservation of the Word of God.

The demise of Fuller Theological Seminary is a warning to all those who seek to change direction.

How did this happen?

- 1) Fuller Seminary started with the goal of changing the direction and image of fundamentalism to seek to rescue the apostate denominations.
- 2) Its few Fundamentalist lecturers protested its change of direction.
- 3) Fundamentalists more and more began to reject the Seminary.
- 4) Faculty members conflicted over Biblical inspiration and inerrancy.
- 5) This led to the conservative faculty members resigning.
- 6) The Seminary then changed its doctrinal statement to accommodate those who denied Biblical inerrancy.

Lesson: Initial compromise grows with time. Vigilance, struggle, rebuking error and a certain militancy are required if we are to defend the “faith once delivered to the saints.”

Sadly, Bernard Ramm who as a young Fundamentalist wrote the helpful book “*Protestant Biblical Interpretation*”, later on, in order to be academically acceptable, drifted to the point where he defended the theology of Karl Barth who denied the inerrancy of Scripture and other key doctrines.

To propagate thoughts required the printed page. New Evangelicals were quick to publish books which were filled with footnotes and quotes of liberal and Bible-denying writers, but were noticeably lacking in references to the writings of solid Biblical Fundamentalists. Why? They were trying to be modern and academically acceptable. They loved the praise of men more than the praise of God (John 12:43).

5. NEW EVANGELICALS INFILTRATE PARA-CHURCH ORGANISATIONS such as Bill Bright’s Campus Crusade, Inter-Varsity Fellowship, Navigators, New Tribes Mission and World Vision

- a) Campus Crusaders are taught not to use “Christian jargon” such as repent, converted, blood of Christ, hell, sin, saved, apostate and baptism. They are not under the authority of any local church.
- b) Navigators rarely mention baptism, premillennial eschatology, or pastoral authority. Nor do they rebuke the errors of Calvinism, modern versions or infant sprinkling, in case they offend some of their members who believe such lies.
- c) New Tribes Mission’s aim is to entice promising Christians away from being under the authority of their local church, to being under the authority of the New Tribes Mission denomination. They then tell the prospective missionary to ask local churches for money to pay their way to work overseas as a New Tribes missionary. When overseas, he is told that he must not ask a sinner to pray to ask Jesus Christ to be his Saviour (*Firm Foundations*, page 14). He must not present the Gospel until the natives have gone through a 2-5 year Old and New Testament Bible course called “*Firm Foundations*.” (*Brown Gold*, September 1995). Most natives don’t stick out the 2-5 year course and hence never get a clear Gospel presentation.

The Apostles Peter and Paul never taught a 2-year Old Testament course to unbelievers, because “they receive not the things of the Spirit of God” (and would have no spiritual discernment before conversion), but he preached the Gospel immediately to them, and then challenged them to call on Christ to save them.

Question: How should we evaluate New Evangelicalism in the light of Scripture?

Answer:

- 1) Accommodating God’s Word to win a hearing is not taught in Scripture.

We are not to trim God’s message or methods, nor are we to seek to conform God’s Word to suit man’s desires. “Be not conformed to this world.” (Romans 12:2).

- 2) While an **ecumenical unity** may seem brotherly and kind, it is contrary to God’s Word.
- a) **Ecumenists** claim that **love is more important than doctrine**, appealing to John 17:11 where Jesus prayed that “they may be one.” They criticise Christians who oppose the ecumenical movement, accusing them of not obeying this command, and of promoting the “sin of division.” This prayer (“to be one”) has already been answered by believers being one in the body of Christ. “Ye are all one in Christ Jesus” (Galatians 3:28; I Corinthians 12:13). Jesus is not talking about **organisational unity** under the authority of the Pope or the World Council of Churches, but about **spiritual unity** under the authority of Jesus Christ. Paul warns against seeking organisational unity at the expense of doctrinal compromise in Romans 16:17: “Mark them which **cause divisions** and **offences contrary** to the **doctrine** which ye have learned and **AVOID THEM.**”
- b) **Ecumenists** accuse Fundamentalists of “sowing discord among the brethren” (Proverbs 6:19), yet ecumenists are the ones guilty of sowing discord among the brethren by joining up with “false witnesses that speak lies” (Proverbs 6:19) in the form of Catholics, Charismatics, infant sprinklers, Bible deniers, ordainers of homosexual priests, etc, all of whom speak the lies of unbiblical doctrines. Fundamentalists haven’t moved; it’s the liberals who have moved.
- 3) Bible believing Christians reject the Charismatic influence in New Evangelicalism. New Evangelical founders were not charismatic, but they insisted that we should accept Charismatic doctrines as a viable option, rather than denounce them as error. This gave the Charismatic error a new-found respectability. Charismatics are dead wrong in their views of the Holy Spirit slaying people onto the floor, giving new revelations that don’t come true, speaking in gibberish that is claimed as tongues, and healing people who remain ill.

We vehemently reject Charismatic theology and practice as contrary to Scripture and as one of the greatest deceptions to hit the churches in 2000 years.

Some Christians think that to rebuke Charismatic error is unloving, divisive and confrontational. We are doing just what Paul commands in Titus 1:13,

“Wherefore **rebuke** them **sharply**, that they may be sound in the faith.”

It is not loving God or man to allow error to be freely propagated.

“Ye that love the Lord, **hate evil.**” (Psalm 97:10).

“Speak thou the things which become **sound doctrine.**” (Titus 2:1).

“I hate every **false way.**” (Psalm 119:104).

“I hate and abhor **lying**, but thy law do I love.” (Psalm 119:163).

“The fear of the Lord is to hate **evil.**” (Proverbs 8:13).

We are against lying, evil and false doctrines. Aren’t you?

New Evangelicalism has done great harm. It has weakened the Biblical foundations of many churches, by teaching them to accept and tolerate error and to work with those who hold false doctrines.

Billy Graham has been the chief promoter of this erroneous approach.

6. THE HISTORY OF and HERESIES ENDORSED BY BILLY GRAHAM

The New Evangelical movement grew due to the practice of “ecumenical evangelism” where churches of widely differing doctrines **joined together to evangelise the lost.**

Bible believing Christians have always been concerned about evangelising the world. Salvation by faith in Christ alone started the Reformation against Roman Catholicism’s false gospel of salvation by sacraments.

Tragically, it was their **interest in evangelism** that caused many evangelicals to adopt a new method of evangelism (known as ecumenical crusades) which was contrary to God’s Word.

Billy Graham’s ecumenical evangelistic crusades seemed so successful.

Who would ever be so unspiritual as to challenge an evangelist or his evangelism?

Billy Graham popularised the principles of New Evangelism.

In his early days, Billy Graham was a student at Bob Jones University and a great admirer of its founder. For a while, Graham preached in crusades sponsored by fundamental churches, and appeared to be a Fundamentalist.

But something happened to change Graham from being a Fundamentalist to become the leader of New Evangelicalism. Some of Graham's actions began to alarm fundamentalist leaders. These included:

- 1) He publicly endorsed the **Revised Standard Version** of the Bible in his Pittsburgh Crusade before it had been released for examination. The RSV had been produced by unbelieving scholars under the control of the apostate National Council of Churches.
- 2) In Graham's **Japanese Crusade**, he appeared on the same platform as unbelieving liberals of the "Kyodan" (like the apostate National Council of Churches). This caused great confusion because many missionaries had publicly opposed the apostate Kyodan, yet Graham endorsed it.
- 3) In his **British Crusades**, converts were advised to return to the Church of England with its so many Romish practices such as infant sprinkling, etc.
- 4) In his **Scottish Crusade**, he rejected the title "Fundamentalist", believing it to show narrowness and bigotry.
- 5) In a letter to Tom Malone, defending his policy of co-operating with liberal unbelievers, he claimed that the doctrinal differences were not that serious.
"They differ from us on the inspiration of the Bible and on theories of the atonement." (*Sword of Lord*, 17 May 1957, p 11). These surely are very key issues!
- 6) John R Rice wrote to Graham asking him, as a member of the Co-operating Board of "*Sword of the Lord*" magazine, if he could in good conscience continue to sign its doctrinal statement. It read:
"An Independent Christian Weekly, standing for the Verbal Inspiration of the Bible, the Deity of Christ, His Blood Atonement, Salvation by faith, New Testament soul-winning, and the Pre-Millennial Return of Christ. Opposes Modernism, Worldliness, and Formalism."
Graham in replying, stated that he did not believe he could any longer agree to this doctrinal statement and submitted his resignation from the Board.
- 7) In 1951 some Fundamentalist pastors in New York City invited Graham to preach at their Crusade. He replied that he would not come **unless every Protestant church in the area was invited** and had representatives on the various campaign committees. The Fundamentalist pastors insisted that each church sign a fundamentalist doctrinal statement, to which Graham approved. However, some of the Executive Committee rejected this doctrinal statement and hence resigned. Graham then wrote a letter to the Committee insisting that "the Committee unanimously endorse the program of an ecumenical spirit to be exhibited throughout the campaign" and should "present an ecumenical spirit of love toward those of all stripes."
(Source: *Billy Graham's letter to Executive Committee, New York Crusade*, 1951).
Graham shortly thereafter rejected their invitation.
- 8) In 1957, Graham accepted a crusade invitation to **New York City** by the Protestant Council of Churches. Blatant left-wing unbelieving liberals were present, such as Henry Van Dusen, President of Union Theological Seminary in New York, whom Graham **praised** as a **great religious leader**.
(Source: *US News and World Report*, 27 Sept. 1957, p.25).
- 9) In 1961, Graham said the following about infant sprinkling:
"I still have some personal problems in this matter of infant baptism, but, **all of my children**, with the exception of the youngest, **were baptized as infants...**I do believe that something happens at the baptism of an infant. We cannot fully understand the mysteries of God, but I believe a miracle can happen in these children so that they are **regenerated**, that is, **made Christian, through infant baptism.**" (W.Bockelman, "A Lutheran Looks at Billy Graham", *Lutheran Standard*, 10 Oct 1961).
- 10) Graham endorsed **Gerald Kennedy** as chairman of his 1963 **Los Angeles Crusade**. Kennedy in "*God's Good News*", p.125, wrote: "I believe the testimony of the New Testament, taken as a whole, is **against** the doctrine of the **deity of Jesus** although I think it bears overwhelming witness to the divinity of Jesus." John 8:24 declares Kennedy to be unsaved. How can an unbeliever be qualified to lead an evangelistic crusade? What does this say about Billy Graham's judgment and theology?
- 11) In Graham's **Uruguay Crusade** of 1963, he endorsed the crusade's vice president as the pastor of the First Methodist Church of Montevideo, who openly held **evolutionary** views and believed that the god of the Buddhists was the same as the Biblical God. (*Baptist Bible Tribune*, 8 March 1963).

- 12) In 1967, Graham received the **degree of Doctorate of Humane Letters** from the **Roman Catholic Belmont Abbey College** in North Carolina, a school which teaches prayer to Mary and popery. Graham said that he “knew of no greater honour than to be presented with this degree.” He also said that “the gospel that built this school and the gospel that brings me here tonight is still the way to salvation.” (The Gastonian Gazette, 22 Nov., 1967). How confusing! Everyone knows that Roman Catholicism preaches a different gospel to Protestants, except Billy Graham! God curses Rome’s false gospel. (Galatians 1:6-9).
- 13) In September 8-13, 1969, Graham sponsored at his headquarters in Minneapolis, Minnesota, the US Congress on Evangelism, where 92 denominations were represented. **Two Roman Catholics appeared on the program**. Also, Ralph Abernathy, president of the Southern Christian Leadership Conference said:
 “We are all sons and daughters of the most high Lord - we are all brothers. Take the Gospel of Jesus Christ into the alleys and byways. Tell all of God’s children, “you are somebody; you are all worth something; you are God’s children”.”
 (Source: Merle Hull, “*US Congress on Evangelism*,” *Baptist Bulletin*, Nov. 1969, p.11).
 What a heretic! He obviously doesn’t believe John 1:12 or Galatians 3:26: “Ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.”
 If everyone is already a child of God, why have a Congress on Evangelism?
 Did Graham rebuke Abernathy? Not likely.
- 14) **Catholic Support:** Regarding the Crusade in Manila, Philippines in 1977, Graham commented: “We have received marvellous support from the Catholic Church.” (*Christianity Today*, 31 Dec. 1977, p.37). No wonder Rome supported Graham when he sent his converts back to fill Catholic church pews, and because he gave Roman Catholicism much-needed respectability in Protestant eyes. Billy Graham hence split Protestant opposition to Roman Catholicism. Just what Satan wants.
- 15) **Praises religious freedom in Communist Hungary.** In the 1977 Budapest Crusade, he praised the religious freedom he found. He said nothing in defence of those Christians in Communist jails for their faith.
- 16) **Gave credibility to Charismatics.** Graham has given credibility to the Charismatic movement. He said: “By and large, it has been a positive force in the lives of many people”.
 (Source: *Christianity Today*, 17 July 1991, p.23). But is it Biblical? No!
- 17) **Not speaking up for Russian imprisoned Christians.** In 1982, while he was preaching in the Moscow Baptist Church, a young lady unfurled a banner which read: “We have more than 150 prisoners for the work of the Gospel.” Graham ignored it and later said that in the US, people are imprisoned for creating disturbances. What a discouragement Graham was to the thousands of courageous Christians in Soviet concentration camps because of their loyalty to Jesus Christ and the Gospel. What a blow to them to hear that the world’s leading evangelist declared that there was religious freedom in Russia. Why did Graham say nothing to defend them? God tells us: “Remember them that are in bonds, as bound with them.....” (Hebrews 13:3). Graham forgot them. *Time Magazine* said, “Yet, throughout the week, Graham seemed oblivious to the precarious role of religion in a country that endorses atheism and outlaws public evangelism. The (registered) Baptists who heard Graham’s Gospel can hold worship services, but they cannot preach the Word of God in public or bring up their children with religious instruction.”
 (Source: *Time*, M.S.Evans, “*The Brainwashing of Billy Graham*,” 5 June 1982, p.7).
 The unregistered Baptist leaders were sent to concentration camps, while their churches had to meet in secret. Graham should have shown more courage. For the sake of open doors, he compromised again. M.S.Evans of *Time* was correct when he said, “Graham’s trip was a mindless, stunning propaganda triumph for the Soviets.”
 The early Apostles who were imprisoned said, “We ought to obey God rather than men.” (Acts 5:29). Did Graham denounce the apostate practices of the Russian Orthodox Church? No. He did not rebuke them as Jeremiah would have. Jesus rebuked the “scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites” (Mat 23:13-14). Graham instead made positive smooth statements that would soothe but not convict.

7. EFFECTS OF BILLY GRAHAM'S COMPROMISING WITH ERROR

Billy Graham's toleration of false doctrines and unwillingness to offend are now accepted by many evangelicals. He said, "in the proclamation of the Gospel there is flexibility of fellowship."

(Source: Open letter from Billy Graham, "Separation of Fellowship").

Never does Graham rebuke the apostasy of the World Council of Churches (WCC) or the NCC. The Bible commands faithful preachers of God to openly combat teachers of error: "Them that sin **rebuke before all**, that others also may fearwithout preferring one before another." (I Timothy 5:20,21).

"reprove, **rebuke**, exhort with all long-suffering and doctrine." (II Timothy 4:2).

"**rebuke** them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith." (Titus 1:13).

"**rebuke** with all authority." (Titus 2:15).

(I Timothy 1:20).

Paul was bold enough to identify by name Hymenaeus and Alexander who made shipwreck of the faith **John**, the Apostle of love, wrote against Diotrophes, the proud dictator & condemned his action. ³John 9. When God commissioned **Jeremiah**, He told him to "**root out**, and to **pull down**, and to **destroy**, and to **throw down**, to build, and to plant." (Jeremiah 1:10).

Here are four negatives and two positives to be accomplished before we can have revival.

KEY: Error must be demolished. Thorn-infested ground must be cleared before we can progress in building truth and having revival. **Destruction of wrong** must precede **building the right**.

Due to the efforts of Billy Graham, many feel that apostasy and false doctrines are not the enemies our forefathers saw them to be. Today, Billy tells us that liberals are not so bad. This idea came from Graham's crusades, where unbelievers and fundamentalists mixed readily.

Doubtless, Graham has done much to build the ecumenical church and to give it prestige. The gap between unbelieving liberals and Fundamentalism is unbridgable. On one side is the true church, the Bride of Christ, and on the other is the Harlot Church of Revelation chapter 17. These cannot be joined. Graham tells impressionable young church leaders to put away your doctrinal differences as not

important. But God says that **doctrine is important as seen in these 20 passages:** (Acts 2:42.

"They continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, in breaking of bread, in prayers."

"Ye have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine." (Acts 5:28).

"Ye have **obeyed** from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you." (Romans 6:17).

"Now I beseech you, brethren, mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned, and avoid them. For they that are such serve not our Lord Jesus Christ.....and by good words and fair speeches deceive the hearts of the simple." (Romans 16:17,18).

"that thou mightest charge some that they teach no other doctrine." (I Timothy 1:3).

"if there be any other thing that is contrary to **sound doctrine**." (I Timothy 1:10).

"a good minister of Jesus Christ, nourished up in the words of faith and of good doctrine." (I Tim 4:6).

"give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine." (I Timothy 4:13).

"Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself (from error), and them that hear thee." (I Timothy 4:16).

"Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour, especially they who labour in the Word and doctrine." (I Timothy 5:17).

"If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness, from such **withdraw** thyself." (I Tim.6:3-5)

"But thou hast fully known my doctrine." (II Timothy 3:10).

"All Scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine." (II Timothy 3:16).

"Reprove, rebuke, exhort with all long-suffering and doctrine."

For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine;" (II Timothy 4:2,3).

"Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers." (Titus 1:9).

"But speak thou the things which become sound doctrine;" (Titus 2:1).

"In doctrine showing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity." (Titus 2:7).

"That they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things." (Titus 2:10).

"Be not carried about with diverse and strange doctrines;" (Hebrews 13:9).

II. ERRORS OF NEW EVANGELICALISM TO AVOID

How do you recognize a New Evangelical church?

How do you tell if a church is slipping into the errors of New Evangelicalism?

If you see the following errors in a church, you can be sure that you are dealing with a church which has succumbed to New Evangelical errors. In most cases they are not aware that these errors spring from New Evangelicalism. In each case they have accepted these false doctrines without asking the question, "Is it Biblical?" Consider these errors:

1. Disbelief in the Inerrancy of Scripture

New Evangelicals say that "yes the Bible is inspired, but it is not inerrant." What they mean by this is that they consider the Bible to be inspired and/or infallible, but they think it contains errors in "non-crucial" areas such as geography, history and numerology, but that it is still reliable (infallible) when it comes to major doctrines.

What caused them to retreat from "inerrancy"?

- a) It was their belief that **evolution** is true and hence they felt that the Genesis Creation in six days seemed unscientific.
- b) The introduction of the **erroneous Westcott and Hort new Greek text** of the New Testament. This sought to put away the Received Text of the New Testament on which the KJV is based (representing over 98% of the New Testament manuscripts). They replaced it with a Greek text based on the corrupt Vaticanus and Sinaiticus manuscripts (on which most modern Bible versions are based).

Many New Evangelicals are Charismatics who do not need an inerrant Bible because they claim to have inerrant gifts of prophecy as God communicates to them outside of the Bible. They do not see the Bible as God's Final Revelation for this age. Charismatics thus betray an ignorance of I Corinthians 13:8-13; 14:21-23 and of historic, orthodox Christianity. When the age of the apostles ceased, so did prophecy, tongues, knowledge and other sign gifts cease. (See page 482-500).

2. Modern Bible Versions

New Evangelicals do not have an inerrant Bible when they use and promote modern Bible versions which omit thousands of words. A church which uses modern versions, reveals an unawareness of these omissions. Churches that use modern versions reveal a knowing or unknowing preference for a corrupt minority text which changes with every new edition. Modern versions attack the doctrines of inerrancy and preservation of Scripture. The NIV's Greek NT omits 2886 Greek words. This is a serious problem.

3. Toleration of Error

Evangelicals want to be accepted by everybody. Sin is rarely rebuked. Rare is a call for repentance. The attitude is, "Let's not offend anyone by rebuking their false doctrines." God says, "Speaking the truth in love." (Ephesians 4:15). New Evangelicals are afraid to speak the truth to those holding error. They just want to be nice and say nothing that might offend. The tolerant, nice, cowardly, inoffensive approach avoids mentioning the Gospel's potentially convicting aspects such as:

- a) an ingrained, inherited sinful nature;
- b) sinful conduct such as fornication, adultery, sodomy, lying, etc.
- c) unbelievers being "punished with everlasting destruction" in hell. (II Thessalonians 1:8,9);
- d) declaring all non-Biblical religions as false;
- e) charging heretics with heresy. (The word "heresy" has vanished from inter-religious dialogue);
- f) publicly rebuking the errors of Roman Catholicism.

Notice how the Bible speaks the truth:

- a) **Jesus** wasn't nice to the Pharisees when he said, "Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites." (Matthew 23:14). The NIV omits this verse.
- b) **Stephen** rebuked the entire Sanhedrin: "Ye stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost." (Acts 7:51).
- c) **Paul** rebuked Peter: "I withstood him (Peter) to the face, because he was to be blamed." (Gal 2:11). Paul rebuked those preaching a false gospel, saying "let him be accursed." (Galatians 1:9).

d) **Peter** rebuked Simon's heresy: "Thy money perish with thee." (Acts 8:20).

Early Christians did not seek to make everyone happy and comfortable as do modern New Evangelicals. They spoke the truth in love, but clearly and forcefully.

Their attitude was: "If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ." (Galatians 1:10).

4. Non-confronting Accommodation.

This is seeking to adapt the Word of God to **conform to modern ideas.**

Question: Why has this happened?

Answer: Many modern New Evangelicals have become embarrassed to be seen holding ideas that are rejected by the unbelieving world, eg: Six-day creation; KJV; not-so-modern hymns; inerrant Bible, etc. They dislike being sneered at by unbelievers. Early New Evangelicals disliked being isolated in society. They wanted their articles and books to be recognized and published by respectable companies, and to be regarded as authentic scholars. They wanted to make the "faith of our fathers" acceptable to the ungodly world. This is **pride of intellect.** God says, "Be not conformed to this world" (Rom 12:2). "Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world." (I John 2:15-17).

"Because ye are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you." (John 15:19).

We all love people to admire us, but this must not be at the expense of God's disapproval.

New Evangelicals do not want to be confronters, but want to build bridges with unbelieving liberals.

This compromise on small matters, leads to compromise on larger matters.

5. Evangelical Feminism

Radical feminism since 1970, has been accepted by a spiritually blind, unsaved world as well as by New Evangelicals. Evangelical feminists believe that most theology has been written out of a male's experience of God. They believe that the Bible does not teach what it has been assumed to teach about the subordinate role of women in the church and society. They claim that Paul is wrong when he demands a submissive role of women to their husbands. They think that orthodox theology was thought up by males and reflects a masculine bias. They believe that ordination of women is desirable.

Question: How is it that none of the great Bible teachers in the last 2000 years have discovered these new "truths" such as female ordination?

Answer: It is because feminism has become popular in the world and hence some New Evangelicals want to bring this worldly teaching into the church.

The rise of Evangelical feminism coincides with the rise of worldly feminism.

I Timothy 2:9-15 and Ephesians 5:21-33 teach that women should submit to their own husbands, and that they ought not to teach men, nor usurp authority over men.

The Bible does not teach that women are inferior to men, but that a woman is a helper suitable for a man (Genesis 2:18), not as the NKJV says, "comparable to man." Christian women must display a "meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price." (I Peter 3:4). Saved women are to be "discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands." (Titus 2:5).

"I will therefore that the younger woman marry, bear children, guide the house,..." (I Timothy 5:14).

6. Less Emphasis on Doctrine

The teaching of sound doctrine is less popular today. New Evangelicals consider doctrine to be:

- 1) too divisive;
- 2) not practical enough, and
- 3) not helping to promote evangelical unity.

New Evangelicals seek to restructure preaching from a **God-centred**, doctrinal approach to a **man-centred** approach. New Evangelicals seek to minimise doctrine by pointing us to emphasise other things, such as:

- 1) **Loving Jesus.** A charismatic pastor once said, "What we need to do is just forget all this doctrine stuff, and just love Jesus." This sounds really spiritual, but once we seek to answer the question "Who is Jesus?", we have entered the realm of doctrine.
- 2) **Cultivating the Inner Life.** One cannot have spiritual growth without "growing in grace, and in the knowledge (doctrine) of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." (II Peter 3:18). "Knowledge" involves an increasing grasp of doctrinal truth.

- 3) **Loving Others.** To them this means a toleration of error and accepting of all who call themselves evangelicals. This weak attitude allowed charismatic teachings to spread through many churches unopposed. Many Christian leaders, such as Charles Swindoll, will say things like, “I am not a charismatic personally, but the charismatic movement has done a lot of good and we ought not to condemn it. We should love the brethren.” So, in the name of “love”, all manner of false teaching is condoned. The NIV teaches this toleration of error by its mistranslation of Romans 14:1, reversing the KJV’s “not to doubtful disputations” to, “Accept him whose faith is weak, **without passing judgment** on disputable matters.” Luther wisely rebukes this error in *This We Believe*, p.76: “Doctrine is not ours but God’s....Therefore we may not yield or change even one tittle of it. Accursed be the love which is preserved to the detriment of doctrine.....If doctrine becomes wobbly in one part, it must necessarily become wobbly altogether. When that happens, love cannot help us.”

Charismatics say, “‘Spirit baptism’ unites, and other doctrinal differences can be overlooked.”

Paul never downplayed doctrine while pretending to practise love. He commanded sound doctrine to be taught. See 20 scriptures showing the importance of doctrine.

“Give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.” (I Timothy 4:13).

7. Contemporary Christian Music, so loved by New Evangelicals today, is witness to the theological deterioration in the church. Shallow theology leads to people accepting shallow Christian music. God-centred doctrinal songs have been replaced by man-centred, experiential songs. Loud worldly rock music has been brought into churches, with a “Christian” label and a few Christian words thrown in.

New Evangelicals claim that “you can’t reach the young people unless you employ their trendy music styles.” Pastors and church leaders felt they had to compete with worldly rock music to attract teens.

What happened to the power of the Gospel of Christ to convert sinners (Romans 1:16)?

They made God a commodity for self-gratification.

CCM fits with the self-centred culture of today where people focus on “meeting their needs.” Christian music must be firmly anchored in theology taught in the Bible. “I will sing with the understanding also.” (I Corinthians 14:15). Much CCM is upbeat, shallow and suitable for dancing, but not suitable for serious God-centred thought.

8. Psychology replacing Solid Bible Teaching.

Many New Evangelicals do not desire doctrinal instruction from the Word of God, but rather discussions on “how to” meet life’s problems. They aim for psychological wholeness more than doctrinal correctness. One well-known New Evangelical Baptist Union pastor, in a message, declared that he had hypnotised a criminal to discover childhood problems that caused his unlawful adult behaviour. Did Paul hypnotise his converts? God’s answer to the troubled soul is “Thou wilt keep him in **perfect peace**, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he **trusteth in thee**.” (Isaiah 26:3).

“**Great peace** have they which **love thy law**; and nothing shall offend them.” (Psalm 119:165).

Solid Bible preaching is becoming less popular, and is being replaced by pulpit psychology.

9. Theological Colleges that Poison Students’ Minds.

New Evangelicalism was thought up by professors of some evangelical theological colleges. They twisted the thinking of many impressionable youngsters. Many Bible Colleges that were built by old-time fundamentalists fell prey to New Evangelicalism. How did this happen?

- 1) Many purportedly Christian colleges and seminaries are far more interested in employing lecturers with prestigious **academic credentials**, than in employing soul-winning lecturers with sound doctrinal commitment.
- 2) Those doctrinally unsound lecturers **teach their errors to their students** who often end up being more doctrinally unsound than their lecturers.
- 3) The students take up their lecturers’ anti-Christian world views and **teach them to their church members**. This often results in church splits or in multiplying apostate churches.

Paul in 2 Timothy 2:2 was very concerned that sound doctrine be passed from generation to generation. Timothy, in turn, had to ensure that sound doctrines were preserved intact & passed on by his disciples.

Along with deterioration in doctrinal convictions came a deterioration in standards of conduct in the colleges. Many Bible Colleges provide a “smorgasbord” education where the lecturer gives the students all viewpoints and the students are free to choose whatever view they like. Colleges adopt this view for **monetary reasons** because they wish to draw students (and hence their fees) from as many churches of varying doctrines as possible in order to keep the College doors open. For example, they will teach various views of baptism, prophecy, spiritual gifts, human origins, etc, without saying which view is right or wrong, for fear of losing some students or supporting churches.

Often, high standards of conduct have been criticised as “legalism”, so some colleges scrap all the rules in order to cultivate “maturity” in the students. In reality, scrapping rules cultivates immaturity, lack of discipline, and a rebellious attitude toward authority.

10. Acceptance of Evolution or Theistic Evolution

Many New Evangelicals reject the literal six-day Creation 6000 years ago. They try to reconcile Biblical truth with evolutionary ideas. A student at a New Evangelical Baptist Union College asked me what were the differences between his Baptist Union and my Independent Baptist position. My 1st reply was that we believed in a literal 6-day creation 6000 years ago. His stunned response was, “Really?” Evolutionists seek to explain the universe without the agency of God. New Evangelicals were embarrassed that Creation was looked down upon by some scientists, so they sought ways to harmonise the views of unbelieving scientists with the Bible. Many New Evangelicals say that the first eleven chapters of Genesis teach theological truth, but not scientific truth. But surely one category of truth will never contradict another category of truth.

We reject evolution as “science falsely so called” (I Timothy 6:20), because it is based on unprovable assumptions. No man can observe the origin of life in the past. True science deals with what can be observed. Evolutionary scientists are willingly ignorant of, and have deliberately rejected Creation by God and Noah’s worldwide flood. (II Peter 3:15).

11. The Social Gospel

This means changing the Gospel from “salvation from sin and hell” to “salvation from social ills.”

They misinterpret the leaven parable (Matthew 13:33) to claim that the church should be “leaven for society”, whereas leaven is always a symbol of evil. (Matthew 16:6,12). The Gospel is defined in I Corinthians 15:1-4 and this does not include any social action. Due to the churches’ evangelistic efforts, many social ills are lessened. Neither Christ nor the Apostles endeavoured to rid unconverted society of its ills. James 2:15-17, Romans 15:26 and Acts 11:27-30 each show a Biblical precedent for believers to help other believers who are “naked” or “destitute of daily food” or in life-threatening situations, but not for the world in general. Our main thrust must be to win souls, baptise and teach God’s Word to all nations. Fundamentalists who major on soul-winning have done more to relieve human suffering as a secondary emphasis, than have many liberals done by a primary social gospel emphasis. Fundamentalists, by soul winning, have started more malaria clinics, Christian schools, deaf ministries, prison ministries, and rescue missions, than have New Evangelicals by a primary social gospel emphasis. Many Fundamentalists have greatly helped sinners by leading them to eternal life in Christ. They then become better citizens after salvation, who then are well-equipped to help others.

12. Refusal to Preach Against Roman Catholic Errors.

The Roman Catholic church teaches the false doctrines of salvation by infant sprinkling, good works needed to enter heaven, repetition of Christ’s sacrifice in every mass, the impossibility of knowing that one is going to heaven, the need to venerate Mary, confirmation, and many other heresies. In spite of this, many New Evangelicals follow Billy Graham’s lead in not rebuking Catholic errors. For example: **Example 1:** The Baptist Union Theological College in Sydney, along with the Executive Committee of the Baptist Union of NSW, without the knowledge of the majority of NSW Baptists, incorporated “The Sydney College of Divinity” on 15 September 1983. This comprised six (6) member institutions as follows:

Member Institutions	Denomination
Baptist Theological College	Baptist
Catholic Institute of Sydney	Roman Catholic
Churches of Christ Theological College	Churches of Christ
St Paul's National Seminary	Roman Catholic
Union Theological Institute	Roman Catholic
United Theological College	Uniting Church

The Chairman of the Sydney College of Divinity's Council was a Catholic priest (J. P. Hill).

The *Articles of Association* state that one of the powers and duties of the SCD's Academic Board is "facilitating the **exchange of lecturers** between institutions, and the **undertaking of courses** by students in Member Institutions **other than** the institution in which the students are enrolled." (*Section 44, Subsection (X), p 12*). The SCD had its first graduation of students on 7 June 1985 at 8 pm in Pitt Street Uniting Church, Sydney. That evening, 30 RCs, one Church of Christ, and 10 Uniting Church students received their degrees.

(**Source:** "Triumph or Tragedy?" J O Hogg, Stanmore Baptist Church, NSW, September 1985).

Question: How could any Baptist lecturer preach against Roman Catholic errors when he has already agreed to work with Roman Catholic priests in the SCD?

Example 2: When Billy Graham preached in Roman Catholic churches in Poland, he was warmly welcomed by their leaders.

Example 3: Cuthbert Allen, the Executive Vice President of Belmont Abbey College, Belmont, North Carolina, USA (the Roman Catholic school that bestowed an honorary doctorate on Billy Graham), said of the evangelist:

"I would state that he could bring Catholics and Protestants together in a healthy ecumenical spirit. Billy Graham is preaching a moral and evangelical theology most acceptable to Catholics." (Letter to Julius Taylor).

Billy Graham continues to populate Catholic churches with his converts, rather than calling them away from idols and false doctrines, and into true New Testament churches.

A confused Catholic (in the 1960s) wrote to Billy Graham, expressing his concern about errors in the Catholic church. Graham responded in the *Chattanooga Free Press*: "Above all don't pull out of the church! Stay in, stay close to the Lord, and use these experiences as an opportunity to help your church be what God intends and what the world needs." (M Watt, "Mission England: Is it Scriptural", *Bible League Quarterly*, Jan-March 1984, p 36).

Question: How can Billy Graham, as a Gospel evangelist, Biblically justify telling a believer in Christ to remain in an apostate church which denies the very truths that he is trying to preach? If one who is seeking to lead people into the light cannot distinguish light from darkness, how confused will be his leadership! How terrible an example he is to suggest that all the Protestant world should follow his lead! "Woe to them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness." (Isaiah 5:20).

Example 4: Notice what Japheth Peres testified after his conversion at age 14 at Billy Graham's New York Crusade. Having told the counsellor that he was a Catholic, Billy instructed the converts to go back to the church from which they had come:

"Since Billy Graham sent me to the Catholic Church, I was under the impression that it was the right church..... What did I gain from the Billy Graham Crusade? I gained about a year and a half of darkness and ignorance of the Bible, because Billy Graham sent me to the Catholic Church." (*Baptist Examiner*, 16 May 1964, p.1).

13. Ecumenical Co-operation and the World Council of Churches.

New Evangelicals aimed to infiltrate the apostate denominations with bright young Bible-believers who would "turn things around." Billy Graham helped to popularise the "infiltration" approach, and many young evangelicals followed him with their own ecumenical evangelistic crusades by working with a variety of unbelievers. Young New Evangelicals promoted co-operation with the apostate World Council of Churches (WCC). Evangelicals should not assist or be in the WCC. The WCC is a wicked,

pro-Communist, anti-God organisation which true Christians should avoid and expose, because of the following errors:

- 1) The WCC **donates money** given by its member churches to guerrilla organisations and Peoples Liberation armies controlled by **Communists** to buy guns to murder people in its fight against racism. “*Ecumenical Press Service*”, 9 September 1971, lists WCC grants to these Communist revolutionary organisations:

People’s Movement for the Liberation of Angola	\$ 25,000
The Revolutionary Government of Angola in Exile	\$ 7,500
South West African People’s Organisation	\$25,000
Zimbabwe Liberation Movement, Rhodesia	\$10,000
Mozambique Institute of Frelimo	\$20,000
Malcolm X Liberation University	\$ 7,500
Bolivian Project in Aid of Indian Liberation	\$12,500

- 2) “The WCC **does nothing to assist black Christians of Southern Sudan**, for years slaughtered by the troops of the Muslim Government at Khartoum.

In 1967, Baptists in Soviet Russia appealed to the WCC for aid, sending proof that more than 200 Baptists were in Soviet prison camps due to deliberate persecution. The WCC has done nothing to intervene in favour of these Christians.” (*Christian Beacon*, 15 July 1971, p.8).

- 3) **Invitation to Rome:** At Uppsala in 1968 the WCC issued an open invitation to the Roman Catholic Church to join it. (*Courier Mail*, 20 July 1968).

- 4) **Denial of Bible Doctrine and Authority:** The WCC Control Committee, meeting in Addis Ababa (Ethiopia) in January 1971 stated:

“Because Christians cannot claim to have monopoly of truth, we need to meet men of other faiths . . .” (S J Samartha, *Christian Beacon*, 28 January 1971, p.8).

This contradicts Christ’s exclusive claim, “I am the way, the truth and the life, no man cometh unto the Father but by me.” (John 14:6).

Also, Henry Van Dusan, a top WCC leader, officially sponsored the building of a Temple of Understanding in Washington DC, representing the “six rays of hope” - Islam, Judaism, Hinduism, Confucianism, Buddhism and Christianity. (*Christian Beacon*, 25 July 1968, p.1).

- 5) **Humanist and Social Gospel**

- 6) **The Revised Standard Version** was produced under the auspices of the National Council of Churches (NCC) in the USA. The RSV changed many texts on the deity and virgin birth of Christ. The RSV opened the door to a flood of other Bible perversions. *The US Congressional Record* (March 3, 1960, p. 3981) stated that of the 95 people who translated the RSV, 25 had records of support for Communist causes. In the RSV preface they say of the Bible: “It is **a** record of God’s dealing with men.” They should have said: “It is **the** record.....” This change takes away from the Bible being the unique Word of God.

- 7) **Redefining Missions.** WCC mission policy is summarised by G.A.Taylor in the *Presbyterian Journal* (10 February 1960):

“The radical theologian does not believe that anyone is actually “outside.” All are inside.....The churches’ task is no longer to go outside” and bring lost sheep in.” (**Source:** *The Coming World Church*, p. 38, Back to the Bible Broadcast).

Because of this attitude, traditional missionary activity has suffered a sharp decline in WCC associated bodies as a whole.

- 8) **Sexual Permissiveness.** Dr William Cole prepared a pamphlet for the WCC, entitled, “*Called to Responsible Freedom: The Meaning of Sex in the Christian Life*” for singles, where he writes: “You have got to make up your own mind what your standards of conduct are going to be. There just aren’t any rules; you do whatever strikes your fancy.”

Here the WCC blatantly opposes God’s Biblical standards of morality, by endorsing fornication. God has given us His rules, yet Cole says there are none. God’s rule is no sex outside marriage.

Conclusion: Get out of your church if it is a part of the WCC.

14. Co-operation with Charismatics

New Evangelicals accepted fellowship with Pentecostals. Later, the Charismatic movement became assimilated into the New Evangelical movement. The Charismatic movement changed evangelicalism to become more experiential, so that experience became more important than doctrine.

New Evangelical churches, while not always charismatic themselves, work with Charismatics and refuse to speak against them. The compromising Charles Swindoll summarizes this attitude in defending his concept of grace: "I'm not a charismatic. However, I don't feel it is my calling to shoot great volleys of theological artillery at my charismatic brothers and sisters. Who knows how much good they have done? The church I pastor is not a charismatic church.....but that does not mean that we break fellowship with individuals who are more of that persuasion, or that we take pot-shots at them." (*The Grace Awakening*, C Swindoll, p 188). His trumpet gives an uncertain sound.

Question: Are Charismatic teachings Biblical?

Answer: If yes, then we should all adopt them. If no, then we must oppose them. The issue is not whether the charismatic Christians are nice people, but whether the Bible teaches that the gift of tongues and other charismatic sign gifts are still operative for the church today? If they are not for today, then faithful Bible teachers must speak up against false charismatic doctrines being spread abroad and infecting many people.

Paul constantly refuted false doctrines, as he told Timothy to "In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves." (II Timothy 2:25). Because Charismatics are wrong on sign gifts, then those who better understand Scripture should tell them they are wrong, show them why, and seek to win them to a more Biblical position. It is not a mark of Christian love and grace to quietly ignore errors that are spreading.

15. Tolerating Various Views on Christ's Return and Being Committed to None.

New Evangelicals tolerate various false views on eschatology (Christ's return), such as Postmillennialism and Amillennialism. Up until the 1950s, most fundamentalists, taking a literal view of prophecy were Premillennialists. This is clearly the correct view by taking Revelation 19,20,21 at literal chronological face value.

One New Evangelical theology professor, when asked what scheme of theology he taught, said, "I teach them all and, when I get to the end of the course, the students don't know what I believe." He felt that this was very clever, yet Jesus, on the other hand, "Taught them as one having authority, and not as the scribes." (Matthew 7:29).

Christ spoke plainly and with authority; not as the scribes who quoted what many scholars were thinking. The scribes avoided dogmatism on disputed or controversial points, while Christ fearlessly spoke the truth.

16. Departing from Dispensationalism as being too negative a view of human failure at the end of each age.

New Evangelicals disliked Dispensationalism, because it offered too pessimistic a view of world and church history. Dispensationalism taught that there would be a growing apostasy in the churches, for which there was no remedy but separation.

"When the Son of Man cometh, shall He find faith on the earth?" (Luke 18:8).

New Evangelicals were not separatist, and hence resisted these dispensational conclusions.

New Evangelicals opposed the view of the church as a refuge in a ruined culture.

17. Scholarship

New Evangelicals desired to be accepted by the unsaved scholarly world. Budding New Evangelical scholars disliked the scholarly world of unbelievers and modernists, rejecting their own works. You would surely expect unconverted teachers of error to reject fundamentalist scholars who are loyal to the inerrancy of Scripture and are intellectually submitted to the authority of God's Word. The Word of God, through Jeremiah, was certainly a scholarly work, having been produced by the Holy Spirit, yet it was rejected and cut to ribbons by the king's knife. (Jeremiah 36:23-24).

Bible truth is always foolishness to the unbeliever, especially to the educated unbeliever: "For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness . . ." (I Corinthians 1:18). "The world by wisdom knew not God, it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe." v.21.

Paul did not attempt to proclaim God's Word in the enticing words of man's wisdom, but in the power of the Holy Spirit. (I Corinthians 2:4).

New Evangelicals view Fundamentalists as anti-intellectual, because Fundamentalists were rightly suspicious of colleges who were opposed to Bible truth. The intellectual world is mostly under Satan's control. Fundamentalists see the intellectual ungodly world as: "Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart." (Ephesians 4:18).

Many of those who seek intellectual respectability and acceptance have become the church's worst enemies. If an ungodly intellectual does not accept the proof of the Bible as divinely inspired on the basis of its fulfilled prophecies, they are intellectually dishonest and God's people should not bother trying to please them.

We must submit our minds to God and His Word, "bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ." (II Corinthians 10:5). God has given us minds to be used for His glory, so we must "gird up the loins of your mind." (I Peter 1:13).

We must study God's Word to show ourselves approved unto God (II Timothy 2:15), not study the works of heretics and unbelievers in order to please them.

18. Meaningful Conversation with Liberal Theologians

The New Evangelical problem here is that they do not recognize theological liberals as lost souls, groping in spiritual darkness. "wells without water, clouds that are carried with a tempest: to whom the mist of darkness is reserved forever." (II Peter 2:17).

Many New Evangelicals view unbelieving false teachers (liberals) as misguided but well-meaning Christians who need our love and fellowship. These liberals are blatantly rebelling against God and the authority of His Word.

God tells us: "from such turn away." (II Timothy 3:5).

"A man that is an heretic, after the first and second admonition, reject." (Titus 3:10).

New Evangelicals are not heeding these warnings.

New Evangelicals say, "Let us compromise doctrinal matters for the sake of evangelism."

God says "No". "From such turn away." (II Timothy 3:5).

19. Dislike for Publicly Criticising the Theology of Other Evangelicals

Church marketing supporters say that, to build successful growing churches, we must not criticise the views of fellow believers.

For example, it is unpopular to criticize Charismatic theology.

New Evangelicals have erected a large umbrella where a great range of churches of various convictions can feel comfortable in their error. The church growth movement advises their followers to downplay "denominational distinctives" which appear divisive, such as the method of **baptism, charismatic** teachings, views of **eschatology, eternal security, Bible versions, and church organisation.**

20. Antagonism Towards Fundamentalists

One Fundamentalist preacher observed that New Evangelicals are always preaching love toward liberals, unbelievers and heretics with their many false doctrines, but that they hate the Fundamentalists with a passion. Why? Because Fundamentalists tell them where they depart from Scripture.

Most Christians are totally unaware of the profoundly disturbing and deteriorating changes that have occurred in evangelicalism over the last 50 years.

Fundamentalists are accused of being such things as "Legalists" - because we have high standards of Biblical behaviour. A legalist is one who adds works to faith for salvation, something no true Fundamentalist would ever do. They accuse Fundamentalists of burdening God's people with ridiculous and impossible rules which stunt their spiritual growth. Rules are to protect God's people from the devil's traps, not to restrict our fun. Paul says "Warn them that are unruly." I Thess. 5:14. Many people are attracted to New Evangelical churches because they carry chips on their shoulders against the Fundamentalist churches in which they were raised.

21. Ecumenical Evangelism

The effect of Billy Graham's ecumenical evangelistic crusades was to develop a pragmatic attitude which said, "Whatever tactics result in the salvation of souls, are acceptable." Whenever someone challenged this ecumenical philosophy, its defenders often replied, "But people are being saved! How can you be against soul winning?"

Hence was encouraged the unbiblical practice of uniting liberals and Bible believers in the cause of evangelism. Many have blindly followed this practice.

Billy Graham's practice of ecumenical evangelism can be likened to a fruitgrower hiring someone to go and pick the fruit in his orchard. The fruitpicker bulldozes down every tree in the orchard, then picks the fruit off the branches, and proudly hands the fruit to the orchard owner. Sure he picked the fruit, but he ruined the harvest for years to come. Billy Graham picked the fruit of souls, but by uniting liberals, evangelicals and Roman Catholics he broke down the walls separating truth from error, so that few know or will speak up against error for years to come.

This same principle governs those who would tell us how to build churches. They recommend loud rock music in God's sanctuaries, because "It fills our churches and reaches people." As yeast puffs up bread, so the leaven of false doctrine often quickly inflates a church in size. Don't mistake this for God-sanctioned growth. It is not striving lawfully.

Billy Graham's policy of sending new converts to liberal churches has been defended by some Baptists who think that it helps to evangelise members of the apostate churches.

Question 1: How can Baptists who profess to believe in regenerate church membership, defend the practice of sending new converts to churches which do not practise regenerate church membership, but whose membership is based on unsaved babies being sprinkled with water?

Answer: A believer does not join a church in order to evangelise its members. One joins a church to:

- a) worship God with other true believers;
- b) be taught correct Bible doctrines, and
- c) go out and evangelise the lost.

Question 2: If Billy Graham is not a liberal, why do liberals support his crusades?

Answer:

- a) Because Graham does not rebuke and expose their errors as the old time evangelists did, but he applauds and honours them as worthy spiritual guides;
- b) Because Graham fills the liberals' churches for them with his new converts.

The British liberal, Leslie Weatherhead, said: "I do not personally agree with some of Billy Graham's theology.....but Billy Graham is helping to fill our churches for us. We can teach people theology when we have got someone to teach."

(Source: *City Temple Tidings*, quoted in *Banner of Truth*, May-June 1966, p.2).

He is saying, "My liberal theology is so empty of power that it can't fill churches, so we have to rely on evangelical theology that does fill churches. Billy Graham can fill my church with new converts, then I'll poison them with my false doctrines."

Shame on you Billy Graham, shame for sending sheep (new converts) to the wolves!

This compromising of Graham's has spread everywhere. His attitude is, "Do anything to get crowds and fill the churches." God says, "Yet is he not crowned, except he strive lawfully." (II Timothy 2:5). We must build churches according to God's rules, lawfully.

Seven Bible Principles that Disprove Ecumenical Evangelism

1) **We must not fellowship with liberals in order to win them to Christ.**

This means don't co-operate with liberals in a religious context to achieve spiritual results. Just being nice to liberals won't save them, only the Gospel will (Romans 1:16). God is more concerned about preserving the holiness and purity of His church, than He is about results. Holiness involves separation from evil and error. Paul commands us to turn away from those who have a form of godliness, but who deny the power (of the Gospel and the Bible). (II Timothy 3:5). The Graham plan denies that we should turn away from error, but seeks to join with them to do God's work. Billy Graham defends himself as follows:

“The stress of the New Testament is upon fellowship rather than separation. The call is not so much to come out, as to come together.” (“*Fellowship and Separation*”, *Decision*, August 1961, p.14).

Answer: New Testament fellowship is always among born again believers, not between believers and unbelievers. Many religious leaders that Graham fellowships with are committed unbelievers. But Graham persists in spreading the myth that they are Christians with different views on some matters.

2) **We must not honour false teachers as true Christian leaders.**

When Graham first launched his ecumenical 1957 New York Crusade, he described the sponsoring committee as “Godly men who are seeking to reach New York’s population with the testimony of the risen Christ.” (**Source:** *Herald of His Coming*, 28 November 1956, p.8).

One Committee member was James Bonnell who did not even believe in the bodily resurrection of Christ. (**Source:** *Supplementary Statement of James Bennett*, 1954).

How can one promote the “testimony of the risen Christ” when one does not even believe in the “risen Christ”? Paul called false teachers who denied the faith “men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith.” (II Timothy 3:8). Paul would never have had them lead his evangelistic campaigns. They are lost souls needing to be saved.

3) **We must not disobey the Scriptures in order to win souls for Christ.**

Many New Evangelicals feel that they can disobey Bible principles to get people saved.

Their attitude is that the end (salvation of souls) justifies the means (co-operation with unbelievers).

Note: The main business of Christians is not to win souls. The main business of Christians is to do the will of God. But we must win souls within the context of Biblical principles.

Example: King Saul lost the kingdom because he justified disobeying God’s command to **destroy the Amalekites’ animals**, so that he could obey God’s other command about the required **animal sacrifices**. (I Samuel 15:2,3).

Saul disobeyed God by substituting a good thing in place of the best thing, namely total obedience to God. Samuel’s rebuke applies to us today: “Hath the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry.” (I Samuel 15:22,23). Billy Graham and his followers have justified their disobeying God’s commands against working with apostates, with the excuse that they are winning souls to Christ. This thinking is against the principle stated by Samuel, that:

“sacrifices were good, only when done according to the will of God.

But sacrifices done contrary to God’s will were not acceptable.”

Key: So it is with evangelism. The Bible commands both evangelism and obedience to God.

We cannot evangelise in a way that disobeys God.

4) **We must not disobey the Scriptures with the excuse that we are showing God’s love.**

Many New Evangelicals have a wrong definition of love.

They say that: “The badge of discipleship is not orthodoxy (sound doctrine), but love.” They claim that Fundamentalists are harsh, separatist, and abrasive, while they themselves are loving. Their wrong definition of love says: “Overlook false doctrines and embrace almost everyone who claims to be a Christian. Don’t criticise or condemn, just go along for the sake of peace.”

Jesus tells us that **love** and **obedience** walk together:

a) “If ye **love** me, **keep my commandments**.” (John 14:15).

b) “He that hath my commandments and **keepeth** them, he it is that **loveth** me.” (John 14:21).

c) “If a man **love me**, he will **keep my words**.” (John 14:23).

God warns us to “have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them.” (Eph. 5:11). Preachers of false doctrines spread works of darkness because they keep people in spiritual darkness. To fellowship with them is to disobey Ephesians 5:11 and is **unloving** to God.

5) **We must not seek to please false teachers in order to preach the Gospel to their people.**

One of Billy Graham’s main defences is that many people from liberal churches hear the Gospel because their pastors and churches co-operate in the crusades.

This “end justifies the means” methodology was not that of the early apostles when Paul, Peter and Stephen preached against the Judaizers.

“If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.” (Galatians 1:10).

Men pleasers, such as Billy Graham, do not rebuke those preaching a false gospel such as salvation by infant sprinkling. Men may approve, but God does not.

Key: Billy Graham’s sending his converts to churches holding false doctrines helps these false churches to grow in error by providing them with labourers to spread their errors. These labourers would be spreading truth if they were sent to sound churches.

6) **We must not Condone False Doctrine as if it were of Little Importance.**

The Roman Catholic Church teaches many heresies contrary to the Word of God, yet Billy Graham condones and encourages Catholic leaders to work with his crusades.

Charismatics teach false doctrines, such as new revelations, false healings, gibberish disguised as tongues, thinking that sign gifts are still operable today. Billy Graham endorses them as reliable Christians. John, the Apostle of love, was not only concerned about showing love to God and man, but also about rejecting error. He said: “Try the spirits whether they be of God.” (I John 4:1). “The spirit of truth, and the spirit of error.” (I John 4:6).

“He that biddeth him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds.” (II John 11).

Billy Graham rejects God’s Word in order to expand his empire. Resist this temptation.

7) **Sound doctrine is more important than fellowship. True fellowship is based on sound doctrine.**

Doctrine has fallen on hard times. Many Christians consider key doctrines as unimportant issues, preferring to seek a false unity with unbelievers.

Question: What was the first thing that the Jerusalem church continued steadfastly in?

“the Apostles’ doctrine, fellowship, in breaking of bread, and in prayers.” (Acts 2:42).

Paul charged Titus to “speak thou the things that become sound doctrine.” (Titus 2:1).

Sound doctrine is doctrine that is not contaminated with error.

Conclusion: Ecumenical evangelism is contrary to God’s program and principles. It is an attempt to unite that which should not be united. “Can two walk together except they be agreed?” (Amos 3:3).

“What fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what fellowship hath light with darkness?” (II Corinthians 6:14).

God has separated light from darkness; truth from error; and no-one, not even in the cause of evangelism, should try to take down those divinely erected barriers.

22. Loose Standards

New Evangelicals advocate a more permissive, freer moral lifestyle than has been commonly accepted among Godly Christians. Traditionally, Godly Christians regarded as wrong such things as smoking, drinking alcohol, dancing, theatre going, gambling, petting and pre-marital sex. Many New Evangelicals, however, reacting against what they consider excessive legalism, have allowed such practices. If we take a stand against these issues, we are called legalists. Paul speaks of the ‘truth which is after godliness.’ (Titus 1:1). Truth leads to Godliness. There is a powerful and vital connection between one’s theology (truth) and one’s lifestyle (Godliness). Compromise in theological areas has led to compromise in lifestyles as well.

23. Marketing the Church to Give the Unsaved Community What They Want

Some churches try to find what the community wants and they then adjust their ministry to the community’s demands. The Apostles never surveyed the pagans in order to see what kind of church to build, as has Bill Hybels of Willow Creek Community Church. They followed God’s pattern, not the pagans’ self-centred demands.

Question: What do spiritually blind, rebellious unbelievers know about the proper nature of a church? Nothing. The kind of church desired by the average unbeliever may be the opposite to what the New Testament requires:

- The unsaved person wants a church that will make him feel good, but God wants a church that will make the person feel the heavy guilt of his sins so that he will repent.
- The unsaved person likes contemporary rock music, but God likes music that exalts Jesus Christ.
- The unsaved person wants a church with few standards or requirements, but God wants a church that calls people to selfless, sacrificial service. God does not invite the unsaved to critique His Church because they are “haters of God,...proud,...and without understanding.” (Romans 1:30-31).

God's will for the local church's message, methods, and organisation is revealed in the New Testament. These revelations are not open to debate or correction by those with no spiritual discernment. Many churches downplay the importance of commitment and obedience, achieving growth by compromising their convictions. "Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help." (Isaiah 31:1). God rebuked Israel for leaning on the arm of the flesh instead of on the arm of the Lord. Many churches today fall into the same trap.

Many pastors preach man-centred sermons and not God-centred sermons, thinking that God-centred sermons are not practical enough. This is a serious error that strikes at the heart of Biblical theology.

Question: Is the Bible a God-centred book or a man-centred book? Was God's main purpose in revealing Himself to man, to bring honour to Himself, or to bring comfort to man? We must challenge people to salvation and to discipleship.

Question: Pastors, are you building a church that is honouring to God and is according to the Bible? Pastors must take care how they build, as I Corinthians 3:5-17 describes how to build a church. All pastors and church planters must give account to God for what kind of church they built. "The fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is." (I Cor. 3:13). The quality of each church will be tested and pastors will be rewarded according to the quality of the church ("of what sort it is") and not necessarily quantity (numerical size). The "marketing concept" of giving unbelievers what they want, is not found in Scripture. The Apostles and early Christians simply preached the Gospel in the filling of the Spirit and God "added to the church daily such as should be saved." (Acts 2:47).

24. Church Entertainment

Jesus said, "Feed my sheep", not "entertain my goats." We live in an entertainment mad world where television has taught people to expect a thrill a minute. Many today believe that church meetings should entertain unbelievers, so that Christ is more palatable to them. The New Testament reveals an absence of entertainment in church worship and evangelism. They emphasised what people need, not what they want. Early Christians met to worship, pray, fellowship, be edified, and evangelise.

Many 20th Century Christians have become God's demanding little brats whose emotions must be entertained with amusing programs and the best the world has to offer. The *Wall Street Journal*, 13 May 1991, describes the program of the Second Baptist Church of Houston, Texas, as "a Broadway-style show with a religious message. They offer as much activities and entertainment as they do religion. In the place of hymns, teenagers sway and clap at "Solid Rock"™.

Biblically speaking, New Testament churches were marked by the Apostles' doctrine, fellowship, breaking of bread, prayers (Acts 2:42), preaching (Acts 20:9), singing (Ephesians 5:19), giving (I Corinthians 16:2), baptizing (I Corinthians 1:14-16), observing the Lord's Table (I Corinthians 11:20-34), and encouraging one another (Acts 14:22). The church's ministry is to be spiritual and instructive, not a sports or entertainment club.

Note: Some churches' growth is not always a result of evangelising the lost, but by rearranging the saints, playing musical churches, with people moving around to more exciting and larger churches.

Question: What has led to the rise in consumer religion and worldly church growth schemes?

- 1) The break-up of the monopoly of large denominations on religious life.
- 2) The glorification of success.
- 3) The vast commercialisation of our culture.
- 4) The effort of Christians to influence and imitate the culture.
- 5) The abandonment of God-centred theology in favour of an expedient, man-centred theology.

Question: What is wrong with the worldly church growth movement?

- 1) It uses worldly methods which give only short-term results.
- 2) Principles of business are revered more than doctrine.
- 3) They are not separated from those holding false doctrine. In order to gain more numbers, they will join up with Charismatics and with others holding to error.
- 4) They seek to make people feel comfortable with themselves by non-threatening messages, so that they accept Christianity as an affirming influence.
- 5) It defines success mainly by numbers of people attending.

25. Forsaking Preaching for Sharing

New Evangelicalism has had a bad effect on authoritative preaching, replacing strong preaching with “sharing ideas”, and “observations.” This is humanism in preaching. Modernists consider negative preaching to be a cardinal sin. They want the hearers to feel comfortable about themselves. Strong preaching, like a torchlight searched out the sins in people’s lives, causing them to repent and forsake them. An example of wrong modernist preaching is how Robert Schuller of Crystal Cathedral learned from Norman Vincent Peale that we should avoid making people feel guilty (by rebuking sin), but rather make them feel good about themselves, and tell them how to succeed in life. This will draw quite a crowd.

Much New Evangelical preaching today is centred on psychological themes such as: meeting a person’s emotional needs; helping individuals achieve self-esteem; child rearing; solving relationship problems; how to do this or that, etc.

They will be less inclined to preach on sin, holiness, doctrine, premillennial prophecy, separation from error, soul winning, missions, etc.

The Bible was written to reveal the thoughts of God and to direct man away from himself and towards the Lord. Many preachers today emphasise “my needs” rather than focusing us on **God’s person** expounded from Scripture.

When “preaching” is changed to “sharing”, one’s attention is immediately diverted from **God’s revelation** to **man’s perception**. Older style preaching used words such as “ought”, “should” and “must”, but today many people don’t want God telling them what to do.

They just want God and preachers to help them solve their practical problems.

For centuries, Christians have found the answers to life’s deepest problems by applying great Biblical truths about God and His works. Preachers, declaring the mind and purpose of God from Scripture, have met human needs as people submitted to God and to His Word.

Preachers must first begin with an exposition of what God says, then make application of it to man’s personal needs.

One of the chief errors of New Evangelicals is their tendency to magnify experience over knowledge, so that experience judges knowledge, and sound teaching is neglected. Charismatics have led the way in this thinking and have sought to influence evangelicalism to be more experience based.

This is why so-called “Christian rock music” is popular, because many people want to “feel” something rather than “learn” something. New Evangelical preachers rarely tell people what is wrong with the Catholic church, or 5-point Calvinism, or infant sprinkling, or charismatic errors, or Amillennialism. That would be too negative, confrontational and divisive. There are far too many “trumpets giving uncertain sounds” (I Corinthians 14:8) in pulpits today. How then can believers prepare themselves to do battle when they don’t know **who** or **what** is the enemy?

If someone is teaching error, a pastor or teacher should speak words of correction to them. Strong religious convictions are not popular today. Let us not be conformed to this world, but let us present our bodies as a living sacrifice to do and speak God’s will and words. (Romans 12:1,2).

Hence, New Evangelical preaching can be summarised as follows:

- i) Neglecting to **warn against false doctrine**;
- ii) occupation with **psychology**;
- iii) “**sharing ideas**” instead of authoritative doctrinal preaching;
- iv) preaching on **issues**, instead of reasoned Bible exposition;
- v) preaching **what people want** (man-centred), instead of what they need (God-centred);
- vi) retreat from **dogmatism** of “thus saith the Lord”.

Question: What are Biblical guidelines for preaching?

- 1) A preacher must be fully committed to the **inspiration** and **inerrancy** of the **Bible**. Much weak preaching is due to weak commitment to Biblical inerrancy. If a preacher doubts the Bible’s inerrancy, he won’t be able to preach it with authority and power.
- 2) A preacher must **preach expositively** as stated in Nehemiah 8:8:
“So they **read** in the book of the law of God distinctly, and **gave the sense**, and **caused them to understand** the reading.”

Hence the **three elements** of expository preaching are:

- a) What does the passage **say**? Read it and give its background.
- b) What does the passage **mean**? Correctly interpret it by applying rules of grammar, context, history and theology.
- c) What does it tell **me** to do? **Apply** it so people can live it and obey it.

Benefits of expository preaching are:

- a) It **holds the preacher to the text**, emphasising the inspiration of God's Word;
 - b) It keeps the preacher from getting **side-tracked** into error;
 - c) It helps the preacher to **cover many subjects** within the passage, rather than him concentrating on his favourite subjects;
 - d) It produces **spiritual maturity** and **depth of Christian living** in the congregation if consistently practised over a long period of time.
Those who would preach like Jesus did, must be definite, clear, decisive and settled, as a herald (**Greek**: kerox (preacher) in II Timothy 1:11) conveyed the official messages of kings, princes, magistrates and military commanders (*Thayers Lexicon*).
- 3) A preacher must boldly **preach** against error: "Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine." 2 Timothy 4:2.
Jesus, Paul, Peter, Isaiah, Jeremiah and other preachers all rebuked the errors of the day. God is opposed to preachers who "speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the Lord." (Jeremiah 23:16).
They are "prophets of the deceit of their own heart." (Jeremiah 23:26). Many modern New Evangelicals would not rebuke error as Isaiah said of Israel: "Ah sinful nation, a people laden with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters." (Isaiah 1:4).

Note: Our aim is to "speak the truth in love" (Ephesians 4:15). Some preachers in their zeal to take a stand, become mean, rude, nasty, insulting and arrogant in their pulpit ministry, harp on petty issues, and fail to feed the flock of God. God is entirely against arrogance such as this. **Only a Spirit-filled preacher who loves God, the Bible and people can display this right balance.** Because of the lack of sound doctrinal preaching (Titus 1:9) many believers are weak and tossed to and fro with every wind of doctrine.

Warning to Pastors: Before you approve any Bible college for your church members, ask the College who the lecturers are and from where did they receive their theological training. Don't let your people attend a college where its lecturers studied at New Evangelical colleges. They will poison your students minds and turn them against you and what you believe.

A good minister of Jesus Christ will nourish up his people in the words of faith and good doctrine. (I Timothy 4:6). Pastors, are you doing this properly?

26. Failure To Discipline False Teachers

Many Baptist churches and unions of churches continue to honour and give equal recognition to pastors who teach blatant errors. A Sydney Baptist Union church was quite happy to tolerate two of its pastors who publicly stated their belief in evolution. Such men ought to be put out of the pastorate, because they are calling Jesus a liar in Mark 10:6 when He declared that humans were created by God, "But from the beginning of the creation God made them male and female." God says in Romans 16:17 to "avoid them" and not to honour them as good Bible teachers.

Many denominations give equal recognition and honour to all pastors alike, regardless of their theological views. This is wrong to honour false teachers.

27. Acceptance and Fellowship with Para-church Organisations

Almost every para-church organisation has been infiltrated by New Evangelical errors. How can this be? Because of money and their need to draw students or workers from as wide a belief system as possible. Because they are not a church, they don't have people who give weekly offerings, so they must entice people from churches to come and work with them. This weakens local churches because such people are no longer under the authority of a local church, but are under the authority of a non-church organisation. Para-church organisations, in widening their net to gain supporters, must go easy on error, in case they offend their supporters who hold false doctrines.

Consider the following example: Two New Tribes Mission families were being supported financially by a local church to go to the mission field. After a few years it became known that they were not presenting the Gospel until after a 2-5 year Bible course, nor were they challenging sinners to pray to God to call on Christ to save them (Romans 10:13; Acts 2:21). When their supporting church pastor corrected them and told them to submit to their sending church's authority on these matters, they both refused and resigned from their local church in favour of staying loyal to the New Tribes Mission denomination.

Hence, it is a foolish waste of time, money and effort for a sound local church to support people who are not loyal to nor under the authority of the supporting or sending churches.

Another bad effect of supporting para-church workers who are not fully loyal to your local church is that when you cut their support (because you discover that they are teaching error) this may lead to a split in your church when some people oppose you cutting the support of such "nice" people.

The attitude of para-church organisations is, "The local church can do the hard work of winning the lost to Christ, then spend several years training them, then as soon as the convert is strong enough to be a worker to put something back into the church that helped him, the para-church group entices him to come and work with them. Their attitude is "You have minimal future in your church; come to us and we'll help you do something really big for God.""

Para-church groups do not have pastors, deacons, Lord's Supper, baptisms, a long term church membership, weekly offerings, independence of each local group, nor do they have doctrinal correctness (especially they are weak on or never mention the local church).

Note: Ask para-church organisations the question: "Which local church's authority are you under?" They will reply, "None, just our para-church headquarters." They hence are working outside of Jesus Christ's plan when He said, "I will build my church." (Matthew 16:18). Para-church groups always believe in the false Roman Catholic idea of the universal church. This is wrong because:

- a) The universal church has never met and will not meet until after the rapture.
- b) How can you have an assembly that has never assembled?
- c) Most Bible references of "ekklesia" are to local assemblies. A few refer to the church as an institution (like the family). None refer to the universal church (except Hebrews 12:23 which takes place in heaven. This is the only place where the universal church meets).
- d) Although para-church groups believe in the universal church, they always ask local churches for money to finance their activities.

Conclusion: Avoid New Evangelical errors and expose them in your preaching, otherwise you will lose your people to New Evangelical churches or to para church organisations. Notice four downward steps in compromise:

1. Toleration of error;
2. Co-operation with error;
3. Contamination by error;
4. Capitulation to error.

Which step are you and your church at today?

New evangelical philosophy has infected much of Christendom, that so very few Christians see the dangerous consequences. The downward path is best illustrated by the following. Where are you on this slide?

The Christian recognises the error

He tolerates the error

He excuses the error

He defends the error

He condones the error

He embraces the error.

Questions To Ask Pastors Or People To See How New Evangelical They Are:

Q1: Do you believe that the Bible today is **without errors**?

Q2: Do you believe in six-day creation 6000 years ago, rather than **evolution**?

Q3: Does your Pastor preach against the errors of the **Roman Catholic Church**?

Q4: Does your Pastor and church use only the **King James Version Bible** (or a foreign language equivalent based on the received text)?

Q5: Does your Pastor believe and preach **premillennial truths**?

Q6: Does your Pastor preach against **Charismatic errors**?

Q7: Does your denomination or church forbid **ordination of female pastors**?

Q8: Does your church support **overseas mission** soul winning, church planting projects?

Q9: Does your church reject and keep separate from the **World Council of Churches**?

Q10: Does your Pastor refuse to **fellowship** with those holding false doctrines?

Q11: Does your church or Pastor baptise adults by full immersion, rather than by **sprinkling water** on babies?

Q12: Does your church refuse to **join evangelistic crusades** with other churches which believe error?

Q13: Does your church forbid **rock music** bands?

Q14: Does your Pastor **preach separation from worldliness**, Charismatics and other errors?

Q15: Does your church have a weekly soul winning **visitation program**?

Q16: Does the Pastor regularly lead people to Christ?

Q17: Does your local church possess and own **the church property title deeds** (rather than the denomination having them?) If the denomination owns them they can put you out at any time they please. They control your local church. This is wrong.

Q18: Did the theological college where your pastor was trained, teach the above truths?

Q19: Does the **theological college** recommended by your pastor for students to attend, teach the above truths?

Q20: Is this college loyal to and in **full doctrinal agreement** with your local church?

Answers: The above questions should all have been answered with a YES, in order to be Biblically sound. Any NO answers indicate areas of New Evangelical error.

What did your church score out of a possible 20 correct answers?

III. BIBLE RULES ABOUT SEPARATION FOR ALL CHRISTIANS

RULE 1: The Bible forbids us to fellowship with unbelief (Ephesians 5:11a).

“And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather reprove them.”

II John 7-11 states that Christian fellowship should not be extended to religious unbelievers and apostates. “If there come any unto you, and bring not this doctrine, receive him not into your house, neither bid him God speed.”

Many people in John’s day called themselves Christians but did not hold the doctrine of Christ as set forth in Hebrews 6:1,2, (this being: repentance from dead works to be saved; faith towards Christ (who is God) for salvation; baptism with the Holy Spirit **at** salvation, and baptism in water **after** salvation; laying on of hands to set men apart for a ministry; resurrection of the dead; and eternal judgment in the lake of fire).

The Bible tells us to have nothing to do with those who don’t hold the doctrine of Christ.

“Whosoever transgresseth and abideth not in the doctrine of Christ, hath not God.” (II John 9).

This is a very serious statement showing how important God sees this matter.

Definition of Apostasy: A “falling away”, a “defection from truth” in Greek (646). Apostasy means a departure from spiritual truth by individuals, churches or organisations which once possessed the truth.

The first two areas of apostasy are:

1. Departure from the inerrancy and inspiration of the Bible.
2. Disbelieving the Deity of Christ.

RULE 2: The Bible Commands us to Reprove Apostasy (Ephesians 5:11b).

One thing that irritates and upsets apostasy is the **criticism of apostasy**.

“Why be negative?” “Why criticise apostasy?” “Why not just be positive?”

Because Ephesians 5:11 says: “And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather **reprove them**.” The Greek word for “reprove” means “to oppose”, “to show to be guilty.”

We are to **separate** from apostasy, and then to **expose it**.

Unbiblical apostasy always masquerades in respectable garments such as:

It claims to be spreading Christian love;

It claims to eliminate prejudice (eg: WCC fighting racism);

It claims to bring people together in unity;

It claims to be crusading for peace;

It claims to be cleaning up man’s environment (by a social gospel).

It never unveils itself as hateful, ugly unbelief with a veneer of humanistic good works. God has given us the job of unveiling it and exposing it as error.

The spirit of today is “don’t be negative”, but God commands us to reprove apostasy.

If you knew the bridge was washed out, your first responsibility is to avoid driving into the ravine, and your second responsibility is to warn others to avoid the danger.

RULE 3: The Bible commands us to purge unbelief if we can.

The Corinthian Church had a clear case of immorality. Most of the church was moral, but they had ignored one man’s fornication, which corrupted their fellowship. If we tolerate immorality or unbelief, it will usually build a sympathetic following.

Note: God did not command the Corinthians believers to leave the church in order to separate from the man. Instead, He commanded the believers to purge the church of the unrepentant man.

I Corinthians 5:1,2,6,7 describes the situation: “It is reported commonly that there is fornication among you . . . ye have not rather mourned, that he that hath done this deed might be **taken away from you** . . . Know ye not that a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump? Purge out therefore the old leaven.”

Key: Church discipline is God’s provision for keeping a church **pure morally** and **pure doctrinally**.

Question: Why do we have apostate churches and denominations today?

Answer: Because church discipline is rarely practised.

Result: Unbelief flooded into the theological colleges, flowed into the pulpits and trickled into the pews. Churches and denominations failed to stem the tide by failing to purge unbelief and false doctrine. The failure to practise Biblical discipline will always lead to the need for separation from such churches or denominations.

Example: When Robert Ketcham could not purge the modernism out of the Pittsburgh Baptist Association, he became a separatist.

Question Can you clean up your apostate church?

Answer: The Bible commands us to purge unbelief. But this is no longer possible in 95% of apostate churches. No person can possibly clean up the National Council of Churches. Its theological colleges are apostate, its denominational hierarchy is apostate, and its connections are apostate. Fortunately, the sincere believer who seeks to purge the apostasy, will usually be put out by the apostasy and will end up a separatist.

RULE 4: God commands Believers not to be yoked together in Spiritual Endeavour with Unbelievers, (II Corinthians 6:14-18).

“Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? and what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel? what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God, as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.” (II Corinthians 6:14-18).

“Thou shalt not plow with an ox and an ass together.” (Deuteronomy 22:10).

The yoke was an instrument that joined two animals together in an endeavour. An ox is a reliable, hard-working, strong animal that is a willing worker. He well pictures a believer. An ass is a stubborn, unreliable animal that is difficult to work with, and uncooperative, who often wants to go his own way. He well pictures an unbeliever. God forbids both animals ploughing together. God also forbids believers and unbelievers allying together. This is because the unbeliever is not submissive to God’s rules, but he makes his own rules as he sees fit, to the detriment of the believer.

You may be yoked with an unbeliever to produce a report at work, or to build your boundary fence, but you must not yoke with an unbeliever in any spiritual endeavour, even a money-making spiritual endeavour.

This passage (II Cor. 6:14-18) talks about righteousness, light, faith and the temple of God. These are spiritual or religious things. “Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers.” (v.14).

“Come out from among them and be ye separate.” (v.17). Biblical separation is God’s preventative medicine to protect us from the cancer of apostasy. “Separation is to the whole ministry of the Word of God and the service of Jesus Christ what sterilisation and sanitation are to surgery.” (Paul Jackson).

Objection: Some sincere believer may say, “I am the only testimony in this apostate church.”

Human reason says to you, “I must stay, for if I leave, there will be no witness left in this church.”

Answer: Notice that your human reason is opposite to God’s clear command in II Corinthians 6:14-18. God says, “Come out from among them and be ye separate.”

If the lump is already leavened with error, you’ll never change it. Nobody ever has in all of Christian history. You remaining in an apostate church encourages it to spread error.

Objection: But if I leave a secure, well-paid position in an apostate denomination, who will pay my salary to support my family?

Answer: God will. Trust Him as He promised: “Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing: and I will receive you, and **will be a Father unto you**, and ye shall be **my sons** and **daughters**, saith the Lord Almighty.” (II Corinthians 6:17,18).

Separation from Disobedient brethren.

The non-separatist Dallas Theological Seminary desired to cease reproving apostasy. This characterises the decline of every fundamentalist group because it tolerates and gives respectability to error, which then spreads through the group.

Question: Is it ever right to separate from individual believers? **Answer:** (See Rule 5).

RULE 5: The Bible Commands us to Separate from Disobedient Brethren.

Question 1: What is **Biblical Fundamentalism**?

Answer: “Biblical Fundamentalism is the militant belief and proclamation of the basic doctrines of Christianity. This leads to Biblically separating from those who reject them.”

(Source: “Axioms of Separation”, John Ashbrook, Mentor, Ohio).

Note: There are three keys to this definition:

(a) Militant belief - these basic doctrines are held as strong convictions;

(b) Proclamation - these doctrines are not only believed, but taught to congregations and preached to the lost;

(c) Separation - a man is not a true fundamentalist unless he practises separation where necessary.

Question 2: What is **New Evangelicalism**?

Answer: Harold Ockenga, its founder and First President of Fuller Theological Seminary, defines it: “New Evangelicalism was born in 1948 in connection with a convocation address which I gave in the Civic Auditorium in Pasadena. While reaffirming the theological view of fundamentalism, this address repudiated its **ecclesiology** and its **social theory**. The ringing call for a **repudiation of separatism** and the summons to **social involvement** received a hearty response from many evangelicalsIt differed from fundamentalism in its **repudiation of separation** and its determination to engage itself in the **theological dialogue** of the day.”

This tells us that New Evangelicalism differs from Fundamentalism in three ways:

- (1) It repudiates separation;
- (2) It summons Christians to social involvement with the world. This traces back to the modernist Social Gospel.
- (3) It shows a determination to engage in theological dialogue with liberals and unbelievers.

It says, "We will not come out from apostates, but we will sit down and talk with them."

Key: "Separation from apostasy" is the fork in the road between fundamentalism and new evangelicalism.

- a) Fundamentalism says "Be not unequally yoked", "Come out from among them", "Be ye separate", "Touch not the unclean thing", "Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness."
- b) New Evangelicals say, "stay in", "associate", "infiltrate" and "dialogue" with error.

Question: Which set of words is Biblical? Clearly the first.

Biblically, New Evangelicalism seems easily defeated, but overwhelmingly it has won the hearts of the "Christian Public."

Many Fundamental Colleges, publishers and churches of the 1940s are now mostly New Evangelical.

New Evangelicalism has captured the mass of professing Christians with:

- (1) its appeal to man's intellect;
- (2) its offer of a non-controversial road;
- (3) its adjustment to the world's lifestyle, and
- (4) its use of the rich and famous.

Objection: Some say, "We should not separate from other believers, because we will all be together in heaven."

Answer: The difference between heaven and now is that in heaven we'll see sin as God sees it, and there will be repentance where we have been in error. When repentance takes place in heaven, there will be no trouble being together in heaven. But if that same repentance were to take place on earth right now, we'd maintain fellowship on earth.

The one who divides the body of Christ is not the Fundamentalist who insists on obeying the Bible, but the New Evangelical who insists on fellowshipping out of bounds with those in error.

Note these five key **commands** in Scripture:

- (1) "let him be unto thee as a **heathen** man and a publican." (Matthew 16:18).
- (2) "**Not to keep company**, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, covetous, idolater, railer, drunkard, extortioner." (I Corinthians 5:11).
- (3) "If any man teach otherwise . . . from such **withdraw thyself**." (I Timothy 6:3-5).
- (4) "**withdraw yourselves** from every brother that walketh disorderly." (II Thessalonians 3:6).
- (5) "Mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned and **avoid** them." (Romans 16:17).

Question: What is God's command about disobedient brethren?

Answer: Avoid them, withdraw yourselves from them, not to keep company, let him be as a heathen. In other words, separation.

RULE 6: **God's Work done in God's Way Produces only Good Results.**

God's Work done in Man's Way Produces Good and Bad Results.

Religious magazines constantly tell us about the good done by New Evangelicalism.

We read about thousands of decisions at Billy Graham's or Luis Palau's latest ecumenical crusade. Is New Evangelicalism now the official channel of God's blessing? Three observations need to be made:

- (1) **God never calls us to judge obedience by results.**

God never commanded us to co-operate with apostasy and then evaluate the results. God says, "Come out . . . and be separate . . . touch not the unclean thing."

- (2) If something is to be measured by results, **we must evaluate all the results.**

Question: What are other results of New Evangelical compromise?

- i) When New Evangelicals breach the Biblical principle of separation, the **line between belief and unbelief is obscured**. For example, **before** Billy Graham's 1957 New York Crusade, the religious people of New York clearly knew which churches were fundamental Bible believing and which were not. After the crusade, that line was erased. People were then not sure which were sound churches. **Erasing that line was not good, but evil.**
- ii) Because **unbelieving churches** co-operated with the Crusade, they **now have Billy Graham's stamp of approval**, and hence are now recognized as true churches. This results in spiritually hungry Christians being turned back into these modernistic churches. They starved in these churches before their conversion, and they have been pointed back to these churches to starve some more after their conversion, when they could be winning souls and bearing much fruit in a sound church. **Pointing Christians to churches with error is not good, but evil.**
- iii) **Spiritual babes are left on the doorsteps of unbelieving churches**.
Do you believe in abandoning babies on doorsteps to starve? Then how can you defend Billy Graham openly returning new converts to blind Catholic churches or apostate Protestant churches to be fed false doctrine? That is not good, but is evil.
- iv) **People are weaned from service in their local churches**. Who wants to sing in a volunteer choir of 10 when they have sung with 2500 under a world famous director? Your local church of 100 looks very small compared with 50,000 at a crusade meeting. The New Testament emphasizes the local church, not the ecumenical crusade. Where is an ecumenical crusade in the New Testament?
- v) Pointing new Christians to churches with error **kills multiplication** of soul-winning Christians and **aids multiplication of error**. **It stops these new believers from becoming strong soul-winners** and it stops them from becoming **multipliers of disciples**. This is a most serious failure because **we never see what might have been**.

(3) **Results alone do not mean that something is the will of God**. For example, in Numbers 20, when Moses angrily struck the rock in order to fetch water, he had great results of God opening the rock to supply water that quenched the thirst of millions of people. However, because Moses disobeyed God's command to "speak to the Rock" (not strike the rock as he did), God forbade Moses entering the promised land. The good results did not justify the wrong way in which the thing was done. Great loss resulted.

In navigation, a small deviation in course would lead a ship hundreds of miles from its intended destination. In 1948, when Harold Ockenga set a new course for New Evangelicalism, he did not intend to make much of a course correction. He just intended to reject separation, add social involvement and win over some liberals. But this small deviation has sent many people to unite with apostasy.

It has multiplied apostasy rather than multiplying soul-winners and true disciples.

Satan is always inviting fundamentalists to co-operate, join, associate, stay in and dialogue with error.

Key: We must separate from disobedient brethren who continue in toleration of unbelief. **Why should we endorse believers who bring leaven into our churches, and break down the fences between truth and error by their endorsing of men who hold false doctrines?**

Henry Crowell, who built the Quaker Oats Company, sums it up well:

"Workers and leaders must be intolerant of unbelievers in church office. Faith must not support men in authority who, though they themselves are Bible believers, are tolerant of others in positions of trust and authority who do not so believe. The battle against the leaven was being lost in Christendom today because of tolerance toward believers who were tolerant toward unbelievers."

Key: One ability every Christian needs is the ability to say "NO" to error.

Satan is building his ugly one-world-church.

He aims to attach every church to this ecumenical monstrosity.

a) He started with the World Council of Churches.

b) To this he has tied in the Roman Catholic Church.

c) Also the Charismatic churches have been attached with the cement of the false tongues experience.

If a Catholic priest speaks in tongues, Charismatics call him brother.

- d) He has added New Evangelical churches with the cement of toleration of error.
- e) Now he is adding heathen religions using the trick of praying for world peace.
- f) The devil is applying pressure for your church to join this hideous ecumenical harlot. The only thing that will stop churches from being swept into Satan's counterfeit church is our ability to say 'NO'. Four rules on this are:

RULE 7: Don't Affiliate Your Church with any Church, Mission, Movement or Evangelistic Effort Which Does not Fully Believe the Inerrant Bible.

Beware of the "Good Cause Syndrome." Many groups will want your church to join them in promoting a good cause, such as opposition to pornography, abortion, communism, racism, etc. These are good causes that you may agree with, but, if you join up, it will ally you with Catholic priests, apostates and Charismatics.

Question: Why not join apostates to support a good cause?

Answer:

- 1) These groups want your support, but they don't want your Gospel or doctrines;
- 2) Compromise ties your tongue so that you cannot rebuke their errors;
- 3) You will teach your people not to rebuke error but to tolerate it for any reason.

Example 1: In II Chronicles 18, Godless Ahab trapped Godly Jehoshaphat with the "good cause" trick. The Syrians held the border town of Ramoth-gilead. For the safety of both Israel and Judah, that town needed to be taken. On the basis of that good cause, Jehoshaphat joined with Ahab. Jehoshaphat could see that Ahab's false prophets were not men of God. When Micaiah, a true prophet, spoke God's words, Jehoshaphat was so bound up by compromise that he stood with Ahab instead of with godly Micaiah and he almost got killed in the battle. When King Jehoshaphat returned home to Jerusalem, God sent Jehu the prophet to rebuke the king: "Shouldst thou help the ungodly, and love them that hate the Lord? therefore is wrath upon thee from the Lord." (II Chronicles 19:2). Jehoshaphat said "Yes" when he should have said "No" to Ahab.

Example 2: In Ezra 4:1-4, when Zerubbabel was building the temple of God, their adversaries offered to help them. Building the temple was a good cause and help was needed. The adversaries claimed to worship God in some sense, but Zerubbabel correctly saw that they did not fully believe the Bible, so he declined their offer.

"Now when the **adversaries** of Judah and Benjamin heard that the children of the captivity builded the temple unto the Lord God of Israel; then they came to Zerubbabel, and to the chief of the fathers, and said unto them, **Let us build with you; for we seek your God, as ye do;** and we do sacrifice unto him since the days of Esarhaddon king of Assur, which brought us up hither. But Zerubbabel and Jeshua, and the rest of the chief of the fathers of Israel, said unto them, **Ye have nothing to do with us** to build an house unto our God; but **we ourselves together will build** unto the Lord God of Israel, as King Cyrus the king of Persia hath commanded us. Then the people of the land **weakened the hands of the people of Judah, and troubled them in building.**"

Zerubbabel's "No" caused his enemies to trouble him, but it kept God's hand of blessing on the work. If you contract with an unsaved builder (who doesn't care about the gospel) to build your church, he can stop the job for any reason, demand extra money, sue you in court and send you bankrupt from interest and legal fees. No other builder will be willing to complete the job for fear of them being sued at a later date for the first builder's possible defective workmanship.

Note: "Evangelism is the soft underbelly of fundamentalism."

The line which has trapped more fundamental pastors into ecumenical evangelism is: "Brother, this is for the cause of souls." Don't allow any cause, even evangelism, to get you to disobey God's commands

Note: You can be for or against a cause without joining anything.

You don't need to join a society to fight abortion. If you are uncertain about any invitation, say, "Let me think about it for a while." That will let you check it with the Bible and by prayer.

Key: Keep your church pure, so God can use you and it.

RULE 8: Do not Affiliate Your Church with Any Church, Mission, Movement or Evangelistic Effort which does not Practise Biblical Separation.

Missions and other groups will come to your church, seeking your monetary support. Some groups will seem to have good policies, but they will not declare themselves to be separatists. Actively reproofing apostasy is a part of Biblical separation. If a group will not reprove false doctrine, it will lead to the assembling of a mixed multitude.

Example 1: Church growth seminars, counselling seminars, etc will draw their people from a wide range of churches. They will not separate from apostasy or false doctrines. The fundamentalist at such a meeting will be seated next to Catholics, Charismatics or apostates. Why does that crowd feel comfortable together?

Because it has been quietly agreed that for the sake of their work, they will not reprove error or apostasy, and that Ephesians 5:11 will not be practised.

Example 2: Groups which preach indiscriminately in fundamental, modernistic and charismatic churches are saying to the whole community that: "Fundamental churches and modernistic churches are about the same . . . they support the same things." Examples include moral majority, Christian political parties.

Question: Why should we not join groups such as Moral Majority or Promise Keepers?

Answer: Because they will not practise Biblical separation.

Every fundamentalist knows that we are a minority. You can't practise Biblical separation and build a majority. The world's way is always to win with a majority.

Think. Can you think of any place in Scripture where God used a majority? Truth is usually in the minority in this evil world. The battles in Scripture were always won by an obedient minority (so God would get the glory, not man), and not by a diverse majority.

RULE 9: You Cannot Preserve a Position Without Crusading for it.

Some fundamentalists want to take a stand quietly, without being offensive. They do not want to talk much about apostasy and separation. They do not want to be outspoken fundamentalists in the front line of the battle. "Be positive" is their watchword.

Trying to take a stand, while remaining all positive, is the half-way house between Fundamentalism and New Evangelicalism.

Not being outspoken always leads to the weaker position, not the stronger one.

Many churches have become New Evangelical while trying to be silent fundamentalists. Groups such as Billy Graham, Christianity Today, Fuller Seminary, Wheaton College, National Association of Evangelicals, and many Christian bookshops, have made a massive blitz to sell the Christian world on New Evangelicalism.

Fundamentalism met this blitz with a great silence. Many Bible believing churches were stolen by vocal New Evangelicalism. Early fundamentalists were fighters, and namers of names: "Tell (Herod) that fox." (Luke 13:32). They identified liberals. They quoted their false doctrines. They reproofed their apostasy.

New Evangelicals criticised fundamentalists for being too unkind to liberals, saying it was wrong to name names. (But Jesus often did. Check it!) Under pressure of this criticism, many of the fighting tigers of Fundamentalism have turned into the pussy cats of quiet Fundamentalism. Many a quiet Fundamentalist now purrs on the hearth of New Evangelicalism.

The last 40 years show that you can't preserve a position without crusading for it.

RULE 10: When in Doubt, Don't Join.

Every Christian ought to be a member of a Bible believing church. If there are none in your neighbourhood, you should start one. If you don't have perfect peace about joining some church or group, don't join. You'll never have to apologise for what you don't join. Ask the 20 test questions to see if the church or group passes every area of Bible truth before you decide to join it.

RULE 11: What Separation is Not.

Separation is not the Answer to Every Disagreement Between Brethren.

The traits God uses to make separatists strong (eg: reproving error) must be controlled, or separation can turn to fragmentation. Notice 3 areas where separation is not the answer:

- (1) **Personal Disagreement.** Believers should not separate over personal differences. The answer is face-to-face talking, confession, forgiveness, prayer and forgetting according to Matthew 18:15-19. If pastors and people will settle their problems Biblically, they can have a long and fruitful ministry in the one church. Some pastors and people who can't resolve their problems, change churches every few years. Both the offender and the offended have an equal obligation to find one another and get things right.
- (2) **Be patient with other believers as we all learn by making mistakes.**
Don't separate from believers for every mistake or differing decision they make. If a man dogmatically holds to error, it is time to separate. Please remember that we have all held wrong beliefs in the past which we would not hold today. We are all learning and growing. Show love to those who may not have come as far as you have on some issues, and help them to see the truth on these issues.
"In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth." (II Timothy 2:25).
- (3) **Difference in standards.** Some churches have minor differences in standards that do not contradict any Biblical principles. We should love and fellowship with them, in spite of these minor differences.

Conclusion: When we obey the Bible, we enjoy victory. New Evangelicalism takes God's Word and mixes it with human reason and modern culture.

The enemies of the Gospel today are actively seeking the support of the Lord's people. These doctrine-free, false prophets of ecumenicalism invite us to co-operate, share pulpits, join campaigns, support good causes and reach communities with them.

The New Evangelicals have heeded their siren songs and gone over to dialogue.

The Fundamentalist, as the prophet of old, must see them as the devil's invitations.

Faithful pastors have never dialogued with wolves.

Note: If we cease speaking against error, this will cut us off from the fellowship of strong Christians who are fighting for the truth.

The unnamed prophet of I Kings 13:18 believed a lie because the lie came from a friend.

I Kings 13 has three characters in it:

King **Jeroboam** (representing the liberal apostate crowd of today),

the **unnamed prophet** (representing the Fundamentalists of today), and

the **old backslidden compromising prophet** (representing New Evangelicalism who have decided to ignore and disobey God's command to separate from error).

Question: Would a brother lie to us?

Answer: Yes, many believers who intend to follow some unbiblical conduct say to us: "We have prayed about this and we know the Spirit of the Lord led us to join this ecumenical crusade, etc."

How do we know this is a lie? Rule 12 is the answer.

RULE 12: The Spirit of God has never led any Christian Contrary to the Word of God.

The New Evangelical comes to us as a brother, but his philosophy of ministry ignores God's commands such as: "avoid them", "withdraw yourselves", "be ye separate."

When he tells us that the Spirit of God has led him in this New Evangelical direction,

he is lying because the Spirit of God has never led one Christian contrary to God's Word.

Key: The most dangerous deviation is the one closest to your own position. New Evangelicalism sprang out of Fundamentalism. Jerry Falwell has swallowed the lie of New Evangelicalism by deciding that there is really no difference between fundamentalist and new evangelicals. This has led many to follow his path into compromise with error.

Question: Is it right to speak approving words about disobedient brethren from your pulpit?

Is it right to allow the cream of your young people to be educated in New Evangelical Theological colleges and to be used in their enterprises? No.

Question: Why was God so severe on the young prophet, but did not discipline the old prophet for lying and causing the young prophet's downfall? **Answer:** (See Rule 13).

RULE 13: God is most Severe on those whom he is Using at the Moment.

God was not using the old prophet, but the young prophet was God's man of the hour, being used so greatly against Jeroboam. God had to treat his disobedience very seriously.

The Bible believing, separated, fundamental church is God's instrument for today, but sadly, we are seeing some decline:

a) Some fundamental churches are becoming more New Evangelical.

b) Many fundamentalist meetings have less protest against error.

c) Many fundamentalists are more tolerant of New Evangelical speakers.

d) Some Fundamentalist's desire for souls and growth have opened the door to New Evangelical methods.

e) Some Fundamentalist's music has more New Evangelical notes.

f) Many Fundamentalists have adopted the silent stand and allowed vocal New Evangelicals to spread its message unrebuked.

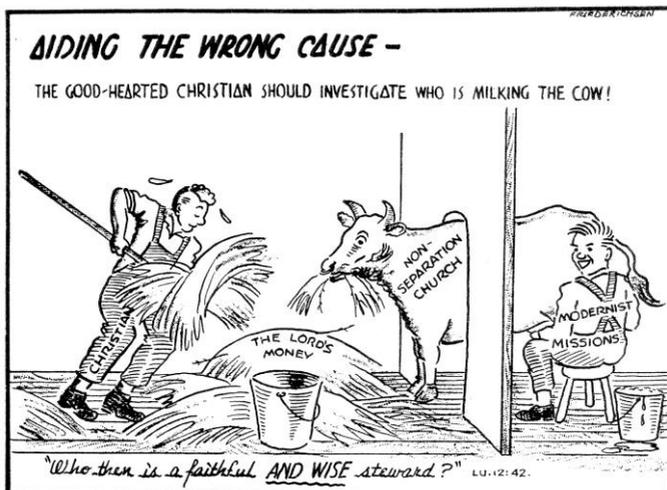
God does not have to use Fundamentalists. If we forsake His truth, God can leave us lying in the middle of the road between the lion and the ass.

When Ockenga led the way in dialoguing with apostates and religious unbelievers, he led the movement away from the Word of God. You can't dialogue with religious unbelievers and open the Bible to say, "Thus saith the Lord". New Evangelicals took their movement away from allegiance to the Bible. Fundamentalists can put their finger on a Bible text and say, "This is it. God said it, that settles it". You can't say this if you work with liberals.

Many pastors have failed to impress these 13 principles on their people.

Question: What do we lose if we do not practise these Biblical principles of separation?

Answer: John's answer in 2 John 8 is that we lose our life's work, "those things which we have wrought." "Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought; but that we receive a full reward." Many great fundamental churches have not taught their people these principles and they have now become New Evangelical churches overcome by much error, and are well on their way to reuniting with apostasy from which they once separated. Teaching and practising these 13 principles is the only way to keep from losing your life's work in this generation or the next. If the fences are allowed to be torn down, the next generation will not know where they should be. Let us re-dig the wells of truth that have been filled in by New Evangelicals. Gen 26:17-25. Source: 'Axioms of Separation' John Ashbrook, (with permission) 8686 Hilltop Drive, Mentor, Ohio 44060



107. CALVINISM: TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. TOTAL DEPRAVITY. Ephesians 2:1 “dead in trespasses and sins”. (p.611,613).

Q: Does man have free will to receive Christ, and to do good? (p.610,613).

Calvinist inability to receive Christ is based on:

- i) John 1:13 “nor of the will of man, but of God.” (Ans: “as many as..” John 1:12). (p.614).
- ii) Romans 9:16 “not of him that willeth, but of God” (Ans: John 5:40; Romans 6:17; Luke 15:24).
- iii) John 8:43,44 “ye cannot hear my word.” (Ans: Luke 15:24; Luke 16:23-28). (p.615).

Refuting Calvinists’ “Proof Texts” for Total Depravity

- i) Someone who “cannot” do something:
 - John 8:43 “ye cannot hear my word.” (John 8:44,45,46,24). (p.615).
 - John 14:17 “the world cannot receive.” (p.615).
 - Romans 8:8,7 “in the flesh cannot please God.” (I Corinthians 1:21 preaching to save). (p.615).
- ii) Someone’s “inability” but with a reason given for it:
 - John 6:44 “except the Father draw him.” (Ans: John 6:45; 12:32; 1:9; 16:7-11). (p.615,616).
 - John 6:65 “except it were given unto him of the Father.” (p.615,616).
 - John 12:39-40 “they could not believe, ... He hath hardened their heart.” (John 12:37,39; Matthew 12:15; Acts 28:27). (p.615; 631-632).

- iii) Romans 3:11 “none that seeketh after God” (Ans: Acts 10:2; Isaiah 45:19; 55:6; Psalm 10:4) p.616.

I Corinthians 2:14 “natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God.” Ans: Eph.1:13.

Two Kinds of Scriptures that Overthrow Total Depravity Inability:

- i) Scriptures containing a command to believe: Acts 17:30; Isaiah 45:22; Mark 1:15; Matthew 11:28; I John 3:23; John 7:37; Revelation 22:17; Isaiah 45:19. (p.618).
- ii) Scriptures implying the possibility that a man can believe: John 5:40; I Thess. 2:16. (p.618).

2. UNCONDITIONAL ELECTION. (p.618-643)

Q1: Are men elected to salvation or not? (Calvinists confuse election and predestination with salvation).

Q2: What does the Bible say about God’s decrees? (Ans:None involve salvation: Isaiah 10:1). (p.619).

Q3: What is the problem with Calvinists’ view of God’s sovereignty? (Ans: They exalt it above His other attributes). (p.620).

Q4: Has God from eternity past foreordained all things that happen? (Ans:Herod’s massacre).(p.620)

Q5: Does God foreordain the time of one’s death? (Ans: Isaiah 38:5; Ecclesiastes 7:17; Psalm 55:23).

Q6: Does God foreordain sin? (Ans: Jeremiah 19:3-5). (p.621).

Q7: Why does God bring evil on people and places? (Ans: Because of their sins). (p.621).

God Has Not Foreordained Everything In One All-Encompassing Decree Because:

- 1) God says so: “neither came it into my mind” (Jeremiah 19:5). (p.621).
- 2) God’s Holy nature would not allow Him to be the author of sin. (p.621).
- 3) God permits something when He is said to do it, eg: Satan provoking David. (p.622).
- 4) Man’s responsibility is destroyed if God has predestined all things. (p.622).
- 5) Man’s free will is destroyed if God has predestined all things. (p.622).
 - See 10 examples of man’s free will in Scripture refuting God foreordaining all.
- 6) Prayer changed things for Moses (Deut. 9:18-29); Hezekiah (II Kings 20:1-6); Righteous men
- 7) Calvinists’ Admissions that it seems “unscriptural, absurd, impious”. (N L Rice). (p.622).
- 8) Calvinists’ Rejections. (p.622).
- 9) Other False Philosophies are same as Calvinism, eg: Islam. (p.623).
- 10) Semantics, accepted word meanings, eg: “Whosoever” disprove it. (p.623).
- 11) Contingency verses showing the possibility of an event happening disprove it, eg: Matthew 11:21; John 5:30; I Thessalonians 2:16. (p.623). (eg: Luke 10:31; Deut. 22:6).
- 12) Chance disproves it. Some things happen by chance, not by foreordained decrees, (p.623)
- 13) Common Sense disproves it. If all was foreordained, nobody could avoid carrying out God’s decree.

Unconditional Election Blasphemes God’s Character in 4 Ways. (p.624).

Bible teaches Election to 6 Things. (p.625,626).

Three Systems of Calvinism: Supralapsarianism, Infralapsarianism, Sublapsarianism.(p.628,629).

Refuting Unconditional Election to Reprobation “proof” texts (Jeremiah 6:30). (p.629).

- i) Proverbs 16:4 “The Lord hath made the wicked for the day of evil”. (Psalm 76:10).
- ii) I Thessalonians 5:9 “God hath not appointed us to wrath ...” (p.630).
- iii) I Peter 2:8 “stumble at the word ... being disobedient ... as they were appointed”.
- iv) II Peter 2:12 “made to be taken and destroyed ... in their own corruption”. (p.631).
- v) II Peter 2:17 “mist of darkness is reserved forever”. (Jude 13). (p.631).
- vi) Jude 4 “who were before of old ordained to this condemnation”. (p.631).
- vii) Isaiah 6:9,10 “blinded their eyes, hardened their hearts”. (p.631).
- viii) Romans 9:13 “Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated”. (p.632).
- ix) Romans 9:18 “Pharaoh ... whom he will he hardeneth”. (p.633).
- x) Romans 9:22 “... the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction”. (p.633).
- xi) Jeremiah 18:1-10 Potter = God; Clay = Israel; Marring of clay = Israel’s disobedience; God remaking clay = discipline. (p.633).

Refuting Unconditional Election to Salvation “proof” texts: (p.633).

1. God’s People.

- i) Acts 18:10 “I have much people in this city”. (p.634).
- ii) Revelation 13:8; 17:8 Book of Life. (p.634).
- iii) John 10:14-16, 26 God’s Sheep. (p.634).

2. Given to Salvation.

- iv) John 6:37; 6:39; 17:2; 17:6 Given to the Son. (p.634).

3. Ordained to Salvation.

- v) Acts 13:48 “as many as were ordained to eternal life” (p.635).

4. Chosen to salvation.

- i) Matthew 22:14 and 20:16 (p.635).
- ii) John 15:16 “ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you”.
- iii) Acts 9:15; 22:14 “He is a chosen vessel ...” (p.635).
- iv) Galatians 1:15,16 “God separated me from my mother’s womb”
- v) I Peter 2:9 “Ye are a chosen generation.” (Exodus 19:6).(p.636)
- vi) Psalm 65:4 “Blessed is the man whom thou chooseth..” (p.636)
- vii) James 2:5 “Hath not God chosen the poor of this world”(p.636)
- viii) 2 Thess 2:13 “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation”
I Peter 1:2 “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God” (p.637)
- ix) Eph. 1:4 “he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world”
- x) 2 Tim 1:9 “grace...given us in Christ Jesus before the world began”
- xi) Jeremiah 31:3 “I have loved thee with an everlasting love” (p637)

5. Elected to Salvation. (p.638).

- i) Jesus is called “elect.” How is Jesus Christ “elect” when He never sinned? (value, worth).
- ii) Angels are called “elect” in I Timothy 5:21 “I charge thee before...the elect angels” (p.638).
- iii) Israel is still called “elect” in the New Testament: (p.638).
 - a) Matthew 24:22,24,31 “but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened.” (p.639).
 - b) II Timothy 2:10 “I endure all things for the elect’s sake ... may obtain salvation.”
 - c) Luke 18:7,8 “Shall not God avenge his own elect ...” (p.639).
 - d) Romans 9:11,12 “purpose of God ... election ... the elder shall serve the younger”.
 - e) Romans 11:28 “As touching the election, they are beloved ...” (p.639).
 - f) Romans 11:5,7 “the election of grace, ... the election hath obtained it”. (p.639).
- iv) Church is called “elect” nine (9) times in the New Testament: (p.640).
 - a) I Peter 5:13 “The church at Babylon, elected together with you ...” (p.640).
 - b) I Thessalonians 1:4 “knowing brethren, your election of God.” (Acts 16:9,10). (p.640).
 - c) II Peter 1:10 “brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure.” (p.640).
- v) Christians are called “elect” 6 times in the New Testament: (p.640).
 - a) Romans 8:33 “who shall lay anything to the charge of God’s elect?” (p.640).
 - b) Colossians 3:12 “Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved ...” (p.640).
 - c) Titus 1:1 “Paul, a servant of God ... according to the faith of God’s elect.” (p.640).
 - d) I Peter 1:2 “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father ...” (p.640).
 - e) II John 1 “The elder unto the elect lady, and her children.” (p.640).
 - f) II John 13 “The children of thy elect sister greet thee.” (p.640).

Believers are described as elect, holy, justified, beloved and having faith.

Calvinists read unconditional election into every verse discussing election. (p.641).

- i) I Peter 1:2 “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God”.
- ii) Romans 8:29,30
- iii) Ephesians 1:4,5 “chosen us in him before the foundation of the world.”
- iv) II Thessalonians 2:13 “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation.”
- v) Acts 13:48 “as many as were ordained to eternal life.”
- vi) Romans 9,10,11

What does the Bible say we are predestined to? (p.642).

- i) Ephesians 1:5 “Son-placing” in heaven.
- ii) Ephesians 1:11,12 Praise His glory.
- iii) Romans 8:29,30 Conformed to the image of Christ in heaven.

Six Bad Conclusions about Unconditional Election. (p.643).

- i) Non-elect are predestined to hell.
- ii) Fatalism – Nothing we do makes any difference.
- iii) Shaky Assurance of Salvation based on decrees, not on Bible promises.
- iv) Missions and Evangelism change no-one’s destiny.
- v) Confusing, unbiblical terminology.
- vi) Makes vain all preaching, holiness, comfort, zeal and Scriptures.

3. LIMITED ATONEMENT (p.644).

Question: Did God intend to save all men, or not? (p.644). Four Point Calvinism. (p.645).

Calvinists’ 5 arguments for Limited Atonement. (p.646).

Two Old Testament examples proving the Atonement and its Application are different. (p.646).

- i) Passover lamb’s blood was efficacious only after applied to the doorpost. (p.646).
- ii) Snake-bitten Israelites in the wilderness had to look at a brass serpent on a pole. Numb 21:5-9 Calvinist argument 3 refuted – Christ died for Old Testament saints. (Hebrews 9:15). (p.647).
- Calvinist argument 4 refuted – Romans 5:17 says Christ’s gift must be received. (p.647).
- Calvinists inconsistently define MAN, ALL MEN, ALL in:
 - i) Romans 5:15 “offence of one MANY be dead ... gift hath abounded to MANY”. (p.647).
 - ii) Romans 5:18 “judgment came on ALL MEN ... free gift came on ALL MEN”. (p.647).
 - iii) Isaiah 53:6 “ALL we like sheep ... iniquity of us all.” (p.647).

Calvinist argument 5 refuted – John 3:18 “he that believeth not is condemned”. (p.647).

Christ died for “the WORLD”, “ALL MEN”, and “ALL”: (p.647).

- I. Christ died for “the WORLD”, eg: John 12:19 “The world is gone after him.” (p.648).
 - i) In John, the word “world” occurs 89 times but never means “elect”. (p.648).
 - ii) John 1:29 “Behold the lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of world.” (p.648).
 - iii) John 6:33 “and giveth life unto the world”. (p.648).
 - iv) John 3:16 “For God so loved the world.that whosoever believeth in him should not perish.”
 - v) John 4:42 “This is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world.” (p.648).
 - vi) John 6:51 “my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.” (p.648).
 - vii) In Paul’s letters, the word “world” occurs 69 times, but never means “elect”. (p.649).
 - viii) 2 Corinthians 5:19 “God.. reconciling the world unto himself, ... committed to us.” (p.649)
 - ix) Galatians 1:4 “Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world.”
Key: Paul differentiates between “us” believers and the “world”. (p.649).
 - x) In I John, the word “world” occurs 23 times and never means “elect”. (p.649).
 - xi) I John 2:2 “he is the propitiation for our sins..not for ours only,but also for the sins of the whole world”
 - xii) I John 4:14 “The Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world.” (p.648-650).
 - xiii) I John 5:19 “We know that we are of God, and the whole world lies in wickedness.” (p.650)
- Calvinist Objection: John 11:49-52. Are the “children of God” the church or Israel? (p.650). (Deuteronomy 14:1; Psalm 82:6; Isaiah 43:6; John 7:35).
- II. Christ died for ALL MEN, eg: Matthew 10:22 “hated of all men.” (p.651).

- i) Isaiah 53:6 “All” means the same in both places. (p.651).
- ii) II Corinthians 5:14,15 “elect” are “us” and “we”, so three “alls” mean “all men”. (p.651).
- iii) I Timothy 2:1-6 Three “alls” don’t mean “elect”, because “elect” is “we”. (p.651).
- iv) I Timothy 4:10 “Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe.” (p.652).
This contrast between “all men” and “those that believe” occurs in four places:
 - Galatian 6:10 “do good unto all men, especially to them who are of the household of faith.”
 - Romans 3:22 “the righteousness of God...unto all (100%) and upon all them that believe.”
 - Titus 2:11,12 “the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared unto all men (100% of men), teaching us (the “elect”) that, denying ungodliness...”
- v) Hebrews 2:9 “that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.” (p.652).

III. Christ Died for a Particular Group: His People, Sheep, Church of God, Many. (p.653).

- i) Many: Matthew 20:28 “Son of man came ... to give his life a ransom for many.” (p.653).
Matthew 26:28 “This is my blood ... shed for many for the remission of sins.”
Hebrews 9:28 “Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many.”
(Ans: Romans 5:15,19. Did Adam’s fall affect all or only some of his descendants?)
- ii) His People: Matthew 1:21 “He shall save his people from their sins.” (p.653).
(Ans: Matthew 2:6; Luke 1:68 “His people” = Israel)
- iii) Sheep: John 10:15 “I lay down my life for the sheep.” (p.653).
(Ans: Matthew 10:6; 15:24 “lost sheep of the house of Israel.” Sheep = Israel).

Other Groups Christ Died for that Prove Unlimited Atonement

- i) Those Christ died for who will ultimately go to hell. (II Peter 2:1). (p.654).
- ii) Those Christ died for that describe everybody, all mankind: (p.654).
 - Luke 19:10 “Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.”
Are all lost or only the elect lost?
 - Romans 5:6 “Christ died for the ungodly.” Are all ungodly, or only elect ungodly?
 - Galatians 4:5 “To redeem them that were under the law.” Are all under the law?
 - I Timothy 1:15 “Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.” Are all sinners?
 - I Peter 3:18 “Christ also has once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust.” Are all unjust?
- iii) Christ died for His friends. “that a man lay down his life for his friends.” (John 15:13).
(Ans: Judas was one of Christ’s friends: Matthew 26:50). (p.654).
- iv) Christ died for “whosoever believeth” may claim Christ’s atonement. (p.654).
 - Acts 10:43 “whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”
 - Romans 10:11 “whosoever believeth in him shall not be ashamed.”
 - Romans 10:13 “whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.”
 - I John 5:1 “whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.”
 - Revelation 22:17 “whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.”

4. IRRESISTABLE GRACE (p.656).

- I. Scriptures Refuting: Acts 7:51; John 16:8; 5:40; 3:19; Romans 1:24; Matt.23:37;13:15
- II. Results of IG: Hopelessness; Wrong Conclusions; General & Effectual Call; Makes God a liar. **657**
- III. Verses Calvinists use to support IG: John 1:13; Matthew 20:16; 22:14; Acts 13:48. (p.658).

5. PERSEVERANCE OF THE SAINTS. Arminianism; Lordship Salvation; 4 Definitions; Roman 9. (p.660)

QUESTIONS TO ASK CALVINISTS.

- Q1: How many of the 5 points of Calvinism do you believe?
- Q2: Does man have free will to receive or reject Christ as Saviour? (Revelation 22:17). (p.613).
- Q3: If man has no free will, and the non-elect cannot believe, how can non-elect people be held responsible for what they cannot do? (p.614).
- Q4: Why do men not seek God? Is it Total Depravity? No, it is pride. (Psalm 10:4). (p.617; Q5).
- Q5: Is a man responsible for what he is unable to do? Yes and No. It depends on why he is unable. **618,Q8**
- Q6: Would God offer salvation to men, knowing that they couldn’t receive it? Are God’s offers genuine? (Isaiah 45:19). (p.618; Q10).
- Q7: Are some men elected to salvation or are they not? (p.619; Q1).
(Answer: No. Calvinists confuse election and predestination with salvation).

- Q8: **Does God foreordain sin**, suffering, the Fall, and all things? No. (p.619;Q2).
- Q9: Show me where **God decrees** some people's election or predestination to salvation or hell in the Bible? (Ans: There is no such eternal decree of God in Scripture. Isaiah 10:1)(p.619-620;Q3)
- Q10: If predestination is a secret decree of God, how come Calvinists know so much about it? Deut 29:29
- Q11: What is wrong with Calvinists' view of God's **sovereignty**? (p.620;Q5).
(Ans: It means arbitrariness, and is exalted above His holiness, mercy and other attributes) Q10
- Q12: Did God eternally decree **Herod's** massacre of children under 2 years of age? Sodomy? Rape?
- Q13: Why does God bring evil on people or places? (Jeremiah 19:3-5). (p.621;Q14).
(Answer: Because of their sins, not by any arbitrary decree).
- Q14: How could God decree and foreordain sin if it never came into His mind?(Jer 19:5) (p.621;Q15)
- Q15: Do you know **13 reasons** why God has **not foreordained all things**? (p.621-623).
- Q16: Do you know **8 reasons** why **man has free will**? (p.622;Q17).
- Q17: Does anything happen by **chance**? Jesus and Moses say so (Luke 10:31; Deut 22:6) (p.623;Q19)
(Response to Calvinist accusing you of being Arminian or Pelagian: **You**: "I **believe** some things that Arminius, Pelagius and Calvin believed. I **reject** some things that they believed.")
- Q18: What are **4 bad effects** of Unconditional Election? (p.624).
- Q19: **Is God just** in electing some and passing by the rest? No. (p.629; Q25).
(Answer: The Calvinist god is like the priest and levite who "**passed by**" the half-dead man. (Luke 10:30-32). Did Jesus recommend their behaviour? No. Then neither does God behave this way. Jesus commands us to "Go and do thou likewise". (Luke 10:37), as the Good Samaritan did. Does Jesus practise what He preaches? Surely.
- Q20: Has God made **two groups of men** as elect and non-elect? (p.633).
(Ans: No, because "he fashioneth their hearts alike". Psalm 33:13-15).
- Q21: **When** are people **put "in Christ"**, from eternity past or when saved? (Romans 16:7). (p.636).
- Q22: Can the "elect" be "dead in sin" and yet be "in Christ" at the same time?
- Q23: Have the "elect" ever been in danger of going to **hell**? (Calv. say No) p637,8.Q38. (I Peter 2:6. p.638
- Q24: What does it mean to say **Jesus Christ** was "elect" in Isaiah 42:1? Does this apply to Christians?
- Q25: Is **Israel** still called "elect" in NT? Yes. (p.638-640).
- Q26: Why would Paul endure stonings, beatings, shipwreck for the "elect" if they were sure to be saved? (II Timothy 2:10). Do you? (p.639).
- Q27: In **II Peter 1:10** what is the significance of **calling coming before election**? "Make your calling and election sure".(It destroys Calvinism, as Calvinists think that election comes before calling). (p.640)
- Q28: In II Peter 1:10, how could man make sure what God has already made sure?
(Answer: Calling and election relate to service). (p.640).
- Q29: What is the **true meaning** of NT election from I Peter 2:9; Exodus 19:6; Deuteronomy 14:2?
(Answer: NT election is of the **church as a body**. As the **nation of Israel** was **corporately elected as a body**, so also was the **church corporately elected as a body**.) (p.641).
- Q30: Is your pay packet predestined? (If yes, why go to work?)
Are souls predestined to heaven? (If yes, why don't you work to win them?)
- Q31: Show me **one NT verse** teaching that some are predestined to heaven? (Ephesians 1:5 adoption of children = son placing in heaven). See Romans 8:23. (p.642).
- Q32: Do dead **babies** go to heaven or hell? (p.643; Q47).
- Q33: Do you want all people to be saved? (Yes). Does the devil want all people to be saved? (No)
Does God want all people to be saved? Calvinists say No. Are you more merciful and loving than God?
- Q34: What two OT examples refute **Limited Atonement** by showing that the **Atonement** and its **Application** are to be distinguished? (Passover lamb, and brass serpent on a pole). (p.646).
- Q35: Do the first "**many**", "**all men**" and "**all**" mean the same as the last "**many**", "**all men**" and "**all**" in **Romans 5:15; 5:18; Isaiah 53:6**? (p.647). (p.652.
- Q36: Which 4 verses contrast "**all men**" with "**elect**"? (2 Tim 4:10; Gal. 6:10; Romans 3:22; Titus 2:11,12)
- Q37: What **4 groups did Christ die for**, that prove unlimited atonement?
(Ans: Those who will go to hell, everybody, Jesus' friends, and whosoever believeth).
- Q38: How does a Calvinist **know** if he is saved or not? (By Perseverance or Promises). (p.655;Q14).

107. REFUTING 5-POINT CALVINISM (TULIP)

“My wrath is kindled against thee...for ye have not spoken of me the thing that is right.” Job 42:7.
Calvinism or Reformed doctrine was completely expressed by the Swiss reformer John Calvin (1509-64). It is noted for its emphasis on Predestination and the Sovereignty of God.
Martin Luther’s views on the sovereignty of God were similar to Calvin’s as seen by his tract on “The Bondage of the Will” which spoke strongly of Total Depravity.

After the Reformation, a reaction against Calvinism arose and in Holland, Jacob Arminius (1560-1609) taught a greater emphasis on free will. His 5 theses were condemned by the Synod of Dort (1618) which formulated the 5 points of Calvinism remembered by the acronym TULIP, standing for: Total Depravity of man, Unconditional Election, Limited Atonement, Irresistible Grace, and Perseverance of the saints.

Question: Is Calvinism Biblical? Does God want some to be saved, or all to be saved?

“God our Saviour; who will have all men to be saved...”

The man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all...” I Timothy 2:3-6.

“The Lord...is not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.” 2 Peter 3:9.

Five point Calvinists teach that:

- God does NOT want all to be saved.
- Christ did NOT give himself a ransom for all.
- God does NOT love all the world.
- God wants most people to go to hell.
- God created most people to send them to hell, as a means of glorifying Himself.

The Effect of five point Calvinism is that it:

- Presents God as unjust.
- Presents Christ as a liar and a false advertiser.
- Changes the doctrines of God, man, the Gospel, prayer and evangelism.
- Presents the God of love as a monster.
- Is a teaching that produces atheists.
- Has no remedy for sin for some people.

Once a person accepts that Total Depravity means “Total Inability”, they must accept ULIP.

If man is not able to call on Christ to save him, then God must elect people unconditionally if anyone is to be saved.

Calvinists start with a wrong understanding of man’s nature as having a will bound to his sin nature. They must then adjust the gospel facts to fit their theory.

The TULIP error seeks support from Scripture, but takes these verses out of context.

Question: What are the Errors of 5- point Calvinism?

1. TOTAL DEPRAVITY of man, or **TOTAL INABILITY** of man.

(A false view of the nature of man leads to 3 other false views about God).

By Total Depravity of man, Calvinists mean “Total Inability of man” to believe or call on Christ to save him. Calvinists mean that sinners cannot come to Jesus Christ to receive Him as Saviour, unless they are foreordained or predestined to come to Christ.

Answer: a) We agree that man is totally depraved in the sense that he is “born in sin.” (Psalm 51:5); “he goes astray as soon as he is born.” (Psalm 58:3); “in my flesh, dwelleth no good thing” Roman7:18.

b) We agree that man does not initiate any move to God and salvation on his own.

“there is none that seeketh after God.” (Romans 3:11; Psalm 14:2,3).

c) We strongly disagree with “Total Inability of man.”

The Bible never hints that people are lost because they have no ability to come to Christ.

Jesus said to unsaved Jews, “**Ye will not come to me**, that ye might have life.” John 5:40.

Here Jesus states that lost sinners have the will to come to Jesus for salvation if they so choose.

If nobody has the ability to come to Christ, Jesus would have said, “ye cannot come unto me.”

Jesus wept over Jerusalem saying that he would have gathered them for salvation, but they would not be gathered.

“O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, . . . how often **would I have gathered** thy children together, even as an hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and **ye would not.**” (Matthew 23:37).

Not that they “could not”, but that they “**would not.**” Jesus laid the responsibility for them not being saved squarely on their own rejection of Christ. Jesus did not say that they were unable to come, but that they were unwilling to come. Their unwillingness to come was the cause of their damnation, not God’s failure to elect them as Calvinists say.

d) Jesus in Revelation 22:17 invites all people to exercise their free will to come to Him for salvation. “And **whosoever will**, let him take the water of life freely.” Revelation 22:17.

“If **any man** thirst, let him **come** unto me, and drink.” John 7:37.

If Jesus invited people to come, knowing that some were unable to come, he would have been guilty of falsely advertising something that he knew they were unable to take.

e) **Question 1: Objection:** Calvinists claim that **John 6:44** proves man’s **inability** to come to Christ:

“No man can **come** to me except the Father which hath sent me **draw him.**” (Read John 6:45).

Answer: It is true that no sinner can come to Christ unless drawn by the Holy Spirit.

We believe, however that Christ, through His Holy Spirit, draws every man sufficiently to Himself, to enlighten every man as much as is necessary for that individual to make a decision of his **own free will**. Jesus states that from the cross of Christ issues a drawing power that all men experience.

“And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me.” John 12:32.

All men are drawn to Christ, in **4 ways**, but not all men will receive Christ as their Saviour.

a) **Christ:** The Bible teaches that all men receive light from **Christ**, enabling them to come to Christ:

“That was the true Light, which **lighteth every man** that cometh into the world.” John 1:9.

b) **Creation:** God calls every sinner to Himself through the witness of **Creation**, so that they are without excuse if they reject Christ. “The invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen; . . . so that they are without excuse.” Romans 1:19,20.

c) **Conscience:** God calls sinners through the convicting voice of their **Conscience**, even when they have not heard God’s Word. “their conscience also bearing witness.” Romans 2:11-15, **16**.

d) **Bible:** God calls sinners through the **Bible**: “The entrance of thy **words** giveth **light**.” Psalm 119:130. Hence, everyone who has ever been born, has been given light by **Christ**, by **Creation**, by their **Conscience**, and by the **Bible** (Canon of Scripture). To this light they are capable of responding, and are accountable to God if they reject Christ.

Hence Total Inability of man to come to Christ is a false doctrine without Biblical support.

Question 2: Does man have a free will?

Answer: Total depravity is not so much a statement that man is a sinner in need of salvation (true), BUT a statement on the interaction of the will, heart, and mind.

Question 3: Is man’s will governed and in bondage to his sinful heart and mind, as Calvinists claim?

Answer: Since man’s heart and mind are corrupt, Calvinists claim that the will is incapable of choosing any good at all. Is this true? No, because of these examples:

i) Fallen angels were created perfect. If their wills were governed by their sinless hearts and minds, then they were incapable of sin. Yet the fact that they willed to sin proves that one’s will is not governed by our heart and mind.

ii) Man was created sinless. If Adam and Eve’s will were governed by their sinless heart and mind, then it would have been impossible for man to sin.

That Satan, fallen angels and man have sinned, proves that our will can act independent and contrary to our heart and mind, to decide to do evil. Hence our will is not governed by our heart and mind.

iii) We often make hard decisions of our will contrary to our heart (feelings) and mind (reasoning).

For example, we say ‘This goes against my better judgment, but I’ll do it for you.’ If our will is not governed by our heart and mind, then we do have the power of choice, and we can choose to come to Christ.

Question 4: What if man does not have a free will? What a mockery it makes of Christ’s offer of salvation: “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” Revelation 22:17.

Question 5: Would a loving God hold out the water of eternal life to thirsty souls if He knew they could not take it?

This would constitute **false advertising** and **common deceit**. **God is not dishonest** !!!!!

If God asks honest behaviour of us, **He will act honestly to mankind**. Calling God dishonest is evil.

Question 6: The “Total depravity” idea declares that all men are totally incapable of any good deed or righteous act. Is this true? Can an unsaved sinner be kind, honest, caring etc.?

Yes. A lost sinner can do **righteous acts**:

“Not by **works of righteousness** that **we** have done...” Titus 3:5.

Good deeds do not earn merit for salvation, nor can they cancel the guilt and penalty of sin.

Question 7: Calvinists quote **Ephesians 2:1**, that we “**were dead in trespasses and sins**.” **How dead is dead?** Calvinists say “as dead as a corpse” so that man cannot hear the call of God. To resolve this problem, Calvinists must **change the order** of the **process of salvation** as follows: If natural man is so dead that he cannot hear the call of God to salvation, then before he can hear the gospel invitation, he must be given life. This act of giving life must therefore take place **before** the sinner can hear or respond to God. It is a decision by God in God’s Sovereign Will to impart faith to selected sinners.”

The Biblical order of salvation events are:

- i) **God strives** with sinners, convicting them by the Holy Spirit of their sin. (Genesis 6:3).
- ii) **Man repents** of his sin, and **receives Christ** to be his all sufficient Saviour. (John 1:12).
- iii) **God gives the gift** of eternal life. (Romans 6:23).
- iv) The Holy Spirit enters a person the moment he calls on Christ to be his Saviour. (Romans 10:13).

The Calvinist order of salvation events are:

- i) God **selects** certain sinners to be the object of His grace.
- ii) God **does a work of grace on the sinner**, enabling him to be no longer dead and unresponsive, but capable of a true response to God.
- iii) God **gives faith** as a gift to the selected sinner.
- iv) The sinner then **believes** and is saved.

Calvinists misunderstand Ephesians 2:8 to suggest that the **gift of God is faith**, and not eternal life.

“For by grace are ye saved through **faith** (Greek: *pistis*, feminine noun); and **that** (Greek: *touto*, neuter pronoun) not of yourselves: it is the gift of God...”

Question 8: What is the gift of God? Is it salvation or faith? It is salvation because:

- a) Romans 6:23 says it is **eternal life**, not faith. “The gift of God is eternal life.”
- b) In Ephesians 2:8 the Greek word “**that**” is **neuter**. This shows us that “**that**” which is not of yourselves” cannot be referring to **faith** which is **feminine**, but to something which is **neuter**, such as salvation and eternal life.

Question 9: In what sense is man dead in trespasses and sin?

- a) By **separation** from God. Adam and Eve were separated from God after the fall, but they still heard God’s voice in the conversation in Genesis 3:8-24:

“And they **heard** the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden.” Genesis 3:8.

Even murderers unregenerate Cain could hear the voice of God in Genesis 4:6-15.

- b) By his **wayward life**, as the prodigal son was separated from his father:

“For this my son was dead, and is alive again.” Luke 15:24.

- c) **Not annihilation**, because the dead in hell can still **speak** (Ezekiel 32:20,21; Luke 16:19-31).

Hence, unsaved man is dead in sin, but sinners have the ability to respond. In the grace of God, provision has been made for his cleansing and quickening the moment he looks to Christ and cries “Lord, save me!” (Luke 23:42 and Isaiah 45:22).

Question 10: Is faith a work? If the sinner believes before being saved, isn’t he doing something to get salvation? Does believing in Christ constitute works? No, because:

“Therefore it is of **faith**, that it may be by **grace**.” Romans 4:16.

“And if by **grace**, then is it **no more of works**.” Romans 11:6.

“This is the **work of God**, that ye **believe** on him whom he hath sent.” John 6:29.

Hence faith is not a work a sinner does to merit salvation.

TOTAL DEPRAVITY (Completely Crooked) = **TOTAL INABILITY**

When a Calvinist says he believes in Total Depravity, he is giving you a smoke screen to cover what he really believes. He believes that “man is unable to repent and believe the Gospel as God commands him”.

Important: Total Depravity is the foundation of Calvinism.

The 3 key parts are: Total Depravity, Unconditional Election, Irresistible Grace. T necessitates U and I. If all men are unable to repent and believe the Gospel, then it logically follows that if anyone is to be saved then God must first determine who they are by electing some to salvation (Unconditional Election) and then “irresistably” overcome their “inability” (by Irresistible Grace).

So, if Total Depravity (Inability) is true, then there is nothing anybody can do except claim Lamentations 3:26 as their life verse,

“It is good that a man should both hope and quietly wait for the salvation of the Lord.”

If Total Depravity is true, all one can do is hope that he is the subject of Unconditional Election, and if he is, then quietly wait for God to save him by Irresistible Grace.

The Calvinist, by recognizing that **most Christians believe in man’s depravity and sinfulness**, gains adherents to his position by focusing on Total Depravity instead of its supposed result, Total Inability. Calvinists then insist if we deny their doctrine of Total Depravity, then we must believe in some form of salvation by works, and thus weakening the doctrines of sin and the Fall.

Because of Adam’s fall, unsaved man has imputed sin (Rom. 5:12-19), natural sin (Eph. 2:3), personal sin (Rom.3:23), physical death (I Cor.15:21), spiritual death (Eph.2:1), and eternal death (Rev. 20:14-15). He is dead: “And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins.” Ephesians 2:1. The Bible says the following about man’s sinfulness:

i) This spiritual death began before birth:

“Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me.” Psalm 51:5.

ii) This spiritual death is present at birth:

“The wicked are estranged from the womb: they go astray as soon as they be born, speaking lies” Ps58:3

iii) This spiritual death is manifest in youth:

“The imagination of man’s heart is evil from his youth.” Genesis 8:21.

iv) This human depravity is universal: “All have sinned and come short of the glory of God.” Rom. 3:23

v) Inside, man is a dark pit of sin and wickedness:

“That which cometh out of the man, that defileth the man. For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders, thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness.” Mark 7:20-23.

vi) These come from the heart because the heart is corrupt: “The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?” Jeremiah 17:9; Ecclesiastes 8:11.

vii) It is not man’s wicked deeds that make him depraved, but his depraved heart is the cause of his wicked deeds. Man’s best unregenerate efforts are not good enough.

“Every man at his best state is altogether vanity.” Psalm 39:5.

“But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags.” Isaiah 64:6.

viii) Because of man’s depraved heart, everything man does is tainted with sin:

“An high look, and a proud heart, and the plowing of the wicked is sin.” Proverbs 21:4.

“The sacrifice of the wicked is abomination.” Proverbs 21:27.

ix) The true tendency of man’s depraved nature is a constant increase in the habits and practice of wickedness, unless restrained by God’s grace: “Because sentence against an evil work is not executed speedily, therefore the heart of the sons of men is fully set in them to do evil.” Ecclesiastes 8:11.

Scripture describes unsaved man as ungodly (Romans 5:6), children of disobedience (Colossians 3:6), children of wrath (Ephesians 2:3), servants of sin (Romans 6:20), abominable and filthy (Job 15:15), foolish, disobedient, deceived (Titus 3:3), sheep gone astray (Isaiah 53:6), a troubled sea whose waters cast up mire and dirt (Isaiah 57:20), mouth full of bitterness and cursing (Romans 3:14), no fear of God before their eyes (Romans 3:18), blinded by Satan (2 Corinthians 4:4), his thoughts are vanity (Psalm 94:11), and as speaking perverse things (Acts 20:30).

Two ideas as to how a man can be saved are:

- a) **Bible:** “Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved.” (Acts 16:31).
- b) **TULIP Calvinism:** The sinner hopes he is one of the elect and then waits for God to save him if he is. (Lamentations 3:26).

Key Question: Does man have the free will to receive or reject Jesus Christ as his Saviour?

Answer: Total Depravity insists that man does **not** have a free will to receive Christ as his Saviour, nor indeed to do any good at all. Calvinists believe that man’s will is in bondage to his sinful nature, and may only choose between the greater and lesser evils. They base this on their understanding of the premise that man is “dead in trespasses and sins.” Ephesians 2:1.

To convince skeptics that the Calvinist doctrine of free will is correct, he first invents a caricature of “uncaused choice” of the Arminian position. He then uses the “guilt by association” argument to associate their opponents with Catholics, Arminians, Finneyites and Pelagians (the idea that man did not have a natural tendency towards sin. The Bible teaches the opposite in Romans 3:9-18).

4 things wrong with the Calvinist error that the natural man can only act according to his nature are:

- i) **Saved man:** If an unsaved man is like a “corrupt tree” (Matt. 7:17) that can only produce rotten fruit, then a saved man must be like a “good tree” (Matt. 7:17) that can only produce “good fruit.”

Question: Does a saved man always produce good fruit? No.

Does a man stop sinning when he is saved? No. Do some Christians produce bad fruit? Absolutely!

- ii) One would think that man’s “total inability” would be rectified by salvation since all Calvinists claim the natural man had “inability” and the saved man had “ability.” But Paul still acknowledged **his “inability” after his salvation:** “For that which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not...” Romans 7:15. This is true of all Christians: “For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit...so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.” Galatians 5:17. So even the elect have “inability.”

- iii) After the fall, unsaved man lost his living spirit, but **gained a conscience**- a knowledge of good and evil (Genesis 2:25 and 3:7). Conscience explains why depraved man does not always express the full evil of his sin nature. A false view of man’s nature after the fall leads to the false Calvinist teaching that man is unable to act contrary to his nature.

- iv) **Man has ability in the state of depravity**, as seen from:

- a) A sinner who has never heard the gospel has “ability” because of his **conscience**:

“For when the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law ...their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the meanwhile accusing or else excusing one another.” Romans 2:14,15.

This accusing and excusing proves that the fallen conscience still faces the choice between doing good or evil.

- b) Jesus stated a principle that appeals to man’s free will: “If any man **will do his will**, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.” John 7:17.
Whenever the heart is right, God gives the ability to know God’s truth.

- c) Many Scriptures show that unsaved men do have the ability to do good.

- “A good man leaveth an inheritance to his children’s children...” Proverbs 13:22.

- “But glory, honour and peace to every man that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile.” Romans 2:10.

- “Servants, be subject to your masters with all fear; not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward.” 1 Peter 2:18.

- “If ye do good to them which do good to you, what thank have ye? for sinners also do even the same.” Luke 6:33.

- God stated that the wicked could do good: “God came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night, and said unto him, Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad.” Gen 31:24

- Jesus said that good deeds may be done with a wicked heart:

“If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children...” Matthew 7:11.

A deed can be good no matter what the motive.

Question: If unsaved men can do good, how do the above Scriptures fit with other Scriptures saying that no one does any good? (Ecclesiastes 7:20; Romans 3:12).

Answer: Total Depravity does not mean that there is no good in man, but that there is no good in man that can earn his salvation.

Man sins because of his own desire, not because his will can only follow his nature. (Romans 6:16).
“Every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed.” James 1:14.
Several steps occur when any man sins:

1) Presentation, 2) Illumination as to whether it is right or wrong, 3) Debate, 4) Decision, 5) Action.

Key: The unsaved man sins because he yields to his depraved nature and chooses to sin, not because he is unable to do good.

When faced with such clear evidence of man’s free will, the Calvinist retreats and admits that man has free will, but not pertaining to his acceptance of salvation. If we dispute this Calvinist claim they accuse us of denying salvation by grace and endorsing works for salvation or of making man his own saviour.

Question: If man cannot believe, then how can he be held responsible for what he cannot do?

The Calvinist idea that man cannot accept Jesus Christ of his own free will, is based on 2 pillars:

i) **John 1:13** “were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God”

The 2 phrases “nor of the will of man” (John 1:13) and “it is not of him that willeth” (Romans 9:16), are applied by Calvinists to the will of man to receive Jesus Christ. ie: that man does not have a free will when it comes to salvation. Calvinists have taken the phrase “received him” out of John 1:12 and substituted it for “born” in v.13, giving:

“which received him, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.”

John 1:13 gives the source of the new birth, not the reason why men receive Christ.

- The source of the new birth is not of blood, not physical generation, inheritance or natural descent.
- The source of the new birth is not of the will of flesh, not reformation, self-development or self-effort.
- The source of the new birth is not of the will of man, not relatives, preachers or priests.
- The source of the new birth is “of God”, not of man.

Question: Why does God give anyone the new birth?

Answer: God gives the new birth to “as many as received him.” v.12.

Conclusion: The new birth is God’s work, but receiving Christ is man’s responsibility.

ii) “So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that showeth mercy.” (**Romans 9:16**). Calvinists apply the phrase “not of him that willeth” to claim that man does not have the will to receive Christ and salvation.

The Bible shows that man has the ability to respond to the gospel while in a state of depravity:

- “But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you.” (Romans 6:17).

The reason men don’t receive Christ is not because they have the inability, but because they will not:

“Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.” John 5:40.

By comparing a lost sinner to a dead man, a baby, and a creature, Calvinists attempt to prove that man has inability to repent and believe the gospel.

a) **Dead man:** “You hath he quickened who were dead in trespasses and sins.” (Ephesians 2:1).

All Calvinists compare Total Depravity to a physically dead man or to Lazarus (John 11:43,44), saying “A corpse does not cry out for help.” This may be true of physically dead men, but spiritually dead people are still biologically active and alive, able to walk, talk and fulfil desires. A spiritually dead man can lift up his eyes, see, speak, pray, hear, reason, and feel torment (Luke 16: 23-28). A true analogy showing how a sinner is “dead in trespasses and sins” (Ephesians 2:1) is the prodigal son who “was dead, and is alive again; he was lost, and is found.” (Luke 15:24).

b) **Baby:** “Except a man be born again he cannot see the Kingdom of God.” (John 3:3).

Some Calvinists liken regeneration to the birth of a baby to prove Total Depravity. Physical birth brings into the world a personality which had no existence before conception, but one who is regenerated did have a complete living personality before he was born again.

Question: Is a baby responsible for any of its actions before it is born? NO! Then neither would an unsaved man be responsible for any of his actions, if the analogy were true.

c) **Creature:** Calvinists analogize that just as any creature cannot cause its own creation, neither can any individual make himself a new creature in Christ. This analogy is false because regeneration is not creating a person with no prior existence, but is the renewing and restoring of a person whom sin had unfitted for communion with God.

All these 3 analogies break down because of responsibility:

Question: Is an uncreated creature responsible for anything? No.

Is an unregenerate sinner responsible for anything? Yes.

Refuting 3 Types of Calvinist “Proof Texts” for Total Depravity

Calvinists assume that these cannot do something because of Total Depravity, which is Total Inability.

i) Someone who “**cannot**” do something”

- **John 8:43** “Why do ye not understand my speech? Even because **ye cannot hear my word.**”

- **John 14:17** “Even the Spirit of truth: whom the world **cannot receive**, because it seeth him not,”

- **Romans 8:8** “So then they that are in the flesh **cannot please God.**”

Question 1: Who does **John 8:43** refer to? “**ye cannot hear my word.**”

Answer: Not all mankind, but unbelieving Jews. They could not hear Christ’s word. Why?

- not because they were unregenerate (Acts 26:18),

- not because they were of their father the devil (John 8:43);

- not because they were “not of God” (John 8:47), **BUT**

- because they did the lusts of their father (John 8:44), and

- because they did not believe Christ when he told them the truth (John 8:45,46).

Their inability was not foreordained, but conditional on believing that Jesus was I AM. (John 8:24).

Question 2: In **John 14:17** what does the phrase mean, “whom the **world cannot receive**”?

Answer: The world cannot receive the Holy Spirit’s enlightening, not because they are non-elect or have total inability, but because “it seeth him not, nor knows him,” meaning because they judge by their physical senses. They walk by sight, not by faith. What they cannot see, hear, taste or feel, makes no impression on them. Because they cannot see the Holy Spirit operating, they conclude that His influence is delusive. Hence they cannot receive Him.

Question 3: In **Romans 8:7,8** what does the phrase mean “Because the carnal mind is enmity against God...They that are in the flesh **cannot please God**.”

Calvinists say that “enmity against God” is total depravity, and “cannot please God” is total inability.

Answer: This means that unsaved man cannot do anything good enough to please God to merit or earn his own salvation. The flesh cannot be reformed, improved, trained or changed unless God changes it. The passage is not saying that because of this “inability,” a person cannot receive Christ. God is pleased when sinners receive the Gospel:

“it pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.” 1 Corinthians 1:21.

ii) Someone’s “inability” but with a **reason given** for it:

- **John 6:44** “No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him.”

- **John 6:65** “No man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father.”

- **John 12:39-40** “Therefore they could not believe, because Esaias said again, He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, not understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.”

Question 4: What does **John 6:44** mean: “No man can come to me **except the Father draw him**”? and “No man can come unto me, **except it were given unto him of my Father.**” **John 6:65.**

John 6:44 is the main Calvinist proof text for Irresistable Grace. John 6:44 is a major Calvinist proof text for Total Depravity, because it gives a reason for the sinner’s inability to come to Christ as being the lack of an “irresistable effectual call” by God the Father. Calvinists teach that the “drawing” in John 6:44 is Irresistable Grace. By misapplying v.44 to salvation in this Church age, Calvinists claim that, if God draws all men, then all men will be saved. Therefore, they conclude that God only draws the “elect”, those whom He has given to the Son (John 6:37).

Answer: This “drawing” is amplified by 2 verses in the context:

a) “It is written in the prophets, And they shall be all taught of God. Every man, therefore, that hath heard and hath learned of the Father, cometh unto me.” (John 6:45).

b) The other is **John 6:65**. “No man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father” In support of Christ’s statement in 6:44, Jesus appeals to Isaiah 54:13 by quoting it in John 6:45, “And all thy children shall be taught of the LORD; and great shall be the peace of thy children.” (Isaiah 54:13). This verse refers to restored Israel in the Millennium as the entire chapter shows, not to the “elect” in the church age. The ones given to Christ are Jewish disciples during Christ’s public ministry, not “elect” in the Church age. Doctrinally, these verses are still before Calvary. The New Testament has not yet been instituted (Matthew 26:28) and the Holy Spirit has not yet been given (John 7:39). Hence the Calvinist error in John 6:44 is two-fold:

a) They misapply John 6:44 from its correct context as being in Christ’s earthly ministry to Israel, to a doctrinal statement on Salvation in the Church age.

b) They make the drawing of God irresistible and equate it with Salvation. Acts 7:51 shows God’s grace is resistable. “ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.”

Note: That **John 6:44** is a pre-crucifixion passage directly referring to God’s true elect (the Jews), can be seen by the change taking place at the end of Christ’s public ministry after the Jews rejected Him. “And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me.” (John 12:32).

Key: Calvinists don’t understand that in **John 6:44** it is the Father who draws people to Christ during His 3 year ministry, but in **John 12:32** it is Christ who draws all men to Himself after Calvary. Not only did Christ’s death refer to more than the “elect,” but His birth did also:

“That was the true light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world.” (John 1:9).

Note: Instead of the Father drawing men during Christ’s 3 year ministry, the lifting up of Christ on the cross is followed by the Holy Spirit’s work in the Church age of “When he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment.” (John 16:7-11).

The Holy Spirit will “reprove the WORLD of sin,” not just reprove the “elect.”

John 12:39-40 “Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again, He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their hearts; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.”

Calvinists claim that the reason why some “could not believe” was because God “blinded their eyes”, calling it Unconditional Election to Reprobation (Predestination to hell). This will be explained later. Calvinists often appeal to another 2 verses to teach Total Depravity.

iii) **Romans 3:11** “There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.”

Calvinists correctly grant the initiative to God in saving sinners. John 3:16; Romans 5:8; I John 4:19. But to conclude from this that a sinner cannot believe the Gospel when confronted with it, is wrong.

Answer: There are 3 errors of Calvinists in using this phrase to teach Total Depravity.

- 1) The intent of the passage is not to teach man’s inability;
- 2) Nothing is said about people not being able to seek God;
- 3) Seeking God is different from believing the Gospel.

Firstly, Calvinists forget that Paul in establishing the universal guilt of Jews and Gentiles in Romans 3, quotes from the Old Testament for the purpose of giving weight to his arguments.

He is not charging every member of humanity with every sin.

He is not teaching the inability of unsaved people to receive Christ. eg: Cornelius, an unregenerate sinner (Acts 11:14), was a ‘just man, and one that feareth God, and of good report.’ (Acts 10:22).

He was a “devout man, and one that feareth God with all his house.” (Acts 10:2).

Secondly, nothing is said in this phrase, verse or context about anyone not being able to seek God, although this is how every Calvinist reads it. The Bible commands men to seek God in these verses:

- “Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near.” (Isaiah 55:6).
- “Seek ye me, and ye shall live.” (Amos 5:4).
- “Seek ye the Lord, all ye meek of the earth.” (Zephaniah 2:3).
- God set the bounds of the nations so “that they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him.” (Acts 17:26,27).

- “Seek the Lord and his strength, seek his face continually.” (I Chronicles 16:11).
- Those who seek God will find Him: “Ye shall seek me, and find me, when ye shall search for me, with all your heart.” (Jeremiah 29:13).
- God “is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.” (Hebrews 11:6).
- “Blessed are they that....seek him with the whole heart.” (Psalm 119:2). (2 Chronicles 12:14).
- It is evil not to seek God: “he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek the Lord.”
- “They entered into a covenant to seek the Lord God . . . Whosoever would not seek the Lord God of Israel should be put to death.” (II Chronicles 15:12,13).
- These commands to seek God are not in vain: “I said not unto the seed of Jacob, seek ye me in vain.” (Isaiah 45:19).

Note: This does not mean that a man who has rejected God will be able to find Him whenever he desires: “Then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer; they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me.” (Proverbs 1:28).

Finally, seeking God is not the same thing as believing the Gospel. Seeking God is not enough, eg: A Jew who seeks God by keeping the Old Testament Commandments is just as lost as Gentiles who don’t seek God. Salvation is never obtained by seeking God, but by receiving Christ as your Saviour: “If ye believe not that I am *he*, ye shall die in your sins.” (John 8:24). “no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” (John 14:6).

Key Question 5: If the reason men don’t seek God is not because they are Totally Depraved, then what is it?

Answer: The reason men don’t seek God is simple: “The wicked, through the **pride** of his countenance, will not seek after God: God is not in all his thoughts.” (Psalm 10:4).

iv) **I Corinthians 2:14** “But the natural man **receiveth not** the **things** of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” Calvin concluded from this verse that “faith is not something that depends on our decision, but it is something given by God.” (*Commentaries, Vol 9, p 62*).

Calvinists, teach Total Inability read this verse as: “But the natural man receiveth not Jesus Christ: for he is foolishness unto him: neither can he receive him, because he is spiritually discerned”.

Question 6: How do we reply to Calvinists on this verse?

Answer: The context is clearly things, not Jesus Christ.

Key: Receiving spiritual things and receiving Jesus Christ are two different things. “Things” are discussed in every verse in I Corinthians 2:9-15. The context refers to believers knowing spiritual things. God gives the Holy Spirit to his sons, so that they may have spiritual understanding. Calvinists wish us to believe that, because the natural man cannot understand spiritual things, he cannot receive Jesus Christ. This verse teaches that the natural, unsaved man cannot discern the truth, beauty, wisdom, value and excellence of divine things, because he does not yet have the indwelling Holy Spirit. If he received Christ as Saviour, he would then have the Holy Spirit and would then be able to know and discern spiritual things. It does not teach that he is unable ever to receive Christ, due to Total Inability or Election to Reprobation. “In whom also **after** that ye believed, ye were sealed with the Holy Spirit of promise.” (Ephesians 1:13).

Conclusion: None of these 3 types of Scriptures, which Calvinists use to prove Total Depravity, ever mention man’s depravity. Calvinists who use these verses to prove Total Depravity are dishonest because Calvinists really mean Total Inability.

Conclusion: Reply to Total Inability.

Total Depravity is the foundation of Calvinism, and necessitates the other 4 points:

T: If all men are unable to repent and believe the Gospel, then it logically follows that,

U: If anybody is to be saved, God must first determine who they are (Unconditional Election), then

I: Irresistably overcome their “inability” (Irresistable Grace) so they can repent & believe the Gospel.

If Total Depravity is true, there is nothing anyone can do except hope that he is unconditionally elected, and if he is, then quietly wait for God to save him by Irresistable grace. (Lamentations 3:26)

But if Total Inability is false, so is **ULIP**.

Question 7: Why do Calvinists so persistently hold to Total Inability?

Answer: Calvinists believe that, if a man has the ability to respond to the Gospel, then this somehow robs God of his glory in saving sinners. While believing Total Inability, Calvinists strongly believe that man is fully responsible for what he cannot do. “Man’s total incapacity does not absolve him from full responsibility.” (*Custance, p. 117,118*).

Question 8: Is a man responsible for what he is unable to do?

Answer: Yes and No. It depends on why he has inability. eg: A man under the influence of drugs is accountable for his actions only if he knowingly and wilfully put himself in that state (he took drugs). But a man under the influence of drugs is not accountable if he did not knowingly and wilfully put himself in such a state (he was drugged).

Question 9: Are infants and the retarded responsible to God, even though they lack natural ability?

Answer: No, says Pink (*Son of God, p.154*), yet Calvinists maintain that non-elect sinners are responsible to God, even though they have Total Inability.

Key Principle that overthrows Total Depravity/Inability is: A man can be condemned for his ignorance or his unwillingness, but never for his inability to do what God has commanded him to do.

There are 2 kinds of Scriptures that overthrow Total Depravity/Inability:

i) Scriptures containing a command to believe:

- “Look unto me and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth.” (Isaiah 45:22).
- “repent ye, and believe the Gospel.” (Mark 1:15).
- “God . . . now commandeth all men everywhere to repent.” (Acts 17:30).
- “This is his commandment, that we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.” (I John 3:23).
- “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” (Revelation 22:17).
- “Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.” (Matthew 11:28).
- “If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.” (John 7:37).

Question 10: If Total Depravity/Inability is true, then is God mocking His Creation here?

Would God offer salvation to a man, knowing that the man could never even will to receive it? No! The God of the Bible is not the god of Calvinism. God guarantees His offers are genuine:

“I said not unto the seed of Jacob, seek ye me in vain: I the Lord speak righteousness. I declare things that are right.” (**Isaiah 45:19**). Erasmus used this argument against Luther in their debate over free will, saying, “If it is not in the power of every man to keep what is commanded, all the promises, threats, reproofs, blessings, curses and precepts are of necessity useless.”

Desiderius Erasmus quoted in *Luther. p 171*.

ii) Scriptures that imply the possibility that a man can believe:

- “Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.” (**John 5:40**).
 - “Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved.” (**I Thessalonians 2:16**).
- These verses do not mean that a man will always believe, but they do show that this possibility exists. If there exists even the slightest possibility that a man could believe (as seen by the word “might”), then the doctrine of Total Depravity/Inability is destroyed, because there are no possibilities in TULIP Calvinism.

2. UNCONDITIONAL ELECTION

If Total Inability be admitted, then Unconditional Election follows by the most inescapable logic, because if anybody is to be saved and if man cannot choose Christ, then God must choose those who shall be the objects of His grace.

Election and predestination are Bible terms, but we object to Calvinists’ perversion of these terms. ELECT = Select or choose. PREDESTINE = Determine beforehand.

Question: Who or what is elected?

Why were they elected?

What are they elected to?

Calvinist Definition of Unconditional Election:

“By the decree of God, for the manifestation of His own glory, some men and angels are predestined unto everlasting life, and others are foreordained to everlasting death.”

(*Westminster Confession of Faith, III:3*).

It is a sovereign, eternal decree where God chooses who is going to be saved and who is going to be lost. This second point of **TULIP** is the main teaching and decides if one is to be classed as a Calvinist.

Question 1: Are men elected to salvation or are they not? This is the issue.

Key Basic Error of Calvinism is: Confusing election and predestination with salvation.

If one denies Unconditional Election, Calvinists accuse us of:

- “The reason we are prone to disbelieve this doctrine is that we are not humble enough.” (*Rose p.19*).
- “By making election conditional upon something that man does, even if what he does is simply to repent and believe the Gospel, God’s grace is seriously compromised.” (*Storms, Chosen for Life p.55*)
- “The bottom line is, if you deny election, you deny salvation by grace. To reject election is to reject salvation by grace and promote salvation by works.” (*Carl Marton, Does the Bible Teach Election? The Berean Baptist Banner, Jan 5 1995, p.19*).

Double predestination means predestining some to salvation and others to damnation.

Well-known Calvinists are Louis Berkhof, A W Pink, Spurgeon, and Boettner.

Philosophical concepts in the Decree of Unconditional Election are:

- i) Unconditional Election was by a sovereign, eternal decree. It is eternal and singular, meaning: It is one decree for one purpose with many events.
- ii) Sovereignty of God, meaning that God is in sovereign control of every detail of history. The Calvinists, Talbot and Crampton, say: “The sovereignty of God is foundational to Christianity. It is the most basic principle of Calvinism.” (p.14).
- iii) This singular, eternal, sovereign decree is also said to be all-encompassing.
ie: God by His decree has foreordained everything that ever happens in time.

Question 2: Does God really foreordain all things? Calvinists think so.

Answer: Check the *Westminster Shorter Catechism*:

“The decrees of God are His eternal purpose, according to the counsel of his will, whereby, for His own glory, He hath foreordained whatsoever comes to pass.”

Calvinists insist that God foreordained the Fall of man into sin, along with all the suffering.

(See Boettner, *Predestination*, p.234, and Pink, *Sovereignty*, p.147).

Calvinists also insist that God foreordained every other sin. “It is even Biblical to say that God has foreordained sin.” (Palmer p.82).

i) Question 3: What does the Bible say about decrees?

Answer: The Bible uses the word “decree” in reference to God on 8 out of 56 occasions, and in reference to man 48 out of 56 times. It is used more of man than of God. Those making decrees were: Cyrus (Ezra 5:13); Darius (Ezra 6:1); Artaxerxes (Ezra 7:21); Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 3:10); Esther (Esther 9:32); Caesars (Luke 2:1; Acts 17:7); Apostles (Acts 16:4).

The decrees of God in the Bible concern: the rain (Job 28:26); the sea (Job 38:10); Jesus Christ (Psalm 2:7); the heavens (Psalm 148:6); a consumption (Isaiah 10:22); the sand (Jeremiah 5:22); and Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 4:24). Notice the following about God’s decrees:

- a) There are 7 decrees of God.
- b) None of these decrees are said to be eternal.
- c) No decrees involve election or predestination, yet Calvinists consider predestination a divine decree.

Question 4: Which Scripture says this? None. There is no such thing as God’s eternal decree of predestination or election. Calvinists then say it is one of God’s secret decrees. Calvinist’s motto is Deuteronomy 29:29 “The secret things belong unto the Lord our God: but those things which are revealed belong unto us and to our children forever, that we may do all the words of this law.” Since God’s ways are not our ways, nor His thoughts our thoughts (Isaiah 55:8,9), Unconditional Election is called a secret counsel of God that can’t be understood. If predestination is a secret decree, how is it that the Calvinists know so much about it? To the Calvinists’ invented decrees, God says: “Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees.” (**Isaiah 10:1**).

ii) The **Sovereignty of God** is the exercise of His supremacy (definition).

God is the one and only Supreme Being. "But our God is in the heavens: he hath done whatsoever he hath pleased." (Psalm 115:3; See Psalm 47:2; Daniel 4:35). While "Sovereignty of God" sounds Biblical, Calvinists misinterpret it to take precedence over His other attributes.

Question 5: What is the problem with Calvinists' view of God's sovereignty?

Answer: The problem is that Saddam Hussein, Hitler, Stalin, Mao and the Popes were sovereign.

Key: When a Calvinist discusses God's sovereignty, he means **arbitrariness**, thus presenting a god who could change, by-pass or **ignore** his own laws because of his so-called sovereignty. So, by this arbitrary **capriciousness**, God could damn to hell men yet uncreated, for **no other reason** than His sovereign pleasure. The Bible paints a different picture of God than this Calvinist nonsense. God's first and foremost attribute is absolute **holiness**. (Psalm 145:17; Isaiah 6:3; Exodus 15:11). "His name is Holy" (Psalm 33:21; Ps. 47:8). The most wicked, vile, bloody dictator could be sovereign yet unholy.

Because God is holy, he exercises his sovereignty only in ways consistent with his holiness.

Key: The Calvinists' error is to exalt God's sovereignty above all his other attributes.

iii) **Question 6:** Calvinists think that God's eternal, sovereign decree is **all-encompassing**, meaning that God, by his decree has **foreordained everything** that ever occurs in time. Is this view right or wrong?

Answer: We agree that God has a right to guide (Psalm 73:24), direct (Proverbs 3:6), lead (Psalm 139:24), restrain (Psalm 76:10) and harden (Exodus 14:17); but **God's influence** is **different** to God **foreordaining** every thought and action of man.

Key: Calvinists' error is as follows: God's influence, direction, control and permission are different to God's election, predestination, foreordination and decrees. God knows what man will do in the future without God foreordaining it. (Isaiah 42:9; 46:10).

Major Question 7: Has God from eternity past **foreordained all things** that come to pass?

Question 8: If the Lord **directs** the steps of a man, is this not proof that he is being controlled or governed by God? "A man's heart deviseth his way: but the Lord directeth his steps." (Proverbs 16:9,1,33). "The King's heart is in the hand of the Lord, as the rivers of water: he turneth it whithersoever he will." (Proverbs 21:1). Calvinists think that God has foreordained every thought, word, deed and motive of all people in history.

Note: When Calvinists see the words "**preparations**", "**answers**" (Proverbs 16:1), "**steps**" (Prov. 16:4), "**goings**" (Prov. 20:24), "**judgments**" (Prov. 29:26), they see this as proof that God has foreordained all things. "The **preparations** of the heart in man, and the **answer** of the tongue, is from the Lord." Prov 16:1

Question 9: Does God foreordain the following answers, steps, goings and judgments?

- What if a man **prepared** (Prov.16:1) to commit **murder & rape**? Did God foreordain this? Of course not
- What if a man's **answer** (Proverbs 16:1) was **blasphemous and filthy**?
- Was the **answer** of Ananias and Sapphira (Acts 5:25) from the Lord?
- What about the **steps** (Proverbs 16:9) of a man as he **steals** or viciously **beats** innocent victims?
- What about a man's **goings** (Proverbs 20:24) into a **pub or brothel**?
- What if a man **judged** (Proverbs 29:26) that **sodomy and incest** were OK? Did God ordain these? No! That God does not foreordain these events contradicts and disproves the Calvinists' claim of God's all-encompassing, eternal, sovereign decree. Paul asks: "Is there unrighteousness with God? God forbid." (Romans 9:14).

Question 10: Did God eternally decree Herod to massacre all the children under 2 years old? (Matthew 2:16). No, but God foreknew Herod would do it. (Jeremiah 31:15). Did God foreordain the wickedness of Ahab (I Kings 21:1-13) and Manasseh (II Chronicles 33:9)? No!

Note: Calvinists' error in Proverbs is to **read "foreordained" into** expressions speaking of God's control and influence, such as "of the Lord", "from the Lord", "directeth" and "turneth".

Question 11: Does God foreordain the time of one's death, as Calvinists think Job 14:5 ("Seeing his days are determined") and Ecclesiastes 3:2 ("a time to die") teach?

Answer: No, because:

- God was going to kill Hezekiah, but added 15 years to his life. (Isaiah 38:5).

ii) Calvinists take general statements about mankind and make them into individual decrees for each person. All men do not always die at exactly 70 or 80 years (Psalm 90:10). Some men “shall not live out half their days” (Psalm 55:23), and some die before their appointed time.

(“Why shouldest thou die before thy time?” Ecclesiastes 7:17).

iii) Calvinists contradict their belief that God has predetermined the day of their death by using medical advances to preserve and extend their lifespan.

Question 12: Calvinists use the crucifixion of Christ as proof that God has foreordained every act of man. Is this true? “Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain.” (Acts 2:23).

“to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done.” (Acts 4:27,28).

Answer: If the Jews addressed in Acts were just carrying out God’s decree, then they wouldn’t be declared responsible. They would be declared obedient. The Bible affirms their responsibility by accusing them of crucifying Christ (Acts 2:36; 4:10), delivering up, denying, killing him (Acts 3:13-15), slaying and hanging him (Acts 5:30; 10:39), as well as betraying and murdering him (Acts 7:52). Jesus said: “And truly the Son of Man goeth as it was determined: but woe unto that man by whom he is betrayed.” (Luke 22:22). Although Jesus Christ had to be betrayed and crucified, no one man was foreordained to do it. Jesus said about the betrayer: “Good were it for that man if he had never been born.” (Mark 14:21). If Judas had not been born, then someone else would have done it. No-one is ever foreordained to commit any sin.

Question 13: Does God foreordain sin as Calvinists claim? Some philosophers think that the existence of evil makes it unreasonable to believe in God. The Scottish philosopher David Hume (1711-1776) said of God and evil: “Is God willing to prevent evil, but not able? Then he is impotent. Is God able to prevent evil but not willing? Then he is malevolent.”

Answer: The Christian answer to the fact that God is all-knowing, all-powerful, and wholly good, yet evil exists, is that philosophers have not considered that God uses evil to punish evildoers and to discipline rebellious Christians. There is a big difference between evil on one hand, and sin and wickedness on the other. Because God is holy, he cannot sin or commit wickedness. God often brings evil upon individuals, such as Absalom (II Samuel 17:14), Jeroboam (I Kings 14:10), Ahab (I Kings 21:21) and Nebuchadnezzar Daniel 4:28-33), as well as nations, such as Israel (Nehemiah 13:18; Daniel 9:14) and Jerusalem (Ezekiel 14:22) as punishment for their evil actions. “I make peace, and create evil: I the Lord do all these things.” (Isaiah 45:7). Here, God refutes Cyrus’ Zoroastrian idea of a good god and a bad god. ‘Shall there be evil in the city, and the Lord hath not done it?’ (Amos 3:6). God permits evil.

Question 14: Why does God bring evil on people or places? (Jeremiah 19:3-5).

Answer: Because of the people’s sins. It is not because of an arbitrary, sovereign, eternal decree. God brings evil to punish man’s sin. God said “Behold I will bring evil upon this placeBecause they have forsaken me, and have estranged this place, and have burned incense in it unto other gods, . . . and have filled this place with the blood of innocents; They have built also the high places of Baal, to burn their sons with fire for burnt offerings unto Baal, which I commanded not, nor spake it, neither came it into my mind.” **(Jeremiah 19:3-5).**

Notice: i) God brought evil because of the people’s sins.

ii) God expressly stated that he didn’t decree their sins: “Which I commanded not, nor spake it, neither came it into my mind.” (Jeremiah 19:5).

Question 15: How could God decree and foreordain their sin if it never came into his mind?

Question 16: Why does sin take place? Because of the depravity of man, something Calvinists forget except when trying to prove man’s inability to respond to the Gospel.

God Has Not Foreordained Everything In One All-Encompassing Decree Because:

1) **God says so:** How could God decree and foreordain man’s sin if it never came into his mind? “commanded not, nor spake it, neither came it into my mind.” **(Jeremiah 19:5).**

2) **God’s holy nature** would not allow him to be the author of sin. God would never command a man to repent, then fix it so he couldn’t repent in order to damn him. But this is exactly what **TULIP** Calvinism teaches.

3) God's permission: Often God is said to do something when in fact He only permitted it to be done. For example:

- Satan provoked David to number Israel (1 Chron. 21:1), but God was said to do it. (2 Samuel 24:1)
- Satan was the cause of Job's trouble (Job 1:12; 2:7), but Job (1:21), the writer of Job (42:11) and Satan himself (1:11; 2:5) attributed it to God. God lifted the hedge, permitting Satan's attacks.

4) Man's responsibility is destroyed if God has predestined all things. The Calvinist Jay Adams sees the problem: "The doctrines of divine sovereignty, embracing predestination, election, etc. are often dismissed as foolish and dangerous teachings, that if accepted and believed, would destroy evangelism, human initiative and responsibility." (Grand Demonstration, p.67).

5) Man's Free Will is destroyed if God predestined all things. Sovereignty means that God controls all things including our wills. Free will means that our wills are not controlled by God. This is a clear contradiction.

Question 17: How can a person be a free and responsible agent if his actions have been foreordained from eternity?

We reject this Calvinist error by discussing examples of man's free will in Scripture:

i) Freewill offerings (16 times in OT) teach that after a person had made all the offerings prescribed by the Mosaic law, he might out of gratitude for God's grace, give something additional.

"Ye shall offer at your own will a male without blemish," Leviticus 22:19.

The phrase "at your own will" teaches that he had the free will to give it or not to give it.

ii) Freewill journey to Jerusalem teaches that man has freewill: "I make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel, and of his priests and Levites, in my realm, which are minded of their own freewill to go up to Jerusalem, go with thee." (Ezra 7:13).

iii) Adam and Eve had free will: "of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat" Genesis 2:16.

iv) The people and governors of Israel "willingly offered themselves" (Judges 5:2,9) to defeat Sisera.

v) David encouraged Solomon to serve God "with a willing mind." (1 Chronicles 28:9).

vi) During Nehemiah's time, some people "willingly offered themselves to dwell at Jerusalem." (Nehemiah 11:2).

vii) New Testament Prayer promises are based on each believer's free will: "If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you." (John 15:7).

viii) Paul preached willingly: "For if I do this thing willingly, I have a reward: but if against my will a dispensation of the gospel is committed unto me." (1 Corinthians 9:17).

Free will is both a Bible doctrine and used in the Bible, but unconditional election, sovereign grace, sovereignty of God and God's eternal decree are not.

6) Prayer proves that God has not predestined all things.

Question 18: Does prayer change things? Most Christians think so.

i) It did for Moses when in response to Moses' prayer God changed His mind about destroying Israel and Aaron (Deuteronomy 9:18-29).

ii) It did for Hezekiah when God extended his life by 15 years in response to his prayer. 2 Kings 20:1-6

iii) It did for Elijah when he prayed for no rain, and then later for rain (James 5:17,18).

iv) It does for righteous men: "The effectual, fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much." James 5:16. Calvinists insist that prayer doesn't change things. Calvinists think that if God has already fixed everything, then who are we to infringe upon His sovereignty and request a change?

The Calvinist Joseph Wilson says: "Since predestination is true, it follows, as night follows day, that prayer does not change things." (Baptist Examiner, June 8, 1991, p.8).

7) Calvinist's Admissions reject the idea that God has foreordained everything by an all-encompassing decree. N.L.Rice (p.9) states that divine foreordination seems "unscriptural, absurd, and impious."

8) Calvinist's Rejections. G.C.Berkouwer wonders how theologians can "at the same time speak of God as the all-causing One, and not say that He is the cause of human sin." (Baker, p.8)

9) **Other Philosophies** which teach “what will be will be” are no different to Calvinism.

i) When a **philosopher** believes “what will be will be” it is called **determinism**.

ii) When a **stoic** believes “what will be will be,” it is called **fate**.

iii) When a **Muslim** believes “what will be will be,” it is called **fatalism**.

iv) When a **Calvinist** believes “what will be will be,” it is called **predestination**, and claims it alone is a Bible doctrine.

10) **Semantics** or accepted meaning of words. The word “whosoever” clearly disproves any all-encompassing decree. “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” Rev. 22:17.

11) **Contingency** verses showing the **possibility of an event happening** proves there is no such thing as God foreordaining everything by an all-encompassing decree.

There are many things in the Bible that are **not fixed** such as:

- if Christ’s works had been done in Tyre and Sidon they **would have** repented (Matthew 11:21).

- many of God’s promises to Jews were conditional such as Deuteronomy 5:33; 6:1-3; 11:16-17.

- “ye will not come to me, that ye **might** have life.” John 5:30.

- “Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they **might** be saved.” I Thessalonians 2:16.

12) **Chance** is a reason that God did not foreordain everything by an all-encompassing decree.

Question 19: Does anything happen by chance? According to the Bible it does.

“And **by chance** there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.” Luke 10:31.

“If a bird’s nest **chance** to be before thee in the way in any tree,...” Deuteronomy 22:6.

This doesn’t mean that God doesn’t know what is going to happen, or has no control over His creation, but it does mean that there is no all-encompassing decree of predestination.

13) **Common Sense** rejects any foreordained all-encompassing decree. If “What will be will be” was true, then nobody could avoid carrying out God’s sovereign, eternal, foreordained decree.

Question 20: Did the man who cut his concubine into 12 pieces and sent her parts throughout Israel (Judges 19:29) do so by God’s sovereign, eternal decree? No!

Question 21: Did the people who burned their children in the fire to Molech, or have sex with animals (Leviticus 18:21-24) do so by the determinate counsel of God’s decree? No!

Erasmus well described this wicked error of absolute predestination in “Luther’s Discourse on Free will,” p.11,12 as follows:

“Let us assume the truth of what Wycliffe has taught and Luther has asserted, namely that everything we do happens not on account of our free will, but out of sheer necessity. What can be more useless than to publish this paradox to the world? **Secondly**, let us assume that it is true, as Augustine has written somewhere, that God causes both good and evil in us and that he rewards us for his good works wrought in us and punishes us for the evil deeds done in us. What a loophole the publications of this opinion would open to godlessness among innumerable people. In particular: mankind is lazy, indolent, malicious and in addition, incorrigibly prone to every impious outrage. How many weak ones would continue in their perpetual and laborious battle against their own flesh? What wicked fellow would henceforth try to better his conduct? Who could love with all his heart a God who fires a hell with eternal pain, in order to punish there poor mankind for his own evil deeds, as if God enjoyed human distress?”

Question 22: If God doesn’t decree all the sin and wickedness in the world, then why does it happen?

Answer: Because God **permits** it, but “**permit**” and “**decree**” are totally different concepts.

Our responsibility is to “resist the devil, and he will flee from you.” James 4:7 and I Peter 5:9.

UNCONDITIONAL ELECTION Blasphemes God's Character in 4 Ways.

2 Peter 3:9, 1 Peter 1:2, 1 Timothy 2:4, 2 Thessalonians 2:13, John 1:7; 3:17.

I) Definition: "God's choice of certain individuals unto salvation before the foundation of the world rested solely on His own sovereign will. (False). His choice of certain sinners was not based on any foreseen response or obedience on their part, such as faith or repentance. (F). On the contrary God gives faith and repentance to each individual whom He selected. (F). Those whom God sovereignly elected, He brings through the power of the Spirit to a willing acceptance of Christ. (F). Thus, God's choice of the sinner, not the sinner's choice of Christ, is the ultimate cause of salvation." (F)

Note: Every sentence in the above definition contains error. This definition says that some people are elected to heaven, while others are elected to hell and can do nothing about it.

It is wholly God's part and without any human condition.

Calvin in his book entitled "Institutes", Book III, Chapter 23 states it as follows:

"Not all men are created with a similar destiny. Eternal life is foreordained for some, and eternal damnation for others. Every man therefore, being created for one or the other of these ends, we say, he is predestined either to life or to death."

II) This wicked and foolish teaching of unconditional election is both unbiblical and blasphemous of God's character in these ways:

a) It makes Christ a liar when he invites "whosoever will" to come to Him for salvation, if He knows that some are non-elect and therefore impossible for them to come and be saved. This false theory attacks the honesty of Christ when He invites people to be saved if He has already foreordained them to hell, all along never intending to save them.

It portrays Christ as a liar when He said to some Jews, "Ye will not come to me that ye might have life" (John 5:40) if He knew that they could not come to Him.

Calvinists claim that "whosoever will" (in Rev. 22:17), "any man" (John 7:37; 2 Peter 3:9), "all" (1 Timothy 2:3-6, 2 Peter 3:9), and "world" (John 3:16) do not mean what all dictionaries say they mean. It is Calvinists who are lying, not Jesus Christ.

b) It opposes God's love and justice.

A Calvinist's understanding of "God so loved the world" (John 3:16) is that "God so loved the elect." The god of the Calvinist hates sinners. This is not the God of the Bible.

According to 5 point Calvinism, God:

- ~ hates a non-elect baby before he is born,
- ~ hates a non-elect baby when he is born,
- ~ hates a non-elect person in his infancy,
- ~ hates a non-elect person in his childhood,
- ~ hates a non-elect person in his youth,
- ~ hates a non-elect person in his adulthood,
- ~ hates a non-elect person in his death, then throws him into hell.

This is not the God of the Bible. What a contrast this is to the God of the Bible who WEPT (Luke 19:41) over "non-elect" sinners in Jerusalem who would soon crucify Him:

"O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!" Matthew 23:37.

What a contrast 5-point Calvinism is to the Saviour who said to the "non-elect" rich young ruler: "Jesus beholding him loved him." (Mark 10:21). Yes, God loves sinners.

c) It opposes Evangelism.

It follows logically that if God in eternity past unconditionally elected some people to be saved and others to be damned, then nothing you or I do will change these people's destinies. So why should we bother getting rejected by people in the process of evangelism?

Why should we get excited, zealous, and hard-working in evangelism if nothing we do will change the final outcome?

d) It makes God a respecter of persons in choosing some and rejecting others.

This makes Peter and God's Word a liar in Acts 10:34, "God is no respecter of persons."

Unconditional election is a teaching which **makes atheists** and **blasphemes the God of the Bible**. It is an arbitrary blind selection, with no discernable or explainable reason for His partiality to the few. If man is totally depraved in the sense that he cannot hear God speaking to him, then how else can he be saved except by “unconditional election”?

The deceitful human heart of the 5-point Calvinist then has to quote some scriptures out of context in order to support his unbiblical system.

We must ask 3 questions to discover the Biblical position on election:

Question 1: Does the Bible teach election? (Yes).

Question 2: Is election unconditional? (No). It is based on God’s foreknowledge. 1 Peter 1:2.

Question 3: What is the purpose of election?

a) To be conformed to the image of Christ (Romans 8:28) in heaven.

b) To be holy and without blame before Him in love, on earth now (Ephesians 1:4,5).

III) True Definition Of Election

The Bible never teaches that some are unconditionally elected to go to heaven or to hell.

The Bible teaches election (not unconditional election):

a) According to **God’s foreknowledge** of which individuals will obey the gospel and trust Christ’s blood sacrifice to pay for their sins, as 1 Peter 1:2 says: “**Elect** according to the **foreknowledge** of God the Father, through **sanctification** of the Spirit (God’s part), unto **obedience** and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ (Man’s part).” 1 Peter 1:2.

Key: God foreknows who will be saved, but does not foreordain who will be saved.

b) According to both **Divine Sovereignty and human responsibility**, as seen in 1 Peter 1:2

1 Peter 1:2 “through **sanctification of the Spirit** (God’s part) and **obedience** and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ” (Man’s part).

2 Thess. 2:13 “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through **sanctification** of the Spirit (God’s part), and **belief** of the truth (man’s part).” Note v.14 that God calls sinners by Christians preaching the gospel, “he called you by our gospel, to obtain glory...”

c) Not to salvation, but to the **Method of salvation**:

Question 23: What is the method of salvation?

Answer: It is by receiving Christ as Saviour, as seen by the expressions “by Christ”, and “in Christ” on **12 occasions** in Ephesians 1:1 (in Christ), 3 (in Christ), 4 (in him), 5 (by Jesus Christ), 6 (in the beloved), 7 (in whom), 10 (in Christ, in him), 11 (in whom), 12 (in Christ), 13 (in Christ, in whom).

God elects, chooses and predestines that all who get saved will be saved by, through or in Jesus Christ. (Ephesians 1:4,5).

“he hath chosen us **in him** before the foundation of the world that we should be holy.” Ephesians 1:4.

“Having **predestined** us unto the adoption of children **by Jesus Christ**.” Ephesians 1:5.

The condition or method of salvation is ‘in Christ.’ This proves conditional election.

If Paul had omitted “in Christ”, we would have unconditional election, but he didn’t.

d) Not to salvation, but to **Service**.

Just as some **Christians** may resist God’s call to **service**, so some **unbelievers** may resist God’s call to **salvation**.

The fact that **God chooses** or **elects believers to service** is seen in these verses:

i) “Ye have not chosen me, but I have **chosen you**, and **ordained you**, THAT ye should go and **bring forth fruit**, and THAT **your fruit should remain**...” John 15:16.

Here God chooses and ordains that every believer should bear fruit of souls won to Christ, because this fruit remains.

Calvinists love to quote the first part of this verse but not quote the second part. The verse says nothing about being chosen for heaven or hell, but that the disciples and every Christian are chosen to be soul winners by bearing the fruit of souls won to Christ.

ii) “he is a **chosen** vessel unto me, to **bear my name** before the Gentiles, and kings, and the children of Israel.” Acts 9:15.

God chose Paul to the service of preaching Christ’s name to the Gentiles, kings and Israel.

iii) “that the purpose of God according to election might stand... It was said unto her, the elder (Esau) shall serve the younger (Jacob).” Romans 9:11,12.

Here God chose before Esau and Jacob were born that the elder son Esau would serve the younger son Jacob. Nothing is said here about their salvation.

iv) “Remembering without ceasing your work of faith, and labour of love, and patience of hope in our Lord Jesus Christ... knowing brethren beloved, your election of God.” 1 Thessalonians 1:3,4.

After discussing the Thessalonian believers’ work, labour and patience (all words of service), he reminds them of their election of God in the same context as their service. God elected them to serve Him and others.

v) “Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall.” 2 Peter 1:10.

Here, after Peter tells his readers to give all diligence to add to our faith, virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, godliness, brotherly kindness and charity (vs.5-7), he says that if we do these things, we shall make our election sure and we shall never fall. The phrase “doing these things” in the context of election means that God elects us to serve Him by cultivating these qualities.

vi) “Have not I chosen you twelve, and one of you is a devil? He spake of Judas Iscariot.” John 6:70,71

Here, Jesus states that He chose the 12 disciples to serve Him as disciples. All Calvinists agree that Judas was unsaved, and all Calvinists believe in security of the believer. Hence this proves that Jesus was discussing how He chose Judas as part of the twelve for service. Jesus says nothing here about choosing Judas for heaven.

e) Not to salvation, but to Godly living.

God chooses and elects every Christian to holiness and Godliness in this life.

God predestines that every Christian will be conformed to the image of Christ in heaven. Romans 8:29.

i) “he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, THAT we should be holy and without blame before him in love.” Ephesians 1:4.

ii) “Having predestinated us... to the praise of the glory of his grace...” Ephesians 1:5,6.

iii) “The God of our fathers hath chosen thee, THAT thou shouldst know his will, and see that Just One, and shouldst hear the voice of his mouth.” Acts 22:14. God chose Paul to know God’s will for his life. God chooses that we should know His will for our lives.

iv) “But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people: THAT ye should show forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.” 1 Peter 2:9. Here God chooses us to praise him by our life.

v) “I have chosen you out of the world.” John 15:19.

Here Christ chooses us to come out of the worldly way of living of unbelievers. The Greek word for church is “ekklesia” meaning “called out of the world to live for God.”

vi) “But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and

God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty; and

God hath chosen the base things of the world, yea and the things which are not to bring to nought the things that are: THAT no flesh should glory in his presence.” 1 Corinthians 1:27-29.

Here God chooses foolish, weak and base things of this world to bring to nought the things that are, so that no flesh should glory in God’s presence.

vii) “For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son...” Romans 8:29. Here God foreknew who would receive Christ as Saviour, and those people he predestinated to be conformed to the image of Christ in heaven.

f) Of Israel, not to salvation, but to Serve God, bring Christ into the world, preserve the Scriptures, and proclaim to the world the truth of One Almighty Creator God.

- “As concerning the gospel, they (Israel) are enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, they are beloved for the Father’s sakes.” Romans 11:28.

- “at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace.” Romans 11:5,7.

Those of Israel who became Christians, did so because of faith and God’s foreknowledge. (1 Peter 1:2).

IV. Statements Of God's Conditional Election

That God **elects** people to salvation **based on certain conditions** is seen in these verses:

1. **Foreknowledge of God.** "Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father." 1 Peter 1:2.
2. **Sanctification of the Spirit and Belief of the truth.** "God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and **belief** of the truth." 2 Thessalonians 2:13.
3. **In Christ:** "He hath chosen us **in him** before the foundation of the world,..."

Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children **by Jesus Christ...**" Ephesians 1:4,5.

Hence, unconditional election is seen to be false. Election is conditional upon God **foreknowing** which sinners will **believe in Christ** as Saviour.

V. Statements That God Wants All Sinners To Be Saved

The Calvinist who believes in unconditional election believes that God wants some to be saved (the elect), and wants other sinners to go to hell (the non-elect).

This can be shown to be false if we can find Scriptures showing that God wants **all** sinners to be saved.

1. "The Lord is...longsuffering to us-ward, **not willing** that **any** should perish, but that **all** should come to repentance." 2 Peter 3:9. "**Will**" (1014) means **decree, determine, intend, minded, disposed.**

This states that God does not decree that any be lost.

Question 24: If God elects some to be saved and others to go to hell, **how is 2 Peter 3:9 explained?**

2. "Who **will** have **all men** to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth." 1 Timothy 2:4.

VI. The Order Of Events In Salvation. Calvinists differ from the Bible on this.

The Bible clearly describes the order of events in salvation from **God's viewpoint** in Romans 8:29,30, and from **man's viewpoint** in Romans 10:13-15. What are they?

1. From God's viewpoint. Romans 8:29,30

- i) God **foreknew** all who would receive Christ as Saviour. (v.29).
- ii) God **predestinated** all these to be conformed to the image of Christ. (v. 29).
- iii) God **called** them and others through the preaching of the gospel (v.30). "Whereunto he called you **by our gospel** to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ." 2 Thessalonians 2:14.
- iv) God **justified** them when they put their faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour. (v.30). "Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ." Romans 5:1.
- v) God **will glorify** them in heaven (v.30). This is God's ultimate purpose. (Ephesians 5:27; Philippians 3:21; Hebrews 2:10; Col. 3:4). The resurrected and glorified Lord Jesus Christ will become the Head of a new race of humanity, purified from all contact with sin, and prepared to live eternally in Christ's presence. (1 Corinthians 15:42-49).

Hyper-Calvinists arrange God's decrees as follows:

- a) Decree to **save some** and **reprobate the rest.**
- b) Decree to **create** those who will be saved and those who will be reprobated.
- c) Decree to **permit (or secure) the fall** of both groups.
- d) Decree to **provide salvation only for the elect.**

2. From Man's viewpoint. Romans 10:13-15.

- a) God and the local church **send** a preacher. (v.15).
- b) The preacher **preaches** the gospel to lost sinners. (v.15).
- c) Lost sinners **hear** and understand (Matthew 13:19) the gospel.
- d) Lost sinners **believe** in Christ as the gospel is explained. (v.14).
- e) Lost sinners **call** on Christ to save them. (v.14).
- f) Lost sinners are then **saved** by Christ. (v.13).

Wuest states reluctantly: "It is only fair that the author inform the reader that Greek scholars, Vincent, Denny, Robertson and Alford all translate "proginosko" as "foreknowledge" and understand it to refer to the "Prescience" of God. As Vincent puts it, "Not to the idea of pre-election."

Therefore "proginosko" always means to "KNOW BEFORE." God wants all to be saved. He knows that, no matter how much He strives, some will resist His gracious entreaty and harden their hearts. Sinners will be lost, not because God willed it, but because they rejected God's call.

There are 3 Systems of Calvinism:

<u>Supralapsarianism</u>	<u>Infralapsarianism</u>	<u>Sublapsarianism</u>
<p>(1.) Election + Reprobation</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Creation 3. Fall 4. Atonement for Elect 5. Salvation for Elect <p>-- Makes God the author of sin and direct cause of damning men. -- The most repulsive part of TULIP. -- Is called Hypercalvinism by those who want to make their form of Calvinism appear Biblical. It is not Hypercalvinism.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Creation 2. Fall <p>(3.) Election + Reprobation</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Atonement for Elect 5. Salvation for Elect. 	<p>(4 point Calvinism)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Creation 2. Fall 3. Atonement for all <p>(4.) Election + Reprobation</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Salvation for Elect

1) Supralapsarianism: Arminius believed that the supralapsarian doctrine of predestination was: “repugnant to the nature of God, repugnant to the justice of God, repugnant to the goodness of God, contrary to the nature of man, diametrically opposed to the act of creation, at open hostility with the nature of eternal life, opposed to the nature of eternal death, inconsistent with the nature and properties of sin, repugnant to the nature of divine grace, injurious to the glory of God, highly dishonourable to Jesus Christ our Saviour, hurtful to the salvation of men, and in open hostility to the ministry of the Gospel.” “Works of Arminius,” Vol.1, p.623-633.

King James I of England who sent delegates to the Synod of Dort, recorded his hatred of this system, as quoted in the “Works of Arminius”, Vol.1, p.213. “This doctrine is so horrible, that I am persuaded, if there were a council of unclean spirits assembled in hell, and their prince the devil were to put the question either to all of them in general, or to each in particular, to learn their opinion about the most likely means of stirring up the hatred of men against God their Maker; nothing could be invented by them that would be more efficacious for this purpose, or that could put a greater affront upon God’s love for mankind, than that famous decree of the late Synod, and the decision of that detestable formulary, by which the far greater part of the human race are condemned to hell for no other reason, *than the mere will of God, without any regard to sin*; the necessity of sinning, as well as that of being damned, being fastened on them by that great nail of the decree before-mentioned.”

Note: Calvinists divert their opponents criticism by pitting Arminianism against hyper-Calvinism, and then take plain Calvinism as a mediating position. This makes Calvinism appear orthodox.

Calvin believed the following about predestination:

“We call predestination God’s eternal decree, by which He compacted with himself what he willed to become of each man. For all are not created in equal condition; rather eternal life is foreordained for some, eternal damnation for others. Therefore, as any man has been created to one or the other of these ends, we speak of him as predestined to life or death.” Institutes p.926 (III.xxi.5).

A.W. Pink said: “I am a strong supra-lapsarian.” *Letters of A.W. Pink*. p.74,75.

Pink’s book “The Sovereignty of God” was first published in 1918 of 2000 copies.

Of this book, Arno Gaebelein (1861-1945) wrote: “Mr Pink used to be a contributor to our magazine. His articles on *Gleanings on Genesis* are good, and we had them printed in book form. But when he began to teach his frightful doctrines which make the God of Love a monster, we broke fellowship with him. The book you have read is totally unscriptural. It is akin to blasphemy. It presents God as a Being of injustice and maligns His holy character. The book denies that our blessed Lord died for the ungodly. According to Pink’s perversions He died for the elect only. You are not the only one who has been led into darkness by this book. Whoever the publisher is, and whoever stands behind the circulation of such a monstrous thing has a grave responsibility. It is just this kind of teaching which makes atheists.” Quoted in “Divine Sovereignty,” Fisk, p.24.

Because Pink's views were deemed so radical, the Banner of Truth Trust 1961 Edition of "The Sovereignty of God" removed the chapter on reprobation. The Dutch Reformed people are the chief propagators of supralapsarianism, surviving today in the Protestant Reformed church, their premier theologian being Herman Hoeksema. Supralapsarianism teaches that God decreed the damnation of men and created them explicitly for that purpose.

2) **Infralapsarianism** was devised to avoid making God the author of sin, and to make Calvinism more acceptable. None of the decrees have changed, only their supposed order.

Both supralapsarians and infralapsarians believe in double predestination - to election and reprobation. The Westminster Confession of Faith, Chapter III, reads:

"By the decree of God, for the manifestation of his glory, some men and angels are predestined unto everlasting life; and others foreordained to everlasting death."

3) **Sublapsarianism** = 4 point Calvinism.

Sublapsarians seek to get around the repulsive implications of reprobation.

The Bible says of these decrees: "Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees." Isaiah 10:1.

The contradictory, confusing nature of Calvinist decrees of God exclude them as coming from God, because God is not "the author of confusion." I Corinthians 14:33.

Question 25: What is wrong with these Calvinist theories seeking to relate sin and the fall to election and reprobation?

Answer: i) SupraL makes God the author of sin and directly responsible for damning billions of souls.

ii) The fall of Adam effected the reprobation of all men, not just a certain class:

"for as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive." I Corinthians 15:22.

iii) Calvinist statements like that of Warfield: "The marvel of marvels is not that God, in His infinite love, has not elected all of this guilty race to be saved, but that he has elected any;" are negated when we remember that they are built on the false premise of Total Depravity.

iv) The real issue is **whether God would be just** in electing some and passing by the rest.

According to the Bible, He wouldn't be just.

- The god of the Calvinist is like the priest and Levite who "passed by" the half dead man in the parable of the good Samaritan (Luke 10:30-32). Did Jesus recommend their behaviour? No! Then neither does God behave this way.

- Worse still, God would be like the thieves who "stripped him of his raiment, and wounded him and departed, leaving him half dead." (Luke 10:30). For Calvinists to say that God came back after "leaving man half-dead," "had compassion on him, and went to him, and bound up his wounds" (Luke 10:33-34), and that he should be praised for his mercy and grace, is absurd.

Jesus commands us to "Go and do thou likewise" (Luke 10:37), as the good Samaritan did who went to help the man. (v.34).

Question: Does Jesus practice what He preaches? Surely! Avoid the Calvinist philosophy sidetracks of:

a) **Presbyterian** route from Calvin to Hodge to Warfield,

b) **Reformed** route from Calvin to Kuyper to Berkhof, and

c) **Baptist** route from Calvin to Gill to Spurgeon.

Note: Calvinist theologians constantly praise each other while overlooking each other's shortcomings.

For example, Warfield, Machen and Boettner each did not insist on a literal 6 day creation. Hoeksema, John Murray and Spurgeon each smoked tobacco.

REPROBATION

Calvinists agree that God has elected some to salvation and others to reprobation.

Question 26: What does reprobate mean? What is a reprobate?

Answer: In the Bible, a reprobate is someone who is disapproved and therefore **rejected**.

A probe is an examination, probate is the proving of a will, and probation is a proving period.

The prefix "re" means to "**do something again.**"

Hence, to re-probate something is to prove it again. Hence, a reprobate is someone or something that is disapproved and stands rejected to be tried again.

Note: "Reprobate" occurs 4 times in the Bible and "reprobates" occur 3 times.

Reprobate is defined in Jeremiah 6:30, “Reprobate silver shall men call them, because the Lord hath rejected them.” They were reprobate because they were rejected.

Question 27: Why were they rejected?

Answer: Not because of a sovereign eternal decree, but because they said “We will not walk therein” (Jeremiah 6:16), and “We will not hearken.” (Jeremiah 6:17).

3 out of 6 New Testament occurrences of reprobate(s) are:

i) “Even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind.” (Romans 1:28). A person is reprobate because of something they do.

ii) “Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith.” (II Timothy 3:8).

iii) “They profess that they know God; but in works they deny him, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.” (Titus 1:16).

Notice that they are reprobate “to every good work.”

Note: When their profession is put to the test on a good work, they fail the test.

God did not make them reprobate, but they made themselves reprobate because of something they did. There is nothing implying that a reprobate is in a permanent, irreversible condition.

Calvinists take any verse dealing with judgment or condemnation and read reprobation into it.

Question 28: Why did God want Israel to destroy the Canaanite nations?

Answer: Because of their sins of incest (Leviticus 18:6), adultery (Leviticus 18:20), human sacrifice (Lev.18:21), homosexuality (Lev.18:22), and bestiality (Lev.18:23). Nothing was decided in eternity past. All was conditional. **Romans 9** is the Calvinist’s “haven of reprobation,” just as **Proverbs** is the Calvinists “haven of divine foreordination.”

Question 29: How do we explain **Proverbs 16:4**, another pillar of Calvinist reprobation?

i) “The Lord hath made all things for himself: yea, even the wicked for the day of evil.”

Answer: This verse discusses the use God makes of his creation, not the decisions he makes for them. Calvinists think that God made certain men wicked to fulfil the “counsel of his own will.” (Eph.1:11). Since God does all his pleasure (Isaiah 46:10), and has no pleasure in the death of the wicked (Ezekiel 33:11), then he could not have created a man wicked to show his power by damning him.

Note: God has made all men the same in the sense of “He fashioneth their hearts alike” Psalm 33:13-15

Key: Although God does not make a man wicked, he makes the wicked serve his own glory and purposes. “Surely the wrath of man shall praise thee...” (Psalm 76:10).

Question 30: Explain 2 NT cases where Calvinists use the word “appointed” to endorse “reprobation.”

ii) The promise to Christians that “God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.” (**I Thessalonians 5:9**).

Pink writes, “to say that God ‘hath not appointed us to wrath’ clearly implies that there are some whom He has appointed to wrath.” (Sovereignty of God, p.85).

Wilson thinks that “appointed” refers to God’s decree, “wrath” means hell, and “salvation” means eternal life.” (The Baptist Examiner, 2 Feb 1991, p.1).

Answer: The Calvinists’ errors of equating “wrath” with hell, and “salvation” with heaven, are due to failing to notice the context, where “wrath” refers to the 7 year Tribulation period, and “salvation” means “deliverance” from the Tribulation.

Proof of this is from, a) the context “then sudden destruction cometh upon them.” (I Thess. 5:3), and “The great day of his wrath is come.” (Rev. 6:17). Rev. 6-19 is a time of God’s wrath on the world.

b) The time of this “wrath” of I Thessalonians 5:9 is future.

iii) Calvinists use “appointed” in **I Peter 2:8** to support “reprobation.”

“And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed.” (I Peter 2:8). Pink says that “Some have been appointed (same Greek word as I Thess. 5:9) unto disobedience.” (Sovereignty of God, p.98,99).

Answer: The disobedience is defined in the context as unbelief (I Peter 2:7), just as obedience is defined as belief in Romans 10:16. The reason a person is appointed to destruction (Proverbs 31:8) is because they “believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.” (2 Thessalonians 2:12).

Key: God appoints to destruction all those who reject Christ, stumbling at the rock of offence.

Eg: God sends strong delusion to damn Tribulation sinners who believed not the truth. 2 Thess.2:11,12.

iv) In **2 Peter 2:12**, Calvinists use the word “**made**” to support reprobation:

“But these, as natural brute beasts, **made to be taken and destroyed**, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption.” (2 Peter 2:12).

Pink implies that these “false prophets” and “false teachers” (2 Peter 2:1) have been foreordained “to be taken and destroyed” before the foundation of the world.

Answer: a) The text says **nothing** about “**why**” or “**when**” these men were “made to be taken and destroyed.” Calvinists presume this was an eternal decree.

b) In both **2 Peter 2:12** (perish in their **own** corruption) and **Jude 10** (“as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves”), the corruption was **their own doing**. God never makes a man in a reprobate condition. Men are always reprobate because **they’ve done something to earn it**, as the next verse makes clear: “and shall receive the **reward** of unrighteousness.” (2 Peter 2:13).

A reward is something they earn. God “destroyed them that believed not.” (Jude 5).

v) Calvinists claim that these people have been **reserved** to condemnation by a **sovereign, eternal decree**: **2 Peter 2:17** “These are wells without water,..to whom the mist of darkness is reserved forever.”

Jude 13 “Raging waves of the sea,... to whom is **reserved** the blackness of darkness forever.”

Question 31: Who is reserved?

Answer: False prophets and false teachers who **deny the Lord** (2 Peter 2:1), **ungodly** (Jude 15), angels that **sinned** (2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6), **unjust** (2 Peter 2:9), **wicked** (2 Peter 2:7), etc.

They were **reserved in their lives** after they committed wicked actions and because of their sins.

vi) **Jude 4** “For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of **old ordained** (4270) to this condemnation. **ungodly** men, turning the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ into lasciviousness, and **denying** the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.” Calvinists like Pink think that these men were ordained of old to condemnation before the foundation of the world by a sovereign, eternal decree.

Question 1: When were they ordained?

Answer: During Enoch’s ministry. “Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, **prophesied of these** saying: Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are **ungodly** among them of all their **ungodly** deeds which they have **ungodly** committed, and of all their hard speeches which **ungodly** sinners have spoken against him.” Jude 14,15.

Question 2: Why were they ordained to condemnation?

Answer: Because of their **ungodly deeds**.

Question 3: How were they ordained?

Answer: By Enoch.

Question 4: What does **ordained** mean?

Answer: Ordained (4270) = *prographo* (Gk) = to write previously, to announce. They were announced by Enoch, not foreordained by a sovereign, eternal decree before the foundation of the world.

vii) **Isaiah 6:9,10** is used by Calvinists to claim that some have the **inability to believe** because God has **blinded their eyes by reprobation** (election to damnation) proving that God hardens people.

“And he said, Go, and tell **this people**. **Hear** ye indeed, but understand not; and **see** ye indeed, but perceive not. **Make** the heart of the people fat, and **make** their ears heavy, and **shut** their eyes; **lest** they **see** with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.” (Isaiah 6:9,10).

Answer: This prophecy is mentioned 5 times in the New Testament (Matthew 13:14,15; Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10; John 12:39-40; Acts 28:25-27).

Notice: a) Twice we are told to whom this passage refers: “**this people**,” which is the **nation of Israel**.

b) Israel shutting their eyes was **not an act in eternity past**. It took place after they were born. They were not created with their eyes shut, but were God’s elect people.

c) Of this passage’s 5 N.T. occurrences, 2 are clearly not used to teach reprobation because the people closed their own eyes: “**their eyes they have closed**.” (Matthew 13:14,15; Acts 28:25-27).

Question 32: Why were they blinded? Why did God harden their hearts?

Answer: Pink answers correctly: “these whose eyes God blinded and whose heart He hardened, were men who had **deliberately scorned the Light** and rejected the testimony of God’s own Son.” (Sovereignty of God, p.124), and,

“In consequence of their rejection of Christ, the nation as a whole was judicially blinded of God, that is, they were left to the darkness and hardness of their own evil hearts. But it is most important to mark the order of these two statements:

In John 12:37, they **did not** believe;

Here in John 12:39 they **could not** believe...

They **would not** believe; in consequence, God gave them up, and now they **could not** believe...

The fault was entirely theirs, and now they must suffer the just consequences of their wickedness...

This was God’s response to the wicked treatment that Israel had meted out to His beloved Son.

They had refused the light, now darkness shall be their dreadful portion.” (Pink “John,” p. 689, 690).

Key: These passages teach the judicial hardening of a nation; not the sovereign hardening of individuals

d) To further prove this, notice where this prophecy appears:

- in the gospels when the Jews rejected Christ, and the mystery form of the kingdom appears.

- in John’s gospel when the Jews rejected Christ, and he finished his public dealings with them.

- in Acts 28 when the Jews rejected the risen Christ, and God turned to the Gentiles for the Church Age.

- in Isaiah 6, it introduces the Tribulation, where the Jews accept a false Christ.

Hence, it doesn’t teach personal reprobation, but national hardening.

viii) – x) All Calvinists use 3 passages in **Romans 9:13,18,21** to prove election and reprobation.

Romans 9 is their “haven of reprobation.” Romans 9-11 is a parenthesis where the Jew is considered nationally. Israel was an elect nation, as seen from these passages:

“For the Lord hath chosen Jacob unto himself, and Israel...” Psalm 135:4.

“Thy servant is in the midst of thy people which thou hast chosen.” 1 Kings 3:8.

“For Jacob my servant’s sake, and Israel mine elect...” Isaiah 45:4.

Question 33: How could God reject those whom he had elected? (Romans 11:1).

What about the faithfulness of God and His Word?

Romans 9 discusses the problem:

Calvinists 3 pillars of reprobation in Romans 9 are:

i) “Esau have **I hated**.” (Romans 9:13),

ii) “whom he will **he hardeneth**.” (Romans 9:18),

iii) “vessels of wrath **fitted to destruction**.” (Romans 9:22).

viii) Romans 9:13 the Calvinist Hoeksema writes: “The predestination of Jacob and Esau is a personal election and reprobation unto salvation and eternal desolation respectively.” (Good Pleasure, p.24).

Answer: “The purpose of God according to election” (Romans 9:11) had nothing to do with individual salvation or reprobation at all. It concerned the Messianic line from Abraham to Isaac to Jacob to Jesus Christ. It was an election not to salvation, but to service, national preference and theocratic privileges.

Genesis 25:23 states that “Two nations are in thy womb and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.” (Genesis 25:23).

Romans 9:13 is quoted from Malachi 1:1-3 which was written 1400 years later:

“yet I loved Jacob and I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste.”

In Genesis we have a prophetic statement looking forward.

In Malachi we have an historical statement looking backward.

Even Calvin admits that this refers to Jacob’s and Esau’s posterity. (Institutes, p.930 (III. xxi. 7)).

Calvinists claim that Jacob and Esau were not only types of their posterity, but types of all men.

This is false because:

a) God didn’t hate Esau in eternity past. He only hated him nationally after seeing his sins for 1400 years

b) Jesus loved the rich young ruler who rejected him. (Mark 10:22).

These references in Romans 9 refer to election to the Messianic line, rather than to personal eternal salvation. Romans 9:8 teaches that the Messianic line would be continued through Isaac, not Ishmael.

ix) **Romans 9:17,18** “For the Scripture saith unto Pharaoh,... Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and **whom he will he hardeneth.**”

The Calvinist Herman Hoeksema writes: “Pharaoh was sovereignly hated from eternity, even as was Esau.” (*Good Pleasure*, p.46).

If we prove that God did not reprobate Pharaoh from eternity, then we have proved that God reprobates no man from eternity. Pharaoh was raised up to show God’s power, not to be damned to hell by a sovereign, eternal decree. The purpose of raising Pharaoh up from sickness was:

- a) That God might prove to Israel that He was the Lord who delivered them. (Ex. 6:6,7; 10:1,2; 13:14-16)
- b) To show Pharaoh that Jehovah was the only true God. (Exodus 9:14).
- c) To show the Egyptians that Jehovah was the Lord. (Exodus 7:5; 14:4,18).
- d) That God’s name would be declared throughout the whole earth. (Exodus 9:16).

x) **Romans 9:22** Calvinists refer to the “**vessels of wrath fitted to destruction**” as the reprobate.

Pink writes regarding these “vessels of wrath”: “He fits the non-elect unto destruction by his foreordaining decrees.” (Sovereignty of God, p.96).

Answer: The potter and the clay was a common OT illustration. (Isaiah 29:16; 45:9; 64:8; Jer. 18:1-6), yet it never referred to anyone’s salvation. **Israel was the clay.** Vessels are made empty, and bring honour or dishonour according to what is put in them. God doesn’t make anyone honourable or dishonourable. The **individual** determines what kind of vessel he will be:

“If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour,... prepared unto every good work.” (2 Timothy 2:20,21).

xi) **Jeremiah 18:1-10** compares Israel with clay, God as the potter, the marring of the clay (v.4) was evil disobedience in Israel (v.10), and God making it again refers to God’s discipline of Israel.

Verse 9,10 discuss God’s change of plans from good to evil for nations who do evil.

Calvinists miss the context by thinking this passage teaches individual reprobation of people in eternity past by a sovereign decree. Israel as the vessels of wrath, **fitted themselves to destruction** because they “stumbled at that stumblingstone” (Romans 9:32), were “guilty of the blood of Christ” (Matthew 27:25), and were “enemies of the gospel” (Romans 11:28).

Just as Israel was shown mercy in Pharaoh’s day (Romans 9:15-18) yet became vessels of wrath in Romans 9:21, so individual Jews who rejected Christ could become “vessels of mercy” if they accepted Christ. (1 Timothy 1:13,16).

Key note: All men are “vessels of wrath” (Ephesians 2:3), but God will have mercy on all who receive Christ (Romans 11:30-32; 1 Peter 2:10). The **Calvinist error** in Romans 9 is in reading sovereign personal election and reprobation into a passage teaching national election of Israel to service and God disciplining Israel for their sins.

Conclusion: When a man is reserved, appointed or ordained to condemnation, it is always because of something evil he did, not by an eternal decree of reprobation.

Refuting 7 Kinds of Unconditional Election to Salvation “Proof” Texts

The fallacy of Calvinist Unconditional Election is that they teach that mankind is divided into 2 groups: the “elect” and the “reprobate.” However, the truth is that God has made all men the same because:

“The Lordhe beholdeth all the sons of men....he fashioneth their hearts alike,” Psalm 33:13-15.

Hence, **i**) there is no such thing as God’s one, eternal, sovereign, all-encompassing decree, and

ii) there is no such thing as “the elect” or “reprobate.”

Scripture proves that salvation is **not limited** to “the elect.”

- “If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.” (John 7:37).

- “To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.” (Acts 10:43).

- “whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.” (Romans 9:33).

- “he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.” (1 Peter 2:6).

- “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” (1 John 5:1).

- “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” (Revelation 22:17).

Question 34: How do Calvinists get around these clear verses on free will?

Answer: They either ignore them, deny them or lie about their existence, by saying things like: “The saving grace of God, changing the heart of the sinner precedes the will to come to Christ.” (Hoeksema, “*Whosoever Will*” p.24).

Chafer says “It is misleading to assert..that whosoever God wills may come.” (Theology, vol.6, p.252).

Note: The above verses teach that “whosoever himself wills”, not “whosoever God wills.”

Question 35: Does God have a predetermined number of elect people waiting to be saved by Irresistible Grace, as Calvinists claim?

Answer: Consider the Bible’s reply to Calvinist’s “proof texts:”

1. God’s People:

i) “I have much people in this city.” (**Acts 18:10**).

Calvinists think this verse teaches that God has a predetermined number of unsaved people in Corinth waiting to be saved by Irresistible Grace. The standard Calvinist interpretation is:

- “Being assured that God had chosen many to salvation, Paul set out to reap the harvest.”

[David Nettleton (GARBC President) “*Chosen to Salvation*”, RBP, 1983, p.161].

- Before Paul and the gospel ever got to Corinth, the Lord had much people there by virtue of God’s election of many in that city.” (D. Englesma, *Hyper-Calvinism*, p.57).

Answer: That the Lord had “much people” in Corinth there is no doubt, but who were they?

They were NOT unsaved elect, because unsaved people are never spoken of as God’s people. The Bible describes unsaved people as “children of disobedience” (Eph.2:2), “children of wrath”(Eph2:3).

Key: The “much people” are defined in v.1-9 as:

a) Aquila and Priscilla (v.2),

b) Jews and Greeks that Paul persuaded in the synagogue (v.4),

c) Silas and Timotheus (v.5),

d) Justus (v.7),

e) Crispus and all his family (v.8),

f) Many Corinthians who heard, believed and were baptized (v.8).

ii) **Book of Life.** Are the elect’s names written in the Lamb’s Book of Life, and the non-elect’s names not written there? “And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.” (**Revelation 13:8**).

“...they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world...” (**Revelation 17:8**).

Answer: Everybody’s name is written in the Lamb’s book of life at birth. When they willfully reject Christ their names are blotted out of the book of life. (Revelation 3:5; 22:19).

iii) **God’s Sheep:** Are God’s sheep the “elect”? (**John 10:14-16, 26**).

Calvinists like Pink think that the “elect” are “sheep” before they are born. (Satisfaction, p.251,252).

Answer: 2 problems with this are:

a) If the “elect” are sheep before they believe, then they already have eternal life. (John 10:28).

If sheep were never goats, then this contradicts the truth that all are born “dead in trespasses and sins.” (Ephesians 2:1).

b) **Who are the sheep?** The sheep are Israel according to Micaiah (I Kings 22:17), Asaph (Psalm 74:1; 78:52; 79:13), David (Psalm 119:176), Isaiah (Isaiah 53:6), Jeremiah (Jer. 23:1; 50:6,17), Ezekiel (34:6,11,12) and Jesus Christ (Matthew 10:6; 15:24).

“Go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.” (Matthew 10:6).

When Christ came, his sheep, like Simeon (Luke 2:25), Anna (Luke 2:36-38), Zacharias and Elisabeth (Luke 1:5, 6), the shepherds (Luke 2:8-20), and the disciples (John 1:40-49), knew him (John 10:14), followed him (John 10:27), and received eternal life (John 10:28).

2. Given to Salvation.

Question 36: Does God the Father give “the elect” to God the Son?

(**John 6:37**).

“All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.”

“And this is the Father’s will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.” (**John 6:39**).

Calvinists presume that “only those whom the Father gives to Christ can come to him.” (Palmer, p.27).

Answer: i) That this will of the Father was not a sovereign, eternal decree is clear because **one of those given to Christ was a devil** (John 6:70), who **was lost** (John 17:12). Believers cannot become lost, so this does not refer to all believers.

“that he should give eternal life to as many as thou hast **given him**.” (John 17:2). John 17:6,9,11,12,24. Calvinists connect these verses to John 6:37 and presume that the word “give” proves that God the Father by Unconditional Election gave the “elect” to God the Son before the foundation of the world so He could make a Limited Atonement for them.

ii) John 6:37 reads that the Father gives to Christ **those who believe**, as v.45 teaches:

“Every man therefore that hath **heard**, and hath **learned** of the Father, **cometh** to me.”

iii) John 17:6 says that Jesus manifested His ‘name unto the **men** which thou gave me out of the world’

Answer: - Christ hasn’t manifested His name to anyone since then.

- These given to Christ were **men**. Are all women lost? No!

iv) “thou gavest them me; and **they have kept thy word**.” (John 17:6).

Have **all** Christians kept God’s Word? No. Hence this doesn’t refer to all Christians.

v) **Christ personally gave them the Father’s words**. (John 17:8,14). We have the Bible, but Christ didn’t personally give it to us.

Conclusion: Yes, a definite group was given to Christ during His earthly ministry, and not before the foundation of the world. The ones given by the Father to the Son were the little flock of Jewish disciples, known as apostles, and his sheep. (John 10:27,29).

3. **Ordained to Salvation.** All Calvinists use **Acts 13:48** to support the claim that every saved person was “ordained to eternal life” before the foundation of the world by a sovereign, eternal decree.

Answer: The word “ordain” never refers in the Bible to an unconditional, sovereign, eternal decree:

i) **Judas** was ‘ordained’ with the other 11 disciples (Mark 3:14), yet he turned out to be a devil. Jn 6:70

ii) God did not accept the sacrifices of **priests** who were ordained after Calvary (Heb. 5:1; 10:10-14).

iii) God has ordained that all **pastors** who preach the Gospel should live of the Gospel (I Corinthians 9:14), but not all do so;

iv) Do **all Christians** practise good works, even though “God has before **ordained** that we should walk in them?” (Ephesians 2:10).

Note: Acts 13:48 says “ordained” not “fore-ordained.”

4. **Chosen to Salvation.** Any verse mentioning the word “chosen” or “choose” is a ripe candidate to support Calvinism. It doesn’t matter if salvation is not the context. So then to a Calvinist, if someone is “chosen,” he always reads it as unconditionally, sovereignly, eternally elected to salvation.

i) **Matthew 20:16; 22:14** “For many be called, but **few chosen**.” (Matthew 22:14).

a) Calvinists after “chosen” add the words “to salvation”, which is nowhere in the context.

b) Both passages concern “the **Kingdom of heaven**” (Matthew 20:1; 22:2), not heaven or salvation.

c) Both passages are **parables**, not doctrinal statements on salvation.

d) Matthew 20:1-16 concerns **labourers**, whereas salvation is a **gift** (Romans 6:23; Ephesians 2:8).

e) In Matthew 22:14 the ones chosen, are chosen because they **accepted the invitation** (Matthew 22:9), and had the prescribed wedding garment (Matthew 22:11).

f) The ones chosen were “**bid** to the marriage” (Matthew 22:9), **not fore-ordained** to go.

g) The ones chosen were “**good and bad**” (Matthew 22:10), not just the “elect”;

h) The ones chosen responded to a **general invitation** (Matthew 22:9).

ii) **John 15:16**. Christ chooses his disciples to **bear fruit**, not to be saved.

The **error** of Calvinists twisting this verse is seen by comparing John 6:70, “Have not I **chosen** you twelve, and one of you is a **devil**,” with Mark 3:13-14 which says, “He **ordained twelve**, that they should be with him.” By reading Unconditional Election into these verses, we end up with a **sovereignly elected, irresistably called, ordained devil**. (John 6:70).

iii) **Acts 9:15**. “He (Paul) is a **chosen** vessel unto me, to **bear my name** before the Gentiles.” (Acts 9:15). “The God of our fathers has **chosen** thee, that thou shouldst **know his will** and **see that Just One**, and shouldst hear the voice of his mouth.” (Acts 22:14).

The Calvinist, Custance, said that Ananias knew Saul was elect: “Ananias knew that the unsaved man to whom he was called to minister the Gospel was numbered among God’s elect.” (p.283).

Answer: Paul was a chosen vessel. However, Paul was already saved when he went to Ananias. He was not chosen to salvation, but he was chosen to “bear the Lord’s name” (Acts 9:15); to know God’s will (Acts 22:14); to see Christ & hear his voice (Acts 22:14); to be a minister & witness (Acts 26:16); to open the Gentiles eyes & turn them from Satan to God (Acts 26:18). Calvinists ignore the context.

iv) **Galatians 1:15,16** is used by Calvinists to teach Unconditional Election: “But it pleased God, who separated me from my mother’s womb, and called me by his grace to reveal his Son in me.” That Galatians 1:15,16 and Jeremiah 1:5 do not teach Unconditional Election of prophets from eternity past, is seen by these truths:

- a) Paul’s election was not to “salvation and life”, but to “**office and service**”.
- b) Election is supposed to be eternal, but these verses teach that it is only from their **mothers’ wombs**. This overthrows Unconditional Election from eternity past;
- c) Paul was separated on another occasion. It was not to salvation, but to go on his first missionary journey (Acts 13:2) after he was saved: “Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work...”
- d) Paul classified himself as the “chief of sinners” (I Timothy 1:15), not as someone who had an eternal union with Christ.

v) **I Peter 2:9** is used to support Unconditional Election:

“But ye are a **chosen generation**, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should show forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.”

Answer:

- a) It is not said when this choosing took place, why it took place, or what they were chosen for;
- b) It is clear that individuals are not the subject, but the **church** as a **collective body** is in view.

vi) **Psalm 65:4** “Blessed is the man whom **thou chooses**, and causes to approach unto thee, that he may dwell in thy courts: we shall be satisfied with the goodness of thy house, even of thy holy temple.”

Answer: a) This verse speaks of God’s courts, God’s house, and God’s temple, not about salvation.

- b) The time of choosing is not mentioned;
- c) New Testament salvation is not even remotely connected with the verse.

vii) **James 2:5** “Hath not **God chosen** the **poor** of this world, rich in faith, and **heirs of the kingdom** which he hath promised to them that love him?”

Answer: Is every welfare recipient one of the “elect” and “chosen to salvation”? No! It just means that generally speaking, poor people are more receptive to the gospel than rich people.

viii) **II Thessalonians 2:13** “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.”

Answer: The Thessalonians were chosen from the beginning of what? The phrase “from the beginning” according to Calvinists means eternity past, but from the Bible it means when we are saved as seen from Romans 16:7. Paul stated that Andronicus and Junia were in Christ before him. This contradicts the Calvinist view that all the elect were in Christ from eternity past.

Key: “Salute Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen and my fellowprisoners, who are of note among the apostles, who also were in Christ before me.” (Romans 16:7).

Key: Hence, in Calvinism the “elect” are all put in Christ at the same time (eternity past), but in the Bible no one is put in Christ until he is saved. In II Thessalonians 2:13, Calvinists have transported the phrase “from the beginning” back to “before the foundation of the world” to line up with their theology. The Bible defines the phrase “from the beginning” as being the time Paul departed from Macedonia and came to Thessalonica: “Now ye Philippians know also, that in the beginning of the Gospel, when I departed from Macedonia, no church communicated with me as concerning giving and receiving, but ye only. For even in Thessalonica ye sent once and again unto my necessity.” (Philippians 4:15,16).

Hence Paul defines the “beginning of the gospel” as when he left the city of Philippi to begin his departure from the province of Macedonia. Thessalonica is in Macedonia. Hence God chose that the Thessalonians would hear the gospel from the beginning of Paul’s departure from Philippi (II Thess. 2:13) to get the gospel preached to them when the Lord gave Paul the Macedonian call in Acts 16:10. Notice that God chose the Thessalonians to salvation not by a sovereign decree in eternity past, but “through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth,” which choosing and belief took place in 53 AD (Acts 16:9,10 and 17:1-4). The conditions for God saving the Thessalonians are stated as

sanctification of the Spirit and belief/obedience in the truth of Christ's blood sacrifice in both II Thessalonians 2:13 and I Peter 1:2. See Spiros Zhodiatas, NT Word Study Dictionary:

Note: a) The Greek phrase for "from the beginning" is "ἀπ ἀρχῆ" (ap' arche), which is different from the phrase "from eternity", "ἀπ αἰωνος" (ap aionos) as in Acts 15:18 ("known from eternity" ("ἀπ αἰωνος")) are to God all his works"). Hence God did not choose the Thessalonians from eternity past, but from the beginning of when Paul left Philippi.

b) Calvinists err presuming that "from the beginning" means from before the beginning **of the world**, by changing "from the beginning" to "before the foundation of the world", hoping nobody will notice.

c) Greek authority S. Zhodiatas writes of this verse: "With a preposition preceding: apo (575), from, ap' arches (746), from the beginning: (B) Of any particular thing eg: of the gospel dispensation, or of Christian experience meaning from the first (Luke 1:2; John 15:27; Acts 26:4; **II Thessalonians 2:13**; I John 1:1; 2:7,13,14,24; 3:11; II John 5,6). (*Complete New Testament Word Study Dictionary* p.261). The same expression occurs in Acts 26:4, "My manner of life from my youth, which was at the first" ("ἀπ ἀρχῆς") among mine own nation at Jerusalem, know all the Jews."

This is clearly not referring to eternity past, nor do most occurrences of this phrase ("ἀπ ἀρχῆς").

ix) Ephesians 1:4 is the twin Calvinist proof text of II Thessalonians 2:13 used to teach Unconditional Election to salvation in eternity past: "According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love." (Ephesians 1:4).

Answer: a) Election is neither mentioned here nor anywhere in Ephesians.

b) The choosing is "that we should be holy and without blame", not that we should be saved or "in Christ." This may be why **Calvinists mostly quote only the first half of this verse**.

c) The correct interpretation is seen by noting the connection of "according as" at the start of v.4, with "in heavenly places" at the end of v.3. "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love". (Ephesians 1:3,4).

Note: The choosing had nothing to do with salvation, but concerned our position in Christ.

Once a man gets "in Christ" he gets in on the choosing.

Key: God chose that whoever was in Christ would be blessed "with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places," and be "holy and without blame before him in love." Calvinists err in thinking that v.4 teaches how we get in Christ.

x) 2 Timothy 1:9 "Who hath saved us, & called us with an holy calling not according to our works, but according to his own purpose & grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began."

Question 37: When did God give us saving grace?

In eternity past (Calvinist position), or when we got "in Christ" (Bible)? The Calvinist Baker (p.102) says, "Paul declared clearly that the elect had been given grace before they ever existed."

Answer: Grace was not physically given to any man "before the world began", because there were no men around to give it to. Grace was "given to us in Christ Jesus."

Key: God deposited grace in Christ before the world began. It was only given to us when we got "in Christ." This grace "is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ." 2 Tim 1:10.

xi) An even greater error of Calvinism is to unite the phrases "in him" (Ephesians 1:4) and "in Christ Jesus" (II Timothy 1:9), with "before the foundation of the world" (Ephesians 1:4) and "before the world began" (II Timothy 1:9), to teach that the "elect" were "in Christ" **before the world began**.

This teaching of the "eternal union" of "the elect" with Christ is also based on **Jeremiah 31:3**, "The LORD hath appeared of old unto me, saying, Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee." (Jeremiah 31:3). Calvinists use this verse to teach Irresistible Grace, and because of this "eternal union", God eternally loved the elect. The result of an "eternal union" & an "eternal love" is an "unregenerate, elect sheep" that is considered a child of God.

Question 38: If the 'elect' were always children of God, could they have ever been children of the devil?

Answer: According to Ephesians 2:1-3 and 12, the "elect" were "children of wrath" (Ephesians 2:3), and "without God" (Eph 2:12) and not children of God. The problem Calvinists create for themselves is

that, before the “elect” got “in Adam” (I Corinthians 15:22) they already had a relationship with Christ. This means that, according to Calvinism:

- The Fall didn't affect the elect. It was only the means of reprobating the “non-elect”;
- This Fall that wasn't a fall, allows Calvinists like Pink to claim that one can be dead “in sin” and yet be “in Christ” at the same time. (*Exodus, p 19*);
- None of the elect have ever been in danger of going to hell;
- “before God, His people are justified from eternity: and he beholds them forever as perfectly righteous in Christ.” (Hoeksema, *Grace, p.73*).

Answer: This is a complete overthrow of the Gospel. How could the elect ever be lost? The Bible refutes this Calvinist nonsense by teaching that the Fall affected all men equally: “Wherefore, as by one man sin entered the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned” (Romans 5:12). “For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.” I Cor 15:22.

Note: No-one was ever “in Christ” until his salvation: “Salute Andronicus and Junia, my kinsmen, and my fellowprisoners, who are of note among the apostles, who also were in Christ before me.” (Romans 16:7). In Calvinism, the “elect” are all put in Christ at the same time, in eternity past.

In the Bible, no-one is put in Christ until he is saved.

5. Elected to Salvation

None of the Calvinist proof texts for Unconditional Election contain any form of the word “election”. You would expect verses containing a form of the word election would strongly teach this doctrine.

Bible uses of election are:

- Jesus Christ.** When the word “elect” is applied to Christ, it emphasises His value and worth, not His selection to salvation: “Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect, in whom my soul delighteth,” (**Isaiah 42:1; Matthew 12:18**).
“Wherefore also it is contained in the Scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious; and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.” (**I Peter 2:6; Isaiah 28:16**).
- Angels.** “I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, & the elect angels, that thou observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality” **I Timothy 5:21**.
The Westminster Confession of Faith teaches the election and reprobation of men and angels: “By the decree of God, for the manifestation of his glory some men and angels are predestined unto everlasting life; and others foreordained to everlasting death.” (III, 3).
Pink writes: “God in the past made a selection among the hosts of heaven, choosing some to be vessels of honour, and others to be vessels of dishonour. Those whom He chose unto His favour, stood steadfast and remained in subjection to His will. The rest fell when Satan revolted, for upon his apostasy he dragged down with himself one-third of the angels. (Revelation 12:4).
Concerning them we read, “God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness” (II Peter 2:4). Those who belong to the election of grace are “the holy angels”: holy as the consequence of their election, and not elected because they were holy, for election antedated their creation.” (Pink, *Election, p.37*).
Answer: a) No angel was ever said to be elected before the foundation of the world by a sovereign, eternal decree. Some angels have already fallen (Genesis 6:2), and are captive in chains of darkness of hell to be judged at a later day (II Peter 2:4; Jude 6) by their replacements (I Corinthians 6:3) the sons of God by faith in Christ (I John 3:2).
Key: God chose the angels that didn't fall, hence they are called “elect angels.” The election of angels parallels that of Christ. They are appraised or assessed as elect and holy, not selected to be holy. (Matthew 25:31).
b) “Elect” cannot refer to holy angels because they never fell to be elected back to holiness.
c) Revelation 12:4 takes place in the future Tribulation, not before Genesis 1:1.
- Israel** is said to be God's elect (Isaiah 45:4; 65:9,22). God chose Israel to be a peculiar people above all nations (Deuteronomy 14:2). This was a pure case of Unconditional Election of a nation, not of individuals. God did not choose each individual Jew to be elect. They were either
 - born into it by being a descendant of Jacob, or
 - chose of their own free will to be one of the “elect”, like the proselyte Ruth (Ruth 1:16).

The salvation and damnation of individuals was not the purpose of their election, as seen from Romans 9 where many members of the nation of Israel were reprobate.

Key: This election was because of their birth, not individual, not to do with salvation, and not by a sovereign, eternal decree. The national election of Israel is seen in the New Testament. Contrary to Amillennial and Post-millennial Calvinists, God is not finished with His elect nation Israel (Romans 11:1,25-27). **Failing to recognize that Israel is still called the “elect” in the New Testament**, has caused much misinterpretation of Scripture, such as:

a) **Matthew 24:22,24,31** “And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened.” The context of Matthew 24 is the future Tribulation (v.21,29) called the “time of Jacob’s trouble” (Jeremiah 30:7). Those addressed are not “elect sinners” waiting to be saved by Irresistible Grace, but Jewish saints. The context of Matthew 24:13 has nothing to do with the salvation of anyone in the Church age, but here, as throughout this entire Olivet Discourse, the elect is Israel.

b) **II Timothy 2:10** is another case of Israel as an elect nation being mistaken for the church. “Therefore I endure all things for the elect’s sakes, that they may also obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory.” Calvinists think the elect here are “God’s people” who were elected before the foundation of the world.

Answer: This passage refers to elect Israelites, not unsaved “elected” Gentiles.

If the “elect” were elected before the foundation of the world by an unconditional, efficacious, sovereign, irresistible, eternal decree, then they could never miss salvation, whether Paul preached it or not. To believe that Paul strove (Romans 15:20) and laboured in the gospel (Philippians 4:3), enduring beatings (II Timothy 2:10), stonings, imprisonments, shipwreck, perils, pain, hunger and cold (II Corinthians 11:23-27) for the sake of the “elect” who would certainly be saved, is the most foolish excuse ever offered to support Unconditional Election. Paul longed to see his fellow Jews saved (Romans 9:1-3; 10:1-3; 11:12-14), but not by Unconditional Election.

c) **Luke 18:7,8** “And shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him.?”

Question 39: Who are these elect? When, why and how they were elected is not mentioned.

Answer: There is no basis in this verse to teach Unconditional Election.

- Historically, God’s own elect are Jews, as seen from other gospel references;

- Spiritually, the elect may apply to anyone saved in any time;

- Doctrinally, the elect are likely to be suffering saints in the Tribulation (Revelation 6:9-10, the martyred saints crying out to God for revenge). The verse concerns prayer (Luke 18:1), not a sovereign, eternal, decree.

d) **Romans 9:11** “For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth.”

Answer: Paul argues that there is an Israel within Israel (Romans 9:6). The “purpose of God according to election” has nothing to do with individual salvation or reprobation, but concerns the election of national preference of the Messianic line through Abraham, Isaac, Jacob to Jesus Christ

e) **Romans 11:28** “As concerning the gospel, they are enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election, they are beloved for the fathers’ sake.” This refers to the whole of the nation Israel and has nothing to do with salvation.

f) **Romans 11:5,7** “Even so then at this present time also there is a remnant according to the election of grace.....What then? Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded.” (Romans 11:5,7). Calvinists see Unconditional Election to salvation here because these verses concern only a portion of Israel.

Answer: The Romans 9-11 parenthesis considers the problem of how God could reject the nation of Israel whom He had elected. Personal election and reprobation of all individual humans is not even remotely discussed. The “even so” of Romans 11:5 links it to v.4. Hence, the “remnant according to the election of grace” (v.5) corresponds to the seven thousand men reserved to God who had not bowed the knee to the image of Baal. (v.4). Calvinists focus on the word “reserved.”

Question 40: Why were these 7,000 men reserved to God? Was it because of God’s decree of Unconditional Election?

Answer: Not at all. They were reserved because they hadn't bowed to Baal's image.

As there was a remnant in Elijah's days, so now there is a remnant.

Question 41: What was it that Israel sought after? (Romans 9:31; 10:3).

Answer: Their own righteousness of keeping the law.

Question 42: Why did most of Israel fail to obtain God's righteousness?

Answer: "They sought it not by faith." (Romans 9:32-3). Only the remnant of Israel who sought righteousness by faith participated in the "election of grace." The remnant obtained salvation because they received Christ, not because they were unconditionally elected to be overcome by Irresistible Grace. The blinding of those who did not partake in the "election of grace" (Romans 11:5) was because they sought it by works. That part of Israel which "hath not obtained that which he seeketh for" (Romans 11:7) did not fail because they were hardened, they were hardened because they failed. Works nullify both faith (Romans 4:5) and grace (Romans 11:6).

Their blindness was national in scope and temporary in nature (Romans 11:25).

"Reprobate" Israel will one day become "elect" Israel.

iv) **Church.**

Calvinists claim "There is only one way that leads to salvation and that is the way of God's election." (*Berkouwer, p.74*).

Answer: The nine New Testament occurrences of "elect" are never connected with any decree of God – sovereign, eternal or otherwise.

a) **I Peter 5:13** "The church that is at Babylon, elected together with you saluteth you; and so does Marcus my son." Notice that no individual is said to be elected, and nothing is said about when, how or why anyone was elected.

b) **I Thessalonians 1:4** "Knowing brethren beloved, your election of God." Notice that there is no mention of the time of this election, no eternal decree, no reason given, and no method of this election. Instead, it refers to how the Thessalonians received the gospel by God electing Paul to go to Macedonia. (Thessalonica is in Macedonia).

c) **II Peter 1:10** "Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall."

Key: This verse destroys TULIP Calvinism because calling comes first, then election follows after. Pink panicked at this verse by saying it is "sheer blasphemy" if you disagree with his reading Unconditional Election into II Peter 1:10 (*Election, p.137*), because all his life he taught that election comes first, then calling later. "Effectual calling is the consequence of election" (*Election, Pink, p.138*).

Question 43: How could anyone "give diligence" to make sure a supposedly irresistible, sovereign, eternal decree that was sure to happen any way?

No-one could make it sure because God already made it sure. The Calvinist Custance correctly makes the calling and election relate to service, not salvation. (*Custance, p. 249*).

d) The word "elect" is applied to Christians 6 times. None of these verses says that election is a decree of God, none says it is eternal, none says it is unconditional, and none says that it results in salvation. The word "elect" in these verses is simply a title for New Testament Christians, showing our value, worth, appraisal and assessment. Thus the use of "elect" parallels the election of Jesus Christ and the angels. "Who shall lay anything to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifies" Romans 8:33. "Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering." (Colossians 3:12).

"Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of God's elect, and the acknowledging of the truth which is after godliness." (Titus 1:1).

"Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ." (I Peter 1:2).

"The elder unto the elect lady and her children, whom I love in the truth; and not I only, but also all they that have known the truth." (II John 1).

"The children of thy elect sister greet thee. Amen." (II John 13).

Answer: Calvinists want us to believe that because the word “elect” occurs in the New Testament, their doctrine of an eternal, sovereign, irresistible, unconditional election must be Biblical.

They want us to **read** this into the text. These verses show that no-one is elect until they are saved. Believers are described as elect, justified, holy, beloved and having faith.

None of these descriptions are true of believers from eternity past.

Question 44: How do Calvinists build a case for eternal, unconditional election?

Answer: They go elsewhere to get this teaching, then read it back into every verse where election is found. They follow this sequence of verses:

- 1) Calvinists start at **I Peter 1:2** since salvation is mentioned in the same verse as election. Calvinists like Pink change foreknowledge here to fore-ordination (*Sovereignty*, p. 57,58). Acts 2:23 forces Calvinists to treat foreknowledge as foreknowledge and not fore-ordination, because foreknowledge follows the “determinate counsel” of God. Some Calvinists avoid I Peter 1:2 because it does not say that election took place before the foundation of the world. Because foreknowledge is mentioned, they connect this verse to:
- 2) **Romans 8:29, 30** “For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son.” Now that “predestination” is introduced, they link this with:
- 3) **Ephesians 1:4,5** because v.5 contains the word “predestinate” and v.4 mentions the terms “chosen” and “before the foundation of the world.”
- 4) **II Thessalonians 2:13** is quoted: “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation”, while they fail to quote the rest of the verse which teaches both the divine initiative and human response in salvation “through sanctification of the spirit, and belief of the truth”. For support they turn to:
- 5) **Acts 13:48** “as many as were ordained to eternal life believed”, without checking either the Greek meaning of ‘ordained’ or when this ordaining took place. They finally appeal to:
- 6) **Romans 9,10,11** and a few other verses to teach election to reprobation.

True Meaning of Election = Corporate Election of the Church, not Individual Election to salvation.

When Peter describes New Testament believers, he quotes from the Old Testament and hence reveals the true meaning of New Testament election:

“But ye are a ¹chosen generation, a ²royal priesthood, an ³holy nation, a ⁴peculiar people; that ye should show forth the praises of him who has called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.” I Peter 2:9. This fourfold description of the **New Testament church** is quoted from God’s fourfold description of **Old Testament Israel**: “And ye shall be unto me a ²kingdom of priests, and a ³holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.” (Exodus 19:6).

“For thou art an holy people unto the LORD thy God, and the LORD hath chosen thee to be a ⁴peculiar people unto himself, above all the nations that are upon the earth.” (Deuteronomy 14:2).

Key: Calvinists have completely missed and overlooked the fact that, as the **nation of Israel** was corporately **elect** as a **body**, so also was the **Church elected as a body**. (Ephesian 1:22,23; Col.1:18). Rather than see the truth of **corporate election**, the **Amillennial** and **Postmillennial Calvinists** think that God has **permanently rejected Israel** and so they get all of Israel’s blessings, but none of their curses.

Key: Calvinists completely miss the significance of Christians being described in this fourfold manner. Forster and Marston rightly say: “The prime point is that the election of the church is a **corporate** rather than an **individual** thing. It is not that **individuals** are in the church because they are elect, it is rather that they are **elect because they are in the church.**” (p.137).

William Klein similarly concluded: “In the old covenant, a person entered the chosen nation of Israel through natural birth. In the new covenant, a person enters the chosen body, the church, through the new birth. To exercise faith in Christ, is to enter into his body and become one of the “chosen ones.”” (Klein, p 265). Hence, **New Testament election is of the body** and includes individual men only in association with the body. Election has nothing to do with how any man gets into the body.

Our **election of the New Testament church** is **typified by God’s election of Israel** in three ways:

- a) As national election of **Israel** included only those “in Jacob”, so to get into **New Testament election** one must be “in Christ.”
- b) As **Old Testament Individuals** were only elect according to their relationship to the nation of **Israel**, so **New Testament individuals** are elect only according to their relationship with **Christ**.

- c) **Key:** As God did not choose each individual Jew to be one of the elect, so God does not choose each individual Christian to be one of the elect – they are born into it. No unsaved man was ever elected to anything. **The basic error of Calvinism is to confuse election with salvation.**

In summary, the same five principles about Israel’s election also apply to the Church’s election:

1. Individuals are elect only according to their relationship to the elect one (Jacob or Christ);
2. God did not choose any individual;
3. The elect are only elect because of their birth (natural birth into Old Testament Israel, or new birth into the New Testament church);
4. Their election had nothing to do with salvation, but with service;
5. Their election was not by a sovereign, eternal decree.

6. **Predestined to Salvation?**

Predestine only occurs 4 times in NT. The context always determines what the person is predestined to.

Question 45: Does the Biblical use of predestination match the Calvinists’ definition?

Answer: No. The Westminster Confession defines predestination as: “By the decree of God, for the manifestation of his own glory, some men and angels are predestinated unto everlasting life, and others foreordained to everlasting death.” (III, 3).

Question 46: What does the Bible say we are predestined to? Answer:

- a) **Son-placing** in heaven: “Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children (Greek: huiothesia = son placing) by Jesus Christ unto himself, according to the good pleasure of his will.” Ephesians 1:5.
- b) **Praise his glory:** “In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will: That we should be to the praise of his glory, who first trusted in Christ.” (Ephesians 1:11,12).
- c) **Conformed to the image of his Son in heaven:** “For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called, and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.” (Romans 8:29,30).

Notice how these verses refute the Calvinist position:

- a) Predestination is never called a decree of God;
- b) Predestination is never said to take place before the foundation of the world;
- c) No-one is said to be predestined to salvation;
- d) No-one is said to be predestined to hell, condemnation, judgment or everlasting death;
- e) None of these verses mention predestination of angels.

Conclusion: Hence, what the Bible says about predestination is irreconcilable with what Calvinists say about it. Predestination only concerns our destiny as Christians.

Note: Three Scriptures overthrow Calvinistic foreknowledge, that God had an eternal love for the elect:

- a) “But Jesus did not commit himself unto them because he knew all men.” (John 2:24). Hence Christ “knew all men”, not just the “elect”.
- b) Christ did not know the “elect” until their conversion: “Howbeit then, when ye knew not God, ye did service unto them which by nature are no gods. But now, after that ye have known God, or rather are known of God, how turn ye again to the weak and beggarly elements, whereinto ye desire again to be in bondage?” (Galatians 4:8,9). Hence, God could not have had an eternal, loving relationship with the “elect” if He never knew them before their conversion.
- c) God foreknew the whole nation of Israel, but this didn’t guarantee the salvation of anyone in the nation. “I say then, Hath God cast away his people? God forbid. For I also am an Israelite, of the seed of Abraham, of the tribe of Benjamin. God hath not cast away his people which he foreknew.” (Romans 11:1,2). All Calvinists agree that “his people” means national Israel, but in v.2 God foreknew these people, yet not all Israelites were saved. Hence, foreknowledge here has nothing to do with foreordination to salvation. Believers are predestined by God to be conformed to the image of His Son (Romans 8:29). “And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly;” (I Corinthians 15:49; I John 3:2).

Conclusion: No unsaved man was predestined to anything.

Calvinists' basic error is to confuse election and predestination with salvation.

Note: It is only by constructing an order of salvation events to match the TULIP theology, that Calvinists can appeal to the predestination verses in Romans.

Elect Infants: If God unconditionally determines the eternal destiny of every member of the human race, then this includes infants, because all men, whether “elect” or “reprobate”, first have to be born as infants. The problem for Calvinists is, what happens when an infant dies? Does he go to heaven or hell?

Question 47: Are children who die in infancy counted among the “elect”?

Key: The obvious implication of Unconditional Election is that a dead infant is equally likely to be “elect” or “reprobate”. The most consistent Calvinist was Augustine, who held to the damnation of “non-elect” and non-baptized infants (*Webb*, p. 312,313; *Schaff History*, Vol. 8, p.556). Zwingli was the only Reformer who believed in unconditional, universal salvation for all infants by Christ’s death. When it comes to unambiguously stating that all infants who die are saved, most Calvinists hesitate.

Note: The uncertain, wavering attitude of Calvinists on the salvation of infants is a far cry from their dogmatic assertions about the reprobation of adult “non-elect”.

Key: If Calvinists teach that **all dead infants go to heaven**, then this overthrows their whole system of Unconditional Election and Covenant theology. If Calvinists teach that **non-elect dead infants go to hellfire** forever, then this attacks the justice, mercy and love of God, as well as grossly offending normal human nature. Hence, Calvinists as a rule insist that all children who die in infancy are part of the “elect”. They thus refute their own error of Unconditional Election.

Most Calvinists teach that infant “baptism” (sprinkling) replaces circumcision. Hoeksema, *Dogmatics*, p.694 The Calvinist Baptist Spurgeon strongly disagrees, saying: “A human and carnal invention, an addition to the Word of God, and therefore wicked and injurious.” (*Spurgeon, Infant Salvation*, p.3).

Reformed Calvinists who quote Spurgeon in an attempt to convince Baptists to become Calvinists, suddenly cease appealing to Spurgeon when the subject of baptism comes up.

Conclusions about Unconditional Election: The doctrine of election, which Calvinists identify with Unconditional Election, is only as Calvinists think “prominently revealed in God’s Word” because Calvinists have read it into every possible passage.

- a) The **other side** of the “elect” being predestined to salvation before the foundation of the world, is that God has **predestined** the “**reprobate**” to **damnation** before the foundation of the world. This is unbiblical and abhorrent to the nature of God and man. Calvinists see election and reprobation as the twin branches of predestination.
- b) In commenting on John 17 which Calvinists use to teach Unconditional Election, Martin Lloyd-Jones (1899-1981) shows Calvinists’ belief in **fatalism** and **reprobation**: “My friend, if you are a Christian, do you know that you were the object of God’s interest and concern before the foundation of the world? All these things have been worked out in eternity, before time, so you must always remember that nothing can happen in time which will make the slightest difference.” (*Saved in Eternity*, p.16). The best an unbeliever can do is to hope he is one of the elect. Lam 3:26.
- c) **Shaky assurance of salvation:** Unconditional Election forces a Calvinist to seek assurance of salvation in a mysterious, sovereign, eternal decree of predestination, instead of the clear statements in the Bible. The Calvinist Coppes writes: “Predestination is the fount of assurance of salvation and God’s answer to doubt.” (p.25).
- d) **Missions and Evangelism:** If it be true, as Calvinists assert such as Zanchius that “the number of the elect, and also of the reprobate, is so fixed and determinate that neither can be augmented or diminished.” (p.92) and Storms: “But eventually, if they are elect, in God’s appointed time they will believe.” (*Chosen for Life*, p.105), then what possible difference could it make whether one sent or withheld missionaries?
- e) **Confusing mass of Terminology:** Wesley said, “Call it . . . Election, Preterition, Predestination or Reprobation, it comes in the end to the same thing: By virtue of an eternal, unchangeable, irresistible decree of God, one part of mankind is infallibly saved, and the rest are infallibly damned; it being impossible that any of the elect should be damned, or that any of the non-elect should be saved. But if this be so, then is all preaching vain.” (John Wesley, quoted in Sell, p.73).

- f) **Practical results of Unconditional Election:** Wesley charged it with:
- making all preaching vain;
 - tending to destroy holiness (Why try if all is predestined?);
 - tending to destroy the comfort of religion (Where lies any comfort if all is predestined?);
 - tending to destroy zeal for good works, yea
 - tending to destroy the whole Christian revelation by involving it in fatal contradictions. (Why command us to obey if our obedience or disobedience is predetermined?)

3. LIMITED ATONEMENT

The first 4 points of TULIP Calvinism involve the prefixing of a qualifying term to a Biblical doctrine:

- a) **Depravity** of man is a Biblical doctrine, but **Total Depravity** is not;
- b) **Election** is Biblical, but **Unconditional Election** is not.
- c) **Atonement** of Christ is Biblical, but **Limited Atonement** is not.
- d) **Grace** is Biblical (170x) but **Irresistible Grace** is not.

Limited Atonement is the most objectionable part of Calvinism. It adds insult to injury, the injury being Unconditional Election, for if some are not elected to salvation, then what does it matter whether Christ died for them or not? The non-elect couldn't possibly be saved, whether Christ died for them or not. Due to Limited Atonement's non-essential and objectionable nature, it is rejected by many Baptists and others who hold to Unconditional Election. Limited Atonement is connected with Unconditional Election. These 2 doctrines stand or fall together. We cannot logically accept one and reject the other. Total Depravity demands that God must elect and irresistibly save any who will ever be saved. Limited Atonement is so objectionable because it is so blatantly anti-Biblical. Limited Atonement is called by other names to de-stigmatize its implications, such as "particular redemption, effective redemption, limited redemption."

Definition of Limited Atonement: "The Lord Jesus, by his perfect obedience, and sacrifice of himself . . . purchased, not only reconciliation, but an everlasting inheritance in the kingdom of heaven, for all those whom the father hath given unto him." (*Westminster Confession, VII:5*).

Simple Definition: "Christ shed his blood and made an atonement only for the sins of the elect."

The theory behind Limited Atonement is that Christ's blood was shed for the "elect" because God did not want anyone else to be saved.

Question 1: Calvinists ask why others were not elected. Their answer is that God wanted them to go to hell. It is a waste of time to discuss Limited Atonement with a Calvinist, because, if Christ died 1000 deaths for the "non-elect" they would still go to hell.

Key Question 2: Did God intend to save all men, or did He not? (Sexton, p 15).

Calvinists' Accusations Against their Opponents:

1. If you reject T, U or L you are accused of being an **Arminian**. "It is simply Arminian to teach that Christ died for all men." (Hoeksema, *Limited Atonement*, p 49). Once they call you an **Arminian**, they then accuse you of believing in **works for salvation**, or being **Arian**, **Pelagian** or **Socinian**. This trick is known as "guilt by association." Clark, a Calvinist, says: "Though no one accuses Arminians of being Catholics, the two agree . . . that while Christ's sacrifice was necessary for salvation, it is not sufficient. Man must add some meritorious work of his own." (Gordon H Clark, *The Atonement*, p.140).

Boettner, a Calvinist, says: "The Arminian theory that God is anxiously trying to convert sinners but not able to exert more than persuasive power without doing violence to their natures, is much the same as the old Persian view that there were two principles of good and evil at war with each other, neither of which was able to overcome the other." (Boettner, *Predestination*, p.218).

Question: Do we reject the Trinity & Incarnation because Catholics & Arminians believe them?No

2. Calvinists accuse believers in Unlimited Atonement of "believing that **salvation is partly our own doing** . . . that we are not fully delivered from sin by the grace of God alone," (Rose, p.30) and that "they must be ready to bear the weight of their own guilt, ready to atone for their sins the best way they can."

3. Boettner accuses his opponents of **disparaging God**: “If Christ’s death was intended to save all men, then we must say that God was either unable or unwilling to carry out his plans.” (Boettner, *Predestination*, p.155).
Answer: Does God have the right to set forth the terms and conditions of how one appropriates salvation? Yes.
4. Calvinists claim that if Christ made a Limited Atonement, then **some of his blood was wasted**.
Answer: This accusation has no Biblical support and is false.
5. Calvinists misrepresent their opponents by saying that: “Arminians have long accused Calvinists of **limiting the power of the atonement**.” (Talbot and Crampton, p.37).
Answer: Calvinists don’t limit the atonement’s **power**, but its **extent**.
6. Calvinists teach that **Unlimited Atonement robs God of His glory**: “Only Calvinism with its effective atonement limits man’s power and exalts God’s power and glory.” (Coppes, p.49).

Four Point Calvinism

The reason a four-point Calvinist opposes Limited Atonement is to divert attention away from the fact that **he still believes in Unconditional Election**, which predestines the **reprobate to hell** with no chance of salvation. By focusing his opponents’ attention on an **extreme position** that he does not believe, the four-point Calvinist appears to take the middle ground and **appear orthodox**.

The belief of 5-point Calvinists is that God provides salvation for the **elect that the elect might be saved**.

The belief of 4-point Calvinists is that God provides salvation for **all men that the elect might be saved**.

So what is the difference? If only the “elect” will be saved, **it doesn’t matter who Christ died for**.

Hence Limited Atonement is of **no importance** to the TULIP system.

The four-point position is **inconsistent** because, “Why should Jesus bear the sins of men, whom God’s decree has predestined to hell and have no chance of forgiveness?”

The Atonement

The true nature of the Atonement is “substitution”, where Christ became a sin bearer and curse bearer, not only **on behalf of** others, but **in the place of** others (II Corinthians 5:21; Galatians 3:13).

Christ’s death as a penal substitution presupposes that God’s holiness and justice demand man’s sins be punished. (I Timothy 1:15). God could not just forgive the sinner, but the sinner can only be forgiven on the ground of Another bearing his punishment. Christ did this voluntarily (John 10:17,18),

completely (John 19:30), once for all (Hebrews 10:10), and by one offering (Hebrews 10:14) that God ‘might be **just** and the **justifier** of him which believeth in Jesus. (Roman 3:26). The grace of God is any move of God toward man. The New Testament only mentions the word “atonement” once: “We also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the **atonement**.” (Rom 5:11). Old Testament Atonements just **covered sin**. Christ’s New Testament Atonement includes:

- a) **Sacrifice**: God’s provision where sin might be covered and the liability of wrath and curse removed (I Corinthians 5:7; Ephesians 5:2; Hebrews 7:27; 10:10,12).
- b) **Ransom**: The securing of release from bondage by paying a price. To be **redeemed** is to be delivered by paying a ransom. Christ, in His sacrificial death, was our substitute, thus redeeming us (Matthew 20:28; Colossians 1:14; I Timothy 2:6; Titus 2:14; Hebrews 9:12; I Peter 1:18,19).
- c) **Expiation**: Christ’s ransom sacrifice was an expiation in that it removed the **guilt** of sin by cancelling it and purging it out. (John 1:29; Hebrews 1:3; 9:14; 9:26).
- d) **Propitiation**: means to placate, pacify, **appease** and conciliate. These presuppose the wrath and displeasure of God at our sin. Hence, Liberals and Modernists dislike the idea of propitiation. Propitiation removes the judicial displeasure of God. It is turning away (or opposing) the wrath of a righteous God against sin, by accepting Christ’s death as a satisfactory substitute. (Romans 3:25; I John 2:2; 4:10).
- e) **Reconciliation**: The propitiatory sacrifice of Christ is the cause for reconciliation (Romans 5:10; II Corinthians 5:18,19; Ephesians 2:16; Colossians 1:20,21; Hebrews 2:17).

Hence, to reject Limited Atonement is not to reject Biblical Atonement. We agree with Calvinists on the **NATURE** of the Atonement, but disagree on the **EXTENT** of the Atonement.

Calvinist's 5 Main Arguments for Limited Atonement

- i) A universal atonement demands a universal salvation (most common). Calvinists believe that, if the atonement was unlimited in scope, then it would result in the universal salvation of all mankind.
- ii) Double Jeopardy: If Christ has paid for a persons's sins, then legally speaking it would be double jeopardy (double punishment) for him to be judged for those sins and sent to hell. Hence, since all men are not saved, Christ could not have died for all men. No man can be held accountable for a debt that has already been paid on his behalf. For God to have laid the sins of all men on Christ, would mean that the sins of the lost would be punished twice, once on Christ, and again on them. That would be unjust. So, God would be unjust to condemn any man to hell for whom Christ died.
- iii) A universal atonement doesn't actually save anyone. "Christ's death in itself did not actually secure or guarantee salvation for anyone." (Steale and Thomas, p.39).
- iv) The relationship between Adam and Christ. Because the sin of Adam was the ground of all men's condemnation, so the righteousness of Christ secured the salvation of those He died for.
- v) The sin of unbelief. If Christ died for all the sins of all men, why are not all men freed from the punishment of all their sins? Because of their sin of unbelief. Since this unbelief is a sin, Christ was punished for this sin as well.

Answer: These Calvinist false conclusions about the Atonement are based on the false premise that the Atonement and its application is the same thing. That is, Calvinists confuse the provision of a Saviour with the applying of salvation. Note these Calvinists' false statements:

- a) "What does redemption mean? It does not mean redeemability, that we are placed in a redeemable position. It means that Christ purchased & procured redemption." (John Murray, *Redemption*, p63)
- b) "From the moment that satisfaction has been made, that debt is forever removed." (Hoeksema, *Limited Atonement*, p 50,51).
- c) "To say that everything turns on the sinner's acceptance, is to affirm that Christ did nothing more for those who are saved than He did for those who are lost. It is not faith which gives Divine efficacy to the blood; it was the blood which efficaciously purchased faith" Pink, *Satisfaction*, p264

So what the Calvinists are saying is that the "elect" were actually saved, redeemed, reconciled and justified by and at the instant of the Atonement.

Answer: Then how is it that the "elect" were born "dead in trespasses and sins" (Eph 2:1)? and how could men who were saved, redeemed, reconciled and justified be "by nature children of wrath"? Eph.2:1 If Calvinists object to this conclusion, then the only other alternative is Unlimited Atonement.

Old Testament Example proving that the Atonement and its Application are to be distinguished.

The blood of the slain Passover lamb (Exodus 12:6,21) became efficacious only after it was applied to the doorposts as per God's instructions (Exodus 12:7,22). When the Lord went through the land of Egypt, He only passed over the houses where the blood was applied, not just where the lamb was slain.

Key: The death of the lamb saved no one: the blood had to be applied. It is obvious that the Bible differentiates between the universal provision and the individual application of Christ's Atonement.

The work of Christ is complete but conditional.

The Calvinist Boettner contradicts Limited Atonement:

"The nature of a ransom is such that when paid and accepted it automatically frees the persons for whom it was intended." (Boettner, *Predestination*, p.155). Likewise Christ's Atonement must be made and accepted. There is a universal provision of Christ's death (Hebrews 2:9), as well as an individual application of Christ's death (John 1:12; Romans 10:13). Christ's Atonement does not result in anyone's salvation until it is applied.

Key 1: The answer to Calvinists' five arguments for Limited Atonement is that they fail to distinguish between the universal provision and the need for an individual application of the Atonement.

Key 2: The Calvinists's argument (1) about a universal atonement demanding a universal salvation disappears when we realize that the so-called "elect" did not exist when Christ died on the cross. Calvinist argument (2) of "double jeopardy" has the alternative that all those for whom Christ died are automatically saved at the cross before they were born. Those unbelievers judged at the Great White Throne Judgment are judged not for their sins, but according to their works that they trusted in to see if

they measure up to Christ's perfect works. (Revelation 20:12,13).

The **Calvinist argument (3)**, that a universal atonement doesn't save anyone, is wrong because:

- a) They imply that, because it did not save anyone at the time it was made, it is impossible to save anyone in the future;
- b) Even if no man ever availed himself of a universal atonement in the Church age, the Calvinist would have to admit that **Christ made an effectual atonement for Old Testament saints**: "And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance." (Hebrews 9:15).

The **Calvinist argument (4)**, concerning the analogy between Adam and Christ, is refuted by understanding that, although Adam's sin was both universal and unrefuseable, Christ's free gift (Romans 5:16,18) must be received (Romans 5:17).

- a) In **Romans 5:15**, although Calvinists correctly interpret the "many" in the first part of v.15 as "all", they change the "all men" in the last part of v.18 into "many", and restrict the "all men" in v.18b and the "many" in v.15b to only the "elect". "But not as the offence, so also is the free gift, for if through the offence of one many be dead (many = "all" Calvinists agree), much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, has abounded unto many." (Many = "all", but Calvinists being inconsistent restrict this "many" to only the "elect"). Rom 5:15
- b) **Romans 5:18** "Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men (all men = everyone, Calvinists agree) to condemnation, even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men (all men = everyone, unlimited atonement, Calvinists disagree being inconsistent) unto justification of life."
- c) Verse 19 explains: "For as by one man's disobedience many (many = all) were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many (many = all who receive it) be made righteous." Romans 5:19. The future tense shows that the benefits of Christ's work apply only to those who receive it.
- d) This is confirmed by "For as in Adam all die (all = everybody) even so in Christ shall all be made alive." (I Corinthians 15:22). Although the sin of Adam was the ground of all men's condemnation, they are excused if they get "in Christ." Calvinists go astray here because all men are in Adam by descent as sinners, and all men "in Christ" are by faith "children of God". Everything depends on being "in Christ". (Ephesians 1:4).
- e) **Isaiah 53:6** "All (all = everybody, Calvinists agree) have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us "all" (all = everybody = unlimited atonement, Calvinists disagree inconsistently)..

Calvinist argument (5) of the "sin of unbelief" has two clear inconsistencies in their reasoning:

- a) Why does God demand that men believe if Christ died for and thereby removed the sin of unbelief? If "he that believeth not is condemned already" (John 3:18), and if this sin of unbelief is expiated and God is propitiated, then no one whom Christ died for could be held responsible for unbelief. They would already be saved.
- b) If Christ did not die for certain men (as Calvinists claim), then those people cannot be condemned for unbelief. If Christ did not die for a man, then there is no Gospel for him to reject or believe. The Holy Spirit will "reprove the world of sin . . . because they believe not on me." (John 16:8,9).

Refuting Calvinists' Proof Texts for Limited Atonement

Calvinists use 3 types of Scriptures in trying to prove Limited Atonement:

- 1) Christ died for the world. } These clearly refute Limited Atonement, so Calvinists redefine
- 2) Christ died for all men. } "world" and "all men" to defend their position.
- 3) Christ died for a particular group.

The biggest problem with limited atonement is found in Scriptures teaching Christ died "for all", or for the "whole world". The Calvinist Sproul adds: "The world for whom Christ died cannot mean the entire human family. It must mean the universality of the elect (people from every tribe and nation)". (Sproul, *Chosen by God*, p 207).

1. Passages showing that **CHRIST DIED for THE WORLD.**

These verses occur in John's gospel, Paul's letters, and in I John. Although Calvinists confuse "the world" with "the elect", the Bible clearly teaches Christ's **unlimited atonement** for the **whole world**:

A. **JOHN's Gospel**

- a) **John 1:29** "Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the **world**". The Calvinist Gunn twists this, saying: "Christ will take away the sin of the world . . . at His Second Coming" (Gunn, p.18). This is false because in the millennium "the sinner being an hundred years old shall be accursed" (Isaiah 62:20 and Revelation 20:7-10).
- b) **John 6:33** "The bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, & giveth life unto the **world**". The Calvinist John Owen twists this to teach that "he saves all the people of God (not Jews only), all over the world". (Owen, p.342).
- c) **John 3:16** "For God so loved **the world**, that He gave his only begotten Son, that **whosoever** believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life".
The Calvinist Pink twists this verse, saying: "The world in John 3:16 must refer to the world of God's people. "Must," we say, for there is no other alternative solution". (Pink, *Sovereignty*, p204). The Presbyterian Dabney writes: "Make "the world" which Christ loved, to mean "the elect world", and we reach the absurdity, that **some of the elect may not believe**, and **hence perish**". (Dabney, *Theology*, p.525).
- d) **John 4:42** "this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of **the world**."
- e) **John 6:51** "the bread that I will give is my flesh, which I will give for the life of **the world**."
- f) **II Corinthians 5:19** "To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling **the world** unto himself, . . ."
- g) **I John 2:2** "He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the **whole world**."
- h) **I John 4:14** "the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of **the world**."

So everything hinges on the meaning of the word "world". Calvinists quickly point out that "**world**" is used in different senses, such as **hyperbolic phrases** like: "behold, **the world** is gone after him" (John 12:19) to prove that the world only means the "elect". We agree that "world" is used in different senses. We dispute Calvinists' claim that "the world" ever signifies the so-called "elect".

FACT: The word "world" occurs **89 times** in John's Gospel and, although it is used in different senses, **it never refers to the "elect"**. Consider these examples where "**world**" could never mean the "elect":

- 1) The world (elect?) knew him not. (John 1:10).
- 2) The world (elect?) hates Christ. (John 7:7).
- 3) The world (elect?) consists of unsaved Jews. (8:23).
- 4) The world's (elect's) prince is Satan. (12:31; 14:30; 16:11).
- 5) The world (elect?) seeth me no more. (14:19).
- 6) The world (elect?) cannot receive the Holy Spirit. (14:17).
- 7) The world (elect?) hates the disciples. (15:18,19; 17:14).
- 8) In the world (elect?) ye shall have tribulation. (16:33).
- 9) The world (elect?) did not know the Father. (17:25).
- 10) Christ's Kingdom is not of this world. (elect?) (18:36).

Hoeksema inadvertently admits that "when our Lord announces Himself as the light of the world, it is evident that He speaks of the world of men, **of the entire human race**". (*Whosoever Will*, p 86).

Hence the world never denotes the "elect", and the world is clearly condemned by God.

The world in John 3:16 could not be the "elect" because:

- 1) What is true in the time of **Moses** (**everyone** that is bitten, when he looketh upon it shall live (Numbers 21:8) is certainly true in the time of **Christ** ("**whosoever** believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life" (John 3:16).
Hence, just as the cure for being bitten was believing what God said and doing it (Numbers 21:8), so the cure for sin was obtained by believing what God said and doing it (John 3:15).
- 2) In Calvinism, the so-called "elect" have never been in danger of perishing and never can be.
- 3) John 3:19 defines the **world** as "**men**": "And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the **world** and **men** loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil."

B. PAUL'S LETTERS: "To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation" 2 Cor 5:19

Question 3: Calvinists use II Corinthians 5:19 to teach that not all men (without exception) have been reconciled, but that God has been reconciling His people ("elect") from the world one by one.

II Corinthians 5:19 teaches that there is a "world" which is reconciled to God. **Who are they?** The "elect", say Calvinists.

Answer:

- a) **Who is identified as the "world"?** The "world" occurs **69 times** in Paul's letters and is used in several different senses, but **never refers to the "elect"**. Consider these examples:
- 1) The world (elect?) by wisdom knew not God. (I Corinthians 1:21).
 - 2) Not the wisdom of this world (elect?). (I Corinthians 2:6). World is disparaged.
 - 3) The princes of this world (elect?) . . . crucified the Lord of glory. (I Corinthians 2:8).
 - 4) We have received, not the spirit of the world. (elect?) (I Corinthians 2:12).
 - 5) The saints shall judge the world. (elect?) (II Corinthians 4:4).
 - 6) Satan is the god of this world. (elect?) (II Corinthians 4:4).
 - 7) Deliver us from this present evil world. (elect?) (Galatians 1:4).
 - 8) In bondage under the elements of the world. (elect?) (Galatians 4:3).
 - 9) Christians shine as lights in the world. (elect?) (Philippians 2:13).
 - 10) The rudiments of the world (elect?) are warned against. (Colossians 2:20).
- b) **What is the nature of reconciliation in II Corinthians 5:19?** The Bible distinguishes between the **universal provision** of atonement and the **individual application** of the atonement. The context of II Corinthians 5:19 shows this is also true of reconciliation.
- 1) **Galatians 1:4** Paul contrasts "us" with the "world": "Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present **evil world** . . ."
 - 2) The "elect" could not have been reconciled at the cross (God "not imputing their trespasses unto them"- II Corinthians 5:19) because **they did not exist then**.
 - 3) The "elect" could not have been personally reconciled at the cross, because they were **still in their sins** until they were saved. ("If Christ be not raised...ye are yet in your sins." I Cor 15:17).
 - 4) If the "elect" were actually reconciled at the cross (as Calvinists say), then what is Paul doing with a **ministry of reconciliation?** (II Corinthians 5:18).
 - 5) In **II Corinthians 5:20**, Paul is beseeching unsaved people to be reconciled to God ("we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God".) Obviously, unsaved people were not reconciled at the cross, but at salvation. Paul did not believe in Limited Atonement.
 - 6) The two aspects of reconciliation are seen in **Colossians 1:20,21** "And having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven. And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet **now hath he reconciled**."
- On the cross, Christ laid the foundation for reconciliation between God and man. He did what He could to secure it. Christ executed a plan that, if properly appropriated by man, the blood of His cross was fitted to secure entire reconciliation between heaven and earth. The offended party (God) sought to be reconciled. God turned His face towards mankind. Hence, the world in II Corinthians 5:19 means the human race generally, without distinction of nation, age or rank. The whole world was alienated from God, and He sought to have it reconciled. When one receives Christ, he is reconciled to God.

C. I JOHN 2:2 and 4:14 clearly state that Christ died for the **world**, as an **unlimited atonement**. **2:2** "he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world." **4:14** "And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world." Calvinists admit that I John 2:2 is a problem to them: "On the surface this text seems to **demolish limited atonement**". (Sproul, *Grace Unknown*, p.176).

Pink gives the standard Calvinist position on I John 2:2: "When John says, "He is the propitiation for our sins", he can only mean for the sins of **Jewish believers**. When John added, "Not for ours only, but

also for the whole world,” he signified that Christ was the propitiation for the sins of Gentile believers too, for, as previously shown, “the world” is a term contrasted with Israel.’ (*Sovereignty*, p.259). Pink adds that ‘to insist that the “whole world” in I John 2:2 signifies the entire human race is to undermine the very foundations of our faith”. (*Sovereignty of God*, p.260).

Answer: It is very strange how Reformed Calvinists, who are so anti-dispensational and who minimize any distinction between Israel and the Church, suddenly become dispensationalists when trying to explain away the unlimited atonement in I John 2:2.

Question 4: Is this catholic (universal) epistle (I John) addressed only to Jews or to the churches?

Answer:

- 1) “These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God;” (I John 5:13).
- 2) The “our” in I John 2:2 cannot be limited to just the Jews. This group referred to as “our” has “fellowship” with the Father, and with His Son Jesus Christ (I John 1:3), and has “an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous”. (I John 2:1). John makes no Jew-Gentile distinction here whatsoever. In Christ there is no Jew or Gentile. “There is neither Jew nor Greek . . . for ye are all one in Christ Jesus”. (Galatians 3:28).
- 3) The words Jew and Gentile do not even occur in I John.
- 4) **In I John**, the word “world” occurs **23 times** and **never refers to the so-called “elect”**.
 - i) We are commanded to “love not the world” (elect?). (I John 2:15).
 - ii) The world (elect?) is full of lust. (2:16).
 - iii) The world (elect?) will pass away. (2:17).
 - iv) The world (elect?) knows neither Christ nor the Christian. (3:1).
 - v) The “spirit of antichrist” is in the world. (elect?) (4:3).
 - vi) Believers overcame the world. (elect?) (5:4).
 - vii) In **I John 5:19**, John contrasts Christians with the world as **two separate groups**: “We know that **we are of God**, and the **whole world** lieth in wickedness”. John uses the term “whole world” twice in I John (2:2; 5:19) and neither case refers to “elect Gentiles”. Hence Christ is the propitiation for the sins of John, the believers he wrote to, and for the sins of the whole world.

Question 5: **Is John 11:49-52 a parallel proof passage as Pink claims?** “If the reader really desires to know the meaning of I John 2:2 let him compare John 11:51,52 . . . it is a strictly parallel passage”. (*Satisfaction*, p 263; *Sovereignty*, p 259).

“Caiaphas, being the high priest . . . said . . . it is expedient for us that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not . . . he prophesied that Jesus should die for that nation; and not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad”. (John 11:49-52).

Pink makes the “children of God” the Church: “Is it not remarkable that the members of the church are here called “children of God”, even before Christ died, and therefore before He commenced to build His church! The vast majority of them had not then been born, yet were they regarded as “children of God”; children of God because they had been chosen in Christ before the foundation of the world”.

(Pink, *Sovereignty*, p. 66).

Answer: But is it not more remarkable how wrong TULIP Calvinism is?

- i) If Christ died for the whole Jewish nation as prophesied by Caiaphas, then, according to Calvinist Limited Atonement, all Jews would have to be saved.
- ii) The phrase “children of God” (except in referring to Israel, Deut.14:1; John 11:52) never refers to members of the church, until they are saved. “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus”. (Galatians 3:26). Before salvation, the “elect” were “children of wrath” (Ephesians 2:3) and “children of disobedience.” (Colossians 3:6).
- iii) If a man was already a New Testament child of God, why would he need an atonement?
- iv) **Question 6:** Who were the “children of God that were scattered abroad”, mentioned in John 11:52? Are they Israel or are they future elect Christians? **Answer:** They are Israel because:
 - 1) John meant only the Jews who were dispersed among all nations since Rome conquered Judea. . . These are called the “dispersed” (“to the 12 tribes which are scattered abroad,” James 1:1; “will he go to the dispersed among the Gentiles?” John 7:35).

- 2) The term “children of God” was an ancient title of the Jewish people, as seen in:
- “Ye are the children of the LORD your God: ye shall not cut yourselves.” Deuteronomy 14:1.
 - “I have said,..... all of you are children of the most High.” (Psalm 82:6).
 - “I will say,bring my sons from far,and my daughters from the ends of the earth” (Isaiah 43:6)
- 3) The meaning is: “Christ was to die, not only for the then inhabitants of Judea, but for all the Jewish race scattered abroad. This would result in all Jews being gathered from dispersion abroad into one body. Paul prophesied that this would occur after Christ’s second coming (Romans 11:1-32).
- John interprets Caiaphas’ prophecy that Christ would die for the Jewish nation, as well as for the Jews “scattered abroad”. (v.52). Hence John 11:49-52 does not interpret I John 2:2.

2. Passages showing that Christ DIED for ALL MEN

As with the word “world”, Calvinists point out that the word “all” is used in different senses, such as hyperbolic phrases like “hated of all men” (Matthew 10:22) to teach that “all” only means the “elect”.

Answer:

- 1) These are normal accepted cases of hyperbole, meaning “an exaggerated statement not meant to be taken literally” (*Oxford Dictionary*). Other examples of hyperbole that Calvinists use to distract people from the unlimited atonement meaning of “all men” are:
- “all men seek for thee.” (Mark 1:37).
 - “all men did marvel.” (Mark 5:20).
 - “Woe unto you when all men shall speak well of you.” (Luke 6:26).
 - “Ye shall be hated of all men for my name’s sake.” (Luke 21:17).
 - “Thou shalt be his witness unto all men.” (Acts 22:15).
 - “Your obedience is come abroad unto all men.” (Romans 16:19).
 - “Prayers ... be made for all men.” (I Timothy 2:1).

- 2) We agree that “all” is used in different senses. We disagree with Calvinist claims that “all” ever means the so-called “elect.” The Bible clearly teaches that Christ’s Atonement was for all men.

- i) Isaiah 53:6 “All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned everyone to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all”..

The last “all” is just as extensive as the first “all” and “everyone”. Calvinists agree that all men have gone astray, but disagree that all men’s iniquities have been laid on Christ. Let us be consistent: “all” means the same in both places. The context defines “all” as “everyone”. If words have any meaning, then “all” those who went astray (100% of mankind) had their iniquity laid on Christ.

Question 7: Have all men gone astray or only some of them? All!

Note: If Calvinists want to get dispensational and say that Isaiah was only referring to Jews (Isaiah 53:8), then they still have the same problem, that the sins of every Jew was borne by Christ (an unlimited atonement for Israel).

- ii) II Corinthians 5:14,15 “For the love of Christ constraineth us (“elect”); because we (“elect”) thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead. And that he died for all, that they which live (are saved) should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again”. Calvinists limit “all” to the “elect”.

Answer: The “all” in v.14 means “all men” as seen by:

- a) The “elect” are already represented in v.14 by “us” and “we”.
- b) Calvinists’ mistake is assuming that all for whom Christ died will live.
- c) After the restrictive “us” and “we” in v.14, “all” is used 3 times in a universal, unlimited sense.
- d) The restrictive phrase “that they which live” (v.15) implies that not everyone of the “all” for whom Christ died, lives. Dabney recognised this: “If we make the all for whom Christ died, mean only the elect, it implies that of those elect that Christ died for, only a part will live to Christ”. (*Theology* p.525).

- iii) I Timothy 2:1-6 “I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers ... be made for all men, for kings, and for all that are in authority; they we (elect) may lead..., for this is good and

acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour; who will have **all men** to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth. the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a **ransom for all**".

Since Calvinists confuse **universal provision** and the **individual application** of the Atonement, they maintain that "a ransom for **all**" should be limited to "a ransom for the **elect**" because the "elect" are the only ones who get saved. Custance thinks it means "all sorts of men." Custance p.162

Answer: Five reasons why "a ransom for **all**" does not refer to "a ransom for the **elect**":

a) The **mediator** is between "God and men", not "God and the elect".

b) The "all men" of v.1,4 do not refer to just classes of men, because **classes of men** are given in v.2. There would be no point doing this, if it had already been done in v.1.

c) The "all that are in authority" of v.2 already **make up a class**, and hence would be meaningless if Calvinists consistently interpret the "all" of v.2 as they did in v.1.

d) If Paul wanted to say all "classes of men" he could have done so:

"to heal **all manner** of sickness and **all manner** of disease." (Matthew 10:1).

"For **every kind** of beasts, and of birds, and of serpents, and of things in the sea," (James 3:7)

e) Calvinists attempting to make the "**all**" (v.6) and "**all men**" (v.4) refer to **all classes of men**, does not solve their problem. God desires their salvation (v.4) and gave Himself a ransom for them (v.6). The "we" (v.2) are the "elect", not the "all men" (v.1,3,6).

iv) **I Timothy 4:10** "For therefore we both labour and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Saviour of **all men**, specially of **those that believe**."

This irrefutably **proves unlimited atonement** by giving the biblical definition of "**all men**". The phrase "**all men**" (100% of mankind) is **contrasted** with "**those that believe**" (the "elect"). Hence the "all men" couldn't be "all sorts of elect men" as Calvinists want it to be in I Timothy 2:1-6.

This contrast between "**all men**" (100% of mankind) & "**those that believe**" ("elect") occurs 4 times:

a) **I Timothy 4:10** "Saviour of **all men**, specially of **those that believe**."

b) **Galatians 6:10** "Let us do good unto **all men**, especially unto **them who are of the household of faith**."

c) **Romans 3:22** "Even the righteousness of God, which is by faith of Jesus Christ **unto all** (100% of mankind) and upon **all them that believe** (the "elect"): for there is no difference."

d) **Titus 2:11,12** "For the grace of God that **bringeth salvation** hath appeared unto **all men** (100% of mankind), teaching **us** (the "elect") that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world."

v) **Hebrews 2:9** "But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour, that he by the grace of God should taste death for **every man**". Calvinists change Scripture when it doesn't agree with TULIP. Boettner gives the standard Calvinist interpretation: "The original Greek, does not use the word "man" here at all but simply says, "for every"." (*Predestination*, p.288).

Answer:

(a) Boettner takes advantage of most people's lack of knowledge of simple Greek grammar, and shows his ignorance as well. Like any other adjective, demonstrative, participle or prepositional phrase, the word "**every**" is used **substantively**. This means that the word "every" is used by itself without a noun because the noun "man" is so commonly and obviously understood to be meant. Examples include:

Luke 6:30 "Give to **every** (Greek: παντι) (man) that asketh thee."

Romans 12:3 "to **every** (Greek: παντι) (man) that is among you."

I Peter 3:15 "be ready to give an answer to **every** (Greek: παντι) (man)"

Revelation 22:18 "I testify unto **every** (Greek: παντι) (man) that heareth"

Hebrews 2:9 "should taste death for **every** (Greek: παντι) (man)."

Question 8: Is Boettner supported by any Greek grammarian? Not Henry Alford (1810-1871). Not Kenneth Wuest (1893-1961). Not A T Robertson (1863-1934).

Pink violates every Greek grammar and text in the world and alters "every man" to "every son", inventing a reading to support limited atonement that occurs in no New Testament manuscript

anywhere in the world. If God wanted to teach limited atonement here, he could have added the word “son” (Greek: υιος).

See Hebrews 12:6 “scourgeth **every son** (Greek: παντι υιον) whom he receiveth.”

- (b) The starting thought is “**What is man?**” (Hebrews 2:6) not “**what are the elect?**” Calvinists fail to note that the context changes from the **general** (v.9) discussing man in general, to the **particular** (v.10). The importance of “**every man**” is that it is even **stronger** than “**all men**”. As Alford writes, “Why “every man” rather than “all men”. We may safely say, that the **singular** (every man) brings out **far more strongly than the plural** (all men) would, the applicability of Christ’s death to **each individual man**.” (Alford, Vol. 4, p.1459).

3. Passages showing that **CHRIST DIED for a PARTICULAR GROUP**.

Calvinists, when faced with such a mountain of evidence for unlimited atonement, retreat to Scriptures discussing Christ dying for a **particular group**, hoping this will disprove unlimited atonement. In these passages, Calvinists insist that Christ died for a **particular group** (the “elect”) to the **exclusion of all mankind**. Calvinists presume that if Christ died for a particular group (the “elect”), then **he died for no one else**. Consider these examples:

- a) **His People:** Calvinists identify the “**many**” that Christ died for as **God’s people**.

Matthew 1:21 “And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save **his people** from their sins.” All Calvinists presume that “his people” here are “the elect”, all whom the Father has “given” him. (Pink, *Sovereignty*, p 65).

What Scriptures prove this? They don’t give any.

Question 9: Who are “his people”?

Answer: The nation **Israel**, because,

- i) “the **world** knew him not. He came unto **his own** (Israel), and his own received him not.” (John 1:10,11). **Question:** Are the “**world**” and “**his own**,” the same as the “**elect**”?

Answer: No, because they neither knew him, nor received him.

- ii) “A Governor, that shall rule **my people** Israel.” (Matthew 2:6).

- iii) “Blessed be the Lord God of **Israel**; for he hath visited and redeemed **his people**.” Lk 1:68

- b) **Sheep:** “I lay down my life for **the sheep**.” (John 10:15).

In **John 10:15** the “**sheep**” are the same as “**his people**”, the nation Israel:

Key: If Christ died for **all** of Israel & **some** were **lost**, then Christ made an unlimited atonement.

- c) **Church of God:** “Feed the **church of God**, which he hath purchased with his own blood.” **Acts 20:28** “Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ loved the **church**, and gave himself for it”. **Ephesians 5:25**.

- d) **Many:** In **Matthew 20:28** “The Son of man came. to give his life a ransom for **many**.” “For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for **many** for the remission of sins” (Matthew 26:28). “Christ was once offered to bear the sins of **many**.” (Hebrews 9:28).

Every TULIP Calvinist who has ever lived, presumes that “**many**” means “elect”.

“**Many:** Notice, this verse does not say that he gave his life a ransom for **all**, but for **many**.” (Boettner, *Predestination*, p.155). “The name “sheep” is synonymous with “elect”, for such are “sheep” before they believed, yea, before they are born”. (Pink, *Satisfaction*, p.251-2).

Notice that the word “**many**” sometimes means “**all**”:

Romans 5:15 “For if through the offence of one, **many** be **dead**, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto **many**.”

Romans 5:19 “For as by one man’s disobedience **many** were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall **many** be made righteous.”

Question 10: Did Adam’s fall affect **all** or only **some** of his descendants? (Ans: All). “**Many**” is used because it better contrasts with “one”. So “**many**” does not prove Limited Atonement.

Calvinists’ claim that **Christ only died for a particular group** is proven **false** because:

- i) The Bible never states that Christ died only for these groups **to the exclusion of all others**.
ii) These groups are **not all one and the same**. Israel is not the church (I Corinthians 10:32).
iii) **Key:** Using this same false Calvinist reasoning, one could conclude that Christ died: - only for **Paul**. . . . “who loved me, and gave himself **for me**”. (Galatians 2:20), or

- only for John and those he wrote to, “he laid down his life for us (I John 3:16), or
- only for Paul and Titus, “who gave himself for us” (Titus 2:14), or
- only for weak believers, “the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died.” (I Cor 8:11).

Calvinists’ err by confusing universal provision and individual application of the atonement.

iv) There are other groups mentioned in Scripture for whom Christ died that Calvinists don’t want to discuss, because they prove unlimited atonement:

a) Those that Christ died for who will ultimately go to hell:

“But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.” (II Peter 2:1).

Not only is Jesus Christ the Saviour (I Timothy 4:10) and Redeemer (I Timothy 2:6) for the world, but he bought the false prophets and false teachers. (II Peter 2:1).

Question 11: Calvinists claim that “Lord” here refers to God the Father and not Christ, because the Greek word for Lord (despotes) is not the usual word for “Lord”.

Answer: If it is God the Father spoken of in II Peter 2:1 it makes no difference, because Paul told the Ephesian elders to “Feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.” (Acts 20:28). (The same Greek word is used of God in Luke 2:29; Acts 4:24; Revelation 6:10; and of Christ in 2 Timothy 2:21).

Question 12: Some Calvinists change “bought” to “delivered” or “created”.

Answer: The same word “bought” is used in I Cor. 6:20: “For ye are bought with a price.”

b) Those groups Christ died for that describe everybody, all mankind:

“For the Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost”. (Luke 19:10). All of us!

“For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.” Roman 5:6

“To redeem them that were under the law.” (Galatians 4:5). Are we all born under the law?

“Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.” (I Timothy 1:15). Are we all born sinners?

“For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust.” (I Peter 3:18). All unjust!

Answer: The reason Calvinists never mention these verses is because, if Christ died for and came to save the lost, the ungodly, those under the law, sinners, and the unjust, then he made an unlimited atonement, for that is the condition of all men, not just the “elect”.

Are only the “elect” lost? (No.) Are only the “elect” ungodly? (No.) Are only the “elect” under the law? (No.) Are only the “elect” sinners? (No.) Therefore, Jesus Christ is “the Saviour of the world” (John 4:42; I John 4:14), of all men, whether all men accept him or not.

c) Christ died for his friends: “Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.” (John 15:13).

Question 13: Who are Christ’s friends?

Answer: Judas was one of Christ’s friends, yet Judas was not “elect”.

“And Jesus said unto him, Friend, wherefore art thou come?” Then came they, and laid hands on Jesus, and took him”. (Matthew 26:50).

Problem: Calvinists read Limited Atonement into every conceivable verse, for example:

“The Lord redeemeth the soul of his servants.” (Psalm 34:22).

The Calvinist Jimmie Davis makes “servants” to be “none other than the elect”.

d) **“Whosoever”** verses proving that Christ’s atonement was for all men.

These verses teach that **“whosoever believeth”** may claim Christ’s atonement and be saved.

-”through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins”. Acts 10:43.

-”gospel of Christ...is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth.” (Romans 1:16).

-”Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.” (Romans 10:11).

-”For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.” (Romans 10:13).

-”Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God”. (I John 5:1).

-”And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” (Revelation 22:17).

Key: There are no “whosoever” with a doctrine of Limited Atonement.

Calvin's Rejection of Limited Atonement

Calvin is thought by some to have modified his doctrine of Limited Atonement as he became older and wiser, until he finally reached the conclusion of an unlimited atonement.

(James Richards, *Lectures on mental Philosophy and Theology*, New York, M W Dodd, 1846, p 308).

Others claim that it was Beza and other followers of Calvin who developed the doctrine of Limited Atonement. Beza was Calvin's successor and chief theologian of the Reformed Church after Calvin.

Note: Article 31 of the Church of England's *39 Articles* adopted shortly before Calvin's death, states that, "The offering of Christ once made is the perfect redemption, propitiation, and satisfaction for all the sins of the whole world." (Schaff, *Creeds*, Vol 3, p 507).

Consider Calvin's comments on these verses:

- a) "gave his life a ransom for many" (Matthew 20:28) - "Paul is not talking of a part of mankind, but of the whole human race." (Calvin, *Commentaries*, Vol 2, p 273).
- b) "shed for many for the remission of sins" (Matthew 26:28) - "The word "many" does not mean a part of the world only, but the whole human race." (*Commentaries*, Vol 3, p 139).
- c) "bear the sins of many" (Heb 9:28) - "He says many meaning all, as in Romans 5:15" (Vol 12, p.131).
- d) "taketh away the sin of the world". (John 1:29) - "When he says the sin of the world he extends this kindness indiscriminately to the whole human race." (Vol 4, p 32).

The Other Side of Limited Atonement

Calvinists insist that the reason Christ's blood was shed only for the "elect," is because God did not want any others to be saved.

The Calvinist Culance says: "Limited Atonement tends to weaken the incentive to evangelism".

(Steele & Thomas, p.38). John Murray laments: "It is frequently objected that this doctrine is inconsistent with the full and free offer of Christ in the Gospel." (Culance, p.286).

Key: If no offer can be made to the "non-elect", and the "elect" are sure to be saved, all preaching is not only vain and useless, but an absolute, total and complete waste of time.

The Calvinist Culance says: "We ought not to use such a misleading appeal as "Christ died for you" because we cannot apply this to any man indiscriminately unless we know he is to be counted among the elect, a knowledge which we cannot have with certainty". (Steele and Thomas, p.38).

In Calvinism, election does not guarantee anyone's salvation unless Christ dies for them. Calvinists cannot tell someone that Christ died for him unless he is "elect", which Calvinists never know for sure.

Question 14: How does a Calvinist know if anyone is saved or not?

Answer: The Calvinist answer is if they persevere in holiness in their profession of faith to the end.

Conclusion: The Calvinist debate about Limited Atonement is a smoke screen to conceal the true nature of Calvinism which says that God by a sovereign, eternal decree of Unconditional Election has consigned billions of people to hell before their birth. To make it certain, God has given them

Total Depravity so that they will be unable to receive Irresistible Grace, which will not even be offered to them, since Christ did not make a Limited Atonement for them.

Reply: God's Word is not bound by the philosophical speculations of Limited Atonement. 2 Tim 2:9.

Conclusion:

i) Calvinists, in order to believe and preach limited atonement, must rewrite both the Dictionary and the Bible, so that:

- a) "world" doesn't really mean "world",
- b) "all" doesn't really mean "all",
- c) "whosoever" doesn't really mean "whosoever".

ii) Calvinists who believe limited atonement, cannot tell people that Christ died for "their" sins, or "our" sins, because they don't know if the unsaved hearers are elect. Yet Paul did tell the Corinthians this in 1 Cor. 15:3. Instead, they preach a false gospel saying that "Christ died for His people's sins."

iii) If 5-point Calvinists want to limit the atonement to only the elect, then to be consistent, they must also limit the death which passed from Adam to the human race to many, and not all, as Romans 5:18, "Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life."

This teaches that the free gift of eternal life is available to all mankind, not just to the elect.

Paul's passionate drive for souls was based on the fact that "Christ died for all." 2 Corinthians 5:13-15.

4. **IRRESISTABLE GRACE (The Efficacious call of the Spirit).**

Definition: God's grace, when presented by the Holy Spirit, is such that it is impossible for the sinner to resist or refuse.

Calvinists claim that in addition to a general call to salvation which is made to everyone who hears the gospel, the Holy Spirit efficaciously calls the elect that inevitably brings them to salvation. Calvinists claim that God's grace is invincible, never failing to result in the salvation of those it is extended to.

Answer: There is no such thing in the Bible as "irresistable grace." Never in the Bible do we find the word "irresistable" connected with the word "grace". It is the vain philosophy and imagination of John Calvin and his followers.

Grace means "God's unmerited favour". Grace is an attitude, not a power. God does not force people to be saved with an imaginary "irresistable grace."

I. Scriptures refuting "Irresistable Grace"

Can a sinner resist God's grace when presented by the Holy Spirit? These verses say "YES":

i) "Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost; as your fathers did, so do ye." Acts 7:51.

Stephen declares that the Holy Spirit was exerting a drawing power on the Sanhedrin, but they resisted God's saving grace. They and their fathers opposed the message brought by Moses, the prophets, Christ, the apostles and by Stephen. This refutes "irresistable grace". People can resist the Holy Spirit. The term "stiffnecked" also refutes the Calvinist's "irresistable grace". It is a farming term describing stubborn oxen that would not submit to be yoked. Stephen applied it to the Sanhedrin who resisted God's efforts to save them.

ii) "And the Lord said, My Spirit shall not always strive with man,..." Genesis 6:3.

God's Spirit strove with sinners before the Flood, but only 8 were saved. All the rest resisted God successfully. This proves that people can resist God's striving with them for salvation.

Question: Why would God strive with sinners whom He has not chosen to be saved?

The whole idea of God "giving people up" would be meaningless if there had not been prior strivings.

iii) God the Holy Spirit strives with all men.

"When he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness and of judgment." John 16:8.

iv) When sinners continually resist God's saving grace, there comes a time when God "gives them up". In Romans 1:24,26,28 three times it is said that "God gave them up".

The whole concept of "giving people up" would be meaningless if there had been no prior strivings.

v) Jesus said sincerely with tears (not generally) that He would have gathered them, but they would not.

The Jews at Jerusalem resisted Christ's efforts to gather them together, as seen by the phrase, "how often would I have gathered thy children together... and ye would not." Matthew 23:37.

vi) If Christians can resist God's grace in sanctification, so can unbelievers resist God's grace in salvation: "Quench not the Spirit." 1 Thessalonians 5:19. "Grieve not the Spirit." Ephesians 4:30.

vii) Proverbs 29:1 shows that men do resist and reject God.

"He that being often reproved hardens his neck, shall suddenly be destroyed, and that without remedy."

God often strives with and reproves some people, until after they have continually hardened their neck, God suddenly destroys them. This shows that man can resist God's saving grace.

viii) Jesus said to the Jews, "Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life." John 5:40.

Here Jesus clearly teaches us that men can and do resist God by refusing to come to Him.

If "irresistible grace" was true, Jesus would have said "Ye cannot come to me". "Ye will not" means that:

a) God wants all "non-elect" to be saved, thus refuting unconditional election, and

b) Sinners can resist God's grace, thus refuting irresistible grace.

ix) **Question:** Why would God strive with sinners whom He hasn't chosen to be saved?

"Their eyes have they closed." Matthew 13:15. They resisted God's saving grace by closing their eyes.

x) Men are condemned not because they are un-elect, but because they resisted God's saving grace, and because they loved darkness rather than light.

"And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than

light, because their deeds were evil." John 3:19.

Conclusion: People do resist the Holy Ghost. Some do refuse to come to Christ.
Some do harden their necks. Some do refuse when God calls.
This means that those who rejected Christ, could have received Him.
God offers salvation to all who want it, but doesn't force it on those who don't want it.

II. Results of the “Irresistible Grace” Error.

1. Hopelessness: Many people are hopelessly lost if TULIP is true.

If you are not pre-selected to salvation, this means that:

- a) You cannot ask Christ to save you, because you haven't got a free will. (T)
- b) You cannot get elected, because that decision was made before creation. (U)
- c) Even if you wanted to be saved, you couldn't, because the Limited Atonement theory says that Jesus did not die for your sins. (L)
- d) If you are un-elect, you never get any “irresistible grace” to save you. (I)

2. One wrong assumption leads to wrong conclusions.

All of this nonsense comes from one basic false assumption, which is that man has no free will.

Key: The Bible plainly teaches and everywhere assumes that mankind (saved or lost) has the power of choice even though he is sinful and powerless to save himself. Man would not be responsible for his actions if he had no choice. Follow how this wrong assumption leads to wrong conclusions:

- a) Total Depravity denies that man has a free will.
- b) Unconditional Election teaches that, because man does not have a free will (being dead), he cannot choose Christ. Hence, if any are to be saved, God must predestine some to be saved and some to be damned. (This can be the only explanation as to why some are lost, following false assumption a).
- c) Limited Atonement logically follows because it would be unreasonable to expect God to lay the sins of non-elect people on Jesus if He had no intention of saving them.
- d) Irresistible Grace

~ If man has no free will to choose Christ (unless preselected), and

~ If God unconditionally elects some to be saved and others to be damned (if anyone was to be saved), and

~ If Jesus bore the sins only of the preselected ones, how could anybody resist God's determination to save them? They couldn't resist God! Hence if you have no free will, and you are elect, then you can't resist getting saved, right? No! Wrong! Dead wrong! All because of a **wrong first assumption**.

Bible Truth: God foreknows who will choose Christ to be their Saviour. When people receive Christ, they are part of the elect body, the church. God predestines them to glory. God wants all men to be saved and has provided sufficient redemption for all men to be saved. This includes: free will, a condition of election, and unlimited atonement. If men go to hell, it is because they rejected Christ. “He that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.” John 3:17-19,36

3. Inventing a General Call and an Effectual Call to Salvation.

After accepting Irresistible Grace, Calvinists must then invent **two calls** (a General and an Effectual call) to explain why some get saved and others don't in response to Christ's many invitations to salvation. Calvinists support “Irresistible Grace” by claiming that there are 2 calls:

- a) A General Call (or insincere call) of God to sinners. This invitation goes out to the whole world inviting them to receive Christ. This call is rejected by the non-elect. It is not intended to bring sinners to repentance, but to leave sinners without excuse. They cannot say that they were not invited to be saved. Therefore, they have to say that they rejected God's invitation. The general call is not effectual to produce salvation.
- b) An Effectual Call (sincere call) is the call that God gives to the elect. It does not go to the un-elect, but is reserved for those especially chosen to salvation. Calvinists claim support from these verses:
 - i) General Call: “For many are called, but few are chosen. Matthew 22:14.
“Come unto me all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.” Matthew 11:28.
This general call to sinners is designed to shift the blame for their damnation from God to them. There is no possibility that this general call can result in salvation.
 - ii) Effectual Call: “We know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose.” Romans 8:28.

4. This theory makes **God** out to be a **hypocrite, dishonest, and a liar**, who has a “sincere call” and an “insincere call”. In the general call, He insincerely invites everybody to come for salvation, but He doesn’t really mean it. What an insult against Christ that He would invite sinners to Himself, promising them salvation if they came, yet having no intention of giving them the effectual call that enables them to respond. This is **BLATANT DISHONESTY**. It is like offering lollies to a crippled child, knowing that he could not reach out and receive it. “God’s blessings are God’s enablings.”

If God commands **all men everywhere** to repent (Act17:30), then it must be possible for **all men** to repent.

There is no more serious charge against God than to infer that God is LYING when He invites millions of lost souls to be saved. “It was impossible for God to lie.” Hebrews 6:18.

“he (the devil) is a liar, and the father of it.” John 8:44.

To attribute dishonesty to God is to **identify God with Satan**. This is a **very serious** error. Let Calvinists acknowledge their **blasphemous error** and seek the pardon of God for their sins. (Leviticus 4:22,28,35 discusses a sin offering made for the sins of ignorance).

III. Verses Calvinists Use To Support “Irresistible Grace.”

1. **John 1:13** Which were born, **not of blood**, nor of the **will of the flesh**, nor of the **will of man**, but of God.

Question: Doesn’t John 1:13 say that we are born again **NOT by the will of man**, but by God’s unconditional election?

Answer: What does the will of **blood**, **flesh** and **man** mean?

a) “Not of **blood**”: Jews prided themselves in being **descendants of Abraham**. (Matthew 3:9).

They saw this as a sign of God’s favour. Here this error is corrected. It is not because men are descended from pious parents such as Abraham, that they are entitled to God’s favour.

b) “Nor of the will of the **flesh**”: Not by the natural human desire for children, not by natural generation, not the result of the **husband’s will**.

c) “Nor of the will of **man**”: Not to the will of man in **adopting** a child.

Hence, we become children of God, not by our descent from **illustrious parents** like Abraham, not by our **natural birth**, and not by being **adopted by a pious man**.

d) “but of **God**”: **God produces the change** and confers the privilege of being called His children.

A person receives Christ as Saviour, but the work of the Holy Spirit is “the cause” of regeneration.

2. a) **Matthew 22:14** “**For many are called, but few are chosen.**”

Question: Doesn’t this say that God only chooses a few to be saved, and that they experience irresistible grace, and that everyone gets a general call, but only a few get an effectual call?

Answer: No. It just teaches that the great mass of people **in the time of Christ, who had been called**, had **rejected the mercy of God** in Christ, so God didn’t choose them.

When the King who made the marriage feast for his son greeted the guests, he noticed a man without a wedding garment. In anger, the King rebuked him, asking him to explain his situation. The man was speechless, so the King ordered him to be bound hand and foot, taken away, and cast into outer darkness. Then he said, “For many are called, but few are chosen.”

In Christ’s day, wedding garments were provided by the host for the wedding guests. This man’s lack of a wedding garment was inexcusable, and his **speechlessness** indicated his realization of the fact.

A garment had been provided for him by the King, but he had refused or neglected to wear it.

Christ placed the responsibility for the man’s lack of a wedding garment, squarely on the man himself.

His lack of reply indicated his guilt. This in no way pictures “irresistible grace”, nor does it teach a “general” and “effectual” call. It pictures unlimited atonement because of:

i) The **custom** was for the host to provide wedding garments.

ii) His **speechlessness & lack of excuse** indicates his guilt & personal responsibility, not the King’s fault.

b) **Matthew 20:16** “**For many be called, but few are chosen.**”

The parable of the householder hiring labourers to work in his vineyard, has nothing to do with anyone’s election to salvation, but it relates to **service** and **rewards**. It means that among the multitudes of Christians **called** to serve God, God **chooses** some to a short period of labour but to **great usefulness**, while this does not injure others who serve God longer but have less useful, less widespread and less rewarded ministries. Christ calls **many** to service, but **few** are **chosen** to big ministries. God chooses

some for higher stations in churches, with superior talents, gifts and wider usefulness. Their life's work may be shorter, but Christ has a right to choose to honour them in this way. Christ chooses some to be more useful than others, without regard to their length of service. Christ will reward them accordingly.

3. Acts 13:48 “**And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.**”

Question: Calvinists claim that this verse teaches:

- i) Unconditional election of God ordaining some people to eternal life.
- ii) A Limited number only are “ordained to eternal life.”
- iii) This “ordination of God” is not to service or external privileges, but to eternal life.
- iv) Irresistible grace, as seen from the words “as many as” meaning that all who are ordained by God to eternal life will most certainly believe.

Answer: This text has been most pitifully misunderstood. Calvinists presume it to mean that those in the assembly who were foreordained, or predestined by God's decree to eternal life, believed under the influence of that decree.

We must be careful to study what a word means before we attempt to fix its meaning.

In Greek, “ordained” here is “tetagmenoi” coming from the verb “tasso” (5021) meaning to: “appoint, arrange in military order, to determine, to order, to place in a certain rank or order, to dispose.”

i) Notice how these authorities explain this passage:

- a) “It does not properly refer to an eternal decree, or directly to the doctrine of election; ...but it refers to their being **THEN** (not in eternity past decreed) disposed to embrace eternal life. They were **then inclined** by an influence from outside themselves, or so disposed as to embrace eternal life. It refers not to an eternal decree, but that **then** there was such an influence as to dispose them, or incline them, to lay hold on salvation. That this was done by the influence of the Holy Spirit, is clear from all parts of the New Testament. (Titus 3:5,6; John 1:13). It was not a disposition or arrangement originating with themselves, but with God... The meaning may be expressed in few words:- who were disposed, and in good earnest determined, to embrace eternal life, by the operation of grace on their hearts.”
“Albert Barnes Commentary on the New Testament in One Volume”. p.464.
- b) “Whatever “tetagmenoi” may mean, which is the word the KJV translates “ordained,” it includes no idea of preordination or predestination of any kind. The verb “tasso” signifies to “place, set, order, appoint, dispose”; hence it has been considered here as implying the disposition or readiness of mind of several persons in the congregation, such as religious proselytes mentioned in v.43, who possessed the reverse of the disposition of those Jews who spake against those things, contradicting and blaspheming, v.45.
Though the word in this place has been variously translated, yet, of all the meanings ever put on it, none agrees worse with its nature and known signification than that which represents it as intending those who were predestined to eternal life; this is no meaning of the term and should never be applied to it.” Adam Clarke’s Commentary on the Bible’ p.995.
- c) “**Ordained**: This is the perfect passive participle of the verb “tasso”, which was used primarily in the military sense: “draw up in order, arrange in place, assign, appoint, order.” R.J. Knowling comments: “There is no countenance here for the absolute decree of the Calvinists, since v.46 had already shown that the Jews had acted through their own choice, “but seeing **ye put it from you**, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn unto the Gentiles.” He then says: “The Jews as a nation had been ordained to eternal life- but they had rejected this election. But those who believed among the Gentiles were equally ordained by God to eternal life, and it was in accordance with His divine appointment that the Apostles had turned to them.”
“Word Meanings in the New Testament”, Ralph Earle.
- d) “There is no evidence that Luke had in mind an absolutum decretum of personal salvation. Certainly the Spirit of God does move upon the human heart to which some respond, as here, while others push him away.” ‘Word Pictures in the NT.’ A.T. Robertson, Vol. III. p.200.

ii) Notice some **other Greek words** which were **not** used:

a) "**DIATASSO**" is a **strengthened form** of "TASSO", frequently denotes to arrange, appoint, prescribe (eg. of what was appointed for tax collectors to collect, Luke 3:13; as God appointed Moses to make the tabernacle, Acts 7:44; what Paul ordained in all the churches about marriage, 1 Cor. 7:17; what the Lord ordained regarding the support of preachers, I Cor. 9:14). These show "Tasso" is not irresistible.

b) "**PROTASSO**" is to "**appoint before**", as "**pro**" means "**before**". God "**hath determined the times before appointed**", and the bounds of their habitation." (Acts 17:26) of the nations. "Vines Expository Dictionary of NT Words" p. 70,71. This word "**protasso**" is **NOT** used in Acts 13:48. If it had been used, it would have presented a stronger case for "**foreordination**." It's absence is fatal to the Calvinist's claim of unconditional election.

c) "**PROORIZO**" = "To predestine, decree beforehand" is not used.

iii) The word "**TASSO**" is used 8 times in the New Testament., with meanings as follows:

a) To **command** or **designate**: "Into a mountain where Jesus had **appointed** them." Matthew 28:16. Before Jesus' death, he previously appointed or commanded them to meet him on a mountain.

They could have disobeyed. There is no idea of irresistible compulsion. Jesus told Paul to "go into Damascus; and there it shall be told thee of all the things which are **appointed** for thee to do." Act22:10. The Jews at Rome "**appointed** Paul a day" to visit his house to hear him preach about Jesus. Acts 28:23

b) To **institute** or **appoint**: "The powers that be are **ordained** of God." Romans 13:1.

c) To **determine, take counsel, resolve**: "they **determined** that Paul and Barnabus...should go up to Jerusalem about this question." Acts 15:2.

d) To **subject to the authority of another**: "For I also am a man **set under authority**." Luke 7:8.

The centurion was appointed or designated, as a soldier, to be under the authority of another.

e) To **addict to, devote to**: "They have **addicted** themselves to the ministry of the saints." 1 Cor. 16:15.

The meaning of "TASSO" is thus:

I) "TASSO" is **never** used to denote an **internal disposition** or **inclination** arising from one's own self. It does not mean that they disposed themselves to embrace eternal life.

II) "TASSO" means **ordering, disposing** or **arranging from the outside**, from some source other than himself. As a soldier, who is arranged, classified, disposed or inclined by the will of his superior officer.

III) Key: "TASSO" in **Acts 13:48** means that the Gentiles were **THEN disposed**, and in good earnest determined, to embrace eternal life, **by the Holy Spirit influencing their hearts**. It does **NOT** refer to an **eternal decree of election**, but they then experienced and submitted to a drawing power of the Holy Spirit to salvation.

5. PERSEVERANCE OF THE SAINTS (POTS)

"Perseverance of the saints" is ambiguous and obscure. As POTS was originally formulated and interpreted, it is opposed to eternal security. POTS is not essential to Calvinism. Some Calvinists, recognising the Arminian implications of "perseverance", change it to "preservation".

If all Calvinists defined POTS as Rose does, we would have no argument with them on the fifth point.

"The doctrine declares that once God has begun the work of salvation in any person, **He will persevere** therein to the end and will never let any of His own be lost." (Rose, p.49).

However, most Calvinists do not emphasize this. They say that it is the **believer** who **perseveres outwardly** in the faith, as shown in these 3 quotes: "This doctrine teaches that those who truly come to saving faith in Christ **will persevere in the faith**." (Gunn, p.24).

"We may entertain the faith of **our security in Christ only as we persevere in faith** and holiness to the end." (John Murray, *Redemption*, p.155).

"They whom God hath accepted in the Beloved, effectually called, and sanctified by his Spirit, can neither totally nor finally fall away from the state of grace, but **shall certainly persevere to the end**, and be eternally saved." (*Westminster Confession of Faith*, XVII:1).

In spite of Calvinists' attempts to connect them, **God's preserving** in salvation is not the same thing as the **saints persevering** outwardly in the faith.

Six Conclusions from Calvinists' Definition of Perseverance of the Saints

i) The saints will persevere in the faith.

ii) Only those who persevere in the faith are true Christians.

iii) Those who do not persevere in the faith are lost, no matter what they once professed. "Those who persevere not in faith and holiness, love and obedience, will surely perish." (Pink, *Eternal Security*, p.28). Since all Christians do not always persevere in perfect obedience, Calvinists are faced with a problem.

iv) The solution to Christians not persevering is that real Christians will return to the faith before death.

v) When faced with the problem that some Christians never return to the faith, Calvinists conclude that such were never saved in the first place.

vi) Calvinists' definition of perseverance is that POTS is different from eternal security.

Key: Because eternal security is so often equated with POTS, Calvinists often coerce Christians into accepting all the 5 points of Calvinism, by capitalizing on their opponents' belief in eternal security.

This is done by implying that a rejection of election and predestination (as taught by Calvinists) is a rejection of eternal security. The Calvinist, Mason, says: "If unconditional election is false, then the doctrine of "once in grace, always in grace" is false." (Mason, p 32).

"If the doctrine of election is false, then this doctrine (POTS) is false too, but if the doctrine of election is true, then this doctrine (POTS) necessarily follows." (Palmer, p 69).

Many who believe eternal security think they are Calvinists because they equate it with perseverance of the saints.

Arminianism

Calvinists insist that there are only two tenable schemes among true Christians: Calvinism and Arminianism. According to Calvinists, anything contrary to Calvinism is Arminianism.

Key: This arbitrary division of men into Calvinist or Arminian is the strength of the Calvinistic system. Calvinists make such shocking statements about Arminianism that no one would dare claim to be an Arminian. If there are only two theological systems, then most men who desire to appear orthodox would claim to be a Calvinist.

Calvinists further misrepresent their opponents by using the "guilt of association" argument, by classifying Arminians with everything that is unorthodox or heretical. Calvinists then attempt to denigrate Arminianism by implying that Arminians believe in salvation by works. Calvinists think that only in Calvinism can we find the teaching of salvation by grace, so they charge any non-Calvinist with believing in salvation by works. This accusation is often enough to convert one to Calvinism.

Key: When everything contrary to Calvinism is labelled Arminian, and Arminianism is presented in the worst possible light, many know they are not Arminian and take the name of Calvinist by default.

Note:

i) Arminianism is not an acceptable alternative to Calvinism.

Calvinists think that if one rejects Calvinism, then he is an Arminian. To this we strongly object.

ii) Calvinists have a false view of eternal security. Their perseverance view is the same as Arminians.

a) R L Shank (an Arminian): "There is no saving faith apart from obedience." (*Life in the Son*, R L Shank, 2nd Ed, p 219, Westcott Publishers, Springfield).

b) "There is no valid assurance of election and final salvation for any man, apart from deliberate perseverance in faith." (Shank, p 293).

c) A W Pink (Calvinist): "Reader, if there is a reserve in your obedience, you are on the way to hell." (*Practical Christianity*, p.16).

d) "Holiness in this life is such a part of our "salvation" that it is a necessary means to make us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in heavenly light." (Pink, *Sanctification*, p.28).

Hence Calvinists have the same thinking on perseverance as Arminians.

Calvinists confuse God's preservation of the believer with the believer's perseverance in the faith, thus making salvation possible only with a holy life without any blemish. Hence, the other side of POTS is Arminianism, which is a works-based salvation, and not by faith alone. "not of works, lest any man should boast." (Ephesians 2:9). "Not by works of righteousness which we have done ..." (Titus 3:5).

For a Calvinist to teach otherwise, is to teach another gospel (Galatians 1:6).

Key: Contrary to salvation through perseverance (as taught by Calvinists), the Bible presents salvation by one thing – believing.

“This one word “believe” represents all a sinner can do and must do to be saved.” (LS Chafer, *Salvation*, p32) God saves those who believe (John 3:16; 6:47; Acts 16:31; Romans 10:9). Those who refuse to believe are lost (John 3:18; 3:36; 8:24). Calvinists require that believers must persevere in good works as a condition of salvation. This is another gospel. Hence, Calvinists are Arminians regarding the fifth point. Calvinists and Arminians both wrongly presume that:

a) The “castaway” in I Corinthians 9:24-27 has lost his salvation;

b) “He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.” (Matthew 10:22). Calvinists think this means that one’s salvation is only sure by enduring to the end of one’s life. This passage, in fact, has nothing to do with anyone’s salvation in the Church age, but teaches that if Tribulation saints endure the Antichrist’s persecutions until the end of the 7 year Tribulation, then they will be saved/delivered from this persecution by Christ’s return.

c) “Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself (from carnality, not hell), and them that hear thee.” (I Timothy 4:16).

Calvin writes of this: “Pastors ... own salvation and that of their people depends on their serious and earnest devotion to their office.” (Calvin, *Commentaries*, Vol 10, p 248). Calvinists and Arminians presume that the word “salvation” always refers to salvation from hell. Salvation from hell is not meant in II Corinthians 1:6; I Timothy 2:15; Luke 1:71; Acts 27:31.

Curtis Hutson wrote: “The eternal security of the believer does not depend on his perseverance.” (p.16). The Calvinist E K Garrett calls Hutson an “Arminian Baptist Evangelist.”

Calvinists call any opponent an Arminian, no matter what they believe.

Note: The New Testament clearly teaches that Christians may not persevere. It is possible to:

- 1) Depart from the faith (I Timothy 4:1).
- 2) Err from the faith (I Timothy 6:10).
- 3) Err concerning the faith (I Timothy 6:20).
- 4) Deny the faith (I Timothy 5:8).
- 5) Make shipwreck of the faith (I Timothy 1:19).
- 6) Cast off one’s first faith (I Timothy 5:12).
- 7) Swerve from the faith (I Timothy 1:6).
- 8) Not continue in the faith (Colossians 1:23).
- 9) Fall from their own steadfastness (II Peter 3:17).
- 10) Become barren and unfruitful (II Peter 1:8).
- 11) Deny Christ (II Timothy 2:12).
- 12) Be ashamed when Christ returns (I John 2:28).

Bible characters that did not persevere include:

1) The Corinthian fornicator who was delivered to Satan (I Cor. 5:5) and later restored (2 Cor. 2:6-8).

2) Hymenaeus and Alexander were also delivered to Satan (I Timothy 1:20).

3) Demas forsook Paul having loved this present world (II Timothy 4:10).

4) Mark deserted Paul (Act 13:13), yet Paul later said, ‘He is profitable to me for the ministry.’ 2Tim4:11

5) “Just” Lot (II Peter 2:7), “righteous” Lot (II Peter 2:8) last seen drunk in a cave committing incest with his two daughters (Genesis 19:33,36).

Question: Did Lot persevere in the faith? No. A righteous man can turn from his righteousness and never turn back (‘When the righteous turns away from his righteousness & commit iniquity’ Ezek18:24). The Bible exhorts believers to persevere, and practise good works, but never in order to keep salvation.

a) “Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord.” (I Corinthians 15:58).

b) “Keep yourselves in the love of God.” (Jude 1:21).

c) “Be not conformed to this world, but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind.” (Romans 12:2). These and other Scriptures have no meaning if all Christians are sure to automatically persevere. See Ephesians 2:10; Colossians 1:10; Titus 3:8; Hebrews 10:24.

Question: Why do some Christians not persevere?

(Matthew 26:41.

a) “Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation: the spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.”

b) “For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.” (Romans 7:18).

Key: The error of Calvinists and Arminians is in discounting the Judgment Seat of Christ (Romans 14:10; I Corinthians 3:13-15; II Corinthians 5:10) where crowns are given. (I Corinthians 9:25; I Thessalonians 2:19; II Timothy 4:8; James 1:12; I Peter 5:4).

Compare salvation and rewards:

a) Salvation is offered to the lost (John 3:18); rewards are offered to the saved (I Corinthians 3:14).

b) Salvation is a free gift (Ephesians 2:8); rewards are earned by our works (I Corinthians 9:25).

c) Salvation is a present possession (John 5:24); rewards are a future possibility (II Timothy 4:8).

Key: Christians are given many instructions on how to live, but never on how to maintain or persevere in salvation: “Abstain from all appearance of evil.” (I Thessalonians 5:22);

See I Corinthians 10:31; Colossians 3:17; Philippians 4:8.

Question: What can happen to Christians in this life if they fail to persevere?

Answer: They may lose their joy; assurance of salvation; close fellowship with the Father, Christ and believers; rewards; and physical life, but they cannot lose their salvation.

Lordship Salvation: The Calvinist teaching of Perseverance of the Saints has recently surfaced among modern Fundamentalists and Evangelicals as “Lordship Salvation”, which is “front loading” the Gospel by requiring works of submission and obedience as conditions for salvation. (Dillow, p.10).

The real issue here is whether a sinner must make Christ the Lord of his life at the time he believes on Christ for salvation. Lordship advocate, Otis, writes: “Friend, if Jesus Christ isn’t the Lord of your life, then you are yet lost in your sins.” (Otis, p.7).

Notable propagators of Lordship Salvation are A W Pink, J I Packer and John MacArthur. MacArthur’s Calvinism is seen from his using terms like “sovereign grace” and “perseverance of the saints”.

Errors of Lordship Salvation are:

1) Their denial that there can be a carnal Christian.

Answer: Paul referred to the Corinthian brethren as carnal: “And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual, but as unto carnal, even as unto babes in Christ.” (I Corinthians 3:1).

2) Their denial that a believer has two natures which conflict: “For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.” (Galatians 5:17). This states the possibility of Christians not “walking in the Spirit” which is not practising the Lordship of Christ. “So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.” (Romans 7:25).

3) They blur the distinction between a believer’s standing and state:

Answer: Standing is, “He hath made us accepted in the beloved.” (Ephesians 1:6) and

State is: “Wherefore we labour, that whether present or absent, we may be accepted of him.”

(II Corinthians 5:9). (See also Romans 5:1 and Philippians 4:7).

Standing concerns what I am as God sees me through Christ’s work.

State concerns my actual condition of soul.

4) They accuse their opponents of “easy believism” or believing in “cheap grace.”

Answer: In the Bible, grace is not only cheap, it is free, otherwise it would not be grace.

“But not as the offence, so also is the free gift... much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, ... hath abounded unto many.” (Romans 5:15).

Question: What do we reply to the charge of “Easy believism”?

Answer: Are Calvinists advocating “hard believism”? What is “hard believism”? How hard is belief?

The Bible nowhere presents believing on Christ for salvation as something hard to do. (Except in the NIV’s false and foolish rendering of Mark 10:24). In fact, believing is the only thing one can do to claim salvation: “But to him that worketh not, but believeth on him that justifieth the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness.” (Romans 4:5).

It might be hard to admit that one is a sinner heading to hell, or hard to admit that trusting in religion or good works won’t save us, but once these are conceded, believing on Christ for salvation is easy.

Salvation is pictured as being as easy as calling on Christ to save (Romans 10:13); looking (Isaiah 45:22); asking (John 4:10); coming (Matthew 11:28); receiving (John 1:12); eating (John 6:51); drinking (John 7:37); trusting (Ephesians 1:13), and taking (Revelation 22:17).

Claiming salvation is easy, since Christ has done all the work on the cross. We can add nothing to it.

Forsaking the Bible's plan of salvation is the only way that believing on Christ can be made difficult

5) They confuse **salvation** and **discipleship**. Salvation is obtained in an instant. Discipleship is an on-going process. Salvation costs us nothing. Discipleship costs us everything. (Luke 14:26,27).

That discipleship is not salvation, is seen from these Scriptures:

- a) Some were disciples first and then Christians later: "his disciples believed on him" John 2:11.
- b) **Judas** was a disciple, but not saved (John 12:4).
- c) **Joseph** of Arimathea was a secret disciple for fear of the Jews (John 19:38), yet still saved.
- d) If discipleship is salvation, then Christ's disciples lost their salvation when they lost their discipleship, because "all the disciples forsook him and fled." (Matthew 26:56).

6) They fail to understand that there are **3 aspects of sanctification**.

This error leads to lordship salvation and perfectionism.

- a) **Positional** sanctification: "ye are washed, but ye are sanctified,... by the Spirit." (I Cor. 6:11). "We are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all." (Heb.10:10). God sees us sanctified positionally in Christ.
- b) **Progressive** sanctification: "Sanctify them through thy truth." (John 17:17). "For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication." (I Thess. 4:3). As we gain victory over temptation, we are progressively sanctified.
- c) **Future** sanctification "who shall change our vile body." (Philippians 13:21). "When he shall appear, we shall be like him." (I John 3:2). (future sanctification). "Every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself (progressive sanctification), even as he is pure (positional sanctification by justification)." (I John 3:3). The sanctification necessary for the salvation of any Christian has already been attained by Christ's sacrifice. (Hebrews 10:10).

7) They have a **distorted view** of **faith** and **repentance**. Repentance is basically a change of mind about Christ, myself as a sinner, and the inability of my works to save me. Paul preached repentance as being different from turning to God and doing works: "that they should repent, and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance." (Acts 26:20). Calvinists and Lordship salvationists wrongly define repentance as turning from sin, changing one's life, remorse, etc. **Key**: The obvious question is: **How much** must one turn from sin to be saved, when nobody can ever totally turn from sin? This brings us to works for salvation.

8) They rely on **modern Bible versions** to prove Lordship salvation. Compare KJV (correct) with: **Colossians 2:6 KJV**: "As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in him." **New International**: "So then, just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord, so continue to live in him" **Good News Bible**: "Since ye have accepted Christ Jesus as Lord, live in union with him." Instead of reading "the Lord" (KJV), many modern versions change it to "as Lord" or "is Lord".

Romans 10:9

Authorised Version (KJV): "That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus,"

New International Version: "That if you confess with your mouth, "Jesus is Lord".

Good News Bible: "If you declare with your lips, "Jesus is Lord", ..."

II Corinthians 4:5

Authorised Version (KJV): "We preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; ..."

New International Version: "For we do not preach ourselves, but Jesus Christ as Lord, ..."

Good News Bible: "For it is not ourselves that we preach; we preach Jesus Christ as Lord."

9) They **don't precisely define** what Lordship salvation really is.

Otis writes: "Obedience to God's commandments is submission to Christ's Lordship." (p. 21).

"Submitting to Christ's Lordship is the constant obedience to God's commandment." (p.25).

Answer: If this is true, then no Calvinist ever submitted to the Lordship of Christ. To walk as Christ walked is to really submit to his Lordship. This means sinless perfection which is

impossible before heaven. God demands absolute perfection at all times. Anything less is a rejection of Christ's Lordship. No Lordship salvation advocate says that a man must live absolutely sinless to be a genuine believer. But how much lordship is required to be one of God's 'elect'? Does smoking (as Spurgeon did) disqualify one from practising lordship? What about drinking alcohol, lying, coveting, pride, anger, bad thoughts? Calvinists reply that it is the habitual practice of these that prove one is lost.

Question: But how does one define "habitual practice"?

Question: What if someone surrendered to quitting all these the moment he was saved, but was unable to continually achieve it always? Is his salvation now questionable?

Key: The real problem is that Lordship salvation teachers have set up their own standards to measure a person's salvation. If these standards are not met, they conclude he is not saved. Only if the person meets their standards do they consider him saved. "The gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth" (Romans 1:16) not to every one who surrenders to the Lordship of Christ.

10) The difference between salvation and lordship is seen in **Paul's different instructions** to unsaved and saved men:

To the unsaved: "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved." (Acts 16:31).

To the saved: "I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service." Rom 12:1. No unsaved man could ever meet the demands for always 100% surrendering to Christ's lordship. The Calvinist John Robbins calls John MacArthur a semi-Arminian because of his book '*The Gospel According to Jesus*.' "MacArthur's book is very confused and dangerous. It does not present the Gospel according to Jesus, but another gospel, which is not the gospel at all, and similar to that of the Roman Church." (p.1,4).

Lordship salvation is dangerous because it gives:

- a) a false assurance of salvation to those trusting their works to save them;
- b) assurance of salvation based on our works, rather than a trust in Christ's finished work on the cross.

Preservation by God or Perseverance by us?

If salvation is all of grace and entirely the work of God, it could never depend on whether a man persevered. Perseverance implies persistence, continuance and effort by us, and is a work of man.

- 1) a) The word "persevere" is used only once in the Bible, about prayer (Eph.6:18), not salvation.
b) The word "preserve" is used 5 times in relation to salvation: (II Timothy 4:18. "The Lord shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom" "to them that are sanctified by God the Father, and preserved in Christ Jesus, and called." (Jude 1). "The Lord shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth, & even for evermore." Ps 121:8 "The Lord ... forsaketh not his saints; they are preserved forever." (Psalm 37:28). "Your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ." (I Thessalonians 5:23).

2) Christians are united with Christ ("in Christ"). The solution is to get out of Adam and into Jesus Christ: "For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive." (I Corinthians 15:22).

- Believers are: ~ "joined unto the Lord." (I Corinthians 6:17);
~ "members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones." (Ephesians 5:30);
~ "partakers of the divine nature" (II Peter 1:4);
~ "crucified with Christ" (Galatians 2:20);
~ "quickened with Christ" (Ephesians 2:5);
~ "risen with Christ" (Colossians 3:1);
~ "alive with Christ" (Colossians 3:3-4);
~ "seated together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus." (Ephesians 2:6).

This union with Christ is the central truth in salvation, and is pictured as a:

- i) Foundation and its building (Ephesians 2:20-22);
- ii) Vine and its branches (John 15:5);
- iii) Husband and his wife (Ephesians 5:23,30-32);

- iv) Body and its members (I Corinthians 12:12);
- v) Shepherd and his sheep (John 10:14);
- vi) Adam and his descendants (I Corinthians 15:22).

- 3) **Question:** Is salvation an instantaneous act of God, or is it a process that depends on man's perseverance? Both Calvinism and Arminianism teach the latter.
- 4) Believers are preserved because of **Biblical predestination** that we are “predestinated to be conformed to the image of his Son.” (Romans 8:29). This is one of the greatest promises and surest proofs of eternal security. ~”we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.” (I Cor. 15:49). ~”who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body.” Phil 3:21. ~”we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him.” (I John 3:2).
Predestination is a Biblical doctrine, but Calvinists have misapplied it.
- 5) “If we believe not, **yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself**.” (II Timothy 2:13). Both Calvinists and Arminians teach that a man must continue believing throughout his life in order to be saved. (MacArthur, *Gospel According to Jesus*, p 172; Shank, *Life in the Son*, p 55,60). Both hastily refer to II Timothy 2:12 “If we suffer, we shall also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us.” (II Timothy 2:12). This verse refers to Christ’s denying some believers the reward of millennial rulership if they deny him now.
The next verse destroys Calvinist and Arminian perseverance: “If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself.” (II Timothy 2:13). Our preservation depends on Christ’s faithfulness, not on our perseverance. Christ would have to deny himself and his promises, if we lost His salvation, because we are in him (Philippians 1:1), no man can pluck us out of his hand (John 10:28), and we are part of his hand (Ephesians 5:30).

Calvinists make perseverance depend on something man does. “Perseverance of the saints” is a result of Reformation concern that “justification by faith” would produce moral laxity in the church, so they teach that only those who persevere are truly saved.

Bad results of Perseverance of the Saints:

- 1) **Lack of Bible teaching** on: a) The Judgment Seat of Christ;
b) God disciplining backslidden believers in this life;
c) Gain or loss of heavenly rewards.

These subjects are rarely taught in churches that believe in works or perseverance for salvation.

- 2) Calvinists’ error is in equating **preservation by God**, with perseverance of the saints. God knows who is saved: “Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the heart.” I Sam 16:7.
- 3) “Perseverance of the saints” contains a **false view of assurance of salvation**, because it makes salvation depend on election, and not on receiving Jesus Christ as Saviour.

Conclusion: Calvinism, according to John Wesley, “represents our Lord as a hypocrite, a deceiver of the people, a man void of common sincerity, as mocking his helpless creatures by offering what He never intends to give, by saying one thing and meaning another.” (Schaff, History, Vol. 8, p.566). One’s view of election determines one’s method of evangelism. In Calvinism, there is no need for any evangelist at all, because the “elect” are sure to be saved by “irresistable grace” whether we preach the gospel or not. Refuting this, Paul warns, “Woe is unto me if I preach not the gospel.” (I Cor. 9:16). It is sure that the more consistently a man practices his Calvinism, the less evangelistic he becomes. When all else fails, Calvinists appeal to Charles Spurgeon’s ministry as proof that one can be both evangelistic and Calvinistic. Spurgeon’s successful, large church was not due to his Calvinism, but was because **he inconsistently practiced his Calvinism**.

Custance alleges that “when we depart from Calvinism with its emphasis on God’s sovereign grace and man’s helplessness, we constitute ourselves as sowers, germinators, and with the power to give life.” Paul departed from Calvinism: “my son Onesimus, whom I have begotten in my bonds.” Philemon 10. “(I) might save some of them.” (Romans 11:14). “that I might by all means save some.” (I Cor. 9:22). “in Christ Jesus I have begotten you through the gospel.” (I Cor. 4:15).

Source: “The Other Side Of Calvinism”, Laurence M. Vance, Vance Publications, PO Box 11781, Pensacola, Florida, USA, 32524, Phone/Fax 850-474-1626. Used with kind permission of L.Vance.

4 KEY DEFINITIONS: Adoption, Predestination, Foreknowledge, Election.

Many people wrongly embrace Calvinism because:

- i) They fail to correctly define these four terms, and
- ii) They fail to study and understand all the scriptures discussing each term.

1. ADOPTION (Gk: huiothesia = son-placed = getting our resurrected, glorified bodies in heaven 5206). Four scriptures discussing “adoption” are:

- i) **Present** adoption for our **soul**: “ye have received the spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.” Rom. 8:15,16.
- ii) **Future** adoption of our **body**: “For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now. And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, ...waiting for the adoption, the redemption of the body.” Romans 8:23.
- iii) **Future** adoption of our **body**: “to redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons, ...” Galatians 4:5,6.
- iv) **Future** adoption of our **body**: “Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children (Gk: sons) by Jesus Christ to himself...” Ephesians 1:5.

Definition: “Adoption” in the NT is “son placed”, not “son made.”

It comes from the Greek word “huiothesia” (5206), which is made up of two words, “huios” (a son, 5207), and “theso” (future tense of “to place” (5087)).

I. The Meaning of Adoption (huiothesia). See Ephesians 1:5.

Adoption is an act where God sets a goal, or placed a certain destination and position for the believer. That goal is:

- i) To receive a sinless resurrection body (Romans 8:23),
- ii) To be fully conformed to the image of Christ in heaven (Romans 8:29), and
- iii) To be introduced to the universe as fully glorified sons of God (I John 3:2).

Adoption in the NT does NOT mean “adopting a child born of other parents.”

Calvinists think that adoption means “son made”, which would prove from Ephesians 1:5 that we are predestinated to become saved. Since adoption means “son placed” in heaven, this refutes the Calvinist view of predestinated to be saved, and proves that we are predestined to be conformed to the image of Christ. (Romans 8:29).

The difference between being “son made” and “son placed” is as follows:

- i) You are “son made” or made a son of God the moment you receive Christ as Saviour. As a son, God has provided some privileges and benefits that we will only receive in the future, when we get our resurrection body at Christ’s return.
- ii) No one has been “son-placed” (adopted) yet. One time you will be. You belong to Christ now, just as much as you ever will be. But you have not yet arrived at the goal which God has predestinated you to become which is Adoption (or son placing).

Question: What is the background meaning and origin of being “son -placed”?

In the early days of the Roman Empire, when a boy was born into his family, he was cared for by his parents until he was 21 years of age. At age 21, they took their child and placed him in the marketplace before the public. This was his “son placing” event. From that time on he could sign his own legal documents, and possessed the full legal authority of a man.

Note: This act at the market place did not make him a son. He was made a son when he was born into his parent’s family. At age 21 he was “son placed”.

Translation problem: The KJV translators could find no equivalent English word for “huiothesia”, this act of “son placing” at age 21, because “son placing” does not occur in our society. So the KJV translators used the word “Adoption” as the only word to express God’s transaction of placing a certain destination, position, inheritance and full legal status for the believer. Hence the translators have Paul using “adoption” in the NT to mean “son placed.”

We can now see how **Ephesians 1:5 does NOT teach that God predestines us to be saved**, but that God predestines us to be “son placed” **after Christ’s return**.

“Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children (Greek is “sons” in “huiothesia”) by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will.” Ephesians 1:5.

II. The Time of Adoption (huiiothesia = son placing). Romans 8:23.

Question: When will this “son placing” adoption take place?

i) When our groaning, travailing bodies get redeemed when Christ returns.

“For we know that the whole creation groaneth and travaileth in pain together until now.

And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the firstfruits of the Spirit, . . . waiting for the adoption, to wit the redemption of the body.” Romans 8:23.

The firstfruits in a believer’s life are pardon, forgiveness, service, fellowship, acceptance, security, sanctification, etc. Notice that adoption is not mentioned here among the firstfruits of the Spirit. We should have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groaning within ourselves & waiting for something to take place.

Question: What are we waiting for? The Adoption.

Question: When will it take place? At the redemption of our bodies when Christ returns. (Romans 8:23). We now have redeemed souls in unredeemed bodies. Many teach that the new birth and adoption mean the same thing. This is not the teaching of God’s Word. The new birth took place when we received Christ as Saviour, and became a child of God. Adoption will occur when we receive our glorified body. “That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.” Ephesians 2:7.

Question: When will believers experience the riches of his grace and kindness?

Answer: After we are “son placed” in heaven in the ages to come. Christ came not only to save us from the penalty and power of our sins, but He came that we might be “son placed.” The angels of heaven will gaze at us with an unbelievable amazement when they see the wonderful grace of the Lord Jesus in “son placing” saved sinners.

ii) We may not be much like Jesus now, but some day every believer will be like Him. “Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.” I John 3:1,2.

This is the real purpose of God, to have many sons who would be like His Son.

Thus we define Adoption as “God setting a goal for each believer to be son placed in heaven.”

This is what God predestines us to be, and our adoption is therefore certain.

III. The Present Manifestation of Adoption. Romans 8:15.

“For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.” Romans 8:15.

These believers in Rome in addition to receiving Christ as Saviour, had at the same time also received the Spirit of adoption, known as the Holy Spirit. As a believer, we have not yet been adopted, but we do have the Spirit of adoption. We are:

- i) Now under God’s protection and care,
- ii) We relate to God as children by obeying him,
- iii) We call upon him as “Father” in loving confidence.

The “Bible Knowledge Commentary” states: “Because of present sufferings (Romans 8:18) believers, like creation, groan inwardly (Romans 8:22) as they wait eagerly for their adoption as sons, which is identified as the redemption of their bodies. The word “adoption” (huiiothesia) means “placing as a son”, and describes a believer’s legal relationship to God.

In one sense each believer has already received the adoption, because he has “received the Spirit of adoption” (Romans 8:15) and is a son of God (Galatians 4:6,7). At the same time, as Romans 8:23 states, believers still anticipate their adoption in its completeness, which is said to be the redemption of their bodies (Romans 8:23). This is called the “manifestation of the sons of God” (Romans 8:19), and the “glorious liberty of the children of God” (Romans 8:21). It will occur at the rapture of the church when believers will be raised and transformed with glorious bodies. Paul called that day the “day of redemption.” (Ephesians 4:30). Walvoord and Zuck. p.472,473.

IV. The Participants in Adoption – “we.” Galatians 4:5.

“To redeem them that were under the law, that WE might receive the adoption of sons. And because ye are sons. . .” Galatians. 4:5,6.

Question 1: Who looked forward to the adoption of sons?

Answer: “**We**.” This means that Paul and the Galatians both did. Only those who are “**son made**” will be “**son placed**.”

Question 2: Why did Jesus Christ come?

Answer: a) To redeem them (everybody) that were under the penalty of the law.
b) That we might receive the adoption of sons.

Comments by Other Authorities.

i) “**Adoption:** What is that to which God has foreordained us? The answer is: adoption. The Greek word is “hiothesia”, which occurs in Romans 8:15,23; 9:4; Galatians 4:5, and Ephesians 1:5. Literally the term means “a **placing as a son**.” “Adoption of children” (KJV, Eph. 1:5) is literally “adoption as sons.” We become children of God by the new birth; we become sons of God by adoption. The latter is a legal term. Adoption was not a Jewish custom, but a Roman one.” “Word Meanings in NT.” R.Earle, p289

ii) “**Waiting for the adoption** (Romans 8:23): Waiting for the full blessings of the adoption. Christians have the spirit of adoption when they are converted (Romans 8:15), but they have not yet been admitted to the full privileges of their adoption into the family of God. The fullness of their adoption is their complete admission to the privileges of the sons of God. It is the completion of our being received into the family of God. “The redemption of the body”. The complete recovery of the body from death and corruption. The particular and striking act of the adoption..will be the raising up of the body from the grave, and rendering it immortal and eternally blessed. The particular effects of the adoption in this world are on the soul.

The completion of it will be seen particularly in the **body**; and thus the entire man will be admitted into the favour of God, restored from all his sins, and all the evil consequences of the fall. In the presence of an assembled universe he will be acknowledged as a son of God. This elevated privilege gives to Christianity its high value.” Barnes Notes on the NT. p 608.

2. PREDESTINATION (Gk: “**proorizo**” = to determine or to decree beforehand. 4309).

It comes from 2 Greek words, “**pro**” (before, 4253) and “**horizo**” (to determine, 3724).

Let us study the 6 times it occurs in the NT (Acts 4:28; Romans 8:29,30; 1 Cor. 2:7; Ephesians 1:5,11.)

The peace of Christendom has been disrupted due to many people misunderstanding this word.

I. Definition: “**Adoption**” is an act where God sets a goal (son placing) for each believer.

“**Predestination**” is an act where God makes that goal (of son placing) certain for each believer.

Note: “Predestination” is made up of 2 words, “**pre**” meaning “beforehand”, and “**destination**” meaning the “climax, end, farthest extent.” It has nothing to do with anything in between.

Illustration: By paying a train fare beforehand, the railway promises to deliver you to your destination.

II. The Purpose of Predestination.

Question 1: What are we predestined to become?

Answer: i) The **Adoption of sons**, or “son placing” us in heaven.

“Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children (sons) by Jesus Christ himself, according to the good pleasure of his will.” Ephesians 1:5.

ii) **Conforming** us to the image of Christ:

“And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to His purpose.” (What is God’s purpose?)

“For whom He did foreknow, He also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of His Son, so that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.” Romans 8:28,29.

(**Note:** “Firstborn” (4416 Gk: “prototokos” means “pre-eminent, first, ruler”, not “firstcreated”).

iii) **Becoming like Jesus Christ:**

“Beloved, now are we the sons of God (“son born”), and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.” 1 John 3:2.

III. The Time of Our Conforming to the Image of Christ.

Question 2: When will we be conformed to the image of Christ?

Answer: When our body is redeemed (Romans 8:23) in heaven. That is the time of our adoption.

“We ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption (Gk: hiothesia (5206) = son placing), to wit, the redemption of our body.” Romans 8:23.

IV. The Church in Ephesians.

- a) In Ephesians 1-3, we have the church as God sees her, accepted (v.6), redeemed, forgiven (v.7), an inheritance (1:11), sealed with the Holy Spirit (1:13), enlightened in understanding, hope of his calling, riches of glory, great power (1:18,19), Head of the church (1:22), quickened (2:1,5), raised and seated in heavenly places (2:6), his workmanship (2:10), near to God (2:13), broken partition (2:14), abolished enmity of the 10 commandments (2:15), reconciled (2:16), access to the Father (2:18), fellow citizens, household of God (2:19), built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Christ chief cornerstone (2:20), holy temple (2:21), habitation of God (2:22), Jews and Gentiles fellowheirs (3:6), demonstrating the wisdom of God to principalities and powers in heaven (3:10), boldness and access with confidence (3:12), family of God (3:15), inner strength (3:16), Christ in our hearts, rooted and grounded in love (3:17), filled with the fulness of God, knowing the love of Christ (3:19).
- b) In Ephesians 4,5,6, we see the Church as God desires the world to see her, in her walk and work (Note 40 elements to walk worthy from 4:1. See Answers, p.268).
- c) In Ephesians 1:4,5 God decided before the foundation of the world that He would have a church with its foundation "in Christ", and that it would be a holy, blameless, and loving church. The words "us" and "we" in Ephesians refer to the church as Christ's body.
- d) God does not predestine individuals to heaven or hell. The only individual God predestines is Christ, and it is to suffering and to glory: "the Spirit of Christ...testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow." 1 Peter 1:11.
It is blasphemy to say that God predestines individuals to hell.

V. NT Occurrences of "Predestination." (proorizo (4309) = determine beforehand).

- a) Acts 4:28 "For to do whatsoever thy hand and thy counsel determined before to be done."
Herod and Pilate crucifying Jesus was predetermined or foreordained by God.
- b) "For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of His Son... Whom he did predestinate, them he also called..." Romans 8:29,30.
- c) "but we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery,..which God ordained before the world unto our glory." 1 Cor. 2:7. We proclaim God's wise plan of salvation. It's purpose was for our glory and benefit.
- d) "Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself..." (v.5)
"being predestinated according to the purpose of him..." (v.11). Ephesians 1:5,11.

3. FOREKNOWLEDGE (proginosko (4267) = to know beforehand).

This comes from 2 Greek words, "pro" (before, 4253), and "ginosko" (to know, 1097).

"For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son" 1Pet 1:2

I. Definition: Foreknowledge is a divine attribute, where God sees all things in the present tense. There is no past or future with God. God is "I AM", eternally present tense. Neither time nor space restrict God, since He created both (2 Peter 3:8).

Because God foreknows all things, it doesn't mean that He foreordains or causes them.

II. Scriptures Teaching God's Foreknowledge

- i) Psalm 139:1-8 "Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar of...and art acquainted with all my ways. (v.3)...thou knowest it altogether (v.4)." God knew David, his thoughts, his whole life conduct, at all times and in all places.
- ii) John 8:55,58 Jesus said: "I know him (my Father)", and "Before Abraham was, I am."
Jesus knew all things that existed before him in the present tense.

4. ELECTION (Greek: ekloge (1589) = to choose, select).

Election in Romans 9: "**God's Election of Israel.**"

9:1 "I say the truth in Christ, I lie not."

Paul here makes one of the most solemn oaths possible. He makes a 3-fold appeal to:

- i) Christ as the searcher of hearts, that he tells the truth.
- ii) His Conscience was totally clear in this matter.
- iii) The Holy Ghost bore him witness that what he said was true.

This oath in the Name of the Messiah shows that it is right on solemn occasions to appeal to Christ for the sincerity of our motives, and for the truth of our words.

Christ Who is present everywhere with all believers (as God) searches our hearts to detect insincerity, hypocrisy and perjury.

9:2 “That I have great heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart.”

Paul moved from the joy of thinking about Christ in Romans 8, to the sorrow and burden of unsaved Israel in Romans 9. Whenever Paul thought on Israel’s rejection of Christ, it gave him great grief.

9:3 “For I could wish that myself were accursed (Greek: anathema) from Christ for my brethren my kinsmen according to the flesh.”

Question: What does this mean?

Answer: The word “accursed” (Greek: anathema) means anything devoted to destruction, complete ruin, subject to a curse (I Kings 20:42). (Compare “anathema” = curse, with “anathēma” = suffering). It does not denote eternal death. Paul is saying: “I am willing to be destroyed, devoted to death, suffer the bitterest evils, to forego all pleasure, to endure any privation, suffering & toil if it resulted in saving the nation Israel.” Moses had this attitude (Exodus 32:32). Paul was willing to be so greatly devoted to Christ and to suffer and die if by that means he could save Israel. This is an example to Christians that we should be willing to endure pain, privation, toil and death if this resulted in others getting saved.

9:4,5 “(i) Who are Israelites; (ii) to whom pertaineth the adoption , and (iii) the glory, and (iv) the covenants, and (v) the giving of the law , and (vi) the service of God, and (vii) the promises; (viii) whose are the fathers, and (ix) of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen.”

Background: Romans 9 discusses Israel’s past election.

Romans 10 discusses Israel’s present rejection.

Romans 11 discusses Israel’s future restoration to favour.

In Romans 9, Paul shows how Israel’s past history magnifies the character and attributes of God, those being His faithfulness (v.1-13), righteousness (v.14-18), justice (v.19-29) and grace (v.30-33).

In Romans 9:4,5 Paul mentions 9 historical benefits of Israel:

i) Who are Israelites: They were descended from Israel (formerly Jacob) meaning “prince of God” (Genesis 32:26-32). The name “Israelites” conveyed their very high dignity as a royal nation as being princes of the Most High God.

ii) The Adoption: God adopted the nation Israel into His family.

“Israel is my son, even my firstborn.” (Exodus 4:22).

“I am a father to Israel.” (Jeremiah 31:9).

“When Israel was a child, then I loved him, and called my son out of Egypt.” (Hosea 11:1).

“The LORD thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto himself...” (Deuteronomy 7:6).

This adoption took place when God made a covenant with them at Mount Horeb.

iii) The Glory: The shekinah glory cloud was the manifestation of God’s very presence among them. It appeared as the pillar of cloud and fire as they left Egypt (Exodus 13:21).

It appeared between the cherubim in the Ark of the Covenant in the Tabernacle (Exodus 25:22 and 40:34), and in Solomon’s Temple (1Kings 8:10,11; Isaiah 6:1-5).

The glory Moses beheld on Mt. Sinai came to dwell with Israel (Exodus 24:16,17; Isaiah 6:1-5).

No other nation was ever thus favoured.

iv) The Covenants given to Abraham (Genesis 15:18), Moses and David (II Samuel 7:12-16).

The Covenants included the Abrahamic (Genesis 12:1-3; 15:1-7; 17:1-8), the Mosaic (Exodus 20,21), the Davidic (2 Samuel 7:10-16; 1 Chronicles 17:7-15; Psalm 89:27-37), and the New Covenant (Jeremiah 31:33; Ezekiel 34).

v) The Giving of the Law on Mt. Sinai to govern Israel’s political, social and religious life (Exodus 20; Deuteronomy 5:1-33). It was the foundation of all true legal codes ever since.

vi) The Service: The ceremonies and sacrifices in the temple teaching the sinfulness of sin and the holiness of God.

vii) The Promises include the land of Canaan, the Messiah’s blessings, and His coming 1000 year kingdom on earth.

viii) Whose are the **fathers**: some of the greatest men that ever lived were Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Moses, Joshua, Samuel and David.

ix) And of whom as concerning the flesh came **Christ who is over all** (*Most High*) **God** blessed forever. Amen.

Question: Does Romans 9:5b refer to God or to Christ?

If it refers to **Christ**, it would clearly prove His Deity as reading “Christ who is **over all God** blessed forever. Amen.” There were no commas in the early NT Greek manuscripts. The placing of commas, full stops and question marks were inserted by the translators’ opinion. Does Romans 9:5b equate Christ with God? We say it does refer to Christ as God because:

i) The KJV, ASV, NASV, NIV put a **comma before “who”**. This endorses the **Deity of Christ**.

KJV: “of whom as concerning the flesh Christ *came*, who is over all, God blessed for ever.”

NIV: ‘from them is traced the human ancestry of Christ, who is God over all, forever praised’.

This reading is supported by most church fathers.

ii) The RV, RSV, NEB, GNB, NWT place a **full stop after “Christ”**.

Thus they don’t equate Christ with God. They merely make the end of the verse a **benediction to God**.

GNV: “Christ, as a human being, belongs to their race. May God, who rules over all, be praised forever

NWT: “from whom Christ (sprang) according to the flesh: God, who is over all, (be) blessed forever.”

Answer: We endorse i) for these reasons:

i) The **antithesis** implied between the 2 clauses in the verse, favours this view. Paul has just stated that Christ (as to his **human nature**) was an **Israelite**, and now states that according to His **higher nature**, is the supreme, Most High **God**, or “God over all.” These are a matching contrast, an appropriate antithesis, and are complementary to each other.

For a similar example see Romans 1:3,4 “Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the **seed of David** according to the **flesh**, And declared to be the **Son of God** with power according to the **Spirit of holiness**, by the resurrection from the dead.”

Here Christ is said to be according to His **human nature**, the **Son of David**, but according to His **Divine nature** declared to be the **Son of God**.

ii) Romans 9:5b makes **3 statements about Christ**.

He is **Lord over all**, He is **God by nature**, and He will be **praised and blessed forever**.

Paul’s salvation experience and scripture study forced him to redefine his Jewish monotheism to include Christ within the category of Deity.

iii) The **relative pronoun “who”** must agree with its nearest antecedent, which is “**Christ**.” This link proves Christ is the **Supreme God**. There is grammatical agreement between the noun “Christ” (ὁ Χριστός) and the participle “who is” (ὁ ὢν).

iv) **Context:** The blessing to Christ best suits the context. It is a natural climax to the list of special privileges enjoyed by the Jews. It would be very unnatural to suddenly change the subject, and break out in blessing to God.

v) **Word Order:** Those who deny that Romans 9:5b teaches the Deity of Christ, must make the word “**blessed**” (Gk: eulogatos) refer to **God the Father** as a Doxology to Him. Examples:

- The Revised Version (1880) reads: “...according to the flesh, is the Christ. God who is over all be blessed forever. Amen.”

- The Good News Version reads: “May God, who rules over all, be praised forever! Amen.”

- The New World Translation reads: “flesh: **God**, who is over all, [be] **blessed** forever. Amen.”

They are faced with a **major difficulty**, as follows:

Whenever “**blessed**” (Gk: “eulogatos”) occurs in an independent **doxology**, “**eulogatos**” always

precedes the name of “God” (Θεός = theos) (eg: “**εὐλογητός ὁ Θεός**” as in 2 Cor.1:3; Eph.1:3;

1 Pet.1:3. But in Romans 9:5, “**eulogatos**” **follows the name of God:** “**Θεός εὐλογητός**”.

The **word order** of doxologies is **never** “God blessed” **or** “God be blessed” as in Romans 9:5.

(In doxologies to God or Christ, the **word** “blessed” (“eulogatos”) **always occurs first**. This is not the case in Romans 9:5).

Hence Romans 9:5 cannot be a doxology to God, but must be taken as a declaration of who is blessed, that being Christ as God. This potent argument is conclusive in itself.

vi) Absence of the article before “blessed.” Because “εὐλογητος” (“blessed”) is not preceded by the article in Romans 9:5, the meaning cannot be “the blessed God”, which would require a different reading “(ὁ) Θεος ὁ εὐλογητος.” See “Jesus as God.” Murray J. Harris. p.161.

vii) “over all” is equivalent to “Most High, supreme.” We may read Romans 9:5b as: “as concerning the flesh came Christ who is Most High God blessed forever. Amen.”

The same words occur in Ephesians 4:6, “One God, who is above all.” (ἐπὶ πάντων).

This passage, therefore, shows that Christ is God in the highest sense of the word.

Since Jesus Christ is God over all, and blessed forever, how profound should be our reverence, how complete our obedience, and how joyful should be our confidence in Him.

viii) The expression “Christ who is over all (things) God blessed forever. Amen,” is expressly acknowledged to refer to Christ by 60 well known early church writers, these being: Irenaeus, Hippolytus (3 places), Origen, Malchion, 6 Bishops at the Council of Antioch (269 AD), ps. Dionysius Alex (2 places), the Apostolic Constitutions, Athanasius (6 places), Basil (2), Didymus (5), Gregory of Nyssen (5), Epiphanius (5), Theodorus Mops, Methodius, Eustathius, Eulogius (2), Caesarius (3), Theophilus Alex (2), Nestorius, Theodotus of Ancyra, Proclus (2), Severianus Bishop of Gabala, Chrysostom (8), Cyril of Alexandria (15 times), Paulus Bishop of Emesa, Theodoret (12 times), Gennadius, Severus, Amphilochius, Gelasius Cyz., Anastasius of Antioch, Leontius Byz (3), Maximus, J. Damascene (3), Tertullian (2), Cyprian, Novatian (2), Ambrose (5), Palladius the Arian at the Council of Aquileia, Hilary (7), Jerome (2), Augustine (30 times), Victorinus, the Breviarum (2), Marius Mercator, Cassian (2), Alcimius Avit, Fulgentius (2), Leo Bishop of Rome (2), Fernandus (2), Facundus, plus 6 ancient writers. All these see in Romans 9:5 a glorious assertion of the eternal Godhead of Christ. “The Revision Revised,” John Burgon, p. 210-214.

ix) If the theme of Romans 9:1-4 is Israel’s unbelief, it would be very appropriate to end the paragraph by referring to the exalted status and nature of Israel’s rejected Messiah. It would be totally inappropriate to conclude with a joyful praise to God in the context of Israel’s rejection of Christ.

x) Since Paul elsewhere taught that Jesus shares the full names, nature, attributes and functions of God, we should not be surprised to see Paul here referring to Jesus as God.

xi) The phrase “blessed forever” was usually added by Jewish writers after mentioning God’s name as an expression of reverence.

I Chronicles 16:36 “Blessed be the Lord God of Israel for ever and ever.”

I Chronicles 23:13 “to minister unto him, and to bless his name for ever and ever.”

I Chronicles 29:10 “Blessed be thou, Lord God of Israel our Father, for ever and ever.”

Nehemiah 9:5 “Stand up and bless the Lord your God for ever and ever.”

Psalms 72:19 “Blessed be his glorious name for ever.”

Psalms 145:1 “I will bless thy name for ever and ever.”

Daniel 2:20 “Daniel said: Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever.”

Romans 1:25 “the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.”

Conclusion: As opposed to the indignity and rejection perpetrated on Jesus by His fellow Israelites, the Messiah, Jesus Christ, is in reality exalted over the whole universe, He is fully God by nature, and is eternally the object of worship.

9:6 “Not as though the word of God hath taken none effect.”

In spite of these 9 privileges, Israel failed by rejecting and crucifying their Messiah.

Question: Does Israel’s failure mean that God’s word has failed? (Or taken none effect). No.

Question: What is the “word of God” here?

Answer: The “word of God” means anything that God has spoken, and here it refers to the promises to Abraham regarding the salvation of Israel. These include

“I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant.” (Genesis 17:7);

“But my covenant will I establish with Isaac.” (Genesis 17:21); (Gen.17:19.
“I will establish my covenant with him (Isaac) for an everlasting covenant, and with his seed after him.”
“For they are not all Israel, which are of Israel.” (Romans 9:6)

All the natural descendants of the patriarch Israel (Jacob) are not the true people of God.

Here Paul distinguishes between the natural seed and the spiritual seed of Abraham.

Romans 2:28,29 “For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly...But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly.”

9:7 “Neither because they are the seed of Abraham, are they all children: but, in Isaac shall thy seed be called.” Natural descent from Abraham does not secure the promised inheritance. The seed, or natural descendants of Abraham, are not all true spiritual children. But, in Galatians 3:7 we see “They which are of faith, the same are the children of Abraham.” Israelites cannot conclude that because they are Abraham’s natural descendants, that they are all the children in whom the promised inheritance will be fulfilled.

“but in Isaac shall thy seed be called.” (Romans 9:7b and Genesis 21:12).

God chose Isaac as the son through whom the line of Christ and the covenant promises to Abraham would come. “But my covenant will I establish with Isaac.” (Genesis 17:21).

This has nothing to do with God choosing Isaac to be saved and Ishmael to be damned, because in Genesis 21:13 God assured Abraham that Ishmael would have a future because he too was Abraham’s offspring. “And also of the son of the bondwoman will I make a nation, because he is thy seed.” 21:13.

9:8 “That is they which are the children of the flesh, these are not the children of God: but the children of the promise are counted for the seed.”

a) The children of God are not those who descend from Abraham’s loins, nor those who are circumcised as Abraham was (children of the flesh). This opposed the popular Jewish thinking that being an Israelite entitled them to the covenant blessings and to being children of God.

b) Who are the children of the promise? Galatians 4:22-31 is a parallel passage:

“If ye be Christ’s, then are ye Abraham’s seed, and heirs according to the promise.” (Galatians 3:29);
“Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are the children of promise.” (Galatians 4:28).

Believers are the children of the promise in the same sense as Isaac was. The main idea is that the birth of Isaac was supernatural (when Sarah was age 90, humanly impossible, promised 10 years earlier), so believers in Christ are the children of God by virtue of a supernatural, spiritual birth (John 3:6-8), and heirs of the promise made to Abraham.

Hence Isaac was born because of a promise, and was also heir of the promised blessings.

“But he (Ishmael) who was of the bondwoman (Hagar) was born after the flesh (Abraham’s will): but he (Isaac) of the freewoman (Sarah) was by promise (v.23).

Which things are an allegory: for these are the two covenants: the one from the mount Sinai (Mosaic covenant of Law), which gendereth to bondage (of the Law, 10 Commandments), which is Agar (v.24). But Jerusalem which is above (New Covenant of Christ by faith from heaven – Rev.21:2) is free, which is the mother of us all (v.26).

Now we, brethren, as Isaac was, are children of promise (v.28).

So then, brethren, we are not children of the bondwoman, but of the free.” (v.31). (Galatians 4:23-31).

9:9 “For this is the word of promise, At this time will I come, and Sarah shall have a son.”

This is the promise made to Abraham in Genesis 18:10,14 and 21:1,2.

“At the time appointed I will return unto thee, according to the time of life, and Sarah shall have a son.” (Genesis 18:14). This promise was fulfilled one year later in Genesis 21:1,2: “And the LORD visited Sarah as he had said and the LORD did unto Sarah as he had spoken. And Sarah conceived, and bare Abraham a son in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.”

Meaning: God here assured Abraham that the promise would come through Isaac, not Ishmael.

“At this time” means “at the exact time promised, the prediction will be fulfilled.”

Note: God comes or visits whenever He especially manifests His presence or power in answering prayer. Luke 1:68; 19:44; Ezekiel 38:8; 1 Peter 2:12; John 14:23.

**9:10 “And not only this; but when Rebecca also had conceived by one, even by our father Isaac;
9:11 (For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth;)”**

9:12 It was said unto her, the elder shall serve the younger.

9:13 As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.”

Calvinist argument 1: Calvinists claim that this passage teaches that God chooses (elects) both to
1) national privileges of Isaac and Jacob to be in the line of promise (we agree), as well as to
2) the personal salvation of individuals to eternal life, such as Isaac and Jacob and the personal damnation to hell of individuals such as Ishmael, Esau and others (we strongly disagree).

Answer: Paul is only explaining the basis of Israel’s national election to be in the line of God’s promises to Abraham. This passage is to be taken in a national sense, not a personal sense because:

i) v.4-6 explain nine national blessings of Israel. In spite of these blessings, Israel failed by rejecting and crucifying Christ. Does this mean that God’s Word had failed? (taken none effect v.6)? No.

ii) The whole context of Romans 9,10,11 refers to Israel’s past choice as the nation of Abraham’s blessings (9), present rejection of Christ (10), and future restoration as the nation of God in the millennium (11).

iii) “The elder (Esau) shall serve the younger (Jacob).” Romans 9:12. Personally Jacob never did exercise any power over Esau, nor was Esau ever subject to (or serve) Jacob. Jacob was subject to Esau and was greatly afraid of him. (Genesis 32:8; 33:3). But nationally this was true.

iv) Jacob personally acknowledged Esau to be his lord (“Let my lord pass over before his servant” Genesis 33:14), and himself to be his servant (“Thy servant Jacob” Genesis 32:4; “The children which God hath graciously given thy servant.” Genesis 33:5).

v) Neither Esau, Jacob or their descendants are given here as examples of personal damnation from eternity, because many, if not most of Jacob’s descendants were wicked and rejected by God. Some descendants of Esau were saved.

vi) The nation of Esau (Edom) did serve and was inferior to the nation of Jacob (Israel) as seen by their future history. The nation of Edom was subject to Israel under David. Edom was finally subjected under the Maccabees. Edom’s history was outside the privileges and spiritual blessings of Israel.

vii) “The purpose of God according to election might stand, ... it was said unto her “The elder shall serve the younger.” v.11,12. This clearly refers to election to service of Esau’s nation to Jacob’s nation. The purpose of God’s election was for Esau’s descendants to serve Jacob’s descendants.

viii) The context of Romans 9:12 “The elder shall serve the younger” is from God’s prophecy to Rebekah in Genesis 25:23 where He said “Two nations are in thy womb, and two manner of people shall be separated from thy bowels; and the one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.” This declaration refers not to Esau and Jacob personally, but to their posterity, their descendants as 2 nations.

Notice that a) God says nothing about the salvation of Jacob or Esau, but only that “one people shall be stronger; ... and the elder shall serve the younger.” Genesis 25:23 shows that Romans 9:12 refers to the national posterity of Esau (Edomites) and not to Esau as an individual.

The national descendants of Esau would be subject to the descendants of Jacob. Jacob was to have the priority, the promised land the promises and the honour of being God’s chosen people.

b) God here refers to the babies as “two nations.”

ix) Romans 9:13 “Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.”

Two problems need to be resolved about this verse:

a) These words are not referring to God loving and saving Jacob personally, and hating and damning Esau personally, but refer to each of their nations. God did not say this before they were born.

God hated Esau’s descendants because of their idolatry, continued wickedness and persecution of Israel. (See Obadiah). These words are quoted from Malachi 1:2,3 which were spoken 1400 years after their birth. They refer to God loving the nation Israel, and loving less the nation of Edom: “I have loved you, saith the LORD. Yet ye say, Wherein hast thou loved us? Was not Esau Jacob’s brother? Saith the LORD: yet I loved Jacob, and I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste...”

b) The word “hate” means “to love less, to regard and treat with less favour.”

It was common among Hebrews to use the terms “love” and “hate” in a comparative sense where “love” implied strong positive attachment, and “hate” meant not positive hatred, but merely less love, or withholding affection. Examples of this are:

~Genesis 29:33 “Leah said, Because the LORD hath heard that I was hated (by Jacob)...”

~Proverbs 13:24 “He that spareth his rod hateth his son; but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes”

~Matthew 6:24 “No man can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other...”

~Luke 14:26 “If any man come to me, and hate not his father and mother, and wife, children, brethren, sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my disciple.”

~John 12:25 “He that loveth his life shall lose it; he that hateth his life in this world shall keep it unto life eternal.”

Conclusion:

a) Paul and Malachi are not discussing the persons of Jacob or Esau, but their national descendants.

b) God’s love to Jacob, or God’s hatred to Esau did not determine their eternal destiny to heaven or hell

c) There is no Biblical or rational basis for the foolish Calvinist idea of unconditional election.

d) God does not hate sinners. God loves sinners as John 3:16 makes clear. The statement concerns national election to service, not individual election to salvation.

Calvinist argument 2: Calvinists claim that because Romans 9:11 says that God’s election of Jacob and Esau took place before their birth and apart from their works, then these two ideas prove that God unconditionally and personally elects some to salvation and others to damnation, before their birth.

Answer 2: This Calvinist argument can be simply resolved by remembering that this entire passage discusses God’s national election of Isaac and Jacob to inherit the promises and blessings made to Abraham. It does not mention individual election to salvation anywhere in the passage. To think so is adding to scripture and is the sin of presumption. God’s election of Israel was not based on a) natural descent (9:6-10) or b) human merit (9:11-13). All the passage states is that God had a separate plan for Isaac, Ishmael, Jacob and Esau. In eternity past, God chose each to serve God in a certain way and to fulfil God’s plan for their lives. Their salvation or damnation is not in the text. So God has a different plan for each believer’s life ever since. God has a different task for Paul, Peter, John, you and me. The purpose of God according to election was for life service and not for eternal salvation. Notice that in each case God chose the second born child to inherit the promises to Abraham, and bypassed the eldest son. This brings us to define the Biblical doctrine of Election.

ELECTION (Greek: ekloge (1589) = to choose, select).

Definition: Election is a Divine choice, where God (for reasons known only to Himself), in the blessing of mankind, sets aside the firsts, & chooses the seconds. (“For the children being not yet born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calleth), It was said unto her, The elder shall serve the younger.” Romans 9:11,12.

Question: What is the purpose of God according to election? (v.11).

Answer: Service: “The elder shall serve the younger.” (v.12).

The firstborn serves the younger. The greater shall serve the lesser. God sets to one side the elder or the first, and chooses the younger or the second through whom the blessing would come.

Question: What Biblical examples do we find of God setting aside the first and choosing the second?

i) Ishmael (Abraham’s firstborn) was set aside, and Isaac (Abraham’s secondborn) was chosen.

ii) Esau (Isaac’s firstborn) was set aside, and Jacob (Isaac’s second born) was chosen.

iii) Reuben (Jacob’s firstborn) was set aside, and Judah (Jacob’s fourth born) was chosen for the line of Christ to continue through. (1 Chronicles 5:1,2).

iv) Manasseh (Joseph’s firstborn) was set aside, and Ephraim (Joseph’s secondborn) was chosen by Jacob and God for the promised blessing. “his younger brother shall be greater than he,... and he set Ephraim before Manasseh.” Genesis 48:17-20.

v) Saul (Israel’s first king) was set aside, and David (Israel’s second king) was chosen by God for the line of Christ, Kings and blessing to continue through. (1 Samuel 15:23,28; 2 Samuel 7:1-17).

vi) Eliab (Jesse’s first born) was set aside, and David (Jesse’s last born, or eighth) was chosen to be king of Israel. (1 Samuel 16:1-13).

vii) Adam (the first man) was set aside, and Jesus Christ (the second man) was chosen to be the head of the human race. (1 Corinthians 15:47).

viii) The first heaven and earth will be burned and set aside, and the second heaven and earth will be created to last forever. (Revelation 21:1,2).

ix) Our first corruptible body will be set aside, & replaced by an immortal resurrection body. 1 Cor 15:35

- x) The Mosaic Covenant was set aside, and the New Covenant of Christ was chosen to replace it. “For if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.” Heb. 7:6,7,13.
- xi) The Ten Commandments of Moses have been set aside (Eph. 2:15; 2 Cor. 3:7, 11; Heb. 8:13-9:4; Gal. 4:24, 25), and the New Testament Law of Christ was chosen to replace it. (Romans 8:2).
- xii) The Sabbath (the Mosaic day of worship) was set aside, and Sunday (the N.T. day of worship) was chosen to replace it. (1 Cor. 16:1,2; Acts 20:7).
- xiii) The OT offerings were set aside. Christ’s perfect offering on the cross was chosen to replace them. Election is not God choosing some to be saved and others to be damned. To believe this would limit the work of Christ on the cross, and would label God as a respecter of persons.

9:14 “What shall we say then? Is there unrighteousness with God? God forbid.” What do we conclude?

Question: Does God choosing Isaac and Jacob, whilst not choosing Ishmael and Esau to inherit the promises, privileges and blessings show God to be unjust or unrighteous?

Answer: By no means, because, whatever God does is right. He may dispense His blessings to whoever He chooses, for whatever reasons He chooses. We don’t know all the facts as God does, so we are in no position to charge God with unrighteousness (injustice) or to tell Him what to do. Each of us must best use our talents to honour God and further His kingdom. God has given every one of us unique and exciting opportunities to serve Him. We should not charge God with unrighteousness because God may have given someone else a different or apparently better ministry, talents or position.

Calvinist argument 3:

9:15 “He saith to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.” Calvinists here cannot resist the temptation to read personal salvation into another verse teaching national election to earthly privileges. Calvinists jump to the conclusion that mercy and compassion are limited to personal salvation. They read this verse as “I will save whom I will (the elect) and I will damn whom I will (the non-elect).” God says no such nonsense.

Question: On whom will God have mercy? Only the elect? No.

Answer: Romans 11:32 tells who are the objects of God’s mercy.

“For God hath concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon ALL.”

How many people are the objects and beneficiaries of God’s mercy? The text clearly says that God has mercy upon ALL people. God not only has mercy on a few, but His mercy is bestowed on all men.

Question: What is the significance of Exodus 33:19 from which Romans 9:15 is quoted?

Answer: As God showed His mercy to Moses by making all His goodness pass before him, as well as proclaiming the name of JHVH before him, so God made it clear that no act of grace or mercy was merited by man. Mercy comes from God because God is essentially good, gracious, and merciful. It is God’s will and pleasure to bless man and to be merciful to him. God will bestow mercy on all men in whatever way He sees fit. This verse does not say that God will only have mercy on a predetermined number of people. It states that it is God who shows mercy and grace. It is God-given, not man-given.

Calvinist argument 4:

9:16 “So then it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy.”

Calvinists again introduce personal salvation into a context discussing God’s election of individuals into the national privileges of promises to Abraham.

Answer: All this verse teaches is that God is the original cause of showing mercy to us in allocating our role of service to Christ in this life. “So then” links this back to v.15. The making or continuing of any people as the people of God is determined by the mercy of God, and not by the will or efforts of men.

Calvinist argument 5:

9:17 “For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might shew my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.”

9:18 “Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth.”

Calvinists make two claims to support their position here:

- God raised up (or called into existence) Pharaoh to declare God’s name through all the earth, all along intending to damn him to hell as non-elect. They claim he was unconditionally elected to hell. 17.
- God hardened Pharaoh from the beginning as part of God’s predestined plan to use him, then send him to hell as non-elect. (v.18).

Answer: a) 9:17 Question: What does “raised up” mean? Does it mean:

~ I have called Pharaoh into existence, and raised up Pharaoh as King? or

~ To preserve alive, to raise Pharaoh from sickness of boils, to cause Pharaoh to continue at his post?

This second idea is correct because Hiphil verbs mean the continuance of a thing.

Hence, Hiphil of “to live” means to “preserve alive.” (Genesis 6:19,20; 19:19).

Romans 9:17 is quoted from Exodus 9:16 “for this cause have I raised thee up, for to shew in thee my power.” “Raised thee up” means “I have sustained or supported thee.” That is, I have kept thee from death, I have strengthened Pharaoh by healing his boils which were “upon all the Egyptians” (Ex. 9:11-16). I have restored you to health by removing your boils, and by postponing your destruction to a later day, so that I may demonstrate my power in your final overthrow so that all mankind may learn that I am the righteous Judge of all the earth.

“That I might shew my power in thee” means that God’s power (Romans 9:22) was demonstrated to all the earth by the mighty miracles He performed in defeating Pharaoh’s military as He freed the Israelites from under Pharaoh’s hand. Other nations heard about it and were awed at God’s might (Exodus 15:14-16; Joshua 2:10,11; 9:9; 1 Sam. 4:8 (300 years later)). God kept Pharaoh in circumstances which were fitted to develop his true character and to accomplish some great purposes by his existence & conduct.

b) Question: Does God hardening Pharaoh’s heart prove unconditional election of Pharaoh to hell? NO

Answer: Whom does God harden? Those who purposely harden themselves against God. God showed mercy on Pharaoh even while Pharaoh hardened his heart.

Question: Who hardened Pharaoh’s heart? Was it Pharaoh himself or God who hardened his heart?

BOTH. In Hebrew, of the 20 passages discussing Pharaoh’s hardening, exactly 10 ascribe it to Pharaoh himself and 10 ascribe it to God. Although in the KJV only the word “harden” is used, yet in the Hebrew 3 different words are used. (See “Old Testament Bible History,” A.Edersheim, Vol.1, p.59,60).

- i) Exodus 7:3 qashah (7185) = to make hard or insensible.
- ii) Exodus 10:1 kabad (3513) = to make heavy, or unimpressible.
- iii) Exodus 14:4 chazaq (2388) = to make firm, stiff, immovable.

Before the 10 plagues, when Aaron converted the rod to a serpent, Pharaoh hardened his heart himself. (7:13,14). After each of the first 5 plagues (7:22; 8:15, 19, 32; 9:7) Pharaoh hardened his heart himself. After the sixth plague (9:12) for the first time do we read that “the Lord made firm the heart of the Pharaoh.” After the seventh plague (9:34), we read that Pharaoh made heavy his heart.

After the eighth plague God hardened his heart (10:1). 1 Sam 6:6 Egyptians & Pharaoh hardened their hearts.

Pharaoh hardening himself

Ex. 7:13	Firm
7:14	Heavy
7:22	Firm (1 st plague)
8:15	Heavy (2 nd plague)
8:19	Firm (3 rd plague)
8:32	Heavy (4 th plague)
9:7	Heavy (5 th plague)
9:34	Heavy (7 th plague)
9:35	Firm
13:15	Hard

God hardening Pharaoh

Ex. 4:21	(God informed Moses before the
7:3	contest of the outcome). <u>Insensible</u>
9:12	(6 th plague)
10:1	(8 th plague) Unimpressible
10:20	
10:27	
11:10	
14:4	Immovable
14:8	
14:17	

God, by declaring His Word and revealing His power, gave Pharaoh opportunity to repent, but instead, Pharaoh resisted and hardened his heart. The fault lay not with God, but with Pharaoh. The same sunlight that melts the ice, also hardens the clay. The outcome depends on what is inside the person. God was not unrighteous in His dealings with Pharaoh because He gave him many opportunities to repent. Pharaoh made a determined choice of evil, from which neither warning nor judgment would turn him away. Thus he hardened his own heart. (Exodus 8:15).

God bestows his mercy and blessings on one part of mankind (OT Jews and NT Gentiles), while He suffers another part (Egyptians of Moses’ day and Jews during the Church age) to harden themselves in sin, until God judges them or brings them to repentance. Paul says nothing here about eternal life or hell. He never says or implies that God has created man (or Pharaoh) for the purpose of damnation.

108. CALVINISM – Summary and Review

TOTAL DEPRAVITY

Q1: Does man have the free will to receive or reject Jesus Christ as Saviour?

Calvinist TD insists that man does not have a free will to receive Christ, nor do any good at all.

Calvinists believe man's will is in bondage to his sinful nature, basing this on the premise that "man is dead in trespasses and sins." (Ephesians 2:1).

Q2: What is wrong with this Calvinist error that the natural man can only act according to his nature?

1) Paul still acknowledged his "inabilities" after salvation: "That which I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not." (Romans 7:15). "For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit ... so that ye cannot do the things that ye would." (Galatians 5:17). Paul acted contrary to his new nature.

2) Unsaved man lost his living spirit, but gained a conscience enabling him not to fully express the evil of his sin nature.

3) Depraved man has ability because of conscience, as seen from:

a) Romans 2:14 "When the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law ... their conscience also bearing witness ..."

b) John 7:17 "If any man will do his will ..." Jesus said that man has free will.

c) Many scriptures show that unsaved men have the ability to do good.

"A good man leaveth an inheritance to his children's children." (Proverbs 13:22).

"Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely." Matth 7:11; Luke 6:33; I Peter 2:18.

Key: The unsaved man sins because he yields to his depraved nature and chooses to sin, not because he is unable to do good.

Q3: If man cannot believe, then how can he be held responsible for what he cannot do? He cannot be held responsible!

Key: Calvinists base their idea that man cannot receive Christ of his own free will on two pillars:

1) **John 1:13** "which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God." This gives the source of the new birth, not the reason why men receive Christ.

The source of the new birth is:

- not of blood, not physical generation, inheritance, or natural descent;

- not of the will of flesh, not reformation or self-effort;

- not of the will of man, not relatives, preachers or priests;

- The source of the new birth is of **God**, not of man.

Q4: Why does God give the new birth to people?

Answer: God gives the new birth to "as many as received him." John 1:12 .

2) **Romans 9:16** "So then, it is not of him that willeth, nor of him that runneth, but of God that sheweth mercy." Calvinists claim that man does not have the will to receive Christ and salvation.

Answer: Man does have the ability to receive Christ, while in a state of depravity.

"If ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine." (Romans 6:17).

"Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life." (John 5:40).

"Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely." (Revelation 22:7).

Key: The reason men don't receive Christ is because they will not, not because they are unable.

Q5: Key: All Calvinists compare TD to a physically dead man or to Lazarus. (John 11:43,44), saying "A corpse does not call out for help." "You hath he quickened who were dead in trespasses and sins."

Answer: It is true that a physically dead man does not call out for help, but spiritually dead people are different, being still biologically active and alive, able to walk, talk and fulfil desires.

- A spiritually dead man can lift up his eyes, see, speak, pray, hear, reason & feel torment. Luke 16:23-28

- A true analogy of spiritual death, is how the prodigal son who "was dead, and is alive again; he was lost and is found." (Luke 15:24).

Key: This Calvinist analogy of a corpse not calling out for help breaks down because of responsibility.

Q6: Is a dead corpse responsible for anything? NO.

Is a lost sinner responsible for anything? YES.

Refuting Calvinists' Proof Texts for Total Depravity

1) Someone who "**cannot do something.**"

a. **John 8:43** "Why do ye not understand my speech? Even because ye cannot hear my word"

Question: To whom does this refer?

Answer: Not all mankind, but unbelieving Jews. Why could they not hear Christ's words?

- because they did the lusts of their father the devil. (John 8:44).

- because they did not believe Christ when He told them the truth. (John 8:45,46).

- because they did not believe that Christ was I AM. (John 8:24).

b. **John 14:17** "Even the Spirit of truth: whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him...."

Question: What does it mean "whom the world cannot receive"?

Answer: Because "it seeth him not, nor knows him." This means that they judge by their physical senses. What they cannot see, hear, taste or feel makes no impression on them. Because they cannot see the Holy Spirit operating, they don't receive His testimony about Christ.

c. **Romans 8:8,7** "Because the carnal mind is enmity against God ... they that are in the flesh cannot please God." Calvinists say "enmity against God" is Total Depravity, and "cannot please God" is Total Inability.

Answer: The minding of the things of the flesh (v.5) leads to hatred of God Himself, because He is opposed to it. The supreme regard to the flesh is opposed to God's law, is hostile to God, is utterly irreconcilable with God's law, and can never be made to harmonize with it, just as adultery cannot be chastity, and falsehood cannot be truth.

The passage says nothing about whether man has an ability to obey God's law or to love God.

2) Someone's "**Inability**" but with a **reason given for it:**

a. **John 6:44** "No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him."

Calvinists say this "drawing" is Irresistible Grace. Calvinists say "No man can come to me" is Total Depravity because of the lack of an "irresistible effectual call" by God the Father.

Calvinist error: By misapplying v.44 to Salvation in the Church Age, Calvinists conclude that, if God draws all men, then all men will be saved. Hence they conclude that God only draws the "elect", those whom He has given to the Son. (John 6:37).

Answer: Jesus explains the Father's drawing in v.44 by v.45: "They shall all be taught of God. Every man therefore that hath heard, and hath learned of the Father, cometh to me." This is quoted from Isaiah 54:13 discussing restored Israel in the Millennium, not "elect" in the Church Age.

Key: Calvinists don't understand that in John 6:44 it is the **Father** who draws people to Christ during His 3 year ministry, but in John 12:32 it is **Christ** who draws all men to Himself after Calvary, along with the Holy Spirit's reproving work in the Church Age in John 16:7-11.

John 12:32 "And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me."

John 16:7-11 "When he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment." Hence the Holy Spirit will reprove the world of sin, not just the "elect."

John 1:9 "That was the true light, which lighteth every man that cometh into the world."

Key: Calvinists' error in John 6:44 is to:

i) misapply it from Christ's three-year ministry to Israel, to a doctrinal statement on salvation in the Church Age.

ii) make the Father's drawing irresistible and equate it with salvation in the Church Age. (Acts 7:51 shows God's Grace is resistable).

b. **John 6:65** "No man can come unto me, except it were given unto him of my Father."

(Same answer as John 6:44 above).

- c. **John 12:39-40.** See Isaiah 6:9,10. Calvinists use these verses to claim that some have the inability to believe because God has blinded their eyes by reprobation, proving that God hardens people. “Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again, He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.” (John 12:39-40).
Answer: This prophecy in Isaiah 6:9,10 is mentioned 5 times in the New Testament. (Matthew 13:14,15; Mark 4:52; Luke 8:10; John 12:39-40; Acts 28:25-27).
- i. These passages all refer to “this people”, which is the nation Israel (Act 28:26,27; Mat 13:15)
 - ii. Of these 5 NT occurrences, 2 cannot teach reprobation because the people closed their own eyes: “their eyes they have closed.” (Matthew 13:15; Acts 28:27).
 - iii. Israel shutting their eyes took place after they were born, not in eternity past.
 - iv. Note the order of events: John 12:37 “they believed not on him”, then v.39 “they could not believe.” They would not believe, so God gave them up, and now they could not believe.
Key: These passages teach the judicial hardening of a nation, not the sovereign hardening of individuals.
 - v. As further proof, notice where this prophecy appears:
 - in the Gospels, when the Jews rejected Christ and the mystery form of the Kingdom;
 - in John’s Gospel when the Jews rejected Christ and He finished his public dealings;
 - in Acts 28 when the Jews rejected Christ, and God turned to the Gentiles in the Church Age;
 - in Isaiah 6 it introduces the Tribulation when the Jews will accept a false Christ.
- d. **Romans 3:11** “There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.”
- i. Paul is not teaching the inability of unsaved people to receive Christ, eg: Unregenerate Cornelius was a “devout man, and one that feareth God with all his house.” (Acts 10:2).
 - ii. Paul is not saying that people are unable to seek God. The Bible commands men to seek God (11 times): “Seek ye the Lord while he may be found ...” (Isaiah 55:6).
 The commands to seek God are not in vain:
 “I said not unto the seed of Jacob, seek ye me in vain.” (Isaiah 45:19).
 - iii. Seeking God is different from believing the Gospel, eg: A Jew who seeks God by keeping the Old Testament Law is just as lost as Gentiles who don’t seek God.
Question: If Total Depravity is not the reason men don’t seek God, then what is it?
Answer: Pride. Psalm 10:4 “The wicked, through the pride of his countenance will not seek after God.”
- e. **I Corinthians 2:14** “But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” Calvinists conclude here that faith is given by God, and is not our decision.
Answer: Receiving spiritual things and receiving Jesus Christ are two different things. The natural, unsaved man cannot discern the truth, beauty, wisdom, value and excellence of divine things, because he does not yet have the indwelling Holy Spirit. If he received Christ as his Saviour, he would then have the Holy Spirit, and would then be able to know and discern spiritual things. It doesn’t teach that he is unable ever to receive Christ, due to Total Inability or Election to hell.
Question: Is a man responsible for what he cannot do?
Answer: Yes and No. It depends on why he is unable. For example:
 A drugged man is accountable for his actions, only if he wilfully took drugs.
 A drugged man is not accountable for his actions, if he did not wilfully drug himself.
Key: Two kinds of Scriptures overthrow Total Depravity/Inability:
- a) Scriptures commanding people to believe:
 - “Look unto me and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth.” (Isaiah 45:22)
 - “Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden.” (Matthew 11:28)
 - “God ... now commandeth all men everywhere to repent.” (Acts 17:30).

Question: If Total Inability is true, is God mocking His creation by offering salvation to men, knowing that men could never take it? In Isaiah 45:19 God guarantees His offers are genuine: “I said not ... seek ye me in vain: I the Lord speak righteousness, I declare things that are right.” Erasmus said to Luther: “If it is not in the power of every man to keep what God commands, all God’s promises, threats, reproofs, blessings, curses and precepts are useless.”

b) Scriptures implying the possibility that a man can believe:

- “Ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.” (John 5:40).

- “Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved.” (I Thessalonians 2:16).

These verses show that if we preach to Gentiles, the possibility exists that some might be saved.

Key: If there exists the slightest possibility that a man could believe (as seen by “might”) then Total Inability is destroyed, because there are no possibilities in TULIP Calvinism.

UNCONDITIONAL ELECTION

Q1: Does God elect some men to salvation or not? (Key Issue).

Key Error of Calvinism: Calvinists confuse election and predestination with salvation.

Q2: Does God foreordain all things? Eg: the Fall, all sin, all suffering? Does God foreordain rape, murder, blasphemy, sodomy, incest, bestiality, burning babies, dismembering a concubine, Herod massacring two-year-olds? NO.

Q3: Why does God bring evil upon a people?

1) Because of their sins, not because of an arbitrary decree.

2) God didn’t decree their sins: “Which I commanded not nor spake it, neither came it into my mind.” (Jeremiah 19:5).

3) God’s holiness would not allow Him to author sin. God would never command a man to repent, then fix it so he couldn’t repent, in order to damn him.

Q4: Which Scripture calls predestination a Divine decree? NONE.

1) Of God’s 7 Decrees, none are eternal, or involve election or predestination. (Isaiah 10:1).

2) To Calvinists’ invented decrees, God says, “Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees.”

Key 1: Calvinists’ error is to exalt God’s sovereignty (arbitrariness) above all His other attributes, such as His holiness and justice.

Key 2: Calvinists’ error is to confuse God’s influence, direction, control and permission with God’s election, predestination, foreordination and decrees. God foreknows without foreordaining.

Key 3: Calvinists’ error is to read “foreordained” into statements discussing God’s control & influence.

Q5: Does God change His mind? YES.

1) God was going to kill Hezekiah, but changed His mind to add 15 years to his life. (Isaiah 38:5).

2) God repented of the evil He planned for Nineveh, because they turned from their evil. (Jonah 3:10).

3) Calvinists contradict their belief that God predestines our lifespan, by using medical advances to lengthen their lifespans. Some men “shall not live out half their days.” (Psalm 55:23).

“Why shouldst thou die before thy time?” (Ecclesiastes 7:17).

Q6: How could God decree and foreordain burning babies if it never came into His mind? Jerem. 19:5.

Q7: Why does sin take place? Because God foreordained it? NO, but because of:

1) Man’s depravity

2) God punishes people’s sins: “Behold, I will bring evil upon this place ... because they have forsaken me ...” (Jeremiah 19:3-5).

3) God clearly stated that He didn’t decree their sins: “Which I commanded not nor spake it” Jer 19:5

4) God permits it. Permit and decree are different concepts. Our responsibility is to “resist the devil and he will flee from you.” (James 4:7).

Q8: If predestination is a secret decree of God, how is it that Calvinists know so much about it? (Deuteronomy 29:29 “The secret things ...”)

Key: Ten examples of man’s free will in Scripture refute the Calvinist error that man’s actions have been foreordained from eternity past:

- 1) **Free will offerings** (16 in OT) show that after a person had made all the offerings prescribed by the Mosaic Law, he might out of gratitude to God give something extra: “Ye shall offer **at your own will** a male without blemish.” (Leviticus 22:19). The phrase “at your own will” teaches that he had the free will to give it or not give it.
- 2) **Free will Journey to Jerusalem** teaches that a man has free will: “I make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel ... which are minded of **their own free will** to go up to Jerusalem, go with thee.” (Ezra 7:13).
- 3) **Adam and Eve** had free will: “of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat.” (Genesis 2:16).
- 4) **The people and governors** of Israel “**willingly offered** themselves” to defeat Sisera (Judges 5:2,9).
- 5) David encouraged **Solomon** to serve God with a “**willing mind**.” (I Chronicles 28:9).
- 6) In **Nehemiah’s time** some people “**willingly offered** themselves to dwell at Jerusalem” Neh. 11:2.
- 7) NT **prayer promises** are based on believers’ **free will**: “If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask **what ye will**, and it shall be done unto you.” (John 15:7).
- 8) Paul **preached willingly**: “For if I do this thing **willingly**, I have a reward: but if against my will a dispensation of the gospel is committed unto me.” (I Corinthians 9:17).
- 9) Salvation is received by **taking it** of our **own free will**: “Whosoever **will**, let him take the water of life **freely**.” (Revelation 22:17).
- 10) David exercised his **free will** when he praised God: “Accept, I beseech thee, the **freewill**-offerings of my mouth, O Lord ...” (Psalm 119:108).

Q9: Does prayer change things?

A: YES. Prayer proves that God has not predestined all things:

- 1) **Moses’** prayer changed God’s mind about destroying Israel and Aaron. (Deuteronomy 9:18-29).
- 2) **Hezekiah’s** prayer changed God’s mind to lengthen his life by 15 years. (II Kings 20:1-6).
- 3) **Elijah** prayed for no rain, then later for rain. (James 5:17,18).
- 4) A **righteous man’s** effectual, fervent prayer **availeth much**. (James 5:16).

Key: God doesn’t foreordain all things because of:

- 1) **Contingency** verses showing the **possibility** of an event happening.
There are many things in Scripture that are not fixed or predestined:
 - a) If Christ’s works had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented. (Matt. 11:21).
 - b) “How often would I have gathered thy children together ... and ye would not.” (Luke 13:34).
 - c) “ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.” (John 5:30).
 - d) “Forbidding us to speak to the Gentiles that they might be saved.” (I Thessalonians 2:16).
 - e) Many of God’s promises to Israel were conditional. (Deuteronomy 5:33; 6:23).
- 2) **Chance** disproves God’s foreordaining things. Does anything happen by chance? According to the Bible, some things do. “And by chance there came down a certain priest that way...” (Luke 10:31). “If a bird’s nest chance to be before thee in the way ...” (Deuteronomy 22:6).
This doesn’t mean that God doesn’t know what is going to happen, or has no control over His creation, but it does mean that there is no all-encompassing decree of predestination.
- 3) **Common Sense** rejects any foreordained all-encompassing decree. If “What will be, will be” were true, then nobody could avoid carrying out God’s eternal, sovereign, foreordained decree.

Q10: Would God be just in electing some and passing by the rest?

Answer: Did Jesus recommend the behaviour of the priest and levite who passed by the half-dead man in the Good Samaritan story? (Luke 10:30-34). NO. Jesus commands us to “go and do thou likewise” (Luke 10:37) as the Good Samaritan helped the man. Does Jesus practise what he preaches? Surely.

Key: Calvinists divert their opponents’ criticism by pitting Arminianism against Hyper-Calvinism, and then take Calvinism as a mediating position.

Note: Romans 9 is the Calvinists’ “haven of reprobation”, just as Proverbs is the Calvinists’ “haven of divine foreordination”.

Q11: How do we answer these verses which Calvinists use to teach God electing someone to hell?

- 1) **Proverbs 16:4** “The Lord hath made all things for himself.. even the wicked for the day of evil.”

Answer: This teaches the use God makes of His creation, not the decisions He makes for them.

- Since God does all his pleasure (Isaiah 46:10) and has no pleasure in the death of the wicked (Ezekiel 33:11), then He could not have created a man wicked just to show His power by damning him.
- God has made all men the same in the sense of: “He fashioneth their hearts alike”.Psa 33:13-15
- God makes the wicked serve his own glory and purposes. “Surely, the wrath of man shall praise thee.” (Psalm 76:10).

2) **II Thessalonians 5:9** “God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.” Calvinists think this teaches that God has appointed some to wrath.

Answer:

- a) “Wrath” = 7 year Tribulation, not hell.
- b) “Salvation” = deliverance from the 7 year Tribulation by the rapture.
- c) “Appointed” = God’s will for Christians to be raptured, not God’s decree to save the “elect”.
- d) “The great day of his wrath is come” (Revelation 6:17) is the Tribulation (Revelation 6-19).
- e) The context of I Thessalonians 5:3 is “sudden destruction cometh upon them”.

3) **I Peter 2:8** “And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient; whereunto also they were appointed.”

Calvinists think “some have been appointed (same word as I Thess. 5:9) unto disobedience”.

Answer: God appoints to destruction all those who reject Christ, stumbling at the rock of offence. (See Proverbs 31:8 “all such as are appointed to destruction.” The disobedience is defined in the context as unbelief (I Peter 2:7), just as obedience is defined as belief in Romans 10:16 (“they have not all obeyed the Gospel”).

4) **II Peter 2:12** “But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption.”

Calvinists think that these “false prophets” and “false teachers” (II Peter 2:1) have been foreordained “to be taken and destroyed” before the foundation of the world.

Answer: In both II Peter 2:12 (“perish in their own corruption”) and Jude 10 (“as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves”) the corruption was their own doing. God never makes a man in a reprobate condition. Men are always reprobate because they’ve done something to earn it, as the next verse makes clear: “and shall receive the reward of unrighteousness.” (II Peter 2:13). A reward is something they earn. God “destroyed them that believe not.” (Jude 5).

5) **II Peter 2:17** “to whom the mist of darkness is reserved forever.”

Jude 13 “to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness forever.”

Calvinists claim these people have been reserved for condemnation by a sovereign, eternal decree.

Q: Who is reserved?

Answer: False prophets and false teachers who deny the Lord (II Peter 2:1); ungodly (Jude 15); angels that sinned (II Peter 2:4; Jude 6); unjust (II Peter 2:9); wicked (II Peter 2:7), etc.

They were reserved in their lives after they committed wicked actions and because of their sins.

6) **Jude 4** “For there are certain men crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained (Greek *prographo* – 4270) to this condemnation, ungodly men, ... denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.” Calvinists think these men were ordained of old to condemnation before the foundation of the world by a sovereign, eternal decree.

Answer:

Q1: When were they ordained?

Answer: During Enoch’s ministry. “Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these saying: Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints, to execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.” (Jude 14,15).

Q2: Why were they ordained to condemnation? **Answer:** Because of their ungodly deeds.

Q3: How were they ordained? **Answer:** By Enoch.

Q4: What does “**ordained**” mean? **Answer:** Ordained (4270) = *prographo* (Greek) = to write previously, to announce. They were announced by Enoch, not foreordained by a sovereign, eternal decree from before the foundation of the world.

- 7) **Isaiah 6:9,10** = Matthew 13:14,15. Calvinists think that some have inability to believe because God has blinded their eyes by reprobation, and hardened their hearts.

Answer:

- a) “This people” = the nation Israel.
b) “Their eyes they have closed” (Math 13:15; Acts 28:27). They deliberately closed their eyes.
c) In John 12:37 they did not believe. In John 12:39 they could not believe.
d) These 5 passages describe the judicial hardening of a nation not the sovereign hardening of individuals.
- 8) **Romans 9:13** “Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated.” Calvinists think Jacob was personally elected to salvation, and Esau was personally elected to eternal desolation (hell).

Answer:

- a) The purpose of God according to election (Romans 9:11) concerns service: “The elder shall serve the younger.” (Roman 9:12). This teaches national preference, not election to salvation.
b) Genesis 25:23 “Two nations are in thy womb ... the elder shall serve the younger.”
c) Romans 9:13 is quoted from Malachi 1:1-3, written 1400 years later:
“Yet I loved Jacob, and I hated Esau, and laid his mountains and his heritage waste.”
In Genesis we have a prophetic statement looking forward.
In Malachi we have a historical statement looking backward.
d) Calvin admits that this refers to Jacob’s and Esau’s posterity (*Institutes*, p 930, III, xxi,7).
e) God didn’t hate Esau personally in eternity past. God hated him nationally after seeing his sins for 1400 years.
f) Jesus loved the rich young ruler who rejected him. (Mark 10:22).
- 9) **Romans 9:18** “Pharaoh ... whom he will he hardeneth.”

Q: Were Pharaoh and Esau sovereignly hated from eternity? NO, because:

Answer:

- a) God raised up Pharaoh from sickness of boils (Exodus 9:11-16) not into existence.
b) **Q: When** does God harden a persons heart? From eternity or after he hardens his own heart? Pharaoh hardened himself first. (Exodus 8:15,32; 9:34) “Pharaoh hardened his heart.”
God reinforced Pharaoh’s decision by hardening him later.
- 10) **Romans 9:22** “God...endured with much longsuffering, the vessels of wrath fitted to destruction.”

Q: Does God fit the non-elect to destruction by His foreordaining decrees?

Answer: No, because:

- a) The potter and the clay was a common Old Testament illustration (Isaiah 29:16; 45:9; 64:8; Jeremiah 18:1-6) yet it never referred to anyone’s salvation.
b) **Jeremiah 18:1-10:** Israel = clay; God = Potter; Marring of clay = Israel’s disobedience; God making clay again = God’s change of plans from good to evil discipline of Israel.
c) The individual determines what kind of vessel he will be. II Timothy 2:20,21 says, “If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, ... prepared unto every good work.” Vessels are made empty. God doesn’t make anyone honourable or dishonourable.
d) Israel as the vessels of wrath, fitted themselves to destruction, because they “stumbled at that stumblingstone” (Romans 9:32), were “guilty of the blood of Christ” (Matthew 27:25) and were “enemies of the Gospel.” (Romans 11:28).
e) **Key:** All men are “vessels of wrath” (Eph. 2:3), but God will have mercy on all who receive Christ. (Romans 11:32 “Have mercy on all”; and I Peter 2:10 “but now obtained mercy.”)
f) **Calvinist error** in Romans 9 is in reading sovereign personal election and reprobation, into a passage teaching national election of Israel to service, and God disciplining Israel for their sins.
g) **Conclusion:** When a man is reserved, appointed, ordained or fitted to destruction, it is always because of something evil he did, not by an eternal decree of reprobation.

SEVEN KINDS OF UNCONDITIONAL ELECTION “PROOF” TEXTS

Key: The fallacy of Unconditional Election is that they divide mankind into two groups: the “elect” and the “reprobate”.

Answer:

- 1) God has made all men the same because of Psalm 33:13-15: “He beholdeth all the sons of men ... he fashioneth their hearts alike”. Hence, there is no such thing as the “elect” or “reprobate”.
- 2) There is no such thing as God’s one, eternal, sovereign, all encompassing decree.
- 3) Salvation is not limited to the “elect”:
 - John 7:37 “If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.”
 - Acts 10:43 “whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”
 - Romans 9:33 “whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.”
 - I John 5:1 “Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.”
 - Revelation 22:17 “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.”

- 1) **God’s People – Acts 18:10** “I have much people in this city.”

Q: Did God have a predetermined number of unsaved people in Corinth waiting to be saved by Irresistible Grace? NO, because:

- a) They were not unsaved elect, because unsaved people are never spoken of as God’s people, but as “children of disobedience.” (Ephesians 2:2).
- b) The “much people” are defined in v.1-9 as Aquila and Priscilla (v.2); Jews and Greeks (v.4); Silas and Timothy (v.5); Justus (v.7); Crispus (v.8); and many Corinthians who heard, believed and were baptized (v.8).

- 2) **Book of Life – Revelation 13:8 and 17:8**

Q: Are the names of the “elect” written in the Lamb’s Book of Life, and those of the “non-elect” not written there? “Whose names are not written in the book of life of the lamb slain from the foundation of the world.” (Revelation 13:8).

Answer: Everybody’s name is written in the Book of Life at birth. When they wilfully reject Christ, their names are blotted out of the Book of Life. (Revelation 3:5; 22:19).

- 3) **God’s Sheep – John 10:14-16,26**

Q: Are God’s sheep the “elect” before they are born?

Answer:

- a) If the elect are sheep before they believe, they already have eternal life, were never goats and contradicts the truth that all are born “dead in trespasses and sins.” (Ephesians 2:1).
- b) **Q: Who are the sheep? Answer:** Israel according to Jesus (Matthew 10:6; 15:24); Micaiah (I Kings 22:17); David (Psalm 79:13; 95:7); Jeremiah (Jeremiah 23:1; 50:6,17); and Ezekiel. “Go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.” (Matthew 10:6).
- c) When Christ came, his sheep like Simeon, Anna, Zacharias, Elizabeth, the Shepherds and the disciples, knew Him, followed Him and received eternal life.

- 4) **Given to Salvation.**

Q: Does the Father give the “elect” to the Son?

John 6:37 “All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh ...”

John 6:39 “Of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing ...”

John 17:2 “He should give eternal life to as many as thou hast given him.”

John 17:6 “Thou gavest them me; and they have kept thy word.” (v. 9,11,12,24).

Calvinists presume that only those whom the Father gives to Christ can come to Him.

Answer: This was not a sovereign, eternal decree for all believers, because:

- a) One of those given to Christ was a devil (John 6:70) who was lost (John 17:12).
- b) John 6:37,45 The Father gave to Christ those who believe (v.45).
“Every man that hath heard and learned of the Father, cometh to me.”
- c) John 17:6. Christ manifested His name unto the “men which thou gavest me”.

- Christ hasn't manifested His name to anyone since then.
- Those given to Christ were men. Are all women lost? NO.
- Have all Christians kept God's Word? NO. "They have kept thy word." (John 17:6).
- d) John 17:8,14. Christ personally gave them the Father's Words. We have the Bible, but Christ didn't personally give them to us.
- e) Conclusion: Those the Father gave to the Son during His earthly ministry were the little flock of Jewish disciples, known as apostles, and his sheep. (John 10:27,29).

5) **Ordained to Salvation**

Acts 13:48 "And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed."

Calvinists think this teaches U,L,I and that every saved person was "ordained to eternal life" before the foundation of the world by a sovereign, eternal decree.

Answer:

- a) "Ordained" (Greek: *tetagmenoi*, a form of *tasso* ⁵⁰²¹) means that the Gentiles were THEN disposed, and determined to embrace eternal life, by the Holy Spirit influencing their hearts. It does not refer to an eternal decree of election, but that they then experienced and submitted to the drawing power of the Holy Spirit to salvation. (See Barnes, Adam Clarke, A T Robertson, Ralph Earle, and many others).
- b) The Greek root word is tasso (appoint, incline, dispose), not proorizo (predestine, decree beforehand), not protasso (appoint before) and not diatasso (a strengthened form of *tasso*).
- c) The word "ordain" is never used in Scripture to describe an unconditional, sovereign, eternal decree, eg: Judas was "ordained" with the other 11 disciples (Mark 3:14), yet he turned out to be a devil (John 6:70).
- d) Acts 13:48 says "ordained", not "foreordained".

6) **Chosen to Salvation – Matthew 20:16 and 22:14**

Calvinists after "chosen", add "to salvation". If Calvinists see "chosen" or "choose", they always read it as unconditionally, sovereignly, eternally elected to salvation.

- **i) Matthew 22:14** "For many be called, but few chosen."

Q: Doesn't this say that God only chooses a few to be saved, that they experience irresistible grace, and that everyone gets a general call, but only a few get an effectual call?

Answer:

- a) NO. It teaches that the great mass of people in the time of Christ who had been called, had rejected the mercy of God in Christ, so God didn't choose them. A garment had been provided for this man by the King, but he had refused or neglected to wear it. This man's lack of a wedding garment was inexcusable, as proven by his speechlessness.
- b) This pictures unlimited atonement because:
 - the custom was for the host to provide wedding garments.
 - his speechlessness and lack of excuse prove his guilt and personal responsibility, not the King's fault.
- c) The ones chosen were "bid to the marriage" (Matthew 22:9), not fore-ordained to go. They were chosen because they accepted the invitation.
- **ii) Matthew 20:16** The parable of the householder hiring vineyard labourers relates to service and rewards, not election to salvation. Christ calls many to service, but few are chosen to big ministries. Christ calls some to be more useful than others, without regard to their length of service. Christ will reward them accordingly. Matthew 20:16 concerns labourers, but salvation is a gift (Romans 6:23; Ephesians 2:8).
- **iii) John 15:16** "Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit .." Christ chooses his disciples to bear fruit, not to be saved. Calvinists' error here is seen from John 6:70, "Have not I chosen you twelve, and one of you is a devil", and Mark 3:13-14 "He ordained twelve, that they should be with him." By reading Unconditional Election into these verses, we get a sovereignly elected, irresistibly called, ordained devil.

- **iv) Acts 9:15** “He (Paul) is a chosen vessel unto me, to bear my name before the Gentiles.”
Acts 22:14 “The God of our Fathers hath chosen thee, that thou shouldst know His will, and see that Just One, and hear the voice of his mouth.”
 Paul was not chosen to salvation, but he was chosen - to bear the Lord’s name (Acts 9:15);
 - to know God’s will (Acts 22:14);
 - to see Christ and hear his voice (Acts 22:14);
 - to be a minister and a witness (Acts 26:16);
 - to open the Gentiles’ eyes and turn them to God (Acts 26:18). Calvinists miss the context.
- **v) Galatians 1:15,16** “God who separated me from my mother’s womb.”
 a) Un.El. is supposed to be from eternity, but these verses say it is from their mother’s womb.
 b) Paul was separated on another occasion (Acts 13:2).
- **vi) I Peter 2:9** “But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you ...”
 a) It is not said when or why this choosing took place.
 b) This fourfold description of NT church is quoted from God’s fourfold description of OT Israel. Exodus 19:6 “Ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, an holy nation. . . to the children of Israel.” Deut. 14:2 “the Lord hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto himself, above all the nations.”
Key: Calvinists have completely missed and overlooked the fact that as the nation of Israel was corporately elected as a body, so also was the church corporately elected as a body. (Ephesians 1:22,23; Colossians 1:18). The election of the church is a corporate matter rather than an individual thing. It is not that individuals are in the church because they are elect. It is rather that individuals are elect because they are in the church.
Individuals are not the subject here, but the church, as a collective body is.
Key: As God did not choose each individual Jew to be one of the elect, so God does not choose each individual Christian to be one of the elect – Christians are born into it. No unsaved man was ever elected to anything.
Key: The basic error of Calvinism is to think election is to salvation.
- **vii) Psalm 65:4** “Blessed is the man whom thou chooseth . . . that he may dwelt in thy courts . . . of thy house, even of thy holy temple.”
 a) This discusses God’s courts, God’s house, God’s temple, not salvation.
 b) The time of choosing and NT salvation are not discussed.
- **viii) James 2:5** “Hath not God chosen the poor of this world, rich in faith, heirs of the kingdom..”
Answer: Is every welfare recipient “elect” and “chosen to salvation”?
 It means that the poor are more receptive to the gospel than the rich.
- **ix) II Thessalonians 2:13** “God hath from the beginning (Gk: *ap arche*) chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.”
 a) “from the beginning” (*ap arche* as in Acts 26:4) is different from “from eternity” (*ap aionos* as in Acts 15:18) as God did not choose the Thessalonians from eternity past, but from the beginning of when Paul left Philippi. “Now ye Philippians know also, that in the beginning of the Gospel, when I departed from Macedonia . . .” (Philippians 4:15,16). Paul defines “the beginning of the gospel” as when he left Philippi to begin his departure from the province of Macedonia. God chose that the Thessalonians would hear the gospel from the beginning of Paul’s departure from Philippi (II Thessalonians 2:13), when Christ gave Paul the Macedonian call in Acts 16:10 and 17:1-4 in 53 AD, and not by a sovereign decree in eternity past.
 b) The conditions of God saving the Thessalonians are “sanctification of the Spirit (God’s part) and belief/obedience of the truth of Christ (man’s part).”
x) I Peter 1:2 is a similar passage: “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ.”
 c) Calvinists err saying that “from the beginning” means “from before the beginning of the world”
 d) In Calvinism the “elect” are all put in Christ in eternity past, but in the Bible no-one is put in Christ until he is saved. “Salute Andronicus & Junia..who also were in Christ before me.” Rom16:7

- **xi) Ephesians 1:4.** Calvinists use Ephesians 1:4 and II Thessalonians 2:13 to teach Unconditional Election to salvation in eternity past. “According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love.” (Eph 1:4).
 - a) We are chosen not to be saved, but to be holy and without blame.
 - b) **Key:** God chose that whoever was in Christ would be “blessed with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places” (v.3) and be “holy and without blame before him in love.”
- **xii) II Timothy 1:9** “Who hath saved us, and called us with an holy calling not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began.”

Q: When did God give us saving grace? In eternity past (Calvinism) or when we got “in Christ” (Bible)?

Answer: Grace was not physically given to any man “before the world began”, because there were no men around to give it to. Grace was “given to us in Christ Jesus”.

Key: God deposited grace in Christ before the world began, but it was only given to us when we got “in Christ”.

- **xiii) Jeremiah 31:3** “Yea, I have loved thee with an everlasting love; therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn thee”. The error of the “eternal union” of the “elect” with Christ is based on uniting the phrases “in him” (Ephesians 1:4) and “in Christ Jesus” (II Timothy 1:9) with “before the foundation of the world” (Ephesians 1:4) and “before the world began” (II Timothy 1:9) to teach that the “elect” were in Christ before the world began.

Answer:

- a) The problem Calvinists create for themselves is that, before “the elect” got “in Adam” (I Cor. 15:22) they already had a relationship with Christ. This means that according to Calvinism:
 - The Fall didn’t affect the elect;
 - One can be “dead in sin” and yet be “in Christ” at the same time;
 - No elect have ever been in danger of going to hell;
 - Before God, His people are justified from eternity past.
- b) This nonsense is a complete overthrow of the gospel, meaning that the elect were never lost.
Key: The Fall affected all men equally: “death passed upon all men”. (Romans 5:12).
- c) No-one was ever “in Christ” until his salvation. “Salute Andronicus and Junia, ... who were in Christ before me”. (Romans 16:7).
- d) If the elect were always children of God, they could never have been “children of the devil” or “children of wrath”. (Ephesians 2:3).

Conclusion: In Calvinism, the elect are all put in Christ at the same time, in eternity past.

In the Bible, no-one is put in Christ until he is saved.

- **xiv) I Timothy 5:21** “I charge thee before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels.”
 - a) “Elect” cannot refer to holy angels, because they never fell to be elected back to holiness.”
 - b) God chose the angels that didn’t fall. Hence they are called or appraised as “elect angels.”

Question: How is Jesus Christ Elect when He never sinned?

Answer: When “elect” is applied to Christ, it shows His value & worth, not His selection to salvation.

Isaiah 42:1 “Behold my servant, whom I uphold; mine elect ...” (Matthew 12:18).

I Peter 2:6 “Behold I lay in Sion a chief Corner stone, elect, precious.” (Isaiah 28:16).

ISRAEL is still called “ELECT” in the New Testament.

1. **Matthew 24:22,24,31** “but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened.” (v.22).
“if it were possible they shall deceive the very elect.” (v.24). “they shall gather his elect from the four winds”. (v.31). Those addressed are not “elect sinners” waiting to be saved by Irresistible Grace, but Jewish saints in the future 7 year Tribulation. (v.21,29).
2. **II Timothy 2:10** “I endure all things for the elect’s sakes, that they also may obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus ...” This refers to elect Israelites, not unsaved “elected” Gentiles. If the elect were elected before the foundation of the world, they could never miss salvation, whether

Paul preached it or not. To believe that Paul strove, laboured, endured beatings, stonings, jail, shipwreck, pain, hunger and cold, for the elect who would certainly be saved, is nonsense.

3. **Luke 18:7,8** “Shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them.”

Q: Who are these elect? When, why, and how they were elected is not said. The elect are likely to be suffering saints in the Tribulation, crying out to God for revenge. (Revelation 6:9,10). This verse concerns prayer (Luke 18:1), not a sovereign, eternal decree.

4. **Romans 9:11,12** “that the purpose of God according to election might stand, ... it was said unto her, The elder shall serve the younger. The purpose of God according to election is service, not salvation or reprobation. It concerns the election of the Messianic line to come through Abraham, Isaac and Jacob to Jesus Christ.
5. **Romans 11:28** “As touching the election, they are beloved.” This refers to the corporate election of the whole nation Israel, and has nothing to do with salvation.
6. **Romans 11:5,7** “at this present time there is a remnant according to the election of grace. (v.5). Israel hath not obtained that which he seeketh for; but the election hath obtained it, and the rest were blinded”. (v.7). Calvinists see Unconditional Election to salvation here because these verses concern only a portion of Israel.

Answer: The “remnant according to the election of grace” (v.5) refers to the 7000 men reserved to God who had not bowed the knee to the image of Baal (v.4).

Question: Why were these 7000 men reserved to God?

Answer: Because they had not bowed to Baal, not because of a decree of Unconditional Election. Only the remnant of Israel who sought righteousness by faith participated in the “election of grace”

The CHURCH is called “ELECT” nine (9) times in the New Testament.

These have nothing to do with any decree of God:

1. **I Peter 5:13** “The church that is at Babylon, elected together with you saluteth you.”
Answer: The church at Babylon as a body is elected. No individual is said to be elected. Nothing is said about when, how or why anyone was elected.
2. **I Thessalonians 1:4** “Kowing brethren beloved, your election of God.”
Answer: No mention of when, why, or how of this election; no eternal decree. It refers to how the Thessalonians received the Gospel by God electing Paul to go to Macedonia. (Acts 16:9,10).
3. **II Peter 1:10** “Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall.”
Key: This verse destroys TULIP Calvinism because calling comes first, then election after. Pink panicked at this verse because all his life he taught the opposite, that election comes first, and calling later.
Question: How could anyone “give diligence” to make sure a supposedly irresistible, sovereign, eternal decree that was already sure to happen?
Key: This calling and election relate to service, not to salvation.
4. The word “elect” is applied to Christians 6 times. None say that this election is a decree of God; none say it is eternal; none say it is unconditional, and none say it results in salvation. The word “elect” here is just a title for NT Christians, showing our value, worth, appraisal and assessment. This is the same use of “elect” as applied to Jesus Christ and angels:
Romans 8:33 “Who shall lay anything to the charge of God’s elect?”
Colossians 3:12 “Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved...”
Titus 1:1 “Paul, a servant of God ... according to the faith of God’s elect”.
I Peter 1:2 “Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through ...”.
II John 1 “The elder unto the elect lady, and her children”.
II John 13 “The children of thy elect sister greet thee”.
Key: Whenever Calvinists see “elect”, they read into the text their doctrine of an eternal, sovereign, irresistible, unconditional election to salvation. The above verses show that no-one is

elect until they are saved. Believers are described as elect, holy, justified, beloved and having faith. None of those are true of believers from eternity past.

Question: How do Calvinists build a case for eternal, unconditional election?

Answer: They read it into every verse where election is found, and follow these verses:

- a) I Peter 1:2 since salvation is mentioned with election, and change foreknowledge to fore-ordination.
- b) Romans 8:29,30 They link predestination here with
- c) Ephesians 1:4,5 containing “predestinate”, “chosen” & “before the foundation of the world”.
- d) II Thessalonians 2:13 “God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation”, while not quoting the rest of the verse showing two parts to salvation.
- e) Acts 13:48 “as many as were ordained to eternal life believed”, without checking the Greek meaning of “ordained”, or when this ordaining took place.
- f) Romans 9,10,11 to teach election to hell.

Question: Predestination What does the Bible say we are predestined to?

- 1) Son-placing in heaven (Ephesians 1:5), “Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children” (Greek: *huiiothesia* = son-placing).
- 2) Praise His glory (Ephesians 1:11,12).
- 3) Conformed to the image of His Son in heaven (Romans 8:29,30).

Key: a) Predestination is never called a decree of God or takes place before the foundation of the world.
b) No-one is said to be predestined to salvation or to hell.

Question: Do non-elect dead infants go to hell?

False Conclusions of Unconditional Election:

- 1) God has predestined the “non-elect” to hell before the foundation of the world.
- 2) Fatalism: Nothing can happen in time which will make the slightest difference.
- 3) Shaky Assurance of Salvation in mysterious eternal decree of election, instead of in Bible promises
- 4) Missions and evangelism: If the number of elect and reprobate are fixed, what difference could it make to send or to withhold missionaries, or to go soul winning?
- 5) Confusing Terminology.
- 6) Making all preaching vain, destroys holiness, destroys religious comfort, destroys zeal for good works, destroys Christian revelation by fatal contradictions.

Question: Did God intend to save all men, or did He not?

LIMITED ATONEMENT

Calvinists’ 5 Arguments for Limited Atonement

- 1) A universal atonement demands a universal salvation.
- 2) Double jeopardy – if God laid all man’s sins on Christ, the lost would be punished twice for their sins: once on Christ, and a second time in hell.
- 3) Universal atonement doesn’t actually save anyone.
- 4) Adam’s sin brought condemnation to all. Christ’s righteousness only secured the salvation of those He died for.
- 5) The sin of unbelief.

Answer to each: These false conclusions are based on the false premise that Christ’s Atonement and its Application are the same thing.

Calvinists confuse the Provision of a Saviour with our Applying of Salvation.

Calvinists say that the “elect” were actually saved, redeemed, reconciled and justified at the instant of the Atonement.

Question: Then how is it that the “elect” were born “dead in trespasses and sins”? (Ephesians 2:1), and were by nature “children of wrath”? (Eph. 2:1). If Calvinists object to this conclusion, the only alternative is unlimited atonement.

Old Testament Examples proving the Atonement and its Application are Different:

- 1) The blood of the Passover Lamb became efficacious only after it was applied to the doorposts as God instructed (Exodus 12:6-22).

Key 1: The death of the lamb saved no-one. The blood had to be applied. Christ's death is complete but conditional. Universal provision (Hebrews 2:9) and individual application (John 1:12; Romans 10:13) of Christ's atonement are two different things.

Key 2: The answer to Calvinists' 5 arguments for Limited Atonement is that they fail to distinguish between Christ's universal provision and the need for individual application of the atonement.

Key 3: Calvinist argument (1) about a universal atonement demanding a universal salvation disappears when we see that the "elect" did not exist when Christ died on the cross.

Q: How can the elect be saved before they were born?

Those who were snake bitten in the wilderness had to leave their tent and deliberately look at the brass serpent on a pole to be healed. Setting up the brass serpent saved no-one. They had to individually apply its healing power by looking. Those who didn't apply it, died (Numbers 21:5-9). Jesus endorsed this need for individual application in John 3:14,15.

Calvinist Argument 3 Refuted: If nobody after 33 AD availed themselves of Christ's universal atonement, Christ's atonement was effectual for Old Testament saints:

"And for this cause he is the mediator of the New Testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance." (Hebrews 9:15).

Calvinist Argument 4 Refuted: Although Adam's sin was universal and unrefuseable, Romans 5:17 states that Christ's gift must be received: "they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life ..."

Key: A major blunder of Calvinists is to inconsistently redefine Many, All men and All in Romans 5:15,18 and Isaiah 53:6.

1) **Romans 5:15** "For if through the offence of one MANY be dead (Calvinists agree "many" = all), much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace ... hath abounded unto MANY".

Calvinists say that the first "many" = "all", but the second "many" = "not all" but only the "elect".

2) **Romans 5:18** "As by the offence of one, judgment came upon ALL MEN to condemnation (Calvinists agree that "all men" = all); even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon ALL MEN unto justification of life". Calvinists contradict themselves, saying that the first "all men" = "all", but the second "all men" = "not all" but "elect". Note the phrase "even so".

1) **Isaiah 53:6** "All we (*any*) like sheep have gone astray (Calvinists agree that "all" = "all"); we have turned every one to his own way (Calvinists agree "everyone" = "all"); and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all". (Calvinists want this "all" to mean "not all", but "the elect"). Calvinists third contradiction, says that the first "all" = "all", but the last "all" = "not all".

Conclusion: The second many, all men and all must be interpreted as the first many, all men and all to prove unlimited atonement in Romans 5:15,18 and Isaiah 53:6.

Calvinist Argument 5 Refuted: Why does God demand that men believe, if Christ died for and removed the sin of unbelief as Calvinists claim? "he that believeth not is condemned already". John 3:18

Christ dying for "all men", "all", and "the world" refute Limited Atonement

Calvinists redefine "world" and "all men" to defend Limited Atonement:

I. CHRIST DIED FOR THE WORLD

Calvinists quote "the world is gone after him" (John 12:19) (an example of hyperbole or exaggeration) to prove that "world" doesn't always mean "all men", but only the "elect".

Answer:

1) In John's Gospel the word "world" occurs 89 times, but never refers to the "elect". (eg: "The world hates Christ" in John 7:7).

2) **John 1:29** "Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world."

3) **John 6:33** "The bread of God is he which cometh down from heaven, & giveth life unto the world."

2) **John 3:16** "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life."

Note: If "world" here means "elect", some of the "elect" may not believe, and hence perish.

3) **John 4:42** "This is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world."

4) **John 6:51** "My flesh, which I will give for the life of the world."

- 5) In **Paul's letters**, the word "world" occurs 69 times, and is used in several different senses, but never refers to the "elect".
- 6) Paul differentiates between "us" believers and the "world" in:
 - a) **Galatians 1:4** "Who gave himself for our sins that he might deliver us from this present evil world."
 - b) **II Corinthians 5:19** "God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation".
The "elect" could not have been reconciled at the cross, because:
 - i) They did not exist then; ii) They were still in their sins until salvation.
 - iii) Paul in 60 AD is still beseeching lost people to be reconciled to God.
- 9) **I John 2:2** states that Christ died for the world as an unlimited atonement: "**he is the propitiation for our sins; and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world**". This demolishes limited atonement. Calvinists think "our sins" refers to Jewish believers, and "world" means "Gentile unbelievers". This is wrong because:
 - a) I John is addressed to "you that believe on the name of the Son of God". (I John 5:13).
 - b) "Our" in I John 2:2 has fellowship with the Father and His Son Jesus Christ (I John 2:1).
 - c) "Our" has "an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous." (I John 2:1).
 - d) The words Jew and Gentile do not occur in I John. John makes no such distinction here.
 - e) In I John the word "world" occurs 23 times, and never refers to the "elect" (eg, "love not the world/elect"?) (I John 2:15).
 - f) John contrasts Christians and the world as two groups:
"We know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness." (I John 5:19).
Hence Christ is the propitiation of John's sins; the sins of the believers he wrote to, and the sins of the whole world.
- 10) **I John 4:4** "The Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world."

Calvinist Objection: Is **John 11:49-52** a parallel passage to **I John 2:2**?

"Caiaphas, being the high priest ... said ... that Jesus should die for that nation; and not for that nation only, but that also he should gather together in one the children of God that were scattered abroad." (John 11:49-52).

Question: Who are the "children of God"? Calvinists think they are the church who were chosen by God before the foundation of the world.

Answer: "Children of God" here refers to all the Jewish race scattered abroad being gathered from dispersion abroad into one body, after Christ's second coming. Why Israel? Because:

1. The term "children of God" was an ancient title for Israelites:
 - "Ye are the children of the Lord your God." (Deuteronomy 14:1).
 - "all of you are children of the Most High." (Psalm 82:6).
 - "I will say..bring my sons from far, and my daughters from the ends of the earth." Isaiah 43:6
2. John meant only Jews who were dispersed among all nations since Rome conquered Judea. These are called the dispersed in:
 - "to the 12 tribes which are scattered abroad." (James 1:1).
 - "will he go unto the dispersed among the Gentiles?" (John 7:35).
3. The meaning is: "Christ would die, not only for the then inhabitants of Judea, but for all the Jewish race scattered abroad. This would result in all Jews being gathered from dispersion abroad into one body, after Christ's second coming.
4. **Question:** If Christ died for the whole Jewish nation as prophesied by Caiaphas, then according to Limited Atonement, all Jews would have to be saved.
5. The phrase "children of God" never refers to members of the church until they are saved:
"For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus" (Galatians 3:26). Before salvation, the "elect" were "children of wrath" (Eph. 2:3) and "children of disobedience" (Coloss. 3:6).
6. **Question:** If a person was a child of God, why would he need an atonement?

II. CHRIST DIED FOR ALL MEN

Calvinists say that “all” doesn’t mean “all” but only “elect” as seen by “hated of all men”. Matt 10:22.

Answer:

1. This is hyperbole, meaning “an exaggerated statement not meant to be taken literally”.
 2. We agree that “all” is used in different senses, but we disagree that “all” ever means “elect”.
- Christ’s atonement was for all men, as seen from:

1. **Isaiah 53:6** “All we like sheep have gone astray: we have turned everyone to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all”. The last “all” is just as extensive as the first “all”, and “everyone”. “All” means the same in both places. The context defines “all” as “everyone”. **Question:** Have all men gone astray, or have only some of them? ALL HAVE!
2. **II Corinthians 5:14,15** “For the love of Christ constraineth us (“elect”) because we (“elect”) thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead. And that he died for all, that they which live (saved people) should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again”.

Calvinists limit “all” to the “elect”, but “all” here means “all men” as seen by:

- a) The “elect” are already mentioned as “us” and “we”, so the 3 “alls” must mean all men.
 - b) After the restrictive “us” & “we” in v.14, “all” is used 3 times in a universal, unlimited way
 - c) The restrictive phrase “that they which live” (v.15) implies that not everyone of the “all” for whom Christ died, lives.
3. **II Timothy 2:1-6** “I exhort...that...prayers be made for all men, for Kings,...for all that are in authority; that we (“elect”) may lead...God our Saviour; who will have all men to be saved, ... the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all”.

Ransom for “all” does not mean a “ransom for the elect” because:

- a. Three “alls” do not mean “elect”, because the “elect” is described by “we”.
 - b. The mediator is between “God and men”, not between “God and the elect”.
4. **I Timothy 4:10** “living God, who is the Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe”.
- Key:** This contrast between “all men” and “those that believe” occurs in 4 places:
- a. **I Timothy 4:10** “Saviour of all men, specially of those that believe.”
 - b. **Galatians 6:10** “Let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith.”
 - c. **Romans 3:22** “Even the righteousness of God, which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all (100% of mankind) and upon all them that believe” (the ‘elect’).
 - d. **Titus 2:11,12** “For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared unto all men (100% of mankind), teaching us (the “elect”) that, denying ungodliness ...”
5. **Hebrews 2:9** “he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.”

Calvinist Objection: “The original Greek here does not use the word “man” but says, “for every”.

Answer:

- a. Calvinists take advantage of most people’s ignorance of Greek grammar. Like any adjective, demonstrative, participle, or prepositional phrase, the word “every” is used substantively, ie: “every” is used by itself because the noun “man” is so commonly and obviously understood to be meant, for example:
 - Luke 6:30 “Give to every (man) that asketh thee.”
 - Romans 12:3 “To every (man) that is among you.”
 - I Peter 3:15 “Be ready to give an answer to every (man).”
 - Revelation 22:18 “I testify unto every (man) that heareth.”
- b. The singular (every man) brings out far more strongly than the plural (all men) would, the applicability of Christ’s death to each individual man.
- c. The starting thought is “what is man?” (Hebrews 2:6), not “what are the elect?”

III. CHRIST DIED FOR HIS PEOPLE, SHEEP, CHURCH OF GOD, MANY

Calvinists presume that, if Christ died for a particular group (the “elect”), then He died for no-one else, hoping this proves limited atonement. Consider these examples:

1. **Many:** “The Son of Man came ... to give his life a ransom for many.” (Matthew 20:28).
“This is my blood ... which is shed for many for the remission of sins.” (Matthew 26:28).
“Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many.” (Hebrews 9:28).

Calvinist Objection: “Christ did not give His life a ransom for all, but for many”.
Every Calvinist presumes “many” = “elect”.

Ans: “Many” is used because it better contrasts with “one”. “Many” sometimes means “all”:
“the offence of one many be dead...the gift hath abounded unto many”. (Romans 5:15).
“As by one man’s disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous”. (Romans 5:19).

Question: Did Adam’s fall affect all or only some of his descendants? ALL.

2. **His People:** Calvinists presume that “his people” here are the “elect”,
eg: “He shall save his people from their sins.” (Matthew 1:21).

Question: Who are “his people”? **Answer:** ISRAEL.

- “A Governor, that shall rule my people Israel.” (Matthew 2:6).

- ”Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed his people.” Luke 1:68

3. **Sheep:** “I lay down my life for the sheep.” (Israel). (John 10:15).

Question: Who are the “sheep”? **Answer:** ISRAEL, because:

“Go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.” (Matthew 10:6).

“I am not sent but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.” (Matthew 15:24).

Key: If Christ died for all Israel, & some were lost, this proves Christ’s atonement was unlimited.

Conclusion: Calvinists claim that Christ only died for a particular group is proven false because:

a) The Bible never states that Christ died only for these groups to the exclusion of all others.

b) These groups are not the same, that is, Israel is not the church.

c) Using this same false Calvinist reasoning, one could conclude that Christ died:

- only for Paul, “who loved me, and gave himself for me.” (Galatians 2:20).

- only for weak believers: “the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died.” I Corinthians 8:11.

Key: There are other groups in Scripture for whom Christ died that Calvinists don’t want to discuss, because they prove unlimited atonement.

4. Those Christ died for who will ultimately go to Hell. “But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.” (II Peter 2:1).

Not only is Jesus Christ the Saviour (I Timothy 4:15) and Redeemer (I Timothy 2:6) of the world, but he bought the false prophets and false teachers, paying for their sins as well.

Despotes (Gk: “Lord”) in 2 Peter 2:1 is used of Christ in 2 Tim. 2:21 “meet for the master’s use.”

Key: The same word “bought” is used elsewhere of Christ: “Ye are bought with a price” I Cor6:20

5. Those groups Christ died for that describe everybody, all mankind.

- **Luke 19:10** “The Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost.”

Are all lost? YES. Are only the “elect” lost? NO.

- **Romans 5:6** “Christ died for the ungodly.”

Are all ungodly? YES. Are only the “elect” ungodly? NO, all are.

- **Galatians 4:5** “To redeem them that were under the law.”

Are all under the law? YES. Are only the “elect” under the law? NO.

- **I Timothy 1:15** “Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.”

Are we all born sinners? YES. Are only the “elect” sinners? NO.

- **I Peter 3:18** “Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust.”

Are all unjust? YES. Are only the “elect” unjust? NO.

Key: If Christ died for the lost, the ungodly, those under the law, sinners, and the unjust, then He made an unlimited atonement, for that is the condition of all men, not just the elect.

6. Christ died for **His Friends**. “Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.” (John 15:13). **Question:** Who are Christ’s friends? **Answer:** Judas was one of Christ’s friends, yet Judas was non-elect. “Jesus said unto him, Friend..” (Matthew 26:50).
7. Christ died for **“whosoever believeth”** may claim Christ’s atonement and be saved, proving **“unlimited atonement”**. -**Acts 10:43** “Whosoever believeth in him shall not be ashamed.”
- **Romans 1:16** “Gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation to everyone that believeth”
 - **Romans 10:11** “whosoever believeth in him shall not be ashamed.”
 - **Romans 10:13** “whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.”
 - **I John 5:1** “whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.”
 - **Revelation 22:17** “whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.”
- Key:** There are no “whosoever wills” in Limited Atonement.
Key: Calvin rejected Limited Atonement as seen in 4 quotes.
Key: If no offer can be made to the “non-elect”, and the elect are sure to be saved, then all preaching is not only vain and useless, but an absolute, total and complete waste of time.

Conclusion: The Calvinist debate about Limited Atonement is a smokescreen to conceal the true nature of Calvinism, which says that God by a sovereign, eternal decree of Unconditional Election has consigned billions of people to hell before their birth. To make it certain, God has given them Total Depravity so that they will be unable to receive Irresistable Grace, which will not even be offered to them, since Christ did not make a Limited Atonement for them.

PERSEVERANCE OF THE SAINTS. Question: How do Calvinists know if they are saved?

Answer: Only if they persevere in holiness to the end, not by Bible promises.

God’s preserving in salvation is not the same thing as the saints persevering outwardly in the faith.

Key: POTS is not the same as eternal security. Calvinists view on POTS is the same as Arminians.

Key: Contrary to salvation by perseverance (Calvinism), the Bible teaches salvation by believing.

Key: Calvinists and Arminians both wrongly presume that:

- a) The castaway in 1 Corinthians 9:24-27 lost his salvation.
- b) “He that endureth to the end shall be saved” (Matthew 10:22;24:13) says that one’s salvation is only sure by enduring to the end of one’s life.
- c) “continue in them for thou shalt save thyself and them that hear thee.” (1 Timothy 4:16).

Key: Calvinists call any opponent an Arminian, no matter what they believe.

Key: Because eternal security is so often equated with POTS, Calvinists coerce Christians who believe in eternal security into accepting all five points of Calvinism. This is done by implying that a rejection of election and predestination (as taught by Calvinists) is a rejection of eternal security.

Key: The NT teaches that some Christians may not persevere, but:

1. Become barren and unfruitful (2 Peter 1:8),
2. Be ashamed when Christ returns (1 John 2:28),
3. Hymaneus and Alexander who were delivered to Satan (1 Timothy 1:20),
4. Demas forsook Paul having loved this present world (2 Timothy 4:10),
5. Just Lot (2 Peter 2:7), righteous Lot (2 Peter 2:8), last seen drunk in a cave committing incest with his two daughters (Genesis 19:33,36). Did Lot persevere in faith? No.
6. A righteous man can turn from his righteousness and never return back. “When the righteous turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity.” (Ezekiel 18:24).

Key: Scriptures exhorting believers to persevere and practise good works, (not to keep salvation) have no meaning if all Christians are sure to persevere;

- a) Jude 1:21 “Keep yourselves in the love of God.” b) 1 Cor. 15:58; c) Romans 12:1,2.

Q: Is salvation an instantaneous act of God, or is it a process that depends on man’s perseverance? Both Calvinism and Arminianism teach the latter.

Key: POTS is a result of Reformation concern that “justification by faith” would produce moral laxity in the church, so they teach that only those who persevere are truly saved.

Conclusion: Bad results of POTS: **a)** Lack of Bible teaching on the Judgment Seat of Christ and gain or loss of heavenly rewards. **b)** POTS contains a false view of assurance of salvation, because it makes salvation depend upon election and not on receiving Christ as Saviour. (We must go SW)

109. GOD HAS NOT CAST AWAY HIS PEOPLE ISRAEL. Romans 11:1,2

Many groups in Christendom think that God has permanently cast away Israel, and that Israel has no part in any of God's plans for the future. Whenever they see a passage on Israel, they read it as applying to the church. They think that the church has inherited all the Old Testament promises to Israel, but none of the curses on Israel for disobedience. When Israel became a nation in May 1948, they see no relevance for modern day Israel in the events surrounding the second coming of Christ. They ignore Ezekiel 36:24.

However, even a casual study of eschatology (second coming of Christ) will reveal that Israel is closely connected to the events of Christ's return.

Groups denying any future for Israel include Seventh Day Adventists, Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons, Roman Catholics, Muslims and Amillennarians (including many Anglicans, Presbyterians, Baptists, Uniting and Congregational churches) as well as Calvinists. These groups regard themselves as the God favoured remnant (Rev. 12:17) taking the place of Israel, as "prophesied" by their false prophets.

The Thomson Chain Reference Bible mistakenly applies references concerning Israel to the Church.

It overlooks the Ethnic Division principle of interpreting Scripture where God gives three ethnic divisions of mankind as Jew, Gentile and Church.

"Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of God." 1 Cor. 10:32.

This means that to correctly understand any Scripture, we must first ask "**To whom** is this passage referring? Is it spoken to or about Jews, or Gentiles or the Church?"

Let a passage referring to Jews, teach what it says about Jews, without putting a foreign meaning on it.

There are more than 130 clear Bible passages which teach that Jesus Christ will return in person to rescue and convert the nation of Israel, and to rule on the earth from Jerusalem as King of the Jews, with Israel being the chief nation on earth.

Ask if the following 211 verses teach that Israel has a future in God's plans, in these 107 passages.

1. PAUL TEACHES ISRAEL'S FUTURE CONVERSION. Romans 11

- i) Hath God cast away his people? God forbid. v.1
- ii) God hath not cast away his people which he foreknew. v.2
- iii) Have they stumbled that they should fall? God forbid. v.11
- iv) If their fall be the riches of the world, how much more their fullness? v.12
- v) If the casting away of them be the reconciling of the world, what shall the receiving of them be, but life from the dead? (a resurrection of believers). v.15
- vi) How much more shall these (Jews), which be the natural branches, be grafted into their own olive tree? v.24
- vii) **Blindness IN PART** is happened to **Israel**, UNTIL the fullness of the Gentiles be come in (Rapture). v.25
- viii) And so **all Israel** shall be **saved**: as it is written, There shall come out of Zion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob. v.26
- ix) For this is my covenant with them (Israel) when I shall take away their sins. v.27
- x) As concerning the gospel, they (Jews) are enemies for your sakes: but as touching the election (of Israel), they are beloved for the fathers' sakes (patriarchs). v.28

2. JESUS CHRIST TAUGHT ISRAEL'S FUTURE CONVERSION.

- i) Ye (Israel) shall not see me henceforth, **TILL** ye shall say, Blessed is He that cometh in the name of the Lord. Matthew 23:37-39.
- ii) Now learn a parable of the fig tree (national Israel as in Joel 1:6-7); When his branch is yet tender and putteth forth leaves, (Israel becoming a nation in 1948) ye know that summer (Christ's return) is near. Matthew 24:32.
- iii) Christ shall rule my people Israel (in the Millennium). Matthew 2:6.
- iv) Christ promised **judgment on this wicked generation**, not on Israel's future generations forever.

-The men of Nineveh shall rise in judgment with this generation and shall condemn it. 41

-The queen of the south shall rise up in the judgment with this generation, and shall condemn it. 42

-Even so shall it be also unto this wicked generation. Matthew 12:41,42,45.

-All these things shall come upon this generation. Matthew 23:36.

- v) Jesus prophesied that **future Israel will receive the Antichrist as their Messiah**.
“I am come in my Father’s name, and ye receive me not (as Messiah): if another shall come in his own name (Antichrist), him ye will receive.” John 5:43.
- vi) Jesus prophesied that **His disciples, in the regeneration (millennium) will judge the 12 tribes of Israel**.
“Ye which have followed me (the disciples), in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit in the throne of His glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.” Matthew 19:28.

3. MOSES said that **GOD WILL NOT FORSAKE or DESTROY ISRAEL, or FORGET THE COVENANT OF THY FATHERS.**

When thou (Israel) art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the latter days, if thou turn to the Lord thy God, and shalt be obedient unto his voice: (For the Lord thy God is a merciful God) **he will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant** of thy fathers which he swore unto them. Deuteronomy 4:30-31.

4. The PALESTINIAN COVENANT PROMISES 7 THINGS FOR ISRAEL in Deut. 30:1-10.

- i) **Dispersion for disobedience.** v.1 “Thou shalt call them to mind among all the nations, where the Lord thy God hath driven thee.”
- ii) **Future repentance of Israel** while in dispersion. v.2
- iii) **The return of the Lord.** v.3 “The Lord thy God will turn thy captivity, and have compassion on thee, and will return and gather thee from all the nations . . .”
- iv) **Restoration to the land.** v.5 “The Lord thy God will bring thee into the land which thy Father’s possessed, and thou shalt possess it: and he will do thee good . . .”
- v) **National conversion.** v.6 “The Lord thy God will circumcize thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart and soul. . .”
- vi) **Judgment of Israel’s oppressors.** v.7 “The Lord thy God will put all these curses upon thine enemies. . .”
- vii) **National prosperity.** v.9 “The Lord thy God will make thee plenteous in every work of thine hand.”

5. MOSES PROPHESED a FUTURE TROUBLE for ISRAEL and a GOOD LATTER END.

- i) Evil will befall you in the latter days (Tribulation). Deuteronomy 31:29.
- ii) O that they were wise, that they understood this, that they would consider their latter end! How should one chase a thousand. . . Deuteronomy 32:29,30.

6. The DAVIDIC COVENANT is UNBREAKABLE. “My Covenant Will I Not Break”. Ps 89:34

I will **not lie** unto David. v.35

His **seed** shall endure **forever**, and his **throne** as the sun before me. v.36

It shall be established forever. v.37

The seed of David is the nation Israel who will endure forever.

Some say that God has broken His covenant with David (Israel) because of Israel’s disobedience. However, Psalm 89:34 clearly states that God will not break His covenant with David, nor with His seed Israel.

7. ISAIAH TAUGHT ISRAEL’S REGATHERING TO THE LAND, THEIR CONVERSION and that **GOD WOULD NOT FORGET THEM.**

- 1. Isaiah 2:1-4 states-in the last days **Judah, Jerusalem** and the **Lord’s house** will be exalted:
 - i) All nations shall flow unto it.
 - ii) Many people will say, Let us go to the house of the God of **Jacob**.

- iii) He will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths.
 - iv) Out of **Zion** shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from **Jerusalem**.
 - v) He shall judge among the nations.
 - vi) Christ shall rebuke many people.
 - vii) They shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks.
 - viii) Nation shall not lift up sword against nation.
 - ix) Neither shall they learn war anymore.
O house of **Jacob**, come let us walk in the light of the Lord.
2. In that day, the **remnant of Israel**, and such as are escaped of the house of **Jacob**....shall **stay upon the Lord**, the Holy One of Israel, in truth. Isaiah 10:20.
The remnant shall return, even the remnant of **Jacob**, unto the **mighty God**. v.21.
 3. **Israel's remnant will be regathered a second time**. The Lord shall set His hand again the **second time** to **recover the remnant of his people**, which shall be left, from Assyria, Egypt, Ethiopia, Iraq, and from the islands of the sea. Isaiah 11:11-12.
He (Christ) shall assemble the **outcasts of Israel**, and **gather the dispersed of Judah** from the four corners of the earth.
 4. **God will choose Jacob and Israel**, and **set them in their own land**. Isaiah 14:1.
 5. The **land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt**. This prophecy is fulfilled today because Israel's military has defeated Egypt in every war since 1948. Isaiah 19:17.
 6. **Egypt, Assyria and Israel will become God's people**. The Lord of Hosts shall bless, saying, Blessed be Egypt my people, and Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel mine inheritance. Isaiah 19:25.
 7. **The Lord shall reign** in Mount Zion, and **in Jerusalem**, and before his ancients gloriously. Isaiah 24:23.
 8. **Israel shall blossom and bud**, and fill the face of the world with fruit. Isaiah 27:6.
 9. Ye shall be **gathered** one by one, O ye children of Israel . . . and shall **worship the Lord** in the holy mount at Jerusalem. Isaiah 27:12-13.
 10. The light of the sun shall be sevenfold . . . in the day that the Lord bindeth up the breach of his people, and **healeth the stroke of their wound**. Isaiah 30:26.
 11. As birds flying, so will the **Lord** of hosts **defend Jerusalem**; defending also he will **deliver it**; and passing over He will **preserve it**. Isaiah 31:5.
Jews dwelling at Jerusalem will be defended, delivered and preserved by Jesus Christ at His return to earth.
 12. O **Israel**, thou shalt **not be forgotten of me**. Isaiah 44:21.
 13. **God promises that: "I will not forget Israel."**
"But Zion said, The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me.
Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet **I will not forget thee**." Isaiah 49:14-15.
 14. **God will comfort and redeem Jerusalem**.
"Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of **Jerusalem**: for the Lord hath **comforted his people**, he hath **redeemed Jerusalem**." Isaiah 52:9.
This will happen when Christ returns to rescue Jews at Jerusalem from the Antichrist. They will be comforted and redeemed.
 15. **God has only temporarily forsaken Israel**. Isaiah 54:7,8,10.
For a **small moment** have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I **gather thee**. v.7.
In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment; but with **everlasting kindness** will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer. v.8.
My kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the **covenant of my peace** be removed. v.10.
 16. **God's covenant with Zion and Jacob is forever**.

The Redeemer shall come to **Zion**, and unto them that **turn from transgression in Jacob**, saith the Lord. This is **my covenant** with them, . . . saith the Lord, from henceforth and **forever**. Isaiah 59:20-21.

17. **Wealthy Jews from overseas will return by air and sea to Israel at the start of the Millennium.**

Who are these that **fly** as a cloud? v.8.

Surely the **isles** shall wait for me, and the **ships** of Tarshish first, **to bring thy sons from far**, their **silver** and their **gold** with them, unto the name of the Lord thy God, and to the Holy One of **Israel**, because **he hath glorified thee**. v.9.

The **sons of strangers** shall build up thy walls, and their kings shall minister unto thee: for in my wrath I smote thee, but **in my favour have I had mercy on thee**. v.10.

The nation and Kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be **utterly wasted** (by drought). Isaiah 60:8,9,10,12.

At the start of the millennium, Jews will return to Israel by aeroplane (v.8) and by ship (v.9) from the isles, maybe from England, the United States and South Africa where there are many wealthy Jews, bringing their silver and gold with them. The Lord will glorify Israel after His return. Gentiles will help rebuild Jerusalem (v.10). God's favour will rest on Israel (v.10). Zechariah 14:16-19 describe how Israel's enemies will be destroyed in the millennium, under Christ's rule. (v.12).

18. **Jerusalem** shalt be called, Sought out, **A city not forsaken**. Isaiah 62:12.

19. **Israel's return to the land in 1948 will be so quick, that it will be like a woman giving birth before labour pains**. Isaiah 66:8-20.

Shall a **nation** be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed, she brought forth her children. v.8.

Rejoice ye with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, **all ye that love her**.

Behold, I will extend **peace to her** like a river. . . v.10,12.

As one whom his mother comforteth, **so will I comfort you**; and ye shall be comforted in Jerusalem. v.13.

They (Gentiles) shall bring all your **brethren** (Jews) for an offering unto the Lord out of all nations . . . **to Jerusalem**. v.20.

20. **The Jewish nation (seed) and their name shall remain forever**.

For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith the Lord, so shall **your seed** and **your name remain**. Isaiah 66:22.

8. **JEREMIAH TAUGHT THAT ISRAEL AS A NATION WOULD BE SAVED, REGATHERED and BLESSED WITH AN EVERLASTING COVENANT WITH GOD.**

1. **God will regather Judah and Israel from the land of the north (Russia) to the land of Israel**. Jeremiah 3:17-18.

At the time (millennium) shall they call Jerusalem the throne of the Lord; and all nations shall be gathered unto it, to the name of the Lord, to Jerusalem: **neither shall they (Jews) walk anymore after the imagination of their evil heart**. v.17.

In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel, and **they shall come together out of the land of the north** to the land that I have given for an inheritance unto your fathers. v.18.

2. **God will regather, save, feed, protect and provide for Israel**.

I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries where I have driven them, and will bring them again **to their folds**; they shall be **fruitful** and **increase**. v.3.

I will set up shepherds over them which shall **feed them**: and they shall **fear no more**, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the Lord. v.4.

In his days (Christ's 1000 year rule) **Judah shall be saved**, and **Israel shall dwell safely**. 6 The Lord liveth, which brought Israel out of the north country, and from all countries where I had driven them, they shall **dwell in their own land**. v.8. Jeremiah 23:3-8.

3. **Israel will be saved out of the Tribulation to serve God.**
 It is the time of Jacob's trouble, but he shall be **saved** out of it. v.7.
 I will burst thy bonds, and strangers shall no more serve themselves of him. v.8.
 They shall **serve the Lord their God**, and David their King, whom I will raise up unto them. v.9.
 O Israel, **I will save thee** from afar . . . and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid. v.10.
 For **I am with thee**, saith the Lord, **to save thee** . . . yet will I not make a full end of thee: but I will correct thee in measure. v.11.
 I will punish all that oppress them. v.20.
Ye shall be my people, and I will be your God. v.22. Jeremiah 30:7-22.
4. **God will regather, build, plant and make a new covenant with Israel and Judah.**
 Jeremiah 31:10,28,31,36,37.
 He that scattered Israel will **gather him**, and **keep him**. v.10.
 I will **watch over** them (Israel), to **build**, and to **plant**. v.28.
 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord, that I will **make a new covenant** with the **house of Israel**, and with the house of **Judah**. v.31.
 If those ordinances (sun and moon) depart from before me saith the Lord, then the seed of Israel also shall cease from being a nation before me forever. v.36.
 If heaven above can be measured, and the foundations of the earth searched out beneath, I will also cast off all the seed of Israel for all that they have done, saith the Lord. v.37.
5. **God will regather Israel as His people, save them, bless them, and make an everlasting covenant with them.** Jeremiah 32:37-42.
 I will **gather** them out of all countries . . .
 I will **bring them again** unto this place, and I will cause them to **dwell safely**. v.37.
 They shall be **my people**, and I will be their God. v.38.
 I will give them **one heart**, and one way, that they may **fear me forever**. v.39.
 I will make an **everlasting covenant** with them . . . they shall **not depart** from me. v.40.
 I will rejoice over them to **do them good**, and I will **plant them** in this land assuredly. v.41
 As I have brought all this great evil upon this people, so I will bring upon them **all the good** that I have promised them. v.42.
 Ten promises here show that God has a great future for Israel, in Jeremiah 32:37-42.
6. **God will save Israel and Judah, they will dwell safely, and the Davidic covenant is as permanent as day and night.** Jeremiah 33:14-22.
 I will perform that **good thing** which I have promised unto the house of **Israel** and to the house of **Judah**. v.14.
 In those days, and at that time, I will cause the Branch of righteousness (Christ) to grow up unto David; he shall execute judgment and righteousness in the land. v.15.
 In those days shall **Judah be saved** and **Jerusalem shall dwell safely**. v.16.
 If ye can break my covenant of the **day** and my covenant of the **night**.... v.20.
 Then may also my covenant be broken with David my servant, that he should not have a son to reign upon his throne. v.21.
 As the **host of heaven** cannot be numbered, neither the **sand of the sea** measured: so will I multiply the seed of **David** my servant . . . v.22.
7. **I will not make a full end of thee** (Israel), but correct thee in measure; Jeremiah 46:28.
8. **Jacob and Israel** (the rod of his inheritance). **Thou art my battle axe** and **weapons of war**: for with thee will I break in pieces the nations, and with thee will I destroy Kingdoms. Jeremiah 51:19,20.
 This will only be fulfilled at Christ's return.

9. **EZEKIEL PREDICTED A REMNANT OF ISRAEL WOULD BE SAVED IN THE LATTER DAYS.**

1. Yet **will I leave a remnant** that ye may have some that shall escape the sword among the nations, when ye shall be scattered through the countries. Ezekiel 6:8.
2. **Israel to be regathered and be saved.** Ezekiel 11:17,19,20.
I will even gather you from the people, and assemble you out of the countries where ye have been scattered, and **I will give you the land of Israel.** v.17.
I will put a **new spirit** within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh. v.19.
They shall be my people, and I will be their God. v.20.
3. That the **house of Israel** may go **no more astray** from me, neither be polluted any more with all their transgressions; but that **they may be my people** and **I may be their God.** Ezekiel 14:11.
4. **I will remember my covenant with thee** in the days of thy youth, and I will establish unto thee an **everlasting covenant.** Ezekiel 16:60.
Then thou shalt remember thy ways and be ashamed. v.61.
5. I will cause you to pass under the rod, and I will bring you into the **bond of the covenant:** Ezekiel 20:37,38,42,43.
I will purge out from among you the rebels. v.38.
Ye shall know that I am the Lord, when I shall bring you into the **land of Israel.** v.42.
There shall ye remember your ways . . . and **loathe yourselves.** v.43.
Israel will be disciplined, purged, saved, regathered and repent.
6. **God will regather and save Israel to dwell safely.** Ezekiel 28:25,26.
When I shall have **gathered the house of Israel** from the people among whom they are scattered, and shall be **sanctified** in them in the sight of the heathen, then shall they **dwell in their land** that I have given to Jacob. v.25.
They **shall dwell safely** . . . they shall dwell with confidence, when I have **executed judgments** upon all those that despise them round about them; and they shall know that I am the Lord their God. v.26.
These events have never happened before. They can only refer to a future regathering and blessing of Israel.
7. I will **gather them** from the countries, and will bring them to their own land. Ezekiel 34:13,24,25,28.
I the Lord will be their God and my servant David a prince among them. v.24.
I will make with them a **covenant of peace.** v.25.
They shall **dwell safely** and none shall make them afraid. v.28.
8. I will take you from among the heathen, and gather you out of all countries, and will bring you into your own land. v.24.
Then I will sprinkle clean water upon you, and **ye shall be clean.** v.25.
A **new heart** will I give you, and a **new spirit** will I put within you. 26.
I will **put my spirit** within you. v.27.
Ye shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers: **Ye shall be my people** and I will be your God. v.28.
I will save you from all your uncleanness. v.29.
I will yet for this be enquired of by the house of Israel, to do it for them. v.37.
Ezekiel 36:24,25,26,27,28,29,37.
9. **The valley of dry bones.** Ezekiel 37:11,12,14,21-27.
These bones are the whole house of Israel. v.11.
Behold, O my people, I will open your graves and bring you into the land of Israel. v.12.
I shall put my Spirit in you, and ye shall live, and I shall place you in your own land; then shall ye know that I the Lord have spoken it, and performed it. v.14.

I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen...and bring them into their own land. v.21.

I will make them **one nation in the land** upon the mountains of Israel. v.22.

I will **save them** out of all their dwelling places, where they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so they shall be **my people**, and I will **be their God**. v.23.

David my servant shall be king over them. v.24.

They shall **dwell in the land** that I have given to Jacob. v.25.

I will make a **covenant of peace** with them; it shall be an **everlasting covenant** with them.

I will set **my sanctuary** in the midst of them forevermore. v.26.

My tabernacle also shall be with them: yea, I will be their God, and **they shall be my people**. v.27.

10. **Russia will invade regathered Israel in the latter days**. Ezekiel 38:8-16.

In the **latter years** thou shalt come into the **land** that is brought back from the sword, and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, . . . it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall **dwell safely** all of them. v.8.

In that day when **my people of Israel dwelleth safely**. v.14.

Thou shalt come up against my people of **Israel**. . . it shall be in the **latter days**. v.16.

11. **Israel in the land will be saved after Russia's defeat**. Ezekiel 39:7-29.

I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel.

I will not let them pollute my holy name any more.

The heathen shall know that I am the Lord, the Holy One in Israel. v.7.

They that **dwell in the cities of Israel** shall go forth, and shall set on fire, and burn the weapons . . . seven years. v.9.

The **house of Israel** shall know that I am the Lord their God from that day and forward.v.22

The heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity. v.23.

I will **have mercy** upon the **whole house of Israel**. v.25.

I have **poured out my Spirit** upon the **house of Israel**. v.29.

12. **The Shekinah glory cloud will fill the Millennial Temple**.

The glory of the God of Israel came into the house by the way of the east. Ezekiel 43:2,4,5.

13. **Levites shall serve in the Millennial Temple**. Ezekiel 44:10,11.

The Levites that are gone away far from me, when Israel went astray . . . yet they shall be **ministers in my sanctuary**, having charge at the **gates of the house** they shall slay the burnt offering.

14. The **rest of the land** shall they give to the house of **Israel** according to their **tribes**. Ezekiel 45:8.

15. The **gates of the city** shall be after the names of the **tribes of Israel**. Ezekiel 48:31.

	Naphtali	Asher	Gad	
Simeon	4500			Reuben
Issachar	4500		4500	Judah
Zebulun	4500			Levi

Dan Benjamin Joseph

10. **DANIEL STATES that the ARCHANGEL MICHAEL STILL REPRESENTS ISRAEL IN the TRIBULATION, and that ISRAEL WILL BE DELIVERED**.

At that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of **thy (Daniel's) people** (Israel): and there shall be a **time of trouble**, such as never was.....at that time **thy people (Israel) shall be delivered**. Daniel 12:1.

11. **HOSEA TEACHES ISRAEL'S CONVERSION IN THE LATTER DAYS.** Hosea 2:18-20,23

1. **Israel, the adulterous wife will be restored.** 2:14-23.
In that day I will make a **covenant** for them. v.18.
I will make them to lie down **safely**. v.18.
I will betroth thee unto me **forever** . . . in righteousness, in judgment, in loving kindness, in mercies, in faithfulness. v.19,20.
Thou shalt **know the Lord**. v.20.
I will say to them which were not my people,
“**Thou art my people**” and they shall say, “**Thou art my God**”. v.23.
2. The **children of Israel** shall abide many days (the church age) **without a king**, without a prince, without a sacrifice, without an image (idols), without an ephod (priesthood), and without teraphim (Divination device). v.4.
Afterward shall the **children of Israel return** (to the land) and **seek the Lord** their God, and David their king; and **shall fear the Lord** and his goodness in the **latter days**. Hosea 3:4,5. For about 2500 years Israel has not had a king.
After the Church age, Israel will return, seek God and be saved. This has partly happened since 1948.
3. **Christ returns to heaven until the Jews seek Him.**
I (Jesus Christ) will go and return to **my place** (heaven at His ascension), till they (Jews) acknowledge their **offence** (of crucifying Christ), and seek my face: in their affliction (the 7 year Tribulation) they (the Jews) will seek me (Jesus Christ) early. Hosea 5:15.
Jews talking: Come, and let us return unto the Lord: for he hath torn (God's discipline of Israel), and he will heal us; he hath smitten, and he will bind us up. Hosea 6:1.
If Israel died spiritually in 33AD (“desolate” Luke 13:35), after 2000 years is 2033 AD.
After **two days** (maybe about 2000 years) will he **revive us** (Israel gets converted at Christ's return): in the **third day** (maybe from 2033 AD to 3033 AD) he will **raise us up** (Israel converted nationally), and we shall **live in his sight**” (for 1000 years). Hosea 6:2.
This agrees well with Israel now returning to the land after 1878 years (1948-70). If Christ returns soon, Israel will be saved & live under Christ's rule for 1000 years (Rev. 20:1-9)
4. **Israel will be converted.** Hosea 14:4,5,6.
I will heal their backsliding,
I will love them (Israel) freely:
for mine anger is turned away from him (in the Millennium). v.4.
I will be as the dew unto Israel. v.5.
His branches shall spread. v.6.

12. **JOEL TEACHES THE CONVERSION OF ISRAEL.**

1. Then will the Lord be jealous for his land, and **pity his people**. Joel 2:18.
I will **no more** make you a **reproach** among the heathen. v.19.
I will remove far off from you the northern army (Russia). v.20.
I will **restore to you** the years that the locust hath eaten. v.25.
Ye shall know that I am **in the midst of Israel**, and that I am the Lord your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you: my people shall **never** be ashamed. v.27. Joel 2:18,19,20,25,27.
2. I will gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat, and will plead with them there for **my people** and for **my heritage Israel**, whom they have **scattered** among the nations, and **parted my land**. Joel 3:2.
Today the nations are parting “my land Israel” amongst the Muslims in exchange for peace. God will judge and punish those nations who pressure Israel to give up parts of her land.
3. The Lord will be the hope of his people, & the strength of the **children of Israel**. Joel 3:16.
Judah shall **dwell forever**, and **Jerusalem** from generation to generation.
I will cleanse their blood that I have not cleansed: ..the Lord dwelleth in Zion. Joel 3:20,21

13. **AMOS TEACHES the REGATHERING and BLESSING OF ISRAEL.**

1. In that day I will **raise up** the Tabernacle of David that is fallen, and close up the breaches thereof; I will **raise up** his ruins, and I will **build it as in** the days of old. v.11.
 - That they (Israel) may possess the remnant of Edom, and of all the heathen, which are called by my name. v.12.
 - I will bring again the captivity of my people of Israel, and they shall **build the waste cities**, and inhabit them. v.14.
 - I will plant them upon their land, and they shall **no more be pulled up out of their land** which I have given them, saith the Lord thy God. v.15. Amos 9:11,12,14,15.

14. **MICAH TEACHES THAT ISRAEL WILL BE THE MIGHTIEST NATION IN THE MILLENNIUM.**

1. The **remnant of Jacob** shall be among the Gentiles in the midst of many people as a **lion** among the beasts of the forest, as a **young lion** among the flocks of sheep: who, if he go through, both treadeth down, and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. Micah 5:8.
2. The **nations shall see** and **be confounded at all their might**: they shall lay their hand upon their mouth. Micah 7:16.
3. He will turn again, he will **have compassion on us**. Micah 7:19.
4. Thou wilt perform the truth to Jacob, and the mercy to Abraham, which thou hast **sworn** unto our fathers from the days of old. Micah 7:20.

15. **ZEPHANIAH TEACHES THAT ISRAEL WILL BE SAVED**

1. The remnant of Israel shall **not do iniquity**, nor speak lies; neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth . . . none shall make them afraid. 3:13.
2. The King of Israel, the Lord, is in the midst of thee: thou shalt **not see evil any more**. 3:15.
3. I will get them (Israel) **praise and fame in every land** where they have been **put to shame**. 3:19.
4. At that time I will bring you again, even in the time that **I gather you**. 3:20.

16. **ZECHARIAH TEACHES THAT ISRAEL WILL BE RESTORED**

1. He that toucheth **you** (Israel) touches the **apple of God's eye**. 2:8.
2. The Lord **shall inherit Judah** his portion in the holy land, and **shall choose Jerusalem again**. 2:12.
3. The man whose name is THE BRANCH; . . . He shall build the **temple** of the Lord; he shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne. 6:12,13.
4. I am returned unto Zion, and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: Jerusalem shall be called a **city of truth**. 8:3.
5. I will **save my people** from the east country, and from the west country; I will bring them, and they shall dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: and **they shall be my people**, and I will be their God, in truth and in righteousness. 8:7,8.
6. As ye were a curse among the heathen, O house of **Judah** and house of **Israel**; so will **I save you**, and ye shall be a **blessing**. 8:13.
7. In those days, ten men shall take hold of the skirt of a **Jew**, saying we will go with you: for we have heard that **God is with you**. 8:23.
8. The Lord of hosts shall defend them. 9:15.
The Lord their God shall save them in that day. 9:16.
9. I will **strengthen** the house of Judah, and I will **save** the house of Joseph . . . **they shall be as though I had not cast them off**. 10:6.
10. **Israel will be converted when Christ returns.**
I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling unto all people. 12:2.
I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people.
All that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces. 12:3.

In that day shall the Lord defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem. v.8.

I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. v.9.

I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and supplications: they shall look upon me (Jehovah) whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him v.10. Zechariah 12:2,3,8,9,10.

11. When Antichrist invades Jerusalem, two-thirds of Israel will die.

In all the land, two parts shall be cut off and die, but the third part will be left. v.8.

I will bring the third part through the fire

they shall call on my name and I will hear them:

I will say, it is my people:

they shall say, the LORD is my God. Zechariah 13:8,9.

Question for Amillennialists: Will two-thirds of the church be killed? (No).

12. Events of Armageddon. Zechariah 14.

I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle. v.2.

The Lord shall go forth, and fight against those nations. v.3.

His feet shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives. v.4.

The Lord my God shall come, and all the saints with thee. v.5.

The Lord shall be King over all the earth. v.9.

Jerusalem shall be safely inhabited. v.11.

This shall be the plague that the Lord will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth. v.12.

Judah shall fight at Jerusalem. v.14. Zechariah 14:2-5,9,11,12,14.

Conclusion:

From the 211 verses above, it is clearly seen that in the context of Christ returning to earth, God still cares for Israel. The Bible teaches unmistakably that Israel will return to the land in a state of unbelief, and while facing destruction from the Antichrist, Christ will return in person to rescue and convert Israel. Hence, in Christ's earthly kingdom, Israel will be the chief nation on earth. So we conclude this study in full agreement with the Apostle Paul who said in Romans 11:2, "God hath not cast away His people which He forenew." To think that God has cast away His people Israel is to disagree with 15 writers of Scripture.

Summary (16 key verses):

Romans 11:1 "God hath not cast away his people" (2,11), "their fullness" (12), "receiving of them" (15), "Blindness in part is happened to Israel, until" (24,25), "they are beloved" (28).

Deut.4:31, "he will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant."

Isaiah 11:11 "Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people."

Isaiah 14:1 "Lord will have mercy on Jacob, & will yet choose Israel, & set them in their own land"

Isaiah 19:17 "land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt." "Blessed be Egypt,..Assyria,..Israel"(25)

Isaiah 54:7,8,10 "for a small moment have I forsaken thee; but with great mercies will I gather thee"

Jeremiah 3:17,18 "In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel,..."

Jeremiah 30:7,11,22 "time of Jacob's trouble, but he shall be saved out of it.(7) I will be your God

Jeremiah 31:37 "If heaven above can be measured, & the foundations of the earth searched out beneath, I will also cast off all the seed of Israel for all that they have done, saith the Lord."

Jeremiah 32:42 "As I have brought all this great evil upon this people, so will I bring upon them all the good

Jeremiah 46:28 "I will not make a full end of thee, but correct thee in measure;"

Daniel 12:1 "shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people"

Hosea 3:4,5 "The children of Israel shall abide many days without a king, sacrifice,..Afterward shall the children of Israel return,& seek the Lord...in the latter days. In the third day he will raise us up. 6:2

Amos 9:11-15 I will raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen; I will build it as in the days of old

Zechariah 10:6 I will strengthen the house of Judah & Joseph..they shall be as though I had not cast them off
Ezek 28:25,26; 36:24-29,37; 37:11-14,21-27; 39:7,9,22-29. poured out my Spirit on the house of Isr

110. THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH

The Roman Catholic Church believes many false doctrines that are contrary to the Bible, and were unknown to the early Church, such as:

1. Human Tradition is Elevated to or above the Word of God. 1545 AD.
2. Wrong Gospel, Wrong Message of Salvation.
3. Confession of Sins to a Priest to Obtain Absolution of Sins.
4. Penance.
5. Priests.
6. Celibacy of Priests and Nuns. 1079 AD.
7. Confirmation.
8. Extreme Unction. 526 AD.
9. Infant Baptism. 370 AD.
10. Transubstantiation. 1215 AD.
11. Adoration of the Host (wafer bread). 1220 AD
12. The Mass. 394 AD.
13. Other Mediators Between God and Man.
14. Prayers to Saints. 375 AD.
15. Purgatory. 593 AD.
16. Papal Infallibility. 1870 AD.
17. Indulgences. 1190 AD.
18. Idolatry = Making Images. 786 AD.
19. Mary Veneration. 431 AD.
20. Catholic Attitudes to the Bible. 1229 AD.
21. Peter as the Rock.
22. 15 Apocrypha Books Added to the Old Testament Bible. 1546 AD.
23. Names of Blasphemy. 350 AD.
24. Rosary Prayer Beads. 1090 AD.
25. Low Moral Standards.
26. Devotion to the Sacred Heart of Jesus and Mary.
27. Crossing Oneself. 300 AD.
28. Was Peter the First Pope?
29. Roman Catholic Lies, Immorality, Corruption.
30. The Inquisition, Torture, Massacres, Murders, Wars. 1184 AD.
31. 15 Evidences that the Roman Catholic Church is Mystery Babylon the Great, the Whore of Revelation 17.
32. Who gave us the Bible? God or the Roman Catholic Church?
33. They turn people away from Christ to honour twelve other things.

Conclusion.

The Roman Catholic Church has developed many doctrines which cannot be remotely proven from the Bible. For example, the Assumption of Mary is not in the Bible.

Question: Did God leave important teachings out of the Bible? Is God forgetful?

The Roman Catholic Church cannot clearly and easily show its history before 320 AD, when the Roman Emperor Constantine professed conversion, amalgamated pagans and Christians, and declared himself to be the head or pontif of the Universal (Catholic) Church.

The early Church never had many of the doctrines that the Roman Catholic Church now has. Isaiah 8:20 says: "If they speak not according to this Word, it is because there is no light in them."

Question: What are some errors of the Roman Catholic Church?

ERROR 1: HUMAN TRADITION is elevated to or above the Word of God.

"Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy or vain deceit, after the **tradition of man**, and not after Christ." Colossians 2:8.

Jesus charged the Pharisees for exalting tradition above the Word of God in the same way that the Roman Catholic Church does:

1. "Why do ye also **transgress the commandment of God** by your **tradition**?" Matthew 15:3.
2. "Ye made the **commandment of God of none effect** by your **tradition**. Ye hypocrites." Matt 15:6,7
3. "In vain they do worship me, **teaching for doctrines the commandments of men**." Matthew 15:9.
4. "Let them alone: they be **blind leaders** of the blind." Matthew 15:3,6,7,9,14.

I challenge Catholics to test their doctrines by God's Word.

The Church does not give birth to the Word of God, but the **Word of God gives birth** to the **Church**.

"Of his own will **begat he us** with the **word of truth**." James 1:18; 1 Peter 1:23.

The Word of God saves us, and we become part of a local Church. This has always been the case.

"He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the **word** that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day." John 12:48.

Roman Catholicism quotes Church traditions as the authority as to why they add unbiblical doctrines.

ERROR 2: WRONG GOSPEL, wrong message of salvation.

Roman Catholics, since childhood are taught that to get to heaven one must keep the **sacraments**, the **mass**, and **do good works**. This is different from the Bible's definition of the Gospel.

Question: What is the Gospel?

Answer: "I declare unto you the **Gospel** ... how that **Christ died for our sins** ... that he was **buried**, and that he rose again the **third** day, according to the scriptures." 1 Corinthians 15:1-4.

The Gospel message saves us: "I am not ashamed of the **Gospel** of Christ, for it is the **power** of God unto **salvation**, to **every one** that **believeth**." Romans 1:16.

Therefore the Gospel is this: Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again. We are saved when we believe this message, receiving Christ as our Saviour. This means that we must trust Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as being the full payment for all our sins.

Paul strongly warns against preaching or believing "another Gospel" in Galatians 1:6-9.

"So say I now again, If any man preach **any other gospel** unto you than that ye have received, LET HIM BE ACCURSED." Galatians 1:9.

Question: What is this **OTHER FALSE** Gospel?

Answer: Any idea that we can **earn salvation** by **our good works**.

1. "Knowing that a man is **NOT** justified by the **WORKS** of the law, but by the **FAITH** of Jesus Christ,
2. Even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the **FAITH** of Christ, and **NOT by the WORKS** of the LAW;
3. For by the **WORKS** of the law shall **NO FLESH** be justified." Galatians 2:16.

Note that **three** times we are told that we are not saved by keeping the **WORKS** of the law.

Other verses that say the same thing are as follows: Ephesians 2:8,9,10. Galatians 3:2,10,11,26; 5:4; Philippians 3:9; Romans 3:20,28; 4:5; 11:6; Titus 3:5.

The Bible says that **NO AMOUNT** of good works can save us.

Several problems exist for those who trust their works to save them:

1. They **never know if they've done enough good works** to make it into heaven. They never know for sure if they are going to heaven. The pope doesn't know for sure. So how can he help you to become sure of eternal life.
2. They are saying that Christ's death on the cross was **not good enough** to save them and it was a **waste of time**. "If righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain." Galatians 2:21.
3. They are **rejecting Christ** from being their Saviour.
4. They are grouping themselves with **every other false religion** whose one thing in common is trusting their **own works**, or merits, or law-keeping to get them into heaven.

Ephesians 2:8-10 states that we are not saved by our works, but that after we have received Christ as our Saviour, we will show good works. Paul says:

"Not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ." Philippians 3:9.

To teach the all-sufficiency of the saving work of Christ would undermine the entire structure of Catholicism. People are told that if they leave the Roman Catholic Church, they'll surely go to hell. People are kept in bondage of fear of missing salvation if they leave the Roman Catholic Church.

The Catholic "gospel" leaves Christ out. It teaches people that if they perform well enough such things as: attending mass, partaking of sacraments, praying to Mary (saying the "Hail Mary"), confessing sins to a priest, doing good works etc, they may eventually pass through the fires of purgatory after hundreds of years to then enter heaven.

Do you have real salvation in Christ, **or** are you trusting in keeping Catholic Church rules to save you? Many times I have asked Catholics how they were saved. They reply "That's personal, I don't need to tell you." I say: "Then that **proves** that you are not saved and that if you died now, you would surely go to hell, because Romans 10:11 says "Whosoever believeth on him **SHALL NOT BE ASHAMED.**" If you were really saved you would be happy to tell me how Jesus saved you.

ERROR 3: CONFESSION OF SINS to a priest to obtain absolution of sins.

Catholic Canon law 870 and 888 state that a priest has power to forgive sins, and confession to a priest at least once a year is necessary unto salvation.

Early church writers such as Chrysostom (350AD), and Basil (350AD) wrote strongly in favour of confessing sins to God only.

The Bible gives these examples of confessing sins to God only:

1. When Simon of Samaria sinned after being baptized, he was told to pray to God for forgiveness. Acts 8:22.
2. The apostles never heard confessions, but said in Acts 10:43 that: "through his name whosoever **believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.**"
3. Peter never forgave the sins of Cornelius. Acts 10:44-48.
4. Paul never forgave the sins of the Philippian jailer. Acts 16:30-34.
5. Only God can forgive sins. "Who can forgive sins but God only." Mark 2:5-11.
6. When Peter sinned by denying Christ, he confessed to God and was forgiven. When Judas sinned by betraying Christ, he confessed to some priests and then committed suicide. Matthew 27:3-5.

Question: What about James 5:16 "Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another that ye may be healed."

Answer: This confession contributes to restoration of health, because the sickness has come on the patient as a punishment for some sins that he committed.

See 1 Corinthians 11:29-31. If we are sick, and are conscious that we have hurt any person, we should make confession to them. The reason is "that ye may be healed." This verse in no way proves that if we confess our sins to a priest, that the priest has power to declare such sins to be forgiven because:

1. This confession is not to be made by a person in health to obtain salvation, but by a **sick person** that he may be healed.
2. This verse commands **mutual confession**, meaning that the priest should also confess his sins to the people, "one to another."
3. No mention is made of confession to a priest, or any minister of religion.
4. This confession is for faults where **one has injured another**. Nothing is said about confessing sins to those we have not injured such as a priest.
5. There is **no mention** here of **absolution**, by a priest or by any person.
6. Only **He (God) whose law has been violated** can pardon or forgive an offence. No third person can forgive a sin between two people.
7. Catholic "auricular confession" is so evil because:
 - it gives so much **power** to the priesthood to suppose that they can absolve sins.

- it **pollutes the mind** by keeping impure thoughts in the mind long enough to make confession and to state them in words.
- it gives a man **such power over a female** to suppose that it is required by religion that all sins passing in her mind should be disclosed to him. The very things that a seducer would like to know are the thoughts of his intended victim. Virtue would be safe nowhere. This practice has greatly corrupted community morals as seen by so many Catholic priests being sued for sexual abuse of women and children.

Question: But doesn't John 20:23 say that a priest has power to forgive sins, "Whosoever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whosoever sins ye retain, they are retained?"

Answer: The meaning is, not that man can forgive sins (because only God can), but that they were to declare on **what terms** and **conditions**, to **what characters**, and to **what attitude of mind**, God would forgive sins.

God was saying that people might have assurance of forgiveness who would comply with those terms. Those who did not comply should not be forgiven, and their sins should be retained.

Jesus here is giving the apostles (and by extension all Christians) the privilege of announcing heaven's **terms** on **how a person can receive forgiveness of sins**. If a person believes in Jesus Christ, then a Christian has the right to announce his **forgiveness**. If a person rejects Jesus Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for his sins, then a Christian can announce that persons sins are **not forgiven**.

Jesus Christ is the **only** mediator between God and man, not a priest, not Mary and not the saints. "There is one God, and **one mediator** between God and man, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5.

ERROR 4: PENANCE.

Catholicism believes that a priest has the power to forgive or retain sins and **impose penance** as a means of **testing** the genuineness of the person's confession, and of making a **satisfaction** to God for that sin.

Answer: "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and thou shalt be saved." Acts 16:31.

"If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness." 1 John 1:9.

We only confess our sins to God. No mention is made of penance here or anywhere. No good works that we do by penance will ever satisfy God, but sinners can be accepted and forgiven only on the ground of Christ's sacrifice, through which alone the justice and wrath of God against sin have been satisfied. Romans 3:24-28.

"**He** is the propitiation for our sins ..." 1 John 2:2.

Penance is performing outward acts such as repeating prayers, like the "Hail Mary" or the "Rosary", as a payment for sin and to satisfy God. Roman Catholicism bases penance on Ezekiel 18:30, Luke 13:5 and Acts 2:38 where they incorrectly translate "repentance" (metanoeo = to turn, repent, to change one's mind) as "penance".

ERROR 5: PRIESTS.

A Roman Catholic priest is one who acts in the place of Christ, supposedly making unbelievers into Christians by "baptizing" them. He claims to convert the bread into Christ's flesh in the mass, and he claims to forgive sins in the confessional.

In the Bible, all ministers are called elders, bishops or pastors, all referring to the one office, but there is no office of "priest". Christ is our Great High Priest, the only mediator between God and man (1 Timothy 2:5), so there is no need for other priests to mediate for us. **Peter never** called himself a priest, but did call himself a "**fellow elder**". 1 Peter 5:1.

In **Acts**, there is no reference anywhere to a sacrificing priesthood. In Revelation 1:6 ("hath made us kings and priests unto God"), and in 1 Peter 2:5,9 ("ye are a holy priesthood", "ye are a royal priesthood"), **all believers are priests** and have **direct access to God** through Christ. We don't offer an atoning sacrifice because only Christ did this on the cross. The only sacrifices we offer to God are **prayers** (Ephesians 6:18), **praise** and **money** (Hebrews 13:15,16), and **ourselves** in service to God

(Romans 12:1) This Biblical truth of the **priesthood of all believers** was rediscovered in the Protestant Reformation of the 1500's. A pastor's real job is to preach the gospel, teach the Word of God and pray, not to hear confession, or change bread to flesh etc. Peter in 1 Peter 5, when he instructed fellow preachers, made no mention of any Roman Catholic priest's practices of today.

ERROR 6: CELIBACY of priests and nuns.

Forbidding priests and nuns to marry was introduced in 1079 and has led to much immorality.

What does the Bible say?

1. "A **Bishop** must be blameless, the **husband of one wife.**" 1 Timothy 3:2.
2. "Have **we** not power to lead about a sister, a **wife**, as well as other apostles, and **Cephas?**" 1 Corinthians 9:5.
3. Peter was married, because Jesus healed his mother in law. Matthew 8:14; Luke 4:38.
4. "It is not good that the man should be alone." Genesis 2:18.
5. "To avoid fornication, let **EVERY** man have his own wife, and let **EVERY** woman have her own husband." 1 Corinthians 7:2.
6. a) "Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall **depart from the faith**,
b) giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;
c) Speaking lies in hypocrisy;
d) having their conscience seared with a hot iron;
e) **FORBIDDING TO MARRY**, and commanding to abstain from meats." 1 Timothy 4:1-3.

Here God describes the Catholic Church's forbidding priests and nuns from marrying.

The Catholic church, in support of celibacy quotes Matthew 19:11,12 and I Corinthians 7:8,32-34.

These passages say it is **permissible to be** celibate if one so chooses, but it is **never to be commanded**. Priestly celibacy has caused so much sexual immorality between priests, women and boys, as priests sexually proposition women for fornication and boys for homosexual relations.

ERROR 7: CONFIRMATION.

Catholic Confirmation is supposed to be the conferring of the Holy Spirit by the laying on of hands. One false doctrine leads to another false doctrine. The false unbiblical doctrines of infant sprinkling and salvation by works lead to the false doctrine of Confirmation.

Confirmation of children is not in the Bible. Check it yourself. Laying on of hands is used to set apart men for a ministry:

1. "When they had prayed, they laid their hands on them." (7 men of honest report). Acts 6:6.
2. "When they had fasted and prayed and laid their hands on them, they sent them away." Acts 13:3. They laid hands on Paul and Barnabas as they sent them on their first missionary journey.
3. "Lay hands suddenly on no man." 1 Timothy 5:22. Don't ordain pastors suddenly.
4. "Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery." 1 Timothy 4:14.
5. "doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of hands ..." Hebrews 6:2.

Nowhere in the New Testament does a preacher lay hands on 8 year old children, who are unsaved.

ERROR 8: EXTREME UNCTION.

This sacrament states that "At the end of life, sin can be totally undone and man is prepared for immediate entrance into everlasting glory." This idea is found **NOWHERE** in the Bible. This will not get a dying person into heaven. His only hope is to receive Jesus Christ as his own Saviour, trusting Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for all his sin.

Mark 6:13 is the Catholic defence for this error, yet this verse says nothing about dying people, but only about demonized and sick people being healed. When Pope Pius XII died in 1958, his personal physician was dismissed for telling of his frightful and terrifying fear of death and hell.

Question: Since the Pope isn't sure of heaven, how can he help Catholics get to heaven?

Answer: Keeping the sacraments is a net that traps Catholics into believing that they will get to heaven by good works. The sacrament system enslaves a person's mind to the Roman Catholic church from the cradle to the grave.

Nobody was ever saved in the Bible by keeping the sacraments. **Catholic children** are trapped into the sacrament system around age seven or eight years old, when they have neither the knowledge of the Bible nor the maturity to test it with the Word of God.

Question: How can Catholics escape the trap of the sacraments?

Answer: By calling on Jesus Christ to be their only Saviour and by basing their life on the Bible.

ERROR 9: INFANT "BAPTISM" (370 AD).

The Catholic infant "baptism" is NOT Bible baptism because:

1. Baptism in the New Testament Greek means "**immerse**, dip, fully whelm" as one may check in Strong's Concordance dictionary. "Baptizo" in Greek means "immerse"; "Rhantizo" (4472) in Greek means "sprinkle." Catholic sprinkling is not Biblical immersion.

2. **No baby** was ever sprinkled in the Bible. Check it.

Question: "What doth hinder me to be baptized?"

Answer: "If you believe with all your heart you may. I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Acts 8:36,37. **Question: How can a baby believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God?**

3. Baptism means nothing unless a person has received Jesus Christ as their Saviour. It is always **saved first, then baptized**. Never does anyone get baptized in order to be saved. "Baptism is the answer of a good conscience towards God." 1 Peter 3:21.

Question: How can a baby show a good conscience towards God?

Answer: He can't. Baptism is something that each person must decide to do himself to publicly show that he is trusting Christ's death to pay for his sins, burial of the old lifestyle, and resurrection with Christ to a new way of life. Romans 6:1-5. Sprinkling does not picture Christ's death, burial and resurrection.

4. Baptism **does not save a person**, as the Catholic church claims. Only Christ's blood can cleanse us from sin. If we were saved by baptism, then Christ's death was a waste of time. Galatians 2:21.

5. **The repentant thief** on the cross was not sprinkled by water, yet he was saved by trusting Christ alone to save Him, not his good works. "... we receive the due reward of our deeds: ...Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom." Jesus said unto him, "Verily I say unto thee, today shalt thou be with me in paradise." Luke 23:41-43.

Notice that he was promised eternal life, being unable to lose it. The Catholic Church says that you can't be sure of eternal life and that you can lose it.

6. **Ananias** who was not a Catholic priest, but just a layman, baptized Paul (Acts 9:17-19). This shows that baptism by a non-Catholic is valid.

7. **Children** under the age of accountability go to heaven at death.

"children ... of such is the kingdom of heaven." Matthew 18:1-10; Matthew 19:14.

"I (David) shall **go to him**, but he shall not return to me." 2 Samuel 12:22, 23.

Question: Doesn't John 3:5 say "Except a man be born of water, and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God?"

Answer: It does not say "born of water baptism", but "born of water." What is meant by water? It is the water of the Word of God, because the Word of God produces conviction of sin and shows a person's need of Christ.

Paul says "With the washing of **water by the word**." Ephesians 5:26.

Peter says: "being **born again**, ... by the **Word of God**." 1 Peter 1:23.

James says: "of his own will **begat** he us with the **Word** of truth." James 1:18.

Peter says: "Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which **have** received the Holy Ghost ...?" Acts 10:47.

Cornelius' household here were saved before being baptized, thus proving that baptism does NOT save.

Salvation is appropriated only by calling on Christ to save us. Romans 10:13.

ERROR 10: TRANSUBSTANTIATION (1215 AD).

Definition: The whole substance of the bread and wine is converted into the **actual and real entire body and blood of Christ.**

Answer: Radbertus first invented this doctrine in the 9th century. Catholics support this by a **literal** view of Matthew 26:26-29. "Take eat; this is my body. For this is my blood of the new testament which is shed for many for the remission of sins."

Consider these reasons why the bread and wine were **symbols** of Christ's body and blood, to be partaken in for **remembrance** purposes only, and that there was **no material conversion** of the bread to the body, nor of the wine to the blood of Christ.

1. Jesus, after saying "this is my blood" in Matthew 26:28 also said "I will not drink henceforth of this **FRUIT OF THIS VINE**" in Matthew 26:29, showing that the **grapejuice** was **STILL WINE** and had not been changed to blood.

2. Jesus **often referred to Himself in symbols**. So why see Him as literal in a symbolic context?

John 10:7 "I am the door." Did Jesus mean he was literally wooden? No.

John 14:6 "I am the way." Did Jesus mean he was literally a road? No.

John 15:5 "I am the vine." Did Jesus mean he was literally a tree? No.

John 8:12 "I am the light." Did Jesus mean he was literally a torch or a sun? No.

John 6:48 "I am the bread of life." Did Jesus mean he was literally a loaf of dough? No.

John 6:63 states clearly that Jesus was **speaking spiritually**, not literally:

"The **words** that I speak unto you, they are **spirit** and they are life."

Luke 22:19 states clearly that the Lord's supper is for **remembrance** purposes: "This do in **remembrance** of me." This is a **metaphor**, where one thing is said to be another thing because of it's similarity. A metaphor is a figurative use of terms without indicating their figurative nature, for example, "he shall eat his words".

3. The bread and wine did not become Christ's body and blood because:

a) Christ was still present with them. Christ would have had **2 bodies**, one which died on the cross and one which did not.

b) To drink blood was forbidden in Acts 15:20,29 "We write unto them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and from fornication, and from things strangled, and from **BLOOD**." In Deuteronomy 12:16 "Only ye shall **not eat the blood**."

4. The tense of the Greek verbs "EAT" in John 6:50,51,52,53,54,56,57,58 is in the **AORIST tense** showing a **ONCE-FOR-ALL**, point action, that is NOT CONTINUAL. The Biblical Lord's supper is to be a repeated event, and therefore has no saving merit. Roman Catholics are commanded to believe in transubstantiation because it was stated at the Council of Trent (11 October 1551) that this doctrine was essential for salvation. They pronounced curses on anyone who would deny it.

Paul the Apostle, in contrast, pronounced a double curse on anyone who preached a gospel different from the all sufficiency of Christ's death, burial and resurrection to save us from our sins. Galatian 1:6-9 puts a **double curse** on this "other gospel" of transubstantiation for salvation.

5. Before Christ ascended to heaven, He promised to come to us during the Church Age, **NOT in the sacrifice of the MASS**, but by the **Holy Spirit** (John 14:16-18 as Comforter): "He shall give you another Comforter ... even the Spirit of truth ... I will not leave you comfortless: **I WILL COME TO YOU**." Note: Christ will return to earth a second time visibly in glory. This is what is meant by 1 Corinthians 11:26 "For as often as ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do show the Lord's death **TILL HE COME**."

Note: This means that Christ does **not come literally** and visibly as the **wafer** in the **mass**, but to the **air** as in 1 Thessalonians 4:16,17.

6. At the Council of Constance in 1415 it was agreed to withhold the cup from the congregation lest the wine be spilt. However, this contradicts 1 Corinthians 11:25-29 where **ALL** Corinthian believers drank of the wine: "Whosoever shall eat this bread and **drink this cup** unworthily."

v.27. **Drinking the cup** is mentioned **six times** in five verses.

Transubstantiation is not a mystery, but an **absurdity**; not a difficulty but a **contradiction**.

Question: How then do we eat his flesh and drink his blood?

Answer: Through the **WORD OF GOD**.

John 6:63 "The **words** that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life."

John 1:14 "The **Word** was made **flesh**."

John 5:24 "He that heareth my **Word** and believeth on him that sent me, has everlasting life."

The scribes who knew Jeremiah 31:31-34, "I will put my **law** in their inward parts", and Jeremiah 15:16, "Thy **words** were found and **I DID EAT THEM**; and thy word was unto me the joy and rejoicing of mine heart", understood the idea of receiving God's Word into one's inner being.

Peter got the **message**, while others planned to desert Jesus:

"Thou hast the **WORDS** of eternal life." John 6:68.

"Being **born again** ... by the **WORD of God**." 1 Peter 1:23-25.

Peter knew that Jesus was speaking about the **WORD** of God, and not about literal flesh and blood.

Question: If this doctrine of transubstantiation only arose in the 9th century, and if it is so necessary to Roman Catholic salvation, what happened to those who lived before the 9th century not believing this doctrine? Did they all go to hell?

Question: What about the thief on the cross who repented and never took the wafer? Did he go to hell? No! Jesus said he went to paradise.

ERROR 11: ADORATION OF THE HOST (Wafer Bread).

Catholic doctrine requires Catholics to bow down to and worship the wafer bread as God. "There shall arise false prophets....if it were possible they shall **deceive** the very elect....wherefore if they shall say unto you,....behold, he is in the **SECRET CHAMBERS; BELIEVE IT NOT**." Matthew 24:24,26.

The Catholic priest does and says precisely this. He says that the **bread** is **Christ** and puts the bread into the monstrance, a secret chamber. Christ says, **BELIEVE IT NOT!**

ERROR 12: THE MASS (instituted in 394 AD).

Definition: At every mass, Christ is sacrificed again.

Catholic doctrine says: "In the mass, no less than on Calvary, Jesus really offers His life to His heavenly Father."

Question: Must Christ be continually sacrificed in the mass, or was His blood sacrifice on the cross 100% sufficient to pay for all our sins for ever?

Answer: Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross **IS** 100% **SUFFICIENT** to pay for our sins, because:

1. In John 19:30 Jesus said, "**IT IS FINISHED**", which in the Greek is "Tetelestai" meaning "to make an end, to accomplish, to complete something, not merely to end it, but to bring it to perfection or its intended goal." It means that the whole work of salvation, the purpose for which Christ came into the world, has been accomplished on the cross. Nothing more can be added to it. This is why we cannot save ourselves by our good works, or religious rituals, as it is adding to Christ's finished work on the cross.

The mass says that Christ's death on the cross is not good enough to fully pay for all our sins or to save us. The mass says that we get to God apart from Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross.

The mass says that Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross was a waste of time, as Galatians 2:21 states: "if righteousness come by the law, then Christ is dead in vain."

2. When Christ died, the **veil** in the Jewish temple was **torn** from top to bottom (Matthew 27:51). This veil separated the Holy of Holies from the Holy Place. The Holy of Holies was entered into once a year by the High Priest on the day of atonement (Exodus 26:33). The tearing of this veil (60 ft high, 30 ft wide, 1 ft thick) was a type of Christ's human body, torn on the cross. This showed that a "new and living way" was opened for all believers into the very presence of God. No other sacrifice and no other priesthood was needed, just Christ's High Priesthood. "2Having therefore, brethren, **boldness** to enter into the holiest by the **BLOOD OF JESUS**, by a **NEW AND LIVING way**, which he hath consecrated for us, through the **veil**, that is to say, **HIS FLESH**." Hebrews 10:19,20.

We can now enter into the holiest presence of God without priestly sacrifices.

3. The New covenant which operates now in the Church Age states: "Their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Now where remission of these is, there is ³**"NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN."** Hebrews 10:17,18. The Catholic priest "offering Christ weekly," contradicts this clear statement that there is **"NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN"** needed.
4. Christ's sacrifice is clearly stated as **ONCE FOR ALL**, not to be repeated. "We are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ ⁴**ONCE FOR ALL.**" Hebrews 10:10.
 "But this man after he had offered ⁵**ONE SACRIFICE FOR SINS FOR EVER**, sat down on the right hand of God." Hebrews 10:12.
 "By ⁶**ONE OFFERING** he has perfected **FOREVER** them that are sanctified." Hebrews 10:14. Not just is Christ's sacrifice the one and only sacrifice for sins forever, but **no more offering is needed**: "Now where remission of these is, there is ⁷**NO MORE OFFERING FOR SIN.**" Hebrews 10:18.
⁸**Nor** yet that he should **OFFER HIMSELF OFTEN...**⁹For then must he **OFTEN** have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now ¹⁰**ONCE** in the end of the world hath he appeared to **put away sin** by the sacrifice of himself." Hebrews 9:25,26.
 "So Christ was ¹¹**ONCE** offered to bear the sins of many." Hebrews 9:28.
 "For Christ also has ¹²**ONCE** suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might **bring us to God.**" 1 Peter 3:18.

5. Catholic priests performing the "mass resacrifice" is a waste of time and of **no value** in taking away sins. "Who ¹³**needs not daily**, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did ¹⁴**ONCE**, when he offered up himself." Heb. 7:27. "and every **priest** standeth daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, **WHICH** ¹⁵**CAN NEVER TAKE AWAY SINS.**" Hebrews 10:11.

It is only by this **one** sacrifice of Christ on the cross that people can be saved. The continual sacrifice of the mass is not needed and opposes the Bible.

- Notice that there are **15 statements** that clearly teach the 100% sufficiency of Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross.
- Each clearly says that Christ's sacrifice is **ONCE for all**.
- No more sacrifice** is required.
- Priests sacrifices **can never take away sins**.
 The mass is a sacrifice without blood. Yet the Bible says that "without the shedding of **blood** there is no remission." (of sin). We do not need to sacrifice Christ again. His sacrifice 2,000 years ago is sufficient.
- Confession is also called "**RECONCILIATION.**"

Christ alone on the cross "made **reconciliation** for the sins of the people." Hebrews 2:17.

"God was in Christ, **reconciling the world unto himself.**" 1 Corinthians 5:19.

"when we were enemies, **WE WERE RECONCILED to God by the death of his Son.**" Roman 5:10.

"God, who **HAS RECONCILED** us to himself, by **JESUS CHRIST.**" II Corinthians 5:18.

"And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet **NOW HATH HE RECONCILED.**" Colossians 1:21.

Notice that the Biblical reconciliation is:

- Past** tense.
- By **Jesus Christ**, not by a Catholic priest.
- We **already possess reconciliation**, we don't get it at confession.

ERROR 13: OTHER MEDIATORS BETWEEN GOD and MAN.

We have **Christ** as our **Great High Priest** who gives us full access to **God's throne** of grace. We do not need a human priest, nor Mary, nor dead saints to intercede for us. "Seeing then that **we HAVE a GREAT HIGH PRIEST....JESUS CHRIST** the Son of God....Let **us** therefore **COME BOLDLY** unto the **throne of grace**, that we may **obtain mercy** and **find grace** to help in time of need." Hebrews 4:14,16.

The Catholic priest, not only makes Christ's death on the cross a waste of time, but he also takes Christ's place as **intermediary** between **man** and **God**, when he says that you can't be saved unless you come to mass performed by him. They call him "Vicar" meaning "in the place of". "For there is one God, and **ONE MEDIATOR** between **God** and **man**, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5.

Catholicism calls Mary a "Mediatorix".

Jesus is falsely portrayed as being **ANGRY** with people.

Mary is falsely portrayed as being **MERCIFUL**, and as Jesus' mother, is seen as uniquely able to pacify Jesus Christ's supposed anger towards people.

The Bible says that there is **ONE MEDIATOR** who is Jesus Christ and no one else. Jesus Christ is the merciful and faithful High Priest. Because he has suffered earthly temptations, he is well able to comfort us in earthly temptations. Hebrews 2:17,18.

Question: Where does it say that Jesus is angry with Christians?

Answer: Nowhere. "I will be **merciful** to their unrighteousness." Hebrews 8:12.

ERROR 14: PRAYERS TO SAINTS.

The Bible states that all true believers are "saints".

"To the saints which are at Ephesus." Ephesians 1:1.

"To all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi." Philippians 1:1.

"Praying to saints" is a Catholic device to stop people from praying to God and turns people away from developing a personal relationship with Jesus Christ.

Again, this false doctrine teaches that dead saints are more approachable and helpful than Jesus Christ.

Question: Do you see that a constant theme of Catholicism is to turn people away from Jesus Christ?

It turns people instead to Mary, saints, a wafer, a priest, traditions, popes, etc.

Why? What have they got against Jesus Christ? In fact, prayers to saints are:

1. Contrary to the Bible which says "After this manner pray ye: "**Our Father**". Matthew 6:9.
2. Contacting the dead is forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:10,11.

"There shall not be found among you any one that ... is a necromancer."

A necromancer is one who seeks to contact the dead. Much of what is attributed to saints is false. For example, St Philomena was proclaimed a saint by Leo XII, and Pope Gregory XVI blessed one of her images. Rome later admitted that she never existed and in 1961 struck her off the list of saints.

3. There is no Bible example of praying to saints, nor is there any Bible example of them having power to answer prayer. We pray to God the Father with Jesus as our only intercessor. Once again, "There is one mediator between God and man, the man Christ Jesus." 1 Timothy 2:5.

ERROR 15: PURGATORY.

Purgatory is an imaginary half-way place between heaven and hell, where unforgiven sin is purged away. This is a great evil because:

1. It **deceives Catholics** into thinking that they may be lukewarm and easily avoid hell.
2. It **denies that Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross is sufficient to pay for all of our sins.** It says that Christ did not die for all our sins, so we must be punished for them in purgatory.
3. It denies the Biblical doctrine of true salvation in Christ and certainty of eternal life, **forcing a person to work for their salvation.**

Answer: The Bible states clearly that Christ purged our sins on the cross.

1"When he had by himself **PURGED OUR SINS.**" Hebrews 1:3, and

2"There is therefore now **no condemnation** to them that are in Christ Jesus." Rom. 8:1;John 5:24

Why didn't the Apostles discuss purgatory?

Did God and the Apostles forget to tell us something important? No. When a believer dies, he is immediately present with Christ. "To be **absent from the body** and to be **present with the Lord.**"

2 Corinthians 5:8. There is no mention here of having to spend time in purgatory. ⁴ Jesus in Luke 16:19-31 reveals that there is a **great gulf** between paradise and hell. People cannot pass from one to the other.

Catholics defend purgatory by quoting 2 Maccabees 12:40-46 where a "sin offering" is offered for dead soldiers who had committed the sin of idolatry. This not only contradicts the Bible, but also contradicts Catholic teaching, because idolatry is a mortal sin that would confine a person to hell. The Book of Maccabees has never been regarded as inspired by Jews or Christians.

For the Roman Catholic, purgatory teaching is:

1. A **terrifying prospect** of entering a place of unspeakable torture. Millions of Catholics live and die in great fear of death, to spend an unknown number of years in purgatory. Christ came to "deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage." Hebrews 2:15. Roman Catholicism is a religion of fear.
 - a) Fear of purgatory.
 - b) Fear of the priest.
 - c) Fear of the confessional.
 - d) Fear of death.
 - e) Fear of the consequences of missing mass.
 - f) Fear of the discipline of penance.
 - g) Fear of the righteous judgment of an angry God.

2. A **great money raiser**

Suffering in purgatory may be shortened by gifts of money, masses, prayers by the priests, etc.

Question 1: If the Pope or priest, really has the power to shorten or stop the suffering of souls in purgatory, why does he not, if he is a good man, render that service freely and willingly as a service to humanity?

Purgatory is a "**gigantic fraud**" and a "**colossal racket**", because it deprives the **poor** of their last pennies and extorts large funds from the **rich** in exchange for NOTHING.

Question 2: Mr priest, how do you know when to stop saying masses, or if you've said too many?
How do you know when the person is out of purgatory?

Question 3: Mr priest and pope, when you die, do you know for sure if you'd go to heaven?

Answer: I don't know.

This message of purgatory offers NOTHING to a sad and perishing world.

Problem: The purgatory doctrine represents God as a respecter of persons. Because of money, a rich man can pay more for prayers and masses, than can a poor man. The rich man therefore passes more speedily through purgatory and into heaven than the poor man. The Bible teaches that entrance into heaven is not based on one's wealth, but on one's response to receiving Jesus Christ as Saviour alone. Compare death for a believing Protestant or Baptist which is the joy of promotion to heaven.

ERROR 16: PAPAL INFALLIBILITY (declared in 1870 AD).

Definition: When a pope is speaking in his official position on any issue of faith or morals, he is speaking infallibly, meaning without error.

Answer: The apostles never regarded any man to be infallible. Only the Word of God is regarded as without error.

If Peter was pope, which the Bible says he was not, then he made mistakes as in Galatians 2:11-14 when he was deceived by Judaizers. "But when Peter came to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be **blamed.**"

The following events from history show the error of papal infallibility.

1. Pope John XII, in the "Liber Pontificalis," the Catholic publication discussing the lives of the popes, states that "He spent his entire life in adultery."

2. Popes Innocent III, Gregory XI, Clement IV, Hadrian VI, and Paul IV all disagreed with papal infallibility.
3. Pope Stephen VI (896) had the dead pope Formosus (891-6) tried, questioned, fingers hacked off, dragged through Rome and thrown into the Tiber river.
4. Pope Hadrian II (867) declared civil marriage to be valid, but Pope Pius VII (1800-23) declared it to be invalid.
5. Pope Eugene IV (1431) had Joan of Arc burned alive as a witch, but later Pope Benedict IV in 1919 declared her to be a saint.
6. Pope Pius XI in 1929 endorsed Fascism and called Mussolini "a man sent by God." However, before World War II, he warned people against Mussolini.
7. The Vatican advised the German Catholic Party to vote for Nazi candidates. In 1933, the Vatican and Hitler signed a concordat, where the Catholic church swore allegiance to the Nazi government. Later on Pope Pius XI condemned Hitler.

How can a supposedly infallible man make so many errors of judgment, and even contradict other so-called infallible popes? Surely this disproves papal infallibility to any honest, open-minded person.

ERROR 17: INDULGENCES.

Definition: A person after confessing his sins to a priest, in order to be free from the punishment still due for his sins, requires the church to pray for his rehabilitation. The person must do penance works such as fasting, making pilgrimages, giving money, making prayers or inflicting pain on oneself, as a penalty for sins committed.

Historically, people found it easier to pay money to the Roman Catholic church than to pray for long hours. The Roman Catholic church preferred money because the Pope ran out of cash in building St Peter's Basilica in Rome. So the Roman Catholic church issued the person with an official statement that he had received release from the penalties through the payment of money. This document was called an **indulgence**. They could be bought for friends and relatives who had died and passed into purgatory, thus shortening the time that they would have to spend there.

Martin Luther objected to Tetzl, a Catholic indulgence seller, who publicly announced to people that if they put a coin in a box, a dead relative's soul would immediately pop out of purgatory. His advertising slogan was: "As the coin in you pop, a soul from purgatory doth hop."

Answer: Obviously, this teaching cannot be found in the Bible. After World War II, the Archbishop of Winnipeg asked mothers who had sons killed in the war, to pay \$40 to have masses said on behalf of their sons to guarantee their salvation and entrance to heaven. This practice continues in many parts of the world, and accounts for the great wealth of the Catholic church as seen in the big cathedrals it builds.

Which Bible verses forbid indulgence selling?

1. Jesus warns against this practice in Matthew 23:14, a verse that Catholics have cut out of modern Bible versions. "Woe unto you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For ye devour widows houses, and for a pretense make long prayer: therefore ye shall receive the greater damnation." The Pharisees of Jesus' day, as well as Catholic priests of today, tell widows that their dead husband has gone to purgatory. They ask her if she wants him to go to heaven. If yes, she will have to pay the priest to say a mass to pray for his soul to leave purgatory. Widows don't usually have much money, so he tells her to sell her house to pay for it. This is how widows houses are devoured by priests who for a pretense make long prayers.
2. The Israelites were forbidden to give money for the dead. "None of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him." Psalms 49:7. No gift of money can save another person. Only the blood of Christ can.
3. Peter says: "Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as **silver** and **gold** ... but with the precious **blood** of **Christ**." 1 Peter 1:18,19. Nobody is redeemed with indulgence money.
4. Simon the sorcerer offered the apostles money so that anyone that he laid hands on would receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. Peter rebuked him strongly in Acts 8:20-23 saying: "Thy money

perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the **GIFT OF GOD** may be purchased with money. Thou hast neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of God. Repent therefore of this thy wickedness." Salvation is the gift of God that each of us must claim freely for ourselves when we call on Christ to be our Saviour. No baptism, eucharist, confessional to a priest, penance, extreme unction, or paying money can save us, only faith in Christ's precious saving blood to pay for our sins.

ERROR 18: IDOLATRY. This is **MAKING IMAGES.**

The Catholic Council of Trent declares that: "It is lawful to have images in the church and to give honour and **worship** to them. ... Images are put in churches that they may be **worshipped**." The Oxford dictionary defines an **idol** as: "An image used as an object of worship. A person or thing that is the object of excessive devotion." An **Idolater** is a devoted admirer of idols.

Answer: What does the Bible say about images and idols?

1. **Exodus 20:4, 5**.

- a) Thou shalt not **MAKE** unto thee **ANY** graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the **earth** beneath, or that is in the **water** under the earth.
- b) Thou shalt not **BOW DOWN** thyself to them.
- c) Nor **SERVE** them.

If you **make** any graven image you've broken this commandment, whether you worship it or not.

Question 1: Do Catholics **MAKE** graven images? **Yes**.

Question 2: Do Catholics **KNEEL** down to statues of Mary or Jesus? **Yes**.

Question 3: Do Catholics **SERVE** Mary? **Yes**, as in "Legion of Mary."

2. **Leviticus 26:1**.

- a) "You shall **make** you **NO IDOLS** nor **GRAVEN IMAGE**.
- b) Neither rear you up a **STANDING IMAGE**.
- c) Neither shall ye set up any **IMAGE OF STONE** in your land to bow down unto it."

Question 4: Do Catholics rear up **STANDING IMAGES**? **Yes**.

Question 5: Do Catholics set up any **IMAGE OF STONE**? **Yes**.

3. **Deuteronomy 4:16**.

"Lest ye corrupt yourselves, and **MAKE** you a **GRAVEN IMAGE**, the similitude of **ANY FIGURE**, the likeness of **MALE** or **FEMALE**."

Question 6: Do Catholics make graven images of **MALE** or **FEMALE**? **Yes**.
Mary is a female. Jesus and the apostles are males.

4. **Deuteronomy 16:22**.

"Neither shalt thou **SET** thee **UP ANY IMAGE**: which the Lord thy God **HATES**."

Question 7: Do Catholics **SET UP ANY IMAGES**? **Yes**.

Question 8: Does God **HATE IMAGES**? **Yes**.

5. **1 Thessalonians 1:9**.

"How ye turned to God **FROM IDOLS** to serve the living and true God."

Question 9: Did the early Christians turn **FROM IDOLS**? **Yes**.

6. **Deuteronomy 27:15**.

"**CURSED** be the **man** that **MAKES ANY GRAVEN** or **MOLTEN IMAGE**, an **abomination** unto the Lord, the work of the hands of the craftsman, and putteth it in a secret place."

Question 10: Does God put a **curse** on any person that makes **any image**? **Yes**.

Question 11: Why does God call an image an **ABOMINATION**? Because He hates it.

7. **Isaiah 40:18,19**.

"To whom then will ye liken God? or what **LIKENESS** will ye **compare** unto him? The workman melteth a graven image"

Note: God has no visible form and we cannot liken him to any material object.

The **Catholic answer** is that they say that they do not **worship** images.

God's reply is not to **MAKE IMAGES**.

8. **The early Christians had NO IMAGES.**

Early Christian writers such as Irenaeus, Clement, Cyprian, Athanasius and Jerome, wrote strongly **AGAINST** images, statues and any manner of prayer or veneration regarding them. The Council of Constantinople in 381 AD voted unanimously to remove all images from the churches.

9. **The Catholic church removes the second commandment** against **MAKING** graven images from the list of 10 Commandments in Exodus 20:1-17 in their Catechism. This presents them with the problem of **only having 9 commandments**. They resolve this problem by splitting commandment number 10 into 9 and 10 as follows:

9. You shall not covet your neighbour's **wife**.

10. You shall not covet your neighbour's **goods**.

This is seen in the book "A brief summary of the Ten Commandments" by the Daughters of St. Paul, p.12,13:

WHAT ARE THE COMMANDMENTS OF GOD?

The Catholic Catechism

The Commandments of God are these ten:

"I am the Lord your God:

1. You shall not have strange Gods before me.

[omitted]

2. You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.

3. Remember to keep holy the Lord's day.

4. Honor your father and your mother.

5. You shall not kill.

6. You shall not commit adultery.

7. You shall not steal.

8. You shall not bear false witness

*9. You shall **not covet** your neighbour's **wife**.*

*10. You shall **not covet** your neighbour's **goods**."*

The second Commandment should be "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image." Exodus 20:4.

Check your Catechism to see if they have left it out.

Question: Why do you think they left it out?

10. Every Catholic institution has images of Mary, Jesus, male and female figures. An example of this are two statues at the French Papal Palace of Avignon, one of Jesus about 10 metres above ground level, and the other is an enormous statue of Mary, much larger, grander and higher up than that of Jesus. This gives greater honour to Mary than to Jesus. It also clearly breaks the second commandment forbidding making images of things in heaven.

Question: Who do we believe, the Word of God or the Catholic Church?

"We ought to obey God, rather than men." Acts 5:29.

ERROR 19: MARY VENERATION.

Here are some of the many errors associated with Mary veneration:

1. Historical connection with Pagan mother and child worship.

Mother and child worship started at the Tower of Babel. Nimrod, King of Babel was killed for his great evil. His wife Semiramis, fearing that she would lose control, devised a plan to maintain the people's loyalty. She and everybody knew about the future birth of a virgin born Messiah/Saviour promised in Genesis 3:15 as the "seed of the woman" who would bruise satan's head. So Semiramis had an illegitimate son, whom she named "Tammuz." She commanded that everyone

worship herself and Tammuz as the fulfilment of Genesis 3:15, claiming that her son was supernaturally conceived and was the promised saviour.

When the people at Babel were scattered, they carried this mother and child worship with them wherever they went. This is why we see so much mother and child worship in so many ancient societies.

“They forsook the Lord, and served Baal and Ashtaroth.” Judges 2:13.

When the early Christian church grew through the preaching of Paul and others, no compromise was made with pagan mother and child worship. When the Ephesians were truly converted, they destroyed their idols of the goddess Diana, so that the silversmith craftsmen were going out of business. (Acts 19:24-27). When the Roman Emperor Constantine professed conversion in 320 AD, he commanded that everyone in the Roman Empire become “Christian”. At this time, half the empire were pagan worshippers of mother and child, and the other half professed to be Christian. It is obvious that you cannot pass a law to compel everyone to follow a certain religion, as people have their own free will. A compromise was reached which allowed the pagans to continue their mother and child worship, yet still give the appearance of being Christian. They simply changed their pagan mother and child worship to worship Mary and Jesus. For example, in the following ancient cultures, the mother and child were represented as follows:

	Mother	Son
Babylon	Semiramis	Tammuz
China	Shingmoo	
Germany	Hertha	Child
Scandinavia	Disa	
Etruscans	Nutria	
Greece	Aphrodite or Ceres	Bacchus
Rome	Venus	Jupiter
India	Devaki	Krishna
Asia	Cybele	Deoius
Canaan	Ashtaroth	Baal
Ephesus	Diana	
Egypt	Isis	Horus
Phonicians	Lady of the Sea, Astarte	

- This resulted in Mary worship becoming an official doctrine of the Roman Church in 431 AD at the Council of Ephesus. Since then, Mary worship has grown, so that Mary is now called the "Mother of God", the "Queen of Heaven", "Madonna", etc.
- Note also that Mary never claimed to be the "**Queen of Heaven**" as this was a pagan goddess that apostate Israelites made cakes to, thus provoking God to anger. "the women knead their dough, to make cakes to the Queen of Heaven,... that they may provoke me to **anger**." Jeremiah 7:18 and 44:17,18,19,25.
- In pagan religions, the mother was worshipped as much or more than her son, yet the Bible clearly shows that Christ is to be worshipped and NEVER Mary.

2. The Bible never mentions Mary interceding for us.

Who did the thief on the cross appeal to for salvation? Was it Christ or Mary? Jesus said:

"**Come unto ME**, all ye that labour and are heavy laden and I will give you rest." Matthew 11:28.

"Him that **cometh to me**, I will in **no wise cast out**." John 6:37.

"No man cometh unto the Father, but by **ME**." John 14:6.

Praying to Mary is a device to turn people away from praying to Christ. Acts 4:12 states that there is no salvation in anyone but Christ. Luke records a woman saying to Jesus about Mary in Luke 11:27,28, "Blessed is the womb that bare thee, and the paps which thou hast sucked (Mary). But he said, Yea rather, **blessed** are they that **hear the Word of God, and keep it.**"

As a man, Jesus always said "No!" to Mary's requests. For example, in John 2:3,4,5 Jesus rejected Mary's request for more wine by saying: "Woman, what have I to do with thee?"

Mary then told the servants, "Whatsoever he saith unto you, DO IT."

Jesus did not say "Yes mother, I will do anything you ask."

3. The Immaculate Conception.

Definition: "Mary was born sinless and led a sinless life." She was declared to be "infallible" and this was made official by Pope Pius IX in 1854. He said, "There is no salvation to those who do not believe this dogma."

Answer: Even St Augustine wrote that Mary's flesh was "flesh of sin" and that "Mary springing from Adam, died because of sin." Mary acknowledges that she is a sinner by calling God her Saviour. **Only a sinner needs a Saviour.**

"My spirit hath rejoiced in God my Saviour." Luke 1:47.

"For **ALL HAVE SINNED** and come short of the glory of God." Romans 3:23.

"There is none righteous, **no not one.**" Romans 3:10.

4. Perpetual Virginity.

Definition: "Mary remained a virgin all her life, never having sex with her husband Joseph and therefore having no other children."

Answer: This idea is found NOWHERE in the Bible. This idea was official dogma in 451 AD. Note these Bible verses disproving this false doctrine:

a) "Joseph took unto him his wife: and knew her not TILL she had brought forth her firstborn son..." (Matthew 1:25). This means that Joseph knew Mary sexually in normal marriage relations after Jesus was born.

b) Jesus' fellow Nazareth townfolk who grew up with him asked: "Is not this the carpenter's son? Is not his **mother** called **Mary**? and his **brothers**, James, Joses, Simon and Judas? And his **sisters**, are they not all with us?" (Matthew 13:55,56). Jesus here has brothers (adelphos) and sisters (adelphai). Catholicism attempts to explain these away as cousins. This cannot be valid because the Greek word for cousin is "anephios." Mark 6:3 also translates these as "brothers" and "sisters".

c) Jesus had brothers: "Neither did **his brethren** believe in him." John 7:5.

"These all continued ... with **his brethren.**" Acts 1:14.

Nine times the Bible says that Mary was not a perpetual virgin.

5. The Assumption of Mary.

Definition: "Mary ascended into heaven in a bodily form."

This was made official and "infallible" by Pope Pius XII in 1951.

Answer: This is **NOWHERE** mentioned in the Bible.

"No man has ascended up to heaven, but ... the Son of man ..." John 3:13.

"Ascended" in the Greek means "go up of one's own power" not taken up as was Elijah & Enoch.

Objection: Doesn't Revelation 12:1-7 describe a woman in heaven clothed with the sun, having the moon under her feet and a crown of 12 stars on her head, giving birth to a man child (Christ), refer to Mary?

Answer: No. Because:

a) Genesis 37:9,10 shows this woman to be the Israelite nation, with the sun representing Jacob, the moon representing his wife Rachel, and the 12 stars representing the 12 tribes of Israel. Christ was born of Israel. The Israelite nation is often referred to as a woman in Isaiah 54:5, "thy Maker is thine husband," and Jeremiah 31:32, "although I was a husband unto them."

b) This woman cannot be Mary, because this woman is on earth during the Tribulation, whereas Mary's spirit is in heaven at that time.

c) This woman is persecuted on earth during this time, yet Mary in heaven cannot be persecuted on earth.

6. False Prophecies and Miracles attributed to Mary.

Many "visions", "miracles" and "prophecies" have been attributed to Mary. For example, the vision attributed to Mary at **Fatima** in 1917 told three shepherd children to repeat the rosary daily. It called for people to reform their lives and to build a chapel in her honour.

Also, the message at **Medjugorje**, Yugoslavia, attributed to Mary said that: "God is not looking for great believers, but simply for those who respect their faith and live peacefully. Peace is more important than conversion, fasting, penance or prayer."

Question: Do you believe that every vision a person claims to have is true and from God?

Answer: Satan can give false visions, miracles and prophecies to deceive people away from the gospel of salvation by faith in Christ. "Though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel, let him be accursed." Galatians 1:8.

Notice how these visions turn people's attention **AWAY FROM CHRIST** to **something else**, such as, saying the rosary or peace. These visions have three errors in common:

- a) They usually point people to peace and the Catholic church.
- b) They glorify Mary, instead of Jesus.
- c) They contradict and ignore the Bible.

Beware of Satan transforming himself into an angel of light. To avoid being deceived, we must test everything by the Word of God.

Charles Chiniquy, a former priest from Montreal, Canada, who became a Presbyterian minister, tells of the following conversation between himself and his bishop when doubts began to assail him regarding the place given to Mary:

CC: "My lord, who has saved you and me upon the cross?"

He answered, "Jesus Christ."

CC: "And who paid your debt and mine by shedding His blood; was it Mary or Jesus?"

He said: "Jesus Christ."

CC: "Now, my lord, when Jesus and Mary were on earth, who loved the sinner more; was it Mary or Jesus?"

Again he answered that it was Jesus.

CC: "Did any sinner come to Mary on earth to be saved?"

"No."

CC: "Do you remember that any sinner has gone to Jesus to be saved?"

"Yes, many."

CC: "Have they been rebuked?"

"Never."

CC: Do you remember that Jesus ever said to sinners, 'Come to Mary and she will save you?'

"No", he said.

CC: "Do you remember that Jesus has said to poor sinners, 'Come to me?'"

"Yes, He has said it."

CC: "Has He ever retracted those words?"

"No".

CC: "And who was, then, the more powerful to save sinners?"

"Oh, it was Jesus!"

CC: "Now my lord, since Jesus and Mary are in heaven, can you show me in the Scriptures that Jesus has lost anything of his desire and power to save sinners, or that He has delegated His power to Mary?"

And the bishop answered "No."

CC: "Then, my lord, why do we not go to Him, and to Him alone? Why do we invite poor sinners to come to Mary, when, by your own confession she is nothing compared with Jesus, in power, in mercy, in love, and in compassion for the sinner?"

To that the Bishop could give no answer. (*Fifty Years in the Church of Rome*, p. 262).

ERROR 20: CATHOLIC ATTITUDES TO THE BIBLE.

1. The Roman Catholic church has a history of **burning Bibles**.
2. When it could not stop Bibles being printed, it denied anti-catholic scriptures by saying "**that's your interpretation**", meaning that the Bible has no authority if anyone can interpret it in any manner.
3. They allow Catholics to read the Bible, but teach that it is wrong and sinful to put any interpretation on scriptures that is contrary to Roman Catholic doctrine. In other words, **don't think for yourself**, you may discover that Catholic doctrine is full of error and contradictions. Just **blindly accept everything Rome tells you**. Trust Rome.

ERROR 21: PETER AS THE ROCK (Matthew 16:18,19).

The whole structure of the Roman Catholic church is built on the assumption that in Matthew 16:13-19, Christ appointed Peter to be the first pope and so established the papacy. If we destroy the papacy of Peter, the foundation of the papacy is destroyed along with the whole Roman Catholic hierarchy.

"And I say also unto thee, that thou art **Peter** (Greek: ¹ **Petros**, ² masculine, ³ a person, ⁴ a large stone, ⁵ a piece or fragment of rock such as a man might throw); and upon this **rock**

(Greek: ¹ **Petra**, ² feminine, ³ not a person, but a ⁴ cliff, a mass of projecting immovable rock.)

I will build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and **WHATSOEVER** thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and **WHATSOEVER** thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

Catholicism claims several false doctrines from this passage:

- a) Peter is the rock.
- b) Peter is the first pope, with special spiritual supremacy over the church.
- c) This same spiritual authority has always resided in the **popes of Rome**, as being Peter's successors. (This idea is nowhere mentioned in Scripture).
- d) Christ built his church on Peter. This is contrary to God's Word which says:
"For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ." I Corinthians 3:11.
- e) Christ gave Peter keys to admit into heaven only those who came via the Roman Catholic church.
- f) Those not coming through the Roman church would be bound in sin and unable to enter heaven.

Each of these six claims can be shown to be false as follows:

1. **Peter is not the rock**, because the 12 disciples, knowing well the Old Testament, recognised the Rock as a description or name for God.

"He is the Rock, His word is perfect."

Deuteronomy 32:4.

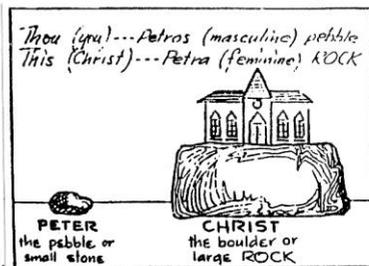
"The Lord is my Rock, and my fortress." Psalms 18:2.

"For who is a God save the Lord? Or who is a Rock save our God." Psalm 18:31.

We see here that there is **NO OTHER ROCK** than God, not even Peter.

Jesus Christ is the foundation rock on which the church is built.

- a) **The Old Testament prophets** said so. (Isaiah 28:16; Psalm 118:22).
- b) **Jesus** said so referring to Himself as "the stone which the builders rejected is become the head of the corner." Matthew 21:42.
- c) **Peter** said so, stating that Christ is "the **stone** ... which is become the head of the corner. Neither is there salvation in **any other** ..." Acts 4:11,12.
- d) **Paul** said so, stating that "the **rock** that followed them was Christ." I Corinthians 10:4 and "other **foundation** can no man lay then that is laid which is Jesus Christ." I Corinthians 3:11.



Catholicism is saying that salvation is not in Christ, but in **Peter** as the first of a succession of popes. Peter, however, contradicts this wrong idea by saying that, "Christ is the **chief corner stone**" in 1 Peter 2:4-8.

"To whom coming, as unto a **living** stone. (v.4).

Behold I lay in Zion a **Chief corner stone**.he that believeth on him shall not be confounded. v.6. The stone which the builders disallowed is become the head of the corner. (v.7). And a **stone of stumbling**, & a **rock of offence**, even to them which stumble at the **word**, being disobedient."v.8 Even if we allow Catholicism to believe that Peter is a foundation stone upon which Christ built His church, Catholicism has to admit that **other New Testament apostles** and Old Testament prophets make up the foundation **equally** as much as Peter does, because:

- "And are built upon the foundation of **the apostles** and prophets, **Jesus Christ himself being the chief cornerstone**." Ephesians 2:20.
- "And the wall of the city had **12 foundations**, and in them the names of the **12 apostles** of the lamb." Revelation 21:14.

Peter is given no greater importance than any of the other apostles.

"Thou art Peter (Petros), and upon this rock (Petra) I will build my church." Matthew 16:18.

Answer: In the Greek, the word "**Peter**" is **Petros**, a person, masculine, a rock or stone that a man might throw.

In the Greek, the word "**Rock**" is "**Petra**", not a person, but a cliff, a mass of projecting, immovable rock. It refers **not to Peter**, but to Peter's declaration of Christ's deity, "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God." Matthew 16:16.

"**PETROS**" means a small, **moveable stone**, but "**PETRA**" means an **immovable foundation**, in this case, Peter's statement on Christ's deity, upon which Christ would build His church.

- Christ made two complete, distinct statements:

He said: 1. Thou art Peter, and

2. Upon this rock (change of gender, showing change of subject), I will build my church.

Peter was **not characterised by a "PETRA" immovable foundation**, as seen in these incidents:

- a) Peter soon tried to stop Jesus going to the cross, so Jesus gave him a stinging rebuke: "Get thee behind me, Satan." (v.23). These are strong words to use against someone who has just been appointed pope.
- b) Peter slept in Gethsemene during Christ's agony.
- c) Christ rebuked Peter for rashly cutting off Malchus' ear.
- d) Peter boasted that he was ready to die for Christ.
- e) Peter then shamefully denied with curses that he knew Christ.
- f) Paul rebuked Peter for error and hypocrisy at Antioch in Galatians 2:11, "But when Peter was come to Antioch, I withstood him to the face, because he was to be **blamed**."
- g) In Mark 9:33-35, the disciples argued as to who was the greatest among them. Had Jesus already given Peter the chief rank of pope, then Christ would have simply referred to His previous granting of power to Peter. Yet Jesus just said that the greatest shall be last and servant of all.
- h) Augustine and Jerome state that the Rock is Christ, not Peter. Mark's gospel was written by Mark, assisted by Peter, yet neither Mark's gospel or Peter's letters mention this incident. They would surely mention it if we needed to know it.

God is called the "Rock" 34 times in the Old Testament. It was clearly a title of God. Every Jew would be shocked to call a man the "Rock". Therefore "Peter" and "Rock" are translated as **two different words**, with **two different meanings**.

Note: In John 1:42, Jesus said, "Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called **CEPHAS**, which is by interpretation, a **STONE**." Cephas (2786) is a Syriac surname given to Simon, which is "Petros" in Greek, not "Petra". Peter did not call himself by his Syriac name (Cephas), but by his Greek name (1 Peter 1:1; 2 Peter 1:1). The word for rock (Petra) in Matthew 16:18 is the same word used for the rock fortress at Edom, known as "PETRA." It is 1.4 kilometres long,

226 metres high, 457 metres wide. Jesus did not say that Peter was the PETRA rock fortress, but that Simon was Petros, a piece of rock. Only God is called "a ROCK." Jesus is just saying to Simon, "I will make you a firm and distinguished preacher in building my church."

2. **Peter is NOT the first pope, with supremacy over the Church** because of these reasons:
 - a) At the Jerusalem council in Acts 15:13-19, the advice of **James** not Peter was sought and followed. James, not Peter was the spokesman who handed down the decision.
 - b) If Peter was the first pope, he would have had a greater position than the other disciples. When the disciples discussed which of them was the greatest in Mark 9:33-35, Jesus had a great chance to affirm Peter's headship as the first pope, but Jesus simply said that the greatest shall be a servant of all. Thus Jesus showed **no special** papal leadership to Peter. Nor should we.
3. **Peter was given the keys of the kingdom of heaven** (Christian profession in the Church Age), only in the sense that it was Peter who opened the door of Gospel preaching opportunity to Israel on the day of Pentecost (Acts 2:38-42), and to the Gentiles in the house of Cornelius (Acts 10:34-46). Peter opened the door, and everybody who received Christ as Saviour went into the Kingdom of God through Christ.

ERROR 22: FIFTEEN APOCRYPHA BOOKS added to the Old Testament Bible in 1546 AD.

Roman Catholicism added these books in order to undermine Protestant belief in the Bible as sole authority. Some apocryphal books seemed to support Catholic dogma. We reject the Apocrypha for these reasons:

Reason 1: The Jews never received these books. They were rejected by both Jews and all Christians up till 400 AD. Jesus never quoted from the Apocrypha.

Reason 2: They have many errors of time, history, geography, as well as contradictions to the Bible. Examples of errors are:

1. Judith falsely states that Nebuchadnezzar reigns over the Assyrians, but he ruled Babylon instead.
2. Judith has Holofernes moving an immense army 300 miles in 3 days (2:21).
3. Tobit could not have witnessed the division of Israel into the Northern and Southern kingdoms in 931 BC (Tobit 1:4), and have been deported 200 years later in 734 BC (Tobit 1:10).
4. Ecclesiasticus 3:3 states that giving money forgives sins, which contradicts the work of Christ on the cross.

Reason 3: Christ and the Apostles in the New Testament quote 260 times from 35 out of 39 Old Testament books, yet they never quote from the Apocrypha.

Reason 4: Josephus in 90 AD listed all the 39 Old Testament books, yet he did not include the Apocrypha. The Catholic church only added them at the Council of Trent to defend the Protestants attack on purgatory, where 2 Maccabees 12:40-45 tells of Judas Maccabeus offering a sacrifice for soldiers who died while guilty of the mortal sin of idolatry.

ERROR 23: NAMES OF BLASPHEMY.

Officials of the Roman Catholic church take names for themselves that are reserved to God, the Lord Jesus Christ such as:

1. **Pontifex Maximus** is a papal title meaning in Latin, "chief bridge maker" between earth and heaven. However, Jesus Christ is the only One who can claim this title because "no man cometh unto the Father, but by me." (John 14:6). This was a title of Julius Caesar and of the Roman Emperors of paganism, thus showing how modern Roman Catholicism is of pagan origin. Constantine, a politician, in 320 AD, hijacked the church of Rome, taking control of it for himself. Hence, all popes accept the title "Pontifex Maximus" which title belonged to the Roman Emperors from Julius Caesar onwards.
2. **Holy Father** is a title the pope claims for himself. However, this title occurs only once in the Bible, and used when Jesus addresses His Heavenly Father in John 17:11 in His great prayer before His betrayal, arrest and crucifixion. It is blasphemy for any man to claim this title for himself. It belongs only to God the Father.

3. **Father** is a title that every Roman Catholic priest claims for himself and expects to be called. Jesus warns in Matthew 23:9, "Call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your father which is in heaven."
Objection: But isn't it wrong to call your earthly parent "father"?
Answer: No, because in Romans 4:1, "**Abraham** our **father**, as **pertaining to the flesh**, hath found?" God refers to Abraham as "our father pertaining to the flesh" which is an acceptable usage. Obviously the Roman Catholic priest is not your physical father, but claims to be a spiritual father, which is what God forbids. We ought not to call a priest "father", unless he is your physical parent.
4. **Monsignor** means "my Lord", and this clearly is a title belonging only to God, the Lord Jesus Christ. This is a name of blasphemy that Romanism takes from God.
5. **Reverend** is a title of many Roman Catholic priests and Protestant ministers. This is also a title for God in Psalms 111:9, "Holy and **Reverend** is his name." It is always blasphemy for any man to take to himself a title of God. No preacher in the early church claimed "Reverend" as his title, nor can we today.
 In Revelation 17:3, John saw a whore riding a beast described as "full of names of blasphemy." These five names of blasphemy of the Roman Catholic church **link it** with the whore called "Mystery Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots, and abominations of the earth." Rev. 17:5.
6. "**God himself on earth**" is a papal title in the New York Catechism.
7. **Other Blasphemous titles given to Mary** are Queen of Heaven, the Gate of Heaven, our life, Mother of Grace, Mother of Mercy, etc. Heaven has no Queen, only the King. Christ is the Door, the Life etc. For Mary to hear all Catholic prayers she would need to have the omniscient powers of God. This is Blasphemy!

ERROR 24: ROSARY PRAYER BEADS.

Saying the rosary is often assigned to a person after he has been to confession as a penance or as a means of storing up merit in heaven. The rosary may be defined as:

1. A series of prayers, in its long form consisting of:
 - 15 "Our Fathers" (the Lord's prayer, addressed to God the Father).
 - 15 "Glory be's", and
 - 150 "Hail Mary's" addressed to Mary as follows: "Hail Mary, full of grace ...pray for us sinners."
2. A chain of beads for counting the prayers. Note that the rosary has **TEN TIMES** as many prayers addressed to Mary (150), as are addressed to God the Father (15), with **none addressed to Christ**. It thus exalts Mary **10 TIMES** more than **GOD**.

Jesus forbids the rosary prayer in Matthew 6:7,8 "But when ye pray, **use not vain repetitions**, as the **heathen** do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. **Be not ye therefore like unto them.**"

The Bible teaches that the true believer should pray to God from the heart reverently, thankfully, humbly, thinking of what he is doing, and of God to whom he is speaking. Buddhists and Moslems use a prayer device similar to rosary beads. Reject the rosary.

ERROR 25: LOW MORAL STANDARDS.

The Protestant moral code comes directly from the Bible. Example, "Don't steal" means "Don't steal." The Roman Catholic moral code is mainly based on Catholic Canon law, and only secondarily on the Bible. For example, "Don't steal" means "stealing is alright provided that the value of the thing stolen is not excessive." (Liguori)

The authority of the church as interpreted by the priest is what matters. The Catholic standard of morality is not to stir the conscience to decide right and wrong for itself, but to let the papal church decide what is right and wrong. Drinking liquor and gambling considered as vices by Protestants, are not counted as evil by Romanist's except when indulged to excess.

Loyola, the founder of the Jesuits states that "if anything shall appear white to our eyes which the church has defined as black, we likewise must declare it to be black." This means "DON'T THINK, just accept whatever Rome tells you."

Consider these moral sins perpetrated by Roman Catholicism:

1. **Alcoholic Liquor.**

"**LOOK NOT** upon the wine when it is red ... it bites like a serpent." Proverbs 23:31,32.

"Wine is a mocker, strong drink is raging: whosoever is deceived thereby is not wise." Prov. 20:1.

"Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink...and makest him drunken..." Habakkuk 2:15.

Roman Catholic theologian Liguori states that, "It is not a mortal sin to get drunk, unless one loses completely the use of his mental facilities for over **one hour**." The Protestant cannot force his will and conscience to approve, believe and do what his mind knows to be wrong.

Jack Kennedy is considered a good Catholic, even though he made his millions illegally selling liquor in the prohibition days. This liquor ruined millions of people's lives through domestic violence, road deaths, deformed children of alcoholic parents, etc.

2. **Gambling.**

Roman Catholicism favours games of chance, especially as they play bingo in church halls. Gambling is an attempt to **get something for nothing** through the throw of dice, turn of a wheel etc. It is an attempt to live off the greed of others, not by honest toil. Gamblers often end up broke. Bingo familiarizes young people with other forms of gambling, and gives gambling the church stamp of approval. Organised gambling flourishes where the muscleman is boss and where business is done by threats, coercion and corruption, which are common methods used to extract gambling debts. Gambling is addictive to many people. This enslaves whole families into lives of poverty and fear. "Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself." Matthew 19:19.

Gambling wants to take as much as possible from one's neighbour, not love him as ourself.

3. **Sexual abuse by priests of children.**

The Roman Catholic church has spent hundreds of millions of dollars in compensating the victims of priest's sexual abuse of children. In many cases, these priests have simply been moved to another parish when their crime came to light. If the Roman Catholic church is the mother of holiness, how can this be?

ERROR 26: DEVOTION TO THE SACRED HEART OF JESUS AND MARY.

This is simply false, having no foundation in the Bible, yet why do Catholics accept this so blindly?

ERROR 27: CROSSING ONESELF.

This is a practice that is not found in the Bible either. Jesus never crossed himself, nor did the apostles, nor should we.

ERROR 28: WAS PETER THE FIRST POPE?

No, because:

1. Peter was **married**. Popes cannot marry. Jesus healed Peter's mother in law. "When Jesus was come into Peter's house, he saw his **WIFE'S MOTHER** laid, and sick of a fever." Matt 8:14,15
"Have we not power to lead about a sister, a **WIFE**, as well as Cephas (Peter)?" 1 Corinthians 9:5
2. Peter would not allow men to **bow down** to him, as he forbid Cornelius in Acts 10:25,26. "Cornelius met him, fell down at this feet, and worshipped him. Peter ... said stand up; **I myself am a man.**" The pope likes men to bow down to him.
3. Peter rejected the "**tradition** from your fathers," (1 Peter 1:18), yet the Catholic church and popes base their teachings on man's traditions.
4. Peter wore **no crown** as the pope does.
5. Peter had **no wealth** as the pope has: "Peter said, silver and gold have I none." Acts 3:6. Peter never **ACTED** like a pope, never **DRESSED** like a pope, never **SPOKE** like a pope, and people never **APPROACHED** him as a pope.
6. Peter never took to himself the title "**PONTIFIX MAXIMUS**" as all the popes willingly accept, as seen by the initials P.M. after their names in the Vatican. This was a title of the pagan Roman Emperors from Julius Caesar's time on. It means "Chief Bridge Maker between earth and heaven." This is a name of blasphemy for a man to take, and Peter never saw himself as such. Jesus Christ is the only Bridge Maker between earth and heaven. John 1:51.

ERROR 29: ROMAN CATHOLIC LIES, IMMORALITY and CORRUPTION.

More than 50 popes show themselves to be atheists or unbelievers. The history of the popes records homosexuality, rape, murder, adultery, drunkenness, selling religious offices, etc. This behaviour is hardly fitting a "Holy Father" or "The Vicar of Christ".

Examples include the following:

1. Pope Sergius III (904 - 911) obtained his office by murder. He fathered several illegitimate children by Marozia, who assassinated Pope Leo VI (928 - 929) and put her own teenage son (John XI) as Pope.
2. Pope John XII (955 - 964) is described in the Catholic Encyclopedia as a coarse, immoral man. The Catholic collection of the lives of the Popes, the "Liber Pontificalis" said: "He spent his entire life in adultery." Catholic bishop Luitprand states that "he had no respect for single girls, married woman or widows - they were sure to be defiled by him."
3. Pope Boniface VII (984 - 985), John XII and Leo VIII were described by the Bishop of Orleans as "monsters of guilt, reeking in blood and filth."
4. Pope John XV (985 - 996) split the churches finances among his relatives and was described as "covetous of filthy lucre and corrupt in all his acts."
5. Pope Benedict IX (1033 - 1045) committed murders and adulteries in broad daylight, robbed pilgrims, and was regarded as a hideous criminal. The people drove him out of Rome: The Catholic Encyclopedia says, "He was a disgrace to the chair of Peter."
6. Pope Innocent III (1198 - 1216) promoted the Inquisition, surpassing all his predecessors in killing over one million people.
7. Pope Boniface VIII (1294 - 1303). The Catholic Encyclopedia states "Scarcely any possible crime was omitted - heresy, gross and unnatural immorality, idolatry, magic, simony ... his whole pontificate was one record of evil." Dante visited Rome and described the Vatican as a "sewer of corruption" and assigned Boniface VII, Nicholas III and Clement V to the "lowest parts of hell." He proclaimed to be an atheist and in 1302 issued the "Unum Sanctum" officially declaring the Roman Catholic church as the only true church, outside of which no one can be saved.
8. Pope John XXIII (1410-1415) was accused by 37 clergy witnesses of fornication, adultery, incest, sodomy, simony, theft and murder. It was proved by a legion of witnesses that he had seduced and violated 300 nuns. He kept a harem at Boulogne of 200 girls. He was publicly called the devil incarnate. He has been called the most depraved criminal who ever sat on the papal throne.
9. Pope Pius II (1458 - 1464) fathered many illegitimate children and taught others to do likewise.
10. Pope Paul II (1464 - 1471) maintained a house full of concubines.
11. Pope Sixtus IV (1471 - 1484) financed his wars by selling church offices to the highest bidders.
12. Pope Innocent VII (1484 - 1492) fathered 16 illegitimate children by various women.
13. Pope Alexander VI (1492 - 1503) committed incest with his two sisters and daughter. On 31 October 1501, he conducted the worst ever Vatican sex orgy.
14. Pope Paul III (1534-1549) as a cardinal fathered 3 sons and a daughter. He consulted astrologers.
15. Pope Leo X (1513 - 1521) "was possessed by an insatiable love of pleasure, revelry and carousing." (Catholic Encyclopedia). Luther visited Rome and said: "No one can imagine what sins and infamous actions are committed in Rome." A saying was: "If there is a hell, Rome is built over it."
16. Pope Joan was a female pope whose name was changed to Pope Zacharias. Luther, on visiting Rome reported her statue in a back street. John Huss referred to her in his defence at the Council of Constance and this went unchallenged. She died in childbirth while in a public procession.
17. Pope Eugene IV (1431 - 1447) condemned Joan of Arc to be burned alive as a witch, but Pope Benedict IV (1919) declared her a saint.
18. Pope Stephen VI (896 - 897) brought the dead body of former Pope Formosus (891 - 897) to trial, hacked off his decaying finger and had him dragged through the streets of Rome and thrown into the Tiber river.

19. The "great schism" of 1378 lasted 50 years, where Italian and French popes cursed each other. Is this the same morally pure church that Christ left to preach the gospel? When confronted with such evil papal history, the Catholic church, which claims "infallibility", teaches that "A sinful pope ... remains a member of the church, and ... from whom we may not withdraw obedience." Catholic Encyclopedia Volume 4, page 435.
 Jesus said in Matthew 7:18,20, "A good tree **cannot** bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit ... **by their fruits** ye shall **know** them."
20. Pope Alexander III decreed in 1170 that wills had to be made in front of a priest, or excommunication (cutting off from church and sentence to hell) would result.
 The Catholic church has much to be embarrassed about in it's history, as seen from these 20 popes.

ERROR 30: THE INQUISITION TORTURE, MASSACRES, MURDERS AND WARS.

So openly corrupt was the Catholic church, that many noble people left in protest, looking to Jesus Christ for salvation and to the Bible for truth, while rejecting the false claims of the popes. These were called heretics and bitterly opposed and tortured by the Roman Catholic church.

Pope Innocent IV in 1252 approved torture and ordered civil authorities to burn "heretics" in the "Ad exstirpanda" Bull.

This torture was reinforced by Popes Alexander IV, Clement IV, Nicholas IV, Boniface VIII and others from 1254 - 1303.

Roman Catholic documents revealed that they murdered around **68 million** protesters from 1100 to 1800 AD when the Inquisition stopped.

The following torture devices were used against protesters:

1. The rack which stretched and dislocated joints.
2. Heavy pincers tore out fingernails.
3. Thumbscrews dislocated fingers.
4. "Spanish boots" crushed legs and feet.
5. The Iron virgin was a hollow metal case with knives inside, which pierced the victim placed in it.
6. Hanging.
7. Eyes gouged out.
8. Molten lead poured into ears and mouth.
9. Being forced to jump off cliffs onto sharp spikes below.
10. 100,000 Albigenses (Protestants) were massacred in one day in 1211, then burned in heaps.
11. Pope Pius IV sent the Italian army to massacre many women and children at Orange in 1562.
12. 10,000 Huguenots (French Protestants) were killed in Paris on St Bartholomews Day and 75,000 the week after. The Huguenot wars killed 200,000 Protestants.
13. The "30 Years War" in Germany saw the population drop from 15 million to 5 million due to Catholic armies invading and killing 900,000 Protestants.
14. The Spanish Armada was sent to conquer Protestant England by Catholic King Philip of Spain. "Bad weather" destroyed this fleet off the coast of England. The inquisition was ordered by papal decree and confirmed by pope after pope. Why did no pope stop the Inquisition torture? Jesus said "turn the other cheek", "love and forgive our enemies", and "do good to them that despitefully use us". Was the Roman Catholic church acting like Jesus Christ here?
15. Galileo was sent to a dungeon and publicly flogged because he believed that the earth moved around the sun. On 22 June 1663, Galileo had to fall on his knees to escape the cruel death ordered by Pope Urban VIII and sign a retraction "I abjure, curse and detest the error and heresy of the earth moving around the sun ... it is absurd, false and erroneous."
 Truly, the Roman Catholic church is "drunk with the blood of the saints and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus." Revelation 17:6.

Two Roman Catholic devices to muzzle opposition are:

- a) Accusations of "**bigotry**". A bigot is "one who is obstinately and intolerantly devoted to his own church, party, belief or opinion." Romanists gag opposition by branding their opponents as "BIGOTS". Anyone who opposes Romanism in writing is branded as a "HATE MONGER" or "HATE LITERATURE" distributor, hoping to silence anyone who disagrees with it. "The Jesuits have urged the Catholic church in America to label every criticism of it as "bigotry"." - Christianity Today, October 28, 1957.

When Romanism, Communism and Islam are in the minority, they talk of tolerance and freedom. When they are in the majority, they show very little tolerance or freedom to Protestantism or Democracy. The Roman church shows herself to be the biggest bigot ever. It has been said that:

Rome in the minority is a lamb.

Rome as an equal is a fox.

Rome in the majority is a tiger.

Pope Boniface VIII in 1302 decreed in the "Unam Sanctum", the doctrine of the "two swords": the spiritual sword of the church and the earthly sword of kings which should submit to the Roman Catholic church. Dr de Luca of the University of Rome, was commended by Pope Leo XIII in 1901 by saying: "The Catholic church has the right and duty to kill heretics by fire and sword." This proves that Rome has not changed.

- b) Whenever Rome is refuted by a Bible verse, they reply: "That's just your interpretation", meaning that no one can really interpret the Bible, so leave it up to Rome to be the **authority** rather than the Bible. It is a device to wrest authority from the Bible to Rome. Ask: "Who interprets it?" A Pope?

ERROR 31: FIFTEEN EVIDENCES that the ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH is MYSTERY BABYLON the GREAT, THE WHORE OF REVELATION 17.

Who is the whore/woman in Revelation 17? God has given us similarities to prove conclusively that she is the Roman Catholic church. What are these similarities of the whore with the church of Rome?

1. The **WOMAN** which thou sawest is **that great CITY**, which **reigns over the kings of the earth**. Revelation 17:18.

Question: Which city reigned over the kings of the earth in the first century?

Answer: **Rome**, no doubt. The Roman emperors and popes are called "Pontifex Maximus".

2. She is called the "**GREAT WHORE**" (17:1). A whore is unfaithful to one husband, by having relationships with many suitors. So is the Roman Catholic church, unfaithful to God's Word as seen by her adopting so many false, unbiblical doctrines.
3. "With whom the **KINGS OF THE EARTH** have committed fornication. (17:2). The Roman Catholic Church has always sought to further her purposes by controlling politicians, kings and governments. She is the state church in so many countries like Spain, Portugal, Italy, Poland, South America and Ireland. She seeks to control governments in every country. In Revelation 17:3, she is sitting on a beast, as a rider sits on a horse controlling it. The early Church kept separate from the State because its task was to win people to Christ, baptize and teach God's Word. The Roman Catholic Church's association with governments is outside God's instructions. God calls her relationship with the kings of the earth, "fornication".
4. "**Inhabitants** of the earth have been made **drunk** with the wine of her **fornication**." 17:2. It is very hard to reason with a drunk person. Alcohol controls his mind so that he cannot see reason. So it is with many Catholics, who are so convinced of Roman Catholic false doctrines, even though the Bible so clearly opposes them. They cannot see the truth of God's Word and salvation. They will not search the Scriptures to see if the Bible's claims are true. Acts 17:11. They are **controlled by false doctrines**, like **alcohol controls a drunkard**, so they cannot see Bible truths.
5. She sits on **MANY WATERS**. (17:1). Rev. 17:15 tells us that "The **WATERS** which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are **peoples and multitudes, and nations and tongues**." The Roman Catholic church has an influence in many, if not every nation in the world.
6. She is **FULL OF NAMES OF BLASPHEMY**. (17:3). Rome claims titles and attributes which belong only to God, such as ¹"Holy Father", ²"Father", ³"Monsignor" = my Lord,

- 4"His Holiness", 5"Pontifex Maximus", 6"Pope" = Father of Christians, 7"Reverend", 8"Filii Vicarii Dei" = in the place of the Son of God.
7. "The seven heads are **seven mountains** on which the woman sitteth." (17:9). Rome is well known as being built on seven hills.
 8. The woman was **arrayed in purple and scarlet** colour. (17:4). Popes, cardinals and priests dress in scarlet on festival occasions.
 9. Decked with **gold and precious stones**. (17:4). The Roman church has much gold and wealth.
 10. Having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her **fornication**. (17:4). Much sexual immorality is committed by priests such as fornication, homosexuality, child molestation etc. This is hateful to God.
 11. "**Mystery**". (17:5). Much mystery exists in her services. For example, Latin services, converting bread to the body of Christ, how long must people spend in purgatory, etc.
 12. **Babylon the Great**. (17:5). Roman Catholic mother and child worship was adopted from the ancient mystery religion of Babylon's mother and child worship. As Rome conquered countries, it adopted their religions.
 13. **The Mother of Harlots** (17:5). Rome has given rise to many other religions, of similar practices.
 14. The woman **drunken** with the **blood** of the **saints**, and with the **blood of the martyrs** of Jesus. (17:6). The Roman church has constantly persecuted, tortured and burned at the stake, any people who disagree with papal control and who try to break away. Eg: John Huss, Savonarolla, etc.
 15. **The ten horn nations** that the Roman church tries to control, turn on Rome, **hate her, strip her wealth, EAT HER FLESH**, and burn her with fire. (17:16). Eating her flesh is a clever judgment on a system that claims to eat Christ's flesh daily. As Roman Catholicism claims to eat Christ's flesh, so too will the antichrist eat Roman Catholicism's flesh in the future 7 year Tribulation.

ERROR 32: WHO GAVE US THE BIBLE? GOD OR THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH?

The Roman Catholic Church claims that it gave us the Bible, and that it determined which books should comprise the New Testament and Old Testament.

Their argument is as follows:

"The church existed before a word of the New Testament scriptures was written. After they were written, the church determined the Canon. Therefore the church is the authoritative voice that must be obeyed, for without the church, we would not have the Bible."

"Q.17 Who can determine what books make up the Bible? Just as Christ's infallible church alone can assure us that the Bible is divinely inspired, so the church alone possesses the authority to indicate which books are included in it."

"This is Catholicism", John Walsh (Garden City, NY, Image Books, 1959) p.177.

Is this argument correct? Did the Catholic church produce the Bible, or did it come into existence some other way? Catholicism claims that by its authority we have the Bible, and therefore it alone is the official interpreter of Scripture. If we want to know the true meaning of the Bible, we are told that we must listen to the church that gave us the Bible.

This Catholic church claim is false because:

1. The Catholic Church today with its many man made doctrines is an entirely different system as to the first century church.
2. The Bible nowhere claims that the church gave us the Bible. The Bible came as follows:
From God, to the Apostles and Prophets and then to the Churches.
The Churches submitted to the Apostles and Prophets, who submitted to God. The Bible is an **expression** of the **mind of God**. The Bible is authoritative as God.
The Church is not of higher authority than God.
God gave the Bible for the church to submit to, and not for the Bible to submit to the church.
The Apostles and Prophets were part of the church, but even they submitted to the Word of God.
3. Israel was the vehicle through which God gave the Old Testament. When Israel turned from God, God judged them. Because Roman Catholicism has turned from God, God will judge her in the Tribulation.

4. The Old Testament Canon of 39 books of Scripture was **established by 400 BC**, well before the Roman Catholic church was started, as seen by the Dead Sea Scrolls containing all Old Testament books except Esther.
5. **Jesus endorsed** the 39 books of Old Testament Scripture as being the authentic Word of God, well before the Roman Catholic church ever came about.
6. The **main criterion** in determining whether a book should be included in the Canon of Scripture pertained to its **author**. If the author was a **known prophet of God**, his works were preserved. This was at the direction of God, not the Catholic Church. No Pope ever said: "Thus saith the Lord." The Old Testament was accepted by the people of God because it was written by the Prophets of God.
Though the **people of God** were involved in gathering these sacred writings, this never gave the people authority over Scripture or equal to Scripture.
7. By 96 AD, the early church had accepted the 27 New Testament books as canonical, as seen from early church writings. The early church accepted the Scriptures because it believed them to be from God. The **early church** saw **itself** as **subject** to the **Bible's authority**, not vice versa. The Catholic church maintains that the books comprising the New Testament Canon were determined at the Council of Carthage in 397 AD. **THIS IS INCORRECT.**
This council simply **affirmed** and **restated** what the early churches had **always accepted**. We must not make the mistake of thinking that the Scriptures received their authority because some council made a public statement of their acceptance. The early churches, pastors, deacons and people all submitted to the Bible as their authority because it came from God.
Though the church existed before the New Testament was written, this does not give the church authority over or equality to the Scriptures. The church must **always** be subject to the authority of God's written Word.
8. **Israel as a nation** existed before the Old Testament was written, yet it would be **wrong** for Israel to claim authority equal to or greater than the Old Testament.
The same must apply today, that no institution (like the church, home or government, even though it is older than the New Testament) can claim authority greater than the New Testament.
9. To support its position, the Catholic church advances the error that the scriptures never claimed to be adequate to meet all our needs, based on John 21:25 "And there are also many other things which Jesus did, the which, if they should be written every one, I suppose that even the world itself could not contain the books that should be written." John here never hints this idea. He just says that God saw fit to give us what He gave us as being able to meet all our spiritual needs.
Paul says the opposite to the Roman Catholic church in 2 Timothy 3:16,17. "All scripture is given by inspiration of God, (not by the Roman Catholic church) and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be PERFECT, (or complete) thoroughly furnished unto ALL good works".
Here the Bible can furnish us to all good works.
Peter says that the Bible is sufficient to meet all of our needs:
"His divine power has given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness." II Peter 1:3.
10. The procedure which God used to gather these books **did not give the collecting agency** an authority equal to the Scriptures. God gave us the scriptures as our final and only authority in all matters of faith or morals.

ERROR 33: THEY TURN PEOPLE AWAY FROM CHRIST TO 12 OTHER THINGS.

Christians in history who were reproached for the name of Christ, were martyred, glorifying Christ by their death. The Roman Catholic Church, who martyred these Christians for their love and faith in Christ, is described as: "on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified." I Peter 4:14. The Roman Catholic Church **speaks evil of Christ** as follows:

1. People are turned from **trusting Christ alone** to save them, to trust in **church sacraments** and **good works** to save them.

2. People are turned from **trusting Christ's Word, the Bible**, to trust **Catholic ideas and tradition** as the guide to life.
3. People are turned from **confessing sins directly to Christ** as mediator, to confessing sins to a **priest** as mediator.
4. People are turned from trusting **Christ** as the sole sufficient **Saviour**, to trust a **wafer** that is said to become Christ.
5. People are turned from **praying to Christ**, and told to **pray to saints**.
6. People are turned from **trusting Christ for protection**, and pointed to trusting **statues, medals and images** to protect them.
7. People are turned from looking to **Christ lovingly welcoming** them into heaven, and instead are pointed to **fear purgatory** at death.
8. People are pointed to **pray to Mary** as **merciful**, and are turned away from **praying to Christ** as **harsh, unwelcoming and unapproachable**.
9. People are turned away from **Christ** as the **Rock** on which the church is based, and are pointed to **Peter** as the **Rock**.
10. People are turned away from **Christ** as the **only bridge to heaven**, to **Popes** as **pontif** (bridge builder) instead. John 14:6.
11. People are pointed away from accepting **Christ's promise of forgiveness in I John 1:9**, to **do works of penance** and contrition to regain God's favour instead.
12. People are told to **reject Christ speaking to their consciences** about Rome's errors and evils, and to trust **Catholic doctrines** and **Papal infallibility** instead.

All of this is speaking evil of Christ, His Word and His work.

The Roman Catholic influence in the New International Version has resulted in part of I Peter 4:14 being omitted. Compare the NIV with the King James Version:

NIV.	1 Peter 4:14	King James Version.
If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, for the spirit of glory and of God rests on you. ---- OMIT ---- ---- OMIT ----		If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth on you: on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified.

By turning people away from Christ to other things, truly the Catholic Church is speaking evil of Christ. As such, they can be justly called an antichrist.

CONCLUSION.

God says: "**COME OUT OF HER, MY PEOPLE**, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues." Revelation 18:4.

Religion may make a person feel comfortable and righteous, but God reminds us that "all our righteousness are as filthy rags." Isaiah 64:6. Nicodemus was one of the most religious men in Israel, yet he needed to be born again.

Religion is man's efforts to reach God by good works and sacraments, but salvation is trusting in Christ's blood sacrifice on the cross as the full payment for our sins. You can be religious, yet not saved and still go to hell. Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour and you'll then become a son of God.

There are **seven possible reasons** why some people **choose to remain** in the Roman Catholic church:

1. Lack of knowledge of the Word of God.
2. Fear of rejection by family and friends.
3. Fear of going against ancestors.
4. Fear of becoming a social outcast.
5. Habit.
6. Fear of going to hell.
7. Fear of change to the unknown.

Ask **Christ** to save you rather than a church. Trust the **Bible** to guide you rather than a man made system.

111. ERRORS OF SEVENTH DAY ADVENTISM

Many SDA's are trying to gain acceptance as part of the orthodox Bible based Christian community. However, the following points show them not to hold the "faith once delivered to the saints." Jude 3. These false doctrines of Seventh Day Adventism warn people to leave SDA and not to join with SDAs.

1. THE SABBATH.

SDA's insist that we must keep the Sabbath as a day of worship. This is wrong because:

a) The New Testament never commands Christians to worship or meet on the Saturday Sabbath. Instead, Christians meet on the first day of the week, Sunday, in the following Bible passages:

1. 1 Corinthians 16:1,2, to put money in the collection on Sunday. ("no gatherings when I come").
2. Acts 20:7 Paul preached to Christians at Troas whose habit was to meet to break bread on the first day of the week. Paul preached to Jews in a synagogue on Saturday & Christians on Sunday.
3. John 20:19,26 Jesus, after His resurrection met with the disciples on the first day of the week.
4. Romans 14:5,6 Paul, when discussing which day to meet, did not command meeting on the Saturday Sabbath, (as SDAs do). He said "Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind."
5. Colossians 2:16,17 "Let no man judge you in ... holy days or Sabbath days: which are a shadow of things to come."

SDA's judge Christians as disobedient who keep Sunday as a holyday. Paul says that SDA's are wrong to judge Christians for not keeping Saturday as a holyday.

b) SDA's claim that the Roman Catholic church after Constantine in 320 AD changed the day of worship from Saturday to Sunday. This is false, as seen by ten quotes from church writers from 90-300 AD who all say that the practice of Christians everywhere was to meet on Sunday, not the Jewish Saturday Sabbath. SDA's have no early quotes to show early Christians meeting on Saturday.

2. SOUL SLEEP.

SDA's deny that believers at death go to heaven. They say that believers go to soul sleep in the grave until Christ's return. JW's, Christadelphians and other false groups believe this error. See Chapter 97 in this book on "The Error of Soul Sleep". The main verses disproving the soul sleep error are:

1. Philippians 1:23 "I am in a straight betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to **be with Christ**".
2. 2 Cor. 5:8 "To be absent from the body (death), and to be **present with the Lord**." (in heaven).
3. Hebrews 12:1 "We are surrounded by so great a cloud of **witnesses**". (The departed believers discussed in Hebrews 11, who now watch us from heaven.)
4. Hebrews 12:23,24 "The heavenly Jerusalem ... the church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven and to the **spirits of just men made perfect**."
5. 1 Thessalonians 4:14 "Them also which sleep in Jesus will God **bring** with him." (Bring, not take).
At Christ's return to raise believers bodies, He **brings** our spirits & souls from heaven with Him.
6. Revelation 6:9,10 "I saw under the altar the **souls** of them that were slain for the Word of God."
7. Isaiah 14:9,10 "Hell from beneath...stirs up the dead for thee. All they shall **speak** and say to thee."
8. Ezekiel 32:21 "The strong among the mighty shall **speak** to him out of the midst of hell..."
9. Ezekiel 32:30,31 "The Zidonians which are gone down with the slain ... **Pharaoh shall see** them and shall be comforted, even **Pharaoh and all his army slain by the sword**."
10. Luke 16:19-31 The dead rich man and dead Abraham spoke to each other.

3. SDA'S REGARD ELLEN WHITE (1825-1915) AS A PROPHET OR TEACHER.

"I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence." 1 Tim. 2:12. Ellen White claimed to have received more than 2000 "inspired counsels from the Lord" (visions) from 1844 to 1868. ("he hath not seen." Col. 2:18). SDA's err in allowing a woman teacher to instruct them.

4. CHRIST.

Mrs White said: "Christ took upon His sinless nature our sinful nature. Christ took our nature and it's deteriorating condition." (Q.D. p.654-656). According to White and SDA's, Christ acquired a sinful nature. (False). Christ had a sinless human nature. Christ took our sin punishment, not our sin nature.

5. LOSS OF SALVATION.

"Now while our Great High Priest is making atonement for us, we should seek to become perfect in Christ." (ref: The Great Controversy, E.G.White, 1911, p.623).

SDA's teach that though saved by grace, we are kept saved by keeping the Law. This is partial atonement. Therefore, to stay saved according to SDA's, we must continue to keep the Sabbath, the 10 Commandments and pay the tithe. "by whom we have now received the atonement." (Romans 5:11).

6. INVESTIGATIVE JUDGMENT.

Investigative judgment means no assurance of salvation. According to SDA's, beginning on October 22, 1844, Christ entered upon the "judgment phase" of His ministry, whereby He blots out sin. The SDA "Investigative Judgement" doctrine rests on Ellen White's claimed revelation that Christ entered the Holy of Holies not at His ascension, but in 1844 (The Great Controversy, p.362-373).

Hebrews 9:12 contradicts White's theory: "by His own blood he entered (past tense) in once (not in 1844) into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us." Hebrews 9:12,25.

'now once in the end of the world hath he appeared (33AD) to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself'.v26

SDA's teach that Christ transferred the record of believers sins to the heavenly sanctuary, which will be finally cleansed at the conclusion of the Investigative Judgment, their day of atonement.

White says in "Patriarchs and Prophets", p.357 this heresy: "The blood of Christ, while it was to release the repentant sinner from the condemnation of the law, was not to cancel the sin. It would stand on record in the sanctuary until the final atonement." SDAs filter all Scripture through Ellen White's prophecies. Hence SDA's sins are not cancelled or forgiven yet. What a worry. No wonder they have no assurance of salvation until the imaginary Investigative Judgment is finished.

Q: If Christ can create the universe in 6 days, why does He take from 1844 until now to investigate the books? Is Christ a slow reader? These 6 verses show the SDA Investigative Judgment to be false:

"The Lord knoweth them that are His." 2 Timothy 2:19. "I know my sheep." John 10:14.

"cleanse us from all unrighteousness." 1 John 1:9. "he had by himself purged our sins." Hebrews 1:3.

"yet now hath he reconciled..." Colossians 1:21. "having forgiven you all trespasses." Colossians 2:13.

Christ's judgments are after He returns, not before: "When the Son of Man shall come in his glory then shall he sit upon the throne of His glory:& before Him shall be gathered all nations." Mat25:31,32.

Hebrews 4:13 exposes the SDA limitation on Christ's omniscience: "Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do." Since Jesus knows all cases already, why must He investigate?

7. SATAN AS THE SCAPEGOAT FOR OUR SINS.

White says in TGC page 422: "When Christ, by virtue of His own blood, removes the sins of His people from the heavenly sanctuary at the close of His ministration, He will place them upon Satan, who, in the execution of the judgment, must bear the final penalty."

According to SDA's, Satan becomes the scapegoat of Leviticus 16. **This lack of clear distinction between the forgiveness of sins at salvation, and the blotting out of sins at some time in the future, makes it impossible for anyone to know, even at death, whether he is saved or not.** (Isaiah 44:22).

SDA's are not allowed to experience assurance of salvation, because there would be no pressure for them to keep the Old Testament law and Sabbath as interpreted by Ellen White.

Having the sins of all men laid on Satan, assigns to Satan an indispensable role in the blotting out of sins. This nullifies the all-sufficiency of the finished work of Christ.

8. ANOTHER GOSPEL.

The Investigative Judgment and Scapegoat theories are "another Gospel" that Paul warns us about in Galatians 1:8,9. Paul places a double curse on those preaching a false gospel such as SDA's.

9. THE MARK OF THE BEAST.

SDA's believe that Sunday keeping will be the mark of the Beast of Revelation 13:16-18.

White says: "In the last days, the Sabbath test will be made plain. When this time comes, anyone who does not keep the Sabbath will receive the mark of the Beast and will be kept from heaven." TGC, p449 This is wrongly dividing the word of truth. This shows SDAs careless, deceitful handling of Scripture.

10. SDA'S ARE VERY CONFUSED ON PROPHECY SUBJECTS.

SDA's think that God has finished with Israel. Romans 11:2,25; Hosea 3:4,5 refute this idea. To SDA's, much of Revelation had been fulfilled by 500 AD. They don't understand Daniel's 70 week prophecy, taking the 69 weeks as literally 173,880 days (correct), but taking the last half of the 70th week (3.5 years) as being 1260 years (wrong). (Daniel 9:24-27). **Conclusion:** Leave the SDA movement today.

112. WHY IT IS RIGHT FOR CHRISTIANS TO MEET ON SUNDAY, NOT SATURDAY, THE JEWISH SABBATH

Seventh Day Adventists accuse Christians of constantly breaking the fourth Commandment to keep the Sabbath (Saturday) holy. Christians meet on the Sunday. Some Christians keep every day holy. Why do we meet on the Sunday, not Saturday? Five main reasons are:

1. **Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only (Exodus 31:13,14,16,17).**
 - i) "Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily, my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between ME and YOU throughout your generations." Exodus 31:13.
 - ii) "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant." Exodus 31:16.
 - iii) "It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever: for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed." Exodus 31:17. Also God reiterates this command in Ezekiel 20:12,20.
 - iv) "Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them." Ezekiel 20:12
 - v) "And hallow my sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between me and you." Ezekiel 20:20.Notice that God says on **four occasions** that sabbath-keeping is a sign between **God and Israel**, and that the Sabbath is to be kept throughout their generations, forever.
"Who are **Israelites**; to whom pertaineth ... the **giving of the law**..." Romans 9:4.

2. Early Church Writers Before 300 AD Observed Sunday.

They never once say that they observed Saturday. For example, Barnabas (100 AD), Ignatius (107 AD), Justin Martyr (145 AD), Tertullian (180 AD), Victorinus (280 AD), Bardaisan (154 AD), Cyprian (200 AD), Irenaeus (178 AD) all write that Christians met on Sunday. They **never** refer to Christian's day of worship being the Saturday sabbath. The Edict of Laodicea (320 AD) officially confirmed a long established practice. This is significant because SDA's say that the Catholic church after 320 AD changed Saturday worship to Sunday worship. This theory is nowhere found in any Church Father's writings, but instead Sunday as the Christian day of worship has always been the rule. The early church writers, many of whom were taught by the apostles, refer at least 14 times to Sunday as being the day of meeting together for worship. The SDA Church has never successfully refuted these historical facts.

Church Fathers Observing SUNDAY, not SATURDAY, are:

1. **Justin Martyr 100-165 AD (Volume 1, Page 186).**
"And on the day called Sunday, all who live in cities or in the country gather together to one place, and the memoirs of the apostles or the writings of the prophets are read ... But Sunday is the day on which we all hold our common assembly, because it is the first day on which God, having wrought a change in the darkness and matter, made the world; and Jesus Christ our Saviour on the same day rose from the dead."
2. **Ignatius (110 AD), Bishop of Antioch.**
*"If then those who walk in the ancient practices attain to newness of hope, **no longer observing the Sabbath**, but fashioning their lives after the Lord's Day on which our life also arose through Him, that we may be found disciples of Jesus Christ, our only teacher."*
3. **The Epistle of Barnabas 120-150 AD.**
*"Your new moons and your sabbaths I cannot endure". Isaiah 1:13.
"You perceive how He speaks: your present sabbaths are not acceptable to me, but that which I had made in giving rest to all things, I shall make a beginning of the **eighth day**, that is a beginning of another world. Wherefore also, we **keep the eighth day with joyfulness**, a day also in which Jesus rose from the dead."*

4. **Bardaisan (born 154 AD).**
*"Wherever we be, all of us are called by the one name of the Messiah, namely Christians and upon one day which is the **first day of the week**, we assemble ourselves together and on the appointed days we abstain from food."*
5. **The Teaching of the Apostles 160 AD (Volume 8, Page 668).**
*"The Apostles further appointed: On the **first day of the week** let there be **service** and the reading of the Holy Scriptures, and the oblation: because on the **first day of the week** our Lord rose from the place of the dead, and on the **first day of the week** He arose upon the world, and on the **first day of the week** He ascended up to heaven."*
6. **Tertullian 150-240 AD (Volume 3, Page 70).**
*"The Holy Spirit upbraids the Jews with their holy-days. Your Sabbaths, and new moons, and ceremonies" says He, "My soul hateth." **By us, to whom Sabbaths are strange, and the new moons and festivals formerly beloved by God ..."***
7. **Cyprian, Bishop of Carthage, 200-258 AD.**
"The Lord's Day is both the first and the eighth day."
8. **Ad Nationes 217 AD (Volume 3, Page 123).**
*"Others, with greater regard to good manners, it must be confessed, suppose that the **sun** is the God of the Christians, because it is a **well known fact** that we pray towards the east, or because we make **Sunday a day of festivity.**"*
9. **Victorinus 280 AD (Volume 7, Page 342).**
*"And let the parasceve become a rigorous fast, **lest we should appear to observe any Sabbath with the Jews**, which Christ Himself, the Lord of the Sabbath, says by His prophets that "His soul hateth;" **which Sabbath He in His body abolished**, although, nevertheless, He had formerly Himself commanded Moses that circumcision should not pass over the eighth day, which day very frequently happens on the Sabbath, as we read written in the Gospel."*
10. **Irenaeus, Bishop of Lyons, 155 AD (Volume 8, Page 773).**
"The mystery of the Lord's resurrection may not be celebrated any other day than on the Lord's Day."

SDA's try to equate the Sabbath with the Lord's Day by linking Mark 2:28 with Revelation 1:10. They reason that since "the Son of Man is Lord also of the Sabbath" (Mark 2:27,28), when John says that he "was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day" (Revelation 1:10). Jesus was just saying in Mark 2:28 that as Lord of all, He could do as He pleased on the Sabbath Day. Early Christian writers never once say that Saturday was their common day of worship.

3. **Early Christians Met on the First Day of the Week, Sunday, in:**

- i) "And upon the **first day of the week**, when the **disciples came together** to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow." Acts 20:7.
 Early Christians met on Sunday for their agape love feast, followed by the Lord's Supper.
- ii) "Now concerning the **collection** for the saints, as I have given **order** to the **churches of Galatia**, even so do ye. Upon the **first day** of the **week** let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him ..." 1 Corinthians 16:2.
 Early Christians, **who met on Sunday**, were to **give money** in the collection. They did not meet on Saturday. This order was also given to the churches of Galatia who met on Sunday.
- iii) "Then the same day at evening, being the **first day** of the week, when the doors were shut where the **disciples were assembled** ... Jesus stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you." John 20:19.
 "After **eight days** again his disciples were within, then came Jesus ..." John 20:26.
 Jesus appeared on the Sunday, as well as the following Sunday that the disciples met.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8						

4. **Paul When Discussing Sabbath-Keeping Never Commands Christians to Keep the Sabbath, which He Surely Would Have if it was Meant for Christians.**

- i) "One man esteemeth one day above another (Seventh Day Adventists): another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind." Romans 14:5.
"he that **regardeth not the day**, to the Lord he doth not regard it." Romans 14:6.
Note: Paul here had a great chance to say "you must meet on Saturday", but he did not state either day as mandatory. Why did Paul not command sabbath-keeping here? Nor should we.
- ii) "Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an **holyday**, or of the **new moon**, or of the **SABBATH DAYS**." Colossians 2:16. **Jews protested Sunday keeping.**
Note: Don't judge people as being wrong because they don't keep the Jewish Sabbath.
- iii) "Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is." Heb. 10:25.
No mention here of the need to keep Sabbath Saturday.

5. **Sixteen Times we are told that the MOSAIC LAW is FINISHED for Believers.**
KEY: The Mosaic Law (including sabbath) is compared to a dead husband (Rom. 7:1-4), a prison (Gal. 3:23), and a schoolmaster (Gal. 3:24-25).

- Question:** SDA's say "But aren't we supposed to keep the Mosaic 10 Commandments laws?"
Answer: We are not under the Mosaic law, but under a different law in the Church Age, "the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus" (Rom.8:2;Gal.6:2) which is an internal Holy Spirit motivated law. Sabbath keeping is never mentioned as part of this law.
- i) "Ye are **not under law**, but under **grace** ..." Romans 6:14,15 and Galatians 5:18.
 - ii) "Ye are **dead to the law** by the body of Christ; that ye should be **married to another** (ie. to Christ)." Romans 7:1-4.
Note: As a woman is bound by the law to her husband as long as he lives, yet if the husband is dead, she is **FREE FROM that LAW** (v.2,3). So, Christians are become **DEAD TO THE LAW**, by the body of Christ, and we are **MARRIED TO ANOTHER** (Jesus Christ).
The **Law** is likened to the **dead husband**. This means that **Christians'** relationship to the Law has been severed.
 - iii) "Now we are **DELIVERED FROM THE LAW**, that being **dead** wherein we were held; that we should serve in **NEWNESS OF SPIRIT**, and not in the **oldness of the letter**." Romans 7:6.
"Oldness of the letter" of the law is not how we serve. This states that:
 - a) We are **delivered** from the law,
 - b) the **law** is **dead**, which held us,
 - c) we now serve in newness of the **Law of the Spirit**.
 - iv) "The **LAW** of the **SPIRIT OF LIFE** in Christ Jesus has made me **FREE** from the **LAW OF SIN and DEATH**." Romans 8:2.
This means that now we have Christ, we have the Holy Spirit, and we operate under a **different law, the law of the Spirit of life** in Christ Jesus. We are now **FREE** from the **Mosaic law of sin and death**.
v.4 The **righteousness of the law** is possible to be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit (by yielding to the leading of the Spirit daily).
v.9 Ye are **not in the flesh**, but **in the Spirit**, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you.
 - v) "Christ is the **END (5056) OF THE LAW** for righteousness to every one that believeth." Romans 10:4. Note: "END" (5056) means "termination, completion in respect to **time**."
"The **law** as a demanded obligation has come to an end because Jesus has fulfilled its demands and imparted his righteousness to those who believe. Christ has freed believers

from its tyranny. The standards of righteousness come to us now **not from outside by imposition**, but from **inside** by the Spirit who writes the law upon our hearts.”

— *The Complete New Testament Word Study Dictionary*, by Spiros Zodhiates. Page 1376.

We are now under a **NEW LAW** from **WITHIN** called:

- a) The **Law of the Spirit of Life** in Christ Jesus. Romans 8:2.
- b) Bear ye one another’s burdens, and so fulfil the **Law of Christ**.
- c) Whoso looketh into the perfect **law of liberty**. John 13:34; James 1:25; Galatians 6:2.
- d) If ye fulfil the **royal law**. “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself” ye do well. James 2:8

vi) **In Galatians 3:23-25 Paul describes the law as:**

a) a **PRISON**. “before **faith** came, we were **KEPT UNDER THE LAW, SHUT UP**.” v.23

We were shut up in the prison of the law, until faith in Christ came. Then we were released from the prison of law by Christ, to serve in newness of Spirit.

vii) b) a **SCHOOLMASTER** that controlled us until Christ came.

“the LAW was our **SCHOOLMASTER** (3807 a strict, disciplining slave who led boys from home to school) to **bring us unto Christ**, that we might be justified by **faith**.” v.24

But after that faith is come, we are “**NO LONGER** under a schoolmaster.” v.25.

Note carefully: The Law brought conviction of sin to bring us to be saved by faith in Christ. Now that we are saved, we are **NO LONGER** under the Mosaic Law. This means that we are no longer under the Sabbath-keeping Law.

viii) **Colossians 2:14** “**Blotting out** the handwriting of **ORDINANCES** (1378) that was against us, ... and **took it out of the way**, nailing it to his cross.”

Ordinances contained the Ten Commandments as Eph. 2:15 and Hebrews 9:1-4 states.

ix) **Ephesians 2:15** “Having **ABOLISHED** (2673) in his flesh the enmity, even the **LAW** (3551) of **COMMANDMENTS** contained in **ordinances** (1378) ...”

Ordinance (1378) dogma means decree of the Mosaic Law, external precepts.

Law (3551) (“nomos” in Greek) means laws of the **Mosaic statutes**, including:

- a) laws of civil rights and duties, marriage, Levitical priesthood.
- b) laws of external religious rites eg. purification, circumcision, sacrifices.
- c) laws of hearts and conduct of men.
- d) a code or body of laws.

Abolished (2673) (“katargeo” in Greek) means to destroy, cause to cease, do away with, put an end to, a complete cessation. Therefore, Christ completely abolished the **Mosaic statutes**, code and body of laws, contained in decrees.

Note: Christ **ABOLISHED** the **LAW OF COMMANDMENTS**.

x) **Hebrews 9:1-4** “The **first covenant** had **ORDINANCES** of divine service....For there was a tabernacle made; the first, wherein was the candlestick, and the table, and the shewbread; which is called the sanctuary....the **TABLES OF THE COVENANT**.” (See Heb. 8:13).

The **first covenant** had **ordinances** which contained the **tables of the covenant** (10 Comm). Since the **first covenant** has vanished (Heb.8:13), the **ordinances** are taken away (Col.2:14), so the **10 Commandments** are abolished (Eph.2:15) as they are in first cov. & ordinances.(9:1-4

xi) “For the **priesthood being changed**, there is made of necessity a **CHANGE ALSO OF THE LAW**.” **Hebrews 7:12**.

Note: The priesthood is changed from **Levitical** (v.11) to **Christ**. Therefore the **Law of sin and death**, is changed to the **Law of the Spirit of Life in Christ** (Romans 8:2).

The Levitical priests received their authority from the Old Testament law, and since the Levitical priesthood has been changed, the Law has been changed. The Mosaic Law made no provision for a priest from Judah (Hebrews 7:14), so the **entire system of Old Testament law** has been **changed and fulfilled** in Jesus Christ and has therefore been

taken out of the way (“Blotting out the handwriting of **ordinances** that was against us..and **took it out of the way**” and, “Let no man judge you in..**sabbath days.**” Colossian 2:14,16). The believer has been set **free from the law** (Gal.5:1-6),& is **dead to the law** (Rom. 7:1-4) **Objection:** But does this mean that I am “free to sin?”

Answer: No. “Free from the law” does not mean “free to sin,” but it means “free to do the will of God.” We obey, not because of **outward compulsion**, but because of the **inward constraint of the love for Christ** (2 Corinthians 5:14) doing the will of God from the heart (Ephesians 6:6). The indwelling Holy Spirit enables us to fulfil the “righteousness of the Law” as we yield to him (Romans 8:1-4).

xii) “There is verily a **DISANNULLING of the COMMANDMENT** going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.” Hebrews 7:18.

Note: The Old Testament Law is now **DISANNULLED** (115) (**CANCELLED**) by Christ.

xiii) “He **TAKETH AWAY** the **FIRST** (Mosaic Covenant with Old Testament law, sabbath-keeping, etc) that he may **ESTABLISH the SECOND** (the New Testament new covenant of Christ).” Hebrews 10:9.

xiv) “If ye are led of the Spirit, **YE are NOT UNDER the LAW.**” Galatians 5:18.

A Godly life is not lived under the rules of the **Law**, but is a life **led by the Holy Spirit**.

xv) “Certain have **troubled you** with words, **subverting your souls**, saying, ye must be **circumcised**, and **KEEP THE LAW:** to whom **WE GAVE NO SUCH COMMANDMENT**” Acts 15:19,20,24.

Note: The Apostles never commanded us to keep the law of the Sabbath day, because we are under the **law of the Spirit** of life.

Seventh Day Adventists are like Judaisers who **trouble people** with words and **subvert people’s souls**, saying, “You must keep the law of the Sabbath day” or you’re not saved.

xvi) “But if the ministration of death, written and **engraven in stones** (*10 Commandments*), was **glorious**,....which glory was to be **done away:** (v.7)...For if the ministration of **condemnation** (*10 Commandments*) be glory....(v.9) For if that which is **done away** was glorious (*10 Commandments engraven in stones*), much more that which remaineth (*New Covenant*) is glorious (v.11).” (II Corinthians 3:7,9,11).

“Done away” (v.11) is “katargoumenon” (Gk) meaning that the 10 Commandments law has “ceased, put an end to, abolished, done away with”-Barnes).It gave way to the law of Christ.

Question 1: But doesn’t the Law refer to the Ceremonial Law only, and not to the Ten Commandments?

Answer: NO because: **a)** Romans 7:7 gives us an example of the Law as “Thou shalt not **covet**” (the tenth commandment).

“What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.”

If it is true that number 10 is dead to us, then it is also true that number 4 is dead to us also.

b) 2 Corinthians 3:7-11(engraven in stones), **c)** Ephesians 2:15 (commandments), **d)** Hebrews 9:1-4 (The first covenant had...tables of the covenant; 8:13 ‘ready to vanish’).

Question to Sabbath-keepers:

“Ye shall **kindle NO FIRE** throughout your habitations **UPON THE SABBATH DAY.**” Exodus 35:3. Note: Seventh Day Adventists break the Old Testament sabbath by cooking food, burning a gas fire, driving a car with internal combustion etc, on Saturday.

Question to Sabbath-keepers:

Every one of the 10 Commandments, **except number four**, “Keep the Sabbath day holy” are **repeated** to be kept by Christians in the New Testament.

We ask, "Why did God see fit to repeat every commandment **except** number four? Did God **forget** to repeat number 4, while he took pains to repeat the other nine? Is God forgetful?"

1. 1 Thessalonians 1:9 Ye turned to God from idols, to serve the living and true God.
2. Galatians 5:20 Works of flesh are ... idolatry.
3. 1 Timothy 1:20 That they may learn not to blaspheme.
4. [NOT COMMANDED IN THE NEW TESTAMENT]
5. Ephesians 6:1-3 Honour thy father and mother.
6. Galatians 5:21 Works of flesh ... murderers.
7. Galatians 5:19 Works of flesh ... adultery.
8. Ephesians 4:28 Let him that stole, steal no more.
9. Ephesians 4:15 Speaking the truth in love. (Titus 2:3 Not false accusers)...
10. Ephesians 4:25 Putting away lying, speak every man the truth ..
- Ephesians 5:5 Nor covetous man who is an idolater.
- Hebrews 13:5 Let your conversation be without covetousness.

Conclusion:

1. 15 times we are told that the Mosaic Law is finished for believers:
Romans 6:14,15 "ye are **not under law.**"
Romans 7:1-4 "**dead to the law** .. married to another." (Law is like a dead husband).
Romans 7:6 "we are **delivered** from the law."
Romans 8:2 "the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me **free** from the **law of sin and death.**"
Romans 10:4 "Christ is the **end of the law** ... to every one that believeth."
II Corinthians 3:7,9,11. "written and **engraven in stones**.....was to be **done away.**"
Galatians 3:2 "we **were kept** under the **law, shut up**" (like in prison).
Galatians 3:24,25 "after that faith is come, we are **no longer** under a **schoolmaster**" (law).
Galatians 5:18 "ye are **not under the law.**"
Ephesians 2:15 "Having **abolished** in his flesh the enmity, even the **law of commandments contained in ordinances;**"
Colossians 2:14 "Blotting out the handwriting of **ordinances** that was against us,**took it out of the way**"
Hebrews 9:1-4,10 "The first covenant had **ordinances** of divine service, the **tables of the covenant.**"
Hebrews 7:12 "**priesthood** being **changed**, there is made of necessity a **change also of the law**"
Hebrews 7:18 "there is verily a **disannulling of the commandment** going before .."
Hebrews 10:9 "He **taketh away the first** (Mosaic law), that he may **establish the second.**" (new covenant)
2. There is **no reference** anywhere by the Ante-Nicene church writers of Christians meeting on the Saturday before 320 AD. Some of these men were taught by the Apostles. Did the Apostles get it wrong? Not likely. The early church writers refer at least ten times to SUNDAY being the day of meeting together for worship.
3. Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between **God** and the **Jews only**. (Exodus 31:13,16,17; Ezekiel 20:12,20).
4. Early Christians met on the first day of the week, Sunday in:
Acts 20:7 "upon the **first day of the week**, when the disciples came together to break bread, "
1 Corinthians 16:1,2 " upon the **first day of the week** let every one of you lay by him in store.." "
John 20:19,26 "... being the **first day of the week**, ..".
5. Paul when discussing Sabbath keeping, **never commands Christians to keep the Sabbath**, which he surely would have done if it was important for Christians as SDA's insist. (Romans 14:5,6; Colossians 2:16,17; Hebrews 10:24,25). Paul's visits to synagogues on Saturdays were just to witness to Jews. He fellowshiped with Christians on Sunday. He never commanded Christians to attend church on Saturday. Keep meeting on Sunday as the early Christians taught.

Verses to Refute Seventh Day Adventism

1. The Ten commandments are part of the Mosaic Covenant, both of which are done away, abolished, and vanished. SDAs believe that the Mosaic Covenant is abolished, but not the 10 Commandments.

Key: These verses show that the 10 Commandments are part of the abolished Mosaic Covenant. Hence the 10 Commandments are also abolished. This is fatal to Seventh Day Adventism.

i) Hebrews 9:1-4 “The first covenant had ORDINANCES ... the tables of the covenant.”

ii) Ephesians 2:15 “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ORDINANCES (1378).” Note the connection with Col. 2:14.

iii) Colossians 2:14 “Blotting out the handwriting of ORDINANCES (1378) that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.”

iv) 2 Corinthians 3:7-11 “If the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones was glorious, much more that which remaineth was glorious.” (v.11).

v) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables, the words of the covenant, even the ten commandments.”

vi) Deut. 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.”

vii) Deut. 4:13 “He declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone.”

viii) 1 Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save two tables of stone...when the Lord made a covenant with Israel.”

ix) Hebrews 8:13 “A new covenant, he hath made the first old... ready to vanish away.”

2. Verses stating that the Law of Moses is done away:

i) “But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up (as in prison) unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.” Galatians 3:23.

The Law was like a prison which people were shut up in until after faith in Christ came.

ii) “Wherefore the law (Ten commandments) was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we may be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are NO LONGER under a schoolmaster (the ten commandments law).” Galatians 3:24,25.

iii) “He taketh away the first (Mosaic Covenant, including the Law of Moses) that he may establish the second (New covenant, including Law of Christ).” Hebrews 10:9.

iv) “There is verily a disannulling of the commandment going before for the weakness and unprofitableness thereof.” Hebrews 7:18.

v) “For the priesthood being changed, there is made of necessity a change also of the LAW.” Heb 7:12
As the priesthood is changed from Levitical (v.11) to Christ, so the law of sin and death (10 commandments), is changed to the law of the Spirit of life in Christ.” Romans 8:2; Galatians 6:2.

vi) “Certain have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, ye must be circumcised, and keep the Law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” Acts 15:19,24.

vii) “If ye are led of the Spirit, ye are NOT under the Law.” Galatians 5:18.

viii) “Christ is the end of the Law for righteousness, to every one that believeth.” Romans 10:4.

ix) “Now we are delivered from the Law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.” Romans 7:6.

x) “Ye are not under the law, but under grace.” Romans 6:14,15; Galatians 5:18. (Romans 7:1-4.

xi) “Ye are dead to the Law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another (to Christ).”

xii) When did the law finish? When Christ came, as seen by the word “TILL” in Galatians 3:19.

“Wherefore then serveth the Law?” Romans 7:1-4. “It was added because of transgressions, TILL the seed (Christ) should come.” Galatians 3:19.

xiii) Paul said that the sabbath is a shadow of things to come:

“the sabbath days; which are a shadow of things to come.” Colossians 2:16,17.

xiv) “The Law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has made me free from the Law of sin and death.” Romans 8:2. We now operate under the Law of Christ. We are now free from the Mosaic Law of sin and death.

3. Nobody knew of or heard of the Sabbath until Mount Sinai:

i) “Thou camest down also upon Mount Sinai... And madest known unto them thy holy sabbath by the hand of Moses.” Nehemiah 9:13,14.

ii) It was impossible for the Sabbath law to be practiced before Moses, because God instructed Moses to change the Jewish calendar, making the departure from Egypt “the beginning of months; it shall be the first month of the year to you.” (Exodus 12:2). Sabbath observance started from this date.

iii) On this point Moses needed instruction, which he passed on to the people: “This is that which the Lord hath said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy sabbath unto the Lord (v.23). Eat that today; for today is a sabbath unto the Lord: today ye shall not find it in the field.” Exodus 16:23,25,29,30.

iv) Further instruction was given to Moses and Aaron about the sabbath, because “it was not declared what should be done” to the sabbath breaker who gathered sticks on the sabbath day. Numbers 15:32-36

v) Israelite leaders before Moses did not keep the Sabbath. “The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb (1491BC). The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, who are all of us here alive this day.” Deuteronomy 5:2,3. (1451 BC).

Hence Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph knew nothing about Sabbath keeping.

vi) The Sabbath law came 430 years after the Abrahamic Covenant: “The Law, which was 430 years after Abraham.” Galatians 3:17. This shows that Abraham never knew about the Sabbath law.

vii) No one before the Exodus (Exod 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law: “I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt...I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them.” Ezekiel 20:10,12

viii) The first time something is mentioned, it is introduced with the indefinite article “a” or “an”, but never with the definite article “the”. This shows that the Sabbath was first introduced in Exodus 16:23.

4. The Sabbath was a sign between God and Israel only, not between God and Christians.

i) “Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between ME and YOU throughout your generations.” Exodus 31:13.

ii) “Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.” Exodus 31:16.

iii) “It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever:” Exodus 31:17.

iv) “Moreover also I gave them my sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them.” Ezekiel 20:12.

v) “Hallow my sabbaths; and they shall be a sign between me and you.” Ezekiel 20:20.

5. Early Christians met on Sunday, not Saturday.

Paul taught Christians at church on Sunday,... and disputed with Jews in their synagogues on Saturday.

i) “And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached unto them, ready to depart on the morrow.” Acts 20:7.

ii) “Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come.” 1 Corinthians 16:1,2.

iii) “Then the same day at evening, being the first day of the week, when the doors were shut where the disciples were assembled...Jesus stood in the midst, and saith unto them, Peace be unto you.” (v.19).

“After eight days again his disciples were within, then came Jesus...” John 20:19,26.

Question 1: Did the Jews protest against Christians for worshipping on Sunday? (Yes).

Question 2: Did the Jews protest against the Christians for not keeping the Jewish yearly feasts, new moon, and Sabbath days? (Yes). “Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holy day, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath days.” Colossians 2:16.

iv) See 15 church writers before 350 AD who all state that Christians met on Sunday and not Saturday.

6. Some were exempt from Sabbath keeping as a day of rest, priests&boys circumcised on Sabbath.

Instead of the Sabbath being a day of rest for the priests, their work was doubled. (Numbers 28:9,10).

Jesus asked the Jews, “Have ye not read in the Law how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the sabbath, and are blameless.” (Matthew 12:5). As New Testament priests (1 Peter 2:9), we are exempt from the Sabbath rest, because our whole lives should be dedicated to God as New Testament priests.

113. TABLE OF CONTENTS (SDA)

- 1) **Three Basic Positions** on the Christian Day of Worship. (p.746).
- 2) **7 Errors** in the “27 Fundamental Beliefs of SDAs.” (p.747).
- 3) **13 Official SDA Baptismal Vows.** (p.748).
- 4) **12 SDA Statements** that Ellen White was God’s Inspired Prophet. (p.748).
- 5) **5 Failed Prophecies** of Ellen White. (p.749).
- 6) **12 Unbiblical Statements** of Ellen White. (p.750).
- 7) **7 Contradictions** of Ellen White. (p.751).
- 8) **Challenge To SDAs:** Show One NT Verse that tells Christians to keep the Sabbath holy. (p.751)
- 9) SDAs claim Sunday Keeping is Following an **Image of the Beast.** (p.752).
- 10) Most SDAs **Break** the Sabbath they claim to Keep. (p.752).
- 11) Saturday (Sabbath) or Sunday? On Which Day Did **Early Christians Worship?** (p.752).
- 12) **Four Real Reasons** Why SDAs Keep the Sabbath. (p.754).
- 13) **Danger of Sabbath Keeping.** (p.754) i) A Change of the Law. (SDA Objections 1-5). ii) When did Sabbath law commence? iii) Real meaning of the Sabbath. iv) Some were exempt from the Sabbath law. v) How Sabbath should be observed. vi) Danger of Sabbath keeping. vii) Apostles met on first day.
- 14) **Hebrews 4 background** (p760). Three Rests of Hebrews 4 (p761). viii) Does God change His laws?
- 15) **Debate** Between a Christian and an SDA. (p.762-765).
- 16) **SABBATARIAN ARGUMENTS REFUTED** (p.766).
 - 1) **SDA:** 10 Commandments are not in the Old Mosaic Covenant. (p.766).
 - 2) **SDA:** Sabbath day in Colossians 2:16 is not weekly Sabbath, but monthly or yearly Sabbaths. p.767
 - 3) **SDA:** The Sabbath law is a moral law because it is in the 10 Commandments. (p.768).
 - 4) **SDA:** 10 Commandments and Sabbath existed from the Garden of Eden. (p.769).
 - 5) **SDA:** Christ came to fulfil the law, not to destroy it (Matthew 5:17-18). (p.771).
 - 6) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments are for all mankind for all time. (p.772).
 - 7) **SDA:** If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could murder, steal, commit adultery. (p.773)
 - 8) **SDA:** The Royal law of James 2:8-12 is the 10 Commandments law. (p.774).
 - 9) **SDA:** Jesus said “Keep my commandments.” John 14:15. SDA read this as 10 commandments. p.774
 - 10) **SDA:** The NT quotes some of the 10 Commandments proving that all 10 are binding today. p.775
 - 11) **SDA:** The 10 Commandments contain all we need to know about perfect moral living. (p.775).
 - 12) **SDA:** God does not change, therefore neither does His law. (p.776).
 - 13) **SDA:** The Sabbath must be kept today because God blessed it and made it holy. (p.776).
 - 14) **SDA:** The “Lord’s Day” is the Sabbath because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath. (p.778).
 - 15) **SDA:** John foresaw 21st Century Christians keeping the Sabbath day. (Matthew 24:20). (p.778).
 - 16) **SDA:** “The Sabbath was made for man, not man for the Sabbath.” (Mark 2:27). (p.778).
 - 17) **SDA:** The Sabbath is eternal and endures forever, therefore we must keep it today. (p.779).
 - 18) **SDA:** As the Sabbath was a memorial to 6-day creation, this proves Sabbath will last forever. 779
 - 19) **SDA:** Since the Sabbath will be kept in the Millennium (Isaiah 66:23) we should keep it now. 779
 - 20) **SDA:** The Sabbath is God’s special law above all laws. (p.780).
 - 21) **SDA:** The Sabbath is a sign between God and Christians. (p.780).
 - 22) **SDA:** Hebrew 4:9 proves we must keep the Sabbath. ‘There remains therefore a rest to the people of God
 - 23) **SDA:** Sabbath is not nailed to the Cross. HS still refers to Sabbath day after Christ’s death. p.781
 - 24) **SDA:** The Sabbath was not a shadow, because the Sabbath was given before the Fall. (p.781).
 - 25) **SDA:** The Sabbath is the way we know God sanctifies us. Ezekiel 20:12,20; Exodus 31:13. p.781
 - 26) **SDA:** Christ our example kept the Sabbath. (p.781).
 - 27) **SDA:** The disciples kept the Sabbath one day after Christ’s death. (p.782).
 - 28) **SDA:** Paul preaching on a Sabbath after the Cross proves we must keep the Sabbath today. p.782
 - 29) **SDA:** Sunday is worshipping Sun. 30) **SDA:** Ananias, a devout Christian kept 10 Commandments.
 - 31) **SDA:** History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath. (p.783).
 - 32) **SDA:** Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism. (p.783).
 - 33) **SDA:** The Pope changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday. (p.784).
 - 34) **SDA:** Constantine changed Sabbath to Sunday. 35) **SDA:** ‘First day of week’ is mistranslated. p.784
 - 36) **SDA:** Evening meeting in Acts 20:7 was on a Sabbath. (p.785).

113. SEVENTH-DAY ADVENTISM REFUTED

1) Three Basic Positions on The Christian Day of Worship

a) Seventh Day Adventist Position

- i) SDAs claim that Christians kept the Sabbath from 33-320AD, but due to the devil, Christians went into apostasy until Ellen White, the SDA prophetess, claimed to have a vision that the Sabbath law was not nailed to the cross. This is against Colossians 2:14.
- ii) In 1844, the first Adventists (known as Millerites) started keeping the Sabbath day. This was because a Seventh Day Baptist convinced his Methodist Minister that the Bible teaches us to keep the Sabbath.
- iii) Only in the 1800's did God, through Ellen White and the SDA Movement, restore by direct revelation the 'truth' that the day of Christian worship should be Saturday.
- iv) SDAs claim that Christians around 140AD borrowed Sunday worship from the pagan religion of Mithraism.
- v) Gradually, SDAs claim Sunday worship replaced Saturday worship.
- vi) SDAs interpret the "Seal of God" to be "Saturday Sabbath keeping". They claim that the mark of the beast is "Sunday Sabbath keeping", not now, but after some presumed future Sunday keeping law is passed.

b) The Bible's Position (the TRUTH)

- i) The 10 Commandments Law (including the requirement to keep the Sabbath day), along with all the laws of Moses, were abolished at the cross. (2 Cor. 3:7-11; Ephesians 2:15).
- ii) God gave the Old Mosaic Covenant at Mt Sinai through Moses, only to the Jews. The 10 Commandments are the foremost representation of this Old Covenant, which was replaced with the New Covenant, called the "Law of Christ"(Rom8:2; Gal 6:2; ICor9:21)
- iii) 100% of the Old Mosaic Covenant was abolished at the cross. (Col. 2:14; Ephes. 2:15).
- iv) No one before Moses (Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Job) ever heard of the Sabbath Law, nor did they ever keep it ("madest known" Nehem 9:13,14; Deut.5:2,3; Eze.20:12)
- v) The very first time anyone was commanded to keep the Sabbath was in Exodus 16:23-30. Genesis 2:2-3 was written by Moses to tell Jews at Sinai WHY they were to keep the Sabbath, NOT to teach WHEN the Sabbath was instituted.
- vi) The universal meeting day of Christians after Christ's resurrection was Sunday, and so it has been to today (Acts 20:7; I Cor. 16:1,2).
- vii) Sunday is not a Christian Sabbath, or a day of rest to be kept.
It is the day God requires all Christians to meet together to worship God (Acts 20:7) and to provoke each other to love and good works. (Hebrews 10:24,25).
- viii) Christians do not keep the 10 Commandments Law of Moses. This does not mean that Christians are free to steal, murder and commit adultery just because the 10 Commandments are abolished. No! Christians are under a new and better law which is the Law of Christ (Galatians 3:24-25; 6:2; I Corinthians 9:20,21; Romans 8:2; Hebrews 7:12) and a new and better covenant (Hebrews 8:6-13).
- ix) We listen to Christ in all things, as our Head, and not to Moses. This is NT Christianity.
1) Paul said, "If any man think himself to be a prophet, or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the things that I write unto you are the Lord's Commandments." (I Cor. 14:37).
2) Peter quoted Moses, "A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things ...he shall say unto you" Acts 3:22

c) The General Protestant Position (vulnerable to SDA deception).

Protestants generally claim that the meaning of the Sabbath was transferred to Sunday to commemorate Christ's resurrection. They are doing the right thing (commemorating Christ's resurrection) but for the wrong reason (keeping the 4th Commandment).

- i) When Christians wrongly apply the 4th Commandment as the reason why they worship on Sunday, they are 1) Mistaken; 2) Opening themselves to manipulation by SDAs.

- ii) If a Christian justifies Sunday keeping by quoting the fourth Commandment (“Six days shalt thou labour, . . . but the seventh is the Sabbath”), all that an SDA needs to convert him to become an SDA is a **calendar** showing that if Saturday is the 7th day Sabbath, then ask, “Why aren’t you keeping it?”

2) 7 Errors in the “27 Fundamental Beliefs of SDAs”

- a) They deny that man has a **spirit**. “Though created free beings, each person is an indivisible unity of **body, mind and soul**”. (Clause 7: *The Nature of Man*).
Bible refutation: “I pray God your whole **spirit, and soul and body** be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” (I Thessalonians 5:23).
Man’s makeup is spirit, soul (mind, emotions, will) and body. Not as SDAs think: “body, mind and soul.” (Soul = mind, emotions, will).
- b) They claim that the “**SDA church** is the **only true remnant church** that keep God’s commandments.” “The **universal church** (WRONG. Because it has not met yet) is composed of all who truly believe in Christ, but in the last days, a time of widespread apostasy, a **remnant** has been called out to **keep the commandments of God** (WRONG: No-one fully keeps the Commandments) and the faith of Jesus. This **remnant announces the arrival of the judgment hour** (WRONG: because SDAs invent an **Investigative Judgment, saying it is now occurring in heaven.**) This proclamation coincides with the work of judgment in heaven.” (WRONG: because judgment occurs after Christ’s return, not before. See 2 Corinthians 5:10). (Clause 12: *The Remnant and Its Mission*).
- c) They claim **Ellen White** had the spiritual **gift of prophecy**:
“One of the gifts of the Holy Spirit is prophecy.” (WRONG: Prophecy as new revelations from God ceased with the completion of the NT in 96AD. (I Corinthians 13:8-13). “This gift is an identifying mark of the remnant church” (WRONG: No Bible proof), “and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen G White.” (WRONG: She was a false prophet because of her many false prophecies. (Deuteronomy 18:20-22). Joel 2:28,29 is fulfilled AFTER Christ’s 2nd Coming, not before. (Clause 17: *The Gift of Prophecy*).
- d) They claim that **Christians must keep the Jewish Sabbath**: “The beneficent Creator, after six days of Creation, rested on the seventh day and instituted the Sabbath for all people” (WRONG: Only as a sign between God and the Jews – Exodus 31:13) “as a memorial of creation. The fourth commandment of God’s unchangeable law.” (WRONG: Many of God’s laws have changed, eg circumcision, animal sacrifices, etc.) “requires the observance of this seventh day Sabbath. . . . The Sabbath is God’s perpetual sign of His eternal covenant between Him and His people” (WRONG: It is not perpetual because it finished when Christ died. It was only between God and the Jews). “Joyful observance of this holy time is from sunset to sunset.” (Clause 19: *The Sabbath*).
- e) They claim Christ began an **Investigative Judgment in 1844**.
“In 1844 at the end of the prophetic period of 2300 days (error 1) He entered the **second and last phase** of His **atonement** ministry (error 2). It is a work of **investigative judgment** which is part of the ultimate disposition of all **sin** (error 3).
The investigative judgment reveals to heavenly intelligences who among the dead are asleep in Christ and therefore, in Him, are deemed worthy (error 4) to have part in the first resurrection. . . . This judgment vindicates the justice of God in saving those who believe in Jesus. It declares that those who have remained loyal to God (error 5) shall receive the Kingdom.” (Clause 23: *Christ’s Ministry in the Heavenly Sanctuary*).
Error 1 corrected: 2300 days are “days” from 6 September 171BC to 25 December 165 BC (Daniel 8:14) from when Antiochus IV Epiphanes **desecrated** the Temple up to its **cleansing**.
Error 2,3 corrected: Christ’s atonement for our sins was fully completed on the cross. (“we have **now** received the atonement” Romans 5:11). There is no **second phase** of Christ’s atonement. SDAs say that Christ’s sacrifice is insufficient to fully atone or take away our sins
Error 4 corrected: To say who among the dead are “**deemed worthy**” to have part in the first resurrection, is to claim **works** for salvation. 747

Error 5 corrected: To say that only those who remain loyal to God receive the Kingdom, denies Christ's ability to keep us saved. This teaches loss of salvation. Hence NO SDA can be sure of eternal life. God says: "that ye may know that ye have eternal life." (I John 5:13).

f) They claim that **nobody now has eternal life**. "But God, who alone is immortal, will grant eternal life to His redeemed." (Clause 25: *Death and Resurrection*).

Error 6 corrected: "He that has the Son, has life." (present tense NOW). (I John 5:12; 2:25).

g) They deny that believers go to **heaven at death**. They believe in soul sleep: "Until that day, death is an unconscious state for all people." (Clause 25: *Death & Resurrection*).

Error 7 corrected: "The mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of hell." Ezekiel 32:21.

h) They are very confused about the **Millennium**: "The millennium is the 1000 year reign of Christ with His saints in heaven." (WRONG: It is on earth, Zechariah 14:1-5; 8-21) between the first and second resurrections. During this time the wicked dead will be judged." (WRONG: the wicked dead will be judged after the 1000 years – Revelation 20:7-15: "And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison. . .") "the earth will be utterly desolate" (WRONG: "the desert shall rejoice & blossom as the rose" (Isaiah 35:1), "without living human inhabitants" (WRONG: "the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left." Isaiah 24:6).

3) **Thirteen Official SDA Baptismal Vows**

In order to be baptized, SDAs must agree to 13 vows. The ones that are false are:

6. "I accept the 10 Commandments as still binding upon Christians, and it is my purpose by the power of the indwelling Christ, to keep this law, including the 4th Commandment, which requires the observance of the seventh day of the week as the Sabbath of the Lord."

8. "I accept the Biblical teaching of spiritual gifts, and believe that the gift of prophecy is one of the identifying marks of the remnant church."

11. "I know and understand the fundamental Bible principles as taught by the Seventh Day Adventist Church. It is my purpose, by the grace of God, to order my life in harmony with these principles."

13. "I accept that the Seventh Day Adventist Church is the remnant church of Bible prophecy."

4) **SDA Statements that Ellen White was God's Inspired Prophet**

Before 1980, all SDAs viewed Ellen White as an inspired prophet. In 1980, Walter Rea proved and published that 80-90% of her "inspired writings and visions" were plagiarised or copied from James White who copied them from J N Andrews. Now, modern SDA leaders are watering down their church's stand on White's inspiration, saying: "White's writings are not a replacement of the Bible".

Note that Adventists, Mormons and Jehovah's Witnesses share these qualities:

a) All were born in the 1800s; b) All claimed to have direct inspiration from God at their founding; c) All claimed to have the gift or spirit of prophecy.

Consider these SDA claims that White was **God's prophet**:

a) Clause 17 of SDA Creed: "This gift (of prophecy) is an identifying mark of the remnant church and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen G White."

As the Lord's messenger, her writings are a continuing and authoritative source of truth which provide for the church comfort, guidance, instruction and correction."

b) Back cover of The Great Controversy, 1975 edition claims that:

"Ellen G White (1827-1915) . . . is considered to have been inspired by God."

Many of her prophecies about world events and the modern day condition of man have already been dramatically fulfilled."

c) In 1876 she wrote: "In ancient times God spoke to men by the mouth of prophets & apostles. In these days He speaks to them by the Testimonies of His Spirit" (ie White's writings). (EGW, *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 4, p. 147-8, Testimony 27:1876).

d) In 1882 she wrote: "If you lessen the confidence of God's people in the testimonies He has sent them, you are rebelling against God as certainly as were Korah, Dathan and Abiram." (EGW, *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 5, p. 66, Testimony 31, 1882). 748

- e) In 1882 she wrote: “When I was in Colorado . . . I wrote many pages to be read at your camp meeting. God was speaking through clay. I am presenting to you what the Lord has presented to me. They are what God has opened before me in vision – the precious rays of light shining from the throne.” (EGW, *Selected Messages*, Book 1, p 27).

Consider these official SDA statements of **inspiration** for Ellen G White:

- f) SDA *Sabbath School Quarterly*, *Teachers Edition*, p 112, Feb 11, 1978: “The Bible and the writings of Ellen White are **inerrant**.”
- g) Official SDA position, in *The Advent Review and Herald*, 4 Oct 1928: “Her writings should be received the same as were the messages of the prophets of old. As Samuel was a prophet of Israel for his day; as Jeremiah was a prophet of Israel for the days of captivity; as John the Baptist came as a special messenger of the Lord to prepare the way for Christ’s Coming, so we believe that Mrs White was a prophet to the Church of Christ today.”
- h) Louis Venden quoted on the cassette tape, The Wilson Committee, Rea on Ellen G White: “I believe that The Desire of Ages (White’s book), for example, is just as high in quality of degree of inspiration as the Gospel according to Luke.”
- i) Kenneth Wood, Editor of Review, as quoted in RH 4 Sept 1980, p15: “Ellen G White was inspired in the same sense as were the Bible prophets.”
- j) Ron Graybill, Assoc Sec, EGW Estate, in a talk at Southern Missionary College on 27 Sep 80: “The quality of inspiration of Ellen White is equal to that of Bible writers.”
- k) Philip Follett, tape, “What Happened at Glacier View”, PUC, 23 Aug 1980: “The writings of Ellen White are inspired in the same sense as the Bible is inspired.”
- l) Moving Out, Unit 4, p.115: “Ellen received a second vision in which God called her formally to work for Him as a prophet”.

5) **5 Failed Prophecies of Ellen White**

The Bible test of a false prophet is given in Deuteronomy 18:20-22 as follows:

“But the prophet which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak . . . even that prophet shall **die**.” (v.20).

Question: If thou say in thine heart, How shall we know the word which the Lord has not spoken?

Answer: “When a prophet speaketh in the name of the Lord, if the thing **follow not**, nor come to pass, that is the thing which the Lord hath not spoken, but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.” (v.22).

Some of Ellen White’s many false and failed prophecies showing her to be a false prophet are:

- a) White falsely predicted that **some living in 1856 would live to see Christ return**: “I was shown the **company present at the Conference**. Said the angel: “Some food for worms, some subjects of the 7 last plagues, **some will be alive and remain upon the earth to be translated at the coming of Jesus.**”“ Vol. 1, **p.131,132**, *Testimonies for the Church*. This statement was made in 1856 and everyone present in that meeting is now dead. **None lived to see Christ return**. This is clearly a false prophecy. White made no conditions for the fulfilment of this prophecy.
- b) White falsely prophesied that **England would declare war on the USA about the time of the Civil War**: “This nation will yet be humbled into the dust. England is studying whether . . . to make war on her. **When England does declare war**, . . . there will be general war.” *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 1, **p.259**. This was a false prophecy, England did not declare war on the USA during the Civil War, and the USA was not humbled into the dust.
- c) White falsely prophesied in 1850 that **Old Jerusalem would never be built up**. In 1850, Bible scholars were teaching about Jews returning to Palestine and the restoration of Jerusalem. White said, “I also saw that **Old Jerusalem would never be built up**”. *Early Writings*, **p.75** Since Israel’s rebirth in 1948 & the Six Day War of 1967, “Old Jerusalem” has been built up.
- d) White falsely prophesied that **the time for salvation for sinners had passed in July 1844**: “The “**midnight cry**” was finished at the seventh month 1844 (**p.43**),” *Early Writings*, p42-45.
- e) White prophesied the **world would end** in 1843, 1844, 1845, 1851. “the believers explained their mistake and gave reasons why they expected their Lord in 1844.” *Early Writings*. **p.237**.

6) **12 UNBIBLICAL STATEMENTS OF ELLEN WHITE:**

1) White falsely taught that the **Tower of Babel was built before the Flood:**

“The Lord first established the system of sacrificial offerings with Adam after his fall, which he taught to his descendants. This system was corrupted **before the Flood** by those who separated themselves from the faithful followers of God, and engaged in the building of the **Tower of Babel.**” *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p.301, 1864 edition.

This mistake was later taken out of the 1870 edition of *Spirit of Prophecy*, Vol. 1, p 266.

2) White falsely taught that **we should never say we are saved:**

“Those who accept the Saviour, however sincere their conversion, should never be taught to say or to feel that they are saved.” *Christ’s Object Lessons*, p 155. Yet the Bible says, “He that has the Son has life . . . that ye may **know** that ye have eternal life.” (I John 5:12,13).

3) White falsely taught that the **seal of God is the Sabbath:**

“The sign, or seal of God is revealed in the observance of the seventh-day Sabbath.” *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol. 8, **p 117**; and TGC p 640.

But the Bible states that it is the indwelling Holy Spirit:

“after ye believed, ye were **sealed** with that Holy Spirit of promise.” (Ephesians 1:13).

“Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are **sealed**.” (Ephesians 4:30).

“God, who hath sealed us, and given us the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.” (II Cor. 1:21,22).

4) White taught that **there was only one Herod**, who tried Christ and executed James:

“Herod’s heart had grown still harder; and when he heard that Christ had risen, he was not much troubled. He took the life of James.” (*Early Writings*, **p 185,186**).

However, Bible scholars and historians have proven that **Herod Antipas** tried Jesus and that **Herod Agrippa I** executed James the Apostle.

5) White falsely taught that **Satan will bear our sins:** “the scapegoat typified Satan, the author of sin, upon whom the **sins** of the truly penitent **will finally be placed.**” TGC, p 422.

“As the priest, in removing the sins from the sanctuary, confessed them upon the head of the scape goat, so Christ will place all these sins upon Satan, the originator and instigator of sin.” TGC, 485

“Their sins are transferred to the originator of sin.” *Testimonies for the Church*, Vol 5, **p 475**.

The Bible says, “the Lord hath laid on him (Christ) the iniquity of us all.” (Isaiah 53:6).

“Who **his own self bare our sins** in his own body on the tree.” (I Peter 2:24).

6) White falsely taught that **Christ’s Atonement was not finished at the cross:**

“instead of coming to the earth at the termination of the 2300 days in 1844, Christ then entered the most holy place of the heavenly sanctuary to **perform the closing work of the atonement** preparatory to His coming.” TGC, p 422.

But the Bible says: “but now **once** in the end of the world hath he appeared **to put away sin** by the sacrifice of himself.” (Hebrews 9:26). “we have **now** received the **atonement**.” (Romans 5:11).

“after he had offered **one sacrifice** for sins **forever**, sat down on the right hand of God.” (Heb.

10:12). Christ said on the cross, “It is finished.” (John 19:30).

7) White falsely taught that **we can be sinless:**

“Those only who through faith in Christ, obey all of God’s commandments, **will reach a condition of sinlessness** in which Adam lived before his transgression.” *SDA Bible Commentary*, Vol.6,1118

“In order to let Jesus into our hearts, **we must stop sinning.**” *Signs of the Times*, 3 March 1898.

I John 1:8,10 “If we say that **we have no sin**, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.”

8) White falsely taught that a **Christian’s sins** are pardoned, but **not yet forgiven** or **blotted out**.

She taught that one’s eternal destiny will be ultimately determined by weighing a believer’s good works and bad works in the Investigative Judgment. (TGC, p 483):

“All who have truly repented of sin, and by faith claimed the blood of Christ as their atoning sacrifice, have had **pardon** entered against their names in the books of heaven as they have become partakers of the righteousness of Christ, & **their characters** are found to be **in harmony with the law of God**, their sins **will be blotted out**, & they themselves will be **accounted worthy** of eternal life.”

“The work of the investigative judgment and the **blotting out of sin is to be** accomplished **before** the second advent of our Lord.” TGC, p 485.

“In 1844 begin the work of investigation and blotting out of sins.” *Christ in His Sanctuary*, p122. However, the Bible says: “I, even I, am he that blotteth out thy transgressions for mine own sake, and will not remember thy sins.” (Isaiah 43:25).

“I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and as a cloud, thy sins.” (Isaiah 44:22).

“If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.” (I John 1:9).

Note: The Investigative Judgment heresy:

- a) Has never been taught by anyone else in history;
- b) Has no Bible support;
- c) Is the excuse for SDA’s existence as a separate church.

Noted SDA historian and theologian, Leroy E Froom, states that this teaching is the SDA church’s only reason for existence:

“Indeed, if there is ¹no actual Sanctuary in heaven, and ²no ministering Great High Priest serving therein; and ³if there is no judgment hour message to herald from God to mankind at this time, then we have **no justifiable place in the religious world**, no distinctive denominational mission and message, and **no excuse for functioning** as a separate church entity today.” *Movement of Destiny*, p 542 (emphasis added). “Any deviation from (the sanctuary truth) strikes at the heart of Adventism, and challenges its very integrity.” p 542.

9) White falsely claimed that in a vision she heard the day and hour of Christ’s return:

“Soon we heard the voice of God like many waters, which gave us the day and hour of Jesus’ Coming.” *Early Writings*, p 15. Yet the Bible says, “But of that day and hour knoweth no man, nor the angels of heaven, but my Father only.” (Matthew 24:36).

10) White falsely claims that God had to consult others about man’s fall:

She thus suggests that God did not expect it and didn’t know what to do about it.

“The news of man’s fall spread through Heaven – every harp was hushed. . . . A council was held to decide what must be done with the guilty pair.” *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p 44.

11) White falsely claims that Adam kept the Sabbath:

“The Sabbath was observed before the fall. Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God’s command, and ate of the forbidden fruit, they were expelled from Eden; but they observed the Sabbath after their fall.” *Spiritual Gifts*, Vol. 3, p 52.

12) White falsely claims that angels have a gold card:

“There is perfect order and harmony in the Holy City. All the angels that are commissioned to visit the earth hold a golden card, which they present to angels at the gates of the city as they pass in and out.” *Early Writings*, p 39.

7) CONTRADICTIONS OF ELLEN WHITE

a) Deity “did” and “did not” sink and die: “Men need to understand that Deity suffered and sank under the agonies of Calvary.” *Manuscript* 153, 1898 (BC, Vol. 7, p 907).

“The Deity did not sink under the agonizing torture of Calvary.” *Manuscript* 140, 1903, BC, Vol5, 1129

b) There is consciousness after death, and there is no consciousness after death:

“I saw that some were quickly destroyed, while others suffered longer. They were punished according to the deeds done in the body. Some were many days consuming, and just as long as there was a portion of them unconsumed, all the sense of suffering remained.” *Early Writings*, p 294.

“Upon the fundamental error of natural immortality, rests the doctrine of consciousness in death – a doctrine, like eternal torment, opposed to the teaching of the Scriptures, to the dictates of reason, and to our feelings of humanity.” TGC, p 545.

8) Challenge to SDAs: Show us one New Testament verse that:

- a) Quotes the fourth Commandment, OR
- b) Tells Christians to keep the Sabbath holy.

9) SDAS CLAIM SUNDAY KEEPING IS FOLLOWING AN IMAGE OF THE BEAST.

The SDA church's official doctrine is that the Mark of the Beast is received by those who worship on Sunday. Some SDAs don't know the official teaching of their own church.

"False teachings like the immortal soul, Sunday worship, eternal hell fire, etc are all from the Beast. If we choose to worship in a church that follows these teachings, we are simply following an image of the Beast. Because of their wilful decision to follow the Beast, its false teachings and practices, the beast's name is in their forehead and **they are lost**, having **received the Mark of the Beast**."

From *Prophecy Seminar Lesson 18, "The Mark of the Beast and the Seal of God"* from SDA Pastor Leo Schreven's book, *Now That's Clear*.

Leo Schreven is a certified official evangelist for the SDA church. *Now That's Clear* is an official textbook of *It is Written Prophecy Seminars* sponsored by the SDA church.

"The mark of the Beast is the opposite of this – the **observance of the first day of the week**." *Testimonies for the Church*, White, Vol.8, p.117.

10) MOST SDAS BREAK THE SABBATH THEY CLAIM TO KEEP.

God commanded that the Sabbath be kept as follows. Do Sabbatarian (and SDAs) keep all these laws?

	1. Sabbath Law Regulations	2. Meaning Today For Sabbatarians
1	No work to be done (Exodus 31:15).	No shift work or Saturday work. No Police, Fire, Ambulance, Hospital workers.
2	Kindle no fire (Exodus 35:3).	No gas heating in winter. No gas cooking. No starting a motor car (internal combustion).
3	Stay in one place (Exodus 16:29). "abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day."	Park the car and stay at home or in the hotel.
4	Gather no sticks for fuel. (Numbers 15:32).	No putting fuel in the car on Saturday.
5	Buy no goods (Nehemiah 10:31). "We would not buy it of them on the Sabbath."	No eating out on Saturday. No buying a Saturday newspaper. No buying petrol on Saturday.
6	Carry no burdens (Jeremiah 17:21:22) "bear no burdens on the Sabbath day."	No gardening or carrying on Saturday.
7	Strangers within their gates forced to keep these regulations. (Exodus 20:10).	Guests within your house forced to keep these regulations.
8	Death to violators. (Ex 31:15; Num. 15:32-36).	Stone to death other SDAs who break Sabbath.

Question: Did God ever relax ANY of these Sabbath day restrictions? NO!

11) SATURDAY (SABBATH) OR SUNDAY? ON WHICH DAY DID EARLY CHRISTIANS WORSHIP?

1. **74AD** The Letter of Barnabas (15:6-8): "We keep the eighth day (**Sunday**) with joyfulness, the day also on which Jesus rose from the dead."
2. **90AD** The Didache 14: "Every **Lord's Day**...gather yourselves together and break bread."
3. **107AD** Ignatius: "Those... possessing a new hope, **no longer observing the Sabbath**, but living in the observance of the Lord's Day."
(Ignatius, *Epistle to the Magnesians*, Chap 9, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 1, p 62-63).
4. **150AD** Justin: "the Gentiles, who have believed on Him, . . . even although they neither keep the Sabbath, nor are circumcised, nor observe the feasts. Assuredly they shall receive the holy inheritance of God." (*Dialogue with Trypho*, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 1, p 267).
 - **150AD** Justin: "**Sunday** is the day on which we hold our common assembly".
(*First Apology of Justin*, Chap 68).
 - **150AD** Justin: "If there was no need of circumcision before Abraham, or of the observance of Sabbaths, of feasts and sacrifices before Moses; **no more need is there of them now**... after Jesus Christ." (*Dialogue with Trypho*, *Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol.1, 206)
5. **180AD** Acts of Peter: "He (Christ) abolished their Sabbath, fasts and festivals & circumcision." 1.1-2

6. **190AD Clement of Alexandria:** commenting on the 10 Commandments and their Christian meaning: “The seventh day is proclaimed a day of rest, preparing by abstention from evil for the Primal day (first day) our true rest.” (Vol. 7, xvi, 138.1.)
7. **200AD Bardaisan (born 154AD):**
“On one day, the first of the week, we assemble ourselves together.” (*On Fate*) 5.
8. **200AD Tertullian:** “We solemnize the day after Saturday in contradistinction to those who call this day their Sabbath. As the abolition of carnal circumcision & of the old law has been consummated, so also the observance of the Sabbath is shown to have been temporary.” (*Ante-Nicene Fathers*, Vol. 3, p 155). “To us Sabbaths are foreign.” (*On Idolatry*, 14:6).
9. **220AD Origen:** “On Sunday none of the actions of the world should be done. Keep yourself free for spiritual things, go to church, listen to the readings and divine homilies, meditate on heavenly things.” (*Homil. 23 in Numeros 4*, p 12:749).
10. **225AD The Didascalia:** “The Apostles further appointed: On the first day of the week let there be service, and the reading of the Holy Scriptures, and the oblation, because on the first day of the week our Lord rose from the dead.” (*Didascalia 2*).
11. **250AD Cyprian:** “The eighth day, that is the first day after the Sabbath, and the Lord’s Day.” (*Epistle 58*, Section 4).
12. **300AD Victorinus:** “Lest we should appear to observe any Sabbath with the Jews . . . which Sabbath he (Christ) in his body abolished.” (*The Creation of the World*).
13. **300AD Eusebius:** “They did not regard circumcision, nor observe the Sabbath; neither do we because such things as these do not belong to Christians.” *Ecclesiastical History*, Book1, Ch4 “They (early Old Test saints) did not care about circumcision of the body, neither do we (Christians). They did not care about observing Sabbaths, nor do we.” *Church History* 1:4:8
14. **345AD Athanasius:** “The Sabbath was the end of the first creation, and the Lord’s Day was the beginning of the second. He (God) prescribed that they (Jews) should formerly observe the Sabbath as a memorial of the end of the first things, so we honour the Lord’s day as being the memorial of the new creation.” (*On Sabbath and Circumcision* 3).
15. **350AD Cyril of Jerusalem:** “Stand aloof from all observance of Sabbaths.” (*Catechetical Lectures* 4:37).
16. **Encyclopaedia Britannica:** “Sunday, first day of the week; in Christianity, the Lord’s Day, the weekly memorial of Jesus Christ’s resurrection from the dead. The practice of Christians gathering together for worship on Sunday dates back to apostolic times, but details of the actual development of the custom are not clear. Before the end of the first Century AD, the author of Revelation gave the first day its name of the “Lord’s Day” (Revelation 1:10). Saint Justin Martyr (c.100 - c.165), philosopher and defender of the Christian faith, in his writings described the Christians gathered together for worship on the Lord’s Day. The gospels or the Old Testament was read, the presiding minister preached a sermon, and the group prayed together and celebrated the Lord’s Supper. The emperor Constantine (d. 337), a convert to Christianity, introduced the first civil legislation concerning Sunday in 321, when he decreed that all work should cease on Sunday, except that farmers could work if necessary. This law, aimed at providing time for worship, was followed later in the same century and in subsequent centuries by further restrictions on Sunday activities.” (15th edition, vol.11, p392
17. **History of the Christian Church:** “Celebration of the Lord’s Day in memory of the resurrection of Christ dates undoubtedly from the apostolic age. Nothing short of apostolic precedent can account for the universal religious observance in the churches of the second century. There is no dissenting voice. This custom was confirmed by the earliest post-apostolic writers, such as Barnabus, Ignatius and Justin Martyr.” (*Philip Schaff*, vol., p201,2 “The first day was already in the apostolic age designated as “the Lord’s Day.” It appears therefore, from the NT itself, that Sunday was observed as a day of worship, and in special commemoration of the Resurrection, whereby the work of redemption was finished. The universal and uncontradicted Sunday observance in the second century can only be explained by the fact that it has its roots in apostolic practice.” (*Philip Schaff*, vol.1, p478-9).

12) FOUR REAL REASONS WHY SDAS KEEP THE SABBATH

1. SDAs ignore NT verses on Sunday worship. (Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2; John 20:19,26; Romans 14:5,6; and Colossians 2:14. They also ignore Exodus 31:13).

2. SDAs must vow Ellen White as a prophet at their baptism. Having done this, Ellen White and the SDA church become their basis for decision making.

Key: The Word of God becomes a secondary authority only as interpreted by White's "prophecies" and the SDA church. Check SDA Baptismal Vows Number 8,11,13.

3. SDAs must vow to follow the official "27 Fundamental Beliefs" of the SDA Church, clause 17 of which says: "The Gift of Prophecy: One of the gifts of the Holy Spirit, is prophecy.

This gift is an identifying mark of the remnant church and was manifested in the ministry of Ellen White. As the Lord's messenger, her writings are a continuing and authoritative source of truth, which provide for the church comfort, guidance, instruction and correction."

4. SDAs believe (without proof) that Ellen White went to heaven to learn that, contrary to the Bible, the Sabbath law was not nailed to the cross.

a) Ellen White wrote under "inspiration" the following:

"The Lord gave me a view of the heavenly sanctuary. . . . Jesus raised the cover of the ark, and I beheld the tables of stone on which the 10 Commandments were written.

I was amazed as I saw the 4th Commandment with a soft halo of light encircling it.

Said the angel: "It is the only one of the ten which defines the living God"."

(*Life Sketches of Ellen G White*, p 95,96).

b) Also, in *Early Writings of Ellen G White*, p 33 she records under "inspiration":

"But the fourth, the Sabbath commandment, shone above them all, for the Sabbath was set apart to be kept in honour of God's holy name. The Holy Sabbath looked glorious - halo of glory was all around it. I saw that the Sabbath commandment was not nailed to the cross. If it was, the other nine commandments were, and we are at liberty to break them all as well as to break the fourth. I saw that God had not changed the Sabbath, for he never changes. But the pope had changed it from the seventh day to the first day of the week; for he was to change times and laws."

Conclusion: No matter what the Bible says about the Sabbath being nailed to the cross, SDAs won't believe what the Bible says if it contradicts their "inspired prophet" Ellen G White. SDAs prefer to follow White's vision and the SDA church than the Bible.

13) THE DANGER OF SABBATH KEEPING

"Why do you compel the Gentiles to live as do the Jews?" (Galatians 2:14).

SDAs teach that Saturday should be observed as a holy day unto the Lord.

Let us study what the Bible has to say about this.

The word "Sabbath" means "rest." Under Moses' Law, Israel was required to keep the "seventh day" as the "Sabbath of the Lord" (Deuteronomy 5:13,14). By law, the people were required to rest from their normal labour on this day and consecrate the time to the will of God (Numbers 15:32-36). Death by stoning was the penalty if anybody profaned it.

As important as it was to the Jews, seventh day observance has no present claim on Christians.

Instead, the spirit of the law will be fulfilled in our daily lives as we:

- a) continually rest from our own works; that we might,
- b) consecrate our time to God.

Sabbath day observance was part of the Mosaic Covenant which was "done away with" in Christ.

Notice the following about Sabbath keeping:

1. A Change of the Law. God made two main covenants:

- a) The Mosaic Covenant with the nation Israel;
- b) The Abrahamic Covenant with Abraham (Galatians 3:8,9) but confirmed by Christ as the New Covenant (Romans 15:8).

Because the New Covenant replaced the Mosaic Covenant, "there is made of necessity a change also of the law." (Hebrews 7:12). This change involved both the priesthood and seventh day observance.

SDAs admit that the Mosaic Covenant has been taken away.

“He hath made the first (covenant) old.” (Hebrews 8:13). (correct).

SDAs claim that the Mosaic Covenant excludes the 10 Commandments (false), and that the 4th Commandment is therefore still binding today (false).

SDAs claim that Sabbath keeping is essential to salvation (false).

Note: Paul links the first Mosaic Covenant (Hebrews 9:1) with the 10 Commandments describing them as the tables of the covenant. (Hebrews 9:4).

“Then verily the first covenant had also ordinances of divine service, and a worldly sanctuary. For there was a tabernacle made . . . which had the tables of the covenant.” (Hebrews 9:1-4).

The 10 Commandments were the basis of the Mosaic Covenant, which Paul said was “ready to vanish away.” (Hebrews 8:13). This occurred with the Temple’s destruction in 70AD.

Note: Paul’s teaching that the old Mosaic Covenant included the 10 Commandments, is proven by the Law itself: The Lord said unto Moses:

- a) “I have made a covenant with thee and with Israel (v.27). And he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten Commandments.” (Exodus 34:28).
- b) “He wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the 10 Commandments.” Deuteronomy 4:13.

Key: The identification of the “Ten Commandments” with the Mosaic Covenant, which was “done away” (2 Corinthians 3:7,11) in Christ, is fatal to SDA Sabbath keeping.

SDA Objection No.1: They deny this truth by dividing the Mosaic Law into two parts:

- a) The Ceremonial – which they claim was the Law of Moses and was abolished;
- b) The Moral – which they claim was the Law of God and still binding.

Answer: The Bible refutes this by using the terms “law of Moses” and “law of God” interchangeably for both the ceremonial and moral parts of the law. For example:

- a) **Ceremonial:** “He appointed also the King’s portion of his substance for the burnt offerings, for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as it is written in the Law of the Lord.” (II Chronicles 31:3). Here ceremonial offerings, Sabbaths and feasts are part of the Law of the Lord.
- b) **Moral:** “Be very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the Law of Moses . . . that ye not make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them.” (Joshua 23:6,7). Here, serving false gods, which is morally wrong, is part of the Law of Moses.

SDA Objection No.2: SDAs teach that the Law of Moses was written in a book (now abolished), and the Ten Commandments written on stone are still binding.

Answer: Paul refutes this in II Corinthians 3:7-11 by describing the 10 Commandments as being:

- a) the ministration of death; b) written and engraven in stones, and c) glorious, d) done away. “But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious,that which is done away (Mosaic Covenant including the 10 Commandments) was glorious, much more that which remaineth (New Covenant in Christ) is glorious.” II Corinthians 3:11.

Here Paul identifies the 10 Commandments (engraven in stones) with the Mosaic Covenant that was “done away in Christ.”

SDA Objection No.3: Why should the Ten Commandments be described as “the ministration of death” if they teach eternal truths? (such as Commandments 1-3 and 5-10).

Answer: It is because they were set before Israel with the words: “**Cursed** is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.” (Galatians 3:10; Deuter. 27:26). In the Mosaic Covenant, there was no hope of eternal life for anybody who broke any of its laws. The “Law of Christ” (I Corinthians 9:21), also called the “perfect law of liberty” (James 2:8-12) (in contrast to the death-dealing Mosaic Covenant of the 10 Commandments) can release us from sin and death, which the Mosaic Covenant never could. The “Law of Christ” reaffirms 9 out of the 10 Commandments and gives new meaning to the fourth.

SDA Objection No.4: Does this mean that all the 10 Commandments are out-of-date, and we can steal, kill and commit adultery as much as we want?

Answer: No. Nine of the Commandments teach eternal truths that Christ and the Apostles endorsed, but the 4th Commandment was never imposed on the churches. These 9 were expanded and transferred into the Law of Christ. Where does the NT tell Christians in the Church Age to observe the Sabbath? Never!

2. When did the Sabbath Law Commence?

SDA Objection No.5: SDAs claim that the Sabbath Law was given before the Law of Moses, and was known and obeyed from Adam, to Noah, to Abraham and to Moses.

We agree that animal sacrifice was given by God before the Law of Moses.

We agree that circumcision was given by God to Abraham. (Genesis 17:9-14).

But SDAs admit that animal sacrifice and circumcision are not binding on us today.

Answer: The Bible student will not find a Sabbath Law given to man before Moses.

a) True, we read in Genesis 2:3 “God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it; because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made”.

These words do not constitute a command for man to observe this day. Remember that Genesis was written by Moses for the Jewish people, AFTER giving them the Law.

Moses included this explanatory note to explain the significance of the Law he had given to Israel.

Speaking of the Sabbath, God declared:

“It is a sign between Me and the children of Israel forever, for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.” (Exodus 31:17).

b) The evidence shows that it was impossible for the Sabbath law to be practiced before Moses.

God instructed Moses to change the Jewish calendar, making the departure from Egypt

“the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you.” (Exodus 12:2).

From this new date, commenced the Sabbath day observance.

On this point Moses himself needed instruction, which he passed on to the people.

“This is that which the Lord has said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the Lord (23).

Eat that today; for today is a Sabbath unto the Lord: today ye shall not find it in the field.’ Ex16:25

c) **Question to ask SDAs:** If the Sabbath law was so well known, why the need of such instruction to Moses and the Israelites? **Answer:** Because:

i) This was a new law, just then set before Israel for the first time.

Moses said to the people: “See, for that the LORD hath given you the Sabbath, therefore, he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day. So the people rested on the seventh day.” (Exodus 16:29,30).

ii) The Bible plainly declares that God made known “the holy Sabbath . . . by the hand of Moses thy servant” at Mount Sinai: “Thou camest down also upon Mount Sinai . . . and MADEST KNOWN unto them thy holy sabbath . . . by the hand of Moses thy servant.” (Nehemiah 9:13,14).

This passage fixes beyond all doubt the time when the Sabbath was given, or “made known” to man. It was not in Eden, but to Moses on Mount Sinai.

iii) In Numbers 15:32-36 further instruction was given to Moses and Aaron concerning the Sabbath, because “it was not declared what should be done” to the Sabbath breaker who gathered sticks on the Sabbath day. (v.34).

3. The Real Meaning of the Sabbath

The Mosaic Law demanded that on every seventh day, Jews should rest from their labour and devote the day to meditating on the things of God. A true Israelite, however, did not limit his meditation only to the Sabbath day. It was “his delight to meditate in the law of the Lord..day and night” continually (Psalm 1:2). He observed not merely the letter of this law, but the spirit of it. He daily tried to rest from the things of the flesh, and devoted his time to God.

The Sabbath rest was a type, to remind the people of the correct spiritual attitude that should characterize their actions every day. For true Christians, keeping this Sabbath type is not necessary, because in Christ this Sabbath type is done away (2 Corinthians 3:7,11).

Christ gave a **spiritual significance** to aspects of the Mosaic Law:

- a) Instead of **animal sacrifices**, he presented Himself as the “**Lamb of God**” to take away the sin of the world. (John 1:29).
- b) Instead of literal **circumcision**, He set forth the principle of **repudiating the flesh**, a circumcision “that is of the heart, in the **spirit**, and not in the letter.” (Romans 2:28,29).
- c) Instead of **Sabbath keeping**, He taught a **daily rest** from the works of sin, and a daily faith rest and belief in God’s promises. (Hebrews 4:1-11). Christ taught the spiritual significance of the Sabbath when He said, “Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.” Greek: anapauso). (Matthew 11:28).

Greek: “Anapauso” means “Sabbath rest” in the Septuagint.

Christ continuously condemned the Jewish leaders for formalistic Sabbath keeping.

He deliberately allowed His disciples to do what “was not lawful to do upon the Sabbath day”

(Matthew 12:1,2), because He was “Lord even of the Sabbath day.” (Matthew 12:8) and therefore

had power to change its observance.

4. **Some were Exempt from the Sabbath Law**

Jesus showed that some Israelites were exempt from keeping the Sabbath as a day of rest:

- a) For **Priests**, instead of the Sabbath being a day of rest, their work was doubled (Numbers 28:9,10). Jesus asked the Jews, “Have ye not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the **priests** in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless.” (Matthew 12:5).

The priests did not observe the Sabbath. It was no rest to them. Their whole life was devoted to the Lord’s service. Christ’s words apply to true Christians today, who also are priests devoted to the Lord’s work. Peter said, “Ye are a... royal priesthood” (I Peter 2:9) to the Christians of his day.

As New Testament priests, we are exempt from the Sabbath rest, because our whole lives should be dedicated to God’s work **as NT priests**. Those who insist on a rigid Mosaic Law Sabbath keeping, imply that **they exclude themselves** from **Christ’s own priestly class of believers today**.

- b) **Circumcision**. On another occasion, the Lord refuted the Jews’ formal Sabbath keeping, by showing that there were **other laws** (such as **circumcision**) that **took precedence over the Sabbath**. The Law required that on the **eighth day**, a Jewish boy should be **circumcised**. Sometimes the eighth day of a boy’s life fell on the Sabbath day. Here then were two laws: one demanding circumcision work, and the other law of the Sabbath, demanding no work.

Question: Which law was to be broken? Which law was more important?

Answer: The circumcision law was more important than the Sabbath law, because unless a boy was circumcised, he could not keep the law as a covenant member.

Jesus said, “Ye on the Sabbath day, circumcise a man that the law should not be broken.” (John 7:22,23). Since **circumcision is a greater law than the Sabbath**, this forces SDAs to give priority to a **ceremonial law** (circumcision) which they say is obsolete, over the Sabbath law which they say is **moral**.

Question: Why did the circumcision law take precedence over the Sabbath law?

Answer: Circumcision was the sign of the Abrahamic Covenant (Genesis 17:10-14) that was confirmed by Christ (Romans 15:8), whereas the Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant. As the Abrahamic Covenant, confirmed by Christ, superseded the Mosaic Covenant (Hebrews 8:8), so the Law showed circumcision taking precedence over the Sabbath. **One was broken (Sabbath keeping) so that the other might prevail (circumcision)**. This was the case with the two covenants: the Mosaic Covenant was taken away, so that the Abrahamic / New Covenant might prevail. SDAs must realize that if the Sabbath law is still binding, so also is circumcision. But strangely enough SDAs reject circumcision.

5. How the Sabbath Should be Observed

a) Spiritual circumcision is still as binding on a Christian as spiritual Sabbath keeping.

Paul explained the spiritual meaning of circumcision:

“In whom (Christ) also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: buried with him in baptism, wherein ye also are risen with him through faith.....” (Colossians 2:11,12).

Here circumcision is spiritual, not the Jewish cutting rite, but in the cutting off the sins of the flesh, and showing Christ’s righteousness in our new life, of which baptism is the first act of obedience.

b) **Question:** If circumcision has a New Testament spiritual fulfilment, what about the Sabbath?

Answer: Paul showed that the Sabbath was a shadow of something to be revealed in Christ.

“Let no man judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the Sabbath days, which are a shadow of things to come, but the body is of Christ.” (Colossians 2:16,17).

Question: What did the Sabbath shadow reveal or point to?

Answer: “There remaineth therefore a rest (Sabbath meaning in Greek: “Sabbatismos”, not “sabbaton” meaning “sabbath day”) to the people of God. For he that hath entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from His. Let us labour therefore to enter into THAT REST, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.” (Hebrews 4:8-11).

A true follower of Jesus Christ observes the spiritual Sabbath when he daily ceases from his own works and desires. We are exhorted to “labour to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief.” **This is how we should observe the spiritual Sabbath today**. If we live each day as Christ would have us to, believing His promises, each day will be holy to the Lord.

We will enjoy a daily pilgrimage which will be revealed in a denial of the flesh and of service to God.

6. The Danger of Sabbath Keeping

Insisting that we must observe the Sabbath day as Jews did, turns our minds away from the spiritual lessons it was meant to teach us. The first heresy introduced into Christian churches was an attempt to super-impose the Jewish law onto Christianity. These heretics taught that:

a) “Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved.” (Acts 15:1,5).

b) “It was needful to command them (Gentiles) to keep the law of Moses.” (Acts 15:5).

This heresy was strongly rejected by the Apostles. They instructed Gentile believers:

“We have heard that certain...have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, Ye must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” (Acts 15:24).

The Apostles advised the Gentile believers in Acts 15:29 to:

a) abstain from meats offered to idols;

b) abstain from blood;

c) abstain from things strangled;

d) abstain from fornication.

Q: Why did the Apostles say nothing about commanding Gentile believers to observe the Sabbath? 29

Answer: Because the law was “fulfilled” by Christ & the Sabbath, being a part of the Mosaic Law, was done away with. “Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believes.” Rm10:4
“If ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.” (Galatians 5:18).

Note: Paul taught that observance of one day above another was a matter for individual preference:

“One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.” (Romans 14:5).

The Jewish Christians wished to continue observing the Sabbath.

There was no harm in this, so long as:

a) They did not try to impose Sabbath restrictions on their fellow Gentile believers; or

b) They did not assume that their seventh day observance permitted them to avoid regular meetings established by the Apostles. (Acts 2:42).

It seems that some Jewish Christians were doing this, and elevating the Sabbath above the first day meeting established by Christ. This may have prompted Paul to rebuke the Hebrews to “Forsake not the assembling of yourselves together as the manner of some is.” (Hebrews 10:25).

It was the idea of adding the Mosaic Law with its Sabbath keeping to the Gospel of faith in Christ, that started the Galatian apostasy rebuked by Paul:

“Ye observe days, and months, and times, and years. I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.” (Galatians 4:10,11).

The “days” referred to the Jewish Sabbath, which some Jewish Christians were trying to introduce.

Paul told the Christians at Rome that they were free to set aside a day to God, so long as they didn’t go beyond that by:

- a) Demanding that **all** Christians should keep the Sabbath or Mosaic Laws, or
 - b) Teaching that Sabbath keeping and Mosaic Law keeping were **essential to salvation**.
- Paul’s sharp rebuke applies to both first century sabbatarians, and to modern SDAs.

7. The Apostles Met Together on the First Day

First century Christians met on the **first day** of the week (Sunday), not the 7th day (Saturday):

- a) “Upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread.” Acts 20:7.
- b) “Concerning the collection for the saints . . . upon the first day of the week let every one lay by him in store . . . that there be no gatherings when I come.” (I Corinthians 16:2).

This first day worship is fatal to SDA’s Sabbath worship claim.

First day worship was to commemorate the day that Jesus rose from the grave. (John 20:1).

Question: What did the Apostles do on the seventh day?

Answer: They attended the synagogue to proclaim the risen Christ as Saviour to the Jews:

- a) “They came to Antioch in Pisidia, and went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day.” Acts 13:14.
- b) “They came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews: And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three Sabbath days reasoned with them.” (Acts 17:1,2).
- c) “Paul came to Corinth, . . . And he reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath. . . .” (Acts 18:1,4).
- d) “Paul . . . came to Ephesus . . . and he went into the synagogue, and spake boldly for the space of three months . . .” (Acts 19:1,8).

Key Question: Since the seventh day was given over to disputing with the Jews in the synagogue, on what day did the Apostles meet with believers for the Lord’s Supper?

Answer: On the first day of the week.

Note: SDAs have completely **reversed** the Apostles’ custom:

- a) The Apostles used the seventh day rest by Jews to proclaim Christ to them.
On the first day they gathered with believers to remember the Lord and enjoy the Lord’s Supper.
- b) SDAs meet on the seventh day to strengthen each other in their beliefs.
They use the first day to proclaim their message to the world.

SDA Objection:

SDAs claim that Sunday worship came from Roman Catholicism when Constantine, the Roman Emperor, in 328AD passed a law commanding that the first day of the week should be kept as a holy day for all Christians.

Answer: In teaching this, they are either ignorant of history, or prejudice has blinded them to the facts:

- a) Why was there **no protest** in 328AD to this supposed change by Constantine?
Because Christians had been keeping Sunday ever since the Apostles.
- b) The early church writers (over 15) clearly show that since the Apostles, Christians always and only met on Sunday. For example:
 - i) **Ignatius**, a disciple of John (100AD): “Those have come to newness of confidence, no longer keeping Sabbaths, but living according to the Lord’s day.”
 - ii) **Justin Martyr** (140AD): “Sunday is the day on which we all hold our common assembly.”

Hence, Sunday assembling dates back to Apostolic times, and was not instituted by Constantine, but he merely confirmed an existing practice.

8. Does God Change His Laws?

SDA Objection: SDAs claim that God does not change His laws, and that having laid down the Sabbath law, it is still binding today.

Answer: God has changed, removed or given new meaning to many of His laws, such as:

- a) The law of **circumcision** has been changed;
 - b) He commanded **animal sacrifices** shortly after creation;
 - c) He commanded **yearly worship at the Temple of Jerusalem**. (Exodus 34:21-23).
- As these laws have been changed or given a new meaning, so has the Sabbath law.

Conclusion:

- a) “The law was our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ, that we might be justified by faith. But after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster.” (Galatians 3:24-25).
- b) Now that Christ has come, “What purpose is the law?”
Answer: “Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, TILL the seed (Christ) should come . . .” (Galatians 3:19).
- c) Christ having come, has delivered us from the curse of the law (Galatians 3:13), and has brought us under his own glorious law (“not being without law to God, but under the law to Christ.”) (I Corinthians 9:21).
- d) This “law of Christ” demands of us:
 - i) “This is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and
 - ii) love one another, as he gave us commandment.” (I John 3:23).

14. BACKGROUND OF HEBREWS 4:

Israel’s Exodus and Unbelief in the Wilderness

Hebrews 4 explains the danger of doubting and disbelieving God’s Word, because of a hard heart that is insensitive to God’s Word and work.

Four spiritual lessons are seen in Israel’s journey to Canaan:

- 1) Israel’s **bondage in Egypt** illustrates a **sinner’s bondage to Satan** and to this world.
- 2) Israel’s **deliverance from Egypt** by the blood of lambs and by God’s power illustrates a sinner being **saved** from sin by the **blood of the “Lamb of God.”**
- 3) Israel’s **refusal to enter Canaan** because they doubted God’s promises (Numbers 13,14) illustrates some Christians missing God’s best because they **refuse to walk by faith in God’s promises**.
- 4) Israel’s **entry to Canaan** by crossing the Jordan, illustrates a believer dying to self and the world (Romans 6), and living by God’s promises and **claiming spiritual victories** and inheritance in Christ (Ephesians 1:3,11,8-23).

Now we can understand what the wilderness wanderings represent.

Key: They illustrate the experiences of believers who will not claim their spiritual inheritance in Christ, who doubt God’s Word, and live in restless unbelief. They don’t enjoy God’s best blessings. They are “out of Egypt”, but not yet “in Canaan”.

The word “rest” is mentioned in Hebrews 3:11,18; 4:1,3-5,8-11.

Two OT rests stated here are: first, the rest of **salvation**; then secondly the rest of **submission**.

SDA Objection: SDAs say that “**rest**” (Greek: sabbatismos) in Hebrew 4:9 means “keeping of a Sabbath” and that this proves we must keep the Saturday Sabbath.

“There remaineth therefore a **rest** to the people of God.” (Hebrews 4:9).

Answer: The word “rest” (Greek sabbatismos) in Hebrews 4:9 meaning “keeping of a Sabbath” is different from the Greek word for “Sabbath” being “sabbaton.”

This word “sabbatismos” occurs nowhere else in the New Testament.

“Sabbatismos” differs from the word “Sabbath” or Greek word “sabbaton” as follows:

	“Sabbaton” (Sabbath)	“Sabbatismos” (rest)
1	The time – sabbath day	The keeping or observance of it, the festival
2		It means a resting, heaven, a place of eternal rest with God

Key: “Sabbatismos” cannot mean the seventh day sabbath, because the writer would have used the usual word for “sabbath” which is “sabbaton.” 760

THREE RESTS OF HEBREWS 4

The wilderness wanderings represent the experiences of believers who will not claim their spiritual inheritance in Christ, who doubt God's Word, and who live in restless unbelief.

Hebrews mentions **three rests**: two in the Old Testament; one in the New Testament:

1. God's Sabbath Rest, when He ceased from His creation activities (Genesis 2:2; Hebrews 4:4).

"God did rest the seventh day from all His works." (Hebrews 4:4). (**Salvation rest**).

This Sabbath rest is a picture of our rest in Christ through **salvation** as we cease trusting our works to save us: "For we which have **believed** do enter into **rest**." (*katapausin*) (Hebrews 4:3).

"Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you **rest**." (*anapauso*) (Matthew 11:28).

When we come to Christ by faith, we find **salvation rest**. (Matthew 11:28).

This is "**peace with God**." (Romans 5:1).

2. Israel's Rest in Canaan (Deuteronomy 12:9, Joshua 21:43-45; Hebrews 3:11). "I was grieved with that generation ..so I swore in my wrath, they shall not enter into my rest." (Hebrews 3:10,11).

This Canaan rest is a picture of our present rest as we **claim our inheritance in Christ through faith in God's Word** as emphasised in Hebrews 4:11-13. It is living the faith-rest life by believing and resting in the promises in God's Word to handle all situations of life. It is the rest of **submission**.

"Let us labour therefore to enter into that **rest** (*katapausin*) lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief. For the Word of God is . . ." (Hebrews 4:11-13).

The Canaan rest for Israel is a picture of the spiritual rest we find in Christ when we surrender to Him. When we yield to Christ, learn of Him and obey Him by faith, we enjoy **submission rest**.

(Matthew 11:29-30).

"Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find **rest** (*anapausin*) unto your souls." (Matthew 11:29,30).

This is the "**peace of God**" in Philippians 4:6-8 "which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus."

Note: It is by **believing** in Christ for salvation that we enter into rest. (Hebrews 4:3).

It is by **submitting** to God in obedience and faith, and by surrendering to His will that God's rest enters into us.

3. The Future Rest: (*sabbatismos*⁴⁵²⁰) that all believers will enjoy with God. (**Eternal rest**).

"There remaineth, therefore, a **rest** to the people of God." (Hebrews 4:9).

The Greek word for "**rest**" here is "*sabbatismos*", meaning "a keeping of a Sabbath."

This is the **only place** it occurs in the New Testament.

It is definitely not referring to the weekly Sabbath because this word is "*sabbaton*" in Greek.

When believers enter heaven, it will be a sharing of God's great eternal Sabbath rest, when all our labours and battles are ended:

"Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth . . . that they may **rest** (*anapausontai*) from their labours; and their works do follow them." (Revelation 14:13).

Hence the "*sabbatismos*" **rest** (Hebrews 4:9) is a "Sabbath keeping" used here to indicate the continual Sabbath-rest believers enjoy with the Father and the Son in the **New Covenant**, in contrast to the weekly Sabbath under the Mosaic Law Covenant.

It is a divine rest that believers enter in their relationship with God **on earth** and in **eternity future**.

Key: This is the rest believers will enjoy with God forever when **our earthly work is finished**.

Therefore, the weekly Sabbath (*sabbaton*) is a symbol of that **eternal rest** (*sabbatismos*) we will enjoy at the **completion of God's work** and **our work**.

(Source: *The Complete NT Word Study Dictionary*, S.Zodhiates, p.1268-70, "sabbatismos" 4520).

15. DEBATE BETWEEN A CHRISTIAN AND AN SDA THAT:

“The New Testament teaches that the first day of the week (Sunday) as a day of worship is enforced upon God’s people in the church age.”

Christian 1: Jesus nailed the Old Mosaic Law to the cross (Colossians 2:14). I do not believe that God changed the Sabbath from the seventh day to the first day. Sunday was never a Sabbath. It is simply the day of worship appointed by God for Christians in the Church Age.

Allow me to clarify what the issue is NOT:

- 1) It is not whether Jesus observed the Sabbath. I agree that He did, because He lived under the Old Mosaic Law.
- 2) It is not whether Paul preached on the Sabbath. Showing that someone preached on a particular day does not prove that this is the day that God wants His people to assemble for worship.
- 3) It is not whether Old Testament Jews observed the Sabbath. I agree that they did.
The issue is whether the NT tells us that WE should observe the Sabbath day in this Church Age.
- 4) It is not whether we are under “law” today. I agree that Christians are under God’s law.

Question: **But which law are they under?**

Answer: I contend that Christians are under **Christ’s law**, not the law of Moses in any way whatsoever.

My **first argument** in defence of Sunday worship is found in I Corinthians 16:1,2.

Note here that the Corinthians were commanded to give on the “first day of the week”.

The Greek indicates that Paul is saying that they should give on “the first day of every week.”

Question 1: Why would Paul instruct the Corinthians to give offerings on the first day of every week, unless the first day was to be devoted to God?

Question 2: If SDAs could find a Bible verse which says that Christians should take up a collection on the Sabbath day, would they use it as an argument to prove Sabbath day worship? Yes, surely. Would you use this? But Paul tells us to give on Sundays.

Question 3:

- a) Is giving to the church an act of worship? Yes.
- b) Could giving be done on Saturdays? If yes, then:
- c) Why did Paul give specific orders for giving to be done on the “first day of the week”?

(**Answer:** Because that was the only day the church met, and this proves that Sunday worship was commanded by Paul.)

“Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come.” (I Corinthians 16:1,2).

Notice this Sunday offering command of Paul’s was an “ORDER.”

Paul had also given this same order to all the churches of Galatia (16:1).

Paul said that which he wrote were the “Commandments of God.” (I Corinthians 14:37).

There is only one day on which the NT commands Christians to give offerings, and that is Sunday, “the first day of the week.”

Question 4:

- a) SDAs, do you lay by in store on the first day of every week?
- b) Upon which day of the week do SDAs give to their church?

Answer: According to the *SDA Manual*, it is done on the seventh day of the week (p.108, 1951 edition).

- c) By what authority does the SDA church do this? Is there some passage I have overlooked which commands offerings to be made on the 7th day, Saturday? The SDA church gives offerings on the last day of the week. Paul said to give on the first day of the week.
The SDA church has missed the day of worship by six days.
- d) *The SDA Manual* says that: “The offering is a vital part of the worship hour.” (p 102).

Note: If the offering is a part of worship, and if the offering was on Sunday, then worship also took place on Sunday.

- e) **Question:** Which will you deny: the inspired pen of Paul, or the *SDA Manual*?

SDA Objection 1: Paul is not discussing a public offering when the church assembled, but he is commanding a laying by in store at home, may be in cookie jars.

Answer: Paul said he wanted them to give, so that there would be no collections when he came. The SDA objection is false, because, if they were storing up their offerings at home, then, when Paul came, the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes.

This would disobey Paul's command. Only if people gave weekly into a central treasury, would it be possible to obey Paul's command of "no gatherings when I come." (I Corinthians 16:2).

Summary of I Corinthians 16:1,2:

- 1) Paul gave 'ORDERS' that a collection should be made on the first day of every week (Sunday).
- 2) Offerings are a part of worship.
- 3) Hence worship must take place on the first day of the week, Sunday not Saturday.

Christian 2: Mr SDA, you may say that Paul commanded this giving at home so that there would be an efficient collection when he arrived.

Question: Did you read what Paul said? Paul ordered them to lay by in store so that there would be NO COLLECTIONS when he came. You are saying that Paul ordered this so that there WOULD be a collection when he came.

If I Corinthians 16:1-3 is instructing them to lay by in store AT HOME, then there would be a collection when Paul came, because the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes. Since Paul wants NO COLLECTIONS when he came, it is obviously talking about an offering into one central treasury on each Sunday. This necessitated that they come together to give their offerings.

Conclusion: This proves that 1st Century Christians met on the first day of the week to give their offerings into one central treasury. Therefore, if giving is worship (as the *SDA Manual* teaches) and giving took place on Sundays, then meeting to worship took place on Sundays.

(If giving = worship, and giving is on Sundays, then worship was on Sundays).

SDA Objection 2: In "lay by him in store", the word "storing up" (Greek: *thesaurizon*) refers to people laying money aside "in each individual house until Paul came for it." **Answer:**

a) Malachi 3:10 proves that "storing up" was by weekly offerings into a central treasury. "Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house . . ." "Storehouse" is here defined as 'to store, lay up' (verb) or 'treasure, treasury, storehouse' (noun form) (*Theological Wordbook of OT*, 1:68). This is an exact parallel to Paul's usage in I Corinthians 16:2. The Jews of Malachi's time were to store up in one central "treasury" (ie: God's house or temple). This was NOT a storing up at home, but in the temple treasury.

b) II Corinthians 8,9 and I Corinthians 16:1-2 discuss the same collection.

The *SDA Church Manual* uses II Corinthians 8,9 to prove regular contributions to the church (p 34, 181) which is a "vital part of worship." (p 108).

If II Corinthians 8,9 and I Corinthians 16:1-2 refer to the same offerings, and if 2 Corinthians 8,9 is an act of worship, then the I Corinthians 16:1,2 offering also refers to worship.

This day of worship is ordered to be on Sunday, the first day of the week.

SDA Objection 3: Some SDAs claim that "by him" in "every one of you lay by him" means giving "at home by himself." Let us see what the passage really says:

- 1) "Upon the first day of the week" = Sunday. (Greek: $\mu\alpha\nu$ = one (3391)).
- 2) "Let every one of you" = giving was the common and universal duty of all believers, be they rich or poor.
- 3) "lay by him" = "by himself" means that each person should decide to give a certain portion of money, when he is at home alone by himself, when he can calmly look at how God has prospered him. Let him decide how much to give, away from the influence of emotional appeals, or group pressure, or for public display, but prayerfully between him & God at home.
- 4) "in store" = each give a designated amount into the common storehouse treasury each Sunday.
- 5) "as God hath prospered him" = according to his wealth.
- 6) "that there be no gatherings when I come" = give this money each Sunday, so it won't need to be collected off them when Paul comes. This proves that they didn't store it up at home, then give when Paul came.

The only way “the first day of the week” could apply to EVERY person in EVERY church would be because Paul knew that Sunday was the day when EVERY person in EVERY church assembled together to worship God. “As I have given **order** to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye.” I Cor 16:1. **SDA Objection 4:** If Paul promoted Sunday keeping, why was there **no controversy** or **protest** between Paul and his Jerusalem brethren over Paul’s abandonment of the Sabbath?

Answer: There was some controversy over the abandonment of the Sabbath by the Jews, as seen in “let no man therefore judge you in..Sabbath days, which are a shadow of things to come.” (Colossians 2:16,17). Paul is saying, “Don’t let people judge you for not keeping Sabbath days, because the Sabbath is a shadow. You have been freed from observing the Mosaic law, now that you are under the law of Christ.

Questions to ask SDAs:

Question 1: If Christians must keep the Sabbath, why do we have **no example in the NT** where any church ever assembled on the Sabbath for worship? If there is such a case, please show me. You know that the Bible teaches by: a) direct command; b) example; c) implication.

You won’t allow God to teach us by the example of the churches at **Troas, Galatia, Jerusalem and Corinth** that God endorses Sunday worship (Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2; John 20:19,26). You try to put God in a box when you demand a direct statement for Sunday keeping, yet you ignore the example of four churches that met for Sunday worship.

Question 2: If you found a NT passage which read like this: “Upon the seventh day of the week, let every one of you lay by him in store”, would you use this as proof of Sabbath day worship? SDAs would love to find such a passage. Sunday is the only day on which the NT orders the giving of money.

Question 3: Do you give money to the SDA church on Sunday, the first day of the week? No.

Question 4: On which day of the week do SDAs give to their church? Saturday.

Question 5: By what authority does the SDA church give on the 7th day of the week (Saturday)? Paul gave these “orders” to the Galatian churches as well as to the Corinthian church. I Corinthians was written to all Christians (1:2).

Question 6: How can this offering be a collection at people’s homes, when Paul clearly said that he wanted them to give each Sunday, so there would be **no collections when he came?** If offerings were stored at people’s homes, wouldn’t they need to be collected when Paul came? Wouldn’t this break his command of “no gatherings when I come”?

Question 7: Is giving to the church an act of worship? Yes.

What day did this take place? Sunday.

Then doesn’t this mean that Christians should meet for worship on Sunday as Paul commanded?

Question 8: Why did Paul command them to give on Sundays?

Because that was the day when the first Century churches met for worship.

Christian 3: SDA Objection 5:

Colossians 2:14 states that the Mosaic law was nailed to the cross.

“Blotting out the handwriting of **ordinances** that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.” (Colossians 2:14).

SDAs dispute that “**ordinances**” means “**Mosaic commandments**.”

Instead, they claim it refers to the “written record of our sins”, because they claim that neither the word “law” nor its concept are found in Colossians.

Answer: The immediate and remote context show that Paul is discussing the Mosaic law in Col. 2:14.

- a) The immediate context mentions elements of the Mosaic law such as circumcision and uncircumcision (Colossians 2:11-13). It mentions “festivals”, “new moons”, “Sabbaths” Col.2:16.
- “Let no man judge you in **meat** or in **drink**.” Jewish teachers tried to bind Mosaic laws on them.
 - “or in respect of an **holyday**.” Holyday is a Jewish feast or festival. No one had a right to impose Jewish feast observance on Christians, or to condemn them if they did not keep them. They had been delivered from that obligation by Christ’s death.

- “or of the **new moon**”: on the appearance of the new moon, Israel was required to offer to God 2 bullocks, 1 ram, 7 sheep and 1 meat offering (Numbers 10:10; 28:11-14), as well as the daily sacrifices. The new moon in the beginning of the month Tisri (October) was the beginning of the Jewish Civil year, and was commanded to be observed as a festival. (Leviticus 23:24,25).
 - “or of **Sabbath days**”. The word “Sabbath” in the OT, is applied not only to the seventh day, but to all the days of holy rest & festivals observed by Jews. This sounds like Law of Moses language.
- b) He says “festivals”, “new moons”, “**Sabbaths**” (2:16) which are a “**shadow** of things to come” (2:17). **Note**: “**Shadow**” is used two other times in the book of Hebrews, and in each case it refers to the Law of Moses.
- i) Hebrews 8:5 “every high priest is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices . . . who serve unto the example and **shadow** of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God.”
 - ii) **Hebrews 10:1** “For the **law** having a **shadow** of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices make the comers thereunto perfect.” Therefore the immediate context of Colossians 2:14 shows that Paul is discussing the Law of Moses being nailed to the cross.
 - c) The **remote** context shows that Colossians 2:14 speaks of the **Law of Moses** being nailed to the cross. Ephesians 2:15 states that what was “**abolished in his flesh**” was the “**law of commandments**”, which clearly refers to the **Law of Moses** (Romans 7:8-13). “Having **abolished in his flesh** the enmity, even the **law of commandments** contained in **ordinances**.” (Ephesians 2:15). Here in Ephesians 2:15 the “Law of Moses commandments’ is referred to as “ordinances”, which is the same word “ordinances” used in Colossians 2:14. “Ordinances” means “decree, edict, law”. The “enmity” means that Jesus Christ by His blood sacrifice has removed the enmity between Jews and Gentiles, as well as between the sinner and God, thus removing all obstacles to reconciliation between God and man.

In Colossians 2:14, Paul discusses both the **law** and the **penalty of the law** being **nailed to the cross**. The theme of this section is that Christians “are “complete” in him. (Colossians 2:10).

Jesus Christ is all that we need to:

- 1) be **saved** from sin and be justified in God’s sight;
- 2) have **wisdom** to guide us;
- 3) give us **grace** to sustain us in trials and to fulfil our duties in life.

People need not go back to the Law of Moses, because Christ has nailed it to the cross. Therefore, why do we allow people to tell us we should observe Jewish festivals, new moons or Sabbaths?

We are no longer under Moses’ laws, but under the law of Christ.

Jesus said in Matthew 5:17,18 “Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil . . . Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law till all be fulfilled”.

- This means that the Law of Moses would last **up until** its fulfilment. Christ fulfilled the law of Moses, therefore it has passed away.
- Christianity was not a continuation of Judaism. Jeremiah says, “Behold the days come, saith the Lord, that I will make a **new covenant** with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: **not according to the covenant** that I **made** with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt.” (Jeremiah 31:31,32).

Question: Which covenant did God make with Israel when He led them out of Egypt?

Answer: I Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save the **two tables of stone**, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the Lord **made a covenant** with the children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt”. The **10 Commandments** were **part** of the **Mosaic covenant**.

Key: Jeremiah says that the new covenant would be “**NOT according**” to the **Mosaic Covenant**. Hebrews 8:7-13 clearly shows that Jeremiah 31:31-34 has been fulfilled in the first century. Hebrews 8:13 says that the Old Mosaic Covenant, which includes the 10 Commandments, were made obsolete. “A new covenant, he hath made the **first old**. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is **ready to vanish away**.” Just as **British laws**’ control over Australia and USA **ceased** at Independence, so **Moses’ laws** control over mankind **ceased** when Christ fulfilled them on the cross.

16. SABBATARIAN ARGUMENTS REFUTED

1) True Proposition	SDA Argument
10 Commandments are in the old covenant.	10 Commandments are not in the old covenant
The 10 Commandments & the entire old covenant were all abolished when Christ died on the cross.	SDAs say, “The old covenant that was abolished was <u>not</u> the 10 Commandments, and the 10 Commandments are still binding.”

I. The following verses teach the above true proposition:

- a) Hebrews 9:1,4 “Then verily the first covenant had . . . the tables of the covenant”.
- b) Deuteronomy 4:13 “And he declared unto you his covenant, which he commanded you to perform, even ten commandments; and he wrote them upon two tables of stone.”
- c) Deuteronomy 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant which the Lord made with you . . .”
- d) I Kings 8:9,21 “There was nothing in the ark save the two tables of stone, which Moses put there at Horeb, when the Lord made a covenant with the children of Israel . . .” (v 9).
“I have set there a place for the ark, wherein is the covenant of the Lord, which he made with our fathers.” (v 21).
- e) II Chronicles 6:11 “in it I have put the ark, wherein is the covenant of the Lord, that he made with the children of Israel.”
- f) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.”
Since the 10 Commandments are in the ark, and the covenant is in the ark, this equates the 10 Commandments with the old covenant.

II. The Old Covenant at Sinai included these parts:

- 1) Ark of the covenant: “the tribe of Levi, to bear the ark of the covenant of the Lord.” (Deut. 10:8).
- 2) Tables of the covenant: “to receive the tables of stone, even the tables of the covenant.” Deut.9:9
- 3) Book of the covenant: “keep the passover...as it is written in the book of this covenant.” (II Kings 23:21; Exodus 24:7).
- 4) Curses of the covenant: “according to all the curses of the covenant . . .” (Deuteronomy 29:21).
- 5) Blood of the covenant: “Behold the blood of the covenant, which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words.” (Exodus 24:8).

These were all abolished at the cross, including the tablets of stone, the Ten Commandments.

III. The Old Covenant that was abolished is called:

- 1) **The First Covenant** (Hebrews 8:7).
- 2) **The Old Testament** (II Cor. 3:14) “the old testament; which vail is done away in Christ.”
- 3) **The Law** (Galatians 3:17) “the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was 430 years after, cannot disannul that it should make the promise of none effect.” This means, the Mosaic law cannot disannul the Abrahamic Covenant.
- 4) **The Middle wall of partition**. ‘has broken down the middle wall of partition between us’ Eph2:14
- 5) **The enmity**. “Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments.’ Eph 2:15
- 6) **The law of commandments** (Ephesians 2:15).
- 7) **The handwriting of ordinances** (Colossians 2:14) “Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.”
- 8) **The shadow of things to come** (Colossians 2:17).
- 9) **The yoke of bondage** (Galatians 5:1) “be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage.”
- 10) **The ministration of death** (II Corinthians 3:7).
- 11) **The ministration of condemnation** (II Corinthians 3:9).
- 12) **Mount Sinai** (Galatians 4:25) “which gendereth to bondage.”
- 13) **The Ten Commandments** (Exodus 34:28) “the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.”
- 14) **The Law of Moses**.

- IV. The **New Covenant** that replaced the Old Covenant is called:
- 1) **The New Testament** (Mark 14:24) “This is my blood of the new testament..”
 - 2) **The Better Covenant** (Hebrews 8:6) “he is the mediator of a better covenant.”
 - 3) **The New Covenant** (Hebrews 8:8) “I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel.”
 - 4) **The Second Covenant** (Hebrews 8:7) “if that first covenant had been faultless, then should no place have been sought for the second.”
 - 5) **The Everlasting Covenant** (Hebrews 13:20) “the blood of the everlasting covenant.”
 - 6) **The Law of Faith** (Romans 3:27) “By what law? Of works? Nay; but by the law of faith.”
 - 7) **The Faith** (Galatians 3:23) “But before faith came, we were kept under the law, shut up unto the faith which should afterwards be revealed.”
 - 8) **A Covenant of Peace** (Ezekiel 34:25) “I will make with them a covenant of peace . . .”

2) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Colossians 2:14-16 shows that the weekly Sabbath day <u>is</u> taken away and nailed to the cross.	The Sabbath day in Colossians 2:16 is <u>not</u> the weekly Sabbath day, but the monthly or yearly Sabbaths.

Answer: The **Sabbath day** in Colossians 2:16 **is** the weekly Sabbath that was **nailed to the cross** because **I. The “handwriting of ordinances”** in Colossians 2:14 refers to the **10 Commandments**, including the **Sabbath day** because “**contrary to us**” here means the same as “**ministration of death**” in 2Cor 3:7

Colossians 2:14	II Corinthians 3:7
“Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances (10 Commandments), that was against us, which was contrary to us , and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross.”	“But if the ministration of death , written and graven in stones (10 Commandments) was glorious .”

SDAs have overlooked the fact that the 10 Commandments were called a “ministration of death.”

Question: What is the difference between “**contrary to us**” and “**ministration of death**”?

Answer: They mean essentially the **same thing**: “**contrary**” in Greek means “an adversary opposed against us.” (5227 in Strong’s Concordance).

II. The **Year, Month, Day progression** in **Colossians 2:16** proves it is a seventh day Sabbath

because of similar expressions used elsewhere which also mean seventh day Sabbath, as seen below:

Weekly Sabbath Day in Colossians 2:16 is nailed to the cross				
	Yearly	Monthly	Weekly	
Colossians 2:16	Holy day	New moon	Sabbath days	“Let no man judge you . . . in respect of an <u>holyday</u> (yearly) or of the <u>new moon</u> or of the <u>Sabbath days</u> .”
Galatians 4:10	Years	Months	Days	“Ye observe <u>days</u> , <u>months</u> & <u>times</u> & <u>years</u> ”
I Chronicles 23:31	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“to offer all burnt sacrifices..in the <u>Sabbaths</u> , in the <u>new moons</u> , and on the set <u>feasts</u> .”
II Chronicles 31:3	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“burnt offerings for the <u>Sabbaths</u> , the <u>new moons</u> , and the set <u>feasts</u> . . .”
II Chronicles 2:4	Solemn feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“for the burnt offerings morning & evening, on the <u>Sabbaths</u> , and on the <u>new moons</u> , and on the <u>solemn</u> feasts of the Lord our God.”
II Chronicles 8:13	Solemn feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the <u>Sabbaths</u> , and on the <u>new moons</u> , and on the <u>solemn</u> feasts, three times in the year, even in the feast of unleavened bread,..weeks.. tabernacles.”
Nehemiah 10:33	Set feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“for the continual burnt offering, of the <u>Sabbaths</u> , of the <u>new moons</u> , for the set <u>feasts</u>
Ezekiel 45:17	Feasts	New moons	Sabbaths	“it shall be the prince’s part to give burnt offerings, & meat offerings, & drink offerings, in the <u>feasts</u> , & in the <u>new moons</u> , & in the <u>Sabbaths</u> ”
Hosea 2:11	Feast days	New moons	Sabbaths	‘I will cause all her mirth to cease, her <u>feast days</u> , her <u>new moons</u> , her <u>Sabbaths</u> .’ 767

III. The Greek plural “**sabbaton**” in Colossians 2:16 refers to the **Sabbath**, in the same way that the same Greek word “sabbaton” refers to the **weekly Sabbath** in these other references:

Text	“Sabbaton” plural in Greek
Colossians 2:16	“Let no man judge you in . . . Sabbath days” (sabbaton).
Matthew 28:1	“In the end of the Sabbath (sabbaton), . . .”
Luke 4:16	“he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day (sabbaton) . . .”
Acts 16:13	“And on the Sabbath (sabbaton) we went out of the city.”
Exodus 20:8 (Septuagint)	“Remember the Sabbath day (sabbaton) . . .”

IV. The lack of the Greek definite article before “Sabbath” in Colossians 2:16 refers to the Sabbath, just as the lack of the Greek definite article in these verses refers to the weekly Sabbath:

Text	Seventh Day Sabbath Lacks Greek Definite Article
Matthew 28:1	“In the end of the Sabbath”
John 5:9	“On the same day was the Sabbath”
John 5:10	“The Jews said, It is the Sabbath day”
John 5:16	“he had done these things on the Sabbath day”

3) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Sabbath law is not a moral law. The other 9 commandments are moral laws.	The Sabbath law is a moral law because it is in the 10 Commandments.

Answer: The Sabbath law is **not a moral law** because:

I. If the Sabbath law is moral, then **why were the priests allowed to profane it?**
 “Have ye not read in the law, how that on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless?” (Matthew 12:5; Numbers 28:9,10).
 “on the seventh day, they compassed the city after the same manner seven times.” Joshua 6:15.
 This journey around Jericho seven times, was more than a Sabbath day’s journey.
 This was commanded by God.

II. If the Sabbath is moral, then **why did God grow weary of them keeping it?**

- God never said he was weary of them “NOT stealing” or “NOT committing adultery.”
- But God could not bear their keeping the Sabbath:
 “the new moons and Sabbaths, the calling of the assemblies, I cannot (endure) away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth, they are a trouble unto me; I am weary to bear them.” (Isaiah 1:13,14).
This is never said of any moral command anywhere in the Bible!
 Think about it. Consider this simple logic:

a) God **NEVER** grows weary of men keeping moral laws;
 b) God **DID** grow weary of men keeping the 4th Commandment (Sabbath law);
 c) Therefore the Sabbath is not a moral law!

III. If the Sabbath law was a moral law intended for all mankind, then **why did God NEVER charge the Gentiles with breaking it?** God charges the Gentiles many times for breaking all the 9 moral commandments on the tablets of stone (eg: idolatry, baby murder), but **NEVER ONCE** says anything about them breaking the Sabbath. This proves that the Sabbath is not inherently moral, but just another ceremonial law given ONLY to the Jews.

Sabbatarian Arguments

The Sabbath law is moral because:

1. Violation was punishable by death. (Exodus 31:15; 35:2).

Answer: All the following ceremonial or non-moral infractions brought death.

Hence the **Sabbath law is ceremonial** as well because:

1) Aaron’s sons (Nadab and Abihu) were killed for violating a ceremonial law when offering incense to Jehovah. (Leviticus 10:1-5). 768

- 2) For disobeying ceremonial commands of any priest “the man that will do presumptuously, and will not hearken to the priest, or unto the judge, even that man shall die.” Deuteronomy 17:12.
- 3) For touching Mount Horeb “whosoever touches the mount shall be surely put to death.” Exod 19:12
- 4) For unauthorized entry by Aaron into the holy place of the tabernacle.
“Speak unto Aaron thy brother, that he come not at all times into the holy place within the veil before the mercy seat, which is upon the ark, that he die not . . .” (Leviticus 16:2).
- 5) For looking into the Ark. “And he smote the men of Bethshemesh, because they had looked into the ark of the Lord . . .” (I Samuel 6:19).
- 6) For not keeping the Sabbath day. “Ye shall keep the Sabbath; for it is holy unto you: every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death.” (Exodus 31:14).

2. The Sabbath law is moral because it was spoken by God personally.

Answer: This is false because God spoke personally on many other issues which are no longer binding on Christians, such as:

- 1) God spoke personally to many such as Adam, Cain, Noah, Abraham, Jacob and Moses regarding burnt offerings, yet these are not binding on Christians today.
- 2) God personally spoke many altar, sacrifice and offering laws to Moses at the same time that He gave the 10 Commandments. (Exodus 20:21-26).
- 3) God spoke personally to Abram about the law of circumcision, yet this is not binding on Christians today. The Bible nowhere teaches that things spoken or written personally by God are binding on all people for all time.

3. The Sabbath is inherently moral and sacred of itself.

Answer: This is false because the Sabbath was sanctified only because God rested on that day, not because it was inherently moral or sacred. The day itself did not make it holy. Resting on it did not make it holy. But God blessing and hallowing it did make it holy. The Sabbath day’s holiness did not come from its own nature. It was no more inherently holy than any other Jewish holy day that God blessed and set apart in the Law of Moses. Since other Jewish holy days that God blessed and set apart, are not binding on Christians, neither is the Sabbath.

4) True Proposition	SDA Argument
10 Commandments and the Sabbath law <u>did not exist</u> before Moses.	10 Commandments <u>existed</u> from the Garden of Eden.

I. Even if the Sabbath was given to Adam, this does not mean Christians must keep it, because God also gave sacrificial offering laws to Adam (after expulsion from Eden).

This SDA argument proves nothing.

II. The 10 Commandments or Sabbath law did not exist before Moses, because of these reasons:

1) God revealed or “made known” the Sabbath law and 10 Commandments to Israel at Mount Sinai. He did not remind them:

“Thou made known unto them thy holy Sabbath, and commanded them precepts, statutes and laws, by the hand of Moses thy servant.” (Nehemiah 9:13,14). This verse is bad news for SDAs

2) Israelite leaders before Moses did not keep the Sabbath.

“The Lord our God made a covenant with us in Horeb. (1491BC).

The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day.” (Deuteronomy 5:2,3). (1451BC).

Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph knew nothing about Sabbath keeping.

3) The Sabbath law came 430 years after the Abrahamic Covenant:

“the law, which was 430 years after (Abraham).” (Galatians 3:17).

This shows that Abraham never knew about the Sabbath law.

4) No-one before the Exodus (Exodus 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law.

“I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt . . .

I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and them...” (Ezekiel 20:10,12). 769

- 5) The word “Sabbath” is not found in the book of Genesis.
 6) The word “Sabbath” is first mentioned in Exodus 16:22-23.

Exodus 16:23-30 indicate that Israel was not used to keeping the Sabbath day before this time. It was a **new experience** for them:

“And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much **bread**...and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses. (v 22). And he said unto them, this is that which the Lord hath said, Tomorrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath unto the Lord: bake that which ye will bake today, and seethe that which ye will seethe; that which remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning.” (Exodus 16:22,23).

Question: If God’s people had kept the Sabbath since Adam, **why** did Moses here need to tell the rulers that tomorrow was the Sabbath and **how** they should keep it? **Answer:** Because the Israelites here were equally unfamiliar with BOTH manna and with the Sabbath.

- 7) **Question:** SDAs argue that since “Sabbaths” in Ezekiel 20:10-12 (“I gave them my Sabbaths”) is plural it cannot refer to the weekly Sabbath.

Answer: This SDA view is WRONG because:

- a) The **weekly Sabbath is plural** in Exodus 31:13,17,
 “Verily **my Sabbaths** ye shall keep . . . for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, . . .”
- b) **Both singular and plural** are used for the weekly Sabbath in:
 - **Leviticus 19:3** “. . . keep my Sabbaths.”
 - **Leviticus 23:38** “beside the Sabbaths of the Lord.”
 - **Isaiah 56:2,4** “that keepeth the Sabbaths from polluting it . . . unto the eunuchs that keep my Sabbaths . . .”
 - **Matthew 12:5** “on the Sabbath days the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath, and are blameless?”
 - **Matthew 12:10** “Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath days?”
 - **Acts 17:2** “Paul . . . three Sabbath days reasoned with them.”

III. There is **no record or hint that anyone before Exodus Chapter 16 kept the Sabbath.**

Question: If God instructed the Patriarchs concerning:

Offerings (Genesis 4:3-4); **Altars** (Genesis 8:20), **Priests** (Genesis 8:20), **Tithes** (Genesis 14:20), **Circumcision** (Genesis 17:10), **Marriage** (Genesis 2:24; 34:9), why would He omit mentioning the “important” Sabbath command?

IV. The Sabbath was **not a part of God’s eternal law in heaven before creation**, because the time that **God sanctified it** was **AFTER the creation week**.

Note: God rested on the 7th day, then **AFTER** His 7th day rest, God sanctified it, not before in heaven. “God rested on the seventh day, God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it.” (Genesis 2:2,3).

a) Genesis was written during the time of Moses, not before. Neither Adam, nor Abraham had the book of Genesis. The Israelites in the wilderness were the first people God told about the Sabbath day. Genesis 2:2 tells us the **reason**, not the **time** that God sanctified the Sabbath.

b) An example like this is that Christ was chosen as the sacrificial lamb before the foundation of the world (I Peter 1:20; 2 Tim 1:4), but specific details were not revealed until 4000 years later when Christ was born. The Father set Jesus apart as the sacrifice long before He actually gave Him to die on Calvary

V. The Sabbath would be **inappropriate for Adam while in the Garden of Eden**, because:

- 1) There was no weariness, sickness, or death in Eden before the Fall.
Hard labour that required rest only existed after Adam sinned, not before (Genesis 3:19).
- 2) **The only two commandments** that God gave Adam before the Fall were to:
 - a) Dress and keep the Garden (Gen 2:15). b) Not eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge (Gen 2:16,17)
- 3) “servants and strangers within thy gates” (Exodus 20:10) would make no sense to Adam in Eden regarding the Sabbath, because he had no servants or strangers. So Sabbath was not given to Adam.

VI. The Sabbath was **not sanctified on Day 6**, but is an example of “**Prolepsis**”.

Definition: “the representation of something in the future as if it already existed or had occurred.” (*Webster’s Dictionary*); “assumption that something is done or true before it is so.” (*Oxford Dictionary*)
When Moses wrote Genesis to Israel, He stated the reason for Jews keeping the Sabbath is in Genesis 2:2,3. This reason was only revealed to the Exodus generation of Israel in 1491BC. Exodus 20:8,11: “Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the seventh day and hallowed it.”

Examples of prolepsis are as follows:

- 1) “Adam called his wife’s name Eve; because she was the mother of all living.” (Genesis 3:20). (This is said before Cain’s birth).
- 2) “Adah bare Jabal. He was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle.” (Genesis 4:20). (This was before he had tents or cattle).
- 3) “His brother’s name was Jubal: he was the father of all such as handle the harp and organ.” (Genesis 4:21). (Those handling harp and organ had not been born at that time).
- 4) “Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed him.” (Matthew 10:4). (The betrayal did not occur until three years later.)
- 5) “It was that Mary which anointed the Lord with ointment.” (John 11:1,2). (Mary’s anointing did not take place until later in John 12:3).
- 6) “Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife.” (Genesis 2:24). (There were no fathers or mothers at that time.)

5) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Matthew 5:17,18 is fulfilled by Christ <u>fulfilling</u> the OT prophecies and offerings about the Messiah.	Christ came to fulfil the law, <u>not to destroy it</u> . (Matthew 5:17-18).

Matthew 5:17-18 “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.”

Actual Sabbatarian Argument “Because heaven and earth are still here, so God’s laws (meaning the 10 Commandments) are still binding.”

An SDA preacher actually wrote the following about a talk he had with a Christian minister:

“I remember talking to a preacher about this. He was getting more and more angry as we discussed this issue. For some reason this topic conjures up some strange emotions! Must be because some people know they’re not teaching all the truth! I had given over 40 verses establishing God’s law and the preacher clung to his two or three verses trying to say the law was abolished. Then I said, “Okay preacher, I’ll tell you what, stomp your foot on the ground.” As he did I asked “Is the earth still beneath you?” “Yes of course it is,” he replied. “Now look out the window, is the sun shining?” “Yes”, he said. “At night, do the moon and stars still come out?” “Of course they do,” he said. “Then read Matthew 5:17-19. Jesus said till heaven and earth pass away not even a jot or tittle could pass from the law. You just told me heaven and earth were still here so God’s law is still binding!” (*Revelation Seminar* book).

Answers:

1. Jesus did not say that the “10 Commandments” would endure forever, but that the “Law and the Prophets” would endure forever, **as a record that Christ fulfilled their Messianic prophecies.**

Question: What does this verse mean?

We must also define the terms “law”, “prophets”, and “fulfil.”

- **The Law:** To the Jews, this was the first division of the OT, known as the 5 books of Moses.
- **The Prophets:** This was the second and largest part of the Hebrew Scriptures.
- **To fulfil:** To fill up or **accomplish** what was predicted in the Old Testament.

Answer: As Christ was starting His public ministry, He needed to state what He came to do.

By setting up as a teacher in opposition to the Scribes and Pharisees, some might charge Him with intending to destroy their law and abolishing Israel’s customs.

Jesus was saying that He did not come to do away with or destroy the authority of the Old Testament.

- a) The Law of Moses contained many **sacrifices, rites** and **types** that spoke of the Messiah's life, person and work. These were fulfilled during Christ's life, ministry, death, burial, resurrection.
- b) The Prophets contained many **prophecies** of His life and death, which were fulfilled and accomplished during His time on earth. Hence Christ fulfilled the Law by obeying it perfectly, and by fulfilling the Prophets' prophecies of the Messiah.

2. **“JOT and TITTLE” indicate much more than the 10 Commandments.**

The smallest jot and tittle of the law and prophets refer to the entire OT law, including all the **ceremonial laws**. According to SDA logic, this verse proves that we must still keep the ceremonial jots and tittles.

Question: Would SDAs want us to keep all the ceremonial laws?

SDA reply: No, because they've all passed away.

You: So have the 10 Commandments been replaced by the **law of Christ** in the New Covenant.

3. Christ said, “I came to **fulfil**”; He did not say “I came to **perpetuate**.”

Questions for SDAs:

- i) Did Jesus come to **fulfil** the Law of Moses? (They will say “Yes”).
- ii) Was the Law of Moses **abolished** when Jesus fulfilled it? (They will say “Yes”).
- iii) Did Jesus **fulfil** the law and the prophets? (Yes).
- iv) Then doesn't this mean that the **Mosaic laws have passed away** because they have been **fulfilled** in Jesus Christ?

Note: Christ clearly did change the “Law and the Prophets.”

“For the **priesthood** being changed, there is made of necessity a **change also of the law**.” (Hebrews 7:12). (See Galatians 3:23-24).

4. **SDA Objection:** It is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail. Luk16:17

Answer: None of the law of Moses did fail. Christ fulfilled it 100%.

5. **Questions for SDAs:**

- i) Why did Jesus come? (To fulfil the law and the prophets).
 - ii) Was Jesus successful in His mission to fulfil the law? (Yes).
 - iii) What happens when Jesus fulfils the law & the prophets? (Only then will the law be destroyed).
6. SDAs argue that “fulfil” (4137 in Strong's) does not mean “end” in Matthew 5:17,18, because “fulfil” does not mean “end” in Matthew 3:15 “thus it becometh us to fulfil all righteousness”. SDAs say “See! Righteousness did not end when Jesus was baptized.”

Answer: The verses are not parallel to each other. Compare them:

“One jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” (Matthew 5:18).

Jesus did not say in Matthew 3:15 that: “**all righteousness** shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” But He did say that the **law would pass when it was fulfilled** by using the phrase “**TILL** all be fulfilled.” The word “TILL” means that the law would pass when it was fulfilled, which occurred by Christ's death, burial, resurrection and ascension.

Note: The word “fulfil” in Matthew 5:18 is used in the same sense in Matthew 24:34.

“This generation **shall not pass, till** all these things be fulfilled.”

6) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The 10 Commandments are only for Israel.	The 10 Commandments are for all mankind forever

I. If the Sabbath law was a moral law intended for all mankind, then:

Question: Why did God NEVER charge the Gentiles with breaking it?

God often charges the Gentiles with breaking all of the 9 moral commandments (eg: Romans 1:29 covet, murder, false witness, haters of God, disobedient to parents), but **never once** charges them with breaking the Sabbath. Why? This proves the Sabbath law is just **another ceremonial law** given only to the Jews.

II. How could people living in the Arctic Circle keep the Sabbath from sunset to sunset, when these regions have six months of the year daylight and the next six months of darkness?

(See *World Book Encyclopedia* under 'Day.')

- III.** The very words of the 10 Commandments show that they were meant **ONLY for the Jews:**
1. God didn't bring my ancestors out of Egyptian bondage. "I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage." Exodus 20:2.
 2. Since the Sabbath is a sign between God and Israel, non-Jews are not required to keep it.
 3. God has not given me the promised land of Canaan. "Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee." Exodus 20:12.

7) True Proposition	SDA Argument
We are now under a different law , the law of Christ.	If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could murder, steal and commit adultery.

SDA Argument: "If a preacher tells you the law is done away, go to his church, break the 8th commandment and steal his offering. You'll quickly find out that the law is not done away."

Answers:

1. This favourite SDA argument is deceptive and false by implying that if we don't listen to Moses, then there are **no other laws** to guide us.

Illustration: A country may change its laws over time. Also, as you travel from one country to another, you find yourself living under different laws. For example:

Examples	Obsolete Law	Present Law
Australia	Colonial days living under British laws.	After Independence and Federation (1901) living under Australia's own laws.
USA	Confederation of 1781-87	Constitution of 1787 to today.
Canada	Constitution of 1867-1981	Constitution of 1981 to today.
Bible	Law of Moses/10 Commandments from Mount Sinai to the Cross.	Law of Christ/New Covenant from Cross to 2 nd Coming.

Just because the Mosaic Law is obsolete and abolished, does not mean that we are without law.

We now live under a new and better law, the **Law of Christ** contained in the New Covenant. (Gal. 6:2).

2. Also, **all the moral laws** in the 10 Commandments and the Old Covenant are **brought over** and expanded in the New Covenant Law of Christ.

	The Old Covenant. 10 Commandments. (Done away, nailed to the cross)	The New Covenant. The Law of Christ.
1	No other gods beside me.	Brought forward into New Covenant (I Thess. 1:9). "Ye turned to God from idols to serve the living & true God"
2	No graven images.	Brought forward into New Covenant (Galatians 5:20). "works of flesh . . . idolatory."
3	Don't take God's name in vain.	Brought forward into New Covenant (I Timothy 1:20). "That they may learn not to blaspheme."
4	Six days shall you work, but the 7 th day is the Sabbath.	Still nailed to the cross (Colossians 2:14-17). Never brought forward. No NT command to keep Sabbath.
5	Honour your father and mother.	Brought forward into New Covenant (Ephesians 6:1-3). "Honour thy father and mother."
6	Don't kill.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Galatians 5:21). "Works of flesh . . . murders."
7	Don't commit adultery.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Galatians 5:19). "works of flesh . . . adultery."
8	Don't steal.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesians 4:28). "Let him that stole steal no more, let him work to give ."
9	Don't bear false witness.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesian 4:25). "Putting away lying, speak every man the truth ."
10	Don't covet.	Brought forward into New Covenant. (Ephesians 5:5). "Nor covetous man who is an idolator."

8) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Royal law is stated in James 2:8 “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. ” (Leviticus 19:18).	The Royal law of James 2:8-12 is the 10 Commandments law.

⁸If ye fulfil the royal law according to the Scripture, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself, ye do well:

⁹But if ye have respect to persons, ye commit sin, and are convicted of the law as transgressors.

¹⁰For whosoever shall keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all.

¹¹For he that said “Do not commit adultery”, said also “Do not kill”.

Now if thou commit no adultery, yet if thou kill, thou art become a transgressor of the law.

¹²So speak ye, and do, as they that shall be judged by the law of liberty.” (James 2:8-12).

Answer:

The Royal law is royal because it is considered the King of Laws, and because it is important among other laws, as a King is prominent among other men. This law should govern human affairs, as a king rules his subjects. We must regard all people as our neighbours and treat them fairly as we ourselves want to be treated. The commandments against adultery and killing were violations of our neighbour’s worth, which supported James’ rebuke of those showing favouritism due to rank, birth or wealth.

v.10: Guilty of the “whole law” means far more than just the 10 Commandments; it means all the law of God, all that God requires, including all NT laws not contained in the 10 Commandments (eg: not suing other Christians, homosexuality, etc). James is saying in v.10 “he is guilty of all”, that one act of disobedience, makes it impossible to be saved by the law. His acts of obedience in other areas will not offset or screen him from the penalty of violating one law.

The “law of liberty” is not the 10 Commandments because the 10 Commandments are called:

a) a “yoke of bondage” or slavery. (Galatians 5:1).

b) “yoke . . . which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear.” (Acts 15:10).

Only SDAs could call the 10 Commandments a “Law of Liberty”, where other NT verses describe them as “a schoolmaster”, a “prison” that shuts people up (Galatians 2:23,24), a yoke of slavery (Galatians 5:1) and an unbearable yoke. (Acts 15:10).

The law of liberty comes from the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus, which makes us free from the law of sin and death (Romans 8:2-4). This liberty comes as we “walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit” by yielding to the Holy Spirit daily. James states that he who habitually feels that he will be judged by a law where he can be and should be free from the bondage of sin, has one of the strongest inducements to lead a holy life. (v.12).

9) True Proposition	SDA Argument
a) Jesus did <u>NOT</u> say, ‘Keep the 10 Commandments.’ b) Jesus’ commandments are <u>NOT</u> Moses’ 10 Commandments.	Jesus said, “ <u>Keep my Commandments.</u> ” (SDAs read this as the 10 Commandments of Moses, especially keep the Saturday Sabbath).

Some verses that SDAs use to teach that we must keep the 10 Commandments are:

1. John 14:15 “If ye love me, keep my commandments.”

2. John 14:21 “He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me.”

3. I John 2:3 “And hereby do we know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.”

4. I John 5:2 “By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God& keep his commandments.”

5. II John 6 “And this is love, that we walk after his commandments.”

6. Rev 12:17“The dragon..went to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God

7. Revelation 14:12 “here are they that keep the commandments of God . . .”

Answer:

1. Jesus did NOT say “Keep the 10 Commandments.”

a) He said, “Keep MY commandments”, which far exceed the 10 Commandments.

b) John said, “Keep his commandments”, which are explained in I John 3:23,24.

“This is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another as he gave us commandment.”

c) He said, “Keep the commandments,” which includes the NT commandments, not Moses’ commandments.

2. **Jesus' Commandments** are **NOT Moses' 10 Commandments.**

Question: What are Jesus' commandments?

- a) "If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love . . . This is my commandment, That ye **love one another**, as I have loved you." (John 15:10-12).
- b) Jesus' commandments are **Paul's writings**: "If any man think himself to be a prophet or spiritual, let him acknowledge that the **things that I write unto you** are the **commandments** of the Lord." (I Corinthians 14:37).
- c) Jesus' teachings in the **Gospels**: "Teaching them to observe **all things whatsoever I have commanded you**." (Matthew 28:20).
- d) The **Apostles' commandments**: "That ye may be mindful of . . . the **commandments** of **us** the **apostles** of the **Lord** and **Saviour**." (2 Peter 3:2).

10) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Sabbath law is never quoted in the NT . Colossians 2:14-16 says it is to be abolished after the cross.	The NT quotes several of the 10 Commandments proving that all 10 are binding today , including the Sabbath.

Key Answer:

The 10 Commandments are discussed in Hebrews 9:1-4 and in II Corinthians 3:2-11.

They are said to be **part of the first covenant**, which was **abolished** & replaced by the new covenant.

- a) II Corinthians 3:3,7,11 "Ye are the epistle of Christ . . . written . . . not in **tables of stone**, but in fleshly tables of the heart." (v.3). "But if the ministration of death, **written** and **engraven in stones**, was glorious . . . which glory was to be **done away**," (v.7). "For if that which is **done away** is **glorious**, much more that **which remaineth** is glorious."
- b) Hebrews 9:1-4 "Then verily the **first covenant** had . . . the **tables of the covenant**." Hebrews 10:9 "He **taketh away the first** (Mosaic Covenant including the 10 Commandments), that he may establish the second (New Covenant with the Law of Christ)."
- c) Hebrews 8:13 "In that he saith, A new covenant, he hath made the **first old**. Now that which decayeth and waxeth old, is **ready to vanish away**." (by the destruction of the Temple in 70AD).

11) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The 10 Commandments do not contain the whole duty of man.	The 10 Commandments are God's perfect law. It contains all we need to know about moral living . Man needs nothing else to live perfectly.

Answer:

The 10 Commandments are not perfect and complete, because God has **added** many other laws not covered by them. The 10 Commandments do not mention the following:

- 1. It does not condemn: (a) drunkenness; (b) pornography; (c) pride; (d) pre-marital sex; (e) homosexuality; (f); obscene language and (g) Christians suing Christians.
- 2. It does not command: (a) forgiveness; (b) repentance; (c) baptism; (d) Lord's Supper; (e) helping the poor; f) thoughts.
- 3. It does not tell us how to enter heaven.
- 4. It does not tell us how to be forgiven of our sins.
- 5. It does not discuss the four important commands of the Apostles in Acts 15:28-29: "For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things; that ye abstain from **meats** offered to idols, and from **blood**, and from **things strangled**, and from **fornication** . . ."

Question: Will you believe **Jesus Christ** or **SDAs** on Matthew 22:36-40?

Jesus: "On these two commandments (love God and love your neighbour) hang all the law (10 commandments included) and the prophets." (Matthew 22:36-40).

12) True Proposition	SDA Argument
God's nature does not change, but His Laws and human requirements in different time periods have changed a lot.	God does not change, therefore neither does His Law.

This SDA argument was one of Ellen White's original arguments. White said, "I saw that God had not changed the Sabbath, for he never changes." (*Early Writings of EGW*, p.3).

Answer: Since God gave the law of animal sacrifices and then abolished it, does this prove that God changes? No. God's laws given to man have changed a lot.

There are three basic periods of earth's history:

(1) Adam to Moses; (2) Moses to Christ; (3) Christ to the 2nd Coming.

God's nature does not change just because His laws have changed in different times of history.

13) True Proposition	SDA Argument
This proves nothing because many other things that God said were holy, have been abolished.	The Sabbath must be kept today because God blessed it, hallowed it and made it holy.

Answer:

1. **Other holy days** in the Old Covenant have been done away, so has the Sabbath. Some are:
 - a) Passover: "Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread; in the first day there shall be an **holy** convocation." (Exodus 12:13-16).
 - b) Feast of Trumpets: "In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a Sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an **holy** convocation. Ye shall do no servile work therein." (Lev 23:24,25; Neh 8:1,2,9,11). This says the 1st day of the 7th month is holy.
 - c) Feast of Tabernacles: "The fifteenth day of this seventh month shall be a feast of Tabernacles for seven days unto the Lord.³⁴
On the first day shall be an **holy** convocation... On the eighth day shall be an **holy** convocation unto you." (Leviticus 23:34,36). The 15th and 22nd were holydays of 7th month.
 - d) Unleavened Bread Feast: "Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread¹⁵ . . . And in the first day there shall be an **holy** convocation, and in the seventh day there shall be an **holy** convocation to you¹⁶ . . ." (Exodus 12:15,16,18).
The 14th and 21st days of the 1st month were holy.
 - e) Day of Atonement: "Also on the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement: it shall be an **holy** convocation unto you²⁷ . . .
It shall be unto you a Sabbath of rest . . ." (Leviticus 23:27,32).
 - f) Weekly Sabbath day: "Wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day & **hallowed** it." Exo 20:11
2. Some things were **more holy** than the weekly Sabbath. Each of these have been abolished.
 - i) The most holy place in the tabernacle: "the veil shall divide unto you between the holy place and the most holy." (Exodus 26:33).
 - ii) The most holy altar: "it shall be an altar most holy." (Exodus 29:37).
 - iii) The most holy atonement: "an atonement...it is most holy unto the Lord." (Exodus 30:10).
 - iv) The tabernacle furniture: "the table, the candlestick, . . . the altar of incense, . the altar of burnt offerings, . . . the laver. . . thou shalt thou sanctify them, that they may be most holy." Exod 30:26-39
 - v) The tabernacle perfume: "Take unto thee sweet spices, stacte, onycha, galbanum; with pure frankincense. . . thou shalt make it a perfume. . . it shall be unto you most holy." Exodus 30:34,36
 - vi) The remnant of the meat offering . . . it is a thing most holy of the offerings of the Lord. Lev2:3
 - vii) The most holy house (Solomon's temple): "he made the most holy house." II Chronicles 3:8.
3. If the Sabbath day must be kept because God blessed it, hallowed it, and made it holy, **then we must keep these things also** because the same is said of them:
 - i) Hallowed tabernacle and holy vessels: (Exodus 40:9).
 - ii) Holy water mixed with floor dust to be drunk by a woman accused of adultery. Number 5:17.
 - iii) Solomon's hallowed temple: "I have hallowed this house." (I Kings 9:3).
"thy holy temple." (Psalm 65:4).
 - iv) Aaronic high priestly order: "shall be hallowed" by sprinkling blood on the garments of Aaron and his sons (Exodus 29:21).
 - v) Holy Levites: "The Levites that taught all Israel, which were holy unto the Lord." 2Chron35:3

- vi) Holy Ark of the Covenant: “put the holy ark in the house. . .” (II Chronicles 35:3).
- vii) Israel’s firstborn hallowed: “I hallowed unto me all the firstborn in Israel both man and beast.” (Numbers 3:13).
- viii) Aaron’s holy garments: “thou shalt make holy garments for Aaron.” (Exodus 28:2).
- ix) High priest’s holy crown: “put the holy crown upon the mitre.” (Exodus 29:6).
- x) Holy flesh of the ram: “the ram of consecration.. they are holy.” (Exodus 29:31-33)
- xi) Holy anointment to make holy oil: “make it an oil of holy anointment . . . it shall be a holy anointing oil.” (Exodus 30:25).
- xii) Holy fruit: “in the fourth year all the fruit thereof shall be holy.” (Leviticus 19:24).

The **first time something is mentioned**, it is introduced with the **indefinite article “a”** or “**an**”, but **never introduced** with the **definite article “the”**. This shows that the Sabbath was first introduced in Exodus 16:23, and that nobody before this time kept it.

	First Time Instituted	After it was Instituted
1	Today is a Sabbath. (Exodus 16:25).	The Lord hath given you the Sabbath. (Exodus 16:29).
2	Noah builded an altar. (Genesis 8:20).	Offered burnt offerings on the altar. (Genesis 8:20).
3	This day (passover) shall be unto you for a memorial. (Exodus 12:14).	Kill the passover (Exodus 12:21). “It is the sacrifice of the Lord’s passover.” (Exodus 12:27).
4	<u>Feast of Unleavened bread</u> : “ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance forever. Seven days shall ye eat unleavened bread.” (Exodus 12:14,15).	“Ye shall observe the feast of unleavened bread.” (Exodus 12:17).
5	<u>Day of Atonement</u> : “On the tenth day of this seventh month there shall be a day of atonement”. Leviticus 23:27	‘in the day of atonement shall ye make the trumpet sound.’ (Leviticus 25:9).
6	<u>Feast of Pentecost</u> : “ye shall number 50 days; and ye shall offer a new meat offering unto the Lord.’ Lev23:16	“When the day of Pentecost was fully come.” (Acts 2:1).
7	<u>New Covenant</u> : “Behold the days come, saith the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and Judah .. .” (Hebrews 8:8).	“For this cause he is the mediator of the new testament...” (Hebrews 9:15).
<p>Note: The definite article “the” is never used the first time something is introduced, because “the” is only used after people know about it. The indefinite article “a” is used both before and after something has been instituted.</p>		

4. The same arguments used for continuance of the Sabbath can be made for the ceased Passover Feast

	Sabbath and Passover	Passover Reference	True of Sabbath
i)	Both spoken by the Lord.	Exodus 12:1,3.	Yes
ii)	Both “it is the Lords . . .”	Exodus 12:11. “It is the Lord’s Passover”	Yes. (Ex 20:10) “Seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God.”
iii)	Both “a memorial.”	Exodus 12:14	Yes
iv)	Both to be kept forever.	Exodus 12:14	Yes
v)	Death penalty or cut off for violating both.	Exodus 12:12-15	Yes
vi)	Both a “Holy day.”	Exodus 12:16	Yes
vii)	Both “rest days.”	Exodus 12:16	Yes (Exodus 20:10).
viii)	Both connected with deliverance from Egypt.	Exodus 12:17	Yes. (Exodus 20:2).
ix)	Strangers must keep both.	Exodus 12:19	Yes (Exodus 20:10).

14) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Lord's Day is Sunday . (Revelation 1:10).	SDAs claim the " Lord's Day " is the Sabbath , because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath.

Answer: The Lord's Day is Sunday because:

- i) Jesus rose on Sunday (John 20:1).
- ii) The Holy Spirit came on Pentecost (Acts 2:1) which always falls on a Sunday.
- iii) Christians practiced the Lord's Supper on Sunday (Acts 20:7).
- iv) Early Christians from 30-300AD referred to Sunday as the Lord's Day. "I was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day . . ." (Revelation 1:10). "The Lords Day" means a day pertaining to the Lord because we commemorate important events concerning Him. If the Jewish Sabbath were intended, then the word "Sabbath" would have been used. **Chrysostom** said, "It was called the Lord's Day because the Lord rose from the dead on that day." **Theodore**t speaking of the Ebionites says, "They keep the Sabbath according to the Jewish law, and sanctify the Lord's Day in like manner as we do."
- v) Since Revelation was written by John, the observance of Sunday as a day of worship for Christians had Apostolic sanction. John, in accordance with a prevailing custom, had set apart this day in honour of the Lord Jesus.

15) True Proposition	SDA Argument
SDAs completely miss the context of <u>when this happens, to whom</u> this happens and the <u>place</u> . This refers to <u>Jews</u> living <u>in Jerusalem</u> in the middle of the <u>future 7 year Tribulation</u> when the Antichrist begins to persecute them.	Jesus foresaw the Sabbath being kept by <u>Christians</u> in the 20 th Century. "But pray ye that your flight be not in the winter, neither on the Sabbath day." (Matthew 24:20)

The reason Jesus gave to Jews to pray that Jerusalem would not be destroyed beginning on a Sabbath day, is because the city gates would be closed on the Sabbath day (Nehemiah 13:15-22) and this would hinder them obeying Jesus' instruction to leave the city.

16) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The laws of keeping it <u>must not oppose</u> man's <u>real welfare</u> .	"The <u>Sabbath was made for man</u> , and not man for the Sabbath." (Mark 2:27). Therefore all mankind must keep it.

Answer:

The idea of this passage is **not** that all mankind must keep the Sabbath. Instead it means that because the Sabbath was created as a day of rest and worship for man's good, then the laws of keeping it must not be interpreted or applied to oppose man's real welfare, as the Pharisees did by attempting to stop Jesus' disciples satisfying their hunger. Man was made first, and then the Sabbath was appointed for his welfare. The Sabbath was not first made, and then the man.

	True Proposition	SDA Argument
1	In the beginning the Word <u>made all things</u> .	In the beginning the Word <u>made all things</u> . John 1:1-3; Colossians 1:16.
2	God did <u>ALL</u> His work in six days. (Genesis 2:1-3; Exodus 20:11).	The <u>Sabbath Day was made</u> for man. (Mark 2:27).
3	The Sabbath day was not made till <u>AFTER</u> God rested on the seventh day. Therefore the Sabbath day is <u>not</u> part of "all things" of the <u>original creation</u> .	Therefore the Sabbath day was <u>made in the beginning</u> . Therefore Adam had to keep it.
4	The Sabbath did <u>NOT</u> exist in the Garden of Eden until <u>AFTER</u> God rested on the 7 th day.	
Note: The issue is not when God rested, but <u>when He first commanded</u> man to keep the Sabbath.		

17) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If the Sabbath is eternal, then so too are all the other Jewish holidays	The Sabbath is eternal and endures forever , therefore we must keep it today.

1. If the Sabbath is eternal, enduring forever, then so too are all the other Jewish holy days.

Question: Do we keep the following commandments today?

Answer: No. They are only given to Israel.

i) **Sabbath Day:** “Therefore the children of Israel shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.

It is a sign between me and the children of Israel forever . . .” (Exodus 31:16,17).

ii) **Feast of Unleavened Bread:** “So shall you observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread. Therefore you shall observe this day throughout your generations as an everlasting ordinance.” Exodus 12:17.

iii) **Day of Atonement:** “You shall do no work on that same day, for it is the Day of Atonement . . . Any person who does any work on that same day, that person will I destroy from among his people . . . it shall be a statute forever throughout your generations . . .” (Leviticus 23:28-31).

iv) **Feast of Tabernacles:** “Speak unto the children of Israel saying, the 15th day of the 7th month shall be the feast of Tabernacles ... (v.34).

It shall be a statute forever in your generations.” (v.41). (Leviticus 23:34,41).

v) **Feast of Passover:** “This day shall be unto you for a memorial . . . ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever.” (Exodus 12:14).

2. If the Sabbath is eternal and must be kept today, then so must the death penalty for working on the Sabbath. No SDAs enforce or think this valid today. Do SDAs kill Sabbath workers? No.

“Whosoever doeth any work in the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.” (Exodus 31:15).

18) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The present heavens and earth will be completely destroyed and replaced by a new heavens and earth . Therefore the Sabbath will pass if it is a memorial to the first heavens and earth which will pass away.	SDAs claim that since the Sabbath was a memorial to a <u>six day creation</u> , then this proves that the <u>Sabbath will endure forever</u> .

i) “I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.”(Revelation 21:21).

ii) “the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.” (II Peter 3:10).

Note: SDAs love to quote Matthew 5:17-18 to teach that the Sabbath is binding as long as heaven and earth remain. “Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” From this, SDAs must admit that Sabbath keeping is not forever, because according to their claim, the law and Sabbath keeping will be abolished when the heaven and earth pass away at the end of the 1000 year rule of Christ on earth.

19) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If the Feast of Tabernacles will be kept in the Millennium, then should we keep this feast now? (Zechariah 14:16-19).(No). Then why don't SDAs keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? Because it is not relevant to the Church Age. Neither is Sabbath keeping.	SDAs use Isaiah 66:23 to prove that if the Sabbath will be kept in the Millennium, then we should keep it now.

“It shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another and from one Sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord.” (Isaiah 66:23).

Question: Should we keep new moon feasts now? No! Should we keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? No! Then neither should we keep the Sabbath now either.

20) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p><u>How can the Sabbath commandment be more important than what Jesus called the first and great commandment?</u></p> <p>“Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. On these two commandments hang <u>ALL the LAW</u> (including Sabbath) and the prophets.” (Matthew 22:37,38,40).</p>	<p>The Sabbath is God’s <u>special law above all laws.</u></p>

- 1) SDAs get this idea from Ellen White, their false prophet who said, contrary to Scripture and Jesus Christ that: “I beheld the Tables of stone on which the 10 Commandments were written. I was amazed as I saw the fourth commandment in the very centre of the 10 precepts with a soft halo of light encircling it. Said the angel, “It is the only one of the 10 which defines the living God who created the heavens and the earth & all things that are therein.” (*Life Sketches of Ellen G White*,95,96)
- 2) **Question 1:** Do SDAs really believe that God would make any law more important than the very first commandment to “have no other Gods before me” and “to love God”?
Question 2: Do SDAs really believe that God would make the 4th Commandment glow brighter than the first Commandment?
Question 3: Do you think God would contradict Paul rebuking Sabbath keepers in Galatians 4:10,11 “Ye observe days, and months, and times, and years. I am afraid of you, lest I have bestowed upon you labour in vain.” (Galatians 4:10,11).
Paul calls people like Ellen White a false prophet in Colossians 2:18: “Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he (or she) hath NOT seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind.”
Paul said that White never really saw a vision from God, but that she was lying through pride.
Question 4: Where is the Sabbath elevated above other feast days in Leviticus 23:1-7?
a) Weekly Sabbath: “Seventh day is . . . a holy convocation.”
b) Passover: “holy convocation . . . is the Lord’s Passover.”
c) Feast of Unleavened Bread: “the feast of unleavened bread is . . . a holy convocation.”

21) True Proposition	SDA Argument
The Sabbath is a sign between God & ISRAEL only.	The Sabbath is a sign between God & Christians.

- 1) Sabbath is a sign between God and Israel ONLY because God said:
 - a) “Speak unto the children of Israel, saying: Verily my Sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations.” (Exodus 31:13).
 - b) Sabbath...”it is a sign between me and the **children of Israel** for ever.” (Exodus 31:16).
 - c) “I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and **them**. . .” (Ezekiel 20:12).
- 2) **Questions:** a) Why did God **never command any Gentiles** to keep the Sabbath in the OT or NT?
a) Why do SDAs **NOT keep** the sign of CIRCUMCISION? (Genesis 17:11).
(SDA answer: “because it was a sign only to Abraham and the Jews, and not to Christians.”)
b) Why do SDAs **NOT keep** the sign of PASSOVER BLOOD? (Exodus 12:13).
(SDA answer: “because it was a sign only for Jews in Egypt and not for Christians.”)
c) Why should Christians **NOT keep** the sign of the **SABBATH**? (Our answer to SDAs: “because it was a sign ONLY for Jews and not for NT Christians in the Church Age.)
Hence, each of circumcision, Passover Blood and Sabbath are signs **only** between God and the Jews.
- 3) **Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only.** (Exodus 31:13,14,16,17).
 - a) “Speak thou also unto the **children of Israel**, saying, Verily my Sabbaths ye shall keep; for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations.” (Exodus 31:13).
 - b) “Wherefore the **children of Israel** shall keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant.” (Exodus 31:16).
 - c) “Moreover also I gave them my Sabbaths, to be a sign between me and **them**.” (Ezekiel 20:12)

d) “It is a sign between ME and the children of Israel forever: for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed.” (Exodus 31:17).

Also God reiterates this command in Ezekiel 20:12,20.

Notice that God says on five occasions that Sabbath keeping is a sign between God and Israel, and that the Sabbath is to be kept throughout their generations, forever.”

“Who are Israelites; to whom pertaineth . . . the giving of the law.” (Romans 9:4).

22) True Proposition	SDA Argument
See p. 761. The Hebrews 4:9 rest is <u>heaven</u> .	Hebrews 4:9 proves we must keep the weekly Jewish Sabbath: “There remaineth therefore a <u>rest</u> to the people of God.”

23) True Proposition	SDA Argument
If that is true, then SDAs had better <u>start keeping other Jewish days</u> and rituals mentioned after the cross.	The Sabbath is <u>not nailed to the cross</u> because the Holy Spirit still refers to the Sabbath day <u>after</u> the death of Christ when the New Covenant had replaced the Old Covenant.

Examples of Jewish days kept after the cross are:

- 1) The Day of Pentecost (Acts 2:1).
- 2) The Days of Unleavened Bread (Acts 12:3; 20:6).
- 3) The Days of Purification (Acts 21:26).
- 4) Animal Sacrifices (Acts 21:26).
- 5) Circumcision (Acts 16:3).

24) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Paul says Sabbath is a <u>shadow</u> : “the Sabbath days; which are a shadow of things to come.” (Colossians 2:16,17)	SDAs say the Sabbath was <u>not a shadow</u> because: “The Sabbath was given <u>before</u> the fall of Adam, and cannot be a shadow because all types and shadows were given <u>after</u> the fall.”

There were types before the Fall. See two examples when Adam married Eve:

- 1) Eve was a type of the church;
- 2) Their marriage was a type of the marriage of the Lamb between Christ and the church.

25) True Proposition	SDA Argument
This expression “that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them,” is <u>NOT found in the NT, nor is there any NT commandment for Christian believers</u> after Pentecost to keep the Sabbath.	The Sabbath is the way <u>we know God sanctifies us</u> . See Exodus 31:13; Ezekiel 20:12,20: “I gave them my Sabbaths to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I am the Lord <u>that sanctify them</u> .” (Ezekiel 20:12).

26) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<u>Jesus kept</u> the Passover, <u>every other Jewish Feast</u> day, animal sacrifices, and all the ceremonial laws of Moses. Why don't SDAs keep these as well?	<u>Christ our Example</u> kept the Sabbath.

- 1) SDAs break Jesus' example of keeping the Passover and every other Jewish Feast day. “I will keep the Passover at thy house with my disciples.” (Matthew 26:18).
- 2) SDAs break Jesus' command to keep all the Ceremonial Laws of Moses: “The scribes&Pharisees sit in Moses' seat; All therefore whatsoever they bid you observe, that observe and do,” Matt.23:2,3
- 3) SDAs break Jesus' command to offer animal sacrifices: “Go, and shew thyself to the priest, and offer for thy cleansing, according as Moses commanded.” (Luke 5:14).

Question to SDAs: Why don't you follow Jesus' commands to:

- i) Keep the Passover, ii) Keep all Moses Ceremonial Laws, iii) Offer animal sacrifices?

Answer: Because Jesus lived under the Old Covenant and Jewish law. “God sent forth His Son, made of a woman, made under the law.” (Galatians 4:4).

Conclusion: This is the reason Christians don't need to keep the Sabbath day, because “after that faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster (the law).” (Galatians 3:24,25).

27) True Proposition	SDA Argument
They kept this Sabbath day, because <u>they didn't yet understand that ALL of the Law of Moses would be abolished.</u>	<u>The disciples kept the Sabbath, one day after Christ's death:</u> "They returned, and . . . rested the Sabbath day according to the commandment." (Luke 23:56). Sunday keepers say that the Sabbath was abolished when it was nailed to the cross. Here we see the disciples keeping the Sabbath "according to the commandment" after Christ died on the cross.

- 1) We agree that the disciples kept the Sabbath Law according to the 4th Commandment (out of habit), but **this proves nothing**, because:
 - a) They didn't understand that all the Mosaic Law was abolished from when Christ died.
 - b) They didn't understand Christ's death. (Matthew 16:21,22).
 - c) They didn't understand Christ's crucifixion. (Luke 18:31-34).
 - d) They didn't understand that Christ would rise from the dead. (John 20:9).
 - e) They didn't understand Christ's Second Coming. (John 13:36-37).
 - f) They didn't understand that Christ was going to heaven. (John 14:2-5).
- 2) This is the **only time after the cross**, that the disciples ever kept the Sabbath day.
Question: Why is there no other clear place in the New Testament where Christians are said to "keep the Sabbath according to the commandment"?
Note: This was the very last Sabbath day that NT Christians ever kept, because the next Sunday, Jesus rose from the dead. Christians now had a basis for meeting on Sunday, namely to celebrate Christ's resurrection from the dead.
- 3) The disciples met together on **three Sundays** after the resurrection:
 - a) The Sunday of Jesus' resurrection (John 20:19),
 - b) Eight days later, on the Sunday **AFTER** Jesus' resurrection (John 20:26),
 - c) On Pentecost Sunday, they all met in one place before the Holy Spirit came. (Acts 2:1).

28) True Proposition	SDA Argument
a) Paul preached to unsaved Jews in their synagogues on the Sabbath day, that they needed to be saved. b) Question: Do SDA pastors " <u>keep Sunday</u> " if they preach in a Sunday keeping church on Sunday? (No). Then neither did Paul keep the Sabbath in these verses. c) Question: Does a SDA pastor " <u>keep Monday</u> " if he preaches to Muslims in their mosque on Monday, that they are lost without Christ? (No). d) <u>No NT passage</u> ever speaks of Christians worshipping on the Sabbath day. e) Just because Peter preached on the day of <u>Pentecost</u> , does this mean that all Christians must keep the day of Pentecost? (No). Conclusion: Pentecost and Sabbath days just provided an opportunity to preach to an interested audience.	<u>Paul's preaching on the Sabbath</u> , after the cross, proves we must keep the Sabbath today. (Acts 13:14; 16:12; 17:2; 18:4,11) "And he reasoned in the synagogue <u>every Sabbath</u> ." (Acts 18:4).

29) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Ridiculous! If so, then Saturday keeping is <u>worshipping the Roman god Saturn</u> – "SATURN'S day."	Sunday keeping is <u>worshipping the sun</u> – "SUN day"

30) True Proposition	SDA Argument
Just because a Jew kept the Mosaic Law, does not prove that we must keep it, because: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The law included <u>circumcision</u> (Acts 21:20-24). 2) The Apostles <u>never commanded Christians to keep the law</u>: "have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying ye must be circumcised, and <u>keep the law</u>: to whom <u>we gave no such commandment</u>." (Acts 15:24). 	Ananias, a Christian, kept the 10 Commandments: "Ananias, a <u>devout man according to the Law</u> , having a good report of all the Jews which dwelt there." (Acts 22:12). So should we keep Sabbath Law today.

31) True Proposition	SDA Argument
1) History and the Bible are 100% against SDAs . 2) There is enormous historical evidence that before Constantine, Christians <u>always</u> met on Sunday, and <u>never</u> met on the Saturday Sabbath. 3) There is no historical evidence that early Christians: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Kept</u> the Sabbath; • <u>Protested</u> a change from Saturday to Sunday worship; • <u>Practised</u> the Lord’s Supper on the Sabbath. 	History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 135AD there was no discussion of the Sabbath question. • History shows that Christians began keeping the Sabbath, and gradually started meeting on Sundays about the time of Constantine (320AD).

Challenge: We challenge any SDA to give one quote that any Christians kept the Jewish Sabbath before 320AD. Ten early Christian writers all state clearly that the universal practice of Christians was to meet for worship on Sundays, not on Sabbath days.

	HISTORICAL RECORDS	SDA LIES
1	33-140AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> “no longer observing the Sabbath, but living in the observance of the Lord’s Day.” (Ignatius, <i>Epistle to the Magnesians</i> , <i>Ante-Nicene Fathers</i> , Vol 1, p 62-63).	<u>Universal Sabbath keeping</u> . No one worshipped on Sunday “for 100 years after Christ, there is no discussion of the Sabbath question.” (<i>Revelation Seminar</i> , Schreven, 1994, <i>Now That’s Clear</i>).
	See <u>page 752-753</u> , for <u>15 early church writers</u> from 74-350AD who say the opposite to SDAs.	“Christians kept the Sabbath Commandment up to 135AD.”
	False	“As late as 430AD, historians testify that <u>almost all</u> Christian churches in the world were still <u>keeping the Sabbath</u> .”
2	140-300AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .	<u>Gradual shift</u> towards Sunday, but still kept the Sabbath.
3	300-2000AD: <u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .	<u>Universal Sunday meetings</u> .
4	<u>Conclusion:</u> Christians always kept Sunday. Sunday is not a Christian Sabbath or day of rest, or holy day to be kept. It is a day of Christian worship. When Christians today wrongly apply the 4 th Sabbath Commandment as the reason why they worship on Sunday, they are: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) mistaken; and b) opening themselves to manipulation by SDAs. 	Christians originally kept the Sabbath, but due to the devil’s influence, Christians went into universal apostasy for 1600 years, until Ellen White, the SDA “prophet” arrived. She thought, contrary to Colossians 2:14, that the Sabbath Law was not nailed to the cross. Only in the 19 th Century did God, through the SDA church, restore, by direct revelation, the truth that the day of Christian worship was Saturday.

32) True Proposition	SDA Argument
There is no documented evidence that Mithraism had a formal Sunday worship service. How could Sunday worship be copied if Mithraism never had Sunday worship?	Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Sun worship” and “worshipping on Sunday” are two very different ideas that SDAs like to mix together to confuse the whole subject. • “The association between the Christian Sunday and the pagan veneration of the sun is not explicit before the time of Eusebius (260-340AD).” (<i>From Sabbath to Sunday</i>, p 261, Samuele Bacchiocchi, SDA historian). 	“Another influence in the early Christian Church was Mithraism, an ancient cult of the sun. This cult came to Rome in the 1 st Century AD and became popular in the 2 nd and 3 rd centuries. The central feature of this cult was the worship of the sun on the first day of the week.” Historians have written concerning the influence of Mithraism on Christianity.” (<i>Now That’s Clear</i> , Leo Schreven, 1994, p 101).

33) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p>Many early church writers before 340AD all say that Christians met on Sundays from the Apostles</p>	<p>The Pope changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday.</p>
<p>1) If SDAs have any actual historical proof that the <u>Pope</u> changed the Sabbath to Sunday, let them supply it to us and to the world.</p> <p>2) Just because <u>Catholics claim they changed the Sabbath to Sunday</u>, doesn't prove they did. <u>Question:</u> Do SDAs believe everything that the Roman Catholic Church says? No.</p> <p>3) SDAs believe the Pope changed the Sabbath because their "inspired prophet" Ellen White said so: "The Pope had changed it from the seventh day to the first day of the week; for he was to change times and laws." (<i>Early Writings of EGW</i>, p.33). On p 65 she said, "The pope has changed the day of rest from the seventh day to the first day." <u>Note:</u> SDAs in the 1990s are refuting what their founding "prophet" White was "told by God in a vision", by claiming that Christians in Rome changed the Sabbath around 135AD not the Pope. <u>Conclusion:</u> This proves once and for all that Ellen White was a false prophet.</p> <p>a) <u>Samuele Bacchiocchi</u>, the Seventh-day Adventist's top scholar wrote in an e-mail message to the <i>Free Catholic Mailing List</i> CATHOLIC@AMERICAN.EDU on 8 Feb 1997 and said:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I differ from Ellen White, for example, on the origin of Sunday. She teaches that in the first centuries all Christians observed the Sabbath and it was largely through the efforts of Constantine that Sunday keeping was adopted by many Christians in the fourth century. My research shows otherwise. If you read my essay <i>How Did Sunday keeping begin?</i> which summarises my dissertation, you will notice that I place the origin of Sunday keeping by the time of the Emperor Hadrian, in AD135. • This proves once and for all time that Ellen G White was a false prophet! <p>b) Note how SDAs have <u>corrected White's vision</u>: "Sunday keeping had its origin in Rome during the reign of the Emperor Hadrian (117-138AD). Hadrian persecuted the Jews in Rome incessantly. In an attempt to separate themselves from the Jews and avoid being persecuted with them, those early Roman Christians began keeping Sunday in addition to the Sabbath." (<i>Now That's Clear</i>, Schreven, p 97, 1994, <i>Revelation Seminar</i>).</p>	

34) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p><u>Constantine just made a civil decree</u> that because Christians were <u>already meeting on Sunday</u> (since 33AD), that Christians should not work on Sunday.</p>	<p>SDAs claim that <u>Constantine</u> changed the Sabbath to Sunday.</p>

Question: Have SDAs carefully read Constantine's Decree?

"On the venerable day of the sun, let the magistrates and people residing in cities rest, and let all workshops be closed." (Constantine, 7 March 321, *Codex Justinianus* lib3, tit.12,3; translated in Philip Schaff, *History of the Christian Church*, Vol 3, p 380, note 1).

- 1) SDAs contradict themselves. Who changed the Sabbath? Was it the Pope, Constantine in 321, or **some Christians in Rome in 135AD?**
- 2) Constantine is just decreeing that, because Christians were already meeting on Sunday ever since the apostles, that Christians **should not work** on Sunday. (Hebrews 10:24,25.)
- 3) It is not a sin to work on any day of the week. It is a sin to forsake the assembling of the church.

35) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p>i) Any Greek dictionary will tell you that "MIA TON SABBATON" means: mia = first; ton = of the; sabbaton (plural) = weeks.</p> <p>ii) If "MIA TON SABBATON" in Acts 20:7 & I Cor. 16:1,2 mean the 7th day (Sabbath day), then it creates a contradiction with Mark 16:1,2.</p>	<p>The "first day of the week" in Acts 20:7 and I Corinthians 16:1,2 are a mistranslation. The Greek says 'MIA TON SABBATON' or 'sabbath day'. So Christians were told to take a collection (I Corinthians 16:1,2) and partake of the Lords Supper (Acts 20:7) on the Sabbath day, not Sunday.</p>

“And when the **Sabbath** (Greek: **Sabbatou = singular**, the normal expression for the Sabbath day) **was past**, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the Mother of James, and Salome, had brought sweet spices, that they might come and anoint him. (v.1).

And very early in the morning of the **first day of the week** (Greek: **Mia ton Sabbaton**) they came unto the sepulchre at the rising of the sun.” (v. 2).

Key: “Mia ton sabbaton” (v.2) must be different from “Sabbatou” (v 1) meaning “the Sabbath”. You can’t have one Sabbath being over (v.1) being followed by another Sabbath the next day.

iii) “MIA TON SABBATON” is the common Bible expression for Sunday.

iv) When SDAs deny that these texts should read “first day of the week”, it shows that --they know these passages teach **first day observance** if it is translated “first day, and --they know that **Sabbath keeping is refuted** if Acts 20:7 proves to be **Sunday observance** rather than Saturday observance.

36) True Proposition	SDA Argument
<p>Luke, the writer of Acts, uses Roman time, being from midnight to midnight, not Jewish time (sunset to sunset). This can be stated dogmatically because “daylight” (v.11) was the next day (v.7).</p> <p>i) Roman day was from 6 am to 6 pm. ii) Roman night was from 6 pm to 6 am.</p>	<p>SDAs teach that the evening meeting in Acts 20:7 was on a Sabbath day because the Sabbath day lasts from sunset Friday to Sunset Saturday (Jewish time).</p>

Luke uses **Roman time**, not Jewish time in these 10 cases:

1. Acts 2:15 “These are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is but the **3rd hour (9 am) of the day**”
2. Acts 3:1 Peter and John went up together into the temple at the hour of prayer, being the **9th hour (3pm)**
3. Acts 10:3 “He saw in a vision evidently about the **9th hour of the day (3 pm)** . . .”
4. Acts 10:9 “Peter went up upon the housetop to pray about the **6th hour (12 noon)** & he became very hungry”
5. Acts 23:23 “Make ready 200 soldiers to go to Caesarea, and 70 horsemen, and 200 spearmen, at the **3rd hour of the night (9 pm)**.”
6. Luke 23:44 It was about the **6th hour (12 noon)**, there was a darkness over all the earth until the **9th hour (3pm)**
7. Acts 12:18 “**As soon as it was day**, there was no small stir among the soldiers, what was become of Peter.”
8. Acts 16:35 “**And when it was day**, the magistrates sent the serjeants, saying, Let those men go.”
9. Acts 20:11 “and talked a long while, **even till break of day**, so he departed.”
10. Acts 23:12 “**And when it was day**, certain of the Jews banded together . . .”

Conclusion: Hence Acts 20:7 “And upon the **first day** of the week, when the disciples **came together** to break bread, Paul preached unto them . . . and continued his speech until midnight”, means that the Thessalonian church met on the first **day** of the week.

Luke’s method of counting days was **NOT Jewish**, which measures from **sundown to sundown**, but **Roman**, which counted from **midnight to midnight**. This can be stated dogmatically because “break of day” (v.11) was the next day (v.7).

SDA Objection: This was not a true church meeting for worship.

Answer: It was a true church worship meeting because the Greek word “came together” (v.7) (sunegmenon-4863) means “to gather together, a formal meeting of the disciples”, and is used in this context in Acts 4:31; 11:26; 14:27; 15:6,30; I Cor. 5:4; Hebrews 10:25.

“Break bread” (Greek: “tou klasai arton”) in the Syriac version is to “break the Eucharist”. It was in all likelihood the Agape feast followed by the Lord’s Supper (I Cor.10:16; 11:20,21).

(Source: *Word Pictures in the NT*, AT Robertson, Vol.3, p.339).

QUESTIONS TO ASK SDAs

Question 1:

- a) Do you believe that **Ellen White** was a true prophet of God? (p.748). [(Deuteron. 18:20-22) (p.749)
- b) Do you believe that the Bible's **test** of a false prophet is if their "prophecies" do not come to pass?
- c) Doesn't White's **5 false prophecies** below make her a false prophet? (p.749).
- Some living in 1856 would see Christ return.
 - England would declare war on the USA about the time of the Civil War.
 - Old Jerusalem would never be built up.
 - The time for salvation of sinners passed in July 1844.
 - World would end in 1851.

Question 2:

- a) Should a true prophet of God speak in agreement with the Bible? (p.750).
- b) Don't these **unbiblical statements** of White prove her to be a false prophet? (p.750).
- Was the Tower of Babel built before the Flood? (1) (No).
 - Where does the Bible say that the Seal of God is the Sabbath? (3).
 - Did the same Herod put Jesus on trial and kill James? (4).
 - Will Satan bear our sins, or did Jesus bear our sins? (5). (Isaiah 53:6).
 - Did Christ finish our atoning work on the cross or is He still performing our atoning work in heaven?

Question 3:

- Show me the **Investigative Judgment** in the Bible? (p.750).
- Have believers' sins been blotted out by Christ or not? (8).
 - Did White know the day and hour of Christ's coming? (9). (p.751).
 - Did God hold a council to decide what should be done with Adam and Eve after the fall? (10).
 - Where does the Bible teach that Adam and Eve kept the Sabbath? (11).
 - Where does the Bible state that angels have a gold card? (12).

Question 4:

- a) Did **Deity sink** under the agonies of Calvary? (p.751). b) Is there **consciousness** after death or not?

Question 5:

- a) Show me one NT Scripture that quotes the **4th Commandment**? (p.751).
- b) Show me **one NT Scripture** that tells Christians to keep the Sabbath day holy?
- c) Show me one NT Scripture teaching that Sunday keeping is following an image of the Beast as Leo Schreven and White say? (p.752).

Question 6:

- a) Do you have **gas heating**? Do you cook on the Sabbath? (Exodus 35:3). (p.752).
- b) Do you stay in one place on the Sabbath or do you travel?
- c) Do you buy any goods on the Sabbath?
- d) Do you stone to death other SDA's who break the Sabbath?
- e) Did God ever relax any of the 8 Sabbath day restrictions on **p.752**?

Question 7:

On which day did **early Christians worship** according to the following 14 authorities (p.752): Barnabus (74 AD), Ignatius (107 AD), Didache (90 AD), Justin (150 AD), Clement (190 AD), Bardaisan (154 AD), Tertullian (200 AD), Origen (220 AD), Cyprian (250 AD), The Didascalia (225 AD), Victorinus (300 AD), Eusebius (300 AD), Athanasius (345 AD) and Cyril (350 AD)?

Question 8:

How do you know that White had a **true vision** from God of the heavenly sanctuary? (p.754). Was it foolish to believe this when you couldn't prove it? (I Thessalonians 5:21).

Question 9:

Did you **know Ellen White** to be a prophet at your baptism? (Clause 17). (p.754). Had you read all her writings at that time? (No). Then how did you know she was a true prophet? Was it because you believed what some SDA told you? Could he have been lying or misinformed?

Question 10:

Did a **Pope** change the Sabbath (White), or was it changed in Hadrian's time (135AD)(Bacchiochi)? 754,784

Question 11:

- a) Has the **Mosaic Covenant** been taken away? (Yes). (p.754-755).
- b) Does the Mosaic Covenant **include** the 10 Commandments? (SDAs say “no”, we say “YES”).
- c) How do you explain the following Scriptures which clearly state that the Mosaic Covenant **DOES** contain the 10 Commandments?

Hebrews 9:1,4 “the first covenant had..... the **tables of the covenant**”; **Ephesians 2:15**

Exodus 34:28 “he wrote upon the tables the words of the covenant, the **ten commandments**.”

Deuteronomy 4:13 “He declared unto you his **covenant**, even **ten commandments**,...upon tables of stone.

II Corinthians 3:7-11 “if the **ministration of death**, written and **engraven in stones**, was **glorious**... that which was **done away** (Mosaic Covenant, including the 10 Commandments) was **glorious**...”

Question 12:

If the Sabbath was **so well known to Moses** and the Israelites, why did God need to give Moses so many **instructions** about how to keep it? (p.756).

Question 13:

a) When was the Sabbath given or “**made known**” to Israel according to Nehemiah 9:13,14? (p.756). In Eden or on Mt. Sinai? “Thou camest down also upon **Mt Sinai** and **madest known** unto them thy **holy Sabbath**.... by the hand of **Moses**.”

b) What does “**made known**” mean?

c) What is the significance of the phrase “**it was not declared** what should be done” to the Sabbath breaker in Numbers 15:32-36? (p.756).

Question 14:

a) Were OT **priests exempt** from keeping the Sabbath because of their extra workload? (yes). (p.757).

b) Since NT believers are a royal priesthood, aren't we also exempt from keeping the Sabbath?

Question 15:

a) When a boy required **circumcision** on the Sabbath day, which of these laws were broken, Sabbath law or circumcision law? (**Answer:** Sabbath law was broken). (p.757).

b) Which of these laws were more important? (Circumcision).

c) Since the more important circumcision law is now obsolete, what does this tell us about the Sabbath law? (**Answer:** It also is obsolete).

Key Question 16:

Since the Sabbath day was given over to disputing with Jews in the **Synagogue**, on what day did the Apostles meet with believers for fellowship and preaching? (Sunday). (p.759).

Question 17:

a) If **Constantine** changed Saturday worship to Sunday worship in 328 AD, why was there no protest to this change? (p.759).

b) What does the record of **15 early church writers** before 320 AD who state that Sunday worship was the universal practice, tell you? (p.759, 752).

Question 18:

a) Does God **change His laws**? (SDA say “no”; Bible says “yes”). (p.760).

b) What about circumcision, animal sacrifice and yearly worship at Jerusalem? Have they been changed? (Yes). Then so has the Sabbath law been changed.

Question 19:

a) To what 2 things is the law compared to in Galatians 3:23-25? (a **prison**, and a **schoolmaster**) p.760

b) What does the phrase mean “We are **no longer** under a schoolmaster?” (Galatians 3:25).

Question 20:

a) When was the law added **TILL**? (Galatians 3:19 “till the seed should come”). (p.760).

b) Has this happened? (yes). Hence the Mosaic law and Sabbath keeping are obsolete, true?

Question 21:

a) If SDA's could find a verse saying that Christians should take up a **collection** on the Sabbath day, would they use it to prove Sabbath day worship? (yes). (p.762). Q2.

b) Then what does **I Corinthians 16:1,2** tell you on what day the worship of giving took place? Sunday

Question 22:

- a) Is giving to the church an act of worship? (Yes). (p.762). Q3.
- b) Could giving to the church be done on Saturdays? (yes).
- c) Then why did Paul give orders for giving to be done on Sunday, the first day of the week? (Because Sunday was the only day on which the early church met).

Question 23:

- a) Do you SDA's "**lav by in store**" on the first day of every week? (No). (p.762). Q4.
- b) On which day of the week do SDA's give to their church? (Saturdays).
- c) By what authority do SDA's give on Saturday? Is there some passage I have overlooked which commands offerings to be made on the 7th day Saturday?
SDA church members give money on the last day of the week. Paul said to give on the first day of the week. The SDA church has missed the day of worship by 6 days. If **offering** is a part of worship, and if the offering was on **Sunday**, then **worship also took place on Sunday**.
- d) Which will you deny? Paul or the SDA manual?

Question 24:

- If Paul wanted them to store up their offerings **at home**, then when Paul came, the offerings would need to be collected from people's homes. (p.763).
This would disobey Paul's command of "**no gatherings** when I come." I Corinthians 16:1,2.

Question 25:

Fill this in: If Giving is worship, and giving took place on Sundays, then worship took place on _____?

Question 26:

According to Malachi 3:10 where did the Jews of Malachi's time store up their weekly offerings, at home, or in the **storehouse** of the temple treasury? (p.763).

Question 27:

If Paul promoted Sunday keeping, would you expect a **protest** by some Jewish believers? (Yes). (p.764)
Where is this protest recorded? (Colossians 2:16,17) "let no man judge you in Sabbath days..".

Question 28:

If Christians must keep the Sabbath, why is there **NO New Testament example** of any church meeting for Sabbath worship? If there is a case please show me now? (p.764). Q1.

Question 29:

- a) Is it valid for God to teach us by **example**? (Yes). (p.764).
- b) Then why won't you let God teach us Sunday keeping by the example of the churches at Jerusalem, Troas, Galatia and Corinth? John 20:19,26; Acts 20:7; I Corinthians 16:1,2?

Question 30:

- a) If you found a NT passage which said "Upon the seventh day of the week, let every one of you lay by Him in store," would you use it as a proof of Saturday Sabbath worship? (Yes). (p.764). Q2.
- b) Then why don't you accept that this verse clearly teaches Sunday worship?
- c) Do you give money to the SDA church on Sundays, the first day of the week? (No).
- d) By what authority does the SDA church give on Saturday, the 7th day of the week?
- e) If believers stored their offerings at home on the first day of the week (Sunday), how many collections would there be when Paul came? (One (1) collection from each house).
- f) Why do you **disobey Paul's order** to give on Sunday, the first day of the week?

Question 31:

How do we know that the blotted out "**ordinances**" in Colossians 2:14 mean that the "**10 Commandments**" were nailed to the Cross? (p.764).

- i) Ephesians 2:15 says so: "Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the **law of commandments** contained in **ordinances**".
- ii) "Shadow" in Hebrews 8:4,5 (law...shadow) and 10:1 (law having a shadow) mean "Law of Moses".
- iii) Colossians 2:16-17 mentions Sabbath days in the same context.

Question 32:

When Christ fulfilled the Law of Moses (Matthew 5:17,18), what happened to it? (It passed away). (p.765)

Question 33:

- a) Does **1 Kings 8:9** say that the 10 Commandments are part of the Mosaic Covenant? (Yes). (p.765).
- b) What does **Jeremiah 31:31,32** teach about the 10 Commandments if the New Covenant is “NOT according to the Mosaic Covenant” as Jeremiah 31:31,32 states? (p.765).

Question 34:

If the **10 Commandments** are **part of the Mosaic Covenant**, then what does **Hebrews 8:13** say about the 10 Commandments? (Both are old and ready to vanish away). (p.765).

Question 35:

What 10 verses teach that the 10 Commandments are **part of the Old Mosaic Covenant** which has been done away? (p.766).

- 1) Galatians 3:23-25 “The **law** was our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ... But after that faith is come, we are **NO LONGER** under a schoolmaster.”
- 2) 2 Corinthians 3:7-11 “If the ministration of death, written and **engraved in stones**, was glorious, which glory was to be **done away**: (7)..... For if that which is **done away** was glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious.” (11).
- 3) Hebrews 8:13 “A new covenant, he hath made the first old... ready to **vanish away**.”
- 4) **Hebrews 9:1-4** “The first covenant had... the **tables** of the covenant.”
- 5) “**Against us**” in Colossians 2:14-17 is the same as “**enmity**” in **Ephesians 2:15** “Having **abolished** in his flesh the **enmity**, even the **law of commandments**.”
- 6) Nehemiah 9:13,14 “Thou camest down also upon **Mt Sinai**.... And **madest known** unto them thy **holy Sabbath** by the hand of Moses...”
- 7) Exodus 34:28 “He wrote upon the tables, the **words of the covenant** even the **ten Commandments**.”
- 8) Deuteronomy 4:13 “And he declared unto you **his covenant**, which he commanded you to perform, even **ten commandments**; and he wrote them upon **two tables of stone**.”
- 9) Deuteronomy 9:9 “When I was gone up into the mount to receive the **tables of stone**, even the **tables of the covenant** which the Lord made with you...”
- 10) I Kings 8:9 “There was nothing in the ark save the **two tables of stone** ... when the Lord made a **covenant** with the children of Israel.”

SDA ARGUMENTS SUMMARISED and REFUTED.

1) **SDA**: 10 Commandments are **not** in the Old Mosaic Covenant. (p.766).

Bible: 10 verses teach that 10 Commandments & Mosaic Covenant were all abolished when Christ died

2) **SDA**: Sabbath day in Col. 2:16 is **not** the weekly Sabbath, but monthly or yearly Sabbaths. (p.767).

Bible: Sabbath days in Col. 2:16 **is** the weekly Sabbath that was nailed to the Cross because:

- i) The “handwriting of ordinances” in Colossians 2:14 is the 10 Commandments since “**contrary to us**” here means the same as “**ministration of death**” written and “**graven in stones**” in 2 Cor. 3:7.
 - ii) The **year, month, day** sequence in Col. 2:16 proves it to be a weekly Sabbath because the same **year, month, day** sequence occurs in Galatians 4:10; I Chronicles 23:31; II Chronicles 2:4; 8:13, 31:3; Nehemiah 10:33; Ezekiel 45:17, Hosea 2:11.
 - iii) The Greek plural word “**Sabbaton**” for Sabbath days is the weekly Sabbath because the same Greek word occurs in Matthew 28:1; Luke 4:16; Acts 16:13; Exodus 20:8 (Septuagint).
- 3) **SDA**: The Sabbath law **is** a moral law because it is in the 10 Commandments. (p.768).

Bible: The Sabbath law **is not a moral law** because:

- i) The **priests** were allowed to profane it (Matthew 12:5; Numbers 28:9,10).
 - ii) God **grew weary** of the Jews keeping it (Isaiah 1:13,14).
 - iii) God **never charged the Gentiles with breaking it**, as He did the other commandments.
- 4) **SDA**: 10 Commandments and Sabbath existed from the **Garden of Eden**. (p.769).
- Bible: 10 Commandments and Sabbath law **did not exist before Moses** because:
- i) God revealed or “**made known**” the **Sabbath law** and 10 Commandments to Israel at Mt Sinai, not in Eden. He did not remind them. See Nehemiah 9:13,14,
“Thou **made known** unto them thy holy Sabbath” by the hand of Moses thy servant.”

ii) **Israelite leaders** before Moses did not keep the Sabbath.

“The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us...” (Deuteronomy 5:2,3).

iii) Abraham never knew of the Sabbath law because it came **430 years after Abraham**:

“the law, which was 430 years after (Abraham).” Galatians 3:17.

iv) No one before the Exodus (Exodus 16) ever knew about the Sabbath law. Exodus 20:10,12,

“I caused them to go forth out of the land of Egypt. **I gave them** my Sabbaths.”

v) The Sabbath is **first mentioned** in Exodus 16:22,23 as a new experience for Israel.

vi) The Sabbath was inappropriate for Adam in Eden because there was no weariness, sickness, death or strangers in Eden before the Fall.

vii) The Sabbath was not sanctified on Day 6 but is an example of Prolepsis, (represents something in the future as if it already existed).

Six examples of Prolepsis are: Genesis 2:24; 3:20; 4:20; 4:21; Matthew 10:4; John 11:1,2.

5) **SDA**: Christ came to **fulfil the law**, not to destroy it (Matthew 5:17-18). (p.771).

Bible: i) Christ fulfilled Matt. 5:17-18 by fulfilling OT prophecies and offerings about the Messiah.

ii) “Jot and tittle” refer to the entire OT law, including all the ceremonial laws.

According to SDA logic, this verse proves that we must keep all the ceremonial laws, right? Wrong.

They have passed away. So have the 10 Commandments been replaced by the law of Christ.

iii) Christ said “I came to fulfil”; He did not say “I come to perpetuate.”

None of Moses’ laws failed. Christ fulfilled them 100%.

6) **SDA**: The 10 Commandments are for **all mankind** for all time. (p.772).

Bible: The 10 Commandments are **only for Israel**. Exodus 31:13.

Question: If the Sabbath law was a moral law for all mankind, then why did God never charge the Gentiles with breaking it?

7) **SDA**: If the 10 Commandments were abolished, we could **murder, steal, commit adultery**. (p.773)

Bible: i) We are now under a **different law**, the law of Christ, forbidding these. This implies that if we don’t listen to Moses, there are no other laws to guide us. A country may change it’s law over time.

ii) All the 9 moral laws of the 10 Commandments are brought over and expanded into the New Covenant law of Christ.

8) **SDA**: The **Royal law** of James 2:8-12 is the 10 Commandments law. (p.774).

Bible: The Royal law is stated in James 2:8 as “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.”

9) **SDA**: Jesus said “**Keep my commandments**.” John 14:15. SDA read this as 10 commandments. p774

Bible: Jesus did NOT say “Keep the 10 Commandments,” but “Keep my commandments” which far exceed the 10 Commandments. Eg: I John 3:23,24; John 13:34,35.

10) **SDA**: The NT **quotes several of the 10 Commandments** proving that all 10 are binding today, including the Sabbath. (p.775).

Bible: i) The Sabbath law is never quoted in the NT. Col.2:14-16 says it was abolished at the Cross

ii) The 10 Commandments are stated as being part of the Mosaic Covenant which was abolished and replaced by the new covenant in II Corinthians 3:7-11; Hebrews 8:13; Hebrews 9:1-4.

11) **SDA**: The 10 Commandments contain **all we need to know** about perfect moral living.

Man needs nothing else to live perfectly. (p.775).

Bible: The 10 Commandments are **not complete**, because God has added many other laws not covered by them: eg. drunkenness, pride, fornication, homosexuality, Christians suing Christians, evil thoughts. They do not tell us how to be forgiven or how to enter heaven.

12) **SDA**: **God does not change**, therefore neither does His law. (p.776).

Bible: God’s **nature does not change**, but His laws and human requirements in different time periods have changed a lot. eg. God gave laws on animal sacrifices, then later abolished them. Does this prove that God’s nature changes? No.

13) **SDA**: The Sabbath must be kept today because God **blessed it** and **made it holy**. (p.776).

Bible: This proves nothing because many other things that God said were holy, have been abolished. eg: 7 feasts and 19 other holy things.

14) **SDA**: The “**Lord’s Day**” is the **Sabbath** because Jesus said He was Lord of the Sabbath. (p.778).

Bible: The “**Lord’s Day**” is **Sunday** because:

- i) **Jesus rose** on Sunday.
- ii) The **Holy Spirit came on Pentecost** (Acts 2:1) which always falls on a Sunday.
- iii) Christians practiced the Lord's Supper on Sunday (Acts 20:7).
- iv) Early Christians (eg. Chrysostom, Theodoret) from 33-300AD called Sunday the Lord's Day.
- v) John called Sunday "the Lord's Day" in the Book of Revelation (1:10).
- If the Lord's Day was Saturday, John would have called it the Sabbath.
- 15) **SDA:** John foresaw **20th Century Christians** keeping the Sabbath day. (Matthew 24:20). (p.778).
Bible: This refers to Jews living in Jerusalem in the middle of the future 7 year Tribulation when the Antichrist begins to persecute them. SDA's miss the context of:
 i) when this happens, ii) to whom this happens, and iii) the place this happens. (p.778).
- 16) **SDA:** "The Sabbath was **made for man**, not man for the Sabbath." (Mark 2:27). (p.778).
 Therefore all mankind must keep it.
Bible: The laws of keeping the Sabbath must not be applied to oppose man's real welfare.
- 17) **SDA:** The Sabbath is **eternal** and endures forever, therefore we must keep it today. (p.779).
Bible: If the Sabbath is eternal, then so too are all the other Jewish holidays.
 Do we keep the Jewish Feasts of Unleavened Bread, Atonement, Tabernacles and Passover, all of which are stated as lasting forever? No.
- 18) **SDA:** Since the Sabbath was a **memorial to a 6-day creation**, then this proves that the Sabbath will endure forever. (p.779).
Bible: Since the first heavens and earth will pass away at the end of the Millennium, then so will the Sabbath if it is a memorial to the first heavens and earth.
- 19) **SDA:** Since the Sabbath will be **kept in the Millennium** (**Isaiah 66:23**) we must keep it now. p779
Bible: i) Since the **Feast of Tabernacles** will be kept in the Millennium, should we keep it now? No. Why don't SDA's keep the Feast of Tabernacles now? (Zechariah 14:16-19).
 Because it is not relevant to the Church Age. Neither is Sabbath keeping.
 ii) Should we keep **new moon feasts** now? **No**. Then neither should we keep the Sabbath now.
- 20) **SDA:** The Sabbath is God's **special law above all laws**. (p.780).
Bible: How can the Sabbath commandment be more important than that which Jesus calls the first and great commandment of loving God and loving your neighbour? (Matthew 22:37-40).
- 21) **SDA:** The Sabbath is a sign between **God** and **Christians**. (p.780).
Bible: The Sabbath is a sign between **God** and **Israel only**, because:
 i) Exodus 31:13; 31:16; and Ezekiel 20:12 say so.
 ii) Why did God never command any Gentiles in the OT or NT to keep the Sabbath?
 iii) Why do **SDA's** not keep the sign of circumcision? (Genesis 17:11).
 Why do **SDA's** not keep the sign of Passover blood? (Exodus 12:13).
Question: Why should Christians not keep the sign of the Sabbath? (Exodus 31:13,16).
Answer: Because it was a sign **ONLY** for Jews and not for NT Christians in the Church Age.
 iv) Keeping the Saturday Sabbath was the sign of the Mosaic Covenant between God and Jews only. Exodus 31:13,14,16,17; Romans 9:4.
- 22) **SDA:** **Hebrew 4:9** proves we must keep the weekly Jewish Sabbath. (p.781).
 "There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God."
Bible: Hebrews 4:9 rest (Greek: "Sabbatismos"(4520), not "Sabbaton"(4521)) is "our **fellowship rest** with the Father and Son in **eternity**." S. Zodhiates, NT Word Study Dict. p.1268. Rev.14:13.
- 23) **SDA:** The Sabbath is **not nailed to the Cross** because the Holy Spirit still refers to the Sabbath day after Christ's death, when the New Covenant had replaced the Old Covenant. (p.781).
Bible: Other Jewish days kept after the cross, yet are not binding on Christians are Pentecost (Acts 2:1); Unleavened Bread (Acts 12:3; 20:6); Purification (Acts 21:26); Animal sacrifices (Acts 21:26); and Circumcision (Acts 16:3).
- 24) **SDA:** The Sabbath was **not a shadow**, because the Sabbath was given before the Fall. (p.781).
Bible: The Sabbath is a shadow: "Sabbath days; which **are a shadow** of things to come." Col 2:16,17
- 25) **SDA:** The Sabbath is the way we know **God sanctifies us**. (p.781).
 "I gave them my Sabbaths to be a sign between me and them, that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them." Ezekiel 20:12,20; Exodus 31:13.

Bible: This expression “that they might know that I am the Lord that sanctify them” is NOT found in the NT, nor is there any NT commandments for Christians after Pentecost to keep the Sabbath.

26) **SDA: Christ our example** kept the Sabbath. (p.781).

Bible: Jesus kept the Passover, every Jewish Feast day, animal sacrifices and all the Ceremonial Laws of Moses. Why don't the SDA's keep these as well?

Because “after faith is come, we are no longer under a schoolmaster (the law).” Galatians 4:24,25.

27) **SDA: The disciples kept the Sabbath one day after Christ's death**, proving that the Sabbath was not abolished when it was nailed to the Cross. (p.782).

Bible: The disciples kept this Sabbath day, because they did not yet understand that ALL of the Mosaic Covenant and Mosaic Laws would be abolished by the New Covenant and the law of Christ. This SDA argument proves nothing, They didn't yet understand Christ's crucifixion, death, resurrection, ascension or second coming. This is the only time after the cross that the disciples ever kept the Sabbath day.

Question: “Why is there no other place in the New Covenant where Christians “kept the Sabbath according to the Commandment”?”

28) **SDA: Paul preaching on the Sabbath** after the Cross, proves we must keep the Sabbath today.

“He reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath day.” Acts 13:14; 16:12; 17:2; 18:4,11. (p.782).

Bible: Do SDA pastors “keep Sunday” if they preach in a Sunday keeping church on Sunday? No. Then neither did Paul keep the Sabbath in these verses. Pentecost (Acts 2) and Sabbath days just provided an opportunity to preach to an interested audience.

29) **SDA:** Sunday keeping is worshipping the sun -“SUN” day. (p.782).

Ans: Ridiculous! If so, then Saturday keeping is worshipping the Roman god Saturn, “Saturn's” day.

30) **SDA: Ananias**, a devout Christian, kept the 10 Commandments: “Ananias, a devout man according to the Law...” Acts 22:12. So should we keep the Sabbath law today. (p.782).

Bible: Just because a Jew kept the Mosaic Law does not prove that we must keep it because:

i) The Mosaic Law included circumcision (Acts 21:20-24) which Christians don't keep.

ii) The Apostles never commanded Christians to keep the Mosaic Law:

“certain ...have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying ye must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment.” (Acts 15:24).

31) **SDA:** History shows that the very earliest Christians kept the Sabbath, (p.783) as follows:

i) Up to 135 AD there was no discussion of the Sabbath question.

ii) After 135 AD Christians started meeting on Sundays, or after Constantine (320 AD).

Bible i) History and the Bible are 100% against SDA's.

ii) There is enormous historical evidence (over 15 early writers) that from the Apostles to Constantine, Christians always met on Sunday, and never on the Sabbath.

iii) There is no historical evidence that early Christians:

-Kept the Sabbath.

-Protested a change from Saturday to Sunday worship. (Jews protested it)

-Practised the Lord's supper on the Sabbath.

32) **SDA:** Christians copied Sunday keeping off the pagan religion of Mithraism. (p.783).

Answer: There is no documented evidence that Mithraism had a formal Sunday worship service.

“Sun worship” and worshipping on Sunday” are completely different ideas that SDA's combine in order to confuse the subject.

33) **SDA:** The Pope changed the Sabbath from Saturday to Sunday. (p.784).

Answer: i) Which Pope? When did he change it? What proof is there?

ii) Many church writers before 340 AD all say that Christians from the Apostles met on Sunday.

iii) SDA theologian, Bacchiocchi said “I differ from Ellen White on the origin of Sunday keeping...

I place the origin of Sunday keeping by the time of the Emperor Hadrian, 135AD.”

34) **SDA: Constantine** changed the Sabbath to Sunday. (p.784).

Answer: i) Constantine just made a civil decree that because Christians were already meeting on Sunday (since 33 AD), that Christians should not work on Sunday.

ii) SDA's contradict themselves. Who changed the Sabbath? Was it the Pope, Constantine in 321 AD, or some Christians in Rome in 135 AD?

114. ERRORS OF MORMONISM

“But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed.” Galatians 1:8.

Challenge: There are 6 million Mormons in 1995. They hope to double by 2000 AD. There are 16 million in 2017. 30% attendance. We should win them to Christ. Inform enquirers into Mormonism of its heresies.

Background: Joseph Smith, the founder of Mormonism, was born on Dec. 23, 1805 in Vermont, USA. In 1820 (aged 14 years) he allegedly received a vision:

“...I asked the personages (demons?) who stood above me in the light, which of all the sects was right- and which I should join. I was answered that I must join none of them, for they were all wrong; and the personage (demon?) who addressed me said that all their creeds were an abomination in his sight...”. Pearl of Great Price 2:18,19.

He claims a second vision on Sept. 21, 1823 where “a personage (demon?) appeared at my bedside” to inform him of the location of a box containing golden plates buried at Manchester, New York. In 1827, Smith claimed to receive the golden plates upon which the Book of Mormon is alleged to have been written. He claimed to have finished translating the plates on March 26, 1830.

On April 6, 1830, at Fayette, New York, the Mormon church was organised, with 6 members. They then moved to Kirtland (Cleveland), Ohio, publishing the book “Doctrines and Covenants”. Smith was imprisoned in Far West, Missouri, for fighting. After escaping, he and his people fled to Nauvoo, Illinois, where he organised a small army. When a local paper, the “Nauvoo Expositor”, published anti-Mormon material, Smith ordered the press destroyed and the paper burned. This act of destruction led to Smith’s arrest and imprisonment. He was sent to a jail in Carthage, Illinois, with his brother Hyrum. On June 27, 1844, a mob of 200 people stormed the jail, shooting and killing Joseph and Hyrum Smith. The Mormons consider him a martyr.

Brigham Young then took over the leadership. He led the group westward to found Salt Lake City, Utah, on July 24, 1847, which became their headquarters. When Young died in 1877, they had 150,000 members.

I. 6 BASIC ERRORS IN MORMONISM:

Error 1: Walter Martin writes: “With one special revelation, the Mormon church expects its intended converts to accept the unsupported testimony of **an undiscerning 14 year old boy**, saying that **nobody ever preached the gospel of Christ from 96 AD to 1820**.”

He did not even know the gospel definition in I Cor. 15:1-4, that “Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures, was buried, and rose again the third day”. This is the gospel. How much discernment and in-depth Bible knowledge did Joseph Smith have at age 14 to allow him to recognise truth from error? No Bible prophet began their ministry at 14.

Error 2: Brigham Young ordered the **massacre of 150 non-Mormon immigrants**. This became known as the Mountain Meadows massacre. Young ordered Bishop John D. Lee in 1877 to murder a wagon train of helpless immigrants. 20 years later, Lee was tried, convicted and executed for their murder by the U.S. government. In his book “The Confessions of John D. Lee”, Lee confessed his murders, but charged that he was acting on the orders of Brigham Young. This was supported by other lieutenants in the massacre.

Error 3: The bad personal life of Joseph Smith:

- i) Smith and his father **regularly dug for treasure**, using “peep stones” and “divining rods”.
- ii) Many Mormon people testified to the outright **immorality and polygamy** of Joseph Smith. These are in the Berrian collection in the New York Public Library.
- iii) “Joseph Smith was known for his habits of **exaggeration** and **untruthfulness**”.
(P. Tucker, in “The Origin, Rise and Progress of Mormonism” (1867), quoting duly sworn statements of Smith’s neighbours).

iv) E.D. Howe quoted statements of 62 residents of Palmyra, New York, who knew the Smith family personally. They testify as follows:

“We, the undersigned, have been acquainted with the Smith family... and have no hesitation in saying that we consider them destitute of that moral character which ought to entitle them to the confidence of any community. Both Joseph Snr and Joseph Jnr were considered **entirely destitute of moral character**, and addicted to **vicious habits**.” “Mormonism Unveiled”, Zanesville, Ohio, 1834, p.261.

Note: There have been no statements from any reliable and informed source who knew Joseph Smith and his family intimately, to support his character.

The Story of the Book of Mormon.

The Book of Mormon claims to be the history of two ancient civilizations on the American continent.

The first group left the Tower of Babel about 2250 BC, crossing to Europe and sailing to Central America. They were totally destroyed because of “corruption”.

The second group allegedly left Jerusalem around 600 BC, before the Babylonian destruction and captivity. They sailed to Peru. These supposedly were righteous Jews, led by Nephi. The Mormon record claimed that Christ appeared to the Nephites, to preach the gospel to them, to institute baptism, the communion service, the priesthood and other mystical ceremonies. They supposedly later on split into two warring camps, the Nephites and the Lamanites (American Indians). The Lamanites allegedly wiped out the Nephites completely in a battle in Palmyra, New York, in 428 AD. The Lamanites supposedly were cursed with dark skin for their evil deeds.

Joseph Smith in 1827, claimed to dig up golden plates written in “reformed Egyptian hieroglyphics”, and by using Urim and Thummim spectacles, translated them into English in 1830 as the Book of Mormon. No Egyptologist has ever unearthed a “reformed Egyptian” language. It has Roman letters inverted or placed sideways, mixed with Greek and Hebrew letters.

Error 4: How could a language written by people leaving Europe in 600 BC use **Roman letters, which were not used widely until 67 BC**, when Rome became a world empire?

The Mormons wrongly claim that the “other sheep” of John 10:16 refer to the appearance of Christ to the Nephites. It, however, refers to the Gentiles, who would be saved, joining the saved Jews in the Church, the body of Christ, the one fold, with one Shepherd (Christ).

Error 5: Joseph Smith, in an effort to prove the Book of Mormon, claimed in the “Pearl of Great Price” Section 2, verses 62, 63, 64, that **Professor Charles Anthon verified the “reformed Egyptian language.”** Smith allegedly quotes Professor Anthon as follows:

“Professor Anthon stated that the translation was correct, more so than any he had before seen translated from the Egyptian. I then showed him those which were not yet translated, and he said that they were Egyptian, Chaldaic, Assyriac and Arabic and he said that they were true characters”.

This later proved to be a **total lie**, as Professor Anthon wrote in a letter to E.D. Howe, that he never said any such thing. Mormons have never been able to refute this letter or any of Howe’s research. An excerpt from Professor Anthon’s letter of rebuttal is as follows:

New York, N.Y., Feb. 17, 1834

Mr E.D. Howe

Painseville, Ohio

Dear Sir,

... The whole story about my having pronounced the Mormonite inscription to be “reformed Egyptian hieroglyphics” is **perfectly false**...

Yours respectfully,

Charles Anthon, LL.D. Columbia University.

All reputable linguists who have examined the Mormon evidence have rejected it as mythical.

Error 6: Mormon misunderstanding of the **Sticks of Joseph and Judah** in Ezekiel 37:15-23.

Mormons claim that the “stick of Judah” refers to the Bible, and the “stick of Ephraim” refers to the Book of Mormon. They claim that the joining of the 2 sticks refers to the union of the Bible and the Book of Mormon as an addition to the Word of God.

Answer: The subject under discussion is **not books, but people and nations**. It refers to the then divided nation of Israel (587 BC) of the northern and southern kingdoms becoming reunited as one nation in the land, just before and after Christ’s second coming.

“These bones are the whole house of Israel”. Ezekiel 37:11.

The 2 sticks becoming one stick in Ezekiel’s hand represent Judah (2 1/2 tribes) and Israel (9 1/2 tribes) being united in the end days.

“I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen, ... and bring them into their own land: I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel,.....**they shall be no more 2 nations.**” Ezekiel 37:21,22.

The Mormon view totally ignores the context, hoping no one will read the passage too carefully.

II. MISTAKES IN THE BOOK OF MORMON

1. Nephi wrote in the wrong language.

A pious Jew would never record Scripture in the Egyptian language. He would always **only use Hebrew**. Nephi, son of Lehi, a devout Jew who had lived in Jerusalem all his life, claimed to record events “in the language of his father (Lehi), which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.” I Nephi 1:2.

An apostate Jew might use Egyptian, but a devout Jew, even if he knew Egyptian, would never use it to write a “holy” book. He would only use Hebrew.

Note: A devout Jew would **NEVER** write God’s sacred name “JHVH” in Egyptian. This would be an unthinkable abomination and sacrilege. Joseph Smith never knew this. “The Lord commanded...” I Nephi 2:2.

2. The Book of Mormon , describing the safe escape of Nephi from Jerusalem, is contradicted by Jeremiah, who said that the ONLY safety lay in surrendering to King Nebuchadnezzar. There was no other safe way of escape.

“If thou wilt assuredly go forth unto the king of Babylon’s princes, then thy soul shall live...

But if thou wilt not go forth to the King of Babylon’s princes, then shall this city be given into the hand of the Chaldeans, and they shall burn it with fire, and thou shalt not escape out of their hand.” Jeremiah 38:18,19.

The only safety for the people of Jerusalem was to give themselves up to the invading Babylonians. The Book of Mormon is ignorant of Jeremiah 38,39, when it gives the false message in I Nephi 2:2 “The Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.”

Q: Does God contradict himself? No.

Q: Is Nephi a greater prophet than Jeremiah? No.

3. There are no rivers emptying into the Red Sea.

“... When he had travelled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.... He called the name of the river Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the border near the mouth thereof.” I Nephi 2:4-9.

a) It would have been impossible for an old man (Lehi), women and children to travel the 175 mile journey from Jerusalem to the Red Sea in 3 days.

Q: Could you walk 58 miles per day for 3 days? Travelling 3 miles per hour, you would need to travel for 20 hours each day non-stop for 3 days. This would have been quite impossible.

b) There are no rivers running into the Red Sea along their route, the eastern shore of the Gulf of Aqaba, at this or any other point. This part of the world was well known and well travelled in 600 BC. Had there been a river as Nephi describes, the area would have been one of the best known in the world of its day. It would have supported a large population, as always happened where fresh water was available. The mouth of such a river would have been a well known port city in 600 BC.

- c) These 6 people then cross 1400 miles of the Arabian peninsula, 400 miles being rugged mountains and 1000 miles of desert.
- d) They find a bountiful, fruitful land on the Persian Gulf. Alexander's troops in 330 BC avoided this as desert area.
- e) They then build a ship sufficiently seaworthy to carry them two-thirds around the world in rough seas to the west coast of America, now known as Peru.

4. American Indians are Mongoloids from East Asia, not Semites from Jerusalem as the Book of Mormon claims.

For 200 years before 1820, many philosophers thought that the American Indians were the lost tribes of Israel. The dark skin of the Indians is not caused by their bad morals, as the Book of Mormon claims, but by genetics.

American Indians are Mongoloid, not Jewish, because:

- a) Mongoloids lack face and body hair, (growing at most 3 inches of beard in a lifetime), but Jews have much face and body hair.
- b) Mongoloid hair is coarse, black and straight, but Jewish Semite hair is moderately fine, wavy & brown.
- c) Mongoloids have reddish skin pigmentation, but Jewish Semites have an olive-gray pigmentation.
- d) Mongoloids have prominent cheek bones, not like Semites.
- e) Mongoloids appear slant-eyed, but Semites have deep seated eyes.
- f) Mongoloid babies have a Mongolian spot on their backs. This is a slate-blue round pigment spot that disappears after a few months or years. It is not present on the backs of Jewish or Semite babies. Hence American Indians could not descend from Jews. Mormons must defend their prophet even if they have to close their eyes to do so.

5. The Book of Mormon predicts that the Lamanites (American Indians) would soon change to white skin colour.

"Many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a white and delightsome people." 2 Nephi 30:6.

Dark skinned Mormon Indians have never become lightened due to their holding Mormon doctrines. Indian murals show Indians of 4 skin colours, all living peaceably.

Q: If the light skinned Nephites were wiped out in 421 AD as the Book of Mormon claims, why are both light and dark skinned Indians portrayed in later wall paintings at Bonampak and Chichen-Itza?

6. There is not the slightest resemblance between the Mayan characters, and those supposed to be copied by Smith, as "Reformed Egyptian".

7. The Book of Mormon is wrong on Indian warfare.

It is mostly a book of wars, oppression, slavery, treachery and bloodshed. The writer has an obsession with warfare and killing, with killings starting from Chapter 4. Weapons used from 544 BC to 52 BC (p107-359) are listed as bows and arrows, steel swords, axes, brass and copper breastplates, shields, horses and chariots, and cimeters.

Q: What is wrong with this picture? Almost everything.

The author knew almost nothing about early American life, lack of warfare, and politics. Early Americans from 600 BC to 421 AD had very little interest in war, and had no occasion for war because:

- a) They spent most of their time farming.
- b) They had no great cities of great population as are mentioned in the Book of Mormon.
- c) Mongoloids have a different philosophy of life and war than Europeans and Semites.
- d) Early Americans knew nothing of iron and steel for swords, until the Spaniards came.
- e) Breastplates of brass and copper were unknown then.
- f) Cimeters were curved swords used by Persians, Arabs and Turks, only appearing in 1400 AD).
- g) Arm shields and axes of metal were not yet invented in America.

- h) The earliest metals in America were gold beads dated 600 AD. Copper, bronze and silver came much later, when smelting was invented.
- i) Horses and chariots were not used in America before the Spanish conquest.
- j) The wheel was never used in America before the Europeans came. Roads were pedestrian roads approaching the temples, and were not built in the Book of Mormon period
- k) The sinewed bow and arrow of the American Indians came 600 years later, after 421 AD. They instead used an atlatl, or throwing stick.
- l) Wars of conquest were unknown because the gaining of new territory for occupation was unnecessary, as there was plenty of room for all Indians.

8. No coinage system was ever developed in ancient America.

If the alleged “Nephites” were descended from Jews raised in Jerusalem, their coinage and money values would have survived to the New World. Hence Joseph Smith created a system of coinage for people of the Book of Mormon in America. It seems strange that Smith did not continue using Jewish shekels and talents, but that he devised coins such as senines, seons, shums and limnals of gold.

Unfortunately for Smith, while his guess was logical, it was completely wrong. No system of coinage was ever developed by ancient Americans.

The Mayans who traded had:

- a) No money transactions in their records.
- b) Their coins would have been discovered in their graves and homes.
- c) No coins were found in sacred wells, where so many valuable ornaments and jewels were thrown as offerings to their gods.
- d) All the known Mayan media of exchange have been identified, both of their own land, and also along the ancient trade routes of Mexico, Central America and the Caribbean Sea, but never have they found metallic money.
- e) Columbus was told by a Mayan chieftain in 1502 that all transactions were by barter.
- f) Interregional markets were found at Xicalenco, a market town between Aztec and Mayan populations, where Aztec, Mayan, Toltec, Mixtec and Totocan peoples met. Surely if there had been a coined money system it would have been found here.
- g) Cacao beans came closest to a standardised medium of exchange for uneven barter.
- h) Taxation had no metal coinage, but was a work service.

Question: Why did they have no coinage?

Answer: Because they had no metal until gold was discovered after 600 AD. Gold was used only for ornamentation. Silver was discovered around 900 AD.

There never was an iron age in America before Columbus. In spite of this, Joseph Smith had his ancient Nephites and Lamanites using iron and steel swords. Iron was the scarcest and most valuable metal. Gold was the most plentiful and cheapest metal.

9. Silk and fine linen have never been successfully grown in America.

Joseph Smith has Alma, a judge of the Nephites in 100 BC, stating that his people possessed “an abundance of silk and fine twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.” Alma 1:29.

Smith was wrong here because:

- a) Silk was unknown in the Americas until the Europeans came, and that it has never been successfully introduced since then.
- b) Cortez tried to grow silk in Mexico in 1522, but the industry died out 75 years later. Encyclopaedia Britannica, 1959 ed. XX, 664.
- c) James I of England in 1609 tried to introduce silk culture in the American colonies, but failed.
- e) In Alma 17:25-33, Ammon protects King Lamoni’s flocks from attackers. This is wrong because there were no domestic sheep in America before the Spanish came (Morley, The Ancient Maya, p.408). Central America and southern Mexico never have been suitable for raising sheep. Sheep could not thrive in jungle country. Indians wore fabric of rabbit hair, birds’ feathers & Kapok tree. Joseph Smith’s failure to mention these, and his mention of materials totally unknown in any early American period, proves that the Book of Mormon was written by a completely uninformed scribe who knew nothing of life in Ancient America.

10. Impossibility of churches, temples and synagogues in America from 539 BC to 34 AD.

- a) The Book of Mormon mentions “synagogues” at least 12 times. Alma 16:13 speaks of synagogues “built after the manner of the Jews”. They date synagogues from 559 BC to 34 AD. Nephi and his successors in America could have known nothing of synagogues. Why?
Because synagogues were founded after the Temple’s destruction in 586 BC, when Temple worship was an impossibility because Jews were in Babylonian exile. Nephi would never have seen a synagogue in Israel.
- b) II Nephi 5:16 tells us that Nephi built a temple “after the manner of the temple of Solomon”, not more than 20 years after the migrant party landed in America between 588-570 BC. What is wrong with this?
- i) **They didn’t have enough workers**. In I Kings 5:13-18, Solomon needed 183,300 workers (made up of 70,000 labourers + 80,000 stone quarriers, 3300 supervisors + 30,000 loggers) over 7 1/2 years, to build his temple. Yet Nephi had only about 12 adults, because half the company had apostasized. Five couples could not produce more than 50 children in 20 years. It would have been impossible for Nephi, with 5 men’s help, to construct a building requiring many specialised skills.
- ii) There could be no practical use for it, because the population was so small (about 20). Solomon’s temple served a nation of several million worshippers.
- iii) **II Nephi 5:15** says that materials “were in great abundance”.

This **contradicts v.16** which says that the **materials were “not to be found upon the land”**.

“And I, Nephi, did build a temple; ... after the manner of the temple of Solomon, save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land...” v.16.

Here Joseph Smith tripped badly, because he has Nephi saying in the previous verse:

“And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores which were in great abundance.” II Nephi 5:15.

Note: At this same time Smith has Nephi making swords of steel, long before the invention of steel anywhere in the world, to arm his soldiers against about 40 of his apostate brother’s people.

11. Mormons falsely equate Jesus Christ with Quetzalcoatl “The Feathered Serpent.”

The problems with this are:

- a) Jesus Christ is never pictured as a serpent. This is Satan’s symbol (Genesis 3:1).
- b) He appeared at least 1000 years after Christ’s birth (1032 AD). This is too late to equate him with the historic Jesus. There is no evidence that Jesus ever came to the American continent after His resurrection. If He did, it would have been widely recorded.

12. Darkness covered the whole earth at Christ’s crucifixion for 3 hours (Matthew 27:45 and Mark 15:33), but the Book of Mormon mistakes it to be 3 days (Helamen 14:20,27).

Many earthquakes with great destruction and loss of life supposedly accompanied Christ’s death, to show God’s displeasure. Mormons claim that this took place in Yucatan in Mexico. This is an area of flat jungle on limestone, which has been free from earthquakes. Ruins here date from 150 AD or later, not before. What is wrong with this passage?

- a) Jesus rebuked James and John for wanting to call down fire from heaven to destroy the scoffing Samaritans.
- b) The inhabitants of America were no greater sinners than the chief priests who demanded Christ’s death. Christ did not curse them, but prayed for their forgiveness.
- c) Calvary was an act of mercy, not of destruction. No one died in the Jerusalem earthquake, nor when the temple veil was torn. So why should many people die in America who were not responsible for Christ’s death? 3 Nephi 8:1-24.
- d) Christ came to save men’s lives, not destroy them. Smith never understood God’s mercy and grace to man at Calvary.

13. The Book of Mormon forgets that glass windows were not invented in 2200 BC at the Tower of Babel. (The first glass vessels were invented around 1500BC in Egypt. The first window glass was invented around 50AD. *World Book Encyclopedia*).

Jared and others supposedly migrate from Mesopotamia to America when the Tower of Babel was built. For light in their boats, God was supposed to have given them luminous stones.

“For, behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces.” Ether 2:23

Smith did not know that the Phoenicians had not yet invented glass.

Amazingly, 50-80 people sailed for 344 days, without any loss of life, or running short of food.

14. Smith thought that Elijah (O.T.) and Elias (N.T. spelling) were different people.

They are the same person. Elijah is the Old Testament name, and Elias is the New Testament name. This is found in “Doctrines and Covenants” Section 109 and 110:11-13, which is devoted to a prayer offered at the dedication of the temple in Kirtland, Ohio, March 27, 1836, where Smith states:

“The Lord appeared, ... Moses appeared before us... Elias appeared... After this vision was closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us.”

Elijah and Elias are the same person. What a blunder! Elijah and Elisha are distinguished correctly in Luke 4:25,26: “Many widows were in Israel in the days of Elias (Elijah)... Many lepers were in Israel in the time of Eliuseus (Elisha) the prophet; and none of them was cleansed saving Naaman the Syrian.”

Once this revelation was presented as the word of God, there was no easy way to correct this mistake.

15. Jesus Christ was born at Bethlehem, not at Jerusalem (Luke 2:4 and Micah 5:2).

“The Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth. And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem.” Alma 7:9,10.

Everyone knows that Jesus was born at Bethlehem, except Joseph Smith and Mormons who wish to defend the indefensible. Luke and Micah got it right, but Smith got it wrong. It is 9Km South of Jerusalem.

16. How can Helaman 12:26, supposedly written in 6 BC, quote John 5:29 which was not yet written until 85 AD? You cannot quote something that is not yet written.

“fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall receive everlasting life; and they that have done evil, shall have everlasting damnation.” Helaman 12:26 in 6 BC.

It is obvious that this is a great mistake, proving the Book of Mormon to be a fake, made up by someone who did not know his facts, and who was given to lying. John 5:29 quotes: “And shall come forth: they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation.”

Q: Does this verse teach salvation by good works?

Answer: No, because John’s theology forbids this (3:17-21; 6:28,29). It states that those who are truly born again will live a life of good works after salvation. They obey Christ (14:15), they abide in Christ (15:5-7), and they walk in the light (John 8:12). Damnation is because of rejecting Christ (John 3:36).

17. How can parts of the Book of Mormon allegedly written in 570 BC quote Bible passages (word for word) that were not yet written (in 397BC or 1611AD)?

Book of Mormon

i) I Nephi 22:15 (570 BC)
“For the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble, and the day cometh that they must be burned.”

ii) II Nephi 26:9 (545 BC)
“But the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them...”

Answer: The Book of Mormon was not written in 570 BC, but was copied from the King James Bible around 1820 AD. The writer misquoted “Son” for “Sun”, a dictation mistake.

18. How can the Book of Mormon, allegedly written around 570 BC, quote word for word from the New Testament of the King James Bible, not written until 1611 AD? (2200 years later).

Book of Mormon

i) I Nephi 4:13 (592 BC)
“That one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish...”

ii) I Nephi 10:8 (570 BC)
“Whose shoe’s latchet I am not worthy to unloose.”

iii) I Nephi 10:9
“He should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan...”

iv) I Nephi 11:22
v) I Nephi 11:27
vi) I Nephi 14:11

KJV

Malachi 4:1 (397 BC)
“For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be as stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up...”

Malachi 4:2 (397 BC)
“But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings...”

KJV

i) John 11:50 (33 AD, 1611 AD)
“That one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation perish not.”

ii) John 1:27 (85 AD and 1611 AD)
“Whose shoe’s latchet I am not worthy to unloose.”

iii) John 1:28
“In Bethabara beyond Jordan, where John was baptizing.”

iv) Romans 5:5
v) Luke 3:22
vi) Revelation 17:1,15

Jerald and Sandra Tanner list 400 clear examples in their book “The Case against Mormonism” (Vol. 2, Salt Lake City, 1967, p.87-102) to prove beyond doubt that the author of the Book of Mormon was well acquainted with the King James New Testament of 1611.

vii) At least 17 full chapters of the Book of Isaiah are quoted word for word from the King James Version of 1611, allegedly in 570 BC, 2200 years before the KJV was published. This is a clear case of plagiarism, with no other purpose than adding volume to the book of Mormon without too much effort.

Book of Mormon: I Nephi 20 21 II Nephi 7 8 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24
Isaiah: 48 49 50 51;52:1,2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

19. The Book of Abraham Fraud

This is found in the Mormon scripture known as “The Pearl of Great Price”. Joseph Smith in 1835 purchased an ancient Egyptian papyrus found in mummy wrapping acquired by Michael H. Chandler. Smith, believing that he had the gift of interpreting ancient Egyptian, **claimed that the rolls contained the writings of Abraham himself, signed personally by Abraham.**

In 1842, Smith published his translation under the title “The Book of Abraham” in “Times and Seasons”. He claimed that a picture in it was Abraham sitting on Pharaoh’s throne.

These papyri were lost for many years, but they turned up and were presented to the Mormon Church by the Metropolitan Art Museum of New York on November 27, 1967.

When translated, they found that not a single word of Joseph Smith’s translation was correct. The text had nothing to do with Abraham, but **described magical spells to open the mouth of the dead** to prepare him for his **audience with Osiris** to be judged. Hence Joseph Smith’s translation of Egyptian is proved false.

20. The Book of Mormon has undergone about 3000 changes from the 1830 edition to the modern edition.

1830 Edition

i) “King Benjamin had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings.” p.200.

ii) “Behold the virgin which thou seest, is the Mother of God.” p.25.

iii) “..that the Lamb of God is the eternal Father...” p.32.

Modern Edition

i) “King Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings.” p.176, verse 28.

ii) “Behold the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God.” I Nephi 11:18.

iii) “..that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father...” I Nephi 13:40.

21. Of the 38 cities in the Book of Mormon, leading archaeologists have not found any remains of any of these alleged cities.

The **Smithsonian Institute** in Washington states:

“There is **no correspondence** whatever between **archaeological sites** and cultures as revealed by scientific investigations, and **as recorded in the Book of Mormon...** Thus far no iron, steel, brass, gold and silver coins, metal, swords, breastplates, arm shields, armour, horses and chariots, or silk have ever been found in pre-colonial archaeological sites.” Kingdom of the Cults, W. Martin, p.162.

22. The testimony of the 3 witnesses which appears at the front of the Book of Mormon (Oliver Cowdery, David Whitmer, and Martin Harris) declares that:

“an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engraving thereon...”

Martin Harris denied to Professor Anthon that he had actually seen the plates, but that he only saw them “with the **eye of faith.**”

Note: **All three** of these witnesses **later apostasized** from the Mormon faith, and were described by Mormon contemporaries as thieves and counterfeiters.

23. Polygamy is forbidden by God in Jacob 2:27, yet it was practised by Smith and Brigham Young, and permitted by “Doctrines and Covenants”, section 132, v.32,34.

“... hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none.” Jacob 2:27.

Conclusion:

Thurlow Weed, who was the editor of the “Rochester Telegram” newspaper, wrote that Smith approached him in 1825, two years before the supposed possession of the golden plates, with a view to publishing the Book of Mormon. At this time he claimed to have the first chapter written.

Question: Why do Mormons continue to circulate the discredited Book of Mormon?

Answer: Joseph Smith, to the Mormons, is the prophet of God, and the Book of Mormon is his symbol. Discredit the Book, and you discredit Joseph Smith. Mormons' authoritative scripture consists of:

- a) The King James Bible "insofar as it is correctly translated".
- b) Doctrine and Covenants.
- c) The Pearl of Great Price.
- d) The Book of Mormon.

Mormons must be willing to face the facts, admit that they have been deceived, and leave the Mormon church. Truth and one's eternal salvation are more important than remaining loyal to a **living prophet** and to a **false church**. Mormons, pluck up the courage to honestly seek the truth in the Bible with your mind and not with your feelings. Swallow your pride and come to Jesus Christ alone for salvation, not trusting your baptism or good works or the Mormon religion.

Reject Mormon revelations of:

- a) The acceptance of **new scripture**. The Bible is able to make "the man of God perfect (complete), thoroughly furnished unto all good works." II Timothy 3:16,17. See II Peter 1:3,4.
- b) Individual, **personal**, supernatural **revelations**: "Woe unto the **foolish** prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing." Ezekiel 13:3.
"that prophesy **lies** in my name....they are the prophets of the **deceit** of their own heart" Jeremiah 23:25,26.
"they prophesy unto you a **false vision** and divination, and a thing of **naught**, and the **deceit** of their heart." Jeremiah 14:14.

Q: Mormons, when you prophesy, can you prove that you are speaking from God, or does it come from your heart, or from the devil?

Q: If you can make up prophecies, so can everybody. Where does this lead you to? Confusion.

III. FALSE PROPHECIES OF JOSEPH SMITH.

A cultist looks to his leader to decide truth for him. **Joseph Smith is the Mormon's only basis of religious authority.** They believe that he is a **prophet of God**.

The only issue which Mormons are **not well-prepared to discuss**, is the issue of Joseph Smith's claim to be a true prophet of God. This issue is not in their manual.

A Mormon missionary is trained to give a testimony in which he states:

"I testify by the Spirit of God that I know that Joseph Smith was a prophet of God, and that the Book of Mormon is the Word of God."

Q1: How do you know that he was a prophet of God?

Mormon: Because God spoke to him.

Q2: How do you know that God spoke to him?

Mormon: Because he was a prophet of God.

Q3: This is circular reasoning, which is not valid. How do you know that he was a prophet to whom God spoke?

Mormon: I got on my knees and prayed for God to show me if Joseph Smith was His prophet, and if the Book of Mormon was inspired. Now I have a **burning feeling** in my heart that these things are true."

Q4: You don't determine truth by a burning feeling in your heart, but by the Word of God.

The Bible says, "He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool." Proverbs 28:26.

"The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?" Jeremiah 17:9.

Mormon: What do you **feel** about the Book of Mormon?

Note: They try to direct you to your feelings in order to keep you from **thinking** about the issues.

Q5: We can test Joseph Smith's claim to be a prophet of God by testing if his prophecies all came true. Deuteronomy 18:20-22 states that if someone claims to be a prophet of God, but **his predictions fail to happen**, then this person is a **false prophet**.

Repeat this logic to the Mormon until he understands it.

Q6: When the prophecies of Joseph Smith are examined, it can be proven that he was a false prophet.

Note: Mormons are not trained to deal with Smith's prophecies. Mormon leaders discourage members from studying his false prophecies. Keep to this subject.

Smith's false prophecies are not mistakes. We all make mistakes, but most of us never claim to be a "prophet of God" who speaks "inspired revelations." Be prepared for the Mormons' "pat answers."

a) Mormon: Smith never made any prophecies.

You: Doctrines and Covenants, and Pearl of Great Price record many of his prophecies.

b) Mormon: Smith was only giving his personal opinion. He wasn't speaking as a prophet.

You: Each prophecy in Doctrines and Covenants is a numbered and dated revelation from God. Smith's predictions begin with "Thus says the Lord", and full inspiration is claimed for each one.

c) Mormon: If Smith was a false prophet, so was Moses. Didn't he predict he would lead Israel into the Promised Land? Yet he died beforehand.

You: Moses never prophesied that he would enter the land.

We aim to convert Mormons to Christ, and to prevent people from becoming Mormons. Therefore, just one false prophecy would reveal Smith to be a false prophet, because God's prophets never give false prophecies. Smith was either a prophet of God, or one of the biggest frauds this world has ever seen.

Consider these 11 false prophecies of Joseph Smith, showing him to be a false prophet:

False Prophecy 1: New York, Albany and Boston have not been destroyed for rejecting the Mormon message.

Doctrines and Covenants 84, p.141,142.

114: "Nevertheless, let the bishop go unto the city of New York, also to the city of Albany, and also to the city of Boston, and warn the people of those cities with the sound of the gospel, with a loud voice, of the desolation and utter abolishment which await them if they do reject these things."

115. "For if they do reject these things the hour of their judgment is near, and their house shall be left unto them desolate."

This false prophecy was given in 1832 that these cities desolation and utter abolishment was near. 187 years have passed and these cities remain unharmed. This makes Joseph Smith a false prophet. Reject him.

False Prophecy 2: The earth did not reel to and fro like a drunken man "not many days" after Dec. 27, 1832.

Doctrines and Covenants 88, p.150:

87: "For not many days hence and the earth shall tremble and reel to and fro as a drunken man: and the sun shall hide his face, and shall refuse to give light; and the moon shall be bathed in blood; and the stars shall become exceeding angry; and shall cast themselves down as a fig that falleth from off a fig tree."

From 1832 to 2019 are 68,300 days. Many days have elapsed since 1832 and these events prophesied by Smith have not yet happened. The phrase "not many days hence" makes Smith a false prophet.

False Prophecy 3: Bloodshed in South Carolina did not lead to Christ's Second Coming (v.12). Christ did not come in 1890, when Smith would have been age 85. (v.15,17)

Doctrines and Covenants 130, p.238.

12. "I prophesy, in the name of the Lord God, that the commencement of the difficulties which will cause much bloodshed previous to the coming of the Son of Man, will be in South Carolina." 15. "Joseph, my son, if thou livest until thou art 85 years old, thou shalt see the face of the Son of Man..."

False prophecy 4: The wicked of this generation were not swept away violently. Nor did the lost tribes of Israel return from the north country down to America.

History of the Church, 1833, p.315.

“And now I am prepared to say by the authority of Jesus Christ that not many years shall pass away before the United States shall present such a scene of bloodshed as has not a parallel in the history of our nation; pestilence, hail, famine, and earthquake will sweep the wicked of this generation from off the face of the land, to open and prepare the way for the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the north country. The people of the Lord, those who have complied with the... ..and flee to Zion, before the overflowing scourge overtake you, for there are those now living upon the earth whose eyes shall not be closed in death until they see all these things, which I have spoken, fulfilled. Remember these things: call upon the Lord while He is near, and seek Him while He may be found, is the exhortation of your unworthy servant.

[Signed] JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.”

Q: Did those living in 1833 see with their own eyes the destruction of the wicked, and the return of the lost tribes of Israel from the North Country? No.

False Prophecy 5: Smith prophesied in 1835 that Christ’s return would be in 56 years. Did Christ return in 1891?

“On the 14th of Feb. 1835, Joseph Smith said that God had revealed to him that the coming of Christ would be within 56 years, which being added to 1835 shows that before 1891 and the 14th of Feb., the Saviour of the world would make his appearance again upon the earth and the winding up scene take place. In connection with this event, was related by my brother Dimick Huntington, the fact that when Joseph and Hyrum Smith submitted in their feelings to consent to give themselves up to the state mob at Nauvoo, Illinois, after they had passed the Mississippi River. Joseph said “If they shed my blood it shall shorten this work 10 years”. That taken from 1891 would reduce the time to **1881**, which if the true time within which the Saviour should come must be crowded into 6 years.”

This excerpt is taken from the Journal of O.B. Huntington (Vol. 2, p.129).

What does this false prophecy make Joseph Smith? A false prophet!

Note: When SDA William Miller prophesied that on 3rd April, 1843, Christ would come in glory, and the end of the world would come, what did Joseph Smith accuse Miller of being, when it did not happen?

Joseph Smith says of Miller in History of the Church, 3 April 1843:

“Monday, April 3- Miller’s day of judgment has arrived, but it is too pleasant for false prophets.”

Smith said “I prophesy in the name of the Lord God, and let it be written- the Son of Man will not come in the clouds of heaven till I am 85 years old.”

History of the Church, April 1843, p.336.

False Prophecy 6: Smith prophesied that the lost ten tribes have lived for 2500 years in the Arctic regions. Journal of Discourses, p.68:

“I do not know how much before the ten tribes will come from the north; but after Zion is built in Jackson County, and after the Temple is built upon that spot of ground where the corner stone was laid in 1831; after the glory of God in the form of a cloud by day shall rest upon that Temple, and by night the shining of a flaming fire will fill the whole heavens round about; after every dwelling place upon Mount Zion shall be clothed

upon as with a pillar of fire by night, and a cloud by day, about that period of time, the ten tribes will be heard of, away in the north, a great company, as Jeremiah says, coming down from the northern regions, coming to sing in the height of the latter day Zion. Their souls will be as a watered garden, and they will not sorrow any more at all, as they have been doing during the twenty-five hundred long years they have dwelt in the Arctic regions.”

Is there any scientific or archaeological evidence to indicate that the lost ten tribes of Israel have been living in the Arctic for the last 2500 years? No. What does this make Joseph Smith?

False Prophecy 7: England and all nations did not become involved against the United States during the Civil War.

Smith declared in Doctrines and Covenants, section 87, Mormon p.144, v.1-3:

“At the rebellion of South Carolina... the Southern states will call on other nations, even the nation of Great Britain,... and then war shall be poured out upon all nations... slaves shall rise up against their masters... and that the remnants (Indians)... shall vex the Gentiles with a sore vexation.”

Notice **five false prophecies** given here by Joseph Smith:

- i) England did not become involved in the Civil War or any war against the United States.
- ii) “All nations” were not involved in the Civil War or any war against the United States.
- iii) The slaves did not rise up against their masters.
- iv) The remnants (Indians) were themselves vexed by the Gentiles, being defeated in war and confined to reservations.
- v) Joseph Smith did not possess the house he built at Nauvoo “for ever and ever.” Doctrines and Covenants Section 124,v22,23,59. It was destroyed after Smith’s death & Mormons moved to Utah.

False Prophecy 8: The Moon is not inhabited by 6 foot high men dressing like Quakers.

The Young Woman’s Journal, p.263, 4. O.B.Huntington quotes Smith:

“... to prove Joseph Smith to be a prophet. As far back as 1837, I know that he said the moon was inhabited by men and women the same as this earth... and that they live generally to near the age of 1000 years.

He described the men as averaging near six feet in height, and dressing quite uniformly in something near the Quaker style ... I was told that I should preach the gospel to the inhabitants of the moon.”

Q: Mormon, do you really believe that people like Quakers live on the moon?

“Every star that we see is a world and is inhabited as this world is peopled. The Sun, Moon and stars are inhabited.”
Hyrum Smith, April 27, 1843.

From “George Leub’s Nauvoo Journal”, BYU Studies, Vol. 18, No. 2, Winter 1978.

Brigham Young claimed that the Sun was inhabited:

“So it is with regard to the inhabitants of the Sun. Do you think it is inhabited? I rather think it is. Do you think there is any life there? No question of it, it was not made in vain.”
Journal of Discourses, Vol. XIII, p.271.

False Prophecy 9: Joseph Smith said that a Mormon temple and city would be built in Independence (Zion), Missouri, in his own generation in 1832.

This lot is marked by a plaque. If there is no temple on this temple lot, and the 1832 generation has passed away, what does this make Joseph Smith to be? A false prophet.

v3: “... which city shall be built, beginning at the temple lot, which is appointed by the finger of the Lord, in the western boundaries of the State of Missouri, and dedicated by the Lord of Joseph Smith, Jr. v.4: “which temple shall be reared in this generation.”
Doctrines and Covenants , Section 84, p.135, v.3,4. 805

Q: Is there a Mormon city and temple in Independence, Missouri? No.

Has the 1832 generation passed away? Yes.

Does this make Joseph Smith a false prophet? Yes.

False Prophecy 10: Smith prophesied in 1838 that David Patten would go on a missionary tour with himself and 12 others in 1839.

The only problem with this prophecy is that **Patten was shot and killed in October 1838, thus falsifying Smith's prophecy.** What does this make Smith? A false prophet.

Doctrines and Covenants, Section 114, p.208.

SECTION 114

“Revelation given to Joseph Smith the Prophet, at Far West, Missouri, April 17, 1838. Directions to David W. Patten- Positions occupied by the unfaithful to be given to others. 1. Verily thus saith the Lord: It is wisdom in my servant David W. Patten, that he settle up all his business as soon as he possibly can, and make a disposition of his merchandise, that he may perform a mission unto me next spring, in company with others, even twelve including myself, to testify of my name and bear glad tidings unto all the world.”

Patten's death is recorded as follows:

“In the pursuit, one of the mob fled from behind a tree, wheeled, and shot Captain Patten, who instantly fell, mortally wounded, having received a large ball in his bowels.”
History of the Church, Oct. 1838, p.171.

Mormons claim that Patten fulfilled Smith's prophecy by being a missionary to the spirit world. This is wrong because **Patten was to go with Smith** and other human companions. **Patten's companions did not go with him to the spirit world that Spring in 1839.**

False Prophecy 11: II Nephi 10:7 says that Jews will first believe in Christ, then get restored to the land of Israel.

“When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, THEN have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.”

This is a false prophecy, because today the Jews are back in their land, but they still do not believe in Jesus Christ.

Conclusion:

Just one false prophecy is enough to identify Joseph Smith as a false prophet. We have seen 11 out of over 60 false prophecies that he made proving that he was not a prophet of God.

Since Smith is a fraud, fake and liar, then the whole Mormon religion is proven to be false.

Q: What should the Mormon do?

Answer: Renounce all Mormon doctrines, baptisms, priesthoods, and relationships. Reject the Book of Mormon, Pearl of Great Price, and Doctrines and Covenants as false. Turn to the Bible alone as the final authority. Once all reliance on Joseph Smith is abandoned, receive and rely totally on Jesus Christ alone for salvation. Deuteronomy 13:1-5 states that false prophets must be put to death. God allows Mormon false doctrines to test people to prove if they love God with all their heart and soul.

See also Deuteronomy 18:20-22, “That prophet shall die”.

IV. FALSE MORMON DEFINITIONS OF BIBLE TERMS.

When Mormons use a Christian term, they reject the Biblical definition of that term, and they substitute a false, non-Christian definition in its place.

Consider these false Mormon redefinitions:

1. **Christianity** = a false, damnable, apostate religion.
2. **God** = one of many self-progressing bodily deities. He was formerly a man, a finite creature.
Bible refutation:
 - i) “Before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.” Isaiah 43:10.
“I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God. Is there a God beside me? Yea, there is no God; I know not any.” Isaiah 44:6,8.
“I am the Lord, and there is none else, there is no God beside me.” v.5.
“There is none beside me. I am the Lord, and there is none else.” v.6.
“There is no God else beside me;” v.21. Isaiah 45:5,6,21.
 - ii) Mormons teach that each god is **evolving**:
“For I am the Lord, I change not.” Malachi 3:6.
3. **Jesus Christ** = a self-progressing deity (Jehovah of Old Testament) and the first spirit child of Elohim and his wife, Mary.

Mormon Jesus.

Biblical Jesus Christ.

- i) A created being,
the **brother of Lucifer.**
 - ii) Earned his own salvation
by good works.
 - iii) One of many gods.
(Exodus 20:3- no other gods).
 - iv) Conceived by physical sex with
Mary (Matthew 1:23 a virgin
shall be with child).
 - v) A **married** polygamist.
- i) Uncreated God
(John 1:1,3; Micah 5:2, I Timothy 3:16).
 - ii) Requires no salvation.
(II Corinthians 5:21- “who knew no sin”).
 - iii) Second person of the one Godhead.
 - iv) Conceived by the Holy Spirit
overshadowing Mary.
 - v) Unmarried.
4. **Holy Ghost** = A man with a spiritual body of matter.
“He shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever.. and shall be in you.”
John 14:16,17.
 5. **Trinity** = Tritheistic. Father, Son and Holy Spirit are 3 separate deities.
“Baptising them in the NAME (not names) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.”
Matthew 28:19.
 6. **The Gospel** = Mormon theology.
“I declare unto you the gospel... Christ died for our sins... he was buried, and he rose again the third day.” I Corinthians 15:1-4.
 7. **Born again** = Water baptism into Mormonism.
“But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God.” John 1:12.
See “Answers” Chapter 96, p.455 entitled “Baptismal Regeneration.”
We are born again by receiving Jesus Christ as our Saviour, without any good works.
 8. **Atonement** = God’s provision for an individual to earn their true salvation “by obedience to the laws and ordinances of the Gospel.” (Articles of Faith, 3).
“Not of works, lest any man should boast.” Ephesians 2:9.
See “Answers” Chapter 91 entitled “Good Works don’t save us.”
 9. **True salvation, eternal life, redemption** = Exaltation to Godhead in the highest part of the celestial kingdom is based on individual good works and personal merit. Exaltation involves ruling and sexual procreation of spirit children.
Reply: Satan’s third lie to Eve was “ye shall be as gods.” Genesis 3:5.
Becoming a god appealed to Eve’s pride and also to Mormons’ pride.
We will never become a god, but will always be human, yes glorified humans in heaven.

10. **The Fall** = A spiritual step upward permitting physical bodies of children to be procreated. This is false, because it was already God's plan for man to reproduce "after their own kind."
11. **Heaven** = 3 kingdoms of glory. This is false because the 3 heavens are the atmosphere, space and God's throne. II Corinthians 12:2.
12. **Hell** = generally like purgatory; possibly eternal for a very few such as apostate Mormons. False, because Christ "purged our sins." Hebrews 1:3.
13. **The Scriptures** = The Book of Mormon, Doctrines and Covenants, the Pearl of Great Price; the King James Bible as far as it is translated correctly. (Articles of Faith, 8).
False, because of mistakes in Book of Mormon, Doctrines and Covenants, the Pearl of Great Price.
Question: How did Mormons reach these false definitions?
Answer: Because they did not rely on the Bible to define its terms. They relied on revelations from the spirit world of demons.

V. QUESTIONS FOR MORMONS:

Q1: How can Joseph Smith be a true prophet of God when **he fails the test of a true prophet** in Deuteronomy 13:1-5, 18:20-22, by making 11 clear false prophecies?

Q2: What does your **conscience** and **common sense** tell you when you understand the **23 mistakes** in the Book of Mormon discussed earlier?

Q3: Does it worry you that a supposed perfect Book of Mormon should require **many major changes** and 3000 minor changes from the original 1830 edition?

Q4: How do you explain the **27,000 words in phrases plagiarised from the King James Bible** into the Book of Mormon when the KJV was not written in 570 BC?

Q5: Why has **no archaeological evidence** ever been found to support the Book of Mormon's alleged cities, persons, silk, coins, metals, wars, weapons, kings or palaces in North or South America?

"The Smithsonian Institute has never used the Book of Mormon in any way as a scientific guide."

This is a quote from a standard Smithsonian letter sent out to Mormon enquirers.

The **Bureau of American Ethnology** writes: "There is no evidence whatever of any migration from Israel to America, and likewise no evidence that pre-Columbian Indians had any knowledge of Christianity and the Bible."

Prominent Mormon Archaeologist, Thomas Stewart Ferguson, quit the Mormon church, and repudiated Joseph Smith because of the weight of archaeological evidence against Mormonism.

Q6: How do you explain **plagiarisms** in the Book of Mormon **taken from Ethan Smith's "View of the Hebrews (1823)**, a book that was available to Joseph Smith?

Q7: Why does the Book of Mormon **conflict with hundreds of truths in the Bible**?

Q8: How can **early Mormon prophets** deny and **contradict** modern Mormon prophets, and vice versa?

Q9: Does it worry you that the Book of Mormon was **translated by occult means**?

Emma Smith, one of Joseph's many wives, confesses:

"I frequently wrote day after day... he sitting with his **face buried in his hat**, with a stone in it, and dictating hour after hour."

Q10: Why, after 25 years, has the Mormon church never responded or answered to Jerald and Sandra Tanner's research? Write to them at: Utah Lighthouse ministry, Box 1884, Salt Lake City, Utah, 84110.

Q11 Why is it that even the **highest Mormons** do not know for certain where they are going when they die?

Q12: **If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure if you would go to live with Jesus Christ forever in heaven?**

Would you like to be sure? Then read "Answers" Chapter 17 on "How to lead a person to Christ", and receive Jesus Christ as your only Saviour, renouncing all your Mormon beliefs today.

GET OUT OF THE MORMON CHURCH TODAY!

I. MORMON BLASPHEMIES and HERESIES ABOUT GOD

We should reject the Mormon religion for their blasphemous heresies such as:

1. “God the Father is simply a **man who achieved godhead**.” (*History of the Church*, Vol 6, p 305).
Bible: God the Father has always been God ‘from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God’ Ps 90:2
2. “God the Father has **Eternal wives** through whom spirit children have been & continue to be born.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, 1966, p 516; *The Seer*, Orson Pratt, p 37, 158).
Bible: God has no wife and stands alone as God: ‘I am God, and there is none like me.’ Isaiah 46:9
3. “Christ, before his earthly ministry, was the **first spirit child** born to the Heavenly Father and Mother.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 278, 589).
Bible: Christ is the Eternal God, not the product of sexual conception:
“Whose goings forth have been from of old, from **everlasting**.” (Micah 5:2).
4. “God the Father in His glorified physical body had **sexual intercourse with the virgin Mary** that resulted in the conception of the physical Christ.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 547; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 1, p 51; Vol 4, p 218).
Bible: The physical Jesus Christ was conceived supernaturally, non-sexually, by the Holy Spirit in the body of the virgin Mary. (Luke 1:26-38).
5. “**Satan** (Lucifer) was originally the **spirit brother of Christ**.” (*The Gospel through the Ages*, p 15).
Bible: Satan was originally a created angel who led a rebellion against God in heaven.
Christ is the Creator: ‘All things were made by him.’ (John 1:3). **Satan is a created angel:**
“in the day that thou was created,..thou art the anointed cherub.” Ezekiel 28:11-19 especially v13,14
6. “**Jesus became a god**, equal to the Father, after his death, ascension and exaltation.” (*The Gospel through the Ages*, 1958, p.21).
Bible: Jesus Christ presented Himself to men as the Eternal God during His earthly ministry:
“he said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God.” (John 5:18);
“I and my Father are one.” (John 10:30).
7. “God Himself is **ever progressing upward in knowledge, wisdom and power**.” (*Journal of Discourses*, Vol 1, p 93; Vol 6, p. 20).
Bible: God already possesses eternal wisdom, knowledge and power, and so never changes:
“Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God **Almighty**” (Rev. 4:8). “his **understanding** is infinite.” Psalm 147:5.
8. “God the Father has a **flesh and bones body**.” (*Doctrine and Covenants*, 13.22).
Bible: God the Father is a Spirit (John 4:24). ‘God is not a man, that he should lie.’ (Numbers 23:19)
9. “The Father, Son, Holy Spirit are **3 distinct gods**.” (*Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, p 37, 372)
Bible: There is only one God, but 3 distinct persons in the Godhead:
“Baptising them in the **name** of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.’ (Matthew 28:19)
“The Lord our God is one Lord.” (Deut. 6:4).

II. MORMON HERESIES ABOUT SALVATION

1. “Mormon ‘salvation’ comes through a combination of **faith, baptism in the church and works**.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p.669-70; *Ensign*, Nov. 1982, p.61).
Bible: Bible salvation comes by grace through personal **faith** in Jesus Christ as Saviour,
“**not of yourselves** it is the gift of God, **not of works** lest any man should boast.” Ephesians 2:8,9.
2. “The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormons) **restored the true gospel** to the earth through Joseph Smith, and the **true gospel** is found only in it today.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 334; *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, p 119).
Bible: a) Christ promised that **true churches** would never disappear from the earth:
“I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.” (Matthew 16:18);
“Lo I am with you always, even unto the end of the world.” (Matthew 28:20).
b) Paul warned us to reject any gospel other than faith in Christ alone for salvation. Paul warns that “works” based gospels are **false** and are **cursed by God**: “There be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ (v.7). But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be **accursed**.” (Galatians 1:7,8).

3. “The **Gospel** includes “all the **laws**, principles, rites, ordinances, acts, powers, authorities and keys necessary to exalt men in the highest heaven hereafter.”” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 331).
Bible: “I declare unto you the **gospel**. . . that Christ **died for our sins** according to the Scriptures; and that he was **buried**, and that he rose again the third day.” (I Corinthians 15:1-4);
 “Knowing that a man in not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ.” (Galatians 2:16). The Gospel does not include **laws** (Romans 3:19-24), **ordinances** (Colossians 2:14,17) or **works** (Titus 3:5-7 “Not by works which we have done . . .”).
4. “**Eternal life** can only be achieved through **obedience to the Mormon church**, **and having one’s marriage sealed in a temple** ceremony by the Mormon priesthood.” (*Mormon Doctrine*, p 411; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 11, p 221).
Bible: “He that has the Son has life, and he that has not the Son of God has not life.” I John 5:12

III. **MORMON HERESIES ABOUT MANKIND**

1. “Man has the potential of becoming God, just as Christ did; **man is king of kings** and **Lord of Lords in embryo**.” (*Times and Seasons*, August 1, 1844; *Journal of Discourses*, Vol 10, p 223; *History of the Church*, Vol 6, p 306; *Doctrine and Covenants*, 132.20).
Bible: a) God alone is and will be God:
 “before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.” (Isaiah 43:10).
 “I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me.” (Isaiah 46:9)
 b) Satan’s first lie to mankind was that “ye shall be as gods.” (Genesis 3:5).
 It worked against Eve, so Satan uses it through Mormonism today.
2. “Adam’s fall in the Garden of Eden was a fall “upward” that was **not sinful**, but rather necessary for the **propagation of the human race**.” (*Journal of Discourses*, Vol 13, p 145; Vol 10, p 312; *Pearl of Great Price*, Moses 5:10-12; *Doctrines of Salvation*, Vol 1, p 114-115).
Bible: a) Adam’s sin in Eden caused spiritual and physical death for all persons (Genesis3:16-19) “by one man **sin** entered into the world & death by sin;& so death passed upon all men” Rom 5:12
 b) **Propagation of the human race** was **certain without needing the fall**:
 “God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply...” (Genesis 1:28).
3. “Each person’s essence, his intelligence, has **always existed** and so was never created. Man is as **eternal as God Himself**.” (*Journal of Discourses*, X, p 5; VI, p 6; *Doctrine and Covenants*, 93.29; *The Plan of Salvation* (booklet) p 3).
Bible: All men are a creation of God and **had no existence before conception**. God asked Job,
 “Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth?” (Job 38:4).
 “All my members were written, . . . when as yet there was none of them.” (Psalm 139:16).
4. “Each person’s spiritual body that clothed his intelligence in the pre-existent state was formed by the **sexual union of the Father** and **one of His spirit wives**.” (*The Seer*, Orson Pratt, p 37).
Bible: Man did not pre-exist, and the Father had no wives.

Questions: 1) Did God the Father have **sex with Mary to produce Jesus Christ?** (I.4) Bible support?

2) Do you think God the Father was **once a man who later achieved godhead?** (I.1)

3) Do you think God the Father has **Eternal wives** which procreate spirit children? (I.2) Bible proof?

4) Do you think God is **ever progressing upward** in knowledge, wisdom and power? (I.7).Bible proof?

5) Do you think Jesus became **a god after his ascension?** (I.6)? Bible proof?

6) Do you think Satan was originally the **spirit brother of Christ?** (I.5). Bible Proof?

7) Do you think salvation comes by **faith, Mormon baptism & works** (II.1) or by faith in Christ alone?

8) What is the **true gospel** according to I Cor. 15:1-4 (II.3)? Did Mormons restore it or add to it?

9) What does God say about those **preaching another gospel** in Galatians 1:6-9? Is God’s curse on LDS?

10) How do we **get eternal life** according to Mormonism? (II.4). How do we get it according to I John 5:12?

11) Does man have the **potential to become God?** (III.1). What was **Satan’s first lie to Eve/mankind?** (Genesis 3:5).

Conclusion: Reject and leave the Mormon church today. These blasphemies are from the mind of Satan.

115. 120 Bible passages referring to Jehovah that, in the New Testament are quoted and applied to Christ.

This proves that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God the Son of the New Testament.

Ask: In view of many Old Testament verses referring to Jehovah, which are applied to Jesus Christ in the New Testament, what does this tell you about who Jesus Christ is?

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
1. Honour each equally	John 5:23 “That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father . He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.”	
2. I AM	Exodus 3:13-15 “ What is his name? ...Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you this is my name forever. ”	John 8:24,58 Jesus said, “if ye believe not that I AM he , ye shall die in your sins” (v.24). Jesus said, “Before Abraham was, I AM. ” (v.58).
3. Mighty God	Habakkuk 1:12-13 “O LORD (Jehovah),..... O Mighty God... ” Isaiah 10:20,21 & Jeremiah 32:18 “....the Mighty God, Jehovah.... ” Psalm 50:1 “....The mighty God, ”	Isaiah 9:6 “Unto us a child is born, unto us a Son is given,....His name shall be called The Mighty God. ”
4. Throne	Psalm 45:6,7 “ Thy throne O God is for ever and ever: the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre”	Hebrews 1:8 “But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God , is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.”
5. Accepted Worship	Exodus 34:14 “Thou shalt worship no other god. ” I Chronicles 16:29 “ Worship the LORD (Jehovah) in the beauty of holiness.”	Hebrews 1:6 “When he bringeth the firstbegotten into the world, he saith: let all the angels of God worship him (Jesus).” Matthew 28:9 “They came and held him by the feet, & worshipped him.”
6. Creator of Heaven and Earth	Psalm 102:24-27 “I said, O my God,.....of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the works of thy hands. ”	Hebrews 1:10-12 “And (to the Son), thou Lord (JHVH) in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thy hands. ”
7. Creator of mankind	Malachi 2:10 “Hath not one God created us?” Proverbs 16:4 “Jehovah hath made all things FOR himself.” Isa 44:24 “I am Jehovah that maketh all things ; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone , that spreads abroad the earth by myself ”	Colossians 1:16 “By him (Christ) were all things created that are in heaven, and that are in earth . . . all things were created by him, and for him.” John 1:3 “ All things were made by him.”
8. Shepherd	Psalm 80:1 “Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel . . . thou that dwellest between the cherubims.” Genesis 49:24 “The mighty God of Jacob; (from thence is the shepherd , the stone of Israel).”	John 10:11 “I (Jesus) am the good shepherd. ” Hebrews 13:20 “Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep.” I Peter 5:4 “When the chief shepherd shall appear.”

	Scripture Testimony to 'JHVH'	Scripture Testimony to Christ
9. Everlasting	Psalm 90:2 "From everlasting to everlasting , thou art God." Habakkuk 1:12 "Art thou not from everlasting ⁶⁹²⁴ , O LORD (JHVH) my God, mine Holy One."	Micah 5:2 "Whose (Jesus Christ) goings forth have been from of old ⁶⁹²⁴ , from everlasting ⁵⁷⁶⁹ ." Note: The same Hebrew words for eternal (olam ⁵⁷⁶⁹ and qedmah ⁶⁹²⁴) are applied equally to Jesus Christ and to God the Father.
10. First and last	Both Father and Son are called Jehovah, the first and the last. Isaiah 44:6 "Thus saith the LORD (Jehovah) the King of Israel, and <u>his redeemer</u> the LORD (Jehovah) of hosts; I am the first , and I am the last ; and beside me there is no God."	Revelation 1:17,18 "I am the first and the last : I am he that liveth and was dead."
11. Alpha and Omega	Revelation 1:8 and 21:5-7 "I am Alpha and Omega , the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord,.....the Almighty." Isaiah 41:4 "I the LORD (Jehovah) the first and with the last." See Isaiah 48:12.	Revelation 22:13-16 "I am Alpha and Omega , the beginning and the end, the first and the last (v.13).... I Jesus (v.16)." <i>Watchtower, 1 October 1978, p.15</i> says this is Jesus.
12. Reward is with Him	Isaiah 40:10 "The Lord God will come with strong hand,behold, his reward is with him" Isaiah 62:11 "The LORD hath proclaimed.....behold his reward is with him ."	Revelation 22:12 "Behold I come quickly, and my reward is with me , to give every man according as his work shall be."
13. Unchangeable	Malachi 3:6 "I am the LORD (Jehovah), I change not ."	Hebrews 13:8 'Jesus Christ the same , yesterday and today and forever."
14. Unsearchable riches	Romans 11:33 "O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! His ways are past finding out ⁴²¹ ."	Ephesians 3:8 "The unsearchable ⁴²¹ riches of Christ."
15. Holy One	Isaiah 43:15 "I am the LORD (Jehovah), your Holy One ,your King."	Acts 3:14 "But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you."
16. Omnipresent and fill all things	Psalm 139:7 "Where shall I flee from thy presence?" Jeremiah 23:24 "Do not I fill heaven and earth ? saith the Lord."	Ephesians 4:10 "That he (Jesus Christ) might fill all things ." Matthew 18:20 "Where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them." Matt 28:20 'Lo, I am with you alway.' At the same time Jesus is in heaven John 3:13 "The Son of man, which is in heaven ."
17. Omniscient	Psalm 147:5 "His understanding is infinite ." Proverbs 15:3 "The eyes of the LORD are in every place , beholding the evil and the good."	John 21:17 "thou knowest all things ." John 16:30 "Now are we sure that thou knowest all things ." Colossians 2:3 "In him are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge." 812

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
18. Omnipotent	Genesis 17:1 “I am the Almighty God.” Matthew 19:26 “With God all things are possible.” Jeremiah 32:17 “There is nothing too hard for thee.”	Matthew 28:18 “ All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.” Hebrews 1:3 “Upholding all things by the word of his power.” Revelation 1:8 “I am Alpha and Omega . . . the Almighty. ”
19. Eternal	Deuteronomy 33:27 “The eternal God is thy refuge.”	Hebrews 7:3 “Having neither beginning of days, nor end of life ; but made like unto the Son of God. The Holy Spirit is eternal: Hebrews 9:14 “ the eternal Spirit. ”
20. Everlasting Kingdom	Psalms 145:13 “Thy kingdom is an everlasting kingdom. ” Note: Jehovah’s kingdom equals Christ’s everlasting kingdom.	Daniel 7:14 “Son of man . . . his dominion is an everlasting dominion , and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed. ” II Peter 1:11 “The everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ”.
21. Lord of all	Psalms 103:19 “Jehovah . . . his kingdom reigneth over all. ”	Acts 10:36 “Jesus Christ (he is Lord of all.)” Romans 9:5; 10:12.
22. Saviour	Isaiah 43:11 “I even I am Jehovah; and beside me there is no saviour. ” - beside me there is no Saviour.	Philippians 3:20 “We look for the Saviour , the Lord Jesus Christ.” II Peter 3:18 “Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. ” Luke 2:11 “For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour which is Christ the Lord. ” Matt 1:21 “Call his name Jesus, for he shall save his people from their sins. ” I Timothy 1:15 “Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners. ” Hebrews 5:9 “He became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him.” Acts 4:12 “ Neither is there salvation in any other : for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”
23. Truth	Deuteronomy 32:4 “A God of truth and without iniquity.”	John 14:6 “I am the way, the truth and the life.”
24. Sinless	Deuteronomy 32:4 “A God of truth and without iniquity. ”	Hebrews 4:15 “Was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. ”
25. Beginning	Genesis 1:1 “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.”	John 1:1 “In the beginning was the Word (Jesus Christ).”
26. Judge	Psalms 82:8 “Arise, O God, judge the earth: for thou shalt inherit all nations. ”	John 5:22 “For the Father judgeth no man , but hath committed all judgment unto the Son. ”
27. Hope	Psalms 39:7 “The Lord . . . my hope is in thee.”	I Timothy 1:1 “Jesus Christ which is our hope. ” 813

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
28. Wings	Psalm 91:4 “He (the Almighty) shall cover thee with his feathers , and under his wings shalt thou trust.”	Matthew 23:37 “O Jerusalem, Jerusalem . . . how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings , and ye would not.”
29. Redeemer	Psalm 130:7,8 “Let Israel hope in JehovahHe shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.”	Titus 2:14 “Who (Jesus Christ) gave himself for us , that he might redeem us from all iniquity.”
30. Jesus’ glory = Jehovah’s glory	Isaiah 6:3 “Holy, Holy, Holy is the LORD (JHVH) of hosts; the whole earth is full of his (JHVH) glory .”	John 12:41 John wrote that Isaiah “ saw his (Jesus’) glory .”
31. Rock	Deuteronomy 32:3,4,18 “I will publish the name of Jehovah , ascribe ye greatness unto our God. He is the Rock” Psalm 18:31 “Who is a Rock save our God.”	I Corinthians 10:4 “They drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them; and that Rock was Christ .”
32. Look to	Isaiah 45:22 “ Look unto me and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth.”	John 1:29 “ Behold the lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the world.” John 6:40 “Every one which seeth the Son ...may have everlasting life.”
33. Every knee shall bow and every tongue confess	Isaiah 45:23 “That unto me every knee shall bow , and every tongue shall swear .”	Philippians 2:10,11 “That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow and every tongue shall confess that Jesus Christ is Lord.” Romans 14:10,11 “We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.”
34. Enemies shall perish	Psalm 92:9 “Thine enemies , O Lord..... shall perish .” Psalm 45:24 “All that are incensed against him shall be ashamed.” Psalm 108:13 God “shall tread down our enemies .”	Philippians 3:18,19 “The enemies of the cross of Christ: whose end is destruction .”
35. Sends the Holy Spirit	Joel 2:28 “ I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh.”	John 16:7 “ I will send the Comforter unto you.”
36. All men come	Psalm 65:2 “...unto thee shall all flesh come .” Isaiah 45:24 “Even to him shall men come .”	John 12:32 “I will draw all men unto me.”
37. Forgiver of sin	Exodus 34:7 “ Forgiving iniquity.”	Mark 2:5 “Son, thy sins be forgiven thee.” Coloss. 3:13 'As Christ forgave you'.

	Scripture Testimony to "JHVH"	Scripture Testimony to Christ
38. Blots out sins	Isaiah 43:25 "I, even I, am he that blotteth out thy transgressions. "	Hebrews 1:3 "When he had by himself purged our sins." I John 1:7 "The blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin. "
39. Stills storms	Psalms 107:29 "He maketh the storm a calm , so that the waves thereof are still."	Matthew 8:26 "He arose and rebuked the winds and sea; and there was a great calm. "
40. Father and Son own the Holy Spirit	Matthew 10:20 "The Spirit of your Father ". Isaiah 48:16 "The Lord God (Father) and his Spirit has sent me (Jesus Christ - Isaiah 42:1)."	Romans 8:9 "The Spirit of Christ ".
41. Seeks the Lost	Ezekiel 34:16 "I will seek that which was lost. "	Luke 19:10 "The Son of man is come to seek and to save that which was lost. "
42. The Lord's prayer.	Matthew 6:9-13 "Our Father which art in heaven ". Hallowed be thy name thy kingdom come. Thy will be done on earth As it is in heaven Give us this day our daily bread Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. Lead us not into temptation but deliver us from evil. For thine is the kingdom , and the power and the glory, forever. Amen.	John 3:13 "The Son of man which is in heaven. " II Thessalonians 1:12 - "That the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified. " II Peter 1:11 - "The everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." Colossians 3:24 - " Ye serve the Lord Christ." I Peter 3:22 - "Jesus Christ is gone into heaven ,....angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him." Isaiah 11:40 - "He shall feed his flock like a shepherd." Colossians 3:13 - " Forgiving one another ; even as Christ forgave you, so also do ye." John 10:3,27 - "He leadeth them out. My sheep follow me." Galatians 1:4 - "Jesus Christ . . . that he might deliver us from this present evil world. " Revelation 1:6 - "To Him (Jesus Christ) be glory and dominion for ever and ever. "
43. Receive us to glory	Psalms 73:24 "Thou shalt guide me with thy counsel, and afterward receive me to glory. "	John 14:3 "I will receive you unto myself. "
44. Master	Malachi 1:6 "If I be a Master , where is my fear? saith the LORD (Jehovah) of hosts. "	Matthew 23:8,10 " One is your Master, even Christ. "
45. Serve	Deuteronomy 10:20 " Him shalt thou serve. "	Colossians 3:24 " Ye serve the Lord Christ. " 815

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
46. Leads	Psalms 23:2 ‘He leadeth me beside the still waters. ’	Revelation 7:17 ‘The Lamb . . . shall lead them into living fountains of waters. ’
47. Corrects us	Proverbs 3:12 ‘For whom Jehovah loveth he correcteth. ’	Revelation 3:19 ‘As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten. ’
48. Prepares a place	Hebrews 11:16 ‘He hath prepared for them a city. ’	John 14:2 ‘I go to prepare a place for you.’
49. In all	I Corinthians 15:28 ‘That God may be all in all. ’	Colossians 3:11 ‘Christ is all, and in all. ’
50. Known	Galatians 4:9 ‘Ye have known God. ’	Philippians 3:10 ‘That I may know him (Christ), and the power of his resurrection.’
51. Cleave	Deuteronomy 10:20 ‘The Lord thy God . . . to him shalt thou cleave. ’	John 15:4 Jesus said, ‘ Abide in me, and I in you.’
52. Light of this world	Psalms 27:1 ‘The Lord is my light. ’	John 8:12 ‘Jesus said, I am the light of the world.’
53. Light of the New Jerusalem	Isaiah 60:19,20 ‘The Lord (JHVH) shall be thine everlasting light. ’	Revelation 21:23 ‘The Lamb is the light thereof.’
54. Giver of Life	Psalms 36:9 ‘For with thee is the fountain of life. ’	John 10:28 ‘I give unto them eternal life. ’ John 4:14.
55. My Lord and my God	Psalms 35:22,23 ‘Oh Jehovah . . . my God and my Lord. ’	John 20:28 Thomas to Jesus: ‘ My Lord and my God. ’
56. Lord our Righteousness	Isaiah 45:24 ‘In Jehovah have I righteousness. ’	I Corinthians 1:30 ‘Christ is made unto us . . . righteousness. ’ Jeremiah 35:5,6 ‘I will raise unto David a righteous Branch.....and his name shall be called, THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS. ’
57. Voice like many waters	Ezekiel 43:2 ‘The glory of the God of Israel came.....his voice was like a voice of many waters. ’	Revelation 1:15 ‘His (Christ’s) voice as the sound of many waters. ’ Note: Jehovah’s voice sounds like Christ’s voice.
58. My witnesses	Isaiah 43:10 ‘Ye are my witnesses. ’ Note: The nation of Israel were witnesses unto Jehovah. Christians are witnesses of Christ.	Acts 1:8 Jesus said: ‘Ye shall be witnesses unto me. ’ The disciples became Christ’s witnesses: Acts 2:32 ‘This Jesus hath God raised up, whereof we are all witnesses. ’ Acts 4:33 ‘With great power gave the apostles witness of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus.’
59. Peace of	Philippians 4:7 ‘ Peace of God, which passes all understanding.’	John 14:27 ‘My peace I give unto you.’
60. Gospel of	I Thessalonians 2:2 ‘The Gospel of God.’	Romans 1:16 ‘The Gospel of Christ.’
61. Saving grace of	Titus 2:11 ‘The grace of God that bringeth salvation. ’	Acts 15:11 ‘Through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, we shall be saved. ’

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
62. Our peace	Judges 6:24 ‘Gideon built there an altar unto the Lord, and called it Jehovah <u>Shalom</u> (Jehovah our Peace)’	Ephesians 2:14 ‘He (Christ) is our peace .’
63. Look on whom they pierced	Zechariah 12:10 ‘They shall look upon <u>me</u> (Jehovah) whom they have pierced.’	John 19:37 ‘Another scripture saith, they shall look on <u>him</u> (Jesus) whom they pierced.’
64. Our Sanctifier	Exodus 31:13 ‘I am Jehovah that doth sanctify you.’	I Corinthians 6:11 ‘Ye are sanctified ...in the name of the Lord Jesus.’
65. Our Victory	Psalms 98:1 ‘His holy arm, hath gotten him the victory .’	I Corinthians 15:57 ‘ Victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.’
66. Our Healer	Exodus 15:26 ‘I am Jehovah that healeth thee.’	Matthew 9:35 ‘Jesus went about. healing every sickness and every disease among the people.’
67. Churches of	I Corinthians 15:9 ‘I persecuted the church of God .’	Romans 16:16 ‘The churches of Christ salute you.’
68. Kingdom of	Matthew 6:33 ‘Seek ye first the Kingdom of God.’	Revelation 11:15 ‘The kingdoms of the world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ.’
69. Glorify the name of	Isaiah 24:15 ‘ Glorify ye . . . the name of the Lord God of Israel in the isles of the sea.’	II Thessalonians 1:12 ‘That the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you.’ Matthew 12:21 ‘In his name shall the Gentiles trust.’
70. Day of	Isaiah 13:6 ‘The day of the Lord is at hand.’	Philippians 1:6 ‘Until the day of Jesus Christ .’ II Thessalonians 2:2 ‘as that the day of Christ is at hand.’
71. Grace of	Colossians 1:6 ‘the grace of God in truth.’ Romans 5:15 ‘The grace of God.’	Galatians 6:18 ‘the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit.’ II Corinthians 8:9 ‘Ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ .’
72. Glory of	Romans 5:2 ‘Rejoice in hope of the glory of God .’	II Corinthians 8:23 ‘They are the glory of Christ .’
73. Love of	John 5:42 ‘Ye have not the love of God in you.’	II Corinthians 5:14 ‘The love of Christ constrains us.’
74. Word of	Psalms 119:11 ‘ Thy Word have I hid in my heart.’ I Thessalonians 2:13 ‘Ye received the word of God .’	Colossians 3:16 ‘Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly.’
75. Salvation of	Luke 3:6 ‘all flesh shall see the salvation of God .’ Jonah 2:9 ‘ Salvation is of Jehovah .’	Acts 4:12 ‘Neither is there salvation in any other (than Jesus Christ - v.10) for there is none other name under heaven given among men whereby we must be saved.’ I Thessalonians 5:9 ‘ Salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.’ II Timothy 2:10 ‘ Salvation which is in Christ Jesus.’ Hebrews 2:10 ‘The captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.’

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
76. Servant of	Titus 1:1 “Paul, a servant of God. ”	Romans 1:1 “Paul, a servant of Jesus Christ. ”
77. Keep commandments of	God’s commandments: I John 5:3 “His commandments are not grievous.”	Jesus Christ’s commandments: John 14:15 “If ye love me, keep my commandments.”
78. Prepare ye the way of	Isaiah 40:3 “ Prepare ye the way of the LORD (Jehovah) ”	Mark 1:1-3 “The Gospel of Jesus Christ.... Prepare ye the way of the Lord. ”
79. Searches all hearts	Psalms 139:1 “O Lord, thou hast searched me and known me.”	Revelations 2:23 “I am he which searches the reins and hearts.”
80. Same flock	Flock of God: I Peter 5:2 “ Feed the flock of God. ”	Christ’s lambs, Christ’s sheep: John 21:15,16 “ Feed my lambs,... feed my sheep. ”
81. Ascends	Psalms 68:17,18 “The LORD is among them..... thou hast ascended on high , thou hast led captivity captive: thou hast received gifts for men.”	Ephesians 4:7-10 “ Christ . . . when he ascended up on high , he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.”
82. Bridegroom	Isaiah 62:5 “As the bridegroom rejoices over the bride, so shall thy God rejoice over thee.” Note: God and Jesus are like a bridegroom.	Mark 2:19,20 “The days will come, when the bridegroom shall be taken away from them.”
83. Glory for ever and ever (a doxology)	Isaiah 42:8 “I am the LORD,... My glory will I not give to another. ” Galatians 1:4,5 “God and our Father: to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen. ” I Peter 5:10,11 “To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. ”	II Peter 3:18 “Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To Him be glory both now and for ever. ” Hebrews 13:21 “Jesus Christ; to be glory for ever and ever. Amen. ” I Peter 4:11 “Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. ” Revelation 1:5, 6 “From Jesus Christ....to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. ”
84. Source of fruit	Hosea 14:8 “From me is thy fruit found.”	John 15:5 “He that abideth in me and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit. ”
85. Source of Strength	Psalms 119:28 “ Strengthen thou me according to thy word.”	Philippians 4:13 “I can do all things through Christ which strengthens me ”
86. Gives rest	Jeremiah 6:16 “Thus saith the LORD . . . Ask for the old paths, where is the good way, and walk therein, and ye shall find rest for your souls. ”	Matthew 11:29 “Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me....and ye shall find rest for your souls. ”
87. Jehovah shall appear	Psalms 102:16 “When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory. ”	Titus 2:13 “The glorious appearing of our great God and Saviour Jesus Christ.” Zechariah 12:10 “They shall look upon me whom they have pierced.” 818

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
88. God comes	Isaiah 40:10 “The Lord God will come.”	Revelations 22:7, 12, 20 “Behold, I (Jesus Christ) come quickly.”
89. Trust in	Jeremiah 17:7 “Blessed is the man that trusteth in the Lord.”	Ephesians 1:12 “Who first trusted in Christ.”
90. King	Isaiah 6:5 ‘ Mine eyes have seen the King , the LORD (JHVH) of hosts.’ Isaiah 33:22 “Jehovah is our King .”	Revelation 17:14 “the Lamb is King of Kings .” I Timothy 6:14,15 “Lord Jesus Christ who is the blessed & only Potentate , the King of kings and Lord of lords.” Rev. 19:16 “A name written: KING OF KINGS and LORD OF LORDS”
91. Wound the heads	Psalms 68:21 “But God shall wound the heads of his enemies.”	Psalms 110:6 “He (Jesus) shall judge among the heathen, . . . he shall wound the heads over many countries (at Christ’s second coming).”
92. Avenger	Romans 12:19 “ Vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord.”	II Thess 1:7,8 “Taking vengeance on them that know not God.”
93. Armies against Jehovah and Jesus Christ	Isaiah 33:2 “The indignation of Jehovah is upon all nations, and his fury upon all their armies : he hath utterly destroyed them.”	Revelation 19:19 “I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies gathered together to make war against him (Jesus Christ) that sat on the horse.”
94. Fight at Armageddon	Zechariah 14:3 “Then shall Jehovah go forth and fight against those nations.”	Rev. 19:11,13,21 “In righteousness he doth judge and make war (v11). his name is called the Word of God (Jesus Christ) (v.13) the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse.” (v 21).
95. Destroyer of Death	Isaiah 25:8 “He (Jehovah) will swallow up death in victory.”	II Timothy 1:10 “Our Saviour, Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death .”
96. Faith in	I Thessalonians 1:8 “Your faith to God .”	Galatians 3:26 “Ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus .”
97. Our life	Deut 30:20 “LORD, he is thy life .”	Coloss. 3:4 “Christ, who is our life .”
98. Pray to	Matt 6:9 “ Our Father which art...”	Acts 7:59 Stephen said, “ Lord Jesus , receive my spirit”
99. Raising Christ	Acts 2:32 “This Jesus hath God raised up ”	John 2:19,21 “Jesus said, destroy this temple,& in 3 days I will raise it up . he spake of the temple of his body.”
100. Owning	John 16:15 “ All things that the Father hath are mine .”	
101. Enter the east gate of Jerusalem	Ezekiel 44:1,2 “The Lord, the God of Israel, hath entered in by it”	Luke 19:37-45 “And he went into the temple.” (Jesus rode the colt down the Mt. of Olives through the East Gate, then He walked into the Temple).
102. Man on the throne	Ezekiel 1:26 “And upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man .” (This was Christ on the throne who later is called the God of Israel). Ez 10:20:”The living creature that I saw under the God of Israel	
103. Fellowship	I John 1:3 “That ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father , and with his Son Jesus Christ .” Both fellowship equally with believers.	

	Scripture Testimony to “JHVH”	Scripture Testimony to Christ
104. Baptism formula	Matthew 28:19 “ <u>Baptizing</u> them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost” Both names are on the same level .	
105. Comfort believers	Isaiah 66:13 “So will I comfort you.”	Philippians 2:1 “If there be therefore any consolation in Christ”
106. Worship in heaven	Revelation: 5:8-10; 5:11,12; 5:13,14 “The four beasts and the four and twenty elders fell down before the Lamb .”	
107. Send grace&peace	Romans 1:7 “ Grace to you and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.” Both jointly send grace and peace to the churches.	
108. Love	John 14:21 “He that loveth me shall be loved of my Father , and I will love him and manifest myself to him.” The love of the Father and love of the Son are an equal privilege given to us.	
109. Jehovah	Isaiah 44:6 “Thus saith the <u>Jehovah</u> the King of Israel, and his redeemer the <u>Jehovah</u> of hosts; I am the first, and I am the the last; and beside me there is no God.” Both jointly declare themselves to be Jehovah .	
110. Come to his temple	Malachi 3:1 “The Lord . . . shall suddenly come to his temple .”	Matthew 21:13 “ My house shall be called the house of prayer.”
111. King of Israel	Isaiah 44:6 “Jehovah the King of Israel ”.	John 1:49 “Thou art the King of Israel ”.
112. Blasphemed	GOD:Romans 2:24 “The name of <u>God</u> is blasphemed.” HOLY SPIRIT:..Luke 12:10 “that blasphemeth against the <u>Holy Ghost</u> ” CHRIST:.....Luke 22:65; “Blasphemously spake they against him ” Also Acts 13:45; 18:5,6; 26:9,11	
113. Always with all believers	Matthew 28:20 “Lo, I am with you always .” II Corinthians 13:14 “The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all .”	
114. Lawgiver	GOD:Romans 7:22 “I delight in the law of God ”. CHRIST:Galatians 6:2 “So fulfil the law of Christ ”. HOLY SPIRIT:Romans 8:2 “The law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus.” James 4:12 “There is one lawgiver , who is able to save and to destroy.”	
115. Same face	Revelation 22:3,4 “The throne of <u>God</u> and of the <u>Lamb</u> shall be in it; And they shall see HIS face”	
116. Same name	Revelation 22:3,4 “The throne of <u>God</u> and of the <u>Lamb</u> shall be in it,..... and HIS name shall be in their foreheads.”	
117. Same servants	Revelation 22:3 “The throne of <u>God</u> and of the <u>Lamb</u> shall be in it, and HIS servants shall serve him.”	
118. Temple of New Jer.	Revelation 21:22 “The <u>Lord God Almighty</u> and the <u>Lamb</u> are the temple of it”	
119. Heavens	Psalms 102:24-27 “The heavens are the work of thy hands.”	Hebrews 1:10-12 “The heavens are the work of thy hands.”
120. Ancient of Days	Daniel 7:9,13,22 “Ancient of Days did sit, ...whose hair of his head like the pure wool .”	Rev. 1:13-15 “the Son of man...His head and his hairs were white like wool , as white as snow.”

116. What You Will Not Be Told At The Door By **the JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES**

The Jehovah's Witness (or Watchtower Bible and tract society) have made the following **predictions** which appear in their own literature:

1. That Jesus would return by **1874**. when Jesus failed to appear, the Witnesses claimed that it was an unseen, spiritual return. (Watchtower, Feb. 1881, p 188).
2. That **Jesus would return in 1914** with the Battle of Armageddon ending in October of 1914 (Zion's Watchtower, Jan 15, 1892, p.21-23).
3. That with the end of **1914**, what God calls Babylon, and what men call **Christendom will pass away**. (Thy Kingdom Come, 1895, p.153).
4. When the prophecies of 1914 failed, the new date of **1918** was set for God's **wholesale destruction of the church members** by the millions. (Finished Mystery, 1917, p.485).
5. With the failure of this prophecy, a new date of **1925** was set. Therefore we may confidently expect that 1925 will mark the return of **Abraham, Isaac and Jacob...**" (Millions Now Living, 1920, p.89-90).
6. With the expected arrival of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob "any day", a house was built for them in 1930 in San Diego, California and called "Beth Sarim" meaning "**House of the Princes**". By 1942 it was still "held in trust for the occupancy of those princes on their return". (The New World, 1942, p.104).
7. In **1941** they claimed that the world was nearing the end and facing "the remaining **months before Armageddon**". (Watchtower, Sep 15, 1941, 288).
8. The fall of **1975** was to mark the **beginning of Christ's 1000 year, literal visible reign on earth**. (Awake! Oct 8, 1968, p.14).
In March 1968, "there are only about **ninety months left** before 6000 years of man's existence on earth is completed". (Kingdom Ministry, March 1968, p.4).

What is presented above is not slander, attempted persecution, or a misrepresentation of anyone's position. These are true and factual comments made in official Watchtower publications on the stated pages. Regardless of what you may or may not believe, the **FALSE nature** of these prophecies should be evident to all but those who choose to **deliberately ignore** the FACTS. God says:

"But the prophet which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die. And if thou say in thine heart, how shall we know the word which the LORD hath not spoken? When a prophet speaketh in the name of the LORD, if the thing **follow not, nor come to pass**, that is the thing **which the LORD hath not spoken**, but the prophet hath spoken presumptuously, thou shall not be afraid of him." (Deuteronomy 18:20-22).

A TRUE PROPHET of God will be **100% accurate in his predictions**. Truth is not a light that gets brighter with time or an element that gets truer and truer. Truth is truth from the very beginning. **The Watchtower Society has yet to make ONE correct prediction**. Moral uprightness, sincerity and zeal do not necessarily indicate the presence of TRUTH.

117. JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES, the TRINITY and the WATCHTOWER

Table of Contents

Page No

1.	What attracts people to join the Watchtower	825
2.	Three Basic Assumptions Which Form the JW World View	825
3.	How to Handle a JW Witnessing Encounter	826
4.	Watchtower Attributes of God	826
5.	Watchtower Organisation	826
	1) Isaiah 43:10 Witnesses of Jehovah?.....	826
	2) Matthew 24:45-47.... Is the Watchtower God's Faithful and Discreet Slave?	827
	3) Acts 8:30,31..... Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible?	827
	4) II Peter 1:20,21 No private interpretation.....	828
	5) I Corinthians 1:10 Watchtower (WT) enforced unity of thought	828
	6) Impressions of the Watchtower	829
6.	Eight Issues JW's Argue Against	833
7.	Jehovah's Name or Jesus Christ's Name? (Heb.1:10; 1 Peter 3:15; Acts 2:21).....	834
8.	Watchtower's Wrong Beliefs	838
9.	Deity of Christ Verses that New World Translation Changes	840
	1) Colossians 1:17 'other'	840
	2) Philippians 2:9 'other'	841
	3) Zechariah 12:10 'look on me'	842
	4) Acts 20:28 'his own blood'	843
	5) Hebrews 1:8; Psalm 45:6... 'Thy throne, O God'	844
	6) Hebrews 1:6..... 'worship him' to 'do obeisance'	846
	7) Titus 2:13..... 'Great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	847
	8) II Peter 1:1 'God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	850
	9) John 1:1 'the Word was God'	850
	10) John 8:58 'Before Abraham was, I am'	856
10.	Is Christ Inferior to the Father?	858
	1) I Corinthians 11:3 'The head of Christ is God'	858
	2) Revelation 3:14 'beginning of the creation of God'	859
	3) Proverbs 8:22,23 'I was set up from everlasting'	860
	4) Colossians 1:15..... 'firstborn (prototokos) of every creature'	860
	5) John 3:16 'He gave His only begotten Son'	862
	6) I Corinthians 15:28.. 'then shall the Son be subject to Him'	863
	7) I Corinthians 8:6 'one God, the Father and one Lord JC'	864
	8) John 20:17 'My God and Your God'	864
	9) John 14:28 'Father is greater than Jesus'	865
	10) Mark 13:32 'of that day and hour . . . '	866
	11) Isaiah 9:6 is Jesus 'a mighty God' or 'Jehovah God'?	867
	12) John 17:3 'Know thee the only true God'	868
	13) Psalm 110:1 'The Lord (JHWH) said to my Lord (Adonai)'	869
	14) John 4:23 'true worshippers shall worship the Father'	871
	15) Mark 10:17, 18 'there is none good but one, that is God'	872
	16) Hebrews 9:27 'to die once <u>for all time</u> '	872
11.	The Trinity	873
	1) Refuting the Watchtower's false quotes of early Church Writers	873
	2) Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No	877
	3) Refuting I Corinthians 14:33 'God is not the author of confusion'	878

4)	Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3	878
5)	Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy. 6:4 and Mark 12:29: 'The Lord (<i>JHVH</i>) our God (<i>Elohim</i>) is one Lord (<i>JHVH</i>).....	878
6)	Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man	879
12.	Bible Proofs of the Trinity	880
1)	Matthew 28:19 'The Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit'	880
2)	Genesis 18,19..... Three men each called Jehovah	881
3)	II Corinthians 3:17..... 'Jehovah is the Spirit'	881
4)	I John 5:7,8 in heaven, the Father,the Word and the Holy Ghost, & these three are 'one' ...	881
5)	Each have 119 identical Divine attributes.....	896
6)	II Corinthians 13:14.... Benediction.....	881
7)	30 Bible Proofs of the Trinity	882
13.	Proof that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God	884
I	Explicit statements that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God:	884
1)	Isaiah 9:6 'the Mighty God'	884
2)	Isaiah 44:6 'Jehovah the King of Israel, and his redeemer Jehovah of hosts.....	884
3)	Isaiah 48:12,16 'the Lord God and his Spirit hath sent me'	885
4)	Zechariah 2:8-11... 'thus saith Jehovah of hosts...Jehovah hath sent me'	885
5)	Zechariah 3:2..... 'Jehovah said to Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee'	885
6)	John 1:1 'the word was God'	<u>850</u> , 885
7)	John 1:3 and Malachi 2:10.... 'hath not one God created us?'	886
8)	John 3:13 'the Son of man which is in heaven'	886
9)	John 4:42 Christ and the Father are the Only Saviour	886
10)	John 5:18 'making himself equal with God'	887
11)	John 5:23 'all men should honour the Son even as they honour the Father'	887
12)	John 6:46 'Not any man hath seen the Father'	887
13)	John 8:24 'If ye believe not that I am, ye shall die in your sins'	887
14)	John 8:58 'Before Abraham was I am'	887
15)	John 10:30 'I and the Father are One'	888
16)	John 10:33 'thou being a man makest thyself God'	888
17)	John 17:5 Christ and the Father share the same glory	889
18)	John 20:28 'My Lord and My God'	890
19)	Acts 20:28..... 'God . . with His own blood'	<u>843</u> , 890
20)	Romans 10:9... 'declare that Jesus is Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i> =the True God)'	890
21)	I Corinthians 15:47 'the Lord from heaven'	891
22)	I Timothy 3:16..... 'God was manifest in the flesh'	804, <u>892</u>
23)	Titus 2:13..... 'great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	<u>847</u> , 893
24)	Hebrews 1:6..... 'Let all the angels of God worship him'	<u>846</u> , 893
25)	Hebrews 1:8..... 'To the Son he saith Thy throne O God'	<u>844</u> , 893
26)	Hebrews 1:10..... 'Thou Lord in the beginning hast laid'	893
27)	II Peter 1:1 'God and our Saviour Jesus Christ'	<u>849</u> , 894
28)	Revelation 1:8; 22:13..... 'The Alpha and Omega'	<u>894</u>
29)	Psalms 103:19 and Matthew 11:25 Both are called 'Lord'	<u>895</u>
30)	Both own the same throne, servants, face,name, priests, temple and light	895
31)	Colossians 2:9 ... 'In him dwells all the fullness of the Godhead bodily'	895
32)	Micah 5:2 'goings forth have been from of old (<i>qedmah</i>), from everlasting (<i>olam</i>). 895	
33)	I John 5:20..... 'Jesus Christ. This is the true God.'	895
34)	Malachi 3:1..... 'the Lord (Hebrew: <i>Ha Adon</i>) shall suddenly come to His temple' .	895
II	Both the Father and Son have the same 119 Attributes, Claims and Majesty	896
III	Appearance of Jehovah the Son to 9 Old Testament Saints who Worshipped Him	899
IV	New Testament Examples of Prayer to Christ: (John 5:40, Acts 7:59, I Cor. 1:2, Phil. 2:11) .	899
V	Father and Son have the same Divine Offices	901

14. Christ's Bodily Resurrection	902
1) Luke 24:37,39.... 'seen a spirit..I myself: handle me..a spirit has not <u>flesh</u> and <u>bones</u> .' ..	902
2) John 20:27 'thrust it into my <u>side</u> '.....	902
3) Acts 2:30,31..... 'neither did his <u>flesh</u> see corruption.'	902
4) John 2:19-21 'in 3 days I will raise it up...he spake of the temple of his <u>body</u> .'	902
5) Luke 22:18 'I will not <u>drink</u> of the fruit of the vine until the Kingdom of God come' ..	903
6) Luke 24:41,42.... Resurrected Christ <u>ate</u> a broiled fish and an honeycomb	903
7) Romans 8:11..... As Christ's body was raised, so will ours	903
8) John 20:22 'He <u>breathed</u> on them, and said...'	903
9) Zechariah 14:4 ... 'His <u>feet</u> shall stand in that day upon the Mount of Olives'	903
10) Zechariah 13:6 ... 'What are these wounds in thine <u>hands</u> ?'	903
11) Revelation 1:17. 'resurrected Christ <u>touched</u> John'	903
15. Is Salvation by Christ or by Watchtower Works?	904
1) John 3:3,5,7 'ye must be born again'	904
2) Present tense salvation. Matthew 24:13	906
3) Romans 10:13 'Paul equates calling on Jehovah with calling on Christ for salvation'	906
4) I Timothy 2:5 'no mediator for the great crowd'	907
16. WT False Prophecies	908
<u>Q1</u> : Do you agree that Deuteronomy 18:21-22 teaches that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time, and false prophets give prophecies failing to happen?	
<u>Q2</u> : Has the WT ever claimed to be God's Prophet?	
<u>Q3</u> : Can we agree that the WT prophet has given prophecies about events & dates in the future?	
<u>Q4</u> : Applying Moses' & Jesus' test for prophets to WT, did any WT prophecies fail to come true?	
17. 16 Contradictions and False Doctrines of the Watchtower	915
18. Four Tests for the Watchtower	919
18. The 144,000 Anointed Class and 'Other Sheep'	919
1) Luke 12:32 'The Little Flock' as the 144,000 'Anointed Class'	920
2) Revelation 7:4 Are the 144,000 in the Anointed Class?.....	921
3) John 10:16..... The 'Other Sheep'.....	922
4) Revelation 7:9 The 'Great Crowd' as the 'Other Sheep'	923
19. Watchtower and Bible Sufficiency	924
20. Birthdays	924
21. Is Jesus Michael the Archangel?	925
22. Witnessing to a JW	926
23. Blood Transfusions	927
24. The Cross	928
25. Holy Spirit: Is He a Person or an Active Force?	929
26. Counselling those who leave the Watchtower	931
27. War and Self-Defence	932
28. Watchtower Brainwashing and Thought Control	932
29. The Divine Name	934
30. Sequence of Verses to Discuss and Questions to Ask	936
31. The Trinity in Nature	940
32. Questions to Ask to Refute JW Objections	941
33. Places where KIT gives the Correct Reading, contradicting NWT Readings	943
34. Verses showing that believers go to heaven immediately after death	35,36
35. Verses showing that unbelievers go to a literal, conscious hell after death	39
36. Soul Sleep error	655
37. The Physical, bodily return of Christ to earth	238
38. God has not cast away His people Israel	482
39. Good works don't save us	541
40. What JWs will NOT tell you at the door	948

JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES and THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION

Introduction:

The Jehovah's Witnesses group was started in the 1870's by Charles Taze Russell, who drew ideas from Seventh Day Adventism and Christadelphianism. *The Watchtower* magazine was first published in 1879. Through door-to-door proselytising and authoritarian leadership, they have grown to about 3.9 million members by 1991.

From 1970 a million JW's resigned or were disfellowshipped.

The Watchtower Society's Headquarters are at 25 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn, New York. It is ruled by a group of 12 men headed by a president who rules for life with absolute power. These presidents have been:

- Charles Russell (1874-1916)
- Joseph Rutherford (1916-1942)
- Nathan Knorr (1942-1977)
- Fred Franz (1977-1992)
- Milton Henschel (1992-)

Fred Franz's nephew, Raymond Franz, has left the organisation. He wrote the book '*Crisis of Conscience*' exposing the group as having:

- 1) Antibiblical teachings
- 2) Given many false prophecies
- 3) Changed its teachings and policies
- 4) Lied and covered up information
- 5) Destroyed many of its members' lives.

1. WHAT ATTRACTS PEOPLE TO JOIN THE WATCHTOWER?

Answer:

- 1) Many people look for answers to life's problems and for divine guidance.
- 2) Many are frightened about the future.
- 3) Many are tired of the lack of moral values in society.
- 4) Many like the dedication and commitment of the JW people.
- 5) Many in mainline churches have never been taught the Bible by their pastors, and they desire to know it better, so they agree to a JW Bible study, which soon gets switched to a Watchtower book study.

2. THREE ASSUMPTIONS FORM THE JW WORLD VIEW

- 1) Divine guidance comes only through the WT Society. This leads JW's to live under a dictatorial, authoritarian organisation that **suppresses independent thinking** in the name of God. Disagreement with the WT is seen as satanic and disagreeing with God.
- 2) JW's alone have the truth about God. JW's alone claim to be the people of God. They hence feel exclusive, unique and superior.
- 3) JW's are told that every other church in Christendom is false and controlled by Satan. JW's view Christians as a hated enemy.

JW's allow **human reason to judge the Word of God.** Any Bible teachings, such as the Trinity, hell or the personality of the Holy Spirit, which to them seem "unreasonable", they think that it cannot be true. Just because man can't understand something, doesn't mean that thing is false. For example, scientists had long believed that light was either "waves" or "particles", yet now it has been proven to be **both** "waves" and "particles". No scientist can explain this fact fully, but it is proven and must be accepted. So it is that the Bible teaches that Jesus Christ is **both 100% God and 100% man.** We may not understand it or think it reasonable, but we must believe the Scriptures that teach this without changing them.

3. HOW TO HANDLE A JW WITNESSING ENCOUNTER

- 1) **Encourage** him or her to **thoroughly examine** their beliefs. “People should examine all the evidence by examining **both sides** of a matter.” (*Awake*, 22 October 1973, p.6). Say, “May we examine the Scriptures and test both religious beliefs by the Bible?”
- 2) Speak **kindly** and **respectfully** as Paul did to the Athenians.
- 3) Deal thoroughly with **one or two issues each meeting**. Make another appointment for later. Instead of jumping from verse to verse, slow them down to discuss each passage thoroughly. Ask: What does Jesus being the Son of God mean? How Jesus is God.
- 4) **Ask questions** to help him discover problems in Watchtower theology for himself, in an unemotional, non-threatening way.
- 5) Undermine WT authority by **showing their false prophecies**, and how they changed their position on key doctrines.

4. WATCHTOWER ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

- 1) The WT god is **not omnipresent**. “The Watchtower god is **not omnipresent**, for he is spoken of as having a location. His throne in heaven.” (*Aid to Bible Understanding*, p 665)
- 2) The WT god is **not omniscient**. JWs feel that for God to possess any attribute which they cannot understand is “illogical”, so they deny Him to be omniscient. They say that God does not know all things past, present, future (*Watchtower*, 15 July 84, p 4,5)
- 3) WT rejects the **Trinity** because it is **incomprehensible**. If the JW discards his limited view of God’s nature, the Bible can be taken at face value.

5. THE WATCHTOWER ORGANISATION

JWs believe that God set up the Watchtower Society as His visible representative on earth.

JWs are constantly reminded that people are utterly unable to know the true meaning of Scripture without the Society and its vast literature.

JWs are expected to obey the WT as the voice of God. (*Watchtower*, 15 June 57, p 370).

The WT says, “We must recognize not only Jehovah God as our Father, but **his organisation as our Mother**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 May 57, p 274).

JWs are not to think for themselves to interpret the Bible. They are to submit their minds to the Watchtower (WT). If a JW disobeys WT instructions, they assume that he is “apostate”, and the punishment is “disfellowshipping”, whereby his WT friends are forbidden to talk to him. This fear of disfellowshipping is one of the WT’s most effective means of keeping members obedient to its teachings.

Some of the verses that the Watchtower twists to ensnare people into its organisation are:

1. Isaiah 43:10 – “Witnesses” of Jehovah?

“Ye are my witnesses, saith Jehovah, and my servant whom I have chosen.”

JWs take this verse to mean that they alone are the only group chosen by God on the earth.

The Correct Bible teaching: Isaiah 43:10 refers only to **Israel** as witnesses of Jehovah.

They were to declare Jehovah as the only true God to pagan nations in the Law Dispensation from 1500 BC to 33 AD.

“Ye” refers to Jews, not Christians today. To apply it to JWs today is twisting Scripture.

Ask: If JWs are the only true witness for God, and JWs only started in the 1870’s, does this mean that God was without a witness in the world for 1800 years? If so, then God didn’t care for people to have His truth for 1800 years. Notice that in the New Testament, believers are witnesses to Jesus Christ who is Jehovah. For example:

- a) “Ye shall be **witnesses** unto **me**.” (Acts 1:8). The disciples became Christ’s (not Jehovah’s) witnesses. They were witnesses of Christ’s bodily, physical, literal resurrection, which is a part of the Gospel (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Belief in Christ’s bodily resurrection is a condition of salvation (Romans 10:9), which JW’s deny.
 - b) “This Jesus hath God **raised up**, whereof **we all are witnesses**.” (Acts 2:32).
 - c) “Whom God hath **raised** from the dead; whereof **we are witnesses**.” (Acts 3:15).
 - d) “And with great power gave the apostles **witness of the resurrection** of the Lord Jesus.” (Acts 4:33).
 - e) “But God **raised him** from the dead: And he was seen many days of them which came up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are **his witnesses** unto the people.” Acts 13:30,31
- Ask:** According to these verses, were the early Christians witnesses of Jehovah or witnesses of Jesus Christ?

2. Matthew 24:45-47 - Is the Watchtower “God’s Faithful and Discreet Slave”?

Question: Who is this slave/servant?

Answer:

- i) The WT book “*The Harp of God*”, 1921, p.239 states: “Without a doubt **Pastor Russell** filled the office.....and was therefore that wise and faithful servant.”
- ii) WT (15 February, 1981, p.19) says it is the **WT organisation**: “We cannot find the Scriptural guidance we need outside the “faithful and discreet slave” **organisation**.”
Ask: How do you explain the WT Society’s change of opinion from this slave being Pastor Russell to the WT organisation? They claim that the “evil slave” in v. 48-51 is apostate Christendom.
- iii) The **correct Bible teaching**: Jesus compares his disciples to servants who have been put in charge of their Master’s household. Each servant could fulfil his task faithfully or unfaithfully. Faithful servants will be rewarded, and unfaithful servants will be punished at the Lord’s return. This passage refers not to any organisation, but individuals who profess to follow Christ, particularly pastors (I Peter 5:2).

Note: If JW’s read **Matthew 25:19-23** and think about it, they would see that Jesus mentions **MORE THAN ONE** faithful and discreet slave (“the Lord of those **servants** cometh” v.19). Any faithful Christian shepherd is represented by these faithful slaves.

Ask: Since the WT organisation only started in 1874, did God have no true representatives on earth for 1800 years? **Did God not care for his people to understand the Bible for 1800 years?** Matthew 28:20 teaches, “Lo, I am with you **always** even to the **end of the age**.” This teaches that there would **always be followers of Jesus** on earth up to the **end of the age**. This proves the Watchtower wrong in claiming to be the faithful and discreet slave.

3. Acts 8:30, 31 - Do we need the Watchtower to explain the Bible?

Watchtower teaching: “Understandest thou what thou readest? And he said, “How can I except some man guide me?”” (Acts 8:30,31).

The *Watchtower* Magazine, 1 December 1981, p 27, elevates the WT organisation above the Bible. It makes gaining eternal life depend on following the WT Society.

“Unless we are in touch with the (WT).....we will not progress along the road to life, no matter how much Bible reading we do.” (p.27).

JW’s blindly follow the WT Society wherever it leads. They say that mankind needs the WT Organisation in order to understand Scripture, just as the Ethiopian needed Philip to explain Isaiah 53.

Bible Truth: God gives Bible teachers (Ephesian 4:11) and the Holy Spirit to illuminate, but

- 1) there is no Bible support for an infallible organisation whose infallible views must be accepted by everybody;
- 2) Philip preached directly from Scripture, not from any Watchtower literature;
- 3) The Ethiopian did not have to join and submit to an organisation;
- 4) He rejoiced in Christ when his teacher left, without any sense of loss.
- 5) He had no written New Testament to instruct him like we have today.
- 6) No Watchtower organisation literature followed him.

Ask:

- 1) Where in the Bible does it say that people must join and submit to the interpretations of the WT hierarchical organisation?
- 2) Did Philip use WT literature or did he use Scripture alone?
- 3) If Scripture alone was sufficient for Philip and the Ethiopian, isn't Scripture alone sufficient for us?

4. II Peter 1:20, 21 - No "Private Interpretation".

"No prophecy of the Scripture is of any private interpretation." (v.20).

"Private" means "one's own". "Interpretation" means "unloosing".

No Scripture is of "one's own unloosing" from the context. Peter is not forbidding private study and interpretation. Roman Catholics, JWs and Mormons teach that only the "spiritual leaders" may interpret Scripture, and they use this verse in their defence. Since all Scripture is inspired by the Holy Spirit, it must all "hang together" and no one Scripture should be divorced from the others. An individual cannot of "one's own" choosing "unloose" one verse from other verses on the same subject. You can use the Bible to prove almost anything if you unloose or divorce verses from their proper context, which is exactly the approach used by false teachers. No Scripture will contradict another. The only way heretical teachers can prove their heretical doctrines is by "unloosing" verses from their proper context.

Hence **Peter's message in v.20 is that no Scripture is of "one's own unloosing" from the near and far context.** That is, no verse will contradict any other verse.

Ask:

- 1) Were the Bereans right to test Paul's teachings by Scripture? (Yes) (Acts 17:11).
- 2) Are you willing to test WT teachings in the light of Scripture alone, not disagreeing with other Scriptures?
- 3) If you find WT teachings that go against what Scripture says, what will you do?

5. I Corinthians 1:10. Is the Watchtower right because of its enforced unity of thought?

"I beseech you.....that ye all speak the same thing, and that there be no divisions among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment." v.10.

The WT applies this verse in two ways:

- a) They impose the one set of doctrines on JWs, to give a forced agreement and unity, or JWs will be disfellowshipped.
- b) They use this verse to prove that JWs are the only true Christians because they are completely united in mind and judgment. They boast that they are of "one heart and soul" worldwide, which is not true of Christendom's denominations.

The Correct Bible Teaching: It is a myth to think that a group's absolute unity is proof that they are the only true Christians, and that those who do not have unity are unbelievers. Paul wrote I Corinthians 1:10 because the Corinthians were already disunited on 16 issues.

Ask: Does the divisiveness among the Corinthians mean that they were not Christians? (Paul believed they were Christians in I Corinthians 1:2 “Sanctified in Christ Jesus”). I Corinthians 1:10 does **not** teach that we are to attain unity by submitting to an organisation. Paul said that we must prove or test all things, and not unquestioningly accept what certain teachers say (I Thess. 5:21), as JWs accept WT theology for fear of being disfellowshipped. This is like Nazi Germany saying that everyone must believe and obey the “organisation” or be disfellowshipped from the world (ie. killed). **People are held in the WT organisation by the bondage of fear of being disfellowshipped from God’s kingdom**.

Ask: Where in I Corinthians 1:10 does it refer to an **organisation** or say that unity comes by **submitting to an organisation**? Paul in Romans 14:2-5 allowed difference of opinion, as long as unity was maintained. “One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.”

Ask: Doesn’t Romans 14:5 teach that it is all right for Christians to differ on some religious issues? Hence, Paul was not saying in I Corinthians 1:10 to do away with all diversity, but to remove their unbrotherly, divisive attitude.

The Watchtower commands JWs to:

- i) Not accept or read religious literature of people they meet. (*Watchtower*, 1 May 1984, p31)
- ii) Not listen to criticisms of the WT organisation (*Watchtower*, 15 May 1984, p17).
- iii) Not speak words “expressing criticism of the way the appointed elders are handling matters.” (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1984, p 16).
- iv) “avoid independent thinking” and to “fight against independent thinking”. (*Watchtower*, 15 January 1983, p22, 27).

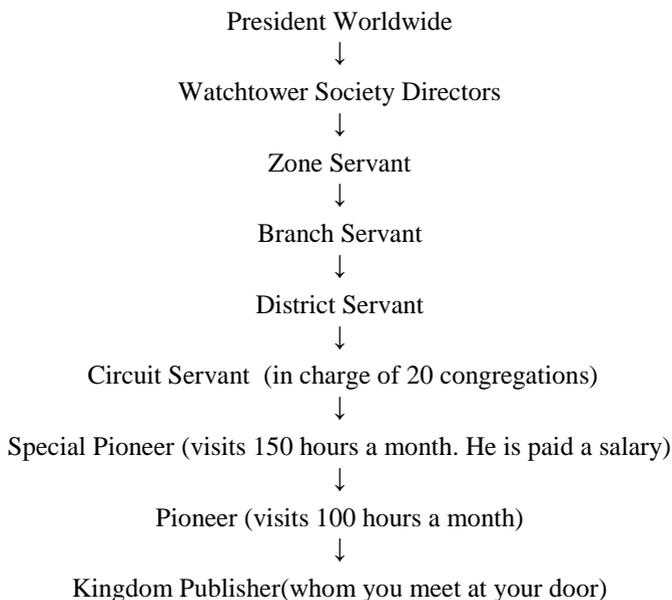
The Bible teaches that we are not to be united by lockstep conformity but by **love**: “put on **charity** which is the **bond**...” (Colossians 3:14)

Note: The WT clearly violates a Bible command in Romans 14:5, 6 on the matter of holy days, or holidays (eg. Christmas, Easter, etc). “**He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord**”. This verse allows individual Christians the right to observe special days which other Christians may choose not to observe. Yet the JW who observes Christmas, Easter, Mothers Day, etc. is immediately tried and disfellowshipped, being cut off from his friends and family.

6. Impressions of the Watchtower Organisation by Ted Dencher.

1. JWs ask people for a Bible study once a week at whatever time is suitable.
 2. Baptized JWs are considered to be ordained ministers.
 3. JWs frown on any effort or ambition to make something of yourself. You must sell yourself completely to the organisation.
 4. How do people become JWs?
 - a) Their big attraction is a universal Armageddon, coming any day now, when all except JWs will be destroyed (annihilated).
 - b) People with little Bible knowledge, believe everything the WT says. Why? You accept the “faithful and wise servant” of Matthew 24:45, 46 as the “servant of Isaiah” 43:10. You are told this “servant” is the Watchtower Society.
- Once you accept this, then you will accept anything they tell you, because of the authority you are led to believe they have over you.
5. JWs teach that all governments are of the devil. This is wrong from Romans 13:1,4 “The powers that be are ordained of God...He is the minister of God to thee for good”.
 6. JWs deride all other religions for thinking that they are going to heaven. (II Cor 5:1-8).

7. JWs refer to all organised religion as the Babylon whore.
8. JWs allow no individual study outside what the WT permits him to have. He could make no conclusions that the Watchtower has not already arrived at. All private thought is discouraged, and the member soon becomes an automaton.
9. JWs accept the WT organisation as their saviour, because they are taught that the WT organisation will be spared through Armageddon, and you MUST be a part of it to escape destruction.
10. JWs love to misapply Isaiah 1:18 “Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord.” This lets them apply human reason to all their conclusions. (See Isaiah 55:7-9)
11. Few people seem able to counteract “JW logic”. This makes it seem all the more true.
12. They say that clergy titles are unbiblical, so they call themselves “servants” (John 15:15).
13. People become JWs because they are impressed with their organisation.
14. Most JWs think nothing of the Lord Jesus Christ. To JWs Christ is only a subordinate to God, and a member of the “theocratic organisation.”
15. The WT Society uses JWs to carry out its worldwide literature campaign.
16. The WT organisation is structured as follows:



Each Kingdom Hall has seven overseers and 2 to 20 area study conductors. With all these eyes on you, it is difficult to maintain individuality, so you just give up.

17. Anything coming from the WT Society is taken as truth, regardless of what it is.

Everything from any other source is falsehood, regardless of what it is.

“WT truth” changes from time to time.

18. C T Russell was a **Non-Christian sceptic** when he began the WT. He searched the Scriptures from a sceptic’s viewpoint. Russell perjured himself in court and proved himself a fraud, claiming he knew Greek when he could not read the Greek alphabet. His formal education ended at age 14. The JW claims to be a scholarly student of the Bible. At best he is a devout student of Watchtower publications.

19. Ted Dencher (ex-JW) said: “I knew I was a sinner. I knew that all these works had not

removed a single sin. I was the same sinner as I had always been. I placed all hopes on the organisation. Very rarely were we challenged at the door by people who said that Christ has removed our sins by His shed blood, or we would die in our sins. Our works are unable to remove our sins. You cannot escape the convictions of your own heart.”

20. If a JW leaves and goes to another faith, his JW friends and relatives turn against him in anger, and spread all sorts of stories about him.

21. Most JWs either stay up to 10 years and leave, or stay for life.

22. The WT is very much opposed to the historic Christian faith with its stress on the individual and his relationship to God. In its place they substitute the WT organisation.

23. They oppose churches paying their preachers. They hence ignore I Cor 9:4, 7, 13, 14.

24. When the WT Society changes a doctrine they **trick their people** by saying that they are constantly trying to improve themselves. Thinking for yourself is outlawed. JWs must always overrule their own thoughts and convictions and give way to the Society’s.

25. **Key:** Before you can convince a JW that he is wrong, you must first convince him that the Watchtower Society is wrong. He makes every effort to stay in the organisation because he has been led to believe that all those outside it will be doomed to annihilation at Armageddon..

26. They oppose saluting the flag, thinking that the saluter declares that his salvation comes from the nation saluted. This is false because, “**Salute** all them that have the rule over you, and all the saints.” (Hebrews 13:24). “Then Toi sent Joram his son unto King David, to **salute** him, and to bless him”. (II Samuel 8:10).

27. JWs believe that there is no salvation outside their organisation (just like the Roman Catholic Church does). They have always criticised the Roman Catholic Church, yet they have copied its organisation pattern.

28. They do not believe that salvation can be obtained in this present life. You must spend all your life working for it. Nor do they believe that salvation can be obtained by Christ’s death, burial and resurrection. They believe that **knowledge** and **works** (not salvation) lead to **life**. They believe Christ gave an opportunity for life to worthy ones. To them salvation is not for unworthy sinners (Abram was saved, Genesis.15:6; Rahab was saved, Joshua 2:11. p.546).

29. **Ambition** is destroyed. JWs have become deadened to the world they live in. They do not care what happens. He thus becomes a most useless person. He is not allowed to do anything useful for anyone except JWs. He must not vote, nor aid in civil defence, nor sign a petition against liquor or gambling, nor give money to any cause outside the WT. A spouse will often walk off from a mate if the mate does not become a JW.

30. **Christmas** and **Easter** are not recognised or celebrated. Why? Because Christ means nothing to them, hence they see no reason for recognising His birth or His death. (The angels, shepherds and wise men celebrated Christ’s birth in Luke 2:8-20).

Jesus Christ is precious to those who believe (I Peter 2:7). JWs would not know the difference if Christ had never come. They could get along just as well without Him. They are still slaves to working for their salvation.

31. **Only the 144,000 “spiritual Israelites” go to heaven**. The rest are the earthly class.

32. **No hell for the wicked**. JWs believe the wicked will be annihilated (Ezekiel.32:21,30,31).

33. JWs are not trained to answer the Christ-centred testimony of one who has been born again. They are trained to argue about denominations, but are NOT trained to argue successfully against the Gospel of Christ.

34. JWs purpose is to get people out of churches where they are individuals, and into the WT organisation where they will be automatons. To a JW, to be yourself is “worldliness” and “false religion”.

35. The organisation:

- a) replaces the need for Christ's blood to gain favour with God, in favour of itself.
- b) stands in the place of Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and man.
- c) has become the saviour instead of Christ, who to them is just a fellow creature.
- d) makes the WT authority greater than the Bible, as seen in how they change verses to suit their doctrines.
- e) has pontifical authority. Disputers are cast out as heretics.

36. What is the effect of this on a JW's mind?

- a) He no longer thinks of himself as a God-fearing individual but WT fearing.
- b) All piety and reverence have been removed from belief.
- c) All faith in the individual Christ has gone. It now becomes a matter of conducting business.
- d) It no longer involves worship. It has degenerated to a system of works and rewards.
- e) WT runs like a business. Statistics are kept on everything. They mock everything but the organisation.
- f) They do works to prove themselves faithful and to earn everlasting life. They believe it was the life of Christ, not His death, that really mattered. They think it was Christ's obedient life, not His blood that saves.

37. A person changes thoroughly to become a JW in 6-12 months. How?

- a) **Initial house-to-house visiting**. The purpose is to get literature into the person's hands so they can read it in their homes and to arouse interest.
- b) **Return visits**. The purpose is to improve interest and to start a home Bible study.
- c) **Home "Bible" Studies** for 1 hour. They then attend the theocratic ministry school (speech class) to give short talks before an audience.
- d) **Training new ministers door-to-door**. 'The secret of success is to start training these new ones from the very earliest. Take them with you as soon as possible. It is the backbone of our ministry'.
- e) **Baptism** by immersion, not in the name of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, but in nobody's name at all. This makes him a minister and an official JW. It means, "You give up your old life and begin a new life, dedicated (sins and all) to serve Jehovah."

Average conversion takes place in 6-12 months because of persistent follow-up.

38. You must know your Bible and know it well. Challenge them on the Deity of Christ and stick to it as the most important doctrine. Be firm, polite and loving. Hatred will beget hatred.

39. The WT Organisation places much emphasis on class distinctions, eg "the 144,000 anointed heavenly class", the "great crowd earthly class", and the "Queen of Sheba class" of men of good will. This is a fantasy of the governing body of JWs.

6. EIGHT ISSUES JW's ARGUE AGAINST

JW's say that clergy should call themselves "**servants**" instead of using flattering titles.

JW's forget John 15:15 "Henceforth I call you **not servants**; for the servant knoweth not what his lord doeth: but I have called you **friends**."

The close relationship between Christ and the Christian does not exist for the JW, so he sees himself as a slave of the WT organisation. A Christian should give a logical, clear testimony of what Christ has done for him. The main issues JW's argue against are as follows:

1. Arguing against the Trinity. This involves the deity of Christ, and the Holy Spirit's deity and personality.
2. Arguing against Hell. They think hell to be unbiblical, unreasonable, unloving and unjust.
3. Arguing against the soul. They believe the soul is a living physical body. They quote Ezekiel 18:4 "The soul that sinneth, it shall die". This refers to physical death of a person, not spiritual death, as seen from Ezekiel 18:27 "When the wicked man turns away from his wickedness...he shall **save his soul alive**." Body, soul, spirit (I Thess 5:23).
4. Arguing against Christ's ransom. To JW's, Christ is only a man who gave them a chance to work out their own salvation. They believe Christ **only** atoned for Adam's disobedience, though not for Adam himself. JW's do **not** believe that Christ atoned for our personal sins, but only for our disobedience in Adam.
5. Arguing against Christ's visible return. JW's believe that Christ returned invisibly in 1914, thus marking the end of the times of the Gentiles. Then how is it that Jerusalem is still trodden down of the Gentiles? (Luke 21:24),"Every eye shall see Him" (Rev1:7).
6. Arguing against judgment after death. JW's believe that the coming judgment will be the millennium. They are not aware of the four judgments of:
 - a) Christ judged on the cross for our sins; (I Peter 2:24; 3:18).
 - b) The judgment seat of Christ in heaven for believers' rewards; (II Cor.5:10).
 - c) The sheep and goat nations judgment early in the millennium;(Matthew 25:31-46).
 - d) The Great White Throne judgment of unbelievers raised after the 1000 years. (Rev.20:11-15).

They think that "those who meet with God's favourable judgment **will be** granted everlasting life." (*Let God be True*, p 292). They believe that they will be judged favourably because of works they performed in this life.

7. Arguing against regeneration and the Holy Spirit. They degrade the Holy Spirit to an "active force" and they put the Watchtower organisation in his place.

"His theocratic organisation.....to help us understand that Word." (*Let God be True*, p 306).

Their salvation is never sure, so they keep selling books to earn salvation by good works.

8. Arguing against all piety. JW's do not worship God. There is no reverence or awe of God in their hearts. It is forbidden to worship Jesus Christ because to them He is created. In their hymn book "*Songs to Jehovah's Praise*", they extol the works of the organisation and of individual JW's. No adoring words to God or Christ, just praise to the organisation. JW's will never kneel to pray, nor have any prayer meetings. They will never hold public debates because they realise that no JW can stand up against anyone who knows the Bible really well.

7. JEHOVAH'S NAME or JESUS CHRIST'S NAME.

The Watchtower teaches that God's true Name is Jehovah. They teach that:

“Sometime during the second or third Century CE, the scribes removed the tetragrammaton (JHWH) from both the Septuagint and the Christian Greek Scriptures and replaced it with κυριος (Lord) or θεος (God)”. *Reference Edition of NWT, 1984, p 1564.*

The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) proves that Jesus is Jehovah God.

On page 10,11 of the 1985 KIT, under the heading “Restoring the Divine Name, Jehovah” we read: “the evidence (*what evidence?*) is that the original text of the Christian Greek Scriptures has been tampered with (*no proof*) . . . Sometime during the second or third centuries CE, the Tetragrammaton (JHVH) was eliminated from the Greek texts by copyists (*no proof*). Instead of JHVH they substituted the words *Kurios* (“Lord”) and *Theos* (“God”)”.

Note: This is a lie. There is no historical or manuscript evidence or evidence of protest to support this claim. Somebody would have protested such a change. No one did. It never happened.

The New World Translation (NWT) is the JW perversion of the Bible made to support their false doctrines. It inserts the name “Jehovah” in the New Testament in the place of God (θεος =theos) or Lord (κυριος =kurios) on 237 occasions, where they believe it refers to God the Father. They often refer to Hebrew translations of the NT to see where this has been done. These are footnoted as J¹ to J²⁷. Their dishonesty and deceit is shown by their failure to translate these words as “Jehovah” when it refers to Christ. (Philippians 2:11; Hebrews 1:10).

JWs say that the proper use of God's “correct” name (Jehovah) is absolutely **essential to one's salvation**. They quote from their NWT:

“Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will be saved.” Romans 10:13 (NWT).

“People will have to know that I am Jehovah.” Ezekiel 39:6 (NWT).

JWs believe that because they are the only group who refer to God by His “true” name, Jehovah, they are the **only true followers of God**.

Their claim is false for these reasons:

- 1) **Jehovah is not a Biblical term.** It is a man-made term. The Old Testament has “JHVH” because the original Hebrew only had consonants. Jews feared taking God's name in vain, so when they publicly read JHVH, they would pronounce it “Adonai” (Lord). Later they inserted the vowels from Adonai (a-o-a) into the consonants JHVH to give JAHOVAH, which became Jehovah. Hence, the word Jehovah comes from a consonant-vowel combination from JHVH and Adonai.
- 2) **No-one knows for sure the original correct pronunciation of JHVH.** Hence we cannot insist on “Jehovah” as being correct.
- 3) **Jesus never addressed the Father as Jehovah** in the New Testament. If JWs are correct that God must be always called Jehovah, then Jesus was sinning by not calling God “Jehovah”. When the NWT puts Jehovah in Jesus' mouth in the NT, it contradicts all the NT manuscripts which don't have it.

Ask: Since Jesus never in the NT addressed the Father as Jehovah, why should we?

- 4) **Jesus and the Apostle Paul tell us to address God as “Father”:**
 - a) **Jesus taught us to pray** to God as “Our Father”, not “Our Jehovah”:
“After this manner therefore pray ye: Our **Father**.....” (Matthew 6:9).
 - b) **Jesus addressed God as Father** in His own prayers:
“I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth”. (Matthew 11:25).
“O my **Father**, if it be possible.....” (Matthew 26:39,42).
“He said, Abba, **Father**.....” (Mark 14:36).

“ I thank thee, O **Father**, Lord of heaven.....” (Luke 10:21).

“Saying, **Father**, if thou be willing.....” (Luke 22:42).

“Then said Jesus, **Father**, forgive them;.....” (Luke 23:34).

“**Father**, the hour is come.....” (John 17:1).

c) **Paul** said, “we cry, Abba, **Father**.” (Romans 8:15).

d) The **Holy Spirit** through Paul said, “God hath sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, **Father**”. (Galatians 4:6).

Here the Holy Spirit of God tells us to call God “Abba, Father”, not “Jehovah”.

Ask: If **Jesus**, the **Holy Spirit** and **Paul** all address God as Father nine times (and never as Jehovah) then shouldn't we call God “Father”?

5) **No Ancient NT manuscripts contain the tetragram (JHVH) to translate as Jehovah.**

The Church writers before 325 AD only mention Jehovah once in passing. JW's tell us that most Bible versions deceive people because they omit Jehovah as God's Name, so the JW's dishonestly add the word “Jehovah” to the NT text, even though it is not in any NT Greek manuscript, ancient version, papyri or lectionary.

The WT's claim that “Jehovah” as God's name was removed from the NT by superstitious scribes, is a total lie with no supporting historical or manuscript evidence.

6) **Whose Name did the early Christians identify themselves with? Was it Jehovah or was it Jesus Christ? Always Jesus Christ, never Jehovah.**

Who knows more, the Apostles or modern JW's? Consider these examples:

a) The Apostles **never** used the name “Jehovah”.

b) The Apostles and first century Christians **were never called “Jehovah's Witnesses”**. “The disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch.” (Acts 11:26).

c) There is **no proof** that **Jesus** or his **disciples ever pronounced** the tetragram **JHVH**.

JW's claim that when Jesus read from Isaiah 61:1 “The Spirit of the Lord is upon me..” as quoted in Luke 4:18,19, that Jesus pronounced the word “JHVH”.

This is most unlikely. JW's assume that the religious leaders endorsing Christ's “gracious words” in verse 22 was because He uttered the name JHVH?

Historical records in the **Mishnah**, from **Josephus**, and from other sources show the Jews were **loathe** to allow the name JHVH to be used. The Jews would not have tolerated it being used by anyone but the High Priest. Jesus would have read “Adonai”.

7) **120 Bible passages referring to Jehovah, are quoted and applied to Christ in the New Testament (see Chapter 115).**

Ask: In view of 120 Bible verses applying “Jehovah” to Christ in the NT, what does this tell you about who Christ is?

8) **The New Testament tells us to name the name of Jesus Christ, not the name of Jehovah.** Consider these examples:

1. “Let **every one** that nameth the **name of Christ** depart from iniquity” (2 Timothy 2:19)

2. “I beseech you, brethren, by the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ** . . .” (I Cor 1:10).

3. “Ye are washed,....sanctified,... justified in the **name** of the **Lord Jesus** “ (I Cor 6:11).

4. “Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do **all** in the **name** of the **Lord Jesus**” (Col 3:17)

5. “That the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ** may be **glorified** in you....” (2 Thess 1:12).

6. “Now **we command you**, brethren, in the **name** of our **Lord Jesus Christ**, that ye withdraw yourselves.....” (II Thess. 3:6).

7. “all that in every place **call** upon the **name** of **Jesus Christ** our Lord, both theirs and ours.” (I Corinthians 1:2).

8. “Thou holdest fast my name...” Jesus said to the Pergamos church. (Revelation 2:13). JW’s have not held fast Christ’s name, nor have they called upon Christ’s name, nor do they name the name of Christ, nor is Jesus Christ precious to them, because they do not have saving belief in Him. “Unto you . . . which believe He is precious.” (I Peter 2:7).

Ask: Where does the NT tell us to name the name of Jehovah?

9) **The New Testament always lifts up Jesus Christ’s name, not Jehovah’s name.** Why? Because Jesus Christ is Jehovah God on earth. Christ is 100% God and 100% man.

Q1: In whose name should **we meet together**? Matthew 28:19 states:

“Where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.”

Q2: **Demons** were cast out by the authority of whose name? Acts 16:18 states:

“Paul...said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her.”

Q3: In whose name should we **preach repentance and forgiveness of sins**?

“And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations. And ye are **witnesses** of these things.” (Luke 24:47,48)

Q4: In whose name are we to **believe** and receive forgiveness of sins?

“through his name whosoever **believes** in him shall receive remission of sins.” Acts 10:43

Q5: By whose name, and **no other**, do we obtain **salvation**? Acts 4:10,12 says:

“by the name of Jesus Christ ... Neither is there salvation in any other, for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

Q6: In whose name should we **pray**? John 16:23,24; 14:13,14; 15:16 says:

“Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give it you.”

Q7: In whose name is the **Holy Spirit sent**? John 14:26 states:

“But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name.....”

Q8: In whose name and authority did the disciples **heal the sick**?

“**His name** through faith in his name hath made this man strong” (Acts 3:16; 4:30)

Q9: Whose name did Paul say that we are to **call** upon?

“all that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord.” (I Cor 1:2)

Q10: Whose name is **above every name**?

“God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a **name** which is **above every name** ... that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is **Lord**.” (Phil 2:9-11)

Paul’s quote about Christ is from Isaiah 45:22-24 where every knee will bow to Jehovah.

What is true about Jehovah, is also true of Christ, the Lord of all mankind

Q11: According to Acts 1:8, of whom are we to be **witnesses**?

“Ye shall be **witnesses** unto me (Jesus)”

Q12: In whose name were believers **baptized**?

“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus”. (Acts 8:16; 2:38)

Q13: In whose name were **believers designated**?

“the disciples were called Christians first in Antioch”. (Acts 11:26)

Q14: In whose name did the **apostles speak**?

“Commanded them not to **speak** at all nor **teach** in the name of Jesus” Acts 4:17,18

Q15: In whose name did early Christians **suffer**? Acts 15:26 says:

“Men that have **hazarded** their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.”

“rejoicing that they were counted worthy to suffer **shame** for his **name**” Acts 5:41;9:16.

Q16: Whose name was **Paul to carry**?

“Lord said: He is a chosen vessel unto me, to **bear my name** before the Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel.” (Acts 9:15)

Q17: In whose name did Paul **deliver a man to Satan**?

“In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ...to deliver such an one to Satan.” I Cor 5:4,5

Q18: In whose name did the **apostles teach**? Acts 5:28; 8:12 says:

“Did we not straitly command you that ye should not teach in this name?”

10) Why does WT break their own rule (where the OT speaks of Jehovah), **that they do not insert Jehovah in the NT, when the quote clearly refers to Christ?**

Answer: They do not want Christ to be God, due to their theological bias. Consider three examples:

1) Psalm 102:24,25 (NWT)	Hebrews 1:10 (NWT)
“O my God . . . long ago <u>you laid the foundations of the earth</u> ”	“with reference to the Son : . . . You at the beginning, O Lord <u>laid the foundations of the earth</u> itself . . .” (v 10)

The Psalm unquestionably speaks of Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth.

The writer of Hebrews applies it to Christ as Jehovah God laying the foundations of the earth.

Yet, if JW's translate “Lord” in the NT as “Jehovah” elsewhere, why don't they translate “Lord” in Hebrews 1:10 as “Jehovah”?

Answer: Because Hebrews 1:10 refers to the Son, and this would make Christ to be Jehovah, which they refuse to accept. The NWT is biased against the Trinity.

2) Isaiah 8:13 (NWT)	I Peter 3:15 (NWT)
“ Jehovah of armies - he is the One whom you should <u>treat as holy</u> . . .”	“But <u>sanctify the Christ as Lord</u> in your hearts . . .”

Peter paraphrases Isaiah 8:13 and applies it directly to Christ, saying that we are to sanctify

Christ as Lord (Jehovah) in our hearts. The NWT committee has shown **bias** in not following their own rules, by **refusing to insert “Jehovah”** into I Peter 3:15.

The WT *Kingdom Interlinear*, p 11 of the Foreword (1985 Edition) states their rule:

“How is a modern translator to know when to render the Greek words “κυριος “ or “θεος “ as “Jehovah”? By determining where the inspired Christian writers (NT) have quoted from the Hebrew scriptures (OT). Then he must refer back to the original (Hebrew OT) to locate whether “Jehovah” appears there.”

Even the *Kingdom Interlinear* footnote (p.1016) shows that **8 modern Hebrew Bibles** have “**Jehovah God**” in I Peter 3:15 reading as “sanctify the Christ as Jehovah God in your hearts”

12*.* Jehovah, J7.8.11-14.16-18.20.22,(23).24; Lord, κABVgSyP. 15* The Christ as Lord, κABC; the Lord God, Textus Receptus; Jehovah God, J7.8.11-14.16.17.24.

The NWT committee could not be consistent with their rule.

3) Joel 2:32 (NWT)	Acts 2:21, 38 (NWT)
“Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe;”	“Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah (v.21) “Peter said, Repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ .” (v.38)

Peter quotes from Joel 2:32 (spoken of Jehovah) and applies it to Jesus in Acts 2:21 and 38.

Calling on the **name** of **Jehovah** for salvation equals repenting and being baptized in the **name** of **Jesus Christ** because of the forgiveness of sins.

Conclusion: Jesus shares the **nature** of His Father and His **Name**. The absence of JHVH in any NT manuscript demolishes the WT case of introducing the word “Jehovah” into the NT.

Question: If God was so concerned about preserving His covenant name, why did the **apostles** not preserve it in their writings?

Question: To imply that the name “Jehovah” is the main name of God that we are to use, contradicts the continued NT use of the name “**Jesus**” on **900 occasions**, while the **tetragram** JHVH is used **nowhere** in the NT.

Ask: Why does the WT not translate “Jehovah” into Hebrews 1:10, I Peter 3:15 and Philippians 2:11, when the OT passages from which these are quoted refer to JHVH? We are to make the name of the Father known as Jesus emphasized (Matthew 6:9; John 17:26). How do we do it? By recognizing that Jesus Christ was chosen by the Father to embody all the glory and important reputation of that Name.

8. WATCHTOWER’S WRONG BELIEFS.

Wrong Belief of the Watchtower:	Refuted by Scripture:
Christ is God’s Son and is inferior to Him	John 5:23 “honour the Son, as .the Father”.
Christ was the first of God’s creation	Micah 5:2 ‘goings forth ...from everlasting’.
Christ died on a stake, not a cross	John 20:25 “the print of the nails”.
Christ’s human life was paid as a ransom for obedient humans	Hebrews 2:9 “That He by the grace of God should taste death for every man. ”
Christ was raised from the dead as an immortal spirit person	Luke 24:39 “see ...a spirit has not flesh and bones, as ye see me have”.
Christ’s presence (Second Coming) is in spirit	Zech.12:4 “ His feet shall stand in that day on the mount of Olives”.
Earth will never be destroyed or depopulated	Rev. 21:1”I saw a <u>new earth</u> : the first heaven and the first earth were <u>passed away.</u> ”
Wicked will be eternally destroyed	Rev.14:11 “they have <u>no rest</u> day or night”
The human soul ceases to exist at death	Rev.6:9,10 “ <u>souls</u> of them that were slain ... <u>cried with a loud voice</u> , saying, How long.”
Hell is mankind’s common grave	Ezekiel 32:21 “The strong...shall <u>speak</u> to him out of the <u>midst of hell</u> ”.
Only a little flock of 144,000 go to heaven and rule with Christ	Zechariah 14:5 “The Lord my God shall come and <u>all the saints</u> with thee”. (Rev19:1)
Taking blood into body through veins violates God’s laws	Leviticus 3:17 “You must not <u>eat any fat</u> or <u>any blood</u> at all”.
The Holy Spirit is not God	II Cor. 3:17 “Now Jehovah is the Spirit”(NWT)

JWs come to your door for two main reasons:

1. They believe that you will be destroyed in the imminent Battle of Armageddon unless you come to Jehovah’s organisation for salvation. (WT 15.Nov. 81, p.21)
2. They believe that they will not survive Armageddon unless they engage in this door-to-door preaching work under the direction of the Watchtower Organisation.

“They have a **zeal** of God, but **not according to knowledge**.....they being **ignorant of God’s righteousness**, and going about to establish their own righteousness, **have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God.**” (Romans 10:2,3).

Most JW's are victims of victims, and blind followers of blind leaders. Most have been non-practising Roman Catholics or Protestants who never got saved.

JW's invited them to study the Bible, but soon switched them to a Watchtower book study.

Instead of leading the seeker to God, they led him to the WT organisation.

Notice 15 Watchtower (WT) errors on the following issues:

1. Armageddon - all will be destroyed then, except JW's.
2. Birthdays - no birthday cards or celebrations are allowed.
3. Blood Transfusions - must be refused even if death is likely.
4. True Christianity - vanished after the 12 apostles died. It was restored when Russell started the Watchtower Organisation in the 1870's.
5. Christ Returned - invisibly in 1914, ruling as King on earth through the Watchtower Society. He found them doing the work of the "faithful and wise servant" (Matthew 24:45). He appointed them ruler over all his belongings. All other churches and professed Christians are tools of the devil. Their New World Translation changes references to the second "coming" to "presence". The generation of people who witnessed Christ's invisible return in 1914 will not pass away before Armageddon comes. (Matthew 24:34).
6. Cross - is despised by JW's as a pagan symbol. JW's think that Christ was nailed to a straight upright pole called a stake, without a crossbeam. This is refuted by Thomas in John 20:25 "Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**." Two nails here proves a crossbar was used; one nail would mean a stake. Paul gloried in the Cross. Galat. 6:14
7. Deity - The Father alone is God, and should be addressed as "Jehovah". JW's think that Jesus Christ is not God, but Michael the Archangel in human form. (JW's think that the Holy Spirit is not God, nor a person, but an active force.) They add the word "Jehovah" 237 times to the NWT New Testament with no manuscript support.
8. Disfellowshipping - is the punishment for breaking WT rules. No JW's are allowed to speak to him.
9. Heaven - Only 144,000 people (the "little flock") go to heaven. This number was filled by 1935. Other JW's hope to live on the earth forever. "All the saints with thee." Zech.14:5.
10. Holidays - JW's forbid celebration of Christmas, Easter, Good Friday, New Year's Day, Mothers Day, Fathers Day. "He that regardeth the day, regardeth it to the Lord". Romans 14:5,6.
11. Holy Spirit -JW's say the Holy Spirit is neither God nor a person, but an impersonal active force that God uses to do His will. "knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit." Romans8:27
12. Jesus Christ - JW's say that Jesus Christ is the first-created angel, Michael. No Bible proof.
13. Watchtower Organisation - JW's believe it is the visible agency of the Kingdom of God on earth, ruling all aspects of a JW's life.
14. Resurrection - JW's believe that when Christ died He became non-existent, and that He was raised three days later as a spirit, that is to say, an angel. They deny Christ's bodily resurrection. JW's believe that at Christ's "invisible return in 1914", He then raised dead Christians to spirit life, and that the rest of the human dead will be raised **bodily** during the 1000 year reign of **God's** Kingdom. (No Bible support, just a JW invention). Heb13:8
15. Salvation - although giving lip service to salvation by faith in Christ, JW's believe that salvation only comes by full obedience to the WT Society, and by their zealous door-to-door works program. Those JW's who enter the 1000 year paradise must maintain their good works for 1000 years before they can be sealed for life. 'Not of works' Eph. 2:8,9.

9. “DEITY OF CHRIST” VERSES THAT THE NWT CHANGES.

Greek linguists, both Christian and non-Christian, universally reject the NWT as biased and inaccurate. Dr Julius Mantey, one of the world’s leading Greek experts, publicly demanded that the Watchtower Society stop misquoting his Greek Grammar to support the NWT. He said: “I have never read any New Testament so badly translated as the Kingdom Interlinear Translation of the Greek Scriptures. It is a distortion of the NT.” (Vantage Press, 1980, p.136).

Our purpose is to show how the New World Translation mistranslates key verses which for the last 1900 years have been understood as Deity of Christ proof texts.

1. Colossians 1:17

Ask: Why does the NWT insert **“OTHER”** four times, when it is not in any New Testament Greek manuscript?

Answer: Because they do not want it to appear that Christ is the Creator and that He existed before all things.

The NWT makes it appear that Jesus was created first, and then He was used by Jehovah to create all other things in the Universe. The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), p.880, shows that the Greek word “panta” means “all things” not “all other things”. Here, **by adding “other”** they change the meaning of the text from Christ being the Creator, to being a created being on a par with all other created things.

πάσης of all	κτίσεως, creation,	16	ὅτι because	ἐν in	αὐτῷ him	
ἐκτίσθη it was created	τὰ the	πάντα all (things)	ἐν in	τοῖς οὐρανοῖς the heavens		
καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, and upon the earth,	τὰ the (things)	ὄρατα, visible	καὶ and	ὀρατὰ visible	καὶ and	
τὰ the (things)	ἀόρατα, invisible,	εἴτε whether	θρόνοι thrones	εἴτε or		
κυριότητες lordships	εἴτε or	ἄρχαι governments	εἴτε or	ἐξουσίαι· authorities;		
τὰ πάντα the all (things)	δι’ through	αὐτοῦ him	καὶ and	εἰς into	αὐτὸν him	
ἔκτισται· it has been created;	17	καὶ and	αὐτός he	ἔστιν is	πρὸ before	
πάντων all (things)	καὶ and	τὰ the	πάντα all (things)	ἐν in	αὐτῷ him	
συνέστηκεν, it has stood together,	18	καὶ and	αὐτός he	ἔστιν is	ἢ the	

16 because by means of him all [other] things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All [other] things have been created through him and for him. -17 Also, he is before all [other] things and by means of him all [other] things were made to exist, 18 and he is

JW Objection: The WT says that Christ played a **junior role in creation** since I Cor. 8:6 says that God made the world **by** or **through** (Greek “*δια*” ie: “*dia*”) Christ.

Answer:

1) This is unacceptable because, while it is true that the Greek word “*δια*” is used of Christ’s role as Creator (John 1:3, I Corinthians 8:6, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2), “*δια*” is **also used** of God as Creator in Romans 11:36 which states that the universe was created “through” (Greek “*δια*”) **God**:

“For of him, and **through** him, and to him, are all things.”

Hebrews 2:10 also states that the universe was created “through or by” (Greek “*δια*”) the

Father: “by (*δ*) whom are all things.”

“*δια*” (by/through) used of God/Father/Christ as CREATOR

God	Romans 11:36	For of him, and “ <i>δια</i> ” him, and to him, are all things.
Father	Hebrews 2:10	And “ <i>δια</i> ” whom are all things
Christ	John 1:2,3	The same was in the beginning with God. And all things were made “ <i>δια</i> ” him
	I Corinthians 8:6	One Lord Jesus Christ, “ <i>δια</i> ” whom are all things.
	Colossians 1:15,16	Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature: For “ <i>δια</i> ” him were all things created
	Hebrews 1:2	His Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, “ <i>δια</i> ” whom also he made the worlds.

Ask: Since the Greek word “*δια*”, is used of both the Father and the Son, how can it be taken to indicate a lesser role for Christ?

2) Isaiah 44:24 states that **ONLY God is the Creator**:

“I am the LORD that maketh all things; that stretcheth forth the heavens **ALONE**, that spreadeth abroad the earth **by MYSELF**”.

Because **Jehovah** is the maker of all things “alone”, “by myself”, and that **Christ** is the maker of all things (“All things were made by him”) (John 1:3), this proves that Christ is God Almighty.

3) All things were created FOR Christ (Colossians 1:16), means that Christ is the **end** for which all things exist. All things are to serve His will and contribute to His glory.

“All things were created **BY** him and **FOR** him”. Colossians 1:16.

4) Christ as **sole Creator** is seen in John 1:3:

“All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made.”

“by whom also he made the worlds.” (Hebrews 1:2,10).

5) Christ is the **Preserver of the universe**.

He sustains it: “by him all things consist (hold together).” (Colossians 1:17).

6) Christ “is **before all things**.” (Colossians 1:17). Jesus Christ is the great **FIRST** cause.

7) Christ “**IS** before all things.” Were Christ merely pre-existent, we would say that Christ “**WAS** before all things”. The present tense “**IS**” indicates eternal, unending existence, just as does “**I AM**” in John 8:24,58.

2. Philippians 2:9

The NWT (1961 Edition) deceptively **adds the word “other”** in Philippians 2:9 without parentheses or brackets, where “other” appears in no New Testament manuscript. It has been deliberately added by the WT to change the meaning from Christ having the greatest name, to Christ having the second greatest name other than God. Realising their dishonesty, they bracket “other” in the KIT and NWT 1984 edition as seen below:

	9	διὸ	καὶ	ὁ	
		through	which	also	the
θεὸς	αὐτὸν	ὑπερύψωσεν,	καὶ		
God	him	put high up over,	and		
ἐχαρίσατο	αὐτῷ	τὸ ὄνομα	τὸ	ὑπὲρ	
he graciously gave	to him	the name	the	over	
πᾶν ὄνομα,					
<u>every name,</u>					

9 For
 this very reason also
 God exalted him to a
 superior position and
 kindly gave him the
 name that is above
 every [other] name.

9 For this very reason also God
 exalted him to a superior position
 and kindly gave him the name
 that is above every other name.

Ask: Which do you believe regarding Philipians 2:9 - the WT organisation with no Greek manuscript support, or all the NT manuscripts?

3. **Zechariah 12:10** “..they shall look upon me (Jehovah) whom they have pierced,..” Jehovah is speaking in Zechariah 12:1-10 of Christ’s return, Israel’s conversion, and Israel looking on Me (Jehovah) whom they (Israel) have pierced. Jehovah is saying that Israel have pierced Me (Jehovah), yet we all know that Israel have pierced Jesus Christ. Based on the rule of logic that if a = b and b = c then a = c, we must accept that:

Jehovah = Me whom they pierced = Christ.

JWs, not willing to face the obvious fact that **Jesus is Jehovah**, have deliberately altered the text, and changed the Bible, from ‘Me’ to ‘the One’, with no manuscript support. Hence, in the NWT it is not Jehovah who was pierced but the One (Jesus) who was pierced. They break the connection between Jehovah and Jesus.

Question: What evidence is there for the reading ‘Me’?

i) The Hebrew **Masoretic Text** reads ‘Me’.

10 And I will pour on the house of David, and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of prayers. And they shall look on Me whom they have pierced; and they shall mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and shall be bitter over Him, like the bitterness over the firstborn.

10	1004	59	21	8210	וְשִׁפְכֵתִי	עַל-בֵּית
	the	on	will	I	And	
	of	house	out	pour		
	5027	84	69	2580	7307	3389
	אל	וְהַנְּחִימִים	וְהַבְּיטוּ	אֶל	יְרוּשָׁלַם	רוּחַ חַן
	on	they	And	and	grace	the
	Me	look	shall	prayers	of	Spirit
	4843	31	23	5594	4553	1856
	אֶת	אִשְׁדָּדָיו	וּסְפְדוּ	עָלָיו	כַּמְסָפֵד	עַל-דָּוִד
	will	and	only	an	for	one
	bitter	be	son		mourns	,Him
						mourn
						shall
						,pierced

NWT: 10 “And I will pour out upon the house of David and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem the spirit of favor^p and entreaties,^q and they will certainly look to the One whom they pierced^r through, and they will certainly wail over Him as in the wailing over an only

ii) The Greek **Septuagint** translation of the Old Testament reads ‘Me’.

nations that come against Jerusalem. 10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and compassion: and they shall look upon me, because they have mocked me, and they shall make lamentation for him, as for a beloved friend, and they shall grieve intensely, as for a first-born son.

Ἱερουσαλήμ. Καὶ ἐκχέω ἐπὶ τὸν οἶκον Δαυὶδ, καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς 1 κατὸικοῦντας Ἱερουσαλήμ πνεῦμα χάριτος καὶ οἰκτιρμοῦ· καὶ ἐπιβλέψονται πρὸς (με) ἀνθ' ὧν κατωρχήσαντο· καὶ κούφονται ἐπ' αὐτὸν κοπετὸν, ὡς ἐπ' ἀγαπητῷ, καὶ ὀδνηθήσονται ὀδνην, ὡς ἐπὶ τῷ πρωτοτόκῳ.

iii) The early Church writer **Cyprian (200-258 AD)** quotes ‘Me’.

(The Treaties of Cyprian, Vol.5, p.524)

elect.”¹³ Also in Zechariah: “And they shall look upon me, whom they have pierced.”¹⁴ Also

Cyprian quoted from his Bible in 200 AD. Also, ‘Me’ is quoted in the Old Latin version, the Syriac Peshitta, the Aramaic Targums, as well as other early church writers. John’s gospel interprets Zechariah 12:10 as a prophecy of Christ’s death on the cross (John 19:37). Jesus Christ is clearly described as ‘pierced’ in Revelation 1:7.

Ask: Since ‘Me’ identifies Jehovah as Jesus, whom will you believe: the Hebrew Text, the Septuagint and the early church writers all saying ‘Me’, or the NWT saying ‘the One’ with no manuscript support?

Ask: Why does the NWT go against the manuscripts here?

Ask: According to the manuscripts, who is Jesus in Zechariah 12:10? (Me/Jehovah).

4. **Acts 20:28** Why does the NWT add 'Son'?

NWT	Acts 20:28	KJV
To shepherd the congregation of God , which he purchased with the blood of his <u>own</u> [Son]	Feed the church of God , which he has purchased with his own blood .	

The NWT, by adding [Son], makes it appear that the church was purchased **NOT** by God's blood (which would make Jesus equal to God), but by the Son's blood.

Question 1: Who does 'his own blood' in the KJV refer to?

Answer: It can only be God, because **God** is the **antecedent** that the pronoun '**his**' refers to. This is a universally accepted rule of English grammar.

Question 2: Why does the NWT add the word 'Son' in this verse when 'Son' is not found in any Greek manuscripts in the world? (Due to WT's bias against Christ's deity).

Answer: 'his own blood' found in the KJV teaches that Christ's blood is God's blood. This is a doctrine that proves that Jesus is God. JW's refuse to accept that Jesus is God, so they change this verse to agree with their view of Christ being less than God, by adding the word 'Son'. They thus **break the connection** between God equalling Christ.

Question 3: What evidence is there for the reading 'with his own blood' (KJV and all other translations)?

i) All **Greek manuscripts, all ancient versions and all lectionaries have 'his own blood'**. Notice that the Greek word for "Son" (υἱος) is not anywhere in the Greek text:

28 προσέχετε ἑαυτοῖς καὶ παντὶ
 Be you paying attention to selves and to all
 τῷ ποιμνίῳ, ἐν ᾧ ὑμᾶς τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ
 the flock, in which you the spirit the
 ἅγιον ἔθετο ἐπισκόπους, ποιμαίνειν τὴν
 holy put overseers, to be shepherding the
 ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ θεοῦ, ἣν περιποιήσατο
 ecclesia of the God, which he reserved for self
 διὰ τοῦ αἵματος τοῦ ἰδίου. 29 ἐγὼ
 through the blood of the own (one). I

28 Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God,* which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

ii) The **early church writer Tertullian quotes it correctly in 200-250 AD.**

Volume 4, p.46

So far as I know, "we are not our own, but bought with a price;"³ and what kind of price? The blood of God.⁴ In hurting this flesh of

Ask: Why does the WT organisation add the word 'Son' into the verse, when not one Greek NT manuscript in the world contains 'Son'?

Ask: Do you think it is acceptable to insert words into the Bible that are not found in any NT Greek manuscripts?

Jesus, who is called God, shed His own blood for the flock. Jesus was fully God and fully man. He was always one person. Christ the God-man shed His blood to pay for our sins. In His **human** nature, Christ knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23).

In His **divine** nature, Christ was omniscient (John 2:24), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11; Matthew 28:20).

However, the message of Hebrews 1:8 ('Thy throne, O God is for ever and ever') is that **God's throne is Christ's throne** - they are one and the same.

That is, all that is God's is also Christ's as John 16:15 says:

'All things that the Father hath are mine.'

This is true of God's throne. Christ owns God's throne as Revelation 22:1 says:

'The throne of God and of the Lamb.'

Christ sits on the throne of God exercising the **same authority** as the Father.

Ask: Can you see that the NWT interpretation is foreign to the context?

v) The **early church writers quote 'Thy throne, O God is forever' from their Bibles from 110-250 AD.**

a) **Justin Martyr** (110-165 AD) in his dialogue with Trypho. Volume 1, p.224 and p.229.

in other words: 'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever. A sceptre of equity is the sceptre of Thy kingdom: Thou hast loved righteousness

And speaking in other words, which also have been already quoted, [he says]: 'Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of rectitude is the sceptre of Thy kingdom.

b) **Tertullian** (145-220 AD) defends the doctrine of the Holy Trinity against Praxeas. Vol 3, p.607.

listen to the psalm in which Two are described as God: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever; the sceptre of Thy kingdom is a sceptre of righteousness. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore God, even Thy God, hath anointed Thee or made Thee His Christ." " Now, since He

Tertullian believed, quoted and taught the Trinity as seen in Volume 3, p.606.

Still, in these few quotations the distinction of *Persons in the Trinity* is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.¹³

This is well before 325 AD that JWs say that the **Trinity** doctrine was introduced by Rome.

c) **Cyprian** (200-258 AD). Volume 5, p.518.

Psalm: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: the sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of Thy kingdom. Thou hast loved righteousness,

d) **Melito** (about 140-195 AD) Volume 8, p.761.

The throne of the Lord — angels, or saints, or simply sovereign dominion.⁹ In the Psalm: "Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever."¹⁰

vi) The NWT's '**God is your throne**' is clearly a **wrong reading** because **Hebrew parallelism favours 'Thy throne, O God'** in Psalm 45:6.

- Notice: verse 3 'Gird thy sword..... O most mighty'.
verse 6 'Thy throne..... O God....'.
verse 10 'Hearken..... O daughter...'.
.

Ask: In view of Hebrew parallelism, can you see how the Watchtower translation of Hebrews 1:8 ('God is your throne') is wrong?

The writer of Hebrews 1:8 places Jesus on **par** with **God** regarding His **nature**, but **subordinate** to **God** regarding to **function**.

6. Hebrews 1:6

Why did the Watchtower change “**worship him**” in the **1961** edition of the NWT, to “**do obeisance to him**” in the **1971** NWT edition?

<p>6 But when he again brings his First-born into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels worship him.”</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">6 But when he again brings his First-born⁹ into the inhabited earth, he says: “And let all God’s angels^r do obeisance to him.”^s</p>
---	--

The word for “**worship**” in Greek is “προσκυνεω”⁴³⁵² (“proskuneo”). When one is much inferior, he fell upon his knees and touched his forehead to the ground before his superior, or prostrated himself, throwing kisses to his superior. This is what Greek writers mean by “προσκυνεω”. It means to kiss, like a dog licking his masters hand; to prostrate; to worship. Another Greek word indicating “**reverence**” or “**half-heartedness, non genuine worship**” is “σεβομαι”⁴⁵⁷⁶ (“sebomai”) used in:

- i) Matthew 15:9 and Mark 7:7. “...in vain do they worship me”.
- ii) Acts 16:14. “...unconverted Lydia worshipped God”.
- iii) Acts 19:27. “Diana.....whom all Asia and the world worships”.

If Christ is to be revered as a created being, as the Watchtower claims, then “sebomai” would be used. But the NT uses “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as **worship to God** and “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as **worship to Christ**. This shows that Christ is 100% God.

Ask: Why does the NWT translate “προσκυνεω” as “worship” when it applies to God, angels, devils, the antichrist and images, but when “προσκυνεω” is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it as “do obeisance”?

Consider these occurrences of “προσκυνεω” meaning “worship” in the New World Translation. The KJV always translates “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) correctly as “worship”.

New World Translation of the Word ‘προσκυνεω’			
FATHER	CHRIST	ANGELS	DEVILS
Worship	Do obeisance	Worship	Worship
Matthew 4:10	Matthew 2:2	Rev 19:10	Matthew 4:9
Luke 4:8	Matthew 2:8	Rev 22:8	Luke 4:7
John 4:20	Matthew 2:11		Acts 7:43
John 4:21	Matthew 8:2		Rev 9:20
John 4:22 (a)	Matthew 9:18		Rev 13:4 (a)
John 4:22 (b)	Matthew 14:33		Rev 13:4 (b)
John 4:23 (a)	Matthew 15:25		Rev 13:8
John 4:23 (b)	Matthew 18:26		Rev 13:12
John 4:24 (a)	Matthew 20:20		Rev 13:15
John 4:24 (b)	Matthew 28:9		Rev 14:9
I Cor 14:25	Matthew 28:17		Rev 14:11
Hebrews 11:21	Mark 5:6		Rev 16:2
Rev 4:10	Mark 15:19		Rev 19:20
Rev 5:14	Luke 24:52		Rev 20:4
Rev 7:11	John 9:38		
Rev 11:16	Hebrews 1:6		
Rev 14:7			
Rev 15:4			
Rev 19:4			

It is obvious that the Watchtower wants to avoid every reference to Christ being Jehovah God, so they refuse to translate “προσκυνεω“ as “worship” when it refers to Christ. Notice these problems with the Watchtower “obeisance”:

- i) **Ask:** Why did the 1961 edition of NWT translate Hebrews 1:6 to say that we should **worship** Jesus, while the 1971 edition says that we should merely **do obeisance** to Him?
- ii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is a created being and is not to be worshipped, then the Father Himself is guilty of committing a horrible sin by commanding all the angels of God (in Hebrews 1:6) to commit a sacrilegious act in worshipping (προσκυνεω) a mere creature.
- iii) If the NWT is correct in saying that Jesus is Michael the Archangel, then why would God command the angels to worship a fellow created angel (in Hebrews 1:6)?
God has clearly stated that worship is to be directed to God alone.
“Thou shalt worship no other god.” Exodus 34:14
“Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God.” Matthew 4:10
- iv) In the New Testament, angels are clearly shown to reject worship.

“I fell at his feet to worship him. He said see thou do it not...worship God.” Rev.19:10; 22:8.

Ask: If angels refused worship when it was offered, why did Christ accept worship 16 times?
By accepting worship, He claimed to be God.

Note: The “προσκυνεω“ worship that the angel refused and told John to **give to God**, is the same “προσκυνεω“ worship that the Father commands angels to **give to Jesus** in Hebrews 1:6. Hence, Christ was worshipped with the same kind of “προσκυνεω“ worship given to the Father.

Ask: What does it say about Jesus’ true identity if He receives the same “προσκυνεω“ worship as Jehovah the Father? (Answer: Jesus’ true identity is Jehovah the Son.)

Ask: Is it appropriate to give the Son the same worshipful honour that is given to the Father?

Answer: Yes, says John 5:23 in the NWT, “..that all may honour the Son **just as** they honour the Father. He that does not honour the Son, does not honour the Father who sent him.”

Ask: Do you give the Son worshipful honour just as you give to the Father?

7. Titus 2:13 Why does WT break the Greek Granville-Sharp Rule here, by adding [the] which occurs in no NT manuscripts.

NWT	Titus 2:13	KJV
“While we wait for the happy hope and glorious manifestation of the great God and of [the] Saviour of us, Christ Jesus.”	“Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.”	

The NWT has mistranslated this verse (by adding [the] **to make two persons**) in order to deny the deity of Christ, a doctrine they refuse to accept.

By adding “the” in brackets, they deny the fact that Paul unmistakably calls Jesus “**Our God and Saviour**”. They have made it read as if Paul were speaking of two separate persons here, God and Jesus, rather than one person, Jesus, who is named our “Great God and Saviour”.

i) JW’s violate what Greek grammarians call the **Granville-Sharp rule** which states that: “When **two singular person nouns** (such as “God” and “Saviour”) of the **same case** (“God” and “Saviour” are of the same case) are **connected with “and”** (the Greek word is “καί”) and the modifying **article “the”** (the Greek word “the” is “ὁ”) appears only before the first noun, not before the second noun, then **both nouns MUST refer to the same person** (in Titus 2:13, Jesus Christ is both God and Saviour).”

In an exhaustive study, C Kuehne found this Granville-Sharp rule to have no exceptions in the entire New Testament.

Key: 'The great God and Saviour' is Jesus Christ. This is agreed to by Greek scholars, B Metzger, J Mantey, K Wuest, A T Robertson and others. They all agree that **only one person (Jesus Christ)** is described in Titus 2:13 as 'the **great God** and our Saviour'. 'God and Saviour' refer to the same person, Jesus Christ.

The presence of only **one definite article** has the effect of **binding together** the two title 'God' and 'Saviour'.

Ask: In view of what all top Greek scholars say about Titus 2:13, are you willing to consider the possibility that only one person is discussed in this verse, and not two?

Ask: If only one person (Jesus Christ) is discussed in Titus 2:13, then who is Jesus described as in this verse? (Answer: our God and Saviour).

ii) An illustration of this rule applying to the one person is: 'My wife and friend Tania '.

iii) **Why does the Watchtower get the Granville-Sharp rule wrong when it applies to Christ** (two occasions), and **right everywhere else** where Christ's Deity is not an issue? Consider these eight examples:

1) Titus 2:13

KJV: of (the great God and our Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'of the great God and of (the) Saviour Jesus Christ' = 2 persons (wrong!)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify 'the' (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

τοῦ μεγάλου θεοῦ καὶ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ,
great God and Saviour of our Jesus Christ;

2) II Peter 1:1

KJV: of (God and our Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'of our God and (the) Saviour Jesus Christ = 2 persons (wrong!)

NWT is WRONG because there is no second article to justify 'the'. (Ask: Where is the 2nd article?)

τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ.
of our God and Saviour Jesus Christ:

3) II Peter 1:11

KJV 'of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT 'of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

βασιλείαν τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ.
kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

4) II Peter 2:20

KJV: 'knowledge of (the Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'knowledge of (the Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ) = 1 person (right)

ἐπιγνώσει τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ,
knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ,

5) II Peter 3:2

KJV: 'apostles of (the Lord and Saviour) = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'apostles of (the Lord and Saviour) = 1 person (right)

τοῦ κυρίου καὶ σωτῆρος
of the Lord and Saviour;

6) II Peter 3:18

KJV: 'knowledge of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'knowledge of (our Lord and Saviour) Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

γνώσει τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ σωτῆρος Ἰησοῦ χριστοῦ
in [the] knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.
αὐτῷ ἡ δόξα καὶ νῦν καὶ εἰς ἡμέραν αἰῶνος. ἀμήν.
To him [be] glory both now and to [the] day of eternity. Amen.

7) I Peter 1:3

KJV: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

Εὐλογητὸς ὁ θεὸς καὶ πατὴρ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ
Blessed [be] the God and Father of our Lord Jesus

8) Ephesians 1:3

KJV: 'Blessed be (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

NWT: 'Blessed by (the God and Father) of our Lord Jesus Christ = 1 person (right)

Εὐλογητὸς ὁ θεὸς καὶ πατὴρ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ
Blessed [be] the God and Father of our Lord Jesus

iv) In Titus 2:13, the Greek word for 'appearing' is never used by Paul in the NT of the Father appearing, but is used exclusively of Jesus Christ's appearing. (See II Thess 2:8, I Timothy 6:14, II Timothy 1:10 and 4:1, 8). Indeed, an appearing of the 'invisible God', other than as the visible Christ, would be impossible.

v) A T Robertson, one of the world's chief Greek grammar authorities, states in *Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol VI, p 147,148 regarding II Peter 1:1:

The O.T. sense of *dikaiousunē* applied to God (Rom. 1:17) and here to Christ. Of our God and Saviour Jesus Christ (tou theou hēmōn kai sōtēros Iēsou Christou). So the one article (tou) with *theou* and *sōtēros* requires precisely as with *tou kuriou hēmōn kai sōtēros Iēsou Christou* (of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ), one person, not two, in 1:11 as in 2:20; 3:2, 18. So in I Pet. 1:3 we have *ho theos kai patēr* (the God and Father), one person, not two. The grammar is uniform and inevitable (Robertson, *Grammar*, p. 786), as even Schmiedel (Winer-Schmiedel, *Grammatik*, p. 158) admits: "Grammar demands that one person be meant." Moulton (*Prol.*, p. 84) cites papyri examples of like usage of *theos* for the Roman emperors. See the same idiom in Titus 2:13.

Ask: Who is right, all the Greek experts in the world, or Watchtower translators who did not know Greek well and **did not** use the Granville-Sharp rule consistently?

8. II Peter 1:1 Why does the WT break the Greek Granville-Sharp rule here by adding [the], which occurs in no Greek manuscripts?

NWT	KJV
“by the righteousness of our God and [the] Saviour Jesus Christ”	“through the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ”.

The KJV means that Jesus Christ is “**God and our Saviour**” as the Granville-Sharp rule demands. The WT does not like this. The NWT **changes it to mean that two persons** are discussed: “our God” (one person), and secondly “[the] Saviour Jesus Christ” (another person) different from and less than God. They therefore dishonestly break the link that proves that Jesus Christ is God. The Greek has no second article to support the NWT’s inclusion of **[the]**.

Ask: Can you continue in the WT organisation when it shows such gross dishonesty and bias?

9. John 1:1 Is Jesus Christ “a god” or “God”? “και θεος ην ο λογος”

JW New World Translation	KJV and all others
“In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God , and the Word was a god. ”	“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ”

Watchtower Teaching: The NWT translates the first “θεος” in John 1:1 as “God”, and the second “θεος” as “a god”. In the Greek, there is a definite article “the” (“ο”) before the first occurrence of God (ο θεος = the God). However, there is no definite article “the” before the second occurrence of “God”.

WT argues (falsely) that, when a noun **has** a definite article (like “ο θεος”), it points to an identity or personality, such as the person of Jehovah God. The WT claims (falsely) that the same phrase (“ο θεος”) is never used of Jesus Christ in the NT (*Watchtower*, 1 July 86, p31). (**Note:** “ο θεος” **is used** of Christ in Matthew 1:23, John 20:28 and Hebrews 1:8).

The WT claims (falsely) that when a singular predicate **noun has no** definite article, and it occurs before a verb (as theos in John 1:1c), then it points to a **quality** about someone, so that here it says that Jesus (the Word) has a divine quality, but is not God Almighty (*KIT*, p.1139). They alone translate Jesus as “a god”.

To support this view they quote:

- i) Johannes Greber NT (1937), a spiritist who claimed that spirits helped him translate the NT (*Watchtower*, 15 September 62, p.554; 15 October 73, p.640). The WT knew he was a spiritist in 1956 (*Watchtower*, 15 February 1956, p 110, 111), yet they still quoted him.
- ii) Dr Julius Mantey, who refutes their translation saying: “They have forgotten entirely what the (word) order of the sentence indicates that the “λογος” (“logos” or “Word” in English) has the same substance, nature or essence as the Father. To indicate that Jesus was “a god” would need a completely different construction in the Greek. They misquoted me in support of their translation. 99% of Greek scholars and Bible translators in the world disagree with JW’s.”

Bible Teaching: The NWT is wrong in translating John 1:1 as “a god” for these reasons:

- 1. JW’s claim that, because the second “θεος” (theos) has no definite article, we should translate it as “**a god**”. (*Kingdom Interlinear Translation*, p 1139). Then why has the NWT JW version broken their rule four times in John 1:6, 12, 13, 18 by translating “θεος” with no article as “**God**”? They are inconsistent, as seen below:

Verse 1: καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος
 and God was the Word.

Verse 6: Ἐγένετο ἄνθρωπος ἀπεσταλμένος παρὰ θεοῦ,
 There was a man sent from God,

Verse 12: τέκνα θεοῦ γενέσθαι,
 children of God to be,

Verse 13: ἐκ θελήματος ἀνδρὸς ἀλλ' ἐκ θεοῦ ἐγεννήθησαν.
 of will of man but of God were born.

Verse 18: 18 θεὸν οὐδεὶς ἑώρακεν πώποτε·
 God no one 'has seen at any time';

If the NWT was consistent, they should translate 'θεος' as 'a god' in these cases too:

v. 6 'There was a man sent from a god.'

v.12 'to them gave he power to become the children of a god.'

v.13 'nor of the will of man, but of a god.'

v.18 'no man hath seen a god at any time.'

This is clearly wrong and ridiculous. Why only in verse one do they refuse to translate 'θεος' as 'God'? Because they don't want Christ to be Jehovah God. The Watchtower's mistranslation of John 1:1 is not supported by any Greek grammar textbook.

Many other verses have 'θεος' + no article, and yet are correctly translated as 'God', such as Matthew 5:9; 6:24; Luke 1:35, 78; 2:40; John 3:2, 21; 9:16, 33; I Corinthians 1:30; 15:10; Philippians 2:11,13; Titus 1:1; Romans 1:17, 18.

2. JW's say that by translating 'θεος' as 'a god', then Christ is a lesser god, a divine person.

Answer: If John had intended this adjectival sense (ie 'the Word was divine'), **he had an adjective** 'θειος' (**theios=godlike**²³⁰⁴) available to use as found in II Peter 1:3, 4 ('divine power' and 'divine nature'), if Christ was just a divine lesser god.

Instead, John uses " " meaning 'God'.

Spiros Zodhiates, in his book *Was Christ God?* (p.102), states assertively:

'It would, therefore, be **totally wrong** to translate the statement that John makes in John 1:1 as "the Word was divine". The word which is used in the original Greek is 'θεος' (theos) "God", not 'θειος' (theios) "divine". Jesus Christ did not merely have divine attributes, but He was God in His essence and nature. He was not a man who attained divinity, but God who humbled Himself to take upon Himself human nature in addition to His deity.'

3. Contrary to the Watchtower claim, 'θεος' (God) with the definite article ('ὁ') is used of **Jesus Christ** in the New Testament:

i) John 20:28.

Θωμᾶς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ, Ὁ κύριός μου καὶ ὁ θεός μου.
Thomas and said to him, My Lord and my God.

ii) Matthew 1:23.

Ἐμμανουήλ, ὃ ἐστὶν μεθερμηνευόμενον, Μεθ' ἡμῶν ὁ θεός.
Emmanuel, which is, being interpreted, With us God.

iii) Hebrews 1:8.

τὸν υἱόν, Ὁ θρόνος σου, ὁ θεός.
the Son, Thy throne, O God,

Hence, the same word 'ὁ θεος' (**ho theos**) used of the **Father** is also used of **Christ**.

4. JW's say that Jesus is 'a god'. Jehovah disagrees with them in Isaiah 44:8 by saying: 'Is there **a God** beside me? yea, there is no God; I know not any.' (KJV and NWT). Jehovah says that **there is no 'a God'** beside Him. This shows John 1:1 in the NWT to be wrong. Hence, **Jesus cannot be 'a God'**, so He must be 'the God'.
5. Ancient **UNCIAL** Greek manuscripts were all written in **capital letters**, so one could not distinguish between 'God' and 'god', except by the context, and whether the writer believed in one true God or in more than one god.
Ask: Did the Apostle John believe in one true God or more than one true God? Since John believed in one true God, we conclude that Jesus is the one true God in John 1:1.
6. JW's say that Jesus is 'a god' with Jehovah, as seen from 'the Word was with God.' They say that if Christ is '**with**' God, He cannot be God.
Answer: 'with' (Greek 'προς') means that Christ was so intimately connected with God, that He is God. 'There are no gods together **with me**.' (Deut 32:39 NWT)
'There is no god **with me**.' (Deuteronomy 32:39 KJV)
Hence, Jehovah says that there are **no gods with Jehovah**, so Christ must be Jehovah God.
7. Every **Greek scholar** in the world is against the NWT translation of John 1:1 'the word was a god'. Examples include:
M.R.Vincent: 'The λογος (logos) of John is the real personal God'. (*Word Studies in Gk N.T.* p383)
K.Wuest: 'The Word was as to His essence absolute deity'. (*Word Studies in Gk.N.T* p 209)
A.T.Robertson: 'the Word was God, of Divine nature; **not "a god"**'. (*Expositors Gk Testmnt*, p684)
Spiros Zodhiates: 'In John 1:1, Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is called the Word, presenting as the second person of the Godhead.' (*NT Word Study Dictionary*, p 935)
W.E.Vine: 'the λογος (logos), the Word, the personal manifestation, not of a part of the divine nature, but of the whole deity.' (*Complete Expository Dictionary of NT Words*, p683)
8. **All other gods are false gods.**
Hence, Jesus Christ in John 1:1 must be either the only true God Jehovah or a false god. Which one?
9. **Church Writers writing before 325 AD** all agree that John 1:1 is 'the Word was God', and that it means that Jesus is fully God and man.
This verse was never disputed before the occultist Greber's NT was published in 1937. Notice 12 Church writers before 325 AD who all quote John 1:1 correctly as 'the Word was God'. **Ask:** Why do none of them quote it as 'a god'?
- These early Church writers **knew Greek** as their **mother tongue** and first language,
 - These men often were quoting from the **original autographs**.
- 1) **Irenaeus**, (120-202 AD) Vol 1, p 328 the Word was with God," for He was the beginning; "and the Word was God," of course, for that which is begotten of God is God.
- Vol 1, p 428 ation from the Father, thus declaring, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."⁸
- Vol 1, p 546 witness, when he speaks thus in the Gospel: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. This was in

2) **Theophilus of Antioch (115-181 AD)**

Vol 2, p 103,

God was alone, and the Word in Him. Then he says, "The Word was God; all things came into existence through Him; and apart from Him not one thing came into existence." The Word, then, being God, and being naturally produced from God, whenever the Father of the universe wills, He sends Him to any place;

3) **Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD)**

Vol 2, p 173,

and "in the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."²

This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us; by whom we, being

4) **Tertullian (145-220 AD), Vol 3**

p 488

"In the beginning was the Word"⁵—that is, the same beginning, of course, in which God made the heaven and the earth,⁶—"and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." **p. 489**

Son is the Word, and "the Word is God," and "I and my Father are one."² But after **p 602**

Is that Word of God, then, a void and empty thing, which is called the Son, who Himself is designated God? "The Word was with God, and the Word was God."⁹

p.607

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"⁸ then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that *executes the order* and creates. In what sense, however, you ought to understand Him to be another, I have already explained, on the ground of Personality, not of Substance—in the way of distinction, not of division.⁹ But although I must everywhere hold one only substance in three coherent and inseparable (Persons),

5) **Origen (185-254 AD), Vol.4**

p 262

in his Gospel, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him, and

p 553 Origen against Celsus

"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."⁶ while in our judgment also,

p 642

For the Lord of those who are "ambassadors for Christ" is Christ Himself, whose ambassadors they are, and who is "the Word, who was in the beginning, was with God, and was God."²

Origen de Principiis p 291

Gospel John indicates the same thing, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God: the same was in the beginning with God: all things were

p 603

If, however, we attend to the passage, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."⁸ we are of opin-

Vol. 5, p 518

Also in the Gospel according to John: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word."⁸

6) **Cyprian (200-258 AD), Vol 5,**

p 516

Moreover, in the Gospel according to John: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word. The same was in the beginning

And again in the same place: "I have said, Ye are gods; and ye are all the children of the Highest: but ye shall die like men."¹³ But if they who have been righteous, and have obeyed the divine precepts, may be called gods, how much more is Christ, the Son of God, God!

But this Word whereby all things were made (is God). "And God," says he, "was the Word."⁷ Therefore God proceeded from God, in that the Word which proceeded is God, who proceeded forth from God.

And let us therefore believe this, since it is most faithful that Jesus Christ the Son of God is our Lord and God; because "in the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word."

8) Hippolytus (170-236 AD), Vol 5, p.2 8.

For he speaks to this effect: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. All things were made by

9) Thaumaturgus (205 AD), Vol 6, p.69

Thou who wast in the beginning, and wast with God, and wast God;² Thou who art the brightness of the Father's glory;³ Thou who art the perfect image of the perfect Father;⁴

10) Methodius (260-312 AD), Vol 6, p.381.

whether the saying: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." The same was in the begin-

11) Alexander (273-326 AD), Vol 6, p.292

For he set forth His proper personality, saying, "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. All things were made by Him; and without Him was not anything made that was made."⁵

12) Tatian's Diatessaron (150 AD),

Vol 10, p 43,

§1 1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God is the Jo. 1, 1.
 2, 3 Word. This was in the beginning with God. Everything was by his hand, and Jo. 1, 2.
 4 without him not even one existing thing was made. In him was life, and the life Jo. 1, 3.
 5 is the light of men. Jo. 1, 4.

Note: Compare these quotes by Ante-Nicene Church fathers which contradict the Watchtowers invented quotes of Church fathers on p 7 of *Should you believe in the Trinity*.

10. The Watchtower's Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT, p.401) quote of John 1:1, in the left hand column has 'god was the Word', which contradicts the right hand column NWT translation which says 'the word was a god'. Hence the Word (Christ who became flesh, v.14) is called 'God' on the LHS of the page, and 'a god' on the RHS of the page.

<p>1 'Εν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος. ἦν τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.</p>	<p>1 In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god." 2 This</p>
--	--

11. Greek grammar rules out 'a god'.

JWs say that for Jesus to be Jehovah God here, there should be the definite article 'the' (Greek 'ὁ') before God (θεος λογος ὁ). Because 'θεος' does not have the definite article 'ὁ' before it, JWs conclude that 'the word' was indefinite, and means 'a god'.

Answer: A.T. Robertson Greek authority says (*A Grammar of Greek NT*, p.767):

'Nouns in the Predicate: The article is **not essential** to speech....The word with the article ("ὁ") is then the **subject** of the sentence, whatever the word order may be. So in John 1:1, "θεος ἦν ὁ λογος", the subject is perfectly clear ("the word" = "ὁ λογος"), and it can only be "the word was God".'

Key: Hence the article 'the' (ὁ) points out the subject (ὁ λογος) of the clause, and points out the predicate (θεος) without the article.

If John had written 'ὁ θεος ἦν ὁ λογος' as the JWs would want, then John would be teaching false doctrine of Sabellianism (that Christ is all of God, that God and Christ are interchangeable, that the Father was the one who became incarnate, suffered and died).

Note: If the article is used with both the subject (ie. λογος') and the predicate (ie. θεος), they would then be interchangeable as the subject nouns are in I John 3:4 (ἡ ἀμαρτία ἐστὶν ἡ ἀνομία) then both 'sin is transgression' and 'transgression is sin' are true'.

But in I John 4:16, “ὁ θεὸς ἀγάπη ἐστίν” can only be “God is Love”, not “Love is God” (because **the article points out the subject**). If the Greek language allowed us to say “Love is God” just as readily as “God is Love” in this verse, then God would not be a person, but just an abstract quality. (see *Was Christ God?*, Spiros Zodhiates, p.98).

Conclusion: The absence of the definite article “ὁ” before “theos” in John 1:1 is deliberate in order to **identify “the Word” as the subject** of the sentence and to make it only to read as “the Word was God”. It has nothing to do with Christ being a lesser god as the JW’s claim. Hence, contrary to the NWT and The Emphatic Diaglott, the Greek grammatical construction leaves no doubt whatsoever that “the Word was God” is the only possible rendering of the text.

Colwell’s Rule of Greek grammar clearly states that a predicate nominative (θεὸς = God) **NEVER** takes a definite article (“ὁ”) when it precedes the verb “was”, as in John 1:1. That is, when two nouns in the nominative case are linked by the verb “to be” (am, is, are, was, were, be, being or been), it may not be clear which is the **subject** and which is the **predicate**. Thus, “ὁ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος” could be either “the Word was God” or “God was the Word”. However, for the Greek syntax, the **predicate (θεὸς) drops the definite article (“ὁ”)** and **is placed before the verb**. Therefore, “θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος” can **only** be “The Word was God”, as in the KJV. (see *The elements of New Testament Greek*, J.W. Wenham, p.35)

Notice that since this clause uses a linking verb, both the subject and the predicate are in the nominative case (ie. “ος” ending on the nouns - “λόγος” and “θεός”), so case endings do not identify the subject. Instead, the **definite article “the” points out the subject** of the clause. Greek uses the definite article “the” to accomplish what the English language does by word order (subject first, verb next, then the object in a sentence). Hence, of the three ways that John could have written John 1:1, only **one** is correct.

i) ὁ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος **FALSE** (Not used by John)
can mean either “God was the Word” **or** “the Word was God”. Both the subject and the predicate having the article would have taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way;

ii) ὁ θεὸς ἦν λόγος **FALSE** (Not used by John)
can mean only “God was the Word”. This would have clearly taught Sabellianism, so John didn’t write it this way either;

iii) θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος **CORRECT** (As used by John)
can mean only “The Word was God”.

Conclusion. Translations which render the Greek in this verse as “a god” or “divine” are motivated by theological, not grammatical considerations. The phrase “a god” is particularly objectionable because it makes Christ a lesser god, which is polytheism and contrary to Deuteronomy 32:39. **If Christ is “a god”**, then He must be either a “**true God**” or a “**false god**”. If a “true God”, then we have polytheism. If a “false god”, then He is unworthy of our belief. Of course, the correct translation found in the KJV and most other translations (“the word was God”), presents Christ as the one and only true God, Jehovah. Therefore, He is monotheistic and worthy of our belief. John’s high view of Christ as God begins with John 1:1 and ends his gospel with Thomas addressing Christ as “my Lord and my God” in John 20:28. These and other verses assert the full deity of Christ.

10. John 8:58

NWT	KJV
"Before Abraham came into existence, I have been. "	"Before Abraham was, I am. "

Watchtower Teaching: JW's agree that Jesus was pre-existent ("I have been"), but will not agree that Jesus was eternally pre-existent ("I am"). Jesus in John 8:58 claims to be the "I am" of Exodus 3:14, clearly saying He is Jehovah God. They also mistranslate Exodus 3:14:

NWT	KJV
At this God said to Moses: " <u>I SHALL PROVE TO BE WHAT I SHALL PROVE TO BE.</u> " And he added: "This is what you are to say to the sons of Israel, " <u>I SHALL PROVE TO BE</u> has sent me unto you!" ⁴	And God said unto Moses, <u>I AM THAT I AM</u> ; and he said, <u>Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, "<u>I AM</u> hath sent me unto you."</u>

The effect is that the NWT completely hides the connection between Christ in John 8:58 and Jehovah God in Exodus 3:14. The Watchtower aims to keep Jesus from being identified as God Almighty.

Bible Teaching: Does the evidence point to Jesus calling Himself "I AM" and hence claiming to be God, or to "I have been"?

1) Notice in John 8:58 that **Jesus calls Himself "ego eimi" in Greek.**

"Ego eimi" occurs 134 times in the Greek New Testament.

Ask: Why does the New World Translation correctly translate "ego eimi" 133 times as "I am", except in John 8:58 where a major doctrine of the deity of Christ is at stake, where they contradict all their other correct translations of "Ego eimi" and translate it as "I have been"?

Question: What does "I AM" mean?

Answer: Jehovah is the eternal self-existent Being, who has always existed. God is beyond the realm of time: "Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come." (Revelation 4:8b).

"I am" in Exodus 3:14 and "Jehovah" in 3:15 are both derivatives of the verb "to be".

2) **Church writers before 325 AD**, always quote John 8:58 as 'I am':

a) **Irenaeus** (120-202 AD)
Vol 1, p 478

But the Word of God did not accept of the friendship of Abraham, as though He stood in need of it, for He was perfect from the beginning ("Before Abraham was," He says, "I am"⁴),

b) **Origen** (185-254 AD)
Vol 4, p 643

for we believe Himself when He says, "Before Abraham was, I am."⁸ Again He says, "I am the truth;"⁹

c) **Novatian** (210-280 AD)
Treatise Concerning the Trinity,
Vol 5, p 624.

but by giving divinity by immortality, He proves Himself to be God by offering divinity, which if He were not God He could not give. If Christ was only man, how did He say, "Before Abraham was, I Am?"

d) **Thaumaturgus** (205-265 AD)
Vol 6, p 51

the Lord Himself says, "Before Abraham was, I am;"⁴

3) **The JW Kingdom Interlinear Translation (1985) reveals that John 8:58 has 'ego eimi'** (Greek: εγω εμι), **translating it correctly as 'I am'**. This contradicts the NWT reading.

λέγω I am saying	ὑμῖν, to you	πρὶν Before	Ἀβραάμ Abraham	γενέσθαι to become	Before Abraham came into existence, I have
ἔγω εἰμί. I am.	59	ἤραν They lifted up	οὖν therefore	λίθους stones	been." 59 Therefore they picked up stones

4) **Jesus claiming the title "I have been" would not have caused the Jews to stone Him.**

(John 8:59). Hebrew law gave five cases where stoning was legal:

- i) Having a familiar spirit. (Leviticus 20:27)
- ii) Blasphemy. (Leviticus 24:10-23)
- iii) False prophets who lead to idolatry. (Deuteronomy 13:5-10)
- iv) Stubborn son. (Deuteronomy 21:18-21)
- v) Adultery and rape. (Deuteronomy 22:21-24; Leviticus 20:10)

Here the Jews' reason for stoning was that Jesus clearly claimed for Himself the title "I am", saying that He was Jehovah God of Exodus 3:14. JWs claim that the Jews attempted to stone Christ because He called them children of the devil (John 8:44). If this is true, then why didn't they attempt to stone him on other occasions when He called them sons of vipers? (Matthew 12:34 and 23:33). Insults were no reason for stoning. Therefore the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy because He claimed to be God.

In John 10:31-33 the Jews attempted to stone Jesus for blasphemy for "making thyself **God**".

Ask: Who knew the Law better, first century Jews or 20th Century JWs?

5) That "**I am**" means full Deity is clear from **John 13:19** where Jesus says that when His predictions come true, the disciples may believe that **ego eimi** (I AM), that He is Jehovah.

Since Jehovah is the only "I AM" (Exodus 3:14), then the Father and Christ are one in nature, power, eternity and fulness of deity.

6) **The NWT translates "ego eimi" correctly as "I am" 49 times out of 50 occurrences in John's Gospel**, except in John 8:58. Why? Examples are:

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the bread of life". (John 6:35,48,51)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the light of the world". (John 8:12)

"For if you do not believe that **I am** (ego eimi) he, you will die in your sins". (John 8:24)

"When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that **I am** (ego eimi)" (John 8:28)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the door of the sheep". (John 10:7)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the **good** shepherd". (John 10:11,14)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the resurrection and the life". (John 11:25)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the way and the truth and the life" (John 14:6)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) the true vine" (John 15:1,5)

"**I am** (εγω εμι) he . . ." (John 18:5,6,8)

Ask: Since all the "I am" εγω εμι sayings refer to Christ, why does the NWT correctly translate "εγω εμι" as "I am", **except in John 8:58** where they change it to "I have been"? Shouldn't there be consistency in translation?

7) The Septuagint Greek translation of the OT translates Exodus 3:14 as '**ego eimi**' in Greek and '**I am the BEING**' in English. This supports the commonly accepted reading.

14 πρὸς αὐτούς; Καὶ εἶπεν ὁ Θεὸς πρὸς Μωϋσῆν, λέγων, ἐγὼ εἰμι ὁ ὢν· καὶ εἶπεν, οὕτως ἔρεῖς τοῖς υἱοῖς Ἰσραὴλ, ὁ ὢν shall I say to them? 14 And God spoke to Moses, saying, **I am THE BEING**; and he said, Thus shall ye say to the children of Israel, **THE BEING** has sent me to you.

8) A T Robertson, one of the greatest Greek scholars ever, after translating "εγω εμι" as "**I am**", said about John 8:58, "Undoubtedly here Jesus claims eternal existence with the absolute phrase of **God**." (*Word Pictures in the NT*, Vol. V, p 158, 159). 857

10. IS CHRIST INFERIOR TO THE FATHER?

“Christ is equal to the Father as touching His Godhood and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood”. (The Athanasian Creed)

When JW's claim that Jesus was a lesser deity than the Father, they point to verses such as:

- a) “The Father is greater than I”. (John 14:28).
- b) Jesus referred to the Father as “my God” (John 20:17).
- c) “The head of Christ is God” (I Corinthians 11:3).
- d) Jesus “will be made subject to him who put everything under him, so that God may be all in all”. (I Corinthians 15:28).
- e) Jesus is called God’s “only begotten Son” (John 3:16).
- f) Jesus is called “the firstborn of every creature” (Colossians 1:15).
- g) Jesus is called “the beginning of the creation of God” (Revelation 3:14).

To this we say generally that:

- i Each passage must be examined in its **context**. Check the Greek meanings of words.
- ii Many WT arguments are based on a bad misunderstanding of the **incarnation** of Christ who is **God taking on human form**.
- iii Many passages quoted by JW's view Christ from the point of view of **His manhood**.

Let us examine some such passages:

1. I Corinthians 11:3 - Is God superior to Christ?

“But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ, and the head of the woman is the man; and the **head of Christ is God**”.

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that, because Jehovah is the head of Christ, then Christ cannot be God. They say that since I Corinthians 11:3 was written in 55 AD when Jesus was ascended and glorified, then this superior rank of Jehovah over Jesus applies to their present relationship in heaven. They claim that “Jesus is always presented as a lesser, separate, humble servant of God”. *Should you Believe in the Trinity? p.20.*

The Bible teaching: I Corinthians 11:3 has to do with patterns of authority, not to do with inferiority or superiority of one person over the other. Paul says that the man is the head of the woman, even though men and women are 100% equal in their essential being.

Biblically, **men and women** and equal in nature.

They are both 100% human, created in God’s image & one in Christ. I Peter 3:7 “Heirs together”.

Key: Hence, even though men and women are equal in nature, they function within a hierarchy. In the same way, Christ and the Father are 100% equal in their **divine being** and **nature**. “I and the Father are one” (John 10:30), even though Jesus functions under the Father’s headship authority. There is no contradiction to say that among the three persons in the Godhead, there is an **equality of divine being and nature** as well as **two members functioning under the Father’s authority**.

Christ is 100% God and fully equal to the Father in being and nature, yet Christ is subordinate or submissive to the Father, especially in becoming a man.

Therefore I Corinthians 11:3 does not teach that Jesus is less than God.

Within the Godhead, the Father acts as Head without diminishing the full deity of the Son.

Ask: Are women **inferior in nature** to men because men exercise headship over women?

Ask: If “no”, then why does the WT teach that the Father’s headship over Christ means that **Christ is inferior in nature** to the Father?

2. Revelation 3:14 - “The beginning of the creation of God”.

JWs think that this verse means that Jesus is God’s first created being.

They relate this verse to John 1:14 where Jesus is the “only begotten of the Father”.

Answer:

- 1) The word “Beginning” is “Arche” (746) in Greek which has a wide range of meanings, such as:
 - a) **“Head”** in the “Hebrew, Greek, English Interlinear Bible”.
He is called “the **Head**” because He is before all things, all things were created by Him and for Him (John 1:1-3, Colossians 1:16-17, Hebrews 1:10).
It refers to Christ as the One who created all things, not to Him as a created being.
 - b) **“The Active Cause** as in Colossians 1:18, Revelation 1:8, 21:6, 22:13, 3:14.
Christ is called “the beginning” because He is the **active cause** of creation.
 - c) **Rule, power or authority.** “...power (arche) of the governor” (Luke 20:20).
It refers to Christ as the “one who begins, the origin, source, creator, or first cause”.
(Spiros Zodhiates, *NT Word Study*, p.260,261)
 - d) The **Originating source** through whom God works, not the first of the creatures as held by Arians and Unitarians. (A T Robertson, *Word Pictures in NT*. Vol 6,p 321).
- 2) The English word **“architect”** comes from “arche”.
Jesus is the architect of all creation (John 1:3, Colossians 1:16, Hebrews 1:2).
Christ is the source and primary fountainhead of all creation.
- 3) **“Arche”** is also **used of God** as “the beginning and the end”. (Rev. 1:8 (not KIT), 21:6, 22:13). The use of “arche” of God Almighty does not mean that God had a created beginning. God is the beginner and first cause of all creation. “Arche” in Revelation 3:14 is used of Christ in the same sense as the beginner and first cause of all creation.

<p>6</p> <p>καὶ εἶπέν μοι</p> <p>And he said to me</p>	<p>13</p> <p>ἐγὼ τὸ Ἄλφα</p> <p>I the Alpha</p>
<p>Ἔγονον.</p> <p>They have occurred.</p> <p>Ἔγω, ἡ ἀρχὴ</p> <p>Omega, the <u>beginning</u></p>	<p>καὶ τὸ Ὠμέγα, ὁ πρῶτος καὶ ὁ ἔσχατος,</p> <p>and the Omega, the first (one) and the last (one),</p> <p>ἡ ἀρχὴ καὶ τὸ τέλος. — 14 Μακάριοι</p> <p>the <u>beginning</u> and the end. — Happy</p>

Ask: Since “Arche” used of God Almighty does not mean that He had a created beginning, why do you insist that when “Arche” is used of Christ that it means He had a created beginning?

- 4) It is almost always used of a **ruler** or **magistrate** or **principalities**. (Romans 8:38; Ephesians 3:10; Colossians 2:15; Luke 20:20; Jude 6.)
The NWT translates the plural of “Arche” as **“government officials”** in Luke 12:11.
- 5) The English word **“archbishop”** is one who is in authority or rules over bishops.
This means that Christ has authority or rule over all creation in Revelation 3:14.
- 6) Christ as the **“beginner”** of creation harmonises with other NT passages about Christ as Creator, such as: Colossians 1:16,17 “by him were all things created”; Hebrews 1:2 “by whom also he made the worlds”; John 1:3 “all things were made by him”. The JWs must **add “other”** in Colossians 1:16,17 to harmonise those verses.
- 7) Only God is the Creator. “I am the LORD (JHVH) that makes all things; that stretches forth the heavens **alone**; that spreadeth abroad the earth **by myself**” (Isaiah 44:24).
Since Christ is the Creator of all things, this proves that Christ is God Almighty, just as the Father is.

Conclusion: “Beginning” in Revelation 3:14 is “Arche” meaning that Christ is the active cause, originating source, architect, beginner; and “ruler” over creation.

3. Proverbs 8:22,23 “**I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, or ever the earth was**”

- a) Proverbs 8 is not talking about Christ being set up or created, as the Watchtower claims. Proverbs 8:1,2 tells us that it is **wisdom** or understanding which is **personified**: “Doth not wisdom cry? and understanding put forth **her** voice? **She** standeth.” 8:1,2. Wisdom and understanding are described as “**she**”, but Christ is “**He**”.
- b) If this is talking about Christ, then we must also assume that Christ is a **woman** who cries in the streets (1:20,21), and who lives with someone named Prudence (8:12) in a house with seven pillars (9:1). **Wisdom** is the theme of Proverbs chapters 1-9. See 8:1.

Ask: Do you believe that Christ is a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 1:20,21).

Ask: Was there a time when God had no wisdom? No. Wisdom is as old and eternal as God.

Ask: Where is Jesus Christ mentioned by name in this passage?

Conclusion: Proverbs 8:22,23 is speaking metaphorically about God’s eternal wisdom and how it was “brought forth” to take part in the creation of the universe (v.24).

4. Colossians 1:15 - “the **firstborn** (Greek: prototokos 4416) **of every creature**”.

JWs use this verse to teach that Jesus Christ was created at a point in time as an angel.

They ignore the evidence and insist that the word “firstborn” here means “first created”, “the eldest in Jehovah’s family of sons”.

The Bible teaching:

1) “**Firstborn**” (Greek: prototokos) **does NOT mean** “first-created” (Greek: protoktisis).

First-created (Protoktisis) is **never** used of Christ in NT. **Ask:** Where is it used of Jesus in NT?

Ask: Why didn’t Paul use the term “first-created” (protoktisis) in Colossians 1:15 if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

2) **Ask:** What does “**firstborn**” (Greek: prototokos 4416) mean?

Answer: “**Pre-eminent, Ruler, Sovereign, First in rank**”.

It is used in other passages which refer to Christ:

i) **Romans 8:29** “that he might be the **firstborn** among many brethren”. “Prototokos” presents Christ as the pre-eminent member of the group (S. Zodhiates NT, p 1249).

ii) **Colossians 1:15**. “The **firstborn** of every creature” Christ is the one pre-eminent and supreme ruler over all creation (S Zodhiates NT, p 1250). v.16 “By him were all things created” means that Christ Himself is not part of Creation (John 1:3).

iii) **Colossians 1:18** “He (Christ) is the head of the body, the church: who is the **beginning** (arche), the **firstborn** (prototokos=Ruler) from the dead; that in all things he might have the pre-eminence (proteuon)”.

“Arche” means “first cause” (Revelation 3:14, Colossians 1:18) and is parallel to “prototokos” in Colossians 1:15,18, both asserting Christ’s pre-eminence.

Note: “Proteuon” (pre-eminence) present tense is used only in Colossians 1:18 and indicates not an acquired right to be ruler and pre-eminent, but an **inherent right** by virtue of His nature. Christ, being the Creator, deserves to have pre-eminence.

iv) **Hebrews 1:6** “And again, when he bringeth the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) into the world, he saith “And let all the angels of God worship Him”.

Alternately, translate this as “And when He again brings the firstborn into the world”, refers to Christ’s second coming when Christ as King will be worshipped by the angels. Christ is exalted even above all the angels.

v) **Revelation 1:5** “And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the **firstbegotten** (prototokos=Ruler) of the dead, and the **prince** (arche = chief) of the

the kings of the earth.” Here “prototokos” means that Christ is first of those to be resurrected, and prince (arche) means ruler of earth’s kings at His second coming.

Note: JW’s compare Christ as the firstborn of all creation with the firstborn son of Pharaoh. This is nonsensical, because it is true that Pharaoh parented his son, but it is not true that “all creation” parented Jesus.

3) We must understand what the original speaker or writer intended by the words which he used. The ancient Hebrews used the term “firstborn son” when referring to the pre-eminent son, regardless of whether or not he was the first son born to the parents.

The son with the title “firstborn” had the right of primogeniture which meant that:

- i) He acquired a **special blessing** (Genesis 27);
- ii) He became **heir** of a double share of the father’s wealth (Deuteronomy 21:17);
- iii) He replaced his father as the family **head**. He had authority over his brothers;
- iv) He represented the father in civil and religious matters;
- v) He had some **holiness** because through him flowed the common blood of the tribe (Genesis 49:3; Deuteronomy 21:17).

Key: The term “firstborn” does not refer to the first one born, but to the pre-eminent one in the family. Notice these examples where the son with the title “firstborn” was not born first:

- (1) **David** was the last born son of Jesse, yet Psalm 89:27 says of him: “I will make him my firstborn, higher than the kings of the earth”. (v.20 onwards refers to David).
- (2) **Ephraim** was the second born son of Joseph: “The name of the second called he Ephraim.” (Genesis 41:50-52). Yet “Ephraim is my firstborn” (Jeremiah 31:9). This was because of his pre-eminent position. Manasseh was born first to Joseph, but Ephraim became the **firstborn** because of his pre-eminence.
- (3) **Jacob** (Israel) was the second son born to Isaac, after Esau, yet God says of Israel, “Israel is my son, even my firstborn.” (Exodus 4:22). Esau says of himself, “I am Esau thy firstborn”. (Genesis 27:19). Esau means that he was born first and should have the birthright. God means that Israel, though born second, took the pre-eminent position. Hence, in this sense Christ is firstborn because of His pre-eminence, not because He was created first as JW’s think.
- (4) **Solomon** was born to David later, and the line of the kings came through Solomon, yet Amnon was born first (I Chronicles 3:2).
- (5) **Isaac** was born 13 years after Ishmael, yet Isaac took the pre-eminent position in the family. (Genesis 17:19).
- (6) **Judah** was the fourth son born to Jacob (Genesis 29:35), yet Judah received the dominion and line of Christ, even though Reuben being born first forfeited his right of primogeniture due to fornication (Genesis 49:3,4).

4) Firstborn can be rendered metaphorically, not meaning born first. Examples include:

- i) Job 18:13 “the firstborn of death shall devour his strength”. As the firstborn son held the chief place, so Job refers to the chiefest (most deadly) disease that death possessed;
- ii) Isaiah 14:30 “The firstborn of the poor shall feed”, means the poorest of the poor.

Conclusion: Firstborn does not mean born first or created first. Rather, it is a title of first rank, or pre-eminent position. Paul calls Christ the **firstborn** (prototokos = Ruler).

In the New Testament, Christ is never called the “first created” (protoktisis).

Ask: What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David **firstborn**, when he was the last born son?

Ask: Why didn’t Paul use ‘first created’ (protoktisis) of Christ in Colossians 1:15 if he intended to teach that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah?

5. John 3:16 - “He gave His only begotten Son”.

Watchtower teaching: JW's teach that the term “Son of God” refers to Jesus as a separate created being, just as Isaac was called Abraham’s “only begotten son” (Hebrews 11:17), and that Jesus as “Son of God” was not God Himself. JW's claim that Almighty God is the Father of Jesus in the same sense that Abraham is the father of Isaac. JW's claim that God is the senior, and Jesus is the junior - in time, position, power and knowledge.

The Bible teaching: Isaac was not Abraham’s “only son”. Abraham had begotten a number of other sons, such as Ishmael, Zimram, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak and Shuah (Genesis 25:2). The term “only begotten Son” means that Isaac was Abraham’s **unique** son. Hence Jesus is “the only begotten Son” in the sense that no-one else is as unique as Jesus. Jesus is alone **all** that God is. “**All things** that the Father hath **are mine**.” (John 16:15). If Christ has **all the attributes that the Father has**, then **Christ is God**, because only God has eternity, omniscience, omnipresence and omnipotence.

Question: What did “Son of” mean among the ancients? The idea that the title “Son of God” indicates inferiority to the Father, is based on a faulty conception of what “Son of” meant among the ancients. Though it can mean “**offspring of**” in some contexts, it also carries the more important meaning: “**OF THE ORDER OF**” or “the **NATURE OF**”.

It is used in this way as follows:

- i) “The sons of the prophets” (I Kings 20:35) meant “of the order of the prophets”;
- ii) The “sons of the singers” (Nehemiah 12:28) meant “of the order of the singers”;
- iii) “Of the sons of Asaph” (Nehemiah 11:22) meant “of the order of Asaph”.

Hence, the phrase “Son of God” means “of the order of God” or “**nature** of God” as a claim to Christ’s undiminished Deity. 2 Greek words for son, “**Huios**”, same nature; “**teknon**” boy. Ancient Jews and Orientals used the phrase “son of” to indicate sameness of nature and equality of being. When Jesus claimed to be the Son (Huios, never teknon) of God, His Jewish contemporaries fully understood that He was claiming to be fully equivalent to God. Hence, when Jesus claimed to be the Son (Huios) of God, the Jews said, “We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God”. (John 19:7). “he said that God was his Father, making himself equal with God.” (John 5:18).

Ask: If the phrase “son of” meant sameness of nature and equality of being among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase “Son of God”? **Answer:** Jesus has the same nature as God.

Christ was the Son of God before His human birth:

- i) “For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world . . .” (John 3:17).
That Christ, as the Son of God, was sent into the world, implies that He was the Son of God before His incarnation.
- ii) Proverbs 30:4 shows God as the Creator who has a Son:
“What is his name, and what is his son’s name?”
This speaks of God the Father and God the Son in present tense terms in OT times.
- iii) “the form of the fourth is like the Son of God.” (Daniel 3:25).

Nebuchadnezzar threw three men into the fiery furnace, yet he saw the Son of God walking with them in the furnace. The Masoretic Text and Septuagint reads, “Son of God” (singular) not “a son of the gods” as in the JW New World Translation and the NIV.

6. **I Corinthians 15:28** “And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also be **subject unto him** that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.”

Watchtower teaching: JW's cite this passage to teach that Jesus is not equal to the Father and is not God Almighty. (*Reasoning from Scriptures*, p.410). JW's teach that all people and Jesus are in complete subjection to Jehovah God. They say that, if Christ were God Almighty, then He wouldn't be in subjection to anyone.

The Bible teaching:

1) The word “subject” here does not apply to Christ's nature or being. It refers to Christ's **voluntary subjection to the Father** to work out the plan of salvation to become the God-man, the Redeemer, the Mediator, and to save humanity from hell. To be the ideal role-model as the perfect man, Christ had to obey the Father to redeem humanity.

Objection: JW's emphasize that now in the glorified state, Christ is still in subjection to the Father, implying that Jesus is not God as the Father is.

Answer: This assumes that Jesus did not retain His human nature in heaven. If a JW can understand that Jesus still retains His human nature now in heaven and that his humanity will always be in subjection to the Father, then the JW objection is solved. Christ was raised immortal in the very same human body in which He died (Luke 24:37-39, Acts 2:31) and ascended in that same resurrection body (Acts 1:11). As Mediator between God and man, He possesses a human nature (I Timothy 2:5). Christ returns as the “Son of Man (Matthew 26:64), a title showing His humanity. Because Christ still possesses his human nature, then He is still in submission to the Father, but His Divine nature makes Him equal to the Father

Key: On the human side, Jesus is lesser than the Father. On the divine side, Jesus is equal to the Father.
--

2) Apart from Jesus' humanity, Jesus has always been and always will be in subjection to the Father, because of the hierarchical relationship in the Trinity. Christ has equality of being with the Father, but Christ performs tasks requiring submission or subordination to the Father.

Ask: Do you submit to the police? (Yes). Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No).

Ask: Does your body submit to your mind? (Y). Is your body less human than your mind?

Ask: Is it right for a wife to submit to her husband? (Yes).

Is she therefore of inferior nature to her husband? (No).

So why does WT say that since Christ submits to the Father, He is inferior in nature?

Note: There is no contradiction between an equality of being and a functional subordination among the Persons in the Godhead.

3) I Corinthians 15:28 teaches that, in the plan of salvation, the Son's role is to mediate between man and God the Father, only until the end of the Millennium. Then, when the task of redeeming man is complete, Christ ceases acting as Mediator, and voluntarily surrenders the Kingdom to the Father. When Christ delivers up the administration of the earthly kingdom to the Father, then the triune God will reign as God and no longer through the man Christ Jesus.

Gabriel's words are still true in Luke 1:33: “He (Christ) shall reign over the house of Jacob **forever**: and of his (Christ's) Kingdom there shall be **no end**”.

Conclusion: Christ, as man, will hand over the Kingdom to God the Father (I Cor. 15:24), so that Christ, as God, will reign forever with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

“His (Christ's) dominion is an **everlasting** dominion”. (Daniel 7:13,14).

7. I Corinthians 8:6 - “One God the Father . . .”

“But to us there is but **one God, the Father . . .** and **one Lord Jesus Christ . . .**”

Watchtower teaching: JW’s argue that, since there is “one God” (Jehovah) who is distinct from “one Lord” (Jesus Christ), then Jesus cannot be God.

Biblical reasoning: If this WT reasoning is correct, then the same logic leads us to conclude that the Father is not Lord.

Note: If the reference to the Father being the “one God” proves that Jesus is not God, then by the same logic we must conclude that the reference to Jesus Christ as the “one Lord” **means that the Father is not Lord.** No JW will concede that the Father is not Lord.

You cannot interpret the first part of the verse one way, and the second part of the verse another way. The faulty logic of JW’s here is their assumption that the use of a title for one person (the Father) in one context, automatically rules out its application to another person (Jesus Christ) in another context. JW’s should consult what all Scripture says about the Father and about Jesus Christ.

- i) The **Father** is called **Lord** in Matthew 11:25: “I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth”.
- ii) **Jesus Christ** is called **God** in John 20:28: “My Lord and my God”, and in Hebrews 1:8: “Unto the Son he saith: Thy throne **O God . . .**” etc.

Hence “God” and “Lord” are used interchangeably of the Father and the Son.

Ask: “Can you see that, since Jesus as one Lord does not mean that the Father is not Lord, then by the same logic, the Father as “one God” does not mean that Jesus is not God?”

8. John 20:17 - “My God and Your God”

“I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God.”

Watchtower teaching: The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures*, p.212, says, “To the resurrected Jesus, the Father was God, just as the Father was God to Mary Magdalene.” JW’s argue that because Jesus referred to “My father” and “my God”, Jesus cannot be Almighty God Himself.

The Bible teaching: Why did Jesus call the Father “my God”? Does this imply that Jesus is not God? No, not at all. Christ had only a divine nature before the incarnation. After His birth as a man, He took on a human nature. Therefore, it is in Christ’s humanity that He acknowledged the Father as “my God”.

Key verse: “Wherefore, in **all things** it behoved him to be **made like unto his brethren**, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God.” Hebr. 2:17

Since Christ came as a man and since some of man’s proper duties are to worship God, pray to God and address God as “My Father” and “My God”, then it was perfectly correct for Jesus (speaking as a man) to address the Father in prayer and to call Him “My God”.

Question: Why didn’t Jesus just say, “I am ascending to **our** Father and **our** God?”

Answer: Jesus always carefully distinguished His relationship with the Father from humans’ relationship with the Father.

Key: Jesus was God’s Son by nature, but Christians are God’s sons by adoption. Jesus never spoke of the Father as “Our Father” but as “the Father” or “My Father”. (The Lord’s Prayer is how Christians (Our) should pray.)

Ask: “Why did Jesus always say “the Father” or “my Father” but never “our Father”?”

Conclusion: Because Jesus is **God’s Son** by nature, He is truly **God**.

Because Jesus is also truly a **man** by nature, He can call the Father “**my God**”.

9. John 14:28 - "The Father is greater than I".

Watchtower teaching: The JW book *Let God be True, 1946, p.110* says that Jehovah is greater than Jesus in his **office** and **person**. Jehovah, they say is intrinsically greater than Jesus, and hence Jesus cannot be God Almighty. The JW book *Reasoning from the Scriptures, p.410*, says, "The fact that Jesus is lesser than Jehovah proves that He cannot be God in the same sense that Jehovah is".

The Bible Teaching: In John 14:28 Jesus is not speaking about His **nature** or **being** (Christ had earlier said in John 10:30, "I and the Father are one"), but about His lowly position of incarnation as a man. The *Athanasian Creed* says that Christ is "equal to the Father as touching His Godhood, and inferior to the Father as touching His manhood". Christ was here contrasting His human humiliation, shame, suffering, rejection, opposition by enemies, and soon crucifixion, with the Father's majesty, glory and worship by the angels in heaven.

Key: Jesus said, "The Father is **greater** (Greek: *meizon*) than I", not "The Father is **better** (Greek: *kreitton*) than I". "Greater" refers to the Father's greater position (in heaven), not to a greater **nature**. If the word "better" had been used, this would indicate that the Father had a better nature than Jesus.

- i) The distinction is made clear in Hebrews 1:4 where 'better' (Gk: *kreitton*) is used to teach Jesus' superiority over the angels in His nature and position.
- ii) This difference between "greater" and "better" is seen in this example:
"The President of a country is **greater** (Greek: *meizon*) **in position** than his people, but as a human being he is **not better** (Greek: *kreitton*) in nature than his people".
- iii) Jesus in becoming a man, not only took on a lower position than the **Father**, but also took on a **lower position than the angels**. "But we see Jesus, who was made a **little lower** than the angels for the suffering of death". (Hebrews 2:9)

Ask: "Do you agree that a President is greater in position but not better in nature than his people?"

Ask: "In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature), is it not clear that in John 14:28, Jesus is speaking of the Father's **temporary higher position** and not his higher nature than Jesus?"

Q: How did Christ make Himself of no reputation when He became a man? (Phil. 2:6-9)

1. He **veiled** His **preincarnate glory** in order to dwell among men, but never surrendered His deity or divine glory. On Mount Transfiguration He allowed His glory to shine briefly. If Christ had not veiled His glory, mankind would not have been able to look at Him. When John saw His glory on Patmos he said, "I fell at His feet as dead". (Rev. 1:17).
2. He submitted to a **voluntary non-use** of some of His divine **attributes** (occasionally) in order to achieve His objectives. He never surrendered His attributes, but He did voluntarily cease using some of them on earth. Jesus showed His divine attributes of:
 - i) **omniscience** ("He knew all men" John 2:24; 16:30; "Lord thou knowest all things" 21:17.
 - ii) **omnipresence** (John 3:13 "the Son of man which is in heaven").
As God He was everywhere at once, but as man He chose to walk there.
 - iii) **omnipotence** (Matthew 28:18 "all power is given unto me".)
3. He condescended to take on the **likeness** (form, appearance) of man and the form of a servant. (Phil 2:7). His becoming a man involved **gaining human attributes** (subject to weakness, pain, sorrow and temptation), but **not giving up** his divine attributes.

Conclusion: "The Father is greater than I" (John 14:28) said Jesus from the vantage point of His incarnation as a man. This verse relates to Christ's voluntary subordination to the Father to accomplish his work on earth. "Greater than" refers to His greater position not his nature.

10. Mark 13:32 “But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father”.

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that, because Christ was ignorant of the day of His return, He cannot be Almighty God because God knows all things.

Bible teaching: Christ **before His incarnation** was **one in person** and **one in nature** (100% God). Christ **after his incarnation** was **one in person**, but **two in nature** (100% God and 100% man). He who had always been God the Father, now took on a human nature at his incarnation. The attributes of Christ's human nature and divine nature both belong to His one person.

Thus Christ at the same time had seemingly contradictory qualities, possessing both **human** nature and **divine** nature:

He was finite, and yet infinite;

He was weak, and yet omnipotent;

He was increasing in knowledge, and yet omniscient;

He was limited to one place at a time, and yet omnipresent.

In Christ's incarnation, His **one person** possesses the attributes of both **divine** and **human** natures. Whatever is true of either His human nature or divine nature is true of His one person. **Christ sometimes operated as a man**, and **sometimes operated as God**, all in the one person. Christ in His **human nature** knew hunger (Luke 4:2), weariness (John 4:6) and sleepiness (Luke 8:23). Christ in His **divine nature** was omniscient (John 21:17), omnipresent (John 1:48) and omnipotent (John 11).

Key: At different times, Christ operated under the major influence of one or the other of His two natures. He operated in the human sphere to achieve His purposes in salvation.

Both of Christ's natures operated in many Gospel events:

i) Christ's desire to eat a fig as he approached a fig tree reflected that natural ignorance of the human mind (Matthew 21:19). (ie: in His **humanity** He did not know from a distance that there was no fruit on the tree). But then He revealed His **divine** omnipotence by causing the fig tree to wither.

ii) Jesus in His **divine omniscience** knew that Lazarus had died, so he set off for Bethany (John 11:11). When Jesus arrived, He asked (in His **humanness**, without exercising His omniscience) where Lazarus had been laid (v 34). Jesus, as the God-man is simultaneously **omniscient** as God (along with the Father and the Holy Spirit), and yet **ignorant** of some things as man (along with mankind).

iii) Jesus in Mark 13:32 was speaking from the vantage point of His **humanity**, as one member of the human race who was not omniscient (not knowing the date of His return). As a man his knowledge was increasing. As God it was infinite. If Jesus was speaking from the vantage point of His **divinity**, He would not have said the same thing.

Note: In Christ's divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father. “He knew what was in man” (John 2:25). “Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things**” (John 16:30).

“Lord, thou **knowest all things**” (John 21:17).

“In whom are hid **all the treasures** of wisdom and **knowledge**” (Colossians 2:3).

Ask: “Can anyone other than God be omniscient?” (No).

Ask: “Since Christ had both a human and divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that **Jesus was speaking from His human nature** when He said that He didn't know the day or the hour of His return?”

11. Isaiah 9:6 - Is Jesus “a Mighty God” or “Jehovah God”?

“His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, the Mighty God (410), the Everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace”.

Watchtower teaching: JW's concede that Jesus is a “mighty God”, but they are adamant that He is not Almighty God as Jehovah is. They think that Christ is one of lesser gods.

Bible teaching: The Bible shows that both Jesus and Jehovah are called “Mighty God”. Jehovah is called “Mighty God” in:

- a) “The remnant of Israel . . . shall stay upon **Jehovah**, the remnant of Jacob shall return . . . unto the **mighty God** (410)”. (Isaiah 10:20,21).
- b) “the Great, **the Mighty God** (410), **Jehovah** of hosts, is his name.” (Jeremiah 32:18).
- c) “The **mighty God**, even **Jehovah**, hath spoken...” (Psalm 50:1).

Because Jehovah and Jesus are both called “Mighty God”, this proves Christ’s equality with God the Father.

Ask: Since Jehovah is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 10:21) just as Jesus is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 9:6), doesn’t this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that “Mighty God” means a lesser deity?

Ask: If **both** Jesus and Jehovah are “Mighty God”, then what does this tell you about Jesus’ divine nature?

Ask: If both Jesus and Jehovah are equally “Mighty God”, then isn’t this two members of the Trinity?

Note: There is only one Mighty God in heaven:

- a) “I am the first and I am the last; beside me there is no God (430).” (Isaiah 44:6b).
 - b) “Is there **a God** (433) besides Me? Yea, there is no God; I know not any.” (Isaiah 44:8b).
 - c) “I am the LORD (JHVH), and there is **none else**, there is no God beside me.” Isaiah 45:5
- The NWT translates John 1:1 as “the word was **a god**”.

Isaiah 44:8b shows this to be false by denying the existence of “a god” other than Jehovah. The phrase “Mighty God” is “Elohim” in Hebrew, meaning “Fullness of power”, portraying Christ as the “powerful Governor of the universe”.

Notice that “**Elohim** (430)” is also used to describe Jehovah God as:

- i) “The **God** (430) of the whole earth.” (Isaiah 54:5).
- ii) “The **God** (430) of all flesh.” (Jeremiah 32:27).
- iii) “I prayed to the **God** (430) of heaven.” (Nehemiah 2:4).
- iv) “For the Lord (JHVH) your God (430) is God (430) of gods....a great God.” (Deut 10:17).

In Isaiah 40:3, **Jesus** is called both **Jehovah** (3068) and **Elohim** (430) in the same verse:

“Prepare ye the way of the **Jehovah**, make straight in the desert a highway for our **God** (430)”.

Mark 1:3 and John 1:23 apply Jehovah here to Jesus.

Question: What is meant by calling Jesus, “Everlasting Father”?

Since Jesus is not the Father, why does Isaiah call Jesus “the Everlasting Father”?

Answer: Jesus considers the Father as someone other than Himself over 200 times in the NT. “Everlasting Father” in Isaiah 9:6 means “**Father of eternity**”.

“Father of eternity” means “**possessor of eternity**”. Hence, Christ as “Father of eternity” means that He is an eternal Being. Only God is eternal. This proves that Jesus is 100% God.

12. **John 17:3**

NWT	John 17:3	KJV
“This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge (noun) of you the only true God , and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ”.	John 17:3	“And this is life eternal, that they may know (verb) thee the only true God , and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.”

This is a most commonly used verse by JWs in two ways:

- 1) The NWT changes the Greek “**know** (verb in KJV) thee” to “**take in knowledge** (noun) of you”. The JW then offers a “free home Bible study” to take in this so-called knowledge of God. Those who accept the offer are quickly switched from the Bible to a Watchtower booklet. Watchtower facts keep filling their heads as they take in Watchtower knowledge, but they never get to really know Jesus Christ as Saviour and God personally. Real Christianity is entering God’s family and really knowing God through Jesus Christ as Saviour (Galatians 4:5-9; Romans 8:14-16). For example: If you “take in knowledge” about a movie star, it does not mean that you “know” that movie star personally.
- 2) JWs use John 17:3 to deny the deity of Christ. They say that because the Father is called “the only true God”, then Jesus Christ cannot be the true God.
 - a) The context is Jesus as a man praying the great High Priestly prayer to the Father, and as such it was proper for the man Christ Jesus to call the Father “the only true God”. Christ would not have said this if it was spoken from the viewpoint of His deity.
 - b) If Jesus’ reference to the Father as “the **only true God**” was meant to exclude the Son from deity, then the same principle of interpretation would have to apply to Jude 4 where Jesus Christ is called “our **only owner and Lord, Jesus Christ**” (NWT). This would have to exclude the Father from Lordship and ownership. No JW (or anyone else) would accept this.

They speak of the Father as “Lord Jehovah”, even though Jude 4 calls Jesus “our only Lord”. The Holy Spirit is also called “Lord” in II Corinthians 3:17, “the Lord is that Spirit”.

Conclusion: The use of the word “only” is not used exclusively of the Father, nor of the Son, nor of the Holy Spirit.

Jesus being called our “**only**” **Lord** does not exclude the Father or Holy Spirit being Lord. The Father being called “**the only true God**” does not exclude the Son or Holy Spirit from deity.

Ask:	αἰώνιος ζωὴ ἵνα γινώσκωσι everlasting life in order that they may be knowing σε τὸν μόνον ἀληθινὸν θεὸν καὶ ὃν you the only true God and whom	life. 3 This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true
-------------	--	---

Q1: According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there?

JW: Only one: Jehovah the Father

Q2: Right. Now, would you agree that whatever is not true must be false? (**JW:**Yes)

Q3: Then, if there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods, right?(**JW:**Yes)

Q4: Now, according to John 1:1 in the NWT, Jesus is a god. Do you agree with that?(Yes)

Q5: Well then, is Jesus a true God or a false god? (**JW:** Hmm, I don’t know).

Q6: He can’t be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god? Therefore Jesus must be a true God. But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore Jesus must be Jehovah.

Note: “True” means here “real or genuine” as opposed to false gods and idols.

John 17:3 does not take away from Jesus Christ’s deity, because John establishes it elsewhere (John 1:1; 5:18,23; 8:24,58; 20:28).

13. Psalm 110:1 “The Lord (JHVH³⁰⁶⁸) said to my Lord (Adonai¹³⁶) sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.”

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that since Jehovah is speaking in this verse and since the “Lord” is a distinct person from Jehovah, then Jesus must not be Jehovah God Almighty. In Matthew 22:41-45 Jesus claims that He Himself is the “Lord” referred to by David in this Psalm. They therefore conclude that Jesus is not Jehovah, but the one Jehovah speaks to.

Bible Teaching: This verse proves the deity of Christ.

Question 1: Christ asks the Pharisees, “Whose Son is he (Christ)?” regarding the deity of the Messiah. (Matthew 22:42)

Answer: The Pharisees reply, “The son of David”. Their answer was correct but incomplete. II Samuel 7:12-16 shows the Messiah to be the **human** son of David.

Psalm 110:1 shows the human Messiah also to be **God** (Adonai), a fact that Christ wanted the Pharisees to acknowledge. Christ anticipated the Pharisees’ half-answer.

That’s why Christ then asks a question regarding Psalm 110:1.

Question 2: “The **LORD** (JHVH 3068) said unto my **Lord** (Adonai 136), sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. If David then call him (Messiah, Christ, Son of David) Lord (Adonai 136), how is he (Adonai=God) his (David’s) son?” Matt 22:44,45

Answer: Here the first person of the Trinity (God the Father) invites the second person of the Trinity (God the Son) to sit at His right hand.

It seems odd that David would call his own son “My Lord” (Adonai, a title used exclusively of God). The Messiah would be David’s son, but He would also be David’s God.

He would be both God and man.

Question 3: Jesus drove the point home to the Pharisees by asking, “If David then call him Lord (Adonai, Deity), how is he his son?” (Matthew 22:45).

Answer: The Pharisees should have replied that “David called his son Lord because He is **God as well as man**.” They would then be trapped into allowing Christ to be the Messiah, being both man and God. The Pharisees realised their dilemma, so they refused to answer.

Key: Psalm 110:1 proves the undiminished deity of Jesus Christ, because the same word used for “Lord” (Adonai) in Psalm 110:1 of Jesus Christ (Adonai the Son) is also used of the Father (Adonai the Father) many times in Scripture, such as:

- 1) “Three times in the year all thy males shall appear before the **Lord** (Adonai) **God** (JHVH 3068)”. (Exodus 23:17).
- 2) “For the **Lord** (JHVH 3068) your God (Elohim 430) is God (Elohim) of gods, and **Lord** (Adonai 136) of lords, a great God (El 410), a mighty, and a terrible”(Deuteronomy 10:17)
- 3) “Behold, the ark of the covenant of the **Lord** (Adonai 136) of all the earth passeth over before you into Jordan”. (Joshua 3:11)
- 4) “And Joshua said, Alas, O **Lord** (Adonai) God (JHVH)...” (Joshua 7:7)
- 5) “I prayed therefore unto the **Lord** (JHVH 3068), and said, O **Lord** (Adonai) God (JHVH 3069), destroy not thy people . . .” (Deuteronomy 9:26)

Other references to **Lord (Adonai¹³⁶) God (JHVH)** are:

Deuteronomy 3:24; Exodus 34:23; 15:17; 4:10,11; 5:22; Judges 6:22; 13:8; 16:28; II Samuel 7:18,28,29; I Kings 2:26; 8:53; Psalm 68:20; 69:6; 71:5,16; 73:28; 109:21; 141:8; Isaiah 3:15; 28:16; 22:5,12,14,15; 25:8; 40:10; 48:16; 49:22; 50:4; 52:4; 56:8 etc.

Ask: Did you know that “Adonai” (Lord) used of Jesus Christ in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17; Deuteronomy 10:17; Joshua 3:11?

Ask: Can you see that Jesus’ statement to the Pharisees in Matthew 22:42-45 was that the **Messiah** (Christ) would be David’s son as well as David’s God (Adonai)?

Question: Does “Adonai” mean Jehovah God?

Answer: Yes, for these reasons:

- 1) It is linked together with “JHVH” (Exodus 23:17).
- 2) Jehovah calls himself “Adonai” in Isaiah 8:7, “The **LORD** (JHVH) spake also unto me again saying: . . . Now therefore behold the **Lord** (Adonai) bringeth up . . .”

3) **אֲדֹנָי the Lord; only used of God, Gen. 18:27; 113, 136**
Jud. 13:8; Ezr. 10:3; Neh. 1:11, etc., etc. [Chiefly (in the Pentateuch always) where God is submissively and reverently addressed; as in the phrases אֲדֹנָי אֱלֹהֵינוּ Ex. 4:10,13; Jos. 7:8; אֲדֹנָי אֱלֹהֵינוּ Neh. 1:11, comp. Gen. 15:2; 18:30—32; Ex. 34:9, etc. Then also where God is spoken of, 1 K. 13:10; 22:6; 2 K. 7:6; 19:23; Isa. 6:8; 8:7.

(Gesenius’ Hebrew Chaldee Lexicon to the Old Testament, p. 12)

- 4) *WE Vine’s Complete Expository Dictionary of OT and NT Words, p. 140* states that ‘Adonai’ applies to God:

When applied to God, *ādōn* is used in several senses. It signifies His position as the ⁰one who has authority (like a master) over His people to reward the obedient and punish the disobedient: “Ephraim provoked him to anger most bitterly: therefore shall he leave his blood upon him, and his reproach shall his Lord return unto him” (Hos. 12:14). In such contexts God is conceived as a Being who is sovereign ruler and almighty master.² The word is often a title of respect, a term of direct address usually assuming a specific concrete lord-vassal or master-servant relationship (Ps. 8:1).³ In some cases the word appears to be a title suggesting God’s relationship to and position over Israel: “Three

times in the year all thy males shall appear before the Lord God” (Exod. 23:17). In such contexts *ādōn* is a formal divine name and should probably be transliterated if the proper emphasis is to be retained.⁴ In the form *ādōnāy* the word means “Lord” par excellence or “Lord over all,” even as it sometimes does in the form *ādōn* (cf. Deut. 10:17, where God is called the “God of gods, and Lord of lords”; Josh. 3:11, where He is called the “Lord of all the earth”). The word *ādōnāy* appears in Gen. 15:2: “And Abram said, Lord God, what wilt thou give me, seeing I go childless, . . .” This word frequently appears in Psalms (Ps. 68:17; 86:3) and Isaiah (Isa. 29:13; 40:10).

The JW claim that Jesus cannot be God because Jehovah spoke to Him, is faulty because we who are from the finite earthly realm cannot assume that God who is of infinite heavenly realms must fit into our earthly logic patterns with which we are familiar. God’s ways are greatly above our ways. For example, in Genesis 18:1-3 **Abraham addressed the three visitors as “Jehovah”**. The two who left to visit Sodom, **Lot called them “Jehovah”** (19:18), yet the one who remained, **Abraham continued to address Him as “Jehovah”** (18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).

Note: JWs often mockingly ask the question when Jesus prays to Father: “Does God talk to Himself?” Yes He does, as in Genesis 18:17-19 where God asks Himself a question: “And Jehovah said, Am I keeping covered from Abraham what I am doing?”

Later in v. 22 Jehovah separates.
Hence the Father can talk to the Son, with the Son still being 100% God.

Ask: If you reject the Trinity because you can’t understand it, then how do you explain how a brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk?

14. John 4:23 - Do we worship the Father only? “True worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship Him.”

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that only the Father is to be worshipped, not Jesus who they claim to be a lesser deity.

Bible teaching:

1. Early Watchtower editions say: “to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong”. (1880).
Ask: Why did early Watchtower magazines say that we should worship Jesus, while later editions say that we should not?
Ask: Were earlier editions of the Watchtower unscriptural?
2. The NWT shows its anti-Christ bias by translating the Greek word for worship “προσκυνεω” (proskuneo) as “**worship**” when it applies to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times) and angels (2 times), but as “**obeisance**” when it applies to Christ (16 times).
Ask: What rule of Greek grammar do you use to so inconsistently translate “proskuneo”?
3. When Christ was worshipped as God, He always **accepted such worship** as appropriate. Jesus accepted worship from:
 - i) Thomas (John 20:28)
 - ii) a leper (Matthew 8:2).
 - iii) a ruler (Matthew 9:18).
 - iv) a Syrophonician woman (Matthew 15:25).
 - v) Mary Magdalene (Matthew 28:9).
 - vi) the disciples (Matthew 28:17).
 - vii) a blind man (John 9:38).
 - viii) God does not rebuke the wise men for worshipping Jesus (Matthew 2:11).
 - ix) God tells all the angels to worship Jesus (Hebrews 1:6).
4. When **Paul** and **Barnabus** healed a man at Lystra, the crowd shouted: “The gods are come down to us in the likeness of men”. (Acts 14:11). When Paul and Barnabus saw that the people were preparing to worship them, they immediately and severely **rebuked the misconception** that they were gods, by forbidding the people worshipping them. By contrast, **Jesus never corrected His followers when they bowed down and worshipped Him**. Jesus’ accepting worship as appropriate, proves He is God in the flesh. If Jesus was a man or an angel, He should have refused worship, as the angel rebuked John in Rev.22:8,9. A man or angel accepting worship is sin. Only God is to be worshipped. “Thou shalt worship no other God: for the Lord (JHVH) is a jealous God.” (Exodus 34:14).

Consider the following discussion led by a JW:

JW: Whom do you worship as God? What is his name? (You: The Lord or God).

JW: That’s a title. What is God’s name?

You: Jesus. (Saul in Acts 9:5,17 prays to Jesus, asking “Who art thou Lord?” The Lord replies “I am Jesus.” God should know His name.)

JW: Reads John 4:23 and says, “You are not a true worshipper, because you are worshipping the Son. The Bible says here that true worshippers will worship **the Father**. Do you know the Father’s name?

JW's then present their standard arguments about the name Jehovah.

JW's preaching theme is: Deny the Deity of Christ, and teach that only the **Father** (Jehovah) must be worshipped. To establish this doctrine they show certain verses, clearly avoiding Isaiah 9:6 (the mighty God), John 1:1 (the word was God), John 8:58,59 (before Abraham was, I am); John 20:28 (My Lord and my God), Colossians 2:9 (in him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily), Hebrews 1:6 (Let all the angels of God worship him), I Timothy 3:16 (God was manifest in the flesh) all showing the deity and worship of Christ.

You ask JW: While agreeing that the Father should be worshipped, do you respect the Father's wishes in other matters too? (Yes).

Read John 5:23 where the Father requires "that all men should honour the Son, **even as** they honour the Father". **Do you give worshipful honour to the Son? (No).**

Then your worship of the Father is in vain, because the same verse continues: "He that honoureth not the Son, honoureth not the Father which hath sent him".

The words "**even as**" mean that we must honour both the Father as God, and the Son as God.

Ask: Do you give worshipful honour to the Son as you do to the Father? (No)

Then your worship is in vain and you are not giving worshipful honour to the Father.

15. Mark 10:17,18 "Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God."

Watchtower teaching: JWs claim that this verse proves that Jesus is not God, as Jesus said, only God is truly good. They say that Jesus here would not accept the title "God". JWs say, "Jesus was saying that no-one is as good as God, not even Jesus." (Should you Believe in the Trinity, p17)

Bible Teaching: Jesus was saying to the rich young ruler:

"You have given me a title belonging only to God. Do you understand and mean that I am God?" Jesus was not denying that He was God or good.

Jesus was asking him to examine the implications of what he was saying. Jesus asked in effect, "By calling me good, are you saying that I am God?" Jesus did not deny His deity, but His question was a veiled claim to it. Either Jesus was good and God, or a bad man.

Ask: Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not good?

By asking, "Why do you call me good?" this is not denying Christ's goodness.

Note: Jesus did claim to be good and hence God: 'I am the **good** shepherd'. (John 10:14) and "There is none good but one, that is **God**". (Mark 10:18)

16. Hebrews 9:27 In this verse, the Watchtower adds "**for all time**". Why?

This occurs in no NT manuscripts. The NWT does not even place this phrase in brackets.

This misleads readers to think that it is part of the NT text.

NWT	Hebrews 9:27	KJV
And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time , but after this judgment.	And as it is appointed unto men once to die, after this the judgment.	And as it is appointed unto men once to die, after this the judgment.

The Watchtower organisation believes that unbelievers will be annihilated, with no continued existence in hell. This is why they add "for all time", thus giving the meaning that unbelievers die only once, and are annihilated for all time.

The intended, correct meaning is that men die (physically) once, and that they will be resurrected, judged and sentenced to the everlasting lake of fire (Revelation 20:11-15), with a continued conscious existence forever.

The Watchtower have added, "for all time" to agree with their theological bias on the annihilation of the soul at death. "For all time" is not found in any NT Greek manuscript.

Ask: Is it right to add words that change a text's meaning as the Watchtower has done?

Ask: Where is the Greek expression "for all time" in Hebrews 9:27? Show it to me!

Ask: What are you going to do about it?

872	<p>ὅσον ἀπόκειται τοῖς ἀποθάνειν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,</p> <p>how much it is lying off to die,</p>	<p>27 καὶ ἀνά καθ' ἑαυτοῦ</p> <p>And according to himself</p>	<p>καθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἀποθάνειν ὅσον ἀπόκειται τοῖς ἀποθάνειν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,</p> <p>as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment, 28 so also</p>
-----	---	---	--

11. THE TRINITY

Watchtower Teaching: JW arguments against the Trinity are:

- i) If Jesus is God, who ran the universe during the three days that Jesus was dead in the grave? Satan had a great chance to take control.
Answer: Jesus' body died, not His soul or spirit. He along with the Father and the Holy Spirit still ran the universe.
- ii) If Jesus is the immortal God, He could not have died.
Answer: The immortal God, by taking on a mortal body, had His mortal body die.
- iii) Since God is not a God of confusion (I Corinthians 14:33), it is impossible that the Bible would talk of a God who could not be understood by human reason. JWs claim that the Trinity is incomprehensible and unreasonable. "We worship what we know" (John 4:22).
Answer: Man's lack of understanding has never stopped new discoveries. What percent of the total knowledge of the universe do you possess? (about zero percent).
Ask: Could there be something about God that you don't comprehend? (eg: His Trinity?).
- iv) The word "Trinity" is not in the Bible.
Answer: Neither is "Bible", "organisation", "Kingdom Hall", chocolate, motor car, etc. Say to the JW: "By this logic you would agree that Kingdom Halls don't exist either?" This is shallow reasoning designed to throw the Christian off guard.
If it can be proved that the Bible teaches a certain truth, then naming that truth does not make it unbiblical. We should ask: "Is the particular teaching in the Bible?"
- v) The **Watchtower has misrepresented the Trinity doctrine** in order to make its denial more plausible. They erect a straw man that is easily knocked down.
They call the Trinity a "freakish looking, three headed God" (*Let God be True, p 102*)
"This doctrine of three Gods in one God . . ." (*Studies in Scripture, 1899, Vol 5, p 60,61*)
Note: Trinitarians do not believe in "three Gods in one God".
They believe in **one God**, with **three co-equal persons** in the one Godhead.

1. Refuting the Watchtower's FALSE Quotes of Early Church Writers

The Watchtower is quite happy to tell lies by inventing statements allegedly made by six Ante-Nicene Church writers who lived before 325 AD.

Page 7 of their publication "*Should you believe in the Trinity?*" is reproduced on the next page showing the Watchtower's claims that these ancient writers taught that Jesus Christ was not God. These quotes are false and invented by the Watchtower. They are easily refuted by the photocopied excerpts of the 10 volume set of genuine Ante-Nicene church fathers' quotes that prove these early writers strong belief in and defence of the Trinity.

In the Watchtower's false quotes we notice that:

- 1) None of these references are given a source, making them nearly impossible to check.
It is almost certain that the Watchtower has invented these quotes.
- 2) Notice the lie of the central bold quote on page 7: "There is no evidence that **any sacred writer** even suspected the existence of a [Trinity] within the Godhead".
We refute this Watchtower lie, and prove beyond doubt that both the Trinity and the full deity of Christ were well known and firmly believed as early as 110 AD as seen from the quotes by the Ante-Nicene (before 325 AD) church fathers which follow the Watchtower quote.

T[estament] and other early Christian writings."—*Encyclopædia of Religion and Ethics*.

"The formulation 'one God in three Persons' was not solidly established, certainly not fully assimilated into Christian life and its profession of faith, prior to the end of the 4th century. . . . Among the Apostolic Fathers, there had been nothing even remotely approaching such a mentality or perspective."—*New Catholic Encyclopedia*.

What the Ante-Nicene Fathers Taught

THE ante-Nicene Fathers were acknowledged to have been leading religious teachers in the early centuries after Christ's birth. What they taught is of interest.

Justin Martyr, who died about 165 C.E., called the prehuman Jesus a created angel who is "other than the God who made all things." He said that Jesus was inferior to God and "never did anything except what the Creator . . . willed him to do and say."

Irenaeus, who died about 200 C.E., said that the prehuman Jesus had a separate existence from God and was inferior to him. He showed that Jesus is not equal to the "One true and only God," who is "supreme over all, and besides whom there is no other."

Clement of Alexandria, who died about 215 C.E., called God "the uncreated and imperishable and only true God." He said that the Son "is next to the only omnipotent Father" but not equal to him.

Tertullian, who died about 230 C.E., taught

The following quotes are from the 10 Volume set of *The Ante-Nicene Fathers*, translations of The Writings of the Fathers down to A.D. 325, by editors Alexander Roberts and James Donaldson, American Reprint of the Edinburgh edition, revised and arranged by A C Coxe, published by W.B.Eerdmans, Grand Rapids, Michigan, reprinted in May 1987.

The Watchtower's claim that Constantine and the Council of Nicea introduced the deity of Christ and Trinity doctrines in 325 AD is proven false by these pre-325 AD quotes to the contrary:

i) Justin Martyr (110-165 AD),
Volume I, page 263:
'His Son, being God'

Volume I, page 219

Justin Martyr says:
'Christ existed as
God before the ages'

that this Christ existed as God before the ages,|

Volume I, page 264)

Justin Martyr says
that 'Christ is Lord
and God'.

the supremacy of God. He observed: "The Father is different from the Son (another), as he is greater; as he who begets is different from him who is begotten; he who sends, different from him who is sent." He also said: "There was a time when the Son was not. . . . Before all things, God was alone."

Hippolytus, who died about 235 C.E., said that God is "the one God, the first and the only One, the Maker and Lord of all," who "had nothing co-eval [of equal age] with him But he was One, alone by himself; who, willing it, called into being what had no being before," such as the created prehuman Jesus.

Origen, who died about 250 C.E., said that "the Father and Son are two substances . . . two things as to their essence," and that "compared with the Father, [the Son] is a very small light."

Summing up the historical evidence, Alvan Lamson says in *The Church of the First Three Centuries*: "The modern popular doctrine of the Trinity . . . derives no support from the

language of Justin [Martyr]; and this observation may be extended to all the ante-Nicene Fathers; that is, to all Christian writers for three centuries after the birth of Christ. It is true, they speak of the Father, Son, and . . . holy Spirit, but not as co-equal, not as one numerical essence, not as Three in One, in any sense now admitted by Trinitarians. The very reverse is the fact."

Thus, the testimony of the Bible and of history makes clear that the Trinity was unknown throughout Biblical times and for several centuries thereafter.

"There is no evidence that any sacred writer even suspected the existence of a [Trinity] within the Godhead."—The Triune God ?

CHAP. CXXVI. — THE VARIOUS NAMES OF CHRIST ACCORDING TO BOTH NATURES. IT IS SHOWN THAT HE IS GOD, AND APPEARED TO THE PATRIARCHS.

Therefore neither Abraham, nor Isaac, nor Jacob, nor any other man, saw the Father and ineffable Lord of all, and also of Christ, but [saw] Him who was according to His will His Son, being God, and the Angel because He ministered to His will; whom also it pleased Him to be born man by the Virgin; who also was fire when He conversed with Moses from the bush.

"And that Christ being Lord, and God the Son of God, and appearing formerly in power as Man, and Angel, and in the glory of fire as at the bush, so also was manifested at the judgment executed on Sodom, has been demonstrated fully by what has been said."

ii) **Irenaeus** (120-202 AD)
Volume I, page 328 not only shows the NWT to be wrong on John 1:1 but also calls Christ 'God'

Very properly, then, did he say, "In the beginning was the Word," for He was in the Son; "and the Word was with God," for He was the beginning; "and the Word was God," of course, for that which is begotten of God is God.

iii) **Clement of Alexandria** (153-217 AD)
In Volume 2, p 468, written in 193 AD, Clement clearly quotes the Holy Trinity as Father, Son & Holy Spirit.

① I understand nothing else than the Holy Trinity to be meant; for the third is the Holy Spirit, and the Son is the second, by whom all things were made according to the will of the Father.³

page 173

This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us;

iv) **Tertullian** (200-250 AD)
Volume 3, page 598

this one only God has also a Son, His Word, who proceeded⁴ from Himself, by whom all things were made, and without whom nothing was made. Him *we believe* to have been sent by the Father into the Virgin, and to have been born of her—being both Man and God, the Son of Man and the Son of God, and to have been called by the name of Jesus Christ;

page 598

while the mystery of the dispensation⁹ is still guarded, which distributes the Unity into a Trinity,^② placing in their order¹⁰ the three Persons—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost: three, however, not in condition,¹¹ but in degree;¹² not in substance, but in form; not in power, but in aspect;¹³ yet of one substance, and of one condition, and of one power, inasmuch as He is one God, from whom these degrees and forms and aspects are reckoned, under the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.¹⁴

Tertullian against Praxeas,
Volume 3, p.606

when all the Scriptures attest the clear existence of, and distinction in, (the Persons of) the Trinity,^③

④ Still, in these few quotations the distinction of Persons in the Trinity is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.¹³

Tertullian correctly quotes John 1:1, saying that Christ is God. (Volume 3, p. 607)

CHAP. XII.—OTHER QUOTATIONS FROM HOLY SCRIPTURE ADDUCED IN PROOF OF THE PLURALITY OF PERSONS IN THE GODHEAD.

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"⁸ then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that *executes the order and creates*.

Tertullian again quotes the Trinity on a fourth occasion. (Vol 4, page 99)

v) **Hippolytus** (170-236 AD) Volume 5, page 228 mentions the Trinity and quotes John 1:1 correctly.

⑥

vi) **Origen** (185-254 AD) Volume 4, page 255. Twice he quotes the word 'Trinity', as Father, Son and Holy Spirit

Also on page 258 he quotes the Trinity in '*Origen de Principiis*', written in 230 AD.

⑧

which we have manifestly shown to be the case with Christ and the Holy Spirit alone, as undoubtedly with the Father also? For it was proved that there was nothing compound in the nature of the Trinity,

⑨

vii) **Thaumaturgus** (205-265 AD) Volume 6, pages 42, 45

vii.

⑩

But some treat the Holy Trinity⁷ in an awful manner, when they confidently assert that there are not three persons, and introduce (the idea of) a person devoid of subsistence.⁸

we believe that three persons — namely, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit — are declared to possess the one Godhead: for the one divinity showing itself forth according to nature in the Trinity¹² establishes the oneness of the nature; and thus there is a (divinity that is the) property of the Father, according to the word, "There is one God the Father;"¹¹ and there is a divinity hereditary¹² in the Son, as it is written, "The Word was God;"¹³ and there is a divinity present according to nature in the Spirit — to wit, what subsists as the Spirit of God — according to Paul's statement, "Ye are the temple of God, and the Spirit of God dwelleth in you."¹⁴

⑬

Wherefore the Trinity is to be adored, to be glorified, to be honoured, and to be revered;

For the very Church itself is, properly and principally, the Spirit Himself, in whom is the Trinity of the One Divinity — Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.¹³

"Go ye

and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."¹⁶ And by this He showed, that whosoever omitted any one of these, failed in glorifying God perfectly. For it is through this Trinity¹⁷ that the Father is glorified. For the Father willed, the Son did, the Spirit manifested. The whole Scriptures, then, proclaim this truth.

This is most clearly pointed out by the Apostle Paul, when demonstrating that the power of the Trinity is one and the same, in the words, "There are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit; there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord; and there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God who worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal."² From which it most clearly follows that there is no difference in the Trinity, but that which is called the gift of the Spirit is made known through the Son, and operated by God the Father. "But all these worketh that one and the self-same Spirit, dividing to every one severally as He will."³

8. Having made these declarations regarding the Unity of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, let us return to the order in which we began the discussion.

VIII.

We acknowledge that the Son and the Spirit are consubstantial with the Father, and that the substance of the Trinity is one, — that is, that there is one divinity according to nature, the

⑪

And those who have fellowship with men that reject the consubstantiality as a doctrine foreign to the Scriptures, and speak of any of the persons in the Trinity¹⁵ as created, and separate that person from the one natural divinity, we hold as aliens, and have fellowship with none such.⁵ There is one God the Father, and there is only one divinity. But the Son also is God, as being the true image of the one and only divinity, according to generation and the nature which He has from

XX.

⑮

And that the holy Trinity is to be worshipped without either separation or alienation, is taught us by Paul, who says in his Second Epistle to the Corinthians: "The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all."⁹

2. Is the Trinity a Pagan Concept? No! Because:

i) The Babylonians and Assyrians believed in triads of gods, which were three separate gods (polytheism) governing other gods. This is totally different from the Trinity of only one God (monotheism) with three persons within the one Godhead.

ii) Triads of gods pre-date Christianity by about 700 years and were far removed from Israel

iii) Some pagan ideas have some truth in them, such as the pagan Flood legends.

Just because pagans spoke of a concept that remotely resembles a biblical concept, does not mean that Christians stole it from the pagans.

iv) JWs quote Hislop's *The Two Babylons* to support their case, yet they don't tell us that Hislop believes in the Trinity, as seen from Hislop's quote:

“They all admitted a **Trinity**, but did they worship the **Triune Jehovah?**” (p. 90)

- About **80% of the sources** that the WT quotes are from **Trinitarians**. We ask:

“How can the WT disprove the Trinity by quoting sources who believe the Trinity?”

- **15%** of their sources are secular works like *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

- **5%** of WT sources are **invalid sources** of **Biblical truth**, eg: sceptics, spiritists, Unitarians.

- The WT always finds some **unknown, obscure** person to agree with them. They do not examine the **credibility** of such sources. Most WT sources have no credibility & no authority.

- The WT rarely gives **page numbers** of its quotes to check the **source** or **context**.

v) JWs claim they represent the “faith once delivered to the saints”. They claim that the Trinity idea was introduced in 325 AD. What they don't say is that current WT teachings have **no precedent in history**. They do not say who were the JWs of the first three centuries or later. No early church “father” represented their beliefs. The WT is historically bankrupt.

vi) The WT, by showing a **three-headed god**, use the “straw-man effect”, where they misrepresent what Christians believe, and then proceed to “shoot down” this “straw man”. This is seen in five pictures of three-headed gods which are supposed to represent the God of Christendom. (“*Should you believe in the Trinity?*” p 10).

vii) The WT is happy to **misquote sources** to prove their point.

Consider page 6 “*Should you believe in the Trinity?*”, where they misquote the *New Encyclopaedia Britannica* by failing to give the full relevant quote. They stop the quote at the asterisk *

“The *Encyclopaedia Britannica* (1976 Edition) correctly states:

“*Neither the word Trinity, nor the explicit doctrine as such, appears in the New Testament*,”

[*They stop the quote here, ignoring the rest of the article which endorses the Trinity:]

“*nor did Jesus and his followers intend to contradict the Shema in the Old Testament: ‘Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God is one Lord’ (Deuteronomy 6:4). The earliest Christians, however, had to cope with the implications of the coming of Jesus Christ and of the presence and power of God among them - ie, the Holy Spirit, whose coming we connected with the celebration of Pentecost. The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit were associated in such New Testament passages as the Great Commission: “Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit” (Matthew 28:19); and in the apostolic benediction: “The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ and the love of God and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all” (2 Cor. 13:14). Thus, the **New Testament established the basis for the doctrine of the Trinity**. The doctrine developed gradually over several centuries and through many controversies.”*

Any early church council disputes were over fine points of Trinity clarification, such as the substance, nature and omnipotence of Father, Son and Holy Spirit, never over whether the Trinity was right or wrong. The truth of the Trinity was always accepted. 877

3. Refuting Watchtowers' wrong application of I Corinthians 14:33

“for God is not the author of confusion, but of peace . . .”

Watchtower Teaching: JW's say that because God is not the author of confusion, the Trinity doctrine cannot be true because it is so unreasonable. How can the Father, Son and Holy Spirit each be God, and yet there be only one God? It doesn't make sense to them.

Bible Teaching: Just because one can't fully understand something, doesn't mean it is false.

i) Finite humans cannot possibly understand everything about the infinite God.

“How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out.” (Romans 11:33).

“For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the Lord.

As the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.” (Isaiah 55:8,9).

ii) Can you fully understand how light can be both a particle of matter and a wave form?

iii) Can you fully understand how God had no beginning? (No). Do you reject the idea? (No).

Ask: Should we reject the Trinity doctrine because we don't fully understand it, when we accept other things about God and the universe which we don't fully understand?

I Corinthians 14:33 means that a church should avoid disharmony in its services by only having two or three prophets speak in a service, and only one at a time.

“Confusion” means “parts of a whole which are at strife with one another”.

“Peace” means “parts of a whole acting in harmony”.

4. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of John 17:3 (See earlier study on page 868).

5. Refuting WT's misunderstanding of Deuteronomy 6:4 and Mark 12:29

“Hear, O Israel, the Lord (JHVH) our God (Elohim) is one Lord (JHVH).” (Deut 6:4).

Watchtower teaching: JW's say that, since God is one, He cannot be Triune at the same time. Why would God speak as one person if He were composed of three persons?

Bible teaching: The ordinary name of God (Elohim) is in the plural form.

“Hear, O, Israel, Jehovah our Elohim, one Jehovah.” Deuteronomy 6:4.

If God had intended to assert a solitary, exclusive type of unity, the expression would have been “Eloah”, not the plural “Elohim”.

It does not say: “Hear, O Israel, Jehovah, our Elohim, one Eloah.”

The use of Elohim (a uniplural noun) means: “there is a real plurality, yet Jehovah is one.”

Ask: Who is Jehovah? Is it the Father alone? Is Jesus Jehovah? Is the Holy Spirit Jehovah?

If we can find verses teaching that Jesus is Jehovah (or God) and the Holy Spirit is Jehovah, then we have proved the Trinity.

i) **The Holy Spirit is called Jehovah:** “Jehovah is the Spirit”. (2 Corinthians 3:17 NWT).

ii) **Jesus Christ is called God,** as follows:

(1) “Our Lord Jesus Christ who is the blessed and **only Potentate**, the King of kings, & Lord of lords; who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto.” (I Timothy 6:14-16)

(2) “The Word was **God**.” (John 1:1).

(3) “of the great **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ.” (Titus 2:13).

(4) “the righteousness of **God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ.” (II Peter 1:1).

(5) “if ye believe not that **I am, ye shall die in your sins**.” (John 8:24).

(6) “Before Abraham was, **I am**.” (John 8:58).

(7) “**God** was manifest in the flesh.” (I Timothy 3:16).

(8) “Thomas said unto **him**, My Lord and **My God**.” (John 20:28).

(9) “in him dwells **all** the fullness of the **Godhead** bodily.” (Colossians 2:9).

(10) “unto the **Son** he saith, Thy throne, O **God** is forever.” (Hebrews 1:8).

- (11) “If you publicly declare . . . that Jesus is **Lord**.” (KIT: “ha Adon” in Hebrew footnote of Romans 10:9. In the 1961 edition of NWT, p.1453, “ha Adon” = Jehovah).
- (12) “that he (Christ) might be **Lord** both of the dead and the living.” (Romans 14:9).
In verses 6-11 of NWT “κύριος” (Lord) is translated 7 times as Jehovah, except in v.9. Why?
- (13) “in his **Son Jesus Christ**. This is the **true God**, and eternal life.” (I John 5:20).
- (14) “feed the church of **God**, which he hath purchased with **his own blood**.” (Acts 20:28).

6. Notice how God reveals Himself in stages to man:

- (1) God revealed His **Unity** as the **one and only true God**, to refute the nations’ many gods.
- (2) God revealed the **Trinity** (Jehovah=Father+Son+HS) in the **Old Testament** in:
 “**Jehovah** your God is **God of gods** (the **Father**), and **Lord of lords** (the **Son**).” (Deut.10:17).
 “Thus saith **Jehovah** the King of Israel (Father), and his redeemer **Jehovah** of hosts (the Son). Isai44:6.
 “**God** said “let **us** make man in **our** image” Genesis 1:26
 “**Jehovah** God said, “Behold the man is become as one of **us** . . .” Genesis 3:22; 11:5,7.
 “**Spirit** of the LORD spake by me, **God** of Israel said, the **Rock** of Israel spake.” 2 Sam23:2,3
 “the **Lord** saying . . . who will go for **us**?” Isaiah 6:8.
 “What is **his** name....and what is his **Son’s** name.” Proverbs 30:4; **2 Samuel 23:2,3**
 “the **Lord God** (Father), and his **Spirit** (HS), hath sent **me** (Jehovah the Son).” **Isaiah 48:16**
 “**LORD**...their Saviour,..the **angel** of his presence saved them..vexed his **holv Spirit**.” **Isaiah 63:7-10**.
- (3) God revealed the **fullness of the Trinity** doctrine in the **New Testament**:
 Matthew 28:19 “baptizing them in the **name** (singular name, not plural) of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.”
 I John 5:7 “There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are **one**.”
 Revelation 22:1,3,4 “the **throne** (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **his servants** shall serve him; they shall see **his face**, and **his name** shall be in their foreheads.”
Key: God and the Lamb have **one throne, one name, one face & one ownership of servants**.
 II Corinthians 13:14 “The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, the love of **God**, and the communion of the **Holy Ghost**”. There is one God, but three persons within the Godhead.
- (4) Early Christians with a strong Jewish background, who knew Deuteronomy 6:4, continually **refer to Jesus as “Lord”** and “**God**” (Romans 10:13, I Thess 5:2, I Peter 2:3; 3:15) They often apply to Jesus many Old Testament texts which refer to Jehovah, such as:
 a) Jesus Christ in Matthew 3:1-3 fulfils Isaiah 40:3 to “**Prepare** the way of **Jehovah**” & **Elohim**.
 b) Jesus Christ’s **glory** in John 12:41 is Jehovah’s glory in Isaiah 6:1-5.
 c) Jesus Christ’s **voice** as the sound of many waters in Revelation 1:15 is identical to Jehovah’s voice as the sound of many waters in Ezekiel 43:2.
 d) Jesus Christ being **pierced** in Rev 1:7 is the same one as Jehovah being pierced in Zech 12:10
 e) Jesus Christ being **called on for salvation** in Romans 10:13, is the same as Jehovah being called on for salvation in Joel 2:32.
 f) Jesus Christ, the Lamb, is the **everlasting light** in Revelation 21:23, just as Jehovah “shall be . . . an everlasting light” in Isaiah 60:19,20.
Ask: Do you agree that Trinitarians believe Deuteronomy 6:4 teaches **only one true God**?
Ask: Do you understand that Trinitarians **don’t** teach that there are three gods in the Trinity, but that there is only **one God** with three persons within the one Godhead?
Ask: How do you explain that the early Jewish Christians who believed Deuteronomy 6:4, **applied to Jesus** many Old Testament texts that were originally written of Jehovah?

12. BIBLE PROOFS OF THE TRINITY

Key: The Father, Son and Holy Spirit are so clearly and consistently linked in Scripture that, assuming that God is not three persons, makes it impossible to understand some passages. Though JW's exalt human reasoning against the Trinity doctrine, saying it is unreasonable, those who submit to God's Word must conclude that it is unreasonable to doubt the Trinity. Consider these scriptures proving the Trinity:

1. Matthew 28:19 The "Name" of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

Watchtower teaching: JW's ask, "Does this verse prove the Father, Son and Holy Spirit are equal in substance, power and eternity?" They say, "No, no more than listing three people Tom, Dick and Harry mean that they are three in one." They say that the Trinity doctrine is imposed on the text, not derived from it.

Bible Teaching: The key point is that the word "name" is singular in the Greek NT, thus proving that there is one God, but three distinct persons within the Godhead. This proves the Trinity because Jesus did not say:

- i) "into the **names** (plural) of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit."
- ii) "into the **name** of the Father, and into the **name** of the Son, and into the **name** of the Holy Spirit", as if we had three separate beings.
- iii) "into the **name** of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit" omitting the three articles (the), as if the Father, Son and Holy Spirit might be three designations of a single person.

What He does say is:

"into the **name** (singular) of **the** Father, and of **the** Son, and of **the** Holy Spirit".

Jesus first teaches the unity of the three by combining them all within a single name.

He then teaches that each is a different person by introducing each of them in turn with the article (tou):

μαθητεύσατε	πάντα	τὰ	ἔθνη,	βαπτίζοντες	
make disciples of	all	the	nations,	baptizing	
αὐτοὺς	εἰς	τὸ	ὄνομα	τοῦ	πατρὸς
them [persons]	into	the	name	of the	Father
καὶ	τοῦ	υἱοῦ	καὶ	τοῦ	ἁγίου
and	of the	Son	and	of the	holy
				spirit,	

and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit,

Ask: Can you see that rules of grammar dictate plurality (the, the, the) within unity (the name), because the word "name" is singular and definite articles (Greek: tou) are placed in front of Father, Son and Holy Spirit?

Other verses showing "three-in-oneness" of the Godhead are:

- i) At the creation of man, "God said, let us make man in our image, after our likeness . ." (Genesis 1:26). "Our image" in v.26 is explained as God's image in v.27. The one true God consists of three persons who are able to confer with one another and carry out their plans together, while still being one God.
- ii) After the Fall, "the Lord (Jehovah) God (Elohim) said, Behold, the man is become as one of us. " (Genesis 3:22). "Us" refers back to LORD (Jehovah), showing plurality within the Jehovah Godhead.
- iii) At the Tower of Babel, "the LORD (Jehovah), said . . let us go down" (Genesis 11:6,7).
- iv) Isaiah "saw the Lord (Adonai) sitting upon a throne (v.1) mine eyes have seen the King, the LORD (Jehovah) of hosts (v.5). I heard the voice of the Lord (Adonai) saying: "Whom shall I send, and who will go for us?" (Isaiah 6:1,5,8). Here Isaiah sees "Adonai" on the throne, then Isaiah calls Him "Jehovah of hosts" (v.5). Adonai asks, "Who will go for us?" The "us" shows plurality in the Jehovah Godhead. This equivalence of Adonai and Jehovah (both called "us") proves the Trinity Godhead.

2. Genesis 18 and 19. Three men each called Jehovah.

JWs believe that it is impossible for Jehovah God to exist as three persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Yet Genesis 18 and 19 shows Jehovah appearing to Abraham as three men. This shows that even the impossible from a human viewpoint is possible with God. Notice that:

- i) Abraham addresses the three as “Jehovah” (v.3 NWT);
- ii) When **two** of the three men **depart** to visit Lot in **Sodom**, Abraham continues to address the remaining one as “Jehovah” (Genesis 18:22,26,27,30,31,32,33).
- iii) Lot addressed the other two as “Jehovah” (Genesis 19:1,18 NWT).
“Then Lot said to **them**: “Not that please, **Jehovah**.” (19:18 NWT)
- iv) “Then **Jehovah** made it rain sulphur and fire from **Jehovah**, from the **heavens** upon Sodom and Gomorra.” (Genesis 19:24)

Notice the mention here of two Jehovahs, one in heaven who sends judgment on Sodom and Gomorra, at the bidding of the other Jehovah on earth.

This gives strong evidence for **more than one** person in the Godhead. The Jehovah upon earth was one of three persons to visit Abraham, one of whom stays behind to speak further to Abraham and is called **Jehovah**. (Genesis 21:1 “**Jehovah** turned his attention to Sarah”). Hence this shows that it is possible for Jehovah to manifest Himself as three-in-one.

3. II Corinthians 3:17 - “Jehovah is the Spirit.” (NWT).

JWs challenge Christians to prove the Trinity in the Bible. This can be done if we find verses teaching that the Holy Spirit is Jehovah God, and the Son is Jehovah God.

2 Corinthians 3:17 teaches this: “Now Jehovah **is** the Spirit.” What part of “**is**” don’t you get? How much clearer can it be than this, which states that the **Holy Spirit is (=) Jehovah God**? This proves the Deity of the Holy Spirit, and the existence of 2 persons in the Godhead.

4. I John 5:7,8 The Johannine Comma, the famous Trinitarian proof text (3 Heavenly witnesses).

NWT	KJV
“For there are three witness bearers, OMIT OMIT OMIT the Spirit, and the water and the blood, and the three are in agreement.”	“For there are three <u>that</u> (oi= masc) bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear record in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these (oi= masc) three agree in one.”

Watchtower teaching: JW's claim that this passage ought not to be in the Bible, because it is not in most Greek manuscripts. It is omitted by most modern Bible versions.

Bible Teaching: Erasmus omitted it from his first edition of the printed Greek NT (1516), because it occurred in the Latin Vulgate and not in any Greek manuscript. To quieten the outcry that followed, he agreed to restore it if it could be found in one Greek manuscript. Two Greek manuscripts, Codex 61 and 629 were found, so Erasmus included it in his 1522 edition. Since these manuscripts are late (14th and 15th Century), some think the readings are corrupt. What do we answer? (See p551-552). 2 witnesses in v.9 imply 2 witnesses in v.7

5. In II Corinthians 13:14, (the Apostolic Benediction) why is there a **change in the order of the persons of the Trinity**, compared to Matthew 28:19, if not to show that in this Trinity none is before or after the other, and none is greater or less than another?

“The grace of the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and the love of **God**, and the communion of the **Holy Ghost**, be with you all. Amen.” (II Corinthians 13:14).

“Baptizing them in the name of the **Father**, and of the **Son**, and of the **Holy Ghost**.” Matt. 28:19.

30 BIBLE PROOFS OF THE TRINITY:

'Jehovah your God, is a God of Gods and Lord of lords, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible' (Deuteronomy 10:17)

We prove the Trinity because each of them have 30 identical attributes, possessed by no-one else except God.

The Father, Son and Holy Spirit are so closely and consistently linked in Scripture, that, assuming that God is not three Persons (as WT does) makes it impossible to understand many passages. Consider this list of attributes and activities which prove the Trinity of the Godhead:

	Father	Son	Holy Spirit	= Jehovah God
1. Each raises Jesus from the dead	'Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father' (Romans 6:4)	'Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. He spake of the temple of His body'(John 2:19-21)	'Christ . . . being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit' (I Peter 3:18)	'Now the God of peace that brought again from the dead, our Lord Jesus' (Hebrews 13:20)
2. Each created the world	'One God, the Father, of whom are all things' (I Corinthians 8:6)	'One Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things' (I Corinthians 8:6)	'The Spirit of God hath made me' (Job 33:4)	'In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth' (Genesis 1:1)
3. Each saves man	'God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ . . . hath begotten us again' (I Peter 1:3)	'Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law' (Galatians 3:13)	'he saved us, by the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Ghost' (Titus 3:5)	'Whosoever is born of God . . .' (I John 3:9)
4. Each is called God	'God our Father' (I Timothy 1:2)	'a son is given . . . his name shall be called...the mighty God.' (Isaiah 9:6)	'Jehovah is the Spirit' (II Corinthians 3:17)	-
5. Each is eternal	'eternal life, which was with the Father' (I John 1:2)	'whose goings forth have been from of old from everlasting' (Micah 5:2;	'through the eternal Spirit' (Hebrews 9:14)	'the eternal God is thy refuge' (Deuteronomy 33:27)
6. Each is omnipresent	'Where shall I flee from thy presence?' (Psalm 139:7)	'even the Son of Man which is in heaven'. (John 3:13)	'where shall I go from thy Spirit?' (Psalm 139:7)	'Do not I fill heaven and earth?' saith Jehovah' (Jeremiah 23:24)
7. Each knows each other fully	'no man knoweth the Son but the Father' (Matthew 11:27)	'Neither knoweth any man the Father, except the Son' (Matt 11:27)	'The things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God'. (I Cor. 2:11)	-
8. Each are omniscient	'his understanding is infinite' (Psalm 147:5)	'Lord (Jesus Christ), thou knowest all things'. (John 21:17)	'The Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God'. (I Cor. 2:10)	'God knoweth' (I Corinth 11:11)
9. Each is omnipotent	'The Lord God omnipotent reigneth.' Revelation 19:6	'Upholding all things by the word of his power' (Hebrews 1:3) Matt.28:18	'Is the Spirit of the Lord straitened (curtailed, wax short)? (Micah 2:7)	'with God, all things are possible' (Matthew 19:26)
10. Each has a will	'The will of the Father which hath sent me' (John 5:30)	'The Son quickeneth whom he will'. (John 5:21)	'the selfsame Spirit, dividing to every man severally as he will'. (I Cor.12:11	'I come to do thy will, O God' (Hebrews 2:9)
11. Each bears witness in heaven	'There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father,	... the Word, and	... the Holy Ghost' (I John 5:7)	'God is witness' (I Thessalonians 2:5)
12. Each justifies believers	'God, Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus' (Romans 3:23,24)	'Ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus' (I Corinthians 6:11)	'ye are justified . . . by the Spirit of our God' (I Corinthians 6:11)	'It is God that justifieth' (Romans 8:33)
13. Each sanctifies believers	'Sanctified by God the Father' Jude 1	'Sanctified in Christ Jesus' (I Corinthians 1:2)	'Ye are sanctified . . . by the Spirit of our God' I Cor 6:11; Romans 15:16	'The very God of peace sanctify you wholly' (I Thessalonians 5:23)
14. Each gives life'	'In hope of eternal life, which God that cannot lie, promised' (I Titus 1:2)	'The promise of life which is in Christ Jesus'. (II Timothy 1:2)	'Shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting'. (Galatians 6:8)	'Jehovah thy God, . . . He is thy life'. (Deuteronomy 30:20)

15. Believers are <u>baptised</u> in the name of each	'Baptising them in the name of the Father,	... and of the Son,	... and of the Holy Ghost' (Matthew 28:19)	-
16. Each are <u>always</u> with believers	'the love of God ... be with you all' (I Corinthians 13:14)	'The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, be with you all' (II Corinthians 13:14)	'the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all.' (II Corinthians 13:14)	
17. Each one <u>directs</u> believers	'God (HS) himself, and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you'. (I Thessalonians 3:11)	'God (HS) himself, and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you'. (I Thessalon 3:11)	'The Spirit of truth, ... he will guide you into all truth'. (John 16:13)	'Trust in Jehovah with all thine heart ... he shall direct thy paths' (Proverbs 3:5-6)
18. Each <u>partakes in</u> election	'Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father' (I Peter 1:2a)	'Elect ... unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ' (I Peter 1:2c)	'Elect ... through sanctification of the Spirit' (I Peter 1:2b)	'Put on therefore, as the elect of God ...' (Colossians 3:12)
19. Each raise believers <u>from the dead</u>	'As the Father raiseth up the dead, and quickeneth them' (John 5:21)	'Even so the Son quickeneth whom he will' (John 5:21)	'It is the Spirit that quickeneth'. (John 6:63; Romans 8:11)	'God, who quickeneth the dead' (Romans 4:17; I Corinthians 6:14)
20. Each are <u>involved in</u> the atonement	'How much more shall the blood of Christ, (Hebrews 9:14a)	(SON) who through the eternal Spirit (Hebrews 9:14b)	(FATHER) offered himself without spot to God, (Hebrews 9:14c)	(GOD) purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? 14d
21. Each is <u>Holy</u>	'Holy Father, keep ...' (John 17:11)	'ye denied the Holy One' (Acts 3:14)	'The Holy Ghost this signifying' (Hebrews 9:8)	'Saying, Holy, Holy, Holy, Lord God Almighty, which was, and is, and is to come'. (Rev 4:8; Isaiah 6:3)
22. Each is <u>True</u>	'he that sent me is true'. (John 7:28; 8:26)	'I am the way, the truth' (John 14:6)	'the Spirit is truth'. (I John 5:6)	'thou hast redeemed me, O Jehovah God of truth' Psalm 31:5
23. Each is a <u>Lawgiver</u>	'I delight in the law of God' (Romans 7:22)	'So fulfil the law of Christ' (Galatians 6:2)	'The law of the Spirit of life ...' (Romans 8:2)	'There is one lawgiver, ...' (James 4:12)
24. Each <u>dwells in</u> believers	'If any man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come into him ...' (John 14:23)	'I (Christ) in you' (John 14:20)	'The Spirit of truth ... shall be in you.' (John 14:17)	'God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them' (II Corinthians 6:16)
25. Each <u>strengthens</u> believers	'my God shall be my strength' (Isaiah 49:5)	'I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me'. (Philippians 4:13)	'to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man' (Ephesians 3:16)	'the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song'. (Isaiah 12:2; 26:4)
26. Each <u>comforts</u> believers	'The Father shall give you another Comforter'. (John 14:26)	'If any consolations in Christ' (Philippians 2:1)	'The Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost' (John 14:26)	'Jehovah hath comforted his people'. (Isaiah 49:13)
27. Each <u>fills</u> believers with their love	'If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him' I John 2:15	'The love of Christ constraineth us' (II Corinthians 5:14)	'the love of the Spirit' (Romans 15:30)	'the love of Jehovah toward the children of Israel' (Hosea 3:1)
28. Each is <u>good</u>	'there is none good but one, that is, God' (Mark 10:18)	'Good Master' (Mark 10:17)	'Thou gavest also thy good Spirit to instruct them' (Nehemiah 9:20)	'Jehovah is good, ...' (Nahum 1:7; Lamentation 3:25)
29. Each declares his <u>decision to send</u> Jehovah the Son	'Jehovah the Son says: 'Come ye near unto me (Jesus Christ) ... , and now the Lord God (the Father), and his Spirit, hath sent me (Jesus Christ).'	'I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God' Isaiah 44-6	'I am the good shepherd' (John 10:14)	'Jehovah hath comforted his people'. (Isaiah 49:13)
30. Together they introduce themselves, as King, Redeemer & Spirit	'Thus saith Jehovah the King of Israel, (Isaiah 44-6)	'and his redeemer, Jehovah of hosts; I am the first, and I am the last, and beside me there is no God' Isaiah 44-6	'Thus saith Jehovah that made thee, ... I will pour my spirit upon thy seed ...' (Isaiah 55:2,3)	'Jehovah is good, ...' (Nahum 1:7; Lamentation 3:25)

13. PROOF THAT JESUS CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD

The Bible proves the co-equal Deity of Jesus Christ with God the Father by:

- i) **Explicit statements** that Christ is Jehovah and God.
- ii) Both the Father and the Son have the **same attributes, claims and majesty**.
- iii) **Appearances of Jehovah God** the Son to Old Testament saints who **worshipped** Him.
- iv) New Testament examples of **Prayer to Christ**.
- v) Father and Son have the **same divine offices**.

Let us consider each of these proofs:

I. EXPLICIT STATEMENTS THAT CHRIST IS JEHOVAH GOD

1. **Isaiah 9:6** - “His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, **The Mighty God**, “
In **Isaiah 9:6** Jesus is called “**the mighty God**” (Hebrew “*El Gibbor*” is “God the mighty”). This is the title of **Jehovah God** in Isaiah 10:21; Jeremiah 32:18; Habakkuk 1:12; Psalm 50:1.
 - a) “Jehovah...The remnant shall returnunto **the mighty God**”. Isaiah 10:21.
 - b) “the Great, **the Mighty God**, Jehovah of hosts, is his name,..” Jeremiah 32:18.
 - c) “O Jehovah,...**O mighty God**, thou hast established them for correction.” Habakkuk 1:12.Are there two mighty Gods? No! That would be polytheism.

Hence Jesus is Jehovah, the Mighty God.

Ask: Since Isaiah was a Jew, and believed in only one God (Jehovah), **who did Isaiah understand the Mighty God to be?** (obviously Jehovah).

Ask: Then why did Isaiah call **Jehovah** the Mighty God (in 10:20,21), and also call **Christ** the Mighty God (in 9:6)?

Ask: **Who does this make Christ to be?** (clearly Jehovah, the Mighty God.)

Conclusion: There is one God. He is revealed in the OT as **Jehovah**.

In the NT, He is revealed as **Jehovah the Son** (part of the Triune Godhead).

Question JWs might ask:

- 1) To whom did Jesus pray on the cross if He was God?
- 2) When Jesus was baptized, whose voice came from heaven, his own voice? No, the Father's.

Answer: JWs have not been able to distinguish between God the Father and God the Son. Therein lies their difficulty. As to how **two persons** can be **equally the one God**, and yet be separate is **not explained** in the Bible, but **it is taught**. God ought to know who He is. Who are we to argue with God? JW's pride must bend, and their will must bow to Jesus as Jehovah God the Son (Greek: *Huios*). Tied in with the **Deity of Christ** is His **Saviourhood**.

2. **Isaiah 44:6** “Thus saith **Jehovah the King of Israel** (the Father), & **his redeemer Jehovah of hosts** (Jesus Christ); **I am the first**, and **I am the last**; and **beside me there is no God**.”

- a) Here, **two members of the Jehovah Godhead** are speaking, **each of whom are called Jehovah**. b) Jehovah the Father and Jehovah the Son **jointly claim** the title “I am the first, & I am the last”. Notice that the Lord Jesus Christ calls Himself by this title “I am the first and the last” in Revelation 1:17,18 and in Revelation 2:8.
- c) The first person Jehovah **owns the second person Jehovah** as seen by the possessive pronoun “**his**”, describing Jesus Christ as “Jehovah's redeemer” and “Jehovah of hosts”. This proves that two related persons are in the Jehovah Godhead.
- d) The New Testament reveals “Jehovah the Redeemer” to be Jesus Christ in Galatians 3:13 “Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law..”. See also Rev.5:9 and I Peter 1:18.
- e) The NWT rearranges v.6 to make one person, not two persons speaking as Jehovah. They do this by putting “said” between “Jehovah” and “the King of Israel” which has the

effect of confusing the reader so we don't know if 'Jehovah' is or isn't 'the King of Israel'.

Notice that: 1) the Hebrew Masoretic text, 2) the Septuagint translate it correctly, but the 3) JW NWT translates it wrong as usual

1) "So says Jehovah, the King of Israel, and his Redeemer, Jehovah of hosts: I am the First and I am the Last; and there is no God except Me. ⁷And

6 כְּהָאָמַר יְהוָה מֶלֶךְ יִשְׂרָאֵל וְיְהוָה
his and ,Israel the Jehovah says Thus
,Redeemer of King
יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת אֲנִי רִאשׁוֹן וְאֲנִי אַחֲרֹן וּמִבְּרֵאֵי אֵין אֱלֹהִים
430 369 1107 314 72 23 6635 3068
,God there except and the I and the I :hosts Jehovah
no is Me ,last (am) ,first (am) of

2) Septuagint

⁶Thus saith God the King of Israel, and the God of hosts that delivered him; I am the first, and I am hereafter: beside me there is no God.

3) NWT 6 "This is what Jehovah has said, the King of Israel¹ and the Repurchaser of him,¹ Jehovah of armies, 'I am the first and I am the last,^k and besides me there is no God.¹

3. Isaiah 48:12,16 "I am the first, I also am the last" (v.12). *This is Jehovah the Son speaking.* "Come ye near unto me (Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ), hear ye this (something important)and now the Lord God (Jehovah the Father), and his Spirit (Jehovah the Holy Spirit), hath sent me (Jehovah the Son)" (v.16).

- a) This describes how God the Father and God the Holy Spirit send Jehovah the Son to earth to redeem mankind. Verse 17 shows the speaker to be Jehovah the Son by the phrase "Thus saith Jehovah, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am Jehovah thy God..." (v.17). Here, Jesus Christ as well as being "thy Redeemer" is also called "the Holy One." Acts 3:14.
- b) This also shows the existence of three persons called "Jehovah" in the Jehovah Godhead. The Lord God and His Spirit send Jehovah the Son who calls Himself "the first and the last".

4. In Zechariah 2:8-11, Jehovah the Son states twice that Jehovah the Father has sent Him to Israel. This proves that there are at least two persons in the Godhead, both called Jehovah. v.8 "For thus saith Jehovah of hosts (the Son) . . ."

v.9 "Ye shall know that Jehovah of hosts (the Father) hath sent me."

v.11 "I (Jehovah the Son) will dwell in the midst of thee, and thou shalt know that Jehovah of hosts (Father) hath sent me unto thee." (Zechariah 2:8-11).

Lesson: Jehovah (the Father) sends Jehovah (the Son). Two persons here are named Jehovah. This clearly proves that Jesus Christ in His pre-incarnate state is fully Jehovah God.

5. In Zechariah 3:2: "Jehovah said unto Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee, O Satan."

Again, one person in the Jehovah Godhead speaks about another person in the Jehovah Godhead. (See Isaiah 48:16 "the Lord God (Father) and his Spirit, hath sent me (Son)"). Rules of Grammar dictate that the sentence be understood as follows:

"Jehovah (the first person=person speaking) said unto Satan (the second person=person spoken to), Jehovah (the third person=person spoken about) rebuke thee."

6. John 1:1 - 'The word was God' (See page 850-855)

a) In John 1:1, the KIT left-hand column states that Jesus is God: 'God was the Word', but in the right-hand column the NWT contradicts the KIT by saying 'the Word was a God'.

<p>1 'Εν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.</p> <p>In beginning was the Word, and the Word was toward the God, and <u>god</u> was the Word.</p>	<p>1 In (the) beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god.*</p>
--	---

Also, see the *Emphatic Diaglott* (a JW version) by Benjamin Wilson who was honest enough to translate John 1:1 correctly in the right-hand column as 'the Logos was God'.

b) In John 1:1 we read of Jesus Christ: "the Word was **WITH** God, and the Word was God". The Watchtower denies that Jesus is fully God, but says that Jesus is a "little God" who is **with Jehovah**. Does such a "little God" exist with Jehovah? No because:

- **Moses** and **Jehovah** contradict the WT by saying in Deuteronomy 32:39: "there is **NO GOD WITH** me".
- **Isaiah** and **Jehovah** also contradict the Watchtower by saying in Isaiah 44:8: "Is there **a God beside me**? yea, there is **no God**; I know not any."

Logic: Since Jesus is not a "little God", and He is **with God**, then He must be **true God**.

Ask: Who do you believe, Jehovah, Moses, and Isaiah on the one hand, or the Watchtower?

7. John 1:3 and **Malachi 2:10. Christ and the Father** are the **ONE GOD of Creation**. In **Malachi 2:10** we read, "hath not **one God** created us?"

Comparing this with the NT, we see this **ONE GOD** of Creation to be Jesus Christ:

"All things were made **by him**; and without him was not anything made that was made." John 1:3. "For **by him** were all things created, . . . all things were created **by him** and for him." (Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:2,10).

Conclusion: Do you agree that this proves that:

If **Jesus Christ** = Creator of all things by himself, and **One God** = Creator, then **Jesus Christ** = the **One God**.

Ask: Why does the WT add "[other]" five times in Colossians 1:16,17,20 when it is not in any Greek manuscript? Not even the JW KIT has "other" in its Greek text. The WT thinks that, by adding "[other]" it will break the connection that proves Jesus Christ is the One God of Creation.

τὰ πάντα	δι'	αὐτοῦ	καὶ	εἰς	αὐτὸν	authorities. All [other] things have been created through him and for him. 17 Also, he is before all [other] things and by means of him all [other] things were made to
the all (things)	through	him	and	into	him	
ἔκτισται·	17	καὶ	αὐτός	ἔστιν	πρὸ	he is before all [other] things and by means of him all [other] things were made to
it has been created;		and	he	is	before	
πάντων	καὶ	τὰ	πάντα	ἐν	αὐτῷ	things and by means of him all [other] things were made to
all (things)	and	the	all (things)	in	him	
συνέστηκεν,	18	καὶ	αὐτός	ἔστιν	ἢ	things were made to
it has stood together,		and	he	is	the	

8. In John 3:13, John states that Jesus Christ is **God** because He is **OMNIPRESENT**: "even the Son of man which **IS IN HEAVEN**". Only God can be in two places at once, on earth talking to Nicodemus and at the same time in heaven. (See p.814).

9. John 4:42 Christ and the Father are the "only Saviour".

In **John 4:42**, the woman at the well declares of Jesus that "this is indeed the Christ, the **Saviour** of the world".

In **Titus 1:3,4**, God and the Lord Jesus Christ are both declared to be "our Saviour": "God our Saviour" (v.3), and "Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour." (Titus 1:4).

Comparing these with **Isaiah 43:11** and **Hosea 13:4** each of which state that there is **NO SAVIOUR BESIDES JEHOVAH**, we learn that because Jesus Christ is **our Saviour** so also He must be **Jehovah God**.

Since **Jehovah God** = our only Saviour, and, Since **Jesus Christ** = our only Saviour, then, **Jehovah God = Jesus Christ**.

This is true because no-one else other than Jehovah is allowed to be "our Saviour".

"I, even I, am Jehovah; and **beside me there is NO SAVIOUR.**" (Isaiah 43:11).

"I am Jehovah thy God . . . **there is NO SAVIOUR beside me.**" (Hosea 13:4).

Ask: Do you agree that because **Jesus** and **Jehovah** are the **only Saviour**, then **Jesus is Jehovah**?

10. John 5:18 - “Therefore the Jews sought the more to kill him, because he . . . said also that God was his Father, MAKING HIMSELF EQUAL WITH GOD.”

Here Jesus makes himself equal with God. Notice:

- a) This is **John’s conclusion**, not only the Jews’ conclusion.
- b) **Jesus did not correct them**, nor deny this as a valid conclusion.

Question: Why did John bother quoting this?

Answer: Because John also believed that **Jesus is equal with God**, and it supported the theme in John’s Gospel that Jesus is the True God.

11. John 5:23 - “That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.”

To honour the **Son even as** you honour the **Father**, means to **treat both of them equally as God.**

Question: Do you give the **Son** worshipful honour **EVEN AS** (KJV) or **JUST AS** (NWT) you honour Jehovah God the Father? (No).

Ask: Do you honour men or Michael the Archangel **even as** you honour the Father? (No.) This proves that the Son is not a mere man, nor is he an angel, but is to be honoured as Jehovah God.

Ask: Do you agree that God here commands us to honour Jesus Christ as God the Father?

12. John 6:46 “Not that any man hath seen the Father”.

This begs the question: “Who then did OT saints see that they declared to be God?”

Example:

The **man on the throne** in Ezekiel 1:26 is identified as the **God of Israel** in Ezekiel 10:20.

This can only be Jesus Christ who is Jehovah God the Son because “Not that any man hath seen the Father.” John 6:46.

13. John 8:24 “If ye believe not that I am (εγω ειμι “ego eimi”), ye shall die in your sins”

Ask: You don’t want to die in your sins, do you? Then you must believe that Jesus is “I am” (εγω ειμι). Christ, by claiming to be “I am” was claiming to be Jehovah God who designated Himself in this way in Exodus 3:14 and in the Greek Septuagint in Isaiah 43:10,

“Be ye my witnessessaith the Lord God (Jehovah) ...that ye may know, and believe, and understand that **I am** (εγω ειμι) he.”

Here Christ claims to be the “I am” Jehovah God of Isaiah 43:10,11 & Exodus 3:14 (LXX, KJV).

If people don’t believe that Jesus is fully God, the “I am” of Exodus 3:14, they will die in their sins without forgiveness. Belief that Jesus Christ is fully God is essential for salvation. Hence JW’s are not saved because they do not believe that Jesus is Jehovah God “I am”.

14. John 8:58 - “Before Abraham was, I am.” (See pages 856-857)

“Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, **Before Abraham was, I am.**”

Jesus attests to his full deity here by **claiming for Himself** the name of God that was revealed to Moses in Exodus 3:14: “God said unto Moses I AM THAT I AM: and he said, thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you.”

The Watchtower **wrongly translates John 8:58** as:

“Before Abraham came into existence, **I have been**”. (NWT).

Jesus did not use the name “**EGO EN**” (“I was” or “I have been”), but **EGO EIMI** (I am).

Note: At Jesus’ claim to be “I AM”, the Jews picked up stones to stone Jesus for blasphemy. If Jesus said what the NWT declares He said (“I have been”) then the Jews would not have attempted to stone Him for blasphemy.

Key: The KIT in the left-hand column has ‘*ego eimi*’ translated correctly as ‘I am’, which contradicts the KIT right-hand column ‘I have been’.

					58 Jesus
58	εἶπεν	αὐτοῖς	Ἰησοῦς	Ἀμὴν	said to them: “Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, <u>I have been.</u> ”
	Said	to them	Jesus	Amen	
	λέγω	ὑμῖν,	πρὶν	Ἀβραάμ	to become
I am saying	to you	Before	Abraham	to become	
ἐγὼ	εἰμί.				
<u>I</u>	<u>am.</u>				

15. John 10:30 – “I and my Father are One. Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.”

Watchtower teaching: What did Jesus mean when He said this to a group of Jews?

JWs quote John 17:21,22, where Jesus prayed to the Father that the disciples “may all be one . . . that they may be one, even as we are one.” JWs say that, since the same Greek word for “one” (en) is used in both passages, Jesus was not praying for His disciples to become a single entity, nor was He praying that they become a part of the Trinity. Instead, He was praying that they have **unity of thought and purpose, just as He and the Father had.** (*Should you believe in the Trinity?* p.24).

Just as Christ and His body members are regarded as one, so are Jehovah and Christ regarded as one. They are all **one in agreement, purpose and organisation.** (*Let God be True*, p104).

Bible Teaching: The context of John 10 proves that **more is meant by “en” than just unity of purpose or agreement.** How do we know this? By the way the Jews responded to Jesus’ claim by picking up stones to stone Him to death. The Jews understood that Jesus was claiming to be fully God, as v.33 states: “For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, **makest thyself God.**”

Ask: (1) Why would the Jews pick up stones to kill Jesus if all He was affirming was His unity of purpose with the Father?

Ask: (2) Didn’t the Jews already have unity of purpose with the Father?

Ask: (3) If Jesus was just stating His unity of purpose with the Father, then why did the Jews understand His words to claim that He was God? (v.33).

Ask: (4) If (as the WT says), the Jews were mistaken in thinking Christ to be God, why didn’t Jesus correct their misunderstanding? Instead, Jesus endorsed their understanding (v.34-38), as seen by them seeking to take Him again in v.39.

The John 17:21 context is very different, as the Greek word for “one” (en) refers to unity among people tending to be divisive over various issues. That is why Christ prayed for unity among believers.

The way the word “one” is used in John 17:21 does not determine its meaning in John 10:30.

Ask: (5) If the oneness that Christ shares with the Father is identical to the oneness that believers have with Christ, then all believers should be able to insert their names in these verses:

- “I (your name) and the Father are one.” (John 10:30, NWT)

- He who does not honour (your name) does not honour the Father who sent him.” John 5:23.

- “All things that the Father hath are Mine (your name).” (John 16:15).

Ask: (6) Are you willing to insert your name in these verses? Obviously not!

16. John 10:33 “thou being a man, makest thyself God.”

In John 10:33, John records and endorses the Jews’ accusation that Jesus is **claiming to be God:** “For a good work we stone thee not; but for blasphemy; and because that thou, being a man, **makest thyself GOD.**” v.33.

“Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, Ye are gods?” v.34.

Watchtower Teaching: To this, JW's reply that Jesus was denying being God, claiming to be no more God than the Jews.

Bible Teaching:

v.34 “Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law (Old Testament law in Psalm 82:1,6,7), I said, **ye are gods?** (Hebrew “gods”= *elohim*⁴³⁰).

v.35 “If he called them (Old Testament Jewish judges or magistrates) gods unto whom the word of God came (Jewish magistrates were entrusted with judging justly).

v.36 “Say ye (Jesus’ listeners) of him (Christ), whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, “Thou (Jesus) blasphemest”; because I said, I am the Son of God?”

v.39 Therefore they **sought again to take him** . . .”.

Jesus’ words, rather than denying His deity, still left the Jews understanding that He was claiming full deity and equality with God because they still sought to arrest him for blasphemy. (v.31-33 and 39).

Explanation: Jesus in v 34 is quoting from Psalm 82:1-6 which says:

v.1 “God standeth in the congregation of the mighty; he judgeth among the **gods** (*Elohim*⁴³⁰)

v.2 “How long will ye judge unjustly . . .?”

v.6 “I have said, **Ye are gods**⁴³⁰ and all of you are children of the most High”.

v.7 “But ye shall die like men . . .”

“Ye are gods” is said of magistrates, because of the dignity and honour of their office.

It shows that the word translated “gods” (*Elohim*) can rightly be applied to men, though rare.

It applied to Moses (Exodus 7:1; 4:16) and to magistrates (Exodus 21:6; 22:8,9) because they were representing God. The meaning is:

If the Scripture applies the word “god” to earthly magistrates, it is right to apply the term to those in office and authority. If applied to magistrates, it cannot therefore be blasphemy to use this word of Jesus Christ the Messiah who is so much more exalted and sanctified by the Father than earthly magistrates.

Note: 1) Jesus did not deny that he meant to apply the term to himself, as seen by His using the expressions “I and my Father are one” v.30; “Son of God” v.36, and “god” v.34.

2) Jesus did not deny that it was properly applied to himself.

3) Jesus did not deny that it implied that he was God.

Key: Jesus stated only that they were **inconsistent** in applying “**Elohim**” (god) to human magistrates and not allowing it also to be applied to Jesus Christ as Messiah.

Hence, Jesus said that the Jews were not authorised to charge him with blasphemy for applying “god” to himself, because the law applied “**Elohim**” (gods) to human judges and because God endorsed Jesus as “Son of God” by His miracles.

17. John 17:5 Christ and Father share the same glory, that Jehovah won’t give to another.

In John 17:5 Jesus said that before the world existed, He had the **same glory** as the Father:

“And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self **with the glory which I had with thee** before the world was.” (John 17:5).

Comparing this with **Isaiah 42:8** we see that Jehovah will not give his glory to another:

“I am the LORD (Jehovah): that is my name: and **my glory will I not give to another**”.

Conclusion: Because Jesus shared the same glory with the Father, and because this glory is exclusively Jehovah’s and no one else’s, then this proves that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God.

18. John 20:28 “Thomas answered and said unto him, “**My Lord and my God**”.”

Thomas addresses Jesus as “My Lord and **my God**”, thus recognizing Jesus as Jehovah God the Son. Jesus commended Thomas on his belated acknowledgement of Jesus as God.

Watchtower Teaching: JW’s dismiss this verse as a simple record of Thomas’ shock and surprise at seeing the risen Christ. A modern parallel might be “Oh, my God!”

Perhaps Thomas was making an emotional exclamation that was directed to Jehovah God, though spoken to Jesus. (*Should you Believe in Trinity, p.29*).

Bible Teaching:

- a) If Thomas said, “My Lord and my God” as expressing shock or surprise, then he would have been guilty of **blasphemy**, and of taking God’s name in vain.
First century Jews regarded any careless use of God’s name as **blasphemy**.
- b) If Thomas had taken God’s Name in vain, Jesus clearly would have **rebuked him** for it.
- c) Instead, Jesus **commended** Thomas for believing that Jesus was both Lord and God. (“Thomas, because thou hast seen me thou hast believed” v.29).
If Jesus was only a man or a god, He should have corrected Thomas’ wrong opinion, but Jesus reinforced Thomas’ conclusion here.
- d) Thomas wasn’t calling Jesus “a god”; he was calling Jesus **his Lord and his God**.
If Jesus was not Almighty God, He would have corrected Thomas by saying something like, “No, I am just a god, a lesser god. Jehovah is the only true God. You must not put me in Jehovah’s place. Only Jehovah may be called my Lord and my God.” But Jesus said no such nonsense. He commended Thomas for recognizing Him as the true God.
If Thomas said “My Lord and my God” as an emotional exclamation of astonishment, as JW’s think, then Thomas would be **talking to himself**.
But v.28 states he was talking to Jesus by using the word “him”.

Ask:

- 1) If Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn’t this be taking God’s Name in vain?
- 2) If Thomas took God’s Name in vain, don’t you think Jesus would have rebuked him?
- 3) Why do you think that Jesus commended Thomas, instead of rebuking him?
- 4) What did Thomas believe in John 20:28,29? (**Answer:** That Jesus was Lord and God).
- 5) Thomas here quotes **Psalm 35:23** which is **used of Jehovah**:
“O LORD (Jehovah) . . . my God and my Lord.”
- 6) When a Hebrew says “my God”, he means **Jehovah**. (*Aid to Bible Understanding, p.133,134*).
- 7) The JW KIT on John 20:28 is translated as: “The Lord of me and **the God** of me.”

The JW KIT (1985) calls Jesus in John 20:28 “**the God** (ὁ θεός) of me”, a title that JW’s reserve **only for God**. (Theos preceded by the definite article “ὁ”).

	28 ἀπεκρίθη	
	Answered	
Θωμᾶς καὶ εἶπεν	αὐτῷ Ὁ κύριός μου καὶ	28 In answer Thomas
Thomas and he said	to him The Lord of me and	said to him: “My
ὁ θεός μου.	29 λέγει αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς	Lord and my God!”
the God of me!	Is saying to him the Jesus	

19. Acts 20:28 - “Feed the church of **God**, which he hath purchased with **his own blood**.” (See page 843)

20. Romans 10:9 “**Ha Adon**” = the True Lord (of Isaiah 1:24):

In Romans 10:9, the right-hand column of KIT says, “if you publicly declare . that Jesus is **Lord**...you will be saved”. The left-hand column has *Kurios* translated as “Lord”.

Note: The footnote lists 7 Hebrew New Testaments (J^{12, 13, 14}, J^{16, 17, 18}, J²²) which call Jesus by the title “**ha-Adon**”, then they state “not Jehovah”.

Whoever wrote this footnote must have forgotten what the NWT (1961 edition appendix said under the heading “**Isaiah 1:24 - the true Lord**” as follows:

“This is the translation of the Hebrew expression “**ha-Adon**”, this being the title “**Adon**” (Lord or Master) preceded by the definite article “**ha**”. Although there are many lords or masters, this prefixing of the definite article before the title Adon limited the application of the title to JEHOVAH GOD.” (Gesenius Grammar, Section 126, paragraph d, p.404,405).

In the Hebrew OT, “**ha-Adon**” occurs nine times: Exodus 23:17; 34:23; Isaiah 1:24; 3:1; 10:16,33; 19:4; Micah 4:13; Malachi 3:1 “Suddenly there will come to His temple the **true Lord** whom you people are seeking”.

This refers to Jesus coming to the temple and casting out the money changers. John 2:13-17.

Conclusion: The KIT contradicts itself by saying that Jesus is “not Jehovah”, then giving a footnote saying that He is Jehovah (ha-Adon) according to the NWT (1961 edition, p.1453).

21. I Corinthians 15:47 - “the second man is the Lord from heaven” (KJV).

In I Corinthians 15:47, Paul states that Jesus Christ is “**the LORD** from heaven”, not as NWT reads “the second man is from heaven”, because:

- a) **No man** hath ascended to heaven (John 3:13), and
- b) Before Christ’s conception, He was in heaven and He was **not a man**.

Watchtower Teaching: “the second man is (OMIT) out of heaven.” (NWT)

The NWT, like other modern versions, is based on the Westcott and Hort Greek Text, which in turn is derived mostly from Codex Vaticanus, a corrupted 4th Century manuscript from Egypt, which is at variance with the Majority of NT readings.

Bible Teaching: The majority of manuscripts read “the Lord”.

Question: Isn’t it coincidental that all modern versions, based on the corrupt Egyptian readings, have one major fact in common: that they omit many Deity of Christ verses?

The KJV “the second man is **the Lord** from heaven” is a clear proof of Christ being God, as there is only one Lord from Heaven, and He is “Jehovah”.

What manuscript support is there for “the Lord” in I Corinthians 15:47? See *UBS Greek NT:*

(1) **Thirteen early writers** known as **Church Fathers** quote it:

- a) **Hippolytus** 170-236 AD, Vol. 5, p 167

HIPP. Who else is this than as is shown us by the apostle, “the second man, the Lord from heaven?” ¹⁴

- b) **Tertullian** 200-250 AD against Marcion, Vol. 3, page 451

In like manner (the heretic) will be refuted also with the word “*man*.” “The first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven.” ²

Vol.3, page 529

We read in so many words: ¹¹ “The first man is of the earth, earthy; the second man is the Lord from heaven.” ¹²

- c) **Victorinus**, Vol 7, page 342

Therefore, first, was made the creation; secondly, man, the lord of the human race, as says the apostle. ¹⁹

- d) **Basil** 379 AD
- e) **Chrysostom** 407 AD
- f) **Maximinus** 428 AD
- g) **Cyril** 444 AD
- h) **Euthalius** 450 AD
- i) **Theodoret** 466 AD
- j) **Ps-Athanasius** 550 AD
- k) **Cosmas** 550 AD
- l) **John Damascus** 749 AD
- m) **Origen** 254 AD

(2) **Six Uncial Greek Manuscripts** contain “the Lord”:

- a) Codex Sinaiticus corrected (Aleph)
- b) Codex Alexandrinus (A)
- c) Codices D, K, P, Ψ.

(3) **Nineteen Minuscule Greek Manuscripts** numbered 81, 104, 181, 326, 330 436, 451, 614, 629, 1241, 1739, 1877, 1881, 1962, 1984, 1985, 2127, 2492, 2495.

(4) **Byzantine lectionaries** contain the words “the Lord”.

(5) **Ancient versions** containing “the Lord” are:

- a) Syriac Peshitta
- b) Syriac Harclean
- c) Syriac Palestinian
- d) Gothic
- e) Armenian

Conclusion: 44 ancient witnesses from all over the ancient world testify to Jesus Christ as being “the Lord from heaven”. NWT is wrong here because no man originated from heaven.

22. I Timothy 3:16 - “God was manifest in the flesh.” (KJV). (See page 804).

Paul states that Jesus Christ is “**God** was manifest in the flesh”.

Watchtower Teaching: “He was made manifest in the flesh” (NWT)

Bible Teaching: “God” is the correct reading, not “He”, because

1. Of the 300 Greek manuscripts containing I Timothy 3:16, only five late cursive manuscripts (9th, 12th, 13th Century) omit “God”. The Uncials, Aleph, A and C have been altered so that either “God” or “who” can be deduced. Codex Alexandrinus “A” (450 AD) quotes “God”. Although the middle stroke which distinguishes “God” from “who” has been retouched, the fine original stroke is discernible at each end of the fuller stroke of the corrector. (Wetstein, 1716, quoted in “*True or False*” p.33 D.O.Fuller).

2. **The following early church writers** have “**God**” (Greek: “theos” for God):

- 1) Ignatius (90 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times
- 2) Barnabus (90 AD)
- 3) Hippolytus (190 AD) quotes “theos” twice
- 4) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD)
- 5) Gregory of Nyssa (394 AD), quotes “theos” 22 times
- 6) Gregory of Nazianzus (390 AD) quotes “theos” 2 times.
- 7) Dionysius of Alexandria (265 AD).
- 8) Didymus of Alexandria (398 AD).
- 9) Diodorus of Tarsus (394 AD).
- 10) Chrysostom (407 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times.
- 11) Cyril of Alexandria (444 AD) quotes “theos” 3 times.
- 12) Theodoret (466 AD) quotes “theos” 4 times.
- 13) Severus, bishop of Antioch (512 AD).
- 14) Macedonius (506 AD).
- 15) Euthalius (400 AD).
- 16) Thaumaturgus (270 AD).
- 17) Constitutiones Apostolicae (250 AD).
- 18) John Damascene (730 AD) quotes “theos” twice.
- 19) Epiphanius, Deacon of Catania (787 AD).
- 20) Several ancient scholia.

3. **Ancient versions** quoting “God” in I Timothy 3:16 are:
- 1) Georgian version (500 AD)
 - 2) Harklean version (616 AD)
 - 3) Slavonic version (800 AD)
4. **All the Byzantine Lectionaries** read in assemblies of the faithful from 300 AD onwards.
5. Those few manuscripts which have “who” (os) in the place of “God” (theos), do not have a complete sentence without the subject “God”.
6. A **neuter noun** “mystery” cannot be followed by the **masculine** pronoun “who” (os).
7. **To avoid having a clause with no subject**, the NWT arbitrarily drops the word “who” (os), and **invents a new word “He”** which is **not found** in any Greek manuscript.

See “*The Revision Revised*”, Dean Burgon, p.485-497.

ἀληθείας·	16	καὶ	ὁμολογουμένως	μέγα	ἐστὶν	the truth. 16
truth;		and	confessedly	great	is	Indeed,
τὸ	τῆς	εὐσεβείας	μυστήριον·	ὅς	ἐστὶν	the sacred secret of
the	of the	revering well	mystery;	Who	is	this godly devotion* is
ἐφανερώθη	ἐν	σαρκί,	ἐδικαιώθη	ἐν	ἐν	admittedly great: <u>He</u>
was manifested	in	flesh,	was justified	in	in	was made manifest
						in flesh, was declared

Conclusion:

- 1) “God” (theos) in I Timothy 3:16 is witnessed by exactly 300 Greek manuscripts, by 3 ancient versions, and by 20 early church writers.
 - 2) “Who” (os) in the place of “theos”, is quoted by only 6 manuscripts, by one version, and certainly by no church writers.
 - 3) “o” is quoted by one Greek manuscript (D), by 5 ancient versions & 2 late Greek writers.
- Hence the NWT has no manuscript support for “He”, compared with 323 major witnesses for “God” (“theos”).

Question: Whom would you choose to believe: 323 witnesses for “God” or none for “He”?

23. Titus 2:13 - “the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.” (See page 847-849)

24. Hebrews 1:6 - “Let all the angels of God worship him.”

Question: Would it be right to give the same worshipful honour to the Son, which is given to the Father (John 5:23)? (See page 846-847).

25. Hebrews 1:8 - “But unto the Son he saith, “Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever”“ (See page 844-845)

26. Hebrews 1:10 - “And Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands. . . . thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.” (v.12)

Verse 10 is the second Old Testament passage applied to the Son, after Hebrews 1:8.

Hebrews 1:10 is quoted from Psalm 102:25,26,27 which is introduced in Psalm 102:1 as a prayer to God as the Creator (“Hear my prayer, O Jehovah”).

In Hebrews 1:10,11,12 the writer applies Psalm 102:25-27 to Christ as Jehovah the Creator. This proves that the Son is Jehovah, who created the heavens and the earth.

Note: In Hebrews 1, Jesus is declared to be God, because He is:

- 1) **Creator** (v 2,10) “by whom also he made the worlds”;
- 2) The **same substance as the Father, just as the Sun’s rays** (*Alpha, Beta, Gamma rays*) are the **same substance as the sun**) (“the brightness of the Father’s glory” v.3).
- 3) The **express (exact) image** of the Father’s person (v.3).

- 4) **Omnipotent** and **Omnipresent**: “upholding all things by the word of His power.” (v.3).
- 5) Father/Son relationship.
- 6) **Worshipped** as God (v.6).
- 7) **Addressed** as God (v.8).
- 8) Has the same **Throne** as God (v.8).
- 9) **Unchangeable** and **Eternal** (v.12).

27. II Peter 1:1 - “the righteousness of God and our Saviour Jesus Christ.”

(See page 849-850). ”God and our Saviour” refer to Jesus Christ by the Granville Sharp rule.

28. Revelation 1:8 and 22:13 - “The Alpha and Omega.”

Christ and the Father are both called “Alpha and Omega”, “the beginning and the end”, “the first and the last”.

“I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.” (Revelation 22:13)

Jesus here clearly claims to be Jehovah God, because God claims the same titles to Himself in Revelation 21:6; 1:8; Isaiah 44:6 and 48:12.

“Alpha and Omega” to the Jews meant all the intermediate letters, signifying totality or entirety. Hence, when used of God (or Christ), “Alpha and Omega” represents the eternal, Almighty God, who has always existed in the past and who will always exist in the future. For any created being to claim to be the Alpha and Omega would be sheer blasphemy.

Ask: Since Jesus in Revelation 22:13 claims to be the “First and the last”, as well as “Alpha and Omega” - and since Jehovah God in Isaiah 44:6 says: “I am the first, and I am the last, besides me there is no God” - what must we conclude about Jesus Christ’s true identity?

Jesus Christ is God because both are called “Alpha and Omega” and “the beginning and the end”			
GOD	=	JESUS CHRIST	= GOD
Revelation 21:5,6,7 “I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end”		Revelation 22:12-16 “I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.”	Revelation 1:8 “I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.”
refers to God because: i) I will be his God (v 7) ii) He that sat upon the throne (v 5.)		refers to Jesus Christ because: i) Behold, I come quickly (v 12) ii) I Jesus (v.16) iii) I am the root and offspring of David (v.16) iv) I am the bright and morning star (v.16) v) <i>Watchtower</i> , Oct.1, 1978, p.15, “Jesus.. I am coming quickly.” vi) “the First and the Last” (v.13)	refers to God because: i) v.8 says Jehovah God ii) v.8 says the Almighty
Jesus Christ is God because both are called “the first and the last”.			
GOD	GOD	=	JESUS CHRIST
Isaiah 48:12 “I am the first. I am the last”	Isaiah 44:6 “I am the first, and I am the last.”		Revelation 2:8 “the First and the Last.”
refers to God because: “My own hand laid the foundation of the earth.” (v 13)	“beside me there is no God. ”		Revelation 1:17,18 “I am the First and the Last.”
		refers to Jesus Christ “who became dead and came to life.”	refers to Jesus Christ because “I am he that liveth and was dead” (v.18)

29. Psalm 103:19 “**Jehovah hath prepared his throne in the heavens; and his kingdom ruleth over all,**” and **Matthew 11:25** “I thank thee, O Father, **Lord of heaven and earth**”.
Acts 10:36 “**Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all).**”

I Corinthians 2:8 “Had they known it they would not have crucified **the Lord of glory.**”

I Corinthians 12:3 “No man can say that **Jesus is the Lord** but by the Holy Ghost.”

I Corinthians 15:47 “the second man is **the Lord from heaven.**”

II Corinthians 4:5 “We preach not ourselves, but **Christ Jesus the Lord.**”

Philippians 2:11 “Every tongue should confess that **Jesus Christ is Lord**”.

Luke 2:11 “For unto you is born this day a Saviour which is **Christ the Lord.**”

As the Roman Caesars claimed to be God by the title “Caesar is Lord”, so Paul and early Christians stated their belief that Jesus is God by the declaration that “Jesus is Lord”.

As the Father is Lord of all, so is Jesus Christ Lord of all. Hence Jesus Christ is fully God.

30. Jesus and Jehovah own the same throne, servants, face, name, priests, temple and light:

i) Both occupy the same THRONE.

“flowing out from the throne (of God and of the Lamb).” (Revelation 22:1,3).

Yes, God and the Lamb occupy the **same throne**, not two thrones indicating inequality of rank or nature, but **ONE THRONE** indicating **EQUALITY of rank and nature.**

ii) Both own the SERVANTS. (Revelation 22:3).

“the throne (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; and **HIS SERVANTS** shall serve **HIM**”.

Both Jehovah and Jesus are referred to as “**HIS**” and “**HIM**” (singular =one Triune God).

iii) Both have the same FACE.

“they shall see **HIS** face.” (Revelation 22:4) not “their faces” but “**his** face”.

iv) Both have the same NAME.

“**HIS** name shall be in their foreheads.” (Revelation 22:4).

God and the Lamb have the **same NAME**, not “their names” but “**His** name”.

v) Both own the first resurrection PRIESTS. (Revelation 20:6).

“they shall be **priests** (of God and of Christ), and shall reign with **HIM** a thousand years”.

God and Christ are referred to as **HIM** (singular), not “they” (not two gods).

vi) Both God and the Lamb are the TEMPLE of the New Jerusalem.

“for (the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb) are the **temple** of it.” (Revelation 21:22).

God and Christ are the **same TEMPLE** (singular), not temples (plural).

vii) Both God and the Lamb are the LIGHT of the New Jerusalem.

“for (the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the **light**) thereof.” Revelation 21:23.

God and Christ are the **same light source** (singular), not lights (plural).

31. Colossians 2:9 “In him (Christ) dwells **all the fullness** (exhausts the limits) of the Godhead bodily. **32. Micah 5:2 says of Christ:** “whose (Christ’s) goings forth have been from of **old** (Heb: qedmah ⁶⁹²⁴ =eternal), from **everlasting** (Heb: olam ⁵⁷⁶⁹ =eternity)”. **Habakkuk 1:12** uses (qedmah) the same word of **Jehovah:** “Art thou not from **everlasting** (Heb: qedmah ⁶⁹²⁴ = eternal) O Jehovah my God.”

33. I John 5:20 “...in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the **true God**, and eternal life”.

34. Malachi 3:1 “the Lord (Heb: Ha Adon= God) shall suddenly come to his temple.” Jesus fulfilled this as God coming to His temple in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 “My house..”

Conclusion: JW, has it ever occurred to you that Jesus Christ just might be Jehovah the Son (Huios)? If He is, then what? When justice called for you to be cast into hell forever, mercy answered by putting Jesus of Nazareth to death in your place. If you call on Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ, to be your Saviour now, He will save you and give you eternal life.

When the Watchtower prophecy of the world ending in 1975 failed, 2000 WT congregations disappeared worldwide and over 1 million people left the organisation.

Why don't you leave the WT today and come to Jesus Christ for salvation?

II. BOTH the FATHER and the SON HAVE the SAME 120 ATTRIBUTES, CLAIMS and MAJESTY.

See page 811 for a list of 120 attributes that are true of both God the Father and God the Son. "I am Jehovah - that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another." (Isaiah 62:8). The glory of these 120 attributes are jointly owned by the Father and the Son, and nobody else. Jesus Christ is Jehovah God, equally with the Father, because both the Father and Son alone have the following attributes:

1. both are to be **honoured equally** (John 5:23)
2. both are the **I AM** (Exodus 3:14-15; John 8:24,58)
3. both are the **Mighty God** (Isaiah 10:20,21; Jer 32:18; Psalm 50:1; Isaiah 9:6; Gen 49:24)
4. both own the **same throne** (Psalm 45:6,7; Hebrews 1:8; Revelation 22:1,3)
5. both accept **worship** (Exodus 34:14; I Chronicles 16:29; Hebrews 1:6; Matthew 28:9)
6. both **laid the foundation of the earth** (Psalm 102:24-27; Isaiah 48:13; Hebrews 1:10-12)
7. One God has **created mankind** (Mal.2:10; Prov.16:4; Isaiah 44:24; Col 1:16; John 1:3)
8. both are the **Shepherd** (Psalm 80:1; Gen 49:24; John 10:11; Hebrews 13:20; I Peter 5:4)
9. both are from **Everlasting** (Psalm 90:2; Habakkuk 1:12; Micah 5:2; Hebrews 7:3).
10. both are the **First and Last** (Isaiah 44:6; Revelation 1:17,18; Rev. 2:8; See p.54.)
11. both are the **Alpha and Omega** (Revelation 1:8; 21:5-7; 22:13-16; See p.54)
12. both come and **Reward** (Isaiah 40:10; 62:11; Revelation 22:12)
13. both are **unchangeable** (Malachi 3:6; Hebrews 13:8)
14. both have **unsearchable riches** (Romans 11:33; Ephesians 3:8)
15. both are the **Holy One** (Isaiah 43:15; Acts 3:14)
16. both are **omnipresent** and **fill all things** (Psalm 139:7; Jer. 23:24; Eph. 4:10; John 3:13)
17. both are **omniscient** (Psalm 147:5; Prov. 14:3; John 21:17; John 16:30; Colossians 2:3)
18. both are **omnipotent** (Genesis 17:1; Matthew 28:18; Hebrews 1:3)
19. both are **eternal** (Deuteronomy 33:27; Hebrews 7:3; Micah 5:2)
20. both own the **everlasting Kingdom** (Psalm 145:13; Daniel 7:14; II Peter 1:11)
21. both are **Lord of all** (Psalm 103:19; Matthew 11:25; Acts 10:36)
22. both are the **only Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11; Titus 1:3,4; Philippians 3:20; II Peter 1:1; 3:18; Luke 2:11; Hebrews 5:9; Acts 4:12)
23. both are the **Truth** (Deuteronomy 32:4; John 14:6)
24. both are **sinless** (Deuteronomy 32:4; Hebrews 4:15)
25. both are **in the beginning** (Genesis 1:1; John 1:1)
26. both God and the Son are **the Judge** (Psalm 82:8; John 5:22), but the **Father is not the Judge** (John 5:22 "The Father judgeth no man").
27. both are **our Hope** (Psalm 39:7; I Timothy 1:1)
28. both **shelter believers under their wings** (Psalm 91:2,4; Matthew 23:37)
29. both are **our Redeemer** (Psalm 130:7,8; Isaiah 44:6; Galatians 3:13; Titus 2:14)
30. the **glory** of both was **seen by Isaiah** (Isaiah 6:3,5; John 12:41)
31. both are **the Rock** (Deuteronomy 32:3,4,18; Psalm 18:31; I Corinthians 10:4)
32. both are to be **looked to** for salvation (Isaiah 45:22; John 1:29; John 6:40)
33. to both shall **every knee bow** and **every tongue confess** (Isaiah 45:23; Philippians 2:10; Romans 14:10,11)
34. the **enemies** of both shall **perish** (Psalm 92:9; Philippians 3:18,19)
35. both **send the Holy Spirit** (Joel 2:28; John 16:7)
36. to both shall **all men come** (Psalm 65:2; Isaiah 45:24; John 12:32)
37. both **forgive sins** (Exodus 34:7; Mark 2:5,7; Colossians 3:13)

38. both **blot out sin** (Isaiah 43:25; Hebrews 1:3; I John 1:7)
39. both **still storms** (Psalm 107:29; Matthew 8:26)
40. both **own the Holy Spirit** (Matthew 10:20; Romans 8:9)
41. both **seek the lost** (Ezekiel 34:16; Luke 19:10)
42. to both are **applied 10 aspects of the Lord's Prayer** (Matthew 6:9-13; see page 954)
43. both **receive believers to glory** (Psalm 73:24; John 14:3)
44. both are our **One Master** (Malachi 1:6; Matthew 23:8,10)
45. both are **served by believers** (Deuteronomy 10:20; Colossians 3:24)
46. both **lead believers to living waters** (Psalm 23:2; Revelation 7:17)
47. both **correct believers** (Proverbs 3:12; Revelation 3:19)
48. both **prepare a place for believers** in heaven (Hebrews 11:16; John 14:2)
49. both are **all in all** (I Corinthians 15:28; Colossians 3:11)
50. both are **known** by believers (Galatians 4:9; Philippians 3:10; John 17:3)
51. both are **cleaved to** by believers (Deuteronomy 10:20; John 15:4)
52. both are the **light of the world** (Psalm 27:1; John 8:12)
53. both are the **Light** of the New Jerusalem (Isaiah 60:19,20; Revelation 21:23)
54. both **give eternal life** (Psalm 36:9; John 10:28)
55. both are called "**My Lord and my God**" (Psalm 35:22,23; John 20:28)
56. both are **our Righteousness** (Isaiah 45:24; I Corinthians 1:30; Jeremiah 23:5,6)
57. both have the **same voice as of many waters** (Ezekiel 43:2; Revelation 1:15)
58. both are **witnessed to by believers** (Isaiah 43:10; Acts 1:8)
59. both **own the peace given to believers** (Philippians 4:7; John 14:27)
60. both **own the gospel** (I Thessalonians 2:2; Romans 1:16)
61. both **give saving grace** (Titus 2:11; Acts 15:11)
62. both are **our peace** (Judges 6:24; Ephesians 2:14)
63. both are **pierced and looked upon** (Zechariah 12:10; John 19:37)
64. both **sanctify believers** (Exodus 31:13; I Corinthians 6:11)
65. both **give victory** to believers (Psalm 98:1; I Corinthians 15:57)
66. both **heal people** (Exodus 15:26; Matthew 9:35)
67. both equally **own the churches** (I Corinthians 15:9; Romans 16:16; I and II Thess. 1:1)
68. both own the **Kingdom** (Matthew 6:33; Rev. 11:15).
69. both are **glorified by the Gentiles** (Isaiah 24:15; II Thessalonians 1:12; Matthew 12:21)
70. both own the **Day of the Lord** (Isaiah 13:6; Philippians 1:6; II Thessalonians 2:2)
71. both **give grace to believers** (Romans 5:15; Colossians 1:6; II Cor. 8:9; Galatians 6:18)
72. both **own the same glory** (Romans 5:2; II Corinthians 8:23)
73. both own the **same love** (John 5:42; II Corinthians 5:14)
74. both own the **same Word** (Psalm 119:11; I Thessalonians 2:13; Colossians 3:16)
75. both own **salvation** (Luke 3:6; Jonah 2:9; Acts 4:12; II Timothy 2:10)
76. both were **served equally by Paul** (Titus 1:1; Romans 1:1); and by James (James 1:1)
77. both own the **commandments** (I John 5:3; John 14:15)
78. both had their **way prepared** by John the Baptist (Isaiah 40:3; Mark 1:1-3)
79. both **search all hearts** (Psalm 139:1; Revelation 2:23)
80. both **own the same flock** (I Peter 5:2; John 21:15,16)
81. both **ascend on high, lead captivity captive, and give gifts to men** (Psalm 68:17,18; Ephesians 4:7-10)
82. both are **like a Bridegroom** (Isaiah 62:5; Mark 2:19,20)

83. both **receive the glory of God alone** forever and ever (Isaiah 42:8; Galatians 1:4,5; I Peter 5:10,11; II Peter 3:18; Hebrews 13:21; I Peter 4:11; Revelation 1:5,6)
84. both are the **source of fruit** (Hosea 14:8; John 15:5)
85. both are our **source of strength** (Psalm 119:28; Philippians 4:13)
86. both **give rest for our souls** (Jeremiah 6:16; Matthew 11:29)
87. both **shall appear at Christ's return** (Psalm 102:16; Zechariah 14:3,4,5; Titus 2:13)
88. both **will come to earth** (Isaiah 40:10; Revelation 22:7,12,20)
89. both are to be **trusted in** (Jeremiah 17:7; Ephesians 1:12; John 14:1)
90. both are **our King** (Isaiah 6:5; 33:22; Revelation 17:14; 19:16; I Timothy 6:14,15)
91. both will **wound their enemies' heads** (Psalm 68:21; 110:6)
92. both take **vengeance** (Romans 12:19; II Thessalonians 1:7,8)
93. both will be **opposed by the Antichrist's armies** (Isaiah 34:22; Revelation 19:19)
94. both will **fight against the Antichrist's armies** at Armageddon (Zechariah 14:3; Revelation 19:11,13,21)
95. both will **destroy death** (Isaiah 25:8; II Timothy 1:10).
96. both **receive the faith of believers** (I Thessalonians 1:8; Galatians 3:26)
97. both are **our life** (Deuteronomy 30:20; Colossians 3:4)
98. both are **to be prayed to** (Matthew 6:9; Acts 7:59)
99. both **raised up Christ** (Acts 2:32; John 2:19,21)
100. both **own all of the other** (John 16:15)
101. both **enter the east gate of Jerusalem** (Ezekiel 44:1,2; Luke 19:37-45)
102. the **man on the throne** in Ezekiel 1:26 **is identified as the God of Israel** in Ezek 10:20
103. both names are placed on the **same level in the baptism formula** (Matthew 28:19)
104. both **fellowship equally with believers** (I John 1:3).
105. both **comfort believers** (Isaiah 66:13; Philippians 2:1).
106. both **receive doxologies of worship in heaven** (Revelation 5:8-10; 5:11,12; 5:13,14).
107. both **jointly send grace and peace** to the churches (Romans 1:7).
108. both the **love of the Father & love of the Son** are an equal privilege given to us (John 14:21)
109. both jointly **declare themselves to be Jehovah**, "I am the first, & I am the last." Isaiah 44:6
110. both **come to his temple**, "the Lord shall suddenly come to his temple." Malachi 3:1; Mat 21:13
111. both are the **King of Israel** (Isaiah 44:6; John 1:49).
112. both can be **blasphemed** (God-Rom.2:24; HS-Luke 12:10; Christ-Luk22:65; Acts 13:45; 18:5,6; 26:9,11)
113. both are **always with all believers** (Matthew 28:20; 2 Corinthians 13:14).
114. both are the **one lawgiver** (God-Rom.7:22; Christ-Gal.6:2; HS-Rom.8:2; James 4:12).
115. both have the **same face** (Revelation 22:3,4)
116. both have the **same Name** (Revelation 22:3,4)
117. both own the **same servants** (Revelation 22:3)
118. both are the **Temple** of the New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:22)
119. **Heavens are the work of thy hands** (Psalm 102:24-27; Hebrews 1:10-12)
120. **both are called the Ancient of Days**. (Daniel 7:9,13,22; Revelation 1:13-15).

Since both Jesus and the Father have these same attributes, both are Jehovah God.

There are not 2 Gods, but One God in 3 persons. One who has these attributes must be God.

The Lord's Prayer is devoted to worshipping the Father. Jesus conceals His personal glory in this prayer as seen by other Scriptures which are just as true of Christ as the Lord's Prayer is of the Father. Notice the Scriptures, said of Christ, that prove we could address the Lord's Prayer to the Son on page 815.

III. APPEARANCE OF JEHOVAH THE SON TO OLD TESTAMENT SAINTS WHO WORSHIPPED HIM.

The One who appears in the form of an angel or man, is, in the immediate context, declared to be God, or Jehovah. Who was this Being? He was not the Father, because no man has seen Him at any time, or can see Him and live (Exodus 33:20; John 6:46; 1:18).

He who appeared was Jehovah God the Son, the Word, as seen in these examples.

Jesus Christ was worshipped on 17 NT occasions, yet we never find Him refusing worship. Notice these pre-incarnate appearances of God the Son being seen and accepting worship.

- i) It was God the Son whom Ezekiel saw and worshipped as a man sitting on the throne (Ezekiel 1:26) who was later identified as the God of Israel (Ezekiel 10:20). “Upon the likeness of the throne was the likeness as the appearance of a man above upon it.” (Ezek 1:26,28)
- ii) The elders saw the God of Israel. (Exodus 24:9,10,11). This was God the Son.
- iii) It was God the Son whom Moses worshipped, as the Angel of Jehovah at the bush. “The angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush.” (Exodus 3:2). “God called unto him out of the midst of the bush.” (Exodus 3:4).
- iv) It was God the Son with whom Jacob wrestled: “I have seen God face to face” Gen32:28,30
- v) It was God the Son whom Joshua worshipped. This worship was accepted by this person known as the Captain of the host of the Lord (Jehovah). (He “did worship” Joshua 5:14).
- vi) It was God the Son whom Manoah (father of Samson) saw, saying, “We shall surely die, because we have seen God.” (Judges 13:22)
- vii) Isaiah cried, “Woe is me! for I am undone . . . for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord (Jehovah) of hosts.” (Isaiah 6:5). In John 12:41, John says this was God the Son: “These things said Esaias, when he saw his (Christ’s) glory, and spake of him.”
- viii) It was God the Son who spoke to Hagar (Gen. 16:7-14) “Jehovah that spake unto her” 13.
- ix) “Jehovah went before them” in Exodus 13:21 is said to be “the angel of God which went before” (Exodus 14:19), and led Israel in a pillar of cloud by day & a pillar of fire by night.

IV. NEW TESTAMENT EXAMPLES OF PRAYER TO CHRIST:

The Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT) teaches prayer to Jesus.

The Watchtower teaches that prayer should be addressed only to Jehovah God.

“Prayer should be directed only to the Creator, Jehovah.” (*The Truth That Leads to Eternal Life*, 1968, p152)

Consider these prayers directed to Jesus:

i) STEPHEN at his martyrdom, prayed to Jesus saying: “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.” (Acts 7:59). Stephen worshipped Christ with his dying breath as very and eternal God.

Ask: Isn’t this prayer to Jesus?

ii) The KIT tells us to pray to Jesus:

“if ever anything you should ask me in the name of me this I shall do” (John 14:14, KIT, p483).

Here Jesus invites us to beseech HIM in prayer, and in the authority of His own name.

If a JW should ever pray aloud to Jesus in a Kingdom Hall, he’d be disfellowshipped.

<p>14 ἔάν τι αἰτήσητέ με ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί μου τοῦτο ποιήσω. name of me this I shall do.</p>	<table border="0"> <tr> <td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding-right: 5px;"> με ἐν τῷ <u>me</u> in the </td> <td style="padding-left: 5px;"> Son. 14 If you ask anything in my name, I will do it. </td> </tr> </table>	με ἐν τῷ <u>me</u> in the	Son. 14 If you ask anything in my name, I will do it.
με ἐν τῷ <u>me</u> in the	Son. 14 If you ask anything in my name, I will do it.		

iii) When SAUL was blinded on the way to Damascus, he prayed to Jesus:

“Who art thou LORD? and the Lord said: I AM JESUS . . .” (Acts 9:5).

“and he trembling and astonished said, Lord what would thou have me to do?” (Acts 9:6).

iv) **ANANIAS** prayed to Jesus before he met Saul: (v.11).

“The Lord said unto him (Ananias), Arise, and go into the street which is called Straight, and enquire in the house of Judas for one called Saul of Tarsus, for behold he prayeth, and hath seen in a vision a man named Ananias coming in, and putting his hand on him, that he might receive his sight” (v 12, 13). “Then **Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard by many of this man, how much evil he hath done to thy saints at Jerusalem.**”

(**Note:** Here Ananias prays (v.13) to the Lord, who is identified in v.17 as **JESUS:**

“The Lord, even **Jesus**, that **appeared unto thee in the way** as thou camest, **hath sent me**, that thou mightest receive thy sight”). Hence, both Saul and Ananias pray to Jesus.

v) **All the Christians at DAMASCUS** called on **Jesus’ name** according to Ananias.

“He hath authority from the chief priests to bind all that **CALL** on **thy name.**” (v.14).

Ananias is still talking to Jesus in prayer. He states that the Chief Priests are persecuting the Christians for **calling on Jesus’ name**. The chief priests would not be worried by them calling on the Father’s name, but **calling on Jesus’ name made the priests angry.**

vi) **JESUS** rebukes the Jews: “Ye will not **come to me**, that ye might have life.” (John 5:40).

How were they to come to Christ? By **prayer to Him, asking Christ for Life** (John 4:10).

vii) “**ALL** that in every place **call** upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord.” (I Cor 1:2).

Are not all true believers praying to and worshipping Christ by calling upon His name? Yes! Do we pray to angels or men? No! We only pray to God. Christ, as the omniscient God, hears and understands millions of prayers a second from all over the world.

viii) We are to **trust in Christ**, as we trust in God. “Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.” (John 14:1). Trusting Christ is prayer to Christ.

ix) “At the **name** of Jesus every **knee** should bow . . . that **every tongue** should **confess** that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.” (Philippians 2:10,11).

Ask: Would it be right for all creatures in the universe to bow, adore and exalt a fellow creature? How could bowing to a creature glorify God the Father?

Hence Christ cannot be a creature, but is God the Son.

x) Is it worship of the Father when Peter concludes his prayer to God in I Peter 5:10,11 with the **Doxology to the Father:** “To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever, Amen?”

Yes, this is adoration and worship to God. Let us be consistent.

This same Doxology is given to the Son in:

--II Peter 3:18 “But grow in grace and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour **Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.**”

--I Peter 4:11 “that God in all things may be glorified through **Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.**”

--II Timothy 4:18 “The **Lord** shall deliver me from every evil work, and will preserve me unto his heavenly kingdom, **to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.**”

--Revelation 1:5,6 “Unto **him that loved us**, and washed us from our sins in his own blood.

And hath made us kings and priests unto God and His Father; **to him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen**”

A T Robertson in “*Word Pictures in the NT*” Vol 6, p.126 confirms that these refer to Christ, especially I Peter 4:11 as follows:

“To whom
 (dative) is,” that is to Jesus Christ the immediate antecedent, but in Rom. 16:27 and Jude 25 the doxology is to God through Christ. For other doxologies see I Pet. 5:11; II Pet. 3:18; Gal. 1:5; Rom. 9:5; 11:36; Phil. 4:20; Eph. 3:21; I Tim. 1:17; 6:16; II Tim. 4:18; Heb. 13:21; Rev. 1:6; 5:13; 7:12. The others addressed to Christ are II Pet. 3:18; II Tim. 4:18; Rev. 1:6.

4 out of 17 Doxologies are to Christ. The same words are spoken to the Father as to the Son.

xi) In Revelation 5:8-14, first the redeemed fall down and adore the Lamb only (v.8-10).

Secondly, unlimited angels adore the Lamb only (v.11,12).

Thirdly, all creatures in the universe adore the Father and the Lamb. (v.13,14).

xii) God and the Lamb have one Throne, one Face, one Name and we are servants of both.

“proceeding out of the throne (of God and of the Lamb).” (v.1).

“the throne (of God and of the Lamb) shall be in it; his servants shall serve him.” (v.3).

“They shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.” (Revelation 22:1,3,4).

The word “his” (singular) applied to “God and the Lamb” indicates that both God and the Lamb own the servants, have the same face, have the same name, and own the same throne.

Hence, we see the one and equal supremacy and unity of the Father and the Son.

V. FATHER AND SON HAVE THE SAME DIVINE OFFICES

i) The Son’s name is placed on the same level as the name of the Father in Matthew 28:19.

“Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.”

Would God allow a created being’s name to be put on the same level as the Father?

Never!

ii) The love of the Father and of the Son is shown as an equal privilege given to us.

“He that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him.” (John 14:21).

iii) Believers fellowship equally with both the Father and the Son.

“Truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.” (I John 1:3).

iv) Eternal life is for believers to know equally both the Father and the Son. “This is life eternal, that they may know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ.” (John 17:3).

v) Paul and James are servants of both God and Christ:

“Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ.” (Titus 1:1).

“James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ.” (James 1:1).

“Paul, an apostle . . . by Jesus Christ, and God the Father.” (Galatians 1:1).

vi) The Father and Son both equally own the church:

“The church . . . in God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.” (I Thess. 1:1; II Thess 1:1).

vii) The Father and Son both equally bestow grace and peace. “Grace be unto you, and peace from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ.” (II Thessalonians 1:2).

viii) The Father and the Son both love us, console us, and give us hope. (II Thess. 2:16).

Both are co-equal in their power to grant our petitions.

14. CHRIST'S BODILY RESURRECTION "I have power to take it again" Jn 10:18

Watchtower Teaching: "Jesus was raised to life as an invisible spirit. He did not take up again that body in which he had been killed . . ." "*Let your Name be sanctified.*" (p.266). The Watchtower teaches that Jesus' body was disposed of by God.

The NWT **mistranslates** I Peter 3:18 as "being put to death in the flesh, but made alive **in** the spirit" to teach merely a spiritual resurrection of Christ.

Bible Teaching: I Peter 3:18 refers to when Christ died. His Spirit went and preached to spirits in prison (v.19,20). After three days, Christ's physical body was raised.

I Peter 3:18 (KJV) **correctly** reads: 'put to death in the flesh, but quickened **by** the Spirit.' Which Scriptures best teach Christ's bodily resurrection?

1. "They were terrified and affrighted, and **supposed** that **they** had **seen a spirit**." (v.37) He said unto them, "Behold my hands and my feet, that it is **I myself**: handle me and see; for a **spirit** hath not **flesh and bones**, as ye see **me** have." (**Luke 24:37, 39**)

Notice that the resurrected Christ says here that:

- (1) He is **not a spirit**;
- (2) His resurrection body **has flesh and bones**;
- (3) His **physical hands** and **feet** are proof of His physical resurrection;

Jesus is trying to convince them that He, "I myself" has a permanent physical body which still had the nail scars in His hands and feet. This is opposite to the WT teaching that Christ's body was disposed of and that He became only a spirit. If the WT claim was correct, then Jesus would be **deceiving** the disciples here in showing them His body.

2. "Then saith he to **Thomas**, . . . reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into **my side**: and be not faithless, but believing." (**John 20:27**)

Here Jesus says that He has a **physical side** that **He challenges Thomas to touch**.

3. "**Neither did his flesh see corruption.**" - **Acts 2:30,31**

NWT	KJV
"he would seat one from the fruitage of his loins OMIT OMIT upon his throne, he saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades, nor did his flesh see corruption. "	"of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne; He seeing this before spake of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not left in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. "

Notice the following:

a) God promised David that "**according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ** to sit on his throne." (v.30). This is a bodily resurrection of Christ, not spiritual. The NWT omits this because of its corrupt Westcott-Hort Greek text. Well over 38 manuscripts have it.

b) "**neither did his flesh see corruption**" (v.31) means that Christ's body did not decay. Why? Because Jesus was raised from the dead in a material, fleshly body.

4. "**I will raise it up . . . he spake of the temple of his body.**" **John 2:19-21.**

"Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days **I will raise it up** (v.19). But he spake of the **temple of his body**." (v.21).

Jesus here promised that **He Himself** would raise up **His own body** after three days.

See how Jesus uses the word "**body**" meaning a **bodily resurrection**, not a spiritual resurrection.

Ask: How does Jesus define "the temple" in John 2:19-21? Since Jesus said that He would **raise His body**, doesn't this mean a bodily resurrection would occur?

5. Christ promises to eat of the fruit of the vine in the Kingdom. Only a body can eat.

“I will not **drink** of the **fruit of the vine**, until the Kingdom of God shall come.” **Luke 22:18.**

Jesus here showed that his resurrected body would be **able to eat and drink** even in the Kingdom of God. Notice that a non-material spirit cannot eat and drink. Jesus promised the disciples in Luke 22:30 “that ye may eat and drink **at my table** in my Kingdom.”

Ask: If Jesus expected to become an immaterial spirit, why would He promise the disciples that they would **eat and drink with Christ** at His table in His Kingdom?

6. Christ ate a broiled fish and a honeycomb in front of them. Luke 24:41,42.

7. “he that **raised up Christ from the dead** shall also quicken your **mortal bodies.**” **Rom. 8:11**

As Christ’s body was raised physically from the dead, so shall our mortal bodies be raised.

8. His resurrection body “**breathed** on them.” John 20:22. A spirit cannot breathe, can it?

9. “**His feet shall stand** in that day upon the Mount of Olives...” **Zechariah 14:4.**

A spirit does not have feet. **Only a physical body has feet** as Jesus has at His second coming.

10. “One shall say unto him, What are these **wounds in thine hands?**” **Zechariah 13:6.**

Ask: How can a non-material spirit have wounds in his hands which can be observed?

11. The resurrected, **glorified Christ touched John**, laying his **right hand** on him. **Rev. 1:17.**

Watchtower Objection: JW’s quote I Corinthians 15:44,50 to support their claim that Jesus was raised from the dead as a spirit creature:

a) “It is sown a natural body; it is raised a **spiritual body**. There is a natural body, and there is a **spiritual body.**” (v.44).

b) “**flesh and blood** cannot inherit the Kingdom of God.” (v.50). JW’s claim that Jesus must have had a spiritual resurrection, because flesh-and-blood bodies cannot exist in heaven.

They claim that mortality and corruption belong to the fleshly body.

Bible Teaching:

a) **The Greek word for body, “soma”** (4983), **always means a material body**, an organised whole made up of parts, when used of a person (Zodhiates, NT Word Study,p.1358).

The spiritual body in I Cor.15:44 is not an immaterial body, but a supernatural, **spirit-dominated body.**

It is a body directed by the spirit, as opposed to a body under the dominion of the flesh.

There are no exceptions to Paul using “soma” for a material body.

Paul even refers to a **believer** as a “**spiritual**” **man who judges all things** (I Cor. 2:15), yet Paul did not mean an immaterial invisible man with no physical body.

He meant a **spirit-controlled** man with a **flesh and blood body.**

Ask: In I Corinthians 2:15 (“He that is spiritual judgeth all things”), is Paul discussing an **invisible spirit creature** or a **material, flesh-and-blood human**? Can you see that being “spiritual” does not demand a non-material body? The same is true in I Corinthians 15:44.

b) **Key:** In v.50 “flesh and blood” is an idiom meaning that mortal, perishable, earth-bound humans, as we are now, cannot have a place in God’s glorious, heavenly Kingdom.

c) “this corruptible must **put on** incorruption, and this mortal must **put on** immortality.” 53. Nothing is taken away from us (materialness). Instead immortality is “**put on**” or **added** to us

Ask: Don’t the words “**put on**” mean **adding** something to humanity (that is immortality), not taking away something from humanity (our material body)?

Conclusion: Since Christ’s resurrected body could **eat, drink, breathe** (John 20:22), **show His hands and feet with scars** (Luke 24:40), be **touched**, and have **flesh and bones** (Luke 24:39), it is certain that this body was a material body. This is especially true since Jesus corrected the disciples’ misconception that they had seen a spirit (Luke 24:37).

For the JW’s to say that a body is not a body, is their last resort of redefining common words.

15. IS SALVATION BY CHRIST or by WATCHTOWER WORKS?

The difference between salvation by faith and works is that, with faith, God does it, but with works, we try to do it ourselves. JW's often give "lip service" to salvation by grace through faith in Christ. In reality, they believe in works for the Watchtower for salvation. They urge readers to "come to Jehovah's organisation for salvation." (WT, 15 Nov. 1981, p.21).

Watchtower magazine of 15 Aug 1972, p.491 asks JW's to "work hard for the reward of eternal life." Eternal life is a gift (Romans 6:23), never a reward to be earned.

JW's cannot know for sure if they have salvation during this life.

The WT tells JW's that if they fail to serve God "properly" in the millennium, they will be annihilated.

They believe that eternal life becomes theirs, only by serving God till the end of the 1000 years. JW's believe that Jesus' death only wiped out the sin inherited from Adam.

They claim that Christ's atonement allows men to work their way to salvation.

They claim that the "gift" of Christ's ransom sacrifice is free to all, only to give us a chance to work for our salvation.

JW's claim that being born again is only for the 144,000 anointed class.

JW's claim the "other sheep" don't need to be born again, but hope to live forever on paradise earth.

JW's falsely claim six steps to being born again:

- i) Take in accurate knowledge of God. This is a mistranslation of John 17:3 where they change "that they may know (verb) thee (KJV)" to "their taking in knowledge (noun) of you". The unbeliever may have knowledge about God, but only the saved person knows God personally. Jesus will say to unbelievers "I never knew you: depart from me." Mat7:23
- ii) Exercise faith, which they define as **belief plus works**. (See Eph.2:9 "not of works lest.")
- iii) Repentance from bad works.
- iv) Conversion, which they define as doing works fitting repentance.
- v) Dedication to Jehovah, which they define as dedication to the Watchtower Organisation.
- vi) Baptism, as an outward sign of their dedication (*Watchtower*, Feb 1, 1982, p.25-29).

For a JW, the above does not ever guarantee them to be born again; it just puts them in line. They think that only 144,000 are born again. Since the 144,000 places were supposedly filled in 1935, most JW's believe they can never be born again.

JW's believe that three classes of people will be saved by good works:

- a) The 144,000 to heaven;
- b) The "other sheep" to earth; and
- c) Non-JW's who have lived good enough lives to earn salvation.

The Pharisees (like the JW's) believed in study and obedience to the Law, but Jesus said that was not enough. They had to come to Jesus as the giver of eternal life. Only by the indwelling Christ can believers do good works. JW's live in fear of dying at Armageddon.

JW's twist five main Scriptures regarding salvation:

1. John 3:3,5,7 - Being Born again

"Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, Verily I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God. Ye must be born again." (John 3:3,7).

Watchtower Teaching: JW's do not believe that they must be born again. If you ask a JW if he has been born again, he will say: "That doesn't apply to me. It's only for the 144,000 anointed ones. I belong to the "great crowd" who will live on the earth under Kingdom rule."

The WT organisation has taught them that: “The “other sheep” do not need any such rebirth, for their goal is life everlasting in the restored earthly paradise.” (WT, 15 Feb 1986, p.14).

Our Biblical Response:

Question 1: When Jesus said, “Unless **anyone** is born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of God.” (John 3:3 NWT), did He allow for any exceptions? (No!).

Question 2: In I John 5:1 (NWT) “**Everyone believing** that Jesus is the Christ has been born from God”, does the expression “everyone believing” leave any believer out? (No).

Question 3: In Galatians 4:5,6 (NWT) didn’t Christ come so “that we . . . might receive the **adoption** as sons. Now because you are sons, God has sent forth the **Spirit** of his Son into our hearts, and it cries out “Abba, Father”.”

Ask: Have you been adopted as a son of God, by receiving the Spirit of Christ into your heart, as shown here? (No)

Question 4: In Romans 8:9 “Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, **he is none of his.**” Remind the JW that he has admitted that he has not received Christ’s Spirit to dwell in his heart by being born again.

Ask: In the light of Romans 8:8,9 can you reach any other conclusion than that you **cannot please God** (v.8) and that **you do not belong to Christ?** Re-read Romans 8:8,9,14-16.

Bible Teaching:

Scripture is clear that the opportunity to become born again is not limited to 144,000 people in the so-called anointed class, but is **open to all who believe in Jesus Christ as follows.**

a) **I John 5:1** “**Whosoever** (everyone) believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God.” There are no exceptions. Anybody and everybody who believes that Jesus is the Christ is born again.

b) **John 3:16** “that **whosoever** believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

c) **I John 4:7** “**everyone** that loveth is born of God.”

Key: Notice here that God never mentions that the number to be born again is restricted to 144,000 but is **unlimited** to “whosoever believeth”.

Note: Jesus did not need to be born again because He never sinned (Hebrews 5:15).

Only sinners being dead spiritually need to be born again.

“Ye” in John 3:7 means “**everybody**” **plural**. Being born again of the Spirit means that we who were born physically with a dead spirit inherited from Adam, experience a spiritual rebirth by the Holy Spirit giving us new spiritual life. Everyone must be born again.

Paul did not divide believers into two classes, but said:

a) “Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness which the Lord, the righteous judge shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto **ALL** them also that love his appearing.” (II Timothy 4:8).

b) The **new birth is not limited to 144,000**, but is **available to “any man”**:
“If **any man** be in Christ, he is a new creature . . .” (II Corinthians 5:17).

c) **Never do we read of a limited number** being placed on those who are born again.
“Being born again, not of corruptible seed but of incorruptible, by the word of God.” I Peter 1:23
“**everyone** that doeth righteousness is born of him.” (I John 2:29).

“**whosoever** believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God . . .” (I John 5:1).

Question: What about you? Have you been born again? You **must** be born again!

2. Present tense salvation: Matthew 24:13 “But he that shall endure unto the end (of the 7 year Tribulation), the same shall be saved (from the Antichrist’s persecutions).”

The Watchtower Society has convinced JW’s that they are unsaved and that they cannot be saved in this present life. They do not believe that they will have to answer for their sins. The JW book “*Make Sure of all Things*” on page 332 states: “Salvation to **life** involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian.” They believe that nobody can be sure of salvation until they have continued their good works up to the end of the 1000 years. Their idea is completely false as seen from these scriptures, showing that we **now possess a present tense salvation**:

- 1) I John 5:12 “He that has the Son, **has life**.”
- 2) I John 5:13 “that ye may **know** that ye have eternal **life**.”
- 3) John 3:36 “He that believeth on the Son **has everlasting life**.”
- 4) I John 3:2 “Beloved, **now are we** the sons of God . . .”
- 5) I Corinthians 1:18 “but unto **us** which **are saved** . . .”
- 6) II Corinthians 2:15 “in them that **are saved** . . .”
- 7) Ephesians 2:5,8 “by grace **ye are saved**;”
- 8) I Thessalonians 1:10 “Jesus, which **delivered us** from the wrath to come.”
- 9) II Timothy 1:9 “Who **has saved us** . . .”
- 10) Titus 3:5 “according to his mercy he **saved us**.”
- 11) I John 2:12 “I write unto you because your sins **are forgiven you** for his name’s sake.”
- 12) Romans 8:16 “The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that **we are** the children of God.”

Think: If all the people converted in the apostles’ time up to 100 AD were totalled, they would have taken up the 144,000 places even before the JW’s came on the scene!

3. Romans 10:13 - “Calling on Jehovah”

NWT	KJV
“Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will be saved.”	“For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord (Greek: κυριος) shall be saved.”

JW’s quote this verse to claim that the proper use of God’s correct name - “Jehovah” - is essential to obtaining salvation. They explain this as: “Everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe.” (Joel 2:32). (*Man’s Salvation out of World Distress* p.111), meaning get away safe at Armageddon. This is completely redefining salvation from being “salvation from sin” to “salvation from Armageddon”.

Bible Teaching: JW’s have inserted the word “Jehovah” which is not in any NT manuscript.

Question: Why didn’t they translate “**Lord**” in Philippians 2:11 as “Jehovah”?

Answer: Because it would prove that “Jesus Christ is Jehovah”.

Paul is here quoting Joel 2:32: “calling on the name of Jehovah”, and applying it to Christ. Paul is here equating “calling on Jehovah” with “calling upon Jesus Christ”, hence proving that Christ is Jehovah. The context of Romans 10:4-14 is Jesus Christ, where Jesus’ name is mentioned in v.4,6,7,9,11,12.

Ask: Why isolate v.13 as referring to Jehovah, when every other verse here refers to Jesus Christ? Is not Jesus Christ shown to be Jehovah here?

Also, for Peter, Jesus is the Lord of Joel 2:32 in Acts 2:21.

This proves that Jesus is the Jehovah of Joel 2:32.

The WT magazine (1 May 1978, p.12), says that Romans 10:13 refers to Jesus Christ.

However, the WT magazine (1 Feb 1980, p.61) states that it refers to Jehovah.

Ask: How can the Watchtower reverse its interpretation on this important verse?

4. I Timothy 2:5,6 - No Mediator for the Great Crowd.

“For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; who gave himself a ransom for all.”

Watchtower Teaching: They argue that, because Jesus mediates between God and men, He cannot be viewed as God, since a mediator is separate from those needing mediation. The WT claims that Christ’s ransom sacrifice corresponded exactly to Adam’s life. The WT argues that, if Jesus were a part of the triune Godhead, “the ransom price would have been infinitely higher than what God’s Law required.” (*Should you believe in the Trinity?*, p.21).

Bible Teaching: The folly of WT reasoning that “for Jesus to be a mediator between God and men, means that He cannot be God”, is seen in that He could not be man either, if the requirement was to be separate from both parties. The truth is that Jesus CAN mediate between God and men **because He is both God and man**. It was only as a man that Christ could represent humanity and die as a man. As God, however, Christ’s death has infinite value, sufficient to provide redemption for the sins of all people.

Isaiah 43:11 states that it is only God who saves: “I, even I, am the LORD (Jehovah); and beside me there is **no Saviour**.” This important verse shows that:

a) A claim to be Saviour is a claim to be God; and

b) There is only **one Saviour**, that is God.

Hence Jesus is God, as seen by the NT calling Him “Saviour” in John 4:42, Titus 2:13, 2 Peter 1:1

Ask: Can you see how that **only God is the Saviour** (Isaiah 43:11), and that **Jesus is the Saviour** (Luke 2:11) requires that Jesus be God Almighty?

Ask: Since the WT claims that Christ’s death was only a “corresponding ransom” for Adam, why did God need to send His Son to earth as a man, if all that was required was a perfect human? God could have created a perfect human from scratch.

In the Watchtower magazine, April 1, 1979, a reader’s question asks:

“Is Jesus the mediator **only** for anointed Christians (the 144,000)?” The WT answered “**yes**”.

These remaining few are the only ones allowed to partake in the annual communion service. This means that only about 5000 of the 144,000 are alive today (in 1996), who have a mediator. All other JW’s have no mediator. I John 2:2 states that:

“He is the propitiation for our sins: and not for our sins only, but also for the sins of the whole world.”

Ask: Since the WT claims that Jesus is Michael the archangel, how can he be the “MAN” Christ Jesus (I Timothy 2:5)? This verse was written in 65 AD, with Jesus being in heaven, yet the WT claims that Jesus after His death reverted back to being Michael the archangel. Both Jews and JW’s think that they can go to the Father without a mediator.

Ask: If one can get eternal life without Christ as mediator, then who needs Christ, and why did Christ have to die? If Christ only became sin for the 144,000, then the others have no sin bearer, no Saviour, and are still in their sins, in which they must die. What advantage is there in being a JW? (None whatsoever!)

Ask: You may ask them: “If you aren’t sure of eternal life, you have nothing to offer me.” Hence the imaginary earthly class have no Saviour, no mediator, no intercessor, no access to Jehovah, only eternal damnation.

Conclusion: About 200 times the NT states that salvation is by faith in Christ as Saviour, not by works, as seen in Ephesians 2:8,9; Titus 3:5; Galatians 2:16, etc.

Note: Acts 16:31,34 equate believing in Christ and believing in God as identical acts.

“Believe on the **Lord Jesus Christ**, and thou shalt be saved.” (v.31).

“Believing in **God** with all his house.” (v.34).

16. WATCHTOWER FALSE PROPHECIES

Four principles of dealing with JW's on their false prophecies are as follows:

Principle I - The real problem with JW's is the question of **religious authority**.

JW's think that the WT has the greatest Hebrew, Greek and Bible scholars, when they have none.

JW's think that all religious questions are solved in Brooklyn, and nowhere else can truth be found. JW's look unquestioningly to the WT, just as medieval Roman Catholics looked to Rome for truth.

To a JW, the Bible has no real authority, except as correctly interpreted by the Watchtower. JW's are trained **not to trust themselves** or **others** to **interpret the Bible**, only the Watchtower. If you silence and refute a JW by Bible arguments, which he cannot answer, he will just contact the Watchtower and they will give him their answers.

Key: As long as a JW trusts the WT organisation, you'll never get anywhere with him. Once a JW's **confidence** and **trust** in the WT **organisation** is shaken, he is more readily brought to salvation.

Principle II - To destroy a JW's blind obedience and submission to the WT, you must show them that the **Watchtower is not trustworthy** or **reliable**.

You must prove that the WT is **not "God's visible organisation on earth."**

Key: He must see that he has been deceived by the Watchtower. Until his confidence in the WT has been destroyed, he is unable to place his confidence or authority in the Bible alone. Until he **looks to the Bible alone**, there is no real common ground between you and a JW.

Principle III - To destroy a JW's blind allegiance to the WT, we must show from **Scripture** and **Watchtower literature** that the **Watchtower is a FALSE PROPHET**, and hence is unreliable, fraudulent, **untrustworthy**, and not worthy of his **belief**, obedience or submission. Tell a JW: "The Watchtower is a false prophet and is trying to deceive you and me. It is condemned by Scripture as a false prophet."

Question: **How can we show that the Watchtower is a false prophet?**

Step 1: A **true prophet** of God will give prophecies that will come true 100% of the time (Deuteronomy 18:20-22; Matthew 7:15-20).

A **false prophet** will give prophecies that fail to come true. The WT claims to be God's inspired prophet who gives prophecies under angelic direction. (WT, 1 April, 1972, p.197-200).

Step 2: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 tell us how to judge if the WT is a true or false prophet.

Step 3: In 100 years of giving prophecies, the WT has a **100% failure rate**.

All WT prophecies have been shown to be false by the passage of time.

Step 4: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 and Matthew 7:15-20 prove that the WT is a false prophet and does not speak in Jehovah's name. The Bible therefore commands us not to believe, trust, respect or fear the WT.

Step 5: Just as the WT has given **false prophecies**, so it has given **false doctrines**.

The WT has tried to cover up its false prophecies by wilful and deliberate lies and deceit.

Principle IV - It is best to first get the JW to recognize and **acknowledge that the WT is a false prophet**, then to discuss **doctrine** and Bible passages.

Let us look at these four steps proving how the WT is a false prophet:

Step 1: Get the JW to agree that the Bible clearly teaches that a **true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true 100% of the time**, & **false prophets** give prophecies that **don't come true**.

Today, there are many “prophets”, all claiming to speak in God’s name.

We must ask the question found in Deuteronomy 18:21:

“If thou say in thine heart, “How shall we know the word which the Lord hath **not** spoken?””

Question: Has Jehovah given us a test for us to distinguish between true and false prophets?

Moses’ test: Yes, it is **Deuteronomy 18:22**: “When a prophet speaketh in the name of Jehovah, if the thing **follow not**, nor come to pass, that is the thing which Jehovah hath **not** spoken; but the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously: thou shalt not be afraid of him.”

Jesus’ test: **Matthew 7:15-20** gives the test to distinguish between true and false prophets: “Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits . . . A corrupt tree brings forth evil fruit.” The fruits of the tree are the prophecies of the prophet.

Just as a good tree **never** bears evil fruit, so a true prophet **NEVER** gives a false prophecy.

Jesus said, “By their fruits (prophecies) ye shall know them.”

In the JW *Awake* magazine, October 8, 1968, p.23 they say:

“True, there have been those in times past who predicted an “end to the world”, even announcing a specific date . . . Yet, nothing happened. The “end” did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing? Missing from such people were God’s truths and the evidence that He was guiding and using them.”

Hence, a false prophet, even though he spoke in Jehovah’s Name, gave false prophecies (endorsed & published by WT) which failed to come true. Here, the WT admits to being a false prophet.

Step 2: Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be God’s prophet today? Is the WT Society the “faithful and wise servant of Jehovah” proclaiming inspired messages from angels?

Ask the JW to “read aloud the following sentences”, and

Ask the JW to “explain what you have just read”. Get him to answer the questions himself.

At Step 2, don’t discuss if WT prophecies have come true.

Get the JW to agree that the WT claims to be God’s prophet before you go to Step 3.

Consider this article in the Watchtower magazine of April, 1, 1972, pages 197 to 200.

The front page is reproduced on the next page to give the context, and to prove to JW’s.

This “**prophet**” was not one man, but was a body of men and women. It was the small group of footstep followers of Jesus Christ, known at that time as International Bible Students.

Today they are known as **Jehovah’s Christian witnesses.**” (*Watchtower*, 1 April 1972, p.197).

Ask: Does the Watchtower claim “Jehovah’s Christian Witnesses” are God’s prophet for today?

Step 3: Ask, “Can we agree that the Watchtower “prophet” has given prophecies about events and dates in the future?” (Don’t argue about 1914 here).

Ask “Let us apply Moses’ test and Jesus’ test of a prophet to this modern day prophet.”

1. **What date is set for the close of that battle** (ie: Armageddon)?

“The date of the close of that “battle” is definitely marked in Scripture as **October 1914**.

It is already in progress, its beginning dating from October 1874.”

(*Zions Watchtower*, 15 January 1892, p.1353).

—yet so great is our confidence in the Word of God and in the light of present truth shining upon it, that we could not have doubted its testimony whatever had been the appearances. **◀ The date of the close of that “battle” is definitely marked in Scripture as October, 1914. It is already in progress, its beginning dating from October, 1874. ▶**



Announcing
JEHOVAH'S
KINGDOM

Vol. XCIII

April 1, 1972

Number 7

They shall know that
**A PROPHET
WAS
AMONG THEM'**

JEHOVAH GOD is interested in having people know him. Though he is invisible to human eyes, he provides various ways by which they can know his personality. They can know what to expect from him and what he expects of them.

One can come to understand that Jehovah is a God of surpassing wisdom by observing creation. This also reveals the loving care with which he designed things for man's welfare and enjoyment. A second way to know God is through his Word of truth, the Bible. Herein one finds the full expression of Jehovah's purpose toward mankind—why man is on the earth and the blessings that God has in store.

A third way of coming to know Jehovah God is through his representatives. In ancient times he sent prophets as his special messengers. While these men foretold things to come, they also served the people by telling them of God's will for them at that time, often also warning them of dangers and calamities. People today can view the creative works. They have at hand the Bible, but it is little read or understood. So, does Jehovah have a prophet to help them, to warn them of dangers and to declare things to come?

IDENTIFYING THE "PROPHET"

These questions can be answered in the affirmative. Who is this prophet? The cler-

gy of the so-called "Christian" nations hold themselves before the people as being the ones commissioned to speak for God. But, as pointed out in the previous issue of this magazine, they have failed God and failed as proclaimers of his kingdom by approving a man-made political organization, the League of Nations (now the

Ezek. 2:5

United Nations), as "the political expression of the Kingdom of God on earth."

However, Jehovah did not let the people of Christendom, as led by the clergy, go without being warned that the League was a counterfeit substitute for the real kingdom of God. He had a "prophet" to warn them. This "prophet" was not one man, but was a body of men and women. It was the small group of footstep followers of Jesus Christ, known at that time as International Bible Students. Today they are known as Jehovah's Christian witnesses. They are still proclaiming a warning, and have been joined and assisted in their commissioned work by hundreds of thousands of persons who have listened to their message with belief.

Of course, it is easy to say that this group acts as a "prophet" of God. It is another thing to prove it. The only way that this can be done is to review the record. What does it show?

During the World War I period this group, the International Bible Students, was very active in preaching the good news of God's kingdom, as their Leader Jesus Christ had set this work before them in his prophecy at Matthew 24:14. They took literally Jesus' words to the Roman governor Pontius Pilate: "My kingdom is no part of this world." (John 18:36) They also took to heart Jesus' words to his fol-

197

2. Did the Times of the Gentiles end in October 1914?

a) In 1889 the WT said, "we present proofs that the setting up of the kingdom of God has already begun . . . and that **"the battle of the great day of God almighty"** (Revelation 16:14), which will end in AD 1914 with the complete overthrow of the earth's present rulership, is already commenced." (In their 1915 edition of this same book they changed 'AD 1914' to 'AD 1915'.)

b) On July 15, 1894 they said, "But bear in mind that **the end of 1914** is not the date for the beginning, but for **the end of the time of trouble.**" (*Reprints*, p.1677).

c) In **1904** they said, “The stress of the great time of trouble will be on us soon, somewhere between 1910 and 1912 culminating with the **end of the “times of the Gentiles”, October 1914.**”
(*The New Creation*, p.579).

But the year 1914 ended without a single one of these predictions coming true.

d) In *Pastor Russell's Sermons* (1917, p.676), Charles Taze Russell, founder and first president of the Jehovah's Witnesses, said of World War I, “The **present great war in Europe is the beginning of the Armageddon of the Scriptures.**”

3. Did God destroy the churches wholesale in 1918?

“Also, in the year 1918, when God **destroys** the churches wholesale and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of “Christianity.”” (*Finished Mystery*, 1917 edition, p.485).

Question: Why did the 1926 edition change this quote to: “When God **begins** to destroy the churches?”

FINISHED MYSTERY 1917 edition

The Boiling Caldron

485

PASTOR RUSSELL DEAD, BUT SPEAKING AGAIN

→
24:25, 26. Also, thou son of man, shall it not be in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters. That he that escapeth in that day shall come unto thee, to cause thee to hear it with thine ears?—Also, in the year 1918, when God destroys the churches wholesale and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of “Christianity.”

FINISHED MYSTERY 1926 edition

The Boiling Caldron

485

PASTOR RUSSELL DEAD, BUT SPEAKING AGAIN

↙
24:25, 26. Also, thou son of man, shall it not be in the day when I take from them their strength, the joy of their glory, the desire of their eyes, and that whereupon they set their minds, their sons and their daughters. That he that escapeth in that day shall come unto thee, to cause thee to hear it with thine ears?—Also, in the year 1918, when God begins to destroy* the churches and the church members by millions, it shall be that any that escape shall come to the works of Pastor Russell to learn the meaning of the downfall of “Christianity.”

4. Did Christ return to Earth in 1874 and set up the Millennium?

“The Millennium began in 1874, with the Return of Christ.” (*Studies*, Vol 7, p.386).

“After the Second Adventist hopes were disappointed in 1874, Barbour convinced Russell that Christ actually returned invisibly in 1874.” (*Studies*, Vol 7, p.54).

5. Did Abraham, Isaac and Jacob get resurrected and return to life in 1925?

The Society had a mansion in San Diego named *Beth-Sarim* (House of Princes) waiting for these resurrected prophets. It was built in 1930. Frederick Franz (the president of the Society) in 1942 wrote a book titled *The New World*, and it says among other things:

“and hence those faithful men of old may be expected back from the dead **any day now**. In this expectation the house of San Diego, California, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, was built in 1930, and named “Beth-Sarim”, meaning “House of the Princes”. It is now held in trust for the occupancy of those princes on their return.” (*The New World* page 104). The **house was sold a few years later**. “The year 1925 is a date definitely and clearly marked in the Scriptures, even more clearly than that of 1914.” (*Watchtower* 15 July 1924, p.211).

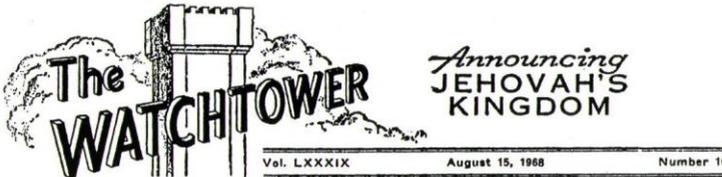
“Some anticipated the work would end in 1925. The Lord did not so state.” (*Watchtower* 1 August 1926, p 232).

6. How can Revelation 1:7 “Behold he cometh with clouds, and every eye shall see him” fit with this WT quote?

“Surely there is not the slightest room for doubt in the mind of a truly consecrated child of God that the Lord Jesus is present and has been since 1874.” (*WT*, 1 Jan. 1924, p5).

“We are not to look for Christ to be visible to human eyes when he comes again.” (*Watchtower*, 15 February 1955, p.102).

7. Did the Battle of Armageddon take place in 1975?



WHY ARE YOU LOOKING FORWARD TO 1975?

→ **W**HAT about all this talk concerning the year 1975? Lively discussions, some based on speculation, have burst into flame during recent months among serious students of the Bible. Their interest has been kindled by the belief that 1975 will mark the end of 6,000 years of human history since Adam's creation. The nearness of such an important date indeed fires the imagination and presents unlimited possibilities for discussion.

² But wait! How do we know their calculations are correct? What basis is there for saying Adam was created nearly 5,993 years ago? Does the one Book that can be implicitly trusted for its truthful historical accuracy, namely, the Inspired Word of Jehovah, the Holy Bible, give support and credence to such a conclusion?

³ In the marginal references of the Protestant *Authorized* or *King James Version*, and in the footnotes of certain editions of the Catholic *Douay* version, the date of man's creation is said to be 4004 B.C.E. This marginal date, however, is no part of the inspired text of the Holy Scriptures, since it was first suggested more than fifteen centuries after the last Bible writer died, and was not added to any edition of the Bible until 1701 C.E. It is an insertion based upon the conclusions of an Irish prelate, the Anglican Archbishop James Ussher (1581-1656). Ussher's chronology was only one of the many sincere efforts made during the past centuries to determine the time of Adam's creation. A hundred years ago when a count was taken, no less than 140 different timetables had been published by se-

“Are we to assume from this study that the battle of Armageddon will be all over by the autumn of 1975, and the long looked for 1000-year reign of Christ will begin by then? Possibly. It may involve only a difference of weeks or months, **not years**.” (*Watchtower*, 15 August 1968, p.499).

“A great crowd of people are confident that great destruction is imminent, which has been a major factor in their decision not to have children.” (WT, 8 Nov. 1974, p.11).

“Reports are heard of brothers selling their homes and property and planning to finish out the rest of their days in this old system in the pioneer service. Certainly this is a fine way to spend the short time remaining before the wicked world’s end.”

(Kingdom Ministry, May 1974, p3)

8. Did the Great Pyramid grow by 41 inches (3457 minus 3416=41) in 10 years (1903-13)?

“the Great Pyramid. seems in a remarkable way to teach, in harmony with all the prophets, an outline of the plan of God, past, present and future.” (Studies, Vol 3, 1903 edition, p.314).

“Then measuring . . . we find it to be 3416 inches, symbolizing 3416 years. . . .

This calculation shows AD 1874 as marking the beginning of the period of trouble. . .

(Studies, Vol 3, 1903 edition, p.342)

“Then measuring . . . we find it to be 3457 inches, symbolizing 3457 years . . .

This calculation shows AD 1915 as marking the beginning of the period of trouble . . .”

(Studies, Vol 3, 1913 edition, p 342)

“Those who have devoted themselves to the pyramid . . . The mind of such was turned away from Jehovah and his Word.” (Watchtower 15 November 1928, p 344)

9. According to the Watchtower ‘prophet’, will man ever reach the moon by rocket?

Man on earth can no more get rid of these demonic “heavens” than man can by airplane or rockets or other means get up above the air envelope which is about our earthly globe and in which man breathes.

This Watchtower false prophecy was printed in ‘The Truth shall make you Free’ p.285 in 1943.

It was proven false on October 4, 1957 when Russia’s Sputnik I escaped earth’s air envelope.

10. Note the Watchtower’s confidence that their false prophecies will come true:

a) 1874: The Day of Vengeance, p.621.

Our Lord, the appointed King, is now present, since October 1874, A. D., according to the testimony of the prophets, to those who have ears to hear it; and the formal inauguration of his kingly office dates from April 1878, A. D. :

b) 1914: ‘Studies in the Scriptures,’ Series II, 1912, p.76,77.

INTERNATIONAL BIBLE STUDENTS ASSOCIATION

BROOKLYN, LONDON, MELBOURNE, BARMEN,

ELBERFELD, OREBRO, CHRISTIANIA.

1912

In this chapter we present the Bible evidence proving that the full end of the times of the Gentiles, *i. e.*, the full end of their lease of dominion, will be reached in A. D. 1914; and that that date will be the farthest limit of the rule of imperfect men.

c) 1925: 'Millions Now Living Will Never Die', p.88-89.

They are to be resurrected as perfect men and constitute the princes or rulers in the earth, according to his promise. (Psalm 45:16; Isaiah 32:1; Matthew 8:11) Therefore we may confidently expect that 1925 will mark the return of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and the faithful prophets of old, particularly those named by the Apostle in Hebrews chapter eleven, to the condition of human perfection.

d) 1975: 'Awake', 8 October, 1968, stated that 6000 years of human history would end in autumn 1975. 'Why Human Creation will be Set Free', p.29:

the published timetable resulting from this independent study gives the date of man's creation as 4026 B.C.E.† According to this trustworthy Bible chronology six thousand years from man's creation will end in 1975, and the seventh period of a thousand years of human history will begin in the fall of 1975 C.E.

† So six thousand years of man's existence on earth will soon be up, yes, within this generation.

When Do 6,000 Years End?

How can it be determined when 6,000 years of human history will end?

According to reliable Bible chronology, Adam and Eve were created in 4026 B.C.E.* From the autumn of

4026 B.C.E. to 1 B.C.E. 4,025 years
1 B.C.E. to 1 C.E. 1 year
1 C.E. to 1968 C.E. 1,967 years

Total to autumn 1968 5,993 years

This would leave only seven more years from the autumn of 1968 to complete 6,000 full years of human history. That seven-year period will evidently finish in the autumn of the year 1975.

Step 4 - Ask: Now that you have examined Watchtower prophecies, you can apply the Biblical test to see if the Watchtower is a true or false prophet.

What was supposed to happen, according to the Watchtower, on the following dates: 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

Question 1: With Judgment Day honesty, we must ask ourselves, "Did any of the above prophecies fail to come about?" The only honest answer is that, "All of them failed to be fulfilled. Every one of them failed. They were all false prophecies."

Question 2: What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on the Watchtower?

Answer: The Watchtower is a false prophet (Deuteronomy 18:22). It is not God's organisation, and it does not speak in Jehovah's Name (Deuteronomy 18:20). We should not be afraid of it or respect it. (Deuteronomy 18:22). We must immediately take our stand with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the Watchtower as a false prophet (Matthew 7:15).

Question 3: But, if the Watchtower is a false prophet and cannot be trusted, but must be rejected, to where shall we turn for spiritual guidance?

Answer: Not to any human organisation, but to the Bible, God's Word as our only ultimate authority.

Re-examine everything the Watchtower has taught you. Study the Bible **without their books or magazines**. Don't let a false prophet tell you what the Bible says. You must study the Bible for yourself.

17. CONTRADICTIONS AND FALSE DOCTRINES OF THE WATCHTOWER:

1. Big Brother thought control of the Watchtower

“An individual must have *The Watchtower* to understand the Bible.” 1983 Yearbook, p21

“Avoid independent thinking . . . questioning the counsel that is provided by God’s visible organization.” (Watchtower 15 January 1983, p 22).

“Fight against independent thinking.” (Watchtower 15 January 1983, p 27).

“Unless we are in touch with this channel of communication that God is using, we will not progress along the road to life, **no matter how much Bible reading we do.**”

(Watchtower, 1 December 1981, p 27).

“**The Vatican belittles Bible study** by claiming it is the only **organization** authorized and **qualified to interpret** the Bible.” (Watchtower 1 July 1943, p 201).

“from among the ranks of Jehovah’s people . . . haughty ones . . . say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But, strangely, **through such “Bible reading”, they have reverted right back to apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom’s clergy were teaching 100 years ago..**”

(Watchtower, 15 August 1981, pp 28-29).

“**Meekly go along with the organization. Do not pit human reasoning, sentiment, and personal feelings against the organization.**” (Watchtower, 1 February 1952, p 80).

2. Has the Watchtower swallowed the “exclusivism” lie of the Roman Catholic church?

McClintock and Strong’s *Cyclopaedia*, Volume II, page 386, says:

“As the **Roman hierarchy** was developed, the **clergy** came to . . . be recognized as the **only priesthood** and the **essential means of communication** between man and God.”

(1000 Years, pp 377-78).

“Is not the **Watch Tower Bible and Tract Society** the **one and only channel** which the Lord has used in dispensing his truth continually since the beginning of the harvest period?” (Watchtower, 1 April 1919, p 6414).

3. Why did the Watchtower change its view on vaccination and organ transplants?

a) “**Vaccination** is a direct violation of the everlasting covenant that God made with Noah after the flood.” (Golden Age, 4 February 1931, p 293).

“Vaccinations appear to have caused a marked decrease in diseases” *Awake*, 22 Aug 65, p20

b) Jehovah’s Witnesses consider **all organ transplants** to be cannibalism, hence unacceptable.” (Awake, 8 June 1968, p 21).

“Organ transplants are not necessarily cannibalistic.” (Watchtower, 15 March 1980, p 31).

4. Why did the Watchtower change its view on Christmas?

“Don’t quibble about the date; **join in with the world and celebrate Christmas.**”

(Watchtower, 1 December 1904, p.3468).

“We all need to face up to the fact that **Christmas** and its music are not from Jehovah, the God of truth. Then what is their source? Satan the Devil.” (Watchtower, 15 Dec.1983,p 7).

5. Why did the Watchtower change its view on the Cross?

“beginning with the issue of October 15, 1931, *The Watchtower* no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover.” (1975 Yearbook, p 148).

6. Why did the Watchtower change its view on who Jesus and Michael are?

a) “Let all the angels of God worship him” [that must include Michael, the chief angel, hence Michael is not the Son of God.” (Watchtower, November 1879, p 48).

“Michael the great prince’ is none other than **Jesus Christ** himself. Daniel 12:1.”

(*Watchtower* 15 December 1984, p 29.)

“Michael in Revelation 12:7 is the **pope of Rome**.”(*Studies*, Vol 7, p 188).

b) “**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega, the **Almighty**, of Revelation 1:8.”

(*Studies*, Vol 7, p 15).

“**Jesus** is the Alpha and the Omega of Revelation 21:6”. (*Studies*, Vol 7, p 318).

7. **Why is the Watchtower confused about Romans 10:13, 10:14 and Revelation 22:12?**

a) “**Romans 10:13** is referring to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 May 1978, p 12).

“Romans 10:13 is referring to **Jehovah**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 February 1980, p 16).

b) “**Romans 10:14** refers to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 December 1903, p 3282).

“Romans 10:14-16 refers to **Jehovah**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 July 1940, p 200).

c) “**Revelation 22:12** is referring to **Jehovah**.” (*Awake*, 22 August 1978, p 28)

“Revelation 22:7, 12, 20 is referring to **Jesus**.” (*Watchtower*, 1 October 1978, p 15).

8. **Why does the Watchtower teach JW’s to tell lies?**

“**Lying** to God’s enemies is **not really lying** but **war strategy**.” (*WT*, 1 June 1960, p352).

9. **Why did the Watchtower change its view on military service?**

“no command in the Scriptures against military service.” (*WT*, 1 August 1898, p 2345).

“nothing against our consciences in going into the army.” (*WT*, 15 April 1903, p 3180).

“Due to conscience, Jehovah’s Witnesses refuse military service.” (*WT*, 1 Feb 1951, p73)

“Should you defend yourself? A homeowner has the right to **inflict hard blows**. Jesus’ apostles had at least two swords.” (*Watchtower*, 8 September 1975, pp 27-28).

10. **Why did the Watchtower change its view on worshipping Christ?**

“You must **worship** and bow down to Jehovah’s chief one, namely Jesus Christ.”

(*Watchtower*, 15 October 1945, p 313).

11. **Is salvation in a man-made Watchtower Organisation or in Christ?**

“come to Jehovah’s **organization** for salvation . . .” (*Watchtower*, 15 Nov 1981, p 21).

“Put faith in a victorious organization!” (*Watchtower*, 1 March 1979, p 1).

12. **Is it right for the Watchtower to tell people to defer marriage till lasting peace comes to the earth?**

“We can well **defer** our marriage until lasting peace comes to the earth.” (*Children*, p366)

“Forbidding to marry is wrong.” (*Watchtower*, 1 April 1964, p 199).

“Those who forbid marriage have departed from the faith.” (*WT*, 15 Sept. 1979, p 31).

“Shocking as it is, even some who have been prominent in Jehovah’s organization have succumbed to immoral practices, including homosexuality, wife swapping, and child molesting.” (*Watchtower*, 1 January 1986, p 13).

13. **Would a true prophet of God make false prophecies about World War II?**

“The **Nazis** will destroy the British.” (*Fifth Column*, p 15).

The new book titled *Children* will prove useful “in the **remaining months** before **Armageddon**.” (*Watchtower*, 15 September 1941, p 288).

“The **end of Nazi Fascist hierarchy** will come and will mark the **end forever of demon rule**.” (*Watchtower*, 15 December 1941, p 377).

14. Which famous people were expected to live in Beth-Sarim?

“. . . those **faithful men of old** may be expected back from the dead any day now . . .

In this expectation the house of San Diego, California, which house has been much publicized with malicious intent by the religious enemy, was built, in 1930, and named “**Beth-Sarim**”, meaning “House of the Princes”. It is now held in trust for the **occupancy of those princes on their return.**” (New World, p 104).

“**Job** is to be resurrected shortly with those faithful men and to appear on earth with them.” (New World, p 130).

“The year 1925 came and went. Jesus’ anointed followers were still on earth as a class. The faithful men of old times - **Abraham, David** and others - **had not been resurrected** to become princes in the earth (Psalm 45:16). So, as Anna MacDonald recalls:

“1925 was a sad year for many brothers. Some of them were stumbled; their hopes were dashed . Instead of it being considered a “probability”, they read into it that it was a “certainty”, and some prepared for their own loved ones with expectancy of their resurrection”.” (1975 Yearbook, p 146).

15. From 1940-43, the Watchtower made 44 predictions of the immanence of Armageddon. Why did they fail?

Consider these examples:

In September **1940** they said, “The kingdom is here, the king is enthroned. Armageddon is just ahead..The great climax has been reached.” (The Messenger, September 1940,p 6)

They said, “The Final End is Very Near”. (The Watchtower, Sept. 15, 1941 p 276).

“The remaining months before Armageddon . . .” (p 288).

They said, “The time is at hand for Jesus Christ to take possession of all things.”

(The Watchtower, January 15, 1942 p 28).

On May 1, **1942** they said, “Now, with Armageddon immediately before us . . .” (p 139).

On May 1, **1943** they said, “The final end of all things . . . is at hand”.” (p139).

On September 1, **1944** they said, “Armageddon is near at hand.” (p 264).

In **1946**, “The disaster of Armageddon . . . is at the door.” (Let God be True 1946, p 194).

In **1950** they said, “The March is on! Where? To the field of Armageddon for the “war of the great day of God the Almighty.”” (This Means Everlasting Life, 1950, p 311).

In **1953** they said, “Armageddon is so near at hand it will strike the generation now living.” (You May Survive Armageddon speech p 11).

In **1955** they said, “It is becoming clear that the war of Armageddon is near its breaking out point”.” (Ibid p 331).

In **1958** they said, “When will Armageddon be fought? . . . It will be very soon”.”

(From Paradise Lost to Paradise Regained, 1958, p 205).

JW leaders in Awake magazine, 8 October, 1968, p 23 admitted that certain persons had falsely predicted the end of the world. They asked why these false prophecies were given. Here they admit that they themselves were false prophets, that they lacked God’s guidance, and were lying:

“True, there have been those in times past who predicted an “end to the world”, even announcing a specific date. The “end” did not come. They were guilty of false prophesying. Why? What was missing? . . . Missing from such people were God’s truths and the evidence that **He was guiding** and using them.” (Awake, 8 Oct.,1968, p.23).

Note: Deuteronomy 18:20-22 states that false prophets must die.

16. Why did Armageddon fail to come in 1975 as the Watchtower predicted?

In *Kingdom Ministry*, **May 1974**, the world's end was said to be "so very near" that JWs were commended who sold "their homes and property" to devote themselves to full-time service in "the short time remaining before the wicked world's end". (p 3).

In **1975** they said, "The fulfillment . . . is immediately ahead of us."

(*Man's Salvation out of World Distress at Hand*, p 312).

In **1975** they said, "Very short must be the time that remains" (Ibid p 349).

1975 came and went, thus discouraging and embarrassing the WT and JWs. Yet from **1976** to today the WT still says Armageddon and the end of the world is very near.

Conclusion: If the WT has been wrong on every prediction, how can anybody trust it?

Question: Why has the WT missed the date of Armageddon every time it predicted it?

The WT has not only lied to people they call "God's enemies", but they have lied to their own people.

After reading these WT false prophecies, and its own admission that it lied, how can the WT be trusted any more?

Ask: Has the Watchtower ever lied, covered up, or changed doctrines and dates?

If God speaks through the WT, then He must change His mind very often.

Consider the following changes in dates, prophecies and doctrines:

1. They changed the beginning of the "time of the end" from 1799 to 1914;
2. They changed the date of the second coming of Christ from 1874 to 1914;
3. They changed the nature of Christ's return from earthly visible to heavenly and invisible;
4. They changed the end of the 6000 years of creation from 1872 to 1975;
5. They changed vaccination from being forbidden to being permitted;
6. They changed the "Faithful and wise servant" from C T Russell to the WT Society;
7. They changed from allowing worship of Jesus to forbidding it;
8. They changed their view of Israel from literal national to spiritual of all believers.

Question: Why so many changes?

Answer: Since the predicted events didn't happen, they covered up their false prophecies to hide the fact that God really hadn't spoken through the Watchtower Society.

Do their false prophecies support their claim of spiritual enlightenment and guidance?

What a joke! The WT Society has mislead millions of people in claiming it is God's sole channel of communication on earth today.

Rutherford believed that God's Holy Spirit had ceased to function as his teacher, and had been replaced by angels who taught him in his mind. (WT, Sept 1, 1930, p.263 & Feb 1, 1935, p.41).

Today the leaders claim that both the Holy Spirit and angels communicate information to them. (WT, March 1, 1972, p.155 and Aug 1, 1987, p.19).

Conclusion: False prophecies lead us to conclude that the Watchtower is receiving its information from **demons**, rather than from God.

Question: Why, when the WT knew of demon spirits guiding Johannes Greber in 1956, did they still continue quoting him to support their doctrines (for 20 years) until **1976**.

"Very plainly the spirits in which ex-priest Greber believes, helped him in his translation."

Watchtower, 15 February **1956**, p.110-111.

The WT quotes Greber for support in these cases after 1956: *Make Sure*. **1965**, p 489.

Aids to Bible Understanding, p 1134 and 1669.

Watchtower, Sept 15, **1962**, page 554.

Watchtower, Oct 15, **1975**, page 640.

Watchtower, April 15, **1976**, page 231.

Question: If the Watchtower is God's voice, why did they not know that Greber was an occult spiritist?

The Watchtower condemns itself as a false prophet in "Paradise Rest", p.353:

"Jehovah . . . will put all false prophets to shame by not fulfilling the false prediction."

"A pastor prophesied the end; he was called a false prophet". WT, 15 Oct 1958, p.613.

"Similarly" the "false prophet" is not a person, but is a system or an organisation."

Watchtower, 15 June 1974, p.381.

The Watchtower is setting itself up for another false prophecy as seen in the following quote:

"Before the 1914 generation completely dies out, God's judgment must be executed."

Watchtower, 1 May 1985, p.4.

Beware of Jehovah's false witnesses!

Ask: Do you agree with the Watchtower instruction that when one discovers false prophets, "then the people should no longer trust them as safe guides?"

(May 15, 1930, p.154).

A JW may defend the WT by saying that those prophecies were "mistakes" and that the organisation has learned not to predict when the end of the world will be.

Ask: Read the statement purpose inside the front cover of *Awake*:

"This magazine builds confidence in the Creator's promise of a peaceful and secure New Order before the generation that saw the events of 1914 pass away."

This is another prophecy!

Conclusion: Rather than fearfully obey the Watchtower, recognize it as a false prophet, leave it, and follow the **true prophet**, Jesus Christ.

18. FOUR TESTS for the WATCHTOWER

to check if it is God's sole channel of communicating His will to man today.

If God speaks only through the Watchtower society, then:

Test 1: The New World Translation must be accurate. But is it? No, see the earlier section.

Test 2: According to Deut. 18:20-22 its prophecies must all come true. But have they? No.

Test 3: Its scholarship should be trustworthy. But is it? No, due to them changing doctrines, dates and interpretations.

Test 4: If they admit to receiving teachings from angels or spirits, which have been proven false, then is their "spirit" source trustworthy? No, it's from demons, because demons lie.

19. THE 144,000 ANOINTED CLASS and OTHER SHEEP

Watchtower Teaching:

They claim that only 144,000 JWs go to heaven, as the "Anointed class". (Rev.7:4; 14:1-3).

They claim that all other JWs are part of God's "other sheep", and will live forever on a paradise earth.

They claim that only the 144,000 are born again as sons of God to share in the heavenly Kingdom. These will have a spiritual existence in heaven, not a physical resurrection, as they claim that "flesh and blood cannot inherit God's Kingdom".

JWs teach that only a few enter this spiritual Kingdom as a "little flock" of believers. Luke 12:32

JWs claim that this 144,000 began with the apostles and was filled in 1935.

The WT teaches that only members of the 144,000 anointed class are:

1) Born again	12) Members of Christ's body
2) Sons of God	13) Members in God's temple
3) Brothers with Christ	14) Members of Abraham's seed
4) Conformed to Christ's image	15) Members of the royal priesthood
5) In union with Christ	16) Justified by faith
6) Heirs with Christ	17) Sanctified
7) Members of the New Covenant	18) Receive glorified bodies
8) Can partake of the Lord's Supper	19) Enjoy life in heaven
9) Baptized into Christ's death	20) Will rule with Christ
10) Baptized in the Holy Spirit	21) Will see Christ and God
11) Members of the church	

This list makes most New Testament blessings and privileges **irrelevant** for most JW's. The WT claims that the 144,000 will rule from heaven over the great crowd on earthly paradise (Rev 7:9), where the earth will remain forever (Ecclesiastes 1:4; Psalm 104:5). The great crowd (Revelation 7:9) is the same as the "other sheep" of John 10:16, who hope to survive Armageddon and enjoy Christ's rule on a perfect earth. Salvation for both classes is by works of witnessing or distributing WT literature door to door. Consider these verses the WT uses and the correct Bible replies:

1. Luke 12:32 - The "Little Flock" as the 144,000 "Anointed class"

Watchtower teaching: "Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the Kingdom." JW's claim that only this group go to heaven. WT teaches that Old Testament saints such as Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and prophets are not part of this "little flock", but are part of the "other sheep" of John 10:16, the "great crowd" of Revelation 7:9.

Bible Teaching:

- The WT interpretation of Luke 12:32 **violates the context**. Luke 12:22-34 shows Jesus speaking to **His disciples on earth in the first century**, not to another 144,000 anointed class that might develop from 30 AD to 1935. JW's are reading something into the passage that is not there.
- Elsewhere Jesus referred to **His disciples** as **sheep in His flock**:
 - Matthew 10:16 - "I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves."
 - Matthew 26:31 - "I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad." (Spoken to the disciples before His crucifixion.)
 Jesus called His disciples a "little flock" because they were a small, defenceless group that could be easily preyed upon. They need not to worry because Christ would protect them.

Ask: In Luke 12:22, who is Jesus speaking to? (His 12 disciples).
Ask: Where in Luke 12:32 does it say that the little flock is the 144,000 of Revelation 7:14?
Ask: How do you know that the 144,000 was completed in 1935?
- Jesus never once restricted the Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven to 144,000 people.

Ask: Can you think of any verse in the Bible where Jesus limits the citizenship of heaven to 144,000?
- I John 5:1 "**Whosoever** believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God." The words "whosoever believeth" are **open ended**, including everybody who believes, not just 144,000.

Ask: Doesn't the "**whosoever**" in I John 5:1 include everyone and not just 144,000?
- The Watchtower teaching that **Old Testament saints are not part of the heavenly class** is **wrong**, as seen from Hebrews 11:13-16 where Abel, Enoch, Noah and Abraham all sought a **heavenly** country (v.16), not an earthly one.
- Matthew 8:11 shows Abraham, Isaac and Jacob sitting down in the Kingdom of heaven.

Ask: Who is right here, the Bible or the Watchtower?

2. Revelation 7:4 and 14:1-3 - Are the 144,000 in the “anointed class”?

Watchtower Teaching: The WT claims that the 144,000 are a literal number of people, but that 12,000 people from each of the 12 tribes of Israel are **not literally** national Israel.

We ask, “Why would 144,000 be literal, but the 12,000 in each tribe be figurative?” WT reply:

- a) There never was a tribe of **Joseph** in the OT, even though it is mentioned in Rev. 7:4-8;
- b) The tribes of **Ephraim** and **Dan** are not included in Revelation 7;
- c) The **Levites**, not reckoned as an OT tribe, are mentioned as a tribe in Revelation 7.

Bible Teaching:

- 1) **Ask:** Why does the WT **switch interpretation** in Revelation 7:4 from **literal** (144,000 as a precise number of people) to **figurative** in the last part of the verse where they say the 12,000 do not represent precise numbers of people from each of Israel’s 12 tribes?
- 2) **Women** are excluded from this group of 144,000 in Revelation 14:4
“These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins.”
Masculine pronouns used show that this group are **all men**.
- 3) Heaven awaits **all** who believe in Christ, not just the 144,000. Check these verses:
 1. Philippians 3:20 “For our conversation is in **heaven**; . . .”
 2. Colossians 3:1 “Seek those things which are **above**.”
 3. Hebrews 3:1 “Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the **heavenly** calling.”
 4. Hebrews 12:22 “But ye are come unto Mount Zion, and unto the city of the living God, the**heavenly** Jerusalem . . .”
 5. 2 Corinthians 5:1 “We know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved (physical death), we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the **heavens**.”
 6. Colossians 1:5 “For the hope which is laid up for you in **heaven**, whereof ye heard before in the word of the truth of the gospel.”
 7. Hebrews 11:16 “But now they desire a better country, that is, an **heavenly** . . .”
 8. Hebrews 10:34 “Knowing in yourselves that ye have in **heaven** a better and an enduring substance.”
 9. I Peter 1:4 “To an inheritance . . . **reserved in heaven** for you.”
 10. Revelation 19:1 “I heard a great voice of much people **in heaven**.”
 11. Matthew 6:20 “Lay up for yourselves treasures **in heaven**.”
 12. John 12:26 “. . . **where I am** (heaven), **there** shall also my servant be.”
 13. John 14:3 “I go and prepare a **place** for you. that **where I am** (heaven), there **ye** may be also.”

Key: Making a difference between those with an earthly and heavenly destiny has no warrant in the Bible anywhere.

1. God has chosen the poor of this world who are rich in faith to inherit the kingdom, not just the 144,000. “Hath not God chosen the **poor of this world** rich in faith, and **heirs of the Kingdom** which he hath promised to them that love him.” (James 2:5). There is no distinction made here between 2 classes, only the poor of this world, (more than 144,000)
2. All who believe in Christ receive God’s righteousness. “The righteousness of God by faith of Jesus Christ unto **all** and upon **all** them that believe: for there is **no difference**.” (Romans 3:22).
3. John 10:16 “there shall be **one fold** (flock), and one shepherd.” - not two folds, one on earth and one in heaven, but **ONE FLOCK** (NWT).

Ask: How do you reconcile WT teaching of two flocks (WT: one earthly and one heavenly) with John 10:16 which says that **all believers will be together in one flock** (NWT)?

Question 1: “**Are the 12 tribes of Israel in Revelation 7:14 literal or figurative?**”

Nowhere else in the Bible are references to the 12 tribes of Israel figurative. They are always a literal, ethnic group.

Ask: Can you see that the WT interpretation of Revelation 7:4 goes against common usage of literal “tribe” and literal “Israel”?

Question 2: **Why are the OT tribes of Dan and Ephraim omitted in Revelation 7?**

The Old Testament has 20 varying lists of tribes of Israel.

- a) **Dan’s** tribe was omitted because they were guilty of **idolatry**, and were largely wiped out (Judges 18:1,30). Dan became one of two centres of idolatry in the Northern Kingdom (I Kings 12:29).
- b) **Ephraim** is omitted from Revelation 7, while Joseph and Manasseh are included. Why? Ephraim was also involved in **idolatry** and pagan worship (Judges 17; Hosea 4:17).

Ask:

- 1) What is the Watchtower’s position on idolatry?
- 2) If the tribes of Dan and Ephraim were guilty of idolatry, do you think that these tribes should be listed in Revelation 7 as God’s servants? (No).
- 3) So you agree that there is a good reason for omitting Ephraim and Dan in Revelation 7?
- 4) Can you see that the Watchtower’s figurative interpretation of the 12 tribes is wrong, because it is based on the rightful omission of Dan and Ephraim?

Question 3: **Why was the tribe of Levi included in the Revelation 7 list?**

In the Old Testament, the tribe of Levi were not part of the 12 tribes because of their priestly separation under the Mosaic Law. Now that their tribe’s priestly functions have ceased with the first coming of Christ, our Great High Priest, there is no further need for their services as priests. Hence there is no reason for keeping them separate from the other tribes any longer. They will be properly included in the tribal listing in Revelation 7 and 14.

Therefore the WT’s view of the 144,000 as a specially anointed class is twisting of scripture.

Note: JW’s insist that the 12,000 from each tribe of Israel are figurative or symbolic.

Question: How is it that the sum of 12 symbolic numbers equals a literal 144,000? How can 12 times a symbolic 12,000 equal a literal 144,000? The total should also be symbolic, according to their reasoning, to be consistent. Their interpretation again gives a contradiction.

3. John 10:16 - The “Other Sheep”

“And **other sheep** I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be **one fold** and one shepherd.”

Watchtower Teaching: JW’s believe in two classes of people: the 144,000 heavenly class, and the “other sheep”, great crowd class who will receive eternal life and live forever on an earthly paradise.

Bible Teaching: The “**other sheep**” in John 10:16 refers to **Gentile believers**, as opposed to Jews who are the “lost sheep of Israel”. (Matthew 10:6 and 15:24).

The **one flock** and one shepherd of John 10:16 agrees with Galatians 3:28 with “neither Jew nor Greek . . . ye are **all one** in Christ Jesus.”

All believers will dwell together as “one flock” under “one shepherd”.

There will not be one flock of believers in heaven, and one flock of believers on earth.

Ask: How do you reconcile WT teaching of two classes, when the Bible clearly states that God’s people are **one** in Christ, and are part of “**one flock**” under “one shepherd”?

4. Revelation 7:9 - The “Great Crowd” as the “Other Sheep”

“After this I beheld, and lo, a **great multitude** (“**great crowd**” in NWT), which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood **before the throne**, and before the Lamb . . .” (Revelation 7:9).

Watchtower Teaching: JWs teach that in 1935 God stopped calling people to a heavenly hope with Christ. They say that in 1935 he began gathering a secondary class of believers, outside the body of Christ, who would live forever on earth in the flesh, as the great crowd of Revelation 7:9-17.

This is one of the WT’s major doctrines, because it is the basis for convincing JWs that:

- 1) They cannot become members of the body of Christ (I Corinthians 12:27).
- 2) They cannot be born again (John 3:3).
- 3) They cannot go to heaven (II Timothy 4:18).
- 4) They cannot be baptized by the Holy Spirit (I Corinthians 12:13).
- 5) They are not entitled to share in the communion loaf and cup (I Corinthians 10:16-17).
- 6) They are not in Christ’s New Covenant (Hebrews 12:24).
- 7) They cannot be fully justified by faith in Christ (Romans 3:26).

Hence the WT uses this “1935 Doctrine” to rob its followers of the NT relationship with God

Ask: Where does the Bible teach that entrance to the Christian congregation would be closed in 1935, with a secondary great crowd being gathered after that? Nowhere!

They can find no Biblical support for the 1935 date.

They refer to Rutherford’s “flash of light” on 31 May 1935 at the Washington JW Convention.

Note: The verses JWs cite actually locate the great crowd as “before the throne and before the Lamb” (Revelation 7:9), “before the throne of God” (7:15), and “in his temple” (7:15), all heavenly locations, rather than on the earth as the WT teaches.

This is similar to the wording of the only other mention of the “great crowd” in **Revelation 19:1** “I heard . . . a loud voice of a **great crowd in heaven**.” (NWT).

Ask: Where is this great crowd? In heaven! Emphasize that the WT has taught them wrongly. Jesus in John 17:20-24 prayed that all His present and future disciples would “be with me where I am” in heaven regardless of whether they were saved before or after 1935.

Consider the following conversation with a JW:

Q1: You: I’ve heard that you believe that you are part of a **great crowd** who will receive everlasting life on **earth**, instead of going to heaven. Is that true? Can you show me the Great Crowd in the Bible?

JW: Yes, it is in Revelation 7:9, “look! a great crowd...before the throne and before the Lamb”

Q2: You: But Revelation 7:15 places the **great crowd** before the throne of God **in heaven**, doesn’t it? “...they render him sacred service day and night **in his temple**.” (NWT).

JW: Well, the throne of God is in heaven, but the great crowd is on the earth. All creation stands before the throne of God.

Q3: You: Would you read Rev 19:1 in your Bible to see where it locates the great crowd?

JW: It says, “After these things I heard a loud voice of a great crowd **in heaven**.”

Q4: You: A great crowd where?

JW: The great crowd is on earth.

Q5: You: Is that what the verse says? Read it again.

JW: It says heaven, but the great crowd is on earth.

Q6: You: How can you say that the great crowd is on earth, when your Bible plainly says “a great crowd in heaven”?

Conclusion:

Ask: Where in the Bible does it say that the great crowd is exempt from heaven?

Ask: Where does it say that the great crowd is relegated to live on earth?

Ask: Since the **great crowd** serves God **in His temple** (7:15), where is God's temple located?

Answer: Revelation 11:19 and 14:17 say "the **temple which is in heaven**":

Ask: According to Revelation 19:1, is the great crowd in heaven or on earth?

19. WATCHTOWER and BIBLE SUFFICIENCY

"All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness; That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works." (II Timothy 3:16,17).

JWs agree with and quote this verse often, but they don't really believe that a man of God is "fully competent and completely equipped" (NWT) unless he has their organisation's books and magazines. To them, the Bible alone is not enough.

What happens if a JW does read the Bible alone, without WT books and magazines?

Note what they say about their ex-members:

"They say that it is sufficient to read the Bible exclusively, either alone or in small groups at home. But strangely, through such "Bible reading", they have reverted right back to the apostate doctrines that commentaries by Christendom's clergy were teaching 100 years ago." (*Watchtower*, 15 Aug 1981, p 28,29).

So the WT itself admits that JWs who begin reading the Bible alone, stop believing WT doctrines, and return to the doctrines taught in Christian churches.

Question: Whose doctrines then, are the ones that are truly based on the Bible?

Fundamental Christianity's doctrines are Bible based, by the WT's own admission.

20. BIRTHDAYS

JWs who celebrate Birthdays, Christmas, Easter or send Birthday cards, will be disfellowshipped. The WT only admits to **two** birthdays in the Bible, but **three** were celebrated. There was Pharaoh's (Genesis 40:20), Herod's (Matthew 14:6) and Jesus Christ's birthday which was celebrated by the angels (Luke 2:10-14).

The WT conveniently omits Christ's birthday because it destroys their point in saying that all birthdays in the Bible were negative. They forbid birthday celebrations because Pharaoh killed the chief baker and Herod killed John the Baptist on their birthdays.

Bible Teaching: We allow birthday celebrations because:

- 1) Jesus Christ's birthday was celebrated by angels, shepherds and wise men. WT doesn't celebrate Christ's birthday, because Jesus is not of supreme importance to them.
- 2) Paul said that observing special days was the individual's own choice (Romans 14:5,6).
- 3) JWs celebrate their wedding anniversaries which celebrates the birth of their marriage.
- 4) Concluding that a particular day is evil, just because something bad happened on that day, is very warped logic. This is "guilt by association".

Genesis 40:20-22 proves only that Pharaoh was evil, not birthdays.

Ask: What is the source of evil in Genesis 40:20-22? Pharaoh or the birthday?

In Job 1:4, Job's sons went and feasted in their houses, every one on his day. This phrase "on his day" most likely referred to each son's birthday. When their birthday arrived, to celebrate it, each invited his brothers and sisters to eat and drink with him. Job 1:1 describes Job as perfect and upright, which God would not say if celebrating birthdays was wrong.

21. IS JESUS “MICHAEL THE ARCHANGEL”?

Watchtower Teaching: WT claims that Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1; and I Thess 4:16 teach that:

- 1) Jesus existed as Michael the **archangel** before his birth to Mary; then
- 2) Jesus gave up his spirit existence as an angel when he entered Mary’s womb to become a **human**;
- 3) At the resurrection he was recreated as Michael the **archangel**.

They describe Christ’s progressive existence as angel, then human, then angel.

“Michael, one of the chief princes” (Daniel 10:13). “Michael your prince” (Daniel 10:21).

“Michael the great prince” (Daniel 12:1). JW’s think that Jesus must be Michael because of Michael’s authority over other angels as a chief prince.

The WT teaches that Jesus Christ was Michael the archangel, who was born as a human, died and was raised up as an archangel again. They refer to Jesus Christ as Michael the archangel. (*Watchtower*, 15 Feb, 1979, p.31).

Bible Teaching:

- 1) Michael is “one of the chief princes” (10:21), but Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son in John 3:16. “Begotten” in Greek is “monogenes” meaning unique, same in every detail. Michael being “one of the chief princes” means that he is just **one among a group of chief angels**.

Ask: Where is Jesus called a “chief Prince” in the Bible?

Ask: Where is Jesus clearly mentioned in Daniel 10:13?

Ask: Isn’t Jesus as “King of kings and Lord of lords” (Revelation 19:16) much higher in authority than one of a group of chief princes?

- 2) **Ask:** “To which of the angels did God ever say “thou art my son”?” (Hebrews 1:5).

- 3) The Bible mentions Michael the archangel five times as:

1. “Michael, one of the chief princes” (Daniel 10:13).
2. “Michael, your prince” (Daniel 10:21).
3. “Michael, the great prince” (Daniel 12:1).
4. “Michael the archangel . . . durst not bring against him (the devil) a railing accusation, but said The Lord rebuke thee.” (Jude 9).
5. “Michael and his angels fought against the dragon.” (Revelation 12:7).

Ask: Which of these verses state that Michael is Jesus Christ? None of them.

- 4) The WT claims support from I Thessalonians 4:16 “the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel’s voice and with God’s trumpet.”NWT

Ask: If using an archangel’s voice makes Jesus an archangel, then having God’s trumpet makes Jesus to be God.

Note: I Thessalonians 4:16 doesn’t explicitly say that Jesus Himself speaks with the voice of the archangel. When Jesus comes from heaven to rapture the church from earth, He will be **accompanied by Michael the archangel**. It is the archangel’s voice that shouts, not Jesus’ voice. Jesus doesn’t shout, but Michael does shout. This is like what happens at the end of the seven year tribulation, when Jesus returns “from heaven with his mighty angels.” (II Thessalonians 1:7).

If angels accompany Christ at the end of the 7 year tribulation, then clearly Michael will accompany Christ at the rapture before the 7 year tribulation, so Michael cannot be Jesus.

- 5) In Jude 9, **Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan**, but Jesus **did have the authority** as follows:

Jesus said “Get thee hence, Satan” (Matthew 4:10) and

“Get thee behind me, Satan” (Mark 8:33).

- 6) Michael said to Satan, "The Lord rebuke thee", proving that the only one with the authority to rebuke Satan is God. So, Matt. 4:10 proves that Jesus Christ is the Lord God.
Ask: Since Michael could not rebuke Satan in his own authority, but Jesus could and did rebuke Satan, doesn't that mean that Michael and Jesus are different persons?
- 7) All the angels (Michael included) are commanded to worship Christ. (Hebrews 1:6).
- 8) The writer of Hebrews asks several questions about angels and Jesus Christ, which prove them to be different persons:
- i) "Unto which of the angels said he at any time, thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?" (Hebrews 1:5).
 - ii) "To which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?" (Hebrews 1:13).
 - iii) "Unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come (millennium)." (Hebrews 1:13).
 - iv) "For verily, he took not on him the nature of angels." (Hebrews 2:16).
 - v) Does Michael sustain all things by the word of his power? (See Hebrews 1:3). No!
 - vi) Is it right to honour Michael the archangel just as you honour the Father? (John 5:23).
- 9) **Ask: Do good angels refuse worship?** (Certainly). When John fell down to worship the angel, the angel rebuked him, saying "See thou do it notworship God". (Rev 22:8,9). The Father commands all the angels (Michael included) to worship Christ (Hebrews 1:6). The "proskuneo" worship that angels refuse to accept but say to give to God, the Father commands this same "proskuneo" worship to be given to the Son. Hence the Son cannot be an angel, but must be God. True Bible students soon discover that Jesus is no mere angel, but God. This lesson must be learnt so they may "honour the Son just as they honour the Father". (John 5:23 NWT).
- 10) Jesus Christ is unchangeable: "Jesus Christ the same, yesterday and today and forever". (Hebrews 13:8). The WT view of Jesus is that He was Michael who changed to become a man, and who at his resurrection changed back to Michael the archangel. The Watchtower Jesus is changeable. They have a false and different Jesus.
- 11) Jesus Christ created all the angels, including the thrones and principalities of which Michael is a chief prince of a principality. "For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers." (Colossians 1:16).

22. WITNESSING TO A JW

- 1) **Do work persistently with the JW.** Never give up unless they refuse further contact.
- 2) **Do try to answer every question they have.** If you don't know the answer to a question, say, "That's a good question. I'm not sure what the answer is, but I'll do some research this week to find out the answer. Can we talk about this next week?"
- 3) **Do allow the JW to save face.** When you think the JW has lost the argument and is deflated, be loving and kind and say, "We can get awfully uptight in these areas if we let ourselves. Let's just forget that you're a JW and I'm a Baptist (or whatever) and let's just think of ourselves as two people who want to know the whole truth. Right?" Disarming the situation in this way will help lower the defensive barriers and create an atmosphere where the JW may want to hear what you have to say.
- 4) **Don't lose your patience.** He must see that the WT has led him astray.
- 5) Pray for the Holy Spirit to speak to his heart and to fill you.

23. BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

Watchtower Teaching: The WT forbids blood transfusions because of Genesis 9:4 “But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye **not eat**”.

The WT teaches that a blood transfusion is the same as eating blood, because it resembles intravenous feeding. This doctrine was invented in 1944.

Bible Teaching and Historical facts:

1) Thousands of JW's and their children have **died** because they followed this WT error.

Ask: Would you really allow your baby to die because of this WT instruction?

2) Most JW's are unaware that their leaders have a history of making **medical prohibitions**, then later **changing their minds to allow them**. Examples include:

(i) **Vaccinations** were forbidden by the WT from 1931 to 1952. JW's had to refuse vaccinations because the WT taught that “vaccination is a direct violation of the everlasting covenant that God made” (*Golden Age*, 4 Feb 1931, p 293).

Awake of 22 Aug 1965 admitted that vaccinations have caused a decrease in diseases (p20)

Ask: How did the parents of children who died from not being vaccinated, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many of these children died needlessly?

(ii) **Organ transplants** were allowed by the WT up to 1967, but were forbidden in 1967 saying that “organ transplants amounted to cannibalism and are not appropriate for Christians.” (WT, 15 Nov 1967, p 702-4, and *Awake* 8 June 1968, p 21). Hence all organ transplants were forbidden for 13 years, during which time many JW's died needlessly.

Then in 1980, the WT changed its mind to allow them, saying that “organ transplants are not necessarily cannibalistic.” (WT, 15 March 1980, p 31).

(iii) **Blood plasma** and blood particles were forbidden to be used by JW haemophiliacs (*Awake*, 22 Feb 1975, p 30). Shortly after, the WT changed its mind to permit certain blood particles to be used, but failed to put it into print for 3 years until 15 June 1978, p.30 (WT). Only those haemophiliacs who phoned WT headquarters from 1975-78 discovered the change. Others were left to suffer and die.

Ask: How long before the WT changes its view on blood transfusions?

Ask: Why does the WT keep changing its mind on medical issues?

Ask: Is it right for an infallible prophet of God organisation (such as the WT claims to be) to keep changing its mind.

(iv) In 1984, they allowed for a **bone-marrow transplant**. Bone marrow is the very source of blood. However, they would disfellowship you for receiving a blood transfusion.

3) In Genesis 9:4 the context is God forbidding the **eating of animal blood** (as pagans did), not the **transfusion of human blood**. A blood transfusion is not intravenous feeding, because the blood so given does not function as food. When one gives a transfusion, it is not a loss of life, but a transference of life from one person to another. It replenishes and saves a life.

Ask: Since blood is not taken in as food to digest, but as life sustaining fluid, is it not clear that transfusion is different from eating?

4) Leviticus 3:17 “You must not eat **any fat** or **any blood** at all.” (NWT).

Ask: Why do WT leaders forbid blood transfusions but allow the eating of fat?

Why not forbid both? The WT is not consistently interpreting the Bible.

Leviticus 17:11,12: “For the life of the flesh is in the blood.” Blood transfusion does not function as food, but simply transfers life from one person to another as an act of mercy.

Key: Leviticus 3:17 prohibits eating animal blood, not transfusing human blood.

Ask: Where is loss of salvation mentioned in Acts 15:9,11 for receiving a blood transfusion?

Key: Acts 15:28,29. A blood transfusion uses blood for the **same purpose that God intended**, as a life-giving agent in the bloodstream. Drinking blood is not God's intended purpose for blood

Conclusion: Even though JW's try to forbid blood transfusions with Scripture, their **real reason for forbidding it is blind obedience to the WT**. If the WT organisation lifted its ban on blood transfusions, JW's would freely accept them if needed.

For the WT to admit they were wrong would cause too great a stir in their ranks.

Therefore any changes must be presented as "new light" in order to make it appear that "Jehovah" is making the changes, rather than a few men on the governing body.

24. THE CROSS

JW's deny that Jesus died on a cross, claiming that Jesus was nailed to a torture stake (an upright pole without any cross beam). In their NWT they translate "cross" as "torture stake".

Definition: Cross in Greek is "stauros" (4716) meaning "a Roman cross consisting of a straight piece of wood erected in the earth, often with a transverse beam fastened across it's top and another piece nearer the bottom on which the crucified persons feet were nailed." (S. Zodhiates, Complete NT Word Study, p.1308). They illustrate Christ's death on a single pole with his arms straight above his head with a single nail pinning his hands to a torture stake.

Question: Did **one nail** fasten Jesus' hands above his head, or did **two nails** hold his hands to the opposite ends of a cross beam?

Answer:

1) "But he (**Thomas**) said unto them, Except I shall see in his hands the print of the **nails**, and put my finger into the print of the **nails**, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe." (John 20:25). Both the KJV and NWT have plural "nails", one used for each hand, totalling 2 nails.

Ask: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does John 20:25 say that nails (plural) were used, instead of a single nail?

2) When Jesus spoke of **Peter's** future crucifixion, He said that Peter's hands would be stretched **forth (out)** as crucified on a crossbeam and not above his head on a pole. "But when you grow old, you will stretch **out** your hands . . ." (John 21:18,19 NWT).

Ask: From John 21:18,19 how can crucifixion be on a stake if the hands are outstretched?

3) **Matthew 27:37** proves a cross crucifixion instead of a stake crucifixion: "And set up **over his head** his accusation written, THIS IS JESUS THE KING OF THE JEWS." If Jesus had died on a stake, it would have said, "over or **above his hands**".

Ask: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does Matthew 27:37 say that a sign was placed above Jesus' head instead of above Jesus' **hands**?

4) **Early WT literature** stated that Christ was crucified on a **cross**. Examples include: *Creation*, p.265, 336; *WT 1 Jan 1891* p.1277; "beginning with its issue of 15 Oct. 1931, the WT no longer bore the cross and crown symbol on its cover" (*1975 Yearbook*, p.148).

Ask: Does a true prophet of God change position on important topics like this?

5) The WT ignores the facts that:

a) the Greek word "stauros" means a cross as well as a stake, and

b) Romans did execute prisoners on crosses: the **horizontal bar** was called the "**patibulum**". Prisoners were made to carry the "patibulum" to their place of execution." (*Seneca, De Vita Beata* 19:3; *Epistola* 101:12; *Tacitus, Historicae*, Vol 4, p 3).

6) WT claims that the cross was not used until after 312 AD as the sign of crucifixion, but the cross has been discovered in excavations of Christian tombs much earlier than 312 AD.

25. HOLY SPIRIT: Is He a PERSON or an ACTIVE FORCE? 2 Cor 3:17

Watchtower Teaching: The WT claims that the HS is neither a person nor God, but an impersonal “active force” to achieve God’s will, like electricity or radio waves.

Bible Teaching: The Holy Spirit is fully God and has personality as He can be blasphemed. The Holy Spirit has the three attributes of personality, those being: mind, emotions and will. An “active force” does not have personal attributes. The WT’s claim of the Holy Spirit being an active force is disproven if the Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit has mind, emotions & will

1. The Holy Spirit has a mind.

- (1) “He that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit.” (Romans 8:27).
The word “mind” means “way of thinking”, something which is only true of a person.
- (2) “The things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.” (I Corinthians 2:11).
Ask: How can the Holy Spirit **know** the things of God if the Spirit does not have a mind? A force does not know things. To know requires a mind.
- (3) “The Spirit searcheth all things.” (I Corinthians 2:10). The Greek word for “search” means to thoroughly investigate a matter, something only a mind can do.

2. The Holy Spirit has emotions.

- (4) The Holy Spirit **loves**: “I beseech you..through the **love** of the Spirit.” (Rom 15:30 NWT)
- (5) “**Grieve not** the Holy Spirit of God.” (Ephesians 4:30). The Holy Spirit is **grieved** (made sad) when believers sin. Grief is an emotion that one feels. A force can’t be grieved.

3. The Holy Spirit has a will. He performs personal acts.

- (6) The Holy Spirit distributes spiritual gifts “to every man severally as he will.” (I Cor.12:11). The phrase “he wills” in Greek means “a decision of the will after previous deliberation”. The Holy Spirit chooses which gifts each believer receives. A force has no such will, nor ability to make decisions.
- (7) The Holy Spirit **commands**: “The Spirit **bade** me go with them.” (Acts 11:12).
- (8) The Holy Spirit **forbids**: “**forbidden** of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in Asia” Act16:6
- (9) The Holy Spirit **speaks**: “The Spirit **said** to Philip, Go near.” (Acts 8:29).
“The Holy Ghost **said**, separate me Barnabus and Saul.” (Acts 13:2).
“The Spirit **speaketh** expressly”. (I Timothy 4:1).
Ask: How do you explain the WT view of the Holy Spirit being an impersonal force, with the Bible’s teaching that the Holy Spirit has a mind that can know, emotions that can feel love and grief, and a will to make decisions?
- (10) The Holy Spirit **testifies**: “He shall **testify** of me.” (John 15:26).
The same Greek word for testify (or bear witness) used here, is also used of:
 - a) The **disciples** testifying about **Christ** in John 15:27.
 - b) **John the Baptist** bearing witness to the **truth** in John 5:33.
 - c) **God the Father** bore witness to **Cornelius’ (and Gentiles’)** conversion by giving them the Holy Spirit. (Acts 15:8).
Just as the disciples, John and God the Father (who are all persons) testified or bore witness, so the Holy Spirit bears witness about Christ. A force cannot bear witness, only a person can. (The Holy Spirit bears witness in heaven and on earth - I John 5:7,8).
- (11) The Holy Spirit **intercedes** or **prays** for believers. “The Spirit itself makes **intercession** for us with groanings.” (Romans 8:26). Just as Jesus Christ (a person) intercedes for believers (Romans 8:34; Hebrews 7:25), so the Holy Spirit (as a person) intercedes (same Greek word) for believers. A force cannot pray for another; only a person can pray.

- (12) The Holy Spirit **teaches** believers. (“he shall teach you all things.” John 14:26).
- (13) The Holy Spirit **hears**. “Whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he **speak**.” (John 16:13).
- (14) The Holy Spirit **shows** us things. “he....shall show it unto you.” (John 16:15).
- (15) The Holy Spirit **restrains** sin. “My Spirit shall not always strive with man.” Genesis 6:3
- (16) The Holy Spirit can be **blasphemed**. “he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost” Mk3:29
 People cannot be blasphemed. We can only be slandered. Only God can be blasphemed.
 By Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit being blasphemed means we’ve proved the **Trinity**.
 (a) God the Father can be blasphemed. (Revelation 13:6; 16:9).
 (b) God the Son can be blasphemed. (Luke 22:65).
 “And many other things blasphemously they spake against him”.
 (c) God the Holy Spirit can be blasphemed. (Matthew 12:31).
 “Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit shall not be forgiven unto men.”
- (17) The Holy Spirit can be **lied to** (Acts 5:3). Ananias and Sapphira lied to the Holy Spirit.
Ask: Have you ever lied to electricity and asked electricity to forgive you?
- (18) The Holy Spirit **cries** in our hearts, Abba, Father. (Galatians 4:6).
- (19) The Holy Spirit **approves** some decisions:
 “It seemed good to the Holy Ghost and to us.” (Acts 15:28).
- (20) The Holy Spirit **invites** people to be saved: “The Spirit & the bride say Come” Rev 22:17
- (21) The Holy Spirit **fills us** (Ephesians 5:18) just as God may fill us (Ephesians 3:19).
- (22) The Holy Spirit **uses personal pronouns to describe Himself:** John 15:26; 16:13; (he):
 “The Holy Spirit said, Separate **me** Barnabus. . .” (Acts 13:2).
 The Holy Spirit considers Himself a person, (“me”), not a personification.

Watchtower Objection:

The main reason the JW's say that the Holy Spirit is an “active force” is because the Greek word for “spirit” (*pneuma*) is neuter.

Answer: This is faulty reasoning, because **1)** the gender of a word relates to the **grammatical form** of the word, not to its sex or **physical gender**. Because a word is grammatically neuter does not mean that the object is an “it” or of neuter sex.

(Source: *Elements of NT Greek*, J W Wenham, 1979, p.8).

For example, in Greek, “children” is a neuter word, “desert” is a feminine word, and **2)** In John 15:26 and 16:13, the neuter noun “pneuma” is referred to by the **masculine pronoun “ekeinos”** (1565 = that one, masculine) recognising the Holy Spirit’s masculine personality. “**He** (ekeinos) shall testify of me” (15:26); “when **he** (ekeinos), the Spirit of truth shall come” (16:13). **Note:** “ekeine” is feminine “that one”, and “ekeino” is neuter).

- (23) The Holy Spirit **comforts** (Gk: parakletos) believers. John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7. This same Greek word “parakletos” (3875) is used of Christ who has personality in John 14:16 and I John 2:1. “Another Comforter” (Gk: allos parakletos, John 14:16) means “another of the same kind” as Christ, in contrast to “heteros” (2087) meaning “another of a different kind”. As Christ has Deity and Personality, so does the Holy Spirit. To comfort requires empathy, understanding, love, compassion, concern for another’s well-being, all being attributes of personality.

Conclusion: The Holy Spirit is a person because **1)** He has mind, emotions, and will. **2)** Personal pronouns are used of Him. **3)** He performs personal acts. **4)** He associates with the Father and Son in the Baptism formula, Apostolic benediction and as Church Administrator (I Cor. 12:4-6). **5)** He can be personally mistreated (tempted, lied to, grieved, resisted, insulted and blasphemed). The New Testament clearly shows the Holy Spirit to have a personality and to be God. (“Jehovah is the Spirit.” II Cor. 3:17 NWT).

26. COUNSELLING THOSE WHO LEAVE THE WATCHTOWER

JWs are disfellowshipped for the following reasons:

1. Smoking.
2. Working in defence departments or the military.
3. Being employed by any other religious organisation.
4. Taking a blood transfusion.
5. Saluting the flag.
6. Celebrating birthdays or holidays.
7. Talking to disfellowshipped persons.
8. Disagreeing with any WT doctrines or reading anti-Watchtower literature.

JWs admit that since 1918, they have been teaching a “**new gospel** not taught in centuries past”, namely the invisible return of Christ and setting up the kingdom in 1914 (WT, 1 May 1981, p.17). They therefore fall under the curse of Galatians 1:8,9 for preaching a false gospel and a false Jesus (II Corinthians 11:4). Those leaving the WT are faced with FEAR of:

- 1) Being an Apostate. If the WT can be shown to be a false religion, then being an apostate from a false religion would please God.

Leaving the WT is not leaving the “doctrine of Christ” (II John 9). Instead, it is seeking to follow Christ who welcomes all who come to Him. (Matthew 11:28-30).

- 2) Fear of losing all their friends through disfellowshipping. It is painful to lose close friends and family members whom you love dearly. Being rejected and unable to speak to your close friends and family members is a strong reason for JWs to stay in the WT. Jesus promises those who leave the WT and follow Jesus will receive a hundredfold now, along with houses, brothers, sisters, mothers, children, lands and persecution and in the world to come eternal life (Mark 10:28-30). Christ will give you strength to endure this hardship. Ex-JWs can be a real source of comfort.

- 3) Fear of dying at Armageddon. If the JW sees the error of the WT concept of Armageddon and God’s judgment, this will remove the fear of dying at Armageddon. Point him to **Christ’s return to catch believers up to heaven before Armageddon**. (John 14:1-3; I Thessalonians 4:16-18; I Corinthians 15:51,52; Revelation 3:10). Point him to “no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus (Romans 8:1,2), the security of salvation (John 10:28; I Peter 1:4,5) and the difference between the Judgment Seat of Christ of rewards for believers after the rapture (II Corinthians 5:10; I Corinthians 3:10-15) and the Great White Throne Judgment of unbelievers at the end of the Millennium (Rev. 20:10-15). Get them to understand the Second Coming. (Chapters 34-39,74 of this book).

- 4) Fear of loss of faith in God being the **same as loss of faith in the WT organisation**. The ex-JW must understand that God does not work through man-made organisations, but deals with people individually and lovingly. Our faith is not in an organisation, but in Jesus Christ Himself. We must have a relationship with God rather than with the WT organisation. It is possible to lose faith in fellow Christians or in a church or in the WT organisation, without losing faith in Christ.

- 5) Fear of Confusion over Doctrine. Up till now the ex-JW has placed their trust in WT writings as truth. They have been forbidden to read other Christian books because they are not part of the WT. (Such books are quoted if it suits the WT’s purpose). The ex-JW must learn what true Bible study is, by studying the Bible verse by verse and book by book. Read the Bible without reading WT publications. Learn to harmonise all the verses on a certain subject. Show above average love to such people.

27. WAR AND SELF-DEFENCE

JWs permit self-defence, but not for going to war. The **WT once allowed military service**: “There is no command in the Scriptures against military service. It would be quite right to shoot, not to kill.” (*Watchtower*, 1 Aug 1898, p.231).

“There could be nothing against our conscience in going into the army” (*Watchtower*, 15 April 1903, p.120). The WT **later completely reversed their position**:

“It is only due to **conscience** that (JWs) have objected before draft boards to participating in the armed conflicts and defence programmes of worldly nations.” (*WT*, 1 Feb, 1951, p73).

JWs allow for self-defence in *Awake*, 8 Sept 1975, p.27,28.

“It’s okay to protect one’s family in **self-defence** (Ephesians 5:25).

“One could also **defend one’s spiritual brothers and sisters** from personal attack if necessary, based on John 15:13” (*Watchtower*, 1 June 1968, p.347).

JWs believe that:

- 1) **Self-defence** is proper.
- 2) Defending one’s **family** is proper.
- 3) Defending one’s **spiritual brothers and sisters** is proper.
- 4) Defending one’s **neighbour** who is being viciously attacked may be proper according to Luke 10:27 (“love your neighbour as yourself”).

Conclusion: Their position is contradictory. They believe in self-defence, but cannot draw a line Biblically between who is their neighbour and who isn’t.

Note: Melchizedek blessed Abraham after returning from slaughtering the kings who had captured Lot (Genesis 14; Hebrews 7:1). Here God approves of Abraham (and hence us today in the NT) fighting a just war to defend our own people. God doesn’t rebuke Abraham or Melchizedek here. This is an example of Watchtower stupidity. If Muslims conquered Australia they would slaughter every JW who didn’t convert to Islam.

Ask: Would you JWs fight an enemy on your doorstep? (Yes). Then you admit it is right to fight him as he approaches our country and that it is right to have a military and police force.

Ask: Does the WT want us to disband our police force? (No). There is no real difference between police and the military. If everyone took their view, our country and freedom would have been lost to the Muslims & dictators years ago. Freedom is won or lost on the battlefield. JWs want a free society to spread their heresies, but they don’t want to fight for it. Others can. Muslims would have captured all of Europe in 732 AD if Charles Martel’s army had not defeated them at the Battle of Tours.

The **role of government** is to: “be a terror to evil works” (Romans 13:3); “he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil.” (Romans 13:4).

Ask: Do you want the freedom to spread you views? (Yes). Then why shouldn’t you help pay to preserve this freedom? User pays. If you use it, you pay for it.

28. WATCHTOWER BRAINWASHING and THOUGHT CONTROL

The WT calls itself a “society” (implying that each member has some say) to cover the truth that the real rulership is in the hands of a few men.

The WT convinces its followers that it is the only true religion by:

- i) Using half truths to explain their position.
- ii) Misquoting secular authorities to support their position.
- iii) Altering or covering up their own history of false prophecies or doctrinal reversals.

The WT society refers to itself as the “mother”.

“If we are to walk in the light of truth, we must recognize not only Jehovah God as our father but his organisation as our “**mother**””. (WT, May 1957, p.274).

George Orwell’s book “1984” describes a world power (like the WT) that juggles with truth and historical records in order to make themselves look as if they are always right. The WT does this by: **a)** Preventing the average JW from accessing their past false predictions; **b)** Passing off the past as irrelevant. Whatever they taught in the past is not to be believed any longer. To believe previous views would be apostasy. They must gain victories over their memory. For example:

- i) To know that the WT led people to believe that the end of the world would be in **1975**, yet after its failure to happen, they denied their prediction was false. They believed this denial was truthful.
- ii) To forget that the WT predicted the end of the world in **1914** and later to change it to a prediction of Christ’s invisible return in 1914 to cover up their false prediction. The **WT’s self-deception** is making up one lie to cover another lie.

When JWs won’t give you a direct answer it is because:

- a) They cannot speak or think independently of the organisation.
- b) They fear being humiliated for independent thinking, disfellowshipped and separated from their family members and friends.

The governing WT body commands JWs to stop short at the threshold of any dangerous thought.

- a) If the JW questions the system, it leads to
- b) Undermining his mental programming as doubts creep in, which leads to
- c) the JW thinking for himself.

The JW, due to fear of being chastised or humiliated, learns to kill his speculations and not allow his mind to move ahead or think independently of the organisation. The Governing Body will now represent his mind on all important matters. It’s the only “safe” way. A JW automatically learns to put aside disturbing thoughts, such as he might be asked at a door.

Ask: “Why don’t we examine the record of the Watchtower over the past 100 years?”

The JW will make an unconscious refusal to follow through on a logical argument initiated by others. While on the defensive, JWs will often misunderstand or draw a blank on the simplest of arguments. This is Orwell’s “Crimestop” initiated by “Big Brother”, known as protective stupidity or complete control over one’s mental processes.

JWs believe that the WT is infallible. The WT defends its false predictions by:

- 1) Jehovah God was just testing you (WT, 15 Feb 1984, p.26).
 - 2) For a ship to get from A to B it must sometimes tack or zigzag (WT, 1 Dec 1981, p.27).
 - 3) “We are not false prophets, because we admit our mistakes.” (WT, 1 Nov. 1972, p.644).
- Yet, any false prophets who predict an end to the world are going to admit their mistake the next day. How else could they hold on to their followers?

It was good for them to be anxious for the end of the world, because it keeps them “on the watch”. Orwell’s “1984” says, “The secret of rulership is to combine a belief in one’s own infallibility with the power to learn from past mistakes.” (p.177).

The WT has taught millions of JW to:

- 1) Think the opposite of what is true.
- 2) Not to question the matter at all.

Conclusion: The ex-JW needs to discard the mental gymnastics the WT has taught him, and start reading and believing the Bible. A JW must see the Bible truths that:

- 1) Jesus said that everyone must be born again to enter the Kingdom of God. (John 3:3,7).
- 2) Cultivate a real relationship with Jesus Christ rather than the WT. John 17:3 “know thee”
- 3) Jesus said not to listen to those who claim that Christ has returned secretly or invisibly (as WT says happened in 1914). Jesus said that He would come as lightning (Matthew 24:23-27) and every eye would see Him. (Revelation 1:7).
- 4) Jesus said that He is returning to take believers home with Him. John 14:3; I Thess. 4:16,17
- 5) The writer of Hebrews says that Jesus is definitely not an angel (Hebrews 1:4,5,6,8,10,13).
- 6) John says that Jesus is the very substance and nature of God (John 1:1; 5:18, 23; 8:58; 20:28; 8:24; 10:30; I John 5:7,8,20). Jesus is the “express image of his person.” Hebrews 1:3.

29. THE DIVINE NAME (John 17:6,26 “I have **declared** unto them **thy name**.”) Jesus manifested or declared the Father’s name by making known His nature, character, law, will, attributes and his plan of mercy. “**Declare**” means to “unfold, to lead, to show the way”. Gradually, by Jesus’ words and works, He revealed to people the **nature of God**, as they were able to bear it (John 16:12). The Father’s **name** refers to His **nature**, as Jesus meant Saviour. The word “name” is often used to describe the person & his reputation. I Tim.6:1; Rom.2:24. JW’s say that we only get life through using “Jehovah’s” name. They quote verses such as:

- 1) “Everyone who calls on the name of **Jehovah** will **get away safe**.” (Joel 2:32, NWT).
- 2) “Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be **thy name**.” (Matthew 6:9).
- 3) “I have **manifested thy name** unto the men which thou gavest me.” (John 17:6).
- 4) “I have **declared** unto them **thy name**, and **wilt declare it**.” (John 17:26).
- 5) “Father, glorify **thy name**. Then came a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again.” (John 12:28).

Question 1: What is God’s name?

Answer: Exodus 3:13,14,15: “And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The **God** of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, **What is his name?** what shall I say unto them? And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM, and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, **I AM** hath sent me unto you.” (v.14) “**this is my name for ever**.” (v.15).

Hence, when Moses asks God what His name is, God tells Moses to tell Israel that His name is “**I AM**”, and that this is God’s name **forever**.

As a result, we should expect Jesus in the New Testament, when He stated that He **manifested** or **declared** God’s name to His disciples, that Jesus would have declared the name “**I AM**” to his disciples. (John 17:6,26). Nowhere does the NT record Jesus declaring the name “Jehovah” to anybody. He does declare God’s name “**I AM**” to people.

Question 2: Where did Jesus use God’s Name of “**I AM**” in His ministry?

Answer: Jesus made God’s sacred name, “**I AM**” meaningful to His disciples as follows:

- 1) “**I am** the **bread of life**.” (John 6:35,41,48,51).
- 2) “**I am** the **light** of the world.” (John 8:12; 9:5).
- 3) “**I am** from above.” (John 8:23).
- 4) “If ye **believe not** that **I am**, ye shall **die in your sins**.” (John 8:24).
- 5) “When ye have **lifted up** the Son of man, then shall ye know that **I am**.” (John 8:28).
- 6) “Before Abraham was, **I am**.” (John 8:58).
- 7) “**I am** the **door of the sheep**.” (John 10:7,9).
- 8) “**I am** the **good shepherd**.” (John 10:11,14).

- 9) "**I am** the **resurrection** and the **life**." (John 11:25).
- 10) "Where **I am** (*ego eimi*) there shall also my servant be." (John 12:26, and John 14:3).
- 11) "Now I tell you **before it come**, that, when it is come to pass, ye may believe that **I am** (*ego eimi*)." (John 13:19). See Isaiah 41:23 where both Father and Son tell the future.
- 12) "**I am** (*ego eimi*) the **way**, the **truth** and the **life**: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me." (John 14:6).
- 13) "**I am** (*ego eimi*) the **true vine**." (John 15:1,5).
- 14) "As soon then as he had said unto them **I am**, they **went backward**, and **fell to the ground**." (John 18:6).
- 15) "Jesus answered, **I have told you that I am** (*ego eimi*)." (John 18:8).
- 16) "**I am** (*ego eimi*) the First and the last; I am he that liveth, and was dead." (Rev. 1:17,18).
- 17) "Then spake the Lord to Paul, . . . For **I am** (*ego eimi*) with thee . . ." (Acts 18:9,10).
- 18) Saul said: "Who art thou Lord? And the Lord said, **I am** (*ego eimi*) **Jesus**, whom thou art persecuting." (Acts 9:5 and 22:8).

We get eternal life through Jesus Christ's name:

- 1) "But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing, ye might **have life** through **his name**," John 21:31.
- 2) "The **name** of Jesus Christ . . . neither is there salvation in any other: for there is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby **we must be saved**." (Acts 4:10,12)
- 3) "These things have I written unto you that believe on the **name of the Son of God**; that ye may know that ye have **eternal life**." (I John 5:13).

We are called by Jesus Christ's Name, not by the name "Jehovah":

- 1) Colossians 3:17 "Whatsoever ye do in **word** or **deed**, **do all in the name of the Lord Jesus**"
- 2) Revelation 2:13 Jesus said to the Pergamos Christians: "Thou **holdest fast my name**." The Pergamos Christians held fast Jesus Christ's name, not the name "Jehovah".
- 3) Revelation 3:8 Jesus said to the Philadelphia Christians: "Thou . . . hast kept my word, and **hast not denied my name**" (ie: Jesus' name). No mention of the name "Jehovah" here.
- 4) II Timothy 2:19 "Let everyone that **nameth the name of Christ** depart from iniquity."
- 5) Revelation 2:3 "For **my name's sake** hast laboured." No mention of the name "Jehovah".
- 6) Isaiah 65:15 "The Lord God shall slay thee, and **call his servants by another name**."

Question 3: What is that other name?

Answer: Christians. Acts 11:26 "The disciples were called **Christians** first in Antioch."

- 7) Revelation 22:3,4 "**His name** shall be in their foreheads."
- God & the Lamb have **one name**, as seen by "God & the Lamb" (3) with **singular** "**his**" name.

The meaning of God's Name "I AM" that Jesus Revealed

Jesus revealed the Father's Name by showing the disciples that:

- 1) Jesus was **all they needed**, as seen in the "I AM" statements Jesus claimed to Himself.
- 2) The Father sent Jesus. Jesus was equally God. Jesus' words and works came from the Father.
- 3) "I have manifested thy name" means "I have revealed the nature of God".

One of Jesus' ministries was to declare the Father's nature to mankind (John 1:18 "The only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, **he hath declared him**").

Conclusion:

JWs, by coming to grips with the basic teachings of God's Word (without WT publications) will be released from the Watchtower deception and be taught by the Holy Spirit (I John 2:27). Will you receive Christ as your Saviour and trust the Bible as God's Word, or will you trust the false prophet of the Watchtower? Leave the Watchtower today.

30. SEQUENCE OF VERSES TO DISCUSS and QUESTIONS TO ASK

Ask: May we make an appointment to ask some questions about the Bible?

Q1: Do you believe that Jesus is the “I AM” God of Exodus 3:14 and **John 8:24**? If not, then John 8:24 says that you’ll die in your sins. Do you want to die in your sins? (p.887).

Deity of Christ:

Q2: Do you honour the **Son** even as (KJV) or **just as** (NWT) you honour the Father? John 5:23p847

Q3: Why does **NWT** translate “**eimi**” as “**am**” **129 out of 130 NT times except where it proves Christ is God** in **John 8:58** where it translates it as “**have been**”? What Greek rule do they use?856

Q4: Why does the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (**KIT**) **correctly translate John 8:58** (ego eimi) as “**I AM**”, which contradicts the NWT reading of “**I HAVE BEEN**” (ego en)?856

Q5: Since **Jehovah** is called “**Mighty God**” (in Isaiah 10:21; Psalm 50:1; Jeremiah 32:18) and **Jesus** is called “**Mighty God**” in **Isaiah 9:6**, what does this tell you about Jesus? (If JW says Jesus is a lesser god, ask “Is Jesus a true God or a false god?” If JW says “a true god”, ask “How many true Gods are there?” (One). Hence Jesus is part of the Jehovah Godhead(p867).

Q6: Why does the Watchtower quote **John 1:1** as “**the word was a God**”, which contradicts (1) the **KIT**; (2) 12 early church **writers**; (3) **all Greek experts** in the world; (4) The **Emphatic Diaglott** “the logos was God”; and (5) **Colwell’s Rule** of Greek grammar which explains why “Theos” drops the article. Theos drops the article and is placed before the Greek verb (was) in order to **identify the “word” (logos) with the article as the subject**. (p.850-5).

Q7: In **Acts 7:59**, was **Stephen praying** (talking to) Jesus when he said, “Lord Jesus, receive my spirit”? (p.899).

Q8: Why does the KIT tell us to pray to Jesus in **John 14:14** “If ever anything you should **ask me** in the name of me this I shall do”? (p.899).

Q9: Why are 4 out of 17 **doxologies** to the Son? (p.900). 2 Peter 3:18; 1 Peter 4:11; 2 Tim 4:18

Q10: In **Revelation 5:8-14**, why do the **redeemed** (v.8-10), the **angels** (v.11,12) and **all creatures** (v.13,14) **fall down and adore** the Lamb? Isn’t this worshipping Christ? (p.901).

Q11: If God and the Lamb have the one **throne**, one **face**, one **Name** and they are the **same Temple**, the **same light** of New Jerusalem, and own the **same servants**, then doesn’t this make them the **One True God Jehovah**? (p.901, 896).

Q12: How many books that are **FOR the Trinity** have you read?

Q13: Why does the **WT forbid you reading books on the other side**? Don’t you think that its only fair and reasonable to read books against the WT, to get a balanced view of all the facts? Have they got something to hide that they are afraid of?

Q14: Why does the Watchtower **insert [other] four times** in **Colossians 1:16,17**, when “other” is **not** in any New Testament Greek manuscript? (p.840). Why does the NWT insert [other] in **Philippians 2:9**, when “other” is **not** in any New Testament manuscript? (p.841).

Q16: Why does WT **add [Son]** in **Acts 20:28** when “Son” is not in any NT manuscript? p.843.

Q17: Why does the Watchtower **change “Thy throne O God”** to “God is thy Throne” in **Hebrews 1:8** thus ignoring the **Masoretic** Hebrew text, the **Septuagint**, Psalm 45:6 **parallelism** and **four early church writers** who all quote it as “Thy Throne O God”? (p.844-5).

Q18: Why does the Watchtower **translate “proskuneo” as “worship”** when it applies to God, angels, devils, antichrist and images, but when “proskuneo” is used for worshipping Christ as God, they translate it 16 times as “do obeisance”? Why? (p.847).

Q19: If angels refused worship, **why did Christ accept worship** 16 times? (p.847).

Q20: What does it say about Jesus’ true identity if He accepts the same “proskuneo” worship as the Father? (p. 847).

Q21: Why does the Watchtower change “worship him” in the 1961 NWT edition of Hebrews 1:6 to “do obeisance” in the 1971 NWT? (p.847).

Q22: Why does the Watchtower break the Greek Granville-Sharp Rule in Titus 2:13 and II Peter 1:1 which prove Christ’s deity, but get it **right** everywhere else where Christ’s deity is not an issue? (p.847-8).

Q23: Why does the KIT contradict the NWT in John 17:3 where the NWT translates a **verb** (*ginoskosi* = know) as a **noun** (take in knowledge)? (p.878).

Question: Is it right to mistranslate a verb as a noun?

Q24: If you reject the Trinity because you can’t understand it, then how do you explain how a brown cow by eating green grass gives white milk? (Proverbs 26:5).

Q25: In Hebrews 9:27, why has the Watchtower added “for all time” which occurs in no New Testament manuscripts? (p.872).

Question: Where are the Greek words “for all time” in Hebrews 9:27? Show them to me.

Question: Is it **right** to **add words** to change a passage’s meaning, as the WT has done?

Q26: Why did the Watchtower **not include quotes by early church writers** to show that they **DID believe in the Trinity and the Deity of Christ**? (p.873).

Question: Why did the Watchtower **not give the source** of their false quotes of early church writers? (Lamson’s article of 1869 is not a true source. We need Volume and page numbers).

Q27: Doesn’t 2 Corinthians 3:17 “Jehovah is the Spirit” (NWT) prove that **the Holy Spirit is Jehovah** God and hence the Deity of the Holy Spirit? Do you agree that if a=b then b=a? **881**

Q28: In I John 5:7,8 if the Johannine comma is not part of the text (as NWT thinks), why are there two masculine articles (“that” and “these”) before and after the passage omitted by NWT? These masculine articles arise because they must agree with masculine Father & Word in v.7. Neuter Spirit, water and blood in v.8 don’t produce masculine articles in v.7,8. (p.881).

Q29: In John 20:28, if Thomas was just expressing surprise, wouldn’t this be taking God’s name in vain? Wouldn’t Jesus have rebuked him for this? (p.890). What did Thomas believe here? (That Jesus was his Lord and his God). KIT calls Jesus “the God of me”. (p.890).

Q30: Doesn’t “HA-ADON” applied to Jesus in Romans 10:9 prove that Jesus is the “True Lord” of Isaiah 1:24? (NWT 1961 edition, p.1453). (p.890).

Q31: Why did the NWT mistranslate I Corinthians 15:47 as “the second man is from heaven” (omitting Jesus as “the Lord” from heaven), when no man hath ascended to heaven, and Jesus was not a man in heaven before His incarnation? (John 3:13). (p.891).

Q32: Why did the NWT omit “God” in I Timothy 3:16 and replace it with “He” when “He” is in no NT manuscript, and “God” is in 300 Greek manuscripts, 3 versions & 20 writers? 892.

Q33: Since Jesus and Jehovah are both “the first and the last” and “alpha and omega”, what does this tell you about who Jesus is? (p.894).

Q34: When did “HA ADON” (the **True God**) **come to His temple**, if not Jesus in John 2:13-17 and Matthew 21:12,13 as Malachi 3:1 and NWT 1961, p.1454 states? (p.895).

Q35: In Micah 5:2, Christ is “QEDMAH” meaning “eternal” and in Habakkuk 1:12 Jehovah is “QEDMAH”. Doesn’t this mean that Jesus is Jehovah, as only Jehovah is eternal? p.895.

Q36: Doesn’t Acts 16:31,34 prove Jesus is God by equating belief on Christ with belief in God? (p.907).

Q37: Have you looked up in the Bible all the 120 attributes of Christ which are also true of Jehovah God the Father on pages 896-898? Christ must be Jehovah with these 120 attributes.

Q38: Who appeared as Jehovah God to the nine Old Testament saints, if “no man hath seen the Father”? (John 6:46) (p.899). It was Jehovah God the Son!

Q39: Have all your sins been removed? (No). Then you can't enter God's kingdom.

Q40: In **John 1:1**, "The word (Christ) was God". Why does WT translate John 1:1 as "a god", when in John 1:6,12,13,18 where "theos" also has no definite Greek article, they translate it as "God" every time? Don't they want Christ to be God? Are they anti-Christ? Isaiah 44:8 says: "Is there a **God** beside me? yea, there is no God; **I know not any.**" (p.850).

Q41: Why does the WT insist that Christ is first created, when the meaning of "**firstborn**" (Gk: "prototokos in **Colossians 1:15**) means "**pre-eminent or ruler**"? David (Psalm 89:27), Ephraim (Genesis 41:50-52 and Jeremiah 31:9), Jacob (Exodus 4:22), and Solomon (I Chronicles 3:1,2) were all called "firstborn", but none of them were born first. (p.860). Why? Because "firstborn" can mean "chief", as with Christ, and not first created (Grk: protoktisis).

Q42: In **Isaiah 9:6**, Jesus Christ is called the "**everlasting Father**" meaning "Father of Eternity". Only God is possessor, or Father of Eternity. Doesn't this prove Christ is God? 867

The Divine Name: (p.834,934).

Q43: Do you **do everything** (in word or deed) **in the name of Jesus Christ** as **Colossians 3:17** (NWT) commands or do you do all in the name of Jehovah? (p.935).

Q44: Since Jesus never addressed the Father as "**Jehovah**" in the NT, why should we? (p834)

Q45: If Jesus, the Holy Spirit and Paul all address God as "Father" and never as "Jehovah", then shouldn't we also call God "Father", and not "Jehovah"? (p.834-5).

Q46: Which New Testament manuscripts have "Jehovah" in them? (Answer: None).

Q47: Why does the NT always lift up Jesus' Name and not Jehovah's Name? (p.835-6).

Q48: What is God's name according to **Exodus 3:13-15**? (p.934).

Q49: Which name of God did Jesus declare (**John 17:26**) while He was on earth? ("I AM").

Q50: In whose name do we receive eternal life according to John 21:31; Acts 4:10,12; I John 5:13, Jesus or Jehovah? (p.935).

Q51: Why does the NWT not translate "Lord" as "Jehovah" in the New Testament when the New Testament verse is quoting an Old Testament verse referring to Jehovah in the case of **Hebrews 1:10; I Peter 3:15**; (p.837-8)? This breaks the WT's own rule on p.11 KIT.

Q52: Does "Lord" in **Romans 10:13** refer to Jesus Christ or to Jehovah? The Watchtower, 1 May 1978 p.12 says it refers to Jesus Christ. (p.906).

Christ's Resurrection body: (p.902).

Q53: Why does the Watchtower say Jesus did not resurrect bodily, when His resurrection body could **eat, breathe, have feet, have hand wounds, touch** people, and have **flesh and bones**? (p902). Was He tricking them? Why would believers get a resurrection body and not Christ?

Q54: Didn't Jesus state that **His body** had been **literally raised from the dead** in **Luke 24:37,39**? "They supposed that they had seen a **spirit**. Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me and see; for a spirit hath not **flesh and bones** as ye see me have." (902).

Present Tense Salvation: (p.906).

Q55: Why does the Watchtower say we can't be sure of salvation ("Salvation to life involves time and is not completed when one becomes a Christian." "*Make Sure of All Things*", p.332), when 12 scriptures on p.906 say we "ARE SAVED" with a **present tense salvation**? (p.906). eg: 1 John 2:12 "your sins are forgiven"; 1 John 3:2 "Now are we the sons of God"; 1 Cor.1:18; "us which are saved", I John 2:25; "has promised us eternal life",

Q56: In the light of present WT teachings, would you explain **John 5:24**? Ask: What is this everlasting life? How can you be sure of having it right now as this verse says? (To JW's, no one has eternal life until after Christ's 1000 year rule.) What does it mean "not come into judgment"? (To JW's judgment is physical death). What is this death that one passes out of? What life have they entered?

Q57: Do you have a mediator between you and God? (p.907) (No. WT,15 Aug.1989, p30,31).

The New Birth: (p.904).

Q58: To how many people is the new birth available, according to John 3:3 (anyone, NWT), I John 5:1 (everyone, NWT), I John 4:7 (everyone, NWT), II Corinthians 5:17 & I John 2:29?

Q59: Where does the Bible say that the number to be born again is limited to 144,000? It is unlimited to whosoever believes (p.905). I Peter 1:21,23.

Is Jesus Michael the Archangel?: (p.925).

Q60: If the Watchtower says Jesus is Michael the archangel, how can he also be “the man Christ Jesus”, now that He is in heaven? (**I Timothy 2:5**).

Q61: Why would God command all the angels to worship a fellow-created angel? (**Heb 1:6**). Isn't it wrong to worship a creature? (p.846,847,925,926).

Q62: If worshipping Jesus should be changed to “do obeisance” (as WT thinks), why didn't God use the Greek word “sebomai” which means “do obeisance”? (p.846).

Q63: In **Jude 9**, Michael did not have the authority to rebuke Satan (saying “Jehovah rebuke thee” NWT) but Jesus DID have this authority to rebuke Satan in Matthew 4:10 and Mark 8:33. What does this tell you about who Jesus is? (The Lord God Jehovah). (p.925-6).

Q64: To which of the angels did God ever say, “Thou art my Son”? (Hebrews 1:5). (p.925).

Q65: Watchtower False Prophecies: (p.908).

1) Do you agree that a true prophet of God gives prophecies coming true **100%** of the time, while false prophets give prophecies which don't always come true. (Deut. 18:20-22)?

2) Has the Watchtower ever claimed to be **God's prophet for today?** (Get JW to read WT, 1 April 1972, p.197 on p.910).

Ask: Does the WT claim that **Jehovah's Christian witnesses** are **God's prophet** today?

3) Can we agree that the WT prophet has **given prophecies** about events and dates in the future? (Ask 9 questions on p.909-913).

4) Applying Moses' test to see if the WT is a true or false prophet, **what was supposed to happen** according to the WT in 1874, 1914, 1918, 1925 and 1975?

Question: With judgment day honesty, did any of these prophecies fail to come true?

Answer: All of them failed. They were all false prophecies.

Question: What verdict did Moses and Jesus tell us to pass on prophets such as the WT? (WT is a false prophet, is not God's organisation and does not speak in Jehovah's name.)

We must side with Moses and Jesus in rejecting the WT as a false prophet. Will you?

Q66: Why did the WT **change its view** on **vaccination, organ transplants, Christmas, the Cross**, on who **Jesus and Michael** are, **worshipping Christ, military service**, and **deferring marriage?** (p.915-6).

Q67: Why did the WT prediction of Armageddon in **1975** fail to happen? (15 Aug 1968) p912

Q68: Do you agree with the WT command that when one discovers a false prophet, then “people should **no longer trust** them as safe guides”? (WT, 15 May 1930, p.154) (p.919).

The 144,000: (p.919).

Q69: How do you know the 144,000 was **completed in 1935?** (p.920).

Q70: Why would 144,000 be literal, but 12,000 from each tribe be figurative? (12 x 12,000 figurative ≠ 144,000 literal). (p.921-2).

Q71: Why does the WT ignore 13 scriptures which say believers go to heaven? (p.921).

Q72: Doesn't “**ONE FLOCK**” (**John 10:16** NWT) refute the WT idea of “two flocks”, one in heaven and the other on earth? (p.921).

Q73:In **Revelation 19:1** (NWT), where is the great crowd? (in heaven. WT says “on earth”.p923)

Blood Transfusions: (p.927).

Q74: Why did the WT change its mind from forbidding **vaccinations, organ transplants, blood plasma and bone marrow transplants**, to allowing them? (p.927).

Q75: How did the parents of children who died from not being vaccinated, feel when the WT reversed its view in 1952? How many children died needlessly? (p.927).

Q76: Why does the WT forbid blood transfusion but allow eating of fat? They disobey Lev 3:17

The Cross: (p.928). **Q77:** Did **one nail** fasten Jesus's hands **above** his head or did **two nails** hold his hands on the opposite sides of a cross beam (Latin: cross-beam = *patibulum*)? p 928.

Q78: How many nails were in Jesus' hands according to **John 20:25**? (p.928).

Q79: If Jesus was crucified on an upright stake, why does **Matthew 27:37** say that a sign was placed above Jesus' HEAD, instead of above Jesus' HANDS? (p.928).

Q80: Why did the WT change its mind on Jesus dying on a cross to Jesus dying on a stake in 1931? (p.928). **Question:** Does a true prophet of God change its mind on such issues?

Q81: Why does the WT say the Holy Spirit is not a person but an active force, when the Holy Spirit has 23 attributes of personality? (pp.929-30).

Q82: If Jehovah is the **only Saviour**, the **only Judge**, the **only Creator**, has **Glory possessed only by himself**, yet **Christ** also has these attributes, what does this say who Jesus is? p.896.

Heaven: (p.35,36,921).

Q83: Why does the WT ignore the following verses in saying that we don't go to **heaven**? Colossians 1:5; I Peter 1:4 "reserved in heaven for you"; Rev 6:9; 19:1; Matthew 6:20; John 12:26; John 14:3; Hebrews 3:1; 10:34 ;11:16; 12:1; II Cor 5:1,8; Phil. 1:23. (p.35,36).

31. THE TRINITY OF THE GODHEAD SEEN IN NATURE.

Question: How is the Trinity of the Godhead seen in nature as in Romans 1:20 "for the invisible things of him from the **creation of the world** are **clearly seen**, being understood by the **things that are made**, even his eternal **power** and **Godhead**; so that they are without excuse.

Answer: a) We see God's eternal **power** in earthquakes, volcanoes, wind, millions of stars, galaxies, waves, floods, lightning, sun, moon, nuclear bombs, etc.

b) We see the **Trinity of the Godhead** with so many things coming in "threes", reminding us of the Father, Son, Holy Spirit, all three members of the creator Godhead. Examples are:

1) **The Physical Universe: Space, mass, time.**

2) **Space:** 3 dimensions of space are: length, breadth, height. **18) Sun:** heat, light, radiation

3) **Mass:** 3 phases of matter are: solid, liquid, gas. **19) Earth** is land, sea, atmosphere.

4) **Time:** 3 tenses of time are: past, present, future. **20) Trees** made of roots, trunk, leaves.

5) **Light:** 3 directions of light wave oscillation are: horizontal, vertical, back and forward.

6) **Colours:** 3 primary colours of light are: red, blue, yellow. **21) Blood:** red, white, platelet

7) **Kingdoms:** 3 Kingdoms are: Animal, vegetable, mineral. **22) Sun:** alpha, beta, gamma ray

8) **Animal:** 3 kinds of Animal: fish, bird, land animals. **23) Insects:** head, thorax, abdomen

9) **Minerals:** 3 main kinds of Minerals are: igneous, sedimentary, metamorphic.

10) **Man:** 3 components of Man are: body, soul (personality), spirit. (I Thess. 5:23).

11) **Divine institutions:** 3 Divine institutions are: marriage, human government, church.

12) **Musical notes:** 3 notes make up a musical chord. **24) Sun's mass** = 333,000 x earth.

13) **Sub-atomic particles:** 3 main sub-atomic particles are: proton, electron, neutron,.

14) **Mankind:** 3 divisions of the human race: Jew, Gentile, Church of God. (I Cor.10:32).

15) **Earth:** is the third planet from the Sun. **25) DNA code:** phosphate, deoxyribose, bases.

16) **Forces:** nuclear, gravitational, electromagnetic. **26) Cell:** nucleus, cytoplasm, membrane

17) **Heavens:** 3 heavens are: atmosphere, space, God's throne.

32. QUESTIONS TO ASK TO REFUTE JW OBJECTIONS

1. **Psalm 110:1** “The Lord (Jehovah) said to my Lord (Adonai) sit thou . . .” (p.869).
Ask: Did you know that Adonai (Lord) used of Jesus in Psalm 110:1 is also used of the Father in Exodus 23:17, Deuteronomy 10:17, Joshua 3:11?
2. **Proverbs 8:22,23** “I was set up from everlasting” (p.860).
Ask: Where is Jesus Christ mentioned in this passage? Was there a time when God had no wisdom? Is Christ a woman who cries in the streets? (Proverbs 8:1; 1:20,21).
3. **Isaiah 9:6** Is Jesus a “Mighty God” or “Jehovah God”? (p.867).
Ask: Since Jehovah is called “mighty God” in Isaiah 10:21;and Jeremiah 32:18, just as Jesus is called “Mighty God” (Isaiah 9:6), doesn’t this mean that the Watchtower is wrong in saying that Jesus as Mighty God means He is a lesser deity?
Ask: If both **Jesus** and **Jehovah** are “**Mighty God**”, then what does this tell you about Jesus’ divine nature?
4. **Mark 10:17,18** “Why callest thou me good? There is none good but one, that is, God.”872
Ask: Where in the text does Jesus explicitly say that He is not God? Jesus did claim to be good and hence God in John 10:14: “I am the **good** shepherd”.
5. **Mark 13:32** “But of that day hour knoweth no man, no not the angels . . . neither the Son, but the Father.” (p.866).
Christ’s one person possessed the attributes of both divine and human natures. Christ sometimes operated as a man and sometimes operated as God, eg: Christ in His human nature knew hunger, weariness and sleepiness, but in His divine nature was **omniscient, omnipresent** and **omnipotent**.
Key: In Christ’s divine nature, He is just as omniscient as the Father, as the following verses state:
“Lord, thou **knowest all things.**” (John 21:17).
“Now are we sure that thou **knowest all things.**” (John 16:30).
“In whom are hid **all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.**” (Colossians 2:3).
Ask: Can anyone other than God be omniscient? (No).
Ask: Since Christ had both a human and a divine nature, and since He used His omniscience often, can you see that Jesus was speaking from His **human nature** when He said that He didn’t know the day or hour of His return?
6. **John 3:16** “He gave His only begotten Son.” (p.862).
Ask: If “son of” (Greek: Huios, not Teknon), meant “sameness of nature and equality of being” among the ancients, as historical records clearly show, then what does this tell us about the meaning of the phrase “Son of God”?
Ask: What did Jesus mean when He said of Himself: “All things that the Father hath are mine”. (John 16:15)? (Answer: Jesus is alone all that God is).
7. **John 4:23** “True worshippers shall worship the Father...” (p.871).
Do we worship the Father only?
Ask: Do you give worshipful honour to the Son **just as** you do to the Father? (John 5:23). If no, then your worship is in vain and you are not honouring the Father.
Ask: Why did the Watchtower (1880) say “to worship Christ in any form cannot be wrong”, while later Watchtower editions say we should not worship Christ?
Ask: What rule of Greek grammar does the Watchtower use to translate “*proskuneo*” as “worship” when it refers to the Father (21 times), devils (14 times), angels (2 times), but as “**obeisance**” when it refers to **Christ** (16 times)?
Ask: Why did Paul refuse worship (Actrs 14:11), the angel refuse worship (Revelation 22:8,9) but Jesus never refused worship?

8. **John 14:28** “**The Father is greater** (Greek: *meizon*) **than I**” (p.865).

Jesus did not say that “the Father is **better** (Greek: *kreitton*) than I”.

Greater refers to the Father’s greater **position** (in heaven), not to a greater **nature**.

Ask: Do you agree that a president is **greater in position** but not **better in nature** than his people?

Ask: In view of **greater** (meaning higher in position) and **better** (meaning higher in nature - see Hebrews 1:4), is it not clear that in John 14:28, Jesus is speaking of the Father’s **temporary higher position** and **not higher nature** than Jesus? (p.865).

9. **John 17:3** “**know thee the only true God**” (p.868).

The Watchtower says that, because the Father is called “the only true God”, then Jesus cannot be the true God.

Ask: The context is Jesus as a man, praying the great high priestly prayer to the Father. As such it was proper for the **man Christ Jesus** to call the Father “the only true God”. Christ would **not have said this** if it was spoken from the viewpoint of His **deity**.

Ask: Since Jesus being called our only Lord (Jude 4 NWT) does not exclude the Father (Matthew 11:25) and the Holy Spirit from being called Lord, why must the Father being called “the only true God” exclude the Son and Holy Spirit from being called God?

Ask: According to John 17:3, how many true Gods are there? (One).

Do you agree that whatever is not true is false?

If there is only one true God, all other gods must be false gods.

In John 1:1, NWT says that Jesus is a god, right? Is Jesus a true God or a false god?

He cannot be a false god, can He, since that would mean John was guilty of falsely honouring Jesus as a god. Therefore Jesus must be a true God.

But Jehovah is the only true God. Therefore, Jesus must be Jehovah.

10. **John 20:17** “**I ascend to . . . My God and your God.**” (p.864).

It is in Christ’s humanity that He acknowledged the Father as “my God”.

Ask: Since man’s proper duties are to worship God, pray to God and address God as “my Father” and “my God”, can you see that it was perfectly correct for Jesus (speaking as a man) to address God as “my Father” and “my God”? (p.864).

11. **I Corinthians 8:6** “**One God the Father . . . and one Lord Jesus Christ,**” (p.864).

Ask: Do you know that the Father is called Lord of heaven and earth? (Matthew 11:25).

Ask: Can you see that, since Jesus as one Lord does not mean that the Father is not Lord, then by the same logic, the Father as “one God” does not mean that Jesus is not God?864

12. **I Corinthians 11:3** “**The head of Christ is God.**” (p.858).

Ask: Are women inferior in nature to men because men exercise headship over women?

If no, why does WT teach that the Father’s headship over Christ means that Christ is inferior in nature to the Father? (p.858).

13. **I Corinthians 15:28** “**Then shall the Son also be subject unto Him.**” (p.863).

Jesus’ humanity will always be in subjection to the Father.

Ask: Do you submit to the police? (Yes). Are you of inferior nature to the police? (No). So why should Christ be of inferior nature to the Father, because He submits to Him?

Ask: “Of His (Christ’s) Kingdom there shall be no end.” (Luke 1:38). Can you see that **Christ as man**, will hand over the administration of the earthly kingdom to God the Father, so that then **Christ as God**, will reign forever with the **Father** and the **Holy Spirit**, as the **Triune God** and **no longer reign through the man Christ Jesus?** (p.863).

14. **Colossians 1:15** “the **firstborn** (Greek: **prototokos**) of every creature.” (p.860).

Ask: Why didn't Paul use the term “**first created**” (Greek: **protoktisis**) here if he meant that Christ was the first one created by Jehovah? (p.860).

Ask: What does “**firstborn**” mean? (p.860).

Ask: What does Psalm 89:27 mean by calling David “**firstborn**”, when he was the **last born son**? (p.861).

15. **Revelation 3:14** “The **Beginning** (Greek: **Arche**) of the Creation of God”. (p.859).

Ask: Since “**Arche**” used of God Almighty (in Rev.21:6 and 22:13) does not mean that God had a created beginning, why do you insist that, when “**Arche**” is used of Christ, it means that Christ had a created beginning? (eg: Archbishop, architect, beginner).

33. Places where KIT gives the right reading, contradicting NWT

The upper cutout is from the Kingdom Interlinear Translation (KIT), and the lower cutout is from The Emphatic Diaglott NT. Both are Watchtower approved and published.

1. **John 1:1** ‘The word was God’

Why does **KIT** contradict **NWT** to give right reading: ‘The word was God’? (p 854)

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.
In beginning was the Word, and the Word was toward the God, and god was the Word.

1 In [the] beginning the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god.* **2** This

1 Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ Λόγος, καὶ ὁ Λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν Θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ Λόγος.
In a beginning was the Word, and the Word was with the God, and a god was the Word.

1 In the †Beginning was the †Logos, and the Logos was with God, and the Logos was God.

2. **John 8:58** ‘Before Abraham was, I am’

Why does **KIT** give the right reading ‘I am’, contradicting **NWT** ‘I have been’? (p 857)

58 εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἰησοῦς Ἀμὴν ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβραάμ γενέσθαι ἐγὼ εἰμί.
Said to them Jesus Amen amen I am saying to you Before Abraham to become I am.
59 ἦραν οὖν λίθους
They lifted up therefore stones

58 Jesus said to them: “Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, I have been.”* **59** Therefore

58 Εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Ἀμὴν ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβραάμ γενέσθαι, ἐγὼ εἰμί.
Said to them the Jesus; Indeed I am saying to you, before Abraam to have been born, I am. **59** Ἦσαν οὖν λίθους, ἵνα
They took up therefore stones, that

... **58** *Jesus said to them, “Indeed, I assure you, Before Abraham was born, I am he.”

3. **John 14:14**

KIT tells us to pray to Jesus (p.899).

14 ἐάν τι αἰτήσῃτε με ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί μου τοῦτο ποιήσω.
if ever anything you should ask in the name of me this I shall do.

Son. 14 If you ask anything in my name, I will do it.

4. **John 17:3**

Why does the KIT give the right reading 'know you (verb)' contradicting the NWT 'taking in knowledge (noun)'? (p.868).

3 αὕτη δέ ἐστιν ἡ
This but is the
αἰώνιος ζῶῃ ἵνα γινώσκωσι
everlasting life, in order that they may be knowing
σε τὸν μόνον ἀληθινὸν θεὸν καὶ ὃν
you the only true God and whom
ἀπέστειλας Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν.
you sent forth Jesus Christ.

3 This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ.

5. **Acts 20:28**

Where is 'Son' in the Greek? (p.843).

28 προσέχετε ἑαυτοῖς καὶ παντὶ
Be you paying attention to selves and to all
τῷ ποιμνίῳ, ἐν ᾧ ὑμᾶς τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ
the flock, in which you the spirit the
ἅγιον ἔθετο ἐπισκόπους, ποιμαίνειν τὴν
holy put overseers, to be shepherding the
ἐκκλησίαν τοῦ θεοῦ, ἣν περιεποιήσατο
ecclesia of the God, which he reserved for self
διὰ τοῦ αἵματος τοῦ ἰδίου. 29 ἐγὼ
through the blood of the own (one). I

28 Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God,* which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son].*

6. **Colossians 1:16,17 and Philippians 2:9**

Where is 'other'? (pp 841, 840, 886)

16 ὅτι ἐν αὐτῷ
because in him
ἐκτίσθη τὰ πάντα ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς
it was created the all (things) in the heavens
καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, τὰ ὄρατὰ καὶ
and upon the earth, the (things) visible and
τὰ ἀόρατα, εἴτε θρόνοι εἴτε
the (things) invisible, whether thrones or
κυριότητες εἴτε ἀρχαὶ εἴτε ἐξουσίαι·
lordships or governments or authorities;
τὰ πάντα δι' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν
the all (things) through him and into him
ἔκτισται· 17 καὶ αὐτὸς ἔστιν πρὸ
it has been created; and he is before
πάντων καὶ τὰ πάντα ἐν αὐτῷ
all (things) and the all (things) in him
συνέστηκεν. 18 καὶ αὐτὸς ἔστιν ἡ
it has stood together, and he is the

16 because by means of him all [other] things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All [other] things have been created through him and for him. 17 Also, he is before all [other] things and by means of him all [other] things were made to exist, 18 and he is

9 διὸ καὶ ὁ
through which also the
θεὸς αὐτὸν ὑπερύψωσεν, καὶ
God him put high up over, and
ἐχαρίσατο αὐτῷ τὸ ὄνομα τὸ ὑπὲρ
he graciously gave to him the name the over
πάν ὄνομα,
every name,

9 For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every [other] name,

7. **I Timothy 3:16**

No manuscript has 'He was manifest in the flesh'. But 323 manuscripts have 'God was manifest in the flesh'. (p.804,892).

16 καὶ ὁμολογουμένως μέγα ἐστὶν
and confessedly great is
τὸ τῆς εὐσεβείας μυστήριον· Ὃς
the of the revering well mystery; Who
ἐφανερώθη ἐν σαρκί, ἐδικαιώθη ἐν
was manifested in flesh, was justified in

16 Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion* is admittedly great: He was made manifest in flesh, was declared

8. **Hebrews 1:6** Why did the Watchtower change 'worship' (NWT 1961 edition) to 'do obeisance' (NWT 1985 edition)? (p.846).

6 ὅταν δὲ πάλιν εἰσαγάγῃ	6 But when he again brings his First-born into the inhabited earth, he says: "And let all God's angels worship him."
Whenever but again he should lead in	
τὸν πρωτότοκον εἰς τὴν οἰκουμένην,	6 But when he again brings his Firstborn into the inhabited earth, he says: "And
the Firstborn (one) into being uninhabited [earth],	Καὶ
λέγει	And
προσκυνησάτωσαν αὐτῷ πάντες ἄγγελοι	let all God's angels do obeisance to him."
let do obeisance toward him all angels	
θεοῦ.	
of God.	

9. **Hebrews 1:8**

Why does NWT reverse the word order, contradicting the KIT 'Thy throne O God'? p.844

8 πρὸς δὲ τὸν υἱόν	8 But
toward but the Son	with reference to the
Ὁ θρόνος σου ὁ θεὸς εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα	Son: "God is your throne forever and
<u>the throne of you the God</u> into the age	ever, and [the] scepter
τοῦ αἰῶνος, καὶ ἡ ῥάβδος τῆς εὐθύτητος	of your kingdom is
of the age, and the staff of the straightness	the scepter of upright-
ῥάβδος τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ.	ness.
staff of the kingdom of him.	

10. **Hebrews 9:27**

Where is 'for all time'? (p 872)

27 καὶ καθ' ὅσον ἀπόκειται τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἅπασι ἅποθανεῖν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,	27 And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment, 28 so also
And according to how much it is lying off to the men once	
ἀποθανεῖν, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο κρίσις,	judgment, 28 so also
to die, after but this (thing) judgment,	

11. **1 Peter 3:15**

KIT says to sanctify Christ as Jehovah God (footnote), quoting Isaiah 8:13. (p.837).

15 κύριον δὲ τὸν Χριστὸν ἁγιάσατε ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις ὑμῶν, ἔτοιμοι	15 But sanctify the Christ as Lord in your hearts, always ready to make a de-
sanctify you in the hearts of you, ready	

12*.[#] Jehovah, J7,8,11-14,16-18,20,22,(23),24; Lord, ἸΑΒΥΓSyP. 15* The Christ as Lord, J7,8,11-14,16,17,24.

12. **1 John 5:7,8**

Masculine

7 ὅτι ἐπειδὴ τρεῖς εἰσὶν οἱ μαρτυροῦντες, 8 τὸ πνεῦμα καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ τὸ αἷμα, καὶ οἱ τρεῖς εἰς τὸ ἓν εἰσὶν.	7 For there are three witness bearers, 8 the spirit and the water and the blood, and the three are in agreement.*
three are the (ones) bearing witness, the spirit and the water and the blood, and the three are in agreement.*	

3 neuter nouns are mismatched with 2 masculine articles.

Below we set out the declension of the definite article:

Singular Number

CASE	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	ENGLISH
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	the
Gen.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	of the
Dat.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	to the
Acc.	τόν	τήν	τό	the

Plural Number

CASE	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	ENGLISH
Nom.	οἱ	αἱ	τά	the
Gen.	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν	of the
Dat.	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς	to the
Acc.	τούς	τάς	τά	the

13. Revelation 19:1

Where is the great crowd? KIT and NWT say that they are in heaven. (p.923).

19 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤκουσα ὡς φωνὴν
 After these (things) I heard as voice
 μεγάλην ὄχλου πολλοῦ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ
 great of crowd much in the heaven
 λεγόντων Ἀλληλουία· ἡ σωτηρία καὶ ἡ
 of (ones) saying Hallelujah; the salvation and the
 δόξα καὶ ἡ δύναμις τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν,
 glory and the power of the God of us,

19 After these things I heard what was as a loud voice of a great crowd in heaven. They said: "Praise Jah, you people! The salvation and the glory and the power belong to our God,"

14. Did you know that **Clement of Alexandria** (153-217 AD), **Tertullian** (200-250 AD), **Hippolytus** (170 AD) & **Origen** (185-284 AD) believed in the Trinity and Deity of Christ? (p.875)

a) **Clement**: Volume 2, p.468, 173

I understand nothing else than the Holy Trinity to be meant; for the third is the Holy Spirit, and the Son is the second, by whom all things were made according to the will of the Father.³ This Word, then, the Christ, the cause of both our being at first (for He was in God) and of our well-being, this very Word has now appeared as man, He alone being both, both God and man—the Author of all blessings to us;

b) **Tertullian**: Volume 3, p.598,606,607

Still, in these few quotations the distinction of Persons in the Trinity is clearly set forth. For there is the Spirit Himself who speaks, and the Father to whom He speaks, and the Son of whom He speaks.¹³

Vol. 3,
p.606

when all the Scriptures attest the clear existence of, and distinction in, (the Persons of) the Trinity, and indeed furnish us with our Rule of faith,

Vol. 4,
p.99

For the very Church itself is, properly and principally, the Spirit Himself, in whom is the Trinity of the One Divinity — Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.¹³

Vol. 3,
p.598

while the mystery of the dispensation⁹ is still guarded, which distributes the Unity into a Trinity, placing in their order¹⁰ the three Persons—the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost: three, however, not in condition,¹¹ but in degree;¹² not in substance, but in form; not in power, but in aspect;¹³ yet of one substance, and of one condition, and of one power, inasmuch as He is one God, from whom these degrees and forms and aspects are reckoned, under the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.¹⁴

Vol. 3,
p.607

Now if He too is God, according to John, (who says,) "The Word was God,"⁸ then you have two Beings—One that commands that the thing be made, and the Other that *executes the order and creates.*

946

Vol. 3,
p.598

Him *we believe* to have been sent by the Father into the Virgin, and to have been born of her—being both Man and God, the Son of Man and the Son of God, and to have been called by the name of Jesus Christ;

c) Hippolytus: Volume 5, p.228

“Go ye and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.”¹⁶ And by this He showed, that whosoever omitted any one of these, failed in glorifying God perfectly. For it is through this Trinity¹⁷ that the Father is glorified. For the Father willed, the Son did, the Spirit manifested. The whole Scriptures, then, proclaim this truth.

d) Origen: Volume 4, p.255,258.

This is most clearly pointed out by the Apostle Paul, when demonstrating that the power of the Trinity is one and the same, in the words, “There are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit; there are diversities of administrations, but the same Lord; and there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God who worketh all in all. But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal.”² From which it most clearly follows that there is no difference in the Trinity, but that which is called the gift of the Spirit is made known through the Son, and operated by God the Father. “But all these worketh that one and the self-same Spirit, dividing to every one severally as He will.”³

8. Having made these declarations regarding the Unity of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit,

e) Thaumaturgus: (205-265 AD), Vol.6, p.42,45.

VII.

XVIII.

But some treat the Holy Trinity⁷ in an awful manner, when they confidently assert that there are not three persons, and introduce (the idea of) a person devoid of subsistence.⁸ Wherefore we clear ourselves of Sabellius, who says that the Father and the Son are the same. For he holds that the Father is He who speaks, and that the Son is the Word that abides in the Father, and becomes manifest at the time of the creation,⁹ and thereafter reverts to God on the fulfilling of all things. The same affirmation he makes also of the Spirit. We forswear this, because we believe that three persons — namely, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit — are declared to possess the one Godhead: for the one divinity showing itself forth according to nature in the Trinity¹⁰ establishes the oneness of the nature; and thus there is a (divinity that is the) property of the Father, according to the word, “There is one God the Father;”¹¹ and there is a divinity hereditary¹² in the Son, as it is written, “The Word was God;”¹³

We acknowledge that the Son and the Spirit are consubstantial with the Father, and that the substance of the Trinity is one, — that is, that there is one divinity according to nature, the Father remaining unbegotten, and the Son being begotten of the Father in a true generation, and not in a formation by will,³ and the Spirit being sent forth eternally from the substance of the Father through the Son, with power to sanctify the whole creation. And we further acknowledge that the Word was made flesh, and was manifested in the flesh-movement⁴ received of a virgin, and did not simply energize in a man. And those who have fellowship with men that reject the *consubstantiality* as a doctrine foreign to the Scriptures, and speak of any of the persons in the Trinity as created, and separate that person from the one natural divinity, we hold as aliens, and have fellowship with none such.⁵ There is one God the Father, and there is only one divinity. But the Son also is God, as being the true image of the one and only divinity, according to generation and the nature which He has from

118. 10 Proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah

It is well known that the Jewish religion and the nation of Israel have rejected Jesus Christ's claim to be their Messiah. It matters not what men think, but what God says in His Word.

What do the Old Testament Prophets, the Law and Psalms say about how we can **identify** Who is the true Messiah that Israel is looking for? Consider these 10 proofs that Jesus Christ is the Messiah:

1. Daniel 9:24-27 states that the Messiah will **come** and **be killed BEFORE** the city of Jerusalem and its Temple are **destroyed** in 70AD.

a) "After 62 weeks (33AD) b) shall Messiah be **cut off** (killed), but not for himself: and the people (Romans) of the prince that shall come (future European Antichrist) c) shall destroy the city (of Jerusalem in 70AD) and d) the sanctuary (the Temple in 70AD)." (Daniel 9:26). This teaches 4 things:

a) Messiah offers himself to Israel as their Prince on **29 March 33AD** after 69 weeks (=7 + 62) of years. This occurs at the end of the 62-week interval (ie: $69 \times 7 \times 360 = 173,880$ days).

4 March 444BC 0 week	7 weeks	29 March 33AD 69 weeks 173,880 days	70AD
◆	◆	◆	
Artaxerxes' command to restore and build Jerusalem.	Street and wall rebuilt	a,b) Messiah comes. Messiah killed.	c,d) Jerusalem destroyed. Temple destroyed.

b) Messiah will be rejected by Israel (Sunday 29 March 33AD) and **killed** (Friday 3 April 33AD).

c) Romans will destroy Jerusalem.

d) Romans will destroy the Temple. This happened in 70AD.

Jesus Christ fulfils Daniel's prophecy that Messiah comes & is killed before Jerusalem & the Temple are destroyed in 70AD. $10pm\ 4\ March\ 444BC + (173,880/365.2422 = 476.06766\ days) = 3pm\ 29\ March\ 33$

2. Psalm 22:8-16 contains **six prophecies** fulfilled by Jesus Christ at His first coming:

The Jewish Chief Priests, scribes and elders would mock the Messiah, while on the cross.	
1. Psalm 22:8 "He trusted on the LORD that He would deliver him: let him deliver him."	Matthew 27:43 "He trusted in God; let him deliver him now."
2. Psalm 22:14 "all my bones are out of joint."	
3. Psalm 22:15 "my tongue cleaveth to my jaws."	John 19:28 "I thirst."
4. Psalm 22:15 "they pierced my hands and my feet."	Matthew 27:35 "they crucified him."
5. Psalm 22:18 "they part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture."	Matthew 27:35 " <u>parted</u> his garments, <u>casting lots</u> ."
6. Psalm 69:21 "they gave me also gall for my meat; and in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink."	Matthew 27:34 "They gave me vinegar to drink mingled with gall ."

3. Zechariah 13:6. When Messiah returns to earth, someone will ask him about His hand wounds:

"And one shall say unto him, What are these **wounds in thine hands**?

Then shall he answer, Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends."

The context of Zechariah chapters 13,14 refers to the Messiah returning to earth to rescue Israel.

Question: If the returning Messiah has hand wounds, doesn't this fit Jesus Christ as being the Messiah?

4. Micah 5:2. The Messiah would come from Bethlehem.

Once again, Jesus Christ qualifies as the Messiah by being born where the prophet Micah prophesied:

"But thou, Bethlehem Ephrathah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting." The Messiah would be:

a) Born in Bethlehem.

b) Become Israel's future ruler.

c) Have existed everlasting in the past. Only God is everlasting.

This shows that Jesus Christ is the Messiah, and is also God.

5. **Zechariah 9:9**. Messiah the King of Israel would enter Jerusalem in a humble manner, riding on an ass, and on the foal of an ass.

“Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold thy King cometh unto thee: he is just, and having salvation; lowly, and riding upon an ass, and upon a colt the foal of an ass.”

Jesus Christ again fits the description of being Israel’s Messiah, because He entered Jerusalem in 33AD on an ass and her foal, to offer Himself as King. This is described in Luke 19:28-44; Matthew 21:1-9; Mark 11:1-10; John 12:12-19. When Jesus Christ entered Jerusalem on a colt, the people addressed Him as, “Blessed be the King that cometh in the name of the Lord.” (Luke 19:38).

After the Pharisees rejected Jesus Christ as King, He then prophesied Jerusalem’s soon destruction. This happened in 70AD, because Israel failed to recognize that this was the day that Daniel prophesied Messiah’s coming (Daniel 9:26). This day was 173,880 days after 10pm 4 March 444BC (Neh 2:1-8).

6. **Zechariah 11:12,13**. God said that 30 pieces of silver would be:

- a) The price that Israel would put on their God,
- b) cast to the potter,
- c) cast in the house of the LORD.

“Thus saith the LORD my God; . . . (v.4) If ye think good, give me my price; . . .so they weighed for my price 30 pieces of silver (v.12). . and the LORD (Jehovah) said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was priced at of them. And I took the thirty pieces of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the LORD.” (Zechariah 11:13).

Notice here that Jehovah God states that Israel priced Him at 30 pieces of silver.

Jesus Christ fulfilled each of these 3 prophecies, proving that He is Jehovah, the God of Israel:

<u>Zechariah 11:12,13</u>	<u>Jesus Christ (Matthew 26:14-16; and 27:3-7)</u>
a) God valued at <u>30 pieces of silver</u> .	“they covenanted with him (Judas) for <u>30 pieces of silver</u> .” (Matthew 26:14-16).
b) Money will be cast to a <u>potter</u> .	“Chief priests took the silver pieces and... bought with them the <u>potter’s field</u> .” (Matthew 27:6,7).
c) Money will be cast in the <u>Temple</u> .	“He (Judas) cast down the pieces of silver in the <u>Temple</u> .” (Matthew 27:3-5).

7. **Isaiah 40:3**. Messiah would be preceded by a messenger.

This messenger would warn people that Israel’s Messiah was about to come and they should prepare to welcome Him. The messenger’s message would be:

“The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness. Prepare ye the way of the LORD, make straight in the desert a highway for our God.” (Isaiah 40:3).

This was the message of John the Baptist: “Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.” (Matthew 3:3; Mark 1:3; Luke 3:3; John 1:23).

Because Israel’s leaders rejected John the Baptist’s message, the warning of **Malachi 4:6** came true in the destruction of Jerusalem in 70AD: “Lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.”

Israel’s sad history over the past 1950 years is due to the curse that Malachi said would come on them for rejecting Jesus Christ as their Messiah.

8. **God’s servant**. **Isaiah 52:13** to **53:12** describe the Messiah as God’s servant that would be exalted very high. Details of this passage match Jesus Christ as being the Messiah.

Question: If this does not refer to Jesus Christ, then to whom does it refer?

- i) “his visage was so marred more than any man.” (v.14).
This fits the brutal disfigurement that Jesus Christ received from His persecutors.
- ii) “He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows....we esteemed him not.” (53:3).
This fits how Israel’s leaders despised and rejected Jesus Christ.
- iii) “the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.” (53:6).
- This fits how Jesus Christ was killed on the same night as the Passover lamb was slain.
- This fits the Old Testament animal blood sacrifices that pointed to the once for all sacrifice of Jesus Christ as the Saviour for all mankind’s sins. Friday 3 April 33AD was a full moon.

- iv) “he made his grave with the **wicked.**” (53:9)
This fits how Jesus Christ was crucified between two thieves (Luke 23:39-43).
- v) “he made his grave . . . with the **rich** in his death.” (53:9).
This fits how Jesus Christ was buried in a rich man’s tomb (Joseph of Arimathaea). Luke 23:50-53.
- vi) “he was **cut off** out of the land of the living.” (53:8).
This fits how Jesus Christ’s life was brutally cut off in his prime.
- vii) “he had **done no violence**, neither was any **deceit** in his mouth.” (53:9).
This fits how Jesus Christ showed no violence or deceit. Nobody found any fault in Him. This “no fault” testimony was made by Pilate, Pilate’s wife, a Roman Centurion, a repentant thief, Judas.
- viii) “when thou shalt make his soul an **offering** for sin.” (53:10).
This fits how Jesus Christ fulfilled, in his sacrificial death, the many kinds of offerings for sin that Moses commanded.
- ix) “he shall **prolong his days.**” (53:10).
This fits how Jesus Christ rose from the dead, was seen by hundreds of witnesses over 40 days, ascended to heaven from the Mount of Olives, will return to the Mount of Olives (Zechariah 14:4) and will have nail prints in his hands at his return.
- x) “he was numbered with the **transgressors.**” (53:12).
This fits how Jesus Christ was considered a sinner by many Jews, even to today.

9. Hosea 5:15 to 6:1,2

God addresses Israel in Hosea 5:15 as being displeased with an offence that Israel has committed.

God promises to return to His place until Israel acknowledges that offence.

a) “I will go and **return to my place, till** they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early.” (Hosea 5:15).

Question 1: What was the offence that Israel committed?

Answer: That of rejecting and crucifying their Messiah.

Question 2: What does God mean by “returning to my place”? Where is God’s place?

Answer: God’s place is heaven, to which Christ ascended 40 days after His resurrection.

Question 3: Why is the word “return” used?

Answer: Because Jesus Christ came from heaven to earth, then returned to heaven.

Question 4: What is the affliction that God says will cause Israel to repent and seek God’s face?

Answer: The trouble that is happening now in the Middle East will culminate in the Antichrist’s invasion of Israel and the suffering they will experience.

b) Hosea 6:1,2 are Israel speaking:

Verse 1 is a call by Israel to return to God to be healed and bound up.

Hosea 6:2 is an amazing verse that fits perfectly with the timing of Israel’s return to their homeland after about 2000 years of being scattered among the nations.

“**After two days** will he revive us: **in the third day** he will raise us up, and we shall live in his sight.”

Notice that this appears to be saying that:

► After two days (or 2000 years in 2 Peter 3:8) God would revive Israel spiritually as a nation by their acknowledging their offence of crucifying Jesus Christ. When did Israel die spiritually? (33AD).

Luke 13:35. This would be followed by them receiving Jesus Christ as their Messiah (Zech 12:10), and

► In the third day (about 2033-3033AD) Israel will be raised up as the chief nation when Messiah returns. Q: If the third day is exactly 1000 years (Rev 20:1-7), then the first 2 days must be 2000 years.

10. Isaiah 9:6 states that the child that would be born would be “**the Mighty God.**”

“For unto us a **child** is born, . . .his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, **The Mighty God**.”

Jehovah calls Himself “The Mighty God” in Psalm 50:1 (“The Mighty God, Jehovah hath spoken,..”);

Jeremiah 32:18 “**the Mighty God**, Jehovah of hosts, is his name.” Isaiah 10:21.

This proves Jesus Christ to be Israel’s Messiah and God.

Conclusion: Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour, Messiah and God?

Why not do so right now today?

119. JESUS CHRIST IS GREATER THAN MOHAMMED

To understand which religion is the true religion- Christianity or Islam. (p.1070). We should study:

i) Its **founders** (Christ & Mohammed). ii) Its **book** (the Bible & Quran). iii) Its **God** (Jehovah & Allah). Who has the better credentials, Jesus or Mohammed? You decide yourself. Compare these differences:

1. **Jesus raised the dead, Mohammed couldn't.** Jesus raised Lazarus after being dead for 4 days (John 11), Jairus' daughter (Luke 8:49-56) and the widow of Nain's son (Luke 7:11-17). This means that Jesus has power to raise all people from the dead, including you.
2. **Jesus healed all sicknesses, Mohammed couldn't.** Jesus healed 10 **lepers** (Luke 17:11-19), a man born **blind** (John 9), paralysed (Matt. 8:5-13), **dumb, maimed, lame** multitudes (Matt. 15:29-31), withered hand (Mark 3:1-5), hunchback (Luke 13:11), replaced a severed ear (Luke 22:50,51), healed from a distance (John 4:46-54), "as many as touched him were made whole." (Mark 6:56).
3. **Jesus had power over nature, Mohammed didn't.** Jesus stilled storms and waves (Mark 4:35-41). Jesus multiplied 5 loaves and 2 fishes to feed 5000 men (John 6:1-14). Jesus walked on the water (John 6:15-21; Matthew 14:22-36). Jesus cast demons out of an insane, demonised man (Mark 5:1-20).
4. **Jesus had power to forgive sins, Mohammed didn't.** 'Son of man has power on earth to forgive sins' 24 This proves Jesus is God. "who can forgive sins, but God alone?" (Luke 5:17-26).
5. **Jesus rose from the dead, Mohammed didn't.** (John 20:1-31; Luke 24:1-53). Jesus raised Himself from the dead: "Destroy this temple and in 3 days I will raise it up." John 2:19.
6. **Jesus ascended visibly to heaven, Mohammed didn't.** (cloud received him out of their sight. Ac1:9-11)
7. **Jesus accepted worship as God, Mohammed didn't** (John 9:38; Luke 24:52). **Q:** Would Jesus lie?
8. **Jesus claimed equality with God, Mohammed didn't.** **John** called Jesus: 'the Word was God' John 1:1 'Jews sought to kill him, because he said that God was his Father, making himself **equal** with God.' John 5:18 **Jesus** said He was God: "If ye believe not that **I am**, ye shall die in your sins." John 8:24. (Ex.3:14). "That all men should honour the Son, **even as** they honour the Father." John 5:23. **Thomas** called Jesus "My Lord and my God." John 20:28. Jesus has **120 attributes of God.** Ans811 **Paul** called Jesus: "God was manifest in the flesh." I Timothy 3:16. **Isaiah** called Jesus: "The **Mighty God**." Isaiah 9:6. "Father, Word, Holy Ghost...**are one**." I John 5:7.
9. **The Prophets** called **Jesus the "Son of God"** meaning that He was identical with God.
Question: How can God have a Son? **Answer:** As man is soul, body, spirit, so God is Father, Son, HS.
 - a) **Daniel** called Jesus the Son of God: "the form of the fourth is like the Son of God." Dan.3:25
 - b) **David** said that God has a Son: "Kiss the Son lest he be angry." Psalm 2:12.
 - c) **Solomon** said that God has a Son: "Who hath established the ends of the earth? (God) What is his name, and what is his son's name, if thou canst tell?" Proverbs 30:4,5.
 - d) **Gabriel** called Jesus the Son of God: 'He shall be great, & shall be called the Son of the Highest (v32), that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.' Luke 1:26-35
 - e) **Jesus** called Himself the Son of God on 4 occasions: John 5:25; 9:35; 10:36; 11:4.
 - f) **God the Father** called Jesus "my beloved Son" at His baptism. (Matthew 17:5).
 - g) **8 New Testament characters** called Jesus the Son of God: **John the Baptist** (John 1:34), **Nathanael** (John 1:49); **Peter** (John 6:69); **Martha** (John 11:27); **John** (John 20:31); **Centurion** 'Truly this was the Son of God.' (Matt. 27:54); **Paul** (Rom.1:4); **Ethiopian Eunuch** (Acts 8:37)
10. **Jesus was sinless, Mohammed was a sinner, a murderer.** Those testifying that Jesus was sinless were: Pilate's wife (Mat.27:19), Pilate (Mat.27:24), thief on the cross (Luke 23:41); Judas (Mt27:4)
11. **Jesus died for the sins of the world, Mohammed didn't.** "While we were yet sinners, Christ died for us." (Romans 5:8). "The Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." (Isaiah 53:6).
12. **Jesus fulfilled many Old Testament prophecies, Mohammed didn't.** See Table of 45 Prophecies.
13. **Jesus prophesied the future, Mohammed didn't.**
 - a) The **Roman destruction of Jerusalem**. (Luke 19:41-44).
 - b) The **only escape** from this Roman invasion was to flee to the mountains when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies. (Luke 21:20-24).
 - c) **False Christs**, wars, famines, disease, earthquakes, **gospel preached worldwide** (Mat.24:1-14)
 - d) The Roman destruction of the **Temple**. (Matthew 24:2).
 - e) **Jerusalem** being under **Gentile control** until the end of the age. (Luke 21:24). 951

14. Jesus gave superior teachings. Mohammed's teachings are repetitive, hate filled, many threats of hell, fanciful (turning people to apes), violent, inciting to war, contradictory, fatalistic, anti-Christ and anti-Christian, fear of Allah's punishment, and discriminating against women (Quran 4:34).
 15. Jesus promised to return to earth to set up His kingdom, resurrect and judge all men, Mohammed didn't. "I will come again." (John 14:3). Angels promised it (Acts 1:10,11).
 16. Jesus cast out demons who called him "the Holy One of God" (Luke 4:31-37). Mohammed didn't, but accepted the help of demons/jinn to spread Islam. (72:1-).
 17. Jesus' place of birth (Bethlehem in Micah 5:2) and time of coming to offer Himself as King of Israel (3pm 29 March, 33AD in Daniel 9:24-26) were prophesied by the prophets Micah & Daniel.
 18. Jesus showed love, compassion and forgiveness to sinners (eg: Woman taken in adultery, harlots, sufferers) Mohammed didn't (100 lashes for adulterer (24:2), cut off a thief's hand (5:39)).
 19. Jesus sent the Holy Spirit as our Comforter, Mohammed didn't. "But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name.." (John 14:26,16-18; 16:7-14). Holy Spirit is the Comforter, not Mohammed because **a)** He shall be with you forever (John 14:16) **b)** The disciples knew Him "ye know him." (John 14:17). **c)** He shall be in you (John 14:17). **d)** Be called the Holy Ghost (John 14:26). **e)** Be called the Spirit of Truth (John 16:13);M abrogated **f)** Glorify Jesus (John 16:14). Mohammed did none of these. Islam hopes you won't read John 14:26
 20. Jesus' birth and death were witnessed by signs in heaven. The Bethlehem star guided wise men from the east (Matthew 2:1,2,7-10), and darkness covered the earth for 3 hours at His death (12-3pm; Matt 27:45; Mark 15:33). Mohammed had no heavenly signs witnessing his birth or death.
 21. Jesus gave us a high moral example to follow. Mohammed gave us a low moral example of war, murdering people to spread Islam, stealing, taking slave girls and other men's wives, lying, etc.
 22. Jesus won people by love, truth, miracles. Mohammed won people by sword, violence, threats, terror ('Make war' 8:39; 9:73 'Fight' 9:29; 'Fighting is obligatory for you' 2:216; 'cut' 8:12).
 23. Jesus preached peace ('Peace I leave with you' John 14:27) and love your enemies (Matt 5:44). Mohammed preached fighting ("Fighting is obligatory." Q2:216; "Make war on them." Q 8:39).
 24. Jesus commanded Christians to love one another. Mohammed commanded Muslims to fight Christians and Jews. "Fight against those to whom the Scriptures were given." (Q9:29). "Believers (Muslims), take neither Jews nor Christians for your friends." (Q5:51). "A new commandment I give unto you that ye love one another as I have loved you." John 13:34.
 25. Jesus guarantees Christians a home in heaven, Mohammed doesn't. . Mohammed was unsure of heaven (Q46:9; Buk.Vol 1,372). Jesus said to Christians "I go to prepare a place for you"John 14:2 "He that has the Son has life" I Jn5:12. "rejoice because your names are written in heaven."Luk10:20 Moh: "none is secure from the punishment of their Lord." Q70:28. 'nor do I know what will be done with me or with you' Q46:9. Q19:71 says all Muslims go through or over hell. 'There is not.'
 26. Jesus never took other men's wives for himself, Mohammed took Zayneb off his adopted son Zayd, and got Allah to approve it. ('Keep your wife to yourself... We gave her to you..' Q33:37).
 27. Jesus never killed or robbed anyone. Mohammed ordered his men to kill thousands of men (800 Bani Qurayza 33:26), steal their goods, take their wives, daughters as slave girls.'slaves you possess' Q4:3
 28. Jesus elevated, honoured and defended women. "why trouble ye the woman?" (Matthew 26:10). Mohammed taught men to beat their wives (4:34), to replace wives (4:20), to treat them like fields (2:223), to take women as slave girls (33:52; 4:3), called them enemies (64:14), and that men are superior to women (4:34; 2:228).
 29. Jesus forbid violence, but Mohammed commanded it. "Jesus said, Put up again thy sword into his place; for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword." Matthew 26:52. "Whoever fights for the cause of Allah, we shall richly reward him. (Q4:74). "True believers fight for the cause of Allah." (Q4:76).
 30. Jesus has a personal relationship with Christians, changing us to loving, kind, peaceful people. Mohammed has no relationship with Muslims. No Muslim knows Mohammed or Allah personally. Christians know God the Father & God the Son personally. "truly our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ." I John 1:3.
- Jesus died for your sins and rose again. Call on Jesus Christ to save you from your sins now. "Whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved." Romans 10:13. 952

120. MAIN QUOTES IN THE KORAN. The Koran is divided into 114 Chapters or Suras, named:

2. COW v.67-71 This Sura is “the Koran in summary” having all the main points mentioned elsewhere

2:1 This book is not to be doubted. It is a guide to the righteous who...trust what has been revealed to you. Note: The Koran testifies of itself which proves nothing. Jesus and the Bible are testified to by:

i) John the Baptist (John 5:33-35).

ii) Christ’s miracles (John 5:36).

iii) God the Father (John 5:37; Matthew 3:17 speaking at Christ’s baptism).

iv) Many Old Testament Scriptures prophesying of Christ (John 5:39).

v) Christ’s many prophesies: Jerusalem’s destruction; Jewish dispersion & regathering in the end days.

vi) Christ’s death for our sins and the resurrection from the dead. (Q 3:55).

vii) Christ’s message of love and peace compared to Mohammed’s message of hate and war on unbelievers and repetitive threats of punishment in hell, designed to scare readers into conversion.

2:25 Proclaim good tidings to those who have faith and do good works. They shall dwell in gardens ...fruit to eat. Wedded to chaste spouses, they shall abide therein forever.

Note: This Muslim concept of heaven is clearly man made because:

i) It only contains the best things imaginable to Arab males of 7th Century Arabia; gardens, fruit, wine and sex with many women.

ii) Allah is rarely mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iii) Women are rarely if ever mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iv) There are no mentally stimulating benefits in the Muslim heaven such as service to God, opportunity to serve others, ruling in a new universe, only the satisfaction of selfish sensual desires.

2:34 When we said to the angels: “Prostrate yourselves before Adam”, they all prostrated themselves except Satan who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever.

Note: This story is contrary to the Bible (Genesis 2:16,17). It is recorded about 7 times in the Koran.

This makes Satan look good and Allah look bad. (2:34; 7:11; 15:30-33; 17:61,62; 18:50; 20:115; 38:75)

2:41 Have faith in my revelations which confirm your scriptures.

Note: The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it on almost every page and on every doctrine, such as Salvation, God, Christ being Son of God, dying, heaven, Israel. (2:87,89).

2:63-65 Two far-fetched, unbiblical fables are that:

i) Allah “raised the Mount (Sinai) above Israel when giving the covenant. (4:154; 2:63,93).

ii) You have heard of those of you that broke the Sabbath. We said to them: “You shall be changed into detested apes.” We made their fate an example to their own generation...

2:79 Woe to those that write the scriptures with their own hands and then declare: “This is from Allah.”

Note: This well describes the Koran as being man made. It differs everywhere from the Bible in that:

i) It Contains no prophesies that have come true.

ii) Has a totally different style and subject matter to every prophet and apostle in the Bible.

iii) It fails to glorify Christ. Christ is honoured in every book of the Bible.

2:97 Say: “Whoever is an enemy of Gabriel (who has by Allah’s grace revealed to you the Koran... confirming previous scriptures)...an enemy of Allah, His angels, His apostles, of Gabriel, or Michael, will surely find that Allah is the enemy of the unbelievers.”

Note: The Koran in order to build acceptance and credibility claims support from previous sources of the truth such as Allah, angels, prophets, apostles, Gabriel and Michael. When we study their words in the Bible their message is totally different from the Koran. How many Muslims have carefully studied the Bible?

Note: i) Michael the archangel stands for Israel (Daniel 12:1), but the Koran opposes Israel (98:6).

ii) Gabriel’s message in the Bible is opposite to the Koran’s message about Christ:

“in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God... to a virgin (v.26,27).

The angel said unto her “Fear not, Mary: for thou hast found favour with God. And behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. (v.30,31). He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest... of his kingdom there shall be no end. (v.32,33)... that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.” (v.35). Luke 2:26-35.

The Koran denies that God has a Son, yet the Bible, the apostles, and prophets Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2), Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), and Gabriel all say that God has a Son. Who do you believe?

2:106 If we abrogate a verse or cause it to be forgotten, we will replace it by a better one or one similar. Did you not know that Allah has power over all things?

Note: This verse is fatal to Islam and the Koran, because if Allah can change his mind about whether a verse is in scripture & replace it with a better verse, then Allah is not the all-knowing God of the Bible.

2:118 The ignorant ask: “Why does Allah not speak to us, or give us a sign?”

Note: These people are not ignorant, but they ask a very good question. The Bible prophets and apostles showed signs and miracles to prove they were truly from God, something that Mohammed could never do. (see Mark 16:20 “Confirming the word with signs following.”; 2 Cor.12:12 “Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds.”) Isaiah 41:23 says, “Show the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know that ye are gods.” Mohammed could never do miracles as Jesus did, nor could Mohammed prophesy the future as did Jesus, the Bible prophets and the Apostles.

2:127 Abraham and Ishmael built the house (The Kabah at Mecca) and dedicated it...Make of our descendants a nation that will submit to you.

Note: There is no Bible evidence or historical evidence that Abraham or Ishmael ever went to Mecca. This is only in the imagination of Mohammed in order to gain support from the Bible.

2:136 Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Koran); in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses, Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord.

Note: Again the Koran appeals to these men to support the Muslim faith. If Muslims studied Bible writings they would see how opposite their teachings are to Mohammed and to the Koran.

2:154 Do not say that those slain in the cause of Allah are dead. They are alive, but you are not aware of them.

2:137 He has forbidden you carrion, blood, and the flesh of swine.

2:185 In the month of Ramadan the Koran was revealed.

2:216 Fighting is obligatory for you, much as you dislike it.

But you may hate a thing although it is good for you. Allah knows.

2:217 Whoever of you recants and dies an unbeliever,... shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

2:218 Those that have embraced the faith and those that have fled their land and fought for the cause of Allah, may hope for Allah’s mercy.

2:221 You shall not wed pagan women, unless they embrace the faith.

2:223 Women are your fields: go, then, into your fields whence you please.

Note: Women are here compared to an impersonal field of dirt to be used for a man’s own benefit. The Bible gives much greater honour to wives in 1 Peter 3:7: “Husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life: that your prayers be not hindered.”

2:228 Men have a status above women.

2:230 If a man divorces his wife he cannot remarry her until she has wedded another man and been divorced by him; in which case it shall be no offence for either of them to return to the other.

Note: This clearly contradicts God’s law given to Moses in Deuteronomy 24:1-4 “Her former husband which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife,... for that is abomination before the Lord. Thou shalt not cause the land to sin.”

2:244 Fight for the cause of Allah.

2:246 The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: “Raise up for us a king and we will fight for the cause of Allah. He replied: “What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?” They said: “Why should we refuse to fight for the cause of Allah?” But when at last they were ordered to fight, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the evil-doers.”

Note: i) This comes from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: “Make us king to judge us like all the nations.” (v.5)... “that our king may judge us, and go out before us, fight our battles.” (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran's alleged conversation take place.

ii) This passage in the Koran portrays Allah declaring as evil-doers those who refused to fight. This motivates Muslims to fight if they wish to please Allah.

2:249 When Saul marched out with his army, he said: "Allah will prove you at a certain river. He that drinks from it shall cease to be my soldier, but he that... contents himself with a taste of it in the hollow of his hand, shall fight by my side."

iii) Error in the Koran: The writer of the Koran here confused Saul (1100 BC) with Gideon. (1250 BC). It was Gideon who God told to take his troops to a river to reduce their numbers from 10,000 to 300 by this same drinking test, not Saul. (Judges 7:1-7).

2:253 We gave Jesus the son of Mary clear signs (proofs) (of Allah's sovereignty) and strengthened him with the Holy Spirit.

Note: i) Jesus was proven by HIS miraculous signs, but Mohammed gave no miracles. Hence Jesus, the prophets and apostles who worked miracles are superior to Mohammed, who worked no miracles.

ii) Allah the moon god of Arabia did not give Jesus clear signs, but it was Jesus' Heavenly Father, the Jehovah God of the Bible who gave these miracles to authenticate Jehovah God the Son as the Messiah and Saviour of the world. Muslims suffer a case of mistaken identity. Their Allah is not the God of the Bible, but the pagan moon god of Arabia. The God of the Bible warns: "I am Jehovah thy God,... Thou shalt have no other gods before me." (Exodus 20:3).

2:256 There shall be no compulsion in religion.

Note: i) This is contradicted by Sura 8:39 "Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme."

ii) 2:256 is intended to convince non-Muslims that Islam is a peaceful religion. This is contradicted by "True Muslims fight for Allah." (4:76).

2:259 Allah killed a man, and after 100 years brought him back to life.

This was a Jewish fable of the time, that Mohammed put in the Koran.

2:260 Allah told Abraham to "Take 4 birds, draw them to you, and cut their bodies to pieces. Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you."

This was a well known fable in Mohammed's time.

2:271 To give alms (money) in private is better and will atone for some of your sins.

Note: This teaches the error that man can buy his way into heaven. Psalm 49:7 refutes this error.

Q: What about a poor man who has no money? Does he go to hell, while a rich man buys his way to heaven?

2:273 As for those needy men who, being wholly pre-occupied with fighting for the cause of Allah, cannot travel the land in quest of trading ventures... whatever alms you give are known to Allah.

Note: Here the Koran teaches that it is right to sponsor terrorism by paying those who fight for Allah.

2:275,276,278 Allah has permitted trading and made usury (charging and receiving interest)

unlawful. Those that turn back shall be inmates of the Fire. Allah has laid his curse on usury. Waive what is still due to you from usury.

Note: Most Muslims, Muslim banks, and Muslim governments disobey the Koran here by charging interest and paying interest. This law against interest makes banks unviable. Hence, a pure Islamic state like the Taliban's Afganistan regime could have no banks. They use Pakistan's banks at their borders.

2:284 Allah will forgive whom he will and punish whom he pleases. **Note:** No certainty of salvation.

2:285 They all believe Allah, His angels, His Scriptures, and His apostles. We make no distinction (don't discriminate) against any of His messengers.

Note: False. Muslims do give Mohammed a greater distinction than Jesus and all other Bible prophets.

3. The IMRANS (v.32)

3:4 Those who disbelieve Allah's revelations shall be sternly punished.

3:11 Allah is severe in punishment.

3:12 Say to the unbelievers: "You shall be overthrown and driven into hell."

3:15 The righteous shall be rewarded with... spouses of perfect chastity and contentment before Allah.

3:16 Those of Allah's servants who say: "Allah we believe in you, forgive us our sins and keep us from the torment of the Fire."

Note: This shows that no Muslim is sure of escaping hell and going to heaven.

3:19 The only true faith in Allah's sight is Islam.

3:32 Say "Obey Allah and the Apostle (Muhammed)." If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers.

Note: The God of the Bible loves the world of unbelievers (John 3:16 "God so loved the world...").

3:49 Allah said: "I bring you a sign from your Lord. From clay I will make for you the likeness of a bird. I shall breathe into it and, by Allah's leave it shall become a living bird."

Note: This fable was copied from Thomas' "Gospel of the Infancy of Christ" and placed in the Koran here. The Bible tells us that Jesus' first miracle was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child. (John 2:11).

3:49 Jesus said: "By Allah's leave I shall heal the blind man, and the leper, and raise the dead to life."

Note: These miracles of Christ prove that Christ is much greater than Mohammed who never did any miracles.

3:54 Allah is the supreme plotter (best of schemers).

Note: This permits Muslims to plot and scheme treachery because they are just following their god's example. The God of the Bible is honest and truthful.

3:57 Allah does not love the evil-doers.

3:62 This is the whole truth: "There is no god but Allah." Isaiah 44:6,8; 45:5,21 'no god but Jehovah.'

3:69 Some of the People of the Book (Jews and Christians), wish to mislead you.

3:70 People of the Book! Why do you disbelieve in the revelations of Allah...? See section "Why nobody should become a Muslim," page 993 for 20 reasons.

3:81 When Allah made his covenant with the prophets, he said: "Here are the scriptures and wisdom which I have given you. Afterward there will come unto you a messenger (or apostle) to confirm them. You shall believe in him and help him."

Note: This comes from Deuteronomy 18:18,19 where God says: "I will raise them (Israel) up a Prophet (Christ, not Mohammed) from among their brethren (Mohammed was not a Jew, but a Gentile Arabian), like unto thee (Moses), and will put my words in his mouth..."

Muslims claim that this prophecy refers to Mohammed, but the Prophet was Jesus Christ because:

i) Jesus was an Israelite, Mohammed was not.

ii) Jesus Christ prophesied the future, Mohammed did not.

iii) Jesus was like Moses in 61 ways (page 1087), Mohammed was not.

iv) Jesus spoke kind words of God, Mohammed spoke words of hate.

v) Jesus went about doing good(Act10:38). Mohammed went about raiding cities, massacring innocent.

3:85 He that chooses a religion other than Islam (surrender to Allah), it will not be accepted of him, and he will be a loser in the hereafter.

3:96,97 The first temple ever to be built for mankind was that at Bakkah (Mecca). In it there are clear signs and the spot where Abraham stood to pray... Pilgrimage to the House is a duty to Allah for all who can make the journey.

Note: i) There is no Biblical or historical evidence that Abraham ever visited Mecca.

ii) The Tabernacle, Solomon's temple or Herod's temple were earlier than the Kabah at Mecca.

3:125 If you have patience and guard yourselves against evil, Allah will send to your aid 5000 angels, if they suddenly attack you.

Note: This angelic help promised to Muslims gives them confidence to start wars against large armies.

3:151 Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy. We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners.their habitation is the Fire.

Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe Jesus is the Son of God.

3:157,158 If you should die or be slain in the cause of Allah, His forgiveness and mercy would be better than all the riches they amass. (If you should die or be slain) before Allah you will all be gathered. **Note:** This promises heaven to all Muslims who die fighting for the cause of Allah.

3:166 The misfortune which befell you when the two armies met was ordained by Allah.

3:169 Never think that those who were slain in the cause of Allah are dead. No, they are alive, and well provided for by their Lord. Allah will not deny the faithful their reward.

3:195 Those who fought and were slain (for my cause): I shall forgive their sins and admit them to gardens watered by running streams, as a reward from Allah.

WOMEN

4:3 If you fear that you cannot treat orphan girls with fairness, then you may marry other women who seem good to you. 2, 3, or 4 of them. But if you fear that you cannot maintain equality among them, marry one only or any slave girls you may own.

Note: This endorsement of the Koran that a man is allowed to marry as many slave girls as he wishes, inevitably leads to them being treated as second class citizens, and denies them the chance of having an husband of their own. It denies many men the chance to be married.

4:11 A male shall inherit twice as much as a female.

4:15 If any of your women commit fornication, call in 4 witnesses from among yourselves against them; if they testify to their guilt confine them to their houses till death overtakes them, or till Allah finds another way for them.

Q: What penalty exists for men committing fornication? None. He can fornicate by having a “temporary marriage” called Mutah, or a one-night stand.

4:20 If you wish to replace a wife with another, do not take from her the dowry you have given her...

4:34 Men have authority over women because God has made the one superior to the other, and because they spend their wealth to maintain them.

4:34 As for those from whom you fear disobedience, admonish them, and send them to their beds apart, and beat (scourge) them.

Note: Here the Koran encourages men to scourge (beat severely) their wives even on the suspicion of disobedience. The Bible never gives husbands permission for this, but commands “husbands to love your wives as Christ loved the church and gave himself for it”. (Ephesians 5:25).

What harsh power the Koran gives men over women.

4:56 Those that deny our revelations we will burn in the Fire. No sooner will their skins be consumed than we shall give them other skins, so that they may truly taste the scourge.

Note: What terror-inducing rubbish! Thankfully the love and permanent salvation of Jesus Christ saves us from such fear (John 10:28). “deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime” Heb2:15

4:57 As for those that have faith and do good works, we shall admit them to the gardens... where, wedded to chaste spouses, they shall abide forever.

4:66 Had we commanded them saying: “Lay down your lives...only a few would have complied. Yet had they done what they were admonished to do, it would have been better for them... We would have bestowed on them from ourself a rich reward.”

4:74 Let those who would exchange the life of this world for the hereafter, fight for the cause of Allah; whoever fights for the cause of Allah, whether he dies or triumphs, we shall richly reward him.

4:76 True believers fight for the cause of Allah.

4:77 When they were ordered to fight, some of them feared man as much as they feared Allah. They said: “Lord, why do you bid us fight? Could you not give us a brief respite?”

4:80 He that obeys the Apostle (Mohammed) obeys Allah.

Note: This was a clever trick by Mohammed to manipulate people into obeying him. God said no such thing. Jeremiah 23:16 “Thus saith the LORD of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain (1891= vain in expectation, to lead astray): they speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the Lord.”

4:82 If it (Quran) had not come from Allah, they could have surely found in it many contradictions.

Note: People have found many contradictions in it such as, Pharaoh (1500BC), Haman (510BC), Tower of Babel (2250BC) all coexisting (28:38).

4:84 Therefore fight for the cause of Allah. Rouse the faithful: perchance Allah will overthrow the might of the unbelievers.

4:89 If they desert you, seize them and put them to death wherever you find them.

Note: Fear of death is why so few people leave Islam. This is a big reason not to become a Muslim.

4:91 If these do not keep their distance from you, nor offer you peace, nor cease their hostilities against you, lay hold of them, and kill them wherever you find them.

4:93 He that kills a believer by design shall burn in hell forever.

4:94 Believers, show discernment when you go to fight for the cause of Allah.

4:95 i) The believers who stay at home are not the equals of those who fight for the cause of Allah, with their goods and persons.

ii) Allah has given those that fight with their goods & persons a higher rank than those that stay at home

iii) Far richer is the reward of those who fight for Allah.

Note: Jesus said: “all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.” Matthew 26:52.

“if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight.” John 19:36.

4:100 He that leaves his dwelling to fight for Allah and his apostle, and is then overtaken by death, shall be rewarded by Allah.

Note: This reminds us of terrorists who go overseas to fight for Allah and who die as a result.

4:104 Seek out your enemies relentlessly.

Note: Jesus said: “Love your enemies.” Matthew 5:44.

4:107 Allah does not love the treacherous or the sinful.

Note: This proves that the Koran is not from the Holy God of the Bible, because all men are sinful compared to God. Man’s typical thinking is that he is good compared to others. If God wrote the Koran, it would teach that all men are sinful.

4:116 Allah will not forgive idolatry.

Note: Error in the Koran here. Jesus said: “All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.” (Matthew 12:31,32).

4:124 Believers who do good works, both men and women shall enter paradise.

Note: This contradicts over 50 New Testament references that good works don’t save us (Eph.2:8-10; Galatians 2:16). None of us are good compared to God.

4:141 Allah will not let the unbelievers triumph over the faithful.

Note: This is false as seen by Charles Martel of Europe who defeated the Muslim invaders at the Battle of Tours in 732 AD. This promise makes Muslims feel invincible in warfare.

4:157 They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, Jesus (Mark 9:31; 10:34 “shall kill him”), and Quran 19:33 “Blessed I shall be on the day of my death.”

4:163 We have revealed our will to you (Mohammed) as we revealed it to Noah, Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron, Solomon and David.

Note: The true prophet David in Psalm 2:12 calls Jesus the “Son” in the phrase, “Kiss the Son,” contradicting the false prophet Mohammad.

4:171 People of the Book (Christians)... Believe in Allah and his apostles and do not say “THREE” ... God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a son.

Note: Yes Christians believe that God is one God, but that He has 3 parts (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) each of which is fully God. Jesus is fully God and fully man. As humans have a body, soul and spirit, so God has Father, Son and Holy Spirit, all fully and equally God. The OT and the NT teach this.

The TABLE (v.112)

5:16 Unbelievers are those who declare: “God is the Messiah, the son of Mary.” Say, “Who could prevent Allah, if he so willed, from destroying the Messiah, the son of Mary, his mother, and all the people of the earth?” Note: This is what Satan wants.

5:30,31 Raven taught Cain how to bury Abel. This was copied from the Targum of Jerusalem.

5:34 Those that make war against Allah and his apostle and spread disorder in the land shall be put to death or crucified, or have their hands and feet cut off on alternate sides, or be banished from the land.

5:35 Fight valiantly for His cause, so that you may triumph.

5:39 As for the man or woman who is guilty of theft, cut off their hands to punish them for their crimes

5:46,47 Jesus... We gave him the gospel. Note: The Koran never defines the gospel of Christ but the Bible does. (I Cor.15:1-4).

5:48 The Koran confirms the Scriptures which came before it. Note: False to those who know the Bible

5:51 Believers (Muslims), take neither the Jews nor the Christians for your friends ...wrongdoers.

5:56 Believers (Muslims), do not seek friendship of the infidels and those who were given the Book (Bible) before you, who have made your religion a jest.

5:60 Those whom God has cursed... transforming them into apes and swine. (7:166).

Note: This is unscientific. It never happens.

5:72 Unbelievers are those that say: "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary."

5:73 Unbelievers are those that say: "God is one of three." Mohammad never knew Greek or Trinity.

5:88 Allah does not love the transgressors. (7:55).

5:116 Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: 'Worship me and my mother as gods beside God?'"

Note: The Koran's error in thinking that the Trinity is "God, Jesus and Mary".

CATTLE

6:39 Allah confounds whom He will, and guides to the right path whom He pleases.

This is the error of Fatalism.

6:51 They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah. Note: Jesus is our intercessor. I Timothy2:5,6

6:88 We chose them.

6:87 We gave him Isaac, Jacob, Noah, David, Solomon, Job, Joseph, Moses, Aaron, Zacharias, John, Jesus, Elias (Elijah), Ishmael, Elisha, Jonah, Lot.

6:101 How should he have a son when he had no consort? Because Jesus is not a teknon son, but Huios

6:145 Who is more wicked than the man who in his ignorance invents a lie about Allah to mislead others? Note: This is exactly what Mohammed has done with the Koran. Bible was proven by miracles.

THE HEIGHTS

7:24 Allah who created the heaven and the earth in 6 days. Note: Q 41:9,10,12 says 8 days.

7:64 We saved him (Noah) & all who were with him in the ark. Note: Q 11:42,43 says 1 son drowned.

7:124 Pharaoh "Then I will crucify you all." Note: Wrong, as crucifixion was not invented in 1500 BC.

7:157 Those who shall follow the Prophet-- whom they shall find described in the Torah and the Gospel. Note: This is wrong, because Deuteronomy 18:15-18 describe Jesus Christ not Mohammed.

7:163 Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they did wrong.

7:167 He would raise against them (Jews) others who would oppress them cruelly till the day of Resurrection.

7:179 We have predestined for hell numerous jinn and men.

THE SPOILS

8:12 Allah revealed his will to the angels saying: "...I shall cast terror into the hearts of the infidels, strike off their heads, strike off the very tips of their fingers...that was because they defied Allah and his apostle." Note: This is the cause of modern Muslim terrorism to gain world domination.

8:30 Allah is the best of plotters.

8:39 Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme.

8:41 Know that one-fifth of your spoils shall belong to Allah, and the apostle.

8:59 Let not the unbelievers think that they will ever get away...Muster against them all the men and cavalry at your command, so that you may strike terror into the enemy of Allah, and your enemy and others beside them who are unknown to you but known to Allah.

8:65 Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms. O Prophet, exhort the believer to fight. If there are 20 steadfast among you, they shall vanquish 200; and if there are 100, they shall route 1000 unbelievers, for they are devoid of understanding." Note: Mohammad did not foresee smart missiles killing terrorists.

8:67 A prophet may not take captives until he has fought and triumphed (made slaughter) in the land.

8:69 Enjoy the good and lawful things you have gained in war.

8:74 Those that have fought for the cause of Allah, sheltered & helped them, they are the true believers

REPENTANCE (v.104)

Marks end of idolatry in Arabia. Christian Byzantine Empire had begun to move against the growing Muslim power. This Surah mentions a greater war to come, and instructions with regard to it. v.38-99. Arab tribes who failed to join Muslims in the Tabuk campaign are the “Hypocrites” or half-hearted supporters of Islam.

9:5 When the sacred months are over, **slay the idolaters wherever you find them**. **Arrest them**, **besiege them** and **lie in ambush everywhere** for them.

9:12 If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and **revile your faith**, **make war on the leaders of unbelief**.

9:14 Make **war** on them: Allah will **chastise them** at your hands and **humble them**. He will grant you victory over them.

9:18 None should **visit** the Mosques of Allah except those who believe in Allah and the last day...

9:19 **Worthy** is the man that believes in Allah and the last day and **fight for Allah’s cause**.

9:20 Those that have embraced the faith and left their homes and **fought for Allah’s cause** with their wealth and persons are held in **higher regard by Allah**. It is they who shall triumph. Their Lord has promised them joy and mercy, and **gardens of eternal bliss** where they shall dwell forever. Allah’s reward is great indeed.

9:25 Allah has given you victory on many battlefields.

9:27 Allah will show mercy to whom he will.

9:29 **Fight** against such of those to whom the **Scriptures were given** as **believe neither in Allah** nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and **do not embrace the true faith**, until they **pay tribute** out of hand and are utterly subdued.

9:30 **The Jews** say Ezra is the Son of God, while **Christians** say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) **fight**s against them. How **perverse** are they.

9:33 It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and **true faith** to make it **triumphant over all religions**.

9:36 You may **fight** against idolaters in **all those months** since they fight against you in all of them.

9:39 **If you do not go to war**, He will **punish you severely**, and replace you by other men.

9:41 Whether **unarmed** or **well-equipped**, march on and **fight** for the **cause of Allah**, with your **wealth** and with your **persons**.

9:49 Some say “Give us leave to **stay behind**...” **Hell** shall engulf the unbelievers.

9:61 Those that **wrong the apostle of Allah** shall be **sternly punished**.

9:63 The man who **defies Allah and His apostle** shall abide forever in the fire of Hell.

9:73 Prophet, **make war** on the unbelievers and the **hypocrites** and **deal harshly** with them. **Hell** shall be their home: an evil fate.

9:81 They said to each other: “**Do not go to war**, the heat is fierce.” Say unto them “More fierce is the heat of Hell-fire.”... **thus shall they be rewarded** for their misdeeds.

9:93 The **offenders** are those that **seek exemption** although they are men of wealth...

9:95 **Hell** shall be their **home**, the **punishment for their misdeeds**.

9:103 **Take alms from them**, so that they may **thereby** be cleansed and purified.

Note: This teaches the error of earning salvation by giving money.

9:111 Allah has **purchased** from the **faithful their lives** and worldly goods and **in return** has promised them the Garden. They will **fight** for the cause of Allah, **slay**, and **be slain**. **Such** is the true promise which he has made them in the **Torah**, the **Gospel**, and the **Koran**. And who is more true to His people than Allah? **Rejoice** then in the **bargain** you have made. That is the **supreme triumph**.

9:122 It is not right that all the faithful should go to **war** at once.

9:123 Believers, **make war** on the infidels who dwell around you. Deal harshly with them. Know that Allah is with the righteous.

JONAH

10:3 Unbelievers say: “This man is a **skilled enchanter**.”

10:4 Allah created the heaven and earth in **6 days**. (11:7).

10:38 This Koran...confirms what was revealed before it and fully explains the Scriptures. (Wrong).

10:69 They say: "Allah has begotten a son." God forbid.

10:74 We saved Noah and those who were with him in the ark.

10:95 If you (Mohammed) doubt what we have revealed to you, then ask those who read the scriptures that were before you. **Note:** Any Bible informed Christian will deny the Koran.

10:101 None can have faith (believe) except by the will (permission) of Allah.

HUD (v.50 Prophet of Arabia)

11:34 If Allah's will is to keep you astray.

11:42,43 Noah cried to his son who stood apart "Come ride with us, and be not with the unbelievers!" He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood." The wave rolled between them and Noah's son was drowned. **Note:** There were no mountains before the Flood (Gen7:19)

11:114 Good deeds annul ill deeds. **Note:** This teaches the error of salvation by good works.

11:119 The word of your Lord shall be fulfilled: "**I will fill Hell** with jinn and mankind together."

JOSEPH. Jacob is portrayed as a prophet who was not deceived by his sons' story of Joseph's death, but strangely enough is distressed through a suspension of his clairvoyance, that he cannot see what has become of Joseph.

12:111 It is no invented story but a confirmation of the existing scriptures...(Wrong).

12:96 He threw Joseph's shirt over the old man's face, & he regained his sight.(False, not in the Bible).

THUNDER (v.13 Reward and punishment result from obeying or rejecting Allah's laws).

13:7,27 The unbelievers ask: "Why has no sign been given him by his Lord?"

Note: The Biblical apostles were given signs: "Confirming the word with signs following." Mark 16:20

13:42 Allah is the master of all scheming (plotting).

Note: So is the Devil. If Allah can scheme, plot and deceive, then Muslims think they can do so as well.

ABRAHAM (v.35-41 Abraham's prayer).

14:9 Their apostles came to them with clear signs (proofs).

Question: If Bible apostles had clear signs, why did Mohammed have no signs? Ans:He is not a prophet

14:16 Hell is before him, and he is made to drink a festering water (liquid pus), which he will sip, but can hardly swallow.

AL-HIJR (v.80-84 where the fate of those dwelling at AL-HIJR is described).

15:1 A glorious Koran

15:17,18 We have guarded the heavens from every cursed outcast devil. Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets.

15:28-38 Allah said to the angels: "...fall down and prostrate yourselves unto Adam." (1). Then all the angels prostrated themselves, except Satan. Allah asks Satan why he won't bow down to Adam.

Satan said: "I will not bow to a mortal whom you created of dry clay..." (2,3).

Allah says: "Be gone, my curse shall be on you till Judgment day." (4).

Satan asks Allah: "Reprieve me till the day of Resurrection."

Allah agrees: "You are reprieved till the appointed day." (5).

Satan says to Allah: "Since you have seduced me, I will tempt mankind on earth." (6).

Allah replies: "You shall have no power over my servants, only the sinners who follow you. They are all destined for hell." **Notice 6 errors in this passage:**

- 1) In the Bible, God never told angels to fall down to Adam.
- 2) By Satan refusing, Satan is shown to be doing right.
- 3) God's curse on Satan seems unjust, thus attacking God's justice.
- 4) Satan is seen manipulating God out of being cursed.
- 5) Satan's excuse for tempting mankind, is because God seduced him.
- 6) God only gives Satan power over those destined for hell. God predestines nobody to hell.

THE BEE (v.68. Bees actions are typical of duty and usefulness).

16:43 Ask the People of the Book, if ye know not.

16:57 They assign unto Allah daughters.

16:101 When we change one verse for another (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say, "You (Mohammed) are an imposter."

16:106 Those who deny Allah after professing Islam and open their bosoms to unbelief shall incur the wrath of Allah, grievous punishment awaits them.

Note: This means death to those who leave Islam.

16:115 He has forbidden you carrion, blood, and the flesh of swine; also any flesh consecrated other than in the name of Allah.

16:126 If you punish, let your punishment be commensurate with the wrong done to you. But it shall be best for you to endure your wrongs with patience.

16:127 Do not grieve for the unbelievers.

THE NIGHT JOURNEY/ THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL

(v.1 relates Mohammed's vision, in which he was carried by night on a heavenly steed to the Temple at Jerusalem, from where he claims that he was caught up through 7 heavens to the presence of Allah).

Note: The Temple of Jerusalem had been destroyed by Rome in 70 AD and did not exist in Mohammed's day. This reference is why Muslims regard Jerusalem as holy and want control of it.

17:36 Do not follow what you do not know. (7 commandments in v.31-37.)

17:44 The 7 heavens, the earth, and all who dwell in them give glory to Him.

17:45 When you recite the Koran, we place between you and those who deny the life to come a hidden barrier.

17:47 The wrong-doers declare: "The man (Mohammed) you follow is surely bewitched."

17:78 Recite your prayers at sunset, at nightfall, and at dawn. Pray during the night as well.

17:101 To Moses we gave 9 clear signs. **Note:** False. He was given 10 signs. (Exodus 7:14-11:1).

17:104 We said to the Israelites: "Dwell in the land. When the promise of the hereafter comes to be fulfilled, we shall assemble you all together." (Out of various nations).

Note: This is a clear false prophecy, because Israelites have already been assembled in the land, and the promise of the hereafter (ie. Day of Judgement) has not yet happened. This is one reason why devout Muslims want Israelites destroyed and out of the land.

17:111 Cry unto Allah and say: "Praise be to Allah who has never begotten a son; who has no partner in His kingdom; who needs none to defend Him from humiliation."

Note: This denies Jesus Christ being the Son of God & God the Son. Thus Islam is antichrist (I John 2:22)

THE CAVE

This contains the myth of 7 youths who slept in a cave for a long time, and of Dhul Qarneyn (Alexander the Great) who travelled to the sunrise and sunset regions of the earth.

18:4.5 Admonish those who say that Allah has begotten a son.

A monstrous blasphemy is that which they utter. They preach nothing but falsehood.

18:84-91. See v.87: They will ask you about Dhul-Qarnayn (Alexander the Great). Say . . . "he followed a road until he reached the West and saw the sun setting (the setting place of the sun) in a pool of black mud. Hard by he found a certain people."

18:90,91 Then he followed a road till, when he reached the rising-place of the sun, he found it rising on a people for whom we had appointed no shelter therefrom.

Note: The sun does not set in a pool of black mud, nor does it have a fixed rising place. Mohammed in 620AD did not know how the earth moves around the sun. This is a clear scientific error in the Koran, showing that it cannot be from the true God.

MARY (v.16 ...)

19:16-23 The story of Mary . . . We sent to her Our Spirit in the semblance of a full grown man . . . who said I have come to give you a holy son. Mary said, "How shall I bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?" Thus did your Lord speak: "**That is easy enough for me**." When she felt the throes of childbirth, she lay down by the trunk of a palm tree.

Note: From this we learn the following:

- 1) Muslims agree that God has a Spirit. Christians call him the Holy Spirit.
- 2) Christ being virgin born is 'easy enough for God' so why should Muslims protest God having a Son?
- 3) This teaches the virgin birth of Christ.
- 4) This does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it, because Mary gave birth to Jesus in a stable, not under a palm tree.

19:29- How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, “he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, and blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life”. Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son.

Note: From this we learn that:

- 1) Jesus claimed to be sinless, making him greater than Mohammed.
- 2) Jesus states that He will die and be raised to life. This contradicts 4:157 which denies that He died.
- 3) Jesus rising from the dead, makes him greater than Mohammed who remains dead.
- 4) Jesus speaking from the cradle is clearly false and not in the Bible. It does not confirm the Bible.

19:71 There is not one among you who shall not pass through it (the fire of hell v.68): such is the absolute decree of your Lord. We will deliver those who fear us, and leave the wrongdoers there.

Note: This states that every Muslim will spend time in hell. What a shocking prospect to face. Islam thus offers nothing to solve man’s fear of death. This means that even Mohammed went to hell.

The Bible says, “He that has the Son has life”. Whoever wrote the Koran wants people to go to hell.

19:88 Those who say: “The Lord of mercy has begotten a son” preach a monstrous falsehood, at which the heavens might crack, the earth break asunder, and the mountains crumble to dust.

Note: The hatred of the Koran to God having a Son is to be compared with Satan’s hatred of Christ. (Revelation 12:4).

TAHA (v.1)

20:113 Thus we have revealed it as a lecture (Quran) in Arabic, and have displayed therein certain threats, that they may keep them from evil, or that it may cause them to take heed.

Note: Almost half the verses in the Koran are threats of punishment, torture or hell fire for those who don’t do what the Koran says. Fear is a major motive for Muslims in the Koran.

THE PROPHETS (the history of the former prophets).

21:33 The sun and the moon: They float each in an orbit. Note: This idea that the sun moves in an orbit is clearly false. It only seems that way as it appears to cross the sky.

Note: This is scientifically false. The sun does not move in an orbit. It only appeared this way to the 7th Century Arabians.

21:35 Every soul shall taste death. This is false, because Enoch (Genesis 5:24) and Elijah did not die. Christians living when Christ returns will be caught up to heaven without dying. (I Corinthians 15:51-53)

NOAH

21:76 We saved him (Noah) and all his kinsfolk from the great calamity.

Contradiction: This contradicts 11:42,43 which states that one of Noah’s sons was drowned.

PILGRIMAGE (v.26-38 Pilgrimage to Mecca).

22:19 Garments of fire have been prepared for the unbelievers. Scalding water shall be poured upon their heads, melting their skins and that which is in their bellies.

22:21 They shall be lashed with hooked rods of iron.

22:22 Whenever, in their anguish, they try to escape from hell, back they shall be dragged.

22:27 Exhort all men to make the pilgrimage. Let them spruce themselves, make their vows and circle the Ancient House. Such is Allah’s commandment. He that reveres the sacred rites shall fare better – in Allah’s sight.

22:47 A day with Allah is as 1000 years of what ye reckon.

22:65 Allah holds the sky from falling down upon the earth.

Note: False! Nonsense! because the sky is gas, empty space, not something that can fall down on us.

22:78 Fight for the cause of Allah with the devotion due to him. He hath named you “Muslims” (those who have surrendered).

THE BELIEVERS (v.1) (The Triumph of believers).

23:1-6 Blessed are the believers . . . who restrain their carnal desires (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them).

23:91 Never has Allah begotten a son. Note: John 1:14,18; 3:16,18; Hebrew 1:5; I John 4:9 refute this. Mohammad did not know that Greek has 2 words for “son” (**Huios**=“same nature as” God, & Teknon “child”), nor that “only begotten” (“**monogenes**” in Greek) means “same in every detail” as God.

LIGHT (v.25-40 The Light of God should shine in believers' homes).

24:2 The adulterer and adulteress shall each be given 100 lashes.

24:4 Those who accuse (defame) honourable women and cannot produce 4 witnesses shall be given 80 lashes.

24:43 From heaven's mountains he sends down the hail. **Note:** False! Hail comes from clouds.

AL-FUROQAN (v.1 "The Criterion" of right and wrong).

Subject is: The folly of superstition and craving for miracles.

25:5 And they say: "Fables of the ancients he has written".

THE POETS (v.224 where the difference between poets (those who say what they don't mean) and prophets (he who always practises what he preaches) is pointed out.

THE ANT (v.18).

27:12 One of 9 signs to Pharaoh. **Note:** False. There were 10 miraculous plague signs (Exod 7:14-11:1). Water to blood, Frogs, Lice, Flies, Cattle disease, Boils, Hail/Fire, Locusts, Darkness, Firstborn died.

27:16 Solomon said: "We have been taught the language of birds."

27:17 Solomon's forces of jinn, man, birds were called to Solomon's presence & ranged in battle array

27:28 When they came to the Valley of the Ants, an ant said, "Go into your dwellings, ants, lest Solomon and his warriors should unwittingly crush you."

This is clearly a fable, that birds and ants talk with Solomon.

THE STORM (v.25) of Moses' struggles and triumph.

28:38 Pharaoh said: "Make me, Haman, bricks of clay and build for me a tower that I may climb to the God of Moses".

Note: The error is that the Koran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) living alongside Haman (510 BC) who built the Tower of Babel (2250 BC). This is a serious mistake in the Koran because 7th Century Arabs thought of time as in cycles, not as we think of it as linear. This is fatal to the Koran's claim of Divine inspiration.

28:77 Allah does not love the evildoers.

THE SPIDER (v.41 False beliefs are like a spider's web for frailty).

29:46 Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. **Say:** "We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one."

Note: This is absolutely false. Allah and the God of the Bible (Jehovah) have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6th Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God. This is a trick to convert ignorant nominal Christians to Islam, saying we worship the same God. Exodus.20:2,3.

29:69 Those that fight for our cause we will surely guide to our own paths.

THE GREEKS (Dawood translation). **THE ROMANS** (Pickthall's translation of Koran). (v 2).

30:2 "The Greeks have been defeated." (Dawood).

"The Romans have been defeated." (Pickthall). 2 translations of the Koran contradict each other.

30:45 He does not love the unbelievers.

30:47 We sent before you apostles to their peoples, and they showed them veritable signs.

Question: Why did Jesus, Biblical apostles and prophets show signs, but Mohammed show no signs?

LUQMAN (v.12-34 mentions the wisdom of Luqman).

PROSTRATION (v.15).

32:5 All will ascend to him in a single day, a day whose space is 1000 years.

32:13 "I will surely fill Hell with jinn and humans all." **Note:** Allah (like Satan) wants people to go to hell, but the God of the Bible is not willing that any should perish in hell. (2 Peter 3:9).

THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES/THE CLANS

i) This Surah contains the seige of Mohammed's city Yathrib by the Qureysh and Ghatafan clans (Ibn Khaldan's narrative). V.26,27 refer to Mohammed's punishment of the Jewish tribe Bani Qureyzah who had broken their alliance with the Muslims and made common cause with the Qureysh. All their men were put to death, their women and children taken captive, and their property divided among the Muslims.

ii) 37- Mohammed ordered the divorce of his adopted son Zeyd from his wife Zeynab because Mohammed wanted to marry Zeynab. When people protested this, Mohammed claimed to have a command from Allah for Zeyd to divorce Zeynab and for Mohammed to marry Zeynab. Note: This screamingly contradicts the God of the Bible who punished the prophet David for taking Uriah's wife.

iii) Pickthall says, "With the exception of Aveshah, the daughter of his closest friend, Abu Baker, whom he married at her father's request when she was still a child, all his later marriages were with widows whose state was pitiable. . . ." *Koran* (Pickthall) p. 428. Note: In the West this is paedophilia.

33:8 For the unbelievers He (Allah) has prepared a woeful punishment.

33:17 Say, "Who can protect you from Allah if it is His will to scourge you?"

33:30 Wives of the Prophet! Those of you who commit a proven sin (lewdness) will be doubly punished

33:37 You (Mohammed) said to the man (Zayd, Mohammed's adopted son) whom Allah and yourself have favoured: "Keep your wife and have fear of God". You sought to hide in your heart what Allah was to reveal (your intention to marry Zayd's wife). You were afraid of man When Zayd divorced his wife, we gave her to you in marriage.

33:38 No blame shall be attached to the prophet for doing what is sanctioned for him by Allah.

Note: When David took another man's wife, God judged him.

33:50 Prophet, we have made lawful to you . . . the slave girls whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the Prophet and whom the Prophet wishes to take in marriage. This privilege is yours alone.

33:51 You may put off any of your wives you please, and take to your bed any of them you please.

33:52 It is unlawful for believers to take more wives....except where slave girls are concerned.

33:57 Those who speak ill of Allah and His Apostle shall be cursed by Allah in this life and in the life to come. He has prepared for them a shameful punishment.

33:59 Prophet, enjoin your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to draw their veils close round them . . . so that they may be recognized and not molested.

33:64 Allah has cursed the unbelievers and prepared for them a blazing fire...on the day when their faces (heads) will roll about in the fire...Lord, mete out to them a double scourge, lay on them a mighty curse.

SHEBA (v.15 Sheba is in Yemen that was flooded).

34:5 Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.

Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran.

34:43 Others say: "This (Koran) is nothing but an invented falsehood". Others declare: "This (Koran) is but plain sorcery".

34:51 If you could only see the unbelievers when they are seized with terror.

THE CREATOR or THE ANGELS (v.1).

35:43 Evil shall recoil on those that plot evil.

YASIN (v.1) This is regarded with reverence, and is recited in times of adversity, illness, fasting and approaching death.

36:8 We have bound their necks (unbelievers) with chains of iron reaching up to their chins, so that they cannot bow their heads.

36:39 The sun is not allowed to overtake the moon...Each in its own orbit runs. Note: Sun has no orbit

36:54 On that day the heirs of Paradise will be busy with their joys. Together with their spouses, they shall recline in shady groves upon soft couches. They shall have fruits and all that they desire.

THE RANKS (v.1,164-166 refer to Angels in ranks).

37:6 We have decked the lower heaven with constellations (Dawood), (Planets – Pickthall). They guard it against rebellious devils, so that they may not listen in to those on high. Meteors are hurled at them from every side Eavesdroppers are pursued by fiery comets.

37:36 Are we to renounce our gods for the sake of a mad poet?

37:48,49 The true servants of Allah . . . shall sit with bashful, dark eyed virgins, as chaste as the sheltered eggs of ostriches.

37:62-68 We have made this (Zaqqum) tree a scourge for the unjust. It grows in the nethermost part of Hell, bearing fruit like devils heads: on it they shall feed, and with it they shall cram their bellies, together with draughts of scalding water. Then to hell they shall return.

37:147 Jonah . . . we sent him to a nation 100,000 strong or more.

(Jonah 4:11 states that Nineveh had 120,000 children under age about 7 who could not tell their left hand from their right hand. A total of 100,000 is way out.)

SAD (v.1 the first letter of this Surah).

38:25,26 David sought forgiveness of his Lord and fell down penitently on his knees. We forgave him his sin.

Question: How is it a sin for David to murder and take another man's wife (Bathsheba), and not a sin for Mohammed to murder and take another man's wife (Zeynab)? Allah has double standards between Mohammed and David. It appears that Mohammed is using Allah as a rubber stamp to endorse whatever he wants to do.

38:53 The righteous . . . reclining there with bashful virgins for companions, they will call for abundant fruit and drink.

38:56-58 The transgressors shall burn in hell, a dismal resting place. There let them taste their drink, scalding water, festering blood and other putrid things.

38:74-89 Satan cursed for not worshipping Adam.

THE THROGS or **TROOPS** (v.71,73).

39:16 Above them shall be sheets of fire and sheets of fire shall be beneath them. By this, Allah puts fear into his servants' hearts. (**Note:** Islam is a religion of fear and terror. With Christ love is the motive)

39:38 A Koran (lecture) in the Arabic tongue, free from any flaw, that they may guard themselves against evil. **Note:** The Koran has many flaws.

39:31 In throngs the unbelievers shall be led to hell. They will be told to enter the gates of hell and stay there forever.

THE BELIEVERS (v.28-45 describes a believer in Pharaoh's house trying to dissuade Egyptians from opposing Moses).

40:18 Warn them of the approaching day, when man's hearts will leap up to their throats & choke them

40:21 Allah scourged them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

40:36 **Pharaoh** said to **Haman**: "Build me a tower that I may reach the heavens and look upon the god of Moses."

Note: Pharaoh (1500 BC) and **Haman** (500 BC) never knew each other. Nor did they build a tower.

40:71 When with chains and shackles round their necks, they shall be dragged through scalding water and burnt in the fire of Hell.

REVELATIONS WELL EXPOUNDED (v.2).

41:9 Do you disbelieve in him who created the earth in 2 days? He set upon the earth mountains towering high above it. (FALSE). (Genesis 7:19 Mountains were raised up after the Flood, not before).

41:10 . . . in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike.

41:12 In 2 days He formed the sky into 7 heavens.

Note: Two mistakes in this are as follows:

i) According to Genesis 7:19,20 there were no towering high mountains before Noah's Flood. There were only high hills which the waters covered by 15 cubits (22 feet). Mountains formed after the Flood.

ii) According to Exodus 20:11, "In six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is," not 8 days.

41:16 . . . more shameful still will be the scourge of the life to come.

41:17 The thunderbolt of a humiliating scourge struck them for their misdeeds.

41:19 Forewarn them of the day when the enemies of Allah will be brought together & led into the Fire

41:26 Unbelievers say: "Give no heed to this Koran. Cut short its recital with booring and laughter. . . We will sternly punish the unbelievers . . . The Fire shall for ever be their home."

41:33 Who speaks better than he who calls men to serve Allah, does what is right and says "I am a Muslim?"

41:34 Requite evil with good, and he who is your enemy will become your dearest friend.

Note: This is contradicted by **Q42:40** "Let evil be rewarded with like evil."

COUNSEL (v.38).

42:15 say “I believe in all the Scriptures that Allah has revealed.”

Note: This, they say includes the Bible, yet Muslims do not believe, study or obey the Bible.

42:26 Grievous punishment awaits the unbelievers.

42:30 If a misfortune befalls you, it is the fruit of your own labours (what your right hands have earned.)

Note: This is false from experience and from Bible characters who were persecuted for righteousness. Were Job’s, Jesus’, Joseph’s and Daniel’s suffering due to their own sins? No.

42:45 Wrongdoers shall surely suffer everlasting torment.

ORNAMENTS OF GOLD (v.35).

43:30 Now the truth has come to them, they say: “This is sorcery. We utterly reject it.”

43:36 He that does not heed the warning of the Merciful shall have a devil for his companion.

43:63 When Jesus came with evident signs, he said: “I have come to give you wisdom . . . Fear God and follow me.”

Note: Jesus gave evident signs/miracles, but Mohammed could not. Hence Jesus is greater than Mohammed. Jesus commands Muslims to “Follow me”. Do Muslims obey this?

43:70 Enter Paradise, you and your wives, in all delight. Abiding there forever, you shall find all that your souls desire and all that your eyes rejoice in.

43:74 Evildoers shall endure forever the torment of Hell. Their punishment will never be lightened, and they shall be speechless with despair.

43:81 Say to Christians: “If the Lord of Mercy had a son, I would be the first to worship him”.

Note: The prophets refute the Koran here by saying that God does have a Huios Son, not a Teknon Son: Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2:7,12), even Gabriel (Luke 1:32,35).

SMOKE

44:14-16 They denied him (Mohammed) saying: “A madman taught by others”. On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourself.

44:43-48 The fruit of the Zaqqum tree shall be the sinners’ food. Like molten brass, like scalding water, it shall simmer in his belly. A voice will cry, “Seize him and drag him into the depths of hell. Then pour scalding water over his head.”

44:51 As for the righteous, they shall be lodged in peace together amidst gardens & fountains, arrayed in rich silks & fine brocade. We shall wed them to dark eyed houris. They shall call for every kind of fruit. **Note:** This shows clearly that the Koran comes from man and not from God, because these good things are the best that a 7th Century Arab male could imagine heaven to be. The True God would have things in heaven beyond our understanding.

Question: What about Muslim women? What will they have? Who will they wed? Dark eyed houris?

KNEELING

45:9 Those that deride our revelations when they know but little of them shall suffer degrading torment
45:10 Hell is behind them.

45:11 Those that deny their Lord’s revelations shall suffer the anguish of a woeful scourge.

45:28 You will see every nation on its knees. (**Question:** Even today’s Muslim nations?)

Note: All this terror, horror, threats of hell, scourge, torment is not borne out by the love of God to man seen in the Bible, Christ’s preaching and in beautiful creation. “The goodness of God leads us to repentance.” (Romans 2:4) not threats.

45:33 The scourge at which they scoffed will encompass them.

45:34 The Fire shall be your home and none will help you.

THE SAND DUNES (v.20).

46:11 Unbelievers say: “This is an ancient lie.”

46:20 We shall say to unbelievers: “Your reward will be degrading torment”. (46:34).

MOHAMMED (v.2).

47:4-6 When you meet the unbelievers in the battlefield strike off their heads, and when you have laid them low, bind your captives firmly . . . thus shall you do. Had Allah willed, He could Himself have punished them; but He has ordained it thus that He might test you. As for those who are slain in the cause of Allah . . . He will admit them to the Paradise.

47:15 Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of water undefiled, and rivers of milk for ever fresh; rivers of wine . . . and rivers of clear honey. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall drink scalding water which will tear their bowels.

47:20 When war is mentioned . . . they faint away for fear of death. Should war be decided upon, it would be better for them to be true to Allah.

47:25,27 Those who turn back (from Islam)..angels shall gather them, smiting their faces&their backs

47:33 Believers, obey Allah and obey the Apostle.

47:35 Do not falter or sue for peace when you have gained the upper hand. Allah is on your side, and will not grudge you the reward of your labours.

VICTORY

48:6 Allah is angry with them (hypocrites, idolaters). He has laid on them his curse and prepared for them the fire of Hell.

48:13 As for those that disbelieve in Allah and His apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

48:16 Say to the desert Arabs who stayed behind: “You shall be called upon to fight a mighty nation, unless they embrace Islam.”

Note: Here Muslims are told to fight to convert non Muslims.

48:28 It is He that has sent forth his apostle . . . so that He may exalt it above all religions.

48:29 Mohammed is Allah’s apostle. Those who follow him are ruthless (hard) against the unbelievers, but merciful to one another.

THE CHAMBERS (v.4).

49:15 The true believers are those that have faith in Allah and never doubt; and who fight with their wealth and their persons for the cause of Allah.

QAF

50:6 How we built the sky up, . . . leaving no crack in its expanse.

FALSE: 7th Century Arabs thought the sky was a solid dome without a crack. It is just gas and space.

50:7 We spread out the earth and set upon it immovable mountains.

FALSE: Mountains move during earthquakes.

52:11 contradicts this: “On that day.... the mountains move and pass away.” See Revelation 16:18-20.

56:5 “The mountains crumble away”.

50:24 A voice will cry: “Cast into Hell every hardened unbeliever”.

THE WINDS (v.1).

51:12,13 On the Day of Judgment they shall be scorched in the Fire.

51:47,48 We built the heaven . . . giving it a vast expanse, and stretched the earth beneath it.

Note: False. The earth was not stretched flat beneath heaven. It is a spherical planet.

THE MOUNTAIN

52:13 On that day they (unbelievers) shall be sternly thrown into the fire of hell . . . burn in its flames.

52:20 They (righteous) shall recline on couches ranged in rows. To dark-eyed houris we shall wed them. Question: What benefits do women have in heaven? No comment.

52:24 There shall wait on them young boys of their own, as fair as virgin pearls. (Is this pedophilia?)

THE STAR (v.1).

53:1,2,3 By the declining star, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not in error, nor is he deceived. He does not speak out of his own fancy.

53:19 Have you thought on AL-LAT and AL-UZZA, and on MANAT, the third other.

Note: These are names that early Meccans gave to Allah’s daughters.

53:32 To those who avoid the grossest sins and indecencies, and commit only small offences, your Lord will show abundant mercy.

Note: This allows Muslims to commit sins that they define as “only small offences”. This proves the Koran came from a sinful human mind, not from the Holy God of the Bible who sees all sin as sinful

THE MOON (v.1).

54:1 The hour of doom is drawing near,&the moon is cleft in two.(How can the moon be split in two?)

54:48 On the day when wrongdoers are dragged into the Fire upon their faces, we shall say to them: “Feel the touch of Hell”.

THE MERCIFUL

55:35 Flames of fire shall be lashed at you, and molten brass.

55:41 The wrongdoers . . . shall be seized by their forelocks and their feet.

55:44 They shall wander between fire and water fiercely seething.

55:56 There are bashful virgins whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched before.

Virgins as fair as corals and rubies.

55:72 In each (garden) there shall be virgins chaste and fair. Dark eyed virgins sheltered in tents, whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched,

55:76 They shall recline on green cushions and fine carpets.

THAT WHICH IS COMING (v.1).

56:22-24 Theirs shall be the dark-eyed houris, chaste as hidden pearls; a reward for their deeds.

56:35-38 We created the houris and made them virgins, loving companions for those on the right hand. Those on the left hand. . . shall dwell among scorching winds and scalding water.

56:52-54 As for you sinners who deny the truth, you shall eat the fruit of the Zaqqum tree and fill your bellies with it. You shall drink scalding water.

56:92-95 If he is an erring disbeliever, his welcome will be scalding water, and he will burn in hell.

This is surely the indubitable truth.

IRON (v.25).

57:10 Those of you that gave of their wealth before the victory, and took part in the fighting, shall receive greater honour than others who gave and fought thereafter.

57:15 The fire shall be your home (unbelievers and hypocrites): you have justly earned it, a dismal end.

57:19 Those that disbelieve our revelations and deny them are the heirs of Hell.

57:22 Every misfortune that befalls the Earth, or your own persons, is ordained before we bring it into being. Note: This creates an attitude of fatalism, passivity, and lack of initiative because all is foreordained.

57:25 We have sent our apostles with veritable signs, and through them have brought down scriptures and the scales of justice, so men might conduct themselves with fairness.

Note: This fairness/justice are found in the Bible. Mohammed gave no miraculous signs & no fairness.

57:27 Jesus, the son of Mary. We gave him the Gospel and put compassion and mercy in the hearts of his followers.

Question: What is the Gospel that Jesus preached that can save sinners from sin and hell?

Answer: That Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again the third day? (1 Corinthians 15:1-4).

SHE WHO PLEADED (v.1)

58:2 Those of you who divorce their wives by declaring them to be their mothers should know that they are not their mothers.

58:5 Those that oppose Allah and His apostle shall be brought low. Shameful punishment awaits the unbelievers

58:14 Do you not see those that have befriended a people with whom Allah is angry? Allah has prepared for them a grievous scourge. They are the inmates of the fire. There shall they abide forever.

EXILE (v.2-17 discuss the exile of a Jewish tribe, Bani Nadeir of Al-Madinah for treason against Mohammed. Hypocrites were lukewarm Muslims who sympathised with these Jews).

59:2 Allah's scourge fell on them (Jews) when they did not expect it, casting such terror into their hearts that their dwellings were destroyed by their own hands and by the faithful. In the world to come, the fire shall be their scourge because they have set themselves against Allah and his apostle.

59:7 The spoils taken from the town-dwellers and assigned by Allah to his apostle shall belong to Allah, to the apostle and his Kinsfolk, to orphans and to the destitute. Allah is stern in retribution.

SHE WHO IS TESTED (v.10).

60:1 If you came to fight for my cause, and out of a desire to please me, you left your city, how can you be friendly to them in secret? Note: This says that Muslims please Allah by fighting.

BATTLE ARRAY (v.4).

61:3 It is most hateful in Allah's sight that you should say one thing and do another.

Note: This contradicts 66:2 where Allah allowed Mohammed to say one thing and do another.

61:4 Allah loves those who fight for his cause in ranks as firm as a solid structure.

61:6 Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the Israelites, I am sent to you from Allah to confirm the Torah, and to give news of an apostle that will come after Me whose name is Ahmed (the praised one).

Note: Muslims claim that Mohammed was the fulfillment of Jesus' Prophecy in John 14:16-18; 16:7-14 of sending the Comforter. Jesus declared that this Comforter was the Holy Spirit, not Mohammed.

i) John 14:16 "Another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever."

Note: Mohammed died and did not abide with us forever.

The disciples never knew Mohammed, nor did Mohammed dwell with the disciples in 33AD.

ii) John 14:17 "ye shall know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."

iii) John 14:26 "But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost"

iv) John 16:13 "When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come..."

v) John 16:14 "He shall glorify me (Jesus)..". **Note:** Mohammed did not glorify Jesus.

61:9 He sent his Apostle,... so that he may exalt it above all other religions.

61:10,11 Believers, shall I point out to you a profitable course that will save you from a woeful scourge? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and fight for Allah's cause with your wealth and persons. That would be best for you, if you but knew it. He will forgive your sins and admit you to Gardens....

61:14 Believers, be Allah's helpers. When Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the disciples, "Who will come with me to the help of Allah?" The disciples replied, "We are Allah's helpers."

Note: Neither Jesus nor his disciples ever said this in New Testament. Allah is not mentioned in the NT **FRIDAY** or **THE DAY OF CONGREGATION** (v.9).

62:9 Believers, when you are summoned to Friday prayers hasten to the remembrance of Allah and cease your trading.

THE HYPOCRITES (v.1,8).

63:3,4 They believed and then renounced their faith... they are the enemy. Guard yourself against them. Allah confound them!

CHEATING (v.9 When good Muslims will cheat the damned of the places in paradise which would have been theirs had they been true believers.)

64:10 Those that disbelieve and deny our revelation shall be made the inmates of the Fire, and shall abide therein forever.

64:12,13 Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

64:14 Believers you have an enemy in your wives and in your children: beware of them.

Note: What nonsense. The Bible says "Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church." Eph 5:25

DIVORCE (v.1-7).

PROHIBITION (v.1 Mohammed was once found by his wife Hafsah with Maria, a beautiful Coptic slave girl, whom he had promised Hafsah he would separate from. To free Mohammed from his promise to Hafsah was the object of this chapter).

66:1,2 Prophet, why do you prohibit that which Allah has made lawful to you in seeking to please your wives? Allah has made lawful for you (Muslims) absolution from your oaths.

Note: Many Muslims, living like Mohammed, often think they can lie when it suits them.

66:9 Prophet, make war on the unbelievers and the hypocrites, and deal sternly with them. Hell shall be their home.

SOVEREIGNTY (v.1).

67:5 We have adorned the lowest heaven with lamps, missiles to pelt the devils with.

67:3 Turn up your eyes: Can you detect a single crack (in the sky)?

THE PEN (v.1).

68:15 When our revelations are recited to him he says: "They are but fables of the ancients." We shall brand him on the nose. **Note:** Unbelievers rightly said this because much in the Koran was copied from earlier writings such as 26 Arabian, Jewish and Christian sources into the Koran.

68:33 The punishment of the life to come is more terrible if they but knew it.

68:37,38,39 Have you a scripture that promises you whatever you choose?

...that you shall have what you yourselves ordain.

Note: No wonder Muslim terrorists kill people to go to such a place.

68:51 When they hear our revelations, unbelievers say "Surely he is possessed".

Note: When Mohammed gave a revelation, he would fall onto the ground in a trancelike fit. Witnesses thought him to be possessed.

THE CATASTROPHE (v.1). **69:16** The sky will be rent asunder on that day...

Note: Muslims thought the sky was solid that could crack or be split asunder, but it is gas.

69:30-36 We shall say “Bind him. Burn him in the fire of Hell, then fasten him with a chain 70 cubits long. For he did not believe in Allah. filth shall be his food...this is the utterance of a noble messenger.”

69:44-47 Allah says of Mohammed: “Had he invented lies concerning us, we would have seized him by the right hand and severed his heart vein:

Note: Mohammed sought to justify himself by this. It is foolish because, “Why does this not happen to others who tell lies about Islam?” Their heart vein is not severed when criticising the Allah of Islam.

THE LADDERS (v.3). **70:4** A day whose span is 50,000 years.

Note: This contradicts (32:5) where a day is 1000 years. Which is right?

70:15 The fire of Hell shall drag him down by the scalp.

70:22 Not so the worshipers, who... Dread the punishment of the Lord (for none is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them).

Note: All Muslims fear Allah’s punishment, because none are secure from Allah’s punishment. Koran allows taking girls into sexual slavery. The God of the Bible is against slavery. God wills young women marry one man (I Cor.7:2-5; I Tim.1:10; 5:14). The Koran does not confirm earlier scriptures.

NOAH.

71:11 Noah said: “Seek forgiveness... He sends down abundant waters from the sky for you.”

Note: The Koran is wrong here because it claims Noah told his generation how God sends rain for their benefit. Yet Genesis 2:5,6 tells: “The Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the Earth... but there went up a mist from the Earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.” Nobody before the flood had ever seen rain, “By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet.” Hebrews 11:7.

71:15,16 Allah created the seven heavens one above the other, placing in them the moon for a light and the sun for a lantern? Question: What are these 7 heavens? Not defined. (5 planets, sun, moon). The Bible tells us of 3 heavens: the atmosphere, space, and where God’s throne is (II Cor. 12:2).

THE JINN. The Jinn are demon spirits lower than angels able to appear in human or animal form, and having supernatural power over man.

72:1 Say (Mohammed): “It is revealed to me that a band of jinn listened to Allah’s revelations and said: We have heard a wondrous Koran giving guidance to the right path. We believed in it and shall henceforth serve none besides Allah. He has taken no consort, nor has he begotten any children. The Blaspheming One among us has uttered a wanton falsehood against Allah. Some men have sought the help of the jinn, but they misled them into further error. We made our way to high heaven, and found it filled with mighty wardens and fiery comets. We sat eavesdropping, but eavesdroppers find flaming darts in wait for them. Some of us are Muslims and some are wrongdoers. Note:

- i) If demons endorse the Koran (saying that the Koran guides in the right path), then demons whose nature is evil and deception, tell us that the Koran is the wrong path for man. Do you trust demons?
- ii) Evil demons servicing Allah show that Allah is not the God of the Bible. Demons only serve Satan.
- iii) These demons deny that Jesus is God the Son. “Every Spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God, this is the spirit of the antichrist.” I John 4:3. See I John 2:2.
- iv) Muslims hate Christianity because they think we blaspheme by calling Jesus Christ “Son of God”.
- v) This passage teaches that demon Jinn lead men into error. Jinn have led the entire Muslim world into error. Paul rejected the support of demons (Acts 16:16-18). So should we.
- vi) v.8,9 claim that Allah sends fiery comets to hit jinn when they listen to conversations in heaven.
- vii) Verse 14 says that some jinn became Muslims by surrendering to Allah. If some demons are now Muslims and they help spread Islam, then Islam is a religion of demons.

“Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils, speaking lies in hypocrisy.” I Timothy 4:1,2.

72:23 Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah’s will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah’s commands.

THE MANTLED ONE

73:1 You that are wrapped up in your mantle, **keep vigil all night**, **save for a few hours; half the night** or less and **recite the Koran**.

Note: Psalm 127:2 "It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: for so he giveth his beloved sleep." The Devil wants to rob the Muslims of God's gift of a full nights sleep.

73:8 Remember the name of Allah and **dedicate yourself to him utterly**... **there is no god but him**. Accept him as your protector.

73:12 We have in store for them (unbelievers) heavy **fetters** and a **blazing fire, choking food** and **harrowing torments**.... mountains shall crumble into heaps of shifting sand.

73:20 Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the nightRecite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are **fighting** for the cause of Allah. What ever good you do, you shall be...richly rewarded by him.

THE CLOAKED ONE, 74:24 Unbelievers said: "This is but **sorcery counterfeited**, the speech of a mere mortal man". I will surely **cast him into the fire**. It burns the skins of men.

THE RESURRECTION

75:6-9 When will be the day of resurrection? When Sun and the Moon are brought together.

Note: These bodies are 93 million miles apart but to Muslims of 600AD they looked close.

MAN, 76:4 For the **unbelievers** we have prepared **chains** and **fetters** and a **blazing fire**.

Note: The God of the Bible loves sinners, died for them, wants them to go to heaven, and is not willing that any should perish. He prepared everlasting fire for the Devil & his angels, not for man (Mat 25:44). Allah of the Koran delights in sending people to hell. He is very different from the God of the Bible.

THOSE THAT ARE SENT FORTH

77:29 Woe on the day to the unbelievers! Begone to that **hell** which you deny.

THE TIDINGS

78:21 **Hell** will lie in ambush, a home for the transgressors. There they shall abide long ages; there they shall taste neither refreshment or drink, save scalding water and decaying filth: a fitting recompense.

78:31 As for the righteous, they shall surely triumph. Theirs shall be the gardens and vineyards, and **high-bosomed maidens** for **companions**: a truly overflowing cup.

THE CESSATION 81:22 No, your compatriot (Mohammed) is **not mad**, He saw him (Gabriel) on the clear horizon.. nor is this the utterance of an **accursed devil**.

THE CATAclysm, 82:14 The wicked shall **burn in hell** upon the Judgment Day nor shall they escape from it

THE UNJUST 83:16 They shall **burn in Hell**.

THE RENDING 84:14 He shall call down destruction on himself and **burn in the fire of hell**.

THE MOST HIGH 87:12 He shall **burn in the gigantic fire**, where he shall neither die nor live.

THE OVERWHELMING EVENT.

88:1-7 On that day there shall be downcast faces, of men broken and worn out, burnt by a **scorching fire, drinking from a scalding fountain**. Their only food shall be **bitter thorns**.

THE CITY 90:4 We created man to try him with afflictions.

THE PROOF 98:4-6 The unbelievers among the **People of the Book** and all the pagans shall **burn forever in the fire of hell**. They are the **vilest of all creatures** (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that **Jews and Christians** are the **vilest** and **worst** of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tell Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell.

God loves Israel (Jeremiah 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35) and all the World (John 3:16).

AL-LAHAB (Mohammed's grandfather's first cousin who opposed him). **111:1-5** May the hands of Abu-lahab perish. May he himself perish. He shall be **burned in a flaming fire**, and his wife laden with firewood, shall have a rope of fibre round her neck.

UNITY 112:1-4 SayAllah is One, the Eternal god. He begot none, nor was he begotten. None is equal to him

THE SLANDERER 104:4 He shall be flung into the destroying flame.

THE ELEPHANT, 105:2 Did he not confound their stratagem and send against them flocks of birds which pelted them with clay stones, so that they became like withered stalks of plants.

Note: Birds dropping stones on an invading Ethiopian army that flattened and destroyed them is fiction.

121. Koran Arranged into Topics. These explain why many Muslims behave as they do.

1. TERROR commanded by the Koran (5 references).

3:151 Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy. We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners...their habitation is the Fire.

Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

8:12 Allah revealed his will to the angels saying: "I shall cast terror into the hearts of the infidels, strike off their heads, strike off the very tips of their fingers...that was because they defied Allah and his apostle."

8:59 Let not the unbelievers think that they will ever get away...Muster against them all the men and cavalry at your command, so that you may strike terror into the enemy of Allah, and your enemy and others beside them who are unknown to you but known to Allah.

34:51 If you could only see the unbelievers when they are seized with terror.

59:2 Allah's scourge fell on them (Jews) when they did not expect it, casting such terror into their hearts that their dwellings were destroyed by their own hands and by the faithful. In the world to come, the fire shall be their scourge because they have set themselves against Allah and his apostle.

2. FIGHTING commanded in the Koran (61 references).

2:216 Fighting is obligatory for you, much as you dislike it.

But you may hate a thing although it is good for you. Allah knows.

2:218 Those that have embraced the faith and those that have fled their land and fought for the cause of Allah, may hope for Allah's mercy.

2:244 Fight for the cause of Allah.

2:246 The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: "Raise up for us a king and we will fight for the cause of Allah. He replied: "What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?" They said: "Why should we refuse to fight for the cause of Allah?" But when at last they were ordered to fight, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the evil-doers."

Note: i) This comes from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: "Make us king to judge us like all the nations" (v.5) .. "that our king may judge us, and go out before us, fight our battles." (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran's alleged conversation take place.

ii) This passage in the Koran portrays Allah declaring as evil-doers those who refused to fight. This motivates Muslims to fight if they wish to please Allah.

2:273 As for those needy men who, being wholly pre-occupied with fighting for the cause of Allah, cannot travel the land in quest of trading ventures... whatever alms you give are known to Allah.

Note: Here the Koran teaches that it is right to sponsor terrorism by paying those who fight for Allah.

3:125 If you have patience and guard yourselves against evil, Allah will send to your aid 5000 angels, if they suddenly attack you.

Note: This angelic assistance promised to Muslims gives them confidence to provoke war.

3:157,158 If you should die or be slain in the cause of Allah, His forgiveness and mercy would be better than all the riches they amass. (If you should die or be slain) before Allah you shall all be gathered. Note: This promises heaven to all Muslims who die fighting for the cause of Allah.

3:169 Never think that those who were slain in the cause of Allah are dead. No, they are alive, and well provided for by their Lord. Allah will not deny the faithful their reward.

3:195 Those who fought and were slain (for my cause): I shall forgive their sins and admit them to gardens watered by running streams, as a reward from Allah.

4:66 Had we commanded them saying: "Lay down your lives"...only a few would have complied. Yet had they done what they were admonished to do, it would have been better for them... We would have bestowed on them from ourself a rich reward.

4:74 Let those who would exchange the life of this world for the hereafter, fight for the cause of Allah; whoever fighters for the cause of Allah, whether he dies or triumphs, we shall richly reward him.

4:76 True believers **fight** for the cause of **Allah**.

4:77 When they were ordered to fight, some of them feared man as much as they feared Allah. They said: “Lord, why do you bid us **fight**? Could you not give us a brief respite?”

4:84 Therefore **fight** for the **cause of Allah**. Rouse the faithful: perchance Allah will overthrow the might of the unbelievers.

4:91 If these do not keep their distance from you, nor offer you peace, nor cease their hostilities against you, lay hold of them, and **kill them** wherever you find them.

4:94 Believers, show discernment when you go to fight for the **cause of Allah**.

4:95 i) The believers who stay at home are not the equals of those who **fight for the cause of Allah**, with their goods and persons.

ii) Allah has given those that **fight** with their good & persons a **higher rank** than those that stay at home

iii) Far richer is the **reward** of those who **fight** for **Allah**.

Note: Jesus said: “all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.” Matthew 26:52.

“if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight.” John 19:36.

4:100 He that leaves his dwelling to **fight for Allah** and his apostle, and is then overtaken by death, shall be **rewarded by Allah**.

Note: This reminds us of terrorists who go overseas to fight for Allah and who die as a result.

4:104 Seek out your enemies relentlessly.

Note: Jesus said: “Love your enemies.” Matthew 5:44.

4:141 Allah will not let the unbelievers triumph over the faithful.

Note: This is false as seen by Charles Martel of Europe who defeated the Muslim invaders at the Battle of Tours in 732 AD. This promise makes Muslims feel invincible in warfare.

5:35 Fight valiantly for His cause, so that you may triumph.

7:167 He would raise against them (Jews) others who will **oppress them cruelly** till the day of Resurrection

8:39 Make war on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah’s religion shall reign supreme.

8:65 Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms. O Prophet, exhort the believer to **fight**. If there are 20 steadfast among you, they shall vanquish 200; and if there are 100, they shall route 1000 unbelievers, for they are devoid of understanding.

8:67 A prophet may not take captives until he has **fought** and triumphed (made slaughter) in the land.

8:69 Enjoy the good and lawful things you have gained in war.

8:74 Those that have..**fought** for the cause of Allah, sheltered & helped them, they are the true believers

9:5 When the sacred months are over, **slay the idolaters wherever you find them**. Arrest them, besiege them and lie in ambush everywhere for them.

9:12 If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and revile your faith, **make war on the leaders of unbelief**.

9:14 Make **war** on them: Allah will chastise them at your hands and humble them. He will grant you victory over them.

9:19 Worthy is the man that believes in Allah and the last day and **fighters for Allah’s cause**.

9:20 Those that have embraced the faith and left their homes and **fought for Allah’s cause** with their wealth and persons are held in higher regard by Allah. It is they who shall triumph. Their Lord has promised them joy and mercy, and gardens of eternal bliss where they shall dwell forever. Allah’s reward is great indeed.

9:25 Allah has given you victory on many battlefields.

9:29 **Fight** against such of those to whom the Scriptures were given as believe neither in Allah nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and do not embrace the true faith, until they pay tribute out of hand and are utterly subdued.

9:30 The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) **fighters** against them. How **perverse** are they.

Note: Jesus warned about groups like Islam who think that God wants them to kill Christians:

“..the time cometh, that whosoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service.” John 16:2.

9:33 It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and true faith to make it **triumphant over all religions**.

9:36 You may **fight** against idolaters in all those months since they fight against you in all of them.

9:39 **If you do not go to war**, He will **punish you severely**, and replace you by other men.

9:41 Whether **unarmed** or **well-equipped**, march on and **fight** for the **cause of Allah**, with your **wealth** and with your **persons**.

9:49 Some say “Give us leave to **stay behind**...” **Hell** shall engulf the unbelievers.

9:73 Prophet, **make war on the unbelievers** and the **hypocrites** and **deal harshly** with them. **Hell** shall be their home: an evil fate.

9:81 They said to each other: “**Do not go to war**, the heat is fierce.” Say unto them, “More fierce is the **heat of Hell-fire**.”...**thus shall they be rewarded** for their misdeeds.

9:93 The **offenders** are those that **seek exemption** although they are men of wealth...

9:95 **Hell** shall be their **home**, the **punishment for their misdeeds**.

9:111 Allah has **purchased** from the **faithful their lives** and worldly goods and **in return** has promised them the Garden. They will **fight** for the cause of Allah, **slay**, and **be slain**. **Such** is the true promise which he has made them in the **Torah**, the **Gospel**, and the **Koran**. And who is more true to His people than Allah? **Rejoice** then in the **bargain** you have made. That is the **supreme triumph**.

9:122 It is not right that all the faithful should go to **war** at once.

9:123 Believers, **make war** on the infidels who dwell around you. Deal harshly with them. Know that Allah is with the righteous.

22:78 **Fight** for the **cause of Allah** with the devotion due to him. He hath named you “Muslims” (those who have surrendered).

29:69 Those that **fight** for **our cause** we will surely guide to our own paths.

47:4-6 When you **meet the unbelievers** in the battlefield **strike off their heads**, and when you have laid them low, bind your captives firmly . . . **thus shall you do**. Had Allah willed, He could Himself have punished them; but He has ordained it thus that He might test you. As for those who are **slain** in the **cause of Allah** . . . He will admit them to the Paradise.

47:20 When **war** is mentioned . . . they faint away for fear of death. Should **war** be decided upon, it would be better for them to be **true to Allah**.

47:35 **Do not falter or sue for peace** when you have **gained the upper hand**. **Allah is on your side**, and will not grudge you the reward of your labours.

48:16 Say to the desert Arabs who stayed behind: “You shall be called upon to **fight** a mighty nation, **unless they embrace Islam**.”

Note: Here Muslims are told to fight to convert non Muslims.

48:29 Mohammed is Allah’s apostle. Those who follow him are **ruthless** (hard) against the unbelievers, but merciful to one another.

49:15 The **true believers** are those that have faith in Allah and never doubt; and who **fight** with their **wealth** and their **persons** for the **cause of Allah**.

57:10 Those of you that gave of their wealth before the victory, and took part in the **fighting**, shall receive **greater honour** than others who **gave** and **fought** thereafter.

Note: This motivates Muslims to start wars and conflicts, so as to get greater rewards from Allah.

60:1 If you came to **fight** for my **cause**, and out of a desire **to please me**, you left your city, how can you be friendly to them in secret?

Note: This says that Muslims **please Allah** by **fighting**.

61:4 Allah **loves** those who **fight** for his cause in ranks as firm as a solid structure.

61:10,11 Believers, shall I point out to you a **profitable course** that will save you from a **woeful scourge**? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and **fight** for Allah’s **cause** with your **wealth** and **persons**. That would be **best for you**, if you but knew it. He will **forgive your sins** and admit you to Gardens....

66:9 Prophet, make **war** on the **unbelievers** and the hypocrites, and **deal sternly** with them. **Hell** shall be their home.

73:20 Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the night.... Recite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are **fighting** for the **cause of Allah**. What ever good you do you shall be....richly rewarded by him.

3. WOMEN mistreated in the Koran. (20 References) 2:228 Men have a status above women.

2:221 You shall not wed pagan women, unless they embrace the faith.

2:223 Women are your fields: go, then, into your fields whence you please,

Note: Women are here compared to an impersonal field of dirt to be used for a man's own benefit.

The Bible gives much greater honour to wives in 1 Peter 3:7: "Husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honour unto the wife,.... as being heirs together of the grace of life."

4:3 If you fear that you cannot treat orphan girls with fairness, then you may marry other women who seem good to you. 2, 3, or 4 of them. But if you fear that you cannot maintain equality among them, marry one only or any slave girls you may own.

Note: This endorsement of the Koran that a man is allowed to marry as many slave girls as he wishes, inevitably leads to them being treated as second class citizens, and denies them the chance of having an husband who is exclusively their own. It denies many men the chance of ever getting married.

4:11 A male shall inherit twice as much as a female.

4:15 If any of your women commit fornication, call in 4 witnesses from among yourselves against them; if they testify to their guilt confine them to their houses till death overtakes them, or till Allah finds another way for them.

Question: What penalty exists for men committing fornication? None. He can fornicate by having a "temporary marriage" called Mutah, or a one-night stand.

4:20 If you wish to replace a wife with another, do not take from her the dowry you have given her...

4:34 Men have authority over women because God has made the one superior to the other, and because they spend their wealth to maintain them.

4:34 As for those from whom you fear disobedience, admonish them, send them to their beds apart, and beat (scourge) them. Note: The Arabic word "beat" is "edribu-hunna" means small or severe.

Note: Here the Koran encourages men to scourge (beat severely) their wives even on the suspicion of disobedience. (No limit on the beating's severity). The Bible never permits domestic violence, but commands "husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church and gave himself for it." (Eph. 5:25).

23:1-6 Blessed are the believers . . . who restrain their carnal desires (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them). Note: The Koran here legitimises slavery of females.

33. THE CONFEDERATE TRIBES/THE CLANS

i) This Surah contains the seige of Mohammed's city Yathrib by the Qureysh and Ghatafan clans (Ibn Khaldun narrative). V.26,27 refer to Mohammed's punishment of the Jewish tribe Bani Qureyzah who had broken their alliance with the Muslims & made common cause with the Qureysh. All their men were put to death, their women and children taken captive & their property divided among the Muslims

ii) 37- Mohammed ordered the divorce of his adopted son Zeyd from his wife Zeynab because Mohammed wanted to marry Zeynab. When people protested this, Mohammed claimed to have a command from Allah for Zeyd to divorce Zeynab and for Mohammed to marry Zeynab.

iii) Pickthall says, "With the exception of Aveshah, the daughter of his closest friend, Abu Baker, whom he married at her father's request when she was still a child, all his later marriages were with widows whose state was pitiable. . ." *Koran* (Pickthall) p.428. In the West, this is Paedophilia.

33:30 Wives of the Prophet! Those of you who commit a proven sin/lewdness will be doubly punished

33:37 You (Mohammed) said to the man (Zayd, Mohammed's adopted son) whom God and yourself have favoured: "Keep your wife and have fear of God". You sought to hide in your heart what Allah was to reveal (your intention to marry Zayd's wife). You were afraid of man . . . When Zayd divorced his wife, we gave her to you in marriage.

33:38 No blame shall be attached to the prophet for doing what is sanctioned for him by Allah.

Note: When David took another man's wife, God judged him.

38:25,26 David sought forgiveness of his Lord and fell down penitently on his knees. We forgave him his sin.

Question: How is it a sin for David to murder and take another man's wife (Bathsheba), and not a sin for Mohammed to murder and take another man's wife (Zeynab)? Allah has double standards between Mohammed and David. It appears that Mohammed is using Allah as a rubber stamp to endorse whatever he wants to do.

33:50 Prophet, we have made lawful to you . . . the **slave girls** whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the Prophet and **whom** the Prophet **wishes to take in marriage**. This privilege is yours alone.

33:51 You **may put off any** of your wives you please, and take to your bed **any** of them you please.

33:52 It is unlawful for believers to take more wives...except where **slave girls** are concerned.

33:59 Prophet, enjoy your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to **draw their veils close round them** . . . so that they may be **recognized** and **not molested**.

58:2 Those of you who divorce their wives by declaring them to be their mothers should know that they are not their mothers.

64:14 Believers you have an **enemy** in your **wives** and in **your children**: beware of them.

Note: What rubbish! The Bible says "Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church." Eph. 5:25.

70:22 Not so the worshippers, who . . . **Dread the punishment of the Lord** (for none is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and **slave girls**, for these are lawful to them.). **Note**: All Muslims must live in **fear of Allah's punishment**. "None are secure from Allah's punishment". The Koran allows taking girls into sexual slavery but the God of the Bible is against slavery and wills that the younger women marry one man only (I Cor. 7:2-5; I Tim. 1:10; 5:14).

4. DEATH to those leaving Islam (5 References)

2:217 Whoever of you **recants** and dies an unbeliever, . . . shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

4:89 If they **desert you, seize them** and **put them to death wherever you find** them.

Note: Fear of death is why so few people leave Islam.

16:106 Those who **deny Allah** after **professing Islam** and open their bosoms to **unbelief** shall **incur the wrath of Allah, grievous punishment** awaits them.

Note: This means death to those who leave Islam.

47:25,27 **Those who turn back** (from Islam) angels shall gather them, **smiting their faces & their backs**

63:3,4 They believed and then **renounced their faith**. . . they are the **enemy**. Guard yourself against them. Allah confound them!

5. ONLY true faith is Islam (7 References)

3:19 The **only true faith** in **Allah's sight** is Islam.

3:62 This is the whole truth: "**There is no god but Allah.**"

3:85 He that **chooses a religion other than Islam** (surrender to Allah), it will **not** be accepted of him, and he will be a **loser** in the hereafter.

9:33 It is he who has sent forth his apostle with guidance and **true faith** to make it **triumph over all religions**.

48:28 It is He that has sent forth **his apostle** . . . so that He may exalt it **above all religions**.

61:9 He sent **his Apostle**, . . . so that he may **exalt it above all other religions**.

43:30 Now the **truth** has come to them, they say: "This is **sorcery**. We utterly reject it'."

6. PUBLIC OPINION about Mohammed, Allah and the Koran (16 References)

10:3 Unbelievers say: "This man is a **skilled enchanter**."

13:7,27 The unbelievers ask: "Why has **no sign** been given him by his Lord?"

Note: The **Biblical apostles were given signs**: "Confirming the word with signs following." Mark 16:20

16:101 When we **change one verse for another** (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say, "**You** (Mohammed) **are an imposter**."

17:47 The wrong-doers declare: "The **man** (Mohammed) you follow is **surely bewitched**."

25:5 And they say: "**Fables of the ancients** he has written."

34:43 Others say: "This (Koran) is nothing but an **invented falsehood**." Others declare: "This (Koran) is but **plain sorcery**".

37:36 Are we to renounce our gods for the sake of a **mad poet**?

41:26 Unbelievers say: “**Give no heed to this Koran**. Cut short its recital with booing and laughter...” We will sternly punish the unbelievers . . . The Fire shall for ever be their home.

44:14-16 They denied him (Mohammed) saying: “A madman taught by others”. On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourself.

46:11 Unbelievers say: “This is an ancient lie.”

53:1,2,3 By the declining star, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not in error, nor is he deceived. He does not speak out of his own fancy.

53:19 Have you thought on AL-LAT and AL-UZZA, and on MANAT, the third other.

Note: These are names that early Meccans gave to Allah’s daughters.

68:15 When our revelations are recited to him he says: “They are but fables of the ancients.” We shall brand him on the nose. Note: Unbelievers rightly said this because much in the Koran was copied from earlier writings such as 26 Arabian, Jewish and Christian sources.

68:51 When they hear our revelations, unbelievers say “Surely he is possessed”.

Note: When Mohammed gave a revelation, he would fall onto the ground in a trancelike fit. Witnesses thought him to be possessed. No Bible prophet did this. This is a sign of demon possession (Mark 9:20)

81:22 No, your compatriot (Mohammed) is not mad. He saw him (Gabriel) on the clear horizon.. nor is this the utterance of an accursed devil.

7. HELL’S TORMENTS in the Koran to motivate Muslims to obey Mohammed (70 References)

2:217 Whoever of you recants and dies an unbeliever,... shall be the tenants of the Fire, wherein they shall abide forever.

Note: This verse keeps Muslims trapped in Islam for fear of hell.

3:4 Those who disbelieve Allah’s revelations shall be sternly punished.

3:11 Allah is severe in punishment.

3:12 Say to the unbelievers: “You shall be overthrown and driven into hell.”

4:56 Those that deny our revelations we will burn in the Fire. No sooner will their skins be consumed than we shall give them other skins, so that they may truly taste the scourge.

Note: What terror inducing rubbish! Thankfully the love & permanent salvation of Jesus Christ delivers us from such fear. (John 10:28). Jesus said, “I give unto them eternal life, and they shall never perish.”

11:119 The word of your Lord shall be fulfilled: “I will fill Hell with jinn and mankind together.”

14:16 Hell is before him, and he is made to drink a festering water (liquid pus), which he will sip, but can hardly swallow.

19:71 There is not one among you who shall not pass through it (the fire of hell v.68): such is the absolute decree of your Lord. We will deliver those who fear us, and leave the wrongdoers there.

Note: This states that every Muslim will spend time in hell. What a shocking prospect to face. Islam thus offers nothing to solve man’s fear of death. The Bible says, “He that has the Son has life”. This means that even Mohammed went to hell. Whoever wrote the Koran wants people to go to hell.

20:113 Thus we have revealed it as a lecture (Quran) in Arabic, and have displayed therein certain threats, that they may keep them from evil, or that it may cause them to take heed.

Note: Many of the verses in the Koran are threats of punishment, torture or hell fire for those who don’t do what the Koran says. Fear is a major motive for Muslims in the Koran. In Hebrews 2:15, Christ’s salvation, “delivers them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.”

22:19 Garments of fire have been prepared for the unbelievers. Scalding water shall be poured upon their heads, melting their skins and that which is in their bellies.

22:21 They shall be lashed with hooked rods of iron.

22:22 Whenever, in their anguish, they try to escape from hell, back they shall be dragged.

32:13 “I will surely fill Hell with jinn and humans all.”

33:8 For the unbelievers He (Allah) has prepared a woeful punishment.

33:17 Say, “Who can protect you from Allah if it is His will to scourge you?”

33:64 Allah has cursed the unbelievers and prepared for them a blazing fire on the day when their faces (heads) will roll about in the fire. Lord, mete out to them a double scourge, lay on them a mighty curse.

34:5 Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.

Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran. 978

37:62-68 We have made this (Zaqqum) tree a scourge for the unjust. It grows in the nethermost part of Hell, bearing fruit like devils heads: on it they shall feed, and with it they shall cram their bellies, together with draughts of scalding water. Then to hell they shall return.

38:56-58 The transgressors shall burn in hell, a dismal resting place. There let them taste their drink, scalding water, festering blood and other putrid things.

39:16 Above them shall be sheets of fire and sheets of fire shall be beneath them. By this, Allah puts fear into his servants' hearts. Note: Islam appears as a religion of fear and terror.

39:31 In throngs the unbelievers shall be led to hell. They will be told to enter the gates of hell and stay there forever.

40:18 Warn them of the approaching day, when men's hearts will leap up to their throats & choke them

40:21 Allah scourged them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

40:71 When with chains and shackles round their necks, they shall be dragged through scalding water and burnt in the fire of Hell.

41:16 . . . more shameful still will be the scourge of the life to come.

41:17 The thunderbolt of a humiliating scourge struck them for their misdeeds.

41:19 Forewarn them of the day when the enemies of Allah will be brought together & led into the Fire

42:26 Grievous punishment awaits the unbelievers.

42:45 Wrongdoers shall surely suffer everlasting torment.

43:74 Evildoers shall endure forever the torment of Hell. Their punishment will never be lightened, and they shall be speechless with despair.

44:43-48 The fruit of the Zaqqum tree shall be the sinners food. Like molten brass, like scalding water, it shall simmer in his belly. A voice will cry, "Seize him and drag him into the depths of hell. Then pour scalding water over his head."

44:14-16 They denied him (Mohammed) saying: "A madman taught by others". On that day we will inflict on them the supreme punishment and avenge ourself.

45:9 Those that deride our revelations when they know but little of them shall suffer degrading torment

45:10 Hell is behind them.

45:11 Those that deny their Lord's revelations shall suffer the anguish of a woeful scourge.

45:33 The scourge at which they scoffed will encompass them.

45:34 The Fire shall be your home and none will help you.

46:20,34 We shall say to unbelievers: "Your reward will be degrading torment".

48:6 Allah is angry with them (hypocrites, idolaters). He has laid on them his curse and prepared for them the fire of Hell.

48:13 Those that disbelieve in Allah & his apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

50:24 A voice will cry: "Cast into Hell every hardened unbeliever".

51:12,13 On the Day of Judgment they shall be scorched in the Fire.

52:13 On that day they (unbelievers) shall be sternly thrown into the fire of hell . . . burn in its flames.

54:48 On the day when wrongdoers are dragged into the Fire upon their faces, we shall say to them: "Feel the touch of Hell".

THE MERCIFUL(???)

55:35 Flames of fire shall be lashed at you, and molten brass.

55:41 The wrongdoers . . . shall be seized by their forelocks and their feet.

55:44 They shall wander between fire and water fiercely seething.

56:52-54 As for you sinners who deny the truth, you shall eat the fruit of the Zaqqum tree and fill your bellies with it. You shall drink scalding water.

56:92-95 If he is an erring disbeliever, his welcome will be scalding water, and he will burn in hell. This is surely the indubitable truth.

57:15 The fire shall be your home (unbelievers and hypocrites): you have justly earned it, a dismal end.

57:19 Those that disbelieve our revelations and deny them are the heirs of Hell.

58:14 Do you not see those that have befriended a people with whom Allah is angry? (98:6). Allah has prepared for them a grievous scourge. They are inmates of the fire, there shall they abide forever.

61:10,11 Believers, shall I point out to you a profitable course that will save you from a woeful scourge? Have faith in Allah and his apostle, and fight for Allah's cause with your wealth and persons. That would be best for you, if you but knew it. He will forgive your sins and admit you to Gardens....

64:10 Those that disbelieve and deny our revelation shall be made the inmates of the Fire, and shall abide therein forever.

68:33 The punishment of the life to come is more terrible if they but knew it.

69:30-36 We shall say "Bind him. Burn him in the fire of Hell, then fasten him with a chain 70 cubits long. For he did not believe in Allah. filth shall be his food...this is the utterance of a noble messenger"

70:15 The fire of Hell shall drag him down by the scalp.

72:23 Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah's will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah's will.

73:12 We have in store for them (unbelievers) heavy fetters and a blazing fire, choking food and harrowing torments..... mountains shall crumble into heaps of shifting sand.

74:24 Unbelievers said: "This is but sorcery counterfeited, the speech of a mere mortal man". I will surely cast him into the fire. It burns the skins of men.

76:4 For the unbelievers we have prepared chains and fetters and a blazing fire.

Note: The God of the Bible loves sinners, died for them, wants them to go to heaven and is not willing that any should perish. He prepared everlasting fire for the Devil & his angels, not for man (Mat 25:44).

Allah of the Koran delights in sending people to hell. He is very different to the God of the Bible

77:29 Woe on the day to the unbelievers! Begone to that hell which you deny.

78:21 Hell will lie in ambush, a home for the transgressors. There they shall abide long ages; there they shall taste neither refreshment or drink, save scalding water and decaying filth: a fitting recompense.

82:14 The wicked shall burn in hell upon the Judgment Day nor shall they escape from it.

83:16 They shall burn in Hell.

84:14 He shall call down destruction on himself and burn in the fire of hell.

87:12 He shall burn in the gigantic fire, where he shall neither die nor live.

88:1-7 On that day there shall be downcast faces, of men broken and worn out burnt by a scorching fire, drinking from a scalding fountain. Their only food shall be bitter thorns.

98:4-6 The unbelievers among the People of the Book and all the pagans shall burn forever in the fire of hell. They are the vilest of all creatures (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians are the vilest and worst of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tell Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell. The Bible says that God loves Israel (Jeremiah 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35) and all the World (John 3:16). "He that has the Son has life." I John 5:13.

104:4 He shall be flung into the destroying flame.

111:1-5 May the hands of Abu-lahab perish. May he himself perish. He shall be burned in a flaming fire, and his wife laden with firewood, shall have a rope of fibre round her neck.

8. CHRIST greater than MOHAMMED in the Koran (9 References)

19:29 Christ raised to life.

19:29 Christ sinless.

2:253 Christ did miracles, Moh didn't. We gave Jesus clear signs.2:118 Allah does not give us a sign

3:49 Jesus healed the blind, leper, and the dead. Jesus said:

"By Allah's leave I shall heal the blind man, and the leper, and raise the dead to life."

Christ's miracles prove that He is much greater than Mohammed who never did miracles.

5:46,47 Jesus... We gave him the gospel. Note: The Koran never defines the gospel of Christ but the Bible does (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Mohammed never preached the New Testament gospel.

43:63 When Jesus came with evident signs, he said: "I have come to give you wisdom . . . Fear God and FOLLOW me."

Note: Jesus gave evident signs/miracles, but Mohammed could not. Hence Jesus is greater than Mohammed. Jesus commands Muslims to "Follow me". Do Muslims obey this? 980

57:25 We have sent our apostles with veritable signs, and through them have brought down scriptures and the scales of justice, so men might conduct themselves with fairness.

Note: This fairness and justice are found in the Bible, not in the Koran.

57:27 Jesus, the son of Mary. We gave him the Gospel and put compassion and mercy in the hearts of his followers.

Question: Why couldn't Allah put compassion and mercy in the hearts of Muslims? (He is different).

Question: What is the Gospel that Jesus preached that can save sinners from sin and hell.

Answer: That Christ died for our sins, was buried and rose again the third day? (1 Cor.15:1-4).

70:22 Not so the worshipers, who... **Dread the punishment of the Lord** (for none is secure from the punishment of their Lord), who restrain their carnal desire (except with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them.)

Note: All Muslims live in fear of Allah's punishment, since none are secure from Allah's punishment.

9. ANTI-CHRIST and ANTI-CHRISTIAN (People of the Book) quotes in the Koran (29 Quotes)

3:69 Some of the People of the Book (Jews and Christians), wish to mislead you.

3:70 People of the Book! Why do you disbelieve in the revelations of Allah? See 22 reasons page 993.

4:157 They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself. **Note:** This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: "Blessed I shall be on the day of my death." and Q 3:55 "Allah said "O Isa! I will make you sleep and raise you to myself."

4:171 People of the Book (Christians): Believe in Allah and his apostles and do not say "THREE". God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a son.

Note: Yes Christians believe that God is one God, but that He has 3 parts (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) each of which is fully God. Jesus is fully God and fully man. As humans have a body, soul, and spirit, so God is Father, Son and Holy Spirit, all fully and equally God. The OT and the NT teach this.

5:16 Unbelievers are those who declare: "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary." Say, "Who could prevent Allah, if he so willed, from destroying the Messiah, the son of Mary, his mother, and all the people of the earth?" **Note:** This is what Satan wants. ("devour the man child". Revelation 12:3-5).

5:51 Believers (Muslims), take neither the Jews nor the Christians for your friends ... wrongdoers.

5:56 Believers (Muslims), do not seek friendship of the infidels and those who were given the Book (Bible) before you, who have made your religion a jest.

5:72 Unbelievers are those that say; "God is the Messiah, the son of Mary."

5:73 Unbelievers are those that say: "God is one of three."

5:116 Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: "Worship me and my mother as gods beside Allah?""

Note: The Koran's error in thinking that the Trinity is God, Jesus and Mary.

6:102 How should he have a son when he had no consort?

9:29 Fight against such of those to whom the Scriptures were given as believe neither in Allah nor the last Day, who do not forbid what Allah and his apostle have forbidden, and do not embrace the true faith, until they pay tribute out of hand and are utterly subdued. **Note:** See John 16:2 "Whosoever kills you..."

9:30 The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Such are their assertions, by which they imitate the infidels of old. Allah (Himself) fights against them. How perverse are they.

10:38 This Koran ... confirms what was revealed before it and fully explains the Scriptures. (False).

10:69 They say: "Allah has begotten a son." God forbid.

10:95 If you (Mohammed) doubt what we have revealed to you, then ask those who read the scriptures that were before you.

16:43 Ask the People of the Book, if ye know not.

17:111 Cry unto Allah and say: "Praise be to Allah who has never begotten a son; who has no partner in His kingdom; who needs none to defend Him from humiliation."

Note: This denies Jesus Christ being the Son of God and God the Son.

18:4.5 Admonish those who say that God has begotten a son.

A monstrous blasphemy is that which they utter. They preach nothing but falsehood.

19:88 Those who say: “The Lord of mercy has begotten a son” preach a monstrous falsehood, at which the heavens might crack, the earth break assunder, and the mountains crumble to dust.

Note: The Koran’s hatred to God having a Son is comparable to Satan’s hatred of Christ (Revelation 12:4). Mohammad did not know that Greek has 2 different words for “son”, huios and teknon.

23:91 Never has Allah begotten a son.

29:46 Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. Say: “We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one.

Note: This is 100% false. Allah and the God of the Bible have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6th Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God. See p.1026.

34:5 Those who strive to refute our revelations shall suffer the torment of a harrowing scourge.

Note: Nobody is allowed to question the Koran.

36:8 We have bound their necks (unbelievers) with chains of iron reaching up to their chins, so that they cannot bow their heads.

43:81 Say to Christians: “If the Lord of Mercy had a son, I would be the first to worship him”.

Note: The prophets refute the Koran here by saying that God does have a Son: Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2:7,12), even Gabriel (Luke 1:32,35).

72:1 Say (Mohammed): “It is revealed to me that a band of jinn listened to Allah’s revelations and said: We have heard a wonderous Koran giving guidance to the right path. We believed in it and shall henceforth serve none besides Allah. He has taken no consort, nor has he begotten any children. The Blaspheming One among us has uttered a wanton falsehood against Allah. Some men have sought the help of the jinn, but they misled them into further error. We made our way to high heaven, and found it filled with mighty wardens and fiery comets. We sat eavesdropping, but eavesdroppers find flaming darts in wait for them. Some of us are Muslims and some are wrongdoers. Note:

i) If demons endorse the Koran (by saying that the Koran guides in the right path), then demons whose nature is evil and deception, tell us that the Koran is the wrong path for man.

ii) Evil demons servng Allah show that Allah is not the God of the Bible.

iii) These demons deny that Jesus is God the Son. “Every Spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God, this is the spirit of the antichrist.” I John 4:3.

iv) Muslims hatred of Christianity is because they think we are preaching blasphemy by calling Jesus Christ the Son of God.

v) This passage teaches that demon Jinn lead men into error. Jinn have led the entire Muslim world into error. Paul rejected the support of demons (Acts 16:16-18). So should we.

vi) v.8,9 claim that Allah sends fiery comets to hit jinn when they listen to conversations in heaven.

vii) Verse 14 says some jinn became Muslims by surrendering to Allah. If some demons are now Muslims and they help spread Islam, then Islam is a religion of demons.

“Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils, speaking lies in hypocrisy.” I Timothy 4:1,2.

98:4.5 The People of the Book ...are ordered to serve Allah, to worship none but him, to attend to their prayers, and to render the alms levy.

98:6 The unbelievers among the People of the Book and all the pagans shall burn forever in the fire of hell. They are the vilest of all creatures (worst created beings).

Note: i) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians (who don’t believe in Allah) are the vilest and worst of all creatures. This partly explains why many Muslims hate Jews and Christians, particularly Israel and America.

ii) The Koran tells Muslims that Jews and Christians will burn forever in the fire of Hell. The Bible says that God loves Israel (Jer 31:3; Isaiah 43:4), Christians (John 13:34,35)& all the World (John 3:16

112:1-4 Say Allah is One, the Eternal god. He begot none, nor was he begotten. None is equal to him. (Jesus claimed equality with God in John 5:18 “making himself equal with God.”

10. **CONTRADICTIONS between the Bible and the Koran (35 References)**

God never commanded Satan and the angels to bow down to Adam:

2:34 When we said to the angels: “Prostrate yourselves before Adam”, they all prostrated themselves except Satan who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever.

Note: This story is contrary to the Bible. It is recorded about 7 times in the Koran for no purpose but to lengthen the book. (2:34; 7:11; 15:30-33; 17:61,62; 18:50; 20:115; 38:75).

15:28-38 Allah said to the angels: “...fall down and prostrate yourselves unto Adam.”

All angels prostrated themselves, except Satan. Allah asked Satan why he won't bow down to Adam. Satan said: “I will not bow to a mortal whom you created of dry clay...”

Allah says: “Be gone, my curse shall be on you till Judgment day.” Satan asks Allah: “Reprieve me till the day of Resurrection.” Allah agrees: “You are reprieved till the appointed day.”

Satan says to Allah: “Since you have seduced me, I will tempt mankind on earth.”

Allah replies: “You shall have no power over my servants, only the sinners who follow you. They are all destined for hell.” Notice 6 errors in this passage:

1) In the Bible, God never told angels to fall down to Adam.

2) By Satan refusing, Satan is shown to be doing right.

3) God's curse on Satan seems unjust, thus attacking God's justice. Satan wants God to seem unjust.

4) Satan is seen manipulating God out of being cursed.

5) Satan's excuse for tempting mankind, is because God seduced him. This legitimises seduction.

6) God only gives Satan power over those destined for hell. (God doesn't predestine anyone to hell.)

7) If Allah is all-knowing, why did he ask Satan to tell him why he did not bow down? He should know

The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it:

2:41 Have faith in my revelations which confirm your scriptures.

Note: The Koran does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it on almost every page and on every doctrine, such as Salvation, God, and heaven. This lie is repeated in 2:89,91; 3:81;10:38; 12:111; 46:12. **5:48** The Koran confirms the Scriptures which came before it.

12:111 It is no invented story but a confirmation of the existing scriptures...

Gabriel and the Apostles refute the Koran:

2:97 Say: “Whoever is an enemy of Gabriel (who has by Allah's grace revealed to you the Koran... confirming previous scriptures)...an enemy of Allah, His angels, His apostles, of Gabriel, or Michael, will surely find that Allah is the enemy of the unbelievers.”

Note: The Koran in order to build acceptance and credibility claims support from previous sources of the truth such as God, angels, prophets, apostles, Gabriel and Michael. Their words in the Bible are totally different from the Koran. How many Muslims have carefully studied and understood the Bible?

Note: i) Michael the archangel stands for Israel (Daniel 12:1), but the Koran opposes Israel (98:6).

ii) Gabriel's message is opposite to the Koran's about Christ, “in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God... to a virgin (v.26,27). The angel said unto her “Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found favour with God. And behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a son, and shalt call his name JESUS. (v.30,31) He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest... of his kingdom there shall be no end. (v.32,33) that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.” (v.35). Luke 2:26-35.

The Koran denies that God has a Son, yet the Bible, the apostles, and prophets Daniel (3:25), David (Psalm 2), Solomon (Proverbs 30:4), and Gabriel all say that God has a Son. Whom do you believe?

Bible prophets do not support the Koran, but refute it:

2:136 Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Koran); in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses, Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord.

Note: Again the Koran appeals to these men to support the Muslim faith. If Muslims studied their writings they would see how opposite their teachings are to Mohammed and to the Koran.

Divorced persons who marry another, cannot remarry each other:

2:230 If a man divorces his wife he cannot remarry her until she has wedded another man and been divorced by him; in which case it shall be no offence for either of them to return to the other.

Note: This clearly contradicts God's law given to Moses in Deuteronomy 24:1-4 “Her former husband which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife,... for that is abomination before the Lord.”

Israel demands a King, not a fight:

2:246 The Israelites demanded of one of their prophets: “Raise up for us a king and **we will fight** for the **cause of Allah**. He replied: “What if you refuse to fight when ordered to do so?” They said: “Why should we refuse to **fight** for the **cause of Allah**?” But when at last they were **ordered to fight**, they all refused except a few of them. Allah knows the **evil-doers**.”

Note: i) This is from 1 Samuel 8:1-22 which says: “Make us a king to **judge us** like all the nations” (v.5) “that our king may **judge us**, and go out before us, and fight our battles.” (v.20).

The people gave no promise here to fight for the cause of Allah, nor did the Koran’s alleged conversation take place.

ii) This passage in the Koran portrays **Allah declaring as evil-doers** those who **refused to fight**. This motivates Muslims to fight in order to please Allah. “Devil ..was a murderer.” John 8:44; I John 3:15.

Saul confused with Gideon:

2:249 When **Saul** marched out with his army, he said: “Allah will prove you at a certain river. He that **drinks from it** shall cease to be my soldier, but he that... contents himself with a **taste** of it in the **hollow** of his hand, shall **fight by my side**.”

iii) Error in the Koran: The writer of the Koran here confused **Saul** (1100 BC) with **Gideon** (1250 BC). It was Gideon who God told to take his troops to a river to reduce their numbers from 10,000 to 300 by this same drinking test. (Judges 7:1-7).

Salvation cannot be purchased with money.

2:271 To **give alms** (money) in private is better and will **atone for some of your sins**.

Note: This teaches the error that man can buy his way into heaven. Psalm 49:7, Acts 8:20 refutes this.

Q: What about a poor man of no money? Does he go to hell, while a rich man buys his way to heaven?

2:284 Allah will **forgive** whom he will and **punish whom he pleases**.

3:81 When Allah made his covenant with the prophets, he said: “Here are the scriptures and wisdom which I have given you. **Afterward there will come unto you a messenger** (or apostle) to **confirm them**. You shall **believe in him** and help him.”

Note: This comes from Deuteronomy 18:18,19 where God says: “I will raise them (Israel) up a **Prophet** (**Christ**, not Mohammed) from among **their brethren** (Mohammed was not a Jew, but a Gentile Arabian), like unto **thee** (Moses), and will put **my words** in his mouth...”

Muslims claim that this prophecy refers to Mohammed, but the Prophet was Jesus Christ because:

i) Jesus was an **Israelite**, Mohammed was not.

ii) Jesus Christ **prophesied the future**, Mohammed did not.

iii) Jesus was **like Moses** in 63 ways, Mohammed was not. See Answers p.1087.

iv) Jesus **spoke kind words of God**, Mohammed spoke words of hate.

v) Jesus “**went about doing good**,” (Acts10:38), Mohammed gave terrorism, Jihad, suicide bombers, hatred.

3:96, 97 The **first temple** ever to be built for mankind was that at **Bakkah (Mecca)**. In it there are clear signs and the **spot** where **Abraham stood to pray... Pilgrimage to the House** is a **duty to Allah** for all who can make the journey.

Note: i) There is no Biblical or historical evidence that Abraham ever visited Mecca.

ii) The **Tabernacle**, **Solomon’s temple** or **Herod’s temple** were earlier than the Kabah at Mecca.

3:166 The **misfortune** which **befell** you when the two armies met was **ordained by Allah**.

4:116 Allah will not forgive idolatry.

Note: Error in the Koran here. Jesus said: “All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the **blasphemy against the Holy Ghost** shall **not be forgiven unto men**.” Matthew 12:31,32.

4:124 Believers who **do good works**, both men and women shall enter paradise.

Note: This contradicts over 50 New Testament references that good works don’t save us. None of us are good compared to God. “Not of works, lest any man should boast.” Ephes. 2:8-10; Titus 3:5. p.387.

4:157 They **did not kill him** (Jesus), nor did they **crucify him**, but they thought they did... They **did not slay him for certain**. Allah lifted him up to himself.”

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: “Blessed I shall be on the day of my **death**.”

4:163 We have revealed our will to you (Mohammed) as we revealed it to Noah, Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Jesus, Job, Jonah, Aaron, Solomon and David.

Note: The true prophet David in Psalm 2:12 calls Jesus the “Son.” (“Kiss the Son.”) contradicting the false prophet Mohammed.

5:116 Allah will say: “Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: Worship me and my mother as gods beside God?”

Note: The Koran’s error in thinking that the Trinity is God, Jesus and Mary. Jesus accepted worship.

6:51 They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah. Note: Jesus is our intercessor (1 Timothy 2:5)

6:101 How should he have a son when he had no consort?

Did Allah create the heaven and the earth in 6 or 8 days?

7:24 Allah who created the heaven and the earth in 6 days.

10:4 Allah created the heaven and earth in 6 days (11:7).

41:9 Do you disbelieve in him who created the earth in 2 days? He set upon the earth mountains towering high above it. (FALSE).

41:10 . . . in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike.

41:12 In 2 days He formed the sky into 7 heavens.

Note: Two mistakes in this are as follows:

i) According to Genesis 7:19,20 there were no towering high mountains before Noah’s Flood because there were only high hills then which the waters covered by 15 cubits or 22 feet.

ii) According to Exodus 20:11, “In six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is,” not 8 days.

Mohammed was not described in the Torah and Gospel, it was Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

7:157 Those who follow the Prophet- whom they shall find described in the Torah and the Gospel.

7:179 We have predestined for hell numerous jinn and men. (*Islam offers no hope to many people.*)

9:103 Take alms from them, so that they may thereby be cleansed and purified.

Note: This teaches the error of salvation by giving money.

10:101 None can have faith (believe) except by the will (permission) of Allah.

11:34 If Allah’s will is to keep you astray.

11:114 Good deeds annul ill deeds. Note: This teaches the error of salvation by good works.

17:101 To Moses we gave 9 clear signs. Note: False. He was given 10 signs. (Exodus 7:14-11:1).

27:12 One of 9 signs to Pharaoh.

17:104 We said to the Israelites: “Dwell in the land. When the promise of the hereafter comes to be fulfilled, we shall assemble you all together.” (Out of various nations).

Note: This is a clear false prophecy, because Israelites have already been assembled in the land, and the promise of the hereafter (ie. Day of Judgement) has not yet happened. This is one reason why devout Muslims want Israelites destroyed and out of the land.

37:147 Jonah . . . we sent him to a nation 100,000 strong or more.

(Jonah 4:11 states that Nineveh had 120,000 children under age about 7 who could not tell their left hand from their right hand. A total of 100,000 is way out.)

40:36 Pharaoh said to Haman: “Build me a tower that I may reach the heavens and look upon the god of Moses.” Note: Pharaoh (1500 BC) and Haman (500 BC) never knew each other.

53:32 To those who avoid the grossest sins and indecencies, and commit only small offences, your Lord will show abundant mercy.

Note: This allows Muslims to commit any sins that they define as “only small offences”. This proves the Koran came from a sinful human mind, not from the Holy God of the Bible who sees all sin as sinful

57:22 Every misfortune befalling the Earth, or your own persons, is ordained before we bring it to pass.

61:6 Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the Israelites, I am sent from you to Allah to confirm the Torah , and to give news of an apostle that will come after Me whose name is Ahmed (the praised one).

Note: Muslims claim that Mohammed was the fulfillment of Jesus’ Prophecy in John 14:16-18; 16:7-14 of sending the Comforter. **Key:** Jesus declared that this Comforter is the Holy Spirit, not Mohammed.

i) John 14:16 “Another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever.”

Note: Mohammed died and did not abide with us forever.

The disciples never knew Mohammed, nor did Mohammed dwell with the disciples in 33AD.

ii) John 14:17 “ye shall know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.”

iii) John 14:26 “But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost.”

iv) John 16:13 “When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come...”

v) John 16:14 “He shall glorify me (Jesus).” Note: Mohammed did not glorify Jesus.

61:14 Believers, be Allah’s helpers. When Jesus, the son of Mary, said to the disciples, “Who will come with me to the help of Allah?” The disciples replied; “We are Allah’s helpers.”

Note: Neither Jesus nor his disciples ever said this in New Testament.

71:11 Noah said: “Seek forgiveness... He sends down abundant waters from the sky for you.”

Note: The Koran is wrong here because it claims Noah told his generation how God sends rain for their benefit. Yet Genesis 2:5,6 tells “The Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the Earth... but there went up a mist from the Earth, and watered the whole face of the ground.” Nobody before the flood had ever seen rain, “By faith Noah, being warned of God of things not seen as yet.” Hebrews 11:7.

90:4 We created man to try him with afflictions.

11. OBEY Allah and OBEY Mohammed (13 References)

Note: The Bible warns us to test, identify and reject false apostles:

i) “thou hast tried them which say they are apostles, and are not and hast found them liars.” Rev. 2:2.

ii) **Question:** How do we try, test and identify true and false apostles?

Answer: By them doing miraculous signs “Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds.” 2 Cor.12:12. Since Mohammed did no miracles, he fails the test of an apostle. We rightly identify him as a false apostle. “For such are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ...whose end is...” 2 Cor.11:13.

3:32 Say “Obey Allah and the Apostle (Muhammed).” If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers. Note: The God of the Bible loves the world of unbelievers (John 3:16,17).

3:132 Obey Allah and the Apostle that you may find mercy.

3:151 We shall put terror in the hearts of the unbelievers, because they ascribe unto Allah partners ...their habitation is the Fire. Note: i) This permits Muslims to commit acts of terror.

ii) The Koran refers to Christians as hellbound because we believe Jesus is the Son of God.

4:80 He that obeys the Apostle (Mohammed) obeys Allah.

Note: This was a clever trick by Mohammed to manipulate people into obeying him. God said no such thing. Jeremiah 23:16 “Thus saith the LORD of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain (1891= vain in expectation, to lead astray): they speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the Lord.”

5:34 Those that make war against Allah and his apostle and spread disorder in the land shall be put to death or crucified, or have their hands and feet cut off on alternate sides, or be banished from the land.

9:61 Those that wrong the apostle of Allah shall be sternly punished.

9:63 The man who defies Allah and His apostle shall abide forever in the fire of Hell.

33:57 Those who speak ill of Allah and His Apostle shall be cursed by Allah in this life and in the life to come. He has prepared for them a shameful punishment.

47:33 Believers, obey Allah and obey the Apostle.

48:13 As for those that disbelieve in Allah and His apostle, we have prepared a blazing fire for the unbelievers.

58:5 Those that oppose Allah and His apostles shall be brought low. Shameful punishment awaits the unbelievers.

59:7 The spoils taken from the town-dwellers and assigned by Allah to his apostle shall belong to Allah, to the apostle and his Kinsfolk, to orphans and to the destitute. Allah is stern in retribution.

64:12,13 Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

72:23 Those that disobey Allah and His Apostle shall abide forever in the Fire of Hell.

Note: Mohammed, in order to terrify people into submission to his will, equated his will with Allah’s will, threatening them with going to hell fire if they disobeyed his/Allah’s commands.

Did Jesus Christ Die (19:29) or Did He not Die (4:157)?

4:157 They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They did not slay him for certain. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets,

Quran 19:33: “Blessed I shall be on the day of my death.”

3:55 Allah: “Jesus, I will make you sleep & raise you”

19:29- How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, “he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, & blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life”. Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son. **Note:** From this we learn that:

- 1) Jesus claimed to be sinless, making him greater than Mohammed.
- 2) Jesus states that He will die and be raised to life. This contradicts 4:157 which denies that He died.
- 3) Jesus rising from the dead, makes him greater than Mohammed who remains dead.
- 4) Jesus speaking from the cradle is clearly false and not in the Bible. It does not confirm the Bible.

12. UNSCIENTIFIC Statements in the Koran (14 References)

18:84-91. See v.86: They will ask you about Dhul-Qarnayn (Alexander the Great).

Say “he followed a road until he reached the setting place of the sun and saw the sun setting in a spring (pool) of black muddy water. Hard by he found a certain people.”

18:90-91 Then he followed a road till, when he reached the rising-place of the sun, he found it rising on a people for whom we had appointed no shelter therefrom.

Note: The sun does not set in a pool of black mud, nor does it have a fixed rising place. Mohammed in 620AD did not know how the earth moves around the sun.

This is a clear unscientific error in the Koran, showing that it cannot be from the true God.

22:65 Allah holds the sky from falling down upon the earth.

Note: This is false nonsense because the sky is gas/empty space, not something that can fall down on us

24:43 From heaven’s mountains he sends down the hail.

28:38 Pharaoh said: “Make me, Haman, bricks of clay and build for me a tower that I may climb to the God of Moses”.

Note: The error is that the Koran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) living alongside Haman (510 BC) who built the Tower of Babel (2250 BC). This is a serious mistake in the Koran. 7th Century Arabs thought of time as in cycles, not as we think of it as linear. This is fatal to the Koran’s claim of Divine inspiration.

36:39 The sun is not allowed to overtake the moon . . . Each in its own orbit runs.

Note: False. If the Koran was from God it would have said that the earth & moon have orbits, not the Sun

50:6 How we built the sky up, . . . leaving no crack in its expanse.

FALSE: 7th Century Arabs thought the sky was a solid dome without a crack. It is just space.

50:7 We spread out the earth and set upon it immovable mountains.

FALSE: Mountains move during earthquakes. **56:5** “The mountains crumble away.”

52:11 contradicts this: “On that day... the mountains move and pass away”. See Revelation 16:18-20.

51:47,48 We built the heaven . . . giving it a vast expanse, and stretched the earth beneath it.

Note: FALSE: The earth was not stretched flat beneath heaven. It is a spherical planet.

54:1 The hour of doom is drawing near, and the moon is cleft in two.

Question: How can the moon be split in two?

67:3 Turn up your eyes: Can you detect a single crack (in the sky)?

69:16 The sky will be rent asunder on that day... .

Note: Muslims thought the sky was solid that could crack or be split asunder, but it is gas.

75:6-9 When will be the day of resurrection? When Sun and the Moon are brought together.

Note: These bodies are 93 million miles apart but to Muslims of 600AD they looked close.

21:33 The sun and the moon: They float each in an orbit.

Note: This idea that the sun moves in an orbit is clearly scientifically false. The sun does not move in an orbit. It only seemed to cross the sky to the 7th Century Arabians. Should read “The earth & Moon”

13. **PARADISE / HOURIS fabricated in the Koran (18 References)**

2:25 Proclaim good tidings to those who have faith and do good works. They shall dwell in **gardens** ... fruit to eat. Wedded to **chaste spouses**, they shall abide therein forever.

Note: This Muslim concept of heaven is clearly man made because:

i) It only contains the best things imaginable to males of 7th Century Arabia: gardens, fruit, wine and sex with many women.

ii) Allah is rarely mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iii) Women are rarely if ever mentioned in the Muslim heaven.

iv) There are no mentally stimulating benefits in the Muslim heaven such as service to God, opportunity to serve others, ruling in a new universe, only the satisfaction of selfish sensual desires.

3:15 The righteous shall be **rewarded** with... **spouses** of **perfect chastity** and contentment before Allah.

4:57 As for those that have **faith** and do **good works**, we shall admit them to the gardens... where, wedded to **chaste spouses**, they shall abide forever.

36:54 On that day the heirs of Paradise will be busy with their joys. Together with their **spouses**, they shall recline in shady groves upon soft couches. They shall have fruits and **all that they desire**.

37:48,49 The true servants of Allah . . . shall sit with **bashful, dark eyed virgins**, as chaste as the sheltered eggs of ostriches.

38:53 The righteous . . . reclining there with **bashful virgins for companions**, they will call for abundant fruit and drink.

43:70 Enter Paradise, you and **your wives**, in all delight. Abiding there forever, you shall find **all that your souls desire** and **all that your eyes rejoice in**.

44:51 As for the righteous, they shall be lodged in peace together amidst **gardens** and **fountains**, arrayed in **rich silks** and **fine brocade**. We shall **wed them** to **dark eyed houris**. They shall call for every kind of **fruit**.

Note: This shows clearly that the Koran comes from man and not from God, because these good things are the best that a **7th Century Arab male** could imagine heaven to be. The True God would have things in heaven beyond our understanding.

Question: What about Muslim women? What will they have and who will they be wed to? Houris?

47:15 Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of **water** undefiled, and rivers of **milk** for ever fresh; rivers of **wine** . . . and rivers of clear **honey**. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall **drink scalding water** which will tear their bowels.

52:20 They (the righteous) shall recline on **couches** ranged in rows. To **dark-eyed houris** we shall **wed them**.

Question: What benefits do women have in heaven? No comment.

52:24 There shall wait on them **young boys of their own**, as fair as **virgin** pearls.

55:56 There are **bashful virgins** whom neither man nor jinnee will have touched before. Virgins as fair as corals and rubies.

55:72 In each (garden) there shall be **virgins chaste and fair**. **Dark eyed virgins sheltered in tents**, whom **neither man nor jinnee will have touched**,

55:76 They shall recline on green cushions and fine carpets.

56:22-24 Theirs shall be the **dark-eyed houris**, chaste as hidden pearls; a reward for their deeds.

56:35-38 We created the **houris** and made them **virgins, loving companions** for those on the right hand. Those on the left hand...shall dwell among **scorching winds** and **scalding water**.

68:37,38,39 Have you a scripture that promises you **whatever you choose?**

....that you shall have what **you yourselves ordain**.

Note: No wonder Muslim terrorists kill people to go to such a place.

78:31 As for the righteous, they shall surely triumph. Theirs shall be the gardens and vineyards, and **high-bosomed maidens** for **companions**; a truly overflowing cup.

14. NONSENSE or FARFETCHED passages in the Koran (21 References)

2:63-65 Two far-fetched fables are that:

i) Allah “**raised the Mount** (Sinai) above Israel when giving the covenant.” 4:154; 2:63,93.

ii) You have heard of those of you that broke the Sabbath. We said to them: “You shall be **changed into detested apes.**” We made their fate an example to their own generation...

2:259 Allah killed a man, and after 100 years brought him back to life.

This was a Jewish fable of the time that Mohammed put in the Koran.

2:260 Allah told Abraham to “Take four birds, draw them to you, and cut their bodies to pieces. Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you.”

This was a well known fable in Mohammed’s time.

3:49 Allah said: “I bring you a sign from your Lord. From **clay** I will make for you the likeness of a bird. I shall breathe into it and, by Allah’s leave it shall **become a living bird.**”

Note: This fable was copied from Thomas’ “Gospel of the Infancy of Christ” and placed in the Koran here. The Bible tells us that Jesus’ first miracle was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child. (John 2:11).

5:30 Raven taught Cain how to bury Abel.

5:60 Those whom Allah has cursed... **transforming them into apes and swine.** (7:166).

Note: This is unscientific. It never happens.

7:163 Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they did wrong.

12:96 He threw Joseph’s shirt over the old man’s face, and he regained his sight. (False, not in Bible).

15:17,18 We have guarded the heavens from every cursed outcast devil. Eavesdroppers are pursued by **fiery comets.** (72:8).

27:16 Solomon said: “We have been taught the language of birds.”

27:17 Solomon’s forces of jinn and man and birds were called to Solomon’s presence, and ranged in battle array.

27:28 When they came to the Valley of the Ants, **an ant said**, “Go into your dwellings, ants, lest Solomon and his warriors should unwittingly crush you.”

This is clearly a fable, that birds and ants talk with Solomon.

37:6 We have decked the lower heaven with constellations (Dawood), (Planets – Pickthall). They guard it against rebellious devils, so that they may not listen in to those on high. Meteors are hurled at them from every side . . . Eavesdroppers are pursued by **fiery comets.**

42:30 If a misfortune befalls you, it is the fruit of your own labours (what your right hands have earned)

Note: This is false from experience and from Bible characters who were persecuted for righteousness. Were Job’s, Jesus’, Joseph’s and Daniel’s suffering due to their own sins? No.

43:36 He that **does not heed** the warning of the Merciful shall have a devil for his companion.

47:15 Therein (Paradise) shall flow rivers of **water** undefiled, and rivers of **milk** for ever fresh; rivers of **wine** . . . and rivers of clear **honey**. They shall eat therein of every fruit and receive forgiveness from their Lord. Those in Hell forever shall drink scalding water which will tear their bowels.

57:22 **Every misfortune** that befalls the Earth, or your own persons, is **ordained** before we bring it into being.

64:14 Believers you have an **enemy** in your **wives** and in **your children**: beware of them.

Note: Total nonsense. The Bible says “Husbands love your wives as Christ loved the church.” Eph 5:25

67:5 We have adorned the lowest heaven with lamps, missiles to **pelt the devils with.**

69:44-47 Allah says of Mohammed: “Had he **invented lies concerning us**, we would have seized him by the right hand and **severed his heart vein.**”

Note: Mohammed sought to justify himself by this foolish verse. It is foolish because, “Why does this not happen to others who tell lies about Islam?” Their heart vein is not severed when criticising Allah.

105:2 Did he not confound their stratagem and send against them flocks of birds which pelted them with clay stones, so that they became like withered stalks of plants.

Note: Birds dropping stones on an invading Ethiopian army that flattened and destroyed them is fiction.

15. SELF-CONTRADICTIONS in the Koran (16 References)

1) **2:106** If we abrogate a verse or cause it to be forgotten, we will replace it by a better one or one similar. Did you not know that Allah has power over all things?

Note: This verse is **fatal to Islam** and the Koran, because if Allah can change his mind about whether a verse is in Quran and replace it with a better verse, then Allah is not the all-knowing God of the Bible.

2) **2:127** Abraham and Ishmael built the house (The Kabah at Mecca) and dedicated it... Make of our descendants a nation that will submit to you.

Note: There is no Bible evidence or historical evidence that Abraham or Ishmael ever went to Mecca. This is only in Mohammed's imagination in order to gain support from the Bible.

3) **2:256** There shall be **no compulsion in religion**.

Note: i) This is contradicted by Sura 8:39 "**Make war** on them until idolatry shall cease and Allah's religion shall reign supreme."

ii) 2:256 is intended to convince non-Muslims that Islam is a peaceful religion. This is contradicted by "True Muslims **fight** for Allah." (4:76).

4) **2:285** They all believe Allah, His angels, His Scriptures, and His apostles. We **make no distinction** (don't discriminate) against any of His messengers.

Note: Muslims do give Mohammed a greater distinction than Jesus and all other Bible prophets.

5) **4:82** If it (the Koran) had not come from Allah, they could have surely found in it many contradictions. Note: People have found many contradictions in it such as those listed in this section.

6) **4:157** They did not kill him (Jesus), nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did... They **did not slay him for certain**. Allah lifted him up to himself.

Note: This contradicts the prophets David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53), Daniel (9:26), NT prophets, as well as Quran 19:33: "Blessed I shall be on the day of my death."

19:29- How can we speak with a babe in the cradle? Whereupon he (Jesus) spoke and said, "he has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, & blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life." Such was Jesus, the Son of Mary, that is the whole truth. God forbid that He himself should beget a son.

7) **7:64** We saved him (Noah) and **all** who were with him in the ark.

10:74 We saved Noah and those who were with him in the ark.

11:42,43 Noah cried to his son who stood apart, "Come ride with us, and be not with the unbelievers!" He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood." The wave rolled between them and Noah's son was drowned.

21:76 We saved him (Noah) and all his kinsfolk from the great calamity.

Contradiction: This contradicts 11:42,43 which states that **one of Noah's sons was drowned**.

8) **7:124** Pharaoh said, "Then I will crucify you all." Crucifixion was not invented in 1500BC.

9) **41:34** Requite evil with good, and he who is your enemy will become your dearest friend.

Note: This is contradicted by 42:40 'Let evil be rewarded with like evil.'

10) **61:35** It is most hateful in Allah's sight that you should say one thing and do another.

Note: This contradicts 66:2 where Allah allowed Mohammed to say one thing and do another.

11) **70:4** A day whose span is 50,000 years. Which is right? 1000 years or 50,000 years?

This contradicts **32:5** All will ascend to him in a single day, a day whose space is 1000 years.

12) **71:15,16** Allah created the seven heavens one above the other, placing in them the moon for a light & the sun for a lantern? Question: What are these 7 heavens? A product of Mohammed's imagination?

The Bible tells us of 3 heavens: the atmosphere, space, and where God's throne is (II Corinthians 12:2).

13) **21:35** Every soul shall taste death. This is false, because Enoch and Elijah did not die. Christians living when Christ returns will be caught up to heaven without dying. (I Corinthians 15:51-53).

14) **17:36** Do not follow what you do not know. (7 commandments in v.31-37.)

15) **45:28** You will see every nation on its knees. (Question: Even today's Muslim nations?)

Note: This terror, horror, threats of hell, scourge, torment contradicts God's love to man in the Bible, Christ's preaching & in beautiful creation. 'The goodness of God leads us to repentance' not threats. Romans 2:4

16) **42:15** says "I believe in all the Scriptures that Allah has revealed".

Note: This, they say includes the Bible, yet Muslims do not believe, understand, study or obey the Bible

16. ALLAH'S NATURE (17 References)

3:16 Those of Allah's servants who say: "Allah we believe in you, forgive us our sins and keep us from the torment of the Fire."

Note: This shows that no Muslim is sure of escaping hell and going to heaven. Allah offers no salvation.

3:54 Allah is the supreme plotter (best of schemers).

Note: This permits Muslims to plot & scheme treachery because they are following Allah's example.

35:43 Evil shall recoil on those that plot evil. Note: The God of the Bible is honest and truthful.

3:57 Allah does not love the evil-doers.

4:107 Allah does not love the treacherous or the sinful.

Note: This proves that the Koran is not from the Holy God of the Bible, because all men are sinful compared to God. Man's typical thinking is that he is good compared to others. If God wrote the Koran, it would teach that all men are sinful.

5:88 Allah does not love the transgressors. (7:55). 'ye all have transgressed against me, says JHVH' Jer2:29

6:39 Allah confounds whom He will, and guides to the right path whom He pleases.

Note: This is the error of Fatalism. All is not predestined.

6:87 We gave him Isaac, Jacob, Noah, David, Solomon, Job, Joseph, Moses, Aaron, Zacharias, John, Jesus, Elias (Elijah), Ishmael, Elisha, Jonah, Lot. Note: Islam considers these as prophets.

8:30 Allah is the best of plotters. **9:27** Allah will show mercy to whom he will.

13:42 Allah is the master of all scheming (plotting).

Note: If Allah can scheme, plot and deceive, then Muslims think they can do so as well.

28:77 Allah does not love the evildoers.

30:45 He does not love the unbelievers.

40:21 Allah scourged them for their sins . . . they had none to protect them.

3:32 Say "Obey Allah and the Apostle." If they give no heed, then Allah does not love the unbelievers.

Note: The God of the Bible loves unbelievers.

i) Jesus was proven by HIS miraculous signs, but Mohammed gave no miracles. Hence Jesus, the prophets and apostles who worked miracles are superior to Mohammed, who worked no miracles.

ii) Allah the moon god of Arabia did not give Jesus clear signs, but it was Jesus' Heavenly Father, the Jehovah God of the Bible who gave these miracles to authenticate Jehovah God the Son as the Messiah and Saviour of the world. Muslims suffer a case of mistaken identity. Their Allah is not the God of the Bible, but the pagan moon god of Arabia.

2:275,276,278 Allah has permitted trading and made usury (charging & receiving interest) unlawful. Those that turn back shall be inmates of the Fire. Allah has laid his curse on usury. Waive what is still due to you from usury.

Note: Most Muslims, Muslim banks, and Muslim governments disobey the Koran here by charging interest and paying interest. This law against interest makes banks unviable. Hence, a pure Islamic state like the Taliban's Afghanistan could have no banks. They use Pakistan's banks on the border.

19:16-23 The story of Mary . . . We sent to her Our Spirit in the semblance of a full grown man . . . who said I have come to give you a holy son. Mary said, "How shall I bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?" Thus did your Lord speak: "That is easy enough for me. When she felt the throes of childbirth, she lay down by the trunk of a palm tree."

Note: From this we learn the following:

i) Christ being virgin born is "easy enough for God" so why should Muslims protest God having a Son?

ii) This teaches the virgin birth of Christ.

iii) Muslims agree that God has a Spirit. Christians call him the Holy Spirit.

iv) This does not confirm the Bible, but contradicts it. Mary gave birth to Jesus in a stable, not under a palm tree

16:57 They assign unto Allah daughters. See Q53:19,20 "Al-Lat, Al-Uzza and Manat."

17. MUSLIM Practices (17 References)

5:39 As for the man or woman who is guilty of theft, cut off their hands to punish them for their crimes

16:115 He has forbidden you carrion, blood, and the flesh of swine; also any flesh consecrated other than in the name of Allah.

17:45 When you recite the Koran, we place between you and those who deny the life to come a hidden barrier.

17:78 Recite your prayers at sunset, at nightfall, and at dawn. Pray during the night as well.

22:27 Exhort all men to make the pilgrimage. Let them spruce themselves, make their vows and circle the Ancient House. Such is Allah's commandment. He that reveres the sacred rites shall fare better.

24:2 The adulterer and adulteress shall each be given 100 lashes.

24:4 Those who accuse/defame honourable women & cannot produce 4 witnesses shall be given 80 lashes.

29:46 Be courteous when you argue with the People of the Book, except with those among them who do evil. Say: "We believe in that which is revealed to us, and which was revealed to you. Our God and your God is one."

Note: This is absolutely false. Allah and the God of the Bible have very different natures and personalities. Allah is the moon god of 6th Century Arabia. In reality Muslims do not believe in the Bible. If they did, they would study it, obey it and worship Jesus Christ as Saviour and God.

33:59 Prophet, enjoin your wives, your daughters, and the wives of true believers to draw their veils close round them . . . so that they may be recognized and not molested.

39:38 A Koran (lecture) in the Arabic tongue, free from any flaw, that they may guard themselves against evil. Note: The Koran has many flaws. See Section 9,10,12,14,15.

41:33 Who speaks better than he who calls men to serve Allah, does what is right & says 'I am a Muslim'?

62:9 Believers, when you are summoned to Friday prayers hasten to the remembrance of Allah and cease your trading.

64:12,13 Obey Allah and obey the apostle. Allah! there is no god but him.

66. PROHIBITION (v.1 Mohammed was once found by his wife Hafsah with Maria, a beautiful Coptic slave girl, whom he had promised Hafsah he would separate from. To free Mohammed from his promise to Hafsah was the object of this chapter.)

66:1,2 Prophet, why do you prohibit that which Allah has made lawful for you in seeking to please your wives? Allah has made lawful for you (Muslims) absolution from your oaths.

Note: Many Muslims, living like Mohammed, often think they can lie when it suits them.

73:1 You that are wrapped up in your mantle, keep vigil all night, save for a few hours; half the night or less and recite the Koran.

Note: Psalm 127:2 "It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late, to eat the bread of sorrows: for so he giveth his beloved sleep." The Devil wants to rob the Muslims of God's gift of a full nights sleep.

73:8 Remember the name of Allah and dedicate yourself to him utterly... there is no god but him. Accept him as your protector.

73:20 Your Lord knows that you (Mohammed) sometimes keep vigil nearly two thirds of the night... Recite from the Koran as many verses as you are able. He knows that others are fighting for the cause of Allah. What ever good you do you shall be....richly rewarded by him.

17:1 THE NIGHT JOURNEY/ THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL

(v.1 relates Mohammed's vision, in which he was carried by night on a heavenly steed to the Temple at Jerusalem, from where he claims that he was caught up through 7 heavens to the presence of Allah).

Note: The Temple of Jerusalem had been destroyed by Rome in 70 AD and did not exist in Mohammed's day. This is one reason why Muslims want control of Jerusalem.

(Quotations are from "The Koran", translated with notes by N.J.Dawood. Penguin. 1956)

122. Why Nobody Should Become a Muslim

The following things lacking from Islam, make it an unsatisfactory religion. Islam has:

- 1) No sacrifice for our sins. “without shedding of blood is no remission (of sins).” (Hebrews 9:22).
- 2) No sinless Founder. “in him is no sin”. (I John 3:5).
- 3) No Saviour from sin. “ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins.” (I John 3:5).
- 4) No resurrected Saviour. “he was seen of above 500 brethren at once.” (I Cor. 15:6).
- 5) No fulfilled prophecy in the Koran. “shew the things that are to come hereafter, that we may know” Is41:23
- 6) No certainty of a home in heaven. “that ye may know that ye have eternal life.” (I John 5:13; 2:25)
- 7) No equality of Muslims and Christians in law.
- 8) No equality of Muslim men and women in law (Q4:34..women ye fear rebellion...scourge them)
- 9) No consistent standard of sin, eg: Muslim heaven has free sex and wine, which is wrong on earth.
- 10) No genealogies and no dates in the Koran.
- 11) No freedom to leave Islam. Grievous punishment or death to those who leave Islam (Q16:106).
- 12) No mercy shown to a thief, or to those of other religions. (Q5:38).
- 13) Forced female circumcision as part of forced conversion to Islam in Maluku Islands of Indonesia.
- 14) No one raised from the dead by Mohammed. Jesus raised 4 people from the dead. (inc.Himself)
- 15) No one healed miraculously by Mohammed. “As many as touched him were made whole” Lk 6:56
- 16) No Old Testament prophecies telling us the time, place, or events to expect Mohammed. Micah5:2
- 17) No democracy in Muslim countries, but rule is by dictators.
- 18) No agreement with the Bible and with Old Testament prophets.
- 19) Allah is a very different personality from Jehovah of OT. Allah seduces 15:39, lies 74:39, enslaves 33:50.
- 20) Islam worships the wrong god. “And God spake all these words, saying, I am the LORD (JHVH) thy God...Thou shalt have no other gods before me.” (Exodus 20:1-3). Worship JHVH, not Allah.
- 21) Islam trusts the wrong line of God’s blessing. God promised the Messiah to come through Isaac (Genesis 17:19-21; 21:12) not through Ishmael. [The Bible teaches us to love our enemies.
- 22) Quran teaches terror against non Muslims (Q8:12,60,65,67,74; 9:39,41,111,123). (Matthew 5:44)
“Christina Sagat shakes with fear...as she tells her story of brutal circumcision in a forced conversion to Islam. Her physical wounds have healed but this 32-year-old is left with the deep pain of sorrow and humiliation. She is among hundreds of Christians, including children and pregnant women, forcibly circumcised as part of a campaign by extremists (terrorists) to spread Islam through the war-ravaged Maluku islands in Eastern Indonesia. In the biggest city in the (Maluku) Islands (of Indonesia), Ambon, church and other groups have gathered evidence that 3,928 villagers on at least six islands have been forced to convert to Islam under the threat of death, torture or destruction of their homes. They believe that local Muslim clerics, possibly under duress from extremists, circumcised almost all the converts. Kostantinus Idi, 22,... said one of the clerics urinated on his wound, saying it would stop infection.”
The Sydney Morning Herald, page 1,2,41. Saturday, January 26,27, 2001.

1. The Meaning of Islam
2. Pre-Islamic Arabian Origin of the Quran
3. Why is the Crescent Moon Islam’s Symbol?
4. Is Allah the One True God of the Bible?
5. Importance of Islam
6. The Goal of Islam
7. The Life of Mohammed
8. Mohammed’s Wives.
9. Allah, Mohammed and Quran Permit Lying.
10. 2 Sermons by Demons in Quran to Spread Islam.
11. Death to those Who Leave Islam
12. The Hijra
13. Raiding (Mohammed’s Profession) to Spread Islam.
14. Predestination.
15. Mohammed’s Death
16. Mohammed Compared with Jesus Christ
17. Is the Quran the Perfect Word of God?
18. Mistakes In The Quran
19. Major Mistakes in the Quran
20. Arabic, Jewish, Christian Sources of the Quran
21. Nonsense in the Hadith
22. Jihad or Holy War
23. Islam and Violence
24. Common and Repeated Statements in the Quran
25. Six Basic Muslim Beliefs
26. Six Religious Duties of Islam
27. Why You Should Not Become a Muslim
28. What is Allah Like? Is he the God of the Bible? No!
29. Allah’s Similarities to the Biblical Devil/Satan are:
30. The Sonship of Jesus

123. ISLAM -- a Case of Mistaken Identity

Allah is not the God of the Bible. Mohammed is not a prophet of God. Quran is not the Word of God. Islam is worship of Allah the Moon God of Arabia. Mohammed cannot save (Vol.1,372-375; Vol.5,266 "I am the LORD (JHVH) thy God...Thou shalt have no other gods before me." (Exodus 20:2,3). "Blessed is the nation whose God is the LORD (JHVH)." (Psalm 33:12). (8 Issues to discuss, p.1070).

INTRODUCTION

Islam (1.1 billion) is the second largest religion in the world to nominal Christianity (1.9 billion). Due to liberal immigration policies, millions of Muslims have migrated to the West to seek a better life. In England, there are more Muslims than Methodists or evangelical Christians. They are buying abandoned Anglican churches and converting them to mosques, hoping to convert England to Islam. There are 2.6 million Muslims in the USA and 200,000 in Australia in 1990.

Under Islamic law, no criticism of Islam is allowed. In Muslim countries, any criticism of Muhammad or the Koran is punishable by death. Muslim countries have no freedom of religion.

If Muslims are happy to criticise Christianity, then why do they get upset if Christians criticise Islam? **To refute Islam, we must check the Koran, the Hadith, history and the Bible.**

Islam is cultural imperialism, where 7th Century Arabian religion and culture have been raised to the status of divine law.

In the West, Church and State are separated, in order to avoid a repeat of religious persecution by the Roman Catholic inquisition of the dark ages.

This is exactly what happens in Muslim countries, where Muslim law and religion control the State and persecute other religions.

Whenever Islam dominates a country, it transforms the culture to that of 7th Century Arabia.

Arab racism claims that Arabs descended from Abraham through his son Ishmael.

The Quran transfers the historical setting of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob from Palestine to Mecca.

The Quran even has Abraham rebuilding the Kabah, yet archaeological evidence clearly proves that Abraham never lived in Mecca, but that he left Ur (in Iraq) and moved to Haran, then to Israel.

Question: Why is it that of the 21 Arab nations, not one of them is a democracy

Answer: Muhammad took the political laws governing 7th Century Arabian tribes, where the sheikh or chief had absolute authority, and made them the laws of Allah. They had no idea of civil rights. This is why modern Islamic countries are always ruled by "strong men" as dictators. Islamic law does not recognise freedom of speech, freedom of assembly, freedom of religion, or freedom of the press.

- i The Muslim is required to pray five times a day toward Mecca. This reminds him five times daily, that he must bow in obedience to Arabia.
- ii Muhammad adopted the pagan pilgrimage to Mecca to worship the Kabah, to appease the Meccan merchants who made a lot of money from these pilgrimages. Thus, for financial gain and cultural control, Islam adopted the pagan pilgrimage to Mecca.
- iii What Muhammad ate and did not eat is made to be a divine law for all people.
- iv What an illiterate, nomadic tribeswoman wore in the desert of 7th Century Arabia to protect her from the hot sun, is compulsory dress code for all Muslim women today.

Imprisonment without a fair trial, torture, cutting off a person's hands, feet, ears, tongue, gouging eyes out, and murdering your opponents, are all part of Islamic law today, just as they were in 7th Century Arabia. Allah told Mohammed to "ask forgiveness for your sins" (40:55; 48:1,2). No miracles(17:91-95

1. THE MEANING OF ISLAM

“Islam” is an Arabic word which originally referred to manliness or heroism or bravery in battle. It meant “defiance of death, heroism, to die in battle.”

M. Bravmann. “The Spiritual Background of Early Islam.” (Leiden 1972).

The word “Islam” only slowly developed to mean “submission to Allah’s will”. (Dr Jane Smith, University of Montana Press 1970). “Islam” today is the name for the religion of Muhammad .

A ‘Muslim’ is a follower of the Islam religion. Muslims follow the teachings of the book called the Koran or Quran.

The English translation of the Quran by A J Arberry comes closest to conveying the impression made on Muslims by the Arabic Quran.

Aim: To show that the **Quran** is not the word of God, by highlighting its mistakes.

To show that **Mohammad** is not a true prophet of the true God.

To show that **Allah** is not the God of the Bible, or of Bible prophets.

To lead Muslims to receive Jesus Christ as their Saviour and God.

To inform Westerners of facts showing Islam to be a false, violent and dangerous religion.

2. PRE-ISLAMIC ARABIAN ORIGIN OF THE Quran

Muslims are taught that the Quran and Muhammad’s revelations were given from heaven, and that they do not have earthly human origin.

This belief can be shown to be false if we can find Quranic stories that come from pre-Islamic Arabian culture, custom and religion.

Muslims have done very little research into pre-Islamic Arabian customs, because they are told it is blasphemous to suggest that the Quran and Muhammad’s teachings came from pre-Islamic Arabia rather than from heaven.

Archaeology and linguistics since 1890 have shown overwhelming evidence that Muhammad produced his religion and the Quran from pre-existing Arabian material, and that, with all its mistakes, could not have come from heaven.

Examples of pre-Islamic Arabian culture brought into the Quran and into Islam are:

- i) **Raiding** other tribes to obtain wealth, wives and slaves was a common practice before Muhammad.
- ii) Pre 600 AD Arabian tribes often **punished stealing** or crimes by **cutting off** people’s hands, feet, ears, tongues, heads and gouging out eyes.
- iii) **Forcing people into slavery** or **kidnapping women from other tribes** to rape them in your harem as your wives, concubines or slave girls, was considered acceptable behaviour. This happens today in Muslim atrocities against non-Muslims in Sudan.
- iv) To sneak up behind someone and cut his throat was sometimes seen as the right thing to do. This taking the law into their own hands can be seen today in Ayatollah Khomeini’s call for the death of Salman Rushdie.

The Koran commands violence against non-Muslims: “Fight and slay the pagans wherever you find them.” (Sura 9:5).

What must Muslims do to people who resist Islam? “Their punishment is ... execution, or crucifixion, or the cutting off of hands and feet from the opposite sides, or exile from the land.” (Sura 5:33).

In the West, cutting off someone’s hands or feet because he would not accept your religion, is criminal madness.

- i) Since Mecca was controlled by Muhammad’s Quraysh tribe, and because Mecca was on a major East-West trade route, we are not surprised to find **stories in the Quran that came from Egypt, Persia, India, Greece and Babylon**.
- ii) **Magic, genies, superstition, curses, magic stones, fatalism, evil eye and jinn** being part of pre-Islamic Arabia, all found their way into the Quran. (Q55,72).
- iii) Pre-Islamic Arabs believed in **Animism**, that spirits or jinn existed in trees, stones, rivers and mountains. Sacred **magic stones** were believed to protect the tribes. The Quraysh tribe adopted the black stone at Kabah as their magic stone.

- iv Pre-Islamic pagan Arabs taught that everyone should **bow and pray toward Mecca** at certain times of the day. This was brought into Islam as divine law.
- v They taught that everyone should make a **pilgrimage to Mecca** at least once in their life to worship at the Kabah. On arrival, they ran around the Kabah seven times, kissed the black stone, and then ran a mile to the Wadi Mina to throw stones at the devil. This has been carried over into Islam.
- vi They condemned **usury** or charging interest. (Q 2:275,276).
- vii They **fasted during a certain month** of the year, which was carried over to **Ramadan** in Islam.
- viii The main religion just before Muhammad's time was that of the **Sabeans**. They worshipped the **moon as a male deity** & the **sun** as a female deity. The Quran warns **not to worship the sun or moon** (41:37), yet Islam adopted the crescent moon as its symbol. The **Sabeans** began a month-long fast at the appearance of a crescent moon. This was later adopted as one of the five pillars of Islam.
- ix Many wealthy Jews in Arabia had spread stories from the Old Testament, the Talmud and Jewish apocryphal works such as the Testament of Abraham, which found their way into the Quran. Christianity was well-established in Arabia in Muhammad's time, even though the New Testament had not yet been translated into Arabic. This was done by 850AD. This explains how oral tradition brought corrupted stories of Jesus into the Quran.

These facts show that the Quran did not come from heaven, but from **Arabian culture of the day**. Hence Muhammad of 7th Century Arabia wrote the Quran, not Allah from heaven.

Guillaume wrote: "The customs of heathenism have left an indelible mark on Islam, notably in the rites of the pilgrimage". (*Islam*, Penguin books 1954, p.6).

Nazar-Ali, the Arab scholar wrote: "Islam retained many aspects of pagan religion."

(*Islam a Christian Perspective*, Westminster Press, 1983, p21).

Professor A H Strong stated: "Islam is heathenism in monotheistic form." *Systematic Theology*, p.186.

Key: If Muslims give up the belief in the **Quran's heavenly origin**, then Islam will fall.

Western scholars asked the question: "Why does the Quran **never explain its ideas** or rites as the Bible does? Why does it **never define words** such as Allah, Islam, Mecca, jinn, pilgrimage, Kabah, etc?"

Answer: Because Muhammad assumed that whoever read the Quran would already be familiar with these terms, stories and people from pre-Islamic sources, culture and religious life.

3. WHY IS THE CRESCENT MOON ISLAM'S SYMBOL?

The use of the crescent moon as Islam's symbol, which is placed on the Islamic nation's flags and on top of mosques and minarets, comes from pre-Islamic Arabia where Allah was worshipped as the moon god in Mecca.

The reason that Muhammad never had to explain who Allah was in the Quran is because his listeners had already heard about Allah from paganism.

The word "Allah" comes from abbreviating the Arabic word "AL-ILAH" meaning "the god". "Allah was known to the pre-Islamic Arabs as **one of the Meccan deities**" (*Encyclopaedia of Islam*, Gibb I:406)

"Allah is a pre-Islamic name...corresponding to the **Babylonian Bel**" (*Encyclopaedia of Religion*, I:117)

Allah was the **personal name of the moon god**, a male deity worshipped in pre-Islamic Arabia, who was **married to the female sun goddess**. Together they produced **three goddesses** called "the daughters of Allah". These were known as AL-LAT, AL-UZZA and MANAT (Q 53:19,20).

The Quraysh tribe of Muhammad was strongly devoted to Allah the moon god, and to Allah's three daughters, as intercessors between the people and Allah.

Mohammad's **father's name** was **ABD-ALLAH**. His **uncle's name** was **OBIED-ALLAH**, thus showing Muhammad's **family's devotion to Allah** the moon god.

Archaeologists have dug up many statues and inscriptions where a **crescent moon** was placed on a deity's head to symbolise worship of the moon god. The entire fertile crescent was involved in worship of the moon. Hence, Islam adopting the crescent moon as its symbol, helped to convert people throughout the Middle East.

4. **IS ALLAH THE ONE TRUE GOD OF THE BIBLE?**

“All the gods of the nations are idols, but the LORD (JHVH) made the heavens.” Psalm 96:5.

Islam claims that Allah is the same God as revealed in the Bible (**Q29:46**). This means that their attributes should be identical. **If they are different**, then **Allah is a false god** because the **Quran endorses the Bible** and its prophets.

Mohammad’s god is radically different from Jehovah or the Godhead of the New Testament.

It is just as pagan to worship the wrong god as it is to worship no god or to worship a multitude of gods. The key issue is the **nature of God** and **how He relates to man**.

Let us compare the attributes of the **Biblical God** (The Triune Jehovah) with **Allah**:

1. **Knowable** versus **Unknowable**.

Jesus Christ came that we might know God as a personal friend. (John 17:3; I John 1:3).

Allah of the Quran is so distant, so abstract, so unpredictable, so angry that no-one can know him.

2. **Personal** versus **Non Personal**.

The Biblical God created man in His own image, having personality of mind, emotions and will.

Allah is not to be understood as personal, as it would lower him to the level of man. Genesis 1:26,27

3. **Spiritual** versus **Non-spiritual**.

The Biblical “God is a Spirit” (John 4:24), but Islam thinks that it is demeaning to Allah to be a spirit or person. (See Q19:17 “We sent unto her Our spirit...”)

4. **Trinitarian** versus **Unitarian**.

The Biblical God is one God in three persons (Matthew 28:19,20): the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. The Quran denies the Trinity and confuses it as the Father, Jesus Christ and Mary. (**Q5:116**).

5. **Limited** versus **Unlimited**.

The Biblical God limits Himself to be bound by His own righteous moral attributes: “God cannot lie.” (Titus 1:2).

Allah is not limited by anything, not even his own nature. Allah has no morality; he can lie, cheat, deceive, do anything, any time, anywhere with no limitations.

6. **Trustworthy** versus **Capricious**.

The Biblical God limits Himself by His own righteous nature to be completely trustworthy, consistent, honest and always keeping His word.

Allah is totally capricious, untrustworthy, dishonest and unreliable. He is not bound by his nature or his word. (Q2:106 “If we abrogate a verse...”).

7. **A Loving God** versus **an Unloving God**.

The Biblical God loves mankind: by “God so loved the world.” (John 3:16).

Allah shows little love for mankind, but is detached. Islam believes that for God to have feelings of love for man would reduce him to being a mere man. All Muslims go to hell (**Q19:71**).

8. **Active in History** versus **Passive in History**.

Allah never personally enters human history, but deals with the world through his word, prophets and angels. The Biblical God enters human history through the second person of the Trinity, Jesus Christ becoming a man as well as God& paying for our sins as our Saviour to bring us back to God.

9. **Grace** or **Works**

The Biblical God graciously provides free salvation for man through the Saviour Jesus Christ, who is also man’s intercessor to God.

Allah has no sure method of salvation, no Saviour, no intercessor, no certain forgiveness of sins, and no certainty of heaven.

Just because Christians and Muslims worship one god, it doesn’t mean that the one god worshipped is the true God. The Canaanites could have taught that Baal was the one true god, but Baal is not Jehovah, just as Hitler is not the same identity as Elvis Presley.

“There is **none other name** under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.” (Acts 4:12).

This is the name of Jesus Christ, not Allah. **Allah did not die for our sins and rise again.**

- Allah's name is nowhere mentioned in the Bible, because up to 610 AD Allah was the name of a pagan moon deity in Arabia. Biblical writers would never have confused Allah with Jehovah. If some Bible translators translate the Biblical God as Allah, it would be due to either:
 - i) Their **ignorance** of the differences between Allah and Jehovah;
 - ii) **Propaganda** of Muslim evangelists who say that Allah is just another name for Jehovah, as an opportunity to convert Westerners to Islam.
 - iii) Political and religious **pressure** to put Allah in the Bible.

5. IMPORTANCE OF ISLAM

Militant Islamic fundamentalism is growing in power today. Islam is important because:

1. Islam's doctrine and leaders have vowed to **destroy Israel**. Islam believes that God gave the promised land to the Arabs rather than to the Jews (Gen.17:19-21)
2. Islam wishes to **take over the world** by conquering one nation at a time, then imposing Sharia Islamic law. History shows that they then persecute, torture and murder Christians, Jews and all who resist Islam. All people under Muslim law lose all personal freedoms.
3. **Terrorism** is their method to gain control, as seen by their 1972 Munich Olympics massacre, their hijacking of the Achille Lauro ship, their bombing of US marine barracks in Lebanon, their constant suicide bombings of civilians travelling in Israeli buses, & the September 11 WTC attacks.
4. **Ayatollah Khomeini** has ordered Muslim women to have 16 children each, so they can conquer the world by becoming the majority in all countries. They already have 1.1 billion Muslims worldwide.
5. Their influence will increase due to their control of most of the world's **oil reserves**.

6. THE GOAL OF ISLAM

The ultimate goal of Islam is to **conquer the world** and **rule it by Islamic law**.

They allow conversion to Islam by **persuasion**, by **force**, or by **murdering opponents**.

In the Hadith, Muhammad said, "Hear O Muslims the **meaning of life** ... The pillar is Rakatin prayer.

The **topmost part** is **Jihad - holy war**."

Jihad is being fought by Iran, Saddam Hussein of Iraq, President Assad of Syria, Colonel Quadafi of Libya, Al Qaeda and by Sudanese massacres of Christians.

The Quran in Sura 4:93 commands Muslims to kill non-Muslims as follows:

"Slay them wherever you find them".

Islam is now the second largest religion in Europe, and the third largest in the US.

France now has 1,600 mosques. England has 1,500 mosques.

7. THE LIFE OF MOHAMMED

The name Muhammed means "praised one". Muhammed's life can be known from the Quran, the Hadith and early Muslim traditions. These facts are not disputed.

Muhammed was born on 8 June 570 AD in Mecca to Abdullah (Abd-Allah) and Aminah of the Quraysh tribe. Both his parents died when he was young, so he was sent at the age of six to live with his grandparents, then to a rich uncle, then to a poor uncle.

In **his childhood**, he began to experience **spirit visitations**.

His mother, Aminah, often claimed that she was visited by spirits or jinn. This occult association was inherited by her son.

Early Muslim tradition records that, when Muhammed was about to receive a revelation from Allah, he would often fall on the ground, his body would jerk uncontrollably, his eyes would roll backward, and he would perspire profusely. After the trance, he would rise and tell the message given to him.

What caused this? These effects are very similar to an epileptic fit or to demon possession.

Never did a Bible prophet of God give a revelation in such a trancelike violent manner.

Most of Muhammed's **early pagan religious upbringing** was **transferred** into Islam and did not come from new revelations from Allah as Islam claims.

Muhammed is regarded as the **perfect example** for all Muslims to follow, so all Muslims should treat other humans following Mohammed's example, such as the way he treated his enemies, his wives, his manner of eating, drinking, prayer, etc. "He who obeys the apostle, obeys Allah." (4:80).

If Muhammed murdered his enemies, so can Muslims.

If Muhammed stole whatever he wanted, so can Muslims.

If Muhammed took as many wives/slave-girls as he wanted, so can Muslims.

Fundamental to Muslim belief is the idea that Islamic writings are historically accurate.

Most Muslims are not given any opposing evidence.

Islamic thinking is very different from Western thinking, such as **living** is not a major sin; **murdering** non-Muslims in Jihad is heroic.

The traditional view is that Muhammed was a sinless prophet, yet he often asked Allah to forgive his sins. (Q 40:55 and 48:1,2).

Well-known **prophets** among Muslims in the Quran are: Adam, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Lot, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Job, Jethro, Moses, Aaron, David, Solomon, Elijah, Elisha, Ezekiel, Jonah, Zechariah of Luke 1, John the Baptist, Jesus and Muhammed.

Muslims believe that all the prophets were without sin, because the Quran says that they were on a straight path. Muslims ignore that the Quran says that: Adam sinned (2:36; 7:22,23); Abraham sinned (26:82); Moses sinned (28:15,16); Jonah sinned (37:142); David sinned (38:15,16); Muhammad sinned (47:19; 48:1,2; 33:36-38).

The only sinless prophet mentioned in the Quran is Jesus Christ (19:19 and 31). “He has purged me of vanity and wickedness”. Main events in Mohammed’s early life are:

- He obtained employment with a wealthy woman, Khadijah, ran her business for three years (591-594 AD), and in 595 AD he married her when he was age 25 and she was age 40. She was his only wife for 26 years until she died in 621 AD, after which he took many wives.
- At age 40 in 612 AD, when Muhammed was meditating in the cave of Hira, he received his **first revelation**. He then claimed that Allah had called him to be a prophet and an apostle. There was no tradition of prophets or apostles in any Arabian religion. The term “**prophet**” was used in the hope that Jews would accept Muhammed as the next prophet, while the term “**apostle**” was used in the hope that Christians would accept him as the next apostle. He hence sought to attract Jews, Christians and pagans.
- The Quran gives us **four conflicting accounts** of Allah calling Muhammed to be a prophet:
 - i) In Sura 53:2-18 and 81:19-24 we are told that **Allah** personally appeared to Muhammed as a man, and that Muhammed saw and heard him.
 - ii) This is later abandoned and Sura 16:102 and 26:192-194 tell us that Muhammed’s call was given by the **Holy Spirit**.
 - iii) This is also abandoned and Sura 15:8 tells us that **angels** came down and announced to Muhammed that Allah had called him to be a prophet.
 - iv) This account is amended in Sura 2:97 so that it is only the angel **Gabriel** who calls Muhammed and gives him the Quran. This account is well known by Muslims. Islamic revelation is not the same as Biblical revelation, but means that there are no human authors of the Quran. It means “handed down” directly from Allah to Muhammed. The Quran denies any human or earthly sources for itself.
- After this revelation, Muhammed thought that he may be **mad** or **demon possessed**. This made him so depressed that he went to commit suicide, but on the way, he fell into another seizure, where he was told in a vision not to kill himself because he was called of God. Yet, he was still depressed and doubtful. When other people saw him in a trance, they also concluded that he was demon possessed. (Q 81:25). He then experienced three years of doubt and darkness. The Quran says that many jinn (demons) became Muslims and promised to spread Islam (Q72:14).
- **Muhammed practically demands more respect than Allah**. This is why, according to Islamic law, people are put to death whenever they say anything unfavourable about Muhammed. When he became ruler of Mecca, many were killed who criticised his brutality, including two young girls who sang a song critical of Muhammed.

Before the people of Mecca were forced to surrender to Islam, they accused Muhammed of being:

- i) “A **madman** taught by others” (44:13); “A mad poet” (37:35; 68:2; 81:22; 52:29);
- ii) “A **skilled enchanter**” (10:2) influencing people to follow him with lies;
- iii) **Bewitched and controlled by evil spirits** and demons, as a medium (17:50; 81:25);
- iv) **Soothsayers** divination (69:42) revealing secrets from jinn.

When he received a revelation, he heard a bell ring, he got off his horse or camel, covered his head, and “the angel presses so hard on me that I think I am going to die”.

1. The Meccans concluded that Muhammed was an **impostor** because he kept on **changing his statements in the Quran**. To defend Muhammed, Allah said that it is not Muhammed but Allah himself who keeps on changing his words because he knows best. “When we change one verse for another (Allah knows best what he reveals), they say: “You are an impostor”.” (Q 16:101).

2. As far as the **Jews** were concerned, **Muhammed had no credentials**.

A true prophet of God could prove his identity by **forthtelling events** that lay beyond his ability to know. When these prophecies were fulfilled, believers knew the speaker was a true prophet of God. (Deuteronomy 18:22; Isaiah 41:21-24).

In the Quran, Muhammed repeatedly mentioned that he brought **no signs** and performed **no miracles**; neither did he **prophecy future events**:

“The unbelievers ask: “**Why has no sign been given him by his Lord?**”” (7:203; 2:118).

“But you are only to give warning”. (Q13:7,31; 6:37,109).

Q 7:203 gives the Quran as the only proof available, yet the Quran contains **no fulfilled prophecies** to prove it is from God. ‘Say, “This book is a veritable proof from your Lord”.’

3. **Muhammed’s friendship with demons** was a big stumblingblock for the Jews (72:1-15; 46:29-31).

The law of Moses commanded Jews to keep away from all who contacted spirits or demons (jinn).

“Regard not them that have familiar spirits ... to be defiled by them.” (Leviticus 19:31).

Such people were to be put to death: “A man or woman that hath a familiar spirit, or that is a wizard, shall surely be put to death.” (Leviticus 20:27; Deuteronomy 18:10-12).

Allah ordered Muhammed that when anything is not clear to him, then he should go to the people of the Book (Jews and Christians) for clarification (Q 10:93,94):

“If you doubt what we have revealed to you, ask those who have read the Scriptures before you”.

The Quran refers to the Bible as: “**God’s Book**” (3:23).

When Muhammed could provide no signs of being a true prophet, the Jews rejected him, so

Muhammed bound them by a treaty and changed his attitude toward them by:

- i) Declaring the **Kaba stone at Mecca as the direction of prayer** (Qibla) instead of praying toward Jerusalem. **This was idolatry** by Muhammed because the Kaba at Mecca had 360 idols in it. Eight years later, these idols were removed “The foolish will ask, “What has made them turn away from their qiblah (direction of prayer)?” (21:142).
- ii) He changed the fast of Ashura to the **fast of Ramadan**.
- iii) He charged the Jews with distorting, concealing and misrepresenting their Scriptures (4:46).
- iv) He received a revelation from Allah, accusing the Jews of **worshipping Ezra as the Son of God** (Q 9:30), which they never did. It was an excuse to kill them two years later.

Muhammed’s first converts were his family. When his message first became public, the people of Mecca angrily laid siege to his part of Mecca. To appease these pagans, he said it was right to pray to and worship Allah’s three daughters, Al-Lat, Al-Uzza and Manat. This polytheism led to the **Satanic Verses** being included, whereby Muhammed, supposedly inspired by Satan, succumbed to the temptation to add this passage to appease the pagan mobs in Mecca. (53:19).

When his disciples at Medina heard of his lapse into polytheism, they rebuked him strongly.

Muhammed then reverted to monotheism and stated that Allah can abrogate (or cancel) a past revelation. He later claimed Gabriel came and rebuked him for this polytheism. After Muhammed’s death, the **Satanic Verses were not included in the text of the Quran and were cancelled**. This led the pagan Meccans to ridicule Muhammed’s Allah as being unable to make up his mind.

Hence, initially, Muhammed claimed that Allah said they **could not** worship Allah's three daughters. Then Allah said they **could** be worshipped. Finally, Allah said they **could not** be worshipped.

Can't Allah make up his mind?

Due to growing hostility and ridicule, Muhammed fled to Taif. Here he made no converts, so he returned to Mecca. On his way back to Mecca, Muhammed claimed to preach to and convert the jinn (genies) in Sura 46:29-35 and 72:1-28. The Quran then claims that the **jinn agreed to preach Islam to the people** (Shamanism). He soon realised that his family and tribe would not give up idolatry unless they were forced to by violence.

The First Battle: He sent six followers to attack and loot a caravan during the truce month. This was known as the Nakhla raid.

The Second Battle: Muhammed led the second battle, winning the battle of Badr.

This great success led to more followers who wanted to take part in the looting and fighting.

The Third Battle being against the Jews: Muhammed first tried to get the Jews to accept him as a prophet by preaching monotheism, keeping the Sabbath, praying toward Jerusalem, appealing to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and praising their Scriptures. When it became clear that the Jews would not follow him, he began killing individual Jews then attacking Jewish settlements. This made him wealthy

The Fourth Battle: The Meccans approached Muhammed with a large army. He lost this battle, was struck in the mouth by a sword and almost died, even though he predicted victory.

The Fifth Battle: He then attacked Jewish settlements which were easier targets than the Meccans.

After one Jewish town surrendered, 800-1000 Jewish men were beheaded in one day, their women and children were enslaved, and their possessions looted.

The Sixth Battle: Having a larger army, he made a 10-year peace treaty with the Meccan authorities. Yet within one year, he broke the treaty and, with a large army, forced Mecca to surrender and accept him as political and religious leader. He stopped idol worship by violence. He murdered a woman who ridiculed him for including some of her father's poems in the Quran. As leader of Mecca, Arab tribesmen began to flock to him from all sides.

8. MOHAMMED'S WIVES. Muhammed's greatest weakness was women.

Several problems here are:

- i) Because the Quran in Sura 4:3 **forbids taking more than four wives**, for Muhammed to have taken **more wives** would have been a sin against Allah's word. Being Allah's prophet, he considered himself above all such laws. The Muslim scholar Ali Dashti, states that Muhammed had **16 wives** & 6 concubines.
 - ii) In his 50's **Muhammed wanted to marry his friend Abu-Bakar's six-year-old daughter, Aesha.** When Abu-Bakar resisted the idea, Muhammed claimed it was the will of Allah, so Muhammed got his way and married her while she was still playing with dolls, aged 6 years. Mohammed consummated the marriage when she was aged 9 years. (Mohammed's will and Allah's will were almost identical). In the West this behaviour is paedophilia and child abuse, one of the most despised crimes. "Khadija died three years before the prophet departed to Al-Madina. He stayed there for two years or so and then he wrote the **marriage** contract with Aishah when she was a **girl of 6 years of age**, & **consummated that marriage when she was nine years old.**" (Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol.5, 3896).
 - iii) When Muhammed wanted to **marry his adopted son's wife, Zainab**, his son, being happily married, protested. Muhammed claimed it was Allah's will (Q33:35-37), so they had to divorce and allow Zainab to marry Muhammed. If Allah had been the true God of the Bible, he would have disciplined Muhammed like God did to David for stealing Uriah's wife.
 - iv) Muhammed taught that a Muslim man can have **up to four wives**, but only if he can treat them **justly**. According to his desires, he got revelation to have more wives. He tried to treat his wives justly by allocating them certain time slots. When it was **Hafsa's** turn, Muhammed broke his oath and went off with a **beautiful slave girl, Maria the Coptic.**
- As a result, his wives protested against Muhammed continually breaking his oaths and promises with them. Muhammed consulted Allah who, not surprisingly, supported the prophet, rebuking the wives, calling on them to repent, threatening them with divorce, and allowing Muhammed to marry other women instead. (Q 66:1-5). "Allah has allowed you to break your oaths." (Q 66:2).
- Pickthall thinks that this privilege of breaking oaths is for all Muslims.

Hence Muslims can lie as much as they want. The God of the Bible says: “Let your yes be yes and your no be no, all else cometh of evil.” (Matthew 5:37; James 5:12).

v) **Allah gave Mohammed full licence to marry or have sex with any woman (33:50-55).**

“Prophet, we have made lawful to you the wives to whom you have granted dowries and the slavegirls whom Allah has given you as booty; and any believing woman who gives herself to the prophet and whom the prophet wishes to take in marriage. This privilege is yours alone, being granted to no other believer. You may put off (divorce) any of your wives.” (33:50,51).

vi) **Temporary Marriage or Mutah.** Today known as a one-night-stand.

Mohammed allowing Muslims to have a temporary wife was another **attraction** to follow him.

Temporary marriage was practised alongside permanent marriage by Muslims from the beginning of Mohammed’s migration to Medina (622 AD) until the second Caliph banned it in 640 AD.

Muslims do not like non-Muslims knowing about them being allowed to make a temporary marriage.

Why? A Muslim man may marry temporarily a Western woman in the West. This will enable him to bring his own wife or wives and children from overseas. Since Mohammed and Allah allow Muslims to lie to their wives, or in the case of Holy War, they can easily tell any woman that they are not married at all, even though they may have several wives overseas.

The Western woman marries the Muslim man, unaware of his wives overseas. The Muslim man then arranges with the Immigration Department to bring his wives and children into the Western country.

When they are here, he may divorce his Western wife or, better still for him, make her live separately so he can collect large weekly payments from social security for his Western wife, as well as family allowance for her children and his newly migrated children. If each of his four wives plus his temporary wife have four children (sometimes up to 12 children each), this is about \$2,000 per week family allowance for a total of 20 children. The Muslim man can live comfortably on government handout without having to go to work. Also, he can assure himself of a place in paradise for contributing to Jihad (holy war) against the West and in spreading Islam.

Since Mohammed allowed and **did not forbid temporary marriage**, Muslims today consider it as legitimate marriage and not adultery. Their reasoning is: “Whatever is allowed by Muhammed is all right for Muslims”. Even the Quran allows it by calling spouses of temporary marriage as “wives” or “slave girls”: “Who restrain their carnal desire (save with their wives and slave girls, for these are lawful to them”. (Q 23:5-7 and 70:25-31).

It may seem attractive to men to have four or more wives, but the downside is that often the wives have terrible fights with each other, and family life becomes a nightmare.

9. ALLAH, MOHAMMED and the QURAN GIVE MUSLIMS PERMISSION TO LIE WITHOUT GUILT

Samuel Zwemmer, one of the greatest experts on Islam, says: “According to orthodox Islamic tradition, a lie is justifiable in three cases:

1. To reconcile two parties;
2. To satisfy one’s wife;
3. In case of war.” (*El Itidayah*, Vol 4, p 81; *The Moslem Doctrine of God*, p 41).

Professor Abdul Natiq explains that “it is quite lawful to tell something which is not true at all, that may reconcile people”. He adds a tradition from Umal Kalsum (daughter of Mohammed) that “Mohammed only allowed people to lie, firstly, in the case of war to deceive the enemy; secondly, to reconcile two parties, and thirdly, when husband and wife talk together.”

He says that Allah and Muhammed are well pleased by this as it is for the betterment of Islam. (*Islam Studies for Degree Class*, p. 77-79).

Examples of Allah and Muhammed in the Quran permitting Muslims to tell lies:

1. If non-Muslim masters persecute Muslim slaves, the Muslim slaves may lie that they have **renounced Islam to avoid trouble**: “Whoso, after he has believed in Allah denies him, if he were forced to do it, and if his heart remains steadfast in the faith, shall be guiltless”. (Q16:106-110).

This applies to Muslims today who are in a difficult situation because of their faith, to lie saying that they are not Muslims, to save their skins.

2. When Mohammed wanted to **kill the Jews** for rejecting Islam, he had Allah saying that the Jews must be killed because **they worshipped Ezra as the Son of God**. This is a complete lie, but remember Allah can lie any time to get his own way, and so can Muslims. "Allah has given you absolution from such oaths". (Q 66:2). Allah in Quran 9:29 commanded Mohammad to fight against Jews and Christians. "Fight" (Qatlova) in Arabic means to "kill".

"**Fight** (Qatlova = kill) those to whom the Scriptures (Bible) were given ... who do not believe in Allah, ... and do not embrace the true faith (Islam), until they pay tribute and are **utterly subdued**. The Jews say **Ezra is the Son of God**, while Christians say the Messiah is the Son of God. Allah confound them! How perverse they are." (Q9:29,30).

Thus, Allah, Mohammed and Muslims can **lie for the betterment of Islam**. Muslims may take an oath, but in reality it means nothing, because Allah has stated that Muslims are free from their oaths (Q 66:2)

3. When Muhammed had promised to spend the night with one of his wives named Hafsa, **he met beautiful Maria the Coptic and spent the night with her instead of Hafsa**.

This broke his promise to his wives. Allah jumped to his defence with a threat to divorce all his wives if they kept protesting. (Q66:1-5).

4. When Allah put love (lust) in Mohammed's heart for **his adopted son's wife** Zainab, Mohammed wanted to marry her. He realised that there would be a public outcry for him stealing his son's wife. So Mohammed made up a revelation from Allah rebuking him for hiding his love for Zainab.

This gave Allah's sanction to Mohammed stealing his son's wife (33:36-38). Since Allah was always there to help Mohammed get any woman he wanted, he could always make rules to justify his deeds.

Question: Was Mohammed a true prophet of the true God?

Answer: It seems that **Muhammed made up his own god who gave him a licence to sin**.

The Quran tells us that all Mohammed's past and future sins were forgiven (48:1,2).

10. TWO SERMONS BY DEMONS in the Quran and THEIR PROMISE TO SPREAD MOHAMMED'S RELIGION ISLAM. (72:1-15 and 46:29-31).

When Mohammed could not stop idol worshippers and, with division in his ranks, his wife Khadijah and his uncle/protector died in 620 AD. He felt totally rejected and very depressed, so he went to Al Taif for help. Nobody helped him there except a Christian slave who gave him some food to eat. Here Mohammed cried to Allah for help and jinn (demons) came to help him. These demons accepted his religion and went out as missionaries for Islam.

If evil demons agree to spread Islam, then Islam must be evil and of the devil.

How can we believe a speech of demons whose very nature is to lie and to spread error?

Notice that the demons support the Muslim false understanding about Jesus Christ as follows:

"Our lord hath taken no spouse, neither hath he any offspring." (72:1-15).

Jinn (demons) said, "O our people, listen to the one who invites you to Allah, and believe in him: he will forgive you your sins and deliver you from a woeful scourge." (Q 46:29-31).

These demons readily agreed with Muhammed in his denial of Jesus Christ being the Son of God.

They point people away from Christ to Muhammed for forgiveness of sins.

This should convince any thinking person that, **if evil demons recommend us to Muhammed, then we should reject Muhammed and Islam, and turn to Jesus Christ** whom demons hate.

11. DEATH TO THOSE WHO LEAVE ISLAM

The Quran teaches that there is no compulsion in religion. (Mohammad made this statement early in his mission to get the cooperation of Jews and Christians in Medina). Yet this is proven to be another lie of Allah's, as seen from statements to the contrary in the Quran such as:

1. Allah says: "**If they desert you**, seize them and **put them to death** wherever you find them." Q4:89

2. Allah says: "If, after coming to terms with you, they break their oaths, and revile your faith, make war on the leaders of unbelief - for no oaths are binding on them. **Make war** on them: Allah will chastise them at your hands and humble them." (Q9:12-14). S Zwemmer in *The Law of Apostasy in Islam* says. "If anyone turns away from Islam he becomes "Kaffir". Whosoever is a Kaffir deserves death at the hands of Muslims." Mohammad's followers today fight those who leave Islam. 1003

12. THE HIJRA

On 20 June 622 AD, Mohammed accompanied by Abu-Bakar, arrived at Medina (from Mecca) where he lived till his death. This is called the Hijra (or flight) marking the beginning of the Muslim calendar. The Jews at Medina mocked him when he posed as a prophet. Medina was 60% Jewish, and was 450 km north-west of Mecca. The Quran often mentions the Hypocrites who did not accept Mohammed in their hearts, but put up with him because they were not powerful enough to fight him.

13. RAIDING (Mohammed's profession) - THE MEANS TO SPREAD ISLAM

When Muhammed moved to Medina, he had been preaching for 13 years and had gained only about 100 followers, most of whom were poor. Farming was difficult in the desert. The only short-cut to wealth was looting caravans and raiding weaker tribes. They stole women and children, selling them back to their husbands and fathers.

The Quran says: "True believers are those who fight for Allah." (49:15 and 4:76).

In Mohammed's 10 years at Medina, **he planned 150 battles**. Mohammed organised raiding parties because he loved women, wealth, fame and to spread his religion. The aim of raiding parties was to steal animals, women and children and to loot the caravans. He sold those he didn't like into slavery and kept the pretty women for himself. 20% of the loot had to go to Mohammed. When Muslims grew stronger, they looted stronger tribes, Arabia, other countries and finally hope to conquer the world. There was no change in people's spiritual or moral state after they became Muslims.

The only attraction was to be protected from Islamic raids and to loot non-protected people.

Although Muslims were commanded to brutally kill and loot non-Muslims, they were forbidden to deceive Mohammed and Allah. They were to honestly give them 20% of the loot captured.

Mohammed ordered his men to "kill those who disbelieve in Allah". (LOM, p 672).

After the battle of Badr, Muhammed became so powerful that nobody could criticize him.

A woman named **Asma** criticised Mohammed for killing so many of her tribe.

Mohammed had her killed and their fear of death was so strong that the whole tribe became Muslim.

The poet **Kab ibn Al Ashraf** wrote against Mohammed. So Mohammed sent some men to kill Kab.

They threw his head at Mohammed's feet, shouting "Allah is great."

► **The Quran is full of verses where Mohammed incites people to war and bloodshed:**

1. "Fight valiantly for Allah's cause, so that you may prosper." (5:35).
2. "Whoever fights for the cause of Allah ... we (Allah) shall richly reward him." (4:74).
3. "Fight for the cause of Allah." (2:244; 4:84).
4. "Lay hold of them and **kill them** wherever you find them." (4:91).
5. "Prophet, rouse the faithful to arms (Al-katal means killing). If there are 20 steadfast men among you, they shall vanquish 200." (8:65).
6. "Fight against those to whom the **Scriptures** were given (Christians and Jews)." (9:29).
7. "If you do not go to war, Allah will punish you sternly." (9:39).
8. "Whether unarmed or well equipped, march on and **fight** for the cause of Allah, with your wealth and persons." (9:41).
9. "Prophet, **make war on the unbelievers** and hypocrites." (9:73).
10. "When the sacred months are over, **slay the idolaters** wherever you find them. Arrest them, besiege them, and lie in ambush everywhere for them." (9:5).
11. "**Make war on them**: Allah will chastize them at your hands and humble them." (9:14).
12. "Believers, **make war on the infidels** who dwell around you. Deal firmly with them. Allah is with you." (9:123).
13. "Allah loves those who **fight for his cause**." (61:4).
14. "Allah has given those that **fight** ... a higher rank than those that stay at home." (4:95).
15. "The offenders are those that seek exemption (from war). They are content to be with those who stay behind ... **Hell shall be their home**, the **punishment** for their misdeeds." (9:93-95).

These Quran quotes show that if a Muslim did not join the looting and killing of non-Muslims, he was **disobedient to Allah** and **would surely go to hell**. What a motivation to murder! An example of Mohammed's butchery was in the seventh year of his stay at Medina where he attacked **Khaibur**,

a **Jewish settlement fort** on the way to Syria. The Jews surrendered the fort on condition that they be free to leave the country, giving up all their wealth to the Muslims. The chief's 15-year-old wife was taken as Mohammed's wife and the chief was tortured to death. Mohammed then decreed that the men should be killed, the women and children be sold into slavery, and the spoils divided among the Islamic army. During the night, trenches were dug, and in the morning male captives were beheaded in groups of five and their bodies cast into the trench. This butchery lasted all day and into late at night. What a genocidal man of Allah was Mohammed. What a lie is "Allah the compassionate, the merciful." Jesus said, "Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning ... he is a liar, and the father of it." (John 8:44). Mohammed was inspired by Satan.

14. **PREDESTINATION**

Orthodox Muslims believe that "by the force of Allah's eternal decree, **man is not free to do what he wants to do**". One well-known Hadith on predestination says: "Allah said to Adam, I have created this family for paradise ... and **I have created another family for hell.**"

A man said to Mohammed, "Of what use will good or bad deeds be?"

Allah said, "When Allah creates one person for the fire, his actions will be like those of the people of hell till he dies." It seems that Mohammed adopted predestination to cover all his evil deeds.

Predestination gave Mohammed the right to do anything he liked because it was the predestined will of Allah, such as marry a six-year-old, marry his son's wife and butcher people.

The Quran teaches that people should obey Allah and Mohammed.

15. **MOHAMMED'S DEATH** (See youtube.com **Who Killed Mohammad? Acts17Apologetics**)

Mohammed loved three things: women, scents and food. It was delicious mutton cooked by a beautiful woman that caused his death.

Mohammed went to dine with a beautiful Jewess belonging to a tributary Jewish tribe. She cooked for him a shoulder of lamb that she had poisoned. Mohammed tasted a mouthful, detected the poison and spat it out, but his companion died on the spot. Mohammed asked her why she had done this, and she replied because he had enslaved the Jews. She reckoned that if he died, the Jews would be restored to their former prosperity; but if Mohammed was really a prophet, he would recognize the poison beforehand, no harm would be done, and she herself would believe. (*Islam and the West*. p 103).

When Muhammed died, he was supposed to ascend to heaven after three days, but this didn't happen. So, after waiting 12 days, they had to bury the body because of the smell. Only Jesus Christ rose from the dead. Jesus Christ, being the true prophet, clearly predicted his death in Matthew 16:21.

16. **MOHAMMED COMPARED WITH JESUS CHRIST**

Since Islam claims that both Jesus and Mohammad were Muslim prophets sent by Allah, then both must agree in all points and never contradict each other. If they contradict, then:

1. Allah is contradicting himself and, thus, could not be the true God;

2. Mohammed is a false prophet, because true prophets never contradict.

Some Muslims try to avoid any comparison between Jesus and Mohammed by claiming that the Bible is corrupt. This is wrong for two reasons:

1. If the Bible is corrupt, when was it corrupted and who corrupted it? We have documents of the New Testament every decade as far back as 90 AD and the vast majority of these are identical to today's KJV New Testament. The Dead Sea Scrolls, dated 200-100 BC, contain every Old Testament book except Esther, and are identical to today's KJV Old Testament.

2. If the New Testament is corrupt, so is the Quran, because the Quran uses the New Testament gospels for its information on Jesus, such as His virgin birth, etc.

Which parts of the New Testament are supposed to be corrupt?

Let us compare the life of Jesus Christ from the Bible with the life of Muhammed from the Quran to see who had the credentials of being the true prophet of God.

1) **Prophecy**: Jesus Christ's birth, life, death and resurrection were clearly predicted in the Old Testament. Micah 5:2 predicts Bethlehem as Jesus' birthplace. Neither the Bible nor pagan soothsayers predicted anything about the coming of Mohammed. Examples of such prophecies include:

45 PROPHECIES of Jesus Christ	OT PROPHECY	NT FULFILMENT
1. Born of a virgin	Isaiah 7:14	Matthew 1:18,22-25
2. Tribe of Judah	Genesis 49:10	Luke 3:23,33
3. House of David	Jeremiah 23:5	Luke 3:31
4. Born at Bethlehem	Micah 5:1,2	Matthew 2:1
5. Visited by wise men with gifts.	Isaiah 60:3,6,9	Matthew 2:1-12
6. Given Gold and Incense .	Isaiah 60:6	Matthew 2:11
7. Would be in Egypt for a time.	Hosea 11:1	Matthew 2:13-15
8. Infants killed at His birthplace.	Jeremiah 31:15	Matthew 2:16-18
9. Preceded by messenger (John the Baptist)	Isaiah 40:3	Matthew 3:1-3
10. Ministry to begin in Galilee	Isaiah 9:1	Matthew 4:12-18
11. Suddenly come to His Temple	Malachi 3:1;Psalm 69:9	John 2:13-21
12. Perform Miracles	Isaiah 35:5,6	Matthew 9:35
13. Teacher of Parables	Psalm 78:2	Matthew 13:34,35
14. Heal many.	Isaiah 42:7,16	Matthew 8:16,17;15:30
15. His miracles not believed .	Isaiah 53:1	John 12:37
16. Enter Jerusalem's East Gate . Later shut.	Ezekiel 44:1,2.	Mark 11:1-11.
17. Enter Jerusalem on a donkey	Zechariah 9:9	Matthew 21:6-11
18. Betrayed by a friend	Psalm 41:9	Matthew 10:4; 26:48
19. Sold for 30 pieces of silver	Zechariah 11:12	Matthew 26:15
20. Money to be thrown on the Temple Floor	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:5
21. Money used to buy a potter's field	Zechariah 11:13	Matthew 27:7
22. Forsaken by His disciples	Zechariah 13:7	Matthew 26:56
23. False witnesses accuse Him	Psalm 35:11	Matthew 26:59,60
24. Silent before His accusers	Isaiah 53:7	Matthew 27:12
25. Beaten , scourged and spat on.	Isaiah 50:6	Matthew 26:67
26. Crucified with thieves	Isaiah 53:12	Matthew 27:38
27. Mocked by onlookers.	Psalm 22:7,8; 109:25	Matthew 27:39-43.
28. Hands and feet pierced	Psalm 22:16	Luke 23:33
29. His side pierced	Zechariah 12:10	John 19:34
30. Prayed for His enemies.	Isaiah 53:12.	Luke 23:34.
31. Gall and vinegar offered Him to drink	Psalm 69:21	Matthew 27:34,48
32. Garments parted and lots cast	Psalm 22:18	John 19:23,24
33. No bones broken	Psalm 34:20	John 19:33
34. His forsaken cry	Psalm 22:1	Matthew 27:46
35. Darkness over land from midday	Amos 8:9	Matthew 27:45
36. Buried in rich man's tomb	Isaiah 53:9	Matthew 27:57-60
37. In grave 3 days and 3 nights .	Jonah 1:17	Matthew 12:38-40
38. Rise from the dead	Psalm 16:10	Matt 28:6; Acts 2:31
39. Ascend to Heaven	Psalm 68:18	Acts 1:9
40. Rejected by His own nation, Israel.	Isaiah 53:3	Mark 8:31; Luke 17:25
41. Gentile Nations to believe on Him	Isaiah 60:3	Acts 13:47,48
42. Messiah offer Himself as Prince to Israel 173,880 days after 10pm 4March, 444BC	Daniel 9:25	Luke 19:37-44
43. Messiah comes and is cut off (dies).	Daniel 9:26	John 19:33-35
44. Jerusalem, Temple destroyed after J death	Daniel 9:26	by Titus in 70 AD
45. Jews to lose power to pass death sentence 23 years before the trial of Christ.	Genesis 49:10	11 AD (Josephus, Antiquities, 17:13:1-5)

Some Muslims claim that Jesus' promise of the coming of the Comforter in John 14:16-16:15 was fulfilled in Mohammed. This is wrong because:

- a) The Comforter is **said to be the Holy Spirit** in John 14:26;
- b) The Comforter will **stay with Christians forever** (John 14:16) and shall be **in** you (John 14:17), yet Mohammed did not stay with Christians forever, as he died in 632 AD, nor could he be in Christians;
- c) The Holy Spirit Comforter came at **Pentecost** in Acts 2:1-4, not 500 years later.

2) **Birth:** Jesus Christ was conceived miraculously in the womb of the virgin Mary.

The Quran and orthodox Islam fully accept Jesus Christ's virgin birth.

On the other hand, Mohammed was conceived naturally of human parents.

This means Mohammed was born with a sin nature, but Jesus inherited no sin nature.

3) **Sinlessness:** The New Testament states that Jesus Christ lived a sinless, perfect life.

It says He "knew no sin." (II Corinthians 5:21). His enemies could find "no fault" in Him. (Luke 23:4).

Jesus was "in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin". (Hebrews 4:15).

But Mohammed was a sinner just like all humans.

He lied, he cheated, he sinned after women, he broke his promises, he murdered people, etc.

Mohammed was not sinless.

Ask: "Where in the Quran does it state that Mohammed was sinless?"

Nowhere, but in the following places the Quran states that Mohammed was a sinner:

- i Allah commands Mohammed in Sura 40:55 "Ask forgiveness for your sins."
- ii "We have given you (Mohammed) a glorious victory (taking of Mecca in 630 AD), so that Allah may forgive you your past and future sins .." (Sura **48:1,2**).

Mohammed was just another sinner needing forgiveness and Jesus Christ's salvation.

4) **Miracles:** In Jesus' three-year ministry, He did many miracles such as healing the sick, raising the dead, casting out demons, multiplying loaves and fishes, stilling the wind and the waves, etc.

Mohammed never performed any miracles, as stated in Sura 17:91-95. In the Quran, when doubters asked Mohammed to perform a miracle, he either stayed quiet or referred to his Quran, which contain no prophecies. Every Biblical prophet either did miracles or correctly foretold future events, but Mohammed could do neither, thus making him inferior to every Biblical prophet. The Quran mentions Jesus' miracles: "I shall heal the blind man and leper, and raise the dead to life." (**3:49**).

5) **The Love of God:** Jesus lived and preached the love of God.

The New Testament shows that God loves sinners:

- i "For God **so loved** the world that he gave his only begotten Son that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish but have everlasting life." (John 3:16).
- ii. "He that loveth not, knoweth not God; for **God is love**." (I John 4:8).
- iii. "We love him, because **he (God) first loved us**." (I John 4:19).
- iv. "Then Jesus beholding him **loved him** (the rich young ruler)." (Mark 10:21).
- v. Jesus was called "a **friend** of publicans and sinners." (Matthew 11:19).
- vi. "Love one another, as **I have loved you**." (John 15:12).
- vii. "God commends **his love toward us**, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us." Rom 5:8
- viii. "As the Father hath loved me, **so have I loved you**: continue ye in my love." (John 15:9).
- ix. Jesus prayed for those who crucified him "Father **forgive them** for they know not what they do. Luke 23:34
- x. Jesus said: "Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you." Matt 5:44
- xi. "Nothing shall be able to separate us from the **love of God** which is in Christ Jesus our Lord" Rom 8:39
- xii. "Walk in love, **as Christ also hath loved us**." (Ephesians 5:2).
- xiii. "Husbands love your wives **as Christ also loved the church** and gave himself for it." (Ephesians 5:22). Don't beat them. (Q4:34).

In contrast, Mohammed never preached the love of God. The Quran never mentions Allah loving man, or man loving Allah. Instead, Allah delights in sending everyone to hell (Q **19:71**). Allah lies (**13:27**), hates his enemies, demands that multitudes be killed (**47:4**) and sent to hell (**11:119**), etc.

- 6) **Jesus is both God and Man:** Mohammad was only a man. Bible calls Jesus **God** in these places:
- i “Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was, I AM.” John 8:58,59. Exodus 3:14 God is I AM
 - ii “Unto us a child is born ... his name shall be called **The Mighty God.**” (Isaiah 9:6).
 - iii Jesus allowed Thomas to call Him “My Lord and **my God.**” (John 20:28).
 - iv “Feed the church of **God** which **He** hath purchased with **His** own blood.” (Acts 20:28).
 - v “**God** was manifest in the flesh.” (I Timothy 3:16).
 - vi “Looking for that blessed hope and glorious appearing of the **great God** and our Saviour Jesus Christ.” (Titus 2:13). God and Jesus are one. (II Peter 1:1).
 - vii “Unto the **Son** he saith: “Thy throne, **O God**, is forever and ever.” (Hebrews 1:8).
 - viii “In the beginning was the Word, the Word was with God and **the Word was God.**” (John 1:1).
 - ix “There are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost; and **these three are one.**” (I John 5:7).

7) **Killing and Robbing People:** Jesus never killed or robbed anyone. If he had, it would have been brought up at His trial. On the other hand, Mohammed killed, robbed and enslaved tens of thousands of people. Robbing and looting caravans, tribes and cities was his chief source of income (20% to Moh).

8) **Telling Disciples to Kill:** Jesus never commanded or set an example for His disciples to kill, rob or fight enemies in His name. But Mohammed taught his disciples by command and example to kill, rob, lie and terrorize people to submit to Islam.

9) **Physical Violence and Terrorism:** Jesus forbade His disciples from using physical violence to force people to believe His message. When a Samaritan village rejected Jesus, His disciples asked: “Shall we command fire to come down from heaven and consume them?” Jesus rebuked them and said, “For the Son of man is not come to destroy men’s lives, but to save them”. (Luke 9:51-56). In Matthew 26:51-54 Jesus forbade Peter from using a sword. But Mohammed’s main method of gaining converts was by physical violence of the sword, terrorism and fear of death unless they accept Islam.

10) **Taking Other Men’s Wives:** Jesus never took another man’s wife to be his wife. But Mohammed often did. This is one of the most disgusting aspects of his life. Mohammed saw his adopted son’s wife without her veil, he lusted after her, asked Zaid to divorce his wife Zainab and, to quieten the public outcry, manufactured a convenient revelation from Allah allowing it, so they were married. “Allah’s commandment (to marry Zainab) must be performed. There is no fault in the prophet, touching what Allah had ordained for him.” (Sura 33:36-38). This Quranic passage has led many thinking Muslims to **renounce Islam**. When Mohammed conquered a town, he often killed all the men and married the prettiest women. For example, when he conquered Khaibar, a Jewish settlement, he tortured to death the chief Kinana, and married Safiyye his 15-year-old wife.

11) **Child Brides:** Jesus was never a child molester, nor a paedophile, nor was He sexually involved with young children. But when Mohammad was in his 50’s he married six-year-old Aesha when she was playing with dolls, consummating the marriage when she was age 9 (Hadith 3896 Bukhari).

12) **Dying for the Sins of the World:** Islam has no concept of a Saviour paying the penalty for our sins. When Jesus died, He died for the sins of all people to save us from hell: “That he by the grace of God should taste death for every man.” (Hebrews 2:9). But when Muhammad died, he was poisoned for murdering a tribe of people. He did not die for anyone else’s sins. There is no Saviour or Sin Bearer in Islam.

13) **Jesus Rose from the Dead After Three Days:** When Mohammed died, he stayed dead, as any man does. Muslims therefore have no victory over the grave and death.

14) **Jesus Ascended Bodily to Heaven** as witnessed by the disciples in Acts 1:8-11. But Mohammed stayed dead and buried. Why follow a dead man?

15) Jesus is now in Heaven as our Intercessor, Mediator and Saviour. But neither Mohammed nor the Quran ever regard Mohammed as a saviour or intercessor. The Quran states that man has no intercessor or saviour. You have to save yourself: “They have no guardian or intercessor besides Allah”. (6:51,70). “None has power to intercede for you.” (10:3).

16) Jesus was Often Worshipped as God. “Let all the angels of God worship Him”. (Hebrews 1:6). But the Quran never speaks of worshipping Mohammed. That would be blasphemy. The Quran contradicts itself here by saying that Allah commanded the angels to worship Adam (Q 2:34). This is blasphemy. Yet the Quran doesn’t ask us to worship Mohammed. Is Adam greater than Muhammed? Is Adam God? Jesus accepted worship in Matthew 2:11; 14:33; 28:9,17; Luke 24:52; John 9:38; etc..

17) Personal Relationship with Jesus Christ. When anybody receives Jesus Christ as their Saviour, they become sons of God, with God becoming their loving Heavenly Father. We love Jesus for saving us and giving us eternal life. Which Muslim ever has a personal, loving friendship with Mohammed? Nobody can have a friendship with Mohammed because he is dead.

18) Jesus Gives us a High Moral Example to Follow by living for others, dying for sinners, living a sinless life and always pleasing God the Father. Mohammed did not give us a high moral example. His many sinful, murderous actions explain why so many Muslims are keen to kill their enemies.

19) Jesus Christ’s Beauty of Speech. When you study Jesus Christ’s speeches such as the *Sermon on the Mount*, (Matthew 5,6,7); the *Parables* (Matthew 13,20,22,25); rebuking the Scribes and Pharisees (Matthew 15,16,23); the *Olivet Discourse* (Matthew 24); the New Birth (John 3); the woman at the well (John 4), Jesus’ credentials (John 5); Jesus the Bread of Life (John 6); Jesus the Light of the World (John 8); Jesus the Good Shepherd (John 10); Jesus raises Lazarus (John 11); Jesus sending the Comforter (John 14-16); Jesus the True Vine (John 15); Jesus’ High Priestly Prayer (John 17), etc, these show Him to be the greatest speaker that ever lived.

Compare Jesus’ speeches with Mohammed’s repetitive speeches with no logical train of thought, filled with hatred of non-Muslims, threats of hell torture and many commands to go to Jihad war, etc. with little style or substance, and you will realise that Jesus is infinitely superior to Mohammed.

20) Jesus will Return to Earth to Resurrect and Judge all Men. Orthodox Muslims admit this. The Quran never mentions Mohammed returning to earth, raising the dead or judging all men. Jesus is the coming King and Judge. Mohammed can’t do this because he is dead.

Years later in debates with Christians, embarrassed Muslims being faced with the obvious fact that Mohammed was inferior to Jesus Christ, invented myths about Mohammed being sinless, doing miracles, ascending to heaven, etc. These claims are not found in the Quran or in early Muslim traditions.

Later Muslim theologians borrowed events from the life of Jesus and attributed them to Mohammed. The Muslim myths of Mohammed’s miracles all date after heated debates between Christians and Muslims, and were invented in response to the challenge that Jesus Christ was obviously superior to Mohammed. On all the essential issues, Jesus is vastly superior to Mohammed.

17. IS THE QURAN THE PERFECT WORD OF GOD?

The Bible has much historical narrative - the Quran has very little.

The Bible explains unfamiliar terms - the Quran does not.

The Bible is ordered according to time and subject - the Quran has no logical order of thought.

a) Although Muhammed claimed to be a prophet of God, he did not foresee his own death by poisoning, so he made no preparations to gather his revelations into one document.

If he were a true prophet of God, he would have known the meal was poisoned and would not have eaten it. It was left to his followers to try to write down what he said.

The *Concise Encyclopedia of Islam* p 230 states:

“The Quran was collected from the chance surfaces on which it was written: from papyrus, flat stones, palm leaves, shoulder blades, ribs of animals, pieces of leather, wooden boards and the hearts of men”.

b) Sometimes **animals ate the palm leaves or mats on which the only original Suras were written** (Ali Dashti, 23 years, p28). Some men who were the only ones who remembered certain Suras, died in battle before they could write them down.

c) The Quran is arranged beginning with the **longest** Sura to the **shortest** Sura. This results in the confusion of **no logical chronology**.

d) **Commands early in the Quran are contradicted by later commands.**

e) The Quran **repeats statements** and **stories** many times

f) The Quran is **incomplete**. It has no beginning of the universe, nor does it conclude with the end of earth's history as does the Bible.

g) The Quran could not be a continuation of the Bible as it claims, because **it does not fit the Bible's doctrines, literary style or structure**. To go from the Bible to the Quran is to go from the superior to the inferior, from the greater to the lesser, from the real to a counterfeit, from the loving to the hateful.

1. **Missing Verses**. Professor Guillaume in his book *Islam* p 191 states that one of the Suras (Sura 33) originally had 200 verses in the days of Aesha, Mohammed's favourite wife, but by the time the third Caliph Uthman standardized the text of the Quran, it only had 73 verses. A total of 127 verses had been lost forever from that Sura. "The Shiite Muslims claim that Uthman left out 25% of the original verses of the Quran for political reasons." (McClintock and Strong, Vol 5, p 152).
2. **Verses Changed**. One of Mohammed's scribes, Abdollah Sarh, would make suggestions to Mohammed about rephrasing, adding or leaving out parts of the Quran's Suras. Mohammed often did as he suggested. Ali Dashti, *23 Years*, p 98 explains: "Abdollah renounced Islam because the revelations, if from God, could not be changed at the prompting of a scribe as he. After he left Islam, he went to Mecca and joined the Qorayshites." When Mohammed conquered Mecca, one of the first people he killed was Abdollah, because he knew too much and opened his mouth too often.
3. **Verses Abrogated (removed from the text)**. Verses which are contradictory to Islam have been removed from the text. Examples include the *Satanic Verses* where Mohammed approved the worship of Allah's three daughters as goddesses. (16:101 "When we change one verse from another." p977).
4. **Verses Added**. For example, Ubai had several Suras in his Quran which Uthman omitted from his standard text used today. Uthman did not approve of these so he omitted them.
5. **No Original**. When Mohammed died, there was no collected text of the Quran. Any original writings on palm leaves, tree bark, stones, leather, etc. have long been lost. If a Muslim claims that they have the original Quran, ask where this original manuscript is stored.
6. **The Third Caliph, Uthman** (650 AD) established the official text of the Quran and destroyed earlier conflicting texts. Ask:
 - a) Why did Uthman **destroy other manuscripts** if there were no other conflicting manuscripts?
 - b) Why did he **use death threats to force people to accept his text**, if everyone had the same text?
 - c) Why did many people **reject his text** in favour of their own texts?
 - d) Why did he have to **standardize a common text** if a perfect text already existed?Some of these older Quran texts have survived and clearly show that Uthman's text did not contain all the Quran. Encyclopedia Britannica under "Caliphate" states:

"Encouraged by the Caliph's weakness, and by preachers who denounced his errors and innovations, notably **his issue of an official text of the Quran and his order to destroy all others**, the troops in Kufia and Al Fustat rebelled. A party from Egypt, headed by the son of Abu-Bakr, marched to Medina, besieged Uthman in his house and killed him on June 17, 656 AD.
7. **Mohammed's Fingerprints**. Muslims claim that the Quran was handed down from heaven and Mohammed was not its human author. Then why does its **dialect**, vocabulary, style and content happen to be the same Arabic used by a member of the Quraysh tribe living in Mecca around 600 AD? Does heaven speak 7th Century Quraysh Arabic? No! Muslim claims of the Quran having a heavenly origin are fictitious. It is of human origin.

18. MISTAKES IN THE Quran

Many modern Muslims love to criticize the Bible as being corrupt and contradictory, but when anyone dares to criticize the Quran, they label this as rude, offensive and racist. Muslims claim the Quran to be true, but they cannot prove it. If Muslims are free to criticize the Bible, then others should be free to criticize the Quran. Muslims must agree that in the West, everybody is free to criticize the Bible, the Quran, the Hadith, the Book of Mormon or any “holy” book. Any religion which doesn’t allow people to examine its sacred book, using normal rules of research and logic, **obviously has something to hide**.

Since the Quran **claims to have no errors** as proof of its inspiration in Sura 85:21,22, the presence of just one error in the Quran shows it to be false and not from God.

“Surely this is a glorious Koran, inscribed on an imperishable tablet.” (Sura 85:21,22).

Throughout his early ministry, Mohammed constantly endorsed the truth of the Bible as the basis of his Quran. “Children of Israel, ... have faith in my revelations, which confirm your Scriptures.” (2:40).

“We gave Moses the Scriptures and knowledge of right and wrong, so that you might be rightly guided” (2:53).

“the Koran ... confirming previous scriptures.” (2:97,101).

Question: Why is the New Testament God’s Word?

Answer: Because it **fulfils prophecies** given in the Old Testament.

Question: Why is the Quran NOT God’s Word?

Answer: Because it confirms **NO prophecies** in the New or Old Testament. The Quran is not a continuation of the New Testament, because the Quran contradicts the New Testament:

- 1) The Quran claims itself to be a continuation of the Bible and that it will not contradict it. Say: “We believe in Allah and that which is revealed to us (Quran) in what was revealed to Abraham, Ishmael, Isaac, Jacob and the tribes; to Moses and Jesus and the other prophets by their Lord. We make no distinction among any of them.” (2:136).
- 2) Hence Muslims believe that the same God (Allah) revealed the Bible and the Quran.
- 3) Hence the Quran should never contradict the Bible, otherwise Allah would be contradicting himself.
- 4) If Allah contradicted himself, he is not perfect.
- 5) If Allah is not perfect, then he is not God.
- 6) Since the Bible was before the Quran, and the **Quran appeals to the Bible for verification**, then whenever there is a conflict between the two, the newer (Quran) must give way to the older (Bible).

Muslim statement: Muslims say that the Quran is always right because the Bible has been corrupted and is untrustworthy.

Christian reply: “Prove it has been corrupted. Who corrupted it. When did they corrupt it?”

There is no manuscript evidence supporting the Quran’s claim that Jesus was not crucified.

The Bible always taught that Jesus died on the cross.

Two choices face the Muslim, both of which disprove the Quran. Either,

1. If the Muslim **rejects the Bible**, he must also **reject the Quran** because it claims the Bible to be God’s Word, (Q 5:48 “Quran confirms the scriptures which came before it.”) or,
2. If he **accepts the Bible**, he still must **reject the Quran** because it contradicts the Bible.

Instead of giving up the Quran, some Muslims say that the Bible was corrupted after the Quran was written. This is false because we have Bible portions going back as far as 200 BC in the Dead Sea Scrolls of the Old Testament, and as far back as 90 AD with the New Testament. These are identical to the KJV Bible we have today. Hence the majority of Bible manuscripts have not been corrupted.

Logically, then, the Bible must be preferred above the Quran because:

1. The Bible was written before the Quran, and
2. The Quran appeals to the Bible as the already established higher authority.

19. MAJOR MISTAKES IN THE QURAN

- Six or Eight Days of Creation?** How many days did it take God to create heaven and earth?
 - The Quran in Sura **41:9,10,12** says God took $2 + 4 + 2 = \mathbf{8 \text{ days}}$ to create the earth and heavens: "Him who created the earth in 2 days ... in 4 days provided it with sustenance for all alike. In 2 days he formed the sky into seven heavens." (41:9-12).
 - The Bible in Genesis 1:31 and Exodus 20:11 says: "In **6 days** the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day."
Question: Is the Bible corrupt by saying 6 days?
If it is, then so is the Quran in **7:51** and **10:3** where it also says 6 days:
"Your Lord is God, who created the heavens and the earth in **6 days**." (Q7:51).
Hence, **if 6 days is right**, the Quran is wrong in 41:9,10,12.
If 8 days is right, the Quran is wrong in 7:51 and 10:3.
- Scientific Mistakes.** The Quran in **18:85,86** states that Alexander the Great (Dhul-Qarnayn) "journeyed on a road until he reached the setting place of the sun and saw it setting in a pool of black muddy water." The sun does not set in a pool of water, but earth orbits the sun in space.
- The Trinity.** Mohammed never understood the doctrine of the Trinity. He wrongly thought that Christians worshipped three gods: "The Father, Mary and Jesus".
"Unbelievers say: "Allah is the Messiah, the son of Mary". (5:72).
Unbelievers say: "Allah is one of the three". There is but one God." (5:73).
"Then Allah will say: "Jesus, son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: "Worship me and my mother as gods beside Allah"?" (5:116).
Christians believe in one God in three persons, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. Matt 28:19
Christians do not believe that Mary is part of the Trinity. The Quran is so clearly wrong here.
- Usury (Charging Interest)** Mohammed condemned usury in the Quran:
"Allah has permitted trading and made usury unlawful." (2:275).
"Allah has laid his curse on usury." (2:276).
"Believers, ... waive what is still due to you from usury." (2:278)
"We forbade the Jews good things ... because they practise usury." (4:161).
In 7th Century Arabia, charging interest on money loaned to people was condemned as usury. Modern Muslims openly disobey the Quran here.
Today Muslim banks, Muslim governments and Muslims all charge interest and pay interest on money loaned and borrowed. If Muslims strictly obeyed the Quran's teachings here, there would be no Muslim banks at all.
Muslims defend their practice of charging interest (usury) by saying that this was a 7th Century Arabian **cultural practice** and could be disregarded today. If this principle applied to all other cultural practices in Islam such as dress code, the five pillars, civil and dietary laws, then Islam would collapse immediately.
Either the Quran is **cultural** and **can be disobeyed**, or it is the **word of Allah** and **must be obeyed**.
- With Allah, is a Day Equal to 1 000 Years or 50 000 Years?**
"All will ascend to Him in a single day, a day whose space is a thousand years by your reckoning".(32:5). "angels and the spirit will ascend to Him in one day: a day whose space is fifty thousand years." (70:4). Which is right? – 1,000 years or 50,000 years? Let us be consistent.
- Did Jesus Die and Rise (19:33) or Did He Not Die (4:157)?**
"He spoke and said: He has ... ordained me a prophet. He has purged me of vanity and wickedness. Blessed was I on the day I was born, and blessed I shall be on the day of my death and on the day I shall be raised to life. Such was Jesus, the son of Mary.
That is the whole truth, which they still doubt." (19:33).
"They did not kill him, nor did they crucify him, but they thought they did. ... they did not slay him for certain. God lifted him up to Him." (4:157). 1012

Question: How can something stated in 19:33 be denied in 4:157? Which is correct?

Think: If Muslims and the Quran state that Jesus never died, but was taken up to heaven alive, then they must admit that:

- i) Jesus is **still alive today in heaven**, because people cannot die in heaven;
- ii) If Jesus has not died (and never will), then Mohammed **cannot claim to be Jesus' successor**.
- iii) If Jesus **never died** and Mohammed **did die**, then **Jesus is superior to Mohammed**.

7. **Did All of Noah's Sons Survive (21:76) or Did One Son Drown (11:42,43)?**

a) The Quran in 11:42 says that one of Noah's sons refused to enter the Ark and was drowned in the flood. "Noah cried out to his son, who stood apart "Embark with us, my child. Do not remain with the unbelievers!"

He replied: "I shall seek refuge in a mountain, which will protect me from the flood". ... the billows rolled between them, and **Noah's son was drowned**". (11:42,43).

b) The Quran contradicts itself in 21:76 by saying that **all Noah's kinsfolk** were saved: "Noah invoked us, and we answered his prayer. We **saved him** and **all his kinsfolk** from the **great calamity**." (21:76).

The Bible in Genesis 7:1,7,13 and 10:2,6,22 states that Noah's three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth, all entered the Ark and survived the flood.

Hence, the Bible and the Quran state that the Quran is wrong here in 11:42.

8. **Historical Characters Out of Their Time**

Mohammed and 7th Century Arabs did not think in terms of a historical time line as we do today. They viewed time as never ending cycles, with people of different periods living at the same time. This is why the Quran has Nimrod (2300 BC), Abraham (2000 BC), Moses (1500 BC), Haman (510 BC) and Mary (2 BC) all living and working together.

The Quran has the Flood (2418 BC), Tower of Babel (2250 BC) and Pharaoh (1500BC) all living at the same time. (28:38).

This is a **very serious** and **obvious blunder** that proves the Quran to be man-made and **NOT** the Word of God, because it violates Bible chronology and secular history. Examples include:

- i) "**Pharaoh** (1500 BC) said: Make me, **Haman** (510 BC), bricks of clay and build me a **tower** (2250 BC) that I may climb to the God of Moses." (28:38). Here the Quran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) telling Haman (510 BC) to build the Tower of Babel (2250 BC) with clay bricks to reach to heaven(40:36)
- ii) "When **Saul** marched out with his army, he said, Allah will put you to the proof at a certain river. He that drinks from it shall cease to be my soldier, but he that does not drink from it, or contents himself with a taste of it in the hollow of his hand, shall fight by my side." (Quran 2:249). Here the Quran confuses **King Saul** (1000 BC) with **Gideon** (1249 BC) eliminating his soldiers by the water drinking test.
- iii) "Pharaoh said, "... I will **crucify** you all". (7:124). Here the Quran has Pharaoh (1500 BC) threatening to crucify people, when crucifixion was not invented until over 1000 years later.
- iv) "We plagued them with **floods** and locusts, with lice and frogs and blood." (7:136). Noah's flood did not occur in Moses' day. Nor was a flood one of the 10 plagues on Egypt. The Quran is wrong in 17:101 "To Moses we gave **nine** clear signs." God sent **10 plagues on Egypt**, **not 9** (Exodus7-12)
- v) Mohammed confused **Mary the mother of Jesus** with **Miriam** (the daughter of Amran 3:34; 66:12) who was the **sister of Moses and Aaron**. "Carrying the child, she came to her people who said to her, **Mary**, this is indeed a strange thing! **Sister of Aaron** ..." (19:27,28,30). "In **Mary, Imran's** (Amram's) **daughter**, who preserved her chastity and into whose womb we breathed of our spirit". (66:12). Quran 66:12 proves the Quran **wrong** here because Mary, Jesus' mother, is stated as being the **daughter of Imran** (or Amram of Exodus 6:20) who was also the **father of Moses** and Aaron.

This mistake was made because Mary and Miriam are spelt the same in Arabic. Mohammed, not having a Bible, would have been unable to distinguish between the two. Mary did not give birth to Jesus under a palm tree (Q 19:22) but in a manger (eating-trough in a stable in Luke 2:1-20). Mohammed made up false speeches and miracles for Mary in 19:23-26.

9. **“The Jews say Ezra is the Son of God.”** (Quran 9:30).
The Quran is very wrong here because the Jews have never believed this. Why did Mohammed make up this false statement? Because he wanted an excuse to justify murdering the Jews.
10. **“Unbelievers are Those That say: “Allah is the Messiah, the Son of Mary.””** (5:72).
Christians never said that Allah is the name of the Messiah, Jesus Christ as 5:72 claims. The Messiah is Jehovah the Son, Jesus Christ, fully God & fully man, not Allah. Mistaken identity!
11. **A Carnal, Sinful Heaven.**
The Quran offers a heaven full of wine and free sex. (2:25; 4:57; 11:23; 47:15).
If drunkenness and gross immorality are sinful on earth, how are they right in heaven?
The Quran’s picture of paradise is exactly what a carnal, pagan 7th Century Arab male would have loved. What benefits do women have in heaven? Women don’t count!
12. **Mohammed Misunderstood What “Son of God” Meant.**
In Mohammed’s mind, to say that God had a Son was to blaspheme God because he thought it meant that God had a male body that had sexual intercourse with Mary.
“God forbid that he himself should beget a son!” (Quran 19:35).
“How should He have a son when he had **no consort**?” (Quran 6:101).
Jesus Christ was the “Son of God” **before** He was born of Mary (Proverbs 30:4; Psalm 2:12; Daniel 3:25; 7:13). Neither was Jesus created sexually. “Son of God” is a title of Jesus Christ.
“Son of God” does not mean that He was produced by sex between God and Mary.
Adam was called a “son of God” (Luke 3:38), but Adam was not created by God having sex with a woman. Angels are called “sons of God” (Job 1:6; 2:1), but God did not create them by sexual means. Jesus is the Huios (same nature) as God, not the Teknon boy of God. The Quran is 100% wrong here.
13. **Noah was age 600 years when the Flood came, not 950 years.** (Q29:14). See Genesis 7:11.
“We sent Noah to his people. He stayed with them 950 years, so the Flood overtook them.” 29:14.

20. ARABIAN, JEWISH AND CHRISTIAN SOURCES OF THE QURAN

Remember that in Mohammed’s lifetime the Old Testament and New Testament had not been translated into Arabic. Mohammed had the Jewish **“Targum”** and **“Apocryphal Gospels”** which contained many fictitious stories which he made small changes to and put them into the Quran. This proves that Mohammed wrote the Quran from earthly sources available to him. Therefore the Quran is not of heavenly origin, nor should we believe it as God’s Word.

- 1. Arabian Sources** The Quran repeats Arabian fables as if they were true. Examples include:
- i) The story of **an entire village of people who were turned into apes for fishing on the Sabbath day**, was a popular legend in Mohammed’s day.
“Each Sabbath the fish appeared before them floating on the water, but on the week days they never came near them. Thus did we tempt them because they had done wrong.” (7:163).
“We said to them, “Turn into detested apes”.” (7:166; 2:65).
- ii) The story of **seven men and their animals who slept for 309 years in a cave and then woke up** (Q 18:9-26): “We made them sleep in the cave for many years, and then awakened them (Q 18:12) after 309 years.” (18:26).
- iii) The fable of **four dead cut-up birds getting up and flying** was well known in Mohammed’s time: “Take four birds, cut their bodies to pieces, Scatter them over the mountain tops, then call them back. They will come swiftly to you.” (Quran 2:260).

2. Jewish Sources. The Quran takes stories from the Jewish **Talmud**, the **Midrash** and **Apocrypha**. Abraham Geiger in 1833 and Abraham Katsh in 1954 (New York University) documented this.

i) The birth of Mary and **the story of Allah giving her food** comes from the *Protoevangelium* of James the Lesser.

“Whenever Zacharias visited her in the Shrine he found that she had food with her.

“Mary”, he said, “where is this food from?” “It is from Allah” she answered”. (Q 3:35-37).

ii) The Quran **19:22-26** claims that **Mary gave birth to Jesus under a palm tree** which gave her fresh ripe dates. This came from the *Protoevangelium* of James the Lesser.

iii) Sura **27:17-44** comes from the *Second Targum* of Esther.

Solomon’s forces of jinn (demons), men and birds were called to Solomon. The lapwing was absent, so Solomon threatened to kill it. The lapwing on arrival told Solomon about the Queen of Sheba ruling a nation of idolators. One of Solomon’s jinn offered to bring her throne 600 miles in an instant. When the Queen came to Solomon, she submitted to Allah.

iv) In **2:259** we read the unrealistic tale about **Allah causing a man and his ass to die for 100 years**, then raising them up to see that his food and drink had not rotted.

This was a Jewish fable that Mohammad put in the Quran.

v) In the *Targum of Jerusalem*, the Targum of Jonathan ben Uzziyah, and in *pirke Rabbi Eleazer*, we find the legend of how, **when Cain killed his brother Abel, a raven taught him how to bury the dead body**. This story was included in the Quran in **5:30,31**: “Then Allah sent down a raven which dug the earth to show him how to bury the naked corpse of his brother.”

vi) The story of **two angels, Harut and Marut, who teach mankind magic** and cause division between man and wife, was taken from the *Midrash Yalkut* Chapter 44 and included in Quran **2:102**.

vii) The story in the Quran **7:171** of **Allah lifting up Mount Sinai** and holding it over the Jews’ heads as a threat to squash them if they rejected the law came from the Jewish book *Abodah Sarah*. “We suspended the mountain over them (they feared it was falling down on them) ...” 7:171.

viii) Mohammed taught that a **scale will be used on judgment day to weigh a person’s good deeds and bad deeds**, to determine whether one goes to heaven or hell. He learned this from the *Testament of Abraham* and put it in the Quran **101:6-9**. “Then he whose scales are heavy shall dwell in bliss; but he whose scales are light, the Abyss shall be his home.” (101:6-9).

The problem with this is that, compared with God, we are all big sinners, none of us are righteous.

Mohammed is comparing sinners with sinners, but if the true Holy God was writing it, sinners would be compared to God.

ix) The idea of **seven hells** and **seven heavens** comes from the Jewish books *Zohar* and the *Hagigah*. “God created the seven heavens one above the other” (**71:15; 67:3; 65:12**). The Bible (2 Corinthians 12:2) says there are only **three heavens**: the atmosphere, space and where God’s throne is located.

x) The false story of **Jesus as a baby speaking in the cradle**, came from Egypt (150 AD). Mohammed wrote this in the Quran **19:29,30**, copying it from the false *First Gospel of the Infancy of Jesus Christ*.

xi) The false story of **Jesus as a child making clay birds and breathing life into them**, was copied from *Thomas’ Gospel of the Infancy of Christ* and placed in the Quran (**3:49**).

The Bible tells us in John 2:11 that Jesus’ **first miracle** was at Cana of Galilee, not as a child.

xii) The Jewish idea, “**whosoever kills a man**, it shall be as if he had killed the whole of mankind”, was written in *Mishna Sanhadrin* (4:5) and found its way into the Quran (**5:32**).

xiii) The tale of **Abraham being delivered from Nimrod’s fire** (Q **37:97,98**) came from the *Midrash Rabbah*, because the city of “Ur” sounded like fire “Or” in Aramaic.

3. Pagan Sources. Mohammad got some of his ideas from Hinduism and Zoroastrianism.

The following were previously known stories which were later attributed to Mohammad:

- i) The flying trip through the seven heavens.
- ii) The Houries of paradise.
- iii) Paradise with rivers of wine and women (Persian origin).
- iv) The Peacock story.
- v) Praying five times a day toward Mecca, came from the Serbians.
- vi) Imraul Qaais' daughter, on hearing Q 54:1,29,31,46, recognised them as her father's poem and demanded to know how her father's verses had become part of divine revelation, supposedly preserved on stone in heaven. (Dr A Shorroh p 193).
- vii) Worshipping at the Kabah stone.
- viii) Fasting for part of a day for one month.
- ix) Temporary marriage (Muta) was a well-known pagan Arabian custom.
- x) Cutting off a thief's hand (Q 5:38) came from the Code of Hammurabi, Law 253.

Conclusion: Although devout Muslims sincerely believe that Islam's doctrines came from heaven and not from earthly sources, historians have clearly proven them to come from pre-Islamic Arabian culture. Thus, Mohammad did not preach anything new.

Even the idea of the one true God was borrowed from Jews and Christians.

These facts prove Islam to be false, Allah is not God, Mohammed was not His prophet and the Quran is not the Word of God.

21. NONSENSE IN THE HADITH

Muslims believe that the *Hadith* is just as divinely inspired and as authoritative as the Quran.

The *Hadith* is a collection of early Muslim traditions which record Mohammed's words and deeds according to his wives, family, friends and Muslim leaders.

The Muslim scholar, Dr Muhammed Hamidullah, in *Introduction to Islam* states that, "The original teachings of Islam are found above all in the Quran and the *Hadith*" (p 250), and that these are "the basis of all Islamic law" (p 163), and "both the Quran and *Hadith* are based on divine inspiration". (p 23).

The Muslim writer, Abdalatati, in his book *Islam in Focus* says,

"All the articles of faith are based upon and derived from the Quran and the Traditions (Hadith) of Muhammed." (p 21).

Hence, orthodox Muslims consider the *Hadith* to be divinely inspired and authoritative.

We use the nine-volume translation of Al-Bukhari's Hadith by Dr Muhammad Muhsin Khan entitled *The Translation of the Meaning of Sahih Al-Bukhari*. (Kazi Publications, Lahore, Pakistan, 1979).

It is recommended and approved by all Muslim authorities.

The Introduction states: "Al-Bukhari only chose 7275 Hadiths, of which there is **no doubt about their authenticity**. Allah revealed to Muhammad the Glorious Quran and the *Second Inspiration* ie: his traditions".

"Al-Bukhari's work is the most authentic book after the Quran." (p 14).

Every Muslim must believe and obey the *Hadith*.

Key: Many Muslims, when confronted with some of Mohammed's absurd teachings in the *Hadith*, will deny the *Hadith's* authority and inspiration.

Mohammed's absurd statements in the *Hadith* prove clearly that it could not be God inspired.

Muslims, when faced with Mohammed's absurd statements in the *Hadith*, are forced to:

- i) **defend the ridiculous** and to bury their rational mind in an attempt to defend the indefensible; or
- ii) **admit that Muhammed is not a true prophet of God**, that Muhammed is wrong, and that they must hence leave Islam as error.

Any thinking, honest Westerner, when faced with Muhammed's foolish statements in the *Hadith*, would never consider Islam as a serious religion again.

The *Hadith* sets forth the rules and rituals Muslims must follow to earn their salvation and obtain Allah's forgiveness. One mistake can cancel all good works you have done so far.

Consider these "gems of wisdom" from Muhammed in the *Hadith*:

1. **He did not like people asking him questions** about his claims to prophethood or revelation. He said: "Allah has hated you..for asking too many questions". (Vol 2, No 555 and Vol 3, No 591).
2. When a Muslim man converted to Christianity, died and was buried, the **earth would not accept his body but kept throwing it out of the grave**. (Vol 4, No 814, **3617**).
3. **Shouting Food**.
As Muhammed ate food, the food would shout out loud and glorify Allah (Vol 4, No 779, **3579**).
4. **Muhammed taught that the majority of people in hell were women**.
The Prophet said, "I was shown the Hell-fire and the majority of its dwellers were women".
5. **Women are deficient in intelligence**. (Vol 1, No 28,301 and Vol 2, No 161).
Vol 2, No 541 tells us that most people in hell are women because,
"O women! I have not seen anyone more deficient in intelligence and religion than you."
This is why women are not given equal rights under Islamic law.
6. **A woman's court testimony is worth only half that of a man**. "The Prophet said: "Isn't the witness of a woman equal to half that of a man?" The woman said, "Yes". He said, "This is because of the deficiency of a woman's mind". (Vol 3, No 826).
7. Muhammad taught that **people are tortured in hellfire because they soil themselves with urine**. (Vol 2, No 443, **1378**). "One of the major sins is not to protect oneself (one's clothes and body) from one's urine. Once the Prophet, while passing a graveyard, heard the voices of two persons being tortured in their graves. The Prophet then said: "Yes! (they are being tortured for a major sin). Indeed, one of them never saved himself from being soiled with his urine". (Vol.1, Ch 57,215)
What about when some people become old and incontinent? Do they become outcasts?
8. **Muhammed ordered people to drink camel urine mixed with milk as medicine**.
"So the Prophet ordered them to go to the herd of camels and to drink their milk and urine (as a medicine)". (Vol 1, No 234, **233**).
9. **Rules for urinating and defecating are:**
 - i) You must not face Mecca when urinating or defecating. (Vol 1, No **144, 145, 148, 149**).
 - ii) You must not use your right hand to hold or wipe yourself. (Vol 1, No **153, 154**).
 - iii) Whoever cleans his private parts with stones should do it with an odd number of stones. (Vol 1, No 162). This was because he was superstitious about odd numbers.
 - iv) He feared that evil spirits might enter his body whenever he urinated or defecated. Thus he prayed for special protection. (Vol 1, No 144).
10. **He was afraid of a strong wind**: "Narrated Anas: Whenever a strong wind blew, anxiety appeared on the Prophet's face (fearing that the wind might be a sign of Allah's wrath)." (Vol 2, No **1034**).
11. **The Fly in the Cup**: If a fly falls into your cup, do not worry about it because Muhammed said that while one wing has the disease, the other wing has the antidote. So drink up. (Vol 4, No 537).
12. **600 Wings**: Muhammed tells us that the angel Gabriel has 600 wings. (Vol 6, No 380).
13. **Satan stays in the upper part of the nose all night**" (Vol 4, No 156) so said Muhammad.
This is why he would suck in water up his nose and then blow it out.

14. **Satan urinates in your ears** if you fall asleep during prayers. (Vol 2, No **1144**).
15. **Passing wind:** Muhammed tells us that if you commit the sin of “hadath” (passing wind out the bowel) while you are praying, then Allah will not hear your prayers. (Vol 1, No **445**; Vol 9, No 86)
16. **Bad breath** means that Allah will not hear your prayers. You may not eat garlic before prayers.
17. **Yawning is from Satan** according to Muhammed in Vol 4, No 509.
It was really Muhammed, not God, that was offended by yawning, bad breath and passing wind, so he banned them in Allah’s name. Illiterate people believed him or they’d be killed.
18. **What do spirits eat?** The jinn or spirits eat dung and bones, according to Muhammed. Vol 5, 200
19. **Muhammed spat** into the hands of his followers so they could smear his saliva on their faces.
“Whenever Allah’s Apostle spitted, the spittle would fall in the hand of one of them who would rub it on his face and skin”. (Vol 3, No 891; Vol.1, Chap.70, **241**).
20. **Adam was 90 feet tall** states Muhammed in Vol 4, No 543.
“The Prophet said, “Allah created Adam, making him 60 cubits tall (90 feet)”.”
How tall was Eve, and their children? Why are we not that tall?
Which Muslim will defend this idea of a 90 ft tall Adam?
21. **Stars as missiles.** The stars were created by Allah as missiles to throw at devils, to keep them away from listening to God’s conversations, according to Muhammed in Vol 4,Ch3, p282. **Q41:12**
22. **Muhammed had no assurance of salvation.** “The Prophet said, “By Allah, though I am the Apostle of Allah, yet I do not know what Allah will do to me”.” (Vol 5, No 266). (**Q 46:9**).
23. **Death to those leaving Islam.** The *Hadith* makes the repeated claim that no-one ever leaves Islam: “Does anybody who embraces Islam become displeased and renounce Islam afterwards? I replied “No”.” (Vol 1, No 6 and 48).
Then it contradicts itself by saying that death is the punishment for those who leave: “The Prophet said: “ If a Muslim discards his religion, **kill him**”.” (Vol 4, No 260). (**Q 4:89**).
It even records the execution of those who left Islam for another religion (Vol 5, No 630).
Hadith (Vol 9) warns those leaving Islam that they will be murdered. (p 10,11,26,45-50, 341,342).
Vol 9, No 64 says, “So wherever you find them kill them, for whoever kills them shall have reward on the Day of Resurrection”.
23. **Gabriel opened Mohammed’s chest** and washed his insides with Zam-Zam water.
He poured wisdom and faith into his chest and then closed it up. (Vol 1, No 345; Vol.2, **1636**).
24. **Muhammed cuts the moon in half.** When the Meccans asked Muhammed to do a miracle to prove he was Allah’s prophet, he supposedly reached up with his sword and cut the moon in half. This is stated as fact in Vol 4, No **3636, 3637, 3638**; Vol 5, No 208; Vol 6, No 387, 388, 389, 390.
How the two sides of the moon were put together and by whom, we are not told. That would have been an even greater miracle. Maybe Muhammed had a sword that was 250,000 miles long. The Arabs of 600 AD believed that the sun and moon were the actual size they appeared to the naked eye. Why did he have to conquer the Meccans by force? Would not such a miracle convert them?
25. **A palm tree cried like a baby** because Muhammed preached from a pulpit instead of standing beneath the tree to preach. So Muhammed left his pulpit and caressed its trunk until it stopped crying. (Vol 2, No 41; Vol 4, No **3583, 3584, 3585**).
26. **Muhammed referred to black people as raisin heads** (Vol 1, No 662 and Vol 9, No 256).

27. **Muhammed owned black slaves.** When Al-Khattab came to Muhammed's house, he found "a black slave of Allah's apostle sitting on the first step". (Vol 6, No 435). Jesus Christ did not own slaves, but came to set men free. Luke 4:18.
28. **Muhammed was a white man, not black** as some claim. A man entered a mosque and asked "Who among you is Mohammed?" We replied, "This white man reclining on his arm". (Vol 1, No 63). Also Vol 2, No 122 refers to Muhammed as a white person.
29. **Bad tempered.** Since he claimed to be a prophet, a man asked Muhammed where to find his lost camel. "The Prophet got angry and his cheeks and face became red." (Vol 1, No 91).
30. **Sins of Muhammed** included torturing people by:
- i) cutting off their hands and feet;
 - ii) burning their eyes out with hot irons (Vol 1, No 234);
 - iii) leaving them to bleed to death after cutting off their limbs (Vol 8, No 794, 795);
 - iv) making people die of thirst.
- Jesus Christ was the only one not touched (corrupted) by Satan at birth (Vol 4, No 506). This means Muhammed was touched by sin. Jesus being sinless, is superior to Muhammed being a sinner. Therefore Jesus can save us, but Muhammed cannot.
31. **People could turn into rats, monkeys, apes and pigs** according to Muhammed who claimed that Jews were transformed into rats. (Vol 4, No 524, 569). (**Q 5:60**).

Conclusion: There are no recorded miracles of Muhammed in the Quran, as he readily admitted. But after his death, his disciples began to invent miracles for him in order to escape the embarrassment that he was inferior to the miracles of Moses, Jesus and pagan soothsayers. Many of his pretended miracles were originally performed by Jesus, Moses and pagan magicians, but now transferred to Muhammed.

22. JIHAD or HOLY WAR

The *Hadith* is filled with commands to **make violent war on non-Muslims** in order to force them to become Muslims. Muhammed wanted Islam to be spread mainly by the sword. Jihad was so important to Muhammed that he made it the **second most important deed in Islam**.

Allah's apostle was asked, "What is the best deed?" He replied, "To believe in Allah and his Apostle". The questioner asked, "What is the next (in goodness)?"

He replied, "To participate in Jihad (religious fighting) in Allah's cause." (Vol 1, No 25).

Muslims must force Jews, Christians & pagans to embrace Islam or pay the Jizya tax for non-Muslims. Jihad uses several methods:

1. **Jihad of the Sword.** People must either convert or by military violence be killed and enslaved. Muhammed warned the Byzantine king, "If you become a Muslim you will be safe". (Vol 1, No 6). If the king did not convert, he and his kingdom would be destroyed and enslaved. In Vol 3, No 495 we read, "Allah made the Prophet wealthy through conquests".
Key: When a Muslim murdered someone during a Jihad, he got to take the man's property. The prophet said, "Whoever has killed an enemy & has proof of that, will possess his spoils". Vol 4, 379 This is the driving force behind Muslim violence in Africa today. In Nigeria and Sudan, over 1 million Christians and pagans have been brutally slaughtered and enslaved by Jihad because they would not become Muslims. "Our Prophet has ordered us to fight you, till you worship Allah alone or give Jizya." (Vol 4, 386)
2. **Jihad of Taxation.** Those who refuse to become Muslims must pay a special tax called Al-Jizya (Vol 4, Chapter 21, p 251-2). This financial burden suppresses non-Muslims, making their life as hard as possible. (**Q 9:29**).

3. **Jihad of Financial Reward.** In Iraq a free university education has been offered to any Jew or Christian who will embrace Islam.
\$1000 is offered to any South African black who will renounce Christianity and embrace Islam. They will be paid \$500 for any other blacks they convert to Islam.
In Tanzania, a Muslim receives 25,000 shillings for winning a Christian to Islam, and 100,000 shillings (\$150) for winning a priest or pastor to Islam.
No church is allowed to be built on Saudi soil, in order to suppress Christianity.
4. **Jihad of Fear.** The death penalty is applied to anyone who renounces Islam to follow another religion such as Christianity. In Egypt, many Christians are being tortured in prison, whose only “crime” was to convert to Christianity.
5. **Jihad of Kidnapping and Slavery.** The only place in the world today where black slavery occurs is in Muslim countries. Sudanese Muslims capture and sell black women and children of the Dinka Christian tribe for \$15 each (*London Economist*, Jan 1990).
Non-Muslim women who go to Saudi Arabia to work as maids are often enslaved, beaten and raped by their Muslim employers. When they try to escape, the Saudi government will not let them leave the country, but returns them to their masters.
6. **Jihad of the Courts.** Non-Muslims are denied equal access to and equal protection before the law, because their testimony in court is not valid against a Muslim. (Vol 3, Chap 31, p 525, 526). This applies even to murder: “No Muslim should be killed for killing an infidel.” (Vol 4, 283; Vol 9, 50)
7. **Jihad of Paradise.** Any Muslim who is killed while fighting in a Jihad is told that he will go straight to the sexual pleasures of paradise. (Vol 1, No 35 and Vol 4, No 386). (**Q 3:195**)
8. **Jihad of Breeding.** Muslims are told to marry several wives and breed more Muslim children in order to overpopulate the world, migrate to the West, become a majority and take over politically.

23. ISLAM AND VIOLENCE

Why do Muslims commit such horrific acts of violence? They are simply being true to what their religion dictates. Allah in Q 9:19-22 states that Jihad attracts more rewards than other religious duties in Islam. “If victory is won in Jihad, Muslims receive the enormous booty of a country, which cannot be equalled to any other source of income. If there is defeat or death, there is everlasting paradise.” (Q 61:10-12).

Hence Jihad is NOT extremism, but normal in Islam.

A Christian once asked a Muslim man, “What would you do if your son becomes a Christian?” He replied, “I’d cut his throat”.

The greatest hindrance to a Muslim following Christ is **FEAR** of what other Muslims would do to him.

Where immediate invasion of a country is not possible, the **policy** has always been as follows:

“Migrate to Christian areas because they are tolerant. Pretend to be peaceful, friendly and hospitable; begin to clamour for religious, political and social rights and privileges that you will not allow Christians in an Islamic country; breed fast there and settle down; as you increase in a particular area, insist that there should be no Christian activities in your community. You may speak or write to discredit their religion, but they must not talk about Islam. Begin to expand your community. Christian activities should be restricted in all the places you expand to; the moment you have enough military might against the “disbelievers”, these trinitarian *kaferis*, go ahead and eliminate them or suppress them as much as you can, and be in control.” (*Who is This Allah*, G J O Moshay, p 18).

A typical Muslim, following the Quran, must be violent, especially if he wants to get any reward in heaven. “Whoso fights in the way of Allah, be he slain or be he victorious, on him we (Allah) shall bestow a **vast reward.**” (Q 4:74).

In the *Hadith, Mishkat* (p 721, 810) Muhammad said, “The **last hour** will not come before the **Muslims fight the Jews** and the **Muslims kill them**”. Read Ezekiel 37-39 to see what God will do to Iran, Libya, Sudan, Turkey and Russia when they invade Israel.

Many Westerners who are bothered by Islamic terrorism, are so engrossed with technology that they forget history. Islam originally meant “bravery, heroism, defiance of death, to die in battle.”

Ayatollah Khomeini said, “**The purest joy in Islam is to kill and be killed for Allah**”. (*The Arabs*, D Lamb p 287).

In 1984 he said, “**In order to achieve the victory of Islam in the world**, we need to **provoke repeated crises**, restore value to the idea of death and **martyrdom**. The important thing is to engulf the world in crises”. (*Le Point Magazine* No 599, 12 March 1984, p 89,91).

Serious Muslims are morbidly worried about the way Christianity is growing today. “Kuwait (a Muslim country) had just one Arab Christian family 50 years ago. Now they have over 35 evangelical churches in Kuwait”. In 2000, 5.3% of Kuwait claims to be Christian. Indonesia has over 6000 full-time Christian missionaries and 10% of its 200 million people claim to be Protestants.

Question: How can Islam spread without using violence?

What message of salvation have they to offer to a sinning, dying world, except to repeat “Allah is great” one million times? Muslims see Christianity as its greatest threat in any land.

What Muslims need is a complete overhaul of the heart, a spiritual heart transplant, an operation done by the Spirit of God on their hearts, and to be born again.

Until a Muslim is born again, he cannot be peaceful.

To imagine a real, peaceful, gentle Muslim is like imagining a round square or a holy devil.

Who is this Allah that is so offended by the Gospel of Christ? Can he be the God of the Bible who said, “This is my beloved Son, hear him”. (Luke 9:35).

Jesus said to Christians, “Whoever killeth you will think that he doeth God service. These things will they do unto you, because they have not known the Father, nor me”. (John 16:2,3).

The Allah that Muslims claim is God, is not the true God.

Muslim Violence in Nigeria includes these examples:

1. In 1980 the Islamic uproar in Kano saw 4,177 people slaughtered.
2. On 30 October 1983, eight big church buildings were burnt in Kano.
3. In 1984, Muslims in Yola and Jimeta went berserk killing 700 people and rendering 6000 people homeless.
4. In March 1987, Muslim students went on a rampage in Kafanchan, spreading to Kaduna and Zaria. All 150 churches but one in Zaria were burnt down in three days of Jihad. Many Christians were killed. The cause of the riot was a female Muslim student who accused a preacher of misinterpreting the Quran.

The Muslim atrocities against Christians in Nigeria and Sudan are so unspeakable that decency forbids a discussion of them.

For Islam, peace is not achieved until Islam has swallowed the nations.

To **Muslims**, **peace means total eradication of their enemies**. Nobody should even think of giving peace a chance in a nation with a large number of Muslims. Peace to Islam does not mean happy co-existence, but it means **destruction of their enemies**.

For Muslims, it does not take two to fight; all they need to do is to take the Quran seriously. When the International Islamic Conference was held in Britain in 1976, Muslims determined & vowed “If we can win London for Islam, it won’t be hard to win the whole Western world”. (*Battle Cry*, Chick, Sept 1990)

Challenge: If Muslims want their god, Allah, to rule us in the free world, they should allow us to study their god thoroughly first:

1. Do we want to **lose** our freedom of religion, freedom of speech, freedom of the press, and lose our basic human rights?
2. Do women want to **lose** their right to vote? Do we want the god of Saudi Arabia where women cannot drive a car? Should a wife need an exit permit from her husband to leave the house? Muslims do not want to be offended, but they can go to any length to offend and assault Christianity. If we take the attitude of “live and let live” towards Islam, it will surely live; but it will live to destroy us and our freedoms.

Question: Why are you a Muslim?

Answer: Not because you sat down and compared different religions to see which one had the Divine supernatural credentials. You are a Muslim because centuries ago Muslims invaded your country, **killed your ancestors** and threatened everybody else with death unless they became Muslim.

Why be loyal to Islam when Muslims murdered your ancestors and would do the same to you today?

Ask: We must study who this Allah (the god of the Quran) really is, who has been inspiring Muslims to **hate Christ** and to **murder Christians**.

Could Allah be the devil disguising himself as God? Is Islam a case of mistaken identity?

If Muslims are convinced that a person is blaspheming Allah or Mohammed, why don't they let Allah or Muhammed punish the blasphemer? Is Allah so weak that he needs weak human beings to defend him? If Allah is so powerful, let Allah punish his Christian enemies.

The first war the Israelites fought was because of a direct assault from the Amalakites. Israel never started an unprovoked war.

When King David wanted to build a temple for God, God told him,

“Thou shalt not build an house for my Name, because thou hast been a man of war, and hast shed blood.” (I Chronicles 28:2,3).

This is the **God of the Bible - a peacelover**.

We are sure He is completely different from the Allah god of the war-making Mohammed.

Allah promises great rewards in paradise to Muslims who shed blood.

The God of the Bible disapproves of murder and says that **murderers shall not inherit the Kingdom of God:**

“The works of the flesh are these ... **murders** ... they which do such things shall not inherit the Kingdom of God. The fruit of the Spirit is **love, joy, peace, ...**” (Galatians 5:21,22).

“Ye know that **no murderer** hath eternal life abiding in him.” (I John 3:15).

“But ...**murderers ...all liars** shall have their part in the lake which burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death.” (Revelation 21:8).

Muslims who are murderers and Allah who is a liar, “deceiving who he will” (Q 74:31) will be thrown into the lake of fire.

The true religion will have Satan as an enemy who must be fought against with the strongest weapons available. With what weapons does Allah recommend to fight Satan? Stones and pebbles, because every Muslim pilgrim to Mecca must throw seven pebbles at a pillar regarded as the great Satan. Throwing pebbles cannot hurt a spirit. Satan must be laughing at such foolishness.

Muslims saw that Mohammed by using peaceful means could only convert 100 people in 13 years, but through raiding, looting and holy war, he could force or entice hundreds of thousands of people to embrace Islam in no time at all. “War is ordained for you.” (Q 2:216).

According to Islam, Muhammed is the perfect man, so all Muslims should treat their enemies, their wives and other people as Muhammed set the example.

New Muslim converts were gained by them seeing **Allah fixing their economic problems** by allowing them to raid and loot surrounding tribes all year round.

Muslim **hunger** was satisfied by the silly story that “when any dweller of paradise desires bird meat, the bird will automatically fly to him, well roasted and sliced into pieces. After eating their fill, the remaining birds will fly away.” (*Hadith*).

24. JESUS CHRIST STATED THAT HE WOULD SOON DIE ON THE CROSS

" he that believeth not shall be damned." Mark 16:16

I. 29 Direct Statements by Jesus Christ Himself of His Death at Jerusalem in 33AD.

Matthew 12:40 So shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

Matthew 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders, and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day. (Mark 8:31; Luke 9:22)

Luke 9:30,31 There talked with him two men, which were Moses and Elias: who appeared in glory, and spoke of his decease which he should accomplish at Jerusalem.

Matthew 20:17-19 Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the 12 disciples apart on the way, and said unto them, Behold we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of Man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the scribes, and they shall condemn him to death, and shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, & to scourge, and to crucify him: & the third day he shall rise again. Mk10:32-34; Lk 18:33

Matthew 20:28 The Son of Man came..to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many. Mark 10:45

Matthew 21:37,39 But last of all he sent unto them his Son... (Mark 12:78; Luke 20:15). And they caught him, and cast him out of the vineyard and slew him. He spake of them. (v.45).

Matthew 26:2 After two days...the Son of Man is betrayed to be crucified.

Matthew 26:12 In that she hath poured this ointment on my body, she did it for my burial. (John 12:7)

Matthew 27:35 And they crucified him.

Matthew 27:38 Then were there two thieves crucified with him.

Matthew 27:50 Jesus when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost. (Luke 23:46).

Matthew 27:53 And came out of the graves after his resurrection.

Matthew 27:57,58 Joseph...went to Pilate, and begged the body of Jesus.

Matthew 27:63 That deceiver said, while he was yet alive, after three days I will rise again.

Matthew 28:5 The angel answered ... I know that ye seek Jesus, which was crucified.

Matthew 28:6,7 Come, see the place where the Lord lay...tell his disciples that he is risen from the dead. (Luke 24:4-8). (*Spoken by angels*).

Mark 9:9 And as they came down from the mountain, he charged them that they should tell no man what things they had seen, till the Son of man were risen from the dead.

Mark 9:31 He... said unto them, the Son of Man is delivered into the hands of men, and they shall kill him; and after that he is killed, he shall rise the third day.

Luke 23:43 Jesus said unto him... "Today shalt thou be with me in paradise."

Luke 24:46-48 Jesus...said unto them, "Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day ...And ye are witnesses of these things."

John 2:19-22 "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up...But he spake of the temple of his body. When therefore he was risen from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this unto them; and they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said."

John 3:14 "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up: that whosoever believeth in him should not perish but have everlasting life."

John 8:28 Then said Jesus..., "When ye have lifted up the Son of Man, then shall ye know that I am..."

John 10:15-17 I lay down my life for the sheep (v.15)...Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life, that I may take it again.

John 12:32,33 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me. This he said, signifying what death he should die.

John 19:30 When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, it is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost.

John 19:34 But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, and forthwith came there out blood and water. (*This is medical proof that Jesus was dead from a ruptured pericardium*).

John 20:19,20 Came Jesus and stood in the midst...he shewed unto them his hands and his side.

John 20:27 Then saith he to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side: and be not faithless but believing.

II. Witnesses who saw Jesus Christ being crucified:

- i) Simon a Cyrenian who carried his cross. (Mark 15:21).
- ii) Roman soldiers who crucified him and parted his garments. (Mark 15:24-26).
- iii) Two thieves who were crucified next to him. (Mark 15:27).
- iv) Passers by who recognized him and mocked Him. (Mark 15:29,30).
- v) Chief priests who mocked him at the cross. (Mark 15:31,32).
- vi) Centurion who said that He was the Son of God. (Mark 15:39).
- vii) Mary Magdalene, Mary mother of James, Joses, and Salome. (Mark 15:40).
- viii) Many other women which came up with him to Jerusalem. (Mark 15:41).
- ix) Joseph of Arimathea who begged the body of Jesus. (Mark 15:43-44).
- x) Jesus Himself on cross who said "It is finished: he bowed his head, & gave up the ghost" John 19:30
- xi) Angel at the tomb said "Ye seek Jesus of Nazareth which was crucified. (Mark 16:6).
- xii) A great company of people (Luke 23:27). All the people beholding. (Luke 23:48).
- xiii) Cleopas and his friend on the road to Emmaus. (Luke 24:18-23).
- xiv) Roman soldier who speared Jesus' side. (John 19:31-37).

III. Old Testament Prophets who said that Jesus Christ Would Die

Daniel 9:25,26 After 62 weeks (483 years) shall Messiah be cut off but not for himself: and the people (Romans) of the prince that shall come (antichrist) shall DESTROY the CITY (Jerusalem in 70 AD) and the SANCTUARY (Temple in 70 AD).

Zechariah 12:10 They (*the house of David*) shall look upon me (Jehovah) whom they (*the house of David*) have pierced.

Zechariah 13:6 And one shall say unto him (*Messiah at his second coming*), what are these wounds in thine hands? Then he shall answer, Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends.

Psalms 22:1 My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? This prophecies Jesus' words on the cross.

Psalms 22:14 I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax.

Psalms 22:15 My tongue cleaveth to my jaws; thou hast brought me into the dust of death.

Psalms 22:16 They pierced my hands and my feet.

Psalms 22:18 They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture.

Psalms 16:10 Neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption.

Isaiah 53:8 He was cut off out of the land of the living.

Isaiah 53:9 He made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death.

IV. Jesus Christ's Sacrificial Death was Announced in Seven Ways

- 1) The Sacrificial Lamb. John the Baptist announced Jesus Christ to Israel at His baptism, "Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world". (John 1:29,36).
- 2) The Destroyed Temple. Jesus answered the Jews, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. (v.19)...But he spake of the temple of his body." (John 2:19,21).
- 3) The Uplifted Serpent. Jesus told Nicodemus, "As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up, That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life." (John 3:14,15). Jesus compared himself to a serpent because on the cross, Jesus was made a curse for us and redeemed us from the curse of the law." (Galatians 3:13).
- 4) The Good Shepherd who willingly laid down his life for the sheep. "I lay down my life." John 10:17
- 5) The Corn of Wheat buried in the ground to bear much fruit. "The hour is come that the Son of man should be glorified...Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone: but if it die, it bringeth forth much fruit." (John 12:23,24). Jesus' body was like a dead seed when placed in the tomb, but was raised on the third day. Since then, gospel preaching has brought much fruit.
- 6) Jesus' Baptism in, under & up out of the water pictured His death, burial, resurrection. Matt.3:13-15 God the Father spoke from heaven. God the Son entered the water. God the Holy Spirit came on Jesus.
- 7) Jonah's 3 days and 3 nights in the whale's belly. Jesus identified Himself with Jonah to picture His soon death, burial and resurrection after 3 days. (Matthew 12:38-40).

If you don't believe this, you are damned (Mark 16:16), the wrath of God abides on you (John 3:36).

25. SIX BASIC MUSLIM BELIEFS

1. Belief in Allah who claims to be the only God. He is described in the Quran as being unknowable, impersonal, distant, unloving, not holy, unpredictable, the author of both good and evil, not a moral being, but of absolute power.
2. Angels.
3. The Quran is God's message, and the *Hadith* are authoritative.
4. Main prophets are: Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad.
5. Predestination - Everything that happens, both good and evil is predestined by Allah's will. They see Allah as the author of evil.
6. Day of Judgment - Good deeds are weighed against bad deeds to determine entry into heaven. All first go to hell. Nobody, not even Muhammad, is sure of going to heaven. Vol.1, 372-5; Vol.5,266.

26. SIX RELIGIOUS DUTIES OF ISLAM

1. Reciting the creed of Islam: "There is no god but Allah, and Muhammad is his prophet".
2. Prescribed prayers five times a day.
3. Observing the month of fasting each day, called Ramadan.
4. Giving money to the poor. This has created a class of professional beggars and has discouraged the provision of care for the needy.
5. Pilgrimage to Mecca, Muhammad's birthplace.
6. Involvement in Holy War (Jihad) against other religions.

The Crusades came as a response to Muslims attempting to conquer Christian lands. Islam conquered all of North Africa, then crossed the Strait of Gibraltar and took Spain. During Islam's first 100 years, they destroyed about 3200 churches, and much of the population became Muslims by force. These nations fell from being civilized to being poor and backward.

Islam is one of the greatest enemies of Christianity. Muslims view Christians as blasphemers for proclaiming Jesus Christ as the Son of God.

27. WHY YOU SHOULD NOT BECOME A MUSLIM (See page 993).

1. If you later on choose to leave Islam, **Muslims will kill you.**
2. If you are accused of stealing, you may have **your hand cut off.**
3. You will **lose your freedom of speech.**
4. You will enslave your future generations to a **religion of violence** against other religions, from which they cannot escape.
5. **You will end up in hell**, because they insist you reject Jesus Christ as Saviour. (John 8:24).
6. You will be called to **join a Jihad** to kill non-Muslims when your Islamic dictator ruler tells you.
7. As a woman, you will be a **second-class citizen** with half the rights of a man.

28. WHAT IS ALLAH LIKE? IS HE THE GOD OF THE BIBLE? NO!

Allah is totally different to Jehovah the triune God of the Bible. What differences exist between them?

1. Allah is a distant god. No-one can have a close personal relationship with him, as we can with the Biblical God.
2. Allah lacks attributes of holiness, love for sinners, and grace (undeserved favour in offering free salvation to all sinners).
3. Allah has a different nature and character. Allah only loves those who do good, but he is not merciful to those who do bad. He does not love the sinner, as the Biblical God does (John 3:16).
4. Allah is the author of evil, just as the Biblical devil is. The Biblical God is infinitely holy and righteous, and is not the author of evil.
5. Allah is not a Trinity of one God, existing as three persons, Father, Son and Holy Spirit (Mat28:19)
6. Allah was a pagan god before Muhammad was born. (Psalm 96:5).

29. ALLAH is like the Biblical SATAN, but different from the Biblical GOD JEHOVAH as in:

ALLAH	SATAN	JHVH (God of the Bible)
1. Allah is a murderer . ‘Muslims should strike off the heads of unbelievers in the battlefield and massacre them.’ (Q47:4).	‘The devil was a murderer from the beginning’ John 8:44	‘No murderer has eternal life’ (I John 3:15). Mat 5:44 ‘Love your enemies.’
2. Allah is a liar . ‘Allah misleads whom he will.’ (13:27).	‘The devil is a liar and the father of lies’. (John 8:44).	‘God that cannot lie .’ (Titus 1:2). (Hebrews 6:18) ‘Impossible for God to lie .’
3. Allah is a deceiver /seducer. Satan said, ‘Allah, since you have misled me’ 15:39 ‘Allah is the best of plotters.’ (Q 3:54; 8:30; 13:42).	‘Satan which deceives the whole world’. (Rev. 12:9). Satan said, ‘I will seduce/ deceive men on earth’. 15:39	‘God of truth ’ (Deuteronomy 32:4).
4. Allah does not love unbelievers . (Q 30:45; 5:87).	‘Jesus healed all that were oppressed of the devil’. Acts 10:38	JHVH loves unbelievers. ‘God so loved world’ Jn 3:16
5. Allah hates Jews . ‘Idolaters and Jews are the worst enemies of Muslims.’ (Q 5:82; 98:6).	‘Your adversary the devil.’ (I Peter 5:8).	JHVH loves Jews ‘They are beloved’ (Romans 11:28).
6. Allah hates Christians . ‘True Muslims do not choose to be friends with Christians’. (Q 5:57).	‘Your adversary the devil’. (I Peter 5:8).	JHVH loves Christians ‘He loved us’ (I John 4:8-11).
7. Allah hates Jesus being Son of God. ‘Allah can destroy the Messiah’ Q 5:17 ‘Never has Allah begotten a Son.’ 23:91	‘The dragon stood before the woman to devour her child as soon as it was born. Rev 12:4	‘Father loveth the Son .’ (John 3:35; 5:20).
8. Allah enslaves/binds people . ‘ slave-girls whom Allah has given you as booty.’ (Q 33:50).	‘whom Satan hath bound , these 18 years.’ Luke 13:16. ‘ snare of the devil, who are taken captives by him. 2 Tim 2:26	JHVH gives freedom from sin: ‘To proclaim liberty to the captives.’ Isa 61:1; Luk 4:18; Gal 5:1,13
9. Allah wants people to go to Hell . (Q 11:119; 32:13; 7:179. p 978). ‘I will fill hell with mankind.’ (11:119).	‘The devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone..’ (Rev. 20:10).	JHVH doesn’t . ‘God is not willing that any perish’. (2 Peter 3:9).
10. Allah permits murderers to build mosques . Mohommad elevated murder and war to the status of divine law. (p 973,1032 Umar built mosque in 637)		JHVH doesn’t . God forbid David building the temple. (I Chronicles 28:2,3).
11. Allah allows wife beating . ‘Those wives you fear disobedience..beat them.’ 4:34		JHVH doesn’t . (Eph 5:25) ‘Husbands love your wives’
12. Allah approves Mohammad taking other men's wives (Moh. took his son's wife, Zainab in Q 33:37,38 page 1001).		JHVH disapproved of David taking Bathsheba. (II Samuel 12:9).

30. THE SONSHIP OF JESUS CHRIST

Jesus Christ, being the Son of God and the second person of the Trinity Godhead, has been a major offence to Muslims.

Question: Is Jesus Christ the Son of God? Can God have a Son? Bible says “Yes”. Quran says “No” Because Christians insist that Jesus Christ is the Son of the living God, the Quran says, “Allah’s curse be upon them”. (9:30). If a Muslim believes the Quran, he cannot believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

What evidence proves that Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and God the Son?

1. The Quran is full of statements saying that Jesus is not the Son of God. The Bible describes Jesus as the Son of God. Which is right? English has only one word for son, but the Greek of the New Test. has **2 words** for “son”, “**Teknon**” meaning “boy” which is never used to describe Jesus as Son of God. The other word is “**HUIOS**” meaning Jesus is the “**SAME NATURE AS**” God. Eg: Son of **peace** (Luke 10:6); Barnabas “son of **consolation**” (Acts 4:36); “children of **disobedience**” Eph 2:2

2. The Allah of Muhammad hates Jesus being the “Son of God”, as seen here:
 - a) “They said Allah has a Son? NEVER! Say “He is Allah alone; God the eternal! He begetteth not, and he is not begotten (3). There is none like Him.” (112:4). This is the key Sura for all Muslims.
 - b) “God forbid that He Himself should beget a Son.” (Q 19:35).
 - c) “God is but one God. God forbid that He should have a Son!” (Q 4:171).
 - d) Because God having a Son cannot be imagined by men, does not make it impossible with God. “How should He have a Son when He had no consort?” (Q 6:101).

Notice that this is NOT Allah speaking (because it is written in the third person “He”). This disproves the Muslim claim that all the words spoken in the Quran are spoken by Allah. **Key: Mohammad never knew Greek**, so he never understood that Jesus is not the TEKNON (boy of God), but the HUIOS Son of God with the SAME NATURE as God. Eg: “son of peace” means one has the nature of peace. This is fatal to Islam, proving the Quran is man-made, not from God.
3. The Quran misunderstands the Trinity by saying, “Unbelievers say: “Allah is one of three”.”(5:73) Christians never believed this. Christians believe that God is One God, in three persons (Father, Son and Holy Spirit). (Matthew 28:19; I John 5:7; II Cor. 13:14; Isaiah 48:16).
4. The Quran misunderstands when Jesus became the Son, thinking that He became God’s Son when he was born of Mary: “How should He have a Son when he had no consort?” (Q 6:101). The Bible prophets (Daniel, David, Solomon, Isaiah) teach that Jesus, the Son of God, existed eternally in the past, well before He was born of Mary.
 - a) “Who hath established all the ends of the earth? What is his name, and what is his SON’S name” (Proverbs 30:4 in 1000 BC).
 - b) “Kiss the SON, lest he be angry, and ye perish from the way.” (Psalm 2:12).
 - c) “The form of the fourth is like the SON of God.” (Daniel 3:25 in 550 BC).
 - d) “Unto us a SON is given ... his name shall be called the Mighty God.” (Isaiah 9:6 in 700 BC).
5. If Allah is indeed “All-wise, and All-knowing” as the Quran tells us, we would expect Allah to correctly understand the Bible’s doctrine of the Trinity (Father, Son and Holy Spirit) and not to think of the Trinity as Father, Son and Mary, as in 5:116. “Allah will say: “Jesus, Son of Mary, did you ever say to mankind: “Worship me, and my mother as gods, besides Allah?”” (5:116).
6. If Allah has three daughters “Al-Lat, Al-Uzza, Manat” (53:19,20), why can’t God have a Son? God said at Jesus’ baptism, ‘Thou art my beloved Son (huios), in whom I am well pleased’ Mrk1:11
7. In *Hadith Kudsi* Allah is quoted as saying, “The poor are members of my family (my sons).” Here Allah talks of “my family.” If Muslims have this statement in their *Hadith*, why do they object to the Christian God having a Son? Why do they presume that Jesus’ Sonship had a sexual origin? It is pride and arrogance for man to insist he must understand everything about something before accepting its reality. We believe it because God said it, whether or not we understand it. The Trinity doctrine is the belief that God is made up of three parts, and the HUIOS is one of them.
8. The belief by Muslims that Jesus was supernaturally born of a virgin, opens the door to other supernatural possibilities. Two are: **a)** The deity of Jesus Christ; **b)** Jesus being the Son of God. “I (Holy Spirit) have come to give you a holy son”. “How shall I (Mary) bear a child when I have neither been touched by any man nor ever been unchaste?” said Mary. “That is easy enough for Me ... Thereupon she conceived.” (Q 19:20-22). So, the Quran’s question in 6:101 “How should he have a son when he had no consort (wife)?”, let Allah answer: “That is easy enough for me.” (19:22).
9. If the nature of man is a mystery, how much greater a mystery is the nature of God? If man is a triune being (body, soul, spirit) (I Thessalonians 5:23), each part of which is 100% human, then why can’t God be a Trinity (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) (Matthew 28:19) each part of which is 100% God, especially since God created man in His own image and likeness? (Genesis 1:26,27). We would expect God and man to have a Triune similarity (Ans 462; Understanding p1266-1273)

10. (a) The New Testament says that God sent the angel **Gabriel** to announce Jesus' birth to the virgin Mary: "That holy thing that shall be born of thee shall be called the Son (huios) of God." Luke 1:35
 (b) 640 years later, Muhammed claimed that the same angel Gabriel came to him with a **different message** from Allah that Jesus was not the Son of God that the Bible and Gabriel earlier said he was, but that He was just a prophet. Do Gabriel & God change their minds? Was Gabriel confused?
Question: Which Gabriel came to Muhammed?
 Paul warns us of Satan's deceptive disguises in II Corinthians 11:14: "Such are **false apostles** (Muhammed), deceitful workers (Muhammed), transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ. And no marvel, for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light".
 It is an angel of the devil that will contradict what God has already said.
11. The only reason Muslims say the Bible is corrupted is because it states that Jesus is the Divine Son of God. They say they cannot bow down to the man of Galilee. They claim that Jesus was a created being just as Adam was. "Jesus is like Adam in the sight of Allah. He created him of dust."(Q3:59). The Quran says in eight places that, when Adam was created, Allah commanded all the angels to bow down and worship the man He had made. "We said to the angels, "Bow down yourselves to Adam", and all bowed themselves, except Satan, who in his pride refused and became an unbeliever". (Sura 2:34; 7:11; 15:29-335; 17:61-62; 18:50; 20:115-; 38:71).
 So the Quran tells us that what made Satan an unbeliever was his refusal to bow down to Adam, a created being. In Suras 15 and 38, Allah put curses on Satan for this arrogance.
Question: If Muslims would have bowed down to Adam (the lesser), but refuse to bow down to Jesus Christ (the greater than Adam), then you have joined the forces of rebellion and arrogance with Satan, and you are under the same curse released on Satan.
12. Some **illustrations** of Jesus (the Son of God) revealing God to man are:
 (a) As the **fruit** of a tree will reveal the kind of tree, so Jesus reveals the nature of God. This is what is meant by Jesus being the Son of God, revealing the hidden nature of God to man.
 (b) "Who (Jesus Christ) being the **brightness** of His glory.' (Hebrews 1:3). As the **sun** and its rays are distinct, in another sense they are one. So God the Father and God the Son are distinct yet one. As the sun has **fire, heat and light**, as well as **α,β,γ-rays**, so God is **Father, Son and Holy Spirit**.
 (c) How would a tree that cannot see a man, yet convinced of his existence, describe man to other trees? A tree would describe man as a kind of super tree, because that is all it can understand. Similarly, man being of a lower order and nature than God, can only understand God in human terms. Even the Quran explains Allah in human terms as having a face, hands, fingers, feet, eyes. "Yet still abides the **Face** of thy Lord, majestic, splendid." (55:27).
 "Why do you not bow to him whom my own **hands** have made." (38:75).
13. Jesus as "**Son of God**" does not mean "offspring of God" as seen from different Greek words.
 a) "**paidion**" (3813) "young child" is not used to describe Jesus' pre-existence as Son of God.
 b) "**teknon**" (5043) meaning "a **child**" is not used to describe Jesus as "teknon Theou" a "child of God". The word teknon (child) comes from the verb "tikto" meaning "to **give birth**" which **never** applies to Jesus Christ in His eternity. God the Father never gave birth to God the Son. "Teknon" (child) means "**derivation from**" and "**huios**" (son) means "**same nature as**", **going out** from God.
 c) "**huios**" (5207) "Son" means "**same nature as**" describes Jesus as "the Son of God" because he has the **same nature** as God & proceeded from God. Jesus has twin nature, 100% man (from Mary) and 100% God the Huios (Son). (Luke 1:35). Adam was a son of God not by sexual generation (Luke 3:38). In Greek, "the Son of God" (ho huios tou Theou) means the fellowship of two **equal, eternal, same nature** personalities. Jesus claimed to have equality with God (John 5:18) & the prerogatives of God. See p.862.
14. **Son + genitive = quality, character.** Sons of the **prophets** (I Kings 20:35) means "of the **order of the prophets**", Son of **consolation** (Acts 4:36), sons of **thunder** (Mark 3:17), son of **peace** (Luke 10:6), son of **disobedience** (Eph.5:6), son of **perdition** (John 17:12), "children of **light**" (Luke 16:8), sons of **Asaph** (Neh.11:28), "children of **disobedience**" (Eph 2:2), "child of **hell**" (Mat 23:15)

31. Mohammed's Battles and Wars (Is Mohammed a man of Peace or a Butcher?)

1. Raiding Meccan Caravans

After 6 months in Medina, Mohammed sent out raiding parties to attack and capture Meccan caravans on their way to Syria. Unsuccessful at first, Mohammed's men finally captured a Meccan caravan by attacking it in the pagan sacred month. Mohammed took 20% of the booty for himself.

2. Battle of Badr (624)

Mohammed learned that a rich caravan was to pass nearby and decided to attack it at Badr. The Meccans learned of Mohammed's plans and so gathered a superior army (1000 men) to teach the Muslims (313 men) a lesson. The Muslims, inspired by Mohammed and Allah, won a resounding battle. 70 Meccans were killed and Mohammed ordered the execution of 2 prisoners.

3. Battle of Uhud (625)

3000 Meccans marched to Medina to avenge their defeat at Badr. They faced 700 Muslims. Meccans attacked the Muslims from the front and rear. Many Muslims were killed, Mohammed was seriously wounded, but the Meccans were not able to completely destroy the Muslims.

4. Seige of Bani Nazir (a Jewish tribe).

Mohammed went here to collect some blood money. They seated Mohammed under the shadow of a wall while they collected the money. Mohammed suspected the Jews might kill him, so Mohammed returned to Medina, and sent an order for the Jews to vacate the settlement. The Muslims besieged Bani Nazir for 21 days. The Jews then surrendered and migrated to Syria.

5. Battle of the Trench (627)

A 10,000 man Meccan army set out to conquer the Muslims in Medinah. The Muslims could not face such a large force in the open, so they dug a trench around the city. The siege lasted 30 days, with the Meccans being unable to cross the trench. When a storm came, the Meccans retreated.

6. **Massacre of the Bani Qurayza** (a Jewish tribe). (627, p.1030) Because Mohammed disliked the Bani Qurayza, he besieged them in Medina for 2 weeks, then decapitated their 800 men in groups of 5 or 6, threw their bodies into a large trench dug in the market place, confiscated all their possessions, and sold their women and children as slaves. Mohammed sat watching the butchery from morning, all day, into the night. Are Muslims proud of their leader for this? Do Muslims recommend this for today?

7. Conquest of Khyber.

After being expelled from Medina, the Jews of Bani Qainuqa and Bani Nazir had settled at Khyber. Mohammed thought they were planning revenge for his massacring the 800 Jewish males of Bani Quraiza. So Mohammed led a Muslim force who conquered the Jewish fortress after a 21 day siege. The Jews surrendered. To mark the end of hostilities, some Jews gave a feast in honour of Mohammed, but they poisoned the food, killing Mohammed's friend. After taking a few morsels, Mohammed fell sick of the poison and died later on 8th June 632 AD in Medina.

8. Conquest of Mecca (630).

Mohammed led a force of 10,000 to conquer Mecca. The Quraish of Mecca lost the will to defend, so surrendered and agreed to become Muslims.

9. Battles of Hunain and Taif (630).

Tribes surrounding Mecca rejected Islam, so Mohammed invaded the valley of Hunain with 13,000 soldiers. These tribes were routed and retreated to the impregnable fort of Taif. The Muslims besieged the fort for 2 months, without success, then returned to Mecca.

10. Battle at Tabuk (630) (halfway between Mecca and Damascus).

The Christian Arab prince of Aylah did not agree to forsake Christianity, but agreed to pay the annual jizya tax. Ukaidar, the chief of Daumatul Jandal refused to accept Islam or pay tax to the Muslims. The Muslim Khalid led an expedition who took Ukaidar prisoner, brought him to Mohammed, where he was released on agreeing to pay the annual jizya tax.

32. Mohammed's Murders, Assassinations, Tortures, Cruelty and Slavery.

Mohammed spoke "messages from heaven" to justify fighting battles, executing opponents, annexing territories, taking another man's wife Zainab, taking as many wives as he pleased, taking people into slavery, and restoring order to his harem.

Muslim's sources are full of references to Mohammed's strange fits when he received revelations:

"The process was attended by a fit of unconsciousness accompanied by the sound of bells in the ears or the belief that someone was present; by a sense of fright causing perspiration, by foaming at the mouth, by a sense of headache." (Why I am not a Muslim, Ibn Warraq, p.89).

These are Biblical symptoms of demon possession ("he foaming & gnashing his teeth." Mark 9:17-29. Mohammed hated the Jews for rejecting his claims of being a prophet.

1. The Battle of Badr. Mohammed's army killed 49 Meccans. When the severed head of his enemy was cast at Mohammed's feet he said: "It is more acceptable to me than the choicest camel in Arabia." Then began a series of assassinations as Mohammed moved against his enemies, settled old scores and ruthlessly established his power.

2. Mohammed ordered the execution of al-Nadar who scoffed at him at Mecca.

3. Muir describes the execution of Ocba: "Ocba was ordered out for execution. He asked: "Who shall take care of my little girl?" "Hell-fire!" said Mohammed. Ocba was then killed. Mohammed said "I give thanks unto the Lord that hath slain thee, and comforted mine eyes thereby." Assassinations are approved in **8:67,69**. "It is not for any prophet to have captives until he has made slaughter in the land."

4. When the poetess Asma bint Marwan wrote against Mohammed, Mohammed said "Will no one rid me of this daughter of Marwan?" One zealous Muslim, Umayr ibn Adi, decided to execute Mohammed's wishes and that night crept into her house, removed the suckling baby from her breast and plunged his sword into the poetess. Next morning Mohammed praised Umayr in front of the Muslims at the Mosque.

5. Soon, Abu Afak (over 100 years old), who criticized Mohammed was murdered while he slept.

6. In 627 the Meccans attacked Medina in the Battle of the Trench. The last Jewish tribe in Medina, the Bani Qurayza, helped defend Medina, but remained neutral. Mohammed questioned their loyalty and after the 2 week siege, moved against them. Realising they had no chance of surviving, the Bani Qurayza agreed to surrender on condition that their fate be decided by their allies, the Bani Aws, who were inclined to show mercy. Mohammed nominated one of the Bani Aws (Sa'd ibn Muadh) to be the judge. He pronounced, "My judgment is that the men shall be put to death, the women and children sold into slavery, and the spoil divided among the army."

Mohammed adopted the verdict as his own: "Truly the judgment of Sa'd is the judgment of Allah pronounced on high from beyond the seventh heaven."

Muir ((1), p.307,308) writes: "During the night trenches sufficient to contain the dead bodies of the men were dug across the market place of the city. In the morning, Mohammed himself a spectator of the tragedy, commanded the male captives to be brought forth in companies of 5 or 6 at a time. Each company as it came up was made to sit down in a row on the brink of the trench destined for its grave, there beheaded, and the bodies cast therein. The butchery, begun in the morning, lasted all day, and drenched the market place with the blood of about 800 victims. Having given command for the earth to be smoothed over their remains, Mohammed returned from the horrid spectacle to solace himself with the charms of Rihana, whose husband and all her male relatives had just perished in the massacre."

The booty was divided, slave girls given as presents, women sold and property auctioned. **Q 33:25-27** ("people of the Scriptures..Some ye slew..captive some") was given as a revelation justifying his cruelty, barbarity and inhumanity meted out to the Jews. It is difficult to accept Mohammed's innocence.

Mohammed taught that true nobility lay in forgiveness and that in Islam those who restrain their anger and pardon men shall receive Paradise (**Q 3:128; 24:22** "those who possess dignity..Let them forgive"). Yet Mohammed failed to do this in treating the Bani Qurayza.

7. Mohammed ordered the murder of the chief of the Jews (Abi l Hugayq) of the banished Banu'l-Nadir. Mohammed's henchmen assassinated Hugayq in his bed.

8. Mohammed, realizing this assassination had not solved his problems, sent a delegation to Khaybar to persuade their new leader **Usayr b. Zarim** to come to Medina to discuss him being made ruler of Khaybar. Mohammed solemnly guaranteed his safety. Usayr set out unarmed with 30 of his men. On the way the Muslims killed all but one of their invited, unarmed guests. Mohammed gave thanks on learning of their fate saying, “Verily, the Lord hath delivered you from an unrighteous people”. Later, Mohammed gave his philosophy of war saying, “**War is deception.**”

9. Mohammed and his men attacked and destroyed the forts in the vale of **Khaybar** one by one, saying, “O you who have been given victory, kill! kill!”

10. All the forts fell, until the Muslims arrived at the fort of Khamus, where the chief of the Jews, **Kinana b. al-Rabi** was accused by Mohammed of concealing the treasure of Banu'l-Nadir. The Jews protested that they had nothing left. Ibn Hisham quotes “Mohammed gave Kinana over to al-Zubayr”, saying “Torture him until you extract it from him.” He burned his chest, then cut off his head.

Conclusion: Thus Mohammed organised assassinations and massacres, secured and divided plunder as a robber chief, encouraged the same passion in his followers, authorizing and justifying his crimes by fabricating revelations from his deity Allah. (See “Why I am Not a Muslim”, Ibn Warraq, p.93-99).

33. BATTLES STARTED BY MUSLIMS (“History of Islam”, Masudul Hasan, Vol.1, 1998, p96-).

Abu Bakr (632-634AD)

1. Battle of Dhu Qissa and Abrag
 2. Battle of Buzakha
 3. Battle of Zafar
 4. Battle of Naqra
 5. Battle of Bani Tamim
 6. 4 Battles against Bani Hanifa (Musailma)
Battle of the Garden of Death.
 7. Battle of Bahrain
 8. Battle of Daba in Uman (10,000 killed)
 9. Battle of Mahrah
 10. Battle of Yemen
 11. Battle of Hadramaut
 12. Battle of Kazima (633AD) opened **Iraq**.
 13. Battle of Mazar on the Tigris (30,000 killed)
 14. Battle of Walaja against Persians
 15. Battle of Ulleis (70,000 Persians killed)
 16. Conquest of Hirah (surrendered)
 17. Battle of Anbar (633AD)
 18. Battle of Ain-at-Tamr (Christian Arabs)
 19. Battle of Daumatul Jandal (S.Iraq, Aug. 633)
 20. Battle of Firaz (Iraq, Dec. 633)
 21. Battle of Busra (July 634). **Syria**.
 22. Battle of Ainadein (50,000 Byzantines killed)
 23. 3 Battles of Damascus (Aug 634. Abu Bakr died).
- Umar Farooq** (634-644AD) conquered **Iraq, Persia, Syria, Egypt**. Enforced Sharia in all matters.
24. Battle of Namaraq (against Persians).
 25. Battle of Saqatiah (between Tigris and Euphrates)
 26. Battle of the Bridge (635. Muslims defeated)
 27. Battle of Buwaib
 28. Battle of Qadisiyah (636)
 29. Battles of al-Madain, Babel, Kutha, Bahra Sher.
 30. Battle of Jalula (637 completed conquest of Iraq)

31. Battle of Fahl (in **Jordan**)
32. Battle of Yermuk (70,000 Byzantines killed).
33. Battle of Antioch (**Syria**)
34. Battle of Jerusalem (637, Umar occupied it).
35. Battle of Jazirah
36. Battle of Caesarea (649)
37. Battle of Ahwaz (in **Persia**)
38. Battle of Manadhar
39. Battle of Sus
40. Battle of Ramharz (Capital)
41. Battle of Shustar
42. Battle of Jandi Sabur
43. Battle of Nihawand (641; 30,000 Persians killed)
44. Battle of Ray
45. Battle of Azarbaijan (643)
46. Battle of Tabaristan (643)
47. Battle of Armenia.
48. Battle of Farama (640, East **Egypt**)
49. Battle of Bilbais
50. Battle of Babalyun
51. Battle of Naqyus
52. Battle of Alexandria (641)
- Uthman** (644-656AD)
53. Battle of Istakhar (**Persia**)
54. Seige and surrender of Nishapur
55. Battle of Herat
56. Battle of Tus
57. Battle of Meru
58. Battle of Roz
59. Battle of Kerman
60. Battle of Seistan
61. Conquest of Cyprus
62. Recapture of Alexandria
63. Battle of Tripoli (646) (Uthman standardized Quran to remove different readings. *History of Islam*, p.122). In 652, Islamic expansion stopped.
- Ali** (656-661AD)
64. Battle of the Camel (Civil war in 656. 10,000 died)
65. Battle of Siffin (657)
66. Battle of Nahrawan (658)
- Mu'awiyah** (660-680AD)
67. Reconquered North Africa
68. Conquered Sicily (666)
69. Conquered Rhodes (672)
70. Conquered Crete (674)
71. Seiged Constantinople unsuccessfully (668).
72. Conquered Kabul (670)
73. Conquered Khurasan (663-671)
74. Conquered Turks (674).
- Yazid I** (680-683AD).
75. Tragedy of Kerbalā. Husain beheaded & abused.
76. Battle of the Lava (683 at Medina).
- Marwan I** (684-685)
77. Campaign against North Syria.
78. Conquest of Egypt.
- Abdul Malik** (685-705). Built Dome of the Rock.
79. Battle of Ain-ul Wada (Syria).
80. Battle of Kufa (687, 3 competing caliphs).
81. Battle of Deir al Jaliq (691, 2 competing caliphs)
82. Battle of Mecca (692, Civil War)
83. Battle of Deir al Jumajim (702)
84. Battle and razing of Carthage (695)
85. Battle of Tabarka (702), won **North Africa**
- Al-Waleed** (705-715) eldest son of Abdul Malik.
86. Conquered Balkh and Takharistan (706)
87. Conquered Bukhara (bloody battle).
88. Conquered Khawarzam (711)
89. Conquered Samarkand (712). Learnt paper making
90. Conquered Khojand and Shash (714).
91. Conquered Kashgar (in Chinese Turkestan, 714)
92. Conquered Kabul to Khyber pass (North).
93. Conquered Makran and Daibal (711 in **India**)
94. Conquered Al Nirun (Hyderabad)
95. Conquered Multan (713) and **all Pakistan**.
96. Conquered Byzantine forts (711).
97. Conquered Antioch in Pisidia (712)
98. Conquered Medina, Sidonia, Carmona, Granada Cordova & Toledo in **Spain** with 7000 men (711)
99. Conquered Seville, Saragossa, Terragossa, Barcelona
- Sulaiman** (715-717) son of Abdul Malik.
100. Imprisoned, tortured and executed the Muslim conquerors of Spain (Tariq and Musol) & India. Ruthlessly slaughtered the **Turks** (716).
101. Attacked Constantinople (716).
- Umar** (717-720)
102. Conquered Southern France to Tolouse.
- Yazid II** (720-724)
103. Conquered Kish and Nasf
104. Conquered Khazars of Azarbaijan & Armenia.
105. Conquered Qonia city, Dalsa fort (Byzantine, 722)
106. Suppressed revolts in Yemen.
- Hisham** (724-743) brother of Yazid II.
107. Captured Nimes. Went up Rhone Valley, France 725
108. Captured Bourdeaux. Ravaged countryside (732).
109. Lost Battle of Tours to Charles Martell (Oct. 732)
110. Captured Avignon, then lost it. Left France 737
111. Captured Georgia (730)
112. Captured several Byzantine forts.
113. Battle of the Nobles (740)
114. Battle of Bagdoura (741). N.Africa lost to Berbers
115. Re-conquered North Africa.
116. Conquered islands of Majorca, Minorca, Ivica, Corsica, Sardinia, Crete, and Rhodes making the Mediterranean Sea a Muslim Lake. (742).

34. **Islamic Conquests Atrocities, Massacres and Genocide.** “Why I am not a Muslim”, Ibn Warraq, 1995

1. Patriarch **Sophrionius** of Jerusalem (634-638) saw the Muslim invaders as “godless barbarians” who burnt churches, destroyed monasteries, profaned crosses, horribly blasphemed Christ and His church.
 2. **Abu Bakr** invaded Syria (634), the entire region from Gaza to Caesarea was devastated. 4000 peasants were massacred. In the campaigns of Mesopotamia (635-642) monasteries were sacked, and monks killed. In Elam the population was put to the sword.
 3. The “**Chronicle of John**”, **Bishop of Nikiu** (693-700) describes the Muslim conquest of Egypt. **Amr** exterminated the inhabitants of **Behnessa, Fayum** and **Aboit**: “Whoever gave himself up to the Muslims was massacred. They spared neither the old, nor the women or children.” At **Nikiu**, the entire population was put to the sword.
 4. In **Armenia**, the entire population of **Euchaita** was wiped out. Muslims decimated the populations of **Assvria**, forcing some inhabitants to accept Islam. (7th Century Armenian Chronicles).
 5. Michael the Syrian tells how **Mu’awiya** sacked **Cyprus**, dominating it by a “great massacre”.
 6. **Tripoli** was pillaged in 643. **Carthage** was razed and most of its inhabitants were killed.
 7. The same happened in **Anatolia, Mesopotamea, Syria, Iraq** and **Iran**.
 8. **North India** was conquered by Hajjaj, governor of Iraq (712). He ordered his commander Qasim to “bring destruction on the unbelievers... whoever does not submit to Islam, treat him harshly and cause injury to him till he submits.” (Chachnamah, p.155).
At Port Debal, the Muslim army took 3 days to slaughter the inhabitants, then allowed some to practice their religion. Hajjaj disapproved of Qasim’s weakness and wrote to him: “The great God says in Koran (47:4): “O true believers, when you encounter the unbelievers, strike off their heads.” This command of the great God must be respected and followed. You should not be so fond of showing mercy. Henceforth grant pardon to no one of the enemy and spare none of them.”
Qasim went to Brahminabad and ordered all men of military classes to be beheaded with swords. Between 6000 and 16000 men were massacred.
 9. **Mahmud of Ghazni**, head of a Turco-Afgan dynasty (1000AD) passed through **India**, **destroying, massacring** and **plundering**. He justified his actions by the Koran’s commands to kill idolaters. He invaded India 17 times, seeing it as a duty and pleasure to slay idolaters. He forcibly converted the inhabitants of Ghur to Islam. At the Battle of **Somnath**, he killed 50,000 Hindus.
 10. **Firuz Shah** (1351AD) ruled North India. He made “the laws of the prophet his guide”. He indulged in wholesale slave-raiding, having 180,000 slaves in his city, all of whom became Muslims.
 11. **Aurangzeb** (1618-1707) destroyed 123 Hindu temples at Udaipur, 63 at Chitor, and 66 at Jaipur.
 12. Throughout **Persia**, forced conversions from the 16th to 20th Centuries decimated the Christian and Jewish communities. (Bat Ye’Or (1), p.61).
 13. Muslims massacred over 6000 Jews in **Morocco** in 1033. Muslim rioters massacred the entire Jewish community of 4000 people in Granada, Spain in 1066.
 14. Walid I (704-705) gathered the nobles of **Armenia** in the church of St. Gregory in **Naxcawan** and burned them to death. The rest were crucified or decapitated. Their women & children were enslaved.
 15. The Sultan Baibars, had all the Christians of **Damascus** decapitated.
 16. **Timur the Lame** (Tamerlane) constantly referred to the Koran and tried to turn every battle to a holy war. In 1403 he destroyed 700 large villages and minor towns in **Georgia**, massacring the inhabitants, and destroying all the Christian churches of Tifflis. He killed out of Koranic piety. Tamerlane ordered the execution of 100,000 Hindu prisoners at Delhi in cold blood, on the pretext that they presented a grave risk to his army.
Tamerlane buried 4000 alive at Sivas, 70,000 at Isfahan, 100,000 at Saray, and 90,000 at Baghdad.
 17. At the conquest of **Istakr**, Muslims slaughtered more than 40,000 Iranians.
 18. From 1894-1896 Muslims massacred over 250,000 **Armenians** in Sasun, Trapezunt, Edessa, Wan Biredjik, Kharput & Niksar. Many villages were burned down & hundreds of churches were plundered.
 19. A Muslim historian reports their destruction of **30,000 Greek churches** in Egypt & Syria (Tritton, p.54)
- Conclusion:** All these massacres resulted from a divinely sanctioned Koran policy toward non-Muslims. These were perpetrated to keep the conquered territories under Islamic control.

35. Modern Muslim Atrocities

1. Sudan had Sharia law imposed in 1983 with the Muslim north waging a pitiless war against Christians and Animists in the South. Since 1983 Muslims have killed about 2 million people, displacing many others & selling many into slavery. This was financed by Iran (Economist, 9 April 1994).
2. Indonesian Muslim youth and army massacred about 600,000 Chinese peasants in 1965. "They cut off women's breast In the morning young muslims would come in swaggering with necklaces of human ears." (Guardian Weekly, 23 Sep. 1990).
3. East Timor was invaded by Indonesia in 1975, resulting in over 200,000 civilians being killed.
4. Irani, Pakistani, Saudi Arabian Christians are often arrested, imprisoned, flogged and tortured for "crimes" of blasphemy, owning Bibles, crosses & pictures of Jesus (Amnesty International 62, July 1993)
5. Slavery is accepted by the Koran and recognises the superiority of master over slave (Q 16:77; 30:28). According to the French magazine L Vie (no. 2562, 6 Oct 1994) 45,000 black Africans are kidnapped and sold into slavery a year in the Gulf States and Middle East. Slaves have no legal rights under Islam.

Conclusions:

1. Mohammed consciously fabricated revelations to conveniently sort out his domestic problems. Battles were fought, executions ordered, territories annexed, the affair with Maria the Coptic sanctioned, and passions for his adopted son's wife were sanctioned by convenient revelations from his deity Allah. Mohammed's revelations fitted in with his desires and pandered to his selfish pleasures.
2. Abraham, Isaac and Ishmael never went to Mecca, nor did they build the Kabbah because:
 - a) The Bible is silent about it.
 - b) No pre-Muslim sources mention it.
 - c) Early Muslims prayed toward Jerusalem, not Mecca, as seen by the alignment of early Mosques & Christian sources. This shows that Muslims fabricated Abraham, Isaac, Ishmael's visit to Mecca.
 - d) Mecca was only chosen as the Muslim sanctuary later in order to completely break from Judaism after the Jews rejected Mohammed's claim of being a prophet like Moses for the Jews.
3. Islam assimilated many foreign influences of people they conquered, such as rabbinic Judaism, Christianity (Nestorian and Jacobite), Hellenism, Persian ideas, Byzantine art and architecture.
4. There was a tendency for the information to grow the further away one went from the events described. For example, if one storyteller mentioned a raid, the next one would tell the exact date of the raid, and the third would tell us even more details. An example is, Waqidi (died 823) who wrote 30-50 years after Ibn Ishaq (died 768), will always give precise dates, locations, names and details where Ibn Ishaq has none. No wonder that Muslim scholars love Waqidi. Where else do they find such wonderfully precise information about everything they want to know? Waqidi's information is extremely doubtful, because all this was unknown to Ibn Ishaq.
4. Muhammed would never have succeeded had he preached humility and submission. He converted people by force of the sword.
5. Female circumcision in Islam results from the Muslim males' fears of female sexuality.
6. Muslim association of sex with pollution is absurd and obsessive.
7. Concubinage is permitted by the Koran (Q 4:3; 23:6; 33:50-52; 70:30).
8. Military defeat at the hands of Christian Europe brought into doubt the truth of the Muslim revelation itself. (Kedourie, p.322 The World of Islam, 1976). Every failure and ill in the Muslim world is still blamed on the West, Israel, or some Zionist Conspiracy.
9. Regarding Mohammed's concession to idolatry in the Satanic verses, Sura 53:19,20, we are told that Satan put words of reconciliation and compromise into Mohammed's mouth:

"These (Alat, Uzza, Manat) are exalted Females, whose intercession is verily to be sought after."

The Meccans were delighted with Mohammed's recognition of their deities, but Mohammed claimed that Gabriel visited and reprimanded him for making such a concession to idolatry.

Question: Even if Satan really put these words into Mohammed's mouth, what faith can we put in a man so easily led astray by Satan? Why did Allah let it happen?

Question: How do we know there are no other passages where Mohammed has not been led astray? Here Mohammed abandoned the unity of God to please the Meccans.

36. QUESTIONS TO ASK MUSLIMS

- Q1: What archaeological proof is there that Abraham rebuilt the Kabah in Mecca? (2:127) (p.994).
- Q2: Can you prove that the Quran is of heavenly origin? How, in light of its many earthly sources?
- Q3: How do you justify the Koran's commands to commit violence (fight and slay the pagans. 9:5).
- Q4:** How do you explain the presence of stories in the Quran from Christianity, Judaism, Arabia? 1014.
- Q5: Why does Quran never explain its rites or define words like Allah, jinn, gospel, Kabah? (996).
- Q6. The fertile crescent worshipped the pagan moon god. Doesn't this show pagan influence in Islam?
- Q7. Why do you worship a god Allah when you should worship the God of Abram. JHVH? (Ps. 96:5).
- Q8. Doesn't the different nature of Jehovah from Allah, show that Muslims worship a wrong god? 997
- Q9. How do you explain Mohammed's fits when giving a revelation? No Bible prophet did this? 998.
- Q10. Doesn't Mohammed asking forgiveness of sins prove He is a sinner? (40:55; 48:1,2).
- Q11. How can you believe prophets are sinless when the Bible and Quran say they sinned (Adam (2:36), Moses (28:16), Jonah (37:142), David (38:15), Mohammed (47:19)?
- Q12.** How do you explain Mohammed's 3 disqualifications of prophethood? (changing verses (16:101), no fulfilled prophecies (7:203), friendship with demons (Q 72:1-15; 46:29-31. . 19:31; 20:27). (p.1000)
- Q13. Why don't you obey the Quran by obeying the Bible? (10:93,94 Ask those who read scriptures before).
- Q14.** Why did M command prayer to the Kabah which had 360 idols in it, not destroyed till 6 years later?
- Q15. How do you explain the Satanic Verses being abrogated (cancelled) from the Quran? (p.1000).
- Q16. At what age was Aesha when Mohammed married her and consummated the marriage? Isn't this the sin of paedophilia?
- Q17. Why did Allah permit Mohammed to take Zaynab, his son's wife, when Jehovah never permitted this of other prophets, such as David?
- Q18. Do you believe a temporary marriage (Mutah) is right?
- Q19. Do you believe slavery is right? Slave girls (70:22-31; 23:1-7).
- Q20. Where did Jews say Ezra was the Son of God? (9:30).
- Q21.** Do you believe it is right for Muslims to fight and kill Jews and Christians? (9:29,30).
- Q22.** Do you think that Mohammed made up his own god who gave him a license to sin? (p.1003).
- Q23. How can you believe a speech by evil, lying demons in the Koran? (72:1-15; 46:29-31).
- Q24. Do you believe it is right to kill those who leave Islam? (4:89). (p.1018). (p.12,13,1006).
- Q25.** Doesn't the 45 Old Testament prophecies about Jesus show him to be greater than Mohammed?
- Q26. Doesn't Jesus' virgin birth and no sin nature, show Him to be greater than Mohammed's normal birth? (p.1007).
- Q27. Doesn't Jesus' sinlessness make Him greater than Mohammed? (40:55; 48:1,2).
- Q28. Doesn't Jesus' many miracles (3:49) make Him greater than Mohammed? (17:91-95).
- Q29. Do you look forward to going to hell as the Quran says all will go there? (19:71).
- Q30.** If prophets say Jesus is God, why don't you believe them? (p.1008). (The Mighty God, Isaiah 9:6).
- Q31.** Doesn't Jesus give a higher moral example for us to follow than Mohammed? Jesus never killed, lied, took men's wives. (Every murderer gives excuses why he killed someone).
- Q32. Don't you think that Jesus' beauty of speech is greater than Mohammed speeches of hell torture, hatred and killing non Muslims?
- Q33. How could Quran come from the true God, when it is an entirely different literary style to Bible?
- Q34. Why did Uthman have to standardize a common text of the Quran if a perfect text already existed? How did Uthman know which readings were correct? (in 650AD).
- Q35.** What manuscript evidence exists to support Quran's claim that Jesus was not crucified? Who knows best that Jesus died & rose, hundreds of eyewitnesses in 33AD or Mohammed 600 yr later? Who knows best that Jesus died, prophets David, Isaiah, Daniel, Zechariah, or Mohammed 1600 yr later?
- Mistakes in Quran**
- Q36.** How did the Quran misunderstand the Trinity was Allah, Jesus and Mary? (5:116; 5:73).
- Q37.** Will you reject the Quran because it mistakenly says that Pharaoh of Moses time (1500 BC), the Tower of Babel (2250 BC) and Haman (510BC) all existed at the same time? (28:38; p.1013)
- Q38. Quran mistakenly says that there were 9 signs (17:100) but the Bible says 10 signs (p.1013, Ex 7-12)

Q39. How can the sun set in a pool of black mud? (18:85,86) (p.1012).

Q40. Did all of Noah's sons survive (21:76) or did one son drown (11:42,43)? p.1013.

Q41. Noah was aged 600 when the flood came, not 950 years (Q29:14; Genesis 7:11). (p.1023).

Q42. How can the Quran be from God when it copied 26 stories from Arabian, Jewish, Christian and Pagan sources? (p.1014-1016).

Hadith

Q43. Do you believe people are tortured in hellfire because they soil themselves with their urine? (1017)

Q44. How can Allah be just if he predestines some men to hell? (7:179). Jehovah doesn't (2 Peter 3:9).

Q45. Do you believe Mohammed cut the moon in half? How did he put it back together? (p1018) Use?

Q46. How can you hold Mohammed as your role model when he burnt peoples eyes out? (p.1019)

Q47. Isn't Jihad morally wrong and against Moses' and Jesus' law for Muslims to force conversion to Islam or die? (p.1021).

Q48. Why do Muslims commit such horrific acts of violence? Are they all naturally violent, or are they doing what Islam dictates? (61:10-12, 4:74).

Q49. Why be loyal to Islam when Muslims murdered your ancestors and would do the same to you today? (p.1022).

Q50. Who is this Allah who has been inspiring Muslims to hate Christ and to murder Christians? Could Allah be the devil disguising himself as God? (p.1022).

Q51. If Allah is so powerful, why not let Allah punish his Christian enemies? (p.1022).

Q52. How can throwing 7 pebbles at a pillar at Mecca hurt Satan? (p.1022).

Q53. How can you believe in a religion that permits husbands to beat (edribu) their wives? (4:34).

Q54. How can you remain a Muslim when the Quran says Allah predestines many men to hell? (7:178).

Q55. How can you remain a Muslim when Allah commands Muslims to strike off the heads of unbelievers and massacre them? (47:15). (p.1024).

Q56. Have you compared the differences and attributes of Allah and Jehovah? (p.1025,1026).

(Allah is not holy, not a Trinity, distant, author of evil, different nature, hates Jews, Christians, Jesus Christ and unbelievers).

Q57. Who is right about Jesus being the Son of God, Mohammed denying it or 12 prophets teaching it?

Q58. Is all the Quran spoken by Allah? What about 6:101 "How should He have a son when He had no consort" written in the third person by some man?

Q59. If the nature of man is a mystery, how much greater a mystery is the nature of God? (p.1027).

Q60. Why does the Quran have Gabriel saying Jesus is not the Son of God, which contradicts Gabriel's message in Luke 1:35 that Jesus is the Son of God? (p.1028). Do Gabriel and God change their minds?

Q61. How can Mohammed be a man of peace when he started so many wars and inspired others to start wars? (p.1029). (Massacre of 800 Bani Qurayza Jews, Khyber, Mecca, Hunain, Tabuk).

Q62. Could Mohammed's revelations and visions have come from Satan? Could Mohammed have been demon possessed as evidenced by the symptoms of Mark 9:17,18?

Q63. Is it right to kill those who speak against you as Mohammed did in the case of al-Nadar, Ocba, Asma, Abu Afak, Huqayq, Usayr, and Kinara? (p.1030).

Q64. Do you agree with Mohammed's massacre of 800 innocent Jewish men and taking their wives and children into slavery from the Bani Qurayza tribe? (p.1030).

Q65. Do you approve of over 130 battles that Mohammed inspired his successive Caliphs to start from 632-742AD against innocent civilians? (p.1031).

Q66. Do you approve of Muslim invaders massacring the entire populations of Elam (634), Behessa, Fayum, Aboit, Nikiu, Euchaita, Cyprus, Carthage, Anatolia? (p.1033).

Q67. Do you approve of the Koran's command to enslave people? (16:77; 30:28).

Q68. Do you approve of Mohammed and Islam converting people by the sword?

Q69. Do you approve of and practice female circumcision? Why?

Q70. If Satan put the Satanic verses into Mohammed's mouth, could there have been other places in the Koran where this happened?

Q71. Do you approve of the Quran commanding fighting to spread Islam? (61 references, p.973)

Q72. Do you approve of terror to spread Islam as Quran commands in 3:151; 8:12; 8:59; 34:51; 59:2? p.973

Q73. Do you approve of the Quran's 20 occasions of mistreating women? (slave girls (4:3); enemies (64:14), beating wives (4:34), your fields (2:223), inherit twice (4:11), replace a wife (4:20). (p.976-977).

Q74. Why does the Quran permit a divorced couple to remarry after being divorced from the 2nd spouse, when the Bible forbids this? (Jeremiah 3:1).

Q75. Don't you suspect that the many threats of hell in the Quran were Mohammad's way of scaring people into submission ? (p.978). This shows Allah is a different god to Jehovah the God of the Bible who loves all and wants all to be saved. (32:13 "I will surely fill hell with Jinn and humans all").

Q76. Why does the Quran vilify Jews and Christians as the "vilest of all creatures" or "worst of created beings" (98:4-6) when the Bible says God loves Jews and Christians? (John 13:34; Romans 11:28).

Q77. Do you notice the difference between the Bible saying God loves all mankind and wants all to be saved (John 3:16; 2 Peter 3:9) with the Quran saying Allah does not love unbelievers and delights in massacring them (8:12) and torturing them in hell? (70 references. p.978).

Q78. Do you obey Jesus' command in the Quran to "Follow me"? (43:63). Why could Mohammed not do miracles? (2:118).

Q79. How do you reconcile the contradiction where the Quran says Jesus did not die (4:157), with the Bible prophets saying Jesus did die, eg: David (Psalm 22:16), Isaiah (53:8,9,12), Daniel (9:26), Zechariah (13:6), ('day I die, and the day I shall be raised alive' Q19:33; 3:55), and all 7 NT writers?

Q80. Why does Quran command Muslims to fight against those to whom the Scriptures were given (9:29)? Don't you think the devil would want Muslims to kill those who believe in the prophets' message? Wouldn't this make the devil the author of the Quran? (John 16:2,3; Luke 9:51-56).

Q81. Do you ask the people of the Book if you don't know some spiritual truth? (10:95; 6:43).

Q82. How does the Quran confirm existing Scriptures when it denies Jesus' death, resurrection, sonship? (2:41; 5:48; 12:111). (p.983).

Q83. Why did the Quran confuse Saul with Gideon? (2:249).

Q84. Why did the Quran contradict the Bible on whether giving money atones for some sins. Acts 8:20; (To give alms will atone for some of your sins, 2:271. Take alms from them, so they may be cleansed, 9:103)

Q85. Why does the Quran contradict the Bible on works for salvation. (Good deeds annul ill deeds 11:114; 53:32), ("not of works, lest any man should boast" Ephesians 2:8,9,10).

Q86. Holy Spirit is the Comforter, not Mohammed because He shall :

a) Be with you forever. (John 14:16). b) The disciples knew Him "ye know him." (John 14:17).

c) Be in you. (John 14:17). d) The world could not receive Him because they could not see Him. v.17

e) Be called the Holy Ghost. (John 14:26).

f) Be called the Spirit of Truth. (John 16:13); Mohammed abrogated some verses.

g) Glorify Jesus. (John 16:14); Mohammed did not glorify Jesus as the Son of God. (p.985,6).

Q87. Quran is wrong in thinking it rained before Noah's flood. Pre Flood people never saw rain till the Flood came. (Genesis 2:5,6; Hebrews 11:7). (p.986).

Q88. How can the sky have a crack in it? Doesn't this show Mohammed's ignorance of the gaseous atmosphere? (50:6; 67:3).

Q89. How does the sun move in an orbit? (21:33). It only appeared to orbit earth to Mohammed.

Q90. Quran is man made because the best that men could think heaven to be was sex. (p.988). 18 refs.

Q91. If Allah can change his mind about a verse in the Quran, this proves he is not the all knowing God of the Bible. (2:106).

Q92. Doesn't Q 2:256 "no compulsion in religion" contradict Q8:39 "make war on them till idolatory shall cease..." (p.990).

Q93. Do you believe in all the Scriptures that God has revealed (42:15), such as the Bible?

Q94. How can every soul taste death (21:35) when I Corinthians 15:51-53 says "we shall not all sleep" due to the rapture (catching away) of living believers who will not experience death at Christ's return?

Q95. Doesn't Allah being a Plotter and Schemer (3:54; 8:30; 13:42) equate him with the devil who deceives the whole world (Revelation 12:9)?

Q96. Doesn't Allah not loving the sinful (4:107), evil doers (3:57), transgressors (5:88) and unbelievers (30:45) prove that Allah is a different god to Jehovah of the Bible Who loves all mankind? (John 3:16).

Q97. How can Mohammed be a true prophet when he broke 9 of the 10 commandments ?

Mohammed broke the following of the 10 comandments:

10 Commandments - Exodus 20:1-17

1. No other gods than Jehovah	1. Allah is a different god to Jehovah. 'all the gods of the nations are idols, but Jehovah made the heavens.' (Psalm 96.5).
2. No graven images	2. Mohammed prayed to the Kabah with 360 idols before he removed them (21:142; 53:19).
3. Don't take the name of Jehovah thy God in vain	3.
4. Keep Sabbath day holy	4. Mohammed taught people to worship on Friday not Saturday
5. Honour thy Father and Mother	5. Mohammed massacred many Fathers and enslaved many Mothers, such as the Bani Qurayza tribe.
6. Thou shalt not kill	6. Mohammed killed many people and commanded others to kill people (8:12 strike off their heads) (9:29 fight/kill those to whom the Scriptures were given).
7. Thou shalt not commit adultery	7. Mohammed committed adultery by having sex with Maria the Coptic whom he was not married to (66:1-5).
8. Thou shalt not steal	8. Mohammed stole from caravans, from those he massacred (Bani Qurayza) and by the jizya tax on people he conquered.
9. Thou shalt not bear false witness	9. Mohammed lied by saying "war is deception" and "Allah has given you absolutions from your oaths". "Allah has allowed you to break your oaths." (66:2).
10. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, wife, manservant, maidservant, ox, ass nor anything that is his.	10. Mohammed coveted and took his neighbours houses in lands he conquered, his neighbour's wife, his son's wife Zainab (33:36-38), as well as slaves and 20% of the booty had to go to Mohammed.

56 – THE BOOK OF JIHĀD (Fighting for Allāh's Cause) الجهاد والسير

(94) CHAPTER. Fighting against the Jews. يهود

2925. Narrated 'Abdullāh bin 'Umar رضي الله عنهما: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ said, "You (Muslims) will fight against the Jews till some of them will hide behind stones. The stones will (betray them) saying, 'O 'Abdullāh (i.e., slave of Allāh)! There is a Jew hiding behind me; so kill him.'"

كُنَّا إِسْحَاقَ بْنَ حَدَّثَنَا مَالِكُ عَنْ ابْنِ عُمَرَ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ لَ اللَّهُ ﷺ قَالَ: سَى يَخْبِي أَخْلَهُمْ : يا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ هَذَا

2926. Narrated Abū Hurairah رضي الله عنه: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ said, "The Hour will not be established until you fight against the Jews, and the stone behind which a Jew will be hiding will say, 'O Muslim! There is a Jew hiding behind me, so kill him.'"

4. [انظر: 3593] كُنَّا إِسْحَاقَ بْنَ جَرِيرٍ، عَنْ عُمَارَةَ ي زُرْعَةَ، عَنْ أَبِي عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ

3896. Narrated Hishām's father: Khadija died three years before the Prophet ﷺ departed to Al-Madina. He stayed there for two years or so and then he wrote the marriage (wedding) contract with 'Aishah when she was a girl of six years of age, and he consumed that marriage when she was nine years old.

3896 - حَدَّثَنَا عُبَيْدُ بْنُ إِسْمَاعِيلَ: حَدَّثَنَا أَبُو أُسَامَةَ، عَنْ هِشَامِ، عَنْ أَبِيهِ قَالَ: تَوَقَّتْ خَدِيجَةُ قَبْلَ مَخْرَجِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ بِنِثْلَيْ سِنِينَ، فَلَبِثَ سَتَيْنِ أَوْ قَرِيبًا مِنْ ذَلِكَ وَنَكَحَ عَائِشَةَ وَهِيَ بِنْتُ سِتِّ سِنِينَ، ثُمَّ بَنَى بِهَا وَهِيَ بِنْتُ بَسِيعِ

[راجع: 3894]

124. PRINCIPLES OF BIBLE INTERPRETATION

Bible Reading: “Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman, that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth”. II Timothy 2:15.

Aim: To identify correct principles of Bible interpretation which must be followed if one is to be a right student and teacher of the Word of God. To know the Bible and know how to handle it correctly. What rules must be applied to a passage to discover it’s correct meaning?

Inspiration means:

- a) More than human genius, such as Shakespeare.
- b) More than illumination by the Holy Spirit.
- c) More than revelation.
- d) Not partial inspiration, but FULL inspiration.
- e) It is “**God breathed**” which means: The **breath of God expressing itself through a human personality**. “For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.” II Peter 1:21.

Proofs of Inspiration:

- a) Scripture itself - its pre-eminence in literature - its preservation
- its transforming power - its unity - its scientific accuracy
- b) Proof from archaeology: over 5,000 Biblical locations have been found by archaeologists.
- c) Proof of fulfilled prophecy. For example, Psalm 22 prophesies many details about Jesus Christ.

What is gained by studying the Bible:

- a) Profound **knowledge**. “For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning.” Romans 15:4.
- b) Personal **faith**. “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the Word of God.” Romans 10:17.
- c) **Purification of Life**. “Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you” John 15:3.
- d) **Preparation for service**. “That the man of God may be perfect, throughly furnished unto all good works.” II Timothy 3:17.
- e) **Power in ministry**.

What shall be done: a) Practice its truth. b) Proclaim its truth.

Principles for correctly interpreting the Bible are:

1. The DISPENSATION Principle (or Administration Principle).

A Dispensation is a period of time in which God deals with man in a certain way with respect to sin and man’s responsibility. The word “dispensation” is first found in Ephesians 1:10, “That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ.” The 7 dispensations are:

- 1. Innocence** (Genesis 1:26-2:23). Period from Creation of man to the Fall of man.
- 2. Conscience** (Genesis 3-7) means “with knowledge,” from the Fall of man to the Flood: 1,656 years.
- 3. Human Government** (Gen. 8:1-11:9). Period from the Flood to the Confusion of languages: 427yr.
- 4. Promise** (Genesis 11:10-15:21). Period from the Call of Abraham to the Exodus: 430 years.
- 5. Law** (Exodus 19:1-8). Period from the Exodus to the Cross: 1,491 years.
- 6. Church** (Acts 2:47). Period from Pentecost to the Rapture.
- 7. Kingdom** (Rev.19-20). Period from the Return of Christ to the Great White Throne Judgment:1,000yr

Rules:

1. Truth must be divided in the same dispensation only.
2. Don’t take the truth of a past dispensation and bring it to the present, for example:
 - Romanism Catholicism brings paganism and Judaism forward into Christianity.
 - Seventh Day Adventism brings Jewish law into this Church dispensation.
3. Don’t take truth from a future dispensation and apply it to the present, for example,
 - Jehovahs Witnesses bring the 144,000 Jewish witnesses in Revelation 7 back from the Tribulation into the Church Dispensation.
 - Church belongs to this dispensation. Abel, Noah and Abraham do not belong to the Church Age.
4. Don’t put this present dispensation into the future, eg: The Church is not going into the Tribulation.

- Each dispensation shows:
- a) Man's responsibility.
 - b) Man's failure.
 - c) Judgment because of failure.
 - d) Low moral condition at the end.
 - e) Divine mercy shown at the end.

2. The COVENANT Principle.

Definition: An agreement or contract between two parties, such as God and man.

Two types: a) Conditional: depends on man. "If ye will obey." Exodus 19:5.

b) Unconditional: depends on God. "I will." Genesis 9:11.

Only four Covenants have signs: - Noahic: Rainbow. Genesis 9:11-17.

- Mosaic: Sabbath. Exodus 31:13,16,17.

- Abrahamic: Circumcision (unconditional).

- Davidic: Son. Luke 2:11,12.

The Covenants are:

i) **Edenic:** Genesis 1:28-30; 2:15-17. How life was governed in Eden.

ii) **Adamic:** Genesis 3:14-19. This covenant was made after the fall and before the expulsion from Eden. It orders man's life outside Eden and up to the end of the Millennium. It consists of curses (3:14-18) and a promise (3:15).

iii) **Noahic:** Genesis 8:20-9:17. It is unconditional, and the rainbow is its sign.

The contents of this covenant are:

- God will not curse the ground again.
- God will not destroy all life by a flood again.
- Four seasons shall prevail each year.
- Man is commanded to be fruitful and to replenish the earth.
- Man has dominion over animals.
- Man's diet is changed to include bloodless meat.
- Law of capital punishment is established and has never be revoked.

iv) **Abrahamic:** Genesis 12:1-3. It was made with Abraham, the father of the Israelite nation. Its sign is male circumcision on the eighth day. The covenant was made in Genesis 15:8-15.

Five beasts and birds were laid on an altar. Each party was to walk between pieces of the animals. Abraham slept and only God walked through, showing it to be an unconditional covenant.

Slain beasts typify the death of Christ.

Birds of prey typify evil powers trying to take away the efficacy of Christ's death.

This covenant promises: - I will make of thee a great nation.

- I will bless thee.
- I will make thy name great.
- Thou shalt be a blessing.
- I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curses thee.

v) **Mosaic:** Deuteronomy 28:1-68; Leviticus 26:3-39.

Conditions (IF): Promise of blessing if Israel obeyed the law.

Promise of punishment if Israel disobeyed the law.

The contents of the covenant are:

- Ten Commandments.
- Civil law, governing social life and camp life.
- Ceremonial law, priests made sacrifices for sins of people.
- Spiritual law, based on love to God and man.

Sign of the Mosaic Covenant is the Sabbath. It is only made between God and the Jews. Exod. 31:13.

vi) **Davidic:** 2 Samuel 7:8-19; Psalms 89. Made with David, through Nathan. This covenant promises:

- A Davidic political house of an earthly kingdom through His Son.
- The sign of the Davidic Covenant was Jesus Christ, the Son of David. Luke 2:11,12.

vii) Palestinian: Deuteronomy 30:1-10.

This covenant was established because of the disobedience of the Jews and their dispersion.

This covenant promises: - Return of Lord.

- Regathering of Jews.
- Conversion of Jews.
- Judgment on the nation of Israel.
- Great blessing and prosperity for Israel.
- Ends with the new heaven and the new earth.

viii) New Covenant: Jeremiah 31:31-34.

The blood of Christ is the blood of the New Covenant. Hebrews 7:27.

It promises personal sanctification and heart knowledge of God. Ezekiel 36:25-27.

3. The ETHNIC DIVISION Principle.

The Word of God is related to three classes of people: Jew, Gentile, Church.

“Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the Church of God.” I Cor. 10:32.

Questions to ask: a) Who said this? (e.g. Job’s friends).

b) To whom was it said?

c) Under what circumstances was it said?

4. The DISCRIMINATION Principle.

We must make a distinction or difference where God makes a difference.

Important distinctions (differences) to be identified are between:

1. Creatures (mankind) and the children of God. (1 Cor. 2:14-3:3, Gal. 6:10). Failure to identify this difference results in the error that all men are brothers in salvation and that God is the Father of all men. God is only the Father of believers-John 1:12. Men become children of God at salvation.
2. Being accepted (Ephesians 1:6) and acceptable (approved) (2 Corinthians 5:9; 2 Timothy 2:15). All believers are accepted by God because of Christ, but all believers are not acceptable to God (well pleasing in our daily walk).
It is possible to be saved, yet suffer loss (1 Corinthians 3:14,15).
It is possible to be saved, yet become a castaway (disapproved) (1 Corinthians 9:27).
It is possible to be saved, yet be chastened (Hebrews 12:5-17).
It is possible to be saved, yet reap evil consequences of sinful living. (Galatians 6:7,8).
3. Faith and works (Ephesians 2:8-10).
We are saved by faith and not by works. We must show good works after salvation as evidence of sonship. (Titus 2:14; 3:5).
4. Salvation and Rewards.
Salvation is freely available in Christ to sinners.
Rewards are earned to compensate believers for service and suffering.
Rewards may be forfeited through carelessness, sin, faithlessness and compromise (1 Cor. 3:12-15)
Rewards are to inspire and encourage believers in service, suffering and persecution.
Rewards are to wean believers from pursuing earthly riches and pleasures, and to keep us interested in the things of heaven.
5. Believers’ position and walk.
a) Our position in God’s sight is acceptance in Christ (Ephesians 1:6), with Christ’s righteousness imputed to us (2 Corinthians 5:21). God sees us in Christ. We see God in Christ.
b) Our walk is the result of our spiritual state. If we are controlled by the flesh, we will be carnal.
6. Possessor and Professor.
Many true believers lack assurance of salvation because they fail to distinguish scriptures on true believers and false believers.
Rule: Never let an unclear scripture contradict a clear scripture.

- a) Hebrews 6:4-8 was written to Jewish believers, who because of persecution, were returning to Judaistic temple worship, which amounted to crucifying Christ afresh. It says nothing about loss of salvation.
- b) Philippians 2:12 God works salvation in us, then we must work out the details of our salvation.
- c) If eternal life could be lost, then it would not be eternal.
- d) Don't judge the Word of God by human experience, but judge human experience by the Word of God. (A legal system).

7. Law and Grace.

Law is the Mosaic Covenant instituted by God at Mount Sinai. The Law was added that sin might become transgression.

Grace is God's unmerited favour (given without human merit). Grace means everything for nothing. It is the gift of God.

God's grace is rich grace (Ephesians 1:7,8), abounding grace (Romans 5:15), exceeding grace (2 Cor. 9:14), manifold grace (1 Peter 4:10), exceeding riches (Ephesians 2:7), unsearchable riches (Ephesians 3:8), and exceeding abundant (1 Timothy 1:14).

8. Kingdom of Heaven and Kingdom of God.

Kingdom of Heaven is from heaven on earth. God has one Kingdom, the Kingdom of God, but with different phases. (Kingdom of Israel (Acts 1:6), Kingdom of Heaven (Matthew 13:24), Kingdom of the Son (Colossians 1:13)).

<u>Kingdom of Heaven</u>	<u>Kingdom of God</u>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Messiah</u> is its King • Political • Promised to <u>Israel in OT</u> with a king ruling on a literal throne. • Natural • Limited to <u>earth</u> • Limited to <u>1000 yr Millennium</u> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Trinity</u> is its Ruler • Spiritual • <u>All saved in any period.</u> The seed of Abraham. The church. All saved in the Millennium. Christ gives the earthly KOG to the Father, so the Trinity reigns forever. (1 Corinthians 15:24). • <u>Universal</u> • Unlimited over the <u>whole universe.</u> • Eternal, will <u>never end.</u>

5. The PREDICTIVE Principle

There is a difference between prophecy and prediction. Prophecy is speaking the Word of God.

Predictive prophecy is speaking the Word of God about the future. This proves the Bible is from God.

i. Criteria to test a prophecy:

- a) Remoteness of time, so the prophet cannot fulfil it himself.
- b) Minuteness of detail. The prophecy should have so many minute details that it couldn't be guesswork. For example, over 33 prophecies were fulfilled during Christ's crucifixion.
- c) Novelty. There must be something new, fresh, startling, original to prove divine intervention.
- d) Clearness of forecast. It should have no ambiguity or cloudiness of statement.

ii. Rules for the Interpretation of Prophecy:

- a) Let the prophet give his own interpretation.
E.g In Daniel 8:20,21 the Ram = Kings of Medo-Persia. The He Goat = King of Greece.
- b) Historical Facts may give the interpretation.
E.g. The Daniel 2 image is explained as world history unfolds. City of Tyre (Ezekiel 26).
- c) Other Scriptures may interpret the prophecy.
E.g. Psalm 41:9 is shown to be Judas by Acts 1:15-18.
Psalm 16:10 is shown to be Christ by Acts 3:14,15.
- d) Proper recognition of figures of speech. E.g. similes, metaphors, hyperbole.
- e) Proper identification of symbols and types in the text. Speculation is not interpretation. E.g. Revelation 17:18 (whore = Rome); Revelation 12:1,2 (Woman = Israel).

6. The APPLICATION Principle

An application of scripture may be made only after the correct interpretation has been learned. First seek the one correct interpretation. There may be many applications. The mystical and allegorical methods prevent correct interpretation.

(Mystical = only a priesthood can properly interpret scripture. (Roman Catholicism).

Allegorical = any symbolic or figurative representation of people or events.

Ecclesiastes is the book of the natural unsaved man depicting the emptiness of life apart from God.

“Vanity of vanities” occurs 28 times in Ecclesiastes.

7. The Human WILLINGNESS Principle

Knowledge of God’s truth is guaranteed to people willing to DO the truth.

“If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself.” (John 7:17). We must:

i) Be willing to obey the Bible.

If we live up to the light we have, God will give us more light. If we refuse to obey given light, we will have no more light.

ii) Believe in the supreme authority of the Bible, without some human organisation (such as the Watchtower, or the Roman Catholic Church).

iii) Have Intellectual Honesty. Be ready to submit your opinion to the Bible as God’s Word.

Unlearn unbiblical ideas from your past.

iv) Be Guided by the Holy Spirit.

Sin has darkened and veiled our understanding. Sin brings blindness and seals the Bible.

“None of the wicked shall understand.” Daniel 12:10.

8. The FIRST MENTION Principle

God indicates His mind on a subject where it is first mentioned. God indicates in the first mention of a subject, word or expression, the key to its subsequent meaning in Scripture. Examples include:

i) Satan is shown to be subtle and deceptive. (Genesis 3:1); 2 Corinthians 11:3; Matthew 4:1-10.

ii) Christ’s first words at age 12 characterised His work on earth. (Luke 2:49 “Wist ye not that I must be about my Father’s business”).

Christ’s first ministry words were: “It is written” (Matthew 4:4,6,10) showing that His entire ministry was according to the Word Of God.

iii) Faith is the way to be justified. Abraham and everyone finds righteousness with God by faith. Abraham “believed in the Lord; and he counted it to him for righteousness.” (Gen.15:6, Heb11:6)

iv) Babylon is always associated with rebellion against God, false religion and idolatry (Genesis 11, Revelation 17). Babylon means confusion.

v) Jerusalem is first mentioned in Judges 1:7,8 “The men of Judah smote it with the edge of the sword and set it on fire.” Jerusalem was besieged 27 times and burned 3 times in history.

vi) The Son of man will have all things put under His feet. (Psalm 8:4-6; I Corinthians 15:27).

vii) War is justified in some cases. (Genesis 14).

9. The PROGRESSIVE MENTION Principle

God makes the revelation of any given truth increasingly clear as the Bible proceeds to its end. Details are added to truth as scripture progresses.

1. The Saviour would be: i) Seed of the Woman (Genesis 3:15).

ii) Abraham’s seed (Genesis 12:3).

iii) Isaac, Jacob, Judah, and David’s descendant.

iv) Bethlehem (Micah 5:2) would be His place of birth.

v) Time of birth (Daniel 9:25)

vi) Ride into Jerusalem on a colt (Zechariah 9:9).

vii) John the Baptist would be His forerunner/messenger (Malachi 3:1, Isaiah 40:1-5).

viii) Sold for 30 pieces of silver (Zechariah 11:12).

ix) Crucified (Psalm 22:16,14,18).

x) No bones broken (Psalm 34:20).

xi) Resurrected (Psalm 16:10).

xii) All peoples’ sins would be laid on Him (Isaiah 53:6).

2. Prayer i) In OT, David, Daniel and others prayed 3 times daily toward Jerusalem.
 ii) In the Gospels, pray in our closet (Matthew 6:6).
 iii) In the Epistles, pray without ceasing (1 Thess. 5:17). Be in constant communion with the Father.
3. Trinity is seen:
 - i) In the OT, Elohim (plural Noun) and “us and our” (Plural pronouns). (Genesis 1:1,26).
 2 Samuel 23:2,3; “The Lord God and his Spirit has sent me.” Isaiah 48:12,13,**16**; Isaiah 63:7-10.
 - ii) In the NT, at Jesus’ baptism all 3 are present (Mark 1:9-11); Great Commission (Matt 28:19-20); Apostolic Benediction (2 Cor 13:14); 3 Heavenly Witnesses (1 John 5:7); Same throne, face, Name (Rev. 22:3,4).
4. Rewards i) In the OT, rewards are material. ii) In the NT, rewards are spiritual and eternal.
5. God’s Dwelling Places. i) Eden. ii) Tabernacle in the Wilderness. iii) Solomon’s Temple.
 iv) Christ’s Body on earth. v) Believer’s body (1 Cor. 3:16; 6:19). vi) Christ on earth in Millennium
 vii) New Jerusalem (Revelation 21,22).
6. Satan. i) Liar (Genesis 3:4). ii) Murderer of mankind. iii) Accuser (Job 1:11). iv) Hinderer, Resister
 (Zech. 3:1,2). v) Tempter (Genesis 3, Matthew 4). vi) Betrayer through Judas. vii) Seduces saints
 (Acts 5:1-5). viii) Lawlessness (2 Thess. 2:3,4). ix) Rebellion (Rev. 19).
7. Lamb progresses from:
 - i) Abel’s Lamb sacrifice accepted (Genesis 4).
 - ii) God will provide himself a lamb (Genesis 22:8).
 - iii) Passover lamb was slain and its blood must be applied (Exodus 12).
 - iv) Lamb is a person slain for the whole world (Isaiah 53).
 - v) Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world. (John 1:29).
 - vi) Philip tells Eunuch that the Lamb prophesied by Isaiah is Jesus who died on Calvary. Acts 8.
 - vii) Christ is the Lamb foreordained to be slain and resurrected. (1 Peter 1:18-21).
 - viii) Christ the Lamb is the Lion of Judah. (Revelation 5:5-14).
 - ix) Christ the Lamb equally owns God’s throne, has God’s face and has God’s Name (Rev. 22:3,4)
8. Atonement (covering of sin) (Heb. Kaphar).
 - i) Noah covered the Ark inside and outside with pitch.
 - ii) On the Day of Atonement, God covered the sins of Israel (like sweeping dirt under the carpet)
 (Psalm 32:1; 85:2), looking forward to Christ’s blood to be shed on Calvary which would cleanse
 and wash away our sins. (1 John 1:7).
- 10. The FULL MENTION Principle**
 In a certain part of the Bible, God declares His mind on any subject vital to our spiritual life. Examples:
 - i) Resurrection (1 Corinthians 15).
 - ii) The Tongue (James 3). Words manifest sin and ungodliness.
 - iii) Spiritual Gifts (1 Corinthians 12,13,14).
 - iv) Faith (Hebrews 11).
 - v) God disciplining His Children (Hebrews 12).
 - vi) Church as God sees it (Ephesians 1-3), and the church as man sees it (Ephesians 4-6).
 - vii) Laws of Christ’s Millennial Kingdom (Matthew 5,6,7).
 - viii) Israel’s past election, present rejection, future restoration (Romans 9,10,11).
 - ix) Christ’s substitutionary sacrifice (Isaiah 53).
 - x) Christ’s Return (Revelation 1-22).
 - xi) Justification and righteousness by faith (Romans 3,4,5).
 - xii) Christ’s natures as Son of God (Hebrews 1) and the Son of Man (Hebrews 2).
 - xiii) Restoration of Israel: Romans 11.
 - xiv) Law. Exodus 20.
 - xv) Spiritual Armour. Ephesians 6
 - xvi) Last things. Matthew 24.
 - xvii) History of Gentile world empires. (Daniel 2).
 - xviii) The New Birth. (John 3).

11. The CONTEXT Principle

God gives light on a subject through near or remote passages bearing on the same theme.

Every verse must be studied in the light of its context. Examples are:

- i. Valley of Valley of Dry Bones prophecy of Israel (Ezekiel 37). Mormons think that the two sticks are the Bible and the Book of Mormon. The context tells us that it is Judah and Israel becoming one nation in the land (Ezekiel 37:15,16).
- ii. Matthew 24:13 does not teach possible loss of salvation because the context is the Tribulation period where Tribulation believers are called upon to endure troubles for 7 years, where they will be rescued by Christ returning. It does not teach loss of salvation.
- iii. Psalm 2:8,9 has nothing to do with missions, but concerns Christ's ruling earth at His return.
- iv. Near Context:- The Ram and He-goat (Daniel 8:3-22) are Medo-Persia and Greece.
 - Jesus explains the Parables of the Sower and the Wheat and Tares in Matthew 13:1-43.
 - "Afterward" in Joel 2:28 dates this after the northern army is removed.
 - "These" in John 21:15 refers to the other disciples (v.20).
- v. Remote Context- The woman with 12 stars (Rev.12:1,2) is Israel & the 12 tribes (Genesis 37:9,10)
 - The 42 months, or 1260 days of Revelation 11:1-3 and 12:6 is shown to be the last half of the Tribulation from Daniel 9:24-27.
 - Who tongues are intended for (1 Cor. 14:21,22) is seen to be Israel from Isaiah 28:11; Jer5:15
 - The purpose of God according to election in Romans 9:11,12 is seen to be the national election of Israel to service from Genesis 25:23.

12. The AGREEMENT Principle

God will not put any passage in the Bible which contradicts any other passage. Take the clear passage rather than the unclear passage. Study the unclear passage more thoroughly to find its correct meaning. There are no contradictions in Scripture. Some apparent contradictions and their resolution are:

- i) Paul says we are justified by faith (Romans 5:1; 4:2-4).
James says Abraham was justified by works (James 2:21-24).
Answer: Paul says sinners are justified by faith in God's eyes as a doctrine. Faith is the Godward condition of salvation. James says works are the manward evidence of salvation.
- ii) Matthew 27:9 "spoken by Jeremy the prophet." These words are not in the book of Jeremiah, but are in the book of Zechariah. Jeremiah spoke it, but Zechariah wrote what Jeremiah spoke.
- iii) Acts 7:14 states Jacob and his kindred were 75 souls going into Egypt. Genesis 46:26 states that all coming with Jacob to Egypt, which came out of his loins (except his son's wives) were 66.
Answer: Souls that came to Egypt except wives (66); plus Jacob (1); plus Joseph (1); plus Joseph's 2 sons (2); plus wives of Jacob's sons (5) = 75.
- iv) 1 Corinthians 10:8 "fell in one day 23,000."
Numbers 25:9 "Those that died in the plague were 24,000." Answer: 1,000 died the next day.
- v) 2 Samuel 24:24 says David paid 50 shekels of silver for Ornan's threshing floor (Heb:goren).
In I Chronicles 21:22-25 David paid 600 shekels of gold for the threshing place (Heb: Magom), the larger area where the temple and its courts were later built.
- vi) Proverbs 26:4 "Answer not a fool according to his folly." Don't lower yourself to the level of a fool as if he were wise. Proverbs 26:5 "Answer a fool according to his folly" so as to expose his folly, so that he will not feel wise and superior.
- vii) Galatians 6:2 "Bear ye one another's burdens."
Galatians 6:5 "Every man shall bear his own burden."
Answer: These are two different kinds of burdens.
We can help bear others' burdens of sorrow, grief and poverty (burdens of sympathy).
We cannot bear others' burdens of duty and responsibility, which are not transferable.
- viii) Acts 9:7 "Hearing a voice, but seeing no man."
Acts 22:9 "They heard not the voice of him that spake with me."
Answer: The men heard the voice as a sound, (Gk: phone), but did not hear the voice as articulating the words "Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me."
- ix) There are not 2 accounts of creation. Genesis 1 gives the overall account of creation.
Genesis 2 gives the detailed account of creation. 1045

13. **The DIRECT STATEMENT Principle**

God says what He means, and means what He says. Therefore, do not spiritualise the Bible away. Take it literally as the context states. This will make us premillennial, not amillennial.

Question: How do we interpret figures of speech in the Bible?

Rule: Words should be understood literally, unless the literal interpretation involves a contradiction or absurdity. For example, Hard heart, sins as scarlet (Isaiah 1:18), let the dead bury their dead (Matthew 8:22), destroy this temple (John 2:19).

Types of figures of speech:

1. **Metaphor:** One thing is said to be another thing which it resembles. It is figurative use of terms without indicating their figurative nature. (The word “is” in this context means “represents”).
“All flesh is is grass.” (Isaiah 40:6).
“We are...the sheep of his pasture.” (Psalm 100:3).
“The Lord is my rock, and my fortress.” (Psalm 18:2).
“This is my body...this is my blood.” (Matthew 26:26-28).
“I am the bread of life.” (John 6:35).
2. **Simile:** One thing is “like” or “as” another thing.
“All we like sheep.” (Isaiah 53:6).
“All flesh is as grass.” (1 Peter 1:24).
“The kingdom of heaven is like...” (Matthew 13:24,31,33,44,45,47).
“I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock.” (Matthew 7:24-27).
“As the rain cometh down, so shall my word be.” (Isaiah 55:10,11).
“Is not my word like as a fire, and like a hammer.” (Jeremiah 23:29).
3. **Hyperbole:** Overstatement or exaggeration used to emphasise or magnify an object beyond reality.
“Oh that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears.” (Jeremiah 9:1).
“Joseph gathered corn as the sand of the sea.” (Genesis 41:49).
“The cities are great and walled up to heaven.” (Deuteronomy 1:28).
“The Midianites and Amalekites...lay like grasshoppers.” (Judges 7:12).
“Saul and Jonathan...were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.” (2 Samuel 1:23).
“But I am a worm.” (Psalm 22:6).
“If thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out...If thy right hand offend thee, cut it off.” (Matthew 5:29,30).
4. **Personification:** An inanimate object is given attributes of life.
“The earth opened her mouth.” (Numbers 16:32).
5. **Parable:** An earthly story with a heavenly meaning. (Matthew 13).

14. **The TYPICAL Principle.**

A type is a divinely appointed illustration of some Scriptural truth. A type must typify something future.

- A person: Adam, Abraham, Joseph, Moses, Jonah.
- An event: deliverance from bondage.
- A thing: brass serpent, veil of the tabernacle.
- Ritual types: tabernacle, priesthood, Passover.

15. **The GAP Principle**

God may leap over centuries without comment, leaving a gap of time. Examples include:

1. Luke 4:16-21 “To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.” (v.19).
Isaiah 61:1,2 adds “the day of vengeance of our God” which has not yet come.
There is a 2000 year gap between these 2 clauses describing Christ’s first and second comings.
2. 1 Peter 1:11 “testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow”.
The prophets did not see the 2000 year gap between Christ’s first and second comings.
3. Revelation 12:5,6 “Her child was caught up unto God (33AD). And the woman (Israel) fled into the wilderness where they should feed her there 1260 days.” Here is a gap from Christ’s ascension to Israel being persecuted by the Antichrist in the middle of the 7 year Tribulation.

4. Isaiah 9:6 “For unto us a child is born, unto us a Son is given (first coming): and the government shall be upon his shoulder (Jesus Christ’s second coming).”
5. Daniel 9:26,27 “After 62 weeks shall Messiah be cut off (33AD): and the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary (70AD). And he (*Antichrist*) shall confirm the covenant with many for one week (Tribulation).” Here are 2 gaps. One of 37 years and another of about 2000 years.
6. Hosea 5:15-6:2 “I (*Jesus Christ*) will go and return to my place (*heaven in 33AD*), till they acknowledge their offence (*Jews offence of crucifying Christ*), and seek my face: in their affliction they will seek me early (*in the tribulation, over 2000 years later*).”

16. The THREE-FOLD Principle. God sets forth many truths in a three-fold way.

1. Three immediate benefits of salvation: “Hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation, but is passed from death unto life.” (John 5:24).
2. “And now abideth faith, hope and charity...” (1 Corinthians 13:13). Three qualities to live by.
3. Prophecy, tongues and knowledge to cease in the first century. (1 Corinthians 13:8).
4. Israel’s past election, present rejection, and future restoration. (Romans 9,10,11).
5. “Your whole spirit, soul and body...” (1 Thessalonians 5:23).
6. “Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the church of God” 1Cor10:32
7. “The God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and of Jacob.” (Exodus 3:16,15).
8. “Baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.” Matthew 28:19
9. “Jesus taketh Peter, James and John.” (Matthew 17:1). Three inner disciples.
10. Jesus raised 3 people from the dead. (Luke 7:12-15; 8:41,42; John 11:43,44)
11. Jesus’ title was written in 3 languages on the cross. (John 19:20).
12. Jesus the good shepherd (John 10:11), great shepherd (Heb 13:20), chief shepherd (1 Peter 5:4).
13. Satanic counterfeit of the trinity of Satan, AntiChrist, and False Prophet (Revelation 20:10).
14. Jesus’ 3 offices of a Prophet (Luke 24:19), Priest (Hebrews 2:17), and King (Matthew 2:2).
15. Baby Jesus given 3 gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh (Matthew 2:11).
16. 3 paths of temptation: “The lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life.” 1 John 2:16
17. 3 steps of destruction: lust, sin, death (James 1:15).
18. 3 degrees of prayer: ask, seek, knock (Matthew 7:7).
19. 3 tenses of time: “Jesus Christ, the same, yesterday, and today, and forever.” (Hebrews 13:8).
20. 3 musts: “Ye must be born again.” John 3:7), “Even so must the Son of Man be lifted up” (John 3:14), “He must increase” (John 3:30).
21. 3 degrees of fruit bearing: “Some hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty”. (Matthew 13:23).
22. 3 kinds of work rewarded: “gold, silver, precious stones” (suffering for Christ, wisdom gained, souls won). (1 Corinthians 3:12).
23. Holy Spirit convicts the world of sin, righteousness, and judgment (John 16:8-11).
24. 3 Heavenly witnesses, 3 earthly witnesses (1 John 5:7,8).
25. 3 spiritual conditions of men: the natural man...carnal man...spiritual. (1 Cor 2:14,15; 3:1-4).
26. 3 blessings from God: “Grace, mercy and peace from God our Father and Jesus Christ our Lord.” (1 Timothy 1:2).
27. 3 Downward steps (Psalm 1:1).
28. 3 Benefits of waiting on God (“mount up,...run,...walk...” Isaiah 40:31).
29. 3 sons of Noah to populate post flood earth: Shem, Ham, Japheth (Genesis 6:10).
30. 3 main OT characters: Noah, Daniel, Job (Ezekiel 14:14,20).
31. 3 Heavens (2 Corinthians 12:2).
32. 3 Heavenly visitors who met Abraham (Genesis 18:2).
33. 3 False friends of Job (Job 2:11).
34. 3 Friends of Daniel (Daniel 3:23,26).
35. 3 Mighty Men of David (2 Samuel 23:16-23).
36. 3 groups of 3 fruits of the Spirit. (Galatians 5:22,23).
37. 3 kinds of judgments in Revelation: seals, trumpets, and bowls (Revelation 6,8,9,16).
38. 3 temptations of Jesus in the wilderness. (Matthew 4:1-11).

39. 3 keys to finding soul rest: Come unto me, take my yoke upon you, learn of me (Matt.11:28-30)
40. 3 descriptions of Jesus Christ's mission: teaching, preaching, healing (Matthew 4:23).
41. 3 groups of 3 beatitudes. (Matthew 5:1-12).
42. 3 angel messages came to Joseph in dreams (Matthew 1:20; 2:13,19).
43. 3 descriptions of God: God is Spirit (John 4:24), God is light (1 John 1:5), God is love (1John4:8,16)
44. 3 commands to walk; walk in the spirit (Galatians 5:16), walk as children of light (Ephesians 5:8), walk in love (Ephesians 5:2).
45. 3 lost things: Lost sheep, lost coin, lost Son. (Luke 15:1-32).
46. 3 faculties to love God with: Heart, Soul, Mind (Matthew 22:37).
47. 3 parables against negligence: Faithful and unfaithful servants (Matthew 24:45-51), 10 Virgins (Matthew 25:1-13), The Talents (Matthew 25:14-30).
48. 3 denials of Peter (Matthew 26:69-75).
49. 3 men entrusted with talents (Matthew 25:15).
50. 3 signs attesting Christ as Messiah on the cross: the rent veil (27:51), the earthquake (27:51), the resurrection of some Old Testament saints (Matthew 27:51).
51. 3 aspects of Christ's Great Commission: Make disciples, Baptize, Teach (Matthew 28:19,20).
52. 3 examples of apostasy (Jude 5-7): unbelieving Israelites, Fallen angels, Sodom and Gomorrah.
53. 3 examples of rebellion: (Jude 11): way of Cain, error of Balaam, gainsaying of Korah.
54. 3 last heralds of Christ's second coming: the Saviour- "I come quickly". (Revelation 22:20).
the Spirit- "the Spirit and the bride say Come". (22:17)
the Saint- "Even so, come, Lord Jesus". (22:20).
55. 3 stages of the First Resurrection: Firstfruits (1 Cor. 15:23); Harvest (1 Thessalonians 4:16-18); Gleanings (Revelation 20:4-6).
56. 3 keys to victory: Know, Reckon, Yield (Romans 6).
57. 3 elements of the gospel (1 Corinthians 15:1-4): Christ died, was buried, and rose again.
58. Jesus was 3 days and 3 nights in the heart of the earth (Matthew 12:40).
59. 3 ways to be blessed from Revelation: Read, Hear, Keep the words. (Revelation 1:3).
60. Jesus' 3 warnings against Hell (Mark 9:44,46,48).

17. The ELECTION Principle

God in working out His purposes sets aside all firsts and establishes all seconds.

For example, in Romans 9:10-12 God's purpose is that the elder shall serve the younger.

Question: Why does God do this? We were lost in our first condition. Believers are saved by Christ which becomes our second condition. Examples are:

Cain was set aside for Abel (Genesis 4:1-5).

Japheth was set aside for Shem. (Genesis 10:21).

Ishmael was set aside for Isaac (Genesis 17:19,21).

Esau was set aside for Jacob (Romans 9:10-13).

Reuben was set aside for Judah (Genesis 49:3-10).

Manasseh was set aside for Ephraim (Genesis 48:13-20).

Saul was set aside for David (I Samuel 15:28; 13:13,14).

Eliab (Jesse's firstborn) was set aside for David. (I Samuel 16:6,7).

Adam was set aside for Jesus Christ (I Corinthians 15:45-49).

Mosaic Covenant was set aside for the New Covenant of Christ. (Hebrews 7:6,7,13).

First heaven and earth will be set aside for the New Heaven and New Earth (Revelation 21:1,2).

First birth set aside for the New Birth (John 3:3-7; I Corinthians 15:50).

Our first corruptible body will be set aside for our immortal resurrection body (I Cor. 15:35).

The Ten Commandments of Moses are set aside for the NT Law of Christ (Hebrews 8:13-9:4).

The Sabbath (Mosaic day of worship) was set aside for Sunday (NT day of worship). I Cor. 16:2.

OT offerings were set aside for Christ's perfect offering on the cross. (Hebrews 10:14).

18. The CHRIST-CENTRED Principle

1. The Mind of Deity is centred on Christ. Christ is the visible image of the invisible God.
“Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus.” (Philippians 2:5).
“In him dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily.” (Colossians 2:9).
“In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.” (Colossians 2:3).
“Who is the image of the invisible God.” (Colossians 1:15; 2 Cor 4:4; Hebrews 1:3).
2. All Angelic thought and ministry centre on Christ.
Seraphim worshipped Christ as Jehovah whom Isaiah saw (Isaiah 6:5 and John 12:41).
Angels announced Christ’s birth. (Luke 1:26-38; 2:8-20).
Angels ministered to Christ after Satan tempted Him 40 days in the wilderness. (Matthew 4:11).
Angels return with Christ to earth. (Matthew 25:31; 2 Thessalonians 1:7).
Angels are subject to Christ. (1 Peter 3:22).
All Angels of God worship Christ. (Hebrews 1:6).
3. All Satan’s hatred and attacks are centred on Christ.
Satan tried to corrupt mankind and Christ’s line before the flood (Genesis 6:1-5).
Satan used Pharaoh to try to destroy Israel and Christ’s line in Egyptian bondage (Exodus 1:7-22)
Satan used Athaliah to try to wipe out Christ’s line. One baby Joash survived. (2 Kings 11).
Satan used Haman to try to destroy Christ’s line. God used Esther to save Israel and Christ’s line. (Esther 4:1,13-16).
Satan used King Herod to kill all male babies under age 2 in order to kill Christ. (Matthew 2).
4. All Human Hopes are centred on Christ of:
Having eternal life. (1 John 5:12-13).
Freeing Creation from the corruption of sin (Romans 8:18-23).
Having a resurrection body like Christ’s (1 John 3:1-3).
5. All the material universe’s preservation centres on Christ.
“Upholding all things by the Word of His Power.” (Hebrews 1:3).
“By him were all things created, by him all things consist.” (Colossians 1:16,17).
6. All the Written Word of God centres on Christ. Christ is the perfect example of the perfect man. The life of the Bible is Christ, as its central theme and character. Christ is in every book of the Bible as seen by:

Christ In Every Book of the Bible

Bible Reading: Luke 24:13-35. Memory Verse: “Did not our heart burn within us, while he talked with us by the way, and while he opened to us the scriptures?” Luke 24:27,32.

Aim: To get fire in our hearts (Luke 24:32) as Christ expounds in all the Scriptures the things concerning Himself. (Luke 24:27). To understand Who Christ is in every book of the Bible.

Introduction: The two disciple’s response to Jesus expounding about Himself in the Bible was to say:

- a. Abide with us (v.29).
- b. They had a burning zeal in their heart for Christ (v.32).
- c. They preached Christ’s resurrection to others (v.34).
- d. He opened their understanding of the scriptures.

Question: How is Jesus Christ portrayed in each Book of the Bible?

Genesis: 1. Creator (1:1). Colossians 1:16,17. 2. Seed of the Woman (3:15). Matthew 1:18-25.

3. Shiloh (49:10)-our peace. “in me ye might have peace.” John 16:33.

4. Shepherd, the Stone of Israel (49:24). John 10:11.

Exodus: 1. Our Passover Lamb for sinners slain. (12:5), 1 Corinthians 5:7.

2. Manna (16:14-22). John 6:35. 3. Rock (17:1-7). 1 Corinthians 10:4.

4. Veil (26:31-35). Hebrews 10:19,20. 5. God of Israel (“I AM”). (3:14). John 8:58,24.

6. Law-Giver (24:9-18).

Leviticus: 1. Our Great High Priest (8). Hebrews 4:14. 2. The Scapegoat (16:7-10).

Numbers: 1. Star out of Jacob (24:17). Daystar arise in your hearts. 2 Peter 1:19; Rev. 22:16.

2. The Brazen Serpent (21:5-9). John 3:14,15.

3. The Sceptre (Ruler, King) (24:17). 1 Timothy 6:14-16.

Deuteronomy: Prophet like Moses. (18:15-19). Acts 3:22,23; 7:37.

Joshua: Captain of the Host of the Lord (5:13-15). Hebrews 2:10.

Judges: Deliverer of Israel (3:9); Judge of Judges; Messenger of Jehovah (6:12,22,23, 13:1-28).

Ruth: Our Kinsman-Redeemer (2:1).

1 Samuel: The Despised and Rejected King (16-19, 8:1-7). John 1:11.

2 Samuel: 1. The Seed of David (7:12). Romans 1:3,4. 2. David's Lord (7:4-17). Psalm 110:1.

1 Kings: 1. King of Kings and Lord of Lords. 2. Greater than Solomon (Matthew 12:42).

2 Kings: Greater miracle worker than Elisha (Life from the tomb. 13:20,21).

1,2 Chronicles: Historian of Chronicles. Chief Ruler of Israel (I Chron.5:2).

Ezra: Builder of the Temple of Ezra.

Nehemiah: Rebuilder of the Walls. (Proverbs 25:28).

Esther: 1. Our Mordecai (Esther 10:3). 2. The Deliverer of Israel. 3. Our Esther-our Advocate.

Job: 1. The friend that sticketh closer than a brother (Prov.18:24). 2. Our Hedge (Job 1:10; John 10:27-29)
3. Our Resurrected, Returning Redeemer (Job 19:25).

Psalms: 1. He is the Blessed Man (Psalm 1). 2. He is the Son of God (Psalm 2:12).

3. He is the Crucified One (Psalm 22:16,18). 4. He is My Shepherd (Psalm 23).

5. He is the coming King of Glory (Psalm 24:7-10). 6. He is the Millennial Ruler (Psalm 72).

7. He is the Head of the Corner (Psalm 118:22). 8.

Proverbs: The Wisdom of God (Prov. 4:7; I Cor. 1:24). He is mercy and truth (16:6). A Friend (18:24).

Ecclesiastes: 1. The Forgotten Poor Wise Man. (9:14-16; 2 Corinthians 8:9).

2. The Creator (12:1. John 1:1-3). 3. The Preacher. (12:9-12).

Song of Solomon: 1. The Rose of Sharon (2:1). 2. The Lily of the Valley (2:1). 3. My Beloved (2:16).

4. The Heavenly Bridegroom (5:10). 5. The Altogether Lovely One (5:16).

Isaiah: 1. Our suffering Substitute (53). 2. Our Branch (11:1). 3. Immanuel (7:14).

4. Our Wonderful, Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father (Father of eternity), Prince of Peace (9:6)

Jeremiah: 1. The Lord Our Righteousness (23:6). 2. The Weeping Prophet (9:1).

Lamentations: The Man of Sorrows. (1:12-16).

Ezekiel: The God of Israel as a man on the Throne (1:26; 10:20).

Daniel: The Smiting Stone cut out without hands (2:34). The Son of God (3:25).

The Ancient of Days (7:9). The Prince of Princes (8:25). Messiah the Prince (9:25).

(To Israel, a Stone of stumbling (Romans 9:31-33); to the Gentiles, the Smiting Stone (Daniel 2:35,45);
To the Church, the Head of the Corner (I Peter 2:6,7)).

Hosea: The Son called out of Egypt (11:1), Reviver of Israel (6:1,2), A Young Lion (5:14).

Joel: The Hope and Strength of Israel (3:16); The Judge of all nations (3:12; Matthew 25:31,32).

Amos: The Rebuilder of the Tabernacle of David (9:11-15).

Obadiah: The Deliverer on Mt Zion (v.17). (Romans 11:26).

Jonah: The Resurrected Saviour (Matthew 12:38-40). The Giver of the Great Commission (1:2; 3:2).

Micah: The Babe of Bethlehem, The Eternal God (5:2); The Smitten Judge of Israel. (5:1; Matt. 26:67)

Nahum: Our Stronghold in the day of trouble (1:7).

Habakkuk: The Justifier by faith (2:4; Romans 1:17; Galatians 3:11).

The Everlasting Mighty God (1:12; Isaiah 9:6). My Holy One (1:12; Acts 3:14). (Luke 17:21)

Zephaniah: The King of Israel (3:15; John 1:49; Isaiah 44:6). The Lord God in the midst of thee (3:5,15,17)

Haggai: The Desire of all nations (2:7); The Builder of the Millennial Temple (2:7-9).

Zechariah: The Branch (3:8; 6:12; Isaiah 4:2; John 15:1-5); Builder of the Millennial Temple (6:12,13).

Israel's King coming on an ass' colt (9:9; Luke 19:29-38).

The betrayed Saviour (11:12; Exodus 21:32; Matthew 26:15; 27:1-10).

The Shepherd (13:7). Fountain for cleansing sin (13:1).

Priest and King - our Intercessor (6:13; Hebrews 7:25).

Crucified, Risen, Returning Saviour (13:6; 12:10; Psalm 22:16).

King over all the earth (14:9). The King, Jehovah of hosts (14:16).

Malachi: The Lord Coming to His temple (3:1). The Refiner's fire, the fullers' soap (3:2),

Sun of righteousness (4:2). The unchangeable One (3:6; Hebrews 13:8).

Matthew: The King of the Jews (2:1,2); The Sower (13:37); The Christ, the Son of the Living God (16:16). Fulfiller of the Law (5:17); Son of man (8:20); Physician (9:12); Bridegroom (9:15); Son of David (9:27); Lord of Harvest (9:38); Divider of men (10:35); Carpenter's son (13:55); My Beloved Son (17:5); Teacher & Preacher (11:1); Meek & Lowly One (11:29); Christ, the Son of the living God (16:16); Church builder (16:18); Stone builders rejected (22:42); David's Lord (22:44); Master (23:8,10); Lord of servants (25:19); Shepherd (26:13).
Mark: God's righteous servant (Isaiah 53:11); Holy One (1:24); Fisher of men (1:17); Forgiver of sins (2:5)
Luke: The Perfect Son of Man (19:10).

John: The Son of God (5:25; 9:35; 10:36; 11:4); Word (1:1,14), Creator (1:3,10), True Light (1:7-9), Only begotten Son the Father (1:14), Lamb of God (1:29,36), Messiah (1:41; 4:25,26), King of Israel (1:49; 12:13,15), Son of Man (1:51; 3:14), Saviour (4:42), Bread of God (6:33), Bread of Life (6:35,48), Living Bread (6:51), Son of the Living God (6:69), Prophet like Moses (6:14; 7:40); Light of the World (8:12; 9:5), I AM (8:24,58), The Door (10:7,9), Good Shepherd (10:11,14), Resurrection and Life (11:25), True Vine (15:1,5), Our Keeper (17:12), King of the Jews (18:33-39; 19:19), God (20:28).
Acts: Risen, ascended Lord (1:8-10), The Holy One, The Just, Prince of Life (3:14,15), Prophet like Moses (7:37), Lord of all (10:36), Judge of quick and dead (10:42), Saviour (13:23), Hope of Israel (28:20)
Romans: Our righteousness (3:22), Lord of the dead and living (14:9).

1 Corinthians: The Power of God & the wisdom of God (1:24), Our only Foundation (3:11), Our Passover (5:7), Reward-giver (9:24-27), Spiritual Rock (10:4), The Lord (12:3), Perfect love (13:4-8), Firstfruits from dead. (15:20,23).

2 Corinthians: Our Co-worker (6:1), Our Comforter (7:6), Our Sufficiency (3:5; 12:9).

Galatians: Seed of Abraham (3:16), End of the Mosaic Law (3:24,25), Our Liberator (5:1).

Ephesians: Our Teacher (4:20), Head of the church (5:23), armour of God (6:11-18) to put on. Rom 13:14

Philippians: Our Strength (4:13), Our Life (1:21) (Colossians 3:4).

Colossians: The Pre-eminent One (1:18), the image of the invisible God (1:15), the Creator (1:16), All the fullness of the Godhead (2:9), Our Life (3:4).

1 Thessalonians: Our Returning Lord (4:15-18).

2 Thessalonians: Destroyer of Antichrist (2:8), Lord of Peace (3:16).

1 Timothy: God manifest in the flesh (3:16), Our Mediator (2:5), Ransom (2:6), Saviour of all men (4:10)

2 Timothy: The Righteous Judge (4:8), Deliverer from every evil work (4:18), Preserver (4:18).

Titus: Our Saviour (1:3,4; 3:6), Our Great God and Saviour (2:13).

Philemon: The Payer of our sin debt (18).

Hebrews: Apostle and High Priest of our Profession (3:1), Upholder of all things (1:3), Captain of our Salvation (2:10), Merciful and faithful high priest (2:17), High Priest after Melchisedec order (6:20; 5:6; 7:17,21), Mediator of a better Covenant (8:6; 9:15; 12:24), Author and finisher of our faith (12:2), The same (13:8), My helper (13:6), Great Shepherd of the sheep (13:20), Express image of God (1:3), Brightness of Father's glory (1:3), sin purger (1:3), God (1:8), Creator (1:2,10).

James: Lord of glory (2:1), Lord of Sabaoth (5:4).

1 Peter: Theme of OT prophecy (1:10,11), Lamb without blemish and without spot (1:19), Living stone (2:4), Chief cornerstone (2:6), Stone the builders disallowed (2:7), Stumbling stone, rock of offence (2:8), Shepherd and Bishop of your souls (2:25), Chief Shepherd (5:4).

2 Peter: The Lord that bought them (2:1), Longsuffering Saviour (3:9,15), Daystar (1:19).

1 John: The Word of Life (1:1), Advocate with the Father (2:1), Propitiation for our sins (2:2; 4:10), The Holy One (2:20; Acts 3:14), Only begotten Son (4:9), The Saviour of the World (4:14), The Son of God (4:15; 5:5,12,13,20), The true God and eternal life (5:20).

2 John: Truth and love (3), Son of the Father (3).

3 John: Our motive for service (7).

Jude: The only wise God (25).

Revelation: King of Kings & Lord of Lords (17:14; 19:16), Alpha & Omega, First & Last (1:8,11; 22:13), Faithful witness, firstbegotten of the dead, Prince of Kings of earth (1:5), Son of God (2:18), Holy and true (3:7), Lion of the tribe of Judah (5:5), Root of David (5:5), the Lamb (5:6,8,12), man child (12:5), the Word of God (19:13), the root and offspring of David (22:16), the bright and morning star (22:16).

Conclusion: Don't jump to a conclusion about what a difficult verse might mean. Study it carefully using these rules to know its precise meaning so that it does not contradict other clear verses.

125. HOW TO PREPARE SERMONS and MESSAGES

This chapter of sermons is intended to be a starting point to encourage more men to become preachers by giving some examples of different kinds of sermons that may be a blessing to their people.

I. Different kinds of sermons may include:

1. Topical – where a special need is addressed as a special medicine on a shelf treats an illness.
2. Biographical – where we learn lessons about God and service from some Bible character's life.
3. Expository – where a Bible passage or chapter is preached drawing lessons from each verse, eg: Acts 20:17-38.
4. Textual – where a Bible verse or two are preached, eg: 'wolves' in Acts 20:29,30.
5. Comfort – where some passage is preached to comfort the hearers. (I Corinthians 14:3).
6. Praise – where some passage is preached to declare God's goodness, as in the Psalms.
7. Rebuke – where some passage is preached to rebuke personal sin or false doctrine, eg: Calvinism, New Evangelicalism, Modern Bible Versions, misapplied legalism.

II. Purpose of Preaching (at least 12 purposes).

"But he that prophesieth (preaches) speaketh unto men to edification, (build up, 3619) and exhortation (implore 3874) and comfort." (I Corinthians 14:3)

"For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the Scriptures might have hope." (Romans 15:4).

"Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort, with all long-suffering and doctrine." (II Timothy 4:2).

"For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ." (Ephesians 4:12).

III. How to Prepare a Message

"For Ezra had prepared his heart to seek the law of the Lord, and to do it, and to teach in Israel statutes and judgments." (Ezra 7:10).

"Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth." (II Timothy 2:15).

A preacher must:

1. Prepare his heart to seek God's law/God's Word. This means to
 - pray for the message God would have you to preach to meet the people's needs;
 - study God's word as a lifelong commitment;
 - study in detail the message to be preached.
2. "To do it" means he must practice what he preaches.
3. "To teach" means to communicate Bible truth in an easy-to-understand way so his hearers obey it.
4. "Approved unto God" means he must preach to please God, not men.
5. "A workman" means he must preach so as to train workmen who are able to serve God, win souls, teach the Bible, refute error and work well with fellow believers.
6. "Rightly dividing the word of truth" means he must be able to interpret correctly the meaning of any Bible passage. He must rightly divide Scripture into time period (dispensation), racial division (ethnic division), context, and grammar.

These things are included in the following checklist:

1. Pray to God for the message He wants you to preach and which the people need. Pray something like: "Lord Jesus, please give me the message of Your choosing that will meet the needs of the people and will glorify You."
2. Choose a verse, passage or chapter as the Bible reading.
3. What is the heading or title of the message?
4. What is the aim of the message?
5. Read the Bible passage several times, looking for thoughts or outlines.
6. Write on a piece of scrap paper any ideas or outlines.
7. Look up key words in *Strong's Concordance* to find verses on the same subject.
8. Read some good commentaries to get extra ideas on these verses, passages or subjects.

9. **Write your sermons in a hardcover exercise book**, as a permanent record of your study. You may use some of these messages again. Number each book. Type them in a computer Word doc.
10. **Write out your message** in your exercise book according to the outline you have written on scrap paper, as follows:
 - i) **Title** of message. Answer a question or solve a problem.
 - ii) **Bible reading.** Memory verse.
 - iii) **Aim** = what action you want the people to implement.
 - iv) **Introduction** = State a problem that you propose to solve.
 - v) **Development** = the body of your message where you fill in the details of your outline.
 - Interpret the passage correctly showing its true meaning.
 - Historical background may shed light on its meaning.
 - Illustrate the truth by stories or illustrations from life. Get a book of sermon illustrations.
 - Application shows real life situations where people applied this truth.
 - Ask questions about the passage to reveal deeper truths, eg: who, why, when, where, what.
 - Cross references that shed further light on this passage.
 - What lessons do we learn from each word or verse?
 - vi) **Conclusion.**
 - vii) **Invitation.** This is where you invite or challenge the hearer to action.

IV. Questions to ask about a Passage

1. Is there an example to follow?
2. Is there a sin to avoid?
3. Is there a promise to claim?
4. Is there a lesson to learn?
5. Is there a command to obey?
6. Is there a verse to memorise?
7. Is there a prayer to pray?
8. Is there a condition to fulfil?
9. Is there a warning to heed or error to notice?
10. Is the passage figurative or literal?
11. What is the context of this verse, chapter and book?
12. Are there things emphasised, repeated, related, alike, unlike?
13. Who is speaking, and who is it spoken to?
14. In what Dispensation does this passage take place?

V. Categories of Sermons

1. Soul winning
2. Jesus Christ
3. Second Coming
4. Church Issues
5. Character/Biographical
6. Psalms
7. Parables
8. Proverbs
9. Christian Living
10. Doctrinal, eg: repentance, justification
11. Apologetics, eg: proofs of the Bible, resurrection, deity of Christ, etc.
12. Refuting False Doctrines.
13. Word study.
14. Comfort.

VI. Other Helpful Hints

1. Write a list of future sermon topics.
2. Read commentaries and sermon books for sermon ideas.
3. Look for key words or questions to preach on.

4. Train young men to preach by asking them to preach a 2-minute or 5-minute message. If they do well, give them more opportunities to preach.
5. Preach through books of the Bible such as Jonah, Timothy, Titus, Acts, Ephesians, Thessalonians, Peter, Jude.
6. Take notes for ideas in an exercise book when you hear others preach.
7. Train your people to take notes in an exercise book of sermons.

Here are 149 Sermons or Sermon Outlines that may help as examples of preaching:

126. Earth, Heaven and Hell.

Bible Reading: Luke 14:16-24 (Earth); 15:7,10 (Heaven); 16:19-31 (Hell).

Aim: To not love this world but to look to heaven and to live for heaven.

Introduction: How many believers have wrong views of and priorities of Earth, Heaven and Hell? The average unbeliever lives only for earth, without any thought of heaven or hell.

Let us put these in their right perspective:

I. Earth and its Madness. (Luke 14:16-24).

- i) The man who made the great supper is God.
- ii) The supper represents the marriage supper in heaven. (Revelation 19:7-10).
- iii) The invitation to mankind is “come, for all things are now ready”. (John 7:37-39; Revelation 22:17; Matthew 11:28-30).
- iv) The excuses represent earth and its madness.
(Definition of “mad” = disordered mind, insane, wildly foolish.)

Question: What are some mad things in this world?

1. Mad contentious man. (Proverbs 26:18-26).
2. Laughter and mirth = entertainment, movies, etc. (Ecclesiastes 2:2).
3. Oppression makes a wise man mad (Ecclesiastes 7:7).
4. Every man that maketh himself a prophet. (Jeremiah 29:26) eg: charismatic false prophecies.
5. Idol worshippers (Jeremiah 50:38) eg: lucky charms, Roman Catholic statues.
6. Babylon false religion making the world mad (Jeremiah 51:7; Revelation 17:4).
7. Those who persecute Christians eg: Saul in Acts 26:11, wolves in churches (Acts 20:29,30).
8. Gibberish speakers in charismatic churches (I Corinthians 14:23).

II. Heaven and its Gladness. (Luke 15:7,10).

Jesus describes the joy in heaven over one sinner repenting. The lost sheep after being found caused gladness in heaven. God, angels and departed believers in heaven have a great interest in people on earth getting saved. (Hebrews 12:1). Let us work with them to win souls to Christ and disciple them.

III. Hell and its Sadness. (Luke 16:19-31).

The sadness in hell consists of:

- i) Hell’s torments – mentioned 4 times in v.23,24,25,28. These include torments of flame, thirst, smell of sulphur, hearing weeping, wailing, gnashing of teeth, seeing what you missed of God’s best.
- ii) Hell’s memories. “Son remember . . .” v 25. Memories of earth’s luxuries lost and God’s blessings taken for granted. Memories of rejecting Christ and Gospel preachers.
- iii) Hell’s hopelessness. “A great gulf fixed.” v 26. No hope of escape ever. No lessening of suffering ever, no escape from selfish, evil people ever.
- iv) Hell’s dread for others. “I have five brethren” v 28. Those in hell have a greater concern for their living relatives on earth than most believers have to reach them. People in hell desire their relatives to be saved.

Conclusion and Challenge:

1. Are you concerned to win your lost relatives and friends to Christ?
2. Are you learning and studying to be a better soul winner?
3. Do you regularly and weekly go soul winning with others in your church?
4. Are you training others in soul winning?
5. Have you studied *Answers* Soul-winning chapters 17,18,19,21,22,23?
6. Are you praying for God to lead you to someone today?

127. Six Responses to the Spiritual War

Bible Reading: Judges 4:1-24 and 5:1-31.

Aim: To willingly and daringly offer ourselves to serve God in the spiritual war of soul-winning.

Introduction: Here we have God using a woman who was willing to serve God when men were unwilling. Deborah illustrates the virtuous woman of Proverbs 31:30.

“A woman that feareth the Lord, she shall be praised.” When Deborah invited different tribes of Israel to war against Sisera, she found six different responses that people made to this spiritual and military battle. Which of these six categories describes your response to God calling you to participate in the spiritual battle for souls?

I. Tell the background story. (Judges 4).

- i) Deborah a prophetess is raised up in a day of oppression (4:1-5).
- ii) Deborah calls Barak to deliver Israel (4:6,7).
- iii) Barak refuses unless Deborah goes with him. (4:8,9).
- iv) Deborah agrees, but says that the honour shall go to a woman (4:9).
- v) Barak fights against Sisera and defeats him (4:10-17).
- vi) Sisera takes refuge with Jael, the wife of Heber. Jael then kills Sisera. (4:18-24).

II. Deborah’s Song of Triumph. (Judges 5).

- i) Praise to God for victory (5:1-5).
- ii) The sad state of Israel, until Deborah arose and the people were delivered (5:6-8).
- iii) How various tribes responded to the call to arms (5:9-23):
 - a. The Governors offered themselves willingly. (5:9-15).
 - b. Reuben was divided, with great searchings of heart. They were uncertain about going to war, so they preferred to stay at home to keep their sheep and to make money. (5:15,16).
 - c. Gilead, Dan and Asher did not respond, but stayed in their own places, working on their ships. 5:17
 - d. Zebulun and Naphtali hazarded their lives on the battlefield. (5:18).
 - e. Meroz is cursed bitterly for not coming to the help of the Lord. (5:23).
 - f. Jael is blessed for ridding Israel of the tyrant Sisera. (5:24).

III. Six Responses to the Spiritual War. (Application).

- i) **The willing.** The governors offered themselves willingly (v.9). Ephraim, Benjamin, Zebulun, Issachar are praised.

Question: Do you willingly offer yourself to serve God, help your pastor win the lost and teach God’s Word?

- ii) **The uncertain:** Reuben was divided,
 - they had great thought and searchings of heart.
 - they stayed behind to do their own thing and to make money. (5:15,16).

Question: Are you uncertain or double minded about serving God?

Are you more concerned with making money for yourself than in doing God’s will for your life?

Are you looking for excuses not to serve God? The devil will give you plenty of excuses.

- iii) **The slackers:** Gilead, Dan and Asher did not respond, but stayed at home. (5:17).

Question: Are you just a plain lazy Christian who won’t serve God because you can’t be bothered? Do you think that by coming to church once on Sunday that is all that God has for you? What about going soul-winning at least once a week?

- iv) **The daring:** Zebulun and Naphtali hazarded their lives in the battlefield. (5:18).

Question: Do you get fully into the spiritual battle to win the lost, teach new converts & build churches?

- v) **The cursed:** Meroz is cursed bitterly for not coming to the help of the Lord. (5:23).

Question: Do you want to be in the same category as Meroz? This is what God thinks of those who do nothing to help the cause of Christ in today’s evil hour when spiritual enemies are pouring in.

- vi) **The blessed:** Jael is blessed for ridding Israel of the tyrant Sisera. (5:24).

Question: Will you have a blessed memory for doing things for God with what you have when needed?

Question: As Jael had a tent peg, what do you have that you can use for God’s work?

IV. Lessons from this Story

1. Israel's sin is punished by Jabin's oppression. God may discipline us by bringing suffering into our lives. Suffering is not always because of punishment.
2. When we cry unto the Lord, He delivers us. (Psalm 107:6,13,19,28).
3. Women can do a mighty work for God and be the instrument of mighty spiritual victories, as seen in Deborah and Jael.
4. Women may encourage their men for good or evil. Deborah inspired Barak to triumph. Eve led Adam to sin. Delilah led Samson to bondage and death. Jezebel stirred Ahab to evil.
5. Jael had courage to do what was needed at the time.
6. God uses songs to remind us of key lessons and victories. Song of Deborah, Song of Moses (Numbers 21:17; Exodus 15; Deuteronomy 31:19), Song of Solomon, Psalms.
7. Deborah allocates praise and blame in a day of need.

Conclusion: Life brings opportunities to serve God. The battle is real. What part do you play in the spiritual war for men's souls?

128. Errors Of The Charismatic Movement: T.R.A.S.H.

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 13:8-13 and 14:21-23. See Established in the Faith, chapter 40.

Aim: To see 5 main errors of the Charismatic movement summarised by the word "TRASH".

Introduction: The Charismatic movement that has arisen since 1900 and has been endorsed by Billy Graham and others is clearly unbiblical and dangerous to believers walking by faith in God's Word. Many untaught Christians will ask: "What's wrong with the Charismatic movement? Many people are saved through it. It can't be so bad." How do we reply?

Answer:

- 1) God never calls us to judge things by results, but by whether it lines up with Scripture.
- 2) Results alone do not mean that something is the will of God. In Number 20, Moses angrily struck the rock to fetch water for Israel. This act brought great success, but he disobeyed God's clear command to speak to the rock, and for this he was refused entry to Canaan.
- 3) We must measure a movement by all the results, such as:
 - a) Ecumenical Charismaticism obscures the line between truth and error.
 - b) Charismaticism turns people from determining truth by rightly interpreting Scripture to their experience being the authority.
 - c) It slows down multiplication of truth, and promotes multiplication of error.

Question: What are the 5 main errors of the Charismatic movement?

1. **T = TONGUES**. They think they are speaking in tongues, when in reality it is gibberish. I Corinthians 14:21,22,23 states that tongues are not for believers, but to warn unbelieving Israel to repent or God would judge them. This is what happened when the Romans destroyed Jerusalem in 70AD. Tongues then ceased as I Corinthians 13:8,11 predicted: "tongues, they shall cease." We must "prove all things" (I Thessalonians 5:18). Tongues cannot be proven as a genuine language.
2. **R = NEW REVELATIONS**. They think that prophecy and knowledge gifts are still for today, but I Cor. 8:8-13 show that they ceased when the "perfect" complete Word of God was completed in 96AD. The completed New Testament since 96AD does what prophecy and knowledge gifts achieved imperfectly up to 96AD. James 1:22-25 compares the perfect law of liberty to a mirror, stating it is God's word.
3. **A = ANIMAL NOISES** of the "Toronto blessing" where some Charismatics roll on the floor, making noises like donkeys, dogs, etc.,. This is demonic and without any Bible support.
4. **S = SLAYING IN THE SPIRIT**. This is the practice where hands are placed on a person's head and they fall backward unconscious to the ground. In Isaiah 28:13 this is associated with being broken, snared and taken as a judgment of God on people who "would not hear" God's word (Isaiah 28:12).
5. **H = HEALING**. They think they have the gifts of healing but ignore Scriptures stating that "they were healed everyone" (Acts 5:16), "they shall recover" (Mark 16:18), "others..came and were healed." (Acts 28:9). New Testament healing was 100%. No one today can heal as the apostles did.

Conclusion: "Prove all things" before you believe them. Check them first with all relevant Scriptures.

129. Four Calls For Personal Soul-Winning

Bible Reading: Luke 16:19-31.

Aim: To respond to these four calls for soul-winning by learning and doing soul-winning.

Introduction: Evangelistic churches are not as effective as they used to be because unsaved people don't come to church so much in Australia. What we need is more soul-winning churches that know how to go out into the community to win people to Christ, to disciple new converts, and bring them to church on Sunday. We find that there are 4 calls for personal soul-winning in the Bible:

1. From Within.

"For we cannot but speak the things which we have seen and heard." Acts 4:20.

"For the love of Christ constraineth us." II Corinthians 5:14.

The Holy Spirit which indwells us leads us to speak to people about Christ.

"Then the Spirit said unto Philip, go near, and join thyself to this chariot." Acts 8:29.

To disobey this call is to grieve the indwelling Holy Spirit.

2. From Without.

"There stood a man of Macedonia, and prayed, saying, Come over into Macedonia, and help us" Act 16:9

"Lift up your eyes and look on the fields for they are white already to harvest." John 4:34-36.

There are people needing to hear the gospel. There are many people wanting someone to start a church near them. Will you volunteer to go and tell them? Can you see the opportunities to preach the gospel and to lead multitudes to Christ all over the world?

3. From Above.

"There is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth." Luke 15:10.

"Wherefore, seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight..." Hebrews 12:1.

4. From Below. Many people suffering in hell pray for someone to tell their family how to be saved.

"I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house; for I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment." Luke 16:27,28.

Conclusion: Will you heed these 4 calls to win the lost and go today? Make soul winning a priority.

130. Things The Lord Knows About Us

Bible Reading: Psalm 37:1-18.

Aim: To comfort us by the Lord's intimate knowledge of us and our needs.

Introduction: Often we may be tempted to think that the Lord doesn't know or care about us or about our problems. The following Scriptures show that he does know and care about us.

The Lord knows:

1. Our Way "He knoweth thy walking through this great wilderness." Deuteronomy 2:7.

"He knoweth the way that I take: when he hath tried me, I shall come forth as gold." Job 23:10.

"The Lord knoweth the way of the righteous: but the way of the ungodly shall perish." Psalm 1:6.

2. Our Secret Thoughts "He knoweth the secrets of the heart." Psalm 44:21.

3. Our Frame "The proud he knoweth afar off." Psalm 138:6.

"For he knoweth our frame; he remembereth that we are dust." Psalm 103:13,14.

4. Them That Trust In Him "The Lord is good, a stronghold in the day of trouble; and he knoweth them that trust in him." Nahum 1:7.

5. Our Needs "Your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him." Matthew 6:8,32

6. Our Hearts "God knoweth your hearts: for that which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God." Luke 16:14,15.

7. Them That Are His "The Lord knoweth them that are his." II Timothy 2:19.

8. When I Sit Down And Stand Up "Thou knoweth my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar off." Psalm 139:2.

9. How To Deliver The Godly "The Lord knoweth how to deliver to godly out of temptations, and to reserve the unjust unto the day of judgment to be punished." II Peter 2:9.

131. Things to do in Your Youth

Bible Reading: Ecclesiastes 11:9--12:2

Aim: To achieve God's appointed goals in your youth, so you'll have a big impact for Christ later.

Introduction: Many people wreck their life because they wreck their youth. Many of us have picked up wrong ideas in our youth that have caused problems for us later in life. We must find God's ways early in life, believe them and obey them always. The Bible is God's textbook on life. It tells us:

a) How to get to heaven.

b) How to avoid sin and the trouble sin brings in this life.

Question: What does the Bible say that we should achieve in our youth?

1. **Avoid bad peers.** 'My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not.' Proverbs 1:10-19.

"Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly." (Psalm 1:1-3).

2. **Take heed to God's Word** (Ps 119:9,11). Delight and meditate in God's Word day and night. Ps.1:2,3

3. **Seek wisdom, understanding and increase learning.** (Proverbs 1:2-6).

"the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." (Proverbs 9:10).

4. **Listen to and obey your parents' instructions.** (Proverbs 1:8,9).

5. **Be wise unto salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.** (II Timothy 3:15).

6. **Learn the Holy Scriptures from childhood.** (II Timothy 3:15).

7. **Remember now thy Creator** in the days of thy youth .(Ecclesiastes 12:1). "Remember" means to:

a) Receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour (John 1:12);

b) Surrender all areas of your life to Jesus Christ as Lord (Romans 12:1,2);

c) Study God's Word to prepare for God's plan for your life (II Timothy 2:15);

d) Seek His will for your life and fulfil it (Matthew 6:33);

e) Develop a close relationship with God (James 4:8; Psalm 73:28);

f) Realise God created you. All that we have comes from God. Reject evolution's lies.

8. **Flee youthful lusts.** (II Timothy 2:22; Proverbs 7:1-27).

9. **Follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace** with fellow believers. (II Timothy 2:22).

10. **Let no man despise thy youth** (I Timothy 4:12). Don't feel inferior because of your youth. If you know God's Word, you have more wisdom than ungodly teachers. (Psalm 119:99).

11. **Be an example** of what an ideal Christian should be in word, conversation, charity, spirit, faith and purity. (I Timothy 4:12).

12. **Treat older men** as fathers, **younger men** as brothers, **elder women** as mothers, **young women** as sisters with all purity. (Titus 2:4-8; I Corinthians 7:1,2; I Timothy 5:1,2).

13. **Be strong** in grace (II Timothy 2:1). Let the **word of God** abide (remain) in you by memorizing it.

Overcome the wicked one (by resisting temptation). (I John 2:14).

14. It is **good for a man that he bear the yoke in his youth** (Lamentations 3:24-27). God wants us to learn to wait patiently and to learn the yoke of self-discipline in our youth. Young people need to learn to control their sex, drug and alcohol urges. They need self-discipline to reject wrong friends and self-discipline to study and memorise God's Word. Learning Christ and His ways is the yoke Christ wants us to take on ourselves. (Matthew 11:29,30). Christ's yoke is much easier to bear than a yoke of sin.

15. **Rejoice with the wife of thy Youth.** (Proverbs 5:18,19). God's will is for people to marry in their youth, not to live together in fornication. Marry a godly partner who can help you serve God better. (I Timothy 5:14).

16. **Be about our Heavenly Father's business, as 12 year old Jesus was.** (Luke 2:49).

17. **Don't listen to foolish, ignorant or wicked advisors.** "Cease, my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge." (Prov. 19:27). Identify and reject bad advice. (Hebr 7:17).

18. **Seek your Pastors advice and do it.** "Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves"

Conclusion: Apply these truths in your life and you will please God and be a blessing to many people. If you reject these truths, then Ecclesiastes 11:9 will happen. If you "walk in the ways of thine heart, & in the sight of thine eyes: but know thou, that for all these things God will bring thee into judgment."

Question: Will you surrender today to live by God's ways all through your life?

132. When to Keep Your Mouth Shut

Bible Reading: James 3:1-18.

Aim: To let God's Holy Spirit fill us and control what we say, so that people are blessed and not cursed by our words.

Introduction: People find it easier to speak before thinking, than to think before speaking. Because of this, so much damage has been done by careless words.

Once hurtful words are spoken, they cannot be taken back.

Memory Verse: "Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath. For the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of God." James 1:19,20.

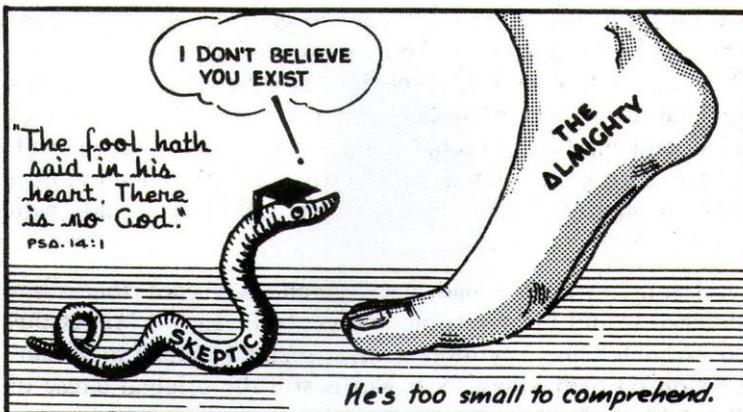
Question: At what times do we need to be especially careful to keep our mouth shut?

Don't open your mouth:

1. When you are **tempted to tell lies**. "A false witness that speaketh lies." (Proverbs 6:19; 13:5). "For my mouth shall speak truth . . ." (Proverbs 8:7; Ephesians 4:25).
2. When you **don't have all the facts**. "Keep back thy servant from presumptuous sins." Psalm 19:13 "He that answereth a matter before he heareth it, it is a folly and shame unto him." Proverbs 18:13.
3. When you **haven't verified the story by asking the accused**: "The simple believeth every word." (Proverbs 14:15). "In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established." (II Corinthians 13:1).
4. When you are **tempted to tell a person's sin to another without speaking to the accused first**. "Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone; if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother." (Matthew 18:15). "Debate thy cause with thy neighbour himself; and discover not a secret to another: lest he that heareth it put thee to shame, and thine infamy turn not away." (Proverbs 25:9,10).
5. When your **words would damage a friendship**. "A froward (obstinate, stubbornly contrary and disobedient) man soweth strife: and a whisperer separateth chief friends." (Proverbs 16:28).
6. When you are **tempted to joke about sin**. "Fools make a mock at sin." (Proverbs 14:9).
7. When you are tempted to **make a vow to God that you can't keep**. "Better is it that thou shouldest not vow, than that thou shouldest vow and not pay." (Ecclesiastes 5:2,4-6,5).
8. When you are tempted to **interrupt a person speaking** or to **speak too long without hearing what he has to say**. "Let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath." James 1:19.
9. When the issue is **none of your business**. "He that passeth by, and meddleth with strife belonging not to him, is like one that taketh a dog by the ears." Proverbs 26:17.
10. When you are tempted to **deceive** and **say something you don't mean** or **give a wrong impression**. "As a mad man who casteth firebrands, arrows and death, so is the man that deceiveth his neighbour, and saith, am not I in sport?" (Proverbs 26:18,19).
11. When you are tempted to **flatter a wicked person**. "He that saith unto the wicked, thou art righteous; him shall the people curse, nations shall abhor him." (Proverbs 24:24). "A flattering mouth worketh ruin." (Proverbs 26:28).
12. When you **haven't thought carefully about the consequences of your words**. "Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit of it." (Proverbs 18:21; 13:3) "Be not rash with thy mouth, and let not thine heart be hasty to utter anything before God: . . . therefore let thy words be few." (Ecclesiastes 5:2).
13. When your words will **needlessly offend someone**. "A brother offended is harder to be won than a strong city: and their contentions are like the bars of a castle." (Proverb 18:19; I Corinthians 8:13)
14. When you **feel like boasting**. "Boast not thyself of tomorrow; for thou knowest not what a day may bring forth. Let another man praise thee, and not thine own mouth: a stranger and not thine own lips." (Proverbs 27:1,2).
15. When you are **tempted to scream** and **show anger**. "A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous words stir up anger". (Proverbs 15:1). "He that hath no rule over his own spirit is like a city that is broken down, and without walls." (Proverbs 25:28).

16. When you **feel like threatening or insulting people.**
 “Who, when he was reviled, reviled not again: when he suffered, he threatened not, but committed himself to him that judgeth righteously.” (I Peter 2:21-23).
 If your words will be a poor reflection on Christ, your family or your friends, don’t say it.
17. When you **can’t speak courteously.** “Be courteous: not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing.” (I Peter 3:8,9).
18. If you would be **ashamed of your words later.** “All the words of my mouth are in righteousness, there is nothing froward or perverse in them.” (Proverbs 8:8).
19. In the **heat of anger.** “He that is soon angry dealeth foolishly.” (Proverbs 14:17).
 “He that is slow to wrath is of great understanding.” (Proverbs 14:29).
20. When you are **about to enter a contract and haven’t yet spoken to a multitude of counsellors.**
 “Without counsel, purposes are disappointed: but in the multitude of counsellors they are established.” (Proverbs 24:6; 11:14; 16:22).
21. When you are **tempted to tell others of things told to you confidentially.**
 “A talebearer revealeth secrets: but he that is of a faithful spirit concealeth a matter.” (Prov.11:13).
22. When you are tempted to **go guarantor for someone.** “He that is surety for a stranger shall smart for it: and he that hateth suretiship is sure.” (Proverbs 11:15).
23. When you **feel like damaging someone’s reputation.** “An ungodly man diggeth up evil: and in his lips there is as a burning fire.” (Proverbs 16:27).
24. When you **listen to slander with a view to pass it on to others.** “A wicked doer giveth heed to false lips: and a liar giveth ear to a naughty tongue.” (Proverbs 17:4).
25. If you have **already said it more than once:** “The contentions of a wife are a continual dropping.” (Proverbs 19:13).
26. When you are **supposed to be working.** “In all labour there is profit: but the talk of the lips tendeth only to penury.” (Proverbs 14:23).
27. When it is **time to listen:** “A wise son heareth his father’s instruction: but a scorner heareth not rebuke.” (Proverbs 13:1).
28. When we are **feeling critical.** “Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.” (James 3:10).
29. When you are tempted to slander those who’ve **helped you in the past.** “Whoso returneth evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house.” (Proverbs 17:13).
30. When you are tempted to **slander, or believe slander about a godly, soul-winning pastor.**
 “Against an elder receive not an accusation, but before two or three witnesses.” (I Timothy 5:19).

Conclusion: Which of these are you guilty of? Confess them to God as sin and forsake them.
 Pray Psalm 19:14 “Let the words of my mouth, and the meditation of my heart, be acceptable in thy sight, O LORD, my strength, and my redeemer.”



133. Six Little Words

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 14:7-9.

Aim: To show the meaning and message in these often overlooked little words. Don't forget the little things in the Bible. Every word of God is important.

Illustration: *Lectures to Young Preachers*, George Henderson, pp 77-78. Preach simply and clearly.

a) "A simple preacher announced to his congregation the abilities of a visiting preacher by saying he was 'a man who knows the unknowable, who can solve the unsolvable, and unscrew the inscrutable.'" Be sure you understand the meaning of every word that you use.

b) When Martin Luther was asked why his preaching was so effective, he replied, "First, when I enter the pulpit I say, 'Remember thou art a messenger of the Highest.'" Second, because I hold firmly to the Bible only, and study it afresh every day. Third, I keep to the leading point of the discourse, other things I leave unsaid, though ever so many ideas occur to me. Fourth, I try to be simple, to be understood by the working classes and by children of twelve or thirteen."

c) Some speakers trying to impress may say: "Scintillate, Scintillate, globule vivific, Fain would I fathom thy nature specific, Loftily poised in the ether capacious, Strongly resembling a gem carbonaceous."

But that speaker would have been wiser to say: "Twinkle, twinkle, little star, How I wonder what you are, Up above the world so high, Like a diamond in the sky." Let us preach messages that will be easily understood.

d) Four Rules for preachers: 1) To be listened to, be interesting. 2) To be understood, be clear.

3) To be useful, be practical. 4) To be obeyed, speak as the oracles of God.

Introduction: There are 6 little words of only one syllable in the Bible, yet though seemingly unimportant, they convey some of the greatest truths in the universe.

These 6 little words are SO,LO,HO,NO,GO,WOE. Let us make these little words a big part of our life:

1. SO = to a SURPASSING DEGREE, "For God SO loved the world that he gave." (John 3:16).

"SO" describes the greatness of God's love to all mankind.

i) God's part: loving and giving.

ii) Man's part: believing and receiving eternal life. "Behold what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us that we should be called the sons of God." I John 3:1.

"We love him because he first loved us." (I John 4:19). Even if we don't love God, He loves us.

2. LO = to DRAW ATTENTION TO. "Then said I, LO, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God." (Hebrews 10:7). These words "LO, I come", excite heaven, make demons tremble, and make believers rejoice because the Son of God has come.

If Christ had not come, there would be: no salvation, no hope, no forgiveness of sins, no justification, no peace, and no heaven, just sin, darkness, judgment and hell.

* "LO" gives hope to the sinner. We need to draw people's attention to the fact that Christ has come, died and rose again for the sins of the world, and eternal life is available.

* "LO" tells of Christ's voluntary coming to earth. Christ came to fulfil Old Testament prophecies, and to be the sacrifice for our sins. Let us draw people's attention to Christ's sacrifice for their sins.

3. HO = SURPRISE, TRIUMPH, INVITATION to salvation:

"HO, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money: come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price." (Isaiah 55:1).

HO = a word of invitation to salvation full and free, "without money and without price" (to us), yet "with a price" (to Christ). "For ye are bought with a price." (I Corinthians 6:20).

Jesus paid the full price for our salvation. If we know that price, we dare not "neglect so great salvation"

4. NO = ABSENCE OF. "There is therefore now NO CONDEMNATION to them which are in Christ Jesus." (Romans 8:1) . NO CONDEMNATION is great news to a convicted sinner.

a) Where is there no condemnation? In Christ Jesus.

b) To whom is there no condemnation? To them which are in Christ Jesus.

c) When is there no condemnation? NOW.

d) Why is there no condemnation? Because the Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all. Isaiah 53:6.

Romans 8 begins with "no condemnation" (8:1) and ends with "no separation" (8:35-39). John 5:24.

5. GO = MOVEMENT FROM A PLACE. “Go and preach the gospel to every creature.” Mark 16:15
“Go ye therefore and teach all nations, baptising them.....” (Matthew 28:19-20).

This is a command from Christ to His disciples to go and tell.

Let us respond to Christ’s call by saying “Here am I, send me”. (Isaiah 6:8).

6. WOE = AFFLICTION, BITTER GRIEF, CALAMITY, CURSE ON.

“Yea, Woe is unto me if I preach not the gospel.” I Corinthians 9:26.

There are millions of people that are searching for the truth of God. They need someone to show them.

“If thou forbear (abstain from) to deliver them that are drawn unto death..” Proverbs 24:11,12.

If you are really saved, you’ll want to see others saved.

If you really know the Lord Jesus, you’ll want others to know Him, and live like Him.

If you really know something of heaven, you’ll want others to go there.

If you really know the power of the Gospel, you’ll say with Paul in Romans 1:14-16,

“I am a debtor, I am ready to preach the gospel, I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ.”

Conclusion: Review SO, LO, HO, NO, GO, WOE’s meaning.

Q: Is your life communicating the messages of these 6 simple words? Get saved now. Live for Christ.

134. Stages In Physical Creation Illustrating Stages In Salvation

Bible Reading: Genesis 1:1-31.

Aim: To show steps in a sinner coming to Christ.

Introduction: It is interesting to note that the stages in God creating life on earth correspond exactly with the stages God uses to bring a sinner to salvation and the growth that follows. This is greatly applicable to convince lost people of their need for Christ and to encourage and instruct Christians to grow as believers.

Question: What are the eleven stages in the salvation of a sinner to become a new creation?

1. Chaos = the unbeliever’s life without Christ (Genesis 1:2). He lives for self, is a servant of Satan, cares little about God and others, and is heading to an eternal hell.

“The way of transgressors is hard.” Proverbs 13:15.

“The earth was without form, and void (empty) & darkness was upon the face of the deep.” Genesis 1:2.

Empty, darkness, without form and without order pictures the chaos of sin and rebellion in an unbeliever’s life. He is described in Psalm 14:2,3 (filthy, none doing good); Isaiah 53:6; 57:20 (troubled, cannot rest, casting up mire and dirt); John 3:18-20 (men loved darkness); Romans 3:10-19 (unprofitable, deceitful, cursing, bitterness, destruction, misery, no peace, no fear of God, guilty).

2. Conviction = the Holy Spirit moves to convict a sinner of his sin and need for Christ. Genesis 1:2.

“the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.” Genesis 1:2.

When the Holy Spirit came at Pentecost, the people’s response was: “Men and brethren, what shall we do?” (Acts 2:37). Jesus promised that after He went to Heaven, He would send the Holy Spirit to be our Comforter and to convict the world of sin, righteousness and judgment. (John 16:7-11).

The Holy Spirit is our partner in soul winning.

3. Waters = the water of the word of God is applied by the Holy Spirit to bring Salvation.

“The Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.” Genesis 1:2.

“Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.” John 3:5.

“That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word.” Ephesian 5:26.

4. Light = the newly saved sinner receives the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ. “God said, let there be light: and there was light.” Genesis 1:3.

Light = Knowledge of Salvation, and “the light of the glorious gospel of Christ.” II Corinthians 4:4.

“The entrance of thy words giveth light.” Psalm 119:130.

“For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: walk as children of light.” Eph. 5:8.

“Jesus said, I am the light of the world: he that follows me shall not walk in darkness but shall have the light of life.” John 8:12. “him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.” I Peter 2:9

5. Division and Separation: “God divided the light from the darkness.” Genesis 1:4.

When people get saved, as children of light, we must separate from darkness, sin&things of the old life.

Question: What separations describe the believer?

1. Christ and the world.
2. Believers and unbelievers.
3. Truth and error.
4. Heaven and hell.
5. Holy living and sinful living.
6. Fundamental Christianity and Liberalism.
7. Way of Life and Way of Death.
8. Light and darkness.
9. Soul winner and non soul-winning.
10. Zealous spiritual Christian and lukewarm carnal Christian.

“There was a division among the people because of him.” John 7:43; 9:16; 10:19.

“Be not unequally yoked together with unbelievers.” II Corinthians 6:14-18.

“Be holy, for I am holy,.. Make a difference between the unclean and clean.” Leviticus 11:44-47.

6. Growth: “Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind.” Genesis 1:11.

When one is saved, he must grow by taking in God’s Word daily, as trees take in nourishment.

“As newborn babes desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby.” 1 Peter 2:1,2.

“But grow in grace, and the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To Him be glory both new and forever.” II Peter 3:18.

“Speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things ...” Ephesians 4:15.

“Your faith groweth exceedingly, and all the charity of every one of you all toward each other aboundeth.” II Thessalonians 1:3.

7. Fruit-bearing: “grass, herbs, tree yielding fruit, whose seed was in itself.” Genesis 1:12.

After salvation, we must bear fruit of people won to Christ and the fruit of the Spirit.

“every branch that beareth fruit, he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit (John 15:2)

he that abideth in me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit (John 15:5).

“Ye have your fruit unto holiness.” Romans 6:22; 1:13.

“I desire fruit that may abound to your account.” Philippians 4:17.

“the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.” Hebrews 13:15.

“that bringeth forth his fruit in his season.” Psalm 1:1-3.

8. Dominion: “let them have dominion over the fish of the sea...” Genesis 1:26.

Believers must now let Christ have dominion and lordship over every aspect of our lives.

“thou hast put all things under his feet.” Psalms 8:3-8.

9. God’s Image: “So God created man in his own image.” Genesis 1:26,27.

As we study God’s Word we are changed into the image of God, as II Corinthians 3:18 states:

“But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass (the Bible) the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image...” (Colossians 3:10.

“Have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him.”

“Whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son.” Rom.8:29

10. Blessing: “God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it.” Genesis 1:28.

As we are conformed to Christ’s image, God blesses us and we become fruitful in winning souls to

Christ, in multiplying disciples for Christ. They in turn win and train others for Christ.

“Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessing in heavenly places in Christ.” Ephesians 1:3; Psalm 32:1,2; II Timothy 2:2.

11. Rest in Genesis 2:2 pictures the Faith Rest Life.

“he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he made.”

Believers should aim to live a life of faith, resting in God’s promises in the Bible, so that when trouble comes to us, we do not panic and drop out. The wilderness generation failed to believe God’s promises, failed to live the faith-rest life, and therefore failed to enter Canaan. “Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.” Hebrews 4:1

Conclusion: Come to Christ, cast our cares on Him, and we shall find rest for our souls. Matt.11:28-30

135. What Is Your Life?

Bible Reading: Job 9:2-35.

Aim: To teach us to number our days that we may apply our hearts to the wisdom of soul winning, to teaching others God's word and living like Christ.

Introduction: The Bible compares our life to many things. Why? So that we may realise how short our life is, and how important it is for us to number our days (ie: to plan our life) so that we have the maximum impact on the world for Christ.

In order to show us how short our life is, God compares our life to several things:

1. **A Vapour.** "Whereas ye know not what shall be on the morrow For what is your life? It is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away." James 4:14.

All our plans depend on our life continuing. But what a frail and uncertain thing our life is. Who can build any solid plans on the permanence of a vapour or a mist? A vapour is a mist that is dissipated by the rising sun.

"O remember that my life is wind. ...As the **cloud** is consumed and vanisheth away: so is he that goeth down to the grave." Job 7:7,9.

"He remembered that they were but flesh, a **wind** that passeth away, and cometh not again." Ps.78:39.

Notice that: 1) As a **vapour** or **wind** passes away **quickly**, so does the life of man.

2) As we cannot stop a **cloud** or **wind**, so we **cannot hinder** the speedy motion of our days.

3) As a cloud comes to its height and then vanishes, so does our life and our full strength.

2. **A Flower.** "Man that is born of a woman is of few days and full of trouble. He **cometh forth** like a **flower**, and is cut down." Job 14:1,2.

"For all flesh is as grass, and **all the glory of man** as the **flower** of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away. But the Word of the Lord endureth forever." I Peter 1:24,25.

Man's life is compared to a fading flower. Many things describe a flower such as having sweet smell, beauty, variety of colour, and softness to touch. Job discusses none of these, but only of its cutting down. Note the following truths about it's cutting down:

a) A flower is often cut down in it's budding. Many people are cut off in the flower of life by

i) Natural death by sickness, or

ii) Accidental death by violence, murder, road accidents, etc.

b) A flower if not cut off, soon **withers away** and is gone. The "Queen of the Night" flower blooms in one night, gives a beautiful fragrance, and is dead and withered by morning.

c) As the owner of flowers **knows best** when to crop then, so God knows the best time when to crop off or take away by death any of his choice flowers.

3. **A Swift Post.** "Now my days are **swifter** than a **post: they flee away**, they see no good." Job 9:25.

a) As a postman rides swiftly, in a hurry, so man's life passes away swiftly.

b) A postman of years ago would - ride on the swiftest of horses,

- he would change horses at every stage to keep up the speed,

- he would take a morsel of food at each stop, then speed on,

- he would only go to bed at the end of his journey,

- all people would give way to the post rider.

4. **A Swift Ship.** "They are passed away as the swift ships." Job 9:25,26.

Watching a ship at sea, we notice how it passes very quickly, reminding us of our lives & opportunities.

5. **An Eagle.** "As the eagle that hasteth to the prey." Job 9:26.

An eagle is a very swiftly flying bird, but when it hastens to catch its prey, it makes the greatest speed. The life of man is compared to an eagle hurrying to catch her prey when hunger adds swiftness to her wings. So it is with swiftness that our days pass away. What have you done for Christ with your life?

6. **A Weaver's Shuttle.** "My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle." Job 7:6.

a) A weaver's shuttle is an instrument of very swift motion.

b) When the weaver has finished his web, he cuts off the thread. So it is that when a man has run the length of his days appointed by God, his life is cut off.

7. **A Shadow.** “He fleeth also as a shadow, and continueth not.” Job 14:2.

David said: “our days on the earth are as a shadow and there is none abiding.” I Chronicles 29:15.

Man’s life today is short compared to human lifespan before Noah’s flood.

Man’s life is very short compared to eternity. This is a great motive for us to redeem our time.

Conclusion: a) Our days on earth are few.

b) Our days on earth are uncertain.

c) The shortness of our life shows the folly of living only for material things as did the rich man in Luke 12:16-21 who said “Soul, thou hast much goods laid up for many years; take thine ease, eat, drink and be merry.” (Luke 12:19).

“The fool and the brutish person perish, and leave their wealth to others. Their inward thought is, that their houses shall continue forever... This their way is their folly.” Psalm 49:10,11,13.

d) Our minds must be focused on eternity “knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and enduring substance.” Hebrews 10:34.

e) The shortness of life motivates us to use all our labours to get people to heaven, to teach the Bible, to plant churches, to train preachers, be at peace among ourselves, and live holy lives pleasing to God. Let us be “redeeming the time, because the days are evil.” Ephesians 5:16.

“Redeem the time” means “to buy it up, rescue it from loss, improve every opportunity.”

136. How Can We Glorify God?

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 10:31-33.

(I Corinthians 10:31)

Memory Verse: “Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.”

Aim: To see how we can glorify God.

Introduction:

The Bible commands us to “do all to the glory of God.” This introduces the question: “How can we glorify God?” The Bible gives 12 main ways that we can glorify God. If we focus our efforts in these 12 areas, our lives will truly bring much glory to God.

Question: How well are you bringing glory to God by practicing these 12 things? We glorify God:

1. By **Preaching the Gospel.** “the light of the glorious gospel of Christ.” (II Corinthians 4:4).

The gospel is glorious because it makes known our glorious God’s nature and His simple plan of salvation. The gospel leads ignorant, weak, sinful, degraded men to a world of light.

It is glorious and enlightening because of its splendour, beauty, certainty of heaven, forgiveness, fellowship and love that it gives to men, compared with the dark, despairing and hopeless systems of philosophy and heathenism that man thinks up.

2. By **Offering Praise to God.** “Whoso offereth praise glorifieth me.” (Psalm 50:23).

Praise involves giving God our love, thanksgiving, worship and talents to serve Him. When a sinner receives Christ as his Saviour and confesses with his mouth the Lord Jesus, he is glorifying God. Do you praise God daily? “He (the Holy Spirit) shall glorify me.” (John 16:14). Do you glorify Christ?

3. By **Bearing much fruit.** “herein is my Father glorified that ye bear much fruit.” (John 15:8).

4. By **Finishing the work** which God gives us to do. “I have glorified thee on earth: I have finished. Jn17:4

5. By **Keeping ourselves from evil in the world.** (John 17:10,15).

6. When **sinners get saved and become preachers.** For example, Paul. Galatians 1:23,24.

7. When we **fulfil God’s will for our life** (2 Thess. 1:11,12) the name of our Lord Jesus Christ is glorified (12). When we fulfil all the good pleasure of his goodness, and the work of faith with power.

8. When the **Word of God has free course.** (2 Thessalonians 3:1).

9. When we **speak** as the **Oracles of God**, and **minister** (serve) to the best of our ability that God gives us. (I Peter 4:11).

10. When we are **reproached for the name of Christ**, and **respond cheerfully.** (I Peter 4:14).

11. When **God delivers us from evil.** (Psalm 50:15).

12. When **all nations come** and **worship Christ** in the **Millennium** at **Jerusalem.** (Psalm 86:9).

We glorify God now by studying and teaching about Jesus Christ’s salvation and second coming.

Conclusion: Are you glorifying God now in all that you do.

137. Symbols of God's Word

Bible Reading: Psalm 19:7-14; Psalm 119:1-18.

Aim: To love and appreciate God's Word, so we will read, study, memorize and meditate on it daily.

Introduction: God likens His Word to many things, so that we can appreciate different aspects of how it can benefit us. Each symbol shows something different that it will accomplish in our lives.

God's Word, the Bible is likened to:

1) **Fire:** "Is not my word like a fire?" (Jeremiah 23:29).

God's Word burns, cleanses and purges all that is contrary to God's holy standard; False prophets, dreams, visions and prophecies were like chaff or straw.

"he will baptise you with the Holy Ghost and with fire: . . . he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire." (Matthew 3:11,12).

"His word was in mine heart as a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was weary with forbearing, and I could not stay." (Jeremiah 20:9).

God's Word in a preacher's heart must be preached and can't be held in. It is said of Christ's omniscience: "His eyes were as a flame of fire." (Revelation 1:14).

2) **Hammer:** "and like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces." (Jeremiah 23:29)

It smashes and destroys evil as Christ's return smashes the kingdoms of this world (Daniel 2:34, 35,44). False prophets promised peace in sin, but God's Word pronounces destruction on sinners.

3) **Lamp:** "thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path." (Psalm 119:105). God's Word lights up our pathway in a world of darkness so we can see truth from error. Jesus said, "I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life." (John 8:12).

4) **Mirror:** "If any man be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass." (James 1:23). God's Word reveals to us our true condition (James 1:23) and changes us to the same image of Christ. (II Corinthians 3:18).

5) **Milk:** "As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby" I Pet 2:2. "every one that uses milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness; for he is a babe." (Heb 5:13).

The basic and simple truths of God's Word nourish young Christians in their growth (I Cor. 3:2).

6) **Seed:** "Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the Word of God, which liveth and abideth forever." (I Peter 1:23). "The seed is the Word of God." (Luke 8:11). God's Word is like a seed which when planted in a person's heart produces new life in those who receive Christ as Saviour. Psalm 126:5,6 describes the soul winner bearing precious seed. Galatians 3:16 describes Christ as the seed of Abraham: "And to thy seed, which is Christ." (See II Timothy 2:8).

7) **Sword:** "Take . . . the sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God." (Ephesians 6:17).

"The Word of God is quick and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow (flesh) . . . and is a discernor of the thoughts and intents of the heart." (Hebrews 4:12).

a) It separates things of the spirit and flesh;

b) It discerns the thoughts and intents of the heart;

c) It is the preached word (Greek: rhema) impacted into a person's heart.

This is a believer's only offensive weapon to defeat Satan's lies, as Christ did in Matthew 4:1-11.

d) Christ, at his return, kills the antichrist's armies with the sword coming out of his mouth. (Revelation 19:21).

8) **Water:** "That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word." (Eph. 5:26). "born of water (of the word)." (John 3:3).

As water is life-giving, refreshing and cleansing, so is God's Word all these things to believers.

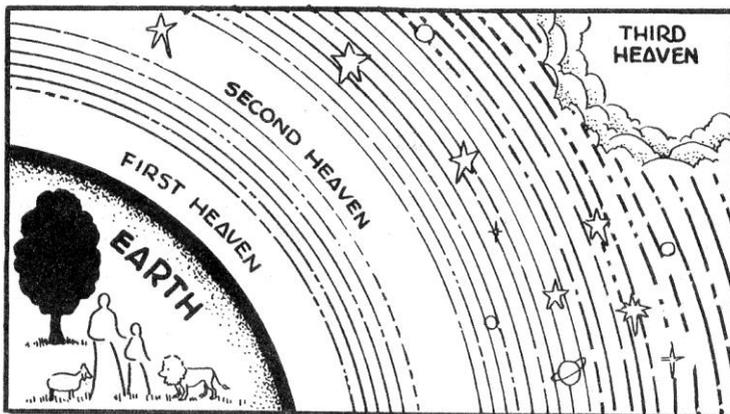
"Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? By taking heed thereto according to thy word." (Psalm 119:9).

God's Word cleanses us of sin by bringing us to confess it to God, and by preventing it in our lives. (I John 1:9). The Bible will keep us from sin, or sin will keep us from the Bible.

Jesus offers the living water of eternal life, so we need never thirst. John 4:10,14; Rev 21:6; 22:17.

- 9) **Gold:** “The law of the Lord is . . . more to be desired than gold.” (Psalm 19:7,10).
 -God’s Word is like gold because of its priceless value in showing us how to get eternal life, warning us of danger, rewarding us in heaven and on earth for keeping it. (Psalm 19:11).
 -God’s Word is an endless goldmine to discover truths about God, wisdom, self, the world and eternity future.
 -Christ is described as having “His head is as the most fine gold.” (Song 5:11).
 This speaks of Christ being God and King of Israel.
- 10) **Honey:** “Sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.” (Psalm 19:10; Revelation 10:10). As honey is sweet to taste, so is God’s Word sweet to consider its precious promises (Proverbs 16:24) “How sweet are thy words unto my taste! Yea, sweeter than honey to my mouth.” Psalm 119:103. Christ is described as “His mouth is most sweet: yea, he is altogether lovely.” (Song 5:16).
- 11) **Bread:** “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.” (Matthew 4:4; Deuteronomy 8:3).
 As bread nourishes and strengthens our bodies, so God’s Word nourishes and strengthens our spirits to serve God acceptably.
 Jesus describes himself: “I am the bread of life: he that comes to me shall never hunger” John 6:35
 Once someone is in a right relationship with Jesus Christ, he finds everlasting satisfaction.
 “Bread of life” means “bread which provides life.”
- 12) **Pearls:** “neither cast ye your pearls before swine.” (Matthew 7:6).
 Pearls denote anything precious, such as Bible precepts, promises or warnings. We should not offer them to violent and abusive men, who have shown themselves to growl and curse you, or who would not appreciate their value.
- 13) **Anchor:** “Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast.” (Hebrews 6:19). The promises in God’s Word anchor us safely to the security of eternal life, and give us hope and comfort to live now on earth.
- 14) **Meat:** “strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.” (Hebrews 5:14). It is wrong to remain a baby in spiritual matters (I Cor. 13:11). Strong meat Christians possess the maturity to make right moral choices, and have digested enough Scripture to discern good from evil.
- 15) **Ox-Goad:** “The words of the wise (*preachers*) are as goads and as nails fastened by the masters of assemblies (*preachers in churches*), which are given from one shepherd (*Jesus Christ*).” Eccles12:11
 As an ox-goad prods oxen to fulfil their duty, so God’s Word prods believers into obeying God.

Conclusion: Some of these Bible symbols are also symbols of Christ, the living Word. (3,6,11).
 Are you living daily by studying God’s Word?
 Are you walking daily in sweet, close fellowship with Christ?
 Are you obeying each message contained in these symbols of God’s Word?
 Are you regularly sowing the seed of God’s Word in people’s lives?



138. What Sort of Mind Have You?

Bible Reading: Philippians 2:1-5.

Aim: To monitor our mental state, so that we have the right mind to:

a) Stay in fellowship with God and each other; and **b)** Serve God effectively.

Introduction: Everything we do in our Christian life depends on our minds. The mind is the battleground where Satan seeks to gain control of our decision-making process for evil. Don't let Satan hijack your mind. One of the saddest things to see is Christians who were once on fire for God, who have let some foolish or false idea into their mind, which resulted in them being separated from other believers, and shipwrecking their faith. Our mind is like a computer. Garbage IN = garbage OUT.

Question: Will you let some false idea control your mind, so you break fellowship with God & others?

Question: What kinds of wrong minds and right minds are there?

I. BAD MIND to avoid:

- 1) Mind **hardened in pride**. (Daniel 5:20). When Nebuchadnezzar's heart was lifted up by his honoured position, his mind was hardened in pride, he was deposed from his throne and lost his glory by becoming insane for 7 years.
Q: Are you proud of something you have achieved? (Proverbs 16:18). Beware of pride.
- 2) Neither be ye of **doubtful mind**. (Luke 12:29).
Many of us worry and doubt if God will provide our needs. Jesus tells us:
 - a) Your Father knows you need these things. (v.30).
 - b) Seek first the Kingdom of God, and all these things shall be added to you. (v.31).
 - c) Provide treasure in heaven that fails not. (v.33).
 - d) Your heart will be where your treasure is. (v.34).
- 3) Mind **evil affected against the brethren**. (Acts 14:1,2). One of Satan's most successful devices is gossip and slander, which makes some Christian's minds evil affected against other Christians. They imagine evil or magnify others faults, so that they respond with anger, and are unwilling to work with other believers. They then quit church, God's work suffers, and people go to hell.
- 4) God gave them over to a **reprobate mind**. (Romans 1:28). **Reprobate** (Gk: "adokimos" (96) means disapproved, rejected, worthless, castaway. It means undiscerning, void of judgment, not seeing good from evil. Some people are so filled with moral sins and hatred of God's ways, that they cannot tell right from wrong, or good from evil. Examples include sodomites.
- 5) To be **carnally minded** (4561) is death, but to be **spiritually minded** is life and peace. Romans 8:6. Carnal mind = prone to sin, sinful appetites and desires. Many Christians backslide because they feed their **carnal, sinful side** by TV, gossip, slander, evil thinking, and not serving God. They do not feed their **spiritual side** by daily Bible study, filling of the Holy Spirit, & yielding to Christ. Carnal Christians often criticise spiritual Christians because they convict them of their sin.
- 6) Who **mind earthly things**. (Philippians 3:19).
Verses 18,19 describe enemies of the cross of Christ as people who mind earthly things. Why? Because they hinder the gospel outreach by their bad example of lukewarmness. They are attached to the things of earth instead of setting their affections on things above. (Colossians 3:2).
- 7) **Soon shaken in mind**. (II Thessalonians 2:2).
The Thessalonian Christians were soon shaken in mind by false teachers telling them that they had missed the rapture. This upset their spiritual balance and triggered their fears.
Key: We can be shaken in mind if we believe error without first checking it with Scripture.
- 8) **Double-minded** man is unstable in all his ways. (James 1:8; 4:8). He is a waverer, a two-minded, unstable person. Such a person suffers from divided loyalties. On one hand he wants to live as a Christian, and on the other hand he wants to live by the ways of the world and selfishness.
- 9) Becoming **wearied** (2577) and **faint** in your **minds**. (Hebrews 12:3).
To faint is to be exhausted or despondent. Two remedies are:
 - a) **Consider him (Christ)** who endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds. (Hebrews 12:3).
 - b) **Promise of reaping in due season** if we faint not. (Galatians 6:9).

II. GOOD MIND to aim for:

Question: How does God describe your mind? The following Scriptures describe how the Spirit-filled believer thinks. Which of these minds describe your thinking?

- 1) The people had a **mind to work**. (Nehemiah 4:6). Hence the wall of Jerusalem was rebuilt in spite of much opposition. If believers have a mind to work for God, the results will be unity, great accomplishments, many people saved, churches built and opposition overcome.

Question: Do you have a mind to study the Bible and to work for God?

- 2) A mind that is **stayed on God**. “Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because he trusteth in thee.” (Isaiah 26:3). If our mind is stayed on God and His promises through all of life’s trials, we will be kept in perfect peace.
- 3) The **mind filled with hope**. (Lamentations 3:21-23).
If we recall these things to mind we will have hope:
- a) The Lord’s mercies are new every morning (v.23), great is thy faithfulness (v.23) therefore we are not consumed;
 - b) His compassions fail not (v.22).
 - c) Great is thy faithfulness (v.23).
 - d) The Lord is my portion (inheritance 2506). (v.24).
 - e) It is good to hope, quietly wait for deliverance, and bear the yoke in our youth (v.25-27).
 - f) To subvert a man in his cause, the Lord approveth not (v.36).

- 4) **Pure minds, stirred up minds**. “I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance.” (2 Peter 3:1).

Question: How do we keep our mind pure?

Answer: a) By taking heed to God’s Word;

b) By keeping rubbish out of our minds, lest it be defiled with sin. Avoid bad movies, bad literature, bad friends and bad places.

Question: How do we stir up our minds to do God’s work?

Answer: Be active in a strong preaching, sin rebuking, soul-winning church. Do doorknocking.

- 5) **Be all of one mind**. (I Peter 3:8; II Corinthians 13:11; Philippians 1:27; 2:2).

It is good for everyone in a church to believe true Bible doctrine and be loyally committed to helping each other spread the Gospel. If believers constantly disagree with each other, they should repent, or leave the church, so the church can carry on God’s work in peace and unity.

- a) “That ye may with one mind and one mouth glorify God.” (Romans 15:6).
 - b) “Now I beseech you, brethren, . . . that ye all speak the **same thing**, and that there be **no divisions** among you, but that ye be **perfectly joined together** in the **same mind** and in the **same judgment**.” (I Corinthians 1:10).
 - c) “Stand fast in **one spirit**, with **one mind striving together** for the faith of the Gospel.” Phil.1:27
 - d) “Fulfil ye my joy, that ye be **likeminded**, having the **same love**, being of **one accord**, of **one mind**.” (Philippians 2:2).
 - e) “Be of the **same mind** one toward another.” (Romans 12:16).
- 6) **Lowly, humble** mind.
- a) Paul’s ministry was “serving the Lord with **all humility of mind**.” (Acts 20:19).
 - b) Paul commands us to “in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves.” (Philippians 2:3).

- 7) **The mind of Christ** described in Philippians 2:5-8 should be in us.

a) “Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus, who:

- made himself of no reputation,
- took upon himself the form of a servant,
- humbled himself,
- became obedient unto death.” (Philippians 2:5-8).

b) “We have the mind of Christ.” (I Corinthians 2:16).

- 8) **A sound** (4995) mind. (II Timothy 1:7).

“God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.”
“Sound mind” means orthodox, well founded, self disciplined, clear judgment of issues.

- 9) A **ready** mind. a) “Feed the flock of God...willingly,...but of a ready mind.” (I Peter 5:2). “Ready” (4289) means prompt, with preparations completed, quick, willing, able to fulfil duties. b) “declaration of your ready (4288) mind.” (II Cor. 8:19). Ready (4288) means eager, cheerful.
- 10) A **renewed** mind. (Romans 12:2). “Be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good and acceptable and perfect will of God.” We discover God’s will for our life as we resist being conformed to this world, but let God’s Word transform our thinking.
- 11) A **fervent** mind (2205). a) Titus told Paul that the Corinthians had a fervent mind toward Paul. “Your fervent mind toward me.” (II Corinthians 7:7). b) Apollos was fervent in the spirit as shown by his preaching “being fervent in the spirit”. Acts 18:25 “Fervent” (Greek: zelos [2205]) means “zealous, hot, intense, glowing, on fire for God, boiling hot.” **Note:** “Zelos” may degenerate into a jealousy which makes war on the good it sees in another, thus troubling that good and diminishing it. Hence “zelos” (2205) joined with “eris” (2054) is contention (Romans 13:13; II Corinthians 12:20; Galatians 5:20).
- 12) A **subject** mind (Titus 3:1) “Put them in **mind** to be **subject** to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work, to speak evil of no man, to be no brawlers, but **gentle, showing meekness unto all men.**” (Titus 3:1,2). “Subject” (Greek: hupotasso [5293]) means “to place in submission, under authority, in an orderly fashion.”

Question: Do you submit to government, employers, spouse, your preacher and parents?

Conclusion: If we fulfil these 12 conditions, as well as those in Philippians 4:5-7 of:

(1) gentleness to all men; (2) careful for nothing; (3) praying; (4) thanking God; and (5) requesting God for all our needs; then the peace of God shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus. (“keep” in Greek means “keep as with a military guard.”) (5432)).

How is your mind? The heart (Greek 2588) is the seat and centre of desires, feelings, affections, passions, and impulses. The heart is the sphere of God’s influence in our life.

In our heart, faith springs up, dwells and works. Christ and the Holy Spirit live in our hearts.

“Mind” in Greek (3540) means our thoughts, understanding, devices and concepts.

Issues to Discuss with Muslims

(p.973,993,1004,1019-1022,1029-1034)

1. **Terror**, Jihad and war commanded in the Quran. (Q8:12,59,39,67; 9:29; I John 2:22,23; John 19:36).
2. Jesus is the **Son of God**, and **God the Son**. **This is taught by:** Daniel (Daniel 3:25), David (Psalm 2:12), Solomon (Prov. 30:5), Gabriel (Luke 1:26-35), Jesus (John 5:25; 9:35; 10:36; 11:4), God the Father (Matt. 17:5), Peter (John 6:69), John (John 20:31), Paul (Romans 1:4), John Baptist (J.1:34)1026
3. Jesus **died** on the Cross. OT and NT prophets teach this. David (Psalm 16:10), Daniel (Daniel 9:26), Isaiah (Isaiah 53:8-10), Zechariah 12:10). (p.1227).
4. Jesus **Rose** from the dead. Proofs are: Mass psychological change in the disciples, Over 500 people saw Him in 40 days after His resurrection (I Cor. 15:1-6), Jewish Christians changed meeting day from sabbath to Sunday (I Cor. 16:1,2), Church’s existence is due to resurrection, the ordered grave clothes left behind. (p.1228).
5. **Mohammed** is not a prophet of God, because of: No fulfilled prophecies (Q7:203), abrogating or changing verses (Q16:101), his friendship with demons (Q46,72; Leviticus 19:31; 20:27), marrying a 6 year old girl Aishah and consummating it when she was 9 years old (Hadith, Al-Bukhari 3896) (p.1038), massacring 800 Jewish men of Bani Qurayza tribe in 627 (Q33:25-27)(p.1030), different literary content and style to all other Bible prophets.
6. **Allah** is not the true God of the Bible (Exodus 20:1-3; Psalm 96:5). JHVH is knowable, personal, trinity, limited by morality, loving, trustworthy (p.997). Allah hates Jews (“Idolaters and Jews are the worst enemies of Muslims” Q5:82; 98:6). Allah hates Christians (“True Muslims do not choose to be friends with Christians” Q5:57) “unbelievers among the people of the book are the vilest of all creatures” Q98:6); Allah is a liar “Allah misleads whom he will” (74:39), Allah commands murder “Muslims should strike off the heads of unbelievers in the battlefield and massacre them.” (47:4), Allah enslaves people “the slave-girls whom Allah has given you as booty” (33:50). (p.1026).
7. **Quran** is not the Word of God because: **i**) it contains unscientific statements, **ii**) it contradicts OT and NT, **iii**) it contains Arabian, Jewish, Christian stories, **iv**) it has a different god. Allah is not JHVH.
8. **Questions** to ask Muslims: 4,12,21,48,49,57,64,72,76,82,86. (p.1035-1037).

139. What is LEGALISM?

Bible Reading: Acts 15:1-35.

Aim: To prove that **liberty** is found **inside** the walls of rules and standards, and that legalism has nothing to do with insisting on high standards.

Introduction: “**I will walk at liberty: for I seek thy precepts.**” (Psalm 119:45).

Question: What does “walk at liberty” have to do with “seeking thy precepts”?

Answer: Psalm 119:45 means those who keep the commandments are those who walk at liberty.

Question: What does “seek thy precepts” mean?

Answer: It means “keep thy commandments”.

Problem: Many think & say that “I will walk at liberty **if I don’t have** to keep God’s commandments”

In our fundamental churches we have some rules and standards. We are against smoking, rock music (Ephesians 5:19), immodest clothing, avoiding physical contact with the opposite sex till marriage (I Corinthians 7:1) and drinking alcohol (Proverbs 23:31). We are in favour of respect for authority, soul winning, and strong commitment to the local church.

When we proclaim these standards, immediately the accusation begins to roll in “LEGALISM, LEGALISM, LEGALISM.” People accuse us: “They have standards, that’s legalism. They have rules, that’s legalism, legalism.” Our critics are very foolish when they associate rules and standards with legalism. Such statements are made by New Evangelical people, or by people who once were real fundamentalists, but have become **weary** of the battle, and they long to return to the onions, leaks and garlics of **acceptance** with the “few standard crowd.” These people would have us forsake our standards of Godly behaviour, and cry “legalism, legalism, legalism” as the excuse for having few standards. These critics show their ignorance of Bible truth, and ignorance of dictionary definitions.

I. Question: Where is the word “legalism” mentioned in the Bible? It is NOT!

The Oxford Dictionary definition of “legalism” is “**the doctrine of justification by works.**”

The idea of legalism came from the Jews of the circumcision who said, “Except ye be circumcised after the manner of Moses, ye cannot be saved.” (Acts 15:1). They were adding a work to salvation by faith in Christ, something that no true fundamentalist would ever do.

- Legalism has nothing to do with **believing** and **living right**.
Legalism is **ADDING SOMETHING ELSE** to **FAITH** for salvation.
Legalism is SALVATION BY FAITH plus works, or
SALVATION BY FAITH + Baptism, or
SALVATION BY FAITH + Keeping The Law, or
SALVATION BY FAITH + Sacraments, or
SALVATION BY FAITH + Confirmation, or
SALVATION BY FAITH + Confession To Priest.
The SDA doctrine of faith + Sabbath keeping for salvation is legalism.
The Mormon doctrine of faith + baptism for salvation is legalism.
The RC doctrine of faith + sacraments for salvation is legalism.
The JW doctrine of faith + service for salvation is legalism.
- Legalism is not the godly mother insisting that her daughter be home by 11pm and dress modestly.
- Legalism is not the pastor who insists his young people do not listen to rock music or go to discos.
- Legalism is not the dad who insists his son have a short haircut.
- Legalism is not the faithful preacher who preaches against sin.

Question 1: Was Paul a legalist when he told men not to have long hair in I Corinthians 11:14?

Question 2: Was Paul a legalist when he told ladies to dress modestly in I Timothy 2:9?

Question 3: Was Moses a legalist when he said Thou shalt not murder”?

Was Moses a legalist when he said “Thou shalt not steal”?

Was Moses a legalist when he said “Thou shalt not commit adultery”?

Question 4: Was Paul a legalist when he said in I Timothy 3 that deacons should not be double-tongued, and should be the husband of one wife, and should be honest and temperate?

Question 5: Was Paul a legalist when he said the pastor should be sober, the husband of one wife, not given to wine, not greedy of filthy lucre?

Question 6: Was Titus a legalist when he obeyed Paul (in Titus 2:2) in charging men to be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith, in charity, in patience?

Question 7: Was Titus a legalist when he charged aged women to be holy & not false accusers? Titus 2:3

Question 8: Was Titus a legalist when he charged young women to be sober, love their husbands, love their children, be discreet, chaste, keepers at home? (Titus 2:4,5).

Question 9: Was Titus a legalist when he charged young men to be sober & of sound speech? Titus 2:6-8
Notice that most of this Bible is about **rules** on how to live as Christians. You'll find standards in every book of the Bible.

Nehemiah wasn't scared of being charged with legalism in his fight for purity in the people of God. "Then I contended with the rulers, and said, Why is the house of God forsaken?" (Nehemiah 13:11). "And I contended with them, and cursed them, and smote certain of them, and plucked off their hair .." (Nehemiah 13:25). If you don't believe in living by standards, rules and convictions, you'll have to neglect most of the Bible.

Our critics quote II Corinthians 3:17 "Where the Spirit of the Lord is there is liberty".

Question: What does this verse mean? Liberty for whom?

Answer: This is **NOT TALKING** about where the Spirit of the Lord is there is liberty for the **child of God** to do anything he wants to do.

Key: This **IS SAYING** that where the Spirit of God is, there is liberty for the **Holy Spirit** to work among His people.

II. Question: Why do we need to have standards and rules?

Answer: We could paraphrase Psalm 119:45 "I will walk at liberty **because I seek thy precepts**" (keep thy commandments), to say: "I will walk at liberty **within the walls of the city**".

Let's imagine we are inside the walls of a city with the enemy lurking outside the wall.

Question: Are you at liberty inside the walls of a city, with the enemy lurking outside the walls? (Yes).

Question: Where is the freedom? Inside the walls or outside the walls?

Answer: Freedom is inside the walls.

Notice Proverbs 6:20-24: "For the commandment is a lamp; and the law is light; and reproofs of instruction are the way of life: To **keep thee** from the evil woman . . ." (v.23,24).

Key: The commandments of God **keep us walking** in a restricted area as outlined by the lamp and the light. Therefore the commandments of God are like **WALLS** built around us to give us a little area where we can walk in liberty and **not be enslaved** by the captor outside the walls.

This means that the enemy is outside the walls of God's commandments and he cannot reach you because of the walls.

You have a choice: Either:

- a) You can be **FREE INSIDE** the walls, or
- b) You can be **ENSLAVED OUTSIDE** the walls.

Illustration: Consider a tiny dog inside a fence trying to get outside the fence to get his freedom near a ferocious bulldog.

Question: Where was the little dog's **freedom**? Inside or outside the fence? Inside.

Where was the little dog's **slavery**? **OUTSIDE** the fence.

If the little dog got **his** freedom, he'd get his slavery.

Note: I'm sick of this idea that **liberty** is a **licence to sin**.

Liberty is **INSIDE the laws of God, not outside** the laws of God.

Every commandment, and every standard and rule of God is for **one purpose**, and that is to **build walls around** our people, so we can be **free inside God's walls of protection** from things like booze, illicit sex, pornography, drugs, rock music and evil people.

Teens can be free inside the rules of God's protection.

I'm sick of preachers preaching liberty to do what you want.

Key: Liberty means freedom **FROM** cigarettes, booze, bad movies, illicit sex, not freedom **to do** all these wrong things.

Note: If we are not careful, we are going to **lose everything** that is **dear** and **precious** to us.

Being a fundamentalist is believing more than salvation by grace through faith.

It is more than believing the virgin birth.

It is more than believing the verbal inspiration of the Bible.

It is more than believing the sinless life and vicarious death of Christ.

It also includes **having some rules** and **standards to live by**.

These **rules** are **stones** in a **mighty wall** that God has built, that we might have a place of freedom in this world of slavery.

Rules and standards **don't enslave us**, they **liberate us**.

Example: I've never smoked cigarettes or drunk beer due to God's rules, and as a result I'm liberated from alcohol and cigarette addiction.

Key: All that enslaves us has been placed outside the wall.

Cigarettes enslave, therefore we put cigarettes outside the wall.

Alcohol and marijuana enslave, therefore we put alcohol and marijuana outside the wall.

Question: Who is free? The alcoholic or the teetotaler?

How many people are slaves to drugs, booze or illicit sex?

Question: Why do we have freedom today?

Answer: Because in the past, walls have been built to protect people.

You don't find freedom in doing whatever you like.

You do find freedom when you find the will of God for your life and do it.

Love is not breaking down the walls. Love is building the walls.

Love is freedom **from the captor**.

Illustration: A fundamental Baptist preacher met Elvis Presley in an elevator and asked him, "Do you know if you died whether you'd go to heaven?"

Elvis said, "Yes I do!" The preacher asked, "Do you mean you're born again?"

Elvis replied, "Yes, years ago when I was a boy, I went to a revival meeting. I heard a preacher preach that Jesus Christ could save me and that He paid the penalty for my sin."

Elvis told the preacher the plan of salvation as clear as you would.

The preacher said, "Elvis, do you still go to that fundamentalist church?"

Elvis said, "No Sir, the rules were too strict. I wanted my freedom."

Lesson: Elvis got his freedom outside the walls of God's rules. Elvis thought he was free, but suddenly the captor of narcotics gripped him and killed him at age 42 of a drug overdose. He got outside the walls of God's rules, standards and regulations, only to discover the captivity of sin outside the wall.

Key: My precious young people, that youth leader who breaks down those rules **LOVES YOU NOT**.

He loves your LOVE. He does NOT love you. The preacher who loves you says that there is a wall we are building around you to protect you from many enemies. Don't go outside that wall. There are drugs, evil people, enslavement, liquor, indecency and illicit sex outside the wall. You stay inside the wall.

Illustration: In a 1944 prisoner of war camp, the sergeant said to a young soldier,

"You see that barbed wire fence over there? Beyond it are the meanest of the German POWs captured in World War II. You must not cross over into that barbed wire compound."

Question: Where was my freedom? On my side of the fence or on their side?

The younger soldier could have said, "No one's going to tell me what to do. I'm tired of these rules.

I want to be free. Nobody is going to tell me what to do – that **legalism**."

Note: They had a heap of legalism in the army.

My mother had a heap of legalism on me as a boy, and it did me a world of good.

"He that spareth his rod, hateth his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes." Proverbs 13:24

"Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child;but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him." 22:15

"Withhold not correction from the child: for if thou beatest him with the rod, he shall not die.

Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from hell." (Proverbs 23:13,14).

- A child's freedom to do right, is because of the fence you put around him. "I will walk at liberty because I seek thy precepts (or keep thy commandments)" not because I break them.
Key: God has built for me a wall where He can protect me, and I can be free **from** those enemies outside the wall that would enslave me.
Freedom is when we are captured by a **higher CAPTOR**.
Freedom is when we are rescued from a lower servitude to a higher servitude.
That's what Jesus meant when He said, "Come unto me all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest". (Matthew 11:28).
- **True** liberty is when we are free to do those things that God made us to do.
That's why the Bible speaks of the **LAW OF LIBERTY** in James 1:25.
God said through Jeremiah to Hananiah the false prophet, "Thou hast broken the yokes of wood; but thou shalt make for them yokes of iron." (Jeremiah 28:13).
- Some young people say, "I am tired of God's rules in this church. Let me be free."
He breaks free from God's easy yoke, and soon the yoke of drugs or alcohol has him.
Jesus said, "Take my yoke upon you and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls. For my yoke is easy and my burden in light." (Matthew 11:29,30).
Let us free our young people from the iron yokes of drugs, alcohol, illicit sex, wrong friends, etc. by building rules and standards around them so they will be safe within the walls from the captors outside the walls.
Look up in your Bible Romans 8:2 – "For the **law of the Spirit of life** in Christ Jesus hath made me **FREE** from the **law of sin and death**."
One law makes me free from another law.
- **Freedom** is when a good law liberates you from a bad law.
Example 1: David said, "I'll be free to court Bathsheba." He went outside the walls that he thought enslaved him, and found that slavery was outside the wall, and that he had been free inside the wall.
Example 2: Samson said, "I want to be free to live in sin with Delilah. I can trust ungodly people to do right by me." What Samson did not understand was that he was free inside the walls.
He did not think that when he went outside the walls, they would put out his eyes and hook him up to a mill to grind corn in circles day and night for months and years. Do you hear Samson saying at the grinder, "I sure like this freedom. I'm blind, but I'm free." No Samson, you're not free. You are a slave to your enemy.
I thank God for old-fashioned wall-building preachers.
I thank God for old-fashioned wall-building churches.
I thank God for old-fashioned wall-building parents who build a little place of freedom with rules, so our young people cannot be captured by the enemy.

Conclusion: Choose if you will the bondage of compromise, destroying the walls that fundamentalists have built up for the freedom and safety of our people. Choose if you will. But for me, give me liberty **INSIDE THOSE WALLS**. Give me liberty inside the walls or GIVE ME DEATH. If we do not build walls of rules, standards and regulations around our people, they will know the captivity of sin **OUTSIDE THE WALLS**. And so we have one choice to make:
Either we give people **LIBERTY inside the walls** or we will give them **DEATH outside the walls**.

140. The Remembrance of the Lord Jesus

Bible Reading: Luke 22:19,20; I Corinthians 11:17-34.

Aim: To show what we remember the Lord Jesus for.

Introduction: Three reasons or purposes for having the Lord's Table are:

- To remember the Lord Jesus Christ. (I Corinthians 11:24).
- To show the Lord's death till He come. (I Corinthians 11:26).
This declares our belief in the promise of Christ's return.

- c) To promote self-examination before partaking. (I Corinthians 11:27-32).
At the Lord's Supper, we go primarily to **meet Him**, not just to **hear about Him**. We need personal encounters with the Lord as we pour out our heart's worship and affection to Him.

What Do We Need To Remember About Jesus Christ?

- 1) **Remember His NAME:** "Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus." (Colossians 3:17). "Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we will remember the NAME of the LORD our God." (Psalm 20:7).
One's name denotes one's character. "Thou shalt call his name Jesus, for he shall save his people from their sins." (Matthew 1:21). The name "Jesus" means "Jehovah the Saviour". See Isaiah 9:6; Philippians 2:9-11; John 20:31; Romans 10:13.
We have salvation only in Jesus Christ's Holy name. (Acts 4:10-12).
- 2) **Remember His WORKS:** "Remember his marvellous works that he hath done." I Chron 16:12
We should think of Christ's work in:
 - a) **Creation:** "For by him were all things created . . ." (Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:10).
 - b) **Healing:** "When John had heard in prison the works of Christ, the blind receive their sight, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised up, and the poor have the gospel preached unto them." (Matthew 11:2,5).
 - c) **Salvation:** "He said, It is finished." (John 19:30).
 - d) **Ministry:** "I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do." (John 17:4).
"My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work." (John 4:34).
How thoroughly the Lord Jesus committed and devoted Himself to his Father's work.
- 3) **Remember His LOVE:** "We will remember thy love more than wine." (Song 1:4).
"To know the love of Christ which passeth knowledge." (Ephesians 3:19).
"Who shall separate us from the love of Christ?" (Romans 8:35).
"Love one another as I have loved you. Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends." (John 15:12,13). As we think of His love for us, we will be thankful and respond in worship, love and obedience. John 3:16; I John 3:16; I John 3:1; 2 Corinthians 5:14.
"Love so amazing, so divine, demands my soul, my life, my all."
It was Christ's love for us, not nails, that kept Him on the Cross.
- 4) **Remember His AFFLICTION:** "Remembering mine affliction and my misery, the wormwood and the gall." (Lamentations 3:19). See Matthew 27:34.
During the Lord's Supper we must remember Jesus Christ's suffering affliction for us such as:
 - i) "They pierced my hands and my feet." (Psalm 22:16).
 - ii) "All my bones are out of joint." (Psalm 22:14).
 - iii) "My tongue cleaveth to my jaws." (Psalm 22:15).
 - iv) "He was oppressed, and he was afflicted." (Isaiah 53:7).
 - v) "They platted a crown of thorns, and put it about his head." (Mark 15:17).
 - vi) "They smote him on the head with a reed, and did spit upon him." (Mark 15:19).
 - vii) "They mocked him." (v.20); "they crucified him." (v.25). (Isaiah 50:6).
- 5) **Remember His RESURRECTION and EXALTATION:**
"Remember that Jesus Christ . . . was raised from the dead." (II Timothy 2:8).
"That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection." (Philippians 3:10).
In the Lord's Supper we not only remember Jesus Christ who suffered, bled and died, but also Jesus Christ as the One who rose from the dead and now lives in the power of an endless life. He is our Great High Priest who ever lives to make intercession for us.
- 6) **Remember His MERCIES:** "I will sing of the mercies of the Lord forever." (Psalm 89:1).
"Remember (v.11) . . . ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ." (Ephesians 2:1-13). "It is of the Lord's mercies that we are not consumed, because his compassions fail not . . ." (Lamentations 3:22,23).
Remember the black days of sin and of what we have been saved from.
Remember the kindness and love of Christ to us.

- 7) **Remember His WORDS:** “Remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.” (Acts 20:35).
We ought to be a giving people; giving of our time, prayers, love, money.
Let us memorize Christ’s words: “Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly.” (Colossians 3:16). “Thy **words** were found and I did **eat** them; and thy word was unto me the joy and rejoicing of my heart . . .” (Jeremiah 15:16).

Conclusion: As we come together to the Lord’s Table, let our memories recall Jesus Christ’s name, works, love, afflictions, resurrection, mercies and His words.

141. I Stir Up Your Pure Minds By Way Of Remembrance.

Bible Reading: II Peter 3:1-18.

Aim: To be reminded of the important things of serving God.

Introduction: There are some things that we must remember if we are to be approved workmen for Jesus Christ. It is easy to forget the major things and to get sidetracked to unimportant things.

Question: What does God want us to remember about serving Him?

- 1) Remember the **PRICE** that was **paid for our redemption**. “Ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things as silver and gold... but with the precious blood of Christ.” (I Peter 1:18,19). See Ephesians 1:7. Our salvation, though free to us, was expensive to God, the price being the blood of God the Son. (Acts 20:28).
- 2) Remember the **PIT** that **He drew us out of**. Do you remember your condition before you were saved? (Psalm 40:1-3). Our unsaved days are described as a horrible pit and as stuck in miry clay. Now that we are saved, we have a solid rock foundation of Jesus Christ and His Word to live by (Matthew 7:24,25). Also, He has established our direction in life.
- 3) Remember the **PUBLIC** that **are watching you**. “Ye shall be witnesses unto me.” (Acts 1:8). “Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father which is in heaven.” (Matthew 5:16). Don’t disgrace God’s Name by the way you live.
- 4) Remember the **PERSON** that **we’ll have to give account to**. We’ll have to give account of our life and service to the Lord Jesus Christ at the Judgment Seat of Christ (II Corinthians 5:10). He will reward us for faithful service, or we’ll lose rewards (II John 7,8) and be ashamed before Him at His coming. (I John 2:28).
“So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.” (Romans 14:12).
- 5) Remember the **PEOPLE all around us who are going to hell**. “Broad is the way that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat.” (Matthew 7:13,14).
The rich man in hell said, “Cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame.” (Luke 16:24).
Ask yourself the question, “Who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings?” (Isaiah 33:14).
Let us (a) become soul-winners; and (b) train others to be soul-winners.
- 6) Remember the **PRESENT of salvation is for everyone**.
“The gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.” (Romans 6:23).
“If thou knewest the **gift** of God and **who** it is that sayeth to thee, Give me to drink; thou wouldest have **asked** of him, and he would have **given** thee living water.” (John 4:10).
“By grace are ye saved through faith: and that not of yourselves: it is the **gift** of God.” (Eph. 2:8).
“Thanks be unto God for His unspeakable **gift**.” (II Corinthians 9:25).
Let us go and tell people about God’s free gift to them of eternal life through Jesus Christ.
This free gift refutes the cults’ false gospel of salvation by works.
Romans 10:13 states that you are a candidate for salvation.

Conclusion: If you are not sure of heaven, receive Christ as your Saviour and you’ll know that “as far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us.” (Psalm 103:12). “I have blotted out, as a thick cloud, thy transgressions, and as a cloud, thy sins. . .” (Isaiah 44:22). “The blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.” (I John 1:7).

Jesus Christ has cleansed many from their sin and He can do the same for you.

Will you receive Christ as your Saviour today? Will you tell others of His free gift of eternal life?

142. Love Not the World

Bible Reading: I John 2:15-17.

Aim: To not follow the temptations and traps of the world.

Memory Verse: “Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth forever.” I John 2:15-17.

Definition: “World” is “Kosmos” (Gk), meaning, **a**) The physical planet (2 Peter 2:5; 3:6), **b**) The world of mankind organised into nation states (John 16:21; Matthew 4:8-10), **c**) The fallen world of humanity who are indifferent to or in rebellion against God and destined for judgment (ethical meaning). It is the domain of Satan (I Jn 5:19; 4:1-5; Jn 12:31; 14:30; 2 Cor. 4:4). It is the object of judgment and saving mercy (John 3:16-19; 4:42; 6:33,51); Holy Spirit reproves the world (John 16:8-11); By faith believers can overcome the world (worldly thinking, opposition of worldly men & Satan). Devotion to things of the world produces a ‘worldly’ attitude of mind which has no concern for the things of God (John 1:10; I Cor.1:20,21;3:19). It is material and passing.

Introduction:

I. We are commanded to have certain **attitudes about the world system**. These are:

1. Love not the world (I John 2:15-17). The world is in a state of dire moral corruption.
2. Be not conformed to this world. (Romans 12:2).The world pressures believers to conform.
3. Do not have friendship with the world. (James 4:4). The world seeks to contaminate believers.
4. Keep yourself unspotted from the world. (James 1:27).
5. Overcome the world by our faith. (I John 5:4,5).
6. Share this world’s goods with needy believers. (I John 3:17).
7. Shine as lights in the world. (Philippians 2:15). We are to dispel worldly darkness.
8. Deny ungodliness and worldly lusts. (Titus 2:12).
9. The world is crucified unto me, and I unto the world. (Galatians 6:14). Be unresponsive to it.
10. Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. (Mark 16:15).
11. We are not citizens of this world. (John 17:14).

II. The Bible warns us about many **bad things** in the world to beware of and to avoid, some being:

- 1) **Tribulation**. “In the world ye shall have tribulation.” (John 16:33).
- 2) **Conforming pressure** of this world to follow evil. (Romans 12:1,2).
- 3) **Spirit** of this world: the philosophy and thinking of the world. (I Corinthians 2:12).
- 4) **Wisdom** of this world, that is, the vain, self-confident, false opinions on the subject of religion, eg: evolution, anti-God humanism. (I Corinthians 3:19; 1:20).
- 5) **Spectacle** of the world. We are like gladiators fighting many foes in an amphitheatre of great height being watched by thousands of spectators, with an immense host of men and angels, watching this conflict with great interest, keenly awaiting the outcome of our spiritual warfare. (I Corinthians 4:9).
- 6) **Filth** of the world. “We are made as the filth of the world.” (I Corinthians 4:13). This word “filth” is the strongest expression to show the contempt and scorn which the apostles were everywhere regarded. Filth means that which is collected by sweeping a house, such as any vile, worthless, contemptible object. Among the Greeks the word “filth” denoted men of ignoble, worthless, wicked character, who were kept to be offered to the gods in a time of pestilence, to appease their anger. They were regarded as the most vile and worthless men in the world. This is how the world views the apostles and God’s choicest saints.
- 7) **Fornicators** of the world (I Corinthians 5:10). Most unbelievers were of this description. Avoid pubs, discos, night clubs etc where such people are found.
- 8) **Fashion** of this world passes away. (I Corinthians 7:31). “Fashion” comes from the shifting scenes of a drama play, where each scene continues for a little time, then changes as we pass on to other unreal, illusive scenes. What an appropriate description of the changing, unstable, unreal play-acting of this world, which today is popular and tomorrow is gone, to be succeeded by new actors and new scenes. How little we should set our affections on this world, and how strongly we should be prepared for the real and unchanging scenes of the next world.

- 9) **Voices** in the world. (I Corinthians 14:10). As all languages in the world are for communicating ideas, and not for display, so it should be with those who speak in church. They should speak them only when and where they would be understood. This refutes tongues spoken in a church where nobody understands them.
- 10) **Worship idols** (Acts 19:27). This well describes unsaved men of this world who worship idols and the creature rather than the Creator. eg: sport, money, pleasure, self.
- 11) **Corruption** in the world through lust. (II Peter 1:4). The world is full of corrupting influences. God wants to rescue us from its dominion and to make us holy.
- 12) **Pollutions** of the world (II Peter 2:20). “Pollutions” mean “foulness, contamination, defiling and tainting” influence that the world seeks and has on those who mix with it.
- 13) **Wickedness**. “The whole world lieth in wickedness.” (I John 5:19). The whole world is under the control of wickedness or the government of Satan. The word “lieth” means to recline in a passive state under Satan’s dominion, making no resistance, not struggling to be free, showing no effort to throw off his reign. The dominion is complete, lying as a beast that is subdued, a body that is dead, or anything that is wholly passive, quiet and inert, body and soul, individuals and nations that are entirely subject to Satan’s will. There is no government against which sinners have so little inclination to rebel, as that of Satan. (II Timothy 2:26).
- 14) **Many deceivers** in the world (II John 7). These deny that Christ became incarnate. They deny that Christ took on human nature in permanent union with His Deity. (See I John 4:2,3 JWs). “Beloved, believe not every spirit, but try the spirits whether they are of God: because many false prophets are gone out into the world.” (I John 4:1).
- 15) **Cares** of this world (Matthew 13:22; Mark 4:19) choke the word, and it becometh unfruitful. Three competing concerns are life’s worries, deception of wealth and desires for other things choke the word, making it unfruitful.
Q: Do you choke God’s Word by letting things of the world takeover your priorities?
- 16) **Prince** of this world (John 12:31; 14:30; 16:11) is Satan. Also called “the god of this world” (II Corinthians 4:4); “the prince of the power of the air” (Ephesians 2:2); “the rulers of darkness of this world” (Ephesians 6:12) because of his influence over men of this world.
- 17) **Hates Christ**. “The world cannot hate you (apostles); but me it hateth.” (John 7:7). Why? Because Christ preached that its works were evil and that men were sinners, so they hated Him. “All who live godly in Christ Jesus, shall suffer persecution.” 2 Timothy 3:12.
All who preach against man’s wickedness will be opposed.
- 18) **Hates godly Christians** but loves worldly Christians. (John 15:19; 17:14).
“The world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.” (John 17:14). “If ye were of the world, the world would love his own, but because ye are not of the world . . . therefore the world hateth you.” (John 15:19). See I John 3:13.
- 19) **Disputers** of this world (I Corinthians 1:20). What is our answer to worldly disputers who want to argue? It is that God has chosen the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe (v.21), because the gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation (Romans 1:16).
- 20) **Sorrow** of the world worketh death. (II Corinthians 7:10). This is sorrow arising from loss of property, friends or disappointment, as well as sorrow for sin when caught. It does not see itself as an offence against God. There is no looking to God for pardon and consolation. This sorrow produces distress, breaks the spirit, destroys the peace, and mars one’s happiness, causing people to suicide, fret, murmur and complain against God.
- 21) **Lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, pride of life**, is not of the Father, but is of the world (I John 2:16). Lust of the flesh is indulging worldly appetites, as the purpose for living. Lust of the eyes is that which gratifies the sight, eg: jewels, clothing, houses, cars, as the chief purpose of life without seeking Christ or His Kingdom. The pride of life is whatever tends to promote pride and boasting.

Conclusion: Which world are you living for? Which world are you setting your affections on? (Colossians 3:1,2). Get eternal values today. Lay up treasures in heaven. Live for Christ, souls, His Word and His Kingdom, not the passing things of this life.

143. Debtor to the Past, Present and Future

Bible Reading: Romans 1:13-16 and 15:26,27.

Aim: To fulfil our responsibility to tell others the gospel.

Introduction: Paul said, "I am debtor both to the Greeks and the Barbarians; both to the wise, and to the unwise." (Romans 1:14). There are three "I am's" in Romans 1:14-16.

- a) I am a debtor (v.14). The fact.
- b) I am ready (v.15). Paul's character.
- c) I am not ashamed (v.16). His Payment.

Paul bases each statement on the previous one. He says, Because I am a debtor, I am ready to preach the gospel. Because I am ready to preach the gospel, I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ.

- a) The fact: I am a debtor.
- b) Paul's character: I am ready to preach the gospel.
- c) Paul's payment: I owe every man the debt of not being ashamed of this wonderful message of Christ.

Question 1: What do I owe?

- a) My love. "Owe no man anything, but to love one another." (Romans 13:8).
I owe every person in this world my love.
- b) To live in the Spirit. "We are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh." (Romans 8:12,13).
I owe it to people to live in the Spirit and not after the flesh.

Question 2: To whom do I owe this debt of love, this debt to be in the will of God all my life, this debt to serve God with all my heart?

(1) I Owe This Debt To The Past

- I owe God's people in the past a debt. That debt is:
 - to love people enough to give them the gospel;
 - not to be ashamed of the gospel of Christ (Romans 1:16);
 - to do God's will.
- I owe a debt to:
 - every Christian who has ever lived;
 - every preacher who has ever preached the gospel;
 - every church that has ever stood for the Word of God;
 - every soul-winner who ever pointed someone to Jesus Christ;
 - the early Christians to pass on the gospel torch that they carried in the past.
- I see their bodies scarred with the wounds of persecution and I say,
"I owe them a debt. I must give everything that I have to God."
- I see martyrs whose tombs are stained with their blood. They preserved this book for me.
 - The second man on a relay team owes the first man his best;
 - The third man on a relay team owes the first and second man his best;
 - The fourth man on a relay team owes the first, second and third man his best.

You and I owe a debt to every person who has preserved this message, that we likewise preserve this message for the generations to come. To those who handed us the baton of the gospel race, we owe it to them to run the race while we are here, so that when we hand the baton to others, we'll give them a good lead to run the race to win their generations to Christ.

- I see the martyrs eaten by lions in the Roman amphitheatre.
I see the 100,000 French Huguenot Christians martyred on and after St Bartholomew's day by the Roman Catholic Catherine de Medici.
People died so that you could be saved and be in this room today.
People died so that you could have the Bible to read.
- Australia is languishing today because of the mediocrity of Christian people. It's time the people of God in Australia stood up and said,
"I owe a debt and I'll pay that debt. I owe God everything I have and I'll pay that debt."
- God has not called us to:
 - **live** like the world;
 - **talk** like the world;
 - **dress** like the world;

- **fashion ourselves** like the world.

It's time we were willing and happy to be different from the world for Jesus Christ.

- The Christians who lived before me, gave me this Bible. They suffered for my freedom, and I'll not squander it. I am a debtor to:
 - those who pastored me;
 - those who taught me in Sunday School;
 - my mother who prayed with me daily.

- You young people owe some debts as well. You owe a debt to:

- God who saved you;
- Your parents who raised you and paid for you;
- Those who taught you the Bible to pass it on.

Don't go to the liquor lifestyle. Don't go to the rock music lifestyle.

- It's time God's people **lived** like God's people, **sang** like God's people, **acted** like God's people. Why? Because we owe a debt.
- Some people say, "But, preacher, this is a Sunday morning worship service."
Answer: Some of you don't need to worship this morning; you need to get right with God, confess and forsake your sins.
- I'm a debtor to those dear saints of God who heard me preach in years gone by, loved me, and overlooked my faults while I developed as a preacher.
- I owe a debt to those young people who have surrendered to preach in this church.

Everyone who has ever influenced you for God, or taught you in Sunday school class, or preached to you, or loved you, or tried to help you get right with God, you owe them a debt to live for God. We are truly debtors to the past.

(2) I Owe This Debt To The Present

I am a debtor to you people today.

- a) I am a debtor to the young people to give them all I've got.
- b) I owe you a debt to teach you decency, conviction, morals, and to live right for God.
- c) I owe a debt to those people who pray for me to be all that God wants me to be.
- d) I owe a debt to you people who have tithed and given money and energy to build this church, so we can continue sending the gospel to Australia, Africa, India, Philippines and all over the world.
- e) I owe you and your children a debt to continue preaching and serving you, God, and those who will be saved.
- f) We owe a debt to those who led us to Christ to continue faithfully serving God. Paul hesitated to remind Philemon "how thou owest unto me even thine own self besides." (Philemon 19).
The Macedonian and Achaian Christians were debtors to the poor Jerusalem saints who gave them the gospel. (Romans 15:26,27).

(3) I Owe This Debt To The Future

I owe a debt to the coming generation.

I owe a debt to the young people, to the Sunday School children, to the children in the creche.

I owe a debt to cheer the discouraged, because people have encouraged me.

Everything good about us, somebody did it for us.

We are all in debt to God, to our parents, and to those who loved and taught us God's Word. As we have received the gospel and been entrusted with its soul-saving message, we owe to this generation and to the next generation the opportunity to hear its message.

Conclusion: We are debtors to:

- those who have gone before us;
- each other today;
- those who will grow up and be blessed by this church.

Question: Will you pay your debt to the past, present and future generations?

144. I am Ready

Bible Reading: Romans 1:1-17.

Aim: To be always ready to do what God wants us to do.

Introduction: One of the greatest hindrances to the cause of Christ is that most Christians are **NOT READY or NOT PREPARED** to do what God wants them to do. Most Christians know that God has a plan for their lives, but few are **ready, trained and willing** to fulfil it.

Question: What are many Christians ready to do?

I. MANY CHRISTIANS ARE READY TO:

- 1) make money, but not ready to give generously to God's work and ministry;
- 2) criticise those working hard for God, but not ready to help and support them;
- 3) find fault in others, but blind to their own faults;
- 4) get to work on time, but not ready to get to church on time;
- 5) go to sports and night clubs, but not ready to go soul winning or to Bible Study;
- 6) listen to rock music, but not ready to sing praises to God;
- 7) study a secular course, but not ready to study at Bible College;
- 8) ready to go on an overseas holiday, but not ready to go on an overseas mission trip;
- 9) memorise jokes, poetry and words of rock music, but not ready to memorise Scripture.

II. WHAT WE SHOULD BE READY TO DO

- 1) **Ready to preach the Gospel.** "As much as in me is, I am ready to preach the Gospel to you that are at Rome also." (Romans 1:15). This involves being trained in soul winning by going out with someone experienced who knows how to lead people to Christ, especially using the STOP tract, so you can use it to train other soul winners.

We must be ready to follow up new Christians. This is what builds great churches for God. Let us pray for labourers who are eager to say "I am ready to serve" in soul winning, visitation, teaching, etc. Learn to use the STOP tract by studying pages 93-97.

- 2) **Ready to Hear.** "Be more ready to hear, than to give the sacrifice of fools." (Ecclesiastes 5:1).

"Let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath." James 1:19.

Some people are so full of their own opinions, that they have no time to listen to others.

Some people so dominate a conversation, that they won't let you speak.

Some people don't think that they may have some faults that they are blind to.

Some people are slow to learn, because they won't hear what God or others are saying to them.

"Today if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts." (Hebrews 4:7).

Q: Are you ready to hear what God is saying to you?

Q: Will you say, "Speak Lord, for thy servant heareth" as Eli asked Samuel, and be greatly used by God?

- 3) **Ready to give an ANSWER to cults and sceptics.** "But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear." (I Peter 3:15).

Question: Do you have a good Bible answer to every objection a person may ask you? Would you be able to find it quickly?

Question: How do you get answers?

Answer: a) By talking to people and understanding their questions, problems and needs;

b) By studying issues that you don't have an answer to;

c) By memorising the answer, or writing it some place you'll find it next time.

Question: Have you ever debated a JW, SDA, Muslim, etc. and not had an answer?

Answer: You should study the Bible and books like "Answers" so you will be a workman that needeth not to be ashamed.

- 4) **Ready to Support Missions.** "For as touching the ministering to the saints, . . . Achaia was ready a year ago; and your zeal hath provoked very many." (II Corinthians 9:1,2).

Achaia was the part of Greece of which Corinth was the capital. "Achaia was ready" means that the churches in this area had prepared themselves for this collection for the poor saints in Jerusalem. Paul stated that the collection was already made and waiting.

Question: How ready are you to help needy Christians elsewhere, so they can spread the gospel in their area? This involves planning and giving to buy tracts, Bibles, Bible Colleges, support pastors

- 5) **Ready to Distribute.** (I Timothy 6:18). Ready to divide wealth with others, generously.

Question: Are you ready to tithe, and give to God's work, knowing that you are laying up treasures in heaven?

- 6) **Ready to Pray.** "Watch ye and pray, lest ye enter into temptation. The spirit truly is ready, but the flesh is weak." (Mark 14:38). If we have a prayer list of people and things to pray for, this shows we are ready to pray daily.

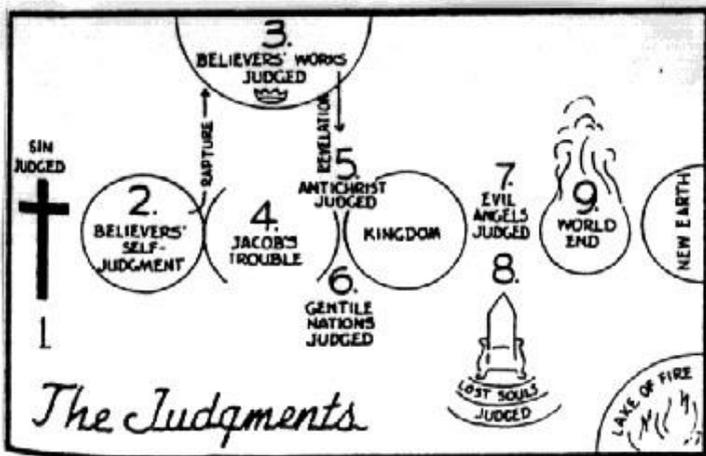
- 7) **Ready to every Good Work.** "Put them in mind to be . . . ready to every good work." (Titus 3:1). A Christian should be prepared and prompt to do all that is good. He should not need to be urged, coaxed, or persuaded, but should be so ready to do good that he will count it a privilege to do it. "As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good unto all men, especially unto them who are of the household of faith." (Galatians 6:10). The opportunity to do good imposes on us the obligation to do it. We do good, not when it is convenient, but when we have opportunity. We should be thankful for the opportunity to do good. We should do good to all men, no matter how often the opportunity occurs, the more the better, no matter how much self-denial it may cost us and no matter how little fame we get by it. In our zeal for the world at large, we are not to forget or neglect our family and Christian friends.

- 8) **Ready to Write.** "My tongue is the pen of a ready writer." (Psalm 45:1). It is good to spread the gospel and Bible truths by writing pamphlets, newspaper articles, sermons, Bible outlines, as well as letters of encouragement to those in need. If God lays some matter on your heart to write, you should be ready to write it and publish it if necessary.

- 9) **Ready to Die.** "For I am now ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand. I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith." (II Timothy 4:6,7). Paul's soon death is a reason why Timothy should work diligently and faithfully in serving God. The world was about to be deprived of Paul's work and experience. Paul wanted those who succeeded him to carry on God's work with all their zeal, energy and might. For us to be ready to die means that we must have finished God's plan for our life, trained up people to carry on the work of soul winning and Bible teaching, and equipped them to train other faithful men so the network keeps multiplying after our death through fundamental churches.

- 10) **Ready for Jesus Christ's Second Coming.** "Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh." (Matthew 24:44).

Being ready for Christ's return means living and serving God so that your life's work will be approved by Christ, and that you will not be ashamed before Him at His coming. (I John 2:28). If Christ came today, would you be ready to meet Him? Would He say to you, "Well done good and faithful servant" or would He say "Thou wicked and lazy servant"?



145. The Way of the Soul Winner

Bible Reading: Acts 3:1-11.

Aim: To see the need to become soul winners.

Introduction: A missionary is just a soul winner and a Bible teacher. If you don't win souls to Christ here, you won't win souls to Christ overseas. Let us see what contributes to success in soul winning.

- 1) **The Praying Partners** (Acts 3:1). Peter and John went to the temple at the 9th hour (3 pm) to pray. To be a soul winner, you must pray. To be a soul winner you must walk with God. You cannot walk with the world and walk like the world, if you want to win souls for Christ.
- 2) **The Paralyzed Poor Beggar** (Acts 3:2). Australia is like the poor paralyzed beggar whom Peter and John met. Sydney is probably the most wicked city in the world. Sin is everywhere. Sydney and Australia are poor spiritually and paralyzed by wickedness.
- 3) **The Penniless Preacher** (Acts 3:3-6). The beggar expected to get some money, but Peter said, "Silver and gold have I none." (In Greek that means "not a cracker", "broke", "nothing".) God uses penniless preachers. "Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom . . ." (James 2:5). There is something wonderful about having to trust God. God takes care of His preachers.
- 4) **The Physical Provision** (Acts 3:6,7). Peter "lifted him up and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength". (v 7). "In the **name** of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk." Peter healed the man in the name of Jesus Christ, meaning by Jesus Christ's authority. This fulfilled Jesus Christ's promise in Mark 16:17,18 where He said, "These signs shall follow them that believe; in **my name** shall they cast out devils . . . they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover." The apostles never attempted to perform a miracle by their own power, but only in the name of Jesus Christ. It was important for the beggar and for Israel to know that he was healed by the authority of Jesus of Nazareth. Jesus was thus designated on the cross. He who had been crucified as an imposter had power to heal. Sometimes we may be required to provide food for hungry people or medicine for sick people, along with sharing the gospel with them.
- 5) **The Powerful Portrayal** (Acts 3:8). He walked, leaped and entered the temple praising God. New converts should come to church, praising God for their salvation.
- 6) **The People were Pole-axed, perplexed and amazed** (Acts 3:9-11). The people had passed by this beggar for many years. They knew him well as an incurable, paralyzed beggar. This man's healing sent a convincing message to the friends of Jesus and to the enemies of Jesus who had crucified Him, that this lame beggar was a type of lame people who will be healed when Christ returns and that Jesus Christ is God. "Your God will come with vengeance . . . then shall the lame man leap as an hart." (Isaiah 35:4-6).

Application: Reaching Australia for Christ happens one by one. If preachers do not go soul winning, few others will. Be very thorough in leading people to Christ. Use the STOP tract. Many preachers are Baptist by name, but Calvinist by practice. Many preachers used to go door-to-door soul winning, but now they are too busy. Are they too busy to have a bath?

Soul winning is the Spirit filled soul winner contacting God-conscious sinners whom God has touched.

Question: How do you know which sinner God has touched and prepared?

Answer: You don't. That is why you preach the gospel to every creature. The preachers and future preachers of Australia are here today. Take new converts soul winning. Soul-winning is both taught and caught. You can only reach people one by one. Our job is soul winning. Christ's job is to build His church. We need to do more follow-up. Four reasons for soul winning are:

- 1) The torments of hell.
- 2) The sacrifice of Jesus Christ for all.
- 3) The only hope for Australia is the salvation of sinners.
- 4) Our accountability at the Judgment Seat of Christ.

Challenge: I want you men and ladies to make a commitment to share the gospel thoroughly with one person every week. Will you make this commitment today?

146. Behold I have Graven Thee upon the Palms of my Hands

Bible Reading: Isaiah 49:13-16.

Aim: To show that in all situations of life, the Lord remembers us and loves us.

Introduction: A preacher was once driving along and he gave this fellow a lift. He shared the Gospel and the man received Christ as his Saviour. The man stayed for church next day, and decided that he wanted to live in the area and keep coming to that church. That week he came to the preacher with a bandage on his arm, with news that he had a surprise for his preacher. It turned out that he had tattooed the word "Jesus" on his arm, because he wanted to tell people what Jesus had done for him. The Bible says that we ought not to get tattooed (Leviticus 19:28), but God uses this to illustrate His love for us. That is what Jesus has done for us. The people of Jerusalem said to God in Isaiah 49:14 "my Lord hath forgotten me". The Lord replied, "Can a woman forget her sucking child?" (v.15). Then in v.16 God said, "Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me."

Truth: God has engraved us on the palms of his hands. When some men tattoo the names of their girlfriends on their arms, it's their way of saying that they love them. The Lord Jesus is saying to us: "I love you so much. I always think of you."

- The Israelites said, "Lord, have you forgotten us?"

Have you ever felt that the Lord has forgotten you? You may think that the Lord could not know your problems. God says in verse 16, "Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands."

Note: When the Lord uses the word "*Behold*", it is a great sign word, and He is pointing to something special. This word points to a **real treasure**. God says, "You think I'm not conscious of your problems? You don't think I understand your burdens? Look, watch this, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands."

- You may have a photo of your loved ones in your wallet or purse. God says, "Look at my hands. I have graven you on the palms of my hands. It's there forever. As long as my hands live, you are engraved there." God does know:
 - your burdens today; - your heartaches today;
 - where you live, and your street address; - your problems; - everything about you;
 - your sorrows; - your needs; - your perplexities; - your questions; - your distresses.

He said, "Look, I've got you on the palms of my hands." God reminds us that He knows all about us. God is saying, "O burdened soul, O wearied heart. Don't think I've forgotten you. If you are facing troubles, burdens and sorrows, and feel that the whole world is falling out from under you, look at my hands." Your name is engraved on the hands of God the Father.

Question: Do you know how many burdens we have here today?

Answer: The same number of burdens present as we have people.

The Bible says that God has our names in 3 places: 1) Our names are written on His **heart**;

2) Our names are written on His **shoulders**;

3) Our names are written on the **palms** of His hands.

- (1) Our names are in the heart of God, so God never forgets to **love us**. Remember what the Jewish High Priest would wear? He wore the breastplate with the 12 Tribes of Israel engraved on the breastplate, each engraved on a precious stone. Read Exodus 28:15-21, **29**.

- (2) Our names are on God's shoulders, showing what? That God always gives us **security** and **supports** us. He is always holding us up. Read Exodus 28:6-**12**.

- (3) Our names are on His hands to show God's care for us. God says to us:

"I've got you in my **heart** to let you know that I always **love** you."

"I've got you on my **shoulders** to let you know that you are always **secure**."

"I've got you in the **palms** of my **hands** to let you know that I'll always care for your every need."

Conclusion: You are engraved on the hands of God with the precious blood of His own Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. There are scars in His hands today. There are scars in His hands today where He shed His own precious blood to pay for your sins, so you could go to heaven, be saved forever and be a child of God. So with the precious blood of Jesus Christ, the engraving took place on the hands of God.

Zech13:6. **Question:** Is your name in God's hands? Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour? Do so today. Are you engraved in the palms of Christ?

147. God Brings Prosperity out of Adversity

Bible Reading: Genesis 28:10-22

Aim: To show that God often leads us through great trials in preparation for some greater service or blessings. Whenever bad things happen to a believer, God can bring good things out of them.

Introduction: Almost every person whom God used greatly, was first put through a wilderness experience in preparation and training for the best plans God had for them. God brings good out of evil for the person who loves God and seeks to do His will. John 12:23-26.

In our sorrows, there are joys;

In our crosses, there are crowns;

In our miseries, there are mercies;

In our losses, there are gains;

In our disappointments, there are God's appointments;

In our contradictions, there are compensations.

Question: What can we learn from Bible characters who went through wilderness trials and testings? Consider these Bible characters to see how good came out of trials so as to encourage us in difficulties:

1. **JACOB.** After Jacob had fled from his home and his murderous brother Esau, he slept on a stony pillow (Genesis 28:11). In Jacob's stony pillow he saw the Lord on top of a ladder leading to heaven. He received 5 promises from God. He called it the *House of God, Bethel* (v.17) and the *Gate of Heaven*. He made a 4-fold vow, promising to give 10% of all that God gave him to God.
2. **JOSEPH.** After spending about 10 years in jail, Joseph found that God was preparing him for the palace to do a mighty work of saving many people's lives. (Genesis 50:20; Psalm 105:17-22). He became second-in-charge of Egypt. Pharaoh changed his name to Zaphnath-Paaneah (Genesis 41:45) meaning "Revealer of secrets and Saviour of the world". Joseph's sufferings and exaltation became a wonderful prophetic picture of Jesus Christ's future suffering and exaltation.
3. **MOSES** in the wilderness in Exodus 3:1-4:13.
Moses spent 40 years learning to be **great** in Pharaoh's palace;
Moses spent 40 years learning to be a **nobody** in the wilderness;
Moses spent 40 years serving God **doing a great work** of delivering Israel from Egypt, receiving the 10 Commandments, writing Scripture, seeing God and learning God's Name "I AM". 3:14,15.
4. **DAVID.** David turned the taunts of Goliath into a great triumph.
Goliath humiliated the Israelite army for 40 days.
God used a little boy, David, to humiliate the Philistine army and win a great victory for God and Israel. (I Samuel 17:43-50). David experienced great suffering in being chased by Saul for many years through the wilderness. One day, God turned David's suffering to great joy when he was crowned King of Israel.

Question: What giants such as Goliath and Saul do we need to conquer by faith?

5. **ELIJAH.** Elijah fled into the wilderness after being threatened with death by Jezebel. God encouraged Elijah by sending an angel to encourage him, giving him a new ministry and a new friend in Elisha to carry on his work, as well as a chariot ride to heaven without seeing death.
6. **PAUL.** Paul's two wilderness experiences led to great blessing:
 - a) Paul spent three years in the Arabian desert, studying to get his doctrine clear (Galatians 1:17), which helped him in his preaching, his letters to the churches and his missionary journeys in the years to come.
Lesson: Years spent in studying God's Word and in learning to be a nobody are laying solid foundations for future service.
 - b) Paul spent many years sacrificing, suffering and being persecuted on his missionary journeys and in jail (2 Corinthians 11:21-30), which led to:
 - many churches being started;
 - writing much of the New Testament which has blessed millions of Christians;
 - becoming a great example who inspired much soul winning, missionary activity, and was a model for future missionaries.

7. **JOHN.** While banished to the isle of Patmos, John was given a glorious revelation of heaven, of the end of the age, and of eternity future. (Revelation 1:9). God sent him away from people, to give him the visions of Revelation. What seemed like a bad thing (his exile on Patmos), led to a very good thing of the book of Revelation being written. This book has given blessing and hope to millions of Christians' lives. It has greatly informed believers on Christ's return. It shows us the ultimate defeat of Satan and victory for believers at Christ's second coming.
8. **JESUS.** Jesus had two main wilderness experiences:
- In Luke 4:1 the Holy Spirit led Jesus into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil for 40 days. The result of His victory over Satan here was fame, power, glory and teaching God's Word with power. (Luke 4:14,15,31,32).
 - Jesus knew that the valley of suffering on the cross that He was to endure, would lead to the glory of His resurrection, ascension and final victory over sin and Satan.

Conclusion: Question: What wilderness experiences or valleys are you going through?

Answer: These can be the precursors to great blessings. (Romans 8:28). The way to cure despair is to give yourself to prayer, for prayer is the great cure of every ill. Sufferings and wilderness experiences for God's best servants are part of our training for a bigger work for God.

Question: Will you see wilderness experiences as being for your learning and future blessing?

148. Joseph: a Type of Christ

Notice the similarities between Joseph and Jesus Christ:

	Similarity	Joseph	Jesus
1	Beloved by their fathers	Genesis 37:3	Matthew 3:17
2	Regarded themselves as shepherds	Genesis 37:2	John 10:11-14
3	Sent by their fathers to their brethren	Genesis 37:13,14	Luke 20:13; John 3:17
4	Hated by their brethren without a cause	Genesis 37:4,5,8	John 1:11; 7:5; 15:25
5	Were plotted against by their brethren	Genesis 37:20	John 11:53
6	Were severely tempted	Genesis 39:7	Matthew 4:1
7	Were taken to Egypt	Genesis 37:36	Matthew 2:14,15
8	Were stripped of their robes	Genesis 37:23	John 19:23,24
9	Were sold for the price of a slave	Genesis 37:28	Matthew 26:15
10	Were bound	Genesis 39:20	Matthew 27:2
11	Remained silent offering no defence	Genesis 39:20	Isaiah 53:7
12	Were falsely accused	Genesis 39:16-18	Matthew 26:59,60
13	Were left in their hour of need	Genesis 40:14,23	Matthew 27:46
14	Experienced God's presence through all	Genesis 39:2,21,23	John 16:32
15	Were respected by their jailors	Genesis 39:21	Luke 23:47
16	Were numbered with 2 transgressors	Genesis 39:20	Matthew 27:38
17	One was later lost and the other saved	Genesis 40:2,3,21	Luke 23:32,39-43
18	Were age 30 when their ministry began	Genesis 41:46	Luke 3:23
19	Were highly exalted after their sufferings	Genesis 41:49	Philippians 2:9-11
20	Took Gentile brides	Genesis 41:45	Ephesians 3:6; 5:23-32
21	Were lost to their brothers for a while	Genesis 42:7,8	Romans 10:1-3; 11:7,8
22	Forgave and restored their repentant brothers	Genesis 45:1-15	Zechariah 12:10-12; Micah 7:18,19
23	Were visited and honoured by all nations	Genesis 41:57	Isaiah 2:2,3; 49:6
24	All commanded to bow the knee to them	Genesis 41:43	Philippians 2:9-11
25	Same names: Revealer of secrets, Saviour	Genesis 41:45	Matt.13:35; John 4:42
26	Provided bread to multitudes	Genesis 41:56	Matthew 14:13-21
27	Rule together with their bride	Genesis 41:45	Revelation 19:7-21

149. Christ, a Prophet Like Unto Moses.

Bible Reading: Deuteronomy 18:15-22; Acts 3:22-26; Luke 7:11-16; John 6:14 and 7:40.

Aim: To see how Moses so clearly prefigured Jesus Christ. To prove that Jesus Christ is the Messiah and prophet spoken of by Moses, & that “the prophet” is not Mohammad as Muslims claim, but Christ.

Introduction: We learn much about Christ by noticing His similarities to Moses. At first there seems little in common, yet a closer examination reveals many similarities. Let this message be an answer to the Greeks who asked, “Sirs, we would see Jesus.” Let us see Jesus in Moses’ life as follows:

	Similarity	Moses	Jesus
1	Attempts to kill them in infancy	Exodus 1:22	Matthew 2:13-16
2	Chosen to deliver God’s people	Exodus 3:10; Acts 7:35	Luke 4:18; II Cor. 1:10; I Thessalonians 1:10
3	Prophet	Deuteronomy 18:15	John 6:14,15; Luke 7:16
4	Priest	Psalm 99:6	Hebrews 7:23-27
5	King	Deuteronomy 18:15	John 6:14; John 1:49
6	Judge	Exodus 18:13	John 5:27; Acts 17:31
7	Shepherd	Exodus 3:1	John 10:11-14, 27
8	Mediator between God and man	Exodus 33:8,9	I Timothy 2:5
9	Intercessor	Numbers 21:7	Romans 8:34
10	Refused the glory of earthly kingdoms	Hebrews 11:24-27	Matthew 4:8-10
11	Rich yet became poor for sake of others	Hebrews 11:26	II Corinthians 8:9
12	Endured reproach because of future glory	Hebrews 11:26	Hebrews 12:2
13	Called out of Egypt	Hebrews 11:27	Matthew 2:15
14	Misunderstood, rejected by their brethren	Acts 7:25-28	John 1:10,11
15	Rejected by man, but exalted by God	Acts 7:35	Acts 2:36
16	Brought their people rest from burdens	Exodus 5:4,5	Matthew 11:28,29
17	Brought liberty to the captives	Exodus 12:31-33	Luke 4:18
18	Had their enemies bow the knee to them	Exodus 11:8	Philippians 2:9-11
19	Bring deliverance with a midnight cry	Exodus 14:21	Matthew 25:6
20	Exercised power over the sea	Exodus 14:21	Matthew 8:26,27
21	Gave water to the thirsty	Exodus 17:6	John 7:37; 4:14
22	Gave bread miraculously for their people to eat	Psalm 78:24,25 John 6:31,32	John 6:1-14, 33-35, 48-51, 57-58, 63, 68
23	Nearly stoned by their own people	Exodus 17:4	John 8:58,59
24	Advocates for their people	Numbers 27:5	Matthew 12:30
25	Demanded complete allegiance to God	Exodus 32:26	Matthew 12:30
26	Meek	Numbers 12:3	Matthew 11:29
27	Were envied	Psalm 106:16	Mark 15:10
28	Had glorious transfigured faces	Exodus 34:29,30	Matthew 17:1,2,3
29	People scoffed at their return	Exodus 32:1	II Peter 3:3,4
30	Sprinkled the people with covenant blood	Exodus 24:8	Luke 22:20; Heb.10:22
31	Suffered at the hand of God for others	Deuteronomy 1:37	Isaiah 53:4,5
32	Obtained pardon for others	Numbers 14:17-20	Ephesians 4:32
33	Pronounced a parting blessing	Deuteronomy 33:1	Luke 24:50,51
34	In rejection, turned to the Gentiles	Exodus 2:15	Acts 18:5,6
35	Receive a Gentile bride	Exodus 2:21	Ephesians 5:30-32
36	Delivered Israel with their Gentile bride	Exodus 4:19,20	Revelation 19:7-21
37	Brought up as sons of a virgin	Exodus 2:1-10 (v.5-10)	Matthew 1:22,23
38	Born when Israel was under Gentile rule	Exodus 1:8-10	Luke 2:1-3
39	Placed by their mothers in unusual beds	Ark in water: Ex. 2:3	Manger: Luke 2:7
40	Saved in infancy from a death decree by a ruling Gentile king	Exodus 1:22; 2:1-3	Matthew 2:13,16

41	Raised by daughters of a kingly line	Exodus 2:5-10	Luke 1:26,27-33
42	Fled their land of birth because of a king's wrath	Exodus 2:15	Matthew 2:13
43	Returned to birth land to do many miracles	Exodus 4:19-21	Matthew 2:19-20
44	Criticised by family members	Numbers 12:1-2	John 7:3-5; 12:37-44
45	Experienced a 40-day fast alone with God	Exodus 34:28; 24:18	Matthew 4:2
46	Spoken to audibly by God	Exodus 19:9-20; 34:5-6	John 12:23-28
47	Delivered people by shedding of blood	Exodus 12:3-23	Hebrews 9:11-15
48	Established memorial meals to help their people remember and give thanks for God's salvation	Passover: Exodus 12:3-14,25-27 Leviticus 23:5	Lord's Supper: Luke 22:19; I Corinthians 11:26
49	Spoke God's word with God's authority and in God's name	Exodus 4:12; 20:19	Matthew 7:28,29 Mark 1:21-22; Lk4:20,21
50	Willing to die instead of the people	Exodus 32:31-32	John 10:11, 17-18
51	Both reappeared after their death	Matthew 17:3	Luke 24:13-53; Acts 1:3-11
52	Accepted when they return to Israel	Exodus 4:29-31	Acts 15:14-17; Rom 11:26
53	Had an angel guarding their tomb	Matthew 28:2-6	Jude 9
54	Revealed God's Name to God's people	Exodus 3:13-14	John 17:6,11,12
55	Did many miracles, signs and wonders as nobody else has done	Deuteronomy 34:10-12	John 7:31; 11:47
56	Instituted a day of worship and remembrance	Sabbath: Exodus 16:23,26-30	Sunday: Acts 20:7 John 20:1, 19, 26
57	Sent 12 spies, and 12 disciples	Numbers 13	Mark 3:13-19
58	Sent 70 out to preach to the people	Ex 24:1,9; Num.11:25	Luke 10:1,17
59	Contended with masters of evil	Exodus 5:1,2; 17:11.	Matthew 4:1-11
60	Opened new Dispensation: Law; Grace	Exodus 20:1-17	John 1:17
61	Raised in houses of men not their fathers	Exodus 2:9,10	Acts 7:20,21; Matt. 1:18-25
62	Murmured against	Exodus 16:2; 17:3	John 6:41; 7:10-12
63	Instituted a Law and a moral code	Exodus 20:1-17	Romans 8:2; 7:6; Gal.6:2

150. How to Get a Concern for Winning Lost People to Christ. John 1:35-51.

1. Realise that all people without Christ will go to hell forever. Mark 9:42-50; John 3:18,36; I Corinthians 5:11; Revelation 14:9-13. (Psalm 126:5,6.
 2. **Joy** that soul-winning brings to the soul-winner, convert, God, angels, and fellow believers.
 3. Realise the **value** of a person. Man is:
 - a) an immortal being,
 - b) made in God's image.
 - c) Cost of redemption is Christ's blood,
 - d) struggle between God and Satan for man's possession,
 - e) God calls believers "Jewels." Malachi 3:16-18.
 4. Realise our **accountability to God.** I Corinthians 5:16; II Corinthians 5:18,20; Ezekiel 33:1-11.
 5. Look at life from an **eternal viewpoint**. Think of the:
 - a) Rewards for us at the Judgment seat of Christ. II Corinthians 5:10
 - b) Pain of hell for unbelievers forever. Revelation 20:11-15
 - c) Joys of heaven for believers to enjoy. II Corinthians 1:10
 6. Realise the **shortness of time** and the **length of eternity**. Ephesians 2:7.
- Challenge:** Getting people into heaven requires: **a)** a Decision: "Choose you this day" Joshua 24:16.
b) an Investment of time and energy: "Present your bodies a living sacrifice." Romans 12:1.
 "Son, go work today in my vineyard." Matthew 21:28.

151. Five Questionable Issues

1. Head coverings for women (I Corinthians 11:4-16).

Some churches insist on women having their heads covered during worship services, because of their understanding of I Corinthians 11:5,6,13. They ignore I Corinthians 11:15,

“But if a woman have long hair, it is a glory to her: for her hair is given her for a covering.”

Question: How should we correctly understand I Corinthians 11:5,6,13?

“But every woman that prayeth or prophesieth with her head uncovered dishonoureth her head.” (v.5);

“but if it be a shame for a woman to be shorn or shaven, let her be covered (2619).” (v.6).

“Judge ye in yourselves: is it comely that a woman pray unto God uncovered?” (v.13).

Answer: The Greek word for “covering” (2619) is “kata kalupto” meaning “to be covered with a veil or something which hangs down”. The covering here involves either the hair of a woman hanging down, or if that is not possible, to cover with a veil. Remember that women of loose morals, especially the prostitute priestesses of the temple of Aphrodite at Corinth, kept their hair very short to advertise themselves as temple prostitutes. Shaven heads on Christian women was strictly forbidden, so that nobody would mistake them as temple prostitutes or as being immoral.

Question: What happened when one of these temple prostitutes at Corinth was saved?

Answer: Since she could not grow her hair immediately, she used a veil to cover her head to show that she was no longer a temple prostitute.

For other women who already had long hair, they did not need to wear a veil, because “her hair is given her for a covering”. (I Cor. 11:15) See *New Testament Word Study*, Spiros Zodhiates p.830 (word 2619). Hence today, women with long hair do not need to wear a veil to church.

2. Television in the Home

Question: What are the consequences when parents allow their children to watch television at home?

Answer: “I will walk within my house with a perfect heart. I will set no wicked thing before mine eyes: I hate the work of them that turn aside; it shall not cleave to me.” (Psalm 101:2,3).

When parents let their sons and daughters watch wrong, wicked and unbiblical things on television, the following evil consequences enter your children:

(i) It establishes the practice of tolerating evil to enjoy some good.

“A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump.” (I Corinthians 5:6).

(ii) It lowers their resistance to evil, by getting them to laugh at sins like lying, stealing, cheating, and rebellng. ‘the heart of fools is in the house of mirth.’ (Ecclesiastes 7:4).

(iii) It provides continued access to the world and its wrong values.

“Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world.” (I John 2:15).

(iv) It weakens and sears their consciences by exposing them to ever-increasing lows of immorality. “that thou by them might war a good warfare: holding faith and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck.” (I Timothy 1:18,19).

“Even their mind and conscience is defiled.” (Titus 1:15).

(v) It teaches them to look up to and relate to evil individuals whom you would never allow into your home. “A companion of fools shall be destroyed.” (Proverbs 13:20).

(vi) It wastes large amounts of time which could be spent in many other useful activities such as Bible study; soul winning; disciple-making; helping parents with housework, study or work. “Redeeming the time, because the days are evil.” (Ephesians 5:16).

(vii) It weakens their creativity by drowning out the warnings of Scripture and their conscience.

“Quench not the Spirit.” (I Thessalonians 5:19).

(viii) It ultimately makes them the enemies of God.

“Whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.” (James 4:4).

3. “Christian” or Worldly Rock Music

Question: What are the consequences when parents allow their children to listen to rock music?

Answer: “It is better to hear the rebuke of the wise, than for a man to hear the **song of fools**” Eccles 7:5
“Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your

heart to the Lord.” (Eph.5:19). “Sing unto the **LORD**; for he hath done excellent things.” (Isaiah 12:5). When parents let their children listen to rock music, these consequences will poison your children:

- (i) It will **tune them in** to the **spirit of this world**. “Now we have received not the spirit of the world (worldly music), but the spirit which is of God (Godly ways and music); that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.” (I Corinthians 2:12).
- (ii) It will **dull the sensitivity of their conscience** as it opposes this worldly music. “Quench not the spirit.” (I Thessalonians 5:19).
“For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would.” (Galatians 5:17).
- (iii) They **admire ungodly** and **wicked, fornicating heroes**. The greatest form of admiration is **imitation**, as seen by teens wearing black T-shirts with their rock star heroes on them.
“But (God’s people) were mingled among the heathen, and learned their works (eg rock music). And served their idols (rock star idols): which were a snare unto them...” (Psalm 106:35-36).
- (iv) They have accepted the “**do your own thing, satisfy yourself**” philosophy of false religions.
“For many walk, of whom I have told you often, & now tell you even weeping, that they are the enemies of the cross of Christ: whose end is destruction...who mind earthly things.” Phil 3:18-19.
- (v) They are now **more vulnerable to worldly exploitation in other areas** (eg: rock music is closely associated with drugs, fornication, rebellion, witchcraft, alcohol, immoral crowd, etc).
- (vi) They have made rock music **more important than living for Christ**, especially by causing Christians who have left the rock music scene to stumble.

4. Alcohol

Question: What are the consequences on children when parents allow alcohol in their home?

Answer: Every alcoholic started off as a social drinker.

- (i) It **places your approval** on a product that brings **death, destruction** and **misery** to millions of people. “Who hath woe? Who hath sorrow? Who hath contentions? Who hath babbling? Who hath wounds without cause? Who hath redness of eyes?
They that tarry long at the **wine**; they that go to seek **mixed wine**.” (Proverbs 23:29,30).
- (ii) It places people in **addiction and bondage**, so that many become alcoholics.
“When shall I awake? I will seek it yet again.” (Proverbs 23:25).
“I will not be brought under the power of any.” (I Corinthians 6:12).
- (iii) It **disobeys God’s command** not to look at wine. “Look not thou upon the wine when it is red ..At the last it biteth like a serpent, and stingeth like an adder.” (Proverbs 23:31,32).
- (iv) It causes a **weaker brother to stumble & sin**. “It is good neither to eat flesh, nor to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother stumbleth, or is offended, or is made weak.” Romans 14:21.
- (v) It is a **bad example** to your children that you (their role model) think it is OK to drink alcohol. They follow your example, go to the pub and meet wicked people who destroy their lives.
- (vi) Alcohol **lowers people’s inhibitions** and **moral standards**. “Thine eyes shall behold strange women, and thine heart shall utter perverse things.” (Proverbs 23:33).
- (vii) Alcohol is the **devil’s counterfeit substitute** for the filling of the Holy Spirit. “And be not **drunk** with wine wherein is **excess**, but be filled with the Spirit.” (Ephesians 5:18).

5. Pornography and Sensual Literature

Question: What are the consequences when parents allow their children to watch pornography at home?

Answer:

- (i) It teaches the children that it is **OK to disobey God’s warnings** against looking at **nakedness** of women. “Thou shalt not uncover the nakedness of a woman..it is wickedness.” Leviticus 18:17.
- (ii) It **dulls our spiritual senses** and **grieves the Holy Spirit**.
“The flesh lusteth against the Spirit .. these are contrary the one to the other.” (Galatians 5:17)
- (iii) It promotes humanism that **man’s pleasure** is the **main goal in life**.
“Lovers of pleasures more than lovers of God.” (II Timothy 3:4).
- (iv) It **teaches others to fornicate** by your example.

- (v) It **increases crime and wickedness in society**. “A whore ... a strange woman ... increaseth the transgressors among men.” (Proverbs 23:27,28).
- (vi) It is **mental adultery** and weakens (dilutes) your marriage. “Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart.” (Matthew 5:28).
- (vii) It sends you into an **unreal world of fantasy** by bringing you to see all women as sex objects rather than people with other needs. “Having eyes full of adultery.” (II Peter 2:14).
- (vii) Pornography is **addictive. It enslaves men** so they cannot break free from looking at it. “Having eyes full of adultery, and that **cannot cease from sin.**” (II Peter 2:14).
- (viii) Pornography produces a **guilty conscience**, “their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing.” (Romans 2:15).
- (ix) Pornography **lowers moral standards** in the home and in society.
- (x) Pornography **tempts men** to commit adultery and prostitution. “Whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding; he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul.” Proverbs 6:32.
- (xi) It **financially supports/encourages its producers to stay in business** & destroy others lives.

152. Things God Has Given Us

Bible Reading: John 13:1-15.

Aim: To increase our love and service for Christ by remembering what Christ has given us.

1. **Strength** to resist temptation, finish your life’s work, overcome every trial, serve God, raise Godly children, and live one day at a time. Psalm 29:11 “The Lord will give strength unto his people.”
2. **Help from trouble**. Psalm 60:11. “Give us help from trouble: for vain is the help of man.”
3. **Grace and glory**. Psalm 84:11 “The Lord will give grace; James 4:6 “he giveth grace unto the humble”
4. That which is **good**. Psalm 85:12. What is good for us? Psalm 119:71; 133:1; 147:1;
Proverbs 15:23; 17:22; 18:22; 22:1; Lam 3:21; Micah 6:8; Luke 10:42; I Cor. 7:1; Galatians 4:18
5. **Good doctrine**. Proverbs 4:2 “I give you good doctrine”; I Timothy 4:13 “give attendance to...doctrine”
6. **Beauty** for ashes. Isaiah 61:3. God turning around an ashes situation of suffering into a beautiful situation of joy and praise.
7. **Pastors** according to God’s own heart. Jeremiah 3:15 “I will give you pastors according to mine heart.”
God’s people need to help pastors reach the world for Christ.
8. **Rest** in salvation from our labours and trials. Matthew 11:28 “Come unto me and I will give you rest”
9. A **new commandment** to love one another as Christ has loved us. (John 13:34). “A new comm...”
10. An **example** to serve each other. John 13:2-15.
11. Another **Comforter**. John 14:16. “I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter..”
12. My **peace** I give unto you. John 14:27. “Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you.”
13. **Understanding** in all things. 2 Timothy 2:7. “the Lord give thee understanding in all things.”
14. A **crown of righteousness** which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day. 2 Timothy 4:8
15. **Assurance** of salvation and resurrection. Acts 17:31.
16. **Spirit of power, love and sound mind**. 2 Timothy 1:7. “God hath not given us a spirit of fear; but of.”
17. **Wisdom**. James 1:5. “If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally..”
18. **Richly all things** to enjoy. I Timothy 6:17. “the living God, who giveth us richly all things to enjoy;”
19. **All things** that pertain to **life** and **godliness**. 2 Peter 1:3. “his divine power has given to us..”
20. Exceeding great and **precious promises**. 2 Peter 1:4. “Whereby are given to us exceeding great...”
21. **Eternal life**. I John 5:11. “This is the record that God hath given to us eternal life..”
22. The **increase** as we labour in God’s work. I Corinthians 3:7. “God that giveth the increase.”
23. The **victory**. I Corinthians 15:57. “But thanks be to God which giveth us the victory through our Lord.”
24. **Power** to the faint. Isaiah 40:29. “He giveth power to the faint; & to them that have no might he increases.”
25. **Rain**. Jeremiah 5:24. “Let us now fear the LORD our God, that giveth rain.”
26. **His Holy Spirit**. I Thessalonians 4:8. “God, who hath also given unto us his holy Spirit.”
27. **Everlasting consolation**. 2 Thessalonians 2:16 “our Father, hath loved us, & hath given us everlasting”
28. **Sleep**. Psalm 127:2. “It is vain for you to rise up early, to sit up late,..for so he giveth his beloved sleep.”
29. **Christ’s body** on the cross, given for you. Luke 22:19 “This is my body which is given for you

153. How a Person is like a Mule (or Ass)

Bible Reading: Mark 11:1-10.

Aim: To discover soul-winning truths from how people are like mules.

Introduction: In Job 11:12, “For vain man would be wise, though man be born like a wild asses colt.”

Question: How is a person like a mule? These truths are useful to know in soul winning. This shows that God can use the most unlikely people. “And they went their way, and found the colt **tyed by the door without** in a place **where two ways met**; and **they loose him**.” (Mark 11:4). The two disciples, sent by Jesus to fetch the colt, represent two soul-winners going out to seek sinners for Jesus Christ. Notice the following similarities between the ass and a man.

1. **Man is TIED** (Mark 11:4). As the colt was tied, so is an unbeliever tied to his sins. “His own iniquities shall take the wicked himself, and he shall be holden with the cords of his sins.” Proverb 5:22 “devil, who are taken captive by him” 2 Tim.2:26. Only Jesus Christ can break people’s cords of sin.

2. **Man is BY THE DOOR** (v.4). Jesus Christ said, “I am the door.” “If any man enter in, he shall be saved.” (John 10:9). Jesus Christ is near us: “though he be not far from every one of us.” (Acts 17:27). “Behold, I stand at the door and knock.” (Revelation 3:20).

Lesson: There are many people who are very close to salvation. All they need is someone to show them the gospel, and lead them through the door of salvation. **Question:** Will you be that person?

3. **Man is WITHOUT** (v. 4). The unsaved person is “without Christ and God.” (Ephesians 2:12). He is:

- without understanding (Romans 1:31).
- without strength (Romans 5:6). “For when we were yet without strength, Christ died for the ungodly”
- without light (John 8:12) “he that follows me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life”
- without life (John 14:6). “I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh to the Father but by me.”
- without peace (Isaiah 57:20,21). “There is no peace, saith my God, to the wicked.”
- without rest (Matthew 11:28) “Come unto me, all ye that labour & are heavy laden, & I will give you rest”
- without salvation (Acts 4:12). “there is none other name under heaven given among men whereby we...”
- without hope (Ephesians 2:12). “having no hope and without God in the world.”
- without heaven (John 14:1-6) “In my Father’s house are many mansions: I go to prepare a place for you.”

Lesson: When you lead a person to Christ, you become the tool of them receiving so many blessings that they never had before. **Question:** Will you be a blessing to them?

4. **Man is AT THE CROSSROADS**, “in a place where two ways meet.” People are between the broad way and the narrow way (Matthew 7:13,14). The unsaved person has to make a choice as to which way he will go. “I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing; therefore choose life” Joshua 24:15

Question: Will you help lost people make the right choice for Jesus Christ and eternal life?

Song: “I met Jesus at the crossroads, where the two ways meet.
Satan too was standing there and he said “Come this way.
Lots and lots of pleasures I can give to you today.”
But I said, “NO”, there’s Jesus here
Just see what He offers me.
Down here my sins forgiven,
Up there a home in heaven.
Praise God that’s the way for me.”

5. **Man NEEDS TO BE LOOSED**. “and they loose him.” (v.4).

Christ came to preach deliverance to the captives. (Luke 4:18).

Revelation 1:5 states that “Jesus loved us, and washed us from our sins in His own blood.”

6. **Man is NEEDED BY THE LORD**. “the Lord hath need of him.” (v.3).

Christ needs us who are saved to tell others of Christ’s saving Gospel.

Lesson: Let us see unsaved sinners as people that Christ needs for some important work to do for Him.

Question: Will you surrender yourself to serve Christ, and be a blessing to many people?

7. **Man Can be USED TO TAKE CHRIST TO THE MULTITUDES**. (v.7-9). (Matthew 9:36-38).

After a person is saved, Christ can use him as a witness “unto the uttermost part of the earth.” Acts 1:8;

Conclusion: Let’s go mule-loosing and apply these truths in our soul winning.

154. Things to Learn

Bible Reading: Deuteronomy 31:1-13.

Aim: To learn what God says we should understand in life.

Introduction: We are told to learn certain things about Christ in Scripture. What are they?

Question: How well are you learning the lessons God has called us to learn?

1) **The Sinner's Lesson:** Salvation is not by self-righteous acts.

“But go ye and learn what that meaneth, I will have **mercy** and **not sacrifice**: for I am not come to call the **righteous**, but **sinners** to repentance.” (Matthew 9:13). God is saying, “I prefer mercy to sacrifice. I am more pleased with acts of **kindness** than with external religious ceremony.”

a) **Mercy** means acts of kindness towards others;

b) **Sacrifice** meant external worship in general.

Christ is saying, “You Pharisees are exceedingly committed to the external duties of religion, but God prefers mercy to those external duties”. It is proper that I should associate with sinners to do them good. The Pharisees always brought the proper sacrifices but they were totally lacking in compassion towards sinners.

c) “I am **not come to call the righteous.**” No humans are by nature righteous (Romans 1:18-32; 3:10-18). The Pharisees pretended to be righteous. Christ means here that it was not the purpose of his coming to call the self-righteous to repentance, knowing that they would reject his efforts and He'd be wasting His time. The Pharisees did not think they were sinners (sick), so they would never seek out the Lord (physician) for salvation.

d) He said that **His proper business** was to call to **repentance** people who **knew they were sinners**, and would **be willing to repent**, such as those present.

2) **The Backslider's Lesson:** Learn to do well. “**Learn to do well:** seek judgment, **relieve the oppressed**, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.” (Isaiah 1:17).

The Lord offered complete forgiveness to the repentant, but promised judgment on rebels. Some people had the mistaken idea that they could live any way they pleased, so long as they made restitution in the sacrificial system. Many believers have forgotten to do well, and make no effort to relieve the oppressed, nor do they seek fairness, justice and judgment. No matter how religious they are, God considers them backsliders whom He will judge unless they repent. “Judgment must begin at the house of God.” (I Peter 4:17).

3) **The Saints' Lesson:** Learn of Christ. “Take my yoke upon you, and **learn of me.**” (Matthew 11:29). Jesus' yoke here pictures the commandments of living by the law of Christ. (Gal. 6:2;

Romans 8:2). Serving Jesus Christ is a much easier yoke than living under the **bondage** of:

a) **Sinful lusts**—drugs, cigarettes, pornography, gambling, violent crowd, alcoholism, divorce.

b) **Popish** requirements--priestly celibacy, fear of purgatory, confession to priests, 20 Hail Marys.

c) **Heathen** requirements, eg: Islamic hand-cutting, female circumcision, going to holy war.

d) Laws of **fashion** and sensuality that are imposed on people.

We who serve Jesus Christ are free. It is much easier to be a Christian than a sinner.

“If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.” (John 8:36).

Of all the yokes ever imposed on men, the yoke of Christ is the easiest and lightest. People should receive Christ because He is meek and not harsh, not overbearing, nor oppressive.

Christ's laws are reasonable, tender and easy to obey.

In receiving Christ, there is peace that passes understanding.

In believing in Christ, there is joy unspeakable.

In following Christ, there is a joy and comfort which the world cannot give.

In bearing trials and persecutions for Christ, there is the hope of glory.

In keeping Christ's commandments, there is great reward.

4) **Woman's Lesson:** Learn in silence. “Let your women keep silence in the churches.” I Cor. 14:34.

“Let the woman learn in silence with all subjection.” (I Timothy 2:11).

God wants Christian ladies to learn in silence in church, listening attentively to God's Word, without attempting to teach men in public, and with due subjection to those who are in authority.

5) **The Disciple's Lesson:** Continue.

"But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned." (II Timothy 3:14). Because of so many errors and false teachers, Paul charges Timothy to hold fast to sound doctrines taught to him, no matter who may oppose him, or whatever might be the consequences. Disciples must learn to continue in God's Word. "Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on Him, If ye continue in my Word, then are ye my disciples indeed." (John 8:31).

6) **The Children's Lesson:** Show piety at home.

"But if any widow have children or nephews, let them learn first to **show piety at home**, and to **requite their parents**: for that is good and acceptable before God." (I Timothy 5:4). **Piety** (2151) means to **worship God** and to **respect** and **support** parents, providing for their wants in advanced age in a kind attitude. To **requite parents** means to repay them as far as possible for their kindness. The debt can never be wholly repaid, but a child should try to do as much as possible to repay it.

7) **The Servant's Lesson:** Maintain good works.

"And let ours also learn to maintain good works for necessary uses, that they be not unfruitful." (Titus 3:14). "Let ours" means "our friends", those who are Christians, maintain good works (ie: profess honest trades), so they may have money to give to him that needeth. (Ephesians 4:28). "Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labour, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth." Christians should learn honest trades, and be distinguished for good works, acts of charity, honest toil, and an upright life. "For necessary uses" means requirements of duties to their families.

8) **Everybody's Lesson:** Fear God.

"Gather the people together, men, women, children, and the stranger that is within thy gates, that they may **hear, learn, and fear the Lord your God**, and observe to do all the words of this law" Deut 31:12,13 Peter says, "Fear God." (I Peter 2:17). An angel says, "Fear God." (Revelation 14:7).

Paul says, "Perfecting holiness in the fear of God." (II Corinthians 7:1).

The fear of the Lord: - is to **hate evil** (Proverbs 8:13);

- **prolongeth days** (Proverbs 10:27);

- is strong confidence (Proverbs 14:26); - is a fountain of life (Proverbs (14:27);

- By the fear of the Lord men **depart from evil.**' (Proverbs 16:6).

Question: What does it mean to **fear God**?

Answer: Morally, it means to **reverence** and **honour** God, to stand in **awe** of God (I Peter 2:17), expressing **worship** and **adoration** of God (Luke 1:50; Acts 10:22,35). Those who feared God (Acts 13:16,26) in the case of proselytes, adored and revered God, while expressing religious devotion to God. This is "sebomai" (4576) in Greek meaning "reverence". Holy fear means respect for the **majesty** and **holiness** of God, a **Godly reverence**. (Genesis 20:11; Psalm 34:11; Acts 9:31). This fear enables man to **respect** God's authority, **obey** His Commandments, **turn** from evil (Psalm 2:11; Proverbs 8:13; 16:6) and to **pursue holiness** (II Corinthians 7:1; Philippians 2:12). Gentile converts to Judaism who believed in God were called God-fearers. (Acts 10:2,22; 13:26).

9) **Other Things to Learn:** i) Learn not the **way of the heathen**. (Jeremiah 10:2).

ii) Learn a **parable of the fig tree** (Matthew 24:32) means to learn the significance of Israel's return to their land as the major sign of Christ's return being near.

iii) Learn **not to think of men above** that which is written (I Corinthians 4:6).

iv) Learn not the **ways of an angry man**. "Make no friendship with an angry man; lest thou learn his ways, and get a snare to thy soul." (Proverbs 22:24,25).

v) Learn **God's statutes** through affliction (Psalm 119:71,73).

vi) Learn **all the Bible** because it was "written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the Scriptures might have hope." (Romans 15:4).

vii) Learn in whatsoever state I am, **to be content**. (Philippians 4:11).

viii) Learn **obedience** through suffering. (Hebrews 5:8).

ix) Learn **not to blaspheme**. (I Timothy 1:20).

x) Learn the **knowledge of the truth**. (II Timothy 3:7).

Conclusion: Let us dedicate ourselves to learn God's ways so we can teach others also.

155. The Ways of an Angry Man

Bible Reading: Proverbs 22:24,25.

Aim: To identify angry men and avoid their presence.

Introduction: Many people, even some Christians, are angry men. God gives us many warnings about anger. One very important warning is found in Proverbs 22:24,25,

“Make no friendship with an angry man; and with a furious man thou shalt not go: lest thou learn his ways, and get a snare to thy soul.”

Question: Why does God warn us about angry men? So we don’t learn their ways.

Question: What are the ways of an angry man? How can we identify an angry man? Consider these ways of angry men. Do not allow them into your life. Repent of these if you are guilty of them.

- 1) **Slander:** False report maliciously uttered to injure a person.
“He that uttereth slander is a fool.” (Proverbs 10:18).
“He that privily slandereth his neighbour, him will I cut off.” (Psalm 101:5).
- 2) **Lying:** Speaking falsely and deceptively. “A righteous man hateth lying.” (Proverbs 13:5).
“Lying lips are an abomination to the LORD.” (Proverbs 12:22).
“Wherefore putting away lying, speak every man truth with his neighbour.” (Ephesians 4:23).
- 3) **Railing:** Using abusive language against someone. “I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a . . . railer.” (I Corinthians 5:11). I Timothy 6:4; I Peter 3:9.
- 4) **Self-Justification:** “He said unto them, ye are they which justify yourselves before men; but God knoweth your hearts.” (Luke 16:15).
- 5) **False Accusers:** II Timothy 3:3
- 6) **Threatening:** “forbearing threatening.” (Ephesians 6:9; Acts 4:29).
- 7) **Overtalking:** Some people talk so much that you rarely have a chance to say something. When you attempt to say something they rebuke you by saying, “Don’t interrupt me.”
“Let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath.” (James 1:19).
- 8) **Faultfinding:** “They send unto him certain of the Pharisees and of the Herodians, to catch him in his words.” (Mark 12:13).
- 9) **Busybodies:** A person who pries into and meddles in the affairs of others.
“But let none of you suffer as a . . . busybody in other men’s matters.” (I Peter 4:15) “There are some which walk among you disorderly, working not at all, but are busybodies.” (II Thess. 3:11).
“Not only idle, but tattlers also and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not.” I Tim5:13.
Illustration: An angry church attendee phoned the accountant of his preacher to look for some bad things he could slander his pastor with. The accountant told him to mind his own business.
- 10) **Factious:** “Speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them.” (Acts 20:30).
“Every one of you saith, I am of Paul, I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.” (I Cor.1:12).
Angry people are preoccupied with justifying themselves more than soul-winning, so they need to recruit people to their cause to gain credibility and support. Avoid getting involved in factions. Get on with soul-winning, rather than self-justification. Don’t let angry people recruit you to their side. “Every fool will be meddling.” (Proverbs 20:3; 17:14; 26:17).
- 11) **Seeking Pre-eminence:** “Diotrephes, who loveth to have the pre-eminence among them, receiveth us not.” (II John 9). Beware of older non-soul winning Christians who want to become an elder or pastor in a church, but won’t go soul-winning or follow up new Christians. Work is better than titles.
- 12) **Looking for Evil Motives in Others, Constant Fault-finding in others:**
“Charity . . . thinketh no evil.” (I Corinthians 13:5). Angry men think that others think like them.
- 13) **Critical Spirit:** “Speak not evil one of another brethren.” (James 4:11).
“Speak evil of no man, to be no brawlers, but gentle, showing all meekness unto all men.” Titus3:1
- 14) **Sins of Presumption:** “Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me.” (Psalm 19:13). Don’t jump to an evil conclusion about someone. Don’t presume evil of others. First check it out with the person, because you don’t want people believing evil false gossip about you. You would want them to check it with you first. (Matthew 18:15-18).

Conclusion: Don’t let these qualities be found in you. If they are, repent of them. Avoid angry men.

What other ways of an angry man can you think of? 1095

156. Philip and the Ethiopian Eunuch: Working with God to bring people to Jesus

Bible Reading: Acts 8:1-8; 26-40.

Aim: To see the method, joy and results of soul-winning, so we become better soul winners. To arise, go and preach the gospel as Philip did.

Introduction: Our all-powerful God has chosen to limit Himself to the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe. The key is that Christians must go and preach. If we don't preach the Gospel, nobody will get saved. For God's work to grow, we need labourers who are willing to lead people to Christ and follow them up. This is the main reason for the church's existence.

In Acts 8:1-8 we see: a) Saul persecuting the church of Jerusalem (8:1-3).

b) Christians being scattered, going everywhere preaching the word (v.4).

c) Philip preached Christ at Samaria (v.5).

The results were: a) People gave heed with one accord to the Gospel. (Acts 28:28) (v.6).

b) Demons were cast out (v.7).

c) Many paralyzed and lame people were healed (v.7).

d) There was great joy in that city (v.8). Revival broke out.

The first "Arise and go" came to Philip while he was experiencing great success in Samaria.

Lesson: God best uses those who are obeying Him where they are. Be a soul winner in your church before you go overseas as a missionary. The good of the Samaritan revival, followed the bad of Saul's persecution. The story of the Ethiopian eunuch getting saved shows us much about **HOW** to do soul winning. What 14 lessons does this teach us? Fourteen wonderful steps are seen as follows:

1. **The Angel of the Lord told Philip, "ARISE AND GO."** (v.26). Lessons are:

i) Angels **cannot preach** the Gospel to men, because God has chosen people to do it.

ii) Angels are **on our side** to help us in soul winning.

iii) The Angel told Philip **where** to go. He told him to go south to the Gaza desert.

When God calls us, He always tells us where to go. "Go toward the south . . . unto Gaza." (v.26).

iv) God's ways **do not always make sense initially**. It seemed strange for Philip to leave a successful revival in Samaria to go to the Gaza desert.

v) **One man is important to God**. Is one person important to you? Let's win them one by one.

vi) **Many people are searching** for salvation and for God. We must go and find them.

vii) The Angel said, "**ARISE**" because he wanted Philip to **go now without delay**. How often do you put off soul winning until sometime later, when you know you should go see someone now? When we hear "GO", we think we'll go tomorrow. But God wants us to go now, today. God says to us: "Son, go work today in my vineyard." (Matthew 21:28-32). The hardest part is arising and conquering procrastination. Don't put off going soul winning. "Arise" means stop what you are doing now and go soul winning.

viii) Sometimes you have to go to **difficult places** to find hungry people for Christ, such as the desert, slums, central Africa, places of starvation and persecution. It really is worth it.

2. **Philip OBEYED**. "He arose and went". (v.27). This means no waiting and no excuses.

Philip made no excuses, nor did he wait till he felt like it. Immediate obedience is important.

If Philip had waited for 1 day or 1 week, the man would have gone. By procrastinating, we can lose good contacts. By obeying, we see God do exciting things.

3. **Philip MET a man**. (v.27). "He arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship." (v.27).

God wants us to meet people in our daily life. Do we recognise good contacts?

Do we cultivate good contacts? This man was an interested, open, good contact.

Question: What do we learn about this man of Ethiopia?

Answer:

1) He was from **Ethiopia** (he represents God's love for people of all races).

2) A **eunuch** (means "any high officer" with no suggestion here of mutilation, 2135).

3) Of **great authority** (Ethiopian tradition calls him the founder of Christianity in Ethiopia).

- 4) Had the **charge of all her treasure** (he was responsible for her great wealth).
- 5) He came to Jerusalem to **worship**. He was a Jew or Jewish proselyte who had attended the Passover feast in Jerusalem. He was aware of his need of God.
- 6) He was **disappointed in not finding salvation** in Jerusalem. How many people are disappointed in not finding salvation in their religion? “He was **returning**.” (v.28).
- 7) He was a **reader**, educated, intelligent, searching for God, and aware of his need. He was “sitting in his chariot **read** Esaias the prophet.” (v.28).
- 8) He was **close in his search for God**. He was reading the clearest Old Testament passage about Christ’s sacrifice for our sins, yet he still could not see salvation clearly.

We miss many soul winning opportunities because we don’t **BEHOLD**. We don’t notice people as candidates for salvation. Behold means “see and understand the significance of.”

Philip saw a man in need of salvation. Let us **LOOK** for soul winning opportunities.

Question: How many days this week did you look for a chance to tell someone about Jesus Christ?

4. **Philip HEARD the Holy Spirit speak to him.** (v.29)

“Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.” (v.29).

Key: Let us listen to the Holy Spirit speak to us.

Question: Do you ever get hunches to ring or visit someone for the Gospel or to be followed up?

Do it, because it is often God’s voice. Thousands of times I phone or visit someone when they need a message of encouragement or salvation. How about you?

Eli told Samuel to say, “Speak, Lord; for thy servant heareth.” (I Samuel 3:9).

Question: Is God calling you to Bible College or to go soul winning today?

5. **God’s message was: “GO NEAR.”** (v.29). “Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.” (v.29)

To win people to Christ, we must get near to them. If you are an introvert, then ask God to help you to become extrovert enough to go soul winning. You rarely lead people to Christ from a distance. It helps after they are saved, if you become their friend. Be the kind of person people like to confide in. Talking to people is essential to success in soul winning. When you get close to people who have sin, they can hurt you. But you get greater blessings when they grow in Christ.

6. **Philip RAN to him.** (v.30). “Philip **ran** hither to him, and **heard** him read the prophet Esaias.” Let us be keen to go soul winning. Let us run to work for God. The Christian life is a race to run.

a) Philip ran. This shows Philip’s haste and desire to obey the Holy Spirit’s leading. One thousand excuses might have entered Philip’s mind if he had thought about it, such as, the Eunuch was a stranger, a man of rank, busy reading, but Philip obeyed without hesitation.

b) Strangers are often more willing to talk about eternal life than we may at first think, so test the water. If we approach them kindly, we’ll find most people willing to talk about salvation.

“Philip **heard** him read Esaias the prophet.” Do we listen to people to find out where they are at in their thinking about God? Listen to people. Ask questions. Ask: “Have you thought about God?”

7. **Philip ASKED QUESTIONS.** (v.30). “Understandest thou what thou readeſt?” (v.30).

Let’s ask people key questions to start a Gospel conversation, such as:

a) This (STOP tract) is for you.

b) This explains how to know God, go to heaven & have eternal life. Have you thought about God?

c) One question: “If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure if you would go to heaven?”

d) Would you like to be 100% sure? (Yes). This tells you how. If you look on the inside, the first thing you need to know is that “All have sinned . . .”

Jesus in John 4:7 asked the woman at the well a question: “Give me to drink.”

8. **The Eunuch’s NEED** (v.31). “He said, How can I except some man should guide me?” (v.31).

The unsaved Ethiopian needed Philip to explain the Gospel to him. People need:

-- someone to lead or guide them to Christ.

-- someone to clearly explain the Gospel to them.

People are like the donkey’s colt standing by the door (Mark 11:4), unable to enter in the door of their own ability and be saved. (John 10:9).

9. **Philip SAT with him** (v.31). “He desired Philip that he would come up and **sit** with him.” Aim to sit down with someone to lead them to Christ. Sit next to him as a friend, rather than in front of him as a teacher. Sit with them and go through the Gospel using the STOP tract. The eunuch was reading the clearest Old Testament passage on Christ’s sacrificial death, yet he still could not understand it. Why? “Because the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.” I Cor. 2:14. “to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind” Luke 4:8.
- It is good to **read the Bible on a journey**, or listen to the Bible recording in a car.
 - The eunuch **did not understand** how to reconcile the Messiah being humiliated and condemned (v.33), yet be a Prince and a Conqueror.
 - He had just returned from Jerusalem where much **public opinion** was against the Sanhedrin putting Jesus to death. Christians surely would have used this passage (Isaiah 53) to prove that Jesus was the Messiah. Unbelieving Jews claimed that Isaiah 53 referred to Isaiah or Jeremiah, as they still do. The Ethiopian hence asks the question in v.34 “of whom speaketh the prophet this? Of himself, or of some other man?” (v.34). God then sends a messenger, (Job 33:23-30) to guide his thoughtful mind to salvation.
Question: Will you volunteer to be such a messenger?
 - “The **meek** will he guide in judgment: the meek will he teach his way.” (Psalm 25:9).
 - “In his humiliation his judgment was taken away.” (v.33).
Christ’s deep humiliation and friendless state was followed by an unjust and cruel condemnation where no-one would stand up to plead his cause.
 - “Who shall declare his generation? For his life is taken from the earth.” (v.33).
This is saying, “Who can describe the enormously wicked character of the generation that would kill the innocent Messiah, a deed so enormously wicked that it defies all attempts at description, the killing of heaven’s highest messenger. It is impossible to describe the wickedness of the generation that would do it. “Declare” means to meditate, to think of, then to speak of and announce. ie: Who can think of, who can conceive the enormity of the crimes of that generation in killing the Messiah so as to fully publish or declare them?”
10. **Philip PREACHED unto him Jesus** (v.32-35).
“Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same Scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.” Don’t let a person sidetrack you from presenting the Gospel. Tell people about Jesus Christ’s death, burial and resurrection as the payment for our sins. (I Corinthians 15:1-4). Paul “Straightaway preached Christ in the synagogues, that he is the Son of God.” (Acts 9:20). “It pleased God by the foolishness of preaching to save them that believe.” (I Corinthians 1:21).
- Christ was **led** - he went to the Cross willingly.
 - Christ was like a **sheep** – innocent and harmless.
 - Christ was taken to the **slaughter** – a bloody and violent death.
 - Christ was as a lamb dumb – without protest, showing self control.
 - Christ was humiliated.
 - Christ was judged for us.
 - Christ died to pay for our sins.
- Philip had a clear passage to explain Christ’s atoning death.
11. **The Eunuch was SAVED** (v.36). The Eunuch received Jesus Christ as his Saviour, believing the Gospel, surrendering his heart, his will, his affections and his love to Jesus Christ who died, was buried and rose again to save him.
12. **The Eunuch was BAPTISED** (v.36-39).
He asked, “See, here is water; what doth hinder me to be baptised?” (v.36). He replied, “I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.” (v.37).
- This **disproves infant sprinkling** and **baptism of unbelievers**, because it sets forth the condition of Bible baptism as belief that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.
A baby or unbeliever could not state this. Hence, only believers’ baptism is Biblical.
 - Verses 38,39 prove the second condition of Bible baptism is by **immersion** & not sprinkling: “They went down **both into the water**, Philip and the Eunuch; and he baptised him.

And when they were **come up out of the water.**” (v 38,39).

Being baptised shows our intention to be dedicated to Christ and His service.

All saved people should be baptised.

Historical Note: At the time of John and for some time previously, Jews administered baptism or washing to those who were proselytes from pagan religions. This came from Numbers 19:7 “he shall bathe his flesh in water”. This was done to signify that they renounced the errors and worship of the pagans. It signified their becoming pure by embracing the true religion, cleansing their sins, and purifying them for the service of Jehovah. John baptised, thus calling the Jews to a new dispensation, showing people’s fitness for the new pure reign of the Messiah. John applied an old ordinance for a new purpose. It denoted a putting away of impurity and purposing to be pure in heart and life, eg: Naaman washing (2 Kings 8). See Luke 7:30 where “the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God.....being not baptised of him”.

13. **The Eunuch REJOICED.** “He went on his way rejoicing.” (v.39).

When people get saved they rejoice. When a sinner repents, there is great joy among:

- a) The Angels in heaven;
- b) The person himself;
- c) Other believers.

The reason for soul winning is so that people will rejoice and have the happiness of a home in heaven, their sins forgiven, and freedom from the guilt and slavery of sin.

The Eunuch had joy because:

- a) His mind was enlightened on understanding a perplexing Scripture;
- b) He was clear and convinced that Jesus Christ was the Messiah;
- c) He was now reconciled to God;
- d) He was joyful because he promptly did his duty of being baptised.

If we wish to be happy and joyful, if we want to avoid gloom and depression, we must do our duty at once. If we delay till tomorrow what we should do today, we may expect to be troubled with melancholy thoughts and we will lose our peace with God.

To have peace with God, we must do promptly exactly what God requires.

Question: Will you obey Christ’s command (Matthew 28:19) and be baptised today?

14. **Philip KEPT ON PREACHING** (v.40). “Philip was found at Azotus: and passing through he preached in all the cities, till he came to Caesarea.” (v.40).

When you lead someone to Christ, lead another and another. Don’t stop. Seek to lead their friends to Christ, as a way of following up your disciples. Learn soul-winning.

It is the reason why God put us here. Philip was found at Azotus, the Greek name for Ashdod, 30 miles north of Gaza. Ashdod was where the Ark of God was taken by the Philistines and where Dagon fell down before it. It was a sea port. “He preached in all the cities.....” These were Joppa, Lydda, Ashkelon, and Arimathea lying along the coast, until he came to Caesarea. We should start more fundamental churches all over Sydney, New South Wales, Australia and the world.

Question: Will you surrender to go to Bible College to train to start a church?

Conclusion: From this account we learn that:

- a) God **prepares** people’s minds and hearts to receive the truth.
- b) God does this with rich and poor, noble and ordinary people.
- c) We should study the Bible to become a better soul winner as Philip did.
- d) We should **be ready at all times to speak to sinners**.
- e) We should **not be afraid of speaking to the great, to rich, or to strangers**. Their hearts may be open. We will only discover this if we offer them a tract and start a conversation.
- f) We should **do our soul winning duty promptly**, as Philip did, without delay, hesitation or excuses. Pray for someone to lead to Christ this week.

Challenge: a) If you are not saved, receive Christ as Saviour now.

b) If you are saved, get baptised.

c) If you are saved, become a soul winner.

d) If you are backslidden, confess your sins to God and get out serving God.

157. Fathers: – Train up Your Children

Bible Reading: Proverbs 22:6; Genesis 18:17-19.

Aim: For fathers to see that it is their God given responsibility to train up their children in God's ways and not to abdicate this important role.

Introduction: "Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old (or as he is growing old) he will not depart from it." (Proverbs 22:6).

God has appointed the father as the spiritual guardian of the home. Often where you see delinquent, rebellious children, the problem can often be traced to fathers who failed to:

- 1) Properly inspect their child's spiritual development, and
- 2) Failed to correct their children's wrong behaviour, and
- 3) Failed to train their children in right behaviour.

Excuses fathers sometimes give for not training their children in God's ways are:

- 1) I'm too busy making money at work.
- 2) I'll leave it up to my wife.
- 3) They are too old now for me to tell them what to do. **WRONG:** While they are alive and especially living in your house, you must give them guidance. They need it most as teens.
- 4) They won't listen to me. **Answer:** You should have trained them right when they were younger. This sounds like Lot's sons-in-law. Withhold privileges if they disobey you.
- 5) I can't rebuke them for sins I did as a teen. **Answer:** Now that you know what is right, you should teach them from your mistakes, so they don't make the same mistakes.

Fathers, we must be determined to train, and mould our children's character to be the best example of godliness possible. We are not only training them, but we are training them in a pattern of behaviour that will set the standard for generations to come. We must not abdicate our God-given responsibility. If we do, we'll fail to raise up a Godly heritage. We must train them to be servants of God.

I. FATHERS IN THE BIBLE

Let us see some mistakes and sins of fathers in the Bible so we can do what God wants.

Question: What do we learn from God's statements about fathers in the Bible?

1) **ADAM.**

- a) Adam's first failure was to please his wife instead of pleasing God. By eating the fruit, he knew he was taking Eve's side and disobeying God.
- b) Adam's second failure was that he was not involved in helping his sons resolve their spiritual dispute about the right sacrifice to please God. He failed to train his eldest son Cain in God's ways, so as a result he lost both of his sons: one in death, the other in exile to the land of Nod. Satan wants your eldest child because they set the example and are looked up to by younger children.

What the eldest child gets away with, the younger children think they can get away with.

Children constantly push the boundaries, wanting to know what is acceptable to you.

If you clearly set the boundaries and expect them to obey you, they feel secure and interpret this as love on your part, even when you think that you are being harsh.

2) **ABRAHAM.** Genesis 18:17-19. God said of Abraham:

i) **Memory verse:** "I know him, that he will command his children, and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the Lord..." (Genesis 18:19).

Question: Will you command your children to keep the way of the Lord, or will you let the world, flesh, devil and TV train your children in evil ways?

If you don't train them in God's ways, then wrong values will fill the vacuum.

No one can fulfil the role that a dad is supposed to. Preachers can't, schools can't, mothers can't. Children constantly look to their father as a role model as to how they should behave.

Question: What kind of role model are you for them?

Question: How are you preparing them to be godly parents and spouses in the future?

Question: What training goals have you written down and implemented with your children.

ii) Abraham sought a godly wife for his son Isaac. (Genesis 24:1-4).

Question: Do you help your children to find a Godly spouse?

3) **LOT** was one of the worst fathers in the Bible. He was a disaster. His demise probably started when he separated his family from the Godly influence of Abraham. He thought that he didn't need Abraham and that he could get on quite well without his Godly influence.

He ignored all the good things Abraham had done for him and allowed money to be the cause of a fight and a split. **Lesson:** Don't separate from sound, godly people. Notice what he did wrong:

i) He sided with his fighting workers against Godly Abraham, rather than living together peacefully. (Genesis 13:5-13). **Note:** The devil will try to get you to have a fight with the preacher in order to get you and your family out of a good church. Don't fall for it. It's a preacher's job to warn you when you are going wrong. Don't shoot the messenger, he's just doing what God wants him to do.

ii) He chose to put money ahead of loyalty to God and Abraham.

He thought he could make more money in Sodom than by staying with Abraham.

Question: Do you as a father put money ahead of God?

iii) He chose fellowship with wicked sinners in order to make this money. (v.13).

iv) He offered his 2 virgin daughters to be abused by depraved homosexuals. (v.7)

v) His daughters and sons-in-law despised him for pleading with them to flee Sodom. (19:14).

vi) He got drunk and committed incest with his daughters. (19:30-38).

vii) He lost his wife and 2 other daughters in the destruction of Sodom.

4) **ISAAC** – Genesis 26:34,35.

Isaac made the following failures in fatherhood.

i) He gave little or no guidance to his sons in choosing a wife. Esau married Judith and Bashemath (both Hittite women) which were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah.

ii) Rebekah had to push Isaac to tell Jacob to find a Godly wife. Genesis 27:46 and 28:1,2.

Parents, you must constantly tell your children to only marry a godly partner.

Constantly pray with them about this. Take them to conferences where they are likely to meet godly young people.

iii) Isaac placed more importance on food (savoury meat) than on the family blessing being done properly (27:1-4). **Question:** Dads, do you love food more than your children's spiritual development?

iv) Isaac did not seek to reconcile his conflicting sons (27:41-43). Isaac abdicated, leaving Rebekah to fix the problem. She advised Jacob to leave home and flee to Haran. They never saw Jacob again.

5) **JACOB** failed to properly train his sons in God's ways.

i) His sons conspired to murder Joseph (37:18). Jacob didn't notice this, nor did he rebuke their envy and hatred of Joseph.

ii) They lied to Jacob that Joseph had been killed by a wild animal (37:20,30-32).

iii) Judah fornicated with Hirah and fathered 3 sons out of wedlock (Er, Onan and Shelah) (38:1-5).

Er was wicked, so God killed him. Onan displeased God, so God killed him also.

6) **ELI** failed to train his sons in God's ways.

i) His sons were gluttons. I Samuel 2:13,14.

ii) His sons were wicked unbelievers. I Samuel 2:12-17.

iii) His sons were fornicating with women who came to worship God at the Tabernacle. I Sam. 2:22-25
Eli failed to train them correctly or rebuke them. A man of God came and rebuked Eli for honouring his sons above God. (I Samuel 2:27-29,34).

Lesson: If we don't train and rebuke our children, we are honouring our sons above God.

7) **SAMUEL** failed to train his sons in God's ways.

i) His sons took bribes. I Samuel 8:1-6.

ii) His sons obtained money by unjust means.

iii) His sons perverted judgment and lost the trust of the people.

This led to Israel's elders asking Samuel for a king to rule them rather than Samuel's ungodly sons ruling them.

Lesson: Preachers must be especially careful to train their children in God's ways and not to neglect them for God's work. Do both. Many preachers have done well in the ministry, but lost their children to the devil.

8) **DAVID** – by sinning with Bathsheba and murdering Uriah, he taught his sons to rebel against him, just as he rebelled against God.

The following failures happened with David’s sons who followed their father’s example.

- i) **Amnon** committed incest with Tamar (2 Samuel 13:1,2,14,15,21,22).
- ii) **Absalom** killed **Amnon** (2 Samuel 13:23-29).
- iii) David **failed to be reconciled to Absalom**, leading to the rift growing worse. (2 Samuel 13:37-39; 14:21-24).
- iv) Absalom **rebelled against David** as David rebelled against God (2 Samuel 15:7-12).
- v) Joab killed **Absalom**. (2 Samuel 18:14).
- vi) Solomon ordered Benaiah to kill his half-brother **Adonijah**. (I Kings 2:24).

9) **SOLOMON** failed to train **Rehoboam** to be a wise and godly King.

Rehoboam **caused a rebellion** by harshly threatening the people with whippings and increased taxes. Solomon’s sins of marrying many ungodly pagan wives **introduced paganism** and **idolatry into Israel**. This destroyed the nation. (I King 11:1-9).

10) **MOSES** failed to circumcise his son, so, on the way to Egypt God met him and sought to kill him. (Exodus 4:22-26).

11) **HEROD** gave his stepdaughter Herodias anything she wanted, so she asked for and got John the Baptist’s head in a charger. (Matthew 14:1-11).

John the Baptist turned the hearts of the fathers to their children. (Malachi 4:5,6).

III. **REQUIREMENTS OF A FATHER**

Teach their children to have a close relationship with God.

Dads must have a close relationship with God themselves.

To guide their children in these areas:

- tell them when they are wrong and why
- tell them daily that you love them
- spend quality time with them
- pray with them daily
- pray for them daily
- read and explain the Bible to them
- warn them of dangers and sins of the world
- train them to marry a godly partner
- equip them to raise up the next godly generation
- teach them not to make ungodly friends
- teach them to memorise Scripture
- teach them not to look at alcohol
- teach them to stay pure sexually
- teach them to flee rock music
- Train them to seek out the most Godly friends
- Train them to shun evil companions
- Train them to be a soul-winner and a Bible teacher
- Train them to be courteous, well mannered and respectful
- Train them to study the Bible on their own
- Train them in Godly dating standards
- Train them not to look at bad TV programs
- Don’t abdicate and leave a child to his own devices
- Set clear boundaries
- Insist that they get home on time
- As teens become older, make them agree that they will only go to places that would be pleasing to Christ and yourselves (get this in writing. Ask them to sign it).
- Encourage your wife to Home school them using the A.C.E. curriculum.
- Send them to the most fundamental Bible College. eg: Hyles-Anderson College, Indiana.

158. Three Kinds of Christians (Gaius, Diotrophes, Demetrius)

Bible Reading: III John 1-14.

Aim: To preserve the unity and peace of God in a church by studying 3 kinds of believers.

Introduction: Today many churches are being destroyed from within by the sins of professing Christians. One person wants the pre-eminence, so he has to put others down. This results in loss of:

a) Love to Christ, **b) Peace** of God, **c) Freedom** to serve God, **d) Joy** in service, **e) Soul Winning drive**
Each Christian is a good or a bad witness. We are either helping or hindering the truth.

Ask ourselves: "Are we part of the problem or are we part of the solution?" III John was addressed to Gaius, a church leader. John discusses Diotrophes and Demetrius. Consider each man's ways:

1. GAIUS the Encourager. (v.1-8).

i) Gaius was **well beloved** (v.1) and beloved (v.5).

ii) Gaius was **Spiritually Healthy** (v.2).

John wished that Gaius would be as physically healthy as he was spiritually healthy.

Spiritual health results from:

a) **Nourishing** ourselves daily with God's Word.

b) **Exercising** yourself unto Godliness (I Timothy 4:6-7).

c) Keeping ourselves **clean** (II Corinthians 7:1) and avoiding contamination and pollution of the world.

d) **Resting** in the Lord and renewing our strength by close personal fellowship with Him. Mat.11:28-30

iii) Gaius was a **good testimony** (v.3-4). Why? Because God's truth was in him and he obeyed it. (v.3). We must digest God's Word and make it part of us in order to have a good testimony. (Jeremiah 15:16)

iv) Gaius was a **soul-winner and a Disciple-maker.**

John here gives the key to joy in the Christian life (v.4). It is soul winning and disciple making.

"I have no greater joy than to hear that my children walk in truth." (v.4).

It is a) Winning people for Christ, and

b) Teaching them to walk in God's truth. Nothing else gives greater joy.

Gaius may have been one of John's converts and disciples.

v) Gaius was a **faithful man**. (v.5). Gaius helped both the brethren and strangers.

Question: What motivates us to have a practical ministry to other believers?

a) Desire to **honour God** (v.6). "after a Godly sort" means "worthy of God, as it befits God."

Gaius showed hospitality to strangers who bore witness of Gaius' charity before the church.

Some of these strangers may have been travelling gospel preachers.

b) Desire to **help win the lost**. This is achieved as we help God's servants do this task. (v.7).

These travelling missionaries took no support from unsaved Gentiles, only from believers.

c) Desire to **obey God**. "We ought to receive such." (v.8). God wants us to help Gospel preachers who bring salvation to others. Let us open our hearts to those who teach God's truth.

2. DIOTROPHES the Dictator. (v.9-11).

Many churches have members who insist on being boss. A pastor or minister means "servant". Christ's

disciples argued over who would be greatest in the kingdom. (Matthew 18:1-6). Jesus reminded them

that their model for ministry was not government officials, but Christ who became a humble servant.

What are we told about Diotrophes?

a) **He loved to have the pre-eminence.** (v.9). He wanted to be number one. His motive was pride.

b) **He would not receive John** (v.9). He could have learned so much from the Apostle John.

Why did he reject John? Because John challenged his right to be a dictator in the church. (v.10a).

Diotrophes was **proud** and sought **self-glory**. Diotrophes **would not receive him**. (v.10a).

c) **He lied about John:** "prating against us with malicious words," (v.10) means bringing false charges against us. Do not believe all you are told about people. Some people twist the truth.

d) **Diotrophes rejected John's associates.** "neither doth he himself receive the brethren." (v.10).

e) **Diotrophes disciplined those that disagreed with him** by casting them out of the church. He was destroying his own local church through his pride, fear and insensitivity. He knew nothing of love.

Lesson: "Follow not that which is evil, but that which is good." (v.11).

Follow good and you'll follow God. A test of "goodness" is: "**Is this beneficial to all**?"

3. **DEMETRIUS the Good Example** (v.12-14). Demetrius had a good report of:

- a) all men; b) the truth of the Bible; c) John himself.

Demetrius was “an example, a model, an ideal Christian worthy to be imitated.”

Question: Is it right to follow men? Yes, only as they follow Christ. “Brethren, be followers together of me, and mark them which walk so as ye have us for an example.” Philippians 3:17.

“Be ye followers of me, even as I also am of Christ.” I Corinthians 11:1.

By our good example, we will “consider one another to provoke unto love & to good works” Heb.10:24

Conclusion: John concludes that he would soon visit the church and speak face-to-face with the people. This thought of accountability is important.

John wishes them **peace**, something that is hard to enjoy when Diotrophes wanted to be a boss and expel people. In spite of trouble, we can still have the peace of God.

Greet the friends by name. John calls them friends. It’s good to be a friend-maker as well as a soul winner. Diotrophes was so dictatorial that he had fewer and fewer friends.

159. **Good Things We Should Seek**

Bible Reading: Nehemiah 2:1-20 (v.10).

Aim: To be like Nehemiah who came to seek after the welfare of God’s people and God’s work.

I. **What should we seek in life?**

1. Seek the **LORD**, **His face** and **His strength** continually. II Chronicles 7:14; Ezra 8:22.
2. Seek the **welfare** of God’s people. Nehemiah 2:10.
3. Ezra prepared his heart to seek the **law of the Lord**, to do it, and to **teach** in Israel. Ezra 7:10.
4. **Peace** “Depart from evil, do good, **seek peace** and pursue it.” Psalm 34:12-14.
5. **Wisdom** “They that seek me (wisdom) early shall find me.” Proverbs 8:17. (Isaiah 1:17)
6. **Judgment** = justice, helping less fortunate. “Learn to do well, seek judgment, relieve the oppressed.”
7. **King James Bible** (Received Text) Preserved, **Inerrant Bibles**. Amos 8:11,12. Amos prophesied that a time will come when people will not be able to find the Word of God in the North (Russia, Turkey) or East (Muslim countries). In the West and South it is available.
8. **Righteousness, meekness**. Zephaniah 2:3 “Seek ye the Lord,..seek righteousness, seek meekness.”
9. **Truth**. Jeremiah 5:1. “if there be any that seeketh the truth.”
10. Seek ye first the **Kingdom of God** and **His righteousness**. Matthew 6:33.
11. “The Son of Man is come to seek and to **save that which was lost**.” Luke 19:10.
We should seek the salvation of lost sinners here and all over the world.
12. **Honour from God**. “How can ye believe, which receive honour one of another, and seek not the honour that cometh from God only?” John 5:44.
13. **Eternal glory, Honour, Immortality**. Romans 2:6,7.
14. **Others Welfare**. “Let no man seek his own, but another’s wealth.” I Corinthians 10:24.
15. **Edify the Church**. “Seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church.” I Corinthians 14:12.
16. **New Jerusalem City**. “For we have no continuing city, but we seek one to come.” Hebrews 13:14
17. **Salvation of others** “I please all men in all things, not seeking my own profit, but the profit of many that they may be saved.” I Corinthians 10:33.
18. **Worshippers of God**. “the Father seeketh such to worship Him.” John 4:23.
19. **Love**. “He that covereth a transgression seeketh love.” Proverbs 17:9.
20. **Fruit**. “These three years I come seeking fruit on this tree.” Luke 13:7.
21. To **Dwell** in the **House of the Lord** and to behold the beauty of the Lord.” Psalm 27:4.

II. **Wrong things we should NOT seek after**

- 1) Wizards. Leviticus 19:31
- 2) A sign. Mark 8:12
- 3) To save his life. Luke 17:33
- 4) Not mine own glory. John 8:50
- 5) All seek their own. Phil. 2:21
- 6) Mixed wine. Proverbs 23:30,35
- 7) Food, drink, clothing. Matt. 6:32
- 8) “not my own will”. John 5:30
- 9) Do I seek to please man? Galatians 1:10
- 10) Charity seeketh not her own. I Corinthians 13:5
- 11) Rebellion. Prov.17:11
- 12) Your heart and eyes. (Num.15:39.)

Conclusion: What are you seeking after, the things of God and eternity, or the things of man and earth?

160. Stephen

Bible Reading: Acts 7:48-60.

Aim: To be filled with good things as Stephen was.

Introduction: What fills your mind? Things of God or things of the world? Stephen is a great example to each of us as to what we should be filled with.

Question: What are these things? He was a man:

- 1) **Full of Faith** (Acts 6:5,8). Faith binds us to God. Faith has three qualities:
 - a) It is the act of the will in receiving Christ as Saviour (John 1:12). Saving faith.
 - b) It is living in obedience to God. (Acts 5:29,32). Walking by faith.
 - c) It is the attitude of the heart in leaving things in God's hands (II Cor.4:13,14-18). Faith rest. To be full of faith means that there is no room for doubt, nor fear in the heart, just as there is no room for anything else in a full vessel.
- 2) **Full of the Holy Spirit** (Acts 6:5). How do we become filled with the Holy Spirit? (Eph.5:18).
 - a) Sing (5:19).
 - b) Give thanks (5:20).
 - c) Submit yourselves to one another (5:21)
 - d) Children, obey your parents (6:1)
 - e) Be strong in the Lord (6:10).
 - f) Put on the whole armour of God (6:11).
 - g) Pray always (6:18).
 - h) Fill yourself with Scripture.
- 3) **Full of Power** (Acts 6:8). Power is the ability to do things.

God never asks us to do things without giving us the power to do them.

With every command there is a promise. "Ye shall receive power after that the Holy Ghost" Acts 1:8

We need power to **share the Gospel**, to have **compassion** on the needy, to **teach** God's Word, to **rebuke** error, and to **edify others**. We are filled with God's power as we are filled with God's Word and God's Spirit. "Truly I am full of power by the Spirit of the Lord, and of judgment, and of might, to declare unto Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin." Micah 3:8.
- 4) **Full of Light** (Acts 6:15). The light within caused Stephen's face to shine as an angel's face.

Sin makes us ugly, but being filled with Christ makes us beautiful.

Matthew 5:16 "Let your light so shine before men that they may see your **good works**..."

II Corinthians 4:4 He had the light of the glorious **gospel** of Christ.

II Corinthians 4:6 He had the light of the **knowledge** of the glory of God in his life.
- 5) **Full of Scripture** (Acts 7:1-50). As we read Acts chapter 7, we realize that as Stephen related the history of Israel, he was filled with the knowledge of the Bible. If we fill our lives and minds with God's Word, we will be full of power and full of the Holy Spirit.

Question: Are you full of God's Word?

Question: Do you study, memorise and meditate on God's Word daily?
- 6) **Full of Courage** (Acts 7:51). The face of man and the fear of man did not affect Stephen. He did not hesitate to charge those who were opposing God's work with being "stiffnecked and uncircumcised," of resisting the Holy Ghost, with not keeping God's law, and with murdering Jesus Christ. (v.51-53). His courage and conviction resulted later in the conversion of Saul.

Question: Are you full of courage for Christ?
- 7) **Full of Love** (Acts 7:60). The stones that the persecutors hurled at Stephen broke his head, but they could not break his heart of love for Israel. His lips were bloodied with the blood of persecution, but they could not stop the pouring forth of love's intercession. When the love of God fills our hearts and minds, it will enable the servant of God to do greater things for Christ. "The love of Christ constrains us." (2 Corinthians 5:14).
- 8) **Full of Wisdom** (Acts 6:3,10). Stephen was full of wisdom because he spent time with God in the Bible, in prayer, in preaching the gospel, and in humbly serving God's people.

Conclusion: As Christ is sufficient to carry Stephen through martyrdom, so Christ is sufficient to carry us through every situation of life. Let us seek to be full of these 8 qualities.

161. Priscilla and Aquilla- Model Christian Workers

Bible Reading: Acts 18:1-28, (v.1,2,18,26).

Aim: To become model Christian workers as were Priscilla and Aquilla.

Introduction: Not much is said about Priscilla and Aquilla, but what is revealed teaches us many important truths about soul-winning, disciple-making and church planting.

What do we learn from their lives that will enable us to be better workers for Jesus Christ?

1. They were **persecuted and driven from Rome**. Acts 18:1.

Every Godly Christian will be persecuted at some time in their lives. They learned the truth of Hebrews 10:34. They “took joyfully the spoiling of your goods, knowing in yourselves that ye have in heaven a better and an enduring substance.”

2. They were **hospitable to Paul**. Acts 18:2,3.

Allowing people to stay at your home is a good way to show kindness to fellow believers. The widow built a prophet’s chamber and allowed Elijah to stay there when on the Lord’s work. A pastor should be given to hospitality. This is a way of showing love to fellow believers.

3. They **paid** Paul for the tent making work he did while he lodged there, as a means of supporting him. They allowed Paul to help them in tent making. Acts 18:3.

“Wrought” (2038) = to **toil** as an occupation = to **labour** for = to **work** for.

Paul knew what it was like to be a preacher who sometimes had to work at a job to support himself.

They didn’t allow money to cause a fight, but gave generously to help a worker for Christ.

4. They **helped** Paul in his work as **fellow Christian workers**. Romans 16:3,4.

Paul needed strong, loyal workers to support him in starting churches. **Lesson:** We should help those who go out to start churches. Church planters need loyal, committed fellow workers to get churches started. They were good “number 2” workers.

5. They **laid down their own necks** for his life. Romans 16:3,4. They hazarded their lives and exposed themselves to imminent danger to save the life of Paul. How? They took Paul into their own house to protect him from Jews who persecuted him. The phrase “Lay down the neck” means to lay the head on the block to be cut off with the axe, as by an executioner. Would you do this for your pastor?

6. Their **support of Paul** had helped Paul start many churches. Romans 16:4.

Many people were greatly blessed by their work. All the churches that Paul planted felt a debt of gratitude to Priscilla and Aquilla for saving the life of the one who led them to Christ.

7. They were **church planters** and **Bible teachers** because they allowed a church to meet in their house. Romans 16:5; I Corinthians 16:19. They knew what it was like to not have a church building of their own. They didn’t mind the loss of privacy to provide a place for the new church to meet in.

8. They **supported missions** by accompanying Paul on a missionary journey to Ephesus to help him start the Ephesian Church. Acts 18:19. It is good if our church members can travel to the mission field to help our workers start churches there. This will give you a greater burden, interest and love for souls.

9. They were **responsible church leaders** so Paul could leave them in Ephesus to help start and build up the Ephesian church. “He came to Ephesus and left them there.” (Acts 18:19).

Question: Would you be able to properly lead a church if you had to replace a church planter?

10. They **recognised** Apollos as **having potential**. Acts 18:24-28. They disciplined him to become a faithful man and a greatly eloquent preacher so that he mightily convinced many others to be saved and to believe that Jesus Christ was the Messiah. Let us see people not as they are, but as what they can become if taught well. Why not attend a good fundamental, soul-winning, Independent Baptist Bible College? We need more labourers. (Matthew 9:36-38).

Question: Who are you discipling and training to become a soul-winner and Bible teacher?

Conclusion: Will you be like Priscilla and Aquilla in these 10 ways? Will you help or hinder your pastor? Will you support or criticise your pastor. Let us all be a blessing to each other as were Priscilla and Aquilla, and God’s work will multiply abundantly worldwide to the glory of Jesus Christ.

162. Seven Bible Valleys

Bible reading: Psalm 23.

Aim: To show that Jesus Christ is with us in life's valleys. We can trust Him to bring us through them.

Introduction: All of us go through valley experiences and mountain top experiences.

We need to stay close to God during:

1) The good times, lest pride of thinking we don't need God causes us to stumble.

2) The tough times, lest we complain, become bitter and stop trusting God.

Of all the Bible texts that have comforted the hearts of troubled souls, strengthened the backs of weary travellers and encouraged the spirits of broken hearts, Psalm 23 has done the most.

A little girl once said: "The Lord is my shepherd, and that's all I want."

Here is our text this morning: Psalm 23:4, "Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me:..." (v.4).

You young people look at us older people and say: "Boy, they're about to die."

Well, we get worried about you too. You go out in the car, and we think you are going to die.

You worry about us dying, we worry about you dying. The great reason for the sweetness of life with Jesus Christ is the fact that when we walk through the valleys, Jesus Christ is there.

There are 7 great valleys in the Bible. Let us look at these valleys. In each of these, God is with us.

"Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil." (Psalm 23:4).

1. The Valley of Siddim = The Valley of Sin. (Genesis 14:1-12,10).

This is the valley of the slime pits.

Question: Why is the valley of Siddim called the valley of the slimepits?

Answer: Because the Valley of Siddim is on the very spot where the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were located. God saw the wickedness, sensuality, sodomy, adultery and drunkenness of these wicked, vile cities. God rained fire and brimstone on these evil cities.

This valley is a valley where sin abounded. This valley represents the valley of sin in our lives.

Question: Did you know that when you go to the wicked nightclubs, live it up and go to the depths of sin, that God is watching you?

Did you know that when you have hit bottom, when nobody else cares, and when you've spent all, and then you come to your senses and say: "I will rise and go to my Father", that God is always there?

God is there this morning. If you are not saved, He is there knocking on the door of your heart.

He wants to save you. He wants to forgive your every sin. He wants to come into your life.

He wants to take you to heaven when you die. He wants to make you a new creature.

He wants to send His Holy Spirit to indwell you. God gave His Son to die for sinners like you.

Jesus went to the cross for you. It doesn't matter how deep into sin you've gone. He is there. Are you in the Valley of Siddim? Are you in deep, awful sin? Have you gone to the bottom? Is life empty? Are you without anybody who seems to care? Then God says "I am here." This morning, He knocks on your door and says "I will forgive your sin, I will make you my child, I will write your name in heaven."

Oh dear unsaved friend living in the Valley of Siddim, come to Christ this morning. He is here.

2. The Valley of Eschol = The Valley of Decision. (Deuteronomy 1:21-26).

Eschol is located just inside the Promised Land. Remember the large bundles of grapes carried on the spies shoulders from Eschol? When the Israelites came to the Promised Land at Kadesh-Barnea, they appointed 12 spies to search out the Promised Land. They returned reporting that the land flowed with milk and honey, and that it was a land of giants. The grapes they brought back were so big that it took 2 men to carry one bunch on a pole. These grapes were picked from the Valley of Eschol.

Question: What is the Valley of Eschol?

Answer: It was where the Hebrews faced a decision in their lives. It was Eschol where they had to decide whether to obey God and move into Canaan or go back to wander in the wilderness for 40 years.

In Eschol they decided whether to be their fullest and best for God, or to be less than what God wanted. The Valley of Eschol is the valley of decision.

My friends, now you are in the valley of decision. God wants to help you make the right choices.

Surrender your whole life to God. Ask God to lead you to do His will in the Valley of Decision.

3. The Valley of Kidron = The Valley of Suffering. (Mark 14:32-38).

It is the valley on the east, outside the Golden Gate of Jerusalem. It is the valley between Jerusalem and the Mount of Olives. It is where Gethsemane is located, where Jesus prayed in anguish before His crucifixion. It is also called the Valley of Jehoshaphat. (Joel 3:12-16).

Question: What is the Valley of Kidron?

Answer: A cemetery is there. Samson is buried there. Samuel is buried there. James is buried there.

Absalom is buried there. A Muslim cemetery is there, thinking that will prevent Christ returning there.

This is the valley of suffering. Many of you are in this valley this morning. Our Lord Jesus Christ is in the valley of suffering with you. To some people, life is all a party, but it won't always be that way.

The day will come when you'll have problems, burdens, heartaches and valleys, many caused by you:

a) Mixing with the wrong crowd, **b)** Committing sins, **c)** Going your own way rather than God's way.

d) Marrying or living with an unbeliever. When the valleys come, the Lord Jesus Christ is with you.

Question: Are you in the valley of sin this morning? He is there.

Question: Are you in the valley of decision? He is there.

Question: Are you in the valley of suffering, heartache, tears and brokenness? He is there.

4. The Valley of Elah = The Valley of Battle. (I Samuel 17:1-4).

David met Goliath in the Valley of Elah.

Israel and David faced and fought Goliath and the Philistines in the Valley of Elah.

David slung a stone at Goliath, hit him in the forehead and killed him in the valley of Elah.

Israel gained a great victory over the Philistines in the valley of Elah.

This is the valley of battle. As well as God being in the valley of sin, decision, and suffering, He is also with you in the valley of life's battles.

Question: Are you facing some battle this morning? Is there some temptation you feel you cannot resist? God is there. "There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man:" I Cor.10:13.

Question: Do people make fun of you for being a Christian?

It can be a battle everyday. Lean on God. He is there in the valley of battle. Pray, read your Bible, be at church, continue in the battle for souls, keep trusting God to bring you through.

5. The Valley of Achor = The Valley of Discipline, Chastening for Unbelievers. (Joshua 7:24-26).

This is the valley where Achan was stoned to death for taking the accursed thing from Jericho.

God said to Israel; "Don't take anything in Jericho, it is accursed, it is dedicated to God."

Achan took gold, silver and coats. Sin came into the camp. The battle of Ai was lost because Israel tolerated sin in the camp unknowingly. God wants us to repent of our sinful habits.

Joshua called the people together, and cast lots to see who had sinned. The lot fell on Achan.

Israel stoned Achan to death as God commanded.

Application: When we sin, God must discipline us to keep us from deeper sin and trouble.

Even in the valley of discipline, God is with us. He disciplines us because He loves us. Hebrew 12:5-15

The Lord Jesus Christ is with us in the valley of Siddim (sin), Eschol (decision), Kidron (suffering),

Elah (battle), and in the valley of Achor (Chastening).

6. The Valley of Gehenna = The Valley of Death, (Jeremiah 19:5,6).

Gehenna is the burning garbage dump at the south end of Jerusalem just outside the wall.

Fire burned the garbage continually. Jesus described hell as burning Gehenna forever.

For those of you who die without Christ, this is called the valley of death. Christ will not be there.

If you have rejected Christ all your life, you will have your way and you'll go to a Christless eternity in the lake of fire pictured by Gehenna's burning garbage.

If you have received Christ as your Saviour, you'll have no fear of death, because Jesus will be with you in death as He has been with you in life.

If you suffer, He is there. If you are tempted, He is there. If you are in battle, He is there.

If you are in a decision, He is there. If you are in death, He is there (if you are saved).

7. The Valley of Jezreel/ Megiddo = The Valley of Armageddon. (Zechariah 12:10,11).

The armies of the world will gather here for the great end time battle.

The Lord Jesus shall descend from heaven at this valley. Zechariah 14:1-5.

From the day of your salvation and throughout eternity, the Lord Jesus Christ will be with you.

163. **The Lord Is My Shepherd.** Psalm 23:1-6; John 10:1-18,26-30.

Aim: To see how Jesus Christ, the Good Shepherd, cares for us.

I. **What is the relationship between a sheep and its Shepherd?**

- a) Eastern shepherds give names to their sheep, so that each sheep recognises his own name and comes when called. (John 10:1-5).
- b) A sheep is the most helpless of animals. He needs someone to lead him. We cannot defend ourselves from Satan without the Good Shepherd, Jesus Christ.
- c) If a sheep continually runs away, the shepherd gently breaks its leg. The shepherd will then carry the sheep everywhere till its leg heals. After this the sheep always stays close to the shepherd. This is why God disciplines us.
- d) A sheep needs a fold (a local church) for shelter overnight in order to be safe from the attacks of wild beasts (Satan). (John 10:1,7). The shepherd sleeps across the only doorway of the fold to guard the sheep.

II. **What Good Things Does Jesus Christ (our Good Shepherd) have for us?**

1. **Ownership:** The Lord is my Shepherd. (v.1). Jesus Christ is our:

- a) **Good Shepherd**, who gives His life for the sheep. (John 10:11).
- b) **Great Shepherd**, who rose from the dead. (Hebrew 13:20).
- c) **Chief Shepherd**, who is coming again to reward faithful shepherds with “crowns of glory.” I Peter 5:4
A Shepherd watches his sheep at all times. We should watch and care for each other. Proverbs 27:23.

2. **Provision:** I shall not want. (v.1). God will supply things needful for us. Psalm 34:10; 84:11.
What needs do you have? Take them to God in prayer. (Psalm 37:4).

3. **Rest:** He maketh me to lie down in green pastures. (v.2). It’s great to have a worry-free rest.
“Lie down” = rest in a peaceful life with God, free from sin and violence.
“in green pastures” = pleasant nourishing places.

4. **Refreshment:** He leadeth me beside still waters. (v.2). A saved person’s life can be a life of peace, stillness, quietness and comfort if we obey God’s Word. (Psalm 107:29).

5. **Restoration:** He restoreth my soul. (v.3). When your mind, emotions and willpower weaken, God restores us to peace, strength and blessings.

6. **Guidance:** He leadeth me in the paths of righteousness for His name’s sake. (v.3).

7. **Courage:** I will fear no evil (v.4). Why? Because of:

a) **Comfort:** For thou art with me. (Psalm 139:5).

b) **Protection:** Thy rod and thy staff they comfort me. (v.4). The rod was a heavy club shepherds carried to protect their sheep. If a wild animal approached, the shepherd hit the beast with the club.

c) **Rescue** from trouble: The staff was used to lift the sheep out of a hole or from bushes.

Question: What problems and fears do you have?

God can rescue you from trouble and protect you in trouble. This extends to the worst trouble possible: “though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil....”

8. **Preparation and Providence:** Thou preparest a table before me in the presence of mine enemies.

(v.5). Table prepared = a feast of blessing and rejoicing, even though people around us may be against us. Other tables are: a) Lord’s table, b) Table in the wilderness (Psalm 78:19), c) Marriage supper of the Lamb in heaven. (Psalm 78:72; Psalm 81:13-16).

9. **Honour:** Thou anointest my head with oil. (v.5).

Olive oil was used to anoint prophets, priests and Kings for service.

We are a “royal priesthood.” (I Peter 2:9). David was anointed King three times.

10. **Abundant Blessing:** My cup runneth over. (v.5).

“What shall I render unto the Lord for all his benefits towards me?” (Psalm 116:12).

Most of our countries blessings are due to our Christian past.

11. **Goodness and Mercy:** Surely goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life. (v.6).

Psalm 27:13,14; 31:19; 34:8. Goodness takes care of my steps. Mercy takes care of my stumbles.

12. **Fellowship:** I will dwell in the house of the Lord forever. (v.6). This tells us of the importance of church involvement. We will fellowship now and forever in heaven with God and believers.

164. What A Spiritual Man Does

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 3:1-8 ; Romans 8:1-9.

Aim: To become spiritual people, constantly controlled by the Holy Spirit in all we say, think and do.

Introduction: 3 kinds of people are **natural** (unsaved), **spiritual** (Godly Christian), and **carnal** (disobedient Christian) (I Cor.2:12-16). Which kind are you? **What actions describe a spiritual man?**

1. Compares spiritual things with spiritual things. I Corinthians 2:13.

He compares scripture in one part of the Bible with scriptures in other parts of the Bible to determine the context and the correct meaning of any passage. He does not take verses out of context as cults do

2. Discerns and judges all things. I Corinthians 2:14,15.

“He that is spiritual judgeth all things.” This verse teaches that we must judge all things as right or wrong. Tolerance of error is the doorway to all error. A common error today is that you can’t judge anything or anyone’s wrong behaviour. This comes from a misinterpretation of Matthew 7:1 which says: “Judge not that ye be not judged.” The correct understanding of this verse is that you can’t always correctly judge someone’s motives. Don’t judge based on human thinking, but on scripture.

“Do not ye **judge them that are within** (the church).” I Corinthians 5:12.

“Who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.” Hebrews 5:14.

3. Sows spiritual things. I Corinthians 9:11,12.

“If we have sown unto you spiritual things.” These spiritual things Paul sowed were preaching the gospel, Bible teaching, planting churches, making disciples, etc.

4. Acknowledges that Paul’s writings are the commandments of the Lord. I Corinthians 14:37.

We are under the New Covenant and the Laws of Christ, and not under the Old Mosaic Covenant.

5. Restores backsliders in a spirit of meekness. Galatians 6:1.

This is a hard thing for most Christians to do, due to fear of confrontation. A spiritual person bears one another’s burdens.

6. Sings Psalms and Hymns and spiritual songs. Ephesians 5:19.

A spiritual man will sing spiritual songs. A worldly, carnal or natural man will sing worldly songs.

7. Wrestles against spiritual wickedness in high places. Ephesians 6:10-18.

He does this as he **puts on the whole armour of God**. He also prays in the spirit and watches (v.18).

8. Seeks wisdom and spiritual understanding. Colossians 1:9.

A spiritual man seeks to understand all things of life from a spiritual, Biblical point of view. He asks, Why do things happen? He sees that things happen due to Bible truths being violated or obeyed.

9. Takes his place (as a brick) in a local church, pulling his weight as a brick supports a house wall.

(I Peter 2:5). This person works together with other believers, as a brick is locked in place with other bricks. He offers up spiritual sacrifices to God. Spiritual believers constantly sacrifice their time, effort, prayers and money to promote God’s work.

10. He a) Bridles his tongue.

b) **Visits** the fatherless and widows.

c) **Keeps himself unspotted from the world.** James 1:26,27.

The Spiritual man has these blessings in Romans 8:

i) **no condemnation** (v.1).

ii) **free** from the law of sin and death. (v.2).

iii) **fulfils** the righteousness of the law. (v.4).

iv) **minds** the things of the Spirit. (v.5).

v) lives a life of victory and **peace**. (v.6,13).

vi) calls God “**Father**.” (v.15).

vii) **suffers with Christ** now and will be glorified with Christ later. (v.17).

viii) **reckons** that this world’s sufferings are not worthy to be compared with heaven’s glory. (v.18).

ix) **groans within himself** at this world’s wickedness, waiting eagerly for heaven. (v.22,23).

x) **knows** that all things work together for good to them that love God. (v.28).

Conclusion. “To be spiritually minded is **life** and **peace**.” Romans 8:6. Are you spiritual, carnal or natural? Are you doing what a Spiritual man does?

165. "Son, Go Work Today In My Vineyard."

Bible reading: Matthew 21:28-32.

Aim: For every believer to go work TODAY in building up God's local churches.

Introduction: Jesus here spoke of a man who had two sons, both of whom he asked to go work today in my vineyard. One said, "Yes", and didn't go. The other said "No", and later changed his mind and decided to obey his dad.

The challenge for us today is "which group do you belong to?" Jesus Christ's first Century application was to the Pharisees who said, "Yes, I'll go, but didn't go", as the first group, and to the Publicans and harlots who said "No" but later obeyed as the second group.

Let's look at four parts to this message as it applies to us today:

Question: Which group are you in today?

1. **WHO?** "**SON**" (Matthew 21:28).

a) **Question:** Who was supposed to work in his vineyard?

Answer: Son. It doesn't say Experienced son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Trained son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Preacher son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Deacon son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Talented son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Healthy son, go work in my vineyard
It doesn't say Young son, go work in my vineyard
It just says "Son".

Question: Do you think that God is trying to tell us that all of His children are supposed to work in God's vineyard? The fact that He did not differentiate and did not describe a particular type of son.

He didn't say Extrovert son, go work in my vineyard

He didn't say Missionary son, go work in my vineyard

He didn't say Gifted son, go work in my vineyard.

He said SON, meaning everyone in this building who is a son of God, if you have received Christ as Saviour and have been born into God's family and your name is written in heaven, you are His son and you are supposed to go work in God's vineyard.

b) God said, "Son." This means that he was already His son before he worked.

God didn't say, "If you'll work in my vineyard, you'll become my son."

He said, "Son, go work in my vineyard." This teaches that works do not make a person God's son.

In John 1:12 God says, Receive Christ as Saviour and you become God's son.

Ephesians 2:8,9 says, "for by grace are ye saved ... not of works..."

Working for God has nothing to do with whether you go to heaven or not. It may affect what street you live in when you get there, or what kind of house you live in there, and what rewards you get, but first you must become God's son.

Titus 3:5 says, "not by works of righteousness which we have done..."

You're not saved when you believe in what you do for salvation, but in what He (the Lord Jesus Christ) has already done for you on Calvary.

2) **WHAT?** "**GO WORK**" (Matthew 21:28).

a) This is not a very popular subject. God's command to us is, "Son, Go Work".

He did not say, "Son, go sit in my vineyard and hear the vine dresser speak three times a week."

He did not say, "Go relax in my lounge," He said, "Go Work."

He did not say, "Go dabble in my work," He said, "Go Work."

He did not say, "Go worship in my sanctuary," He said, "Go Work."

He did not say, "Go have wonderful feelings," He said, "Go Work."

He did not say, "Go serve on my committee," He said, "Go Work."

He did not say, "Go criticise my people," He said, "Go Work."

You are not a good Christian because you go to church, hear a fellow talk, and sing a few songs.

This local church is only a fueling station, where you get energy, strength and courage to go out and work for God all week long. "Son, Go Work today in my vineyard."

•Now, here is the secret:

The secret is not eloquence, its work.

The secret is not courage, its work.

The secret is not talent, its work. **You'll fail** and fall flat on your face **unless you work**.

•The less this country works, the more miserable this country will be. You ought to enjoy working. You should like it and want to do it.

•There's nothing so out of place in this world as a Christian who won't "go work" for God. Nothing. You know why? Because God made you to "GO and WORK".

Ephesians 2:10 "For we are his workmanship created in Christ Jesus unto GOOD WORKS which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them."

•If you are **not going and working for God, you are not fulfilling the purpose of your creation.**

You may as well be a fish that refuses to swim, or a bird that refuses to fly, or a soloist who won't sing, or a dog who won't bark, or a carpenter who won't work with wood.

Like a fire with no glow,

Like a winter with no snow,

Like a river with no flow,

Like a conviction without a "NO."

Like an oar without a row,

Like a wind without a blow,

Like a scale without a doe,

Like a pitcher without a throw,

Like a harvest without a sow,

Like a trip without a go,

Like a kneader without dough,

Like a Santa without a Ho,

Like excess without overflow,

Like a foot without a toe,

Like a gardener without a hoe,

Like a cock without a crow,

Like a con without a pro,

Like a high without a low,

Like a truth without a know,

Like a fast without a slow,

Like a buck without a doe,

Like an actor without a show,

Like above without below,

Like a to without a fro,

Like violins without a bow,

Is a Christian who will not go. God give us Christians who work!

The Lord Jesus Christ said, "Son, go work today in my vineyard."

Go work, what are you doing for God?

Some people will say: "Preacher, when are you going to quit preaching about work?"

Answer: "Oh, probably at the rapture."

Question: Do you know what's wrong with churches in Australia?

Answer: We are spectators instead of participants.

God has not given us one written excuse not to work. You are supposed to work, every man, every woman and every child, go work today in my vineyard.

b) Let's look at some verses on WORK:

John 4:34 Jesus said unto them "My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work."

John 5:17 "but Jesus answered them, "My Father worketh hitherto and I work."" (work."

John 9:4 "I must work the work of him that sent me, while it is day, the night cometh when no man can

John 17:6 "I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do." Will you be able to say this to God?

Acts 13:2 Holy Spirit said, “Separate me Barnabas & Saul for the work whereunto I have called them”

Acts 14:26 “they had been recommended to the grace of God for the work which they fulfilled.”

Acts 15:38 Mark “departed from them from Pamphylia and went not with them to the work.”

I Corinthians 3:13 “Every man’s work should be made manifest...the fire shall try every man’s work of what sort it is. If any man’s work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

If any man’s work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss.” (I Cor 3:13-15).

1 Corinthians 9:1 “Are not ye my work in the Lord?”

1 Corinthians 15:58 “Therefore, my beloved brethren, be ye steadfast, unmoveable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, forasmuch as ye know that your labour is not in vain in the Lord.”

1 Corinthians 16:10 “Timotheus worketh the work of the Lord, as I also *do.*”

2 Corinthians 9:8 “ye, always having all sufficiency in all *things*, may abound to every good work.”

Galatians 6:4 “let every man prove his own work, and then shall he have rejoicing in himself alone,”

Ephesians 4:12 “For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the...”

Philippians 2:30 “Because for the work of Christ he was nigh unto death, not regarding his life...”

Colossians 1:10 “walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work.”

1 Thessalonians 1:3 “Remembering without ceasing your work of faith, and labour of love.”

1 Timothy 3:1 “This *is* a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work.”

1 Timothy 5:10 “Well reported of for good works; if she... have diligently followed every good work.”

2 Timothy 2:21 “If a man therefore purge himself he shall be prepared unto every good work.”

2 Timothy 4:5 “But watch thou in all things, endure afflictions, do the work of an evangelist, ...”

Titus 3:1 “Put them in mind tobe ready to every good work.”

Hebrews 6:10 “For God *is* not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love.”

Hebrews 13:21 “Make you perfect in every good work to do his will.”

James 1:25 “...a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.”

1 Peter 1:17 “Father,..judges according to every man’s work, pass the time of your sojourning in fear.”

Rev 22:12 “I come quickly;& my reward *is* with me, to give every man according as his work shall be”

2 Cor 6:1 “We, as workers together with him, beseech you that ye receive not the grace of God in vain”

3) WHEN? TODAY.

But you say “I worked yesterday.” Good, but God says you are supposed to work again today.

“But I am training to work tomorrow,” God says, “You’re supposed to work today.”

Every Bible college student has to go Soul Winning every week and fill out a report on how many visits he made and how many souls God used him to received Christ as Saviour.

At our Bible college, every student must go Soul Winning every week, or they send him home.

God didn’t say, “Work tomorrow when you get your degree.” He said: “Go work today in my vineyard”.

God didn’t say, “Son, when you grow up, work in my vineyard.” He said, “Son”. That means any saved 6 year old, 10 year old, 13 year old, 30-130 year old is supposed to work for God.

I am sick and fed up with the philosophy that says that there is one kind of Christianity for adults and another kind for teenagers. Go work TODAY.

Not when you are grown up but today.

Not when you have graduated but today.

Not when you are trained but today.

Not when you are an adult but today.

Not when you are older but today.

Not when you are young but today.

The reason for this is that the work needs to be done TODAY.

What about those people who’ll die while you’re wondering. You only have today.

Question: Do you know why some people are sad?

It’s because they have quit working for God and are looking at yesterday or tomorrow.

They say things like: “I remember when...” or “If only I could...”

This is the only sermon I know I’ll ever preach. Today is alive. Live for today.

SON, GO WORK TODAY IN MY VINEYARD.

There are many people who think that because they are children, they don't have to work for God. There are many who think that because they are old, that they don't have to work for God. Work when you are 16, 60, 80, 90 or even 100. I love to see old preachers who are 85 years old, still pounding the pulpit and preaching.

Illustration:

John Newton was so sinful that he sold the shoes of his own baby, took the money and bought liquor to drink for himself. Later he got saved and began to preach. (He is the author of Amazing Grace). When Newton got older he was too feeble to get up the pulpit stairs. He was helped up the stairs to the pulpit. Someone said to the aging Newton, "Don't you think you should give up preaching?" Newton replied: "What! Shall this old African blasphemer ever give up praising the grace of God? As long as there is breath in my body, never, never!" He worked until he died.

You say; "I'm going to get a bus route as soon as I..." That is too late, go work today.

Question: What Are You Doing Now For God?

I would love to make every believer realize that you have to face God someday at the Judgment Seat and give an account to God for what you have done and haven't done.

Dear friend, I love you. You have to face God and give an account for your laziness, indifference and complacency. Yes, you do. What are you doing for God?

- disciple making seminars in your homes with your friends.
- scripture classes in schools.
- bus route and visitation.
- teen Bible study.
- Nursing Home visitations and Soul Winning.

4) WHERE? IN MY VINEYARD.

Son (that's me).

Go work (that's what).

Today (that's when).

In my vineyard (that's where).

Question: What is God's vineyard?

Answer: In a local Church, among God's people, bearing fruit and helping others bear fruit.

Get Involved In Building Up Local Churches. If we all keep busy working for God, and if we keep our hearts right with God, then the fruit-bearing will take care of itself.

Question: What does it mean, "Go work in my vineyard?"

Answer: It means that I am not to criticise any of God's fruit bearing trees.

This means I am not to do anything that would hurt the testimony of the vineyard.

Question: What are you doing for this Church?

Illustration:

Can you imagine an employer who has a worker come to him for his weekly paycheck.

He asks him; "How many hours did you work?" He says; "None, but I didn't smoke." or

"I didn't work any hours but I didn't take a drink 40 hours this week."

Will the boss say; "Well, I'll pay you \$10 per hour for not drinking?"

Question: Did anybody here get paid for not drinking or not smoking?

Question: How many hours did you work this week?

"I didn't work any hours but I didn't beat my wife."

Answer: "OK, I'll pay you \$400 for not beating your wife."

Question: Do you think God is going to pay you for not beating your wife?

You get paid for what you **do** for God.

Question: What are you doing for God? You'll never find anything as sweet or as rewarding in your life as working in God's vineyard. Get something to do for God this year and do it with your might.

166. THE FEAR OF GOD

Bible Reading: Psalm 34:11; Jonah 1:9,10.

Aim: To fear God so that we will always make those decisions that please God.

Introduction: When God describes unbelievers in Romans chapter 3, one thing He says of their life of sin is that “there is no fear of God before their eyes.” Romans 3:18.

Unbelievers don’t care about God or others, they mainly care about themselves. They have not yet discovered that God judges their sins in this life and will judge their sins in the next life. They don’t think that they’ll be cast into the lake of fire, nor do they appreciate the horrors of hell, nor the statement, “it is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.”

Question: Do you truly fear God?

Question: What does it mean to fear God?

Question: What will we do if we fear God?

Question: What benefits come to us by fearing God?

Question: Who are some Bible characters that feared God?

I. Kinds of Fear

Question: What does it mean to fear God? The Bible uses the word “Fear” in 7 ways:

1. Holy Fear = Love and respect for the majesty and holiness of God.

In Genesis 20:11, Abraham said, “because I thought, surely the fear of God is not in this place; and they will slay me for my wife’s sake.”

“Then had the churches rest throughout all Judea, Galilee and Samaria, and were edified and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost were multiplied.” Acts 9:31.

“Come ye children, hearken unto me: I will teach you the fear of the Lord.” Psalm 34:11.

David speaks of this fear as clean and pure. (Psalm 19:9).

The Fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. (Proverbs 1:7; Psalm 111:10).

The Fear of the Lord enables man to:

- a) respect God’s authority (Revelation 14:9),
- b) obey God’s commandments,
- c) turn from evil (Jonah 1:9), and
- d) pursue true holiness (2 Corinthians 7:1; Philippians 2:12).

The believer has this fear of God which is defined as “the proper reverence of a child of God for his Heavenly Father (2 Corinthians 6:17 – 7:1) so that we obey God because we:

- **love** Him for who He is,
- **obey** Him because He is good and His plans are best for us, and
- **respect** Him because of His power to correct and discipline us.”

2. Fear of Unforgiven Sin.

Caused by the work of the law written on unbelievers hearts. This is fear of the guilt of sin.

“which show the work of the law written on their hearts.” (Romans 2:15). Examples include:

- a) Adam’s fear of unforgiven sin when he sinned. (Genesis 3:10).
- b) Felix’s fear of unforgiven sin as he heard Paul preach. (Acts 24:25).
- c) Men who reject the preaching of the Gospel: “A certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation which shall devour the adversaries.” (Hebrews 10:27-31).

3. Fear of Judgment at Christ’s Second Coming.

The wicked will have a fear and terror of God’s judgment at Christ’s Second Coming.

“After three and a half days the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them.” Revelation 11:11.

“They shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.” Isaiah 2:19.

God places a fear of His people in their enemies to protect Israel:

- a) When God smote one million soldiers who attacked Israel during King Asa’s reign (951 BC), the fear of God came upon them. 2 Chronicles 14:14.

b) When a large army from Ammon, Moab and Mt Seir (Jordan) invaded Israel during King Jehoshaphat's reign (896BC), God smote the invaders, and "The **fear of God** was in all the kingdoms of those countries when they heard that the LORD fought against the enemies of Israel." 2 Chron 20:29

c) 'The land of Judah shall be a terror unto Egypt, every one that maketh mention thereof shall be **afraid** in himself.' (Isaiah 9:17). Fear is Egypt's response after losing 4 wars to Israel.

4. Fear of Man. Two kinds are:

a) **Proper respect for those in authority.**

i) **Fear** to whom **fear** is due. He beareth not the sword in vain. Romans 13:4,7.

ii) Servants (employees) be subject to your masters with all **fear**. 1 Peter 2:18.

b) **Senseless dread of man.**

Israel was told not to **fear** the Canaanites, but to go and conquer the land. Numbers 14:9.

5. Cowardice and Timidness.

"God has not given us a spirit of **fear**; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind." II Timothy 1:7.

"Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be **afraid**." John 14:27.

"The **fearful**, and unbelieving.." Revelation 21:8. This is people afraid of receiving Christ as Saviour. Jesus said to the disciples in the storm on the Sea of Galilee: "Why are ye **so fearful**? How is it that ye have no faith?" Mark 4:40.

6. Fear of the Unknown.

"Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things that are coming on the earth."

Luke 21:26. Other examples are the fear of ghosts, or of scary things. (Job 4:14-16).

7. Fear for others and the danger in which they stand.

"I was with you in weakness, and in **fear**, and in much trembling." 1 Corinthians 2:3.

"But I **fear** lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ." 2 Corinthians 11:3.

II. People Who Feared The Lord

1) **Godly women fear** the Lord. Proverbs 31:30.

2) **Jonah** said to the sailors: "I **fear** the LORD, the God of heaven, which hath made the sea" Jonah 1:9

3) **Joseph** said to his brothers: "I fear God". Genesis 42:18.

4) **Job** was described by Satan to God as: "Doth Job **fear** God for naught?" Job 1:9.

5) **Repentant thief** on the Cross said to the other thief, "Dost not thou **fear** God?" Luke 23:40.

6) **Obadiah** said to Elijah: "I, thy servant **fear** the Lord from my youth." I Kings 18:3,12.

7) **One of the priests** taught the people of Bethel how they should **fear** the Lord. 2 King 17:28,41.

8) **Abraham** was told by the angel at Moriah: "Now I know that thou **fearest** God." Genesis 22:12.

III. What People Will Do Who Fear God

1) "**Serve the Lord** with fear." Psalm 2:11.

2) "Blessed is everyone that feareth the Lord; that **walketh in his ways**." Psalm 128:1.

3) "They that **feared** the Lord **spake often one to another**: and the Lord hearkened, and heard it, and a **book of remembrance** was written before him for them that **feared** the Lord, and that thought upon his name." Malachi 3:16.

4) "Ye that fear the Lord **give audience**." Acts 13:16. FTL = listen to preaching of God's Word.

5) "**Perfecting holiness** in the fear of God." FTL= grow in holiness and love for God. 2 Cor.7:1.

6) Husband and wife will **submit themselves one to another** in the fear of God. Ephesians 5:21.

7) **Work out your own salvation** with fear and trembling (Philippian 2:12), because we'll have to give account of our service to God. This means to work out the details of how to live and serve God.

IV. Benefits and Blessings of Fearing God

1) Psalm 15:4 "He **honours** them that fear the Lord."

2) Psalm 25:12 "Him shall he **teach in the way** that he shall choose."

3) Psalm 25:14 "The **secret of the Lord is with them** that fear Him."

4) Psalm 31:19 "How **great is thy goodness** laid up for them that fear thee."

5) Psalm 33:18 "The **eye of the Lord is on them** that fear him."

6) Psalm 34:7 "The **angel of the Lord encampeth round about** them that fear Him & delivers them."

7) Psalm 34:9 "There is **no want** to them that fear Him."

- 8) Psalm 34:11 “I will **teach** you the fear of the Lord.”
- 9) Psalm 85:9 “His **salvation is near them** that fear him.”
- 10) Psalm 103:11 “So great is His **mercy toward them** that fear Him.”
- 11) Psalm 111:10 “The fear of the Lord is the **beginning of wisdom**.”
- 12) Psalm 112:1,2 “**His seed shall be mighty** upon earth.”
- 13) Psalm 115:13 “He will **bless them** that fear the Lord.”
- 14) Psalm 119:63 “I am a **companion** of all them that fear thee.”
- 15) Psalm 119:74 “They that fear thee will be **glad when they see me**.”
- 16) Psalm 147:11 “The **Lord taketh pleasure** in them that fear him.”
- 17) Proverbs 8:13 “The fear of the Lord to **hate evil**.”
- 18) Proverbs 10:27 “The fear of the Lord **prolongeth days**.”
- 19) Proverbs 14:2 “In the fear of the Lord is **strong confidence**.”
- 20) Proverbs 14:27 “The fear of the Lord is a **fountain of life**, to depart from the snares of death.”
- 21) Proverbs 16:6 “By the fear of the Lord **men depart from evil**.”
- 22) Proverbs 19:23 “The fear of the Lord **tendeth to life**.”
- 23) Proverbs 22:4 “By humility and the fear of the Lord are **riches, honour and life**.”

Conclusion: “Be thou in the fear of the Lord all the day long.” Proverbs 23:17.

167. WE OUGHT TO

Bible Reading: Acts 10:1-6.

Aim: To see what God says we ought to do. To tell people what they ought to do.

Memory Verse: “He shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do.” Acts 10:6.

Introduction: The angel who appeared to Cornelius told him that if he wanted further information as to the purpose of his call, he should send for Peter (v.5) who “shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do.”

Definition: “OUGHT” = our duty, the rightness of something, the advisability of some action, our moral obligation.

- a) The problem with many people today is that they overlook their duty and moral obligation to God. Instead, they do whatever they feel like doing.
- b) Another problem is that many parents when they see their children going astray are too afraid to do what Peter did and “tell them what they ought to do.”

I. Notice Some Things about Peter telling Cornelius what he ought to do.

1) The angel could not tell Cornelius the gospel, so he directed Cornelius to a man who would clearly tell him what he ought to do.

Lesson: Angels know who the best soul winners are. They direct people to good soul winners.

2) Peter was willing to tell people what they needed to hear even if they didn’t like it. Peter was not afraid of what they thought about him. He was more concerned about what God thought of him.

“We ought to obey God rather than men.” Acts 5:29.

- i) He told 3000 Jews on the Day of Pentecost what they ought to do in Acts 2:14-40.
- ii) He told the crowd gathered at the Beautiful Gate of the Temple what they ought to do after the lame man was healed in Acts 3:12-26.
- iii) He told Annas the High Priest and Caiaphas what they ought to do in Acts 4:5-12,19-20.
- iv) He told Ananias and Sapphira what they ought to do in Acts 5:1-10.
- v) He told the Sanhedrin what they ought to do in Acts 5:29-33.

Lesson: We need to get into the habit of telling people what they ought to do to please God. Don’t be afraid, but speak the truth in love, especially parents must tell their children what they ought to do.

II. What Other Things Ought We To Do?

1) Men ought always to pray and not to faint. (Luke 18:1).

We must always maintain a spirit of prayer. We must always be in a proper frame of mind to pray to God for things needful. Though our prayers go long unanswered, we should persevere and not grow weary in praying to God.

- 2) “We **ought to obey God** rather than men.” (Acts 5:29). We should not seek to please men but to please God. “If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.” Galatians 1:10. The trouble is that this world is seeking to please the wrong crowd, such as the bad peer group, their own lustful pleasures, and their children, rather than pleasing God. Do you seek to please God or men?
- 3) “so labouring **ye ought to support the weak**, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.” (Acts 20:35). We should go to work to earn money so we can provide for the needs of sick, feeble and suffering Christians, who are unable to work for themselves, such as Christians in Africa.
Lesson: Many Christians work only to accumulate a lot of wealth for themselves, but we ought to work to bless and help others who cannot work (see Romans 15:1).
- 4) “Pray that I may **speak boldly**, as I **ought** to speak.” (Ephesians 6:20). Boldly = openly, plainly, and without fear. Paul felt that the gospel ought always to be spoken plainly, without fear of men. Learn to speak the gospel boldly because it is our duty to speak it. Come doorknocking and open air soul winning.
- 5) “as ye have received of us how ye **ought to walk** and to **please God**.” (I Thessalonians 4:1).
 Ye should abstain from fornication. (v.3).
 Ye study to be quiet and do your own business and work with your own hands. (v.11).
 Ye may walk honestly toward them that are without.”
 Ephesians 4,5,6 show us how we ought to walk worthy of Christ, and how we should live. Life is often represented as a journey. (Romans 6:4 “we should walk in newness of life”).
- 6) “For yourselves know how ye **ought to follow us**.” (2 Thessalonians 3:7). We should imitate the apostles example of love, self sacrifice, soul-winning, and hard work for Christ and for others.
- 7) “We **ought to give the more earnest heed** to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip.” (Hebrews 2:1).
 More earnest heed = more strict attention.
 To the things we’ve heard = from the apostles, or from Godly Bible preaching.
 Lest at any time we should let them slip = never forget them, never be indifferent to them. Cares of this world, dullness of mind or a cold heart may render us indifferent to them. These key Bible truths which we used to hold dearly can pass out of our minds without concern. Paul says that this ought never to be done. These truths should always be important to us.
- 8) “For when for the time ye **ought to be teachers**.” (Hebrews 5:12).
 Believers ought to be able to teach others the gospel, basic Christian truths, Christ’s Second Coming and to refute false doctrines. We should be able to teach children, friends, new converts and disciples.
- 9) Ye **ought to say, If the Lord will**, we shall live, and do this, or that. (James 4:15).
- 10) We **ought to lay down our lives for the brethren**. (I John 3:16).
- 11) We **ought to love one another**. (I John 4:11).
- 12) We must know how we **ought to behave ourselves in the house of God**. (I Timothy 3:15).
 This means that we should: a) Come to church on or before time. Don’t be late.
 b) Listen carefully to the preaching. Take notes in a notebook so you can teach it to others.
 c) Sing heartily to the Lord. (Ephesians 5:19).
 d) Don’t disturb others by talking, but behave properly in God’s house.
 e) Give your tithes and offerings to further God’s work.
 f) Don’t rush away afterwards, but stay for a while to encourage others (Hebrews 10:24,25).
 g) **Notice** and befriend newcomers. **Sit next to them**. **Introduce them** to others who might become good friends with them. **Ask** them if they are 100% sure of going to heaven and if not then lead them to Christ. **Invite** newcomers to lunch after church. Become their friend. **Ask** them if you can have a Bible study with them that week. **Invite** them to come soul-winning with you Sunday afternoon. **Pray** before the service that God will bless the meeting and teach you something needful in the message. **Pray** that God will build the church and that He will use you to bless others. **Be thankful** to God and others, and not critical. “Enter His gates with thanksgiving and into his courts with praise.” Psalm 100:4.
- 13) “Ye **pay tithes**...and have omitted the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy and faith: these **ought** ye to have done, and not to have left the other undone.” (Matthew 23:23).

168. MAKING RIGHT CHOICES

Bible Reading: Luke 10:38-42.

Aim: To make the right choices that God wants us to make. To see what God wants us to choose.

Introduction: Tell the story of Mary and Martha in Luke 10:38-42.

Every day of our life, we are making choices. Some are small and some are major. Some have little consequences and some have big consequences. If we choose to go soul winning or not go soul winning will have big consequences for those who get saved. We must get into the habit early in life of making choices that God wants us to make. Some Christians never think about what choices God wants them to make. They only choose what they feel like doing.

Question: What choices should you make in life? Are you making these choices?

1. Choose Life. Deuteronomy 30:15,19.

The first choice all people must make is to choose Jesus Christ to be their Saviour and hence to choose the gift of eternal life. "He that has the Son has life." I John 5:12. God sets before each one of us the choice between life and good on one hand, and death, evil and hell on the other hand.

Question: Have you chosen life and good, or death and evil? Choosing Jesus Christ is laying the only true foundation for life.

2. Choose Today Whom You Will Serve. Joshua 24:15.

After salvation, comes service. We are saved to serve God and others.

"If any man serve me, him will my Father honour." John 12:26.

"Let ...he that is chief, (be) as he that doth serve." Luke 22:26.

"His servants shall serve Him." Revelation 22:3. Service here leads to service in heaven.

"Henceforth we should not serve sin." Romans 6:6.

Question: How should we serve? a) "We should serve in newness of spirit." Romans 7:6.

b) "Serve the Lord with gladness." Psalm 100:2.

c) "Serve him (God) with a perfect heart and willing mind." I Chronicles 28:9.

d) "By love serve one another." Galatians 5:13.

Question: Have you chosen to serve God daily and faithfully?

Choose to serve God TODAY, not TOMORROW, and not when you feel like it.

3. Choose to sit at Jesus' feet, and to hear His Word. Luke 10:38-42.

v.38 The certain village that Jesus entered was Bethany (John 11:1) on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives. Martha received Jesus into her house with kindness and hospitality. Martha may have been a widow and her brother Lazarus and younger sister Mary lived with her. Martha may have owned the house. Having responsibility of the house shows why she was busy with household duties. (v.39).

Mary sat at Jesus' feet and heard His Word. "Sitting at Jesus' feet" was the ancient posture of disciples and learners. This meant that Mary was a disciple of Jesus, that she listened attentively to Him and was keen to learn His doctrines. "Sitting at the feet of Jesus" meant to sit in a humble place to learn and study His Word. (Paul sat at the feet of Gamaliel. Acts 22:3).

Question: Are you sitting at Jesus' feet, learning all you can in order to best serve Him & teach others?

v.40 "Martha was cumbered about much serving." Martha was distracted with the cares of the family and with entertaining Jesus. The only fault she was charged with was too earnest a desire to entertain Jesus when she might have sat at Jesus' feet learning His Word.

It was an insult to Jesus to value food preparation more than Jesus teaching. Martha wrongly reproved Jesus, as if He encouraged Mary to neglect her household duties.

Mary saw that she had higher duties at that time. Martha hinted to Jesus her need of Mary to assist, and requested Jesus to send Mary to help her.

v.41 "Martha, Martha, thou art careful and troubled about many things."

Martha was disturbed and distracted with secondary household duties when she should have chosen to hear the God of Heaven teach His Word with heavenly wisdom. What a wonderful opportunity to hear Jesus preach and teach. Why miss it for a few dishes and biscuits?

v.42 "But one thing is needful and Mary hath chosen that good part, which shall not be taken away from her." Bible teaching and attention to Christ is our chief need. Other things are less important.

Understanding God's Word must be secured first, then all other things will follow.

Note: It is important to learn God's Word in our youth and how to use it to teach others.

"That good part" = interest in Christ's doctrine. Mary had chosen to give up her time and affections to Christ to learn His ways. From this we learn that:

- i) The cares of life are dangerous and may easily distract us from learning Christ's Word, even when those cares seem most lawful and commendable.
No worldly thing could have been more proper than to provide for Jesus and to supply His wants. Yet because it too greatly occupied her mind, the Lord Jesus gently reproved her. So a care for our families may be the means of neglecting our walk with Christ.
- ii) It is more important to learn Jesus' Word than to be engaged in the affairs of the world.
- iii) There are times when it is right to stop worldly employments and attend to the affairs of the soul.
Examples are church on Sundays, go to Bible College, the mission field, or to study God's Word.
- iv) If attention to Christ is omitted at the proper time, it will always be omitted at other times.
If Mary had neglected to hear Jesus then, she might never have heard Him.
She seized the opportunity to hear Jesus. Martha did not appreciate the opportunity.
- v) Godliness and learning God's Word, are the chief things. All earthly gain we must leave behind.
Only God's Word and souls will last forever. There is a Judgment Seat of Christ. There is Heaven. There is a Hell. We must prepare for them. All that is needed to prepare us to die and make us happy forever is to be saved and to learn and obey God's Word.
- vi) Godliness is the chief ornament of a female. It sweetens every other virtue.
It gives new loveliness to the mildness and grace of female character.
- Nothing is more lovely than a lady sitting at the feet of Jesus, like Mary.
- Nothing is more unlovely of a lady than her entire absorption in worldly affairs as Martha.

The most lovely female is she who is most like Jesus.

The least lovely female is she who neglects her soul, who is proud, thoughtless, envious, angry, worldly and unlike the meek and lowly Lord Jesus.

At Jesus' feet is peace, purity of life and joy. Everywhere else, an alluring and wicked world steals our affections and makes us worldly, self absorbed and uncommitted to Christ.

4. Choose a Good Name.

"A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches." Proverbs 22:1.

Many people today choose great riches instead of a good name.

Question: How do we choose a good name?

Answer: "Let not mercy and truth forsake thee...

so shalt thou find favour and good understanding in the sight of God and man." Proverbs 3:3,4.

If we show mercy and truth always, we will find favour with God and man.

Having a good name (ie: an honourable reputation) because of good character, is to be valued far above having much wealth. Riches are bad if gaining them ruins one's character.

5. Choose the Fear of the Lord. "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom." Proverbs 1:7.

"They hated knowledge and did not choose the fear of the Lord." Proverbs 1:29.

Fear of the Lord = awe and respect for the majesty and holiness of God.

Fear of the Lord enables man to:

- a) Respect God's authority. Revelation 14:9.
- b) Obey God's Commandments.
- c) Turn from evil (Jonah 1:9).
- d) Pursue true holiness (2 Corinthians 7:1).

We fear and obey God because we:

- a) Love Him for Who He is, our Creator and our Saviour.
- b) Obey Him because He is good and His plans are best for us.
- c) Respect Him because of His power to correct and discipline us.

Question: Do you choose to fear God? If we fear God we will: 1) Read our Bible daily, 2) Pray daily, 3) Be committed to building our Church, 4) Go Soul Winning, 5) Train others.

6. Choose to **Suffer Affliction** with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season. Hebrews 11:25. Moses saw that if he cast his lot with the Israelites, he must expect trials. Moses chose to sacrifice the comforts and honour of Pharaoh's court to help **deliver** the people of God. **Question:** Will you choose to support, help and bless God's people rather than seeking worldly honour?
- i) There is some pleasure in sin, but it is only for a season. Pleasure = excitement, amusement.
 - ii) The eternal wealth and glory of serving Christ are more to be chosen than the temporary, passing pleasures of sin and the world. Which will you choose?
7. Choose the **Things that Pleased God**, Isaiah 56:4.
8. Choose the **Way of Truth**. Psalm 119:30.
9. Choose God's **Precepts**. Psalm 119:173.
10. Choose the **Good and Refuse the Evil**. Isaiah 7:15,16.

169. **THE TWO RESURRECTIONS** are like the Jewish harvest.

1. i) The **Firstfruits** = Christ and some Old Testament Saints rose (33AD). (Matthew 27:50-53).
 - ii) The **Harvest** = The Rapture at **Christ's return**. (I Thess. 4:16,17; I Cor. 15:51-54).
 - iii) The **Gleanings** = Tribulation Saints resurrected at the **end of the Tribulation**. (Rev. 20:4,5,6).
2. The **Tares** = Unbelievers raised at the **end of Millennium**. Matthew 13:24-30, 36-43.
- Notice 3 groups in I Corinthians 15:22-25,
- i) Christ the firstfruits.
 - ii) They that are Christ's at His Coming.
 - iii) Then cometh the end (Revelation 20:11-13).

I. **There are 2 classes of God's people at the rapture:**

1. **Corruptible** = those who are **dead** and their bodies are in the grave.
2. **Mortal** = those who are **living**, but liable to death. I Corinthians 15:53. Paul quotes Isaiah 25:8 describing the glory of the Kingdom Age when "death is swallowed up in victory."

At the Rapture:

1. The **mortal** (living) will say to death: "Oh **death**, where is thy sting." I Corinthians 15:55.
2. The **corruptible** as they rise from the grave will shout: "O grave, where is thy victory?"

II. **Question:** With what body do they come? (I Corinthians 15:35).

Answer: Paul uses 3 illustrations to describe the nature of believers' resurrection body:

- i) From **Botany** – **seedtime** and **harvest**. (v.37,38). Our old body is like a seed that must first die, and then sprout in order to bear grain.
- ii) From **Biology** – 4 different kinds of flesh are **men**, **beasts**, **fishes** and **birds** (v.39). God has fitted each to its own environment. So our new resurrection body will be perfectly fitted to our new everlasting environment.
- iii) From **Astronomy** – there are different glories of **earthly** bodies (terrestrial, like our bodies now) and **celestial** bodies (heavenly bodies like the sun, moon, and stars) which will be like our resurrection bodies later in the resurrection. As one star differs from another star in glory, so will our future resurrection bodies differ in glory (v.40-44). **Encouragement** (Be steadfast, v.58)

III. **Mid Tribulation Objection:**

Question: Is the **last trumpet** of I Cor.15:52 the same as the **seventh trumpet** of Revelation 11:15?

Question: What is meant by the "last trumpet"? Amillennialists try to use this to refute Premillennialism. This idea is wrong for these reasons:

- i) The trumpets of Revelation are sounded by **angels**.
The trumpet at the Rapture is the trumpet of **God the Son** (I Thessalonians 4:16).
- ii) The trumpets of Revelation are all related to God's **judgment** on sin and unbelief.
The trumpet of I Thess. 4:16 and I Cor. 15:52 is a **gracious call** to the saved to **rise**.
- iii) The **7th trumpet** of Revelation 11:15 is **not the last trumpet of scripture**.
In Matthew 24:31, the elect will be gathered at Christ's glorious return after Armageddon, "with a great sound of a trumpet" to establish His earthly Kingdom.
The **last trump** of God for the **church** will be the **call to go to be with the Lord**. (I Cor. 15:52).

170. THREE TREES ISRAEL IS LIKE

Aim: Lost opportunities and lost blessings come through wrong thinking & unbelief (Romans 11:1-36).

1. VINE represents Israel's Past (Romans 9: Before Christ) = Israel Elected.

"The vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the house of Israel." Isaiah 5:7.

- i) **Psalm 80:8-16.** "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt: thou hast cast out the heathen, and planted it. She sent out her boughs unto the sea (Mediterranean), and her branches to the river (Euphrates)." God transplanted Israel from Egypt to Canaan, giving them all the land from the river of Egypt (Wadi el-Arish) to the Euphrates River (Deut.11:24; Joshua 1:4). Israel didn't value this great start. As a result they lost these privileges and experienced judgment (v.12-16). **Key:** We must appreciate our privileges or we may lose them.
- ii) **Isaiah 5:1-7.** God was greatly disappointed when He looked for Israel to bring forth grapes proportionate to her privileges, but found them to be wild grapes.
Lesson: God does all He can to help our Christian growth. Let us cooperate with God in getting a real hunger for Bible knowledge, Christian service and spiritual growth.
- iii) **Jeremiah 2:21.** Blessings may be lost. We may start our Christian life being noble (as Israel did). If we forsake the right way, we may become degenerate and become a castaway (1 Cor 9:27). God disciplined Israel for its sin by: **a)** taking away the hedge, **b)** breaking down the wall, **c)** laying it waste, **d)** hedging her way with thorns and briars, and **e)** withholding rain.
- iv) **Ezekiel 15:1-8. Vision of the burning vine.**
Israel has passed through the fires of persecution over the last 2600 years. As she is not bearing fruit, she is only fit for fuel. Only the stem is burnt. The root is still alive. The vine will spring up in the Millennium as Romans 11:1-5,25-29 and Hosea 3:4,5 state.
- v) **Matthew 21:33-41.** The **Parable of the Vineyard** reveals why the keepers of the vineyard (the Jewish nation), have been cast out of the vineyard (land of Israel). It was because they took the Heir (Jesus Christ) and crucified Him. They were cast out of the vineyard and it has been let to other husbandmen, the Church, to bring forth spiritual fruit.
Lesson: If you drop out, God may raise up someone else to enjoy your blessings and future successful ministry. When people get angry and leave a good church for no valid reason, God brings others in to take their place and do the work God had for them.

2. FIG TREE represents Israel Present (Romans 10: from Christ to the Present) = Israel Rejected.

- vi) **Matthew 24:32-35.** Fig trees which have retained their leaves throughout winter usually have some of last years figs. Jesus seeing leaves on the tree, expected to find some of last years fruit. When He found none, He cursed the tree for its deceptive character. Because of Israel's "leafy profession," Jesus expected to find spiritual fruit on the tree of their national life. When He found none, He cursed them for their hypocrisy (Matthew 23:1-33).
Lesson: Let us show the fruit of being a Christian.
- vii) **Luke 13:6-9. Parable of the barren fig tree.**
Jesus came to His vineyard and for 3 years of His ministry found no fruit. God the Father decided to cut down the tree, but Christ interceded for it and judgment was postponed for 40 years, until Titus, God's axeman in 70AD cut down the Fig tree of Israel, casting it out of the vineyard and into the field of the world. (Luke 3:7-9; Matthew 3:7-10). Before Christ's return, the Fig tree will spring from the root. It will bear leaves before it bears fruit, meaning that Israel will be revived nationally before she is converted to Christ. Joel 1:6,7 calls Israel "my fig tree".
- viii) In **Matthew 24:3** Jesus' disciples asked Him **two questions:**
 - a) **When** shall these things be? (Destruction of the Temple). This was answered in Luke 21:20-24
 - b) **What** shall be the sign of thy coming? Jesus gave 4 main signs in Matthew 24:4-33, which are:
 - Widespread **Deception**. "Take heed that no man deceive you." (v.4,11,24).
 - The **Abomination of Desolation** standing in the holy place of Israel's rebuilt temple (v.15).
 - The **"Sign of the Son of Man"** which is a **cloud** (v.30), like the cloud at His ascension. Acts 1:9
 - The **"Fig Tree sign"** (v.32,33), Israel's regathering to their ancient homeland.(Ezek 6:24,25).**Lesson:** God uses the ungodly as instruments of judgment. God has a future for Israel.

3. **OLIVE TREE** represents **Israel Future (Romans 11)** = Israel **Restored**.

ix) **Jeremiah 11:16,17**. Israel is called a green olive tree, fair and of goodly fruit. God warns that because of its idolatry, its branches shall be broken off. This was fulfilled by Nebuchadnezzar destroying Jerusalem in 606 BC and 586 BC.

x) **Romans 11:17-27. Parable of the two olive trees.**

a) The **good olive tree** represents **Israel**.

b) The **wild olive tree** represents **saved Gentiles** in the **Church**.

c) The **root** of the good olive tree represents **Abraham, Isaac** and **Jacob**, picturing God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. (The **Trinity** who established the nation of Israel).

d) The **Olive tree** represents the **light of the testimony of God in the world**, because olive oil was used for lighting lamps.

-- The **Church** holds the light of Gospel testimony **today**.

-- The **144,000 Jews** will hold the light of Gospel testimony in the **Tribulation**.

-- The **Jewish nation** will hold it during the **Millennium**.

The olive tree symbolizes **Israel's Bible-teaching privileges** and divine testimony privileges.

While Israel and the Church are compared to **trees**, their oppressors, the Gentile nations are compared to **wild beasts** (Daniel 7:1-28).

Conclusion: Will you stay **in** or **out** of the place of blessing? Will you stay faithful to God and be blessed, or will you backslide and become a castaway (disapproved)? (I Corinthians 9:27). Israel is called "God's peculiar treasure" in Exodus 19:5; Psalm 135:4 and Deuteronomy 14:2. When Christ returns, His Kingdom will be manifested in the Millennium, and God's treasure Israel, buried in the field of the nations for 2000 years, will then be on display. (Matthew 13:44).

a) Treasure **found** = Israel at Christ's **first coming**.

b) Treasure **purchased** = Israel's sins paid for at Christ's **death**.

c) Treasure **hidden again** = Israel scattered in the world during the **Church Age**.

d) Treasure **uncovered** = Israel revealed as the chief nation at Christ's **return**.

We may summarize: a) **Vine** = Israel Divinely **electd**. Deuteronomy 7:6.

b) **Fig Tree** = Israel Divinely **relected**. Romans 11:7.

c) **Olive Tree** = Israel Divinely **restored**. Romans 11:1.

171. **PURITY**. I Timothy 5:22; Jude 18,19.

I. **Three enemies of purity**: World (I John 2:15-17), Flesh (Jeremiah 17:9), Devil (I Peter 5:8). Satan seeks to wreck our lives by impurity.

II. **Why Purity?**

1. One must be pure to enter heaven. Matthew 5:8, Psalm 24:3,4; I Corinthians 6:9,10.

2. Purity enables us to avoid judgment. 2 Peter 2:6; Ecclesiastes 11:9.

3. Purity enables us to avoid defilement. I Corinthians 6:18.

4. Purity is the best way to enjoy life. Hebrews 13:4.

III. **How to be pure?** Yield yourselves to God. Watch your:

a) Thoughts: Genesis 6:5; Proverbs 23:7;

b) Eyes: Matthew 5:28;

c) Ears: Mark 4:24 "Take heed what you hear."

d) Tongue: Matthew 12:36,37; Psalm 34:13.

IV. **Rewards of Purity**. Philippians 4:8.

1. God's best blessings.

2. Trustworthy and dependable. Proverbs 31:10,11.

3. Clear conscience. Romans 14:22; Psalm 51.

4. Good understanding of people's character. Sin blinds and distorts values because people justify their sin. 2 Corinthians 4:4.

5. Provides more opportunity for leadership & service."A bishop must be blameless" I Timothy 3:2,3

6. Physical, mental and spiritual strength. Galatians 6:7,8.

Conclusion: Will you choose purity of mind, rather than corruption in the world by lust? 2 Peter 1:4

172. TAKE HEED or IGNORE? What are we are told to take heed to?

Introduction: One of our greatest faults is that we ignore many important things.

Aim: To alert us to key issues that we should be taking heed to. Are you taking heed to these?

- 1) **My ways.** “I will take heed to my ways that I sin not with my tongue.” Psalm 39:1.
- 2) **Deception.** “Take heed that no man deceive you.” Matthew 24:4.
- 3) **False doctrine.** “Take heed and beware of the leaven of the Pharisees ..doctrine.” Matthew 16:6-12.
- 4) **Temptation.** “Take ye heed, watch and pray...., lest ye enter into temptation.” Mark 18:33; 14:38.
- 5) **Hear.** “Take heed therefore how ye hear.” Luke 8:18.
- 6) **Light.** “Take heed therefore that the light which is in thee be not darkness.” Luke 11:35.
- 7) **Covetousness.** “Take heed, and beware of covetousness....” Luke 12:15.
- 8) **Cares of life.** “Take heed to yourselves lest at anytime your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting (overfeeding), drunkenness and cares of this life...so that day come upon you unawares.” Luke 21:34.
- 9) **Yourselves** and to **all the flock.** “Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock to feed the church of God.” Acts 20:28.
- 10) **Build.** “But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon.” I Corinthians 3:10.
- 11) **Liberty.** “But take heed lest by any means this liberty of your’s become a stumbling block to them that are weak.” I Corinthians 8:9.
- 12) **Fall.** “Wherefore let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.” I Corinthians 10:12.
- 13) **Consumed** (destroyed, 355). “But if ye bite and devour one another, take heed that ye be not consumed (destroyed 355) one of another.” Galatians 5:15.
- 14) **Ministry.** “And say to Archippus, Take heed to the ministry which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou fulfil it.” Colossians 4:17.
- 15) **Doctrine.** “Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine, continue in them.” I Timothy 4:16.
- 16) **Unbelief.** “Take heed brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God.” Hebrews 3:12.
- 17) **Bible.** “We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed.” 2 Peter 1:19.

173. TAKE or NEGLECT? We are told to take each of these important things.

- 1) **Cross** “Whosoever will come after me, let him deny himself, take up his cross, & follow me” Mark 8:34
- 2) **No Thought for Your life.** “Take no thought for your life... for the morrow.” Matthew 6:25,34.
- 3) **Christ’s Yoke.** “Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me.” Matthew 11:29.
- 4) **Wrong.** “Why do ye not rather take wrong.” I Corinthians 6:7.
- 5) **Lord’s Supper Bread.** “Take, eat; this is my body, which is broken for you.” I Corinthians 11:24.
- 6) **Ministry to the saints.** “Take upon us the fellowship of the ministering to the saints.” II Cor 8:4.
- 7) **Pleasure in suffering for Christ.** “I take pleasure in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in persecutions, in distress for Christ’s sake; for when I am weak, then I am strong.” 2 Corinthian 12:10
- 8) **Whole armour of God.** “Take unto you the whole armour of God...” Ephesians 6:13.
- 9) **Shield of faith.** “Taking the shield of faith...” Ephesians 6:16.
- 10) **Helmet of salvation.** “Take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit.” Ephesians 6:17.
- 11) **Trainee preachers.** “Take Mark, and bring him with thee.” 2 Timothy 4:11.
- 12) **Prophets example.** “Take my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience.” James 5:10.
- 13) **Suffering patiently.** “When ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently.” I Peter 2:20.
- 14) **Oversight.** “Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof...” I Peter 5:2.
- 15) **Water of life.** “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.” Revelation 22:17.
- 16) **Cup of salvation.** “I will take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of the Lord” Psa 116:13

Conclusion: The act of taking these things is a deliberate choice that each of us needs to improve our useful service for Christ. We can only take these when we know what they are. Do you take these or neglect them? How well do you take these very important things?

174. THE TEN GATES OF JERUSALEM

Bible Reading: Nehemiah 3:1,3,6,13,14,15,26-32.

The gates in the wall of the old city of Jerusalem are a beautiful picture summary of the Christian life. Each gate needs to be open and functioning properly if we are to be all that God wants us to be. They are:

1. THE SHEEP GATE (3:1) speaks of the CROSS.

The Christian life starts with “Behold the lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the world.” John 1:29. There can be no spiritual life without taking Christ as our Saviour. Christ was the Lamb of God that was sacrificed to pay for everyone’s sin as our substitute. “I am the Good Shepherd that lays down his life for the sheep.” (John 10:11).

“He is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb.” (Isaiah 53:7).

2. THE FISH GATE (3:3) speaks of SOUL WINNING.

After we are saved, one of our first desires is to see others saved.

Jesus promises us, “Follow me and I will make you fishers of men.”

Two conditions of soul-winning are that we must:

i) Really want to do it. ii) Follow Christ continually.

Question: Are you concerned about becoming a soul-winner?

3. THE OLD GATE (3:6) speaks of our OLD NATURE. (Romans 6:1-23).

When we receive Jesus Christ as our Saviour, our old nature is crucified with Christ (Galatians 2:20). If you are saved, do not continue in sin.

“Shall we continue in sin that grace may abound? God forbid.” Romans 6:1.

“**Knowing** this, that **our old man** (old sin nature) is crucified with Christ, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.” Romans 6:6.

“**Reckon** yourselves to be **dead indeed unto sin**, but alive unto God.” Romans 6:11.

“Don’t let sin reign in your mortal body.” Romans 6:12.

“Don’t yield your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin.

Yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and **yield your members as instruments of righteousness** unto God.” Romans 6:13.

“Wherefore laying aside all malice, all guile, hypocrisies, envies, all evil speakings.” 1 Peter 2:1,2.

Question: Now that you are saved, have you rejected your old lifestyle?

“What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed?

for the end of those things is death.” Romans 6:21.

4. THE VALLEY GATE (3:13) speaks of SUFFERING and TESTING. (2 Corinthians 1:3-5).

We learn most in the valleys of suffering.

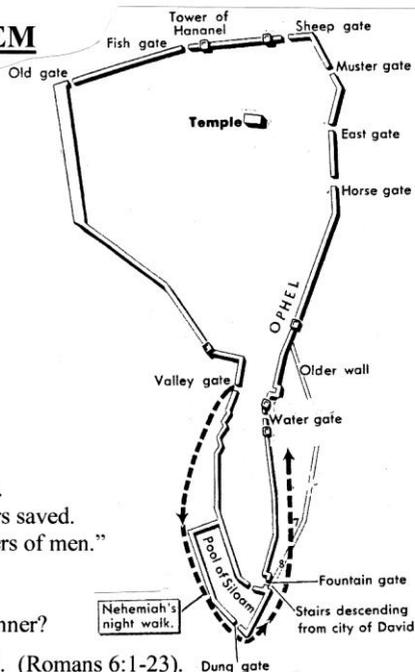
“Yea though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil.” Psalm 23:4.

Just after we are saved, we all come across suffering or testing to refine our life and to bring sins to the surface so that we can confess it and get right with God. “Wherefore, let them that suffer according to the will of God, commit the keeping of their souls unto him in well-doing, as unto a faithful creator.” 1 Peter 4:19.

5. THE DUNG GATE (3:14) speaks of the WORKS OF THE FLESH. (Galatians 5:19-21).

“But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but **dung**, that I may win Christ.” Philippians 3:7,8.

We must count the sins we loved as unbelievers as **dung**, something detestable to be thrown away.



6. **THE FOUNTAIN GATE** (3:15) speaks of the **HOLY SPIRIT** continuing to flow through us in blessing to others. “Be filled with the Spirit.” (Ephesians 5:18).
 “He that believeth on me, ... , **out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.** (But this spake he of the **Spirit**, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because Jesus was not yet glorified.)” (John 7:37-39).
 We must be continually filled with and led by the Holy Spirit if we are to enjoy the fruit of the Spirit of love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance. Gal. 5:22,23.
7. **THE WATER GATE** (3:26) speaks of the **WORD OF GOD**.
 “That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of **water** by the **word**.” (Ephesians 5:26).
Question: Are you daily allowing God’s Word to cleanse your mind of all sins and keep you close to Christ? We will never get victory over sin until we let God’s Word control our minds and lives.
Question: Do you read, study, memorize and meditate on God’s Word daily?
8. **THE HORSE GATE** (3:28) speaks of the believer’s **SPIRITUAL WARFARE** because horses were for war. Soon after salvation, we must realise that God has called us to be soldiers in a very intense spiritual battle for the souls of men. The prize is men’s souls for all eternity, the approval of Christ, and eternal rewards. This is worth fighting for. We are commanded in 2 Timothy 2:3,4 to, “Thou therefore endure hardness as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of this life, that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier.”
 “I saw heaven opened, and behold a **white horse**; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and **make war**.” (Revelation 19:11).
9. **THE EAST GATE** (3:29) speaks of the **RETURN OF CHRIST**.
 “The gate that looketh toward the east: And the glory of the Lord came into the house by the way of the gate whose prospect is toward the **east**.” (Ezekiel 43:1,4). Christ returns to earth, conquers Antichrist’s armies, lands on the Mount of Olives, and then enters Jerusalem by the now bricked up East Gate. This gate looks toward the Mount of Olives where Christ will land. (Ezekiel 44:1-2).
Question: Are you looking for Jesus Christ’s return? See the shut East Gate below. Ezekiel 44:2.
10. **THE MIPHKAD GATE** (3:31), the **JUDGMENT GATE** speaks of the **Judgment Seat of Christ** for believers in heaven, and the judgment of the sheep and goat nations when Christ returns to earth. “So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.” (Romans 14:12).
Question: Are you living now, knowing that you will have to give account of your actions in this life to God? Let us live for Christ every day and live for eternity.



175. TEN NAMES AND THEIR MEANINGS

Bible Reading: Genesis 5:1-32.

Aim: To see the spiritual history of the earth from a prophetic point of view in the names of the ten pre-flood patriarchs.

Introduction:

All the names in the Bible have a spiritual and practical meaning for us today. All changes of names in the Bible also have lessons for us now. For example, **Abram** (high father) was changed to **Abraham** (father of many nations); **Jacob** (supplanter) was changed to **Israel** (prince with God); **Saul** (big) was changed to **Paul** (little). The 10 names of Genesis 5 set forth at least 7000 years of sacred history.

1. ADAM = RED EARTH

Adam, or red earth, reminds us of the natural man who is by nature away from God's righteousness and holiness. He is self-centred and does not make his decisions with reference to God but only on sight. Let us see as God sees, for "the Lord sees not as man sees, but the Lord looks upon the heart." (I Sam 16:7) "The first man is of the earth, earthy: the second man is the Lord from heaven." (I Corinthians 15:47). Let us not think like Adam, but like Christ. Adam made a wrong decision because he thought according to earthly wisdom of what he could see, rather than setting his affections on things above. Colossian 3:2 "The first man *is* of the earth, **earthy**: (47) ... as we have borne the image of the **earthy**, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly." (49). I Corinthians 15:47-49.

2. SETH = SUBSTITUTE

Cain murdered his brother Abel, and Seth was given instead of Abel.

Thus, Seth speaks of Christ as the substitute for fallen man. Christ is our substitute.

"The Lord hath laid on him the iniquity of us all." Isaiah 53:6.

"For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him." (II Corinthians 5:21).

We must receive Christ as our substitute or Saviour to be saved.

3. ENOS = FRAILITY, MORTALITY, DYING

Enos speaks of **Christ dying for us**. Seth speaks of the Substitute, and Enos speaks of the Substitute dying, the just for the unjust, the innocent for the guilty. Therefore, Christ our **Substitute** (Seth) **died** (Enos) that we might have life and have it more abundantly.

"But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us." (Romans 5:8).

4. CAINAN = TO PURCHASE, BUY BACK, ACQUIRE

When Christ died (Enos), He **purchased us** out of the slave market of sin, and through his atoning blood He brought back all and more than Adam lost in the Garden of Eden.

"Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us." Galatians 3:13.

Christ also **purchased the field**, which is the **world**, and also the two **treasures** in the field:

a) Israel (Matthew 13:44 and Exodus 19:5), God's peculiar treasure.

b) Church (Matthew 13:45,46). The Pearl of Great Price.

Christ, therefore, became our **Cainan**, buying back that which Adam lost in the Fall.

5. MAHALALEEL = SPLENDOR OF GOD

Christ, after dying, was **resurrected** from the dead by the power of God, which showed the "splendour of God" in resurrection power, and thus Christ became our Mahalaleel.

"But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you." (Romans 8:11).

Christ's resurrection is proof of our future resurrection. It means Praise or Strength of God.

Praise - The cause for us to praise God is Christ's resurrection.

Strength - Christ's resurrection shows His and our victory over sin, the grave and death..

6. JARED = DESCEND, COME DOWN, POUR OUT

Christ, after His resurrection, ascended on high, received the promise of the Father, and **poured out** the **gift of the Holy Spirit** on the waiting disciples on the day of Pentecost. Thus Christ became our Jared. This brings us to the present Church age we are now in, which is the dispensation of the Holy Spirit indwelling believers. Before Jesus died, He promised to send the Comforter to His people and said that when the Comforter was come He would teach them all things. (John 14:26).

7. ENOCH = TEACH, INSTRUCT, TRAIN UP

We are now also living in the Enoch age. The Holy Spirit has been poured out to instruct, to teach and to lead us all into truth. Enoch was translated that he might not see death, and before his translation he walked with God, enjoyed the witness that he was righteous, and was raptured without passing through the valley of the shadow of death. (Genesis 5:22-24).

Seven is the number of perfection and Enoch is the seventh name mentioned. He was raptured that he might not see death. Enoch was a foreshadow type of all those who are alive and will remain unto the coming of the Lord.

Note the following about Enoch:

- a) The times in which he lived were full of evil.
- b) He walked with God: in Harmony, in Unity, and in Fellowship.
- c) He enjoyed the witness of the Holy Spirit.
"He had this testimony that he pleased God." (Hebrews 11:5).
- d) He was a living rebuke to sin. "He testified of judgment to come." (Jude 14).
- e) He was a preacher of righteousness. "Enoch prophesied saying..."
- f) He was translated. "God took him."

8. METHUSELAH = WHEN HE IS DEAD IT SHALL BE SENT

(or something will happen after a long extent of time).

Enoch walked with God and God revealed to him a secret. God told Enoch that He would judge the world for it's sin by a great flood. A son was born to Enoch and he was to be named Methuselah, meaning "When he is dead, it shall be sent." Methuselah lived to 969 years, and the very year that he died, the flood came on the earth. God lengthened his life to almost 1000 years because, at his death, mankind was to be destroyed. We see the marvellous long-suffering of God who is not willing that any should perish. After the Enoch's of this present age are resurrected and raptured, the Tribulation will burst upon the earth. The Old Testament flood was a foreshadow of the New Testament Tribulation.

9. LAMECH = CONQUEROR, KING

After the Tribulation, Christ will come to earth as it's conquering King and the millennial day of rest and peace will begin.

10. NOAH = REST, QUIET

The main quality of the millennium will be rest, peace and quiet, with Christ ruling on the earth in person. It will be like the Sabbath day for 1000 years. No wars, just peace, joy and prosperity.

Conclusion:

Christ our Substitute (Seth) died for us (Enos = mortality) and bought back all and more that was lost in the fall (Cainan). Christ rose again (Mahalaleel = splendour), ascended on high and poured out the Holy Ghost (Jared = poured out, descend) who has come to cleanse, fill and instruct us in the things of God during this dispensation (Enoch = teach). This dispensation will end with the Rapture. Then will begin the period called the Tribulation, ending with the Jesus Christ coming as the Conquering King of Kings and Lord of Lords (Lamech) and the starting of the millennial reign of Christ on earth (Noah = rest). Here are set forth in 10 names over 7000 years of sacred history.

Challenge:

Are you living from the viewpoint of eternity, and are you laying up treasures in heaven? Abraham "looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God." (Hebrews 11:10). Which world are you living for? Which world are you making your decisions for? Start living for Christ.

176. The Nature Of God: What is God Like?

Bible Reading: Psalm 139; Isaiah 40:1-31.

Aim: To understand and know God better, resulting in us loving and obeying God more.

Introduction: Man is born spiritually blind and out of fellowship with God.

How can man regain his spiritual sight and understanding of God?

By a) Being born again, and b) Understanding God's nature and character.

Question: What is God like?

I. NATURAL ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

1. Omniscience = infinite knowledge. God knows Himself and all other things whether actual or possible, past, present or future. He knows them perfectly and from eternity. He knows the best ways to attain His desired ends. "He telleth the number of the stars; he calleth them all by their names. His understanding is infinite." (Psalm 147:4,5); "The very hairs of your head are all numbered" Matt.10:30.

Effect on us:

a) God knows completely and perfectly all our problems and needs before our birth.

b) We can be confident of God's love, ability and desire to meet our needs.

2. Omnipotence = infinite power. God is able to do whatever He wills that is in harmony with His nature. God cannot a) lie (Hebrews 6:18); b) commit sins (James 1:13); c) look on sin (Habakkuk 1:13); d) deny Himself (II Timothy 2:13). "There is nothing too hard for thee." (Jeremiah 32:17). Because God is Almighty, "With God all things are possible." (Matthew 19:26).

Three categories of God's will are His a) Perfect will, b) Permissive will, and c) Overruling will.

God limits Himself to some extent by the free will of man.

That is why -- God did not keep sin out of the universe. (God permitted man to choose to sin).

-- God does not save anyone by force.

Effect on us is that God "is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think according to the power that worketh in us." (Ephesians 3:20).

3. Omnipresence = infinite in space. God is everywhere present and active. He possesses full knowledge of all that transpires in every place. "Where shall I flee from thy presence?" Psalm139:7-12. "Even the Son of man which is in heaven?" John 3:13.

Effect on us: a) Comforts believers, b) warns, restrains and subdues unbelievers who can't escape God.

4. Eternal = infinite in time. Eternal is used:

a) figuratively = an existence which may have a beginning, but will have no end eg:angels, human soul.

b) literally = an existence which has no beginning or end. eg: God "Whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting." Micah 5:2. "From everlasting to everlasting thou art God." Psa 90:2; Rev 1:8.

Effect on us is to: a) Realise people will live forever in heaven or hell,

b) Understand the greatness of Jesus Christ. c) Use our time most efficiently to win people to Christ.

5. Unchangeable = God never changes His nature or character.

"Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever." Hebrews 13:8.

"The Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning." James 1:17.

Effect on us: a) God is reliable and can be trusted to keep His word.

b) We should be changeless by keeping our word, and always be faithful to God.

6. Trinity = is composed of 3 united Persons without separate existence, so completely united as to form one God. The divine nature exists in 3 distinctions as Father, Son and Holy Spirit. While God is One, He exists as 3 equal persons, each having the same attributes, yet differing in certain properties. The Father sends the Son. The Son sends the Holy Spirit. (Doctrine of Procession). The Trinity is not one God manifesting Himself in 3 ways or modes of existence, nor are they 3 separate gods.2Sam23:23 The Trinity is seen in: a) The Baptismal formula. (Matthew 28:18-20), Isaiah 48:12,13,16; 63:7-10;

b) The Apostolic Benediction (2 Corinthians 13:14). c) The 3 Heavenly Witnesses (I John 5:7,8),

d) Each has the same Attributes of God (811), e) Each raises Jesus, creates the world, and saves man.

II. MORAL ATTRIBUTES OF GOD

7. Truth = God's knowledge and declarations always conform to reality. God's faithfulness leads Him to fulfil all His promises. We can trust God to keep His Word. He is the "Lord God of Truth." Psa.31:5

8. Holiness = God is absolutely pure and free from all defilement, evil and sin.

- i) **Bible Proofs**: “Holy, Holy, Holy is the Lord of hosts.” Isaiah 6:3; Revelation 4:8;
“the high and lofty one that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is holy.” Isaiah 57:15.
“Holy Father.” John 17:11. “Be ye holy; for I am holy.” I Peter 1:15,16; Habakkuk 1:13.

ii) **Manifestations** of God’s holiness are:

- The Tabernacle’s Most Holy Place where the High Priest entered once a year.
- The 10 Commandments and Mosaic laws of impurity (Leviticus 11-15).
- The bounds set on Mt Sinai when God came down to give the 10 Commandments.
- The Old Testament offerings required to approach God.
- Israelites being isolated in their land, and commanded not to adopt pagan practices.
- “Your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.” Isaiah 59:2.

The cross shows how much God loves holiness. Christ died not merely for our sins, but to provide us with righteousness and holiness of life, which God loves.

iii) **Effect** on us: **a)** We should approach God with “reverence and godly fear.” (Hebrews 12:28), not as the men of Bethshemesh (I Samuel 5,6);

b) We will have right views of sin, when we have right views of God’s Holiness. Eg: Isaiah, the holiest man in Israel, was cast down on seeing his sin, after seeing God’s Holiness (Isaiah 6:5-7);

c) The approach to the Holy God must be through the merits of Christ’s righteousness.

9. Righteousness and Justice = virtuous, upright.

“For the Lord our God is righteous in all his works which he doeth.” Daniel 9:14.

Righteous = God has instituted a moral government in the world, imposing just laws and penalties.

Justice = God executes His laws, rewards the righteous, and punishes the wicked. God is entirely correct and just in all His dealings with humanity. His justice acts in accordance with His law.

God’s righteousness and justice are seen in His:

- a)** Punishing the wicked,
- b)** Rewarding the righteous (Psalms 58:11),
- c)** Forgiving sins of the repentant,
- d)** Keeping His promises to Christians (Nehemiah 9:7,8),
- e)** Rescuing His people from their enemies (Esther 9:24,25),
- f)** Believers preaching righteousness (Psalm 40:9,10).

10. Goodness = all the qualities an ideal person would have, including love, benevolence, mercy, grace. “O taste and see that the Lord is good...” Psalm 34:8.

a) Love of God = fondness, a constant interest and warm affection towards the spiritual and physical welfare of His creatures, leading God to make sacrifices beyond human comprehension to reveal that love to mankind. God reveals His love by:

- Linking His name with love. “God is love.” I John 4:8,16. Heathen gods hate and are angry.
- Making an infinite sacrifice for the salvation of men. I John 4:9,10.
- Remembering us in all circumstances of life. Isaiah 63:9; 49:15,16.
- Giving us richly all things to enjoy. I Timothy 6:17; Psalm 145:9,15,16; Matthew 5:45.

b) Benevolence of God = the affection God feels and shows to mankind.

c) Mercy of God = God’s goodness shown to those in guilt, misery, distress. James 5:11; Eph. 2:4. God is merciful to Israel (Psalm 102:13), to the Gentiles (Romans 11:30-32), to all that fear Him (Luke 1:50), and to all that seek His salvation (Isaiah 55:7). He seeks our temporal & eternal needs.

d) Lovingkindness of God = God’s bestowment on His obedient children His continual and best blessings. “He that spared not...” Romans 8:32. The mercy and lovingkindness of God is seen in the father’s loving welcome to his prodigal (wasteful) son. Luke 15:11-32; Psalm 63:3.

e) Grace of God = God’s goodness to the ill deserving. God’s grace is shown in delaying punishment for sin, providing salvation, comfort of the Bible, Christian influence, the work of the Holy Spirit in our lives, saving and uplifting sinners from a sinful life, etc..

Conclusion: Let us love (Deut. 6:5), obey (I Sam.15:22), serve (John 12:26), know (Phil. 3:10), praise (Psalm 107:8), study (2 Tim.2:15) and worship (John 4:23) God according to His attributes.

177. The Lord's Prayer.

Bible Reading: Matthew 6:1-15. Matthew 6:1-15 is an outline of true prayer, with two aspects:

- a) God's Glory (v.9-10). Petitions on behalf of God's Name, kingdom and will.
- b) Man's Need (v.11-15). Petitions for daily bread, forgiveness, and protection from temptation.

Prayer should contain 9 elements: Adoration, praise, thanksgiving, awe at God's holiness, desire to obey God's commands, confession of sin, concern for others, humility, and perseverance.

1. God's Paternity -- "Our Father which art in heaven." (v.9).

Question: What does it mean to come to God as our Heavenly Father?

Answer: It settles the issues of fear, uncertainty of acceptance, loneliness, selfishness, lack of resources, and obedience. God is the Father of believers as our Creator, Saviour, Preserver, Teacher and Friend.

2. God's Priority -- "Hallowed be thy name" (v.9). God's Name represents His character, plan and will. Each Old Testament title of God shows a different aspect of His character and will. He is called:

- i) Elohim -- the Creator God. (Genesis 1;1,26).
- ii) El – Elyon -- the Possessor of heaven and earth.
- iii) Jehovah Jireh -- the Lord will provide, will see to it. (Genesis 22:14).
- iv) Jehovah Shalom -- the Lord our peace (Judges 6:24).
- v) Jehovah Tsidkenu -- the Lord our righteousness. (Jeremiah 23:6).
- vi) Jehovah Rohi -- The Lord is my shepherd (Psalm 23:1).
-- The Good Shepherd died giving his life for the sheep.
-- The Great Shepherd rose again.
-- The Chief Shepherd coming again.
- vii) Jehovah Tsebahoth -- the Lord of hosts. He guides, we follow. (I Samuel 1:3).
- viii) Jehovah Rapha -- the Lord that healeth thee (Exodus 15:26).
-- He heals our backslidings and forgives us.
- ix) Jehovah Shammah -- the Lord is there (Ezekiel 48:35).
-- He is with us to comfort, sustain, bless and keep us.
- x) Jehovah Nissi -- the Lord my banner. (Exodus 17:15). He never loses a battle.
- xi) Jehovah Mekaddeshem -- the Lord who sanctifies us. (Exodus 31:13).
- xii) Jehovah Helevon -- the Lord Most High. (Psalm 7:17).

Question: How do we hallow God's Name?

Answer: a) In our hearts by giving answers to those who question our faith. (I Peter 3:15).

- b) In our lives by acknowledging His presence (Proverb 3:5,6; Psalm 16:8; Hebrews 11:6).
- c) In our minds by learning His truth and knowing Him better.
- d) By living according to His will. (I Corinthians 10:31).
- e) By our commitment, service and words. (Matthew 5:16; Psalm 34:3).

3. God's Program -- "Thy Kingdom come." (v.10a); Luke 4:43. "Kingdom" here means "reign".

We should desire to see -- Christ ruling as King in His 1000 year Kingdom on earth.

- new souls being brought into His Kingdom by conversion. (Matthew 18:1-4).
- Christians becoming more committed, allowing Christ greater rule in their lives.

4. God's Plan -- "Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven." (v.10).

God's will is not inevitably done on earth. Sin and evil consequences on earth are not God's will, but:

- a) Show His patience in allowing men more opportunities to turn to Him for salvation.
- b) Teach Christians lessons about helping others and obeying God's ways.

The advancement of God's glory, kingdom, and will everywhere are more important than our wants.

5. God's Provision -- "Give us this day our daily bread." (v.11).

- i) The Substance -- Bread symbolises all our physical needs. (James 1:17).
- ii) The Source -- God gives us life, breath, health, possessions, talents, happiness and opportunities.

God provided for man's needs in the 5 days before man was created. (Deuteronomy 8:11-20).

iii) Supplication -- "Give" seeks my needs today and in the future, while thanking God for past provision.

iv) The Seekers -- Give US = believers only. God commits Himself to meet the basic needs of His own.

God's main way of provision is through WORK. God cares for those who cannot work through the

generosity of those who can work. The main cause of famine is **spiritual** due to a nation's false religions, and not to overpopulation. For example, Hindu sacred cows eat 20% of the food, and sacred rats and mice eat 15% of the food supply. These are not permitted to be killed because Hindus think that they may be a god or someone's relative.

Biblical Christianity with its human rights, orphanages, care for the poor, hospitals, slave emancipation, public education and freedoms is a blessing to the West and to the world.

v) The **Schedule** -- Daily. This prayer commands daily father-led family prayer.

6. God's Pardon -- "forgive us our **debts** as we forgive our debtors." (v.12). The Greek word for "debt" is "opheilema" (3738) = debt, an offence, a trespass which requires reparation, that which is owed. Only God can forgive sins, as a creditor can forgive a debtor. Debts can mean sins or offences against God. The measure by which God forgives us is that by which we forgive others. No man has a right to oppress when a debt cannot be repaid, or when it would greatly distress a wife and children, a widow or orphan, or when calamity has put it out of the power of an honest man to repay the debt. The spirit of Christianity requires that the debt should be forgiven. Notice these different Greek words for "sin" are:

i) **Hamartia** (264) = missing the mark of God's standard of righteousness is the most common word. (Romans 2:12; 3:23; 5:12).

ii) **Paraptoma** (3900) = not a heinous sin, **not intentional disobedience**, but a fault, lapse, wrongdoing, error, mistake, faults of weakness, the sin of slipping or falling due to carelessness. It is used in Paul's writings where pardon is discussed. (Galatians 6:1; James 5:16; Matt. 6:14,15; 18:35; Mark 11:25,26).

iii) **Parabasis** (3847) = **wilful transgression** of a known rule or law. It always involves **guilt**. (Romans 5:14,15; Hebrews 9:15; 2:2; James 2:9,11). It is a **stronger word** than the Greek word "paraptoma" (3900). It is a more conscious and intentional stepping across the line, a transgression.

iv) **Anomos** (459) = without law, **lawlessness** (I Timothy 1:9). Not having the law, not knowing the law, not acknowledging the law (I Corinthians 9:21), lawless in the sense of transgressing the law, a transgressor (Mark 15:28; Luke 22:37; Acts 2:23; 2 Thess. 2:8; 2 Peter 2:8; Ezekiel 33:8,12).

Open intentional, flagrant rebellion against God and His ways. In Romans 2:12 it refers to those who have sinned, not being subject to the Law of Moses. These will still be condemned, not by the Mosaic law, but by the Moral law. (Romans 2:14,15).

v) **Opheilema** (3783) = a **debt** which is owed and is strictly due (Romans 4:4). An offence, a trespass which requires reparation (Matt.6:12), an obligation (Matthew 18:30,32; Romans 1:14; 4:4; 8:12; 15:27)

vi) **Parapipito** (3895) = a deliberate act of falling away in **apostasy**, an abandonment. (Hebrews 6:6).

vii) **Planao** (4105) = to lead astray, to **go astray**, to wander. It is used of persons (Heb. 11:38; 2 Peter 2:15) or of flocks (Matthew 18:12,13; 1 Peter 2:25). It means to deceive, cause to err from a **wrong judgment** (Matthew 24:4,5,11,24; I John 1:8; 3:7; Rev 13:14), **to be deceived** or **mislead** (Matthew 22:29; Mark 12:24,27; Luke 21:8; John 7:47; I Cor. 6:9; 15:33; Gal.6:7; Hebrews 3:10; James 1:16). To seduce people into rebellion from the truth (John 7:12; Rev. 20:8,10; 2 Timothy 3:13; 1 John 2:26) or seduce to idolatry (Rev. 2:20; 12:9; 18:23; 19:20; 20:3).

viii) **Agnoeo** (50) = to **be ignorant** of, not to recognise, know or understand, to have no discernment (Romans 1:13; 10:3; 11:25; Ephesians 4:18). To commit faults due to a lack of knowledge, discernment or insight (Hebrews 5:2; 2 Peter 2:12). It is culpable ignorance.

ix) **Enochos** (1777) = **guilty** of sin, deserving of and subject to punishment or death (James 2:10; Matthew 26:66; 1 Corinthians 11:27).

x) **Adikia** (94) = unjust, **unrighteous**, falling short of the righteousness required by God's "paraptoma" laws (1 Peter 3:18; 1 Cor. 6:9) fraudulent, false, deceitful (Luke 16:10,11); unjust towards others (Luke 18:11; Romans 3:5; Hebrews 6:10). It is unrighteous conduct.

xi) **Hypocrites** (5273) or Hupokrisis (5272) = to **pretend** (Matthew 23:28, Galatians 2:13; I Timothy 4:2; I Peter 2:1) or **evil deception**. **Saying the thing that pleased**, and **not the thing that was true**. All false prophesy was hypocrisy. **Question:** What do we know about **hypocrisy**?

a) Isaiah, Malachi and Jesus strongly rebuked the religious hypocrisy of their day.

b) All false prophecy was hypocrisy – saying what pleased people rather than saying what was true.

c) The person most deceived was the hypocrite himself (Isaiah 33:14; Job 27:8; 15:34).

d) Christ equates it with **lying** and falsehood. (John 8:44).

- e) It corrupts the conscience and destroys holiness of life. (“destroyeth his neighbour.” Prov. 11:9).
- f) Christ presents it as a hidden evil that will be exposed. It is a sin which glories in misleading others by smooth flatteries (Matthew 22:16; Isaiah 30:10; Job 15:34).
- g) The religious hypocrites of Jesus’ day sought to be revered by public greetings and honourable titles. They cloaked greed with long prayers (Mark 12:38-40). (Luke 11:42).
- h) It substitutes religious rule, ceremonial & formal, for love, the personal & practical. Matthew 15:6
- i) It cannot receive the truth, because its eye is on impressing man, not on pleasing God. John 5:44.
- j) It makes enquiries not in order to hear the truth, but in order to refute it. (John 9:27,28).
- k) Direct rebuke is the only way to counter hypocrisy. (Luke 6:42; 13:15).
- l) Hypocrisy being an enemy of truth and not being able to live with truth, can only defend itself through persecuting those holding truth (John 8:37).
- m) It takes away the key of knowledge (Luke 11:52). It opposes faith, debasing the whole man.
- n) It sees splinters in it’s brother’s eye while ignoring beams in its own eye (Matthew 7:3-5).
- o) Hypocrites look like sheep, but inwardly they are ravening wolves (Matthew 7:15-20).
- p) The ultimate hypocrite in Scripture is the Antichrist, who stands in the place of Christ, coming in Christ’s Name saying “I am he” (Mark 13:6) and will deceive many.

Because man’s greatest problem is sin, his greatest need is forgiveness.

To confess sin means to agree with God that our sins are wicked, evil and defiling.

Unconfessed sins cannot be forgiven. We see God’s forgiveness as a means of spiritual growth, not as a license to sin. A Puritan once prayed: “Grant me never to lose sight of the exceeding sinfulness of sin, the exceeding righteousness of salvation, the exceeding glory of Christ, the exceeding beauty of holiness, and the exceeding wonder of grace.”

7. The Prerequisite of receiving forgiveness is as we forgive our debtors. (v.12).

Principle: If we forgive others, God forgives us.

If we don’t forgive others, God won’t forgive us.

Question: Why should we forgive others?

- i) Forgiveness is the character of righteousness and of a godly life.
- ii) Christians are blessed and receive mercy if they are merciful (Matthew 5:7).
- iii) Christians love and forgive our enemies because we have God’s loving nature within us. Matthew 5:44,45,48.
- iv) Forgiveness is the mark of a truly regenerate heart. We forgive others, because God has greatly forgiven us.
- v) Christians forgive others, because of Christ’s example. Ephesians 4:32.
- vi) Forgiving or passing over a transgression glorifies us. Proverbs 19:11.
- vii) Forgiving others frees the conscience of guilt. Unforgiveness is a barrier to God’s forgiveness. It interferes with our peace of mind, satisfaction, and proper bodily functions.
- viii) Forgiving others benefits all in a church. Unforgiveness and unresolved conflicts stops the power of a church. “If I regard iniquity in my heart” Psalm 66:18; Matthew 5:23,24.
- ix) Forgiving others delivers us from God’s discipline.
God chastens those with an unforgiving spirit.
- x) Forgiving others brings God’s forgiveness to us. (Matthew 6:12).
- xi) Forgiving others brings a free and joyful life.

In forgiveness, God deals with us as we deal with others. (“saying I repent: thou shalt forgive him.” Luke 17:4
“There is none so tender to others as they which have received mercy themselves, for they know how gently God has dealt with them.”

8. God’s Protection. “And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.” (v.13).

Temptation [Greek Peirasmos (3986)] = to tempt, to try, test, to prove in a good or bad sense.

Four kinds of temptation are:

i) Tempt in a good sense, to ascertain the character, views or feelings of someone. (Matthew 22:35; Rev 2:2; I King 10:1; Psalm 17:3). When God is the agent of temptation (or testing), it is for the purpose of proving someone, never for the purpose of causing him to fall. When God brings His people through trials, affliction, and adversity, it is to prove our faith and confidence in Him (Matt 6:13; 26:41)

ii) Tempt in a **bad sense** is to try one's virtue, to tempt, to solicit to sin, especially by Satan. The devil tempts us to cause us to fall. (Galatians 6:1; James 1:13,14; Mark 8:11; 10:2; 12:15; Luke 11:16; 20:23; John 8:6; Matthew 4:1-3; I Corinthians 7:5; I Thessalonians 3:5).

iii) **Men tempt or prove God** by doubting and distrusting God's power and help (Acts 5:9; 15:10; I Corinthians 10:9; Hebrews 3:9), by distrusting Him and complaining to Him. (Hebrews 3:8).

iv) **God tempts, tests or proves men** by adversity, to test our faith and confidence in Him (I Cor 10:13; Hebrews 2:18; 11:17-37; Rev. 3:10), to show what a person's strengths or weaknesses are to the person being tempted. A person who has been rescued from sin, so greatly despises and fears sin, that he wants to escape all prospects of falling into sin. He prefers to avoid, rather than have to defeat temptation. The Lord's Prayer here asks God to protect us from sin by controlling our eyes, ears, mouth, feet and hands. What men and Satan mean for evil, God will turn to our good. (Genesis 50:20). We are not certain that we will be completely submissive to God in our trials. This says: "Lord, don't lead us into a trial that will present such a temptation that we will not be able to resist it." It is laying claim to the promises of I Corinthians 10:13; Psalm 119:11; James 4:7; "Submit yourselves to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you."

9. God's Pre-eminence. (v.13). "For thine is the kingdom, the power and the glory, forever, Amen." This says to God: "Thine is the Kingdom", (Thou God has control, dominion, and reign over all these requests, and can order them so as to grant our petitions). "Thine is the power," (Thou has power to accomplish what we ask. We are weak. We cannot do it; but thou art Almighty, and all things are possible with thee). "Thine is the glory," (Thine is the honour and praise, not our honour, but thy glory and thy goodness will be displayed in providing our wants; thy power will be shown in defending us; and thy praise in spreading thy kingdom throughout the earth). God's glory is the first, main and final thing we must seek when we approach Him. This declares the greatness of God's eternal kingdom, power and glory. I Chronicles 20:11 (v.10-18). "Amen" is a Hebrew word meaning "strong agreement, certainly, so be it". Jews in a synagogue said "Amen" to show their agreement with the minister's prayer just uttered.

178. Daily Dozen. I Timothy 6:6.

Daily Dozen used to refer to physical exercises, but God has some spiritual exercises for us to do daily.

Question: Do we know what they are? Are we doing them?

1. **Praise God** daily. Psalm 72:15; 113:3.

2. **Pray** daily. Pray for labourers and fellow Christians. Psalm 86:3; 88:9; I Thessalonians 5:17.

3. **Search the Scriptures** daily. Acts 17:11; Psalm 1:2; Joshua 1:8.

4. **Watch** daily. Proverbs 8:34. Watch for: **a)** the Lord's return (Matthew 25:13); **b)** lest you enter into temptation (Matthew 26:41); **c)** Pastors watch for people's souls (Heb 18:17); **d)** Prayer (I Peter 4:7)

5. **Fellowship** daily with Christ and Christians (Acts 2:42,46,47). Have a family altar daily.

6. **Win Souls to Christ** daily. Acts 5:42. Is Soul Winning a daily thing for you? This speaks of: Daily evangelism (daily), church centred (in the temple), house to house (doorknocking to every house), they (every Christian), ceased not (continuously), teaching (to teach), preaching (and preach), Jesus Christ (Christ centred).

7. **Reason** daily. Acts 17:2,17; 18:4,19; 19:9; 24:25.

Do you reason with sinners to overcome their objections to salvation?

8. **Exhort** daily. Heb. 3:13. Barnabus = "Son of Consolation." Do you encourage those who are down?

9. **Take up your cross** daily. Luke 9:23. Do you die daily to self and your ways, letting Christ have his way in your life?

10. **Die** daily to self and live for God (I Corinthians 15:30,31; Romans 8:36,37; Galatians 2:20).

11. **Care for the Churches** daily. 2 Cor 11:28. Paul was concerned daily for all the churches. I Cor 12:25

12. **Perform Vows** daily. Psalm 61:8; 116:14.

Conclusion: Do you exercise yourself to godliness by doing these 12 key activities daily? I Timothy 4:7

179. The Precious Blood Of Christ

Bible Reading: Hebrews 9:6-28.

Aim: To show the value of the blood of Christ by what it does for us in the sight of God.

Introduction: Read I Peter 1:18. To Peter, the blood of Christ grew more precious as the years passed by. In the Bible, there are 290 references to the love of God, but 1300 references to the atoning blood.

Illustration 1: House of a Thousand Terrors.

In the market place of Rotterdam, Holland, stood for many years an old corner house known as “The House of a Thousand Terrors.” The story is as follows:

During the 16th Century, the Dutch people rose in revolt against the cruel King Philip II of Spain. Philip sent a great army under the Duke of Alva to suppress the rebellion. Rotterdam held out for a time but finally capitulated. From house to house the victors went, searching out citizens and then killing them in their houses. A group of men, women, and children were hiding in a corner house when they heard soldiers approaching. A thousand terrors gripped their hearts. Then a young man had an idea. He took a goat in the house, killed it, and with a broom swept the blood under the doorway out to the street.

The soldiers reached the house and began to batter down the door. Noticing the blood coming out from under the door, one soldier said: “Come away, the work is already done here. Look at the blood beneath the door.” And the people inside the house escaped.

Why is the blood of Christ precious?

1. It Redeems us from the devil and from the curse of the law. The law condemns me, but Christ has satisfied the claims of the law. (Ephesians 1:7; Colossians 1:14; Revelation 5:9).

We are now under a different law, the law of Christ (Galatians 6:2; I Cor 9:21; Romans 8:2).

Redemption means buying back. Christ has redeemed us, paying the full price for our sin, and has bought us back to God.

Illustration 2: A friend in Ireland once met a little Irish boy who had caught a sparrow. The poor little bird was trembling in his hand, and seemed very anxious to escape. The gentleman begged the boy to let it go, as the bird could not do him any good; but the boy said he would not, for he had chased it for three hours before he could catch it. He tried to reason it out with the boy, but in vain. At last he offered to buy the bird. The boy agreed to the price, and it was paid. Then the gentleman took the poor little thing, and held it out on his hand. The boy had been holding it tight. The boy was stronger than the bird, just as Satan is stronger than we. There it sat for a time scarcely able to realise the fact that it had got liberty; but in a little time it flew away chirping, as if to say to the gentleman: “Thank you! Thank you! You have redeemed me.” This is what redemption is – buying back and setting free. Christ came to break the fetters of sin, to open the prison doors and set the sinner free.

Conclusion: Have you applied the blood of Christ to yourself? Have you received Christ’s blood sacrifice as the full payment for your sins? Have you called on Christ to save you? Do so today.

2. It Blots Out Our Sin (Revelation 1:5; Isaiah 43:25; Acts 3:19).

Christ’s blood is precious because it blots out sin. A teacher asked a class: “Is there anything God cannot do?” A pupil replied: “Yes, He cannot see my sins through the blood of Christ.”

The blood of Christ blots out the sins of those who receive Christ. Just as a cloud disappears, and the chalk is erased from a blackboard forever, so Christ’s blood removes our sins.

3. It Brings Us Near (Ephesians 2:13).

The blood of Christ not only brings us near to God, but it brings us near to one another.

I can go to any Bible loving, Christ loving fundamental Baptist Church and get better acquainted with these people in 24 hours, than I could if I spoke about science and philosophy at a university in 24 years. We realise that we are blood relations.

4. It Makes Peace (Colossians 1:20). You will never find peace in this world until you come to the cross of Christ. When Christ died, He made out His will. You are mentioned in it:

- i) He willed His Spirit back to His Father.
- ii) He willed His Body to Joseph of Arimathea (temporarily).
- iii) He willed His Mother to John.
- iv) He willed His Peace to His Disciples. “My peace I give unto you.” (John 14:27).

Do you want peace? Are you tossed by trouble, sorrow, persecution? If so, call on Christ to save you.

Illustration 3: During the last days of the Civil War, when many men were deserting from the South, Secretary Stanton sent out a notice from the War Department that no more refugees be taken into the Union army. A Southern soldier hadn't seen that, and he came into the Union lines and they read the order to him. He didn't know what to do. If he went back into the Southern army he would be shot as a deserter, and the Northern army wouldn't have him. So he went into the woods between the armies and stayed there until he got starved out. He saw an officer going by, and he rushed out of the woods and told this officer that if he didn't help him he would have to take his life. The officer asked what was the trouble. He told him. The officer said: "Haven't you heard the news?" "No, what news?" "Why, the war is over. Lee has surrendered. Peace is declared. Go to the first town, and get all the food you want." The man waved his hat and went to the town as quickly as he could.

I want to say that peace is declared, and the war is over. Be ye, reconciled to God, and the whole thing will be settled. The blood is on the mercy seat. As long as it is there, the vilest sinner can enter and be saved for time and eternity.

5. It Justifies (Romans 5:9).

Illustration 4: The Devil and Martin Luther.

There is a legend of Martin Luther that during a serious illness, the Evil One entered his sick room and looking at him with a triumphant smile, unrolled a big scroll which he carried in his arms. As the fiend threw one end of it on the floor, it unwound by itself. Luther's eyes read the long fearful record of his own sins, one by one. That stout heart quailed before the ghastly roll. Suddenly it flashed into Luther's mind that there was one thing not written there. He cried aloud: "One thing you have forgotten. The rest is all true, but one thing you have forgotten: "The blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin." " And as he said this, the Accuser of the brethren and his heavy roll disappeared.

The blood of Christ is precious because it justifies you and me.

Justified means "There isn't a charge against you." It is better than a pardon. Your sins are completely wiped out. They are not to be remembered or mentioned. God puts them out of His memory.

"As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us." Psalm 103:12.

6. It Cleanses (I John 1:7).

The blood of Christ is precious because it cleanses us from all sin, not some sin, but ALL sin.

Believers ought to be the happiest people in the world.

Question: How can blood cleanse sin?

Illustration 5: A preacher was speaking from the text: "The blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin." Suddenly he was interrupted by an atheist who asked: "How can blood cleanse sin?" For a moment the preacher was silent, but then he replied, "How can water quench thirst?"

"I do not know," replied the infidel, "but I know that it does." "Neither do I know how the blood of Jesus Christ cleanses sin," answered the preacher, "but I know that it does."

7. It Gives Boldness (Hebrews 10:19).

Illustration 6: There is a story of a man who was going to be tried for his life, and if found guilty there was no hope for him unless the king would intercede. They went to the king, and he finally agreed to give him a pardon, but the king said: "Let it be secret, and if the man isn't condemned, do not say anything about it; if he is condemned, he can use the pardon." The man went to court with the pardon in his pocket, and he was quite cheerful about his trial. The verdict went against him. When the judge pronounced the sentence upon him, he took pains to say that he and the whole court were shocked to think that a man could be on trial for his life and be so unconcerned. When the judge got through, the man stepped up and laid the king's pardon on the judge's desk, and walked out bold as a lion.

Conclusion: You have a charge against me. What do I care? God has justified me. He comes and says, "Keith, you are a saved man." Yes, saved by grace, saved for time and for eternity.

The blood of Christ is precious because it gives me boldness in the day of judgment. Isn't that good? I pity people who live all their life under fear of death. Because I am freed from death by the blood of Christ, judgment is passed already. I will not be judged at the Great White Throne Judgment. Because Christ has been judged for my sins on the cross as my Saviour, I will have boldness in the day of judgment. Will you receive Christ as your Saviour, trusting His blood sacrifice to cleanse your sin?

180. Temptation

Bible Reading: I Corinthians 10:1-13.

1. Source of Temptations.

- i) The World (I John 2:15-17), ii) The Flesh (James 1:14), iii) The Devil (Matthew 4:1-11),
- iv) Evil Associates (Proverbs 1:10), v) Christian Friends (Matthew 16:22,23).

2. Methods of Temptation.

- i) Discouragement (Psalm 42:11). ii) Worldly glory (Matthew 4:8-10; Numbers 22:17).
- iii) Anger at other peoples actions eg: David & Nabal (I Sam 25:21-32). iv) Poverty (Proverbs 30:8,9)
- v) Satisfy our needs unrighteously (Matthew 4:3,4). vi) Prosperity (Proverbs 30:9).
- vii) Advice of others eg. Job's wife (Job 2:9 "Curse God and die, and friends bad advice.

3. Types of Temptation.

- i) To disbelieve God's Word. Satan asked Eve, "Yea, hath God said?" (Genesis 3:1).
- ii) To presumption – that God would rescue us.
In Matthew 4:6, Satan tempted Jesus to presume that the angels would rescue Him.
- iii) To worship the god of this world. (Matthew 4:9).
- iv) To pride. eg. Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 4:30); Satan (Isaiah 14:12-16).
- v) To pleasure. eg. Moses (Hebrews 11:25).
- vi) To quit serving God. eg. Demas (II Timothy 4:10).
- vii) To power and popularity. Eg: Simon Magus (Acts 8:19).
- viii) To possessions. eg. Achan. (Joshua 7:1-24).
- ix) To money. eg. Judas (Matthew 26:14-16); Ananias and Sapphira (Acts 5:1-11).
- x) To sex. eg. David (II Samuel 11:2-4); Solomon (Nehemiah 13:26).

4. How to get victory over temptation.

- i) By hiding God's Word in our heart (Psalm 119:9). By using God's Word as a sword (Eph. 6:17).
- ii) By personal prayer of yourself (Matthew 26:41) and of others. (I Samuel 12:33).
- iii) By Christ's intercession for us (Luke 22:31,32) & the Holy Spirit's intercession for us. Rom.8:26,27
- iv) By God's faithfulness to us (I Cor. 10:13).
- v) By fleeing (II Timothy 2:22; I Cor. 6:18; I Timothy 6:11; Proverbs 4:14,15).
- vi) By resisting the devil (James 4:7).
- vii) By looking for and accepting the way of escape (I Cor. 10:13).
- viii) By getting busy serving God, rather than being idle (II Samuel 11:1).
- ix) By drawing near to God (James 4:8).
- x) By keeping our bodies in subjection (I Cor. 9:27).
- xi) By knowing, reckoning and yielding our members as instruments of righteousness. Romans 6:6-19.
- xii) By having close godly friends (Proverbs 27:17), as we attend all our church services. Heb.10:24,25

5. Load Limit of Temptations "God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able, but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it." I Cor 10:13

- i) God sets the time limit of our temptations.
- ii) God sets the time of arrival of the temptation to come when we are mature enough to handle it.
- iii) God guides the stress or pressure during the temptation.

6. Reasons for temptation. i) Test our faith. James 1:2,3. ii) Test our obedience. Genesis 22:1.
God tests us to know the depth of our love for Christ, and the sincerity of our obedience to God's Word.

7. Results of Temptation.

- i) If yielded to, temptation becomes sin. (I Timothy 6:9).
- ii) If resisted, the Lord is glorified, and we grow stronger to resist other temptations.
- iii) Patience, perfect and entire wanting nothing. (James 1:2-4).
- iv) We receive a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory in heaven if resisted. II Cor. 4:17.

8. Bible Characters who were tempted. Name a few. What do you learn from each?

Conclusion: Temptations are common to all men, so let us expect them. Beware of yielding to sin. To fall is easy, to get forgiveness from God by confession of sin is easy, but scars often remain. Know the importance of immediate restoration of fellowship with God by confession and repentance.

181. What Sin Does To Us. Psalm 51

Bible Reading: Psalm 51 and II Samuel 12:1-25.

Aim: To show the **dangers** of sin, the need to **avoid** sin, and the need to **seek forgiveness** of sins.

Introduction: Sin is very destructive. Its consequences are worse than first thought. We sin in our:

- a) Thoughts -- by what we allow to enter our mind through our eyes and ears.
- b) Words -- by what we say that we shouldn't say e.g. betraying confidences, slander, lies.
- c) Deeds -- as David committed adultery and murder.

Psalm 51 records David's confession, where we see the effects of sin on David and on ourselves.

Let these effects of sin in Psalm 51 warn us against tolerating sins in our lives. Sin:

1. Is Breaking God's Law. (v.1). "Blot out my Transgressions" = revolt against God's law.

Iniquity = perverseness in our nature. Sin = missing the mark, falling short. (Romans 3:23).

2. Makes us feel Guilty and Dirty. (v.2). "Wash me from my iniquity". He looked at himself and saw,

- a) a Diary – that contained a record of his deeds so foul that he pleaded with God to blot it out. "My sin is ever before me." (v.3). We can't undo the past, but God can blot out the damning record.
- b) a Dress – his dress had been trampled in the dirt and needed to be washed. No light soaking or rinsing would cleanse the ingrained dirt. "Wash me thoroughly..." (v.2).
- c) a Disease – he needed to be cleansed from. "Cleanse me" (v.2).

3. Dwells in our memory, (v.3) as a ghost that haunts us. He saw the hurt eyes of Bathsheba, the crying eyes of his sick baby, the cynical eyes of Joab, the dead eyes of Uriah, the disrespectful eyes of his sons. The way we hurt others, returns to accuse us and to occupy our minds. "my sin is ever before me."

4. Offends God (v.4), as well as Bathsheba, her parents, the baby. It places us under God's judgment.

5. Sin robs us of Truth and Wisdom (v.6) if not confessed. Why? Because through fear we tell lies to cover up our sins. We lose wisdom because we accuse sin in others, but we excuse sin in ourselves.

6. Sin takes our JOY and WISDOM (v.8,12). Anything that does this should be dealt with seriously.

7. Sin causes us to FEEL REJECTED. (v.9). "Hide thy face from my sins."

When sin accuses us we feel distant from God and from others.

8. Sin makes us FEEL DIRTY. (v.10). "Create in me a clean heart". We all hate feeling dirty.

9. Sin DEFILES our spirit. (v.10). "Renew a right spirit within me." Sin wounds and hurts us in our spiritual life. It stops us serving God. We then feel guilty before God & envious of victorious Christians

10. Sin makes God seem DISTANT (v.11). "Cast me not away from thy presence."

11. Sin stops us from soul winning, Bible Teaching and from disciplining others. (v.13).

Our mind is so occupied with our own sin, guilt and trying to fix the consequences of our sin, that we stop doing the really important things that we are meant to do, like preaching the gospel and teaching God's Word. Sin sidetracks us from doing God's will. We are then prone to accusing and attacking good Christians, to pull them down to our level, so we don't feel so guilty.

12. Sin stops us from SINGING, and PRAISING God (v.14,15), but confession of sin to God restores fellowship and brings singing and praise. "Lord open thou my lips; & my mouth shall shew forth thy praise."

Lessons David learned:

1. The sin question was to be dealt with on **spiritual, not ceremonial grounds.** (v.16,17).

After Nathan's parable, David flung himself in repentance and remorse at God's feet. Nathan looked at the sobbing King and said: "God hath put away thy sin." No ox, no lambs, no burnt offerings would suffice, just the Word of God. What God really wanted from the sinner was a broken and contrite heart. (v.17). That was the true sacrifice God required. This was a big advance on the theology of the day.

2. David looked forward to a **restored, built up Millennial city of Jerusalem** (v.18,19).

"build thou the walls of Jerusalem." (v.18). David leaps from his repentance to the repentance of Israel at the end of the age. Millennial sacrifices (v.19) will be memorial.

3. "Be sure your sin will find you out." (Numbers 32:23). God will discipline believers for sin. David's murder of Uriah reaped the results of 4 of his sons untimely death: the baby (II Sam.12), Amnon (II Sam.13), Absalom (II Sam.18) and Adonijah (I Kings 2:25). (Exodus 22:1; II Sam. 12:6; Luke 19:8).

Conclusion: What sins does God want you to repent of ? Turn from them today. Sin's consequences are too expensive for us and for those we love.

182. Satan: The Accuser Of The Brethren. The devil accuses us in 4 ways:

1) **The Devil accuses US before God.** Revelation 12:10; Job 1:6.

The Devil's lie was that Job served God only because God gave him health and wealth.

For many Christians, the devil can go to God, and not have to lie in accusing us.

This means that what the devil says is true. One little problem comes along, and many of us give up.

We need to understand what the devil is doing in our life. He is accusing us. Even if we are guilty, God knows it. Live well enough so that when the devil accuses us, he has to make up a lie to God.

2) **The Devil will accuse GOD to us.**

The Devil tells us that **God is trying to stop us having fun.** When the devil accuses God to us, does he get anywhere? The Christian leaders that you are blaming are trying to preserve your fun. The devil comes when we are tired, depressed, stressed or hurt and says, "I told you it would get hard." In the Bible, everything God did was good. I'm amazed that the devil can accuse a guilty sinner to a Holy God and get nowhere, and yet accuse a Holy God to a guilty sinner and get somewhere.

Question: Are you listening to the **devil's lies about God?** If the devil uses the words "if" (Matthew 4) or "Why?" to us, we are close to having a wrong conversation with him. Blame the devil, he started sin.

3) **The Devil accuses US to EACH OTHER,** then we begin to hate and criticize each other.

Is there some believer you avoid, who you won't greet, or who you have an unresolved grievance with? These sins cause splits in a church, as others feel compelled to take sides to try to fix the problem.

Question: Why are you accusing each other? I thought we were on the same team. Aren't we all fighting the same enemy? When Christians stop soul winning and stop fighting the devil, they then start fighting each other. It's time to build God's work, not to pull it down by fighting each other for petty reasons.

"A wicked doer giveth heed to false lips." Proverbs 17:4. God hates false witnesses. (Proverbs 6:16).

4) The Devil accuses **US to OURSELVES.**

Every time you sin, the devil will magnify it, and say something like: "God can't use you, look at your sin." When the devil brings up your past, you bring up **his future** (in the lake of fire). **Us dwelling on our past sins** that we have confessed, is like a little boy's cat that died. He buried it with its tail sticking out of the ground. Each day he kept pulling it out of the ground to see if it was still dead. Each day it looked a little worse, and smelled a little worse. You may have a bad past, but you have a bright future.

Question: God has given us eternal life. What are we doing for God to show our thanks to Him?

Conclusion: 1) Reinforce your love for each other. 2) Forget the past, and look to the future.

3) Reject the devil's accusations about you, God and others.

Jesus Christ was accused of 6 main things:

i) **Breaking the Sabbath.** The disciples **gathered & ate grain** on a Sabbath. Mat12:1-8. His defence was:

a) **David** entered the house of God and ate the showbread with his hungry soldiers (I Samuel 21:6).

b) **Priests** on the Sabbath day profane the Sabbath by working, and are blameless (Numbers 28:9-10,24)

c) **Christ** is greater than the Temple and He has authority over it. (Matthew 12:6).

d) God is seeking **mercy** and compassion from us above ritual sacrifice. (Matthew 12:7).

e) Christ has **authority** over the Sabbath itself. (Matthew 12:8).

ii) **Healing on the Sabbath.** His defence was that: a) It was **right** to heal on the Sabbath (Matthew 12:11)

b) Man is **worth much more** than a sheep or an ass that they would rescue on the Sabbath. Matth.12:12.

iii) **Fellowshipping** with publicans and sinners. A publican was a tax collector (Matthew 9:11; Luke 7:34). His defence was that he came not to call the righteous, but to bring sinners to repentance.

iv) **Forbidding** men to **pay tribute to Caesar** (Luke 23:2). This was false because Christ paid tribute. (Matt.17:24-27). He said it was right to pay to Caesar and to God what was due to each (Matt.22:17-21)

v) **Claiming to be God** by **forgiving sins** (Luke 5:20-24). This was true of Christ.

vi) **Planning to destroy the temple** and to rebuild it in 3 days (John 2:19-21).

He spoke of the Temple of His body which was to be raised from the dead after 3 days.

vii) **Claiming to be Christ, the Son of God** (Matthew 26:63,34). True.

Satan accuses the Christian daily before the throne of God (Job 1:6-12; 2:1-8; Rev.12:9-10), but we rejoice that Christ stands there as our Advocate to plead His shed blood and to defend us (I John 2:1-2). Christians are falsely accused, but ought not be rightly accused of evil (I Peter 3:17; 4:12-19; Mat 5:11-12)

183. What Pleases God

Bible Reading: John 8:19-32.

Aim: To please God in all that we say and do.

Introduction: One of the greatest secrets of the successful Christian life is to please God instead of pleasing ourselves or other people, such as the ungodly crowd. Jesus Christ's autobiography can be summarised by John 8:29 "I do always those things that please him."

I. Some other Biographies of Jesus Christ are:

- i) "The Son of Man is come to seek and to save that which was lost." Luke 19:10.
- ii) "The Word was made flesh and dwelt among us ... full of grace and truth." John 1:14.
- iii) In eternity past, the Son is saying to the Father, regarding His incarnation, life on earth, death for our sins and resurrection, "I delight to do thy will, O God." Psalm 40:8.
- iv) As a boy He said, "I must be about my Father's business." Luke 2:49.
- v) At Jesus' baptism, the Father said 'Thou art my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased' Mark 1:11
- vi) Peter at Cornelius' house said of Jesus that He "went about doing good." Acts 10:38.
- vii) Peter said of Jesus that He was a "man approved of God." Acts 2:22.
- viii) Jesus pleased His Father in life, "The pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand" Isaiah 53:10
- ix) Jesus pleased God in death, "Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him." Isaiah 53:10.
- x) "For even Christ pleased not himself." Romans 15:3.

The one consuming passion in Christ's life was to please the Father. Nothing else mattered.

Lesson: The most miserable and wretched life is one that constantly tries to please itself. Away with the selfish life. "Get all I can and can all I get" doesn't make anyone happy. If we want to please God, we must find out what pleases Him. If you, young man are courting a young lady, you find out what she likes and do it. Husbands, find out what your wife wants and do it. Give her what she likes.

II. The Bible tells us what pleases God. It pleases the Father when:

1) We exalt His Son. "He is the head of the body, the church:...that in all things he might have the preeminence. For it pleased the Father that in him should all fullness dwell." Colossians 1:18,19.

This means that we should exalt the Lord Jesus Christ who contains all the fullness of God.

It pleases the Father when we talk about Jesus Christ. Good songs to sing are:

"What a friend we have in Jesus", "All hail the power of Jesus' name", "No one ever cared for me like Jesus", "Let's talk about Jesus, the King of Kings is He, the Lord of Lords supreme, through all eternity. The great I am the way, the Truth, the Life, the Door. Let's talk about Jesus more and more."

2) We Do Good. Hebrews 13:15,16.

"But to do good and to communicate forget not: for with such sacrifices God is well pleased."

By doing good, we please God, such as when we help others, or buy things for those in need. Some people for \$AU 1000 could buy a church building in Africa. Don't hoard your money all to yourself. Use it to help others, and get the gospel out, so you can still enjoy the effects of your money when you are 150 years old, 200, 1000, 1 million years old. It pleases God when we do something for others to help them know Jesus Christ. This is why we emphasise soul winning, missions and literature.

3) We Love One Another.

"We then that are strong ought... not to please ourselves. Let every one of us please his neighbour for his good to edification. For even Christ pleased not himself..." Romans 15:1-3.

If you love others you'll exhort them to get busy serving God. Some day you'll have to face Jesus Christ and tell Him why you wasted so much time in laziness on earth. I want you to enjoy heaven more and not to be ashamed at Christ's coming. God wants us to love one another.

Question: Do you hate anybody today?

Question: Did you criticise anyone lately? That doesn't please the Father.

Question: Have you stood in the way of sinners, or sat in the seat of the scornful? or criticised some good Bible preacher? That doesn't please God. God is pleased when brethren dwell together in unity. (Psalm 133:1,2,3). To God, it smells like ointment. God says, "When my people love each other, it smells like sweet perfume. If they fight each other, it stinks."

4) We are **Fruitful**.

“That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being **fruitful** in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God.” Colossians 1:10.

When you bear fruit by leading someone to Christ, there is much pleasure in heaven (Luke 15:7,10).

Question: Are you bearing fruit for Jesus Christ?

5) We **Praise Him**.

“I will praise the name of God, with a song and will magnify him with thanksgiving. This also shall please the Lord.” Psalm 69:30,31.

God would rather have heartfelt praise than temple sacrifices or good intentions. It pleases the Father:

- a) When you lead someone to Christ & they tell someone: ‘I have received Jesus Christ as my Saviour’.
- b) When someone gets baptised, and praises Christ for saving him.
- c) When we go soul-winning, and tell sinners how good God is.
- d) When we praise God in hard times.
- e) When we come to church and praise God in song.
- f) When we disciple people so they get back into fellowship with God & praise Him. That pleases God.

6) We **pray for a wise and understanding heart** to serve others, as Solomon prayed. I Kings 3:9,10.

Question: Do you study God’s Word to become wise to serve God and people better?

7) We **preach the gospel to lost sinners**. “It pleased God by the foolishness of preaching, to save them that believe.” I Corinth.1:21. Many Christians fear soul-winning because they may look foolish before men. God is pleased when we are prepared to look foolish for Him so sinners can get saved.

8) We **seek to please God rather than men**.

“If I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ.” Galatians 1:10. It pleases God when we are prepared to take a stand against the ungodly crowd and the ways of the world.

9) We **walk with God** in sweet fellowship, as Enoch did. “Enoch walked with God: and he was not; for God took him.” Genesis 5:21-24; and “he had this testimony, that he pleased God.” Hebrews 11:5. Enoch pleased God by walking with God in the midst of an evil world. Do you walk daily with God?

10) We **do things by Faith and Obedience**. “But without faith it is impossible to please God.”

Hebrews 11:6. It pleases God when we obey and trust Him in hard situations.

11) When **we give God’s Word out to people**. “So shall my word be that goeth forth... it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please.” Isaiah 55:11.

12) When **we choose the things that please God**. “Choose the things that please me.” Isaiah 56:4,5. These include such things as giving Sunday and our lives wholly to serving God.

13) When **we are filled with the Holy Spirit**, and not led by the flesh.

“They that are in the flesh cannot please God.” Romans 8:8.

14) When we **don’t entangle ourselves in the affairs of this life**, but seek to please Christ who has chosen us to be a soldier. II Timothy 2:4. We are soldiers for Jesus Christ.

15) We **bless Israel**. “When Balaam saw that it pleased the Lord to bless Israel.” Numbers 24:1.

“I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee.” (Genesis 12:3).

16) When **we abstain from fornication**. “please God, that ye should abstain from fornication” (I Thess. 4:1-8). God avenges (v.6) those who fornicate and defraud (take advantage of) others.

III. **Things That Displease God**

1) When people kill and persecute Christians. I Thess. 2:15,16 “Who killed the Lord... they please not God”

2) When people commit adultery. David in 2 Samuel 11:27 “the thing David had done displeased the Lord”

3) When people rejoice when their enemy falls. Proverbs 24:17,18.

4) When people complain. Numb. 11:1; I Cor 10:5,9,10 “When the people complained, it displeased the Lord”

5) When people are proud of their achievements. I Chron 21:1-7,8 “Satan .provoked David to number Israel”

6) When justice & judgment on sin is not done. Isaiah 59:14,15 “it displeased him that there was no judgment”

7) When people turn children away from Jesus. Mark 10:13-16 “when Jesus saw it he was much displeased.”

Conclusion: Do you please God or displease God? Do you please yourself? Do you seek to please the ungodly crowd? What are you doing that is displeasing to God? Get right with God today.

184. “The Snare Of The Fowler”

Bible Reading: Psalm 124:1-8. v.7

“Our soul is escaped as a bird out of the snare of the fowlers: the snare is broken.” Psalm 124:7a.

Aim: To recognise the devil’s snares and to avoid them.

Introduction: In Psalm 124, the **bird** represents people. The **Fowler** (one who would trap that bird) represents Satan. The **snare** represents the traps that Satan lays for us.

- a) II Timothy 2:25,26 reminds **all Christians** that the devil lays snares to trap us to be ineffective.
- b) I Timothy 3:7 warns **preachers** about the snares and traps the devil has for them.
- c) I Timothy 6:9 warns the **rich** about the snare of riches.

Satan is after your soul. If you are not saved, he will do all he can to stop you coming to Jesus Christ.

Consider this:

- 1) If the devil can’t get your soul, he wants your life
- 2) If the devil can’t get your life, he wants your testimony
- 3) If the devil can’t get your testimony, he wants your joy
- 4) If the devil can’t get your joy, he wants your fruitfulness
- 5) If the devil can’t get your fruitfulness, he wants your time
- 6) If the devil can’t get your time, he wants your talent
- 7) If the devil can’t get your talent, he wants your zeal
- 8) If the devil can’t get your zeal, he wants to rob you of your rewards.

The devil has set a trap for everyone of us. Somewhere in life, you are going to face that trap.

He’s trying to trap you in a snare. The fowler doesn’t care about the age of the birds he traps.

I. Notice these things about the bird:

1) The bird is a sparrow. (Matthew 10:29,31 “ye are of more value than many sparrows.”)

A sparrow is a small bird, not very strong, not very attractive, not very intelligent. The little sparrow comes to the trap, not knowing that there’s something inside that will make him a slave or captive.

He begins to nibble on the nice bait that smells and looks so good. That food is not for his good but for his capture and enslavement.

The only hope for the trapped sparrow is someone on the outside setting him free.

There’s nothing that he or some bird can do to help him get free. He’s trapped.

Lesson: There’s nothing a man can do to save his own soul or deliver himself from his own sin.

It takes someone from the outside. “**He** shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler.” (Psalm 91:3).

Only God can deliver you from the snare of sin. An alcoholic can’t be delivered by AA. They are just a bunch of birds trying to help each other get out. If you’re bound by booze, the only answer is the gospel and power of Jesus Christ.

2) A sparrow is so insignificant. In Matthew 10:29,31 we find that 2 sparrows were sold for 1 farthing (¼ cent). This is 1/8 cent each. In Luke 12:6,7, “Are not five sparrows sold for 2 farthings” (½ cent).

This means that one sparrow was thrown in for free. God didn’t make us feel very important when He compared us to a sparrow. You’d like to be a parrot or a budgie or an eagle.

Yet “one of them shall not fall to the ground without your Father.” (Matthew 10:29). This means that if you fall, your heavenly Father has permitted it. Our heavenly Father takes note of that little sparrow.

God knows and cares today if your heart is broken, if you’re sad, lonely or broken.

3) The sparrow is an ignorant bird. When God wanted something to represent the soul of man he chose an ignorant bird. The sparrow thinks he knows what’s best, but he doesn’t. He looks at the food, is hungry and gets closer. He then enters the trap, is trapped and cannot escape.

Lesson: You’d think people who had seen so many alcohol and cigarette related deaths would not drink alcohol or smoke cigarettes, but they do and they still get caught. Teens are inexcusable to smoke.

Lesson: If you hang around a trap, you will get caught in the trap. Many of the “only one drink” crowd are now alcoholics. Many of the “only one-wrong-school” crowd are now atheists.

II. What Types Of Snares Exists?

A snare is a baited trap to catch birds, or animals. Some had loops of wire or rope to tighten around a victim’s neck. Some had 2 jaws which trapped an animal’s foot. The snare might be a camouflaged net over a pit into which the victim fell. They were triggered automatically or operated from a distance.

The elements of concealment, surprise or attractive bait that led to the animal's capture, well applies to traps people face that are set by the devil. Some traps include:

- 1) False gods which were snares to Israel ("their gods shall be a snare unto you." Judges 2:3).
- 2) The harlot was a snare to the one who follows her (Proverbs 7:23 'as a bird hasteth to the snare').
- 3) Riches are a snare to the man who seeks wealth ('they that will be rich fall into a snare.' I Tim 6:9).
- 4) Bad crowd. ("the way of the ungodly shall perish." Psalm 1:6).
- 5) Alcohol, cigarettes, drugs.
- 6) False religions eg: JW, Roman Catholicism, Mormonism, Islam.
- 7) Love of money (I Timothy 6:9-11).
- 8) Wrong education – "Cease, my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge." Proverbs 19:27.
- 9) Wrong dating and wrong marriage.
- 10) Modern Bible versions.
- 11) Wrong Bible/Theological Colleges.
- 12) Para church organisations not under the authority of any church.
- 13) Bad movies, books or pornography. These are very addictive.
- 14) Rock music, clubs, discos.
- 15) New Evangelical churches that don't preach against sin.

Notice the following snares or dirty tricks that people may try to trap you with:

- 1) The **Rich man's trap**: A rich man in a church who claims to be a Christian, offers you (the pastor) some money to help you. You think, "What a wonderfully kind man." So you take it. Later on, he wants you to do something, such as give him a position in the church, or implement an idea of his. If you refuse to let him have his way, he often turns on you in anger, asks for the large sum of money back immediately and slanders you to others in the church. At this point he decides to leave the church. Because he is angry at the pastor, he decides to "punish" the pastor by recruiting some undiscerning, simple church members to his cause, slandering the pastor to them to get them to leave the church. If they are backslidden or non soul winners, or convicted by the pastor's preaching against some sin of theirs, or already resenting the pastor over some minor issue, they will readily listen to such lying slander and join the rebellion (like Korah, Dathan and Abiram- Numbers 16; Deut. 11:6) and leave the church in anger against the pastor. This is how God purges backsliders out of a sound church to keep a good church on the right path. These backsliders often go to a lukewarm church that rarely doorknocks or wins souls, but tells them what they want to hear and lets them stay lukewarm. This is an important time for all godly church members to remember all the good the pastor has done and have the courage to strongly and vocally support him 100% in his time of need. If he quits, you will suffer and no other pastor may want to take his place if this is how you treat pastors. This is how a church becomes ruled by non soul-winning deacons or by a committee. At these times, your love to the pastor is tested.
- 2) The **Modern Bible Version translator's trap/trick**: Because such translators need to make a profit, they need to persuade people to buy their "bibles". They do this by telling the unsuspecting Christian public that due to modern manuscript discoveries and greater modern scholarship that their new version is so much "easier to understand" than the KJV or previous modern versions. What they don't tell the public is that this new version (such as the NIV) has removed about 2% of the New Testament. This is because of its translation from the corrupt Codex Vaticanus. At \$20 a copy as well as copyright royalties, they make a lot of money. Next year they bring out a newer version and tell the public how much better it is than last year's modern version. At another \$20 a copy they make even more money.
- 3) The **Fornicators trap/trick**: A young man who has attended a humanistic "self authority" school becomes friendly with a nice young lady. He wants to have sex with her without being committed to her in marriage. He tells her lies such as:
 - a) I can't make up my mind to marry you, so let's live together to see if we are compatible, or
 - b) We can't afford to get married now, so let's live together until we can afford it.If the young lady foolishly agrees to live with him, it is likely that they won't marry, but split up around age 30. She then discovers that many eligible men that she might have married, have married someone else. She feels left on the shelf and has to start looking again for Mr. Right. What a disaster for her!

4) The **Cheap Quote Builders trap/trick**: If you need to contract with a builder to build a house or church, cross off the cheapest quote, especially if it is from a small builder. These small builders often desperately need to sign you up in order to use the money you pay them to pay their tradesmen from a previous job. During the course of the project, he will increase the price by submitting to you numerous claims for variations due to extra costs that were “not expected”. If you refuse to pay him, he may threaten to stop the job and do no further work until you pay him everything he wants. He then has you completely over a barrel. At the end of the job, you are paying the greatest amount of money in interest to your bank (maybe over \$5000 per month interest). He may also sue you in the court for his money. Now you must hire a solicitor and barrister to defend yourself from possible loss and bankruptcy. In addition, no other builder is willing to take over the job in case you sue him for the first builder’s defects. Your fixed price contract means nothing, because you must be willing to spend 5 years in court to enforce it. Often he will have no money in his company, so even if you win the case, you still get no money out of him to recover your losses or costs. If you can’t pay your solicitor, he may sue you or threaten to not release the file and do no further work until you pay his fees. If you have no more money he will demand that you sign a mortgage over your home and/or the building project to give him the right to take his fees out of your home or the project. If you refuse, you lose the case against the builder who is suing you and you may go bankrupt.

5) The **Dishonest Lawyer’s trap/trick**: When the builder sues you, a lawyer must be hired to defend you. You ask a lawyer for his estimate of fees to finish the job. He deliberately underquotes to get the job. He might say \$5000. After 3 weeks his fees pass \$5000 and you begin to wonder how high they will climb. Three years later his fees exceed \$250,000 and the builder gets wound up by another of his creditors, or you lose on a technicality, or you both have to agree to walk away and pay your own costs. The lawyer wins and you lose.

6) The **Business Partner’s trap/trick**: If you enter a business venture with a partner, he will expect an equal share in any profits. If you start making losses, most partners will decide to stop paying their share of the losses and walk away to leave you to pay all the losses yourself. If he is a Christian, you can’t sue him because of I Cor. 6:1-8. You end up losing everything and he may lose very little. Don’t enter into business with any partner, be they Christian or unbeliever.

7) The **Para Church Organization Trap/Trick**: a) This appears as Para Church Organizations (PCO) wanting to preach in your church about their ministry, so you will support them financially. They want your money, but have no intention of submitting to your authority if you want them to do things God’s way. They are under the authority of the PCO, not your church. They will all believe in the Universal Church, but they come to local churches for their support. They will not believe in separation or rebuking error (Romans 16:17), but will go to many churches who hold false doctrines to get money.

b) A variation of this is that a PCO may visit your church trying to recruit students for their theological college. They will try to persuade your most promising young people to go study at their college so they can turn them away from you and your church and recruit them to their PCO. Their idea is, You win them to Christ, train them to be fruitful soul winners, and the PCO “pinch” them to spread the many errors of the PCO (eg: Modern versions, Universal church, non separation, Calvinism, etc). It is better to tell the PCO person at the start where his PCO is wrong, tell him to leave it, or leave your church. Otherwise he’ll rob you of your best people who may have become great preachers.

Conclusion: The only person who ever set foot on this earth who is not a bird or in our sinful condition is the Lord Jesus Christ. He is the only one who can rescue you from sin.

Illustration: A lion got loose from the zoo and they couldn’t catch him. They put a lamb in a cage. The lion became hungry, entered the cage, ate the lamb, then found himself trapped. There’s another lion loose today (the devil - I Peter 5:8). He’s after you. I know how he can be caught. A lamb was placed in a cage. The lamb that taketh away the sin of the world. The Lord Jesus Christ went to the cross. The devil attacked Jesus. The Lamb of God died. Satan thought he had him, but when Satan tried to exit the cage, he found he was trapped. Your safety depends on you taking the Lamb of God as your Saviour.

- 1) The snare is **concealed**.
- 2) The snare is **attractive**.
- 3) The snare is **counterfeit**. **Beware of the snare!!!!!!**

185. Four Wise Little Preachers tell us four facts about salvation. Proverbs 30:24-28.

1. **ANT** teaches us WHEN to be saved. (v.25).

Question: What wise thing is the ant doing?

Answer: Storing food for winter, and preparing for his future. Ants tells us that we should get saved in the summer time of the youth of our life, not in the winter of old age.

2. **CONY** teaches us WHERE to be saved. (v.26).

When a fox chases a cony (like a rabbit), the cony cannot fight back, so the cony runs for protection to a big rock. Satan is chasing every sinner, but the wise person runs to Jesus Christ, the Rock of Ages for protection. Many people try to hide behind their good works or religion instead of Christ. Where is your faith and trust? In Christ or in something else?

3. **LOCUST** teaches us the JOY of being saved. (v.27).

Locusts have no visible King, yet something invisible holds them together. Christians have no visible King, yet the Holy Spirit draws us together around Christ as we joyfully go out together to serve God. Locusts sing in the night. Can you joyfully sing of God's salvation in the night of this wicked world?

4. **SPIDER** teaches us HOW to be saved. (v.28.)

The spider is in King's palaces, not one palace, but many palaces. Jesus told us about not one mansion, but many mansions. ("In my Father's house are many mansions." John 14:2).

What a place for a spider to be – in Kings palaces; but more amazing is we, redeemed sinners, will be in God's palaces (mansions) in heaven. A spider in a house tells us that bad people can get into good places by faith in Christ as their Saviour. A spider trusts herself to a thin thread and can go anywhere; just like FAITH in Christ (Eph. 2:8,9). We must trust all our weight on God's promises in His Word. We are not saved by the size of our faith, but by the direction of our faith (in Christ).

Question: Will you trust Jesus Christ as your Saviour, and receive the gift of eternal life?

God will then give you something to rejoice about here on earth and later in heaven.

186. Simple Things of the Christian Life

Bible Reading: Psalm 37:1-40.

Aim: To ensure that we continue in these basic simple things in our Christian lives.

Introduction: Believers fail in their Christian lives and drop out of serving God because they stop doing the basic things. If these basic things are practised in our lives, we will have a great impact for Jesus Christ in the lives of others.

Question: Are these simple basic things in your life?

1. David **LOVED** the Lord. His heart was right with God. (Psalm 18:1,2; 31:23; 37:4).

2. **TRUST** in the Lord's promises. Have faith in the Bible. (Psalm 31:19; 37:3).

3. **WAIT** upon the Lord. Be patient for God to bring His plans to pass. Serve God while waiting. (Isaiah 40:31; Psalm 37:34). Rest in the Lord. Don't worry. (Psalm 37:7).

4. **WORK**. "I must work the works of him that sent me, while it is day." (John 9:4). Don't be idle.

5. **SIT** at the feet of Jesus, hearing His Word (Luke 10:38-42), studying God's Word and praying.

6. **LOOKING** for that blessed hope (Titus 2:13). Expect Christ's return. Be ready for it.

7. **CONSIDER** one another to provoke unto love and good works. (Hebrews 10:24,25).

Be committed to serving God in your local, soul-winning church.

8. **SPEAK** words of encouragement often one to another about the Lord. (Malachi 3:16,17).

9. **GO** and preach the gospel to every creature. (Mark 16:15). **FIND** people for Jesus.

"Andrew findeth Simon." (John 1:40,41) "Philip findeth Nathanael." (John 1:45).

Go soul winning weekly and this will help keep your heart right with God.

10. They **CONTINUED STEADFASTLY** in the apostles' doctrine, in fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers. (Acts 2:42). Don't just start well, but continue well, and finish well.

Faithfulness is needed, so that we can finish our race.

Conclusion: Are you focused on getting the simple things right? If you do, then you will have a big impact for God in the lives of others.

187. Are You a Comforter?

Bible Reading: 2 Corinthians 1:1-24.

Memory Verse: “Bear ye one another’s burdens, and so fulfil the law of Christ.” Galatians 6:2.

Aim: For us to be determined to comfort and edify each other, (rather than to pull others down).

Introduction: One of the greatest needs is people who are comforters. The world has so much:

- 1) wickedness and depressing things
- 2) harsh and critical people
- 3) difficult situations and
- 4) disappointments and discouragements, that life’s burden can be great and difficult to bear.

A wonderful thing about **coming to God’s house** is that we can be among people:

- who love God and love each other.
- who will build each other up,
- who will comfort each other so we can better carry on under the trials of life.
- who will lift us up and cheer us, who will give us hope and joy to carry on, people
- who are with us when we are down, people
- who we can trust will not treat us badly, people
- who will be a blessing to us and to our children.

The main lesson we want to consider today is how we can:

- a) be comforted ourselves, and
- b) be a comforter of others.

Example: One job of a pastor is to comfort those who need comforting. Anything that hinders his ability to comfort others, is an attack on those needing comforting. Let’s build an atmosphere of comfort, love and encouragement where we can all grow to our maximum spiritual potential.

Question: What Brings Comfort to us?

1. The **Holy Spirit** comforts us compared to the enemy who accuses us. John 14:16-18.

When Saul’s attacks on the churches ceased at his conversion, we see these events in Acts 9:31.

- a) the churches had rest – what a relief, what peace.
- b) the churches were edified – they had a chance to develop, grow and build.
- c) the people walked in the fear of God and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost.
- d) the churches multiplied.

The Holy Spirit seeks to comfort believers and churches.

As we are filled with and led by the Holy Spirit, showing the fruit of the Spirit, we are comforted.

2. The **Scriptures** give us patience, comfort and hope. Romans 15:4,5.

As we read the life stories of Bible characters, we see how:

- a) They endured trials and God brought them through;
 - b) They sacrificed and brought blessings to many peoples lives;
 - c) Good came out of bad situations. This gives us patience to endure trials, comfort that God is working out His plans, and hope that we will be kept safe. This is one reason why we read the Bible and why it is so popular. The Bible gives us patience, comfort and hope.
3. **Preaching** is a comfort to us. “But he that prophesieth (or preaches) speaketh unto men to edification (strengthen), and exhortation (encourage), and comfort.” I Corinthians 14:3.

Preaching is meant to edify (strengthen), exhort (encourage) and comfort (console) believers.

4. **Return of a faithful Christian friend.** Four men who comforted others are:

- a) **Titus** coming in II Corinthians 7:4-6. “God...comforted us by the coming of Titus.” (v.6). Paul tells how in Macedonia, he and his workers had no rest, but were troubled on every side. Outside were fightings. Inside were fears. Paul said in v.6 that comfort came from 2 sources.
 - i) God comforts those who are cast down, and
 - ii) God comforted us by the coming of Titus.

Titus coming to Paul was a great comfort because Titus was committed to helping build people up. He was a blessing and a joy to be with. Is your coming a comfort and a blessing to others, or a curse?

- b) **Tychicus**’ arrival comforted the Ephesian’s hearts. Ephesians 6:21,22.

c) **Timothy** comforted Paul by giving a good report of the Christians at Philippi. Philippians 2:19.

Timothy came to Thessalonica to comfort and establish them in the faith. I Thessalonians 3:2.

d) **Justus**, Paul's fellow worker, comforted Paul. Colossians 4:11.

5. The **Return Of Christ** comforts us. I Thess. 4:13-18. "Comfort one another with these words."

What words? i) Don't sorrow hopelessly at the death of our loved ones. v.13.

ii) The dead in Christ are with Christ in heaven. v.14.

iii) The dead in Christ will rise first. v.14-16.

iv) We will be caught up with them to meet the Lord in the air.

v) We will ever be with the Lord. v.17.

6. Other believers **Faith** and **Commitment** to God, their local church and the work of God is a great comfort to all believers who are watching.

"We were comforted ...in all our affliction and distress by your faith." I Thessalonians 3:7,8.

Your faith, faithfulness and commitment to God's work and to each other is a great comfort to other church members. On the other hand, disloyalty is a discomfort to others.

If we stand fast and hold the traditions we've been taught by the Apostles in the NT, we will comfort others and be established in every good word and work. II Thessalonians 2:15-17.

7. Thoughts of **going to Heaven** is a comfort. Luke 16:25.

"Now he is comforted and thou art tormented." No matter how bad things get, we have the comfort of looking forward to joy and happiness forever in Heaven. This is especially true for those who finish the work that God has given them to do. They can look forward to receiving a crown of righteousness for faithfully serving Christ to the end. I Timothy 4:6-8.

8. **Speaking Good Words** to people comforts them. Rehoboam should have done this. I Kings 12:1-7.

Conclusion:

i) Comfort the feeble minded (3642 = little spirited, fainthearted, fretful, worried). I Thess. 5:14.

ii) Comfort those in trouble, by the comfort that we are comforted of God. II Corinthians 1:3-4.

iii) Comfort yourselves and edify one another even as ye do. I Thessalonians 5:11.

iv) Be of good comfort, be of one mind, live in peace. II Corinthians 13:11.

If you do these 8 things, you will be a true comforter.

188. Behold My Hands. Luke 24:39; John 20:27.

Jesus said this twice after His resurrection:

a) To His disciples. Luke 24:39. b) To doubting Thomas. John 20:27.

The fact that Jesus said this twice indicates the importance of this to us, especially at the time of His crucifixion and resurrection.

I. We learn the following about Jesus' hands:

1. **Crucified**, wounded hands - prove His Messiahship to Israel at His return. Zechariah 13:6.

2. **Welcoming** hands, stretched out to save sinners. Romans 10:21; Isaiah 65:2.

3. **Healing** hands. Mark 6:2,5.

4. **Creating** hands. Hebrew 1:10.

5. **Guiding** hands. Hebrews 8:9; Psalm 78:72.

6. **Judging** hands. Hebrews 10:31.

Note: Wicked hands killed Jesus Christ. Acts 2:23.

II. What kind of hands do you have? Do you have:

1. **Working** hands for others. I Thess. 4:11; I Cor. 4:12; Ephesians 4:28.

2. **Praying** hands. I Timothy 2:8.

3. **Blood-guilty, non soul winning hands**. Ezekiel 3:18; 33:8; Acts 20:26.

4. **Warring** hands, in the spiritual warfare. Psalm 18:34; 144:1.

5. **Clean/washed** hands. Psalm 24:4; James 4:8.

6. Right hand of **fellowship** extended to believers and strangers. Galatians 2:9.

7. **Weary** hands lifted up. Hebrews 12:2.

8. Handling the word of God **deceitfully**. I Corinthians 4:2.

189. Ask Now the Beasts and They Shall Teach Thee. Job 12:7.

Bible Reading: Leviticus 11:1-31 and 44-47.

Aim: To show character qualities that we need to develop and to avoid from the animal kingdom.

Introduction: Why did God forbid the Israelites from eating some animals, and permit them to eat others? Maybe because God wants to teach us about the importance of holiness to God and separation from the evil of the world. The Bible teaches us much about how animals represent spiritual character traits that we should develop. Let us ask the beasts and see what spiritual values they teach us.

1. Lion. “The righteous are bold as a lion.” Proverbs 28:1. The lion represents:

- a) A righteous believer who is serving Christ and winning souls is like a bold, fearless lion.
- b) Christ returning to conquer the world is called the “Lion of the tribe of Judah.” Revelation 5:5.
- c) Satan seeking to tempt us to sin and destruction is like a roaring lion seeking whom he may devour. I Peter 5:8.

2. Sheep or Lamb represents:

- a) Believers who follow Christ are like sheep. John 10:27.
- b) Foolish sinners are like sheep who’ve gone astray. Isaiah 53:6.
- c) Christ is called the Lamb of God that takes away the sin of the world (John 1:29), because of His sacrifice on the cross. (I Peter 1:19). He is sinless as represented by a spotless lamb.

3. Pig or Swine. “Neither cast ye your pearls before swine.” Matthew 7:6.

A pig represents a person who does not value spiritual things, and who is willing to attack faithful Christians. As pigs seek to wallow in the mud, so do sinners who seek and enjoy sin.

Question: Are you like a lamb who hates sin, or like a pig who loves sin?

4. Goats. Matthew 25:31-33.

Jesus Christ at His Second Coming separates the sheep from the goats. Sheep represent truly saved people who help persecuted Jews in the Tribulation. Goats represent unsaved people who don’t help these persecuted Jews. **Question:** Are you like a sheep or a goat? Are you saved or lost? Do you help, hinder or attack God’s people?

5. Fox. “Go ye and tell that fox (Herod).” Luke 13:31,32.

As a fox is cruel, deceitful, callous, wily and murderous, so Jesus compared Herod to a fox, because he showed these qualities. Let us not be deceitful, or handle God’s word deceitfully.

6. Sloth. “The slothful shall be under tribute.” Proverbs 12:24.

As a sloth is very slow in its movements, so this animal well describes the lazy, disorganised, slow moving, procrastinating lifestyle of some people. **Question:** Are you lazy like a sloth?

7. Ant. “Go to the ant thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: Which having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer.” (Proverbs 6:6-11).

Ants having no overseer work diligently, cooperatively and willingly to provide food for the future.

Question: Do we work hard and efficiently to lay up treasures in heaven? Do we work with other believers in our church to win people to Christ and train them to serve God?

8. Wolves. “Grievous wolves shall enter in among you, not sparing the flock.” Acts 20:29,30.

Wolves are fierce killers that prey on weak, vulnerable lambs.

Wolves describe false teachers who spread false doctrines which deceive, hurt and scatter Christians.

9. Snakes represent the devil (Genesis 3:1; II Cor. 11:13; Rev. 12:9), and alcohol (Proverbs 23:32).

10. Birds represent demons who snatch away the Word sown in a person’s heart. Matt.13:4,19; Rev 18:2.

11. Eagles. As an eagle flies away towards heaven (Proverbs 23:5) so an eagle represents the believer who “sets his affection on things above, on heaven, on eternal things.” (Colossians 3:2).

It pictures those that wait upon God in trust. (Isaiah 40:31; Job 39:26-30).

12. Dear or Hart. “As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God.” (Psalm 42:1). A dear represents believers who seek a closer relationship with God. Do you?

13. Ostrich. As an ostrich leaves her eggs and young ones in the earth, so it well describes parents who leave their young ones in the world or in Godless schools without close supervision. (Job 39:13-18).

Question: How can you supervise what your children pick up at a state school?

The ostrich represents Christians who don’t try to follow up new converts but leave them to the world.

14. Horse. As a horse is keen and strong to go to battle, so believers should be keen to enter the spiritual battle. (Job 39:19-25).

15. Fly. As flies in the ointment cause it to stink, so does a little foolishness damage one's good reputation. (Ecclesiastes 10:1).

16. Worm represents the loathsomeness and repulsiveness of sinful man in God's sight. (Job 25:6).

17. Sparrow. As God cares for sparrows, this shows God's care, love, watchfulness and protection over believers. (Matthew 10:29,31 and Luke 12:6,7).

18. Horseleach. "The horseleach hath two daughters, crying, give, give." (Proverbs 30:15).

The bloodsucking leach describes greedy people who try to get as much out of people as possible without showing mercy. This refutes much greed in today's business world.

19. Leopard cannot change its spots (Jeremiah 13:23). So a sinner cannot reform his sin nature or save himself from sin by his good works.

20. Dogs. "Beware of dogs, evil workers." Phil.3:2. "dog is turned to his own vomit again." (2 Pet2:22) Dogs represent unsaved false teachers who knew the truth and turned away from it.

Conclusion: When you see these animals, recall the lessons they teach. Which animals describe you?

190. God Is Able To ...

Bible Reading: Ephesians 6.

Aim: To encourage and comfort us in what God is able to do for us.

Introduction: What is God able to do for us? What is the Bible able to do for us? What does God expect that believers should be able to do if we apply God's resources? Are you doing these things?

I. God Is Able To

1. Save to the uttermost them that come unto God by him. Hebrews 7:25.
2. Keep us from falling. Jude 24.
3. Deliver us - from difficult and dangerous situations. Daniel 3:17.
4. Those that walk in pride He is able to abase. Daniel 4:37.
5. Fear him which is able to destroy body and soul in hell. Matthew 10:38.
6. To graft Israel in. This shows that God will restore Israel as a nation. Romans 11:23.
7. God is able to make him (another man's servant) stand. Romans 14:4.
8. To make all grace abound. 2 Corinthians 9:8.
9. To do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think. Ephesians 3:20.
10. To subdue all things unto himself. Philippians 3:21.
11. To keep that which I have committed unto him (my soul's salvation). 2 Timothy 1:12.
12. To succour (comfort) them that are tempted. Hebrews 2:18.
13. What he promised, he was able also to perform. Romans 4:21.

II. The Scriptures are able to:

1. Able to make thee wise unto salvation. 2 Timothy 3:15.
2. Able to build you up and give you an inheritance among them which are sanctified. Acts 20:32.

III. Believers should be:

1. Able to stand against the wiles of the devil, if we put on the whole armour of God. Eph. 6:11.
2. Able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Ephesians 6:13.
3. Able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked, by taking the shield of faith. Ephesians 6:16.
4. Able to teach others also. 2 Timothy 2:2.
5. Able by sound doctrine to exhort and convince the gainsayers. Titus 1:9.
6. Able to admonish one another. Romans 15:14 (Admonish = urge, warn, advise one another).
7. Able to remember Peter's writings after his decease. 2 Peter 1:5.

IV. What man is not able to do:

1. Who is able to stand before envy? Proverbs 27:4.
2. No man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand. John 10:29.
3. Not able to bear a yoke of works for salvation. Acts 15:10,11.
4. Not able to save himself from sin by his good works. Ephesians 2:8,9; Titus 3:5.

191. How Will God Summarize Your Life?

Bible Reading: Colossians 4.

Aim: To contribute something of value to the cause of Christ so we will be remembered for good.

Introduction: When you die, what will people remember you for, good, evil or nothing of value? What one phrase summarizes your life? On Pastor Jack Hyles' tomb are the words "a soul winner," along with his life verse, Daniel 12:3. What is your life verse? What is your greatest achievement or contribution for the Kingdom of God? God makes a point in Scripture of briefly summarizing many peoples lives by some statement. In heaven we will be given a new name. Christ "will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knows saving he that receiveth it." Rev.2:17 What will your new name tell about your life's character & work? Consider what God said about these:

1. **Moses** – my servant. Deuteronomy 34:5,10.
2. **Abraham** – the friend of God. James 2:23.
3. **Daniel** – a man greatly beloved. Daniel 9:23.
4. **David** – a man after mine own heart. Acts 13:22.
5. **Job** – perfect and upright, feared God, and eschewed (avoided) evil. Job 1:1,8.
6. **Centurion** – I have not found so great faith. Matthew 8:10.
7. **Cornelius** – devout, feared God with all his house, gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always (v.2). A just man, good report among the Jews. Acts 10:1,2,22.
8. **Timothy** – he worketh the work of the Lord, as I also do. I Cor. 16:10.
9. **Stephanus household** – have addicted themselves to the ministry of the saints. I Cor. 16:15.
10. **Tychicus** – a beloved brother and faithful minister in the Lord. Ephesians 6:22.
11. **Onesimus** – a faithful and beloved brother. Colossians 4:9.
12. **Justus** – a fellow worker and a comfort unto me. Colossians 4:11.
13. **Epaphras** – a servant of Christ, always labouring fervently for you in prayers.
– He has a great zeal for you. Colossians 4:12,13.
14. **Mark** – he is profitable to me for the ministry. II Timothy 4:11.
15. **Luke** – only Luke is with me. II Timothy 4:11.
16. **Onesiphorus** – he oft refreshed me, he was not ashamed of my chain, he sought me out very diligently (in Rome) and found me. II Timothy 1:16-18.
17. **Paul** – he is a chosen vessel. Acts 9:15.
18. **Lord Jesus Christ** – "I do always those things that please Him." John 8:29;
– "who went about doing good." Acts 10:38.
19. **Enoch** – walked with God. Genesis 5:24.
20. **Esau** – a fornicator, and a profane person. Hebrews 12:16,17.
21. **Children of Ephraim** –being armed and carrying bows, turned back in the day of battle. Psalm78:9
22. **Demas** – has forsaken me having loved this present world. II Timothy 4:10.
23. **Archippus** – fulfil your ministry. Colossians 4:17.
24. Thou wicked and slothful servant. Matthew 25:26.

Challenge: How will God summarise your life? How will God and man remember your life? Start doing something unselfish to help others so that you will be remembered for good in years to come.

192. People Christ Commended.

Aim: Will Christ commend you? Jesus Christ commended people for doing certain things. These were:

1. The **unjust steward** for planning and providing for the future. Luke 16:8.
2. The **poor widow** for generously giving to God's house. Luke 21:3.
3. The **persistent widow** for her continual pleading. Luke 18:3-7.
4. The **Samaritan leper** for his thankfulness for healing and salvation. Luke 17:18.
5. The **Good Samaritan**, for his unselfish kindness. Luke 10:36.
6. **Mary of Bethany**, for sitting at Jesus' feet, making learning God's Word a priority. Luke 10:42.
7. A **Roman Centurion** for his "so great faith" in believing Jesus' power to heal. Matthew 8:5-13.
8. The **Syrophenician woman**, for her great faith. Matthew 15:28.
9. **Peter** for his confession of faith as to who Jesus is. Who do you say that Jesus Christ is? Matt. 16:17.

193. Things That Deceive People

Bible Reading: Matthew 24:1-26 especially v. 4,11,24.

Aim: To avoid being deceived by things that easily deceive people.

Introduction: One of the main signs that Jesus gave in answer to when His return would be was “Take heed that no man deceive you.” Matthew 24:3-5.

The devil’s main work is to deceive people (Revelation 12:9,10; 13:14; 19:20; 20:10).

Knowledge of and obedience to God’s ways in the Bible are our best defence against Satan’s deception.

John warns us that many deceivers are entered into the world. II John 7.

Question: What tools does Satan use to deceive people?

- 1) **Strong alcoholic drink** deceives people. (Proverbs 20:1). It promises happiness but gives sorrow, fights, hangover and depression. (Proverbs 23:29-35).
- 2) Deceitfulness of **riches** choke the word and he becomes unfruitful. Riches deceive unbelievers into a false security that they don’t need God. Some rich Christians are deceived into thinking that they are too important to go soul winning. (Matthew 13:22).
- 3) **Worldly philosophy, vain deceit, and traditions of men.** Colossians 2:8. Examples are evolution, humanism, materialism, false religions etc.
- 4) **The heart** (feelings) is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? (Jeremiah 17:9). Don’t trust your feelings. Trust God’s Word instead.
- 5) **False prophets** who tell people what they want to hear. “Prophecy not unto us right things, speak unto us smooth things, prophesy deceits.” Isaiah 30:10. Eg: Charismatic “prophets” who prophesy smooth things, and Mormons claiming you’ll become a god, etc.
- 6) **Sin** promises much, but accomplishes nothing. Beware being “hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.” Hebrews 3:13.
- 7) **Pride** of thine heart and thy terribleness hath deceived thee (Jeremiah 49:16 and Obadiah 3). God judged Edom for her pride.
- 8) Thinking that **you can sin and not reap the consequences.** (“Be not deceived,..” Galatians 6:7).
- 9) Thinking that its okay to **hear God’s Word and not do it.** James 1:22.
- 10) Thinking that fornicators, idolaters, adulterers, homosexuals, thieves, covetous, drunkards, revilers or extortioners will go to heaven. I Corinthians 6:9,10.
- 11) Thinking or saying that **we have no sin,** we deceive ourselves. I John 1:8.
- 12) The **Roman Catholic Church:** “by thy sorceries were all nations deceived.” Revelation 18:23.
- 13) **Men:** ‘by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive’ Eph4:14
- 14) **Lusts of the flesh,** “put off the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts.” Ephesians 4:22.

194. Twelve Things A Pastor Must Do. Acts 20:17-38.

Paul reminds the Ephesian pastors of 12 things before He left them. These are to:

1. **Serve God** with all humility of mind. 20:19.
2. **Teach profitable things** publicly (in church) and house to house (individually). 20:20.
3. **Preach the gospel** of repentance from dead works (Hebrews 6:1) and faith towards our Lord Jesus Christ as Saviour. 20:21.
4. **Expect opposition** to God’s work. Be courageous. 20:22,23.
5. Seek to **finish your course** with joy. 20:24,25. (II Timothy 4:6-8).
6. Seek to be **pure from the blood of all men,** by telling them the gospel. 20:26. Ezekiel 33:1-9.
7. **Teach** all the Counsel of God (all the Bible). 20:27.
8. **Take heed** to yourselves and to the flock. 20:28. Beware of wolves and false teachers. 20:29,30.
9. Watch and remember to **warn people** night and day. 20:31.
10. **Point people** to God and the Bible to build them up. 20:32.
11. **Don’t covet people’s money,** but work to supply your needs and to help others. 20:33,34.
12. **Support the weak** and give to those in need. 20:35.

Conclusion: Do you practise these 12 qualities. Who are you discipling this year?

195. How We Should Treat God's Word. (Our Duty to God's Word).

Bible Reading: Psalm 119:1-18. **Aim:** To know how to treat God's Word for greatest benefit.

Introduction: Many Christians don't understand how to learn the Bible. If we apply these rules for digesting God's Word, we will understand it better, obey it more, and receive greater benefit from it.

1. We should **tremble** at it in respect and obedience. Isaiah 66:2.
2. **Love it:** "O how I love thy law." Psalm 119:97.
3. **Meditate** in it: "It is my meditation all the day." Psalm 119:97.
4. **Delight** in it: "His delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate" Psalm 1:2.
5. **Take heed** to it: "Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed thereto according to thy word." Psalm 119:9.
6. **Hide it** in your heart: "Thy word have I hid in mine heart that I might not sin against thee." Ps119:11
7. **Declare it:** "With my lips have I declared all the judgments of thy mouth." Psalm 119:13. (Prov30:5)
8. **Without error:** "Thy word is true from the beginning" Psalm 119:160. "Every word of God is pure"
9. **Don't despise it.** "Whoso despiseth the word shall be destroyed." Proverbs 13:13.
10. **Joy and rejoicing.** "Thy word was unto me the joy and rejoicing of my heart." Jeremiah 15:16.
11. **Continue in it.** "If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed." John 8:31.
12. **Hear it and Keep it.** "Blessed are they that hear the Word of God, and keep it." Luke 11:28.
13. **Study it and rightly divide it.** "Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of truth." 2 Timothy 2:15.
14. **Preach it.** "Preach the Word." 2 Tim. 4:2; "they went everywhere preaching the word." Acts 8:4.
15. **Hold fast to it.** "Holding fast the faithful word." Titus 1:9. (Hebrews 4:2.
16. **Mix it with faith.** "The word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it"
17. Become **skilful in the word.** "For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of.." Heb.5:13.
18. **Teach it.** "For when for the time ye ought to be teachers." Hebrews 5:12; Acts 18:11.
19. **Receive it** with meekness. "Be receive with meekness the engrafted word which is able to save your souls." James 1:21; 'let your ear receive the word of his mouth.' Jeremiah 9:20; Matt13:23; Acts17:11
20. **Be doers of it.** "Be ye doers of the word, & not hearers only, deceiving your own selves" James1:22
21. **Desire it.** "As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word that ye may grow thereby." I Peter 2:2. **Desire to hear it.** "Sergius Paulus ... desired to hear the word of God." Acts 13:7,44.
22. **Don't add to it or subtract from it.** Revelation 22:18,19.
23. **Write** out what you learn from the Bible in a note book, as Israelite kings had to do. Deut.17:18.
24. **Publish it.** The Lord gave the word: great was the company of those that published it. Psalm 68:11; Acts13:49
25. **Remember it.** "Then Peter remembered the word of Jesus," Matthew 26:75; John 15:20; Acts11:16
26. **Sow it** in people's minds: "The sower soweth the word." Mark 4:14.
27. **Believe it.** "they believed the scripture, and the word which Jesus had said." John 2:22; 4:50.
28. **Speak it boldly.** "they spoke the word of God with boldness." Acts 4:31; 16:32; Philippians 1:14.
29. **Multiply it.** "But the word of God grew and multiplied." Acts 12:24.
30. Let it **dwell in you richly.** "Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom.." Col. 3:16. Let it **abide in us.** "young men....the word of God abideth in you." I John 2:14; John 15:7.
31. **Labour in it.** "Let the elders...double honour,...who labour in the word and doctrine." I Tim. 5:17.

196. Reasons For Reading God's Word

1. It increases our **faith.** Romans 10:17.
2. It produces the **new birth.** I Peter 1:23; James1:18.
3. It gives us **truth.** Acts 17:11; John 17:17 "Thy word is truth."
4. It gives us **victory over sin.** Psalm 119:9,11.
5. It gives us **joy.** Jeremiah 15:16.
6. It will **build us up** in spiritual growth. Acts 20:32; Luke 4:4; I Peter 2:2.
7. It gives us **assurance of salvation.** I John 5:13.
8. It **cleanses us from sin.** John 15:3 "Ye are clean through the word."
9. It gives us **patience, comfort and hope.** Romans 15:4; I Thess. 4:18.
10. It will make us **disciples** of Jesus Christ. "If ye continue in my word,..." John 8:31.

197. Satan's Priority For The Christian Is To Destroy Him

Bible Reading: Job 1.

Aim: To understand different areas of our lives that Satan may attack. To be prepared when it happens. Satan is trying to wreck churches, Christians and marriages. Don't let him wreck yours.

Question: What would it take to get you to quit on God? Satan attacked these six areas in Job's life:

1. His Finances were destroyed. Job 1:13. He lost his ability to make a living.

Financial pressure has broken many preachers and marriages.

2. His Family was destroyed. Job 1:18,19. "Thy sons and daughters are dead."

If you get serious about serving God, the devil will get serious about attacking you, especially if you write quality Christian literature. Job's wife told Job to "curse God and die." (Job 2:9).

Question: How many wives and husbands have gotten each other to quit on God?

3. His Flesh was destroyed. Job 2:4-6. The devil tried to destroy Job through his flesh.

Satan uses sickness to knock many Christians out from serving God.

4. His Friends were destroyed. Job 2:11. If all your friends turned against you, would you quit on God?

They sat and looked at him for 7 days. Their comfort soon turned to criticism. Satan tried to use his friends to turn Job away from God. Proverbs 18:24.

5. His Faith, the Devil tried to destroy. Job 13:15.

"Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him: but I will maintain mine own ways before him."

You've been telling others to have faith and trust God for 20 years and now you've got to practice it, prove it and pass it. Will you continue serving God in tough times, as you did when all was well?

6. His Future, the Devil tried to destroy. Job 42:10.

God turned the captivity of Job when he prayed for his critical friends.

Conclusion: Will you pass these six tests that Satan may throw at you?

Because Job passed these tests, God gave him twice as much as he had before.

Job saw 4 generations. Your children, grandchildren and great grandchildren (4 generations) are counting on you not to quit. His future was at stake. So is your future ministry. When the devil brings up my past, I bring up his future. A missionary wrote in his Bible "No retreats, no regrets."

Question: Will your grandchildren rise up and call you blessed?

198. 20 Objectives to Raise Godly Children

1. Show each child how to be **saved** & **sure** of their salvation. Romans 10:13; I John 5:11-13; John 1:12

2. Encourage each child to **dedicate** their life to do God's will. Ephesians 12:1,2.

3. Help each child to **accept themselves** as God made them. Ephesians 1:6.

4. Guide each child to **get under the protection** of God's authority. Ephesians 6:1-4.

5. Work with each child to gain a **clear conscience**. I Timothy 1:19.

6. Show each child how to **have a forgiving spirit**. Ephesians 4:32.

7. Show each child how to **respond to irritations**. I Peter 2:23; 3:16.

8. Show each child how to **conquer moral impurity**. Psalm 119:11.

9. Show each child how to **meditate on God's Word**. Psalm 1:2,3; Joshua 1:8.

10. Show each child how to **share the gospel** with their friends. Romans 3:23; 6:23; 5:8; 10:13.

11. Show each child how to have a **daily Bible reading program**. Acts 17:11.

12. Get each child to **read challenging biographies** of great Christians. Jeremiah 5:5.

13. Show each child how to have God's standard for **dating**. I Corinthians 7:1.

14. Show each child how to **tithe** and **apply God's principles of finances**. Malachi 3:8-12.

15. Show each child how to establish an **effective prayer life**. Matthew 6:5-15.

16. Show each child how to **make right friends** and **avoid wrong friends**. Psalm 1:1; Proverbs 1:10.

17. Show each child how to **stand alone against evil**. Daniel 1.

18. Show each child how to discover and **develop their spiritual gifts**. 2 Timothy 2:15.

19. Show each child how to become an active and **loyal church member**. Hebrews 10:24,25.

20. Show each child how to see their **spiritual purpose in life**. Esther 4:14.

Conclusion: Lead your children in Bible study on these 20 goals tonight.

199. 4 Things We Should Know About Hell

1. Hell is a place of **conscious physical punishment**. Matthew 10:28; 13:42; Luke 16:19-31;

- i) A furnace of fire,
- ii) weeping, wailing, gnashing of teeth.

2. Hell is a place where the **past is never forgotten** (Mark 9:42-48). 98% of suicides are caused by guilt.

3. Hell is a place where **people are begging us to tell their loved ones of Christ**. (Luke 16:19-31).

4. Hell is a **place of NO HOPE**. We sorrow not as others that have no hope. (1 Thessalonians 4:13-18).

In heaven we'll never be separated from our saved loved ones.

Who is the Judge at the Great White Throne Judgment? (Rev. 20:11-15). Jesus Christ is the Judge.

Since we will be with Him forever, we will be spectators at this judgment. (Revelation 21:1-4).

God will wipe away all tears from their eyes. **Question:** Whose eyes?

Answer: Believers eyes, because unbelievers have already been cast into the Lake of Fire.

200. What Kinds Of Hands Do You Have?

1. **Warring** hands, in the spiritual warfare for souls. Psalm 144:1. The Lord teacheth my hands to war.

2. **Folded** hands of laziness. Proverbs 6:10. "a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep"

3. **Weak** hands of fearfulness. Isaiah 35:3,4. "Strengthen ye the weak hands"

4. **Bloody** hands of not soul-winning. Ezekiel 3:17,18; Acts 20:26.

5. **Working** hands of diligence. I Thessalonians 4:11. work with your own hands,

6. Lifting up **holy** hands of prayerfulness. I Timothy 2:8 "men pray every where, lifting up holy hands"

7. Lift up the hands which **hang down** of faintheartedness. Hebrews 12:12.

8. **Heavy** hands of Moses labouring in prayer. Exodus 17:12.

9. **Cleansed** hands of restored fellowship. James 4:8. Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners;

10. Right hand of brotherly love **fellowship**. Gal 2:9. they gave to me&Barnabas the right hands of fellowship

11. **Slack** hands. "Let not thy hands be slack." Zephaniah 3:16. Let not thine hands be slack.

12. **Willing, working**, women's hands. Prov 31:13. She seeks wool & works willingly with her hands

13. **Skilful** hands of God, guiding us through life. Psalm 78:72. guided them by the skilfulness of his hands

14. **Wounded** hands of Christ, securing & offering salvation. Zechariah 13:6. "What are these wounds"

15. Fearful thing to fall into the hands of the **Living God**, of judgment. Hebrews 10:31.

16. **Blessed** hands. "Bless thee in all the works of thy hands." Deuteronomy 24:19.

201. "Let Us" In Hebrews

Bible Reading: Hebrews 4:1-16.

Aim: To exhort each other to do 14 things.

1. Let us **Fear** lest a promise being left us of entering into his rest any of us come short of it. Heb 4:1.

2. Let us **Labour** to enter God's rest. 4:11.

3. Let us **Hold fast** our profession. 4:14.

4. Let us **Come boldly** to the throne of grace in prayer. 4:16.

5. Let us **Go on** unto perfection. 6:1.

6. Let us **Draw near** with a true heart. 10:22.

7. Let us **Consider one another** to provoke to love and good works. 10:24.

8. Let us **Lay aside every weight** and the **sin** which doth so easily beset us. 12:1.

9. Let us **Run with Patience** the race that is set before us. 12:1.

10. Let us **Have Grace** whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear. 12:28.

11. Let **Brotherly Love continue**. 13:1.

12. Let your **conversation** be without covetousness. 13:5.

13. Let us **go forth** unto him without the camp, bearing his reproach. 13:13.

14. Let us **offer** the sacrifice of praise to God continually. 13:15.

202. How To Become A Mature Person. James 1-5

Bible Reading: James 1-2; 3-5. What makes a mature man? James tells 10 things to become mature:

1. Suffering makes a mature man. (James 1:1-15 esp. v.2).

a) God's purpose is to purify us, strengthen us and make us better. (v.2-12).

b) Satan's purpose is to make us bitter by blaming God and giving in to lust. (v.13).

Our response to suffering is to praise God for it (v.2), pray while in it (v.5), persevere through it (v.12).

2. Scripture study makes a mature man. (James 1:16-25. v. 25).

a) Its Author – the Father. (1:17).

b) Its Accomplishments – gives eternal life. (1:18).

c) Its Admonitions – our talk and walk are to be pure. (1:19,22).

d) Its Analogy – a mirror to examine ourselves. (1:23,24).

e) Its Assurance-if we look into it, continue in it, not forget it, do it, we shall be blessed in our deeds.25

3. Sincerity (straight, genuine, not simulated) makes a mature man. (James 2:1-13).

a) Commands against partiality.

– earthly example (2:2-4) of favouring a rich man over a poor man.

– heavenly example (2:5) of God compensating the poor by making them rich in faith.

b) Consequences of partiality. (2:9-13) -- you are guilty as a transgressor of the law.

-- you shall be judged by the law of liberty (v.12).

4. Christian Service makes a mature man. (James 2:14-26). “Faith without works is dead.” (v.26).

a) The Problem – some imagine a contradiction between Paul (Ephesians 2:8,9) and James (2:14,24).

b) The Solution – Paul discusses vertical justification before God.

James discusses horizontal justification by works as seen by man, as proof of true faith in God.

c) The Pattern – 2 examples of head faith only: destitute (its no use to see someone lacking and not help them, 2:15,16), devils (devils believe the facts without responding to it, 2:19).

-- 2 examples of head and heart faith: Abraham (His works proved his faith was real by sacrificing Isaac in 2:21-23), Rahab (Her works proved her faith was real by siding with God's people. 2:25).

d) The Principle stated: “ faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.” 2:17.

5. Sound Speech makes a mature man. 3:1-18; 1:26,27; “If any man offend not in word...perfect.” 3:2.

a) Importance of the tongue: leaders are judged by what they say. (3:1,2).

b) Illustration of the tongue.

- how it can control great things for good eg: bridle on a horse (3:3), rudder on a ship (3:4).

- how it can consume great things for evil eg: forest fire.(15)Careless, thoughtless words destroy much good.

c) Iniquity of the tongue.

- it can destroy our witness for God, showing our witness to be lies (1:26).

- it can defile our walk with God, ruining our work for God (3:5,6).

d) Incorrigibility of the tongue – all animals have been tamed, yet not the tongue's poison hurts (3:7,8).

e) Inconsistency of the tongue (3:9-12). We bless God and curse man. Three questions about a fountain, fig and vine (3:9,10). It is against the nature of the tongue to be controlled, except by God.

f) Instructions for the tongue:

- seek and speak God's wisdom, which is pure, (3:13,17,18). Peacemakers have the fruit of righteousness.

- refuse Satan's slander (3:14-16). A bad heart produces a bad tongue, which produces bitterness, envy, strife and lies, which results in confusion (not knowing what is truth) and every evil work.

6. Submission to God makes a mature man. (James 4:1-17, esp. v.7).

a) What we escape when we submit:

i) The flesh (4:1-3,11,12,16,17), ii) The world (4:4,5), iii) The Devil (4:7).

7 fold formula for defeating the world, the flesh, and the devil is to:

Submit to God, Resist the devil, Draw near to God, Cleanse, Purify, Humble, Stop speaking evil.

b) What we enjoy when we submit to God:

- God's grace (4:6),

- God's guarantee of His close Presence (4:8), and His Promotion (4:10).

- God's guidance in making decisions: i) Ask (v.15), ii) Consider the shortness of life (4:13-15).

7. Self-Sacrifice makes a mature man. (James 5:1-6).

a) The Consternation of the selfish rich (5:1).

b) The Corruption of the selfish rich (5:2,5): riches corrupted, garments moth-eaten, Gold cankered.

c) The Cruelty of the selfish rich (5:4,6): unpaid workers cries of misery.

d) The Condemnation of the selfish rich (5:3): “shall eat your flesh as fire” = many rich end up in hell.

8. Steadfastness makes a mature man (James 5:7-11). (Steadfastness = not giving up). (I Cor. 15:58).

a) A past example (5:10,11): The Prophets and Job suffered affliction patiently and are happy now.

b) A present example (5:7): A farmer patiently cultivates his crops. So also we must patiently work for God now, without much apparent reward, until Christ returns to reward us richly. Be like a farmer.

c) A future example (5:8,9): Christ would like to return today but must wait until the right time. Our attitude in view of Christ’s return: Be patient, stablish your hearts, don’t complain, we’ll face the Judge.

9. Supplication makes a mature man. (James 5:12-18, esp. 5:16).

a) Seasons of prayer. When should we pray?

- In times of trouble (5:13,14) eg: affliction or sickness.

- In times of triumph (5:13). “Is any merry, let him sing Psalms.”

b) Reasons for prayer: Why should we pray?

- Prayer can heal the sick. 5:14,15

- Prayer can restore the carnal. 5:16

- Prayer can accomplish the impossible. 5:17,18. Elijah’s prayer stopped rain and started rain.

10. Soul-Winning makes a mature man. (James 5:19,20).

a) Notice erring Christians and lost people. Go after them.

b) One convert him – seek to change their direction, from error and death.

c) He will save him from error, trouble and death.

d) Soul winning will hide a multitude of sins. How? You will stop his life from going into sin.

You will stop him from teaching others to sin. You will rescue his future generations from sin.

203. Are You Increasing?

Bible Reading: II Corinthians 9:1-15.

Aim: To increase in each of these areas.

Introduction: We either increase in our Christian life or decrease and backslide. Which are you doing?

Question: What does God say that we must increase in?

1. **Learning.** “A wise man will hear, and will increase learning.” Proverbs 1:5.

2. **Generosity.** “There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth...” Proverbs 11:24.

3. **Lifespan** “for by me (wisdom)... the years of thy life shall be increased.” Proverbs 9:10,11.

If we grow in wisdom, fear of the Lord and knowledge of the Lord, our lifespan will be increased.

4. **Joy.** “The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord.” Isaiah 29:19.

5. **Faith.** “Lord, increase our faith.” Luke 17:5; Romans 10:17; II Cor 10:15. (I Thess 3:12.

6. **Love.** “The Lord make you to increase and abound in love one toward another, and toward all men”

7. **Strength.** “Saul increased the more in strength, and confounded the Jews which dwelt at Damascus.” Acts 9:22; Isaiah 40:29.

8. **Knowledge.** “Increasing in the knowledge of God.” Colossians 1:10.

9. **Fruits of righteousness.** “increase the fruits of your righteousness.” II Corinthians 9:10.

10. **Christ.** “He must increase, but I must decrease.” John 3:30.

Bad things that increase are: i) **Harlots increase transgressors** among men (Proverbs 23:28), and

ii) **Profane and vain babblings** increase unto **more ungodliness.** (2 Timothy 2:16).

204. 4 Great Mistakes In The Book Of Job

1. **Satan’s** – in thinking that Job served God for what he could get. Job 1:9,10.

2. **Job’s wife** – in thinking that with the loss of the visible and human, all was lost. Job 2:9,10.

3. **Job’s friends** – in thinking that Job’s sufferings were the result of sin. Job 22:5.

4. **Job’s** – in thinking that God was unkind. Job 27:2.

Lesson: Don’t make these mistakes in judging other’s situations.

205. Motives For Serving Christ

Bible Reading: II Corinthians 5:1-21.

1. We will go to **heaven** at death. v.1.
2. We will get a **new resurrection body**. v.2.
3. We have the **Holy Spirit** in us to comfort and lead us. v.5.
4. We labour to be **accepted of Him**. v.9.
5. We must all appear before the **Judgment seat of Christ** to give account of our service. v.10.
6. We know the **terror of the Lord**, so we persuade men. v.11.
7. Our **consciences** tell us to serve God. v.11.
8. The **Love of Christ** constrains us. v.14.
9. We should **not henceforth live for ourselves** but unto Christ. v.15.
10. We don't evaluate people on their externals, but as creatures of **eternal value**. v.16.
11. People at salvation become **new creatures**. v.17.
12. **All** things we have **come from God**. v.18.
13. God has given us the **ministry of reconciliation**. v.18.
14. We are **ambassadors for Christ**. v.20.
15. So people get **Christ's righteousness**. v.21.

Conclusion: Remember these motives for serving Christ when you feel tempted to slow down.

206. The Glory Of The Christian Life

Aim: To strive for eternal glory. To see the glory in being a Christian.

Introduction: Heaven is referred to as "glory" in Psalm 73:24; Hebrew 2:10; I Corinthians 15:43.

"Glory" = exalted renown, honourable fame, adoring praise, thanksgiving, beauty, resplendent majesty, magnificence, state of exaltation, things that bring renown.

Certain things are said to bring glory to us in heaven.

Question: What things are glorious on earth that will bring glory in heaven?

1. **Suffering** and our **light affliction**. Romans 8:18; 5:3; 2 Corinthians 4:17; I Peter 1:7.
2. **Souls saved**. "Ye are our glory and joy." I Thessalonians 2:20.
3. **Messengers of the Churches**, ie: Key workers. 2 Corinthians 8:23.
Preachers trained and sent out from churches. Titus was Paul's:
a) Partner, b) Fellow helper, c) Messenger of the Churches, and d) The Glory of Christ.
4. **Churches started**. 2 Thessalonians 1:4.
We ourselves **glory** in **you** (the Thessalonian Church) in the churches of God.
5. **Faithful Pastors** who will receive a crown of glory. I Peter 5:4.
6. **Our infirmities** and **weaknesses**. 2 Corinthians 12:9,5; 11:30.
7. **Long hair on women**. I Corinthians 11:15.
8. The **Heavens** declare the glory of God. Psalm 19:1.
9. **One star** differeth from another star in glory. I Corinthians 15:41,42.
So also is the resurrection of the dead. Daniel 12:3.

Conclusion: I Peter 2:24; Revelation 14:7; 16:9.

207. Things Jesus Christ Will Give to Overcoming Believers

1. Eat of the **tree of life**. Revelation 2:7.
2. A **crown of life**, if we are faithful to death. Rev. 2:10.
3. I will give to eat of the **hidden manna**. I will give him a **white stone**, and in the stone a **new name** written, that only the recipient will know. Rev. 2:17.
4. I will give unto every one of you **according to your works**. Rev. 2:23.
5. I will give **power** over the nations. Rev 2:26.
6. I will give him the **morning star**. Rev. 2:28.
7. I will give **reward** to my servants the prophets, to the saints & to them that fear thy name. Rev 11:18
8. My **reward** is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. Rev. 22:12.

208. How To Encourage Yourself (I Samuel 30:6).

1. Past blessings (Psalm 119:76).
2. Heavenly rewards (Romans 8:18).
3. Present friends (Romans 16:1-17; II Corinthians 7:6) and people looking up to us.
4. Future people who will be saved and blessed if I continue serving God.
5. Go and fellowship with some people of God (Psalm 69:20; I Samuel 18:3).
6. Get a decent paying job (II Chronicles 31:4).
7. Encourage your Pastor so he can encourage you (Deuteronomy 1:38; 3:28).
8. Go soul-winning to forget your troubles (John 4:32).
9. Hearing God's Word preached gives comfort and hope (Romans 15:4; I Cor 14:3; Psalm 119:49-52).
10. Speak good and comfortable words (Zechariah 1:13; II Chronicles 10:7; II Cor. 1:4; 7:6).
11. Rapture and Christ's Second Coming (I Thessalonians 4:18).
12. Be filled with the Holy Spirit (John 14:16,26; Acts 9:31). He abides with us for ever.

209. Those Who Wrongly Separated Fellowship

1. Demas forsook Paul, having loved this present world. (II Timothy 4:10,11).
2. Disciples left Jesus, because they wouldn't understand Jesus' teaching. (John 6:63-69).
3. Ahithophel left David, due to disloyalty. (Psalm 55:12-14; 2 Samuel 15:31-34).
4. John Mark left Paul (Acts 13:5; 15:36-39).
5. All men forsook Paul, but the Lord stood with him. (II Timothy 4:16,17).
6. People left the church John was pastoring. (I John 2:19).
7. Children of Ephraim being armed fled from the battle. (Psalm 78:8-10).

What are we not to forsake?

1. The assembling of ourselves together. (Hebrews 10:24,25; Nehemiah 10:39).
2. Thy friend and thy father's friend forsake not. (Proverb 27:10).
3. Let not mercy and truth forsake thee. (Proverbs 3:3).
4. I forsake not thy precepts. (Psalm 119:87).

What should we forsake? i) "Cease from anger and forsake wrath." Psalm 37:8.

ii) "Forsake the foolish person and live." Proverbs 9:6.

210. 10 Visions Of Christ

1. Isaiah's vision. Result: "Here am I; send me." (Isaiah 6:1-9).
2. Ezekiel's vision. (Ezekiel 1; 10:8-22 v.20).
3. Moses' vision. Result: Delivering Israel from Egypt. (Exodus 3:1-15).
4. Joshua's vision. Result: Worshipping Jesus as Captain and victories in Canaan (Joshua 5:13-15).
5. Manoah's vision. Result: Samson born. Judges 13:1-25.
6. Daniel's vision. Result Daniel 10:4-6.
7. Stephen's vision. Result: Martyrdom, Saul saved, many churches started. Acts 7:54-60.
8. Paul's vision: Result: Saul saved. Acts 9:1-7; 26:12-18.
9. John's vision. Result: Book of Revelation given as Scripture. Revelation 1:4-18.
10. Job's vision. Result: Book of Job written, and double blessings. Job 42:1-17.

211. Where there is no vision, the people perish. Proverbs 29:18.

What kind of vision, should we have?

1. A vision of ourselves (Acts 26:15-19) as the key to winning large numbers of people to Christ and starting many churches.
2. A vision of lost souls praying for salvation. Acts 16:9; Matthew 9:36-39.
3. A vision of the Judgment Seat of Christ. II Corinthians 5:9,10; Romans 14:10,12.
4. A vision of the Horrors of Hell. Psalm 9:17; Prov.15:11; Luke 16:23-28; Matt 25:41; Mark 9:43-48
5. A vision of the importance of Church. Mark 16:15; Hebrews 10:24,25.
6. A vision of Jesus Christ Himself. Revelation 1:9-18.

212. **Baptism (To be preached at a Baptism Service).**

Bible Reading: Acts 8:26-40.

Aim: To show that those sprinkled as babies are not Biblically baptised.

1. **Seven Bible accounts of Baptism**

- i) **3000 Israelites** saved and baptised at Pentecost. Acts 2:37-41.
- ii) **Ethiopian eunuch** was saved first and baptised later. Acts 8:35-39. v.37.
Believing that Jesus Christ is the Son of God and Saviour is a condition of Baptism.
- iii) **Paul** was saved on the Damascus Road and baptised by Ananias. Acts 9:17,18.
- iv) **Cornelius** was baptised after salvation. Acts 10:47,48.
- v) **Lydia** was saved first and baptised later. Acts 16:14,15.
- vi) **Philippian jailer** was saved & baptised later. Acts 16:30-34. “believing in God with all his house”
- vii) **John the Baptist’s disciples** believed on Christ and were baptised later. Acts 19:1-7.

2. **Notice:** i) In every instance those baptised were **believers** – of knowledgeable age.

ii) In no instance is there any indication that they were infants. They were all believers.

To believe differently is to read into the Scriptures what is not there.

Anglican and Presbyterians appeal to other areas.

iii) These believers were baptised to **obey the command of Christ**. Matthew 28:18-20.

iv) They **followed Christ’s example of baptism** in Matthew 3:13-17.

If Christ **came up** out of the water, so should we. Can I do anything less than Christ?

v) What does baptism **publicly declare**? - their faith in Christ’s death, burial and resurrection to save.
- their death to their old man/old lifestyle, burial of the old man and rising to walk in newness of life.

Romans 6:1-6.

vi) **Four requirements of baptism:**

a) Right **method** – immersion : Mark 1:9-11; Matthew 3:16 ; Acts 8:38,39. Baptise means to dip or immerse. Sprinkle (Greek: rantizo 4472) is never associated with baptism.

b) Right **motive** – obedience to Christ.

c) Right **candidate** – a saved person who has received Christ as their Saviour.

d) Right **authority** – local church.

Conclusion:

1. All believers were baptised **immediately after** they were saved.

2. If you were baptised **before salvation**, you just went in a dry sinner and came out a wet sinner.

3. If you have been saved and **not yet baptised**, you are not obedient to Christ.

213. **Who Is Able To Stand Before Envy?** Proverbs 27:4; Acts 7:9.

Definition of “**Envy**” = Resentful, admiring contemplation of a more fortunate person’s advantage.

Memory Verse: “Let not thine heart envy sinners.” Proverbs 23:17.

Aim: To be aware of and to resist the sin of envy.

Question: Who in the Bible committed the sin of envy?

1. **Pharisees:** “He knew that for envy they had delivered him.” Matthew 27:18.

2. **Patriarchs** moved with envy sold Joseph into Egypt, but God was with him. Acts 7:9; Genesis 37:11

3. **Jews:** When the Jews saw the multitudes, they were filled with envy, and spake against those things which were spoken by Paul. (Acts 17:3).

4. **Philistines** envied Abraham’s flocks, herds, servants. Genesis 26:14.

5. **Rachel:** When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister Leah. Gen. 30:1.

6. **Wilderness generation** envied Moses in the camp and Aaron the servant of God. Psalm 106:16.

7. One of **Joshua’s servants** envied Eldad and Medad prophesying in the camp. Numbers 1:28,29.

8. **Saul** envied David who had killed his ten thousands. I Samuel 18:7-12.

Conclusion: i) Most envy is against the spiritual success of others.

ii) Envy leads people to hatred, violence and murder .

iii) Envy is a sin that **religious unbelievers** or **caral believers** are most likely to fall into.

Question: What else do you notice about envy?

214. Invitations Of Christ

1. **Salvation** “Come unto me, all ye that labour & are heavy laden & I will give you rest” Mat 11:28-30
2. **Prayer**. “Come boldly to the throne of grace.” Hebrews 4:16.
3. **Separation** from false doctrine and false churches. Revelation 18:4
4. **Repentance**. “That all should come to repentance.” 2 Peter 3:9
5. **Indwelling**. “If any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come into him.” Rev. 3:20
6. **Take the water of life** freely. Rev. 22:17
7. **Birds** to eat Antichrist armies. Rev. 19:17-21
8. **Rapture** of the church. “Come up hither.” Rev. 4:1,2
9. **Rest of fellowship with Christ**. Mark 6:31

215. Revival Formula Under King Hezekiah. II Chronicles 29-31.

1. **Mothers** must train their children to obey God’s ways. (29:1).
2. Honour **God’s house**. (29:3).
3. **Train** priests and Levites (29:4-9). Train soul winners and Bible teaching Pastors to teach others.
4. Make a **covenant** to turn away God’s wrath and serve Him (29:10,11).
5. **Worship** of God was restored (29:20-36).
6. **Visitation** was restored (30:1-21).
7. **Bible teaching** by Levites was restored. (30:22).
8. People **destroyed their idols** (31:1).
9. Payment of full **tithes** and **salaries** to priests and Levites was restored. (31:4-10).

216. How To Destroy Your Life. (Proverbs 13:13-23; Matthew 7:24-29).

- I. **How to prevent our lives and our children’s lives from being destroyed.**
 1. Receive Christ as Saviour and Foundation of our life. (I Corinthians 3:11).
 2. Hear and obey Jesus Christ’s words. (Matthew 7:24-27).
 3. Avoid things that God says will destroy our lives. (Psalm 1:1).
- II. **What sins will destroy our lives?**
 1. Whoso despiseth the word (Proverbs 13:13).
 2. A companion of fools (Proverbs 13:20).
 3. Ignorance, want of judgment (Proverbs 13:23; 14:7).
 4. Refusing reproof (Proverbs 29:1).
 5. Pride (Proverbs 15:25).
 6. Adultery (Proverbs 6:32).
 7. Prosperity of fools (Proverbs 1:32).
 8. Bad pastors who do not teach God’s Word (Jeremiah 12:10).
 9. Tempting Christ (I Corinthians 10:9).
 10. Murmuring and complaining (I Corinthians 10:10).
 11. Rebels, transgressors (Psalm 37:38; Proverbs 11:3).
 12. Those defiling the Temple of God – alcohol, cigarettes, drugs (I Corinthians 3:16,17).
 13. Twisting Scripture (II Peter 3:16).
 14. Not purging ourselves (Romans 9:22; II Timothy 2:20,21).
 15. Lack of Bible knowledge (Hosea 4:6).
 16. Rejecting Christ and following unbelievers (Matthew 7:13).

217. Andrew – The Introducer.

Bible Reading: John 1:35-42; 6:1-11; 12:20-33

Aim: To bring people to Jesus Christ.

1. His conversion. John 1:35-40.
2. He brought his **brother Peter** to Jesus. John 1:41,42.
3. He brought a **boy**. John 6:1-11.
4. He brought **Greeks**. John 12:20-33.

Conclusion: Who are you bringing to Jesus?

218. What Are The Marks Of A Good Christian? He should:

1. Soul Winner (Matthew 4:19).
2. Follow up and Teach new Converts (II Timothy 2:2; Hebrews 5:11-14).
3. Trusts God, Live by Faith in God's word (Hebrews 11:6).
4. Bridle his tongue from slander (James 1:26).
5. Visit needy people (James 1:27).
6. Keep himself unspotted from the world (James 1:27).
7. Commit to help build local churches (Matthew 16:18; 28:18-20).
8. Has a burning desire to see the world won to Christ (Romans 10:1). Trains soul winners.
9. Rule his children and house well. (Genesis 18:19; I Timothy 3:4,5).
10. Filled with the Holy Spirit continually (Ephesians 5:18) and fruit of the Spirit (Gal. 5:22,23).
11. Patient under afflictions (I Peter 2:18-20).
12. Hunger and thirst after righteousness (Matthew 5:6).

219. Bible Characters Who Did Not Appreciate Their Privileges.

1. Adam and Eve - did not appreciate a sinless, beautiful environment.
 2. Noah's generation - did not appreciate their long lifespan.
 3. Wilderness generation - did not appreciate God's miracles in Egypt, Shekinah glory of God.
 4. 12 Judges generations - did not appreciate Canaan's privileges.
 5. David - when God established His Kingdom, defeated his enemies, and gave him wives, he committed adultery with Bathsheba and murdered Uriah (II Samuel 12:1-14).
 6. Solomon – after God gave him wisdom, wealth, power and majesty, he married pagan women who introduced idolatry to Israel (I Kings 3:3; 4:29,30; 9:1-9; 10:24; 11:1-14).
 7. Rehoboam inherited a great kingdom and power, but lost it by foolishness (I Kings 12:12-15)
 8. Samson (Judges 15-16) had great strength, but lost it by fornication and breaking his vows.
 9. Judas heard Jesus preaching for 3 years but betrayed Jesus for 30 pieces of silver.
 10. Demas journeyed with Paul but forsook him due to love of the world. (II Timothy 4:10).
- What will we do if we appreciate our privileges: Not complain; build on our parents' work for God; be faithful to Church; learn God's Word; grow in grace; serve Christ; resist the devil.

220. What Are You Looking At?

I. What God looks for: Job 33:27 (repentance); Isaiah 66:2 (contrite); Ezekiel 22:30 (a man).

II. What we should look at:

1. Our goings (Proverbs 14:15). Make right decisions.
2. Ways of a wife's household (Proverbs 31:27).
3. State of thy flocks (Proverbs 27:23). Look after your disciples.
4. Christ for salvation (Isaiah 45:22).
5. Jesus, as our role model. (Hebrews 12:2).
6. Return of the Saviour (Philippians 3:20; Titus 2:13).
7. Israel will look on Christ's nail-print hands. (Zechariah 12:10).
8. The fields that are white unto harvest. (John 4:35).
9. Men of honest report. (Acts 6:3).
10. New Heaven and New Earth (II Peter 3:13). New Jerusalem city (Hebrews 11:10).
11. Failing of the grace of God (Hebrews 12:15).
12. Perfect law of liberty (James 1:25).
13. Yourselves that we lose not the things we have wrought. (II John 8).
14. Things that are eternal. (II Corinthians 4:18).

III. What we should NOT look at:

1. Countenance, or judge superficially. (I Samuel 16:7).
2. Red wine (Proverbs 23:31).
3. Women lustfully (Matthew 5:28).
4. Things which are seen as the purpose for living (II Corinthians 4:18).
5. On his own things (Philippians 2:4).

221. What Shall Be The End Of These Things? (Daniel 12:8; Ecclesiastes 7:8).

Aim: To see that what we start can have a greater end than we think. How did these finish?

1. Those turning from the truth – their end is worse than their beginning. (II Peter 2:20).
2. Those keeping Christ's words to the end – get power over the nations (Revelations 2:26).
3. Immoral women – their end is bitter as wormwood (Proverbs 5:3-5).
4. Immoral men – hell (Proverbs 7:21-27).
5. You – going to Bible College, starting a church, training many preachers, winning millions.
6. John Wesley –brought revival to England and America. England became a great power.
7. John Wycliffe – inspired many others to translate and print Bibles.
8. John Huss – inspired Luther to preach against Roman Catholic errors.
9. Martin Luther – started the Reformation worldwide.
10. William Carey – inspired the Christian world to support and send missionaries.
11. Learners become wiser in their latter end (Proverbs 19:20).
12. Fighters, disputers. "Go not forth hastily to strive, lest thou know not what to do (Prov 25:8).
13. Selfish man. "There is a way that seemeth right unto a man, but the end (Prov 14:12; 16:25).
14. Writing a quality Christian book – blesses many.
15. Discipling by multiplication (II Timothy 2:2) – millions saved.

222. What Profit Is It That We Have Kept His Ordinance? (Malachi 3:14).

I. Profit in serving and obeying God is to:

1. **Us** (Psalm 19:11) – by enjoying the fruit of the Spirit; a like-minded spouse; freedom from trouble and evil; freedom from evil people avoided; fellowship with God and each other; fulness of joy (I John 3:3,4); wisdom to know right from wrong.
2. **Our Children** – blessings passed on to many generations; loving obedient children; good communication by praying together; children will call you blessed (Prov. 31:28).
3. **Others** – Saved and taught true doctrine through our obedience.
 - a) We make friends we otherwise never would have made. (Psalm 119:63).
 - b) Preachers trained.
 - c) Churches started.
 - d) Country blessed by righteousness.
 - e) Evil held back from taking over a country.
4. **Treasures in Heaven:**
 - a) A permanent record of our deeds (Malachi 3:16).
 - b) Shine as precious jewels to God forever (v 17) and Daniel 12:3.
 - c) You'll see the difference in heaven (v 18).

II. What Profitable Things may we do?

1. Seek the salvation of sinners (I Corinthians 10:33).
2. Preaching (Acts 20:20).
3. Mix God's word preached with faith (Hebrews 4:2).
4. Enduring chastening (Hebrews 12:10).
5. Good works helping others (James 2:14,16).
6. Godliness (I Timothy 4:8).
7. Giving yourself wholly to reading, exhortation, doctrine, meditation. (I Timothy 4:15).

223. Are You Warring A Good Warfare?

1. **Scriptures** teaching **spiritual warfare** are I Peter 2:1; I Timothy 1:18; II Corinthians 10:3,4; I Chron 12:32-33; Psalm 18:34; 144:1; Exodus 15:3; Prov. 20:18; Psalm 78:9; Rev 12:7,17.
2. **Levels of Training:** Win the lost, Train young Christians; Train Soul winners; Refute error; befriend new Christians; Equip Third World pastors in soul winning and Bible Teaching.
3. **Hindrances:** Christians unwilling to: Go soul winning; follow-up new Christians; study the Bible; come to two Sunday services and mid-week Bible Study; and give sacrificially.
4. **Challenges** in spiritual warfare: lazy Christians, False doctrines in Christendom (Calvinism, SDA, Charismatic, Ecumenism); Islam; Christians unskilled in soul winning/ disciplinemaking

224. The True Prophet Micaiah (I Kings 22:1-28; II Chronicles 18:1-27).

Question: What do we learn about Micaiah as an ideal man of God that applies to us?

1. He was **hated** by evil people, such as Ahab (I Kings 22:8).
2. He **prophesied evil** on evil people. He did not prophesy smooth things or men-pleasing words
3. He went **against the crowd** of popular false prophets. (I Kings 22:12).
4. He was **pressured to conform** to preach as the false prophets did (22:13).
5. He said he would **only speak** what God told him to speak (22:14).
6. He used **sarcasm** (22:15,16).
7. He **revealed heavenly truths** (22:19).
8. He **revealed living prophets'** involvement.
9. He **rebuked the false prophets** for having lying spirits.
10. He was **persecuted, smitten** (22:24), and **imprisoned** (22:27).
11. His prophecy **came true** (22:29).
12. He was **lied against** (22:8; II Chronicles 18:7; Matthew 5:11,12).

225. Seven Giants David Conquered (I Samuel 17).

1. First giant David had to slay was **Rebellion against authority**, by going as an errand boy to the camp. (17:17,18).
2. Second giant David had to slay was **Discipline over his own body**, by getting up early (17:20). People are undisciplined in body and mind. We must work to see our church grow.
3. Third giant David had to conquer was **Indifference**. Thank God that someone who cared walked into the camp (17:26,29).
4. Fourth giant David had to conquer was **Bitterness** and **Rejection** by someone he loved, cared for, and respected: (Eliab his eldest brother, 17:28). How many Christians quit because the Pastor or some Christian hurt them? Quit licking your wounds and keep on serving God.
5. Fifth giant David had to conquer was **Fear** (v 33). Soul winning is safer than car driving. You accepted the Gospel, so will others (33-37). Past victories give faith for future battles.
6. Sixth giant David had to conquer was **Ridicule** by the enemy (17:43,44). We are an ambassador of the King. It's not **your** work, it's **God's** work.
7. Seventh giant David had to conquer was **Goliath** (17:45-58).

226. Great Things In The Christian Life.

1. Greatness of **service** (Matthew 20:26).
2. Great **work** (Nehemiah 6:3).
3. Great **goodness** of God (Psalm 31:19).
4. Great **harvest** (Luke 10:2).
5. Great **reward** in heaven (Matthew 5:12).
6. Great **door** and effectual is opened. (I Corinthians 16:9).
7. Great **plainness of speech** (II Corinthians 3:12).
8. Great **love of Christ** (Ephesians 2:4).
9. Great **zeal** of Epaphros (Colossians 4:13).
10. Great **boldness** of faith of deacons (I Timothy 3:8-13).
11. Great **gain of Godliness** and **contentment** (I Timothy 6:6).
12. Great **fight of affliction** (Hebrews 10:32).
13. Great **recompense of reward** (Hebrews 10:35).
14. Great **cloud of witnesses** (Hebrews 12:1).
15. Great **matter** a little fire kindles (James 3:5).
16. Great and **precious promises** (II Peter 1:4).
17. Great **peace** have they that love thy law (Psalm 119:165).
18. Great **men of Christian service** (Jeremiah 5:5).

227. Finish Your Life's Work

1. **Archippus** (Colossians 4:17).
2. **Paul** (II Timothy 4:7; Acts 20:24)
3. **Us** (Psalm 90:12).
4. **Jesus** (John 4:34).

228. Things Jesus Taught in 40 Days from His Resurrection to Ascension (Luke 24:1-53).

1. Don't be slow to believe the Bible (Luke 24:25-27).
2. Christ's Suffering, Resurrection and Ascension were necessary (24:26,46).
3. Christ is the central theme of Scripture (24:27,44).
4. Reality of His resurrection body (24:36-43).
5. Worldwide Gospel preaching/Great Commission (v47, Mat 28:19-20; 24:14; Mark 16:15; Acts 1:8)
6. Holy Spirit power to preach the Gospel is available to all believers (24:49).
7. Jesus' rightful authority (24:49; Matthew 28:18).
8. Water Baptism commanded (Matthew 28:19).
9. Observe every command of Christ (Matthew 28:20).
10. Jesus' presence till the end of the world (Matthew 28:20).
11. Apostles have miracle power to confirm the word with signs following (Mark 16:17-30).
12. Manner of Christ's return will be like His departure (Acts 1:8-11).

229. False Things (II Corinthians 11:13-31).

1. False Christs (Matthew 24:24) – JW, Mormon, RC, Calvinist.
2. False Apostles (II Corinthians 11:13; Revelation 2:2) – Mormons, Charismatic apostles.
3. False Prophets (Matthew 7:15; 24:11,24; I John 4:1).
4. False Teachers (II Peter 2:1) – Roman Catholicism.
5. False Brethren (II Corinthians 11:26; Galatians 2:4).
6. False Ways (Psalm 119:104,128,163; Proverbs 13:5) – Wrong thinking, school system.
7. False Science (I Timothy 6:20) eg: "Evolution".
8. False Gift (Proverbs 25:14) eg: Tongues, Healing.
9. False Balances (Proverbs 11:1; 20:23; Amos 8:5) eg: Selling things that are not as claimed.
10. False Vision (Jeremiah 14:14). False Dreams (Jeremiah 23:32; Zechariah 10:2).
11. False Gospel (Galatians 1:6-9) of works for salvation.
12. False Accusation (Luke 19:8; II Timothy 3:3). False Witness (Exodus 20:16; Proverbs 6:19).
False Report (Exodus 23:1). False Tongue (Psalm 120:3).
13. Lying Spirits (I Kings 22:21,22,23).

230. Truths For Labourers In God's Work.

God has created Christians to work for Him (Ephesians 2:8-10). Not working leads us to mischief.

1. 2 aspects of labouring are: build (trowel) and defend what has been built (sword)-(Neh 4:15-21)
2. Pray for Lord to send forth labourers (Matthew 9:35-39). This was Jesus' main prayer request.
3. Finish the work God has for you (John 4:34-38). Fields are white already to harvest (v.35).
Reapers receive wages and gather fruit (v.36). Sowing and reaping are necessary (v.36,37).
We build on other men's labours (v.38).
4. Support the weak. It is more blessed to give than to receive (Acts 20:35).
5. We will be rewarded according to our labours (I Corinthians 3:8).
We are labourers together with God (I Corinthians 3:9).
Our labour is not in vain in the Lord. (I Corinthians 15:58).
6. We labour to be accepted (approved, well-pleasing) of God. (II Corinthians 5:9).
7. We labour to give to the needy. (Ephesians 4:28).
8. We should appreciate and work with our companions in labour. (Philippians 2:25).
9. Labour consists of preaching, warning, teaching, striving, presenting. (Colossians 1:28,29).
10. Labour in prayers. (Colossians 4:12).
11. Labour of love, faith, hope. (I Thessalonians 1:3).
12. Labour and travail night and day. (I Thessalonians 2:9).
13. Pastors should labour in the Word and Doctrine. (I Thessalonians 5:12,13; I Timothy 5:17).
14. Be willing to suffer reproach. (I Timothy 4:10).
15. Christ knows and won't forget our labour of love. (Hebrews 6:10; Revelation 2:2).
16. Rest from our labours in heaven. (Revelation 14:13,15).

231. What Will Ye Do In The Day Of Visitation? (Isaiah 10:3; I Peter 2:12).

Definition: The act of God (or Satan permitted by God) visiting people for any purpose such as: Inspecting our conduct (Sodom); Inflicting punishment (Ezekiel 38:8), or conferring favours. Most NT visitations by God were to confer favours rather than to inflict punishment. It describes God coming to men to bless them, revive people's spiritual lives and pour His Holy Spirit upon them. We must recognise visitations from God as an opportunity for blessing, if we obey and take them, otherwise we may miss our life's purpose and blessing.

I. People Satan visited and the Purpose: Recognise how Satan visits us, when he visits us, and through whom he visits us, so we resist him successfully and overcome his purposes for us. Examples of people Satan visited are:

- 1) Jesus (Matthew 4:1-11).
- 2) Peter (Luke 22:31-34).
- 3) Judas (John 13:27) - to tempt with monetary gain.
- 4) Job (Job 1,2) - loss of wealth and health to prove Job loved God for personal gain.
- 5) David – through Bathsheba (II Samuel 11); to number Israel (I Chronicles 21).
- 6) Solomon (I Kings 11:1-14) in loving many strange women and introducing idolatry.
- 7) Paul (II Corinthians 12:7) lest he should be exalted above measure.

II. People God Visited

- 1) Zacharias at the birth of John the Baptist (Luke 1:68).
- 2) Israel when Christ raised the widow of Nain's son from the dead (Luke 7:11-18).
- 3) Israel visited by the Messiah for blessing, but knew it not. (Luke 19:44).
- 4) Russia and Muslim nations visited for judgment (Ezekiel 38:8).
- 5) Sarah visited, by God giving her a son, Isaac. (Genesis 21:1-4).
- 6) Israel visited by God to rescue them from Egypt (Exodus 3:8-18).
- 7) Joshua visited by God to instruct & encourage him before conquering Canaan. (Josh 5:13-15)
- 8) Job visited by God to preserve, instruct, encourage and bless him (Job 10:12; 38:1-42:6)
- 9) Israel visited by God in giving them bread (Ruth 1:6).

Lessons:

1. Recognise the times when Satan or God visit us. To react by resisting Satan and obeying God.
2. Pray to God for wisdom and strength to react correctly.
3. Realise that how we react to each visitation has far-reaching consequences for good or evil.

232. What Do You Lack? (II Peter 3:1-10)

1. **Knowledge** (Hosea 4:6). "My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge."
2. **Service** (Philipp. 2:30). "For the work of Christ...to supply your lack of service toward me."
3. **Opportunity** (Philippians 4:10). Prepare yourselves to take opportunities.
4. **Moisture** (Luke 8:6)–nourishing spiritual environment of a good, soul winning, Bible teaching church
5. **Wisdom** (James 1:5). "If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God..."
6. **Eight qualities** (II Peter 1:1-10). "he that lacketh these things is blind and cannot see afar off"
7. **Understanding** (Proverbs 6:32-35; 7:7). "He that committeth adultery...lacks understanding.."
8. **Missionaries support** (2 Corinth. 11:9). "that which was lacking to me the brethren supplied"
9. **Faith or Doctrine** (I Thessalonians 3:10). "might perfect that which is lacking in your faith."
10. **Nothing** (I Thessalonians 4:12). "that ye may have lack of nothing."

233. Responses of Believers Towards Satan

1. **Put on** the whole armour of God (Ephesians 6:11-18).
2. **Know** Satan's devices (II Corinthians 2:11).
3. **Resist** the devil (James 4:7; I Peter 5:8,9).
4. **Be sober**, be vigilant lest he devour us (I Peter 5:8,9).
5. **Give him no place** (beach head). (Ephesians 4:7).
6. **Quote Scripture** to refute his lies (Matthew 4:1-11; I John 2:14).
7. Overcome him by the **blood of Christ** and a **good testimony** (Revelation 12:11).
8. **Be filled** with the Holy Spirit (Eph. 5:18) & **yielded** to the Holy Spirit (Romans 6:1-13; 3:13)

234. How To Treat Yourself - Our Duty to Ourselves. (I Corinthians 9:19-27).

Aim: To treat ourself so we will have a lasting impact on the world for Christ.

Introduction: One of people's biggest problems is that they don't know how to treat themselves so as to keep their minds, emotions, spirits and bodies functioning efficiently. We all have difficulties and disappointments. It is how we react to these that determines our well-being.

Question: How do you react to challenging situations?

In I Corinthians 9:24-27 Paul discusses how to treat our bodies in the Christian race. We must:

1. **Run** to obtain the prize. (v.24).
2. **Strive** to master the Bible and our laziness. (v.25).
3. Be **temperate** (controlled) in all things. (v.25).
4. **Run** and **fight** to achieve our life's goals. (v.26).
5. **Keep our body** under subjection. (v.27).
6. **Fear** becoming a castaway (disapproved). (v.27).

Q: How are we to treat ourselves & win the race God has given us, as seen by uses of "ourself"?

1. **Encourage yourself** in the Lord (I Samuel 30:6). When things get bad, go to the Lord to get encouragement by Bible reading, prayer, soul winning, good Christian Conferences, God's past blessings, good Christian friends, past victories of God.
2. **Behave yourself wisely** (I Samuel 18:5,14,15,30). When Saul twice attempted to kill David, David's response was to behave himself wisely, wisely in all his ways, very wisely, and more wisely. Seek to cultivate wisdom in all areas of our life. How? By walking with wise men, studying and applying Proverbs, and avoiding fools.
3. **Commit yourself** and your ways to God. (Psalm 10:4; 37:5). Hand your life to God's control.
4. **Water yourself** by watering others. (Proverbs 11:25).
Question: How do we water others? By helping them in time of need, giving them a good word (Proverbs 12:25), giving to the needy. (Proverbs 19:17).
5. **Separate yourself** (Proverbs 18:1) from false doctrines, bad friends, time wasting, useless activities, so you can study God's Word to achieve God's will for your life. (Romans 16:17).
6. **Show yourself friendly** (Proverbs 18:24). Make friends for Jesus, have a cheerful spirit, be loving, kind, caring and helpful.
7. **Hide yourself** from evil that is foreseeable. (Proverbs 22:3).
8. **Deny yourself** so as to spread the Gospel. (Matthew 16:24).
9. **Humble yourself**. (Matthew 23:12).
10. **Prepare** yourself to battle. (I Corinthians 14:8; Luke 12:47).
11. **Love yourself** by loving your wife. (Ephesians 5:28,33).
12. **Purge yourself** of past sins and wrong attitudes. (II Timothy 2:21; I John 3:3).
13. **Behold** yourself (James 1:24), **Examine** yourself (I Corinthians 11:28).
14. **Keep yourself unspotted** from the world. (James 1:27).
15. **Debate thy cause** with thy neighbour himself. (Proverbs 25:9).
16. **Give account** of yourself to God. (Romans 14:12). Remember your accountability to God.

235. Why Jesus Christ Came Into The World. He came to:

1. **Save sinners** (I Timothy 1:15); Call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32).
2. **Minister** to serve people and give His life a ransom for many. (Matthew 20:28). (Matt 3:15)
3. **Get baptised** and thus show us how to be baptised. (Mark 1:9). "To fulfil all righteousness."
4. **Preach the Gospel of Peace** (Mark 1:38,39), & give us access to the Father (Eph 2:17, 14-18)
5. **Heal the broken hearted** (Luke 4:18).
6. **Inspect** and evaluate people's condition: Israel's (Matthew 21:9); Disciples (Matthew 26:43); Church. (Matthew 24:42,44).
7. **Do the will** of Him that sent me, and to **finish** His work. (John 4:34; 6:38).
8. **Bless us** and **turn us away** from our iniquities. (Acts 3:26).
9. **Destroy the works** of the devil (I John 3:8)—all his wicked plans & control over men's hearts
10. **Give eternal life**, be the propitiation for our sins, the Saviour of the world. (I John 4:9,10,14).

236. Profitable Things (Acts 20:20).

1. Godliness (I Timothy 4:8).
2. All Scripture (II Timothy 3:16).
3. “Repentant Failures” can be profitable for the ministry (II Timothy 4:11).
4. Good Works (Titus 3:8).
5. Meditate, give thyself wholly to them, take heed, continue in them. (I Timothy 4:15).
6. Serve God and keep God’s Ordinances (Malachi 3:14-18).
7. People getting saved (I Corinthians 10:33; Mark 8:36).
8. Wisdom (Ecclesiastes 10:10).
9. God’s Discipline (Hebrews 12:5-11).
10. Submitting to God’s leading (Isaiah 48:17).
11. Labour (Proverbs 14:23). Work, plan our work, and finish our work.

Unprofitable Things

1. Gaining the whole world and losing your own soul (Mark 8:36).
2. Lying words (Jeremiah 7:8).
3. Riches in the day of wrath (Proverbs 11:4).
4. Astrologers, Stargazers, horoscopes (Isaiah 47:12-14).
5. Flesh – This means carnal views and desires, ungodly sinful lifestyles. (John 6:63).
6. Word preached that is not mixed with faith in the hearers (Hebrews 4:2).
7. Christ’s death on the cross will be of no value (no profit) to you if you trust your works to save you. (Galatians 5:1-4,2).

237. Sound Things. What must we be sound in?

Definition: “Sound” means: Healthy, well, wholesome, uncorrupt. (OT 8454; NT 5198).

1. Sound heart (Psalm 119:80; Proverbs 14:30).
2. Sound doctrine (I Timothy 1:10; II Timothy 4:3; Titus 1:9; 2:1).
3. Sound wisdom (Proverbs 2:7; 3:21; 8:14).
4. Sound mind (II Timothy 1:7).
5. Sound words (II Timothy 1:13; Titus 2:8), sound speech.
6. Sound in faith, charity, patience (Titus 2:2).
7. Sound in the faith (Titus 1:13).

238. What Treasures Are You Seeking?

1. Knowledge of God’s Word (Matthew 13:52).
2. Heavenly rewards (Matthew 19:21; Luke 12:33; 18:22).
3. Gospel (II Corinthians 4:7).
4. Wisdom, Understanding, Knowledge (Proverbs 2:4).
5. Jewels of people getting saved (Malachi 3:16-18).
6. Fear of the Lord (Isaiah 33:6).
7. Israel being saved (Exodus 19:5; Psalm 135:4; Matthew 13:44).
8. Good things in your heart (Matthew 12:35; Luke 6:45).
9. Beauty in creation and snow crystals (Job 38:22).
10. Christ (Colossians 2:3).
11. Earthly treasure for yourself (Luke 12:21).
12. Wrath on yourself by hardening your heart against God’s goodness. (Romans 2:5).

239. How Believers May Lose Their Sight (Revelation 3:14-22)

1. When we take our eyes off Jesus (Hebrews 12:1-2).
2. When we look back – to our unsaved habits, or to past blessings (Luke 9:57-62).
3. When we start looking around at others (John 21:15-19, II Corinthians 10:12).
Don’t worry about others business, but follow Jesus.
4. When we stop looking forward to the spiritual, eternal and heavenly (2 Corinthians 4:16-18)
5. When we stop looking outward for the souls (Matthew 9:36-38).

240. The Work of God in a Local Church is Great because: Nehemiah 6:3; I Chron29:1

1. It is the training ground of **future preachers**, pastors, missionaries and churches.
2. Our **children's spiritual development** depends on the inspiration & training they get in church.
3. It is the pillar and **ground of all truth**. (I Timothy 3:15). It establishes truth in a country and refutes error. Our Constitution, our Government, our Justice Systems, our Police, our Economic System are based on Bible truths as taught by Bible-based churches.
4. It **prevents** or **holds back evil in our society**. As we lead people to Christ, we cover a multitude of sins. (James 5:19,20). People's religion is their basis for all their decisions.
5. It **belongs** to Jesus Christ (Matthew 16:18 "I will build my church"; Colossians 3:23-25). **Hence:**
 - a) I will not quit, because I'll miss all future ministry blessings.
 - b) I will not let personal preferences hinder the progress of the church (Psalm 133:1). The work is greater than your petty differences, preferences, likes or dislikes. These are tiny compared to people's salvation, baptism, sending out missionaries and pastors. Don't mess with the Spirit of Unity of a New Testament Church. (You don't destroy a nice marriage over a petty issue).

241. How Should We Live?

1. "By **every word** that proceedeth out of the mouth of God." (Matthew 4:4).
2. "The just shall live by **faith**." (Romans 1:17; Galatians 3:11; Hebrews 10:38).
3. "As much as lieth in you, **live peaceably** with all men." (Romans 12:18).
4. "All that will **live godly** in Christ Jesus, shall suffer persecution." (II Timothy 3:12).
5. "For now we live, if ye **stand fast** in the Lord." (I Thessalonians 3:8).
6. "I have lived in **all good conscience** before God until this day." (Acts 23:1).
7. "Live **in subjection** to the Father of Spirits and live." (Hebrews 12:9).
8. "In all things willing to **live honestly**." (Hebrews 13:18).
9. "We being dead to sins, should **live unto righteousness**." (Romans 6:11).
10. "Live to **do the will of God**." (I Peter 4:2).
11. "Live **not to ourselves**." (II Corinthians 5:15).
12. "To me to live is **Christ**." (Philippians 1:21).
13. "Live **soberly, righteously, godly** in this present world." (Titus 2:12).

242. Fire In The Bible. "Our God is a consuming fire." (Hebrews 12:29; Deut. 4:24; 9:3).

1. **Judging** Fire (Exodus 9:22,23; Revelation 8:7).
2. **Protecting** Fire (Exodus 14:19-24; Zechariah 2:5).
3. **Second Coming** Fire to judge unbelievers. (II Thessalonians 1:7,8,9).
4. **Judgment Seat of Christ** Fire judging & testing the quality of believers' works (I Cor 3:13-15)
5. **Israel's judgment** on Edom/Esau/PLO. (Obadiah 15-18).
6. **Adultery** and **Fornication** Fire. (Proverbs 6:27-35).
7. **Tongue** Fire. (Proverbs 16:27; James 3:5,6).
8. **Preaching** Fire. (Jeremiah 5:14; 20:9).
9. **Word of God** as Fire, burning up sin. (Jeremiah 23:29).
10. **Persecution** Fire. (I Peter 1:7).
11. **Omniscience** of Christ's eyes of fire. (Revelation 1:14; 2:18; Daniel 10:6; Hebrews 12:29).
12. **Lake** of Fire. (Matthew 25:41; Revelation 20:14,15).

243. Six Rich Men (Luke 16:1-31).

Aim: To see the perils of riches, and to use riches for God's work.

Introduction: **Question:** What **mistakes** did they make? What **lessons** do we learn from each?

1. Rich **Fool** (Luke 12:16-34).
2. Rich **Man** with an **unjust steward** (Luke 16:1-13).
3. Rich **Man** and **Lazarus** (Luke 16:19-31).
4. Rich **Young Ruler** (Luke 18:18).
5. Rich **Tax Collector** – Zaccheus (Luke 19:1-10).
6. Rich **Men** and a **poor widow** (Luke 21:1-4).

244. What Do We Need To Be Taught?

1. "I will teach you the **good and right way**." (I Samuel 12:23; Psalm 25:4).
2. "I will teach you the **fear of the Lord**." (Psalm 34:11-16).
3. "Teach us to **number our days** that we may apply our hearts unto wisdom." (Psalm 90:12).
4. "Teach me to **do thy will**; for thou art my God." (Psalm 143:10).
5. "They shall teach my people the **difference** between the **holy** and the **profane**, and cause them to discern between the **unclean** and the **clean**." (Ezekiel 44:23). **Unclean** = unchaste, impure. **Profane** = unholy, blasphemous, irreverent, polluted, outraging sacred things, things said that are in manifest or implied contempt for sacred things.
6. "Teach us to **pray**." (Luke 11:1).
7. "Ye have need that one teach you again which be the **first principles** of the **oracles of God**." (Hebrews 5:12; 6:1,2).
8. "He teacheth **my hands to war**." (Psalm 18:34; 144:1; II Samuel 22:35).
9. "Teaching us that **denying ungodliness**." (Titus 2:12; Psalm 1:1).
10. "Teaching those things concerning the **Lord Jesus Christ**." (Acts 28:31).

245. What Are God's Teachers?

Aim: To see different ways we can learn about God and His Ways.

1. **Parents**. "Thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children." (Deuteronomy 6:7; 11:19).
2. **Previous generations**, as learnt by reading good Christian books. (Job 8:8-10).
3. **Beasts**. How? See Chapter 189 (Job 12:7). "Ask now the beasts, and they shall teach thee."
4. **Earth** (Job 12:8,9). "Speak to the earth, and it shall teach thee." How does earth teach us?
 - a) Folding (of rock strata) = Flood evidence.
 - b) Coal and Oil = Death of plants and animals in Noah's Flood.
 - c) Fossils = Animals dying in the Flood.
 - d) Minerals = God's Provision for man's industrial needs.
 - f) Dinosaur and human footprints = Man and dinosaur lived together pre-flood.
 - g) Sowing seed leads to reaping an identical harvest = Sin leads to trouble.
5. **Multitude of years** should teach wisdom (Job 32:7). Examples: Bible, experienced people.
6. **Soul winners** (Psalm 51:13). When we go soul winning, we teach God's salvation.
7. **Fingers** (Proverbs 6:12-15) How? By writing good or bad books, eg: Bunyan, Darwin, Marx.
8. **Jesus** ("Thou art a teacher come from God." John 3:2).
9. **Holy Spirit** ("He shall teach you all things." John 14:26).
10. **Nature** (I Corinthians 11:14). Nature = the natural sense of fitness among men worldwide that the sexes should look different. Jews & Greeks regarded long hair on men as disgraceful.
11. **Pastors** ("apt to teach." I Timothy 3:2; II Timothy 2:24).
12. **Disciple makers** ("able to teach others also." II Timothy 2:2).
13. **Older women** should teach younger women (Titus 2:4).
14. The **Heavens** (Psalm 19:1-4). The Gospel in the Stars declares the glory of God.

246. Different People's Responses To Christ's First Coming (Christmas)

Aim: To have the right responses to Christ's first and second comings.

Question: What do we learn from seven characters' response to Christ's birth?

1. **Elizabeth**: **Joy** (Luke 1:42-45). John leaped for joy when he heard of Christ coming to see him.
2. **Mary**: **Remember God's Works** (Luke 1:46-56). Mary magnified the Lord because of God's works regarding Mary's low estate, etc.
3. **Shepherds**: **Made Known Abroad** (Luke 2:8-20).
4. **Simeon**: **Hope Fulfilled** (Luke 2:25-35).
5. **Anna**: **Served, prayed, thanked, spake** of Christ to all. (Luke 2:36-38).
6. **Wise Men**: **Sought** Christ, **worshipped** Christ, were **joyful, gave gifts**. (Matthew 2:1-12).
7. **Herod**: **Troubled, angry, murdered children**. (Matthew 2:16-18).

Conclusion: How do we respond to Christ's coming? Are we for or against Christ? Are we like Elizabeth who showed joy?

247. The Power of Example

Aim: To be best examples for Christ so others will be drawn to Christ by my example and words.

Introduction: People are watching you. Whatever you do, someone will follow your example.

- 1) If you set a **wrong** example, some will follow you to destruction and God will hold you accountable for stumbling them. (Romans 14:13,21).
- 2) If you set a **good** example, many will follow you to be blessed, and God will reward and honour you for many people getting saved and living right for God.

I. Who Can Influence Others by Example?

1. Whatever **Parents** allow, **children** will become, because they follow your example.
2. Whatever a **Pastor** permits and does, his **people** will become as they follow his example. A pastor determines what his church will be like.
3. Whatever a **school peer group** endorse, many students follow, such as speech, hair style, rock music, fashion, alcohol, cigarettes, drugs. Many young people decide by asking, "Is it cool?", when they should be asking, "Does it please God?"
4. Whatever a **Bible College Principal** or **Lecturer** teaches, many students believe and teach in their churches for the next 40 years.
5. Whatever a **Judge** hands down as a court case judgment, is a precedent for future cases.
6. Whatever **laws Governments** pass, soon become accepted behaviour in a community, eg: abortion, prostitution, pornography, sodomite "marriages", etc.

II. Bible Characters Showing the Power of Example

1. **Peter** said, "I go a fishing". **Four other disciples** said, "We also go with thee." John 21:1-3
2. **Peter** separated himself from Gentile Christians, fearing the circumcision, so that Barnabus followed his example. (Galatians 2:11-14). Paul rebuked Peter for this.
3. **Angrv men:** "Make no friendship with an angry man – lest thou learn his ways, and get a snare to thy soul." (Proverbs 22:24,25).
4. **Peer Pressure:** "Thou shalt not follow a **multitude** to do evil." (Exodus 23:2).
5. **Israel** was commanded not to follow **Egypt's** or **Canaan's** example. (Leviticus 18:3).
6. **Scribes and Pharisees:** "do not ye after their works: for they say, and do not." Mat 23:1,2
7. **Sodom and Gomorrha:** "giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire." (Jude 7).
8. **Wilderness Generation Israelites:** "Now these things were our examples, to the intent we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted." (I Corinthians 10:6).
9. **Christ** suffered for us "leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps." I Pet 2:21
10. **Paul:** "Be ye followers of me, even as I also am of Christ." (I Corinthians 11:1).
11. **Wise men:** "He that walketh with wise men shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed." (Proverbs 13:20).
12. **Ungodly, Sinners, Scornful:** "Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners." (Psalm 1:1-6; Ephesians 4:17).

248. How Are We to Grow?

1. **Jesus** grew (a) strong in spirit; (b) filled with wisdom (c) in the grace of God (Luke 2:40), (d) in wisdom and stature; (e) in favour with God and man. (Luke 2:52).
2. **Christlikeness:** "grow up into him in all things." (Ephesians 4:15).
3. **Grace:** "But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ." (2 Peter 3:18). This means to grow in graciousness and in Christlike character.
4. **Knowledge** of Jesus Christ (II Peter 3:18). Study Christ's work, person, life, character & deity.
5. **Faith:** "Your faith groweth exceedingly, and the charity ..." (II Thessalonians 1:3).
6. **As a Church:** "maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love." Eph.4:15; 2:21,22
7. **In all areas of our Christian life** by studying God's Word. (I Peter 2:2).
8. **Number & Quality of Churches:** "they doubted of them whereunto this would grow" Acts 5:24 "The Word of God grew and multiplied." (Acts 12:24; 19:20).
9. **Grow in spite of opposition from False Believers:** "let both grow together until harvest" Matt.13:30.

249. God of the Second Chance: People Who Came Back from Failure.

Memory Verse: “A just man falleth seven times, and riseth up again.” (Proverbs 24:16).

Aim: Failure is not final. God is willing to give those who fail a second chance to serve Him.

Introduction: Many of God’s best servants experienced some failure in their lives. Those who came back to God were given another great work to do.

Question: Who came back from personal failure?

1. **Moses** (Exodus 2:11-15; 3:11) after killing an Egyptian beating an Israelite slave.
2. **Job** (Job 42:1-10) after losing his wealth, family, health and friends.
3. **Samson** (Judges 16:19-30) after losing his freedom, eyesight and reputation.
4. **David:**
 - a) Saul chasing David to kill him, so he fled to the Philistines. (I Samuel 27).
 - b) Amalekites’ destruction of Ziklag, not protecting and losing their families (I Samuel 30)
 - c) Adultery with Bathsheba and murdering Uriah. (II Samuel 11,12).
 - d) Absalom’s rebellion, war, takeover of Jerusalem. (II Samuel 15).
 - e) David’s sin of numbering the people. (II Samuel 24).
 - f) Adonijah’s plot to seize the kingdom in David’s old age. (I Kings 1).
5. **Elijah** (I Kings 19:1-4) after being threatened with death by Jezebel.
6. **Manasseh** (II Chronicles 33:1-16) after being the most evil, foolish, wicked man in the Bible
7. **Peter** (John 18:15-27) after denying Jesus.
8. **Mark** (Acts 15:36-41) after deserting Paul on a missionary journey.

250. Things We Must Prove (Deuteronomy 18:1-22; II Chronicles 9:1-31).

A major problem today is that people rarely prove things, but just presume or trust things to be true. What must we prove?

- Jesus proved or tested his disciples: “This he said to prove them.” (John 6:6).
- The Queen of Sheba proved Solomon with hard questions. (II Chronicles 9:1).

We should prove or test people with hard questions, such as:

1. To **unbelievers**: “If you died tonight, do you know 100% for sure if you would go to heaven?”
2. To **modern version users**: “Would you read Matthew 17:21 and 18:11 in the NIV please?”
3. To **Calvinists**: “Does God want all people to be saved or only some?” “Does the devil want all to be saved?” (No) “Do you?” (Yes) “Are you more merciful than God?”
4. To **“loss of salvation” believers**: “In John 10:28 what does “never perish” mean?”
5. To **infant sprinklers**: “Show me one baby in the Bible who was sprinkled?”
6. To **SDAs**: In Heb 9:1-4 are the 10 Comm in ordinances? (yes). In Eph 2:15 are they abolished?

Question: What must we prove?

1. Those claiming to be **prophets** of God (Deut. 18:18-22), eg: Mohammed by telling the future.
2. Those claiming to be **apostles** of God (Revelation 2:2) by asking them to do a miracle as first Century apostles could (II Corinthians 12:12).
3. God’s **promises** to give to us by us tithing. (Malachi 3:10; Luke 6:38).
4. What must we prove about the **will of God** in Romans 12:1,2? What 3 things must we do?
5. The **sincerity of our love** for missions by giving to missionaries. (II Corinthians 8:8).
6. **Diligent** and reliable in many things as Titus did. (II Corinthians 8:22).
7. **Quality of our own work for Christ** by people we win to Christ going on to win and train others. (Galatians 6:4).
8. Prove **all things**, don’t just trust people or presume they are right. Check the Bible. I Thess.5:21
9. **Deacons** must prove to be **loyal** and **trustworthy** to the pastor, to God and to the Bible (I Timothy 3:10).

251. What Do We Rejoice In The Lord About? Philippians 3

1. That we can be **certain of salvation**, not by our works, but by faith in Christ as our Saviour. v.1-9
2. That we **know Christ personally**. v. 10-12.
3. That we have a **life goal of glorifying God** and **doing the Great Commission** (v. 13,14).
4. That we have **mental unity with believers** of same goals, love, service. (v. 15,16). Psalm 133:1-3
5. That we have **good examples** to follow. (v. 17-19).
6. That we can **look forward to Christ’s return** when we get a new resurrection body. (v.20,21).

252. How the Christian Race is Like the Olympic Games. I Corinthians 9:24-27

The Olympic Games remind us of Christians striving for the eternal prize of Christ's approval and heavenly rewards at the Judgment Seat of Christ. "They do it to obtain a corruptible crown" I Cor. 9:25.

Question: What similarities exist between the spiritual race of life and the Olympic race for gold?

1. Much **hard training** is required (I Corinthians 9:24-27). We must train to:
 - a) Understand the Bible better.
 - b) Win more people to Christ.
 - c) Teach others the Bible better.
 - d) Plant more **churches**.
2. Much **discipline** is needed to reject temptations that hinder our performance. Be "temperate in all things" (I Corinthians 9:25). "Let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us." (Hebrews 12:1).
3. A **great cloud of witnesses watches** our race and cheers us on, (as in the olympic grandstands and telecast), of departed believers, angels, Jesus Christ and living believers. (Hebrews 12:1).
4. Athletes get a few days of **glory** if they win. We race for an eternal weight of glory. 2 Cor 4:17. "Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible (crown)." (I Cor 9:25).
5. We must **keep focused** on the prize to be won in heaven:
"Set your affection on things above, not on things of the earth." (Colossians 3:2).
6. People may **slander athletes** as a drug cheat even if they are innocent. People may **slander believers** falsely in order to dishearten us and sidetrack us: "Therefore we both labour and suffer reproach ... let no man despise thy youth." (I Timothy 4:10,12).
7. As athletes will be **disqualified** for breaking the rules, so believers will be **disqualified** for **striving unlawfully**: "If a man also strive for masteries, yet is he not crowned, except he **strive lawfully**." (II Timothy 2:5). "But I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by **any means**, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a **castaway** (disapproved, loss of reward)." (I Corinthians 9:27). Don't use unlawful methods to do God's work.
8. The race has a **start** and a **finish**. Start = salvation. Finish = death. Prizegiving = Judgment Seat of Christ. "But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might **finish my course** with **joy**." (Acts 20:24).
"I have fought a good fight, I have **finished my course**, I have kept the faith. Henceforth there is laid up for me a **crown** of righteousness ..." (II Timothy 4:7,8).
9. Many Christians **stumble** and **fall** down in the race:
"Ye did run well; who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" (Galatians 5:7).
"Them which **stumble at the word**, being disobedient." (I Peter 2:3).
10. As in the relay race, so we are in a relay where we are to run as hard as we can to pass the **gospel baton** and **Bible teaching baton** to the next generation. As there are 4 men in a relay, so there are 4 generations in spiritual multiplication of disciples: Paul, Timothy, Faithful men and Others. (II Timothy 2:2).
11. As in team sports, winning is a **team effort**. A church is like a team of athletes working together. Don't backslide and let the team down. Don't attack or discourage your captain or team members. Paul worked with a team of people. (Romans 16; II Timothy 4).
12. As in **wrestling**, you lose if your opponent pins you to the ground, so "we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of darkness of this world, against **spiritual wickedness** in high places." (Ephesians 6:12). Evil forces seek to pin believers to the ground so that we have no resources or good name to do much for God.
13. As **boxers** seek to land a knockout punch and **endure being hit**, so Christians must seek to **knockout the enemy**: "So fight I, not as one that beateth the air" (I Corinthians 9:26), and **endure being hit** (buffeting): "Even to this present hour we....are buffeted" (I Cor. 4:11).
14. As **talent scouts** look for **athletes of great ability** and promise, so we should send our best young people to the best Bible Colleges to get the best training: "Commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also." (II Timothy 2:2).
15. Have a **good coach**. Be in a church with a pastor who can train you how to win souls, who does door-knocking, who can train you in sound doctrine. Do what he says.

16. As athletes **use the right equipment**, so we must use the best tools and equipment, such as King James Bibles, STOP tracts, Answers books, etc. to communicate God's Word.
17. As some athletes are **great heros now**, so will some Christians be great heros in the spiritual warfare and Christian race, such as Paul, and maybe you.
18. Some Christians are **spectators**, doing nothing for God, when they should be in the race.
19. Successful athletes receive the **best training**, from the youngest age. Children should be trained in the Bible from the **earliest age** with the **best doctrine** and **mentors**. Time in training is never time wasted.
20. As athletes have a **rule book** and **training manual**, so Christians must run by Bible rules.
21. As successful athletes **receive much glory** in winning a gold medal, so Christians will receive much glory in heaven for finishing their race lawfully. (Daniel 12:3).
22. Some are out of the race due to **injury**. Many get hurt, offended and quit. Mark 4:17; Rom 14:21
Conc: How are you running your race? Will you finish your course with joy? Are you dedicated?

253. **Things To Do First.**

Many people's priorities in life are wrong. What must we seek to do first?

1. "**Seek ye first the kingdom of God**, and his righteousness ..." Matthew 6:33.
2. "First **be reconciled to thy brother**, then come and offer thy gift." Matthew 5:24.
3. "First **cast the beam out of thine own eye** ..." Matthew 7:5.
4. "**Love the Lord thy God** with all thine heart...the first and great commandment." Matthew 22:35-40
5. "Sit down first, and **count the cost**." Luke 14:28-33.
6. "Andrew first **findeth his own brother** Simon ..." John 1:41.
7. "First **gave their own selves to the Lord**." II Corinthians 8:5.
8. "If there be first a **willing mind** ..." II Corinthians 8:12.
9. "Children ... let them **learn** first to **show piety at home**." I Timothy 5:4.
10. "Wisdom that is from above is first **pure** ..." James 3:17.
11. "Learn the first **principles** of the **oracles** of God." Hebrews 5:12.
12. "Thou has **left thy first love**." We must keep our first love for Jesus Christ. Revelation 2:4.

254. **Vain Things.** (Ecclesiastes 7:1-29).

Aim: To avoid things that are vain and useless.

1. "I have not sat with **vain persons**." (Psalm 26:4; Proverbs 12:11; 28:19).
2. "I hate **vain thoughts**, but thy law do I love." (Psalm 119:113; Jeremiah 4:14).
3. "Give us help from trouble, for vain is the **help of man**." (Psalm 60:11).
4. "Favour is deceitful and **beauty** is vain, but a woman that feareth the Lord" (Proverbs 31:30)
5. "The **customs of the people** are vain." (Jeremiah 10:3). eg. idols, incense.
6. "When ye pray, use not vain **repetitions**." (Matthew 6:7). Eg: Saying 150 Hail Marys.
7. "In vain do they **worship me**, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men." Matth.15:9
8. "Became vain in their **imaginations**" (Romans 1:21).Eg: movies, vain philosophies. Col.2:8.
9. "**Bridleth not his tongue** ... this man's **religion** is vain." (James 1:26).
10. "Vain **conversation** received by **tradition** from your fathers." (I Peter 5:18). Religious traditions
11. "Philosophy and vain **deceit**." (Colossians 2:8). eg: Many university courses.
12. "Walk in the vanity of their **mind**." (Ephesians 4:17; I Corinthians 3:20).

Conclusion: Forsake vain things. Commit your life to doing things that are of "first" importance.

255. **How the Spiritual War is Like a Military War**

Aim: To use our resources and tactics to win the spiritual war. (Ephesians 6:10-18).

Introduction: Ephesians 6:10-18 states that we are in a spiritual war with the forces of Satan over the souls of men. This is what life is all about. **Warring a good warfare** (I Timothy 1:18) is the purpose of life (II Corinthians 5:10). This results in eternal rewards and Christ's approval at the Judgment Seat of Christ. Many Christians don't even know that we are in a spiritual war. We will make so many better decisions if we see that we are in a spiritual war, fighting over the eternal souls of men. Our goals should be:

1. Learning to **win souls** to Christ.

2. Learning to **follow them up** and **teach them right Bible doctrines.**
3. Understanding the value of being **loyal to building our soul winning church.**
4. Understanding **Satan's devices** so we don't give him an advantage over us.
5. Seeing the value of **using gospel tracts.**
6. Encouraging **fellow workers** on the same side.
7. **Training more preachers.**
8. **Studying the Bible** to learn more about the spiritual war.
- I. **How the Spiritual War is like a Military War** (Our resources).
 - 1) Our **Enemy** = Satan, demons, false doctrines.
 - 2) Our **Commander** in Chief = Lord Jesus Christ.
 - 3) **Fellow soldiers** = Fellow believers and soul winners in church.
 - 4) **Regiment** = Local Church.
 - 5) **Boot Camp** = Training new converts and a good Bible College.
 - 6) **Battlefield** = World of opportunities to win souls to Christ.
 - 7) **Sergeant** = Pastor of a local church.
 - 8) **Equipment** = Bible, STOP tracts, *Answers* book.
 - 9) **Communication** = Prayer.
 - 10) **Casualties** = Backsliders, and those believing false doctrines.
 - 11) **Deserters/AWOL** = Quitters.
 - 12) **Traitors** = Wolves speaking perverse things (Acts 20:29,30).
 - 13) **Intelligence** = Skilled understanding of enemy's tactics and our tactics (2 Cor. 2:11).
 - 14) **Armour** =
 - a) Loins girt about with truth. (Ephesians 6:13-18).
 - b) Breastplate of righteousness. (v 14).
 - c) Feet shod with preparation of the gospel of peace. (v 15).
 - d) Shield of faith. (v 16).
 - e) Helmet of salvation. (v 17).
 - f) Sword of the Spirit.
 - g) Praying always. (v 18).
 - h) Watching for all saints. (v 18).

II. **Our Tactics** (II Timothy 2).

- 1) **Be strong** in grace that is in Christ Jesus. (v 1).
- 2) **Multiply** disciples by teaching faithful men. (v 2).
- 3) **Endure hardness** as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. (v 3).
- 4) **Don't get entangled** with the affairs of this life. (v 4).
- 5) **Strive lawfully.** (v 5).
- 6) **Pay** the soul winning preacher first. (v 6).
- 7) Seek to **understand all things** in the spiritual war. (v 7).
- 8) **Remember** Jesus Christ's resurrection. (v 8).
- 9) Expect people to **persecute you** as an evil doer. (v 9).
- 10) **Get God's Word out** to the multitudes: 'The Word of God is not bound.' (v 9).
- 11) **Endure all things** so people will get saved. (v 10).
- 12) If we **suffer with Christ**, we shall reign with Christ. (v 12).
- 13) **Study** to show thyself approved unto God, a **workman** that needeth not to be ashamed, **rightly dividing** the word of truth. (v 15).
- 14) **Depart from iniquity**, purge yourself from sins, flee youthful lusts. (v 19,21,22).
- 15) **Be gentle** to all men. (v 24).
- 16) **Meekly instruct** those that oppose themselves so they repent. (v 25).

In an army, there shall be one mind, one heart, one purpose – that of the commander. The whole army shall be as obedient to the commander as members of the human body are to the head. So believers are to be as subordinate to the will of Christ, as an army is to the will of its Commander. Our will must be absorbed (or lost) in the will of Jesus Christ, and our purpose is accomplished if we are approved by Christ. "Well done, good and faithful servant." (Matthew 25:23).

256. Our Heavenly Father As The Ideal Father

In what ways is God as our Heavenly Father the Ideal Father?

1. As a father **begat** his children, so God **gave us spiritual life**: “Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth.” (James 1:18). As there are two agents of physical birth (male and female), so God uses two agents of spiritual birth (Word of God and Spirit of God). John 3:5, “Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.”
2. As a father **provides** for the nursing, nourishing and raising of His children, so God nourishes and raises His children by His Word: “As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby.” (I Peter 2:2).
3. As a father **clothes his children**, so God clothes us with:
 - i) The garments of salvation: “He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation” Isa. 61:10
 - ii) Robe of righteousness, “he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness.” (Isaiah 61:10)
 - iii) Humility: “Yea, all of you ... be clothed with humility.” (I Peter 5:5).
 - iv) Whole Armour of God: “Put on the whole armour of God.” (Ephesians 6:11-18).
 - v) Glorified, Resurrection body: “we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven.” (2 Corinthians 5:1,2).
 - vi) “Put on ... mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering, forbearing one another, forgiving one another ... put on charity.” (Colossians 3:10-14).
4. As a father greatly **pities his children** who are sick, suffering or in trouble, so God “like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord pitieth them that fear him.” (Psalm 103:13).
5. As a father **protects** his children from harm, and **defends** their innocency against accusers, so God **defends** us from sin, Satan and spiritual wickedness in high places: “he suffered no man to do them wrong; yea, he reproveth kings for their sakes, saying, touch not mine anointed, and do my prophets no harm.” (Psalm 105:13-15).
6. As a father **provides food** and physical needs for his children, so God **provides food and other needs** for us: “there is no want to them that fear him, I will abundantly bless her provision, I will satisfy her poor with bread.” (Psalm 132:15); “they that seek the Lord shall not want any good thing.” (Psalm 34:10).
7. As a father delights to hear his children **learning to speak** and **expressing their minds**, so God delights to hear His little children (his babes in Christ) learn to pray, and express their wants to Him: “the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.” (Romans 8:26).
8. As a father shows himself as an **example of good** to his children and urges them to **imitate** him, so Christ shows His Father as an example of holiness to believers:
 - i) “Be ye therefore perfect even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.” (Matt 5:48)
 - ii) “Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father is merciful.” (Luke 6:36).
 - iii) “Be ye holy; for I am holy.” (I Peter 1:16).
 - iv) “Be ye therefore followers of God, as dear children.” (Ephesians 5:1).
 - v) “Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness?” (II Corinthians 6:14,15-18).
 - vi) “Be ye not unwise, but understanding what the will of the Lord is.” (Ephesians 5:10).
 - vii) “Be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.” James 1:22
 - viii) “Be ye also patient, stablish your hearts ...” (James 5:8).
 - ix) “Be ye kind one to another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ’s sake hath forgiven you.” (Ephesians 4:32).
 - x) “Be ye all of one mind, having compassion one of another ...” (I Peter 3:8).
 - xi) “Be ye therefore sober, and watch unto prayer ...” (I Peter 4:7).
9. As a father **educates** his children, **teaching them good behaviour**, so God **teaches, trains, and instructs** his children in **right ways**: “I will instruct thee and teach thee in the way which thou shalt go: I will guide thee with mine eye” Ps.32:8. “The meek will he teach his way” Ps.25:9

10. As a father is **ready to hear** his children's requests, so the ears of the Lord are open to his children's requests:
 - i) "Ask and ye shall receive." (John 16:24).
 - ii) "Whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive." (Matthew 21:22).
11. As a father **refuses** his children's requests that would harm them, so God only refuses our requests that would harm us: "Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss." (James 4:3).
12. As a father **takes away** from his children those things that would wound or kill them, so God puts a hedge of thorns around us to keep us from evil: (Hosea 2:6.
 - i) "I will **hedge up thy way with thorns**, and make a wall, that she shall not find her paths"
 - ii) "I will **take away** the names of Baalim out of her mouth." (Hosea 2:17).
13. As a father **forgives** his children's sins and weaknesses, so God forgives our sins when we **confess** them to Him. (I John 1:9).
14. As a father is **grieved** if his children prove wicked and rebellious (eg: Eli), **gently seeking their restoration**, so God is grieved by rebellious Christians:
 - i) "I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me." (Isa. 1:2)
 - ii) How gently and patiently He calls them to repentance: "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, ... how often **would I** have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and **ye would not**." (Matthew 23:37). (Romans 10:21.
 - iii) "All day long have I stretched forth my hands unto a disobedient & gainsaying people"
15. If mild fatherly entreaties fail, a loving father **chastises** His continually wayward children (Proverbs 22:15; 23:13). So God chastens, disciplines or scourges His rebellious children (Hebrews 12:5-12) in love: "As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore and repent." (Revelation 3:19).
16. As a father **feels pain** in **disciplining his children**, so God feels pain when He disciplines us: "In all their affliction he was afflicted." (Isaiah 63:9).
17. As a father **lays up** for his children's future mainenance, so God not only gives His children good things now, but lays up treasures for us in heaven: "O how great is thy goodness which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee." (Psalm 31:19). "Henceforth is laid up for me a crown of righteousness." (II Timothy 4:8).
18. As a father has **mercy** on his children's weaknesses, struggles and learning process, so God shows **mercy and comfort** to us: "Blessed be God ... the father of mercies, and the God of comfort; who comforteth us in all our tribulation ... " (II Corinthians 1:3,4; Luke 6:36).
19. As a father **spends time** with his children doing things together, enjoying each other's company, talking & having fun together, so God the Father and God the Son **have fellowship** with us: "truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with His Son Jesus Christ." (I John 1:3).
20. As a father **encourages, comforts** and **charges** his children, so God exhorts, comforts and charges us to walk worthy of God: "Ye know how we exhorted, comforted & charged every one of you, as a father doth his children, that ye would walk worthy of God." I Thess 2:11,12
21. As fathers **work** and like to see their **children work**, so God the Father works and is pleased when we work for Him: "Jesus answered them, My father worketh hitherto & **I work**" John 5:17
22. As a father **loves his children**, so God loves us: "For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me." (John 16:27). "Behold what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God." (I John 3:1).
23. As a father **likes giving gifts** to his children, so God enjoys giving gifts to us: "Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh from the Father of lights." (James 1:17)
24. As a good father doesn't want his children to **mix with bad company**, so God doesn't want us to mix with evil unbelievers: "Be not unequally yoked together with unbelievers ... and I will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters." (II Corinthians 6:11-18). "Love not the world ... " (I John 2:14,15).

257. What Are You Full Of?

Christians are compared to vessels in 2 Timothy 2:20,21, the purpose of which is to be filled with good and useful things. The trouble is that we pick up many wrong ideas, attitudes, behaviour and thinking that need to be purged for the Master to use us for every good work.

Question: Are you prepared for every good work? What are you filled with? What does God say that we should be filled with to be a blessing to God and to others?

1. **Righteousness:** “Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after **righteousness**...for they shall be **filled**”. (Matthew 5:6). Lack of food and water are distressing, so we should have a strong desire for righteousness. Those seeing themselves as perishing lost sinners & strongly desiring to be holy, shall be filled. Christ’s Gospel satisfies all who desire to be holy.
2. **Wisdom:** “The child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, filled with **wisdom**.” (Luke 2:40). Jesus grew in mind, intellect, understanding, strength and character. He showed extraordinary understanding and was wise to flee from every evil influence and temptation. He was wise, pure and a great example for all children, being subject to his parents, and increasing in favour with God and man.
3. Be full of a **desire to fill God’s house**. “Go out into the highways and hedges & compel them to come so that **my house** may be filled”. (Luke 14:23). Compel= Urge them to overcome their excuses. Do we strongly desire God’s house to be filled and do all we can to fill it?
4. **Holy Ghost** “Were all filled with the **Holy Ghost**” (Acts 2:4), means to be entirely under His sacred influence and power. See the command in Ephesians 5:18. Acts 3:10; 5:17; 13:45,52.
5. “Ye have filled **Jerusalem** with **your doctrine**” (Acts 5:28). This was an honourable tribute to the zeal and faithfulness of the apostles. Do this by door-to-door soul winning, follow-up & disciple making. If we are not full of true doctrine, we won’t fill others with true doctrine.
6. **Joy:** “Disciples were filled with **joy**.” Acts 13:52. (II Timothy 1:4).
7. **Goodness** and **knowledge:** “Full of **goodness**... filled with **all knowledge**”. (Romans 15:14)
8. **Comfort:** “Filled with **comfort**.” (II Corinthians 7:4).
9. “Filled with the **fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ**.” Philippians 1:11.
10. **Praise:** “Let my mouth be filled with **thy praise**”. (Psalm 71:8).

If we are not filled with these things, then bad things may fill us, such as:

1. **His own ways:** “The backslider in heart shall be filled with **his own ways**.” (Proverbs 14:14).
2. **Wrath:** Filled with **wrath**. (Luke 4:28).
3. **Fear:** Filled with **fear**. (Luke 5:26).
4. **Madness:** Filled with **madness**. (Luke 6:11).
5. **Sorrow:** “**Sorrow** hath filled your heart.” (John 16:6).
6. **Satan:** “**Satan** hath filled your heart to lie to the Holy Ghost.” (Acts 5:3).
7. **Envy:** Filled with **envy**. (Acts 13:45).
8. **Unrighteousness:** Filled with all **unrighteousness**. (Romans 1:29).

258. The Greatest Statement Ever Made: John 3:16

1. **God** – The Greatest Lover.
2. **So loved** – The Greatest Degree. I John 4:19-21; I Peter 1:8.
3. **The world** – The Greatest Company. I John 2:2; 4:14. See definition of "world" p.649.
4. **That He gave** – The Greatest Act. John 4:10; Romans 6:23; II Cor. 9:15.
5. **His only begotten Son** – The Greatest Gift. John 1:14,18; 3:16,18; I John 4:9.
6. **That whosoever** – The Greatest Opportunity. See p. 905, 654.
7. **Believeth** – The Greatest Simplicity. See p. 455.
8. **In Him** – The Greatest Attraction.
9. **Should not perish** – The Greatest Promise. John 10:28; II Peter 3:9.
10. **But** – The Greatest Difference.
11. **Have** – The Greatest Certainty. See p. 906.
12. **Everlasting life** – The Greatest Possession.

259. **BENEFITS OF HOME SCHOOLING. Why do state school teens rebel?**

Bible Reading: “**Foolishness** is bound in the heart of a child:...” Proverbs 22:15.; 1 Kings 12:1-20.

“**Cease**, my son, to hear the instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge.” Proverb 19:27

“**Train** up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.” Prov. 22:6.

“He that walketh with wise men shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.” Prov 13:20

“**Blessed** is the man that walketh **not** in the **counsel of the ungodly**, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.” Psalm 1:1.

Aim: To understand the dangers that government schools present to our children. To protect our children from the many evils of government schools by homeschooling them with a quality curriculum.

Introduction: One of our most valuable possessions is our children. The devil wants to destroy our children so they will be of no use to God’s kingdom. We must not let the devil educate our children by sending them to a school that teaches the devil’s philosophies. State schools do not train children in the way they should go. Many believe that state schools are the greatest cause of wickedness in society.

Jesus Christ was home schooled, as was Abraham Lincoln, Thomas Edison and Queen Elizabeth II.

There are many excellent resources available to help homeschoolers achieve a quality education, such as textbooks, good websites, and Accelerated Christian Education (ACE) curriculum.

Question: What errors and dangers exist in government schools?

Answer: Teen pregnancy, Immodest clothing, Profane language, Few moral values, Nicotine addiction, Alcohol addiction, Drug addiction, Promiscuous sex, Physical violence, Emotional and mental problems, Rock music addiction, Anti-God and anti-authority behaviour, False religions adopted from peers, Abortion’s effect of guilt and depression, Youth suicide, Low self-esteem from peer ridicule, bullying, Homosexuality, Aggressive behaviour, Evolution.

Question: How can we protect our children from these evils?

Answer: By withdrawing them from government schools and homeschooling them using a quality Christian curriculum.

Question: What are the benefits of homeschooling?

Answer: Let us consider them under two headings.

I. Positive Reasons for Home Schooling

- 1. One-on-one tutoring** is the most effective method of teaching. A government school teacher cannot do as good a job with 25 students, as parents with a good homeschool curriculum can do with their own children.
- Homeschoolers are **not held back** by slower students, nor dragged forward prematurely by brighter students.
 - He can learn a wider range of subjects that a government school would not offer if the class was too small.
 - If a government school teacher waits for the slower students, then better students are unchallenged and bored. If a government school teacher adapts the class for the brighter students, then the slower and average students often fall behind and give up. In Maths, if the child misses the basic foundational concepts, he finds it difficult or impossible to grasp later concepts. Hence the class teacher must teach at the average level, which bores the bright, and leaves the slow student behind.
- Home Schooling allows **Bible truths to be taught all through the curriculum**. Those who write government school subjects and philosophies, generally strongly oppose Bible Christianity.

Examples:

 - History curriculum ignores the beneficial effects of Christianity and focuses only on negative events in church history. History should start with creation and Jesus Christ, not Napoleon.
 - State schools ignore the Christian influence behind the founding of USA, Britain and Australia.
 - Homosexuality is presented as an acceptable lifestyle, rather than as a sinful and destructive lifestyle from which one can be delivered.
 - Sex education is social engineering to spread promiscuity. Biblical sexual values are not taught, so students can make “their own decisions”. This produces a generation of children with no moral guidance. Parents of government school children must accept this harmful indoctrination, or spend much time deprogramming their children. This conflict between parents’ and school

values produces confused children, with no moral compass to guide them. The Home Schooling curriculum is taught from a Bible World view, where Parents' Christian values are taught and reinforced, and no deprogramming is necessary.

4. Home Schooling is God's plan for our children. Nowhere in Scripture does God tell us to give our children's education to government teachers with false doctrines. Proverbs 19:27 forbids this.
5. Home Schooling strengthens the family and hence society. Sharing education draws the family closer together, than sending children away to be educated by strangers with unbiblical values.

II. Home Schooling Avoids Many Negatives

1. Government schooling is sin because it violates Psalm 1:1 "Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful"
 - a) Government schools are not godly institutions, but are ungodly. If you send your children to be counselled by ungodly teachers & students, you are putting a curse on your children & yourself.
 - b) The design of government schools is to oppose the things of God. Under the guise of "religious freedom", government schools have been turned to be hostile to Christianity. School textbooks are hostile to Bible truths.
2. Avoiding government schools avoids physical danger. Children are assaulted and bullied daily in government schools. It is foolish to place your children in dangerous situations. As well as violent physical assaults, children are emotionally assaulted by cruelty from fellow students. Some children mercilessly taunt other children because they wear glasses, or wear unpopular clothing, or come from a poor family, or are in some way "different".
3. Socialization in government and Christian Schools is virtually all negative. "Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child" Proverbs 22:15. By having children as the main source of socialization for a child is to make him a "companion of fools". "A companion of fools shall be destroyed." Prov 13:20.
4. Christian schools are often very expensive, and are only slightly better than government schools, because their main source of socialization is still other children with many foolish ideas.
5. Don't endanger your children's spiritual health by exposing them to false, unbiblical views in science, health and history, that you will have to deprogramme later. Endangering them is irresponsible and sinful. Don't force them to hear teachers and students ridiculing, challenging and contradicting Bible truths such as creation in 6 days 6000 years ago, that you are teaching them.

Socialization

Definition: Educate to conform to society. To place under group or government control.

Question: Should we socialize our children in a government school?

Answer: Nowhere in Scripture are parents told to give control of their children to the government or to any other group. Separated from adult influence, children are more easily moulded into whatever thinking the government desires. When raised properly (away from bad influences), most children grow up fairly friendly, co-operative and sociable. School is an unnatural, artificial environment. When not raised properly (or under bad influences), most children become unfriendly, unco-operative, and unsociable. It is right to reverse this pattern.

Key: If a large number of children are together, children usually follow the bad examples rather than the good examples. Government schools spend much time trying to help students resist peer pressure. Peer pressure is the socialization of government schools.

Key: Constant exposure to the immaturities and abuses of other children, brings harmful conformity, not individuality. Children being pressured into using tobacco, alcohol, drugs, promiscuity, bad language, immodest clothing and piercing body parts, does not help family, church or country. Socialization must not be destructive to mind, body, spirit or property.

Question 1: What is 'Positive Socialization'?

Are the following values more likely to be instilled by a state school or by a home school?

- a) Learning how to get along well with people of diverse backgrounds in diverse situations. The artificial age-segregated state school classroom does not allow this, being confined to children of the same age. Home school children interact with people of all ages and backgrounds in all situations of life, under mature adult supervision. Home school wins.

b) Learning **how to treat people with respect**. Peer groups in a state school fail here. Peers call slower children “retarded”. Those with acne are viciously ridiculed, smart children are ridiculed for being smart, children from poor families are ridiculed for not wearing the popular clothes, some children are beaten up for no reason. State schools fail to teach children to treat others with respect. **Key:** When children are the main source of socialization, then childish values will be transmitted. Mature adults are necessary to teach children proper values.

Key: A State School teacher in a class of 25 children cannot overcome and counteract all the negative behaviour of the students. In home schooling, the parent can carefully reinforce the good in a child and correct the bad. This is not the case for a State School child.

c) Learning to **conform to good standards of behaviour**.

Question: What behaviour do children learn from other children: good or bad? Does the good child or badly-behaved child more greatly influence the crowd?

Answer: Crowds tend to follow the lowest examples. This is why so many churches see their youth rebel and leave church as they “progress” through their teens. The positive training received in the home and church during their formative years gets worn away by constant exposure to the negative behaviour of State School classmates. “Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child.” (Proverbs 22:15). So when a child gets his main interaction from other children, he grows up as a companion of fools. Sending a child to state school puts you in a tug of war for him with his peers.

Key: Those who get their main interaction from fools grow up to be fools. “A companion of fools shall be destroyed”. (Proverbs 13:20).

Question: Parents, by sending your child to a State School, if he becomes a companion of fools, he will be destroyed, and God will hold you accountable.

Question: How can a State School destroy your child? By:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) Teen pregnancy | 18) Evolution, no accountability. |
| 2) Immodest clothing | 19) Atheism. |
| 3) Profane language | 20) Socialism or Communism. |
| 4) Few or no moral values | 21) Pornography addiction. |
| 5) Nicotine addiction | 22) Reckless driving to impress mates. |
| 6) Alcohol addiction | 23) Satanism, Occult, Harry Potter. |
| 7) Drug addiction | 24) Sexually explicit English novels. |
| 8) Promiscuous sex. | 25) Tolerating all false opinions. |
| 9) Physical violence and Bullying. | 26) Ridiculing the Bible and Creation. |
| 10) Emotional and mental problems | 27) No Bible teaching. |
| 11) Rock music addiction | 28) No absolute right or wrong. |
| 12) Anti-God and anti-authority behaviour | 29) Wild parties, Discos. |
| 13) False religions adopted from peers | 30) Introduction to the Pub scene. |
| 14) Abortion’s effect of guilt and depression | |
| 15) Youth suicide | |
| 16) Low self-esteem from peer ridicule | |
| 17) Homosexuality | |

Question 2: What is “**Negative Socialization**”?

Are the following **wrong values** more likely to be instilled by a State School or by home school?

a) **Developing Peer Dependence**. We all naturally want the approval of those around us. Children in a State School look to other children around them for their main source of approval.

Key: In order to gain approval of the group, children need to conform to the behaviour and thinking of that group. Thus, State School children will grow up dependent on their peers for approval. Telling them to “resist peer pressure” is too late after they are already locked in to peer group dependence. Old habits are hard to change. In home education, the main source of approval is the family, where family values and behaviour are transmitted as dictated by the parents. Home education, thus, protects children from negative peer dependence.

b) **Drug abuse, Alcohol abuse, Tobacco abuse, Profanity, Promiscuous sex, Anti-social behaviour.**

The standards of the group become the standards of the individuals in the group, or they risk rejection and ridicule. If a child is constantly in a place exhibiting these behaviours, the child is likely to participate in them, or at least view them as acceptable.

If “nice children” hear bad language enough, they become accustomed to it, then they become accepting of it, and then they start using it. In a home where these behaviours are not accepted or exhibited, the children are much less likely to accept or exhibit them. Home school wins again.

- c) **Cliques.** There is nothing wrong with having a close group of friends, but it is wrong when the group attitude is, “If you are not one of us, you are a nobody.” State Schools are a fertile breeding ground for cliques that reject others. Home education is a far superior way of developing mature, respectful, responsible, law-abiding adults. Government schools provide almost no positive value to the socialization of children. What little it does provide, is more than outweighed by the negatives that come with it. What about some teens who go to a government school and come out as fine young adults? This is in spite of government school socialization, not because of it. It is often due to the powerful counteracting, deprogramming influence of a Christian home or a good church.

Objections to Home Schooling.

Objection 1: Your children will be sheltered.

Answer: Children are supposed to be sheltered from things like gang violence, drugs, bullies, ungodly philosophies and immoral sex education. This is the whole purpose behind parenting. Children are not ready to be exposed to these things and shouldn't be.

Example 1: We don't ridicule a florist for keeping a young tender plant in a greenhouse to protect it from things it cannot handle. Why should parents be ridiculed for sheltering young, tender children from things they can't handle?

Example 2: If a toddler tries to put his hand on a hot stove, we stop him. This is not “sheltering”. It is “protecting” your child. When children are protected from the negative influences in government schools, they will grow up more emotionally healthy, and more firmly established in their parent's values. If children are immersed in positive values, they will be more able to recognise negative values later. Many adults with mental disturbances are due to school rejection, ridicule and abuse.

Objection 2: Your children will not know how to deal with the real world.

Answer: Age segregation is not the real world. In the “real world”, people who can excel are not held back until the slower people catch up, which is how government schools operate.

Objection 3: Your children will become too dependent on you.

Answer: Too many children are disrespectful of parents and all authority. Close knit families, submission to authority and consideration for others are necessary for a strong, stable society. It's better for children to depend on their parents a bit more, than to rebel against their parents wishes.

Objection 4: Your child will not have any friends.

Answer: In homeschooling, it is the parents who choose and monitor their children's friends. Many homeschoolers make many friends at church, Christian camps, clubs and with local Christian children. In government schools, parents never know all the wrong friends that may be influencing their children for evil. It is better to have a few quality friends than to have many bad, ungodly or questionable friends.

Objection 5: Your children will be socially younger than their government school peers.

Answer: Homeschooled children will not be forced to act more mature or independent than they really are to protect themselves from being mocked. They should be allowed to enjoy their childhood by not exposing them to things that rob them of their youth & innocence. They will gain independence after they have developed the moral and emotional maturity to handle it. Home schoolers tend to be more respectful, more self confident, more mature & more capable than government school children. Homeschoolers tend to be more accepting of people of different backgrounds since they don't need to deal with peer pressure to conform to their peer group's beliefs.

Objection 6: Parents are not qualified to teach all subjects.

Answer: Those who wrote the homeschooling curriculum are highly qualified. It is self explanatory.

Source: Used with kind permission of Fred Worth. www.hsu.edu/faculty/worthf/why.html

260. The GOSPEL in the STARS

Bible Reading: Psalm 19:1-6.

Aim: To show how God recorded the plan of salvation in the 12 signs of the Zodiac.

To show that reading horoscopes is an abuse of the true message of the Zodiac.

Introduction: There are strong reasons to believe that the star groups and their symbols were originally designed and used to convey God's plan of salvation to people of all places and at all times.

God states that one purpose of the heavenly bodies was to be "for signs and seasons". (Genesis 1:14).

In Psalm 19:1-6 we have the revelation of God written in the heavens.

In Psalm 19:7-14 we have the revelation of God written in His Word.

PROOF OF THE GOSPEL IN THE STARS

From 4000 BC to 1500 BC the world was without a written revelation from God.

Question 1: Did God leave Himself without a witness? No.

Question 2: How was God known? In Romans 10:18 Paul answers the sceptics objection that "Gentiles have not heard the gospel" by quoting Psalm 19:4 that Gentiles have heard the Gospel message in the Zodiac Signs in the stars. "But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world". So the Gentiles are without excuse (Romans 1:19,20).

Question 3: What is the Zodiac?

Definition: The Zodiac consists of 12 groups of stars called constellations or signs or hosts, each 30 degrees wide, which form the background for the motions of the sun, moon and planets (except pluto). The ancients knew that, if the stars could be seen in the daytime, the sun would appear to move through a series of constellations, entering a new sign or constellation each month. These constellations make up the Zodiac. The constellations inside the Zodiac do not now correspond to those named by the ancients, because precession of the earth's axis has tilted the earth in a different direction. As the Sun makes the annual circuit through the 12 houses of the heavens, so this journey depicts Christ's journey from being born of a virgin, redeeming mankind, and returning in glory to destroy Satan and to rule the earth.

Question 4: What is the content of the Zodiac message?

Answer: Book 1: The Redeemer = Christ's First Coming (Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius).
"The Sufferings of Christ".

Book 2: The Redeemed = Results of Christ's Sufferings (Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces, Aries).

Book 3: The Redeemer = Christ's Second Coming. (Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo).

"The glory that should follow." (1 Peter 1:11).

Question 5: What is the meaning of the Zodiac signs?

Their meaning: These pictures preserved and taught the great promise and prophecy of Genesis 3:15, that all hope for man and creation was in a coming Redeemer who would

- be born of a virgin;
- first suffer and later triumph;
- first be wounded by Satan, but later crush the head of Satan.

These ancient star pictures set forth "the sufferings of Christ & the glory that should follow." 1 Peter 1:11
There are **48 signs**, made up of **12 signs** of the Zodiac and **36 constellations**. (Each of the 12 signs contain 3 constellations). These 12 signs are contained in 3 Books, each with 4 signs.

Question 6: Where does Mazzaroth (Zodiac) begin? (Job 38:32). "Canst thou bring forth Mazzaroth?"

Answer: It starts at Virgo because:

a) **The Bible narrative** shows VIRGO as the start and LEO as the end.

Genesis 3:15 starts with the woman bearing a Son who would crush the serpent's head. (This is Leo crushing Hydra, the crooked serpent, sign 12 as in Revelation 5:5).

b) "Bring forth Mazzaroth in his season" is identical to "guiding Arcturus". The star Arcturus is one of the brightest and is next to Virgo in one of her decans (constellations). Arcturus guides/leads the Signs.

c) The Sphinx is found on some ancient Zodiacs. **The Sphinx** shows the VIRGO woman's head as the start, and LEO (lion's body) as the end.

d) **It fits the Biblical narrative** of the redemption story starting with the Virgin bearing a son, and ending with the Son, the Lion of the tribe of Judah (Christ) destroying the great fleeing serpent Hydra.

e) The **ancient Zodiacs** of Egypt, India, Greece, Israel and China exhibit the same 12 major signs and 36 decan signs.

Note. God forbids astrology, the use of the Zodiac signs to predict one's future (Deuteronomy 4:19; Isaiah 47:11-14; 2 Kings 23:5; Acts 7:42,43; Zephaniah 1:5), because:

i) our future is determined by our moral decisions, not by stars.

ii) God judged ancient Israel for "worshipping the host of heaven" which was worshipping demons or fallen angels. (Isaiah 14:12-15; 2 Kings 21:3-6; Deuteronomy 32:16,17; Revelation 9:20).

Question 7: Where does the Bible teach that the Gospel in the Zodiac constellation signs is a valid revelation from God?

Answer: Romans 10:18; Psalm 19:1-6; Job 26:13; Genesis 1:14. The stars give information from God **I. Romans 10:18. Paul** endorses the Gospel in the stars as a valid revelation from God in Romans 10:18 by quoting Psalm 19:4: "But I say, Have they not heard? Yes, verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the end of the world."

II. Psalm 19:1-6. "The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament showeth his handiwork" v.1. (These show God's power, greatness, glory, wisdom and intelligence).

"Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night showeth knowledge." (v.2).

Question 8: How does every night show knowledge?

Answer: By the message contained in the Zodiac signs about Christ's birth, work and return. "There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard." (v.3).

Question 9: How can a voice convey its message without language, or to all languages?

Answer: By **pictures** depicting a message. These Zodiac signs are understandable in all languages.

"Their line (voice, sound) is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them (space) hath he set a **tabernacle** (house) for the sun." (v.4).

Hence: **a)** They show knowledge (v.2). **b)** It is understood by people of all languages (v.3).

c) It shows **Christ as the heavenly bridegroom** (v.5) and a **strong man running a race** to finish His plans. It shows Christ's work of redemption as a circuit (Zodiac) from one end of heaven to the other. (v.6).

Question 10: What is the tabernacle or house that the sun moves through?

Answer: It is the **12 houses** or signs of the Zodiac that the sun spends one month in each sign or sector. The 12 signs of the Zodiac are the 12 houses the sun moves through each year.

"**Which** (the sun moving through the Tabernacle of 12 houses) is as a **bridegroom** (Christ is the heavenly bridegroom [Revelation 19:7] whose wife will be the Church) coming out of his **chamber** (heaven), and rejoices as a **strong man** (Christ is the all powerful God/man) to run a **race** (the race of redemption, from Virgo to Leo, to secure full and final salvation of mankind and creation)". (v 5).

"**His** (the sun's) going forth is from the **end of heaven**, (as the sun appears to move through the 12 Zodiac signs) and his **circuit** (yearly course around the 12 Zodiac signs, see Hebrew words 8622, 5362) unto the **ends of it** (heaven); and there is nothing hid from the heat of it". (Psalm 19:1-6).

III. Job 26:13. Job states that "God's Spirit garnished the **heavens**, and **his hand** hath formed the **crooked serpent**." (Job 26:13). **Hydra**, the largest constellation, stretches below Cancer, Leo and Virgo. As Hydra validly depicts Satan as the crooked serpent, so do the other constellations teach a valid message, as confirmed by the written Word of God.

IV. Genesis 1:14. "And **God** said, Let there be lights in the firmament of the heaven to divide the day from the night; and let them be for **signs**, and for **seasons**, and for days, and for years."

These **signs** are the 12 signs of the zodiac telling us of the plan of redemption by Jesus Christ.

Ancient farmers planted & harvested their crops in **season** according to stars appearing at different times

V. Psalm 147:4; Isaiah 40:26. The Bible states that God has **numbered** and **named** the stars.

"He telleth the **number** of the stars; he calleth them all by their **names**." Psalm 147:4.

"Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who hath created these things, that bringeth out their host by **number**: he calleth them all by **names**..." Isaiah 40:26.

The figures are arbitrary and there is nothing in the groups of stars to suggest the figures. These pictures were designed to preserve, teach and perpetuate the first great promise of God given to man in

Genesis 3:15 that hope for all mankind of being delivered from sin and suffering was bound up in a coming Redeemer; One who would be born of a woman; One who would first suffer, and afterwards gloriously triumph, One who would first be wounded by Satan, who was the cause of all sin, sorrow and death, but who would finally crush the head of “that old Serpent the Devil”.

These ancient star pictures reveal this coming Redeemer.

They set forth “the sufferings of Christ and the glory that should follow”. (1 Peter 1:11).

The 12 signs of the Zodiac contain: a) 3 great books, each containing 4 chapters,

b) 48 constellations, 4 in each of the 12 signs of the Zodiac.

II. ZODIAC and CONSTELLATIONS IN THE BIBLE

1. Pleiades (known as the seven stars in Amos 5:8) are in Taurus.

“Canst thou bind the sweet influences of Pleiades?” (Job 38:31; 9:9).

2. Orion is in Taurus, “or loose the bands of Orion”. (Job 38:31; 9:9; Amos 5:8).

3. Arcturus is in Cancer in Ursa Major. “Canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?” (Job 38:32; 9:9). Polaris (the Polestar) is in Ursa Minor. Arcturus’ sons are the stars in the tail of Ursa Major, being:

a) Alioth (meaning ‘she goat’);

b) Mizar (meaning ‘small’);

c) Al Cor (meaning ‘the lamb’);

d) Al Kaid (meaning ‘the assembled’).

4. Chambers of the South (Job 9:9) are opposite in the Zodiac to Taurus, which would be Scorpio.

5. Hydra in Leo is the “crooked serpent”. “By his Spirit he hath garnished the heavens; his hand hath formed the crooked serpent” Job 26:13. This shows the gospel message in the stars is ordained by God

6. Mazzaroth (Job 38:32) is the 12 signs of the Zodiac (Gesenius, *Hebrew Lexicon*, p 462, 4216).

“Mazzaloth” (Aramaic and later Hebrew) means “girdling stars”, the Zodiacal circle. “Canst thou bring forth Mazzaroth (4216) in his season?” (Job 28:32). “Season” means “separated, divided” as the spaces given to the 12 Zodiac signs mark the successive seasons in the year.

1) Thus the constellations were known in Job’s time, and well understood by believers of that age.

2) This grouping of the stars in pictures is shown to be the work of God by His Spirit: “By His Spirit He garnished (or decorated) the heavens; His hand hath formed the crooked serpent.” (Job 26:13).

God forming the crooked serpent (Hydra) is an example of that sacred garnishing, that we may know from a specific part what is true of the whole Zodiac. That work is ascribed to the Spirit of God.

Question 11: How else may we confirm the 12 Zodiac signs validly teach the Gospel in the Stars?

Answer:

1. The Ancient nations of China, Babylon and Egypt show that the 12 Zodiac signs have the same order and meanings. These date from before 2000 BC.

2. The 12 sons of Jacob were later identified with the 12 Zodiac signs (Genesis 37:8-10).

Joseph dreamed of the sun, moon and 11 stars bowing down to him, he himself being the 12th star. Details in the blessing of Jacob (Genesis 49) and in the blessing of Moses (Deuteronomy 33) witness to knowledge of the 12 signs’ existence in 1500 BC.

a) Deuteronomy 33:17 depicts Ephraim and Manasseh (Joseph’s 2 sons) as a BULL (Taurus).

b) Genesis 49:3,4 depict Reuben as unstable as water, just as a MAN pouring water (Aquarius).

c) Genesis 49:8-10 depict Judah as an old LION (Leo).

d) Genesis 49:17 depict Dan as a serpent or adder, reminding us of Scorpio’s sting.

3. The 12 Tribes of Israel each bore one sign on its standard. “Every man of the children of Israel shall pitch by his own standard, with the ensign of their father’s house.” (Numbers 2:2).

Ancient Jewish authorities declare that each tribe had one of the signs as its own. It is likely that 4 tribes carried its sign at the 4 sides of the camp. If the Lion was allocated to Judah, then the 4 standards would equally divide the Zodiac at its 4 points, and divide the camp at its 4 sides. According to “OT Bible History” Alfred Edersheim Book 2, p.151 and to Numbers 2:1-34, especially v.3,10,18,25, the camp of Israel was pitched as follows:

'Dan shall be a serpent
by the way, an adder....
(Genesis 49:17).

Asher
(Sagittarius)

Dan
(Scorpio)
The SCORPION

Naphtali
(Capricorn)
The EAGLE

Benjamin
(Gemini)

NORTH

Issachar
(Cancer)

Ephraim
(Taurus)
The BULL
'His glory is
like the firstling
of his bullock.'
(Deut. 33:17)

WEST

Levi
(Libra)
The SCALES
Moses the lawgiver
was from Levi
(Exodus 2:1,2)

EAST

Judah
(Leo)
The LION
'Judah is a lion's
whelp ... as an
old lion.'
(Genesis 49:8-10)

Manasseh

SOUTH

Zebulun
(Virgo)

Gad
(Aries)

Reuben
(Aquarius)
The MAN

Simeon
(Pisces)

'Reuben...unstable as water.' (Genesis 49:3,4)

4. The **4 faces of CHERUBIM** correspond to the 4 main Zodiac signs (the Lion, the Bull, the Man, the Eagle/Scorpion). "They four had the face of a man, and the face of a lion, on the right side; and they four had the face of an ox on the left side; and they four also had the face of an eagle." (Ezekiel 1:10; 10:14). Notice that the lion and ox had the same positions as in the camp of Israel. "And the first beast was like a lion, and the second beast like a calves, and the third beast had a face as a man, and the fourth beast was like a living eagle." (Revelation 4:7). The eagle, the scorpion's enemy, replaces the scorpion. One constellation of Capricorn is Aquilla, the eagle.
5. The **4 New Testament Gospels'** descriptions of Christ correspond to the 4 main Zodiac signs:
 - a) Matthew shows Christ as King (the Lion). (Matthew 2:2; 21:5; 27:11,37).
 - b) Mark shows Christ as a Servant. (the Bull, Ox). (Mark 9:35; 10:44,45; 12:2).
 - c) Luke shows Christ as the perfect Man. (Aquarius, a man pouring water). Luke 19:10; 15:2; Jn 4:10-15.
 - d) John shows Christ as God. (The Eagle flying high in the heaven). (John 3:13).
6. Christ is introduced **4 times in the OT** by the word "behold": Behold the King (Zechariah 9:9), Behold my servant (Isaiah 42:1), Behold the man (Zechariah 6:12), Behold your God (Isaiah 40:9)
What then is the true message of the Zodiac symbols?

1. The Gospel in the stars may be summarized as follows:

BOOK 1: The PERSON of the REDEEMER

1. VIRGO (The Virgin). From a young virgin will be born the Saviour of the World. Genesis 3:15. "Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel." Isaiah 7:14 and Matthew 1:23, Isaiah 9:6,7. That Virgo represents the coming of the Promised seed of the woman is seen by the names of stars and constellations in Virgo.

Coma constellation (The woman and child) = This coming Branch will be a child who will be the "Desire of all nations". "The desire of all nations shall come". Haggai 2:7.

Coma in Hebrew means "Desired or longed for".

2. LIBRA (The Scales) = Christ's Payment for our Sins.

The price of man's sins have been paid by Christ's sacrifice. Libra is a pair of scales with one end up and the other end down, in the act of weighing. Since man is a sinner and under judgment, an adequate

price must be paid to redeem him and balance the scales of God's justice. By Christ paying for our sins on the cross, God's justice in requiring that our sin be punished, has now been satisfied.

That Libra represents **Christ paying for our sins** can be seen by the names of the **main stars in Libra**:

a) Zuben Al Genubi, means in Arabic. "The price which is **deficient**". This points to the price that man would attempt to pay for his own redemption by his works. All mankind are like Belshazzar, being weighed in the balances and found wanting. (Daniel 5:27).

b) Zuben Al Chemali, means "The Price which **covers**", which is the blood of Christ. The atoning sacrifice of Christ is sufficient to pay the penalty for man's sin and to purchase our redemption.

c) Zuben Akrabi, meaning in Arabic "The Price of the **Conflict**". The payment of the price of man's redemption at Calvary involved a **conflict**.

d) **CruX** (The Southern Cross). 4 bright stars form a cross. The southern cross was last visible in the latitude of Jerusalem about the time Christ died on the cross.

It's ancient name in Hebrew was "Adom", meaning "**cut off**". This word is used in Daniel 9:26 to describe the Messiah's death before Jerusalem's destruction in 70AD. "shall Messiah be cut off."

e) **Corona** (The crown bestowed). This pictures the crown of glory adorning Christ's head now that His sufferings for our sins are over. The cross is followed by the **crown**. "The son of man, having on his head a golden crown." (Revelation 14:14). This is at Christ's **second coming**.

3. **SCORPIO** (The **Scorpion**). **Christ's Mortal Conflict**.

The scorpion is seeking to wound Christ, but is itself trodden underfoot. The sign of Scorpio depicts a huge scorpion trying to sting the heel of a mighty man (Christ) Who is wrestling a great snake (Serpens). At the same time the scorpion is being crushed by the other foot of the mighty man.

The coming Redeemer would bruise the serpent's head while He Himself is bruised in the heel.

(Genesis 3:15). Virgo shows Christ as the promised **seed** of the Virgin. Libra shows the **price** Christ would pay to secure man's redemption. Scorpio shows the **conflict** Christ would have to endure.

Scorpio represents Christ's mortal conflict with Satan is seen by the names of some stars in Scorpio:

a) **Serpens** constellation (The serpent struggling with Christ for the crown).

b) **Ophiuchus** constellation (The mighty man defeating the serpent and treading him underfoot).

c) **Unuk**, the brightest star in Serpens means "**encompassing**". "Dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have enclosed me". Psalm 22:16.

d) **Cheleb**, in the head of the serpent, means "The Serpent Enfolding".

e) **Ras El Hagus**, in the head of the man, means "The head of him who holds".

f) **Hercules** constellation shows a mighty vanquisher kneeling on one knee, seeming to sink in the conflict, but holding aloft the tokens of victory, with his foot on the dragon's head.

4. **SAGITTARIUS** (The **Archer**). **Christ's Victory over Satan**.

The Archer is a Centaur having the body and legs of a horse, with the body, head and arms of a man. His bow is drawn to the full. The arrow, ready to fly, is aimed at the heart of Scorpio, the enemy, marked by the bright red star Antares.

This **2 natured Centaur** depicts **Christ as the God-man triumphing**: "O most mighty... Thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the King's enemies". (Psalm 45:3-5). That Sagittarius depicts **Christ's victory over Satan** is witnessed by the names of some of the stars in Sagittarius.

a) **Lyra** constellation pictures a **lyre** or **harp**, an instrument of praise prepared for Christ the Conqueror. "Praise waiteth for thee, O God, in Zion." (Psalm 65:1; 33:2). When the wait is over, Christ will come forth, then the praise shall be given, as in Revelation 11:17 and 19:7.

"When thou shalt make ready thine **arrows** upon thy strings..Be thou **exalted**, LORD, in thine own strength: **so will we sing and praise thy power**." (Psalm 21:12,13). The harp follows the victorious horseman archer.

b) **Vega** is the bright star in Lyra meaning "**He shall be exalted**". (Revelation 5:9,13).

In Lyra, the harp shows the joy and gladness at the Archer's victory.

c) **Ara** constellation is an **upside down altar**, depicting the **fires of judgment on the archer's enemies**. (i.e. the Lake of Fire). The Greeks used Ara as a curse. Jesus will one day say to some, "depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels". (Matthew 25:41).

The consuming fire of Ara follows the triumphant praise seen in Lyra. "Thou shalt make them as a fiery oven in the time of thine anger: The LORD shall swallow them up in his wrath, and the fire shall devour them". Psalm 21:9.

d) **Draco** constellation is the **Dragon**, the Old Serpent, the Devil cast down from Heaven (Rev. 12:9,10). Isaiah describes God destroying Satan: “in that day, the LORD with his sore, great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea.” (Isaiah 27:1). Stars in the head of Draco are **Rastaban** (the head of the subtle) and **Ethanin** (The Long Serpent).

Conclusion: Each of the 3 Books or Acts ends with similar theme:

Book one ends with **Draco**, the **Dragon** being cast out.

Book two ends with **Cetus**, the **Sea monster** being bound.

Book three ends with **Hydra**, the **Old Serpent** being destroyed.

BOOK 2: The RESULTS of Christ’s Redeeming Work.

5. **CAPRICORN** (The **Sea Goat**) = A **goat** with the **tail** of a **fish**. The goat is dying with a bowed head and folded leg, while the fish tail is living and vigorous. The **Blessing of life from death**.

Meaning: The **goat** was a sacrificial animal used in the sin offering (Leviticus 9:1-3) on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:1-34).

Capricorn, the dying goat, speaks of Christ dying on the cross for sinful man. From the dying goat comes a **living fish** typifying the many redeemed who have been given life as a result of Christ’s sacrifice. (Matthew 4:19). The fish symbolizes that the believer in Christ is a new creation (2 Cor. 5:17) Hence Capricorn represents **new life** resulting from the sacrificial **death** of Christ.

6. **AQUARIUS** (The **Water pourer**) = **Jesus Christ pours living water to his redeemed people**.

“Whosoever shall drink of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst.” (John 4:46).

Jesus Christ pours out the water of life in blessing His people the **Church** (“If any man thirst, let him come unto Me and drink” John 7:37), and on **Israel** in the Millennium (“He shall pour the water out of His buckets.” Numbers 24:7). Moses struck the rock, water gushed out giving life, refreshment and blessing to Israel in the wilderness. So Aquarius teaches the blessing of **salvation’s fullness**.

7. **PISCES** (**2 fish** bound at the tails by a cord, attached in the middle to the neck of Cetus, the Sea Monster). The **Delay of the promised blessing**.

Meaning: Fish in the gospels represent people who are caught in the gospel net for the Kingdom of God. (“Follow me and I will make you fishers of men.” Matthew 4:19; 13:47). God’s people consist of 2 groups, saved **Israelites** and saved **Gentiles** (the Church), both of which are still bound to live in a sinful world until Christ returns, where the full blessings of salvation will be revealed and our bondage to sin will be broken (Romans 8:18-23). “We ourselves groan within ourselves...waiting for the redemption of our body.” (v.23). Pisces shows that the full blessings of salvation are delayed until Christ returns.

8. **ARIES** (The **Lamb**) represents Jesus Christ as the **Lamb of God** who by the sacrifice of Himself takes away the sin of the world, but now reigns as King of Kings. John the Baptist said of Jesus, “Behold the Lamb of God, which takes away the sin of the world” (John 1:29). This lamb is a sacrificial lamb who was bound, bruised and slain as witnessed by the names of some of the stars in Aries.

a) **Elnath**, the brightest star means “The wounded or **slain**”.

b) **Sheretan** means “The **Bruised**”.

c) **Mesartim** means “The **Bound**”.

When the Israelites in Egypt were ordered to slay a lamb and sprinkle its blood on the doorposts and lintels of their houses, the **sun entered Aries** on **this very day**, the fourteenth day of the Jewish month Nisan. At the time of **Christ’s crucifixion**, the fourteenth day of Nisan, the **sun** stood in the head of **Aries** near the stars **Elnath** (the wounded) and **Sheretan** (the bruised).

False astrology begins with Aries because its modern structure was developed in classical times when the sun was in Aries at the Spring equinox. This is a perversion of God’s intention of the signs, for they were to speak of Christ’s coming and work of salvation. The correct beginning is Virgo, not Aries.

In Isaiah 53, Christ is presented as the lamb led to the slaughter. In Isaiah 54:5-8, Christ is presented as Jehovah the Son, the husband of Israel, the restored wife of Jehovah. So in this sign, Aries the Lamb is followed by Cassiopeia, the bride. (Isaiah 54:5-8).

BOOK 3: REDEMPTION COMPLETE.

9. TAURUS (The **Bull**) represents Christ as the strong one, the **Great Judge coming in power and glory** to judge and rule the earth. Taurus is an enormous rushing bull of mighty energy and fierce wrath with long, sharp horns pointing forward and upward to push, pierce through and destroy his enemies. Balaam describes the power of God on behalf of Israel as “God brought them out of Egypt; he hath as it were the strength of an unicorn”. Numbers 23:22; 24:8.

When Moses blessed the tribes before his death, he said of the tribe of **Joseph**, “His glory is like the firstling of his **bullock**, and **his horns** are like the horns of unicorns: with them he shall push the people together to the ends of the earth”. (Deuteronomy 33:17). Job spoke of the unicorn, wild bull, or aurochs as having great strength, ferocious and untamable (Job 39:9-12), and of great speed (Psalm 29:6).

The unicorn or wild ox was much larger, stronger, faster and more ferocious than modern bulls. It was a prize hunted by Egyptian and Assyrian kings like Tiglath Pileser I (1115-1102 BC) in the Lebanon mountains. It became extinct in Europe around the 15th Century. That Taurus represents Christ coming to judge and rule the world is witnessed by the names of some of the stars in Taurus:

a) **Aldebaran**, the brightest star in the bull’s eye means “The **Governor**, Leader or Captain”.

b) **Pleiades** means “The **Congregation of the Judge**.”

c) **Aelvone** means “The **Centre**” showing that the central truth of all prophecy is that Christ is coming to rule the earth.

d) **Betelgeuse**, the brightest star in Orion, means “The **Coming of the Branch**”. See Jeremiah 23:5,6; 33:15,16; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12,13 which speak of Christ as the **BRANCH** coming to rule, judge and build the Millennial temple.

10. GEMINI (The **Twins**) represent **Jesus Christ** as the **God/Man** coming to rule the earth with His **Bride** the Church (Ephesians 5:25-33). We see the **twin roles of Christ** as follows.

a) **His twofold work**: suffering Saviour and Coming Prince of Glory.

b) **His twofold nature**: fully God and fully man.

c) **His twofold comings**: humiliation and future glory.

d) **The heavenly Bridegroom** with **His Bride**, the Church.

Gemini is represented by two human figures, a **man** and a **woman** walking united in fellowship, at rest and in peace after victory has been won. This clearly tells us how Christ and His bride the church will be united in peaceful fellowship during Christ’s 1000 year reign on earth. These twins are named after two bright stars, “**Castor and Pollux**” in Latin, and “Apollo and Hercules” in Greek.

(Paul was shipwrecked in a ship called “Castor and Pollux” in Acts 28:11).

a) **Castor** or Apollo means “**Ruler or Judge**”.

b) **Pollux** or Hercules means “**He who comes to labour or suffer**”.

Hence Gemini shows Christ coming in His twin roles of suffering Saviour and ruling King of Kings, as God and man, to rule with His Bride, the Church. “Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour..” (Acts 5:31).

11. CANCER (The **Crab**) means “**Christ’s redeemed people held safe and secure**”. Cancer comes from the Latin word “to **hold** or **encircle**”. As the crab holds tightly with its large claws, so this sign tells us of the time when Christ will return to **gather, protect and shelter God’s people safely** into “everlasting habitations.” (Luke 16:9). The Egyptian name for this sign (Klaria) means “Cattlefolds”. The Arab name (Alsartan) means “**Who holds or binds**”.

That Cancer represents Christ returning to “hold fast and secure His redeemed people” is witnessed by the names of some of the stars in Cancer:

a) **Tegmine**, the brightest star (in the tail), means “**Holding**”.

b) **Acubine**, in Hebrew, means “**Sheltering or Hiding Place**”.

c) **Ma’alaph**, in Arabic, means “**Assembled thousands**”.

d) **Praesepe**, the cluster in the middle, means “**Multitude**”.

Abraham looked for a heavenly city where the redeemed are held safely forever.

“He looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God”. (Hebrews 11:10).

e) The constellation **Argo** in the sign of Cancer, means “**A company of travellers**”. It pictures the safe arrival of God’s people back to the land of blessing, where the “redeemed of the Lord shall return and

come with singing unto Zion". (Isaiah 35:10; 51:11). It is an immense star group. Argo was a legendary ship which carried Jason and his argonauts to search for the Golden Fleece, which they recovered from the great serpent who guarded it. Jason is the Greek equivalent of Joshua or Jesus.

f) **Canopus**, the leading star in Argo, means "The **possession of Him who comes**".

g) **Soheil** means "The **desired**", reminding us of Psalm 107:30 "So he bringeth them unto their desired haven". Isaiah 60:4,5,9 describe the return of Jews to their own land.

Hence, **Cancer** means "The **redeemed held safe**" and **Argo** means "**Travellers safely home**".

12. **LEO** (The **Lion** crushing the head of the serpent).

As the Lion is king of the beasts, so Jesus Christ as the "**Lion of the tribe of Judah**" (Revelation 5:5) will return as "King of Kings and Lord of Lords" (Rev. 19:16) to take over the earth and crush Satan's head by locking him in the pit for 1,000 years, then casting him into the Lake of Fire. As **Cancer** pictures the **final rest and homecoming of the redeemed**, so **Leo** shows the **final end of the enemy**.

Leo shows Christ coming as the exalted King to rule earth is witnessed by some stars names in Leo:

a) **Regulus**, the first magnitude star, means "**Treading underfoot**".

b) **Denebola**, the next brightest star, means "**The Judge who comes**".

c) **Algiebha**, (in the mane) means "**The exaltation**".

d) **Zozma**, in the hindquarter, means "**Shining forth**".

e) **Minchar Al Asad** (Arabic), the star in his head, means "**The tearing of the Lion**".

f) **Aldafera** (Arabic), means "**The enemy put down**".

All these names consistently bear witness of Christ who is the **Lion of the Tribe of Judah**, who is now exalted and will soon rise up for judgment.

Three constellations in the sign of Leo complete the gospel in the stars, which are:

a) **Hydra**, the old serpent destroyed (Rev. 12:9).

b) **Crater**, the cup of Divine wrath poured out upon him (Rev. 16).

c) **Corvus**, the bird of prey devouring him (Rev. 19:17-21). The Hebrew name for this sign is Arieh, which means "The lion hunting down his prey". The Lion's foot is over the head of Hydra the great serpent about to crush it. Jacob, on his death bed spoke of Judah as: "Judah is a lion's whelp: from the prey my son, thou art gone up..." (Genesis 49:8,9). Christ will destroy Satan, the old serpent, all his seed, and all his works. The Hydra constellation is immense and is beneath Cancer, Leo and Virgo.

Some stars in the Hydra constellation are:

a) **Al Phard** (Arabic) meaning "**The separated, put away**".

b) **Al Drian**, meaning "**The abhorred**".

c) **Minchar al Sugia**, meaning "**The piercing of the deceiver**".

The PERSON of the Redeemer.

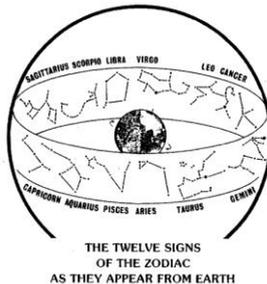
1. **Manhood** Christ would assume. (Virgo = The virgin born Saviour).

2. The **Price** he would pay. (Libra = The Blood of Christ pays the penalty of our sin and balances the scales of God's justice).

3. The **Battle** He would fight. (Scorpio = The Scorpion seeking to wound, but itself crushed. Satan wounding Christ).

4. The **Victory** He would win. (Sagittarius (The Archer) = The victory of Christ over Satan). "Thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the King's enemies". (Psalm 45:5).

The conquering Archer goes on in his battle to completely overthrow Satan.



Notice the more complete picture given by the Decans (or constellations) in each of the 12 signs:

BOOK 1: Christ's First Coming: "The Sufferings of Christ".

1. Chapter 1: VIRGO: The Promised Seed of the Woman. (Genesis 3:15).

The Redeemer would be born of a virgin.

- i) Coma (The woman and child = the desired. Christ, the "Desire of all nations shall come." Haggai 2:7
- ii) Centaurus (The Centaur with two natures, spearing a victim) = the Despised Sufferer. Christ would suffer, "He is despised and rejected of men." (Isaiah 53:3).
- iii) Bootes (A man walking quickly with a spear in his right hand, and a sickle in his left) = The Coming One will judge the earth. "For he cometh to judge the earth". (Psalm 96:13).

2. Chapter 2: LIBRA (the Scales): Christ's Payment for our sins.

The price of mans' sins is paid by Christ's sacrifice.

- i) Crux (The Cross endured) = The Southern Cross. "It is finished." (John 19:30).
- ii) Victima (The Victim slain) = "Christ became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross" Phil 2:8
- iii) Corona (The Crown bestowed) = "Jesus..for the suffering of death crowned with glory and honour." (Hebrews 2:9).

3. Chapter 3: SCORPIO (The Scorpion): Christ's Conflict. (Psalm 91:13

The Scorpion seeking to wound Christ, but itself trodden underfoot. "Thou shalt tread upon the adder."

- i) Serpens (The serpent struggling with Christ for dominion).
- ii) Ophiuchus (The man grasping the serpent).
- iii) Hercules (The mighty vanquisher seeming to sink in the conflict, but holding aloft the tokens of victory, with his foot on the dragon's head). (Romans 16:20).

4. Chapter 4: SAGITTARIUS (The Archer): Christ's Triumph.

The two-natured conqueror triumphing.

"O most mighty ... thine arrows are sharp in the heart of the king's enemies." (Psalm 45:3-5).

- i) Lyra (The Harp) = Praise prepared for the Conqueror. "Praise waiteth for thee, O God, in Zion". (Psalm 65:1; 33:2).
- ii) Ara (The Altar) = Consuming fire prepared for His enemies. "Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels." (Matthew 25:41).
- iii) Draco (The Dragon) = The Old Serpent, the Devil cast down from heaven. (Revelation 12:7-10).

BOOK 2: The Redeemer's People: The Blessings of Salvation.

5. Chapter 1: CAPRICORN (The Fish-Goat, A dying Goat with a fish's tail). (Leviticus 10:16:17).

Christ's sacrificial death brings life to many.

- i) Sagitta (The Arrow of God's justice piercing the sin-bearer) "Thine arrows stick fast in me" Psa 38:2
- ii) Aquila (The pierced falling Eagle). Christ as a Dying Eagle. "I bare you on eagles" wings and brought you unto myself". (Exodus 19:4). "As an eagle...beareth them on her wings, so the LORD alone did lead them" (Deut.32:11,12). The faces of the cherubim were a man, lion, ox, eagle. Ezekiel:10.
- iii) Dolphinus (Dolphin springing out of the water). Christ rose from the dead. The dead Redeemer rising again, full of life, head up. In death Christ could say, "All thy waves and thy billows are gone over me". (Psalm 42:7). "He was raised again for our justification." (Romans 4:25).

6. Chapter 2: AQUARIUS (The water-pourer is Christ giving living water of eternal life and blessings of salvation to His redeemed people). Salvation's full blessings. "The water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life." (John 4:14).

- i) Piscis Australis (Open mouthed Fish that is drinking water from Aquarius, pictures His people receiving Christ's endless stream of blessings). "Whosoever shall drink of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst." (John 4:14).
- ii) Pegasus (The Winged Horse) is the bringer of Christ's salvation to a weary world (Zechariah 1:8-10) and Christ returning with power and great glory (Revelation 19:11-16). "Peg" means "chief", "sus" means "a swiftly coming horse". It means "the chief, coming again in great victory and blessing". "Surely I come quickly." (Revelation 22:20).
- iii) Cygnus (Flying Swan) teaches that Christ will return in beauty and glory. "They shall see the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory". (Matthew 24:30). 'He shall come to be glorified in His saints and admired in all them that believe.' (2 Thess. 1:10). **1190**

7. Chapter 3: PISCES (Two fish bound at the tails to the neck of the sea monster). Blessings delayed

i) The Band. The groanings of Creation and God's people still bound in a sinful world until Christ returns. (Romans 8:18-23).

ii) Andromeda (The Chained) is a woman with chains on her hands and feet, bound securely in misery and distress. This pictures Israel bound in suffering during the church age, along with the church persecuted and suffering in a sinful world.

iii) Cepheus (The Deliverer coming to Rule). Cepheus is a king sitting on a throne near Cassiopea his wife. He is the Deliverer for whom the chained woman, Andromeda waits. He is the Coming King who shall unloose the chains that bind them freeing them to inherit all the blessings awaiting them.

8. Chapter 4: ARIES (The Lamb). Blessing fully realised. Christ is the Lamb of God, by whose sacrifice takes away sin, and will rule on earth as King of Kings. (John 1:29).

i) Cassiopeia (The Enthroned Woman, freed and making herself ready for presentation to marry her Redeemer). Andromeda was chained and miserable. Cassiopeia is free and happy. They are a "before and after" presentation of the same person. The Church and Israel are now suffering, but later will be free and rejoicing. Christ will present it to Himself "a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing, but holy and without blemish". (Ephesians 5:27).

ii) Cetus (The Sea Monster). Satan subdued and bound. Cetus is the Leviathan (Job 41:1-2; 9-10) and Dragon (Revelation 20:1-3). "In that day, the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea." (Isaiah 27:1). The Lamb is above the head of Cetus.

iii) Perseus (The Strong Soldier delivering the Redeemed). Perseus has a helmet on his head, a sword in his right hand, and the head of his enemy in his left hand. Christ releases His people from captivity. Perseus means "the Breaker". Micah prophesies that God's flock shall be gathered when "the breaker is come up before them". (Micah 2:12,13).

BOOK 3: Christ's Second Coming: The Reigning Redeemer Delivering us from the Presence of Sin.

9. TAURUS (The Bull). Christ the Great Judge Coming in power and glory. This ferocious, large, rushing bull with long, sharp horns is mentioned as the unicorn or rimu in Job 39:9,10; Numbers 23:22; Deuteronomy 33:17; Isaiah 34:2-8). Taurus represents the Coming Judge and Coming Judgment (II Thessalonians 1:7-9; Revelation 6:12-17).

i) Orion (A Mighty Hunter with a club in his right hand, and a freshly killed lion skin in his left hand). The Prince of Glory. The Orion constellation is mentioned in Job 9:9; 38:31; Amos 5:8. The brightest stars in Orion are Betelgeuse (The Coming of the Branch) and Rigel (The Foot that Crushes). Orion means "He who was slain is coming as the Prince of Light and Glory to judge the world". "Arise, shine; for thy light is come ... Gentiles shall come to thy light ..." (Isaiah 60:1-3).

ii) Eridanus (The River of Fire). The Wrath of God poured on His enemies. From the raised foot of Orion flows a river of fire toward Cetus the sea monster. It teaches that the wicked will be cast into the Lake of Fire. "A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him." (Daniel 7:10); "The LORD cometh from far, burning with his anger,...his tongue is as a devouring fire." (Malachi 3:2) "His fury is poured out like fire" (Nahum 1:6); "he is like a refiner's fire." (Malachi 3:2).

iii) Auriga (The Shepherd). The Protection of the Redeemed in the Day of Wrath. Taurus shows the Power of His Coming. Orion shows the splendour of His Coming. Eridanus shows the fiery judgment of His Coming. Auriga promises protection for God's people. The Shepherd Auriga sits in calm grace above the rushing wild bull. Auriga holds a mother goat who has just given birth to a pair of kids in her lap, all being safe and protected in the arms of the shepherd. Auriga is Christ as the Chief Shepherd who will keep His people safe in the day of His coming in power and wrath (I Peter 5:4). "He shall feed His flock like a shepherd: he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young...and meted out the heaven with the span." (Isaiah 40:11,12)

10. GEMINI: (The **Twins**). **Christ married to the Church.** (Revelation 19:7-9).

i) **Lepus** (The Enemy). Christ treads Satan underfoot as a snake.

ii) **Canis Major** (The Dog) or **Sirius** (The Prince). Christ as the “Prince of Peace” (Isaiah 9:6).

Coming Prince of Glory. Sirius is the brightest star only 9 light years away. The feminine form of Sirius is Sarah meaning Princess.

iii) **Canis Minor** (His princely following). ”The armies of heaven follow Him on white horses” Rev19:14

11. CANCER: (Crab). Christ’s Possessions held secure. God’s people sheltered safely. IThes 4:16-18

i) **Ursa Minor** (The Sheepfold). The **Stronghold of the Saved.** (Little Dipper). Not a bear, but a

collection of domestic animals. Polaris is here. Christ transfers His church to heaven, while yet unmanifested to the rest of the world (I Thessalonians 4:13-18).

ii) **Ursa Major** (The Assembled Flock). **Christ will regather Israel to regain her land.** “The house of Jacob shall possess their possessions.” (Obadiah 17-19). This Constellation is called Arcturus in Job 9:9; 38:32. “Canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons.” “He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd doth his flock.” (Jeremiah 31:10; Ezekiel 34:11-16).

iii) **Argo** (The Ship in Harbour). **Travellers Safely Home.** It prophesies the safe arrival of God’s people back to the land of blessing. “So be bringeth them unto their desired haven.” (Psalm 107:30). “The redeemed of the LORD shall return and come with singing unto Zion.” (Isaiah 51:11; 60:8,9).

12. LEO (The **Conquering Lion** of the Tribe of Judah). **Triumphal Return of Christ.** Leo is a strong lion killing and tearing his prey. Leo is treading underfoot the great serpent Hydra. Leo is the fourth symbol of Christ crushing the head of his enemy (Scorpio, Sagittarius, Taurus, Leo). Cancer shows the final rest and homecoming of the redeemed. Leo shows the final end of the enemy. The Old Hebrews called this sign “Arieh” meaning a lion hunting down its prey.”The lion did tear in pieces” (Nahum 2:12; II Samuel 17:10). See Revelation 5:5; Genesis 49:8,9; Numbers 24:8,9; Isaiah 42:13. “The Lion of the Tribe of Judah ... hath prevailed.” (Revelation 5:5).

i) **Hydra** (The Serpent). **The Old Serpent Destroyed.** Hydra is the largest constellation in the sky, stretching 100 degrees across the sky below the constellations of Cancer, Leo and Virgo.

Hydra (The Abhorred) depicts Satan through whom evil entered the world and by whom sin multiplied. The Great Lion of Judah will cast out from heaven and earth that old serpent the devil to destroy him in the lake of fire. (Revelation 20:10).

ii) **Crater** (The Cup). **God’s Wrath poured on the Serpent.** This cup of God’s indignation (Rev. 14:10) lies below the hind feet of Leo and rests on Hydra the snake. This cup of God’s wrath will be poured on:

- unbelievers (II Thessalonians 1:7-9), - all the wicked of the earth (Psalm 75:8; 11:6),

- Antichrist’s armies (Zechariah 12:2,3), - Beast worshippers (Revelation 14:10),

- Mystery Babylon (Revelation 16:19; 17:4; 18:6),

- Devil and his angels (Matthew 25:41; Revelation 10:10).

iii) **Corvus** (The Raven). **Devouring the Old Serpent.** Ravens are powerful scavenger birds of prey who tear flesh from dead animals. The enemy of God and men is finally defeated, torn to pieces and devoured. Corvus is clutching the serpent Hydra with his claws and tearing his flesh with his beak. An angel will stand in the sun, calling to all the fowls and birds of prey to come and feast themselves on the flesh of the enemy (Revelation 19:17,18). Stars in Corvus are Algoreb (Raven), Minchar Algoreb means “the raven tearing to pieces”, and Minchar **Alsugia** means “the Deceiver torn to pieces.”

Conclusion: Here the prophetic story written in the sky so long ago comes to a close. The Redeemer has triumphed, the redeemed are safely home, and the enemy is destroyed. While the fuller, clearer and more explicit revelation of the written Word is available to all today, making the stellar revelation no longer necessary, we can praise God for Mazzaroth as a means of glorifying Christ. “The heavens declare the glory of God; ...night unto night showeth knowledge (v.2). There is no speech nor language where their voice is not heard (v.3). ..Which is as a bridegroom (Christ) coming out of His chamber (Heaven), and rejoiceth as a strong man (Christ) to run a race (of redeeming mankind).(v.5). His going forth is from the end of heaven, and his circuit (zodiac) unto the ends of it (v.6).” (Psalm 19:1-6).

Bibliography: “God’s Voice in the Stars”, K.C.Fleming, Loizeaux Brothers, New Jersey.

“The Witness of the Stars”, E.W.Bullinger, Kregel Publications, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

“The Gospel in the Stars”, Joseph A. Seiss, Kregel Publications, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

261. RICHES FROM THE RENT

Bible Reading: Judges 14:1-9-20.

Aim: To show how God can bring great riches out of rent things.

Introduction: Judges 14:5-8 tells of Samson's exploits when he met a lion. The Holy Spirit came on him and he rent the lion as one would rend a kid (baby goat) (14:6). Later, on the way back, Samson found that bees had built a beehive in the rent lion's carcass with enough honey in the carcass to satisfy his hunger. He scooped out the honey and brought it to his parents for them to eat, but did not tell them that it came from a dead lion's body. This violated his Nazarite vow not to touch dead bodies. I want to preach on how God has brought great riches out of rent things.

"Out of the eater came forth meat, and out of the strong came forth sweetness." Judges 14:14.

Lesson: We have some great riches that have come from that which was rent (torn).

On six main occasions a rent brought forth something sweet and wonderful.

1. The High Priest's Garment was rent, and out of this came a **New Advocate**. Matthew 26:63-65-68.

"The High Priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy,..." v.65.

This act of the High Priest rending his clothes was highly illegal, and was highly offensive to God.

When Caiaphas rent his garments that day, he not only disqualified himself from being the High Priest, but this act resulted in God setting aside the entire levitical priesthood, and replacing it with the Melchisedec Priesthood of Jesus Christ.

"He that is the high priest among his brethren, upon whose head the anointing oil was poured, & that is consecrated to put on the garments, shall not uncover his head, nor rend his clothes." Levit. 21:10

"Thou shalt make the robe of the ephod all of blue. (v.32). And there shall be a hole in the top of it. In the midst thereof: it shall have a binding of woven work round about the hole of it, as it were the hole of an habergeon, that it be not rent." Exodus 28:32,31.

Pomegranates (v.33) = fruitfulness of God's High Priest;

Bells of gold = testimony of God's High Priest.

Habergeon = a coat of steel meshing to protect the neck and shoulders, but later reaching to the thighs and knees, to protect a soldier from being cut with a sword. Hence, the High Priest's garment had a binding of woven work around the neck and chest that made it difficult to tear (rend).

When Caiaphas rent this garment he must have ripped it very intensely, in great anger and rage.

The Levitical priesthood could not function without several elements. (The Temple, garments, brazen altar, lambs, bullocks, High Priest etc). When Caiaphas the High Priest rent his garments, he violated his priesthood, disqualified himself and was set aside by God.

Question: So what riches came out? **Answer:** Another High Priest who was not disqualified.

"Then the soldiers, when they had crucified Jesus, took his garments, and made four parts to every soldier a part; and also his coat: now the coat was without seam, woven from the top without. v.24.

They said therefore among themselves, Let US NOT REND IT, but cast lots for it." John 19:23,24.

Jesus had 5 garments: 1. Head-gear (Sudar) wound into a turban. 2. Sandals.

3. Girdle = long embroidered linen sash, wound around the middle of the body several times. Ex28:39

4. Undergarment = undertunic or long shirt of fine linen seamlessly woven with a pattern, sleeves and a tie around the neck. This was necessary for anyone publicly reading scriptures in the synagogue.

5. Outer garment (Tallith) = short, square, outer, sleeveless coat with fringes.

Some say that, "Had the soldiers ripped apart the Lord's seamless robe, this would have disqualified Him as our High Priest."

Hebrews 5:9,10 "And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him. Called of God an high priest after the order of Melchisedec."

Look at Jesus in Revelation 1:13, "And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle."

We see Jesus with a golden girdle (signifying His Kingship) around his chest, telling us that His work is complete. (The girdle was put around the waist to do a day's work. After the day's work was done he moved his girdle to around his paps (chest)). Jesus has finished His atoning work on the cross and is now our ADVOCATE with the Father (1 John 2:1,2). "If any man sin, we have an advocate..."

2. The **Side** and **Body of Jesus** was **Rent** (pierced) and out of this came forth a **New Atonement**.
 “One of the soldiers with a spear pierced his side, & forthwith came there out blood and water.” John 19:34
Jesus’ SIDE was Rent. Blood came out first, to show that we are saved by the blood of Christ, not by water baptism. Five wounds of Jesus were: Head, hands, feet, back and side. Each of these were rent. What compassion, what love, that He would bleed and die for you and me.
 If Baptismal regeneration were true and water really did wash away sin, they’d need a sin filter in the baptism pool. In the Garden of Gethsemane, Jesus prayed and He sweat great drops of blood.
 In the Old Testament, sins were pushed back, just like being swept under the carpet.
The Atonement of Jesus is much better than the Atonement of the Old Testament.
 The theme of Hebrews is that God has given us better things. (Better than angels...). Hebrews 9:12.
 “Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.”
- Question:** Have you applied Jesus Christ’s precious blood to cleanse you from your sins?
 “We also joy in God through our LJC by whom we have now received the atonement.” (Romans 5:11).
 “Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare His righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God.” (Romans 3:25).
3. The **Veil** in the Temple was **Rent**, and it brought forth a **New Access**, (Luke 23:45).
 “The sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst.” Luke 23:45.
- What was the purpose of the veil?** (Exodus 26:31-33).
 - It served to stop anyone reaching the Ark of the Covenant.
 - It made a room for the Holy Place (Candlestick, Table of Shewbread, Altar of Incense).
Holy of Holies had Ark of Covenant, 10 Commandments, Aaron’s Rod, Manna Pot, Mercy Seat.
 - Why was the Veil Rent?** To make a new way of access into God’s presence for all people.
 Three teams of oxen could not tear the veil. The priests must have tried to sew and mend the veil. This may explain why many of the priests believed on Jesus Christ (Acts 6:7).
 - There is no one today who can stop you having full access to God’s Throne. Hebrews 10:19,20.
 “Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh.”
 - Court of Gentiles:** Gentiles, unclean people, money changers & market. could only go this far.
 - Court of women** entered through the Beautiful Gate. Israelite ladies only went this far. Treasury
 - Upper Court** was divided into two parts: Court of Israel (Jewish men) and Court of the Priests.
 - The Sanctuary** was on a higher terrace than the Court of the Priests. (12 steps higher).
 Only Levites could go there. A two leaved gate opened to it, being divided into 2 parts,
 The Holy Place with the candlestick (South), Table of Shewbread (North), and Altar of Incense.
 A heavy double veil concealed the entrance to the Most Holy Place (or Holy of Holies).
 - Most Holy Place.** Only the High Priest, on the Day of Atonement could go into Holy of Holies.
 When Jesus Christ died, He took away the guards, so all could enter the Most Holy Place. Heb 4:16
4. The **Rocks were Rent**, and brought forth a **New Accommodation**. (Matthew 27:51-53).
 Rocks were rent and graves were opened and many bodies of OT saints arose after Christ’s resurrection and walked the streets of Jerusalem. Jesus went down and opened the prison house of paradise where OT saints were and delivered them to the Father in Heaven. (Ephesians 4:8-11).
Q: What kind of accommodation do we now have? “We have a building of God.” 2 Cor. 5:1-8.
5. The **Tomb** was **Rent** and it brought forth a **New Assurance**. (Matthew 28:2-7). A new assurance in:
 a) Our preaching message of resurrection reality. 1 Cor. 15:14-20. “Now is Christ risen from the dead.”
 b) Our munds = mental confidence. “He was seen of above 500 brethren at once;” (1 Cor. 15:6).
 Firstfruit of barley harvest was given to God (v23). Every sermon in Acts included the Resurrection
6. The **Eastern sky will be Rent** and will bring forth a **New Age** of Christ’s Reign on earth. Mat 24:27
 Satan will be bound, the curse will be removed, Jesus Christ will reign in peace for 1000 years. Rev20
 Mt of Olives will be rent (Zech. 14:4); the East Gate will be opened (Ezekiel 44:1-2). A new river will flow to heal the Dead Sea (Ezekiel 47:1-12). Christ will reign as King of Kings. All will worship Him

262. Jewish Marriage Customs Show the Events of Christ's Return

Bible Reading: Psalm 45:1-17; Revelation 19:7-9.

Aim: To increase our, love, readiness and understanding of Christ's return.

Introduction: Bible marriage customs centre in the two events of betrothal and wedding. The relationship between husband and wife, pictures the relationship between God and His people, Israel (Hosea 1-3), and between Christ and His church (Ephesians 5:22-33).

The following stages in a Jewish marriage teach the main events surrounding our salvation by Jesus Christ as our heavenly bridegroom and His Second Coming.

1. The Negotiation Stage

A price had to be paid by the bridegroom and accepted by the bride. As Rebekah was asked about Isaac, "wilt thou go with this man?" and she said, "I will go", so every sinner must answer the question if he wants Jesus Christ to be His Saviour.

As Jesus Christ shed His precious blood to pay for our sins and redeem us, so we must accept that price He paid for our sins in order to be saved. "Ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your Spirit, which are God's." (1 Corinthians 6:19,20).

"Ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, such as silver and gold, ...but with the precious blood of Christ..." (1 Peter 1:18,19).

Q: Have you accepted the price of Christ's shed blood to pay for your sins to be your Saviour?

Some gifts the Groom's father has given us that Jewish brides were given are:

a) Servants: "They sent away Rebekah and her nurse and Abraham's servant." (Genesis 24:59).

God the Father gives us angels as "ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation." (Hebrews 1:14).

b) Clothes: "The servants brought forth...raiment, and gave them to Rebekah." (Genesis 24:53).

As Abraham's servant gave Rebekah clothing, so God the Father has given believers clothing of Christ's righteousness.

"His wife hath made herself ready. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white. For the fine linen is the righteousness of the saints." (Revelation 19:7,8).

"He hath clothed me with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels." (Isaiah 61:10). Jewels represent people won to Christ. (Malachi 3:17).

The Bride wore embroidered garments (Psalm 45:13,14).

c) Spiritual gifts: "He gave some apostles, some prophets, some evangelists, some pastors and teachers." (Ephesians 4:11,12).

2. The Betrothal Stage

"Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together." (Matthew 1:18).

God's love and faithfulness to believers are pictured as a betrothal.

"I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, in judgment, in lovingkindness, in mercies, and in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord." (Hosea 2:19,20). See Ephesians 5:23,24,27,28,30,32.

The espoused bride would wear a veil that said to this world, "I'm not my own, I've been bought with a price." God wants us to wear the veil of separation so people know we belong to Christ, and not to the world. "Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world." 1 John 2:15-17

3. The Preparation Stage

The groom would go home to prepare for the wedding and to make everything ready. He could not return for his bride until his father said, "go get your bride." So Jesus Christ is preparing a place in heaven for His Bride the church. "In my Father's house are many mansions...I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself: that where I am, there ye may be also." (John 14:2,3).

4. The Snatching away of the Bride.

When all things were ready, the groom would come in the night to the bride's place. Before he entered the room, he would call out "Behold, the bridegroom cometh." (Matthew 25:6). He could not take his bride unannounced. So it will be at Christ's return from heaven for His Bride the church. There will be "a shout, the voice of the archangel and the trumpet of God: and the dead in

Christ shall rise first: then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord. Wherefore comfort one another with these words.” (1 Thessalonians 4:16-18).

Q: Are you ready for Christ’s return? Would you be left behind to enter the 7 year tribulation? Would you be ashamed to face Christ because of some sins in your life? Get right with God today. Christ will come one day, catch away His bride from this wicked earth, and bring her into the wedding chamber of heaven. This was known as the wedding “procession” where the groom (Christ) and His friends (OT saints as in John 3:29) went with the bride (NT church) to the groom’s house, with singing, for the marriage supper.

“She shall be brought unto the King in raiment of needlework: the virgins her companions (OT Jews) that follow her shall be brought unto thee with gladness and rejoicing shall they be brought: they shall enter into the king’s palace (heaven).” (Psalm 45:14,15).

5. The Examination Stage (The Judgment Seat of Christ)

The groom would remove his bride’s veil to see if she really was the bride he had sacrificed for. (Jacob got the wrong wife Leah when he thought he had married Rachel). So, one day, Christ will remove the veil from each believer at the Judgment seat of Christ and “Every man’s work shall be made manifest: for the day (JSOC) shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man’s work of what sort it is. If any man’s work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man’s work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.” (1 Corinthians 3:13-15). “For we must all appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ) that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done whether it be good or bad.” (2 Corinthians 5:10).

“They that turn many to righteousness shall shine as the stars for ever and ever.” (Daniel 12:3).

Q: How will you feel when your life’s work for Christ is examined & made manifest for all to see? Will you receive a reward, or will you suffer loss by all your useless activities being burned up.

6. The Consummation stage lasting 7 days. While earth is enduring the horrors of the 7 year Tribulation, Christ and His Bride the Church will be enjoying the greatest marriage of all time. Parents and friends would first bless the couple and wish them well (Genesis 24:60; Ruth 4:11). The father of the bride drew up a written marriage contract, called the “Ketuba” in the Mishnah. The bridechamber was prepared. The parents escorted the bride and groom to this room (Genesis 29:23). “Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber.” (Psalm 19:5).

Before coming together, prayer was offered by husband and wife.

7. The Marriage Feast (Revelation 19:7-9)

The Marriage Feast continued for 7 days as in Genesis 29:27:

“Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready (v.7). Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the lamb.” (Revelation 19:7-9). These celebrations were times of rejoicing and music (“gladness and rejoicing” Psalm 45:15). All believers will be present at this marriage feast.

Contrast this happy marriage feast of Christ with the unholy feast of antichrist’s armies being eaten by birds (Rev. 19:17-19), and the antichrist burning his whore and eating her flesh. (Rev. 17:16).

Q: Will you be at the happy marriage supper of the Lamb?

8. Setting up House Stage.

We will do this with Jesus when we return to earth with Him. “The LORD my God shall come, and all the saints with thee.” (Zechariah 14:5). The LORD shall be king over all the earth (Zech. 14:9). We shall return with Christ to earth which will be our home for 1000 years of peace and happiness, which we will set up for God’s glory. This 1000 year rule of Christ will be the greatest time of joy, peace and prosperity the world has ever known. To some, Jesus will say:

“because thou hast been faithful in a very little, have thou authority over ten cities.” (Luke 19:17).

“And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.” (Rev. 5:10).

Q: Are you proving yourself faithful to Christ now? Let us live for Christ now so He will say to us “Well done thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou unto the joy of thy Lord.” (Matthew 25:21).

263. Ecclesiastes: Solomon's Search for Meaning in Life.

Challenge: What are you living for? Yourself and pleasure, or for Christ and eternity.

Bible Reading: Ecclesiastes 2; 1 Kings 10:1-13.

Aim: All human endeavours apart from God lack ultimate value. Life should be lived in the fear of God, as a gift from His hand.

Introduction: Ecclesiastes means the Preacher, or one who calls an assembly. Ecclesiastes is a divine commentary on Christ's words: "whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again." (John 4:13).

Ecclesiastes is the autobiography of Solomon when he had backslidden away from God and tried various methods to find happiness and satisfaction. Three books written by Solomon were:

a) The Song of Solomon was written in the glory of Solomon's first love.

b) Proverbs was written at the height of Solomon's glory and wisdom.

c) Ecclesiastes was written later on in Solomon's life as testimony of his genuine repentance.

The key word "Vanity" occurs 37 times. The phrase "under the sun" (apart from God) occurs 29 times. The theme of Ecclesiastes is announced at the beginning (1:2),

"Vanity of vanities, saith the preacher, all is vanity" (12:8). See also 1:14; 2:1,11,15,17,19,21,23,26; 3:19; 4:4,8,16; 5:10; 6:2,9,11; 7:6; 8:10,14; 9:9; 11:8,10; 12:8.

Without God, everything in life is vanity, meaningless and without real value. This includes toil (1:14; 2:11,17; 4:4,7,8), wisdom (2:15), wealth (5:10; 6:2), pleasure (2:1,2), youth (11:10), life (6:12; 7:15).

Question: Why did Solomon pass this verdict on man's toil?

Answer: Because we always risk losing the fruit of our labour by:

- i) oppression or injustice (5:8,9),
- ii) unpredictable misfortune (5:14),
- iii) the judgment of God (5:6),
- iv) death, leaving our wealth to others (2:18),
- v) loss of health and the ability to enjoy it,
- vi) a little sin (9:18),
- vii) a little folly (10:1),
- viii) improper timing (10:11; 3:1-8),
- ix) lack of proper appreciation (9:15).

Ecclesiastes is a critique of modern secular humanism (devotion to human interests and ignoring divine interests). Though life is short, inequitable and difficult, we should not despair, but live life by completely trusting God. Solomon, the author, observed that no man seems satisfied, regardless of what he has seen, heard or achieved (1:8).

Question: Could a wise healthy man, by searching, find peace and purpose?

Answer: Solomon tried to find purpose by giving himself to:

1. Human Wisdom and Knowledge (1:16,17).

Solomon had more ability than any man (except Christ) to correctly apply knowledge, but he sadly concluded, "for in much wisdom is much grief: and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow." (1:18). Why? Because the more we know of mankind, the less likely we are to trust them or admire them. The more man knows of science, the more man can apply knowledge to destruction and moral evils, such as nuclear bombs, weapons of mass destruction, using the lie of evolution to turn people away from God as our Creator, and many other evils.

2. Pleasure, Laughter, Alcohol (2:1-3).

Since knowledge has failed, Solomon turns to humour, entertainment, pleasure, and alcohol.

Solomon concluded that these are futile and meaningless because they accomplish little or nothing.

But we know that leading people to Christ (Daniel 12:3), teaching God's Word, training preachers and planting churches lays up much treasure in heaven that can never be lost. "Whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake, the same shall find it." Matthew 16:24-27,25.

3. Great Building Projects (2:4).

"I made me great works; I builded me houses." Solomon now attempts to plug that hole in his soul by a great public building program. He built palaces, aqueducts, pools, Solomon's temple, store cities, defenced cities, chariot cities (2 Chronicles 8:1-7), house of the forest of Lebanon (1 Kings 7:1-7),

Pharaoh's daughter's house (1 Kings 7:8-12). The court comedians gave way to great architects. But all too soon the building campaign wears thin and is quietly dropped.

4. Beautifully Landscaped Gardens and Parks (2:4-6).

"I planted vineyards: I made me gardens and orchards, and I planted trees in them of all kinds of fruits: I made me pools of water, to water therewith the wood that bringeth forth trees." (2:4-6). How well qualified was Solomon to build gardens, orchards, and vineyards may be understood when we recall his knowledge of botany, and how he wrote about vegetables, plants and trees, from the cedar to the hyssop, of rare flowers, tropical plants and water gardens. "He spake of trees, from the cedar tree that is in Lebanon, even unto the hyssop that springeth out of the wall." (1 Kings 4:33). His interest extended to natural science. "He spake also of beasts, and of fowl, and of creeping things, and of fishes". (1 Kings 4:33). But before long he lost interest in landscaping and moved on to something else.

5. Personal Indulgences and Luxuries (2:7-11).

"I got me servants and maidens (2:7), whatsoever mine eyes desired I kept not from them, I withheld not my heart from any joy." (2:10).

Solomon had servants to wait on his every wish. He had everything he saw or wanted that gave him pleasure. How many people today think that this is the secret to happiness? See 2 Chronicles 9:3,4. But none could serve up his wish for inward peace and purpose.

"All was vanity and vexation of spirit, and there was no profit under the sun". (2:11).

6. Cattle Breeding (2:7).

"I had great possession of great and small cattle above all that were in Jerusalem before me." (2:7). Have you ever wanted to be a farmer owning a big cattle property? Solomon had great herds of cattle, sheep, oxen, goats and other animals grazing on green pastures. But while the skins and meats of these animals clothed and fed the outer man, the inner man remained naked and starving.

7. Great Wealth (2:8).

"I gathered me also silver and gold, and the peculiar treasure of kings and of the provinces." (2:8). Solomon received 666 talents of gold each year, as well as gold from the kings of Arabia. He made 200 targets of gold and 300 shields of gold. His throne of ivory was overlaid with pure gold. All his drinking vessels were of gold. (2 Chronicles 9:13-20). Every 3 years his ships brought gold, silver, ivory, apes and peacocks from beyond Tarshish (Spain), possibly from Africa or America. (v.21). "King Solomon passed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom." (9:22). He made silver in Jerusalem as stones (9:27). He had 1400 chariots and 12,000 horsemen (9:25). Yet Solomon found that money cannot buy happiness and inner peace.

8. Music (2:8).

"I gat me men singers and women singers, and the delights of the sons of men, as musical instruments, and that of all sorts." (2:8).

How many people today seek peace in rock music, opera, classical music, or rap music? But the missing chord of contentment was not to be found in music, however beautiful the song or talented the singers and musicians.

9. Literature (1 Kings 4:32).

"He spake 3000 proverbs: and his songs were a thousand and five."

Many people today seek refuge in books of fiction, mystery, or non fiction. Some people become movie addicts. Yet this is often an escape into an unreal world of fantasy that passes away with the daily workload. Writing books and reading books never fully satisfy the deepest needs of man.

10. Military Power (1 Kings 4:26).

"Solomon had 40,000 stalls of horses for his chariots, and 12,000 horsemen." (1 Kings 4:26).

"King Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion-geber, beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red Sea and fetched from Ophir 420 talents of gold." (1 Kings 9:26).

"Solomon reigned over all kingdoms from the river (Euphrates) unto the land of the Philistines, and unto the border of Egypt." (1 Kings 4:21).

"He had peace on all sides around him. And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, every man under his vine and under his fig tree." (1 Kings 4:24,25).

Although Solomon's military brought national peace and security, it could not bring him internal peace.

11. International Reputation (1 Kings 10:1-13, v. 6,7).

Solomon had great international prestige, majesty and respect for his wisdom and wealth.

“All the earth sought to Solomon, to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart” (1 Kings 10:24). We all like our peers to approve and admire us, but Solomon was greatly honoured by all people of his time. He satisfied the Queen of Sheba’s hard questions, yet Solomon still said, “I hated life; all is vanity and vexation of spirit”. (Ecclesiastes 2:17). Solomon knew that all his honour would leave him after his death. His foolish son Rehoboam destroyed Solomon’s life work and national reputation.

12. Sex (1 Kings 11:1-9).

“King Solomon loved many strange women (v.1). He had 700 wives, princesses and 300 concubines: and his wives turned away his heart after other gods (11:3,4)..the LORD was angry with Solomon.” (1 Kings 11:9). Not even 1000 women could satisfy Solomon’s inner spiritual needs in his backslidden state. These wives introduced idol worship into Israel which led to the destruction and captivity of the nation in 722 BC and 606 BC.

Conclusion: After Solomon returns home (4:1) from his study and search for meaning, he concludes that life apart from God is:

- a) utterly futile and vain (2:11),
- b) full of discontent and envying others (4:4),
- c) uncertain dangers, tragedies and death (9:11,12),
- d) without purpose except to eat, drink and be merry (8:15),
- e) full of unsolvable problems (1:15),
- f) injustice (7:15).

Even with God, life is a mystery, but apart from God, life becomes a horrible nightmare.

Therefore, it is best if man:

- a) Finds God early in life (12:1,2).
- b) Fears God and keeps His commandments throughout his life (12:13,14).

Old age is described as:

- i) The keepers of the house shall tremble = arms and hands grow weak and shaky (v.3).
 - ii) Strong men shall bow themselves = legs grow bent and feeble.
 - iii) Grinders cease because they are few = teeth become fewer.
 - iv) Those that look out the windows be darkened = eyesight beginning to fail (12:3).
 - v) Doors shall be shut in the streets = lips shutting due to loss of teeth (12:4).
 - vi) Sound of the grinding is low = little noise is now made in eating because teeth are lost.
 - vii) He shall rise up at the voice of a bird = old folk rise early because of their inability to sleep (12:4).
 - viii) All the daughters of music shall be brought low = he can no longer carry a tune anymore.
 - ix) When they shall be afraid of that which is high = being so feeble, they are afraid to ascend steps without help.
 - x) Fears shall be in the way = fear to walk outside lest they meet some danger they can’t escape.
 - xi) Almond tree shall flourish = hair turns grey and white as almond blossoms are white.
 - xii) Grasshopper shall be a burden = little things annoy him.
 - xiii) Desire shall fail = diminished appetites for food and sex.
 - xiv) Man goeth to his long home = the grave.
- After the external evidences of old age, we now see what occurs in the body to produce death (v.5).
- xv) Silver cord be loosed = the spinal cord and nervous system are loosed at death (v.6).
 - xvi) Golden bowl be broken = the brain in the skull stops functioning.
 - xvii) Pitcher be broken at the fountain = lungs stops breathing.
 - xviii) Wheel broken at the cistern = heart stops beating.
 - xix) Dust returns to the earth = body decays to dust.
 - xx) Spirit shall return unto God who gave it.

264. Jesus Christ's 7 Sayings On The Cross

Bible Reading: Luke 23:27-49.

Aim: To see Jesus Christ's great sacrifice and dying love for others.

Introduction: Jesus made 7 statements while on the cross. First, He thought of **others**: those who crucified Him (Luke 23:34), the repentant thief (Luke 23:39-43), and His mother (John 19:25-27).

The central (fourth) word concerned His relationship with His **Father** (Matt 27:45-49).

His last 3 statements focused on **Himself**: His body (John 19:28-29), His soul (John 19:30; Isa. 53:10) & His Spirit (Luke 23:46).

Question: What do we learn of the Father, Son, Holy Spirit and man from these 7 sayings?

1. **"Father forgive them for they know not what they do." Luke 23:34.**

Jesus Christ pleaded to stay the wrath of a righteous Father as He viewed His beloved Son being murdered by wicked and sinful men. Peter stated this later in Acts 3:14,15,17.

This fulfilled the prophecy "He made intercession for the transgressors" (Isaiah 53:12), being the Jews and Roman soldiers. The Romans were ignorant that Jesus was the Son of God and were just obeying their rulers' commands. The Jews knew Jesus was innocent and had evidence He was the Messiah, but did not know the effect their guilt would bring in judgment and calamities on their country. The Jews, not believing Jesus was their Messiah had no sense of His rank, majesty and dignity as the "Lord of glory". Paul said this, "had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory". I Cor.2:8. The Jews did not fully understand the greatness of their sin of crucifying their God and Creator.

Ignorance does not excuse a crime, but it diminishes a person's guilt. Jesus shows His compassion in imploring God to pardon His murderers. Christ urges their ignorance as a reason why they should be pardoned. God forgave Paul because He "did it ignorantly in unbelief" (I Timothy 1:13). God winked at (overlooked) the ignorance of Gentiles (Acts 17:30). Yet this is no excuse for those who reject Christ. Do we forgive others who wrong us? We learn from Christ's prayer that:

i) We should pray most for our enemies when they are trying to hurt us.

ii) We should pray that God would pardon them and give them better minds.

iii) This shows the power and excellence of Christian belief, in teaching men to pray for their enemies forgiveness. Worldly men seek revenge. Christians bear persecutions & insults with patience & prayer.

2. **"Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise." Luke 23:42,43.**

The repentant thief believed Jesus was the Messiah He claimed to be and wanted to enter His Kingdom. It is likely that Jesus, while on the cross, acquainted these two men with the nature of His kingdom.

One malefactor railed on Him, becoming more hardened in guilt, while the other was repentant.

Some may come to Christ on their deathbed. "Paradise" is a word of Persian origin, & means a garden of pleasure, filled with trees, shrubs, flowers and fountains. It was like a place of happiness attached to mansions and palaces of the rich. It was entered immediately after death. We learn from this that:

i) The soul after death exists separately from the body. The soul is in paradise. The body is in the grave.

ii) Immediately after death, righteous souls will be happy, secure and assured of a future resurrection.

iii) This promise was made to only 1 thief, showing that the state of the righteous differs from the unsaved.

iv) It is the chief glory of paradise & heaven to see Jesus and be with Him. "I desire to depart." Phil.1:23.

We learn 3 things about salvation here: i) Salvation is offered to anyone, anywhere, anytime.

ii) Salvation is by grace, through faith alone, and not by our works. It refutes the doctrines of

a) Sacramentalsim (eg: Lord's Supper and confirmation for salvation);

b) Baptismal Regeneration; c) Purgatory; d) Universalism because only one thief was saved.

iii) Salvation will be rejected by some in spite of all that God does.

a) We see 3 men here: - One was dying FOR sin (Christ).

- One was dying IN sin (unsaved thief).

- One was dying FROM sin (repentant thief).

b) All classes of humanity are represented at the cross:

- indifferent (people stood beholding. v.35).

- religious (rulers deride Him. v.35).

- materialistic (soldiers parted His garment and casts lots. v.34).

- earnest seekers (Lord remember me. v.42.)

Jesus was thinking about Paradise, the better place He was going to. Jesus was a soul winner, taking every opportunity even in His darkest hour, of getting others into heaven. Let us be soul winners. The thief on the cross had very little information, but showed great spiritual illumination. He knew:
1) Death was not the end (Heb. 9:27). 2) His own sinfulness and worthiness of God's judgment. (v.41a)
3) Christ's sinlessness ("He hath done nothing amiss" v.41). 4) Deity of Christ. (Lord, v.42).
5) He needed a Mediator ("remember me," v.42). 6) Kingship of Jesus (thy kingdom, v.42).
7) Christ's second coming ("when thou comest" v.42).

Question: Which friends of yours are not yet saved? Go see them and tell them of salvation in Christ.

3. **"Woman, behold thy Son! Then saith he to the disciple, Behold thy Mother."** John 19:26,27.

Jesus, in His dying moments, filled with tender care for His mother, secured for her an adopted son in the apostle John, obtained for her a home, and consoled her grief by John's attention. What a model for all children in providing for our parents' needs who have done so much for us. "Behold thy mother".

Mary would be to John as a mother. Tradition says that Mary continued to live with John in Judea until her death 15 years later. Jesus would have us care for one another. "Honour thy father and thy mother." Ephesians 6:2; Eph. 4:32-5:2. "A new commandment I give.." John 13:34,35; "As we" Galatians 6:10.

4. **"My God, My God, Why hast thou forsaken me?"** Matthew 27:46,47.

"Eli, Eli" was Galilean Aramaic, Jesus' native tongue. Jesus quoted this from Psalm 22:1 "My Elohim", denoting His intense sufferings. Jesus was forsaken by the Jews, His disciples, the Father and the Holy Spirit. "He came unto His own, but His own received Him not." (John 1:11).

The people who will understand a glimpse of what Christ went through are those to whom it will be said, "Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire.." Matthew 25:41; Galatians 3:13.

Question 1: In what sense was Jesus forsaken by God? God approved His work. He was innocent. He had done nothing to forfeit the favour of God. The Father still loved Him.

i) This was when the Jews and Satan were permitted to do their worst. The devil departed from Jesus for a season (Luke 4:13) to return at the cross.

ii) Christ had to suffer all that human nature could endure in a short time. Clear views of God's justice and goodness may have been withheld from Jesus at this time.

iii) Isaiah 53:4,5 tells: "He hath borne our griefs and carried our sorrows. He was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him, and with his stripes we are healed."

"He hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, **being made a curse for us.**" (Galatians 3:13).

"The Lord hath **laid on him the iniquity of us all.**" (Isaiah 53:6). "He hath made him to be sin for us." (2 Cor.5:21). "Who his own self **bare our sins in his body** on the tree." (1 Peter 2:24).

Christ's intense sufferings were caused by our sins being laid on Him and the manifesting of God's intense hatred of sin to His soul. This had never happened before.

Question 2: Why did the Father turn His back on the Son?

Because he was bearing the sin of the world, and God cannot look on sin (Habakkuk 1:13).

Question 3: Why did the Son not know the reason?

Because of the depth of His sufferings, and because Christ voluntarily abstained from using some of His divine qualities as the perfect human while on earth (Philippians 2:5-8).

5. **"I Thirst."** John 19:28.

Jesus had refused the pain deadening wine that was offered to those about to be crucified (Matt 27:34). In order to fulfil the Scriptures (Psalm 69:21 "In my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink") He said, "I thirst." He had just endured three hours of darkness when He felt the wrath of God and separation from God (Matthew 27:45-49). Jesus experienced darkness, thirst and isolation as well as spiritual sufferings "My soul thirsteth for God" (Psalm 42:1,2,3). A soldier moistened Jesus' lips with cheap vinegar on a sponge (John 19:29). Today, we can "give Jesus a drink" by sharing what we have with those in need. "I was thirsty and ye gave me drink" (Matthew 25:35).

Messianic themes in Psalm 69: i) Ps. 69:3 "my throat is dried".

ii) Ps. 69:4 "They hated me without a cause" = John 15:25.

iii) Ps. 69:8 "I am become a stranger to my brethren" = "Neither did his brethren believe in Him" Jn7:5

iv) Ps. 69:9 "The zeal of thine house hath eaten me up" = John 2:17.

v) Ps. 69:21 "they gave me gall for my meat: in my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink" = John 19:28,29

This shows the deep suffering Jesus went through. This fulfilled Psalm 22:15, “My tongue cleaveth to my jaws.” Jesus had earlier said: “He that believeth on me shall never thirst.” John 6:35, and “If any man thirst, let him come into me and drink.” John 7:37.

Jesus who gave His life so man need never thirst spiritually, endured great physical thirst. John 4:13-15

6. **“It Is Finished.” John 19:30.**

In Greek, this is “Tetelestai”, meaning, “It is finished, and as a result it is forever done.”

Three applications of this are:

- a) An artist who finished a great masterpiece would stand back and say “Tetelestai, Tetelestai,” meaning that the painting is so perfect that nothing can be added to it. A writer finishing a manuscript said this.
- b) A servant reporting to his master would say “I have finished the work you assigned to me” John 17:4
- c) A merchant would say this when “The debt is paid in full”.
- d) A priest examining a perfect animal sacrifice would say this.
- e) Christ said it to describe His payment for our sins on the cross being such a full, complete and perfect payment that nothing could be added to it, especially no human good works of ours. Jesus fully met the righteous demands of a holy law. He paid our sin debt in full. The Lamb of God shed His blood to take away the sins of the world (John 1:29; Hebrews 9:24-28).
Hallelujah what a Saviour! The word “finished” occurs 3 times:
 - a) Genesis 2:1. At the completion of God’s physical creation,
 - b) John 19:30. When salvation was completed on the cross.
 - c) Revelation 16:17. “It is done” at the 7th vial judgment.

Question: Will you finish your life’s work that God has given you to do?

Paul said “I have finished my course.” II Timothy 4:6-8.

7. **“Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit.” Luke 23:46.**

Christ gave up His own life. Nobody took it from Him.

Question: Have you committed you life into God’s hands? Romans 12:1,2.

This fulfilled Psalm 31:5 “Into thine hand I commit my Spirit.”

Events following Christ’s death are:

- i) A watching Centurion said “Truly this was a righteous man.” Luke 23:47.
- ii) The temple veil was torn in two from top to bottom.
- iii) An earthquake opens some tombs, and many Old Testament saints arose and appear to many in Jerusalem after Christ’s resurrection. (Matthew 27:51-53).
- iv) A watching centurion cries out in fear and awe “Truly this was the Son of God.” Matthew 27:54.
- v) 3 hours of darkness finishes and light breaks forth again.

Compare Jesus Christ’s gracious words with the **7 last sayings of the crowd**:

1. “Thou that destroyeth the temple, and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the Son of God, come down from the cross.” Matthew 27:40.
2. “He saved others, himself he cannot save. If he be the king of Israel, let him now come down from the cross and we will believe him.” Matthew 27:42.
3. “He trusted in God, let him deliver him now.” Matthew 27:43.
4. “If thou be the Christ, save thyself.” Luke 23:39.
5. “Lord, remember me when thou comest into thy kingdom.” Luke 23:42.
6. “This man calleth for Elijah....let us see whether Elijah will come to save him.” Matthew 27:46-49.
7. “Truly this man was the Son of God.” Mark 15:39.

Note: The veil in the temple that was rent from top to bottom was a type of Christ (Matthew 27:51; Mark 15:38; Luke 23:45). The torn veil had the following significance:

1. It opened the way of salvation for all to come unto God by Jesus Christ (Hebrews 10:19-22).
2. It teaches the priesthood of believers (I Peter 2:5,9). Anyone may enter God’s heaven through Christ.
3. It teaches that the separation between Jews and Gentiles was now abolished (Ephesians 2:13-18).

Conclusion: In view of Christ’s last words, let us have a greater love, loyalty and commitment to Jesus Christ as our Saviour and God. Let us make more sacrifices to serve Christ and others unselfishly as we follow His example. Let us seek to win more people to Christ by sharing the gospel more regularly.

265. SAMSON

Bible Reading: Judges 16:1-31.

Aim: To beware of wasting your life. If we let pride and passion displace God's rightful first place, we will miss God's best and experience much sorrow, suffering and loss.

Problem: Many Christians today have no concept of God using them in His service because they are so concerned about their own lives and doing what they feel like doing. "The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways." (Proverbs 14:14). Samson was like this. Let us not be like Samson. Samson's strength had great potential for God. Samson's failure was caused by his living for self.

Introduction: Samson had great potential and ability that could have been used for God's glory and other's benefit in a great way. Notice: **a)** He was born in answer to prayer (Judges 13:8,9).

b) He was a Nazarite (13:7). According to Numbers 6:1-6, the Nazarite was set apart for God and had three restrictions: **i)** Not to touch wine. **ii)** Not to cut his hair. **iii)** Not to touch a dead body.

Samson violated all three restrictions in Judges 14:8,9; 14:10; 16:19. Samson then had to learn the high cost of low living in 16:21. Samson represents the great potential for good of a believer yielded to God. The value of our life to the cause of Christ is what we do with God's Holy Spirit power resting on us.

I. Events of Samson's Life

The Philistines were oppressing Israel 40 years (13:1).

i) He was raised by Godly parents as a Nazarite (13:2-4).

ii) He killed a lion on the way to his wedding (14:1-7).

iii) He killed 30 Philistines to pay off a riddle that the Philistines deceitfully solved (14:19).

iv) Upon his wife being given to another man he burned the Philistines' fields (15:1-13).

v) He then killed 1000 attacking Philistine soldiers with the jawbone of an ass (15:14-20).

vi) He ripped the doors off an iron gate at Gaza City and carried them to the top of a hill (16:1-3).

vii) He was betrayed into the hands of the Philistines by a harlot called Delilah (16:4-20).

viii) He was shaved, blinded and enslaved (16:21,22).

ix) When his hair grew back, God empowered him to destroy many Philistines in their temple by toppling its two middle pillars (16:23-31). He was killed in the process. He judged Israel for 20 years.

II. Lessons from Samson's Life

1. God raises people to deliver others from bondage (13:5) & Christians to tell the lost how to be saved.

2. God wants parents to dedicate their children to Jesus Christ, and to bring them up in the fear of God to obey Him wholeheartedly (13:8-14).

3. It is wrong for Christians to commit fornication and to marry unbelievers (14:1-3).

4. God can turn bad situations to bring about His plans (14:4). We can entrust our difficulties to God.

5. Don't trust ungodly people to play fair (14:15). They have few moral boundaries & seared consciences

6. Samson failed to spend quality time with his wife, by leaving her and returning to his father's house. (14:19). In his absence her father gave her to Samson's friend (v.20). Communication is essential in marriage (14:20-15:2). He violated Ecclesiastes 9:9 "Live joyfully with the wife whom thou lovest..".

7. Control your anger. Samson burnt the Philistines' corn, vineyards & olive fields with 300 foxes 15:3-6

8. The Israelites were out of fellowship with God by delivering Samson to the Philistines. They should have supported him as their judge and deliverer (15:7-13). They did what was right in their own eyes.

9. The only time anything beneficial occurred in Samson's life was when the Spirit of the Lord came upon him (13:25; 14:6,19; 15:14). The same is true for us. We must be continually filled with the Holy Spirit and submit to His leading (Ephesians 5:18).

10. As God supplied Samson's need of water after killing 1000 enemy soldiers, so God will supply our needs as we serve Him (15:19).

11. Samson foolishly visited a harlot named Delilah. She destroyed one as strong as Samson (16:4-22). See Proverbs 6:26-35; 7:1-27; 9:13-18. "Many strong men have been slain by her." (Proverbs 7:26).

12. Some things need to be kept secret. "A fool uttereth all his mind: but a wise man keepeth it in till afterwards." (Proverbs 29:11). Samson should not have told her the secret of his strength.

13. If we continue in sin, we will lose God's power. Samson did not know that the Lord had departed from him and that he had lost God's power. The saddest verse in the Bible may be, "he wist not that the Lord was departed from him." (Judges 16:20).

14. Sin not confessed leads to God's discipline and to loss of privilege, as seen by Samson's loss of strength and eyesight (16:21).

15. God can still use us if we repent and get back into serving God, as Samson did (16:30).

16. Samson judged Israel 20 years (15:20). His death was premature. He should have served God 40 yr.

17. Samson started his life with the philosophy that God's ways were no fun, so he put himself first and cheated God. He wasn't aware that the cheater finally gets cheated of the best.

18. Manoah's prayer for unborn Samson should be the prayer of every parent for their children: "Teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born." (13:8). Do you pray this for your children?

Do you seek to train your children in God's ways? Samson's childhood is described in three ways.

a) The child grew. b) The Lord blessed him. c) The Spirit of the Lord began to move him.

A youth that is not moved by the Spirit of God is closed minded to God. A young person needs a vision of God's Holy Spirit using him to do great things for God. Parents, train your children to hear God's voice, & to follow the Holy Spirit's leading. Young people, are you obeying the Holy Spirit's leading?

19. Youth, as well as being a time of God consciousness, is also for young men a time of women consciousness. Young people must let God's Word choose a suitable marriage partner. He chose a wife based on physical appearance without considering her godliness (Prov. 31:30). Samson's wrong basis for choosing a mate was, "she pleaseth me well". (14:3). What about, "she pleaseth the Lord"? This never entered his mind. One reason for the success of the beauty industry is that men, in choosing a wife, use their eyes more than their brains. You marry a person's brain as well as their body. So it was with Samson ignoring his parents' advice to choose a Godly Jewish girl. Samson's will as a child had not been broken to submit to God and his parents' will. God spoke to Samson through his parents, but he refused to hear God's voice. He rejected God's perfect will for His life. He chose his own will. God permitted him to go astray in God's second best. Samson's parents failed to recognize God working His second best through Samson's disobedience (14:4). They lost sight of God still being in control.

20. Samson killing a young lion made him aware of his supernatural strength. This built his pride and ego, rather than the right response of humility and thanks to God. How do you handle success?

21. Samson failed to realize that women were his weak point. Your spouse's problems become your problems. What is your weak point in your spiritual life? What sin so easily besets you? Hebrews 12:1,2

22. The path of sin for Samson led downward from spiritual blindness to physical blindness to bondage and death. Similar consequences await those who choose to remain spiritually blind.

23. Samson only prayed when he was close to death (15:15-20; 16:27-31). "Pray without ceasing".

III. Samson's Life is Like Israel's History

1. As God's plan for Samson's life was revealed to his father Manoah before his birth, to be a Nazarite who would deliver Israel (13:1-14), so God promised Abraham before the birth of the nation Israel, that Israel would be separated to God, and through Israel would come the Deliverer. (Gen. 12:1-3; 17:1-22).

2. While Samson kept his Nazarite vow, he had miraculous power over his enemies. So Israel under Joshua was separated from sin, consecrated to God's work and had power over her enemies.

3. As Samson tempted God by his disobedience and sin, so Israel tempted God by their sin. Num. 14:22

4. As God's strength delivered Samson each time he was bound by his enemies, so God delivered Israel each time she was bound by her enemies. (Six times in Judges.)

5. As Samson exhausted God's patience by breaking his vows, God turned him over to judgment under the Philistines. So Israel exhausted God's patience and the nation was turned over to be judged by her enemies Assyria, Babylon, Rome, Islam and others.

6. When God departed from Samson, his enemies took him captive, blinded him, caused him to serve and mocked him (16:20,21). So God departed from Israel, allowing her to be led captive to other nations, blinded as to Jesus being the Messiah (Romans 11:25), being mocked as a proverb. Deut. 28:36

7. As Samson finally turns to God who hears his prayer and glorifies God; so Israel finally calls on Christ to save them (Zechariah 13:9), is saved as a nation (Romans 11:26,12), and is used to glorify God among the nations ("they shall declare my glory among the Gentiles." Isaiah 66:19).

Conclusion: Will you waste your God given talents like Samson in selfish pursuits, or will you be aware of God's calling on your life, the important job you need to do, and seek to obediently do God's work. Will you be a good example and a blessing to others or a disgrace and have regret at the end?

266. SEVEN NAMES OF GOD

Bible Reading: Genesis 1; Psalm 91:1,2.

Aim: To know God and to know ourselves.

Introduction: All teaching and preaching are to make us better know God and ourselves. For example, Peter did not know his own weakness when he boasted he'd never deny Christ.

Do we know and trust God as the Bible commands us? As Adam and Eve covered their nakedness with fig leaves, so modern man covers his disobedience with excuses.

Man has hard thoughts of God and high thoughts of himself. Pagan idols look unmoved at the destruction of man.

God has revealed Himself to man as 7 NAMES in Scripture:

1. **ELOHIM** (God)
2. **JEHOVAH** (LORD)
3. **EL SHADDAI** (Almighty)
4. EL ELYON (Most High)
5. **ADONAI** (Lord)
6. EL OLAM (Everlasting God)
7. **JEHOVAH SABAOTH** (LORD of Hosts)

Names 1 - 4 reveal what God is, the Rest, Refuge and Comfort of believers.

Psalms 91:1,2 reveals all 4 in one sentence: "He that dwelleth in the secret place of the Most High⁴ (EL ELYON) shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty³ (EL SHADDAI). I will say of the LORD² (JEHOVAH), He is my refuge and my fortress: my God¹ (ELOHIM): in him will I trust."

Note: No one name can fully express the fullness of God (Ephesians 3:19). Just as 4 gospels and 4 cherubim faces are needed to reveal Christ's various aspects and relations, so God cannot fully describe Himself under a single name or title.

Illustration:

- 1) To know David, we see him as a Shepherd, Warrior, King, Prophet, Poet and Musician.
- 2) To know God, we see His rich nature as: Creator, Judge, Saviour, Provider, Love, Power, Wisdom.
- 3) As white light consists of 7 colours, so God has 7 names. These are:

1. ELOHIM (God) = God in Covenant Love. This is a plural form of the Hebrew noun Eloah.

This is the only name God reveals to us in Genesis 1. This is God's name we must know before all others. **Definition:** God is a Spirit, infinite, eternal and unchangeable in his being, wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness and truth.

"God (Elohim) said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness." (Genesis 1:26).

Elohim, though a plural noun, when used of the one true God, it is constantly joined with singular verbs and adjectives (Genesis 1:1).

ELOHIM = I will be with them in covenant relationship. Examples include:

1. **Noah:** "Elohim said to Noah, the end of all flesh is come before me... but with thee will I establish my covenant." (Genesis 6:13,18; 9:9,17). "Elohim remembered Noah." (Genesis 8:1).
2. **Abram:** "I am the Almighty God; walk before me and be thou perfect: and I will make my covenant between me and thee...I will be their Elohim." (Gen. 17:1-8). I will be with them in covenant relationship. "When God destroyed the cities of the plain, God remembered Abraham." (Genesis 19:29).
3. **Rachel:** "Elohim remembered Rachel, and opened her womb." (Genesis 30:22). (Gen 26:2-4)
4. **Isaac:** "I am the Elohim of Abraham thy father: fear not for I am with thee and will bless thee."
5. **Jacob:** "I am the Lord God of Abraham thy father, and the God of Isaac ... I am with thee, and will keep thee in all places whither thou goest.... I will not leave thee" (Genesis 28:13-15).
6. **Joseph:** "Elohim will surely visit you, and bring you out of this land." (Genesis 50:24).
7. **Moses:** "Elohim spake unto Moses, and said unto him, I am JHVH: I appeared,... I established my covenant...., I heard.... I have remembered my covenant. I will bring you out.... I will redeem you, I will be to you a God,... I will bring you unto the land,... I will give it you for an heritage." (Exodus 6:1-8)
8. **David:** "Why art thou cast down O my soul? ... hope thou in God." (Psalm 42:5,11). "The God of Israel said,... yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant." (2 Samuel 23:1-3,5).

“Thou art my father, my God (v.26), my covenant shall stand fast with him (v.28), my covenant will I not break.” (v.34). (Psalm 89:26,28,34).

Key: Because God is “Elohim”, the “One who keepeth covenant” (1 Kings 8:23) this is the foundation of our hope in every extremity. “God is our refuge and strength. A very present help in trouble.” Psalm 46:1. “He hath said, I will never leave thee, nor forsake thee.” (Hebrews 13:5).

Note: The law was needed to show man what God’s standard is, and to slay in man the fallen life of independence. (Galatians 3:15-18). Regarding the nation Israel who killed and rejected Christ: “God is able to graff them in again ... for this is my covenant with them, when I shall take away their sins.” (Romans 11:23-36). This is what Elohim means when he says he will be our God. “For this is the covenant that I will make with the House of Israel. I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts. I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people.” (Hebrews 8:10).

Key: Whenever “Elohim” appears in scripture, God reminds us of the riches of his unforsaking covenant love to us. Let us bless God who says, “I will be to you a God.” Let us live for God and say, “My Elohim, in Him will I trust.” (Psalm 91:2).

Conclusion: God remembers you. Do you remember God?

- 1) Psalm 105:5 Remember his marvellous works.
- 2) Eccles 12:1 Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth.
- 3) Song 1:4 We will remember thy love.
- 4) Luke 17:32 Remember Lot’s wife.
- 5) Acts 20:35 Remember the words of the Lord Jesus.
- 6) 1 Cor. 11:24 This do in remembrance of me.
- 7) Galatians 2:10 Remember the poor.
- 8) 2 Timothy 2:14 Of these things put them in remembrance.
- 9) 2 Timothy 3:8 Remember the Lord Jesus was raised from the dead.
- 10) Hebrews 13:3 Remember them that are in bonds.
- 11) Hebrews 13:7 Remember them that have the rule over you.
- 12) Revelation 2:5 Remember from whence thou art fallen.

2. JEHOVAH (LORD) = Jehovah is righteous. He must judge evil. This name includes:

i) Jehovah loves and requires righteousness and truth.

ii) Jehovah must judge evil, at whatever cost to the creature or creation.

iii) Jehovah is grieved and hurt by our sin.

iv) Jehovah’s righteousness is not complete if it only judges & condemns, for the devil also condemns. Jehovah’s righteousness seeks to make the sinner righteous.

Note: Elohim declares God is love. Jehovah presents God as truth and Righteousness. If a child rebels, or a friend deceives, or a spouse is unfaithful, this produces a breach of love, a separation and judging the evil. If you don’t separate from or judge evil, you condone the evil.

Definition: Jehovah is formed from two tenses of the Hebrew verb (Havah) “to be”, meaning “One who is what He is”, as God introduced Himself to Moses as “I AM THAT I AM”. (Exodus 3:13-15). Jehovah says, “Be holy, for I am holy” (Leviticus 11:44,45). Jehovah, being who he is, “Loves righteousness and hates iniquity” (Psalm 45:7), and finds all evil antagonistic to His nature, which because it is not true, must be opposed and judged.

Elohim (covenant love) is how God begins to reveal himself.

The Name “Jehovah” expresses God’s being as Just, Holy, True, Righteous and as Judging sin.

Key: a) Elohim is the general name of God concerned with the creation and preservation of the world. (Genesis 1 we see Elohim, not Jehovah).

As Jehovah, he is the God of Revelation to Israel.

b) Elohim is mentioned mostly in OT books of a universal audience, such as Daniel and Ecclesiastes. (Jehovah is mentioned in Daniel 9:2,4,10,13,14,20. Jehovah is not mentioned in Ecclesiastes, because it is a book of men living apart from God “under the sun”.)

Jehovah, on the other hand, is mostly mentioned in Israel’s strongly theocratic, historical books such as Joshua (170 x), Judges (134 x), Isaiah (366 x). Let us look at occurrences of God’s name Jehovah.

1. Jehovah first appears in **Genesis 2:4-9**, where the **creation of man** is seen.

Why? Because **attributes of Jehovah** were not manifested in creating the material world, but were only manifested when **man** was created. Man is at once put under a law to prove his love. God as **Jehovah** places man under **moral obligations**, under a law with a warning of punishment for disobedience.

“Thou shalt, and thou shalt not.” (Genesis 2:16-17).

“Jehovah God commanded the man saying, of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat; but of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die.” (Genesis 2:16,17).

Jehovah **looks for righteousness** by calling man’s attention to the difference of **2 trees** in Eden, the tree of Life, and the tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, which man was forbidden to eat from. This was a test of man’s love for God. Love is always tested by obedience to God’s laws.

2. The **death penalty** was imposed for **blaspheming** the name Jehovah: “he that blasphemeth the name of Jehovah, he shall surely be put to death.” (Leviticus 24:16).

3. In the whole **sacrificial system**, the **object of approach** is **Jehovah**, not Elohim. For example,

a) In the sacrifices of Leviticus 1-7, Jehovah occurs 86 times, Elohim once.

b) In the Day of Atonement of Leviticus 16, Jehovah occurs 12 times, Elohim not at all.

4. In Genesis 3:1-5 when the **Serpent and Eve** discuss eating the forbidden fruit, neither mention the name Jehovah. They only refer to God as **Elohim**, the God of Covenant Love. Both omit Jehovah.

God as **Jehovah** pronounces judgment on **Adam and Eve** (Gen.3:8-24), sending them out of Eden (3:23).

5. God as **Jehovah** required a **sacrifice** from **Cain and Abel** (4:1-5).

God as **Jehovah** sought and judged Cain for killing Abel (4:6-16).

6. God as “**Jehovah** saw that the **wickedness** of man was great in the earth (6:5).

Jehovah said, I will destroy man whom I have created.” (6:7).

7. God as **Jehovah** **requires holiness in man**. “I am **Jehovah** your God: Be ye holy, for I am holy: Neither shall ye **defile yourselves** (v.44). **Make a difference** between the **unclean** and the **clean**.” (v.47).

Question: Are you defiling yourself in some way?

(Leviticus 11:44,45.

Question: Do you make a difference between unclean and clean? Are you holy as God is holy?

8. God as **Jehovah** made a **covenant of grace** with Noah.

“But Noah found grace in the eyes of Jehovah.” (Genesis 6:8).

God as **Elohim** fellowshiped in covenant with Noah. “Noah walked with God (Elohim) (v.9). God

said unto Noah (13). “Thus did Noah; according to all that God commanded him, so did he.” Gen 6:22.

9. God as **Jehovah** appears to Noah in the year of the **Flood**. “Jehovah said unto Noah, come ...” (7:1). “Jehovah shut him in.” (7:5).

God as **Elohim** remembered Noah during the flood, preserving him because of his covenant loving relationship. “God remembered Noah” (8:1). “God spake to Noah, saying, Go forth of the ark” 8:15,16.

10. God as **Jehovah** required Noah to **build an altar to Jehovah** (8:20). God as **Jehovah** smelt a sweet savour of Noah’s **burnt offering** on the altar (8:20-22). God as **Elohim** blessed Noah (9:1), established his covenant (9:8-11), remembered his covenant (9:15,16), and set a token of the covenant (9:13,17).

11. God as **Jehovah** came down to **judge** and scatter the disobedient people at **Babel** (11:1-9). “Jehovah came down to see...” (v.5).

12. God as **Jehovah** calls unsaved **Abram** out of Ur. (Genesis 12:1-5).

13. God as **Jehovah** plagues **Pharaoh’s house** for taking Abram’s wife Sarai (Genesis 12:17).

14. God as **Jehovah** appears to Abram aged 99, saying “walk before me and **be thou perfect**.” Gen 17:1.

God as **Elohim** spoke to Abram about his covenant. “God said, my covenant is with thee (v.3,4,9,15,19-27). I will be their God”. (v.8).

15. God as **Jehovah** appeared to Abram to discuss the **judgment of Sodom & Gomorrah**. 18:1,17,20-22,33

16. God as **Jehovah** appeared to **Lot** to rescue him from **Sodom’s destruction** (Genesis 19:13). “Jehovah hath sent us to **destroy** it.” (19:13). “Then Jehovah rained upon Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Jehovah out of heaven.” (19:24).

God as **Elohim** remembered Abram and Lot after the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah. (Gen 19:29).

17. God as **Jehovah** had fast **closed the wombs of Abimelech’s house** (20:18).

God as **Elohim** healed Abimelech, his wife and his servants after Abraham prayed to Elohim (20:17).

18. God as Elohim commanded “two of every living thing were to be taken into the Ark” (Gen 6:19) to continue each species. God as Jehovah added the command, “Of every clean beast thou shalt take to thee by sevens.” (Genesis 7:2) because Jehovah the truth-requiring God looks for a blood sacrifice to cover sins. Hence, after the righteous judgment of the flood had purged the earth of its pollution, “of every clean beast, Noah offered burnt offerings to Jehovah.” (Genesis 8:20).

19. God as Jehovah loves righteousness, and requires his own likeness in his own people.

a) “Hear O Israel, Jehovah our Elohim is one Jehovah: and thou shalt love Jehovah thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.” (Deut 6:4,5). Jehovah wants us to love him as he loves us.

b) “The righteous Jehovah loveth righteousness; his countenance doth uphold the upright” (Psalm 11:7)

c) “Upon the wicked he (Jehovah) shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, & an horrible tempest.” Ps.11:6

d) “I, Jehovah thy God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me, and showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.” (Exodus 20:5).

20. God as Jehovah says, “I am Jehovah, I change not.” (Malachi 3:6). God as Jesus Christ says “Jesus Christ the same, yesterday and today and forever.” (Hebrews 13:8). Thus Jesus Christ is Jehovah.

21. It is never “Thus saith Elohim”, but “**Thus saith Jehovah**”.

Key: a) Because Jehovah is righteous, he must condemn evil.

b) After the law has done it’s work of condemnation, Jehovah says, “This is the covenant that I will make after those days, I will put my law into their mind and will write it in their hearts” Jeremiah 31:33

Conclusion: It is Jehovah who: 1) Pronounces judgment and metes out punishment

2) Expels man from Eden

3) Is of purer eyes than to behold evil (Habakkuk 1:13).

4) Pronounces destruction on the pre-flood world.

5) Rains fire and brimstone on Sodom and Gomorrah.

6) Is often angered by sinning Israel.

7) His soul was grieved for the misery of Israel (Judges 10:16).

8) In His holiness He must condemn. In love He seeks to redeem man back to fellowship with Himself.

9) Delivers Israel from Egyptian bondage – “I am Jehovah, I will bring you out.” (Exodus 6:6).

10) Is “a just God and a Saviour” (Isaiah 45:21).

11) Is Righteousness and Strength. (Isaiah 45:24).

3. **EL SHADDAI (God Almighty)** = the One who pours forth blessings to make us fruitful.

“El Shaddai” occurs 48 times in the Old Testament (31 times in Job, 6 in Genesis, 8 in Revelation).

Bible Reading: Genesis 17:1-27.

Aim: To be fruitful and blessed by El Shaddai by “walking before me and being perfect.” (Gen. 17:1).

Introduction: “Shaddai” means “**Breasted**”, as “Shad” (Hebrew) means “breast”, a “woman’s breast”. Nothing can quieten a crying, hungry, restless baby like it’s mother’s breast milk, by giving it nourishment and fresh life. So the Almighty God, by giving his self-sacrificing love to us can quieten, satisfy, supply, nourish and strengthen us as the breast does to a child. “El Shaddai” is the One mighty to nourish, satisfy, supply and pour out blessings to us. “El Shaddai” the “pouder forth” gives His life and His Spirit to His receptive creatures, saying, “Come unto me and drink” (John 7:37), and “Open thy mouth wide and I will fill it.” (Psalm 81:10). This makes us fruitful.

Paul prays “That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God.” (Colossians 1:10). God wants us to be fruitful for him. Are you bearing fruit? When “**El Shaddai**” is mentioned, fruitfulness is discussed, as seen below:

1. When Jehovah God first made himself known to Abram as “**Almighty God**” (El Shaddai) with the command “walk before me and be thou perfect”, He changed his name from fruitless Abram to fruitful Abraham, the “father of many nations” (Gen. 17:5). By adding the Hebrew letter “He” (**ה**), the chief letter of his own name, Jehovah or JHVH, the sound which can only be uttered by an out-breathing, thus giving his children something of his own nature. The same letter was added to change “Sarai” to “Sarah” (Gen. 17:15,16). Abraham yielded himself to God in circumcision and in sacrificing Isaac to

God. Thus, God gives Himself to us, as we give ourselves to Him. By God giving Himself and His life to us, this can make us like Himself, givers of ourselves and our lives to Him, then by Him to others.

First Mention: El Shaddai first appears in Genesis 17:1,2 to confirm the promise to Abram to make him a great nation, to multiply him exceedingly (17:20) and to make him exceedingly fruitful (17:6).

Genesis 17:1,2 “When Abram was 99 years old, Jehovah appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I am the Almighty God (El Shaddai): walk before me, and be thou perfect. And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.” (v.2). See v.3-8. God here changed Abram’s name to Abraham (father of many nations, 17:5), saying “I will make thee exceedingly fruitful” (v.10).

2. When Jacob flees to Padan-Aram to seek a wife, Isaac says: “God Almighty bless thee, and make thee fruitful, and multiply thee.” (Genesis 28:3, v.1-4). God wants to bless us and multiply us also.

3. To Jacob returning to Bethel, God Almighty (El Shaddai) says: “I am God Almighty; be fruitful and multiply ...” (Genesis 35:11-15).

4. Jacob by the Almighty blesses Joseph: “Joseph is a fruitful bough,...by the Almighty who shall bless thee with blessings of heaven above,...blessings of the breasts and of the womb.” (Genesis 49:22,25).

Note: “Almighty” is always linked with gain or loss of fruit or fruitfulness.

5. God compares Israel’s future blessings in the Millennium with blessings of the breast:

“Thou shalt also suck the milk of the nations, and shalt suck the breasts of Kings.” (Isaiah 60:16).

6. God’s Millennial blessings will be poured out through Christ ruling on earth with Israel:

“Rejoice ye with Jerusalem (v.10) ... all ye that love her:... that ye may suck, and be satisfied with the breasts of her consolations; that ye may milk out (v.11). I will extend peace to her like a river, then shall ye suck (v.12). As one whom his mother comforteth; so will I comfort you.” (v.13). (Isaiah 66:10-13).

“Shad” is the Hebrew word for “breast” from which comes “Shaddai”, God’s name translated as Almighty.

7. When Balaam blessed Israel in the wilderness, he said: “Which saw the vision of the Almighty, falling into a trance, but having his eyes open (v.4)... His seed shall be in many waters, and his King shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom shall be exalted.” (v.7). (Numbers 24:1-9).

Sometimes “El Shaddai” (Almighty God) is used in the context of judging, chastening, purging so one can bring forth more fruit. “Every branch that beareth fruit he purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit.” (John 15:2). Examples include:

8. Naomi twice speaks of her loss of husband, home and two sons as afflictions from the Almighty: “The Almighty hath dealt very bitterly with me”. “The Almighty hath afflicted me.” (Ruth 1:20,21).

9. In Job, “El Shaddai” is used 31 times to show how a “perfect and upright man”, by suffering is purged from imperfections to bear greater fruit (Job 42:10-17), is made an instrument to silence Satan, and to intercede for those who condemned him.

Job’s 3 comforters mention the “Almighty” as proof that Job’s troubles are judgment for his sins, because “Shaddai”, the “pouder forth” of blessings would surely bless the upright. Hence they thought Job must be an evil doer.

Neither Eliphaz (speaking of God’s power), Bildad (of God’s justice) or Zophar (of God’s wisdom) have any idea how God permits his saints to suffer to silence the accuser. Job needed to be emptied to be better filled. “God Almighty” having emptied Job, filled him with double blessings. Hence, let us “despise not the chastening of the Almighty” (Job 5:17).

10. After commanding believers to “come out from among them, be ye separate, ... touch not the unclean thing;” (2 Cor. 6:17) the Almighty promises, “I will receive you and will be a father unto you, and ye shall be my sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.” (2 Corinthians 6:18).

11. Introducing the New Jerusalem blessings, we read: “The Lord God Almighty, and the Lamb are the temple of it.” (Revelation 21:22).

Conclusion: The name “Almighty God” (El Shaddai) speaks to us of:

1) God’s sacrificial love pouring itself out for others to bless us and make us fruitful.

2) God’s strength and sufficiency is most manifest in our weakness and insufficiency, so that from us may flow rivers of living water to thirsty and needy mankind. Shall we not bless God for these and continually “abide under the shadow of the Almighty”. (Psalm 91:1,2).

4. **JEHOVAH SABAOTH (LORD of Hosts)**

Bible Reading: Psalm 84:1-12.

Aim: To see that the LORD of Hosts waits on us to **comfort**, **guide**, **protect** and **minister** to us.

This name of God is only known in the **failures of Israel**. It is never found in the books of Moses, Joshua, Judges, Job, Proverbs and Ecclesiastes. It occurs mostly in the Prophets who most keenly felt Israel's failure. It occurs in Jeremiah (80 times), Haggai (14 x), Zechariah (50 x) and Malachi (25 x).

Key: The "LORD of Hosts" uses His hosts for the **correction** and **deliverance** of His people, and to **punish** His adversaries. He **punishes** His people for their **unfaithfulness**, then **punishes** their adversaries to bring them **full deliverance**.

First Mention: It is when Israel has failed, (not in Egypt or the Wilderness) but in the Promised Land, that the name "**Jehovah Sabaoth**" (LORD of Hosts) is first seen. When Israel is divided, and in peril of being led captive out of the land, this is the name that the prophets turn to for **comfort** and **deliverance**, when there is no other helper. Let us see how this name is used:

1. **Hannah**, a suffering, barren woman first trusts in this name. (I Samuel 1:1-3,10,11).

The LORD of Hosts **gives her a son**, Samuel who later delivered Israel.

2. **Israel's army** uses this name hoping to avoid being smitten by the Philistines. (I Samuel 4:1-4).

3. **Saul** was commanded by the LORD of Hosts to **smite Amalek** who had attacked Israel when they journeyed through the wilderness (I Samuel 15:1-3a). Through Saul's failure, God raised up David to deliver Israel from the Philistines.

4. **David** came to **Goliath** in the name of the LORD of Hosts whom he had defied. (I Samuel 17:45).

Jehovah Sabaoth used David to judge Goliath and deliver Israel from the Philistines.

Key: With the prophets, the "**LORD of Hosts**" is the "**God of Heaven**" and of the "hosts of heaven", through whom He can fulfil His will, though men on earth rebel and turn from Him.

These 2 titles are equivalent.

5. **Elijah**, living in the days of **Ahab** and **Jezebel** said, "As the LORD of Hosts liveth, before whom I stand" (I Kings 18:15) in a famine brought by Ahab's and Jezebel's wickedness. Elijah then defeated and **killed the 850 false prophets of Baal**. God then brought rain and deliverance to Israel.

Jezebel threatened to kill Elijah, so he ran into the wilderness, sat under a Juniper tree, and requested to die (I Kings 19:4). An angel of the **LORD of Hosts** ministered to the distraught Elijah, feeding him with cakes and water to strengthen him (I Kings 19:5-10).

6. **Isaiah**, living in the days of wicked King Ahaz "who walked after the abominations of the heathen", until Judah was smitten and led captive into Damascus (2 Chronicles 28:1-5), so that "the daughter of Zion was left as a cottage in a vineyard, as a lodge in a garden of cucumbers, and as a besieged city" (Isaiah 1:7-9). Isaiah turns to the name of the **LORD of Hosts** for **comfort**, saying, "Except the Lord of Hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, and we should have been like unto Gomorrah". (Isaiah 1:9).

7. **Isaiah**, while mourning the death of godly king Uzziah, was **comforted** by a vision of the **LORD of Hosts** who was stronger than the earthly king who had just died, who was worshipped as "Holy, Holy, Holy, is the **LORD of Hosts**:.....mine eyes have seen the King, the **LORD of Hosts**". (Isaiah 6:1-5).

8. **Judah**, when sieged by the confederated kings of Israel and Syria, "the heart of the people was moved as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind" (7:12). The Lord said, "Say not, a confederacy, neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid, but sanctify the **LORD of Hosts** himself, and let him be your fear...And he shall be for a sanctuary (Isaiah 8:11-14). The zeal of the **LORD of Hosts** will perform this" (Isaiah 9:7).

It is the "LORD of Hosts" who punishes His people for their unfaithfulness (Isa. 9:13,19), who later smites their adversary, bringing help and full deliverance. (Isaiah 10:12,24-27).

9. **Jeremiah**, in the destruction of Jerusalem uses "LORD of Hosts" 80 times. When God's people are captive and have no might to help themselves, "LORD of Hosts" is most often repeated by the prophets for their comfort. "Thus saith the **LORD of Hosts**, the God of Israel, **Amend your ways** and your doings, and I will cause you to dwell in this place". (Jeremiah 7:3).

10. **Haggai** constantly repeats the name of the "**LORD of Hosts**" to exhort the little remnant who have returned to Jerusalem from Babylon to build the house of the LORD. (Haggai 2:4-9,23).

11. Malachi complains at Israel's growing corruption (Malachi 3:13-15). But a little remnant shall "fear him, and think upon His name. They shall be mine, saith the LORD of Hosts, in the day when I make up my jewels, and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him". (Malachi 3:16,17).

12. David, when tempted to number his army to count how strong he was, found 800,000 swordsmen of Israel and 500,000 men of Judah. (I Chronicles 21:1-16).

Question: Was not David stronger, unaided and alone, when he replied to the taunt of Goliath, by "the name of the LORD of Hosts", than he was later with 1,300,000 valiant swordsmen? The Lord's answer to David's sin of numbering Israel, is to show His host. "God sent an angel,... destroying throughout the coasts of Israel...70,000 men." (I Chronicles 21:14-16).

13. Micaiah the prophet, when Ahab and Jehoshaphat joined to attack Ramoth-gilead, saw another host "And Micaiah said, I saw the LORD sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing by Him, on His right hand and on His left". (I Kings 22:19-22,34). Of this host "a spirit went forth", and in spite of all the hosts of Israel, by this spirit, Ahab is deceived and drawn to his destruction.

"A certain man drew a bow at a venture, and smote the King of Israel between the joints of his harness." (I Kings 22:19-22,34). A chance shot, as men speak, silently accomplishes God's judgment, but rather it was an angel of the LORD's host directing the arrow.

14. Elisha the prophet warned the King of Israel where the King of Syria was to attack (2 Kings 6:8-23,17). This led the Syrian King to send his army to capture Elisha at Dothan. Elisha's servant was greatly troubled when he saw the great Syrian host surrounding the city, so he asked "How shall we do?" (v.15). Elisha's famous reply is great comfort to all God's people ever since, "Fear not; for they that be with us are more than they that be with them (v.16). The LORD opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: behold the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha" (17). By the hosts of the LORD, the prophet is delivered. "The bands of Syria came no more into the land of Israel". (6:23). The host of the LORD was revealed to comfort and deliver from the host of the enemy.

15. Hezekiah and Isaiah, when the King of Assyria sent Rabshakeh with a great host against Jerusalem in 710BC, prayed to the LORD for deliverance (2 Kings 19:14-19). The LORD of Hosts replied, promising deliverance (19:20-35), "I will put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn thee back (v.28)...the zeal of the LORD of hosts shall do this." (v.31). That night, the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians 185,000: and when they arose in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses". (v.35). One angel of the host of the LORD was greater than the 185,000 host of the Assyrians. God's host have always been serving God's people.

16. Jacob, when returning in fear to Esau, "the angels of God met him" (Genesis 32:1,2). He said "This is God's host". So it is when there is real need. "The angel of the LORD encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them." (Psalm 34:7).

17. New Testament interventions of the host of the LORD, constantly appear to supply needs or avert danger. The angel of the LORD appeared to Joseph (Matthew 1:20), Zechariah (Luke 1:13,19), Mary (Luke 1:26,30), Shepherds (Luke 2:9,10,13). These heavenly hosts wait on us continually. "Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister to them who shall be heirs of salvation?" (Hebrews 1:14). Their ceaseless ministry to Christ is the pattern of our ministry to Christ. This name, LORD of Hosts reveals that God's help is always near. Thanks to God that the LORD of Hosts is with us. There are angels of the churches, angels bound in the river Euphrates, angels ministered to Peter in prison, guiding Philip in the desert, keeping Paul safe in the storm, revealing scripture to John on Patmos. Cries of suffering saints enter into the ears of the LORD of Sabaoth (James 4:4). "The cries of them which have reaped are entered into the LORD of Sabaoth." (James 4:4). Their injustices shall be righted, if not by man, yet by the LORD of Hosts. All of us are called to know how near He is, and how near are His unseen Hosts to do His pleasure and minister to us.

5. **ADONAI** (Lord and Master). Our **Encourager**, **Confidence**, **Helper** and **Strength**.

Bible Reading: Genesis 15.

Elohim (His unchanging love), **Jehovah** (His Righteousness and truth), **El Shaddai** (giver and pourer out of himself to others), **El Elyon** (though Most High he is of kindred nature with us) reveal perfections of God's nature.

Adonai, **El Olam**, **Jehovah Sabaoth** reveal God's relationships to men, angels or dispensations through which He works His purposes.

"**Adonai**" is first found in Abram's address to God:

a) After giving tithes to Melchisedek, the word of Jehovah came unto Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear not, Abram: I am thy shield, and thy exceeding great reward. And Abram said, Lord GOD (Adonai Jehovah), what will thou give me, seeing I go childless?" (Genesis 15:1,2).

b) Jehovah said: "I am Jehovah that brought thee out of Ur of the Chaldees, to give thee this land to inherit it. And he said Lord GOD (Adonai Jehovah), whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?" (Genesis 15:7,8).

c) Abram when interceding for Sodom uses this name to address God, "Oh let not the Lord be angry" (Genesis 18:30,32). "I have taken upon me to speak unto the Lord." (Genesis 18:27,31).

d) All of God's servants use this name.

Question: What does this name, Adonai, reveal?

Answer: "Adonai" is the plural of "Adon" (in Hebrew) meaning "lord" or "**master**".

Note: When applied to men, it expresses the relationships of a master to his servant, (Genesis 24:9,10, 12,14,27,35; Judges 19:11), as well as that of a husband to his wife (Genesis 18:12; Judges 19:27; I Kings 1:17,18; Psalm 45:11; 1 Peter 3:16).

Key: The title "ADON" (Lord) meaning "**master**" or "**husband**" expressed a personal relationship, involving rights of lordship and possession.

ADONAI is **plural possessive** when referring to God and means "my Lords". This confirms God as a **Trinity**, as seen in Elohim being plural as well. Used of **men**, it is always in the singular form

"ADON" (Hebrew). Only of **God** is it in the plural, as seen from Psalm 110:1 "Jehovah said unto my Lord (Adonai) sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool" (Psalm 110:1).

The **Lord Jesus** refers this passage to Himself in Matthew 22:41-45.

Peter refers this passage to the Lord Jesus in Acts 2:34,35.

Paul refers this passage to the Lord Jesus in Hebrews 1:13 and 10:12,13.

Key: David speaking of one member of the Trinity, uses not the plural "ADONAI", but the singular form "ADONI".

"Jehovah said unto my **ADONI**" refers to Christ the second person of the Trinity.

ADONAI (Lord) signifies ownership or mastership. God is the owner of each member of the human family, and He thus claims total obedience of all of us.

"Behold, the fear of the Lord (Adonai), that is wisdom". (Job 28:28).

The use of Adonai in the OT reveals what God expects of us as His servants. See how Adonai is used:

I. The **slave** and **wife** were not their own, but belonged to their Lord (voluntarily or involuntarily).

Slave and wife were subject to their Lord, where faithfulness received honour and reward, while unfaithfulness received just judgment.

Hence, the name "Adonai" (Lord) teaches that as servants submit to their lord, & wives submit to their husbands, so man submits to God, with dependence on God and faith in God's faithfulness as Lord to sustain, keep and help us. Mutual submission to God and each other is the key to a good marriage.

Jesus Christ claims this title of God for Himself, "If I then your Lord and Master, have washed your feet; ye also ought to wash one another's feet." (John 13:14).

Note: Islam has little concept of God as a servant, but as a dictator. Hence most Muslim countries are ruled by dictators. Contrast this with many Christian countries being democracies where leaders serve.

The church is the church because it acknowledges a relationship with God (John 17:3).

The world is the world because it denies a relationship with God ("I never knew you" Matthew 7:23; Jeremiah 9:24; 24:7; 31:34), it denies knowing God, and acts in independence of God.

The world's way is to do as it likes, think as it likes, speak as it likes, without regard to God's will.

i) They do according to their own will (Daniel 8:4; 11:3,16,36).

ii) They live as if they are their own.

iii) They see obedience to God as degrading.

iv) They speak as if they are their own. "Our lips are our own: who is lord over us?" (Psalm 12:4).

God's saints own Christ as their Lord ("no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the H.Ghost" 1 Cor. 12:3)

i) All saints say: "Lord, what wilt thou have me to do?" (Acts 9:6).

ii) All saints say with Christ our Lord: "I come to do thy will, O God." (Hebrews 10:9).

II. Believers as servants, in trials, turn to their master to lift their burdens:

1) When Abram first met God as Adonai, he had two burdens. A seed and an inheritance had been promised him, and years had passed, yet he was still childless and without the promised land.

Because Adonai cannot fail, he says, "Lord (Adonai) God, what wilt thou give me?" (Genesis 15:2) and "Lord (Adonai) God, whereby shall I know that I shall inherit it?" (15:8).

God answers his prayer by a vision promising him land from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates (15:18) and seed as many as the stars of heaven (15:5).

Abram addressed Jehovah as Adonai Jehovah (Lord GOD) in Genesis 15:2, acknowledging God's complete possession and perfect right to all he was and had.

Lordship meant complete ownership and submission. The purchased slave belonged to the master's family, was permitted to eat the passover meal, but a hired servant could not (Ex. 12:43-45; Lev.22:10,11).

2) Moses, when called to deliver Israel, said:

"O my Lord (Adonai) I am not eloquent....

And the LORD (Jehovah) said unto him, who hath made man's mouth? or who maketh the dumb, or deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? Have not I, the LORD? Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth, and will teach thee what thou shalt say." (Exodus 4:10-12).

3) Joshua, when appointed to lead Israel into Canaan, and they are smitten by the men of Ai, turns to Adonai, saying (7:8), "O Lord (Adonai), what shall I say, when Israel turneth their backs before their enemies?" God directs Joshua how to discover the hidden "accursed thing" that caused Israel's defeat.

4) Gideon, when called to deliver Israel from the Midianites, answers, "O my Lord (Adonai), why is all this befallen us?" (Judges 6:13), and "Oh my Lord (Adonai), wherewith shall I save Israel? Behold, my family is poor in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house." (Judges 6:15).

God strengthens him, saying, "Surely I will be with thee: go in this thy might: have not I sent thee?" (Judges 6:14). The servant's strength is in Adonai.

5) Manoah, when childless, entreated Jehovah and said: "O my Lord (Adonai) let the man of Godcome again unto us and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born". Judges 13:8.

6) Samson, when blinded and bound, called unto Jehovah, and said, "O Lord GOD (Adonai Jehovah), remember me, I pray thee, and strengthen me, I pray thee." (Judges 16:28).

7) David's prayer, "Who am I, O Lord GOD (Adonai Jehovah)? And what is my house?" (2 Samuel 7:18,19,20,28,29). David, when so greatly tried, confesses the name "Adonai" as his encouragement and hope in every weakness. (Psalm 8:1; 25:23 (My God and my Lord); "make haste to help me O Lord" (38:9,15,22); "Lord, my hope is in thee" (39:7); "I am poor and needy; yet the Lord thinketh upon me" (Psalm 40:17); "O Lord, open thou my lips" (51:15).

8) Daniel's prayer for Jerusalem's restoration: "I set my face unto the Lord God (Adonai Elohim) to seek by prayer and supplication with fasting and sackcloth and ashes" (Dan. 9:3-14). Adonai granted Daniel the 70th week prophecy in answer to his prayer. "Hear the prayer of thy servant" (Daniel 9:17).

9) Jeremiah, lacking self confidence when God called him said:

"Ah, Lord God! (Adonai Jehovah), behold, I cannot speak: for I am a child (Jeremiah 1:6).

But Jehovah said unto me, say not I am a child: for thou shalt go to all that I shall send thee... be not afraid of their faces: for I am with thee to deliver thee. (v.8)

Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth." (v.9).

Key: All these men confessed Adonai as their encouragement and hope in every weakness.

10) Isaiah's vision of Adonai and how Seraphim worshipped him, moved him in his darkness following King Uzziah's death, to say in response to God's call "Here am I. Send me." (Isaiah 6:8). "In the year that King Uzziah died, I saw the Lord (Adonai) sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up" (Isaiah 6:1).

The Seraphim's coal placed on his mouth imparted new power and purged away his sin (6:6,7). With such a Lord and his help, along with angelic hosts to serve God's servants, Isaiah received confidence to speak the Lord's message, no matter what the cost.

11) Ezekiel, living in evil days, when Israel was a rebellious house, in Babylonian captivity, saw visions of God on a throne (1:26-28). Adonai called Ezekiel, "Thus saith the Lord GOD (Adonai Jehovah) (2:4), be not afraid of them, neither be afraid of their words (2:6). thou shalt speak my words unto them". (Ezekiel 2:7).

12) God's messages to Israel (Ezekiel 2:4-8), Ammon (Ezekiel 25:1-3), Moab (25:8-11), Edom (25:12-14), Philistines (25:15-17), Tyre (26:1-3), Egypt (29:1-3), Mt. Seir (35:1-3) and Meshech and Tubal (38:1-3) are prefaced by His title "the Lord (Adonai) God" occurring over 200 times in Ezekiel.

13) When our Lord Jesus Christ became flesh, and "took the form of a servant" (Phil. 2:7) service was seen as honourable and blessed. Till then, so deeply had men fallen, that all service was counted as a disgrace and as a badge of inferiority.

God was serving all; feeding the birds, clothing lilies, opening His hand to satisfy the desire of every living thing (Psalm 145:16; Luke 12:24,27), yet man did not understand God as a servant.

So the Lord of all revealed Himself in the service of His father, saying,

"Behold my servant, whom I uphold... A bruised reed shall he not break" (Isaiah 42:1-4; Matt. 12:17-20). "Behold my servant, shall deal prudently. His visage was so marred more than any man." Is.52:13-53:12. Christ was among us as one that serveth (Luke 22:27) revealing the blessedness of subjection to our heavenly Lord, which gives man the master he needs to "uphold and put His Spirit on us", but shows selfish fallen man how to rule and govern, by serving others. None have spoken of service like our Lord Jesus Christ. "The disciple is not above his master, nor the servant above his Lord: it is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his Lord." (Matthew 10:24,25).

"Whosoever therefore will be great among you, let him be your minister, and whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant, even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many". (Matthew 20:26-28).

"Blessed are those servants, whom the Lord when he cometh shall find watching. Verily I say unto you, that He shall gird Himself, and make them to sit down to meat, and will come forth and serve them". (Luke 12:37).

Paul said, "His I am and Him I serve." (Acts 27:23).

Christ will approve our faithful service: "Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord." (Matthew 25:21,23).

Conclusion: The writer of Psalm 77:7-11 found help and comfort in the names of God:

1) "Will the Lord (Adonai, my Lord and Husband) cast off forever? Will he be favourable no more? (v.7) Is his mercy clean gone forever? Doth his promise fail forever more? (v.8).

2) Hath God (Elohim, who is in covenant love with me) forgotten to be gracious? Hath he in anger shut up his tender mercies? Selah. (v.9).

3) And I said, this is my infirmity: but I will remember the years of the right hand of the Most High (El Elvon, we are His offspring). (v.10).

4) I will remember the works of the LORD (Jehovah, the righteous One, who gives Himself to be our righteousness); surely I will remember thy wonders of old". (v.11). Psalm 77:7-11.

We only, truly know God as we obey Him. They who know God's Names will put their trust in Him, and shall never be confounded.

267. Tempting God Ten Times. “All those men...have tempted me now these **ten times**.” Numbers 14:22

Bible Reading: Numbers 14:22-25; 1-45.

Aim: To see 10 ways Israel tempted God in the wilderness, so that we do not tempt God.

Introduction: Ten is the number of **completeness**. Israel in the wilderness tempted God 10 times, setting forth their complete **failure** and **weakness**. Notice other occurrences of the number ten:

- 1) The woman losing 1 of **10 pieces of silver** marred the completeness of her **marriage** (Luke 15:8).
- 2) **10 toes** of Nebuchadnezzar’s statue show the completion of **gentile world kingdoms**. Daniel 2:40-45.
- 3) **10 plagues** on Egypt show Jehovah’s complete **victory** over Egypt’s false gods. (Exodus 7-12).
- 4) **10 commandments** show man’s complete **failure** to keep God’s law (Exodus 20; Galatians 3:24,25).
- 5) The **10 servants** being entrusted with **10 pounds** reveal man’s complete **accountability** to God. The faithful servants ruling **10 cities** teach the complete **joy** resulting from faithfulness to God now. (Luke 19:11-26). God greatly rewards Christians who faithfully serve God through all of life’s trials.

Question: How do we react to trials? Do we tempt God as Israel did, or do we walk by faith, patience and the fruit of the Spirit?

Israel tempted God’s goodness 10 times, due to **wrongly reacting to problems**.

Consider the 10 times Israel tempted God in the wilderness and see what their sins and solutions were:

1st Temptation: At the **Red Sea** when Israel **despaired** of being delivered (Exodus 14:10-15).

- a) **Their sin.** They: i) Accused Moses of trying to kill them.
ii) Reminded Moses that they’d prefer to serve the Egyptians than to follow God into the wilderness when things got difficult.
- b) **Their solution** (v.13,14). i) Fear not.
ii) Stand still – don’t panic but trust God.
iii) See the salvation of the LORD - wait and see what God will do for you.
iv) The LORD shall fight for you.
v) Ye shall hold your peace – don’t complain.
- c) **The Result** (v.29-31). Israel: i) Saw the LORD work. ii) Feared the LORD. iii) Believed the LORD.

2nd Temptation: At **Marah** when Israel **murmured** because of **bitter waters** (Exodus 15:22-27).

Lesson: Don’t complain when bitter experiences come, but look to Christ for deliverance.

- a) **Their sin** (v.24). Murmuring = continual complaining.
- b) **Their solution** (v.25). i) The Lord showed them a tree (the cross).
ii) The branch (Christ) of the tree (the cross) when cast into our Marah’s (bitter experiences) brings victory. **Lesson:** Look to Christ during trials, reckon ourselves dead to sin and alive to God.
- c) **Their result:** i) God **proved** them (v.25). See trials as tests to prove us and make us better people.
ii) God **promised** if they obeyed God, he would “put none of these diseases upon thee”. (v.26).
iii) God’s **personal name** was revealed as Jehovah Rapha, “I am the LORD that healeth thee.” (v.26). God can heal bitterness, which is a cause of disease.
iv) God’s **rest** after a **test**, or blessing after trials (v.27). “They came to Elim, where were 12 wells of water and 70 palm trees.” (Exodus 15:27).

3rd Temptation: In the **Wilderness of Sin** when Israel **murmured** because of **hunger** (Exodus 16:1-5)

a) **Their Sin:** Hunger was the cause of their murmuring (16:2,3).

b) **Their Solution** (16:4).

- i) God’s **provision**, “I will rain bread from heaven for you.” (Exodus 16:4).
“I am the living bread which came down from heaven.” (John 6:47-51).
 - ii) God **proved** them whether they would walk in God’s law (v.4).
 - iii) God **provided** double on the day before the Sabbath so they would not lack due to honouring God.
- c) **Their result:**
- i) They disobeyed God in keeping manna till the next day when it bred worms (Exodus 16:19,20).
 - ii) God gave them the Sabbath day (16:23-26).
 - iii) Some disobediently gathered on the Sabbath (16:27,28).

4th Temptation: At Rephidim when Israel **chided** Moses because they had **no water** (Exodus 17:1-7).

a) **Their Sin.** Because they had no water they chided (scold, rebuke, find fault), murmured against Moses & were ready to stone him. Instead of humbly praying to God, they blamed Moses (17:1-14).

Question: When things go wrong, do we blame others or do we accept it from God for our betterment?

Note: Christ is Jehovah God because Israel tempting Jehovah (Exodus 17:2) is the same as tempting Christ (“Neither let us tempt Christ, as some of them also tempted and were destroyed.” I Cor 10:9)

b) **Their Solution:** Jehovah stood on the rock in Horeb. Moses struck it. Water gushed out to quench their thirst (17:6). This pictures Christ being struck on the cross to pay for our sins (“We did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted”. Isaiah 53:4), so we could have the living water of salvation promised to the woman at the well (John 4:10-15). “Whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely” (Rev. 22:17). “If any man thirst, let him come unto me and drink” (John 7:37).

c) **Their Result:** Moses called the place **Massah** (testing, trial) and **Meribah** (quarrel, provocation, strife) because they chided and tempted the LORD saying, “Is the LORD among us or not?” (17:7). This was a foolish question because they had seen God work many wonders, but forgot them. Jews committed the same sin 1500 years later of **doubting God’s presence** by asking Jesus, “What sign showest thou then, that we may see and believe thee?” (John 6:30,31).

Lesson: Remember God’s past answers to prayers.

5th Temptation: At **Sinai** when Israel became **impatient** because of **Moses’ delay** (Exodus 32:1-35).

a) **Their Sin.** i) They gave in to **impatience** at Moses’ delay to come down from Mt Sinai with the Law.
ii) Aaron made a **golden calf** for the Israelites to worship (32:1-6).

b) **Their Solution:** i) God would have destroyed them except for **Moses’ intercession** that God had brought Israel out of Egypt, what would the Egyptians say if God killed them, and remember Your promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob to multiply Israel. (32:11-14).

ii) Moses **burnt** the calf and **ground** it to powder (32:15-20).

iii) Moses asked, “Who is on the LORD’s side?” (32:26). The Levites came forward and killed 3000 men (32:26-28). Contrast this with 3000 being saved at Pentecost in the Age of Grace (Acts 2:41).

iv) The Lord **plagued** the people because they made the calf. (32:35).

c) **Their Result:** i) JHVH sent His angel (messenger) before them (32:34).

ii) The LORD gave Moses a new copy of the 10 commandments that Moses broke (34:1-4), and a covenant (34:10).

Lesson: Rest in the Lord, wait patiently for him. fret not thyself in any wise to do evil.” (Psalm 37:7,8).

6th Temptation: Wilfulness of Nadab and Abihu in **offering strange fire** (Leviticus 10:1-10). (Part II)

a) **Their sin.** i) Nadab and Abihu, (Aaron’s sons) offered strange fire before the LORD which He commanded them not. (Leviticus 10:1).

ii) They may have been **drunk** at the time (Leviticus 10:8-10).

iii) They acted **impulsively** without awaiting the voice of God.

b) **Their solution:** i) JHVH sent **fire** to **devour** them (10:2).

ii) JHVH said, “I will be **sanctified** in them that come near me, & before all the people I will be glorified.” 10:3.

iii) Command Aaron “Do not drink wine nor strong drink, ..when ye go into the tabernacle.” (10:8,9).

iv) Put a difference between the holy and unholy, and between unclean and clean. (Leviticus 10:10).

7th Temptation: At **Taberah**, Israel **complained** loudly (Numbers 11:1-3).

a) **Their Sin.** Israel complained. This displeased the LORD who sent fire which consumed those in the uttermost part of the camp. (Numbers 11:1).

b) **Their Solution:** They cried to Moses. Moses prayed to JHVH and the fire was quenched (11:2).

c) **Their Result:** Moses called the place Taberah meaning “a burning” to remind Israel that their sin of complaining displeased God and brings judgment. (11:3).

8th Temptation: At **Kibroth-Hattaavah** (graves of lust), Israel lusted for flesh. Numbers 11:4-9,31-35

- a) **Their Sin:** i) The mixed multitude lusted for flesh to eat. “Who shall give us flesh to eat?” (11:4).
ii) Their hearts were back in Egypt. “We remember the fish, which we did eat in Egypt freely; the cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions and garlic.” (11:5). They remembered the good in Egypt, but not the bad taskmasters, whips and hard labour. They did not remember God’s wonders and provision.
iii) They were ungrateful for the manna God gave them (11:6).
- b) **Their Solution:** i) The LORD appointed 70 elders to share Moses’ workload (11:16-25).
ii) The LORD sent quails to eat for one month (11:20,31-32).
“he that gathered least gathered 10 homers” (860 gallons). (11:32).
- c) **Their Result:** i) The quails became rotten, the LORD smote the people with a very great plague, and they buried the people that lusted (11:33,34).
ii) God taught them thankfulness, and that lusting leads to death. “Having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.” (2 Peter 1:4; James 1:15).

9th Temptation: At **Hazereth**, Miriam and Aaron usurped Moses’ authority. (Numbers 11:35 12:16).

- a) **Their Sin:** i) Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses. (12:1).
ii) They usurped Moses’ authority claiming the LORD spake by them also. (12:2).
- b) **Their Solution:**
i) The LORD came and stood in the door of the tabernacle to defend Moses’ meekness. (12:3-8).
ii) The LORD being angry against Miriam and Aaron, smote Miriam with leprosy.
She was shut out of the camp for seven days after which she was received in again (12:9-16).
- c) **Their Result:** i) The sin of rebellion slows down God’s work.
ii) Israel learned that God hates rebellion against authority. “But I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to usurp authority over the man, but to be in silence.” (I Timothy 2:12). See I Samuel 15:23.

10th Temptation: At **Kadesh-Barnea**, Israel disbelieved God could conquer Canaan. Numbers 13,14.

- a) **Their sin:** i) Their unbelief that the LORD could bring them into Canaan, sealed their doom (13:31).
ii) 10 of the 12 spies brought an evil report of the land. They had a grasshopper complex (13:32,33).
iii) They all murmured against Moses and Aaron.
iv) They all requested God to die in Egypt or in the wilderness (14:2).
v) They accused JHVH of endangering their wives and children by bringing them into the land (14:3)
iv) They rebelled saying, “Let us make a captain, and let us return into Egypt.” (14:4).
- b) **Their solution:**
i) Joshua and Caleb told them not to rebel because JHVH was with them & would bring them in (6-9)
ii) JHVH intended to destroy them all, but Moses successfully interceded to spare them (14:10-21).
iii) JHVH reminds them that this is the tenth time they tempted God and ignored His voice (14:22).
iv) JHVH forbids those over 20 years from entering the land. After wandering 40 years in the wilderness, their children under 20 years would enter the land under Joshua and Caleb. (14:23-35).
v) JHVH killed the 10 unbelieving spies in a plague.
vi) JHVH told the people to turn around tomorrow to wander 40 years in the wilderness (14:25,32-35).
They mourned greatly (14:39). They presumed to enter and conquer the land, but were defeated by the Amalekites and Canaanites (14:39-45).

Conclusion: Their tempting the LORD 10 times proved their complete failure.

Their excuse for disobeying the LORD was that they feared for their wives and children’s safety, yet those over age 20 perished, while their children under age 20 entered the promised land 40 years later.

Question: Which of their 10 temptings of the LORD are we guilty of? Are your sins blocking your usefulness for God and grieving His Holy Spirit?

- 1) Are you despairing of deliverance?
- 2) Murmuring at bitter experiences?
- 3) Murmuring at hunger or lack of provision?
- 4) Fault finding and blaming others?
- 5) Impatient at delays?
- 6) Wilful and failing to sanctify the LORD?
- 7) Complaining?
- 8) Lusting, ungrateful, forgetting God’s blessings?
- 9) Rebelling and slandering authorities?
- 10) Disbelieving in God to fulfil his promises?

268. THE GOOD SAMARITAN - WHAT SIN DOES TO US

Bible Reading: Luke 10:25-37.

Aim: To show how greatly we need Jesus Christ (the Good Samaritan) to save us from our sins and as an example of showing mercy to those in need.

Introduction: Satan deceives people into thinking that sin has no consequences. When we see the terrible effects of sin, we really hate it and avoid it.

I. The Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-33).

This story Jesus told must be interpreted on two levels:

i) The plain teaching is that we should live like the good Samaritan by helping others in need, “Go thou and do likewise.” (v.37).

ii) The metaphorical teaching is seen in the context of the Jews rejecting Jesus.

As the Jewish leaders were of no help to the beaten, robbed man, neither could they help lost people.

As the outcast Samaritan was the only one willing to help the beaten man, so Jesus was the outcast One who was willing to seek and save lost sinners. “Say we not well that thou art a Samaritan?” (John 8:48).

Background: An expert in the law asked Jesus: “Master, what shall I do to inherit eternal Life?” (v.25). This question surfaced on several occasions such as with the rich young ruler (Matthew 19:16-22) and Nicodemus (John 3:1-15). This was not a sincere question because:

i) The lawyer tempted or tested Jesus (v.25).

ii) Luke said that the lawyer wanted to justify himself (v.29).

Answer: Jesus replied with 2 questions, driving him back to the Old Testament law, which is our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ. (Galatians 3:24).

The lawyer replied by correctly quoting “Thou shalt love the LORD thy God...” (Deuteronomy 6:5) and “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself” (Leviticus 19:18). One must love God and our neighbour 100% always in order to keep the law properly. If the lawyer did this, he would live (v.28).

The lawyer’s response should have been to ask: “How can I keep the law perfectly always? I am not able. I need help”. Instead, he tried to justify himself and defend himself against the implications of Jesus’ words. Every sinner desires to justify himself by bringing the law down to his standard, rather than frame his life by it’s requirements. So he tried to move the focus off himself by asking:

“Who is my neighbour?” Jesus answered him by telling the story of the Good Samaritan.

Jesus compelled the lawyer to acknowledge that a Samaritan, a race hated by Jews, had shown neighbourly kindness, while a priest and Levite had denied kindness to their own countryman.

The road from Jerusalem to Jericho descends about 3000 feet north-east over 17 miles of rocky, mountainous terrain towards the Jordan Valley. When Herod the Great dismissed 40,000 temple constructions workers, many of them became highwaymen robbers (Josephus, Antiquities,15,7).

Hence it was a dangerous road to travel because many robbers hid along its steep, winding road.

The main characters are:

i) The Priest who avoided the wounded man, passing by on the other side (Luke 10:31).

12,000 priests and Levites lived at Jericho and worked at Jerusalem.

ii) A Levite, of the tribe of Levi (a temple assistant), came and looked on him more attentively, but did nothing to help him (Luke 10:32).

iii) A certain Samaritan (part Jew, part Gentile), who would not be expected to help a Jew, overcame all the usual hostility between Jews and Samaritans, saw the wounded man as a neighbour, one who needed help, and denied himself in order to show kindness to the wounded stranger.

The good Samaritan stopped, came where he was, pitied him, bound up his wounds, poured in oil and wine, set him on his own beast, conducted him to an inn, passed the night with him and paid the inn-keeper to take care of him. All this was done without expecting any reward (Luke 10:34,35).

If this kindness had been shown by a Jew it would have been admirable.

If it had been shown by a Gentile, it would have been a great kindness.

But, being done by a Samaritan, a man of a nation most hateful to the Jews, it strongly shows how we should treat friends and foes in distress.

(Luke 10:36.

Question: “Which of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbour unto him that fell among the thieves?”

Answer: “He that showed mercy on him.” (v.37). “Go and do thou likewise”.

Show the same kindness to all, to friend and foe. Then you will have evidence that you keep the law.

Lessons: i) Knowledge of the law is needed to show us our sinfulness and need of a Saviour.

ii) The one who loves most proves it by denying himself to help others in times of need.

iii) All religions should require us to do good to all men (Galatians 6:10). Real love for our enemies will lead us to deny ourselves to do good to them and help them in times of distress.

iv) A true neighbour will help needy people with whom there has been a controversy or difference.

v) True religion teaches us to regard every man as our neighbour, and to do good to all men, irrespective of their national or religious differences.

vi) When men differ in religious opinion, as did the Jews and Samaritans, they should still treat each other kindly and help each other in necessity. Christian kindness must not be marred by differences in doctrine or forms of worship.

vii) The ultimate perfect neighbour is Jesus Christ, whose compassion contrasted with the Jewish religious leaders who had no compassion on those who were perishing. Jesus’ followers are to live like that true neighbour.

II. A Deeper Meaning In This Story

“A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment and wounded him, and departed, leaving him half dead.” (Luke 10:30).

Many aspects of this story remind us of the history of mankind from the fall to Jesus Christ’s return.

1. A certain man reminds us of the first Adam.

2. Jerusalem (city of peace) reminds us of the happy peace & rest man enjoyed before the fall in Eden.

3. Went down from Jerusalem to Jericho reminds us of man departing from God and falling down morally in obeying the serpent.

i) Jerusalem = city of peace (Shalom in Hebrew).

ii) Jericho = a city of curse & death, just as man is now living under the curse and death in this world.

Joshua (Hebrew for Jesus) pronounced a curse on this city after it was destroyed (Joshua 6:26) that whoever rebuilt it would experience the death of his first born and youngest sons at the beginning and end of the construction project. This was fulfilled 520 years later when Hiel the Bethelite rebuilt Jericho by seeing his sons Abiram and Segub die as Joshua prophesied (I Kings 16:34).

4. He fell among thieves. Satan and sin remind us of the thieves, who stripped man of his clothing (man’s first righteousness before the fall), and spiritually wounded him leaving him half dead.

(Though man was alive in his body, he was dead in his spirit. Ephesians 2:1).

“In the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt surely die.” (Genesis 2:17).

5. The Priest and Levite who had no compassion on the wounded man remind us of religion, the Law and the Levitical priesthood which set a high standard but cannot save us. The law cannot save us, nor can our attempts at holiness by religious rituals save us.

6. The Good Samaritan reminds us of Jesus Christ Who was sinless, compassionate on man’s plight and able to restore us to our right state by paying the penalty for our sins on the cross.

7. He poured in wine. This reminds us of the blood of Jesus Christ which saves us and cleanses us from all sin. The wine in the Lord’s supper is to remind us of Christ’s saving blood.

8. He poured in oil. This reminds us of the comforting, restoring, joyful work of the Holy Spirit received by those putting faith in Christ’s blood sacrifice. “Thy God hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness.” Ps45:7

9. He set him on his own beast (v.34) reminds us of the doctrine of Christ (Hebrews 6:1,2), Bible doctrine and the gospel of Christ. Why?

Because, as a donkey carries the body, so doctrine metaphorically carries the soul. Notice:

i) “Barnabus also was carried away with their dissimulation.” (Galatians 2:13).

ii) “Be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine.” (Eph. 4:4).

iii) “Ye know that ye were Gentiles, carried away unto these dumb idols, even as ye were led” 1Cor12:2

iv) “Be not carried about with diverse and strange doctrines.” (Hebrews 13:9).

10. The Inn reminds us of a local church, since a church is a place of spiritual recuperation. True doctrine carries us to a true church.

11. The **Host** (v.35) in charge of the inn reminds us of a **Pastor /Bible teacher** who feeds people God's word and takes spiritual care and oversight of believers.
12. **Two pence** remind us of: **i) Spiritual gifts** given by Christ to a local church such as **pastor/teacher, evangelist** etc. to meet believers' needs in the church age, and **ii) 2000 years** from Christ's first coming to his second coming. As average wages were a penny a day (Matthew 20:2), so two pennies wages correspond to 2 days wages, reminding us of the time between Christ's departure in 33AD & second comings as implied in Hosea 6:2 "After two days will be revive us: in the third day he will raise us up." Is the third day exactly 1000 years? How long are the first 2?
13. **Samaritan going away** (v.35) remind us of **Christ's ascension to heaven in 33AD**. Christ has given believers talents to use to **win the lost** and **train the saints**. Whatever we spend now in God's service, when Jesus Christ returns, He will repay us and reward us at the Judgment Seat of Christ (2 Cor. 5:10).

III. **What Do Sin and Satan Do To Us As Thieves?**

1. They **rob men** of their:

- i) Time** - by telling them they have plenty of time to get saved & by telling Christians not to serve God.
- ii) Fellowship** with God, by getting men to sin, then loading them with guilt by telling them that God hates them.
- iii) Peace** with God and a **peaceful conscience**.
- iv) Souls** and **eternal life** by getting them to reject Christ.
- v) Crowns** and **rewards** in eternity.
2. They **bind men** hand and foot, and take away their treasure. Paul said to Simon the Sorcerer, "Thou art in the bond of iniquity." (Acts 8:23). "He shall be holden with the cords of his sins." (Proverbs 5:22). Satan and sin bind men with cords or bonds of: **i) Bond of ignorance.** **ii) Bond of unbelief.** **iii) Bond of a hard heart.** **iv) Bond of false religions.** **v) Bond of fear.** **vi) Bond of debt.**
3. They **promise much** but achieve little. They tempt men to give up eternal treasures for earthly toys.
4. They make men **believe strange things** contrary to reason, such as by sowing evil, they'll reap good.

IV. **Things Sin Is Compared To**

1. A **Debt** (Matthew 18:21-35).

We as sinners are represented by the servant who owed his King 10,000 talents which he was unable to repay (18:24:25). Debt and sin expose a man to **arrest**, filling his mind with trouble & fear. I Tim 6:9,10

2. A **Heavy Burden** (Psalm 38:4).

"For my iniquities are gone over my head as a **heavy burden**, they are too heavy for me." (Psalm 38:4). Sin is a weight or burden that weighs heavy on lost people and restricts man's potential.

"Come unto me, all ye that labour and are **heavy laden**, and I will give you rest." (Matthew 11:28).

"He bore our sins upon his own body on the tree." (Luke 22:44).

"Let us lay aside every **weight**, and the sin that doth so easily beset us." (Hebrews 12:1).

Sin hinders Christians in our spiritual race, as a weight hinders an athlete.

3. A **Sting** "The poison of asps is under their lips." (Romans 3:13).

i) "The sting of death is sin." (1 Cor. 15:56). **Death** is like a poisonous **serpent**, with a cruel and tormenting **sting** called **sin**. Sin torments people.

ii) Snake sting is very **painful**.

iii) As snake sting can **kill our body**, so sin can kill the body on earth and the soul in hell.

iv) As snake sting **spreads quickly** through our blood and body, so yielding to one sin can spread its sting all through our life and kill us.

v) As the sting of a snake must be **pulled out** before a person can be healed, so sin must be pulled out of our life by Christ at salvation.

4. A **Wound**. "My **wounds** stink and are corrupt" (Psalm 38:5). "A **wounded spirit** who can bear?" Pro18:14 Sin wounds the soul of a sinner, a church and a nation. Every part of a sinner's soul is wounded.

i) Their **judgment** is corrupt.

ii) Their **understanding** is darkened, vain, blind, unbelieving, hateful and unteachable (Ephesians 4:18).

iii) Their **will** opposes God, is proud and stubborn.

iv) Their **affections** are wounded. They love the creature more than God. They love their lusts.

v) Their memory is wounded, being forgetful of God's goodness, but remembering injuries and blaming them on God.

vi) Their conscience is wounded and misguided. Instead of accusing their own sin, they excuse it.

"Their minds and consciences are corrupt." (Titus 1:15).

Come to Jesus Christ the Great Physician Who can heal your wounded soul and spirit.

5. A **Plague**. "Every man shall know the plague of his own heart." (I Kings 8:38).

"In the skin of his flesh like the plague of leprosy." (Leviticus 13:2). "Command the children of Israel that they put out of the camp every leper." (Numbers 5:2). Leprosy represents the hateful nature of sin.

i) As leprosy spreads through all parts of the body, so sin spreads to all parts of the soul.

ii) As leprosy is stinking and hateful to men, so sin is detestable and hateful to God and true Christians.

iii) As leprosy is contagious and infectious to people, houses, clothing, walls and vessels, so is sin contagious to others. "A companion of fools shall be destroyed." (Proverbs 13:20).

"Learn not the way of the heathen." (Jeremiah 10:2). "Come out from among them, and be ye separate, said the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing: and I will receive you." (2 Corinthians 6:17).

iv) As leprosy separates the victim from society, so sin separates people from God, friends, families, believers and heaven. "Your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear....your lips have spoken lies, your tongue hath muttered perverseness." (Isaiah 59:23).

None but the High Priest (Jesus Christ) could pronounce a person clean from leprosy (Leviticus 13:2), so only Jesus Christ can cure our sin plague.

6. A **Sickness**.

"The whole head is sick, and the whole heart faint. From the sole of the foot even unto the head there is no soundness in it; but wounds, and bruises, and purifying sores." (Isaiah 1:5).

"The whole need not a physician, but they that are sick." (Matthew 9:12). Spiritual sickness is twofold:

i) To be sick with sin. This is all mankind.

ii) To be sick of sin. This is necessary to be saved.

7. **Vomit**. "The dog is turned to his vomit again." (2 Peter 2:22).

A wicked man, or one who returns to his old evil ways is like a dog, and his sins are like vomit which a dog eats up. Sin is like vomit because:

i) Vomit is a very loathsome thing, but dogs' vomit is most detestable.

Sin is a very loathsome thing, but apostasy (returning to past sins) is the worst of sins.

ii) As some men vomit by eating something bad, so, many sinners, by hearing a soul-searching message, vomit up some sins in their life by repentance. BUT, after some time, they grow more sick of Christ's ways than they ever were of their sins, and so, as the dog, they lick up their own vomit again, by returning to their old sinful ways.

Lesson: It is very hateful to see someone who has turned his back on Christ, rolling in the vomit of his old sins. Do not be like this.

8. **Uncleanness:** "To work all uncleanness." (Ephesians 4:19).

Sin is an unclean thing. Those who see the face of sin in the mirror of the law (James 1:23), see it to be the most ugly and deformed object in the world. The Holy Spirit compares sin's uncleanness to:-

i) Menstrual blood and afterbirth of newborn babies. "But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousness are as filthy rags." (Isaiah 64:6).

ii) The stink of a rotten corpse in a grave. "but are within full of dead men's bones, and of all uncleanness." (Matthew 23:27).

iii) The scum of a drain. "How much more abominable and filthy is man, which drinketh in iniquity like water?" (Job 15:16).

iv) Loathsome, stinking, putrefying sores (Isaiah 1:5).

Sin is so unclean that it defiles all it touches. All a sinner's faculties are unclean, including his will, understanding, memory, judgment, love, conscience, eyes, hands and feet.

Conclusion:

Do you see your sin as detestable? Repent of it today.

269. The 12 Sons of Jacob

Bible Reading: Genesis 29:31-30:24; 49:1-33.

Aim: To see how the meaning of the names of the 12 sons of Jacob teach us how to live for God.

Introduction: In Scripture, all names and name changes contain important lessons for us. For example:

i) **Adam:** Before the Fall, man and woman were both called **Adam** (Genesis 5:1,2), yet after the fall her name was changed to **Eve** (Genesis 3:20) meaning the mother of all living, or **Life-Giver**. Eternal life had just been lost in the Fall when death entered the world, so God spoke of when Jesus Christ the Life-Giver and seed of the woman (Gen.3:15) would come to be the Saviour of the world.

ii) **Abram** (High Father) had his name changed to **Abraham** (Father of many nations) in Genesis 17:5. He lost the “High” from his name. “God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble” James 4:6 “Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He shall lift you up.” (James 4:10).

iii) **Sarai** (Dominative = 8297) was changed to **Sarah** (princess, queen = 8283). (Genesis 17:15,16). She lost her dominating role and became a role model for godly women. “Even as Sarah obeyed Abraham calling him Lord (head), whose daughters ye are as long as ye do well...” (1 Peter 3:6).

iv) **Jacob** (Cheater = 3290) was changed to **Israel** (prince with God). Thus Jacob lost his cheating and became God’s prince (Genesis 32:28). After salvation we lose our sin bent and become God’s princes.

v) **Saul** of Tarsus (Big) was changed to **Paul** (little). “Saul (who is also called Paul), filled with the Holy Ghost...” (Acts 13:9). Saul’s name was changed to Paul when he first spoke on his first missionary journey. The first mention of Paul describes his future ministry as one filled with the Holy Ghost, rebuking sin, people believing on Jesus Christ and astonishing doctrine.

Hence, the BIG was knocked out of Paul, as the HIGH was knocked out of Abram, and as the CHEAT was knocked out of Jacob. Believers must be humble and trained for God to use them greatly.

From this we see that Bible names have important meanings.

Let us see how the names of Jacob’s 12 sons show truths about salvation and Christian living.

In Genesis 29:32 - 30:24 and 35:18 we see Jacob’s sons being born and named.

In Genesis 49:1-33, Jacob gathers his 12 sons around his bedside just before his death so “that I may tell you that which shall befall you in the last days.” (Genesis 49:1).

1. **REUBEN = Behold a Son** (7205). (Genesis 29:32).

His mother, Leah said this when he was born, as a sign of God’s blessing and Jacob’s love for her, when the favourite wife Rachel was barren. He was entitled to double honour, but Jacob passed him by because he had sex with Bilhah, Jacob’s concubine (35:22). This tribe settled east of the Jordan River which meant they were the first to encounter any invaders from the east such as Assyria and Babylon. They almost caused a civil war by erecting a monument which other tribes saw as an idol (Joshua 22).

Lesson: To be saved we must “Behold the Lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the world.” (John 1:29,36). “He that has the Son has life.” (1 John 5:12). “Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else.” (Isaiah 45:22). “Behold, thy King cometh unto thee.” (Matthew 25:6). “Behold, the bridegroom cometh.” (Matthew 25:6). “Looking unto Jesus” (Hebrews 12:2) is the key to salvation and to living for God.

Question: Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour? (John 1:12). Do you look to Jesus Christ in all things? (Colossians 3:17).

2. **SIMEON = to Hear, Understand and Obey** (8095). (Genesis 29:33).

Leah was now satisfied that God had heard her cry for a son and understood her sorrow.

Lesson: i) After we are saved, the LORD hears our prayers and understands our every need.

ii) Every believer needs to hear God’s word and seek to understand it, so that we live obediently.

Note: Simeon and Levi were men of violence and injustice in killing the men of Shechem (34:25) for raping Dinah their sister. Jacob does not bless them (49:5-7). Their descendants would be scattered throughout Israel, without being given regular land holdings as were the other tribes. Levites dwelt in various cities. Simeonites shared Judah’s land.

3. **LEVI = to Join, Attach, Unite** (3867). (Genesis 29:34). When Levi was born, Leah was sure that her husband Jacob would favour her and be joined to her, as much as he loved Rachel.

Lesson: There are three Biblical joinings that apply to us:

i) **Jesus** said: “He that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.” (1 Corinthians 6:17). After salvation and while we listen to God’s voice in His word, we realise our oneness with God.

ii) **Fellow believers**: “That ye all speak the same thing, be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.” (1 Cor. 1:10). God wants believers in a local church to agree in doctrine and in judging what is right and wrong.

iii) **Marriage partners**: “For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.” (Ephesians 5:31). God wants spouses to be joined spiritually, mentally and physically, in agreement and without conflict.

4. JUDAH = Praise (3063). (Genesis 29:35; 49:8-12). After Judah’s birth, Leah praised God for joy.

Lesson: i) After salvation, we begin a life of praising God. This means that we should stop complaining, murmuring, back-biting and begin to praise God daily. “Seven times a day do I praise thee.” (Psalm 119:164).

ii) “Thy father’s children shall bow down before thee.” (Genesis 49:8). This will be fulfilled when Israel bows down to Jesus Christ the Lion of the Tribe of Judah, as King when He returns.

“At the name of Jesus every knee shall bow” (Philippians 2:10,11).

iii) Judah, through Jesus Christ, would destroy His enemies and be left undisturbed as a young lion. This applies to David and Christ destroying their enemies. (Genesis 49:8,9).

iv) “The sceptre shall not depart from Judah....until Shiloh (Jesus Christ) come.” (Gen 49:10). Page 12: 36

5. DAN = to Judge (1835). (Genesis 30:1-6; 49:16-18). Because Rachel was barren, she gave her handmaid Bilhah to Jacob, who bore Dan on her behalf. She called him Dan because Rachel said, “God hath judged me, and hath heard my voice, and hath given me a son.” (30:6). “Dan shall judge his people.” (49:16). An old tradition is that Antichrist will come from the tribe of Dan.

Lesson: What does God say that we should judge?

i) Ourselves (1 Cor. 11:31) or God will judge (or discipline) us.

ii) Those within our church (1 Cor. 5:12).

iii) The world and angels in the millennium. (1 Cor. 6:2,3).

iv) Judge not according to the appearance, but judge righteous judgment. (John 7:24).

6. NAPHTALI = to Wrestle (5321). (Genesis 30:7,8; 49:21). When Bilhah bore Naphtali, Rachel said, “With great wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed.” (30:8).

Lesson: i) We are in a spiritual warfare. “We wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.” (Ephesians 6:12).

ii) Naphtali was noted for his mobility, swiftness in battle and eloquence with words.

“Naphtali is a hind let loose: he giveth goodly words.” (49:21). We will succeed in the spiritual warfare if we are swift in spiritual battles (rather than lazy), and if we speak goodly words. “Death and life are in the power of the tongue.” (Proverbs 18:21).

7. GAD = a Troop or Overcome (1408). (Genesis 30:10,11; 49:19). “Leah said, a troop cometh, and she called his name Gad.” (30:11). Gad was Leah’s maid Zilpah’s first son. He was born when a troop of soldiers passed by. “Gad, a troop shall overcome him: but he shall overcome at the last.” (49:19). Gad will be attacked by a troop of attackers, but he will attack and overcome them. Border raids were often experienced by tribes on the east of the Jordan River (1 Chronicles 5:18-19).

Lesson: i) God wants us to attack the devil’s strongholds (Jesus said “I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.” (Matthew 16:18)). We do this as we seek to win people to Christ, teach God’s word, and build sound churches.

ii) God wants us to be overcomers in the spiritual battle. As Satan attacks us, we must not quit, but “endure hardness as a good soldier of Jesus Christ”(2Tim:2:3). We have no excuse to be lazy or defeated.

Question: How do we overcome the devil?

Answer: i) “Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good.” (Romans 12:21).

ii) “This is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.” (1 John 5:4).

iii) “They overcame him by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto death.” (Revelation 12:11).

iv) By serving God in a local church. The letters to the 7 churches in Revelation 2,3 are to overcomers.

8. ASHER = to be Happy, Joyful (836). (Genesis 30:12,13; 49:20).

When Leah's maid Zilpah bore Jacob a second son, Leah said "Happy am I..she called his name Asher" (30:12,13). The tribe of Asher would have fertile land and produce much food. (Genesis 49:20).

Lesson: The Christian life is a happy life when we think of all the good things God does for us, and when we avoid ungodly people and behaviour. There is no room for sadness or depression if we live by the Bible. Learn to see the happy side of things. **Question:** How can we be happy?

Answer: i) If we have many children (Psalm 127:5).

ii) If we fear the Lord (Psalm 128:1-3).

iii) If our God is Jehovah (Psalm 144:15).

iv) If we find wisdom (Proverbs 3:13).

v) If we have mercy on the poor (Proverbs 14:21).

vi) If we trust in God (Proverbs 16:20).

vii) If we have a servant's heart (John 13:13-17).

viii) If we suffer for righteousness sake (1 Peter 3:14).

ix) If we condemn not ourselves in what we allow (Romans 14:22). x) If we endure (James 5:11).

9. ISSACHAR = He will bring a Reward, Hire, Servant (3485). (Genesis 30:14-18; 49:14,15).

"Leah said, God hath given me my hire, ... and she called his name Issachar." (30:18).

"Issachar... became a servant unto tribute." (49:15). Issachar was Leah's fifth child. She regarded this son as God rewarding her for giving Zilpah, her handmaid to Jacob.

Lesson: i) After salvation we must serve God. God doesn't want us to be lazy. Attempt things for God.

ii) All God's people are hired. Jesus said, "When I come again, I will repay thee." (Luke 10:35).

Jesus promises, "My reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be." Rev.22:12.

10. ZEBULUN = to Dwell (2074). (Genesis 30:19,20; 49:13).

Zebulun was Leah's sixth and last son. "Now will my husband dwell with me, because I have born him six sons; and she called his name Zebulun." (30:20). This convinced Leah that Jacob's favour would dwell with her. After we are saved (Reuben), while we listen to God (Simeon), and continue to praise God (Judah), we discover and enjoy God's blessings dwelling with us (Zebulun). Zebulun would dwell near the sea shore, "he shall be for an haven of ships; his border shall be into Zidon." (49:13).

Question: Where are we to dwell? i) "Thou Lord only makest me dwell in safety." (Psalm 4:8).

ii) "I will dwell in the house of the Lord for ever." (Psalm 23:6).

(Psalm 91:1)

iii) "He that dwells in the secret place of the Most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty."

iv) "Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity." (Psalm 133:1).

If we don't dwell here, we will be as the "rebellious who dwell in a dry land." (Psalm 68:6).

11. JOSEPH = to Add, to Increase (3130). (Genesis 30:22-24; 49:22-26).

Joseph was Rachel's first son. He was to be a fruitful bough due to his faithfulness to God in Egypt.

Rachel called him Joseph and said: "The LORD shall add to me another son." (30:24).

Joseph's son Ephraim means fruitful. Jacob prophesied victory (49:23-24a) and prosperity (49:25) on Joseph's two tribes. Victory in battle was experienced by Ephraim's tribe under Joshua, Deborah and Samuel, as well as by Manasseh's tribe under Gideon and Jephthah. In Genesis 49:24,25 are five titles of God, these being, the Mighty God of Jacob, the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel, the God (Elohim) of thy father, and the Almighty (El Shaddai). Jacob bestowed on Joseph the greater blessings.

Lesson: After salvation, God wants us to add to our faith, virtue, knowledge, temperance, patience, godliness, brotherly kindness, and charity. "If these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ." (2 Peter 1:5-8).

12. BENJAMIN = Son of My Right Hand (1144). (Genesis 35:16-20; 49:27,28).

Rachel died here in childbirth. She named the child Ben-oni (son of my sorrow), but Jacob renamed him Benjamin (son of my right hand), thus turning a time of sorrow to triumph and victory. Benjamin was an answer to Rachel's prayer (30:24) for a second son after Joseph. These two names are a type of Christ. Ben-oni reminds us of Jesus Christ the suffering Saviour at His first coming, "a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief" (Isaiah 53:3). Benjamin, reminds us of Jesus Christ the head of the warrior tribe (49:27), firmly joined to Judah the Kingly tribe (49:8-12), defeating earth's armies at His coming. Jesus said to Caiaphas the high priest, "Hereafter shall ye see the Son of Man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven." (Matthew 26:64).

Jacob describes Benjamin's tribe as a violent, ravening, devouring wolf (49:27). See their civil war (Judges 20).

Lesson: i) After salvation we are "blessed with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ." Ephesians 1:3,4. ii) We are "predestined unto the adoption of children (son placing in heaven) by Jesus Christ." (Ephesians 1:3). The Old Testament Saul and NT Saul were both from Benjamin's tribe. Consider our great position as sons of God.

Conclusion: Will you apply these truths contained in the names of the 12 sons of Jacob?

270. The Resurrection of Jesus Christ

Bible Reading: Luke 24:1-53; Matthew 28:1-20.

Aim: To understand the evidence and importance of Jesus Christ's resurrection from the dead.

Memory Verse: "The Lord is risen indeed, and hath appeared to Simon." Luke 24:34.

Introduction: Jesus Christ's birth, death and resurrection are the central events of history. Belief in these are essential to be saved (Romans 10:9). Christ's resurrection proves Him to be God and Saviour of the world. Because Jesus Christ rose from the dead, this proves that all believers will be raised from the dead. Some proofs of Jesus Christ being the only way to God are His resurrection, His miracles, His prophecies and His fulfilment of Old Testament Messianic prophecies.

One of our first comments to Muslims should be that, "Jesus rose from the dead. Mohammed is dead. Why would anyone follow a dead man? What hope do you have of going to heaven?"

In 1 Corinthians 15:12-19, Paul shows that everything stands or falls with Christ's bodily resurrection.

If Christ did not rise then: **i)** The apostles' preaching is vain and useless (v.14).

ii) The Corinthians' faith is vain (v.14). **iii)** The apostles are false witnesses (v.15).

iv) The Corinthians are still in their sins (v.17). **v)** Those fallen asleep in Christ are perished (v.18).

vi) Christians are of all men most miserable (v.19). These negative things are true of all other religions who are without a resurrected Saviour. All through Acts, Peter and Paul preach and strongly emphasise Christ's resurrection. With Christ's resurrection being true, all Bible miracles are verified.

I. Illustrations of Resurrection

1. As a young man D L Moody was called upon suddenly to preach a funeral sermon. He hunted through all four gospels to find one of Christ's funeral sermons, but without success. He instead found that Christ broke up every funeral He ever attended. Death could not exist where Jesus was. When the dead heard His voice they sprang to life. Jesus said, "I am the resurrection and the life" (John 11:25).
2. A British explorer entered a pyramid and was permitted to open one of the mummies which was undisturbed for 3000 years. As soon as the air touched the mummy, the rose in it's hand crumbled to the finest dust except for the seed of the rose. This seed was brought back to England and planted in his garden where it sprouted and grew to produce beautiful flowers. There was nothing quite like it in their botany range. They named it after the Swedish botanist Dahl, and is to-day one of the Dahlia family.
3. A certain European countess who was strongly opposed to the resurrection of her body ordered that her grave be covered with a granite slab, surrounded by blocks of stone, with the corners fastened to each other and to the slab with heavy iron clamps. Upon the covering, this inscription was written: "This burial place, purchased to all eternity, must never be opened". All that human power could do to prevent any change in that grave was done. But a little birch tree seed sprouted, and the root found it's way between the granite slab and the stone blocks. The root grew until it tore away the iron clamps and raised the granite lid off the grave, which is now resting upon the large trunk of a flourishing birch tree.

II. Events of Christ's Resurrection

1. Jesus Christ rose early Sunday morning (Luke 24:2).
2. Mary Magdalene, Mary the Mother of Jesus and Salome coming to the tomb to prepare the body, find the stone rolled away and see a vision of angels (Matthew 28:1-8; Mark 16:1-7; Luke 24:1-8).
3. They separated at the tomb. Mary Magdalene going to tell Peter and John (John 20:1-2), and the other two going to tell the other disciples at Bethany (Luke 24:8-11).
4. Peter and John, notified by Mary Magdalene, ran to the grave ahead of Mary, look in and return without seeing the Lord (John 20:3-10).
5. Mary Magdalene returns to the tomb weeping, sees two angels, then meets Jesus whom she initially mistakes for the gardener. She then went to tell the disciples as Jesus commanded her (John 20:11-18).
6. Mary (Mother of James and Joses) meets the women with the spices, and returns with them to the tomb, and sees the two angels (Luke 24:4-5).
7. They go to seek the disciples and are met by Jesus (Matthew 28:8-10).
8. The guarding soldiers report the events to the chief priests (Matthew 28:11-15).
9. Jesus appears to Peter in the afternoon (Luke 24:3-4; 1 Corinthians 15:5).
10. Jesus appears to 2 disciples (one was Cleopas) on the road to Emmaus at evening (Luke 24:13-33)

11. These 2 disciples return to Jerusalem to tell the eleven that Jesus is risen (Luke 24:33-35).
12. Jesus appears to 10 disciples (except Thomas) on Resurrection Sunday. (John 20:19-25).
13. Jesus appears to the 11 disciples, 8 days later and rebukes Thomas' unbelief (John 20:26-31).
14. Jesus appears to 7 disciples who are fishing by the sea of Galilee and restores Peter (John 21:1-25).
15. Jesus appears on a mountain to the apostles & to 500 brethren at once (1 Cor. 15:6; Matthew 28:16).
16. Jesus appears to James at Jerusalem and Bethany (1 Corinthians 15:7).
17. Jesus appears to the 11 disciples (Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:14-20; Luke 24:33-53; Acts 1:3-12) and gives them the Great Commission.
18. Jesus ascends to Heaven in a cloud (Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:3-12).
19. Jesus appears to Paul on the road to Damascus (Acts 9:3-6; 26:12-18; 1 Cor. 15:8).
20. Jesus appears to Paul in the Temple (Acts 22:17-21 and 23:11).
21. Jesus appears to Stephen at his stoning outside Jerusalem (Acts 7:55).
22. Jesus appears to John on Patmos to give him the Book of Revelation (Revelation 1:10-19).

III. Proof That Jesus Christ Died

1. The Centurion and soldiers declared Jesus Christ to be dead (Mark 15:44,45; John 19:33).
2. Three women came to the tomb to anoint Jesus' dead body (Mark 16:1).
3. Blood and water flowed from Christ's wounded side (John 19:34,35). This water flowed from the pericardium and the blood flowed from the heart. The pericardium is a closed sac encasing the heart. It normally contains 5ml of fluid. Mallory and Wright's "Pathological Technique" states that: "The normal amount (of pericardial fluid) is about a teaspoonful, but may be increased to 100ml (24 teaspoonfuls) where the death agony is prolonged".
4. He did not appear to His disciples on the 3rd day as half dead, but as the mighty conqueror of death.
5. Christ Himself declared that He died and rose again ("I am He that liveth and was dead". Rev. 1:18). Christ's death and resurrection are the central events in Christianity. All other religions base their claim to recognition on the teachings of their founders. Without Christ's death and resurrection, Christianity is reduced to the level of other religions. Why did Jews not show Jesus' dead body to destroy Christianity?

The correct view of Jesus Christ's death is the Substitution View. Christ in His death fully satisfied the demands of a righteous God for judgment upon sinners and, as our infinite sacrifice, provided grounds for our forgiveness, justification and sanctification. Christ's death solves the sin problem by paying the penalty for our sins that the law of God demanded. Christ's resurrection solves the death problem by proving that He will raise us from the dead. Christ's death was necessary because of:

- a) God's holiness (Leviticus 11:44), and b) Man's sinfulness (Romans 3:10-20).

IV. Jesus Christ's Descent into the Lower Parts of the Earth is based on:

"When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive.....(Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?)" (Ephesians 4:8,9).

"For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit. By which also he went and preached unto the spirits in prison; Which sometime were disobedient, when once the long-suffering of God waited in the days of Noah." (1 Peter 3:18-20).

Question: What did Jesus do when He descended into the lower parts of the earth?

- i) He led Old Testament believers from the paradise part of Hades up to the third heaven (Luke 16:19-31). The final sin debt of Old Testament believers was now paid. This allowed them to enter the third heaven, as believers do now (2 Corinthians 12:2).
- ii) He preached judgment on the fallen angels of Genesis 6:1-4 who tried to corrupt human flesh and thus prevent the promised birth and saving work of Jesus Christ. Christ's message to them was that their scheme had failed (2 Peter 2:4; Jude 6).

V. Christ's Resurrection was Predicted By Many Old Testament Writers

- i) **David:** "For thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither will thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption." (Psalm 16:10).
- ii) **Isaiah:** "Thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days." (Isaiah 53:10). "Thy dead men shall live, together with my dead body shall they arise. Awake and sing, ye that dwell in dust.....and the earth shall cast out her dead." (Isaiah 26:19).

iii) **Jesus**: “After I am risen again, I will go before you into Galilee.” Mark 26:32; Luke 9:22; John 2:18-22

iv) **Job**: “For I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth.

And though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God.” (Job 19:25,26).

v) **Daniel**: “Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.” (Daniel 12:2).

vi) **Hosea**: “I will ransom them from the power of the grave; I will redeem them from death.” Hosea 13:14

VI. Proofs of Jesus Christ's Resurrection

1. The empty tomb and the ordered graveclothes, when the disciples examined the tomb. John 20:5-8. All other religious leaders have an occupied tomb. Not so Jesus Christ. Anyone stealing the body would have taken the body in the graveclothes. Yet the graveclothes were left in an orderly manner in the tomb

2. The mass psychological change in the disciples from being cowards at Christ's death, to become bold preachers after the resurrection. Their enemies said that they “turned the world upside down”.

How else can this mass psychological change be explained?

3. Over **500 people saw Christ** over a 40 day period after He had risen from the dead. So convinced were they that they were willing to die as martyrs than to deny Christ's resurrection. Would you die for an event that you were not sure about? These witnesses have a high credibility having given the world it's highest moral code. Most of these 500 witnesses were still alive in 59AD to confirm it (1 Cor.15:6).

4. The change from Saturday to Sunday as the main day of worship (1 Corinthians 16:1,2; Acts 20:6). The Sabbath being so important to the early Jewish Christians would not have been dropped except for an extremely important event, the bodily resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.

5. The Church's existence can only be explained by the miracle of Christ's resurrection. In 50 years after Christ's death, the Christian church had become a mighty power, causing the Roman government great concern over it's influence on the world.

6. The New Testament could not have been written because its central theme is eternal life through Jesus Christ's death and resurrection.

7. The silence from both the Romans and Pharisees. Not once did either of these groups ever attempt to deny Christ's resurrection. All they had to do was to produce Christ's body to silence the early Christians. They hated Christ's resurrection and tried to suppress it, but they could not refute it.

8. **People recognised Him** after His resurrection, even His nail prints. Jesus said to doubting Thomas, “reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into my side and be not faithless, but believing”. (John 20:27).

Jesus will still have His nail prints at His second coming (“What are these wounds..? Zechariah 13:6).

9. **Jesus prophesied** that He would rise bodily (John 2:19,20,21).

10. **Two angels** in Christ's tomb declared that He had risen from the dead as He said (Luke 24:4-8).

11. The resurrected Christ said that **He had flesh and bones**. He invited the terrified disciples to “Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Handle me and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones as ye see me have. When he had thus spoken he showed them his hands & his feet.” Luke 24:39,40

12. Jesus Christ **appeared** to women who held His feet (Matthew 28:9), to James (1 Cor. 15:7), to Paul on the road to Damascus (Acts 9:3-6), to welcome Stephen into heaven (Acts 7:55), to John on Patmos (Rev. 1:10-19), to Peter as the friend who never forsakes (Luke 24:34), to Thomas in rebuking his unbelief (John 20:26-29), to seven disciples when fishing (John 21:1-23), to the eleven disciples (Mark 16:14), to two disciples on the road to Emmaus (Luke 24:13-35), to 10 disciples in the upper room (Thomas absent) (John 20:26-29), to over 500 at once (1 Cor. 15:6).

13. Jesus Christ **ate food** with His disciples after His resurrection. “They gave him a piece of broiled fish, and of an honeycomb. And he took it, and did eat before them”. (Luke 24:42,43).

VII. The Significance of Christ's Resurrection

1. It proves **we will rise** from the dead also. “He that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by His Spirit that dwelleth in you.” (Romans 8:11; 1 Corinthians 15:51-57).

2. It proves **Jesus Christ is God**. “Declared to be the Son of God with power,...by the resurrection from the dead.” (Romans 1:4).

3. It proves **Christ's death really did pay for our sins**. “Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification” (Roman 4:25). It proves the acceptance of Christ's work on the cross.

Christ's resurrection makes our justification possible. We could not have the same confidence that God has accepted Christ's sacrifice, had he not risen from the dead.

4. It proves that **Jesus Christ is the only way to God**, as no other religious leader has risen from the dead.

5. It made Christ our **interceding High Priest**. Through His resurrection He became our intercessor and protector. "Who is he that condemth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is **risen again**, who is even at the right hand of God, who also **maketh intercession** for us." (Romans 8:3,4).

He delivers us from sin and intercedes for us when we fail. "There is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus." (1 Timothy 2:5,6).

6. It proves that **Satan is a defeated foe**. "For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil." (1 John 3:8).

7. It proves that **all necessary power for life and service** is available to us through Jesus Christ. If Christ can raise Himself from the dead, He can supply all our needs. "That I may know Him, and the power of His resurrection." (Philippians 3:10).

8. It proves that **Christ will judge the world in righteousness**. The day of judgment has been appointed and so has the Judge. This is proven by Christ's resurrection. "Because he hath appointed a day, in which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised Him from the dead." (Acts 17:31).

9. It prepared the way for Christ to **sit on David's Throne** in His millennial Kingdom. "God had sworn with an oath to Him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would **raise up** Christ to sit on his throne." (Acts 2:30).

10. It enables each believer to **bear fruit**. "That ye should be married to another, even to him who is **raised from the dead**, that we should **bring forth fruit** unto God." (Romans 7:4).

11. It allows each believer to **walk in newness of life**. "Like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in the newness of life." (Romans 6:4).

12. It is the **centre of the gospel** and **our preaching**. "I declare unto you the gospel..." (1 Cor. 15:1-4).

VIII. What Will Our Resurrection Body Be Like?

1. It will have **flesh** and **bones**. "A spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have." (Luke 24:39).

2. It will be an **immortal** body. "This mortal must put on **immortality**." (1 Corinthians 15:53).

3. It will be a **glorious** body. "It is sown in dishonour; it is raised in **glory**." (1 Cor. 15:43). "Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto His **glorious** body." (Philippians 3:21; 1 John 3:2)

4. It will be a **powerful** body. "It is sown in weakness; it is raised in **power**." (1 Corinthians 15:43).

5. It will **differ in glory** from other believers' resurrection bodies. "They that turn many to righteousness, (will shine) as the stars forever and ever." (Daniel 12:3). "One star differeth from another star in glory. So also is the resurrection of the dead." (1 Corinthians 15:41,42).

6. It will be a **spiritual** body, that is, a spirit controlled body. "It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body." (1 Corinthians 15:44).

7. It will have the **ability to pass through walls**, as Jesus could do. (John 20:19).

8. It will be able to **eat food**, as Jesus did. (Luke 24:41-43; Revelation 19:9).

9. Our flesh shall be **fresher than a child's**, we shall return to the days of our **youth**. (Job 33:25).

10. We will use our new powerful, glorious resurrection body to **serve God** and **glorify God** through all eternity. "His servants shall serve Him." (Revelation 22:3).

IX. The Resurrection Song (1 Corinthians 15:54-57).

"Death is swallowed up in victory (v.54). O **death** where is thy sting? (This will be sung by **living believers** at the rapture who receive their resurrection body without dying).

O **grave**, where is thy victory? (This will be sung by **dead believers** who will be resurrected from the grave at Christ's return). (v.55). The **sting** of death is sin; and the **strength** of sin is the law (v.56).

Thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ." (v.57).

Conclusion:

1. Have you received Jesus Christ as your Saviour? Are you sure of eternal life?

2. Do you tell people the Gospel of how Jesus Christ died for their sins, was buried and rose again?

3. Can you explain the reasons why Jesus Christ rose from the dead?

4. Are you living the victorious Christian life and serving God in the power of Christ's resurrection?

VERSE INDEX

Genesis	
1.....	1062
2:7.....	462
3:20.....	15
5:1-32.....	1127
6:3.....	656
11:1,4,8.....	476
12:1-3.....	180
16:7-14.....	899
18:17-19.....	870
32:28,30.....	899
49:10.....	12
Exodus	
3:1.....	239
3:1-4.....	899
12:2.....	744
13:21.....	899
16:23.....	777
23:17.....	869
23:16-30.....	744
24:9-11.....	899
25-27.....	43
31:15.....	779
31:13,14,16,17.....	737,780
34:28.....	743
35:3.....	741
Leviticus	
11:7,8.....	15
13:46,57.....	15
17:11.....	15
23.....	35
Numbers	
15:32-36.....	744
21:5-9.....	646
28:9-10.....	744
Deuteronomy	
4:13.....	743
4:30,31.....	698
5:2,3.....	744
6:4.....	878
9:9.....	743
18:15-22.....	1087
18:22.....	516,909
23:12,13.....	15
28:1,15,49,64.....	477
30:1-10.....	698
31:29.....	698
32:29,30.....	698
32:39.....	855
Joshua	
5:14.....	899
6:26.....	9

Judges	
4,5.....	1055
13:22.....	899
14:1-20.....	1194
I Samuel	
17.....	1163
II Samuel	
5:21.....	564
I Kings	
8:9.....	743,765
13.....	491
13:1-3.....	10
16:34.....	9
22.....	1163
22:22.....	518
II Kings	
23:15,16.....	10
II Chronicles	
18.....	600
29-31.....	1160
Ezra	
1:1-4.....	216
4:1-4.....	600
6:1-12.....	217
7.....	217
Nehemiah	
2:1-8.....	217
2:10.....	1104
3.....	1125
6:3.....	1168
9:13,14.....	744,769
Job	
12:7.....	1148
26:7.....	13
22:12.....	14
28:25.....	16
33:23-30.....	126
37:16.....	13
38:16.....	16
38:22.....	14
38:24.....	16
38:31.....	14
38:33.....	17
38:35.....	13,176
Psalms	
1:1-6.....	337
8:8.....	16
19:1.....	18

19:1-6.....	1182
22:8-16.....	948
23.....	1109
30:9.....	465
50:1.....	867
51.....	1138
65:4.....	636
82:1-7.....	889
89:27.....	861
89:34-37.....	698
102:16.....	174
103:19.....	895
110:1.....	869,941
115:17.....	465
124:7.....	1142
146:4.....	465
147:4.....	14
Proverbs	
8:1.....	860
8:18.....	559
8:22,23.....	860,941
8:27.....	14
8:28.....	16
16:4.....	629
21:21.....	559
22:28.....	571
29:18.....	1158
30:24-28.....	1145
Ecclesiastes	
1:6.....	16
1:7.....	16
2,12.....	1198
9:5,6,10.....	466
Isaiah	
1:13,14.....	768
2:1-4.....	698
6:5.....	899
6:9,10.....	631
8:20.....	516
9:6.....	867,884,941,950
10:1.....	619
10:2.....	867
14:9,10.....	463
14:12.....	545
19:17.....	7,178
28:11,13.....	476,477,515
33:19.....	477
40:3.....	11,949
40:22.....	14
41:23.....	2
42:8.....	889
43:5,6.....	177
43:10.....	826
43:11.....	886
44:6.....	867,884

VERSE INDEX

44:8	867
44:28	11
45:5	867
48:12,16	885
49:13-16	1084
53	949
53:6	647,651
54:17	180
55:6,7	126
60:8,9	183
66:23	779

Jeremiah

1:1-9	239
3:17,18	700
3-5	477
18:1-10	633
19:5	621
23:3-8	700
31:3	637
31:31-34	765
32:18	867
33:22	14

Ezekiel

1:26	899
3:20	437
10:20	899
11:17-20	702
18:4	437
20:12,20	737
26:1-14	7
29:1-15	7
32:21,30,31	463
33:13,18	437
34:13-28	702
35,36,37	195,196
36:2-7	179
36:11	177
36:24	177
36:24-37	702
37:11-27	702
38	198
38:5,6	180
38:8-16	703
38:11	178
39:11	181
39:7-29	703
44:1,2	8,178

Daniel

2	226,227
2:40-44	6,173
8:1-8,20-22	6
9:24-27	214,948
12:1	703
12:4	171
12:8	1162

Hosea

2:18-23	704
3:4,5	704
5:15-6:2	950
14:4-6	704

Joel

2:18-27	704
2:28	481,504,516

Amos

9:11-15	705
---------	-----

Jonah

1:17	17
3:4-10	126

Micah

3:12	8
5:2	546,895,948
7:16-20	705

Nahum

1-3	9
-----	---

Zechariah

2:8-12	705
2:8-11	885
3:2	885
8:3,7,8,13,23	705
9:9	949
9:15,16	705
10:6	705
11:12,13	949
12:1-3	9
12:3	179
12:2,3,8,9,10	705
12:10	842
13:6	948
13:8,9	706
14:1-4	8
14:2-14	706

Zephaniah

3:13-20	705
---------	-----

Malachi

2:10	886
3:1	895
3:10	763
3:14	1162
4:1,2	800

Matthew

1:21	653
1:25	565

3:15	772
5:17,18	771
5:22	547
5:44	561
6:1-15	1131
6:7	567
7:15	571
7:15-20	909
10:22	651
11:21	623
11:25	864,895
12:5	744,768
12:22-32	513
13	382
13:1-52	59
13:15	656
15:8	563
17:21	558
18:11	548,555
18:15-19	602
20:16	635,658
20:28	653
21:28-32	1111
22:11-13	438
22:14	635,658
22:45	869
23:14	565
23:37	656
23:37-39	697
24:1-7	172
24:13	438,906
24:20	778
24:22,24,31	639
24:45-47	827
25:10-12	438
25:19-23	827
25:30	438
25:31	563
26:28	653
26:50	654
28:19	880

Mark

2:27	778
10:17,18	872,941
10:21	556
10:24	554
10:46-52	127
11:1-10	1092
11:26	562
12:29	878
13:32	866,941
15:28	563
16:1,2	784
16:16	459
16:17	500
16:17,18	513
16:17-20	478,499

VERSE INDEX

Luke

1:28	564
2:33	547
3:14	562
4:4	558
9:55,56	555,565
10:38-42	1119
11:2-4	544
11:13	512
11:54	563
12:32	920
16:17	772
16:19-31	30,1054
17:31-36	13
18:7,8	639
18:9-14	127
19:1-10	128
19:10	654
19:41-44	12
21:20-24	8
21:29-31	173
22:18	902
22:64,68	563
23:39-43	128
23:56	782
24:37,39	902
24:39	1147

John

1:1	850,885,943
1:3	886
1:13	614,658
1:14	859
1:27,28	800
1:29	648
1:42	565
2:19-21	902
3:5	457
3:5,7	904
3:13	549,886
3:16	648,862,941,1177
3:18	647
3:19	656
4	126
4:23	871,941
4:42	648,886
5:18	887
5:23	872,887
5:29	799
5:30	623
5:40	656
6:33	648
6:37,39	634
6:44	615,616
6:46	887,899
6:51	648
6:65	615,616

6:66	447
7:35	650
7:39	507,563
8:24	887
8:29	1140
8:43,44	615
8:58	856,887,943
10:14-16,26	634
10:15	653
10:16	922
10:18	902
10:28	433
10:30	888
10:33	888
11:30	800
11:49-52	650
12:19	648
12:39-40	631
14:12	514
14:14	899,943
14:16	512
14:17	615
14:28	865,942
15:1-6	439
15:13	654
15:16	635
16:8	656
16:13,14	516
16:16	548
17:2-6	634
17:3	868,942,944
17:5	889
17:11	573
17:12	447
17:17-21	516
20:17	864,942
20:21,22	507
20:27	902
20:28	890

Acts

2	501
2,8,10,18,19	480
2:21,38	837
2:30	553
2:38	457
2:42	579
3:1-11	1083
5:12-16	479
6:3	559,563
7:48-60	1105
7:51	656
7:59	899
8:1-40	1096
8:4-19	508
8:16	508
8:18	563
8:30,31	827

8:37	564
9:5,6	899
9:5,17	871
9:15	635
10	509
10:1-6	1117
10:43	654
10:43-48	455
11:15	496
13:48	635,658
15:1	1071
15:19,20,24	741
17:22	563
18:1-7	476
18:1-28	1106
18:4	782
18:10	634
19:1-6	510-512
19:11,12	511
20:7	784,785
20:17-38	1151
20:28	558,843,944
20:29	571
20:30,31	902
22:14	635
22:16	458
26:27	129

Romans

1:1-17	1081
1:13-16	1079
1:16	556
1:24	656
1:29	546
3:11	616
3:22	652
5:6	654
5:15	647
5:17	647
5:18	647
6:1-5	461
6:11	555
6:14,15	739
7:1-6	739,743
8:2	739
8:7,8	615
8:29,30	642,860
8:33	640
9,10,11	1122
9:11,12	639
9:13	632
9:16	614
9:18	633
9:22	633
9:28	559
10:4	739
10:9	890
10:9,10,11	128,129

VERSE INDEX

10:11,13.....	654
10:12-15.....	128
10:13.....	906
10:17.....	263
10:18.....	1183
11.....	697
11:5,7.....	639
11:20,21.....	446
11:28.....	639
12:1,2.....	263
13:9.....	557,559
14:1.....	557
14:5,6.....	739
14:10.....	553
15:16.....	567
16:17.....	570,576

I Corinthians

1:7.....	514
1:10.....	828
1:17.....	461
2:13.....	563
2:14.....	462,616
3:10-15.....	192
3:15.....	440
6:9.....	556
6:11.....	459
7:34.....	563
8:6.....	864,942
9:24-27.....	1166,1172
9:27.....	441
10:1-18.....	285
10:12.....	438
10:28.....	564
10:31,33.....	265
11:3.....	858,942
11:23,24.....	265
11:24.....	555
11:28,29.....	440
11:29.....	557
12:1-31.....	520
12:30.....	500
13:4.....	1056
13:4-7.....	321
13:8,9,10.....	484,486
13:8-13.....	482
13:11.....	487
13:12.....	485,488
13:13.....	489
14:21,22.....	477,496
14:33.....	878
15:1,2.....	446
15:28.....	863,942
15:44,50.....	903
15:47.....	549,891
15:52,53.....	1121
16:1,2.....	762

II Corinthians

2:1-7.....	334
3:7,9,11.....	741,743
3:17.....	141,878,881
3:18.....	485
5.....	1157
5:10.....	192
5:14,15.....	651
5:19.....	649
6:14-18.....	574,596
6:17.....	450
12:12.....	478
13:14.....	881

Galatians

1:4.....	649
1:11,12.....	459
1:15,16.....	635
2:11-13.....	570,571
3:17.....	744
3:23-25.....	739,740
3:27.....	460
4:5.....	654
4:7.....	548
5:1-3.....	441
5:4.....	441
5:9.....	574
5:18.....	741
5:21.....	562
6:2.....	773
6:7,8.....	262
6:10.....	652

Ephesians

1:4.....	637
1:5.....	642
1:11,12.....	642
2:1.....	611,613
2:8,9.....	388
2:15.....	740,743
3:9.....	548
4-6.....	268
4:8,9.....	463
5:10,11.....	570,596
5:18.....	286
5:30.....	552
6:10-18.....	263,1173

Philippians

2:9.....	841,944
2:12.....	447
3.....	1171
4:13.....	548

Colossians

1:14.....	554
1:15.....	860,943
1:16,17.....	840,944

1:18.....	860
1:22,23.....	448
2:9.....	895
2:12.....	461
2:14.....	740,743,764,767
2:16,17.....	743
3:6.....	563
3:12.....	640
4:1.....	1150

I Thessalonians

1:4.....	640
2:16.....	623
4:13-18.....	190
4:16.....	925
5:3.....	182
5:9.....	630
5:11-26.....	271,324
5:23.....	462
5:27.....	563

II Thessalonians

2:13.....	637
3:6.....	570

Titus

1:1.....	640
1:3,4.....	886
1:4.....	562
1:5-9.....	273
2:11,12.....	652
2:13.....	847,849

Hebrews

1:1-14.....	87,88
1:6.....	846,945
1:8.....	844,945
1:10.....	837
1:10-12.....	893
1:11,12.....	17
1:14.....	73
2:1-3.....	441
2:3,4.....	479,496
2:7.....	553
2:9.....	652
2:17.....	864
3:4.....	18
3:6.....	448
3:12.....	441
4.....	760,761
4:1.....	442
4:9.....	761,781
4:12.....	462,558
6:1,2.....	338
6:4-8.....	442
6:5.....	479,496
7:12.....	740,772
7:18.....	741

VERSE INDEX

8:13.....	743
9:1-4.....	740,743
9:15.....	647
9:27.....	872
9:28.....	653
10:9.....	741
10:26,27.....	444
10:35.....	444
10:38.....	445
11.....	355
12:5-11.....	252
12:15.....	448
13:8.....	513
22:17.....	654

James

1-5.....	1155
1:23-25.....	484
2:5.....	636
2:8-12.....	774
2:14-26.....	390
5:16.....	558,566
5:19-20.....	449

I Peter

1:2.....	637,640
1:18.....	565
2:2.....	554
2:8.....	630
2:9.....	636,448
3:15.....	134,837,945
3:18.....	654,902
3:21.....	456
4:11.....	900
5:13.....	640

2 Peter

1:1.....	850
1:10.....	640
1:21.....	563
2:1.....	654
2:12,17.....	631
2:20,21.....	449
3:17.....	438
3:18.....	299,900

I John

2:2.....	649
2:15-17.....	1077
2:24,25.....	439
4:3.....	546
4:14.....	649
5:1.....	654
5:4,5.....	440
5:7,8.....	551,805,881,945

5:16.....	441
5:19.....	650
5:20.....	895

II John

1.....	640
8.....	571,595
13.....	640

III John

1-14.....	276,1103
-----------	----------

Jude

4.....	631
--------	-----

Revelation

1:5.....	860
1:5,6.....	900
1:8.....	894
2.....	1157
2:5.....	446
2:10.....	440
2:11.....	439
3:5.....	440
3:11.....	440
3:14.....	859,943
3:14-19.....	177
3:16.....	446
6,8,9,16.....	194
6:12.....	504
6:15.....	175
7:4.....	920
7:9.....	923
9:16.....	171
9:17-19.....	176
9:21.....	177
11:8-10.....	176
11:18.....	175
12:12.....	563
13:8.....	634
13:16-18.....	176
14:1-3.....	921
17.....	731
17:6.....	565
19:1.....	923,946
21:6.....	859
21:21.....	555
21:22,23.....	895
21:24.....	554
22:1,3,4,6.....	895
22:6.....	563
22:13.....	859
22:19.....	445

SUBJECT INDEX

A

ABCs of life.....	307
Abraham.....	390
Acts Transition.....	512
Adoption.....	667
After death.....	463
Airplanes.....	183
Alcohol.....	258,1090
Alexander.....	6,11
Amillennialism.....	209-211
Anabaptists.....	312
Andrew Introducer.....	1160
Angels-benefits of study.....	73
-origin.....	73
-fall.....	74
-classification.....	74,75
-appearance of.....	76
-names of.....	76-81
-Cherubim.....	78
-Seraphim.....	79
-Michael.....	76
-Gabriel.....	77
-Guardian.....	80
-Nature of.....	82
-Work of good.....	83-85
-Work of evil.....	86
-Jesus superior to.....	87
-Satan's tactics.....	89
-Satan's names.....	89
Angry men.....	1095
Answers to SW objections.....	134
Ape men.....	420,422
Apostle gift.....	523
Armageddon.....	187
Arminianism.....	661
Armour of God.....	263
Ask Beasts.....	1148

B

Backsliding.....	278
-evidences of.....	300
-how to escape.....	301
Bad effects of evolution.....	425
Baptism - candidate.....	150
- conditions.....	379
- examples.....	150
- importance.....	149
- meaning.....	148
- method.....	149
- motive.....	150
- reasons.....	23
Baptism in HS.....	530,534
Baptism - sermon.....	1159
Baptismal Regeneration.....	455
Barriers to obedience.....	344
Bartimaeus.....	127
Beasts ask.....	1148
Behold my hands.....	1147

Believe.....	130
Beware.....	270
Bible - How to treat it.....	1152
-- Why read it.....	1152
-- Symbols.....	1066
Bible College Curriculum.....	250
Big Bang Theory.....	429
Biographies - of Christ.....	1140
Blasphemy against HS.....	513
Blood of Christ.....	1135
Body analogy.....	536
Body of Christ.....	166
Body, soul, spirit.....	462
Book of Life.....	445
Boredom.....	343
Bride of Christ.....	168

C

Call on Christ.....	125
Calvinism.....	604
Carbon 14 dating.....	427
Carnal man.....	462
Castaway.....	441
Ceremonial Law.....	755
Challenging thoughts.....	49-58
Challenging Questions.....	245
Character Qualities.....	327
Characters - Abraham.....	390
- Andrew.....	1160
- Cornelius.....	509
- David.....	1163
- Gaius.....	1103
- Good Samaritan.....	1219
- Jacob's Sons.....	1223
- Micaiah.....	1163
- Philip.....	508,1096
- Priscilla, Aquilla.....	1106
- Rahab.....	390
- Samson.....	1204
- Solomon.....	1198
- Stephen.....	1105
- III John.....	276
Charismatic movement.....	476,
.....	482,501,520,539
- Faith, Hope, Charity.....	482,489
- Prophecy, Tongues, Knowledge.....	483
- Perfect.....	484
- Glass/mirror.....	485,488
- House of Judaism.....	487
- Good Effects?.....	493
- Fast growing.....	494
- Reasons tongues ceased.....	495
- Tape Recorder Test.....	497
- Phonetics Test.....	498
- Praying in Tongues.....	499
- First mention pple.....	499
- Apostles' unbelief.....	499
- Aorist tense.....	1235 500

- Subsequence.....	505
- Receive ye the HS.....	507
- Samaritan subsequence.....	508
- Slaying in Spirit.....	508,515
- Cornelius.....	509
- Johns Disciples.....	510
- Laying on hands.....	511
- Transition of Acts.....	512
- Blasphemy against HS.....	513
- Greater Works.....	514
- Ecumenical Unity.....	516
- Healing.....	519,526
- Corinthian Church.....	520
- Purpose of gifts.....	521
- Apostle gift.....	523
- Prophet gift.....	524
- Word of Wisdom.....	524
- Word of Knowledge.....	525
- Discerning of spiritis.....	525
- Miracles.....	528
- Tongues.....	530
- Baptism in HS.....	530,534
- Interpretation.....	533
- Superior believers.....	536
- Body analogy.....	536
- Miracle periods.....	528
- Miracles passing.....	529
- Definitions of 8 gifts.....	540
Charismatic Churches.....	340
Charts - Beast Kingdoms.....	232
- Church Age.....	230
- Daniel 2.....	226
- Epochs of Scripture.....	229
- Prophecy, Tongues, Knowledge.....	487
- Revelation.....	230
- Seven Churches.....	233
- Seventy week prophecy.....	228
- Times of Gentiles.....	227
- Tribulation.....	231
Chemicals of life.....	418
Cherubim.....	78
Children - Objectives.....	1153
- Train them.....	259
Choices - right.....	1119
Christian rock music.....	467
- Excuses to justify.....	472
- Verses against.....	470,474
Christians should.....	132
Christmas.....	1169
Church - compared to.....	164
- Counterfeit churches.....	168
- Dead churches.....	163
- Don't leave.....	261
- Lord's supper.....	158
- Produces what?.....	164
- Stay at one church.....	282
- Ushers duty.....	161
- Why come to?.....	147

SUBJECT INDEX

Circumcision	757,758
Comfort	263
Comforter – are you?	1146
Commended people	1150
Comparative anatomy	416
Comparative embryology	417
Corinthian church	520
Creation – proof	22
- Verses stating	391
- Young earth	391
- Geological column	396
- Artefacts against evolutn	398
- Dinosaur footprints	399
- Flood evidence	401
- Flood sorting	402
- Flood traditions	407
- Flood effects	408
- Vulcanism	411
- Frozen animals	411
- Longevity drop	422
- Trilobite in shoeprint	403
- Hammer in limestone	406
- Stages	1062
Cromagnon man	42
Crowns	266
D	
Danger of Sabb Keeping-754,758	
Darwin's illness	427
Day of visitation	1165
Death	437
Debate with SDA	762
Debtor to past,present,future1079	
Deceiving things	1151
Deity of Christ	21,22
Depression	304
Destroy your life	1160
Devices of Satan	334
Dinosaur footprints	399
Discipleship – multiplication 234	
- Factors affecting	237
- Follow up	236
- Goals of Follow up	241
- Marks of	242
- Qualities to make Disc	246
- Seminar	244
- Thessalonians	241,270
- Value of	236
Dispensations	188,189
Doorknocking	137
Draw back	445
Drugs	348
Dungeons and Dragons	348
Duty	278,376
E	
Earth, Heaven, Hell	1054

EFT	176
Election	670
Elemental Forces	431
Ellen White	735,748,749-51
Encourage yourself	1158
End of these things	1162
Envy	1159
Europe	173,182
Evolution	391,414
- Artefacts against Ev	398
- Vulcanism	411
- Radiodating assumptions 413	
- Uranium Lead dating	413
- Potassium Argon dating	414
- Evidence for refuted	414
- Horse series	414
- Archaeopteryx	415
- Bacteria	415
- Peppered moths	415
- Galapagos finches	415
- Comparative anatomy	416
- Comparative embryology 417	
- Haeckel's Theory	417
- Chemicals of Life?	418
- Reducing atmosphere?	419
- Probability	419,420
- Ape man	420
- Neanderthals	420
- Cromagnon man	421
- Man-animal gap	421
- Ancient man	422
- Scientific developments	422
- Bad effects of	425
- Darwin's illness	427
- Why strongly held	427
- Carbon 14 dating	427
- Big Bang theory refuted	429
- Elemental forces	431
- Scientists against	432
- Questions to ask Evol	432
Examples of – giving	384
-- power	1170
Exempt from Sabbath	744,757
Exhortations	271
F	
Faith saves	387,455
Faithful	259
Faithful sayings	271
Faithfulness	381
Fallen from grace	441
False teachers (sign)	274
False things	1164
Father Heavenly	1175
Fathers – Train children	1100
Fear God	376
Fear of God	1115
Feasts of Jehovah.. 1236	35

Figures of Speech	1046
Finish your life work	1163
Fire	1168
First things	1173
Flood - Evidence	401
- Sorting	402
- Traditions	407
- Effects	408
Fool	278
Fornication	260
Forty days – Jesus taught	1164
Four Point Calvinism	645
Friendship	152
Frozen animals	411
Full of	1177

G

Gabriel	77
Gaps in time	221
Gates of Jerusalem	1125
Genealogies	42
Geological column	396
Giants David conquered	1163
Gifts spiritual (8)	540
Glorify God	1065
Glory of Christian life	1157
God – is able to	1149
-- Nature of	1129
-- Seven Names of	1206
-- Tempting 10 times	1216
God's -- Faithfulness	331
-- Teachers	1169
-- Work is great	1168
Good things to seek	1104
Good works don't save	387
Gospel in stars	1182
Great Christians	309
Great things in Ch. Life	1163
Great White Throne Judgment 187	
Greatest statement	1177
Grow – How to	1170
Guard – in grace	299
Guardian angels	80
Guidance	324

H

Haeckel's Theory	417
Hammer in Limestone	406
Hands – of Christ	1147,1154
Happy	280
Hardened	615,631
Harmony of Gospels	66-72
Hate sin	280
Head coverings	1089
Healing	519,526
Heart	281
Heaven	24

SUBJECT INDEX

- At death 24
 - Absent from 26
 - Activities 25,26
 - Described 24,25
 Heavenly Father 1175
 Hebrews – Let us 1154
 Hell 27,380
 - 4 words 27,1154
 - description 28,29
 - implications of 31
 - Lazarus 30
 Holiness 448
 Holy Spirit - Filling 287
 - Grieve not 289
 - Quench not 289
 - Walk in 289
 Home 362
 Home Schooling 1178
 Homosexuality 276
 Horoscopes 277
 House 168
 Humble 378
 Hyles Andersen College 170

I

Ideal Christian 275
 - Duty of 278
 - 7 types of 276
 - 3 types of 287
 If keep in memory 446
 If ye continue 448
 If we hold fast 448
 If any err 449
 If after escaped 449
 If we deny Him 450
 Impossible to renew 442
 Increasing 1156
 Independent Baptist Church
 - What it stands for 138
 - How to start 157
 Inn 167
 Instructions for:
 - Women 272
 - Men 272
 - Government 282
 Interpretation of tongues 533
 Interpretation of Scripture 1039
 Investigative Judgment 736
 Invitations of Christ 1160
 Irresistible Grace 656
 Islam 994

J

Jacob loved 675-677
 Jehovah's Witnesses 822
 Jesus Christ
 - Attributes of Jehovah 811
 - Appears on earth 212

- Biographies of 1140
 - Gospel events 66-72
 - Greater than Mohamd. 951
 - Hands 1147
 - In every Book 1049
 - Is Jehovah 811
 - Keeps us saved 253
 - Messiah proof 948
 - OT prophesies of 12,22
 - Parables 59-65
 - Resurrection 1226
 - Second coming 184
 - Seven Sayings 1201
 - Signs of coming 171
 - Superior to angels 87
 - Taught in 40 days 1164
 Jewish marriage 1196
 Job – mistakes 1156
 John the Baptist 11
 Joseph – type of Christ 1086
 Josephus 22
 Joy 352
 Judgment Seat of Christ 186, 192, 264

K

King James Version 544,568
 - Verses omitted in NIV-138,544
 Kings of East 181
 Koran 973

L

Labourers truths 1164
 Lacking things 1165
 Law of Moses - Done away 743
 Laying on of hands 511
 Laziness 257
 Learn – things to 1093
 Legalism 1071
 Let us in Hebrews 1154
 Liberty Baptist Church
 - Missionary strategy 103
 - Statement of faith 141
 Life - Summary 1150
 - What is your 1064
 Limited Atonement 644
 Longevity drop 422
 Look at 1161
 Lord is my Shepherd 1109
 Lord's Prayer 544,1131
 Lord's Supper 158,265
 Lord's Table 1074
 Lordship Salvation 663-5
 Losing Sight 1167
 Loss of salvation 437,735
 Love 321,381
 Love not world 1077

M

Man – Tripartite 462
 Maps – of Jesus 38,39
 - of Paul 40,41
 Marks of good Christian 1161
 Marks of disciple 242
 Marriage 362,369
 Marriage customs 1196
 Mature person 1155
 Merchant ship 166
 Messages (140) 1052
 Messiah 948
 Micaiah 1163
 Michael 76
 Military War 1173
 Millennium 187,208
 Mind – what sort? 1068
 - Stir up 1076
 Miracles – periods 528
 - Passing 529
 Missions 316
 Missionary strategy 103
 Mistakes in Job 1156
 Moses excuses 239-240
 Moses like Christ 1087
 Moravians 315
 Mormons 793
 Motives for service 1157
 Mouth shut 1059
 Mule – like person 1092
 Muslim nations 180
 Mystery doctrines 382

N

Nakedness 277
 Names and meanings 1127
 Natural man 462
 Nature of God 1129
 Neanderthal man 420
 New Evangelical errors (106) 570
 - Modernism 571
 - 1. Liberalism 572
 - 2. Rise in NE 573
 - 4. Theological Colleges 575
 - 5. Para Church org 575
 - 6.-7. Billy Graham 576
 - Doctrine verses 579
 II. NE errors 580
 1. Inerrancy denied 580
 2. Modern versions 580
 3. Tolerating error 580
 4. Accommodation 581
 5. Feminism 581
 6. Less Doctrine 581
 7. Contemporary music 582
 8. Psychology 582
 9. Theological Colleges 582
 10. Evolution 583

SUBJECT INDEX

11. Social gospel.....	583
12. Catholic errors.....	583
13. Ecumenical coop.....	584
14. Charismatics.....	586
15. Eschatology.....	586
16. Anti-Dispensational.....	586
17. Scholarship.....	586
18. Accept liberals.....	587
19. Comfort with error.....	587
20. Anti Fundamentalist.....	587
21. Ecumenical Evangelism.....	588
22. Low standards.....	590
23. Marketing the church.....	590
24. Church entertainment.....	591
25. Sharing, not preaching.....	592
26. False teachers permittd.....	593
27. Para church organizns.....	593
Questions to ask NE.....	595
III. Rules for Separation	
1. Apostasy defined.....	595
1. No fellowship w unbelief.....	595
2. Reprove apostasy.....	596
3. Purge unbelief.....	596
4. Don't yoke with unbelief.....	596
5. Sep frm disobed believers.....	597
Q1: Fundamentalism defined	
Q2: New Evang. Defined	
Q3: Unity in heaven.....	598
6. God's way or man's way.....	598
Results of NE.....	598
7. Inerrant Bible.....	600
Good Cause Trick.....	600
8. Don't fellowship Unsep.....	601
9. Crusade for position.....	601
10. If in Doubt, Don't join.....	601
11. Separation is not.....	602
12. HS guides acc. to Bible.....	602
13. Severe on those used.....	603
New International Version.....	544
- Omits Lord.....	46
- Omits Christ.....	47,48
I. NIV omissions	
1. Lord's prayer.....	544
2. Lucifer.....	545
3. Christ's origin?.....	546
4. Fornication.....	546
5. Come in flesh.....	546
II. Downgrades Christ.....	547
1. Christ sinned?.....	547
2. Virgin birth denied.....	547
3. Worship Christ.....	547
4. Creator.....	548
5. Son, Child, Servant.....	548
6. Source of strength.....	548
7. Heir of God.....	548
8. Save sinners.....	548
9. Ascension.....	548

10. Deity (1 Cor. 15: 47).....	549
11. Omnipresence (Jn 3:13).....	549
12. Deity (1 Tim 3:16).....	550
13. Trinity (1 John 5:7,8).....	551
14. Res. Body (Eph 5:30).....	552
15. Right to Judge.....	553
17. SetoverCreation.Hb2:7.....	553
III. Salvation changed.....	554
1. Hard to enter (Mk 10:24).....	554
2. Christ's Blood (Col. 1:14).....	554
3. Universalism (Rev 21:24).....	554
4. Process Salv. (1 Pet 2:2).....	554
5. Process theology.....	555
6. Gospel details.....	555
7. Need to be saved.....	555
8. Works and faith.....	555
9. Sin.....	556
10. Ashamed of gosp-R1:16.....	556
IV. Diminish Godliness.....	556
1. Homosexuals.....	556
2. Take up cross.....	556
3. Without passing Jdg.....	557
4. Don't bear false wit.....	557
5. Unworthily omitted.....	557
6. Bible study.....	558
7. Fasting.....	558
8. Honesty.....	559
9. Prosperity.....	559
10. Pride, Boast.....	560
11. Word to message.....	560
Spurgeon.....	561
12. Perfect omitted.....	561
13. Fierceness.....	562
14. Blasphemy to Slander.....	562
15. Dishonours God.....	562
16. Covers evil.....	563
17. Holy omitted.....	563
V. Catholic Changes.....	564
1. Infant baptism (Acts 8:37).....	564
2. Idols.....	564
3. Among women(Luke1:28).....	564
4. Peter/stone.....	565
5. Tradition (1 Pet 1:18).....	565
6. Tortured (Lk.9:54-56).....	565
7. Martyring (Rev 17:6).....	566
8. Firstborn (Matt 1:25).....	566
9. WidowsHouses(Matt23:14).....	566
10. Faults to sins (Jam 5:16).....	567
11. Priestly duty(Rom 15:16).....	567
12. VainRepetitions(Matt 6:7).....	567
Quest. Ask Mod. Vers. Users.....	568
O	
Obey God.....	370
Objections to gospel.....	134
Old Testament- History.....	36,37
- Background of tongues.....	476
- Pictures of salvation.....	132

- Quotation of Christ.....	88
Olive Tree.....	165
Olympic games.....	1172
Omissions from TextusRec.44,45	
Ordinances.....	761
Ought to.....	1117
Overcoming believers.....	1157
P	
Palms – graven on.....	1084
Parables.....	59-65
Parent/Teen.....	345,349
Passover Lamb.....	646
Pastor's – duties.....	1151,252
- Ethics.....	162
- Qualifications.....	273,1151
- Submit to.....	252
Paul – missionary journeys.....	40,41
Peer pressure.....	346
People Christ Commended.....	1150
Perseverance of saints.....	660
Philip and Ethiopian.....	1096
Pharaoh.....	677,678
Pleasing God.....	1140
Pornography.....	1090
Potassium Argon Dating.....	414
Potter.....	633
Prayer – benefits.....	291
- Directions of.....	297
- Examples of.....	298
- Hindrances to.....	297
- Qualifications of.....	298
- What pray for.....	294
- When pray.....	296
- Where pray.....	296
- Why pray.....	297
Precious things.....	283
Predestination.....	669
Principles of Bible Interpretation	
1. Dispensation.....	1039
2. Covenant.....	1040
3. Ethnic Division.....	1041
4. Discrimination.....	1041
5. Predictive.....	1042
6. Application.....	1043
7. Human Willingness.....	1043
8. First Mention.....	1043
9. Progressive mention.....	1044
10. Full Mention.....	1044
11. Context.....	1045
12. Agreement.....	1045
13. Direct Statement.....	1046
14. Typical.....	1046
15. Gap.....	1046
16. Threefold.....	1047
17. Election.....	1048
18. Christ Centred.....	1049
19. Christ in Every Book.....	1049
20. Figures of Speech.....	1046

Priscilla and Aquilla	1106
Privileges	1161
Probability of Evol.....	419-420
Profitable things.....	1167
Prolepsis	771
Proofs of - God	18
- Christ	1
- Bible	1,20
Prophecy	2
- Tests.....	2
- Significance	2
- Of Israel	3
- Of Edom	4
- Of Babylon	5
- Of Medo-Persia.....	6
- Of Greece	6
- Of Rome	6
- Of Egypt	7
- Of Tyre	7
- Of Jerusalem	8
- Of Jericho	9
- Of Nineveh	9
- Of Josiah.....	10
- Of Cyrus	11
- Of Jesus	12,22
Prophet gift	524
Proskunco (worship).....	846
Prosperity out of Adversity	1085
Prove things	1171
Publican	127
Purity	1123

Q

Qualifications of.....	
- Pastors.....	273,1151
- Deacon.....	274
Qualities to make disciples	246
Questionable issues.....	1089
Questions to ask	
- Evolutionists	432
- Charismatics	481
- Modern version users.....	568
- New Evangelicals	595
- Calvinists	607,608
- SDAs	786
- Mormons.....	808
- Jehovah's Witnesses	936
- Muslims	1035
Quran	953,973

R

Rahab	390
Rapture	186,190,271
Ready.....	1081
Reasons to obey God	370
Reducing atmosphere.....	419
Reformation.....	311
Rejoice in Lord	1171

SUBJECT INDEX

Reprobation	629
Resurrection	20
Resurrections (2)	1121
Revival	169-170
Revival under Hezekiah.....	1160
Rewards	
- statements of.....	32
- crowns	34
- how to lose rewards	34
- how to gain rewards.....	32,33
Rich men	1168
Riches from Rent.....	1194
Rock music	282,347,1090
Roman Catholic Church	708
Russian, Muslim Invasion	195

S

Sabbath	735
Sabbatimos rest.....	760
Salvation	
- Definitions	130
- Errors regarding	125
- Loss of	437
- Objections to.....	134
- OT pictures of.....	132
- Steps to	263
- Tests of	133
Satan - accuser	1139
- tactics	89
- names of	89
- opposes Christians	90
- deliverance from	92
- devices	266,334
- responses to	1165
- priority	1153
Second chance	1171
Second coming	
- appear on earth.....	212
- Armageddon	187
- Chart	185
- Charts	226
- Crowns	266
- Events	185
- Israel not cast away.....	697
- Millennium	208,209
- Rapture	186,190,271
- Russian, Muslim Invasion	195
- Seven Dispensations	188
- Seventy Week Prophecy 214	
- Signs of.....	171
- Tribulation	186
- Why Study	184
Security of Believer.....	253,433
Separation from New Ev	570
Separation Rules	595
Seraphim	79
Sermon Preparation	1052
Sermons.....	1239, 1054

Seventy Week Prophecy	214
Seventh Day Adventism	735
Sex before marriage.....	342,348
Sex permissiveness	452
Science	13
Signs of Christ's return.....	171
Simple things	1145
Sin-what it does	1138
Sin wilfully	444
Slaying in Spirit.....	508,515
Snares of Fowler	1142
Sodomy.....	276
Solomon	1198
Solomon Temple.....	165
Son, go work	1111
Son of perdition	447
Soul Sleep.....	462,735
Soul winning	
- Advantages of STOP.....	102
- Answers to objections	134
- Calls for SW	1057
- Concern for	1088
- Consequences of not	106
- Correct attitudes	123
- Door knocking	137
- Hindrances to SW	136
- Missions	316
- Missionary strategy.....	103
- Way of SW	1083
- Why do SW?	105
Sound things	1167
Spiritual gifts	264
Spiritual growth	375
Spiritual man	462,1110
Spiritual war	1055
Stable Homes.....	362
Stairway to Hell	345
Stars-gospel in	1182
Stay at one church.....	281
Stephen	1105
STOP tract in	
- English	107
- Chinese	111
- Tagalog	115
- Kiswahili.....	119
Suffering-benefits	271
Suicide.....	34,269
Summarize your life	1150
Surrender to Jesus Christ	284

T

Tabernacle	43
Take	1124
Take Heed or Ignore	1124
Tattoos	277
Teach	1169
Teachers.....	1169
Television	1089

SUBJECT INDEX

Temptation -resist it.....254,1137
 Ten Commandments.....743,766
 Tests of Salvation.....135
 Thief on cross.....128,464
 Times of Gentiles.....227
 Tithe.....379,384
 Tongue Tamers.....326
Tongues (530)
 - OT Background.....476
 - Babylonian tongues.....477
 - Assyrian tongues.....477
 - NT tongues.....478
 - Confirm word.....478
 - Confirm apostles.....479
 - Early writers.....480
 - Ceased.....495
 - At Pentecost.....501
 - Apostles only.....502
 - Historical background.....503
 - 2 out of 16 salvation.....506
 - Tribulation approach.....517
 - Hypnotic imitation.....518
 - Definition.....530,533
 - Regulation.....265,531
 - Interpretation.....533
 - Forbid not.....532
 - Latter rain not.....540
 - Ceased in 70 AD.....540
 - Edify church.....541
 - Prayer language.....541
 - Experience.....543
 Topics in Koran.....973
 Total depravity.....609
 TRASH.....1056
 Treasures in heaven.....260
 Treasures to seek.....1167
 Treat yourself.....1166
 Trees Israel like.....1122
 Tribulation.....186,194,231
 Trilobite in shoeprint.....403
Trinity.....873,1012
 - in OT.....879
 - revealed in stages.....879
 - Bible proofs.....880,882,883
 - 30 proofs.....882,883
 - in nature.....940
 - OT appearances of Son...899
 - Father, Son same offices.896
 - Alpha and Omega.....894
 - Early writers quote...874-876
 - Encyclopaedia Brit.....877
 - Christ is Jehovah.....884
 - 120 passages.....811
 - man like.....462

U

Unconditional Election.....618
 Uranium Lead Dating.....413

Usefulness.....262
 Ushers Duties.....161

V

Vain jangling.....449
 Vain things.....1173
 Valleys.....1107
 Victory.....263
 Vision-perish.....1158
 Visions of Christ.....1158
 Visitation day.....1165
 Vulcanism.....411

W

Walk worthy.....268
 War good warfare.....1162
 What all Christians must know 251
 Wisdom.....350
 Wise little preachers.....1145
 Wilderness Journey.....285
 Wolves.....262
 Work out salvation.....447
 Work of God is great.....1168
 Wrong Friends.....254
 Wrong values.....451
 Wrongly sep fellowship.....1158

Y

Young earth.....391
 Young people issues.....337
 Youth.....1058

Z

Zacchaeus.....128

HOW to:

- Lead people to Christ 93-101
 - Make Friends.....154,155
 - Resolve friendships.....156
 - Improve marriage.....156
 - Start IB Church.....157
 - Have revival.....169
 - Run discipleship seminar 244
 - Be Happy.....280
 - Be Filled with HS.....288
 - Pray.....291
 - Grow in Grace.....299
 - Escape from backsliding.301
 - Choose a good church.....338
 - Get on with parents.....340
 - Handle money.....341
 - Court Biblically.....347
 - Be Wise.....350
 - Have Joy.....352
 - Increase Faith.....355
 - Understand Adversity.....358
 - Give.....1240.....385

- Allocate Tithes.....386
 - Glorify God.....1065
 - Person like mule.....1092
 - Train Children.....1100
 - Please God.....1140
 - Treat Bible.....1152
 - Increase.....1156
 - Encourage yourself.....1158
 - Destroy your life.....1160
 - War a good warfare.....1162
 - Respond to satan.....1165
 - Treat yourself.....1166
 - Live.....1168
 - Grow.....1170
 - Rejoice in the Lord.....1171
 - Heavenly Father like Father 1175

WHY

- Come to church.....147
 - Need friends.....153
 - Church exists.....159
 - Christians don't enter
 Tribulation.....186
 - Serve God.....266
 - No sex before marriage...342
 - Obey God.....370
 - Give.....385
 - Evolution held strongly...427
 - Tongues ceased (20).....495
 - Tongues given.....507,532
 - Spiritual gifts.....521
 - Miracles.....529
 - Not seek tongues.....539
 - New Evang. Arose.....573
 - Lordship Salvation wrong 663
 - Some stay RC.....734
 - SDA's keep Sabbath.....754
 - Jesus Christ is Messiah...948
 - Dont become Muslim 993,1025
 - Read Bible.....1152
 - Jesus came.....1166

WHAT

- We get When RCAS.....124
 - Dead churches don't teach 163
 - Good Church produces...164
 - Church compared to.....164
 - All Christians must know 251
 - It means to surrender.....284
 - Pray for.....294
 - Is Love.....321
 - To Love.....381
 - Wrong with Rock Music.467
 - Is the Perfect.....484
 - Results of N. Ev. Comp..598
 - Predestined to.....642
 - Is Allah like.....1025
 - God knows about us.....1057

SUBJECT INDEX

- To do in your youth.....1058
- Is your life.....1064
- Sort of mind.....1068
- Is legalism.....1071
- God has given us.....1091
- To learn.....1093
- To seek.....1104
- Spiritual man does.....1110
- Sin does to us.....1138
- Are you looking at.....1161
- Are end of these things..1162
- Profit keep God's ordin..1162
- God's Teachers.....1169

WHEN

- Do Faith, Hope stop.....482+
- Do Prophecy, Knowl stop.....483
- Do Tongues stop.....495
- To Keep mouth shut.....1059

107. Calvinism.....604

1. Total Depravity.....609

- Free Will.....610,613
- Order of Salv. Events.....611
- Gift: faith or et.life?.....611
- Dead in sin.....611,614
- Man's sin.....612
- Ability while depraved.....613
- Good of unsaved.....613
- Refuting Total Dep.....615
- Cannot please God.....615
- Hardened their heart.....615
- Seek God.....616
- Receives not.....617
- Babies and retarded.....618
- Verses against TD.....618

2. Unconditional Election.....618

- Definition.....619,625
- Key Error.....619
- Foreordain salvation.....619
- Decrees of God.....619
- Sovereignty.....620
- Foreordain sin.....621
- Foreordain wrong because.....621
- Free will examples.....622
- Prayer changes things.....622
- Blasphemes God.....624
- Election to (6x).....625
- Conditional Election.....627
- Order of Salv. Events.....627
- Mediating Position of Calv.....628
- Supralapsarianism.....628
- Arminius.....628
- Gaebelein.....628
- Pink.....628
- Justice of God electing.....629
- Reprobation.....629
- Canaanites destroyed.....630

- Appointed to reprobation.....630
- Reserved.....631
- Ordained.....631
- Blinded, Hardened.....631
- Romans 9:13,18,22.....632,633
- Potter (Jer.18).....633
- Much people.....634
- Book of life.....634
- Sheep.....634
- Given to Salvation.....634
- Ordained to salvation.....635
- Chosen to salvation.....635,636
- Elected to salvation.....638
- Elect Jesus, angels, Israel,
church -638-640
- Election: Calv. Case.....641
- Election: True meaning.....641
- Predestined to Salvation.....642
- Adopted (son placing).....642
- Babies who die.....643
- Conclusions (6).....643

3. Limited Atonement.....644

- Definition.....644
- Accusations.....644
- Arminian.....644
- Four Point Calv.....645
- Atonement.....645
- Arguments for LA.....646
- False Premise.....646
- Passover Lamb.....646
- World died for.....648,649
- All men died for.....651
- Groups died for.....653
- Calvin rejected LA.....655
- No Assurance.....655

4. Irresistible Grace.....656

- Verses against IG.....656
- Results of IG.....657
 - Hopelessness.....
 - Wrong conclusions.....
 - General & Effectual call
 - Liar.....658
- Verses Calvinists use.....658
 - Not of will of man
 - Few chosen
 - Ordained to Et. Life.....659

5. Perseverance of Saints.....660

- Conclusions of POTS.....661
- Arminianism.....661
- Christians not persevering.....662
- Lordship salvation.....663-665
- Preservation by God.....665
- Bad Results of POTS.....666
- Wesley quote.....666
- Definitions:.....667
- Adoption (huiotesia).....667
- Predestination (proorizo).....669
- Foreknowledge(proginosko).....670

- Election (ekloge).....670
- Romans 9(Election of Israel).....670
- Definition.....676
- Jacob loved, Esau hated.....675-677
- Mercy.....677
- Raised Pharaoh up.....677,678
- Hardened Pharaoh.....678

110. Roman Catholic Church

1. Tradition.....708
2. Wrong Gospel.....708
3. Confession.....709
4. Penance.....710
5. Priests.....710
6. Celibacy.....711
7. Confirmation.....711
8. Extreme Unction.....711
9. Infant baptism.....712
10. Transubstantiation.....713
 - Aorist tense "Eat".....713
11. Adoration of host.....714
12. Mass.....714
13. Mediators.....716
14. Prayers to Saints.....716
15. Purgatory.....716
16. Papal Infallibility.....717
17. Indulgences.....718
18. Idolatry.....719
 - Ten Commandments.....720
19. Mary Veneration.....720
20. Attitudes to Bible.....724
21. Peter as Rock.....724
22. Apocrypha.....726
23. Blasphemy names.....726
24. Rosary Beads.....727
25. Low Morals.....727
26. Sacred heart.....728
27. Crossing self.....728
28. Peter first pope.....728
29. Lies, Immorality, Corrupt.....729
30. Inquisition Torture.....730
 - Bigotry.....731
31. Whore of Rev. 17.....731
32. Bible given by Whom?.....732
33. Turn people from Christ.....733
 - Why some stay RC.....734

111. Errors of SDA

1. Sabbath.....735
 2. Soul Sleep.....735
 3. E. White prophet.....735
 4. Christ-sin nature.....735
 5. Loss of Salvation.....735
 6. Investigative judgment.....736
 7. Satan Scapegoat.....736
 8. Another gospel.....736
 9. Mark of Beast.....736,752
- Confused on Prophecy.....736

SUBJECT INDEX

112. Why Meet on Sunday

1. Sabbath sign God & Jews	737
2. Early Writers Sunday:	737,752,783
3. Acts 20:7; 1Cor 16:1,2; Jn 20:19	738
4. Rom 14:5,6; Col 2:16; Hb 10:25	739
5. Mosaic law finished (16x)	739
No fire on Sabbath	741
Verses Refuting SDA	743
1. 10 Comm. Part of Mosaic Cov	743
2. Law of Moses done away	743
3. Nobody knew of Sabbath	744
4. Sign between God and Israel	744
5. Early Christians met Sunday	744
6. Priests, 8 day old boys exempt	744,757
Jews protested against Sunday	744

113. Table of Contents-SDA

1. 3 Basic Positions	746
2. 7 Errors in 27 Beliefs	747
3. 13 SDA vows	748
4. SDAs say White a prophet	748
5. Failed Prophecies of White	749
6. Unbiblical Statements White	750
7. Contradictions of White	751
8. Challenge to SDAs	751
9. Image of Beast	752
10. SDAs break Sabbath (8x)	752
11. Early Writers (15x)	752
12. Why SDAs keep Sabbath	754
13. Danger of Sabbath Keeping	754,758
SDA's Objections (5)	755
i) Change of Law	754
Objection 1: Ceremonial, Moral-	755
Objection 2: Book and on Stone-	755
Objection 3: Ministration of death	755
Objection 4: Steal, kill, adultery-	756
Objection 5: When Sabbath start-	756
ii) Why Sabbath instructions?	756
iii) Real Meaning of Sabbath?	756
iv) Exempt - Priests, boys	757
Circumcision more important	757
v) a) Spiritual circumcision	758
b) Sabbath's meaning	758
vi) Danger of Sabbath keeping	758
vii) Apostles met on Sunday	759
SDAs reverse apostles practice-	759
Constantine's change not protested-	759
viii) Does God change His Laws?	760
14. Hebrews 4 Background	760
3 Rests of Hebrews 4	761
15. Debate with SDA	762
i) Jesus nailed Mosaic Law to cross-	762
ii) Giving on Sunday	763
iii) Blotting out ordinances	764

16. Sabbatarian Arguments Refuted-766

1. 10 Comm. In Mosaic Covenant	766
2. Sabbath is nailed to cross (Col.2:14)767	

Year, month, day progression	767
3. Sabbath is not a Moral Law	768
Gentiles not charged breaking it	768
4. Sabbath didn't exist before Moses	769
Sabbath inappropriate in Eden	770
Prolepsis	771
5. Christ fulfilled law, not destroy	771
Matt 5:17,18 Heaven/earth Jot/Tittle	
6. 10 Comm. for Israel	772
7. Under different law	773
10 Comm. repeated in NT	773
8. Royal Law (James 2:8)	774
9. Keep my commandments	774
10. Sabbath never in NT	775
11. 10 Comm not all duty of man	775
12. God & Law don't change	776
13. Sabbath is holy	776
First mention	777
14. Lord's Day is Sunday	778
15. Matt. 24:20 - Tribulation	778
16. Sabbath made for man	778
17. Sabbath is not eternal	779
18. Sabbath memorial to creation	779
19. Sabbath in Millen. (Is.66:23)	779
20. Sabbath above all laws?	780
21. Sabbath sign to God & Israel	780
22. Hebrews 4:9 rest	781
23. Sabbath nailed to cross	781
24. Sabbath is a shadow	781
25. Sabbath is how God sanct	781
26. Jesus kept Sabbath	781
27. Disciples kept Sabbath	782
28. Paul preached on Sabbath	782
29. Sun worship	782
30. Ananias kept 10 Comm	782
31. Early Christians kept Sunday	783
32. Mithraism	783
33. Pope changed Sabbath	784
Bacchiocchi	784
34. Constantine decree changed	784
35. Mia Ton Sabbaton	784
36. Roman time	785
Questions to ask SDAs	786
Summary and Refuting SDAs	789

114. Mormons

I. Basic Errors	793
II. Mistakes in Book of Mormon	795
1. Nephi wrote in wrong lang	795
2. Only escape is surrender	795
3. No rivers in Red Sea	795
4. Indians are Mongoloids	796
5. Indians become white?	796
6. Reformed Egyptian	796
7. Indian warfare	796
8. No coinage in anc. America	797
9. Silk and linen not grown	797
10. No temples, synagogues	798

11. Jesus is not Quetzalcoatl	798
12. Darkness not 3 days	798
13. No glass windows 2200BC	799
14. Elijah and Elias are same	799
15. Jesus born at Bethlehem	799
16. Hel. 12:26 can't quote Jn 5:29	800
17. BOM can't quote Mal 4:1,2	800
18. BOM can't quote KJV	800
19. Book of Abraham fraud	801
20. 3000 changes in BOM	801
21. 38 BOM cities not found	801
22. 3 witnesses left - Mormons	801
23. Polygamy forbidden, permitted	801
III. False Prophecies of Smith	
Mormon testimony	802
1. New York, Albany, Boston	803
2. Earth did not reel	803
3. Bloodshed in South Carolina	803
4. Lost tribes of Israel	804
5. Christ did not return in 1881	804
6. Lost tribes in Arctic	804
7. GB did not attack USA	805
8. Moon has no 6ft men	805
9. No temple in Independence	805
10. David Patten Shot	806
11. Jews believe, then return	806
IV. False Mormon Definitions	807
V. Questions for Mormons	808
I. Blasphemies about God	809
II. Heresies about Salvation	809
III. Heresies about Mankind	810

117. Jehovah's Witnesses

Table of Contents	822
Assumptions of JW's	825
5. Verses twisted to trap people:	
1. Isaiah 43:10 - Witnesses of Jeh	826
2. Matt. 24:45-47 - Faithful & Discreet	827
3. Acts 8:30,31 - WT explain Bible	827
4. 2 Peter 1:20,21 - No private interp	828
5. 1 Cor. 1:10 - Unity of thought	828
6. Impressions of WT	829
6. Issues JW's argue against	833
7. Jehovah's or Christ's Name	834,934
4. Jesus, Paul, HS call God Father	834,835
8. NT names Christ	835,836
10. Heb 1:10; Ps. 102:24,25	837
1 Peter 3:15; Isaiah 8:13	837
Acts 2:21,38; Joel 2:32	837
8. WT's 15 wrong beliefs	838,839
9. Deity verses WT changes	840
1. Col. 1:17 Add "other" 4x	840
2. Phil. 2:9 Add "other"	841
3. Zech. 12:10 Look on YHWH	842
4. Acts 20:28 Why WT add Son?	843
5. Heb 1:8; Ps 45:6 - Thy throne	844
6. Heb 1:6 Angels worship	846
7. Titus 2:13 God and Saviour	847

SUBJECT INDEX

8. 2 Peter 1:1 Granville-Sharp	16. John 10:33 - make thyself God..888	2. Fighting (61)
9. John 1:1 Word was God.....850,885	17. John 17:5 - same glory	3. Women mistreated (20).....
10. John 8:58 Before Ab, I am	18. John 20:28 -My Lord&my God.890	4. Death if leave (5).....
10. Is Christ Inferior to Father?.....	19. Acts 20:28 - his own blood.....	5. Only true faith (7).....
1. I Cor 11:3 Head of Christ is God858	20. Rom 10:9 - Ha Adon.....	6. Public opinion (16).....
2. Rev 3:14 Beginning of Creation 859	21. I Cor 15:47 - Lord from heaven.891	7. Hells torments (70).....
3. Prov. 8:22,23. I was set up	22. I Tim 3:16 - God in flesh	8. Christ greater than Moh (9).....
4. Col. 1:15. Firstborn of every	23. Titus 2:13 - God + Saviour-893,847	9. Anti Christ, Anti Christian (29).....
5. John 3:16 - Only begotten Son ...	24. Heb 1:6 - Worship him.....893, 846	10. Contradictions bet Bible+Q (35)983
6. I Cor. 15:28-Son subject to Him 863	25. Heb 1:8 - Throne O God ...893, 844	11. Obey Allah and Moh (13).....
7. I Cor. 8:6 - One God, the Father 864	26. Heb 1:10-12 - 9 qualities.....	12. Unscientific in Q (14).....
8. John 20:17 - My God&Your God864	27. 2Pet 1:1 - God + Saviour...893, 849	13. Paradise/Houris (18).....
9. John 14:28-Father greater than I. 865	28. Rv1:8,22:13-Alpha+OmegaTable894	14. Nonsense in Q (21).....
10. Mark 13:32 - That day	29. Ps103:19;Matt 11:25-Lord of all895	15. Self contradictions in Q (16) ...
11. Isaiah 9:6 - Mighty God	30.Rv22:3,4Throne,Serv,Face,Name895	16. Allah's nature (17).....
12. John 17:3 - thee only true God. 868	31. Col 2:9 - All the fullness.....	17. Muslim practices (17).....
13. Ps.110:1 - Lord said to my Lord869	32. Micah 5:2 - from everlasting.....	122. Why Nobody become Muslim
14. John 14:23 - Worship Father	33. I John 5:20 - true God.....	123. Islam - Mistaken Identity
15. Mark 10:17,18 - None Good.....	34. Mal 3:1 - Lord came to temple ..895	1. Meaning of Islam
16. Heb. 9:27 - For all time	II. <u>Father,Son have same 120 Attrib</u> -896	2. Pre-Islamic Arabian origin
11. TRINITY	III. <u>Son appeared to OT saints</u>	3. Crescent Moon
1. Early Church Writers.....	IV. <u>NT Prayer to Christ</u>	4. Is Allah the Bible God ?
Trinity quoted	Doxologies to Christ	5. Importance of Islam
2. Is Trinity Pagan	V. <u>Father & Son have same offices</u> 901	6. Goal of Islam
3. I Cor. 14:33 Not author of	14. Christ's Bodily Resurrection	7. Mohammed's life
4. John 17:3	15. Is Salvation by Christ or WT works	8. Mohammed's wives
5. Deut. 6:4	1. John 3:3,5,7 - Born again.....	9. Lie without guilt.....
<u>HS</u> is called God.....	2. Matt 24:13 - Endure to end.....	10. Demon's sermons (46, 72)
<u>JESUS</u> is called God.....	3. Rom 10:13 - Call on YHWH	11. Death if leave
6. God reveals Himself in stages	4. I Tim 2:5,6 - No mediator	12. Hijra
12. Bible Proofs of Trinity	16. WT False Prophecies	13. Raiding
1. Matt 28:19	17. WT False Doctrines, Contradictions915	14. Predestination
2. Gen 18, 19	18. 4 Tests for WT	15. Mohammed's death
3. 2 Cor 3:17 Jehovah is Spirit	19. 144,000 and other sheep	16. Jesus or Mohammed
4. 1 John 5:7,8 Three Heavens	1. Luke 12:32 - Little Flock	OT Prophecies of Jesus
5. 2 Cor. 3:14 Benediction.....	2. Rev. 7:4; 14:1-3 - 144,000	17. Quran - is it God's word
30 proofs <u>Table</u>	3. John 10:16 - other sheep	18. Mistakes in Quran
<u>Christ and YHWH do ALONE</u>	4. Rev. 7:9 - Great Crowd	1) 6 or 8 days of creation
<u>Saviour</u> :Is.43:11;Hos 13:4/Tit1:3,4-886	20. Birthdays	2) Sun setting in mud.....
<u>Creator</u> : Isaiah 44:24/John 1:3	21. Is Jesus Michael ?	3) Trinity
<u>Glory</u> : Isaiah 42:8/John 17:5	22. Witnessing to a JW	4) Usury
13. Proof that Jesus is Jehovah	23. Blood Transfusions.....	6) Jesus die or not ?
<u>Explicit Statements</u>	24. The Cross	7) Noah's sons
1. Isaiah 9:6 - Mighty God	25. Holy Spirit.....	8) Characters out of time
2. Isaiah 44:6 - His redeemer.....	26. Counselling those left WT	13) Noah 600 not 950 at flood ..
3. Isaiah 48:12,16 God & Spirit sent885	27. War and self Defence.....	20. Arabian,Jews,Christian sources 1011
4. Zech.2:8-11 YHWH sentYHWH 885	28. WT Brainwashing.....	21. Nonsense in Hadith
5. Zech. 3:2 - YHWH to Satan	29. Divine Name.....	22. Jihad
6. John 1:1 - Word was God.....885,850	30. Verses to Discuss. 83 Questions ..	23. Violence
7. John 1:3, Mal 2:10 - One God	31. Trinity in Nature	24. Quran Statements
8. John 3:13 - Son in heaven	32. Questions to refute JW	25. Basic Muslim Beliefs
9. John 4:42 - Only Saviour.....	33. KIT contradicts NWT	26. Duties of Islam
10. John 5:18 - Equal with God.....	ISLAM	27. Why don't become Muslim
11. John 5:23 - honour son even as 887	119. Jesus Greater than Mohammed951	28. What is Allah like ?
12. John 6:46 - No man seen Father 887	120. Main Quotes in Koran	29. Devil like Allah.....
13. John 8:24 - believe not I am	121. Koran in Topics	30. Sonship of Jesus
14. John 8:58 - Abraham, I am	1. Terror (5).....	31. Wars and battles of M
15. John 10:30 - I and Father One ..	1243	32. Assassinations of M

SUBJECT INDEX

33. Battles Muslims started	1031	173. Take or Neglect ?	1124	230. Labourers truths	1164
34. Genocide by Muslims	1033	174. Gates of Jerusalem	1125	231. Visitation Day	1165
35. Modern Muslim atrocities	1034	175. Names and meanings	1127	232. Lacking things	1165
36. Questions to ask	1035	176. Nature of God	1129	233. Responses to satan	1165
125. Sermon Preparation	1052	177. Lord's Prayer	1131	234. Treat yourself	1166
126. Earth, Heaven Hell	1054	178. Daily Dozen	1134	235. Why Jesus came	1166
127. Responses to the Spirit War	1055	179. Blood of Christ	1135	236. Profitable things	1167
128. Charismatic TRASH	1056	180. Temptation	1137	237. Sound things	1167
129. Calls for Soul Winning	1057	181. What Sin does to us	1138	238. Treasures seeking	1167
130. Things Lord knows about us	1057	182. Satan the Accuser	1139	239. Losing sight	1167
131. Things to Do in your Youth	1058	183. Pleasing God	1140	240. Work of God great	1168
132. When to keep our mouth shut	1059	Biographies of Christ	1140	241. How to Live	1168
133. Little Words	1061	184. Snare of Fowler	1142	242. Fire	1168
134. Creation Stages in Salvation	1062	185. Wise Little Preachers	1145	243. Rich men	1168
135. What is your life ?	1064	186. Simple Things of Ch. Life	1145	244. Teach	1169
136. How can we Glorify God	1065	187. Are you a Comforter	1146	245. God's Teachers	1169
137. Symbols of Gods Word	1066	188. Behold my Hands	1147	246. Christmas responses	1169
138. What sort of Mind	1068	189. Ask the Beasts	1148	247. Example – power	1170
139. What is legalism ?	1071	190. God is Able to	1149	248. Grow – how to	1170
140. Remembrance of Lord Jesus	1074	191. Summarise your Life	1150	249. Second chance	1171
141. Stir up your Pure Minds	1076	192. People Christ Commanded	1150	250. Prove things	1171
142. Love not the World	1077	193. Deceive People	1151	251. Rejoice in Lord	1171
143. Debtor to Past, Present, Future	1079	194. Pastor must do	1151	252. Olympic Games	1172
144. I am Ready	1081	195. Bible – How treat it	1152	253. First things	1173
145. Way of the Soul Winner	1083	196. Bible – Why read it	1152	254. Vain things	1173
146. Graven on the Palms	1084	197. Satan's Priority	1153	255. Military war	1173
147. Prosperity out of Adversity	1085	198. Children – objectives	1153	256. Heavenly Father	1175
148. Joseph – Type of Christ	1086	199. Hell	1154	257. Full of	1177
149. Moses – Like Christ	1087	200. Hands	1154	258. Greatest Statement	1177
150. Concern for winning lost	1088	201. Let us in Hebrews	1154	259. Home Schooling	1178
151. Questionable Issues	1089	202. Mature Person	1155	260. Gospel in Stars	1182
Head coverings		203. Increasing	1156	261. Riches from Rent	1194
Television		204. Mistakes in Job	1156	262. Jewish Marriage Customs	1196
Rock music		205. Motives for service	1157	263. Ecclesiastes – Sol. search	1198
Alcohol		206. Glory of Christian Life	1157	264. Jesus' 7 Sayings on Cross	1201
Pornography		207. Overcoming believers	1157	265. Samson	1204
152. Things God has given us	1091	208. Encourage yourself	1158	266. Seven Names of God	1206
153. How Person is like a Mute	1092	209. Wrongly Separatd Fellowship	1158	267. Tempting God 10 Times	1216
154. Things to learn	1093	210. Visions of Christ	1158	268. The Good Samaritan	1219
155. Ways of Angry man	1095	211. No vision, people perish	1158	269. 12 Sons of Jacob	1223
156. Philip and Eunuch	1096	212. Baptism	1159	270. Resurrection of Jesus Christ	1226
157. Fathers–Train your children	1100	213. Envy	1159		
158. Gaius, Diotrefes, Demetrius	1103	214. Invitations of Christ	1160		
159. Good Things to Seek	1104	215. Revival under Hezekiah	1160		
160. Stephen	1105	216. Destroy your Life	1160		
161. Priscilla and Aquilla	1106	217. Andrew – Introducer	1160		
162. Valleys	1107	218. Marks of a Good Christian	1161		
163. Lord is my Shepherd	1109	219. Appreciate Privileges	1161		
164. Spiritual man Does	1110	220. Looking at	1161		
165. Son Go work Today	1111	221. End of these things	1162		
166. Fear of God	1115	222. Profit in keeping Ordinance	1162		
167. Ought to	1117	223. Warring a good warfare	1162		
168. Right Choices	1119	224. Micaiah	1163		
169. Resurrections (2)	1121	225. Giants David conquered	1163		
170. Trees Israel is like	1122	226. Great things in Ch. Life	1163		
171. Purity	1123	227. Finish your life work	1163		
172. Take Head or Ignore ?	1124	228. Jesus Taught in 40 days	1164		
		229. False Things	1164		

Good Youtube Bible Video Sites

1. Biblical Animation Series Videos (13 x 30 min)
2. Answers Course. (7 lessons on Muslim presentation)
3. Ark Discovery
4. Moody Bible videos
5. Teaching Kids about Jesus (52 x 3 min)
6. Real Crusade History
7. Bill Warner: political Islam. Jihad vs Crusades (5 min)
8. 101 Scientific Facts the Bible Declared Long Before Scientists – Part 1 of 7
9. God of Wonders
10. JESUS full movie English version (Gospel of Luke)
11. Michael Germi- First Baptist Church Hammond
12. Solomon's Temple. Messages of Christ. 5.11min
13. Millennium. Revelation Station. 10min
14. Josephus
15. King James Bible
16. Miracles at Crucifixion of Christ - Genesis Apologetics
17. Jesus-is-Saviour.com
18. Babylonian Conquest and Destruction of the First Temple- Jerusalem Watch 9.50 min
19. Hezekiah's Tunnel – Megalim Institute 2.37 min
20. Website: astropixels.com/ephemeris/phasescat/phases0001 and **-0499**

271. The Secret to Real Happiness

Bible Reading: Matthew 16:24-28. (v.25). “Let no man seek his own, but every man another’s wealth.” 1 Cor 10:24 “For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it.” (v.25).

Aim: Everyone in this room wants to be happy. No one wants a nervous breakdown. No one wants to be depressed. No one wants to be miserable. No one wants to live a wasted, unhappy life. There are many reasons in this life for us to be unhappy. There are many pressures, problems, disappointments, failures, struggles, trials, difficulties and losses to make us unhappy. **BUT**, as a Christian, we **CAN** be happy. “How?” you may ask.

What is the secret to real happiness? It is found in one word: OTHERS. Let me explain this in 4 statements:

1. You’ll never find happiness by looking for it. “Hell &...so the eyes of man are never satisfied.” Proverbs 27:20

When you look for happiness, you are being selfish. Selfishness never leads to real happiness.

Money won’t make you happy. Fame won’t make you happy. Worldly success won’t make you happy.

Possessions won’t make you happy. Prestige won’t make you happy. Power won’t make you happy.

Illustration: Solomon spent his life looking for happiness. He gained great wealth and power. He had more beautiful women than his heart could desire. He was the wisest man in the world. He was famous. He was well respected. But, did he find happiness by looking for it? “The words of the Preacher, the son of David, king in Jerusalem. Vanity of vanities, saith the Preacher, vanity of vanities; all is vanity.” (Ecclesiastes 1:1-3).

A selfish person will never be a truly happy person. So, stop looking for happiness.

2. Forget your own need for happiness “For all seek their own, not the things which are Jesus Christ’s.” Phil 2:21

“Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others.” Philippians 2:4.

We are selfish by nature. We always look out for number one. There was an ad years ago that said: “For the most important person in the world: **YOU**.” That’s our nature. But, we’ll never be truly happy unless we forget our own need for happiness. That’s why you fight. That’s why your marriage is in trouble. “But he doesn’t meet **My** needs”. That’s why you are unhappy. “She doesn’t meet My needs”. That’s why you are unhappy.

The happiest people are those who don’t rely on others for their own happiness. Eg: The only time “backslider” is used in the Bible is concerning selfishness. “The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways” Proverb 14:14.

It’s not enough to stop looking for our own happiness. We must **FORGET** our own need for happiness. How? By:

3. Living only to make others happy. “Master, which is the great commandment in the law? Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy **God** with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy **neighbour** as thyself. On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.” Matthew 22:36-40.

Romans 15:1-3 “We then that are strong ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves. Let every one of us please his **neighbour** for his good to edification. For even Christ pleased not himself;”

Illustration: General William Booth, the founder of the Salvation Army, was at the end of his life. He lay sick in bed, and was unable to attend the annual Salvation Army workers’ conference. The workers were devastated that General Booth could not be there to encourage and inspire them. General Booth sent a telegram to be read at the opening of the conference. A hush came over the auditorium as a man stepped to the platform to read the telegram. The telegram read just one word: **OTHERS**. He had learned the secret to happiness is to live for others.

Question: What, you may ask, can I do for others? **Answer:** Tell someone dear that you love them. Write your parents or a friend a note of encouragement. Phone a friend to remind them that you are praying for them. Try to lead someone to Christ. Have a Bible study with a new Christian. Give your spouse or children a special treat.

Illustration: As I studied the lives of great preachers, I found them to be the most unselfish people. They lived for others. They prayed for others, gave to others, encouraged others, taught others, and helped others.

4. As you live for others, you will stumble upon happiness. “So labouring, ye ought to support the weak, and to remember the words of the Lord Jesus, how he said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.” Acts 20:35.

Matthew 16:25 “Whosoever will save his life shall lose it: & whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it.” Everyone wants a happy marriage. You don’t get a happy marriage by finding someone to meet your needs. You get a happy marriage when you forget your needs and are consumed with meeting the needs of your spouse. “Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, & gave himself for it;” (Eph.5:25). If you give yourself to your spouse, you will have a happy marriage. “Let every one of you so love his wife even as himself; and the wife see that she reverence her husband” (5:33). “Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right” (Eph.6:1). You will be so busy serving others, that you will forget your own needs. You will find happiness on the path of unselfishness.

Conclusion: Jesus’ whole life was living for others. When He was dying on the cross, what did He think of? Self-pity? NO! He asked John to take care of His mother. He led the repentant thief to salvation. “To day shalt thou...”

2 Cor 8:9 “Jesus...though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that ye through his poverty might be rich.”

Mark 10:45 “The Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, & to give his life a ransom for many”

The Secret to real happiness is: 1. You’ll never find happiness by looking for it. 2. Forget your own need for happiness. 3. Live to make others happy. 4. As you live for others, you’ll find happiness. **Question:** Are you living for others? Maybe God has spoken to you about an area in your life to work on? Marriage, church, home?

272. Evidence of Jesus Christ's Death, Resurrection and 3 Hours Darkness

I. Evidence of 3 Hours Darkness at Jesus Christ's Death

Aim: To **disprove** the claims of Mohammed and Islam that: 1. **Mohammed** is a true prophet of God.

2. The **Quran** is the true Word of God.

3. **Jesus Christ** did not die for our sins on the cross. (Q 4:157 "they killed him not, nor crucified him").

4. **Jesus Christ** is not **God the Son** not the Son of God. (Q 23:91 "No son did Allah beget").

These Islamic beliefs are proven false by **1)** the written testimony of many **eye-witnesses** to Jesus Christ's death, resurrection and **3 hours of darkness** from both Christian and secular sources. This is a unique witness from **God Himself** and **nature** that Jesus Christ truly **did** die on the cross for our sins. **2)** Neither Mohammed nor anybody living in 7th Century Arabia were eyewitnesses of Jesus Christ's death in 33AD. Many first Century independent eyewitnesses of Jesus Christ's death & resurrection have **far greater authority** that **non-eyewitnesses like Mohammed** who lived 600 years later & 600 miles away in Arabia. (Muslims require 4 male eyewitnesses to prove a rape, but none to deny Christ's death). The agreed testimony of these early writers to Jesus Christ's death, resurrection and 3 hours darkness provide a great service to man by proving Islam a false religion to be rejected and the New Testament to be a truthful record of these events. **Key truth:** Bible **facts** are right. Mohammed's **opinion** is wrong. They prove that Islam, Mohammed and the Quran give false witness against Jesus Christ.

John calls **Mohammed** an **antichrist** in I John 2:2 "He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son."

Question: Why didn't Mohammed think to test the spirit that appeared to him claiming to be Gabriel? "Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that **Jesus Christ is come in the flesh** is of God: And every spirit that confesseth not that **Jesus Christ is come in the flesh** is not of God: and this is that spirit of **antichrist.**" I John 4:2,3.

This means that "The Son of God took on human nature in permanent union with the divine nature".

Three kinds of evidence proving Jesus Christ's death, resurrection and 3 hours darkness are:

1. New Testament Gospel Writers and Eyewitnesses to Jesus Christ's Crucifixion:

16 Witnesses who saw Jesus Christ being **crucified** are:

i) **Simon** a Cyrenian who carried his cross. (Mark 15:21)

ii) **Roman soldiers** who crucified him and parted his garments. (Mark 15:24-26)

iii) **Two thieves** who were crucified next to him. (Mark 15:27)

iv) **Passers by** who recognised him and mocked Him. (Mark 15:29,30)

v) **Chief priests** who mocked him at the cross. (Mark 15:31,32)

vi) **Centurion** who said He was the Son of God. (Mark 15:39)

vii) **Mary**, the mother of Jesus, recognised Jesus dying on the cross. Would a mother know her son?

viii) **The apostle John who was present at the cross.** (John 19:26,27)

ix) **Mary Magdalene** and **Mary** the mother of James, Joses, and Salome. (Mark 15:40)

x) **Joseph of Arimathea** who begged the body of Jesus & buried Jesus in his own tomb (Mark 15:43-44)

xi) **Jesus Himself** on cross who said 'It is finished: he bowed his head, & gave up the ghost' John 19:30

xii) **Many other women** which came up with him to Jerusalem. (Mark 15:41)

xiii) An **angel** at the tomb who said "Ye seek Jesus of Nazareth which was crucified." (Mark 16:6)

xiv) A **great company** of people (Luke 23:27). "All the people beholding". (Luke 23:48)

xv) **Cleopas and his friend** on the road to Emmaus. (Luke 24:18-23)

xvi) The **Roman** soldier who speared Jesus' side. (John 19:31-37)

13 Witnesses who saw Jesus Christ **risen from the dead:**

1. **Mary Magdalene**, **Mary the Mother of Jesus** and **Salome** coming to the tomb to prepare the body, find the stone rolled away and see a vision of angels (Matthew 28:1-8; Mark 16:1-7; Luke 24:1-8).

2. **Peter** and **John**, notified by Mary Magdalene, ran to the grave ahead of Mary, look in, seeing Jesus Christ's ordered grave clothes and return without seeing the Lord (John 20:3-10).

3. **Mary Magdalene** returns to the tomb weeping, sees two angels, then meets Jesus whom she initially mistakes for the gardener. She then went to tell the disciples as Jesus commanded her (John 20:11-18).

4. **Mary** (mother of James and Joses) met the women with the spices, & returns with them to the tomb.

5. They see two angels (Luke 24:4-5). They seek the disciples and Jesus meets them (Matthew 28:8-10)
6. The guarding soldiers report the events to the chief priests (Matthew 28:11-15).
7. Jesus appears to Peter in the afternoon (Luke 24:3-4; Corinthians 15:5).
8. Jesus appears to 2 disciples (one was Cleopas) on the road to Emmaus at evening (Luke 24:13-33).
9. Jesus appears to the 10 disciples (except Thomas). (John 20:19-25).
10. Jesus appears to the 11 disciples, 8 days later and rebukes Thomas' unbelief (John 20:26-31). Thomas initially doubts Christ's resurrection but is convinced at seeing Jesus' nail prints in his hands.
11. Jesus appears to 7 disciples who are fishing by the Sea of Galilee and restores Peter (John 21:1-25).
12. Jesus appears to 500 brethren at once on a mountain & to the apostles (1 Cor.15:6; Matthew 28:16).
13. Jesus appears to James at Jerusalem and at Bethany. (1 Corinthians 15:7).
14. Jesus appears to the 11 disciples (Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:14-20; Luke 24:33-53; Acts 1:3-12) and gives them the Great Commission.

2. Early Christian Writers recording Jesus Christ's death, resurrection and 3 hours of darkness prove that the New Testament has not been corrupted as Islam falsely claims. These writers give a consistent, agreed, unbroken witness to the accuracy and preservation of the New Testament from its first Century date of writing till today. The thousands of New Testament Scriptures they quote from in their Bibles are identical to our King James Bible today. These writers include:

- i) **Clement** of Rome (30-100 AD) wrote 2 letters. Vol. I, p.1-21
- ii) **Ignatius** (30-107 AD) wrote eleven letters. Vol. I, p.45-131.
- iii) **Polycarp** (65-155 AD). Vol. I, p.31
- iv) **Papias** (70-155 AD). Vol. I, p.59.
- v) **Justin Martyr** (100-165 AD). Vol. I, p.59
- vi) **Irenaeus** (120-202 AD) Vol. I, p.309.
- vii) **Tatian** (110-172 AD). Vol. II, p.61
- viii) **Theophilus** of Antioch (115-181 AD). Vol. II, p.87.
- ix) **Athenogorus** (177-250 AD).
- x) **Clement** of Alexandria (153-217 AD). Vol. II, p.165

3. Secular Writers testifying to Jesus Christ's Death, Resurrection and 3 hours darkness:

- i) **Josephus** (37-97 AD).
- ii) **Tacitus** (30-120 AD). Written 52-54 AD.
- iii) **Thallus** (52-120 AD). Written 52 AD.
- iv) **Phlegon**. Written 80 AD.
- v) **Mara Bar-Serapion**. Written 73 AD.
- vi) **Pliny the Younger** (61-112 AD). Written 112 AD.
- vii) **Lucian of Samosata** (120 AD).
- viii) *Acts of Pilate* referred to by **Justin Martyr** (150 AD).
- ix) *Gospel of Peter* referred to by **Serapion** of Antioch (180 AD).
- x) **Eusebius** (260-340 AD).
- xi) **Tertullian** (160-225). Testimony of the *Public Archives in Rome* to Emperor Tiberius.
- xii) **Julius Africanus** (160-240 AD).
- xiii) *History of the World* Vol. 3.5.50.
- xiv) **Origen** (185-254 AD).
- xv) **Arnobius** (4th Century).
- xvi) **Philopon** (520 AD).
- xvii) **Cassiodorus** (520 AD)
- xviii) *Talmud* by **Rabbis Akiba** (d 135 AD) and **Meir**.
- xix) **Pontius Pilate** (1 BC-37AD). Written 26-36

The historical reality of the 3 hours darkness at Jesus' crucifixion proves that: 1) Jesus died.

2) Jesus is God who alone has power to turn off the Sun.

3) Islam, Quran and Mohammad are wrong.

II. The Hours of Jesus' Crucifixion in Matthew, Mark and Luke's Gospels

Matthew 27:45-52 "Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour (45). Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost (v51). And, behold the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom;& the earth did quake,& the rocks rent." (52)

Mark 15:25-33 "And it was the third hour, and they crucified him (v 25).

When the sixth hour was come, there was darkness over the whole land until the ninth hour." (v 33).

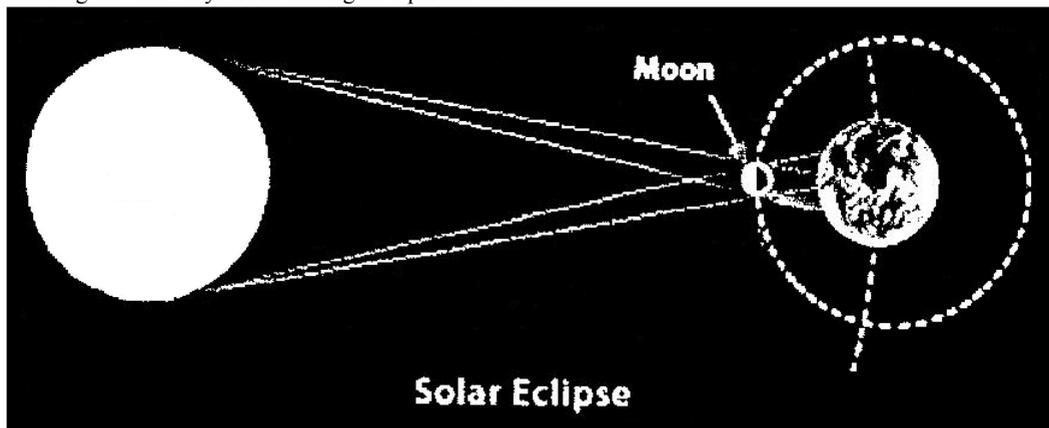
Luke 23:44-46 "And it was about the sixth hour, and there was a darkness over all the earth until the ninth hour. And the sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was rent in the midst."

Amos 8:9 This darkness fulfilled the prophecy of **Amos 8:9** in **787BC**, "in that day, saith the Lord GOD, that I will cause the sun to go down at noon, and I will darken the earth in the clear day."

This 3 hours darkness could not have been a normal solar eclipse. A solar eclipse is impossible at a full moon, when the moon is on the other side of the earth from the sun, as it always is at Passover.



Astronomical records show that no solar eclipse occurred anywhere near Jerusalem from 30-33 AD. A solar eclipse can only occur when the moon passes between the earth and the sun, the moon thus blocking the sun's rays from shining on a part of the earth.



Because a solar eclipse was impossible at Passover with a full moon, the 3 hours darkness when Jesus was crucified is not explainable by natural causes. It can only be a supernatural protest against the crucifixion of the Creator on that crucifixion day in 33 AD when the sun was in the Hebrew sign of the Lamb (Taleh), our Aries. When the shadow of death passed over the Lamb of God, Jesus Christ, the literal shadow passed over the earth at exactly the same time that the Passover lambs were being sacrificed. In addition, an eclipse of the sun would only last a few minutes, not three hours as at Christ's crucifixion.

Secular Records of the 3 Hours Darkness in 33 AD

1. Thallus (written 52 AD).

Thallus was a Samaritan historian who experienced the 3 hours darkness in 33 AD. He wrote a history of the Middle East from the Trojan Wars (1300-1200 BC) to his day entitled *Histories*. His writings have been lost, but are quoted by Julius Africanus (221 AD) as follows:

“ON THE CIRCUMSTANCES CONNECTED WITH OUR SAVIOUR’S PASSION AND HIS LIFE-GIVING RESURRECTION. As to His works severally, and His cures effected upon body and soul, and the mysteries of His doctrine, and the resurrection from the dead, these have been most authoritatively set forth by His disciples and apostles before us. On the whole world there pressed a most fearful darkness; and the rocks were rent by an earthquake, and many places in Judea and other districts were thrown down. This darkness Thallus, in the book of his *History*, calls, as appears to me without reason, an eclipse of the sun. For the Hebrews celebrate the Passover on the 14th day according to the moon, and the passion of our Saviour falls on the day before the Passover, but an eclipse of the sun takes place only when the moon comes under the sun. And it cannot happen at any other time but in the interval between the first day of the new moon and the last of the old, that is, at their junction; how then should an eclipse be supposed to happen when the moon is almost diametrically opposite the sun? Let opinion pass, however, let it carry the majority with it, and let this portent be deemed an eclipse of the sun.”

Here Thallus mentions:

i) Jesus’ death and resurrection.

ii) Darkness and an earthquake occurring at Christ’s death.

iii) An eclipse could not explain the darkness at full moon.

iv) The phrase “let it carry the majority” indicates that a majority of historians considered it an eclipse, implying that many more such explanations were circulating. In other words, the strange darkness was real and topic of scholarly discussion.

v) The phrase “let this portent of the world be deemed an eclipse of the sun”, indicates that what is under discussion is NOT the factuality of the event which was universally accepted, but the explanation of it. The world at large explained the phenomenon away as an eclipse.

vi) It is important to note that Julius Africanus calls Thallus’ work a “historia” and not some other general term for literary works. This explains why Julius is taking Thallus seriously.

vii) Both Julius Africanus and Thallus believed that Jesus died, contrary to Mohammed’s denial.

viii) Julius purpose was to write a History/Chronology (not an Apologetic) to merge Biblical chronology with the chronologies of Greece and Rome. His concern was historical truth, not theology.

ix) Julius’ writings were used by all succeeding historians (such as Eusebius, Socrates), used his contemporaries (eg Hippolytus), and his work formed the foundation of medieval history.

x) Julius knows the difference between “certain” and “uncertain” history because he writes, “Up to the time of the Olympiads, there is no certain history among the Greeks, all things before that date being confused and in no way consistent with each other”. He knew the difference between “mythical” and “non mythical” narratives. He knew the difference between fact and opinion by using the words “I think” to indicate his opinion.

Conclusion: The historical stature and credibility of Thallus and Julius Africanus is powerful evidence for Jesus Christ’s death, 3 hours darkness (documented by Phlegon) and the reliability of the four New Testament Gospels. Just as a “most fearful darkness” followed Israel’s rejection of Jesus Christ as the Light of the World, so a “most fearful darkness” has fallen upon Islam for rejecting Jesus Christ’s deity, death, resurrection and the New Testament witnesses.

The 3 hours darkness accompanying Jesus Christ’s crucifixion reinforces the significance of the crucifixion as the sins of mankind were laid upon the sinless, eternal Son of God, to save us from hell and give us the certainty of a home in heaven if we call on Jesus Christ to be our Saviour.

2. Phlegon (written 80 AD)

Phlegon was a first Century Greek historian and astronomer who wrote two books entitled *Chronicles and Olympiads*. Phlegon's record of the 3 hours darkness at Jesus' death is quoted by:

i) **Julius Africanus**: "Phlegon records that, in the time of Tiberius Caesar, at full moon, there was a full eclipse of the sun from the sixth hour to the ninth manifestly that one of which we speak. But what has an eclipse in common with an earthquake, the rending rocks, and the resurrection of the dead, and so great a perturbation throughout the universe? Surely no such event as this is recorded for a long period. But it was darkness induced by God, because the Lord happened then to suffer." (*The Extant Writings of Julius Africanus* XVIII.I).

ii) **Origen** mentions Phlegon's testimony:

"And with regard to the eclipse in the time of Tiberius Caesar, in whose reign Jesus appears to have been crucified, and the great earthquakes which then took place, Phlegon too, I think has written in the thirteenth or fourteenth book of his *Chronicles*." (Origen, *Against Celsus*, 2.33).

"Phlegon relates that these events took place at the time when our Saviour suffered." (Origen, *Against Celsus*, 2.59).

"Now Phlegon, in the thirteenth or fourteenth book, I think of his *Chronicles*, not only ascribed to Jesus a knowledge of future events, but also testified that the result corresponded to his prediction." (Origen, *Against Celsus*, 2.14).

"Phlegon mentioned the eclipse which took place during the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus... and this is shown by the historical account of Tiberius Caesar". (*De.opif.mund*, II.21).

Phlegon states that:

a) Jesus knew and correctly predicted the future.

b) The sun was darkened during Christ's death

c) Great earthquakes occurred during Christ's death

d) These facts were recorded in the historical records of Tiberius Caesar.

iii) **Eusebius** (260-340 AD). Syncellus quotes Eusebius's Chronicle of Phlegon verbatim in the Greek:

"Jesus Christ... underwent his passion in the 18th year of Tiberius (AD 32-33). Also at that time in another Greek compendium we find an event recorded in these words: "the sun was eclipsed, Bithynia was struck by an earthquake, and in the city of Nicaea many buildings fell." All these things happened to occur during the Lord's passion. In fact, **Phlegon**, too, a distinguished reckoner of Olympiads, wrote more on these events in his 13th book, saying this: "Now, in the fourth year of the 202nd Olympiad (AD 32-33), a great eclipse of the sun occurred at the sixth hour (noon) that excelled every other before it, turning the day into such darkness of the night that the stars could be seen in heaven, and the earth moved in Bithynia, toppling many buildings in the city of Nicaea."

iv) **Philopon** (520 AD) wrote "Phlegon mentioned the eclipse which took place during the crucifixion of the Lord Christ...this is shown by the historical account of Tiberius Caesar" (De Opif. Mund. II.21).

3. **Cassiodorus**, a Roman statesman (490-585 AD) confirmed the darkness: "Our Lord Jesus Christ suffered... and an eclipse of the sun occurred, such as never was before or since". (Cassiodorus Chronican, *Patrologia Latina*, V.69)

4. **Acts of Pilate**, quoted by **Justin Martyr** (110-165 AD) in *I Apology* 35, 48, mentioned this 3 hours darkness in his defense before the Roman Emperor who would have been able to check the *Acts of Pilate* himself. "At the time he was crucified, there was darkness over all the world, the sun being darkened at midday, and the stars appearing, and the moon, as it turned into blood, failed in her light...the fear of the earthquake remained from the sixth hour of the preparation until the ninth hour."

5. Gospel of Peter (Apocryphal) (120 AD). A large fragment of this apocryphal gospel was discovered at Akmin (Panopolis) in Egypt in 1886. This work is mentioned by **Serapion of Antioch** about **190 AD** (*Opud Eusebius History Eccles.* VI. Xii. 2-6) and is datable to about **120AD**. It is an early witness to the catastrophic events at Jesus' crucifixion:

"5. (*The Crucifixion is in progress at this point in the narrative*). And it was noon, and darkness came over all Judea: and they (the Jewish leaders) were troubled and distressed, lest the sun had set, whilst he (Jesus) was yet alive: (for) it is written for them that the sun set not on him that hath been put to death. And one of them said, Give him to drink gall with vinegar. And they mixed and gave him to drink, and fulfilled all things, and accomplished their sins against their own head. Many went about with lamps, supposing that it was night, and fell down. And the Lord cried out, saying, My power, my power, thou hast forsaken me. And when he had said he was taken up. And in that hour the veil of the temple of Jerusalem was rent in twain. 6. And then they drew out the nails from the hands of the Lord, and laid him upon the earth, and the whole earth quaked, and great fear arose. Then the sun shone, and it was found the ninth hour and the Jews rejoiced, and gave his body to Joseph that he might bury it, since he had seen what good things he had done. And he took the Lord, and washed him, and rolled him in a linen cloth, and brought him into his own tomb, which was called the Garden of Joseph."

6. Tertullian (160-225 AD) was a **juriconsult** (law authority) familiar with the Roman archives which influenced his acceptance of Divine truth. He would not have boldly appealed to the archive records before the Roman Emperor, his colleagues and the Senate, had he not known that the evidence was irrefutable. He writes as follows:

Tertullian (first half of the third century AD), Apol. XXI:

"The Jews were so exasperated by His teaching, by which their rulers and chiefs were convicted of the truth, chiefly because so many turned aside to Him, that at last they brought Him before Pontius Pilate, at that time, Roman governor of Syria; and, by the violence of their outcries against Him, extorted a sentence giving Him up to them to be crucified. He Himself had predicted this, which, however, would have signified little had not the prophets of old done it as well. And yet, nailed upon the cross, He exhibited many notable signs, by which His death was distinguished from all others. At His own free-will, He with a word dismissed from Him His spirit, anticipating the executioners work. In the same hour, too, the light of day was withdrawn, when the sun at the very time was in his meridian blaze. Those who were not aware that this had been predicted about Christ, no doubt thought it an eclipse. You yourselves have the account of the world portent still in your archives. (XXI.19:*Et tamen suffixus multa mortis illius propria ascendit insignia.. nam spiritum cum verbo sponte dimisit, praevento carnificis officio. Eodem momento dies medium orbem signante sole subducta est. Deliquium utique putaverunt qui id quoque super Christo praedicatum no sierunt. Et tamen eum mundi casum relatum in arcanis vestries habetis.*) Then, when His body was taken down from the cross and placed in a sepulcher, the Jews in their eager watchfulness surrounded it with a large military guard, lest, as He had predicted His resurrection from the dead on the third day, His disciples might remove by stealth His body, and deceive even the incredulous. But, lo, on the third day there was a sudden shock of earthquake, the stone which sealed the sepulcher was rolled away, and the guard fled off in terror: without a single disciple near, the grave was found empty of all but the clothes of the buried One. But nevertheless, the leaders of the Jews, whom it nearly concerned both to spread abroad a lie, and keep back a people tributary and submissive to them from the faith, gave it out that the body of Christ had been stolen by His followers. For the Lord, you see, did not go forth into the public gaze, lest the wicked should be delivered from their error; that faith also, destined to a great reward, might hold its ground in difficulty. But He spent forty days with some of His disciples down in Galilee, a region of Judea, instructing them in the doctrines they were to teach to others. Thereafter, having given them commission to preach the gospel through the world, He was encompassed with a cloud and taken up to heaven, a fact more certain far than the assertions of your Proculi concerning Romulus. All these things Pilate did to Christ; and now in fact a Christian in his own convictions, he sent word of Him to the reigning Caesar, who was at that time Tiberius." (*Apologies*, XXI, 19).

III. Evidence of Jesus Christ's Death and Early Belief in His Deity.

These early records **disprove Islam** and **prove Jesus Christ's death, resurrection** and **His Deity**:

1) Ignatius (30-107 AD) taught by John, believed in the **Deity of Christ** and **Trinity**: “Our Lord and God, **Jesus Christ**, the Son of the living God, first did and then taught, as Luke testifies (p 56) continue in intimate union with **Jesus Christ our God** (p. 68)... loving Polycarp even as I do you (p. 58),... For our **God, Jesus Christ**, now that He is with the Father (p. 74). Those things have been fulfilled in the Gospel, (our Lord saying), Go ye and teach all nations, baptizing them in the **name** of the **Father**, and of the **Son**, and of the **Holy Ghost**.” (Matthew 28:19) (Ante-Nicene Fathers VI, p.85).

2) Pliny the Younger (61-112 AD) was the **Governor of Bithynia** in **112 AD** and a **Roman Senator**.

He wrote to the Emperor Trajan asking for the guidance on how he should treat the Christians in his province. He stated that Christians were “meeting on a certain fixed day before it was light, when they sang in alternate verse a hymn to **Christ as to a god**, and bound themselves to a solemn oath, not to do wicked deeds, never commit fraud, theft, adultery, not to lie, nor to deny a trust...” (*Epistles X.96*).

This reveals that early Christians:

- i) Worshipped Jesus Christ as God.
- ii) Met on a fixed day of the week.
- iii) Were committed to holy, truthful, honest behavior.

Pliny described the Christians as people who loved the truth at any cost, and were willing to die as martyrs rather than deny their faith in Jesus as the Son of God.

3) Cornelius Tacitus Governor of **Asia Minor** (Turkey) in **112 AD**. Tacitus (**55-120 AD**) has been called the greatest historian of Ancient Rome, as well as being Governor of Asia Minor (Turkey) in 112 AD. He wrote two major works: *Annals* and *Histories*. Being a Roman Governor and historian, he had access to the Roman Government archives. He confirmed many historical details in the *Gospels*, *Acts* and *Romans*.

In his *Annals*, written after 64 AD, he referred to Emperor Nero's persecution of the Christians for allegedly burning the city of Rome, which Nero himself had done:

“Consequently, to get rid of the report, Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called **Christians** by the populace. **Christus**, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the **extreme penalty** during the reign of the Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, **Pontius Pilatus**, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out only in Judea, the first source of the evil, but even in Rome, where all things hideous and shameful from every part of the world find their centre and become popular. Accordingly, an arrest was first made of all who pleaded guilty; then, upon their information, an immense multitude was convicted, not so much of the crime of firing the city, as of hatred against mankind. Mockery of every sort was added to their deaths. Covered with the skins of beasts, they were torn by dogs and perished, or were **nailed to crosses**, or were doomed to the flames and burnt, to serve as a mighty illumination, when daylight was expired” (*Annals* 15,44).

This reference shows that:

- i) Christ lived during the reign of Tiberius Caesar (AD 13-37).

- ii) Pontius Pilate put him to death.

- iii) The word “superstition” suggests a religion.

- iv) Christ had followers who were named Christians.

- v) The Christians suffered under the Roman emperor Nero and were hated by others.

4) Suetonius (125 AD) was the official **Roman historian** during the reign of Emperors Trajan and Hadrian. He wrote a book on the lives of the first twelve Caesars. In the section on the Emperor Claudius (ruled 41-54 AD), Suetonius referred to Christians being banished from Rome:

“He banished the Jews from Rome, who were continually making disturbances, Chrestus being their leader.” (*Life of Claudius*, 25.4, written in 125 AD).

This confirms that there were many Christians living in Rome before 54 AD, and it confirms Luke's statement in Acts 18:2 about exiling Jews from Rome during Claudius' reign:

“Paul found a certain Jew named Aquila, born in Pontus, lately come from Italy, with his wife Priscilla: (because that Claudius had commanded all Jews to depart from Rome:) and came unto them.”

5) **Lucian of Samosata in Syria**. Lucian lived during the reign of the Emperor Hadrian (76-117-138 AD). In his book *The Passing Peregrinus*, he wrote the history of a well known Greek traveler named Proteus who fled his country after several crimes, and travelled the world under the name Peregrinus. He met some followers of Jesus in the early church, of whom Lucian wrote:

“At which the time he learned the wonderful doctrine of the Christians, by conversing with their priests and scribes near Palestine... they spoke of him (Jesus) as a god, and took him for a lawgiver, and honoured him with the title of master... they still worship that great man who was crucified in Palestine, because he introduced into the world this new religion... their first lawgiver has taught them, that they are all brethren, from the moment that they are converted, and renounced the gods of the Greeks, worship their crucified master, and live according to his laws.”

This independently confirms Jesus being worshipped as God and that He died by crucifixion.

6) **Mara Bar-Serapion**. A Syrian named Mara Bar-Serapion wrote a letter in 73 AD from prison to his son Serapion, to encourage him to follow the example of famous wise men. This letter is listed in the British Museum as Syriac Manuscript 14,658. His father wrote:

“What advantage did the Athenians gain from putting Socrates to death? Famine and plague came upon them as a judgment for their crime.

What advantage did the men of Samos gain from burning Pythagorus? In a moment their land was covered with sand.

What advantage did the Jews gain from executing their wise king? It was just after that their kingdom was abolished. God justly avenged these three wise men: the Athenians died of hunger; the Samians were overwhelmed by the sea; the Jews ruined and driven from their land live in complete dispersion. But Socrates did not die for good; he lived on in the *Statue of Hera*. Nor did the wise king die for good; he lived on in the teaching which he had given”.

This provides strong independent pagan confirmation that Jesus was considered to be the “King of the Jews” as Pilate wrote above Jesus on the cross, “And set up over his head his accusation written, This is Jesus the King of the Jews” (Matthew 27:37) and that he died by crucifixion.

7) **The Jewish Talmud**. The *Talmud* is the *Mishnah* (oral legal teachings) and the Jewish commentary on the *Mishnah* (the *Gemara*). It is the basis of Jewish religious life. The accepted version was compiled by Rabbis Akiba (died 136 AD) and Meir. It refers to Jesus Christ’s death:

“On the eve of the Passover, Yeshua (Jesus) was hanged... but since nothing was brought forward in his favour, he was hanged on the eve of the Passover.” (Babylonia Sanhedrin 43AD). From this we conclude that:

- i) Jesus was hanged (see Galatians 3:13) or crucified.
- ii) Jesus died on Passover eve or Friday afternoon.
- iii) No one defended Jesus.

8) **Josephus (37-100 AD)** was born into Jewish priestly family. He was a Pharisee and a historian for the Roman Empire. He wrote *Antiquities of the Jews* (94 AD) and *The Wars of the Jews*. He described Jesus Christ’s life, miracles, crucifixion, death and resurrection as follows:

“Now, there was about this time Jesus, a wise man, if it be lawful to call him a man. For he was a doer of surprising feats – a teacher of such men as received the truth with pleasure. He drew over to him both many of the Jews and many of the Gentiles. He was (the) Christ; and when Pilate, at the suggestion of the principal men amongst us, had condemned him to the cross, those that loved him at the first did not forsake him, for he appeared to them alive again the third day, as the divine prophets had foretold these and ten thousand other wonderful things concerning him; and the tribe of Christians, so named from him, are not extinct to this day.” (*Antiquities of the Jews* 18.3.3).

9) **Polycarp (65-155 AD)** and Ignatius were taught by John. Polycarp’s prayer before his martyrdom shows his strong belief in the trinity of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. “I glorify Thee, along with the everlasting and heavenly Jesus Christ, Thy beloved Son, with Whom, to Thee, and the Holy Ghost, be glory both now and to all coming ages. Amen.” (Ante-Nicene Fathers, Vol 1, p42, Eerdmans).

273. First Century Writers Quote Every NT Book (except III John).

1. **Ignatius (30-107AD)** a disciple of John, quotes every New Testament book except III John and Jude, giving the same readings as the King James Bible (Vol.1, p.45-131). This proves that:

a) The **King James Bible** is unchanged since the original autographs.

b) The **Muslim** claim is false that the Bible has been corrupted by adding references to show Jesus' Sonship, deity, death and resurrection. Islam denies these. Ignatius calls Jesus the Prophet of Deut.18:15

c) The **Roman Catholic** claim is false that the NT books were not immediately recognised as Scripture until the Catholic Council of Carthage determined it in 397AD.

If you check the footnotes in the early church writers, you will find that Ignatius quotes all these NT references (from **25 out of 27 NT books on 245 occasions**), showing that the canon of Scripture was immediately recognised as authoritative Scripture.

Matthew 1:1,23; 3:9,15; 4:6,9,10,23; 5:4,19,45,48; 6:14; 7:15; 8:17; 9:35; 10:16,41; 12:33,40; 15:13; 16:26; 18:19; 19:12; 22:40; 23:35; 24:25; 27:52; 28:19. **Mark** 12:29.

Luke 1:6,47; 4:6; 6:46; 10:18,27; 14:11; 16:15; 17:10; 22:31,32; 23:34; 24:39.

John 1:3,9,10,11,14,18 (p.116); 2:19; 3:8,14,36; 4:14; 5:25,28,30,46; 6:38; 7:38; 8:29,44,46,56,58 (p.108); 10:9,11; 11:25,26,42; 12:7,32; 13:34; 14:6,16,24; 15:19; 16:13,14; 17:3,4,5,6,31; 20:17,27,28.

Acts 1:11; 3:22; 7:37; 9:15; 11:26; 13:48; 20:24; 26:14,23; 28:13,14. **Romans** 1:3; 2:4,6; 4:17; 6:10; 8:17,18,32; 10:10; 13:14; 15:19. **I Corinthians** 1:10,18,20,31; 2:8; 3:16; 4:4,13,16,20; 5:7,11; 6:9,10,19; 7:19,22; 8:4,6; 10:4,13,31; 11:1,11; 12:11,13; 13:2; 15:8,9,13,14, 17,18,19,28,32,53.

2 Corinthians 2:17; 4:18; 5:17; 6:14-16,16; 8:18; 10:17; 13:12. **Galatians** 1:1,4; 2:5,20; 3:11,20,28; 4:9; 6:2,14,17; **Ephesians** 1:1; 2:2,4; 4:1,3,4,5,6; 5:3,22,25; 6:1,3,4,12,16. **Philippians** 2:2,3,25;

3:10,16,18,19. **Colossians** 1:15,16,17,23,25; 4:15,18. **I Thessalonians** 4:5; 5:17. **II Thessalonians** 3:10. **I Timothy** 1:1,3,4,5,14; 2:4,5,6; 4:10,12,13; 5:3,6,11; 6:1,3. **Titus** 1:10; 2:5,14; 3:13. **Philemon** 8,9. **Hebrews** 10:12,13,29; 13:17. **James** 1:6,8,16; 2:23; 4:6. **I Peter** 2:5,9,23; 3:6; 4:7; 5:2,5,14.

II Peter 3:9. **I John** 2:22; 4:3. **II John** 7. **Revelation** 1:7.

2. **Clement of Rome (30-100 AD)** was a companion of **Paul** and **Luke**. He wrote to the Corinthians in 96 AD, quoting the New and Old Testament Scriptures as being equally authoritative. He was at Philippi with Paul in **57 AD**. ("with **Clement** also" Philippians 4:3). He quotes Psalm 118:18 and Hebrews 12:6 as the Holy Word (First Epistle of Clement 56:3,4. ie: Vol.1, p.20) "For thus saith the holy Word: "The Lord hath severely chastened me, yet hath he not given me over to death" (Psalm 118:18). "For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth." (Hebrews 12:6). He says that Paul wrote I Corinthians with "true inspiration to you" (47:1-3).

He quotes from **15 out of 27 NT books as Scripture on 49 occasions** (Vol.1, p.1-21) in **96 AD**.

These are: **Matthew** 6:12-15; 7:2; 15:8; 24:35. **Mark** 7:6; 9:42. **Luke** 6:36-38; 8:5; 17:2. **Acts** 20:35.

Romans 1:32; 4:3; 9:5. **I Corinthians** 1:31; 2:9; 3:13; 10:26,28; 12:12; 13:4; 15:20; 16:1,2. **2 Cor.** 10:17. **Ephesians** 4:4-6; 5:21. **Colossians** 1:18. **I Thess.5:21**. **Titus** 1:2; 2:14; 3:1. **Hebrews**1:3,4,7,13; 3:5; 6:18; 11:13,17,37; 12:6. **James** 2:23; 4:6; 5:20. **I Peter** 2:17; 3:20; 4:8; 5:5. **2 Peter** 2:5.

3. **Polycarp (65-155 AD)** was a disciple of John. In writing to the Philippian church in 115 AD, he quotes **19 out of the 27 New Testament books** as Scripture on **70 occasions**. This shows that the NT canon was well established by 115 AD. He testified to be a disciple of John the Apostle. (Vol.1, p.31-44). In **115 AD** he quotes **Matthew** 5:3,10,44; 6:12,13,14; 7:1,2; 20:28; 26:41; **Mark** 14:38; **Luke** 6:20,36,37,38; **Acts** 2:24; 5:41; 17:31; 21:14. **Romans** 8:11; 12:17; 14:10-12; **I Cor.** 6:2,9,10,14; **II Cor.** 4:14; 5:10; 8:31; **Gal.** 1:1; 2:2; 4:26; 6:7; **Eph.** 2:8,9; 4:26; 6:11,14; **Phil.** 1:5,27; 2:10,16; **I Thess.** 5:17,22; **II Thess.** 3:15; **I Tim.** 2:2; 3:8; 6:7,10; **II Tim.** 2:12; **Titus** 3:1; **I Peter** 1:8,13,21; 2:11,12,17,21,22,24; 3:9,22; 4:7,16; 5:5; **II Peter** 3:15; **I John** 4:3,9; **Jude** 3.

(Source: The Ante-Nicene Fathers. Translations of the Writings of the Fathers down to AD 325.

A Roberts & J Donaldson Editors. American Reprint by AC Coxe. Eerdmans, Grand Rapids, Michigan)

274. The Trinity Of The Godhead Seen In Nature

Question: How is the Trinity of the Godhead seen in nature as stated in Romans 1:20 “for the invisible things of him from the **creation of the world** are **clearly seen**, being understood by the **things that are made**, even his eternal **power** and **Godhead**; so that they are without excuse.”

Answer: a) We see God’s eternal **power** in earthquakes, volcanoes, wind, millions of stars, galaxies, waves, floods, lightning, sun, moon, nuclear bombs, etc.

b) We see the **Trinity of the Godhead** with so many things coming in “threes”, reminding us of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, all three members of the creator Godhead. Examples include:

1. The Physical Universe: Space, mass, time.

2. Space: 3 dimensions of space are: length, breadth, height.

3. Mass: 3 phases of matter are: solid, liquid, gas.

4. Time: 3 tenses of time are: past, present, future.

5. Light: 3 directions of light wave oscillation are: horizontal, vertical, backward and forward.

6. Colours: 3 primary colours of light for artists are: red, blue, yellow.

7. Kingdoms: 3 Kingdoms are: Animal, vegetable, mineral.

8. Animal: 3 kinds of Animal: fish, bird, land animals.

9. Minerals: 3 main kinds of Minerals are: igneous, sedimentary, metamorphic.

10. Heavens: 3 heavens are: atmosphere, space, God’s throne.

11. Man: 3 components of Man are: body, soul (personality), spirit. (I Thess. 5:23).

12. Divine institutions: 3 Divine institutions are: marriage, human government, church.

13. Musical notes: 3 notes make up a musical chord.

14. Sub-atomic particles: 3 main sub-atomic particles are: proton, electron, neutron.

15. Mankind: 3 divisions of the human race: Jew, Gentile, Church of God. (I Cor.10:32).

16. Seeds: consist of three main parts: (1) the seed coat, (2) the embryo, and (3) the food storage tissue.

17. Forces: nuclear, gravitational, electromagnetic.

18. DNA (the substance of genes) contains phosphate, deoxyribose and bases bonded into nucleotides.

19. Earth is the third planet from the Sun. **44. Structural Forces:** Flexural, Axial, Sheer forces.

20. Trees made of roots, trunk, leaves.

45. Learning Methods: Hear, See, Do.

21. Blood cells: red, white, platelet.

46. Newton’s 3 Laws of Motion of physical objects.

22. Genius Traits: Intellect, Zeal, Work.

47. Kepler’s 3 Laws of Planetary Motion.

23. Sun: alpha, beta, gamma rays.

48. 3 Types of Average: Mean, Mode, Median.

24. Insects: head, thorax, abdomen.

49. 3 Accounting Variables: Assets= Liabilities+Equity

25. Humans: Head, Abdomen, Limbs.

50. Food Types: Protein, Carbohydrates, Fat.

26. Sun’s mass = 333,000 x earth mass.

51. Tooth components: Root, Dentine, Enamel.

27. Sun emits: heat, light, radiation.

52. Basic Sentence Structure: Subject, Verb, Object.

28. Cell: nucleus, cytoplasm, membrane.

53. Family: Father, Mother, Child.

29. 3 Joints in a human finger.

54. Levi: Jacob’s third son led the priestly tribe (Gen 29:34)

30. Earth’s Structure: Core, Mantle, Crust. **55. Blood transfer methods:** Artery, Vein, Capillary.

31. Ear divisions: Outer ear, Middle ear, Inner ear. **56. Musical Instruments:** Percussion, Brass, Wind.

32. Health Requirements: Rest, Exercise, Diet. **57. Basic Skills:** Reading, Writing, Arithmetic.

33. Levels of Government: King, Lawgiver, Judge (Isaiah 33:22). **58. Coconut shell** has 3 large spots

34. Earth is land, sea, atmosphere. **59. Requirements for fire:** Fuel, Oxygen, Heat combustion source.

35. Types of Triangles: Obtuse, Acute, Right angled. (Pythagorus).

36. Heat Transfer methods: Conduction, Convection, Radiation.

37. Law of 3 Witnesses (Matthew 18:16; Deut. 19:15; I Timothy 5:19).

38. Tessellation types: Translation, rotation, reflection.

39. Cone cells in the Eye come in 3 types, sensitive to different light wavelengths.

40. Human Brain components: Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Medulla.

41. Memory works on the concept of threes. The first time you observe something it’s unique.

The second time you observe the same thing it becomes understood like a pattern.

The third time you observe the same thing you have a pattern to reference and it becomes known.

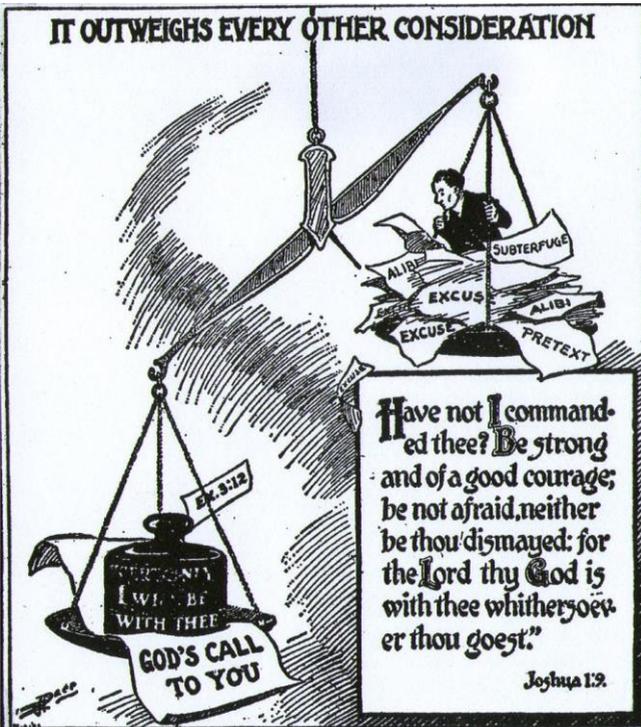
42. Life is based on Carbon, atomic number 6, the sum & product of the first 3 integers ($6=1+2+3$; $6=1\times 2\times 3$).

43. Important Molecules contain 3 atoms: water (H₂O), carbon dioxide (CO₂), ozone (O₃).

275. Eleven Old Testament Prophets teach that Jesus Christ is Jehovah God in 16 Quotes.

- 1. Moses:** The God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob Who appeared to Moses at the burning bush revealed His Name as eternal "I AM" (Exodus 3:14,15). Jesus revealed that He was the true God by stating that "Before Abraham was, I AM", and "If ye believe not that I am, ye shall die in your sins." John 8:58,24.
- 2. David:** God told David that David's son would be David's God. "The LORD (*Jehovah*) said unto my Lord (Adonai), Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool." (Psalm 110:1). Jesus applied this to Himself in Matthew 22:41-45 as a question: "If David then call him Lord, how is he his son?" This shows that Jesus Christ would be both a man descended from David & David's God.
- 3. Solomon:** God has a son. "What is his name, and what is his son's name?" (Proverbs 30:4).
- 4. Isaiah: a)** The Mighty God would be both man and God the Son. "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: ..And his name shall be called ...the Mighty God..." (Isaiah 9:6).
b) God the Son who created the heavens and the earth, would be sent to earth by Jehovah the Father and by God the Holy Spirit to save man. (Isaiah 48:12,13,16).
c) Isaiah saw the King, Jehovah of hosts on a throne in heaven, who asked Isaiah "who will go for us?" (Isaiah 6:1-8,5). ("us"=trinity). In John 12:37-41, John said of Jesus, "These things said Esaias when he saw his (*Jesus*) glory, and spake of him (*Jesus*)." Jesus was the King, Jehovah of hosts that Isaiah saw.
- 5. Jeremiah:** "Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch (*Jesus' humanity*), and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth. In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, THE LORD (*Jehovah*) OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS (*Jesus' Deity*)." (Jeremiah 23:5,6).
- 6. Ezekiel:** Ezekiel prophesied that the east gate of Jerusalem will be shut, as it is today, "because the LORD (*Jehovah*), the God of Israel, has entered in by it, therefore it shall be shut." (Ezekiel 44:1,2).
Question: When did Jehovah, the God of Israel enter the east gate of Jerusalem? It was when Jesus Christ entered it on Palm Sunday before His crucifixion in Luke 19:28-48. He rode a donkey from the Mount of Olives through the east gate, then entered the temple. This proves that Jesus is Jehovah God.
- 7. Daniel: a)** When King Nebuchadnezzar threw the 3 Hebrew men into the furnace, he saw a fourth person walking in the furnace and protecting them, who was identified as the Son of God (Daniel 3:25)
b) The Son of man (Christ) came to the Ancient of days (God the Father) to receive the kingdom.7:9-14
- 8. Hosea:** Jehovah will return to "my place" (*heaven*), till the Jews admit their offence of killing Jesus. "Hear the word of the LORD (*Jehovah*) (4:1).I will go and return to my place (*heaven*), till they (*Jews*) acknowledge their offence (*of killing Jesus*), and seek my face: in their affliction (*7 year tribulation*) they (*Jews*) will seek me early." Jehovah the Son came from heaven to be born of Mary as a man. He was rejected and crucified by the Jews. The resurrected Lord Jesus returned to heaven. Jesus will only return when Israel acknowledge their offence of killing Jesus. This occurs after the 7 year tribulation.
- 9. Micah:** Micah prophesied that the eternal second member of the trinity would be born as a human baby in Bethlehem in Micah 5:2, "But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he (*Jesus Christ, God the Son*) come forth unto me (*God the Father*) that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting".
- 10. Zechariah: a)** "Thus says the LORD (*Jehovah*) my God; (v.4). If ye think good, give me my price: So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver (v.12). I took the thirty pieces of silver, and cast them to the potter in the house of the LORD" (Zech 11:4,12,13). Israel sold Jehovah for 30 silver coins. These three prophecies were fulfilled in Judas betraying Jesus Christ in Matthew 26:14-16 and 27:3-10.
b) When Jesus Christ returns to earth, He is identified as Jehovah God whom Israel pierced on the cross. "I (*Jehovah*) will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem,...they (*Israel*) shall look upon me (*Jehovah*) whom they have pierced" (Zech. 12:9-10). Jesus fulfilled this in John 19:37.
c) When Jesus Christ returns to earth on the Mount of Olives, He is identified as Jehovah God. Zech 14 "Then shall the LORD (*Jehovah*) go forth and fight against those nations,...And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives (v.3-4)...the LORD (*Jehovah*) my God shall come, and all the saints with thee (v.5)...the LORD (*Jehovah*) shall be king over all the earth ..." (Zechariah 14:3,4,5,9). When Jesus ascended to heaven from the Mount of Olives, two angels told those witnesses present that "this same Jesus shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven." (Acts 1:10-11).
- 11. Malachi:** Malachi wrote of "the Lord (Adonai, God) whom you seek shall suddenly come to his temple (*in Jerusalem*)." (Malachi 3:1). Jesus fulfilled this in John 2:13-21 at the start of His ministry.

IT OUTWEIGHS EVERY OTHER CONSIDERATION



Have not I command-
ed thee? Be strong
and of a good courage;
be not afraid, neither
be thou dismayed: for
the Lord thy God is
with thee whithersoever
er thou goest."

Joshua 1:9.

THE 1
**SAVIOUR'S
COMMAND**
Matt. 28:19

THE 2
**SPIRIT'S
CONDUCT**

THE 3
**SINNER'S
CRY**
Acts 16:9



THE THREE ELEMENTS OF A MISSIONARY CALL



Jesus Christ, the Good Samaritan, came to bind up the sinners's wounds. (Luke 10:25-37). Jesus Christ tells believers to help new Christians grow. "Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee." (v.35). This book helps you do this.

THE WAY TO GOD and HEAVEN

1. We have sinned by breaking God's laws, the 10 commandments. We have been selfish, putting ourselves first, taking God's good gifts of creation without thanking Him as Provider. We have broken the chief commandment of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. We have not loved others as we love ourselves. This is sin. We are all big sinners compared to God.
2. God's Law demands that we receive penalty for our sin in hell forever. This is bad news. God loves us and is offering everybody the free gift of eternal life which we get through from Jesus Christ.
3. Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, came to earth, lived a sinless life, and at the age of 33 died on the cross to take the full punishment due for everybody's past, present and future sins. Having received the full penalty of our sins, He died, was buried and rose from the dead three days later.
4. If you believe the Jesus Christ is:
 - a) God the Son.
 - b) Died for your sins in your place; and
 - c) Rose again bodily from the dead, Then
 Receive or ask Jesus Christ to be your Saviour from sin,
 Then God will forgive all your sins and give you eternal life immediately.

Question: Will you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? If yes, then tell this to God right now:

"Almighty God. I know that I have sinned against you. I believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross to pay the penalty for my sins to be my Saviour. I now receive you, Lord Jesus Christ, as my Saviour and my God. I now call on you, Lord Jesus, to save me from my sins, take me to heaven when I die, and give me the gift of eternal life right now. I now open the door of my heart and life for You, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God forever. In Jesus Christ's name, I pray. Amen."

Jesus Christ, the Good Samaritan, came to bind up the sinner's wounds. (Luke 10:25-37).

Jesus Christ tells believers to help new Christians grow. "Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee." (v.35). This book helps you do this.

THE WAY TO GOD and HEAVEN

1. We have sinned by breaking God's laws, the 10 commandments. We have been selfish, putting ourselves first, taking God's good gifts of creation without thanking Him as Provider. We have broken the chief commandment of not loving God with all our heart, soul, mind and strength. We have not loved others as we love ourselves. This is sin. We are all big sinners compared to God.
2. God's Law demands that we receive the penalty for our sin in hell forever. This is bad news. God loves us and is offering everybody the free gift of eternal life which we get through Jesus Christ.
3. Jesus Christ, who is God the Son, came to earth, lived a sinless life, and at the age of 33 died on the cross to take the full punishment due for everybody's past, present and future sins. Having received the full penalty for our sins, He died, was buried and rose from the dead three days later. He is now available to be our Saviour from sin if we want Him to be.
4. If you believe that Jesus Christ is:
 - a) God the Son.
 - b) Died for your sins in your place; and
 - c) Rose again bodily from the dead, thenReceive or ask Jesus Christ to be your Saviour from sin,
then God will forgive all your sins and give you eternal life immediately.

Question: Will you receive Jesus Christ as your Saviour? If Yes, then tell this to God right now:

"Almighty God. I know that I have sinned against you. I believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross to pay the penalty for my sins to be my Saviour. I now receive you, Lord Jesus Christ, as my Saviour and my God. I now call on you, Lord Jesus, to save me from my sins, take me to heaven when I die, and give me the gift of eternal life right now. I now open the door of my heart and life for You, Lord Jesus, to come in to be my Saviour, my Friend and my God forever. In Jesus Christ's name, I pray. Amen."